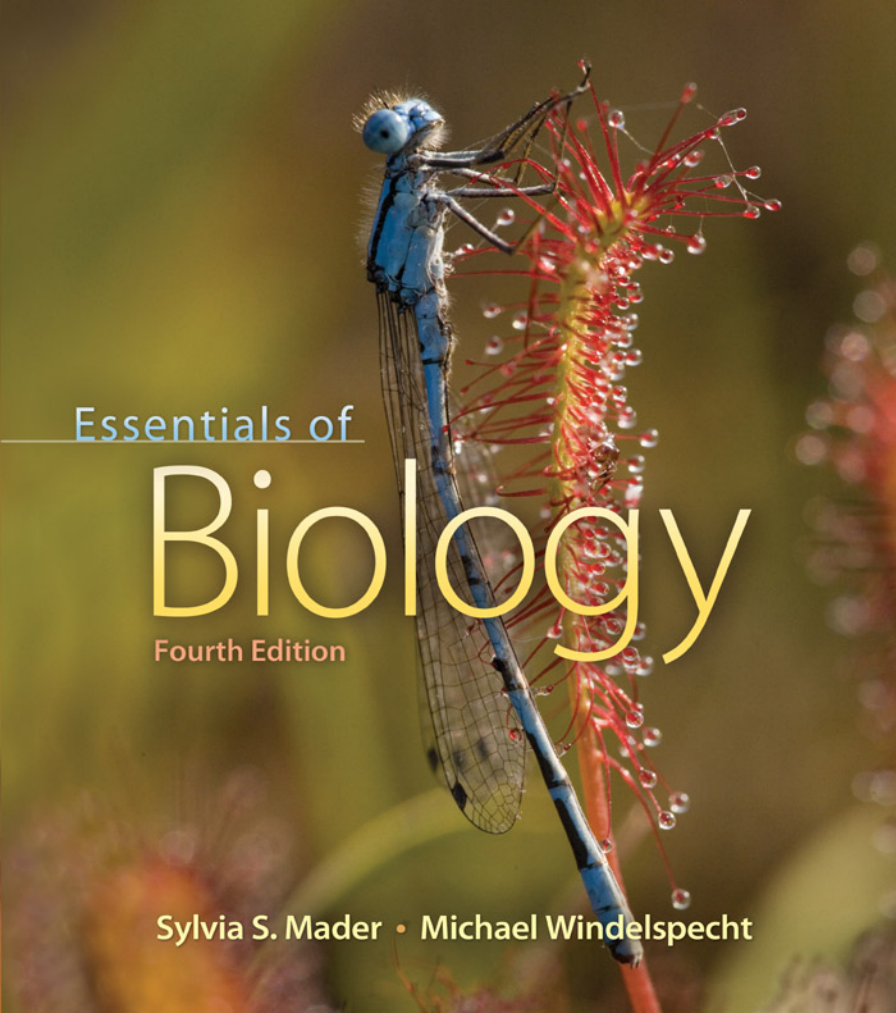

Essentials of
Biology
Fourth Edition
Sylvia S. Mader • Michael Windelspecht

Essentials of Biology

Fourth Edition

Sylvia S. Mader

Michael Windelspecht

with contributions by

Dave Cox
Lincoln Land Community College

Gretel Guest
Durham Technical Community College

Mc Graw Hill Education

ESSENTIALS OF BIOLOGY, FOURTH EDITION

Published by McGraw-Hill Education, 2 Penn Plaza, New York, NY 10121. Copyright © 2015 by McGraw-Hill Education. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Previous editions © 2012, 2010, and 2007. No part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written consent of McGraw-Hill Education, including, but not limited to, in any network or other electronic storage or transmission, or broadcast for distance learning.

Some ancillaries, including electronic and print components, may not be available to customers outside the United States.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 RMN/RMN 1 0 9 8 7 6 5 4

ISBN 978–0–07–802422–1
MHID 0–07–802422–6

Senior Vice President, Products & Markets: *Kurt L. Strand*
Vice President, General Manager, Products & Markets: *Marty Lange*
Vice President, Content Production & Technology Services: *Kimberly Meriwether David*
Managing Director: *Michael S. Hackett*
Director, Biology: *Lynn Breithaupt*
Brand Manager: *Eric Weber*
Director of Development: *Rose M. Koos*
Senior Marketing Manager: *Chris Loewenberg*
Director, Content Production: *Terri Schiesl*
Content Project Manager: *Jennifer Gehl*
Senior Buyer: *Sandy Ludovissy*
Senior Designer: *Laurie B. Janssen*
Cover Image: © *FLPA/Bob Gibbons/age fotostock*
Senior Content Licensing Specialist: *Lori Hancock*
Art Studio and Compositor: *Electronic Publishing Services Inc., NYC*
Typeface: *10/13 Times LT Std*
Printer: *R. R. Donnelley*

All credits appearing on page or at the end of the book are considered to be an extension of the copyright page.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Mader, Sylvia S., author.
Essentials of biology / Sylvia S. Mader, Mader Enterprises, Michael Windelspecht, Appalachian State Universtiy. – Fourth edition.
pages cm
Includes index.
ISBN 978–0–07–802422–1 — ISBN 0–07–802422–6 (hard copy : alk. paper) 1. Biology–Textbooks. I. Windelspecht, Michael, 1963- author. II. Title.
QH308.2.M24 2015
570–dc23
2013038182

The Internet addresses listed in the text were accurate at the time of publication. The inclusion of a website does not indicate an endorsement by the authors or McGraw-Hill Education, and McGraw-Hill Education does not guarantee the accuracy of the information presented at these sites.

www.mhhe.com

Brief Contents

1 Biology: The Science of Life 1

PART I The Cell

2 The Chemical Basis of Life 21
3 The Organic Molecules of Life 38
4 Inside the Cell 56
5 The Dynamic Cell 79
6 Energy for Life 95
7 Energy for Cells 110

PART II Genetics

8 Cellular Reproduction 125
9 Meiosis and the Genetic Basis of Sexual Reproduction 146
10 Patterns of Inheritance 161
11 DNA Biology 184
12 Biotechnology and Genomics 207
13 Genetic Counseling 220

PART III Evolution

14 Darwin and Evolution 236
15 Evolution on a Small Scale 253
16 Evolution on a Large Scale 268

PART IV Diversity of Life

17 The Microorganisms: Viruses, Bacteria, and Protists 289
18 Land Environment: Plants and Fungi 312
19 Both Water and Land: Animals 337

PART V Plant Structure and Function

20 Plant Anatomy and Growth 372
21 Plant Responses and Reproduction 392

PART VI Animal Structure and Function

22 Being Organized and Steady 414
23 The Transport Systems 432
24 The Maintenance Systems 450
25 Human Nutrition 475
26 Defenses Against Disease 496
27 The Control Systems 513
28 Sensory Input and Motor Output 536
29 Reproduction and Embryonic Development 556

PART VII Ecology

30 Ecology of Populations 580
31 Communities and Ecosystems 600
32 Human Impact on the Biosphere 625

About the Authors

Dr. Sylvia S. Mader has authored several nationally recognized biology texts published by McGraw-Hill. Educated at Bryn Mawr College, Harvard University, Tufts University, and Nova Southeastern University, she holds degrees in both Biology and Education. Over the years she has taught at University of Massachusetts, Lowell, Massachusetts Bay Community College, Suffolk University, and Nathan Mathew Seminars. Her ability to reach out to science-shy students led to the writing of her first text, *Inquiry into Life,* that is now in its fourteenth edition. Highly acclaimed for her crisp and entertaining writing style, her books have become models for others who write in the field of biology.

Although her writing schedule is always quite demanding, Dr. Mader enjoys taking time to visit and explore the various ecosystems of the biosphere. Her several trips to the Florida Everglades and Caribbean coral reefs resulted in talks she has given to various groups around the country. She has visited the tundra in Alaska, the taiga in the Canadian Rockies, the Sonoran Desert in Arizona, and tropical rain forests in South America and Australia. A photo safari to the Serengeti in Kenya resulted in a number of photographs for her texts. She was thrilled to think of walking in Darwin's steps when she journeyed to the Galápagos Islands with a group of biology educators. Dr. Mader was also a member of a group of biology educators who traveled to China to meet with their Chinese counterparts and exchange ideas about the teaching of modern-day biology.

Dr. Michael Windelspecht As an educator, Dr. Windelspecht has taught introductory biology, genetics, and human genetics in the online, traditional, and hybrid environments at community colleges, comprehensive universities, and military institutions. For over a decade he served as the Introductory Biology Coordinator at Appalachian State University where he directed a program that enrolled over 4,500 students annually. He currently serves as an adjunct professor of biology at ASU where he teaches non-majors biology and human genetics in the online and hybrid formats. He was educated at Michigan State University and the University of South Florida. Dr. Windelspecht is also active in promoting the scientific literacy of secondary school educators. He has led multiple workshops on integrating water quality research into the science curriculum, and has spent several summers teaching Pakistani middle school teachers.

As an author, Dr. Windelspecht has published five reference textbooks, and multiple print and online lab manuals. He served as the series editor for a ten-volume work on the human body. For years Dr. Windelspecht has been active in the development of multimedia resources for the online and hybrid science classrooms. Along with his wife, Sandra, he owns a multimedia production company, Ricochet Creative Productions, which actively develops and assesses new technologies for the science classroom.

Preface

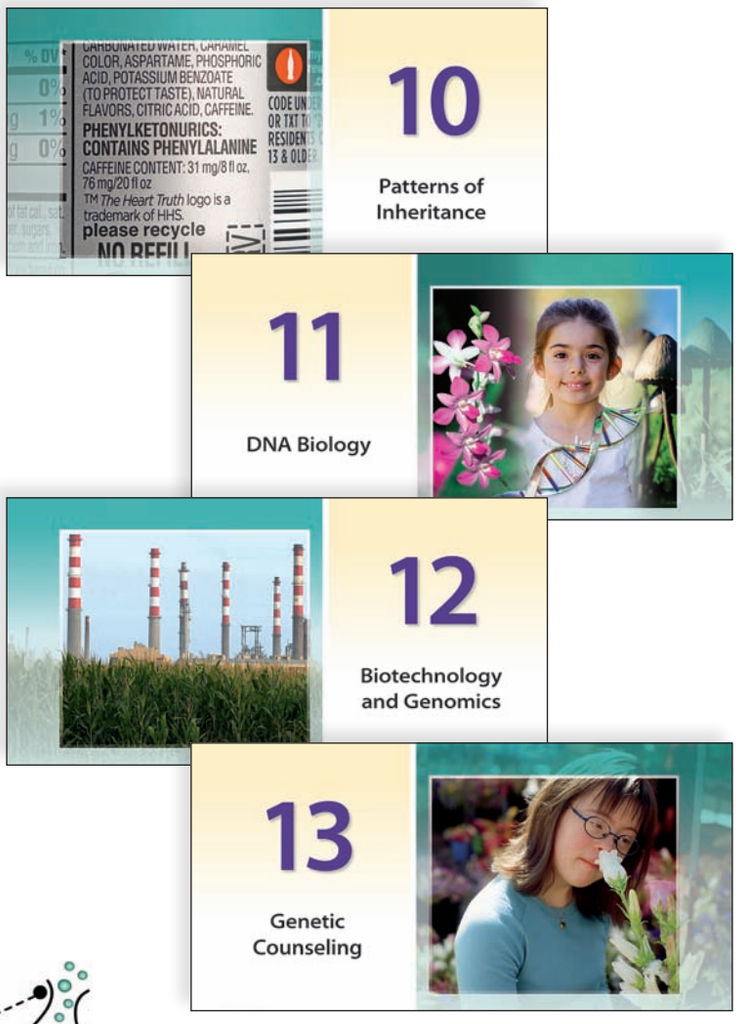
Essentials of Biology Fourth Edition, provides non-science majors with a fundamental understanding of the science of biology. The overall focus of this edition addresses the learning styles of modern students, and in the process, increases their understanding of the importance of science in their lives.

The authors identified several goals that guided the preparation of this new edition:

- **Pedagogy**—integration of new features and reorganization of chapter content to align the text with teaching practices.
- **Relevancy**—new chapter openers, Connection readings, and media to interest the modern student.
- **Adaptive Learning**—*Essentials of Biology* is the flagship for the next generation of adaptive learning products. Throughout this text, the authors have used student data from the LearnSmart product in their review of the content and chapter structure. Refer to pages viii and ix for more information on McGraw-Hill's LearnSmart Advantage products.
- **Media**—full integration of media assets, including 3D animations and LearnSmart Lab exercises, into each chapter.

Pedagogy

- Redesign of the Connections feature helps students recognize how the content is not only connected within the chapter, but how it relates to other areas of the text.
- Restructuring of the genetics unit (Unit II) aligns similar content within a single chapter.
  - Chapter 10 includes all aspects of inheritance, from Mendel to sex-linked inheritance, and describes how Mendel's laws apply to humans.
  - Chapter 11 progresses from the structure of DNA to the regulation of genes.
  - Chapter 12 discusses the basics of biotechnology, stem cells, and the importance of genomics and bioinformatics.
  - Chapter 13 begins with the discussion of genes and mutations, and then progresses through chromosomal mutations, before concluding with genetic counseling and gene therapy.
- Reduction in the number of bold-faced terms helps students focus on terms that are needed to understand the broader scope of biology. Italicized terms indicate concepts that are important within the context of a chapter.



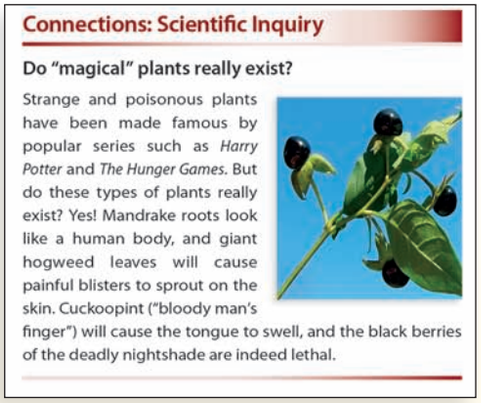
Relevancy

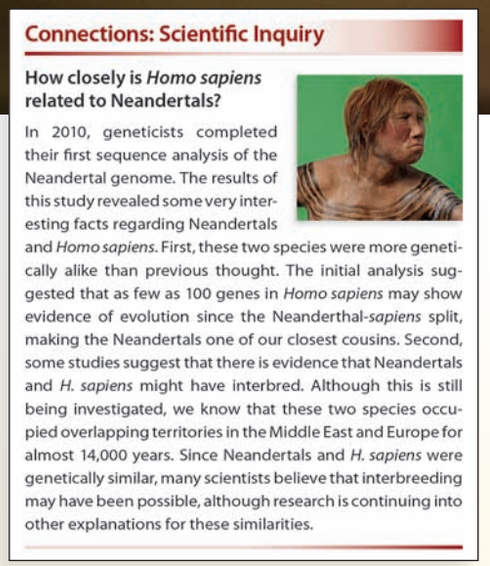
- The majority of the chapter openers in the text have been rewritten to introduce relevancy to the chapter. The authors chose topics that would be of interest to a non-science major, and represent what would typically be found on a major news source.
- The Connections features provide interesting insights into how the content relates to the everyday world.
- The authors have created a Facebook site and website, Ricochet Science, that provides updates on news and stories that are interesting to non-science majors. Both sites feature videos to assist the student in recognizing the relevancy of what they are learning in the classroom.

Ricochet Science

Connections

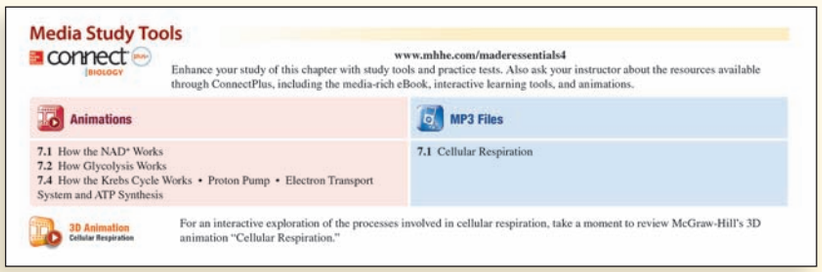
New Connections readings can be found throughout the text. This feature is designed to help students understand the relevancy of biological concepts to their everyday lives. The Connections are organized by Health, Scientific Inquiry, and Evolution. Refer to the inside back cover for a complete listing.





Media Integration

Throughout each chapter, there is full integration of content and animation, video, and audio assets. Virtually every section of the textbook is now linked to MP3 files, animations of biological processes, National Geographic videos, or ScienCentral videos.



MP3 files. These three-to-five minute audio files not only serve as a review of the material in the chapter, but also assist the student in the pronunciation of scientific terms.

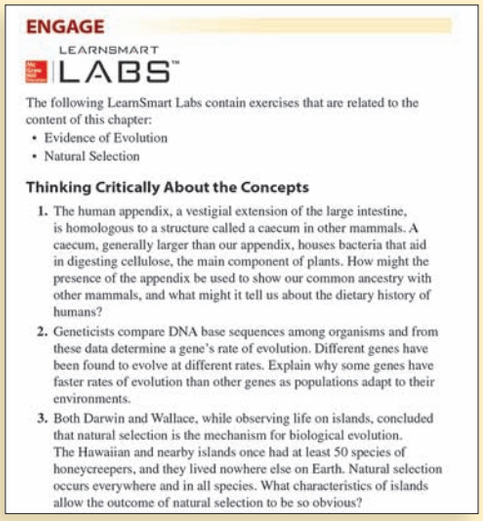
Animations. Drawing on McGraw-Hill's vast library of animations, the authors have selected animations that will enhance the student's understanding of complex biological processes.

Videos. Two different types of movies are integrated into this edition of the text. The ScienCentral videos are short news clips highlighting scientific discoveries. The National Geographic videos provide the student with a glimpse of the complexity of life that normally would not be possible in the classroom.

3D Animations. Many of the chapters contain icons for McGraw-Hill's 3D animation series. The 12 videos in this series provide a visual resource for teaching complex concepts, from photosynthesis to the carbon cycle.

LEARNSMART LABS™

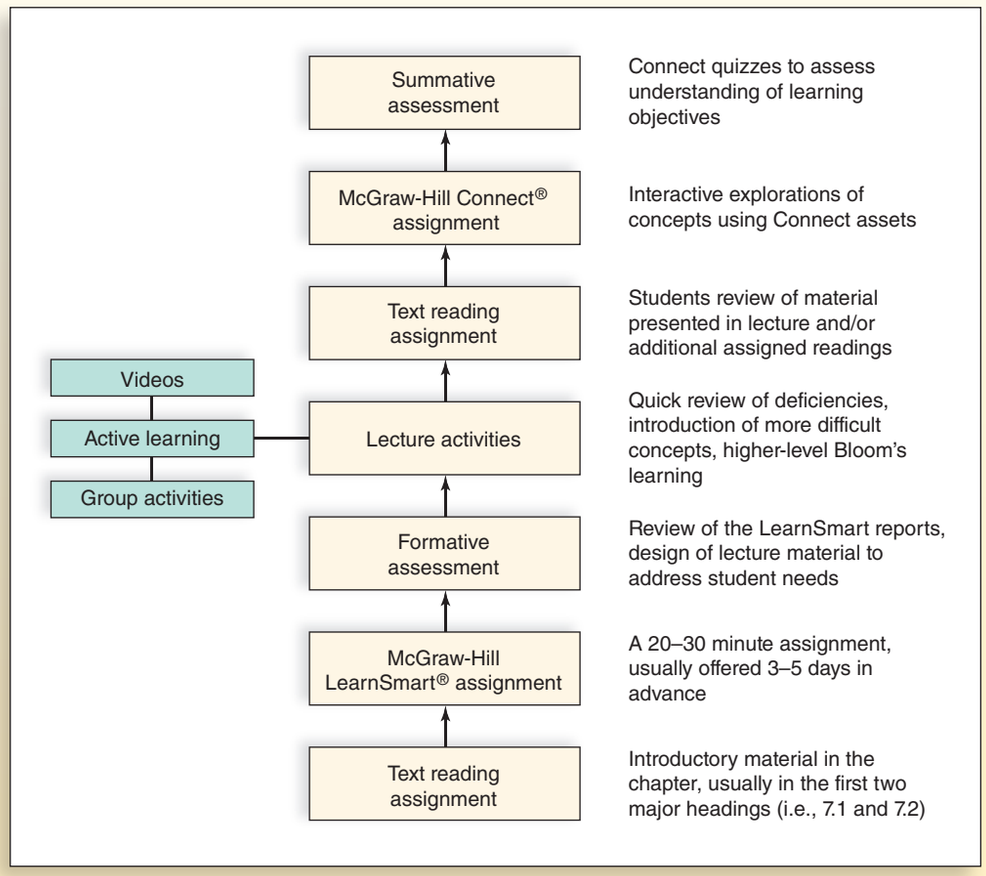
McGraw-Hill LearnSmart Labs™. At the end of selected chapters, icons indicate the presence of new LearnSmart Labs activities that provide a highly realistic and adaptive simulated lab experience that allows students to "do and think" like a scientist via exploration and execution of the scientific method.



Using *Essentials of Biology* in Flipped Classes

This text, and the wealth of digital resources that accompany this text, are ideal assets for instructors who wish to move towards some of the newer teaching philosophies, or who are developing an online course. The concise nature of this text provides students with a fundamental understanding of key concepts, which may then be expanded upon by the instructor. The graphic below is designed to provide a sample of how the *Essentials of Biology,* Fourth Edition assets may be used in these environments. For additional strategies and tutorials to assist in the development of these classes, visit Dr. Windelspecht's website at RicochetScience.com

In a flipped classroom, the students do part of their work before coming to class, thus allowing the instructor to dedicate class time to relevancy or current event topics, or to introduce higher-level learning activities (Bloom's Application or Create levels).



The LearnSmart Advantage

LEARNSMART®

LearnSmart is the only truly adaptive learning system that intelligently identifies course content students have not yet mastered and maps out personalized study plans for their success**.**

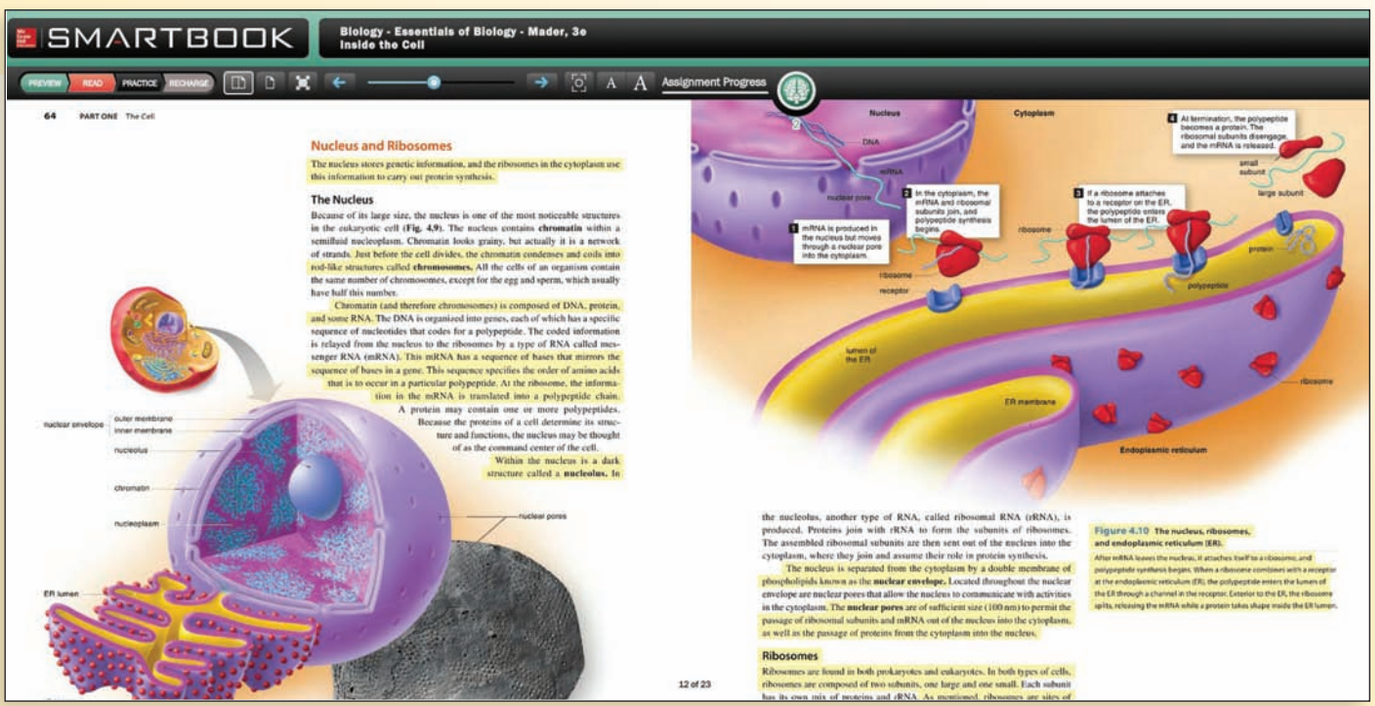
When LearnSmart has identified a specific subject area where the student is struggling, he or she is given a "time out" and directed to the textbook section and learning objective for remediation.

Dynamically generated reports document student progress and areas for additional reinforcement, offering at-a-glance views of their strengths and weaknesses.

SMARTBOOK™

Powered by an intelligent diagnostic and adaptive engine, **SmartBook** facilitates the reading process by identifying what content a student knows and doesn't know through adaptive assessments.

As the student reads, the reading material constantly adapts to ensure the student is focused on the content he or she needs the most to close any knowledge gaps.

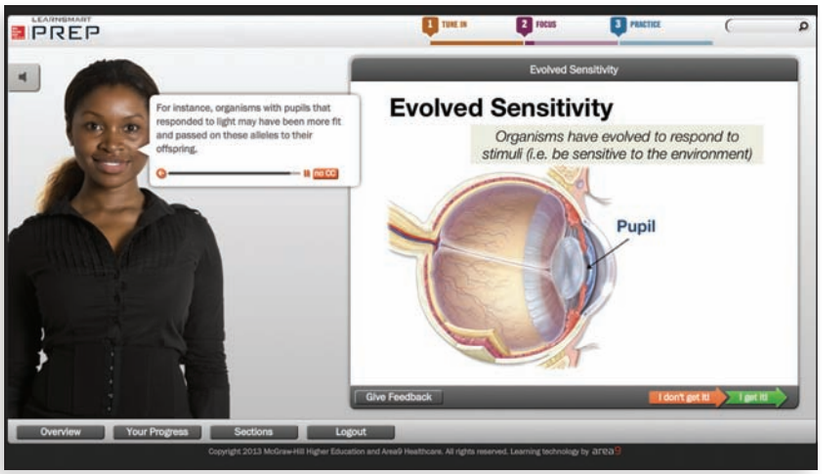


The Evolution of Learning

• MCGRAW-HILL LEARNSMART • SMARTBOOK • LEARNSMART PREP • LEARNSMART LABS • LEARNSMART ACHIEVE • LEARNSMART MASTER

LEARNSMART PREP™

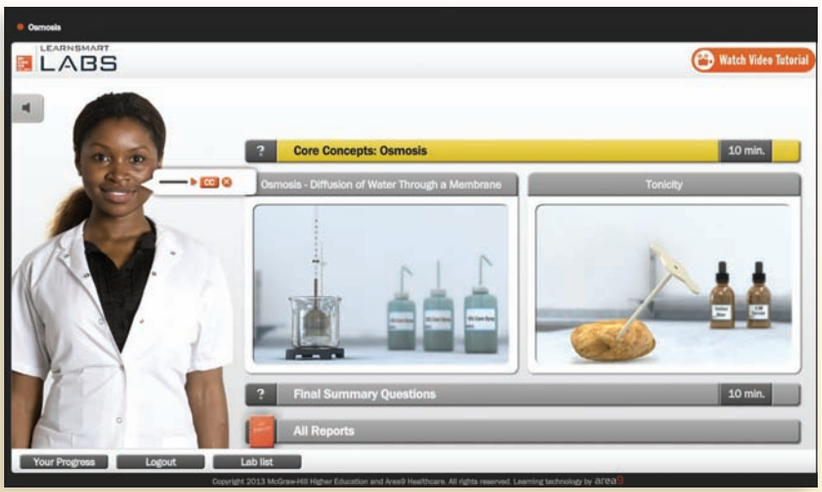
LearnSmart Prep quickly and efficiently prepares students for a college-level course. Prep uses a set of diagnostic questions to help identify what a student knows and doesn't know. It then provides a unique learning plan focused on helping the student master the basic skills and concepts he or she needs the most before entering the classroom.



LEARNSMART LABS™

LearnSmart Labs is a super-adaptive simulated lab experience that brings meaningful scientific exploration to students. Through a series of adaptive questions, LearnSmart Labs identifies a student's knowledge gaps and provides resources to quickly and efficiently close those gaps. Once the student has mastered the necessary basic skills and concepts, they engage in a highly realistic simulated lab experience that allows for mistakes and the execution of the scientific method.

Whether your need is to overcome the logistical challenges of a traditional lab, provide better lab prep, improve student performance, or make your online experience one that rivals the real world, LearnSmart Labs accomplishes it all.



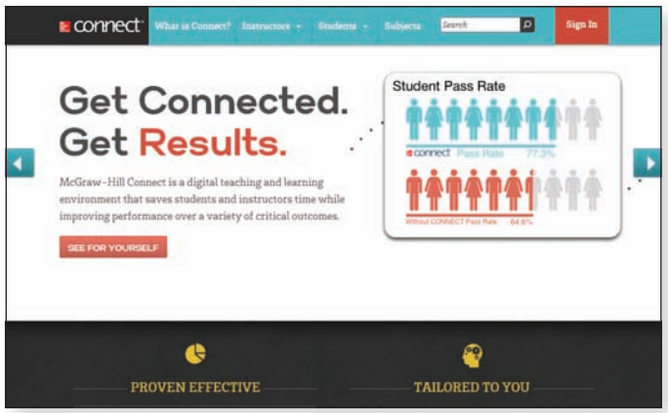
AN INNOVATIVE SUITE OF **ADAPTIVE LEARNING PRODUCTS** FUELED BY INTELLIGENT AND PROVEN LEARNING TECHNOLOGY

www.LearnSmartAdvantage.com

Teaching and Learning Tools

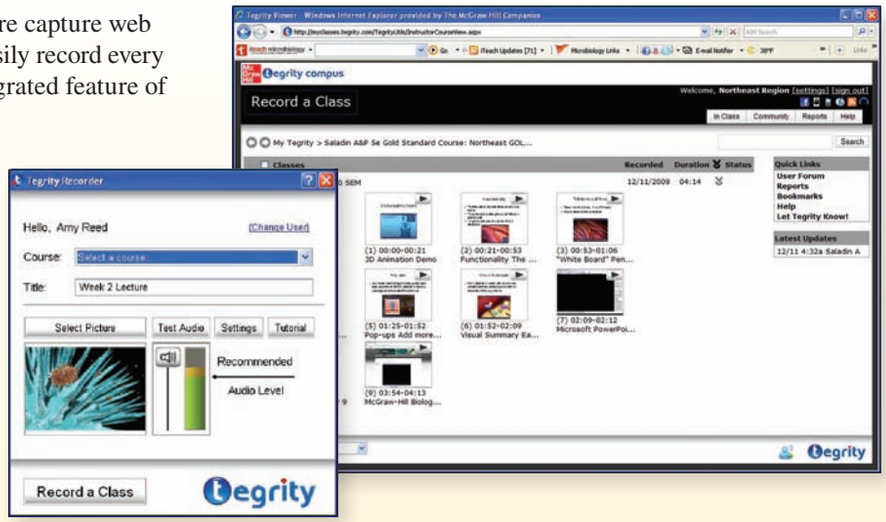
McGraw-Hill Connect® is a web-based assignment and assessment platform that gives students the means to better connect with coursework, instructors, and important concepts that they will need to know for success now and in the future.

McGraw-Hill Connect Plus® provides students with all the advantage of Connect Biology, plus a dynamic, media-rich eBook. To learn more visit **www.mcgrawhillconnect.com**



Tegrity Campus® is a lecture capture web service that allows you to easily record every class for every student. Tegrity is available as an integrated feature of Connect Biology and as a standalone.

- Make your classes available anytime, anywhere.
- Simple one-click recording. No IT assistance required.
- Students can search a word or phrase and be taken to the exact place in your lecture they need to view.



LEARNSMART®

Integrated within Connect and available as a standalone, **McGraw-Hill LearnSmart®** is the premier learning system designed to effectively assess a student's knowledge of course content. Through a series of adaptive questions, LearnSmart intelligently pinpoints concepts the student does not understand and maps out a personalized study plan for success. LearnSmart prepares students with a base of knowledge, allowing instructors to focus valuable class time on higher-level concepts.

New **SmartBook™** facilitates the reading process by identifying what content a student knows and doesn't know through adaptive assessments. As the student reads, the reading material constantly adapts to ensure the student is focused on the content he or she needs the most to close any knowledge gaps.

See pages viii and ix for more information about the **LearnSmart Advantage™** suite of adaptive tools or go to **www.LearnSmartAdvantage.com.**

The Best of Both Worlds

McGraw-Hill and Blackboard Inc. teamed up to deliver the first to market integrated course solution which offers the deepest integration of publisher content within an LMS for Blackboard versions 8.0, 9.0, and 9.1.

Connect Single Sign-on. A single login and single environment provide seamless access to all course resources—all McGraw-Hill's resources are available within the Blackboard Learn platform.

Deep Integration. One-click access to McGraw-Hill Connect assignments and tools—all from within Blackboard Learn™.

One Gradebook. Automatic grade synchronization with Blackboard gradebook. All grades for McGraw-Hill assignments are recorded in the Blackboard gradebook automatically.

Instructor Resources

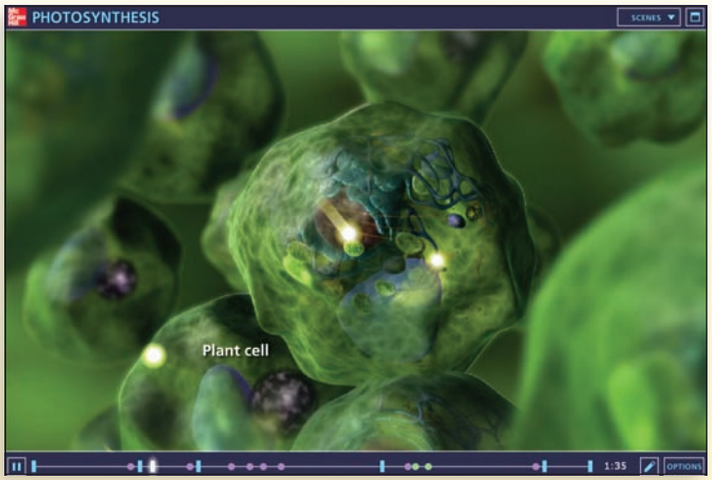
Connect® Biology provides easy access to the following resources:

Presentation Tools

- Image PowerPoints®
- Lecture PowerPoints with animations
- Animation PowerPoints
- Labeled and unlabeled JPEG files of art, photos, and tables from the textbook.
- Instructor's Manual containing chapter outlines, lecture enrichment ideas, and discussion questions.
- Laboratory Resource Guide to accompany the *Essentials of Biology Laboratory Manual*

Animations for a New Generation

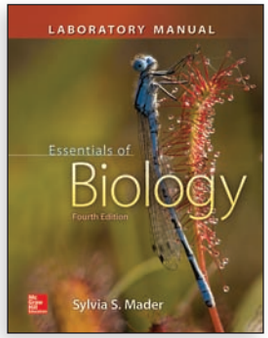
Dynamic, 3D animations of key biological processes bring an unprecedented level of control to the classroom. Innovative features keep the emphasis on teaching rather than entertaining.



Computerized Test Bank

A comprehensive bank of test questions is provided within a computerized test bank powered by McGraw-Hill's flexible electronic testing program, **EZ Test Online.** A new tagging scheme allows you to sort questions by Bloom's difficulty level, learning outcome, topic, and section. With EZ Test Online, instructors can select questions from multiple McGraw-Hill test banks or author their own, and then either print the test for paper distribution or give it online.

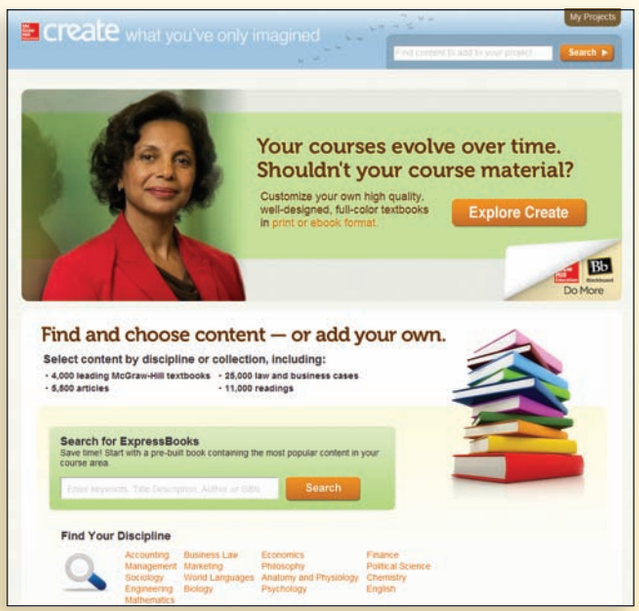
Laboratory Manual



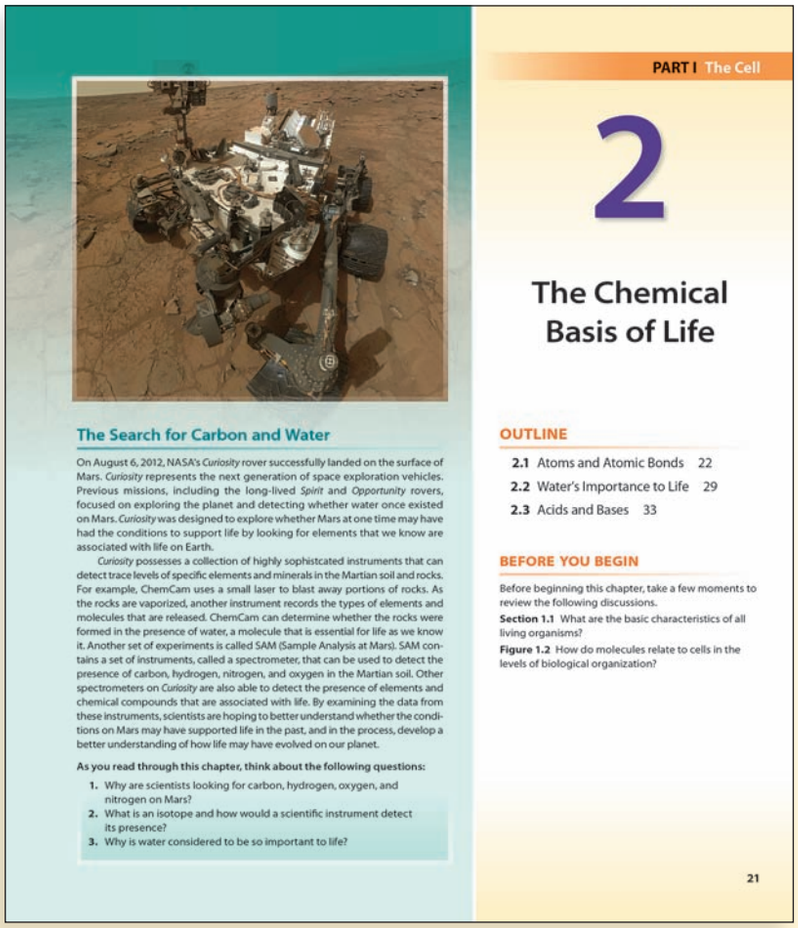
The *Essentials of Biology Laboratory Manual* is written by Dr. Sylvia Mader. Every laboratory has been written to help students learn the fundamental concepts of biology and the specific content of the chapter to which the lab relates, as well as gain a better understanding of the scientific method.

Create

Design your teaching resources to match the way you teach! With McGraw-Hill Create™ you can easily rearrange chapters, combine material from other content sources, and quickly upload content you have written. Access thousands of leading McGraw-Hill textbooks for content that fits your objectives and arrange your book to fit your teaching style. Create even allows you to personalize your book's appearance by selecting the cover and adding your name, school, and course information. Order a Create book and you'll receive a complimentary print review copy in 3–5 business days or a complimentary electronic review copy (eComp) via email in minutes. Go to **www.mcgrawhillcreate.com** today and register to experience how McGraw-Hill Create empowers you to teach *your* students *your* way.



A Student's Guide to Using This Textbook



PART I The Cell

2

The Chemical Basis of Life

OUTLINE

2.1 Atoms and Atomic Bonds 22
2.2 Water's Importance to Life 29
2.3 Acids and Bases 33

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 1.1 What are the basic characteristics of all living organisms?

Figure 1.2 How do molecules relate to cells in the levels of biological organization?

The Search for Carbon and Water

On August 6, 2012, NASA's *Curiosity* rover successfully landed on the surface of Mars. *Curiosity* represents the next generation of space exploration vehicles. Previous missions, including the long-lived *Spirit* and *Opportunity* rovers, focused on exploring the planet and detecting whether water once existed on Mars. *Curiosity* was designed to explore whether Mars at one time may have had the conditions to support life by looking for elements that we know are associated with life on Earth.

Curiosity possesses a collection of highly sophistcated instruments that can detect trace levels of specific elements and minerals in the Martian soil and rocks. For example, ChemCam uses a small laser to blast away portions of rocks. As the rocks are vaporized, another instrument records the types of elements and molecules that are released. ChemCam can determine whether the rocks were formed in the presence of water, a molecule that is essential for life as we know it. Another set of experiments is called SAM (Sample Analysis at Mars). SAM contains a set of instruments, called a spectrometer, that can be used to detect the presence of carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and oxygen in the Martian soil. Other spectrometers on *Curiosity* are also able to detect the presence of elements and chemical compounds that are associated with life. By examining the data from these instruments, scientists are hoping to better understand whether the conditions on Mars may have supported life in the past, and in the process, develop a better understanding of how life may have evolved on our planet.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. Why are scientists looking for carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen on Mars?
2. What is an isotope and how would a scientific instrument detect its presence?
3. Why is water considered to be so important to life?

21

Chapter Outline

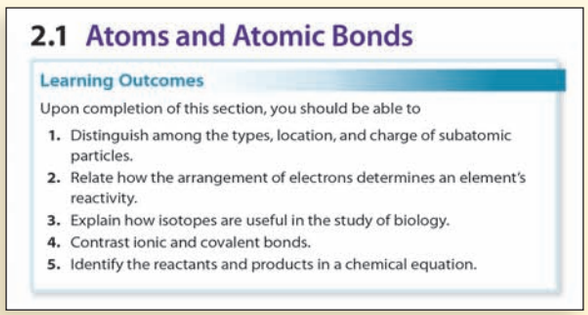
Lists the major sections that will be discussed in the chapter.

Before You Begin

Links the content of the chapter with material from earlier in the text. The questions designate important topics that you should understand before proceeding into the chapter.

Learning Outcomes

Provide you with an overview of what you are to know. Your instructor can assign activities through Connect® to help you achieve these outcomes.



2.1 Atoms and Atomic Bonds

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish among the types, location, and charge of subatomic particles.
2. Relate how the arrangement of electrons determines an element's reactivity.
3. Explain how isotopes are useful in the study of biology.
4. Contrast ionic and covalent bonds.
5. Identify the reactants and products in a chemical equation.

Media Integration

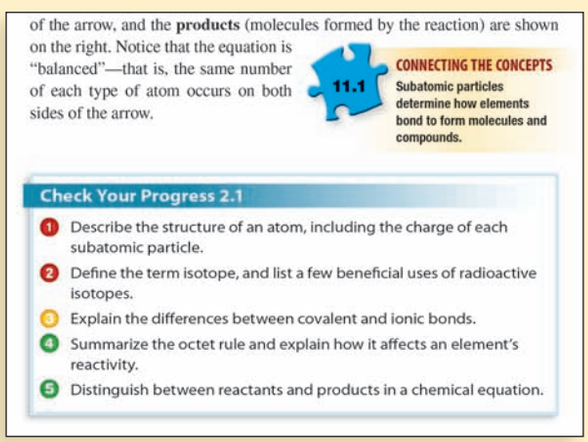
Enhances your study of biology with media. Go to www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4 to access the animations, videos, and MP3 files referenced throughout this book. Ask your instructor about related quizzes that are available through Connect® Biology.

Revised Connecting the Concepts

This new feature is designed to not only demonstrate to the student how the content within a chapter is connected, but also to link the chapter content to other areas of the text. The goal is to present biology as a discipline, and not simply a collection of facts and processes.

Check Your Progress

Questions at the end of each section help you assess and/or apply your understanding of the material in the section. The questions progress in difficulty (red, yellow, green) to ensure you are going beyond memorization of content.



of the arrow, and the **products** (molecules formed by the reaction) are shown on the right. Notice that the equation is "balanced"—that is, the same number of each type of atom occurs on both sides of the arrow.

11.1

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Subatomic particles determine how elements bond to form molecules and compounds.

Check Your Progress 2.1

1. Describe the structure of an atom, including the charge of each subatomic particle.
2. Define the term isotope, and list a few beneficial uses of radioactive isotopes.
3. Explain the differences between covalent and ionic bonds.
4. Summarize the octet rule and explain how it affects an element's reactivity.
5. Distinguish between reactants and products in a chemical equation.

Media Study Tools

Provide a link to the *Essentials of Biology* website, that contains practice tests, animations, and videos organized and integrated by chapter to help you succeed in your study of biology. The ConnectPlus® platform provides a media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and access to the LearnSmart® system for enhanced student performance.

Summary

Provides an excellent overview of the chapter concepts using concise summaries, summary tables, and key illustrations.

Revised Key Terms

In this edition, the key, bold-faced terms in the chapter are integrated into the Summarize material at the end of the chapter. This helps the student understand the importance of the term in the context of the chapter content.

LearnSmart Labs™

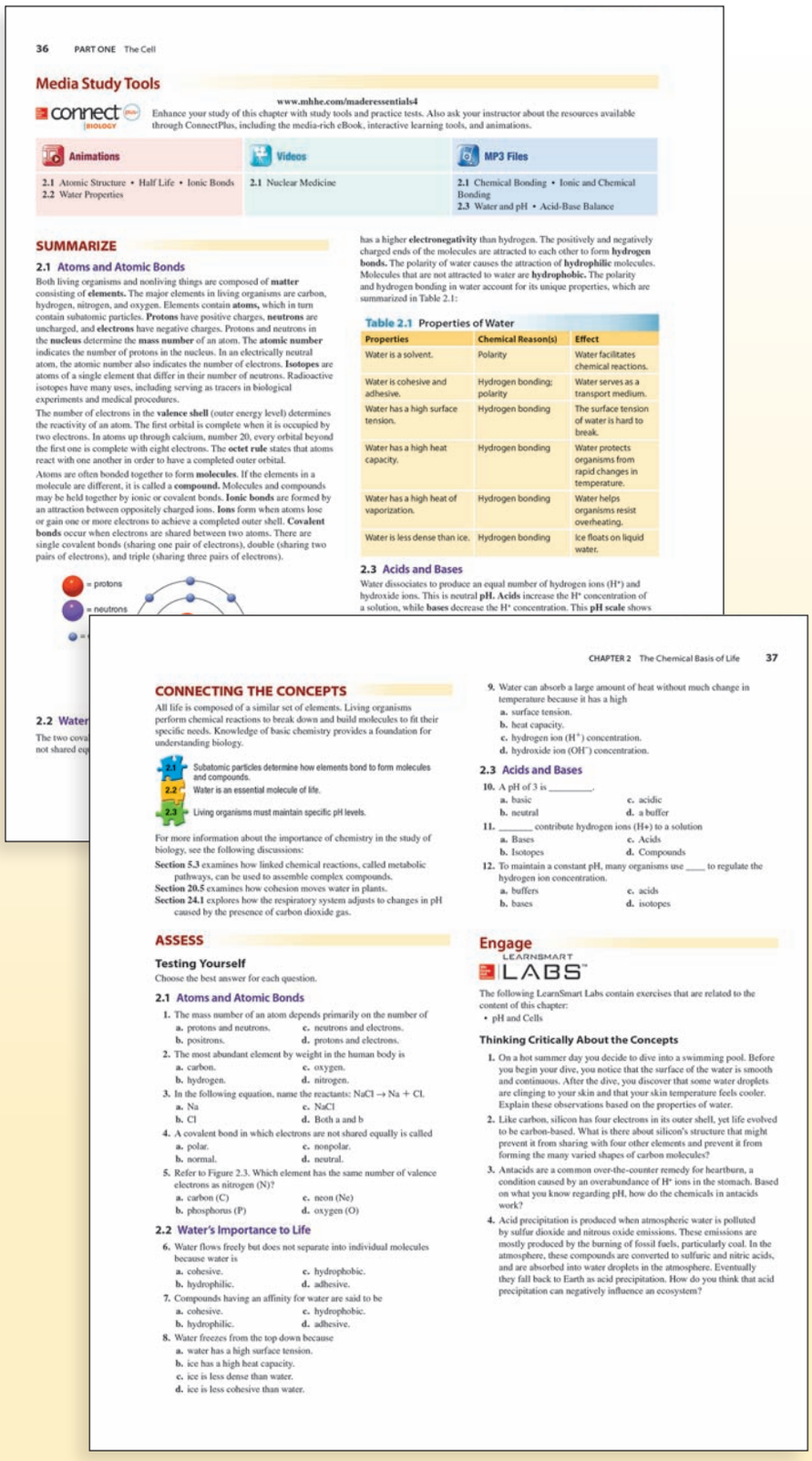
Allow you to investigate topics associated with the content of the chapter from a scientific perspective.

Revised Thinking Critically About the Concepts

Questions give you an opportunity to reason as a scientist. (See Appendix A for answers.) The questions in this section help you understand the process of scientific thinking by exploring topics that have a bioethical focus or are related to topics in the news.

Testing Yourself

Questions help you review material and prepare for tests. (See Appendix A for answers.) These are arranged by section for easy review.



36 PART ONE The Cell

Media Study Tools

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

connect BIOLOGY Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Videos	MP3 Files
2.1 Atomic Structure • Half Life • Ionic Bonds 2.2 Water Properties	2.1 Nuclear Medicine	2.1 Chemical Bonding • Ionic and Chemical Bonding 2.3 Water and pH • Acid-Base Balance

SUMMARIZE

2.1 Atoms and Atomic Bonds

Both living organisms and nonliving things are composed of **matter** consisting of **elements.** The major elements in living organisms are carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and oxygen. Elements contain **atoms,** which in turn contain subatomic particles. **Protons** have positive charges, **neutrons** are uncharged, and **electrons** have negative charges. Protons and neutrons in the **nucleus** determine the **mass number** of an atom. The **atomic number** indicates the number of protons in the nucleus. In an electrically neutral atom, the atomic number also indicates the number of electrons. **Isotopes** are atoms of a single element that differ in their number of neutrons. Radioactive isotopes have many uses, including serving as tracers in biological experiments and medical procedures.

The number of electrons in the **valence shell** (outer energy level) determines the reactivity of an atom. The first orbital is complete when it is occupied by two electrons. In atoms up through calcium, number 20, every orbital beyond the first one is complete with eight electrons. The **octet rule** states that atoms react with one another in order to have a completed outer orbital.

Atoms are often bonded together to form **molecules.** If the elements in a molecule are different, it is called a **compound.** Molecules and compounds may be held together by ionic or covalent bonds. **Ionic bonds** are formed by an attraction between oppositely charged ions. **Ions** form when atoms lose or gain one or more electrons to achieve a completed outer shell. **Covalent bonds** occur when electrons are shared between two atoms. There are single covalent bonds (sharing one pair of electrons), double (sharing two pairs of electrons), and triple (sharing three pairs of electrons).

= protons
= neutrons

2.2 Water

The two cova
not shared eq

has a higher **electronegativity** than hydrogen. The positively and negatively charged ends of the molecules are attracted to each other to form **hydrogen bonds.** The polarity of water causes the attraction of **hydrophilic** molecules. Molecules that are not attracted to water are **hydrophobic.** The polarity and hydrogen bonding in water account for its unique properties, which are summarized in Table 2.1:

Table 2.1 Properties of Water

Properties	Chemical Reason(s)	Effect
Water is a solvent.	Polarity	Water facilitates chemical reactions.
Water is cohesive and adhesive.	Hydrogen bonding; polarity	Water serves as a transport medium.
Water has a high surface tension.	Hydrogen bonding	The surface tension of water is hard to break.
Water has a high heat capacity.	Hydrogen bonding	Water protects organisms from rapid changes in temperature.
Water has a high heat of vaporization.	Hydrogen bonding	Water helps organisms resist overheating.
Water is less dense than ice.	Hydrogen bonding	Ice floats on liquid water.

2.3 Acids and Bases

Water dissociates to produce an equal number of hydrogen ions (H^+) and hydroxide ions. This is neutral **pH. Acids** increase the H^+ concentration of a solution, while **bases** decrease the H^+ concentration. This **pH scale** shows

CHAPTER 2 The Chemical Basis of Life 37

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

All life is composed of a similar set of elements. Living organisms perform chemical reactions to break down and build molecules to fit their specific needs. Knowledge of basic chemistry provides a foundation for understanding biology.

2.1 Subatomic particles determine how elements bond to form molecules and compounds.
2.2 Water is an essential molecule of life.
2.3 Living organisms must maintain specific pH levels.

For more information about the importance of chemistry in the study of biology, see the following discussions:

Section 5.3 examines how linked chemical reactions, called metabolic pathways, can be used to assemble complex compounds.
Section 20.5 examines how cohesion moves water in plants.
Section 24.1 explores how the respiratory system adjusts to changes in pH caused by the presence of carbon dioxide gas.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

2.1 Atoms and Atomic Bonds

1. The mass number of an atom depends primarily on the number of
   a. protons and neutrons. c. neutrons and electrons.
   b. positrons. d. protons and electrons.
2. The most abundant element by weight in the human body is
   a. carbon. c. oxygen.
   b. hydrogen. d. nitrogen.
3. In the following equation, name the reactants: $NaCl \rightarrow Na + Cl$.
   a. Na c. NaCl
   b. Cl d. Both a and b
4. A covalent bond in which electrons are not shared equally is called
   a. polar. c. nonpolar.
   b. normal. d. neutral.
5. Refer to Figure 2.3. Which element has the same number of valence electrons as nitrogen (N)?
   a. carbon (C) c. neon (Ne)
   b. phosphorus (P) d. oxygen (O)

2.2 Water's Importance to Life

6. Water flows freely but does not separate into individual molecules because water is
   a. cohesive. c. hydrophobic.
   b. hydrophilic. d. adhesive.
7. Compounds having an affinity for water are said to be
   a. cohesive. c. hydrophobic.
   b. hydrophilic. d. adhesive.
8. Water freezes from the top down because
   a. water has a high surface tension.
   b. ice has a high heat capacity.
   c. ice is less dense than water.
   d. ice is less cohesive than water.
9. Water can absorb a large amount of heat without much change in temperature because it has a high
   a. surface tension.
   b. heat capacity.
   c. hydrogen ion (H^+) concentration.
   d. hydroxide ion (OH^-) concentration.

2.3 Acids and Bases

10. A pH of 3 is _____.
    a. basic c. acidic
    b. neutral d. a buffer
11. _____ contribute hydrogen ions (H+) to a solution
    a. Bases c. Acids
    b. Isotopes d. Compounds
12. To maintain a constant pH, many organisms use ____ to regulate the hydrogen ion concentration.
    a. buffers c. acids
    b. bases d. isotopes

Engage

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- pH and Cells

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. On a hot summer day you decide to dive into a swimming pool. Before you begin your dive, you notice that the surface of the water is smooth and continuous. After the dive, you discover that some water droplets are clinging to your skin and that your skin temperature feels cooler. Explain these observations based on the properties of water.
2. Like carbon, silicon has four electrons in its outer shell, yet life evolved to be carbon-based. What is there about silicon's structure that might prevent it from sharing with four other elements and prevent it from forming the many varied shapes of carbon molecules?
3. Antacids are a common over-the-counter remedy for heartburn, a condition caused by an overabundance of H^+ ions in the stomach. Based on what you know regarding pH, how do the chemicals in antacids work?
4. Acid precipitation is produced when atmospheric water is polluted by sulfur dioxide and nitrous oxide emissions. These emissions are mostly produced by the burning of fossil fuels, particularly coal. In the atmosphere, these compounds are converted to sulfuric and nitric acids, and are absorbed into water droplets in the atmosphere. Eventually they fall back to Earth as acid precipitation. How do you think that acid precipitation can negatively influence an ecosystem?

Overview of Content Changes to *Essentials of Biology,* Fourth Edition

Chapter 1: Biology: The Science of Life contains a new chapter opener on the diversity of life. The chapter has been reorganized so that chemical cycling and energy flow is included in discussion on the characteristics of life. New figures have been included to describe the levels of biological organization (1.2) and the flow of the scientific method (1.8). A new table (1.2) describes the kingdoms and domains of life. A new application reading concerning how evolution affects individuals personally has been added. In addition, there is a new section (1.4) describing the challenges facing science.

Part I *The Cell*

Chapter 2: The Chemical Basis of Life contains a new chapter opener on NASA's search for water and carbon on Mars. The chapter now contains an increased focus on the reactants and products of chemical reactions and added content on hydrogen bonds and their role in the structure of water molecules. Applications on Japan's Fukushima nuclear power disaster and the environmental importance of the density of ice are now included. Figure 2.10 on the cohesion and adhesion of water molecules has been updated to include diagrams of water molecules flowing through vessels. New figures describe the properties of ice (2.12) and acidosis in humans (2.14). **Chapter 3: The Organic Molecules of Life** contains a more detailed discussion of the importance of functional groups and updated information on the Human Genome Project. **Chapter 4: Inside the Cell** has been reorganized so that the discussion of the plasma membrane (section 4.2) precludes the discussion of cell types (section 4.3). Additional focus on the characteristics common to all cells has been included in the chapter as well. **Chapter 5: The Dynamic Cell** begins with a new opener on capsaicin and membrane transport. A new application reading that addresses calorie needs is provided. A new 3D animation, "Membrane Transport" has been added. A new figure (5.11) describing facilitated diffusion has been added. **Chapter 6: Energy for Life** contains a new chapter opener relating fall leaf color changes to photosynthesis. Content has been adjusted to include a more direct focus on oxidation and reduction reactions. A new 3D animation, "Photosynthesis" has been added. **Chapter 7: Energy for Cells** begins with a new chapter opener on the metabolic needs of athletes. The chapter has been reorganized so that processes occurring outside the mitochondria (glycolysis and fermentation) are presented first in sections 7.2 and 7.3 respectively, followed by the processes occurring inside the mitochondria (section 7.4). A new figure (7.8) describes the electron transport chain. In addition, a new section (7.5) describes the metabolic fate of food.

Part II *Genetics*

Chapter 8: Cellular Reproduction starts with a new chapter opener on the genetics of breast cancer. The chapter has been reorganized so that mitosis and cytokinesis are included in discussion with the cell cycle in section 8.2. Content on the characteristics of cancer has been moved from Chapter 12 and is now included in sections 8.4 and 8.5. A new 3D animation, "Cell Cycle and Mitosis" has been provided. An application reading on transposons and cancer is now included in this chapter. In **Chapter 9: Sexual Reproduction,** a new chapter opener describes the relationship between meiosis and genetic variation. In addition, the chapter now contains a more direct focus on the role of meiosis in the human life cycle and a new application reading on where new alleles originate. The content has also been enhanced with the addition of a 3D animation, "Meiosis." **Chapter 10: Patterns of Inheritance** contains a new chapter opener on phenylketonuria. Content describing pedigrees and common genetic disorders has been moved from Chapter 13 to be included in section 10.2. Content describing gene linkage has been condensed and is now included in section 10.3. The discussion of sex-linked inheritance now includes a discussion of sex-linked disorders. A new application reading relating skin color and race is now included with the chapter. **Chapter 11: DNA Biology and Technology** begins with a new chapter opener on DNA. The content of the chapter has been revised significantly so that the discussion of mutations has been moved to Chapter 13. In addition, content discussing gene regulation, including the function of the lac operon, control of gene expression, euchromatin and heterochromatin, and the role of transcription factors in gene regulation has been moved from Chapter 12 and is now included in section 11.3. Figures describing tRNA structure and function (11.13), initiation (11.14), and elongation (11.15) have been revised for clarity of understanding. New figures describe termination (11.16) and gene expression in specialized cells (11.18). Application readings on the different genetic codes used by organisms and X-inactivation have been added. The chapter contains two new 3D animations, "DNA Replication" and "Molecular Biology of the Gene." Content describing biotechnology, genomics, and proteomics has been moved from Chapter 11 and has joined content describing stem cells, reproductive cloning, and therapeutic cloning in **Chapter 12: Biotechnology and Genomics**. Chapter 12 also includes a new chapter opener on the age of biotechnology. A new figure describes polymerase chain reactions (12.2). The chapter also contains new application readings describing how stem cells are used therapeutically and the safety of food products from cloned animals. **Chapter 13: Genetic Counseling** starts with a new chapter opener on Down syndrome. The chapter has been reorganized so that discussion of genes, gene mutations, and chromosomal mutations is presented first in sections 13.1 and 13.2 respectively, followed by a discussion of testing for genetic disorders and gene therapy in sections 13.3 and 13.4 respectively. A figure describing the varying effects of point mutations (13.2) has been added to the chapter.

Part III *Evolution*

Chapter 14: Darwin and Evolution now begins with a chapter opener on the evolution of MRSA. Figure 14.13 has been added to describe the evolution of tetrapods. A new 3D animation, "Mechanisms of Evolution" has also been included in this chapter. In **Chapter 15: Evolution on a Small Scale**, a new chapter opener now describes the evolution of the HIV virus. In addition, the 3D animation, "Mechanisms of Evolution" has been added to this chapter as well. **Chapter 16: Evolution on a Large Scale** starts with a new chapter opener on micro-frog species. New figures describe the history of life in 24 hours (16.11) and the DNA differences in organisms (16.17). The 3D animation, "Mechanisms of Evolution" has been included in this chapter.

Part IV *The Diversity of Life*

In **Chapter 17: The Microorganisms: Viruses, Bacteria, and Protists** a new opener on the H5N1 and H7N9 bird flu has been included. New figures describe the anatomy of an influenza virus (17.1) and the major groups of protists (17.20). A new application reading describing norovirus is now included. Content explaining the natural flora of humans and antibiotics has been included to the discussion of bacteria. Additional information on algae has also been included in this chapter. A table (17.1) has been included to describe the eukaryotic supergroups of protists. In **Chapter 18: Land Environment: Plants and Fungi**, a new chapter opener includes the evolutionary defense strategies of both peppers and fungi. A new application reading on pollinator strategies has been added. New content has been added to describe white nose syndrome, a fungal disease found in bats. **Chapter 19: Both Water and Land: Animals** now contains a new chapter opener on vertebrate diversity. Discussion of the evolution of humans has been adjusted to include an increased focus on the replacement model with additional descriptions of the Neandertals and Denisovans. A new figure (19.41) now describes the replacement model.

Part V *Plant Anatomy and Growth*

Chapter 20: Plant Anatomy and Growth has been reorganized so that content on plant cells and tissues (section 20.1) is presented before content on plant organs (20.2). Furthermore, discussion of plant organs has been consolidated to focus on the essential components only, including root and shoot systems and primary growth. Content describing the organization of leaves, stems, and roots has been consolidated from three separate sections into one section (20.3). Additional information on crop rotation by farmers has been included. New figures describe meristem cell division (20.1) and leaf structure (20.9). A new application reading describing "magical" plants as seen in popular media has been added. A new 3D animation, "Plant Transport," has also been included in this chapter. In **Chapter 21: Plant Responses and Reproduction** a new chapter opener on banana farming is included. Content of this chapter has been altered to include an increased focus on positive and negative gravitropism, additional information on genetic engineering, and the pharmaceutical industry. In addition, discussion of genetically modified plants has been updated to reflect current research findings and statistics. Additional figures have been added to the chapter, including plant hormone response (21.1), apical dominance (21.3), gravitropism (21.8), and transformation of plants (21.25). Figure 21.22 has been reworked to include more structures for asexual propagation. Table 21.2 has been updated to reflect most current uses of GM plants. A new application reading describing coconuts has been included as well.

Part VI *Animal Structure and Function*

Chapter 22: Being Organized and Steady contains a new chapter opener on the homeostatic requirements of pop icon Lady Gaga. Figure 22.6 has been revised to include a labeled microscope image of blood tissue. Content within the chapter now contains an increased overall focus on the importance of homeostasis. The chapter now contains the 3D animation "Homeostasis." In **Chapter 23: The Transport Systems**, a new chapter opener on heart disease is included. The chapter contains updated information on cardiovascular disease, reflecting current research findings and statistics. **Chapter 24: The Maintenance Systems** contains an updated chapter opener on asthma. Content within the chapter has been revised to include more information on emphysema and an increased focus on kidney function in humans. Content on kidney disease has been updated to reflect current research findings. Content within **Chapter 25: Human Nutrition** has been revised to include content on hyponatrimia and updated information describing the USDA MyPlate guidelines. Table 25.2 has been adjusted to include information on the glycemic index and figure 25.10 has been updated to reflect current MyPlate USDA guidelines. New applications reading on the glycemic index, bomb calorimeters, and the Paleolithic diet have been added to the chapter. **Chapter 26: Defenses Against Disease** has been revised to include an increased focus on overall function of the immune system and added content on the cells of the immune system. In addition, section 26.2 has been revised to provide a more direct discussion of the four steps of the inflammatory response. In addition, figure 26.3 has been revised for additional clarity describing the steps of the inflammatory response. In section 26.3, acquired immunity is now referred to as adaptive immunity. The chapter now contains a new application reading on curing AIDS. **Chapter 27: The Control Systems** now contains a new chapter opener on multiple sclerosis. Section 27.1 has been reorganized so that content describing the nervous systems of nonhumans is presented separately from content describing the nervous system of humans. In addition, content on diabetes in the U.S. has been updated to reflect current statistics. A table (27.1) has been added to summarize the hormones released from the different organs of the endocrine system. **Chapter 28: Sensory Input and Motor Output** contains a new chapter opener on the skeletal and muscular system functioning of Olympic sprinter Usain Bolt. Figures diagramming the human skeleton (28.14) and the major skeletal muscles (28.16) in the human body have been added. The 3D animation "Skeletal Muscle Contraction" has been included in this chapter. Content in **Chapter 29: Reproduction and Development** has been revised. The discussion of emergency contraception has been updated to reflect the most current products on the market and discussion of HPV has been added to the chapter.

Part VI *Ecology*

Chapter 30: Ecology and Populations contains a new chapter opener on human population growth. Statistics on current global population growth rates have been updated. Figure 30.7 has been revised to more clearly describe the environmental impacts of MDCs and LDCs. Statistics within the application reading on highest and lowest population densities has been updated. **Chapter 31: Communities and Ecosystems** contains a new opener on global climate change. A new application reading on ocean acidification has been included. A new figure (31.28) diagramming the major terrestrial ecosystems worldwide has also been added to the chapter. In **Chapter 32: Human Impact on the Biosphere**, a new chapter opener on the Emiquon floodplain restoration has been added. The chapter has been reorganized to include additional content on conservation biology (section 32.1). Content on biodiversity (section 32.2) is now presented before content describing natural resources and the environmental impact of their use (section 32.3). Content describing alternative forms of energy has been updated to reflect current statistics.

Acknowledgments

Dr. Sylvia Mader represents one of the icons of science education. Her dedication to her students, coupled to her clear, concise writing style, has benefited the education of thousands of students over the past four decades. As an educator, it is an honor to continue her legacy, and to bring her message to the next generation of students.

As always, I had the privilege to work with the phenomenal team of science educators, including Dave Cox and Gretel Guest, on this edition. Dave and Gretel are dedicated and talented teachers, and their passion is evident in the quality of this text. Thank you also to the countless instructors who have invited me into their classrooms, both physically and virtually, to discuss their needs as instructors and the needs of their students. Your energy, and devotion to quality teaching, is what drives a textbook revision.

Many dedicated and talented individuals assisted in the development of *Essentials of Biology.* I am very grateful for the help of so many professionals at McGraw-Hill who were involved in bringing this book to print. In particular, let me thank both Rose Koos and Liz Recker, the developmental editors, who lent their exemplary talents, project management skills, advice, and most of all, patience, to all aspects of this project.

My editors include Lynn Breithaupt and Eric Weber. I am always amazed by the level of dedication to education that these two individuals demonstrate, and their ability to keep their authors motivated and calm. Producing a textbook is a marathon, and these are the best coaches in the business. My marketing manager, Chris Loewenberg, is an expert in reminding me of why we produce texts, and the importance we are making in education. Jane Peden is the glue that holds this team together.

The project manager for this edition is Jennifer Gehl. She faithfully and carefully steered the book through the publication process. The design of the book is the result of the creative talents of Laurie Janssen. I was very lucky to have Deb Debord as my copyeditor, and Deb Trilk as proofreader. Electronic Publishing Services produced this textbook, emphasizing pedagogy and beauty to arrive at the best presentation on the page. Lori Hancock and Evelyn Jo Johnson did a superb job of finding just the right photographs and micrographs.

Who I am, as an educator and an author, is a direct reflection of what I have learned from my students. Education is a mutualistic relationship, and it is my honest opinion that while I am a teacher, both my professional and personal life have been enriched by interactions with my students. They have encouraged me to learn more, teach better, and never stop questioning the world around me.

Last, but never least, I want to acknowledge my wife, Sandra. You are the reason why this is possible. Devin and Kayla, this book is for you—go make the world a better place.

Michael Windelspecht, Ph.D.
Blowing Rock, NC

The fourth edition of *Essentials of Biology* would not have the level of excellence associated with a Mader textbook had it not been for the input of the many contributors and reviewers listed below.

McGraw-Hill's 360° Development Process is an ongoing, never-ending, market-oriented approach to building accurate and innovative print and digital products. It is dedicated to continual large-scale and incremental improvement driven by multiple customer feedback loops and checkpoints. This is initiated during the early planning stages of our new products, and intensifies during the development and production stages, then begins again upon publication in anticipation of the next edition. This process is designed to provide a broad, comprehensive spectrum of feedback for refinement and innovation of our learning tools, for both student and instructor. The 360° Development Process includes market research, content reviews, course- and product-specific symposia, accuracy checks, and art reviews. We appreciate the expertise of the many individuals involved in this process.

Ancillary Authors

LearnSmart

Alex James, *Ricochet Creative Productions*

Test Bank

Dave Cox, *Lincoln Land Community College*

Connect Question Bank

Mike Duus, *Ricochet Creative Productions*
Krissy Johnson, *Ricochet Creative Productions*

Fourth Edition Reviewers

Yuda Anriany, *Prince George's Community College*
Nahel Awadallah, *Johnston Community College*
Wellington Ayensu, *Jackson State University*
Robert Bailey, *Central Michigan University*
Andrew Baldwin, *Mesa Community College*
Randy Barbarash, *Orange County Community College*
Randy Brewton, *The University of Tennessee–Knoxville*
Julio Budde, *Youngstown State University*
Jamie Burchill, *Troy University*
Wilbert Butler, *Tallahassee Community College*
Maiitreyee Chandra, *Diablo Valley College*
Jennifer Ciaccio, *Dixie State College*
Lu Anne Clark, *Lansing Community College*
Glenn M. Cohen, *Troy University*
Anthony Cooper, *Albany State University*
Jason Cox, *Indiana University Southeast*
Elizabeth Deimeke, *Santa Fe College*
Josh Dobkins, *Keiser University*
Caroline Garrison, *Rock Valley College*
Caitlin Gille, *Pasco Hernando Community College*
Robin Golden, *Luzerne County Community College*
Henry Hermann, *Edison State College–LaBelle Center*
Lisa Dondero Hermann, *Edison State College*
Meshagae Hunte-Brown, *Drexel University*
Roxie A. James, *Kean University*
Dianne Jennings, *Virginia Commonwealth University*
Anthony Jones, *Tallahassee Community College*
Gregory A. Jones, *Santa Fe College*
Brian Kram, *Prince George's Community College*
Lisa Maranto, *Prince George's Community College*
Santina Mongold, *Diablo Valley College*
Rongsun Pu, *Kean University*
Jyotsna Sharma-Srinivasan, *University of Texas at San Antonio*
Fernando Tenjo, *Virginia Commonwealth University*
Rachel Wiechman, *West Liberty University*

Third Edition Reviewers

Joseph Arruda, *Pittsburg State University*
Lisa Boggs, *Southwestern Oklahoma State University*
Julio Budde, *Youngstown State University*
Emma Castro, *Victor Valley College*
Peter Chabora, *Queens College of CUNY*
Maitreyee Chandra, *Diablo Valley College*
Glenn Cohen, *Troy University*
Josh Dobkins, *Keiser University*
Carl Estrella, *Merced College*
Karl Fath, *Queens College of CUNY*
Victor Fet, *Marshall University*
Lynn Ruth Firestone, *Brigham Young University–Idaho*
Teresa Fischer, *Indian River State College*
Cynthia Fluharty, *Drexel University*
Cynthia Ford, *Pittsburg State University*
Brandon Foster, *Wake Technical Community College*
Steven Gorsich, *Central Michigan University*
Tamar Goulet, *University of Mississippi*
Thomas Hemmerly, *Middle Tennessee State University*
Rebecca Hoffman, *Drexel University*
Andrea Holgado, *Southwestern Oklahoma State University*
Robert Holmes, *Hutchinson Community College*
Sandra Johnson, *Middle Tennessee State University*
David Jones, *Dixie State College of Utah*
Hinrich Kaiser, *Victor Valley College*
Arnold Karpoff, *University of Louisville*
Janine Kido, *Mt. San Antonio College*
Ruhul Kuddus, *Utah Valley University*
Brenda Leady, *University of Toledo*
Tammy Liles, *Bluegrass Community and Technical College*
Debra Linton, *Central Michigan University*
Delia Lister, *Pittsburg State University*
Lisa Maranto, *Prince George's Community College*
Shawn Meagher, *Western Illinois University*
Susan Meiers, *Western Illinois University*
Christine Morin, *Prince George's Community College*
Esther Muehlbauer, *Queens College of CUNY*
Alam Nur-E-Kamal, *Medgar Evers College–CUNY*
Tricia Paramore, *Hutchinson Community College*
Mary Perry, *Keiser University*
Angela Porta, *Kean University*
Rongsun Pu, *Kean University*
Michael Rutledge, *Middle Tennessee State University*
Michael Scott, *Lincoln University*
Jennifer Stanford, *Drexel University*
Marshall Sundberg, *Emporia State University*
Muatasem Ubeidat, *Southwestern Oklahoma State University*
Michael Woller, *University of Wisconsin–Whitewater*
Aimee Wurst, *Lincoln University*
Calvin Young, *Fullerton College*

Second Edition Reviewers

Eugene L. Bass, *University of Maryland Eastern Shore*
Bill Radley Bassman, *Stern College*
Loren A. Bertocci, *Salem International University*
Barbara Boss, *Keiser University*
Anthony Botyrius, *York College of Pennsylvania*
Ben F. Brammell, *Morehead State University*
Mimi Bres, *Prince George's Community College*
Carol Britson, *University of Mississippi*
Nikolle L. Brown, *State Center Community College District, Madera Center*
Matthew Burnham, *Jones County Junior College*
Claire M. Carpenter, *Yakima Valley Community College*
Steven Christenson, *Brigham Young University Idaho*
Julie Clements, *Keiser University*
Anthony Cooper, *Albany State University*
Laurie-Ann Crawford, *Hawkeye Community College*
Peter A. Daempfle, *SUNY College of Technology at Delhi*
Debbie Dalrymple, *Thomas Nelson Community College*
Chris Davison, *Long Beach City College*
Jean DeSaix, *University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill*
Josh Dobkins, *Keiser University*
Li'anne Drysdale, *Ozarks Technical Community College, Richwood Valley Facility*
Pamela Faber, D.A., *Heidelberg College*
Jeffry Fasick, *Kean University*
Lynn Firestone, *Brigham Young University, Idaho*
Diane Fritz, *Northern Kentucky University*
Wendy Garrison, *University of Mississippi*
Norma Golovoy, *Schoolcraft College*
David M. Gordman, *Pittsburg State*
Tamar Goulet, *University of Mississippi*
Colleen Hatfield, *California State University, Chico*

Jennifer A. Herzog, *Herkimer County Community College*
Elizabeth Hodgson, *York College of Pennsylvania*
Mary Ruth Hood, *Tomball College*
George A. Jacob, *Xavier University*
Ashok Jain, *Albany State University*
Scott Johnson, *Wake Technical Community College*
Gregory A. Jones, *Santa Fe Community College*
Mary King Kananen, *Penn State Altoona*
Brenda Kelley, *Alpena Community College*
David Knowles, *East Carolina University*
Eliot Krause, *Seton Hall University*
Ruhul H. Kuddus, *Utah Valley University*
Brenda Leady, *University of Toledo*
Debabrata Majumdar, *Norfolk State University*
Lisa Maranto, *Prince George's Community College*
Rob McCandless, *Methodist University*
Michael McCarthy, *Eastern Arizona College*
Quintece M. McCrary, *University of Maryland–Eastern Shore*
John Mishler, *Delaware Valley College*
Sarah E. Myer, *Oral Roberts University*
Joanna Padolina, *Virginia Commonwealth University*
Kathleen Pelkki, *Saginaw Valley State University*
Mary Perry, *Keiser University*
Patrick K. Pfaffle, *Carthage College*
Megan Pickering Stringer, *Jones County Junior College*
Rongsun Pu, *Kean University*
Denice Robertson, *Northern Kentucky University*
Carolina Ross, *Laramie County Community College*
Barbara J. Salvo, *Carthage College*
Susan Sawyer, *Kellogg Community College*
John Richard Schrock, *Emporia State University*
James M. Schwartz, *Front Range Community College*
Marilyn Shopper, *Johnson County Community College*
William Simcik, *Tomball College, NHMCCD*
Robert Singer, *New Jersey City University*
Denise Slayback-Barry, *Keiser University*
Kathryn Sloan Ponnock, *Delaware Valley College*
Bo Sosnicki, *Piedmont Virginia Community College*
Chebium Subrahmanyam, *Florida A & M University*
Marshall D. Sundberg, *Emporia State University*
Patty Bostwick Taylor, *Florence Darlington Technical College*
Farshad Tamari, *Kean University*
Karen S. Teitelbaum, *State University of NY College of Technology at Delhi*
Kip R. Thompson, *Ozarks Technical Community College*
Kevin R. Toal, *St. Louis Community College at Florissant Valley*
Kate Warpeha, *University of Illinois at Chicago*
Stan Willenbring, *Dabney S. Lancaster Community College*
Heather Wilson-Ashworth, *Utah Valley University*
W. Brooke Yeager III, *Luzerne County Community College*

First Edition Reviewers

Sylvester Allred, *Northern Arizona University*
Paul E. Arriola, *Elmhurst College*
Tammy Atchison, *Pitt Community College*
James S. Backer, *Daytona Beach Community College*
Gail F. Baker, *LaGuardia Community College*
Sirakaya Beatrice, *Pennsylvania State University*
Carla Bundrick Benejam, *California State University–Monterey Bay*
Charles L. Biles, *East Central University*
Donna H. Bivans, *Pitt Community College*
Steven G. Brumbaugh, *Greenriver Community College*
Neil Buckley, *SUNY–Plattsburgh*
Nancy Butler, *Kutztown University*
Michelle Cawthorn, *Georgia Southern University*
Van D. Christman, *Brigham Young University*
Genevieve C. Chung, *Broward Community College*
Kimberly Cline-Brown, *University of Northern Iowa*
Mary C. Colavito, *Santa Monica College*
Mark A. Coykendall, *College of Lake County*
Don C. Dailey, *Austin Peay State University*
Cathy A. Davison, *Empire State College*
Bonnie L. Dean, *West Virginia State University*
William R. DeMott, *Indiana-Purdue University–Fort Wayne*
Amy Stinnett Dewald, *Eureka College*
Lee C. Drickamer, *Northern Arizona University*
Marie D. Dugan, *Broward Community College*
James W. DuMond, Jr., *Texas State University*
Kathryn A. Durham, *Lorain County Community College*
Andrew R. Dyer, *University of South Carolina–Aiken*
Steven E. Fields, *Winthrop University*
Lynn Firestone, *Brigham Young University–Idaho*
Susan Fisher, *Ohio State University*
Edison R. Fowlks, *Hampton University*
Dennis W. Fulbright, *Michigan State University*
Ron Gaines, *Cameron University*
John R. Geiser, *Western Michigan University*
Beatriz Gonzalez, *Santa Fe Community College*
Andrew Goyke, *Northland College*
Richard Gringer, *Augusta State University*
Lonnie J. Guralnick, *Western Oregon University*
William F. Hanna, *Massasoit Community College*
Lisa K. Johansen, *University of Colorado at Denver*
Ragupathy Kannan, *University of Arkansas–Fort Smith*
Arnold Karpoff, *University of Louisville*
Darla E. Kelly, *Orange Coast College*
Elaine B. Kent, *California State University–Sacramento*
Scott L. Kight, *Montclair State University*
Kristin Lenertz, *Black Hawk College*
Melanie Loo, *California State University–Sacramento*
Michelle Malott, *Minnesota State University–Moorhead*
Paul Mangum, *Midland College*
Mara Manis, *Hillsborough Community College*
Karen Benn Marshall, *Montgomery College–Takoma Park*
Cynthia Conaway Mauroidis, *Northwest State Community College*
Elizabeth McPartlan, *De Anza College*
Dwight Meyer, *Queensborough Community College*
Rod Nelson, *University of Arkansas–Fort Smith*
Donald J. Padgett, *Bridgewater State College*
Tricia L. Paramore, *Hutchinson Community College*
Brian K. Paulson, *California University of Pennsylvania*
Debra K. Pearce, *Northern Kentucky University*
Lisa Rapp, *Springfield Technical Community College*
Jill Raymond, *Rock Valley Community College*
Cara Shillington, *Eastern Michigan University*
Lee Sola, *Glendale Community College*
John D. Sollinger, *Southern Oregon University*
Andrew Storfer, *Washington State University*
Janis G. Thompson, *Lorain County Community College*
Briana Timmerman, *University of South Carolina*
James R. Triplett, *Pittsburg State University*
Paul Twigg, *University of Nebraska–Kearney*
Garland Rudolph Upchurch, Jr., *Texas State University, San Marcos*
James A. Wallis II, *St. Petersburg College, Tarpon Springs Campus*
Cosima B. Wiese, *College Misericordia*
Melissa Zwick, *Longwood University*

Contents

CHAPTER 1

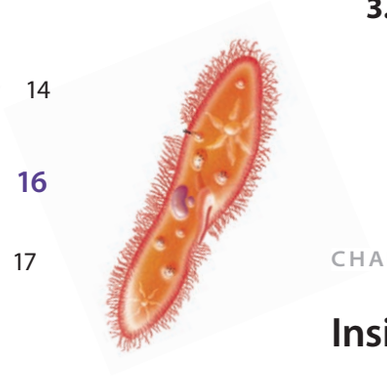
Biology: The Science of Life 1

1.1 The Characteristics of Life 2
Life Is Organized 2
Life Requires Materials and Energy 4
Living Organisms Maintain an Internal Environment 4
Living Organisms Respond 5
Living Organisms Reproduce and Develop 5
Living Organisms Have Adaptations 6

1.2 Evolution: The Core Concept of Biology 6
Natural Selection and Evolutionary Processes 7
Organizing the Diversity of Life 9

1.3 Science: A Way of Knowing 11
Start with an Observation 12
Develop a Hypothesis 12
Make a Prediction and Perform Experiments 12
Develop a Conclusion 14
Scientific Theory 14
An Example of a Controlled Study 14
Publish Your Results 15

1.4 Challenges Facing Science 16
Bioethics 16
Human Influence on Ecosystems 17
Emerging Diseases 18
Climate Change 18



PART I The Cell

CHAPTER 2

The Chemical Basis of Life 21

2.1 Atoms and Atomic Bonds 22
Atomic Structure 23
The Periodic Table 23
Arrangement of Electrons in an Atom 25
Types of Chemical Bonds 26
Chemical Formulas and Reactions 28

2.2 Water's Importance to Life 29
The Structure of Water 29
Properties of Water 29

2.3 Acids and Bases 33
Acidic Solutions (High H^+ Concentration) 33
Basic Solutions (Low H^+ Concentration) 34
pH and the pH Scale 34
Buffers and pH 35

CHAPTER 3

The Organic Molecules of Life 38

3.1 Organic Molecules 36
The Carbon Atom 36
The Carbon Skeleton and Functional Groups 37

3.2 The Biological Molecules of Cells 38
Carbohydrates 39
Lipids 41
Proteins 45
Nucleic Acids 48

CHAPTER 4

Inside the Cell 56

4.1 Cells Under the Microscope 57

4.2 The Plasma Membrane 59

4.3 The Two Main Types of Cells 62
Prokaryotic Cells 62

4.4 Eukaryotic Cells 64
Nucleus and Ribosomes 66
Endomembrane System 68
Vacuoles 69
Energy-Related Organelles 69
The Cytoskeleton and Motor Proteins 71

Centrioles 72
Cilia and Flagella 73

4.5 Outside the Eukaryotic Cell 74
Plant Cell Walls 74
Exterior Cell Surfaces in Animals 74

CHAPTER 5

The Dynamic Cell 79

5.1 What Is Energy? 80
Measuring Energy 80
Energy Laws 80

5.2 ATP: Energy for Cells 82
Structure of ATP 82
Use and Production of ATP 82
The Flow of Energy 84

5.3 Metabolic Pathways and Enzymes 85
An Enzyme's Active Site 86
Energy of Activation 87

5.4 Cell Transport 88
Passive Transport: No Energy Required 88
Active Transport: Energy Required 90
Bulk Transport 91

CHAPTER 6

Energy for Life 95

6.1 Overview of Photosynthesis 96
Plants as Photosynthesizers 97
The Photosynthetic Process 98

6.2 The Light Reactions—Harvesting Energy 99
Photosynthetic Pigments 100
The Electron Pathway of the Light Reactions 100
Organization of the Thylakoid Membrane 102

6.3 The Calvin Cycle Reactions—Making Sugars 103
Fixation of Carbon Dioxide 103
Reduction of Carbon Dioxide 104
Regeneration of RuBP 104
The Fate of G3P 104

6.4 Other Types of Photosynthesis 105
C_4 Photosynthesis 105
CAM Photosynthesis 106
Evolutionary Trends 106

CHAPTER 7

Energy for Cells 110

7.1 Cellular Respiration 111
Phases of Complete Glucose Breakdown 112

7.2 Outside the Mitochondria: Glycolysis 113
Energy-Investment Step 113
Energy-Harvesting Steps 114

7.3 Outside the Mitochondria: Fermentation 115
Microorganisms and Fermentation 116

7.4 Inside the Mitochondria 117
Preparatory Reaction 117
The Citric Acid Cycle 118
The Electron Transport Chain 119

7.5 Metabolic Fate of Food 121
Energy Yield from Glucose Metabolism 121
Alternative Metabolic Pathways 122

PART II Genetics

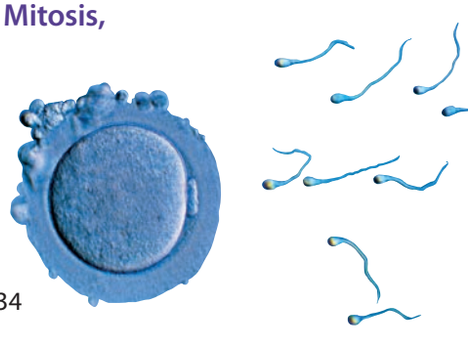
CHAPTER 8

Cellular Reproduction 125

8.1 The Basics of Cellular Reproduction 126
Chromosomes 126
Chromatin to Chromosomes 127

8.2 The Cell Cycle: Interphase, Mitosis, and Cytokinesis 128
Interphase 128
M (Mitotic) Phase 129

8.3 The Cell Cycle Control System 133
Cell Cycle Checkpoints 133
Internal and External Signals 134
Apoptosis 135



8.4 The Cell Cycle and Cancer 136
Proto-Oncogenes and Tumor Suppressor Genes 136
Other Genetic Changes and Cancer 138

8.5 Characteristics of Cancer 139
Characteristics of Cancer Cells 140
Cancer Treatment 140
Prevention of Cancer 141

CHAPTER 9

Meiosis and the Genetic Basis of Sexual Reproduction 146

9.1 The Basics of Meiosis 147
Homologous Chromosomes 147
The Human Life Cycle 148
Overview of Meiosis 149

9.2 The Phases of Meiosis 152
The First Division—Meiosis I 152
The Second Division—Meiosis II 153

9.3 Meiosis Compared with Mitosis 154
Meiosis I Compared with Mitosis 154
Meiosis II Compared with Mitosis 154
Mitosis and Meiosis Occur at Different Times 154

9.4 Changes in Chromosome Number 156
Down Syndrome 156
Abnormal Sex Chromosome Number 157

CHAPTER 10

Patterns of Inheritance 161

10.1 Mendel's Laws 162
Mendel's Experimental Procedure 162
One-Trait Inheritance 164
Two-Trait Inheritance 166
Mendel's Laws and Probability 167
Mendel's Laws and Meiosis 168

10.2 Mendel's Laws Apply to Humans 169
Family Pedigrees 169
Genetic Disorders of Interest 170

10.3 Beyond Mendel's Laws 173
Incomplete Dominance 173
Polygenic Inheritance 174
Pleiotropy 176
Linkage 177

10.4 Sex-Linked Inheritance 178
Sex-Linked Alleles 178
Pedigrees for Sex-Linked Disorders 179
X-Linked Recessive Disorders 180

CHAPTER 11

DNA Biology 184

11.1 DNA and RNA Structure and Function 185
Structure of DNA 186
Replication of DNA 189
RNA Structure and Function 190

11.2 Gene Expression 191
From DNA to RNA to Protein 192
Review of Gene Expression 196

11.3 Gene Regulation 197
Levels of Gene Expression Control 197

CHAPTER 12

Biotechnology and Genomics 207

12.1 Biotechnology 208
Recombinant DNA Technology 208
Polymerase Chain Reaction 209
DNA Fingerprinting 210

12.2 Stem Cells and Cloning 211
Reproductive and Therapeutic Cloning 211

12.3 Biotechnology Products 213
Transgenic Bacteria 213
Transgenic Plants 214
Transgenic Animals 215

12.4 Genomics and Proteomics 215
Sequencing the Bases of the Human Genome 216
Proteomics and Bioinformatics 217

CHAPTER 13

Genetic Counseling 220

13.1 Genes and Gene Mutations 221
Causes of Gene Mutations 221
Types and Effects of Mutations 222

13.2 Chromosomal Mutations 223
Deletions and Duplications 223
Translocation 224
Inversion 225

13.3 Testing for Genetic Disorders 225
Karyotyping 226
Testing for a Protein 227
Testing the DNA 227
Testing the Fetus 228
Testing the Embryo and Egg 229

13.4 Gene Therapy 231
Ex Vivo Gene Therapy 231
In Vivo Gene Therapy 231

PART III Evolution

CHAPTER 14

Darwin and Evolution 236

14.1 Darwin's Theory of Evolution 237
Before Darwin 238
Darwin's Conclusions 239
Natural Selection and Adaptation 242
Darwin and Wallace 244

14.2 Evidence of Evolutionary Change 245
Fossil Evidence 246
Biogeographical Evidence 247
Anatomical Evidence 248
Molecular Evidence 250

CHAPTER 15

Evolution on a Small Scale 253

15.1 Natural Selection 254
Types of Selection 254
Sexual Selection 258
Adaptations Are Not Perfect 258
Maintenance of Variations 258

15.2 Microevolution 260
Evolution in a Genetic Context 260
Causes of Microevolution 263

CHAPTER 16

Evolution on a Large Scale 268

16.1 Speciation and Macroevolution 269
Defining Species 269
Models of Speciation 272

16.2 The Fossil Record 275
The Geological Timescale 275
The Pace of Speciation 277
Mass Extinctions of Species 278

16.3 Systematics 280
Linnaean Classification 280
Phylogenetic Trees 281
Cladistics and Cladograms 283
The Three-Domain System 284

PART IV Diversity of Life

CHAPTER 17

The Microorganisms: Viruses, Bacteria, and Protists 289

17.1 The Viruses 290
Viral Reproduction 290
Plant Viruses 292
Animal Viruses 292

17.2 Viroids and Prions 294

17.3 The Prokaryotes 295
The Origin of Cells 295
Bacteria 296
Archaea 301

17.4 The Protists 303
Evolution of Protists 303
Classification of Protists 303

CHAPTER 18

Land Environment: Plants and Fungi 312

18.1 Overview of the Land Plants 313
Alternation of Generations 315

18.2 Diversity of Plants 316
Nonvascular Plants 316
Vascular Plants 317
Gymnosperms 321
Angiosperms 322
Economic Benefits of Plants 325
Ecological Benefits of Plants 325

18.3 The Fungi 326
General Biology of a Fungus 327
Ecological Benefits of Fungi 329
Economic Benefits of Fungi 331
Fungi as Disease-Causing Organisms 332

CHAPTER 19

Both Water and Land: Animals 337

19.1 Evolution of Animals 338
Ancestry of Animals 339
The Evolutionary Tree of Animals 340
Evolutionary Trends 340

19.2 Sponges and Cnidarians: The Early Animals 342
Sponges: Multicellularity 342
Cnidarians: True Tissues 343

19.3 Flatworms, Molluscs, and Annelids: The Lophotrochozoans 344
Flatworms: Bilateral Symmetry 344
Molluscs 345
Annelids: Segmented Worms 346

19.4 Roundworms and Arthropods: The Ecdysozoans 348
Roundworms: Pseudocoelomates 348
Arthropods: Jointed Appendages 349

19.5 Echinoderms and Chordates: The Deuterostomes 353
Echinoderms 353
Chordates 354
Fishes: First Jaws and Lungs 356
Amphibians: Jointed Vertebrate Limbs 358
Reptiles: Amniotic Egg 358
Mammals: Hair and Mammary Glands 360

19.6 Human Evolution 363
Evolution of Humanlike Hominins 365
Evolution of Modern Humans 367

PART V Plant Structure and Function

CHAPTER 20

Plant Anatomy and Growth 372

20.1 Plant Cells and Tissues 373
Epidermal Tissue 373
Ground Tissue 374
Vascular Tissue 374

20.2 Plant Organs 375
Monocot Versus Eudicot Plants 376

20.3 Organization of Leaves, Stems, and Roots 377
Leaves 377
Stems 378
Roots 382

20.4 Plant Nutrition 385
Adaptations of Roots for Mineral Uptake 386

20.5 Transport of Nutrients 387
Water Transport in Xylem 387
Sugar Transport in Phloem 388

CHAPTER 21

Plant Responses and Reproduction 392

21.1 Plant Hormones 393
Auxins 393
Gibberellins 394
Cytokinins 395
Abscisic Acid 395
Ethylene 396

21.2 Plant Responses 397
Tropisms 397
Photoperiodism 398

21.3 Sexual Reproduction in Flowering Plants 400
Overview of the Plant Life Cycle 400
Flowers 401
From Spores to Fertilization 403
Development of the Seed in a Eudicot 403
Monocots Versus Eudicots 404
Fruit Types and Seed Dispersal 404
Germination of Seeds 406

21.4 Asexual Reproduction and Genetic Engineering in Plants 407
Propagation of Plants in a Garden 407
Propagation of Plants in Tissue Culture 407
Genetic Engineering of Plants 409

PART VI Animal Structure and Function

CHAPTER 22

Being Organized and Steady 414

22.1 The Body's Organization 415
Epithelial Tissue Protects 417
Connective Tissue Connects and Supports 419
Muscular Tissue Moves the Body 421
Nervous Tissue Communicates 422

22.2 Organs and Organ Systems 423
Transport 424
Maintenance of the Body 424
Control 424
Sensory Input and Motor Output 425
Reproduction 425

22.3 Homeostasis 426
Organ Systems and Homeostasis 426
Negative Feedback 427

CHAPTER 23

The Transport Systems 432

23.1 Open and Closed Circulatory Systems 433
Open Circulatory Systems 434
Closed Circulatory Systems 435
Comparison of Circulatory Pathways 435

23.2 Transport in Humans 436
The Human Heart 436
Blood Vessels 438
Lymphatic System 440
Capillary Exchange in the Tissues 442

23.3 Blood: A Transport Medium 443
Plasma 443
Formed Elements 443
Cardiovascular Disorders 446

CHAPTER 24

The Maintenance Systems 450

24.1 Respiratory System 451
The Human Respiratory Tract 452
Breathing 454
Lungs and External Exchange of Gases 454
Transport and Internal Exchange of Gases 456

24.2 Urinary System and Excretion 457
Human Kidney 458
Problems with Kidney Function 460

24.3 Digestive System 462
Complete and Incomplete Digestive Systems 463
The Digestive Tract 463
Accessory Organs 468
Digestive Enzymes 469

CHAPTER 25

Human Nutrition 475

25.1 Nutrition 476
Introducing the Nutrients 477

25.2 The Classes of Nutrients 478
Carbohydrates 478
Lipids 480
Proteins 480
Minerals 482
Vitamins 483
Water 484

25.3 Nutrition and Health 484
Body Mass Index 485
Disorders Associated with Obesity 488
Eating Disorders 489

25.4 How to Plan Nutritious Meals 490
Dietary Guidelines: ChooseMyPlate.gov 490
Dietary Supplements 492
The Bottom Line 492

CHAPTER 26

Defenses Against Disease 496

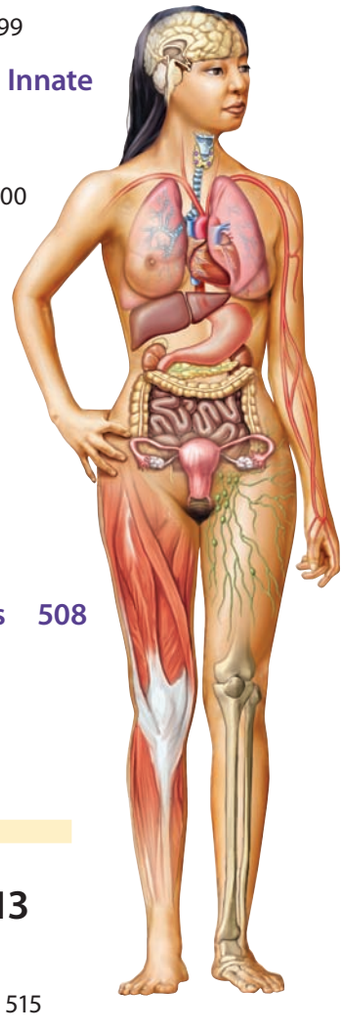
26.1 Overview of the Immune System 497
Lymphatic Organs 497
Cells of the Immune System 499

26.2 Nonspecific Defenses and Innate Immunity 499
Barriers to Entry 499
The Inflammatory Response 500
The Complement System 501
Natural Killer Cells 501

26.3 Specific Defenses and Adaptive Immunity 502
B Cells and the Antibody Response 502
T Cells and the Cellular Response 503

26.4 Immunizations 506

26.5 Immune System Problems 508
Allergies 508
Autoimmune Diseases 509
AIDS 509



CHAPTER 27

The Control Systems 513

27.1 Nervous Systems 514
Examples of Nervous Systems 515
The Human Nervous System 515
Neurons 516
The Nerve Impulse 516
The Synapse 518
Drug Abuse 518
The Central Nervous System 520
The Peripheral Nervous System 523

27.2 Endocrine System 526
The Action of Hormones 526
Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland 527
Thyroid and Parathyroid Glands 529
Adrenal Glands 530
Pancreas 531

CHAPTER 28

Sensory Input and Motor Output 536

28.1 The Senses 537
Chemical Senses 537
Hearing and Balance 538
Vision 542
Cutaneous Receptors and Proprioceptors 544

28.2 The Motor Systems 546
Types of Skeletons 546
The Human Skeleton 547
Skeletal Muscle Structure and Physiology 548

CHAPTER 29

Reproduction and Embryonic Development 556

29.1 How Animals Reproduce 557
Asexual Versus Sexual Reproduction 557
Reproduction on Land Versus in Water 558

29.2 Human Reproduction 559
Male Reproductive System 560
Female Reproductive System 562
Control of Reproduction 565
Infertility 567
Sexually Transmitted Diseases 568

29.3 Human Embryonic Development 571
Fertilization 572
Early Embryonic Development 572
Later Embryonic Development 574
Placenta 576
Fetal Development and Birth 576

PART VII Ecology

CHAPTER 30

Ecology and Populations 580

30.1 The Scope of Ecology 581
Ecology: A Biological Science 582

30.2 The Human Population 583
Present Population Growth 583
Future Population Growth 584
More-Developed Versus Less-Developed Countries 585
Comparing Age Structures 586
Population Growth and Environmental Impact 587

30.3 Characteristics of Populations 588
Distribution and Density 588
Population Growth 588
Patterns of Population Growth 590
Factors That Regulate Population Growth 592

30.4 Life History Patterns and Extinction 595
Extinction 595

CHAPTER 31

Communities and Ecosystems 600

31.1 Ecology of Communities 601
Community Composition and Diversity 602
Ecological Succession 603
Interactions in Communities 605
Community Stability 608

31.2 Ecology of Ecosystems 610
Autotrophs 610
Heterotrophs 610
Energy Flow and Chemical Cycling 611
Chemical Cycling 614

31.3 Ecology of Major Ecosystems 619
Primary Productivity 620

CHAPTER 32

Human Impact on the Biosphere 625

32.1 Conservation Biology 626

32.2 Biodiversity 627
Direct Values of Biodiversity 628
Indirect Values of Biodiversity 630

32.3 Resources and Environmental Impact 632
Land 632
Water 634
Food 636
Energy 638
Minerals 641
Other Sources of Pollution 641

32.4 Sustainable Societies 643
Today's Society 643
Characteristics of a Sustainable Society 643

Appendix A Answer Key A-1

Appendix B Periodic Table of the Elements & The Metric System B-1

Glossary G-1

Credits C-1

Index I-1

1

Biology: The Science of Life

The Diversity of Life

Life on Earth takes on a staggering variety of forms, often with appearances and behaviors that may be strange to humans. As we will see in this chapter, one of the ways that biologists classify life is by species. So how many species are there on the planet? The truth is, we really don't know. While most scientists believe that there are probably as many as 15 million species on the planet, some estimate that there may be over 100 million different species. So far, around 2 million species have been identified, and most of those are insects.

However, new species are being discovered all the time. Some of those recent additions are shown here. The world's smallest reptile, *Brookesia micra*, found on Madagascar, is less than 1 inch long. The sneezing monkey, *Rhinopithecus strykeri*, was discovered in northeast Myanmar. While very rare, it is easy to locate in the forest, since it sneezes when it rains. Not all new species are rare—some have simply remained isolated from human contact, such as the Nepalese autumn poppy (*Meconopsis autumnalis*), which lives only at elevations about 10,000 feet in the Himalayas. As we will learn in this chapter, although life is diverse, it also shares a number of important characteristics.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What are the general characteristics that separate life from nonliving things?
2. How do species fit into the biological levels of organization?
3. What are some of the challenges facing science today?

OUTLINE

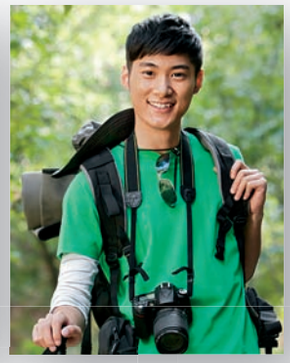
1.1 The Characteristics of Life 2

1.2 Evolution: The Core Concept of Biology 6

1.3 Science: A Way of Knowing 11

1.4 Challenges Facing Science 16

bacteria


human

plant

fungi

Figure 1.1 Diversity of life.

Biology is the study of life in all of its diverse forms.

1.1 The Characteristics of Life

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain the basic characteristics that are common to all living organisms.
2. Distinguish between the levels of biological organization.
3. Summarize how the terms *homeostasis, metabolism,* and *adaptation* all relate to living organisms.
4. Contrast chemical cycling and energy flow within an ecosystem.

As we observed in the chapter opener, life is diverse (**Fig. 1.1**). Life may be found everywhere on the planet, from thermal vents at the bottom of the ocean to the coldest reaches of Antarctica. **Biology** is the scientific study of life. Biologists study not only life's diversity but also the characteristics that are shared by all living organisms. These characteristics include levels of organization, the ability to acquire materials and energy, the ability to maintain an internal environment, the ability to respond to stimuli, the ability to reproduce and develop, and the ability to adapt and evolve to changing conditions. By studying these characteristics, we gain insight into the complex nature of life, which helps us distinguish living organisms from nonliving things. In the next sections, we will explore these characteristics in more detail.

MP3 Life Characteristics

Life Is Organized

The complex organization of life begins with atoms, the basic units of matter. Atoms combine to form small molecules, which join to form larger molecules within a **cell,** the smallest, most basic unit of life. Although a cell is alive, it is made from nonliving molecules (**Fig. 1.2**).

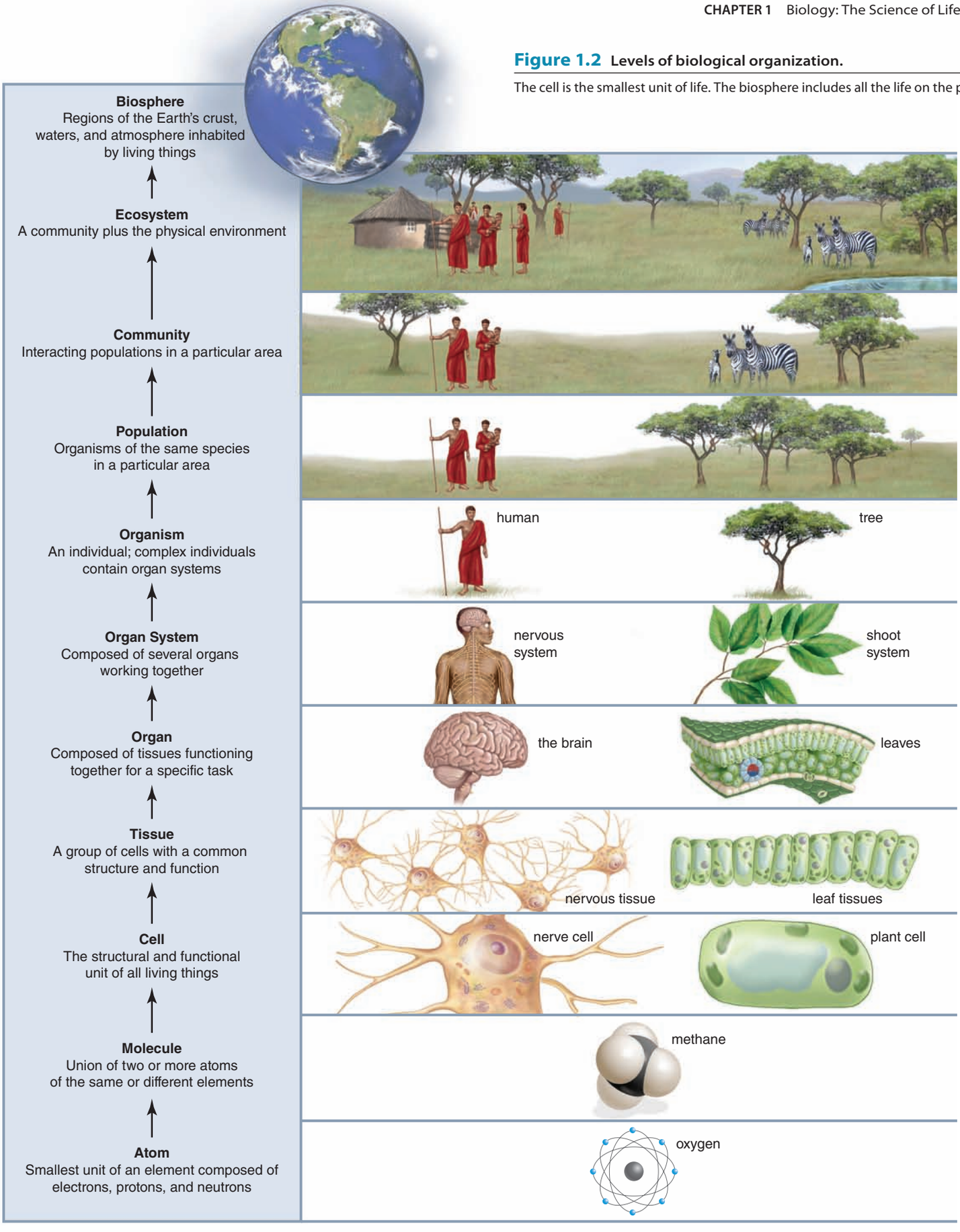
The majority of the organisms on the planet are single-celled. Plants, fungi, and animals are **multicellular** and are composed of many types of cells. In multicellular organisms, similar cells combine to form **tissues.** Tissues make up **organs,** as when various tissues combine to form a heart or a leaf. Organs work together in **organ systems;** for example, the heart and blood vessels form the cardiovascular system. Various organ systems work together within complex organisms.

The organization of life extends beyond the individual organism. All the members of a species (organisms with a similar structure that are capable of interbreeding) within a particular area belong to a **population.** When populations interact, such as the humans, zebras, and trees in Figure 1.2, they form a **community.** At the **ecosystem** level, communities interact with the physical environment (soil, atmosphere, etc.). Collectively, the ecosystems on the planet are called the **biosphere,** the zone of air, land, and water at the surface of the Earth where living organisms are found.

Video Coral Reef Ecosystem

Figure 1.2 Levels of biological organization.

The cell is the smallest unit of life. The biosphere includes all the life on the planet.



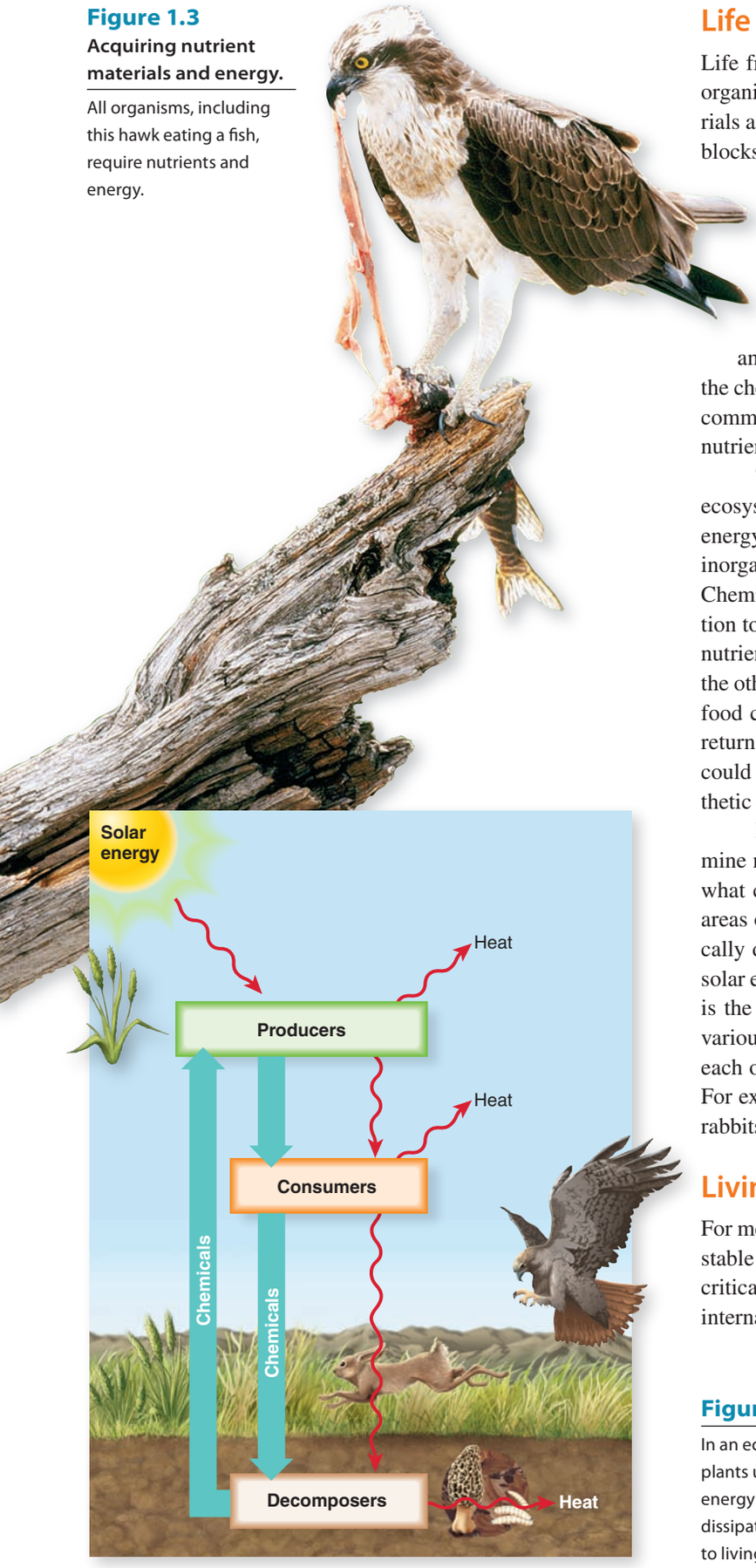


Figure 1.3
Acquiring nutrient materials and energy.

All organisms, including this hawk eating a fish, require nutrients and energy.

Life Requires Materials and Energy

Life from single cells to complex organisms (**Fig. 1.3**) cannot maintain their organization or carry on necessary activities without an outside source of materials and energy. Food provides nutrient molecules, which are used as building blocks or energy sources. **Energy** is the capacity to do work, and it takes work to maintain the organization of the cell and the organism. When cells use nutrient molecules to make their parts and products, they carry out a sequence of chemical reactions. The term **metabolism** encompasses all the chemical reactions that occur in a cell.

The ultimate source of energy for nearly all life on Earth is the sun. Plants and certain other organisms are able to capture solar energy and carry on **photosynthesis,** a process that transforms solar energy into the chemical energy of nutrient molecules. For this reason, these organisms are commonly called producers. Animals and plants get energy by metabolizing nutrient molecules made by the producers.

The energy and chemical flow between organisms also defines how an ecosystem functions (**Fig. 1.4**). Within an ecosystem, chemical cycling and energy flow begin when producers, such as grasses, take in solar energy and inorganic nutrients to produce food (organic nutrients) by photosynthesis. Chemical cycling (aqua arrows) occurs as chemicals move from one population to another in a food chain, until death and decomposition allow inorganic nutrients to be returned to the producers once again. Energy (red arrows), on the other hand, flows from the sun through plants and the other members of the food chain as they feed on one another. The energy gradually dissipates and returns to the atmosphere as heat. Because energy does not cycle, ecosystems could not stay in existence without solar energy and the ability of photosynthetic organisms to absorb it.

Energy flow and nutrient cycling in an ecosystem climate largely determine not only where different ecosystems are found in the biosphere but also what communities are found in the ecosystem. For example, deserts exist in areas of minimal rain, while forests require much rain. The two most biologically diverse ecosystems—tropical rain forests and coral reefs—occur where solar energy is most abundant. One example of an ecosystem in North America is the grasslands, which are inhabited by populations of rabbits, hawks, and various types of grasses, among many others. These populations interact with each other by forming food chains in which one population feeds on another. For example, rabbits feed on grasses, while hawks feed on rabbits and other organisms.

Video
Tallgrass Prairie Ecosystem

Living Organisms Maintain an Internal Environment

For metabolic processes to continue, living organisms need to keep themselves stable with regard to temperature, moisture level, acidity, and other factors critical to maintaining life. This is called **homeostasis,** or the maintenance of internal conditions within certain boundaries.

Figure 1.4 **Chemical cycling and energy flow in an ecosystem.**

In an ecosystem, chemical cycling (aqua arrows) and energy flow (red arrows) begin when plants use solar energy and inorganic nutrients to produce their own food. Chemicals and energy are passed from one population to another in a food chain. Eventually, energy dissipates as heat. With the death and decomposition of organisms, chemicals are returned to living plants once more.

Many organisms depend on behavior to regulate their internal environment. A chilly lizard may raise its internal temperature by basking in the sun on a hot rock. When it starts to overheat, it scurries for cool shade. Other organisms have control mechanisms that do not require any conscious activity. When you are studying and forget to eat lunch, your liver releases stored sugar to keep your blood sugar level within normal limits. Many of the organ systems of our bodies are involved in maintaining homeostasis.

Living Organisms Respond

Living organisms find energy and/or nutrients by interacting with their surroundings. Even single-celled organisms can respond to their environment. The beating of microscopic hairs or the snapping of whiplike tails moves them toward or away from light or chemicals. Multicellular organisms can manage more complex responses. A monarch butterfly can sense the approach of fall and begin its flight south, where resources are still abundant. A vulture can smell meat a mile away and soar toward dinner.

The ability to respond often results in movement: The leaves of a plant turn toward the sun, and animals dart toward safety. Appropriate responses help ensure survival of the organism and allow it to carry on its daily activities. Altogether, we call these activities the *behavior* of the organism.

Living Organisms Reproduce and Develop

Life comes only from life. Every type of living thing can **reproduce,** or make another organism like itself. Bacteria and other types of single-celled organisms simply split in two. In multicellular organisms, the reproductive process usually begins with the pairing of a sperm from one partner and an egg from the other partner. The union of sperm and egg, followed by many cell divisions, results in an immature individual, which grows and develops through various stages to become an adult.

An embryo develops into a whale or a yellow daffodil or a human because of the specific set of **genes,** or genetic instructions, inherited from its parents (**Fig. 1.5**). In all organisms, the genes are made of long DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) molecules, but even so the genes are different between species and individuals. These differences are the result of **mutations,** or inheritable changes in the genetic information. Mutation provides an important source of variation in the genetic information. However, not all mutations are bad—the observable differences in eye and hair color are examples of mutations. Advances in DNA technology allow for the rapid screening of the variation in our genes. These genetic comparisons are the basis of paternity testing. Although an individual's overall genetic makeup is unique, it consists of DNA from both parents. Thus, the DNA profiles of a child and his or her biological parents are measurably similar.

DNA provides the blueprint or instructions for the organization and metabolism of the particular organism. All cells in a multicellular organism contain the same set of genes, but only certain ones are turned on in each type of specialized cell. Genetic testing can look for the presence of certain mutations and, in doing so, can help us predict what diseases we are prone to, and doctors can use this information to prescribe drug therapy or tell us how best to protect ourselves.

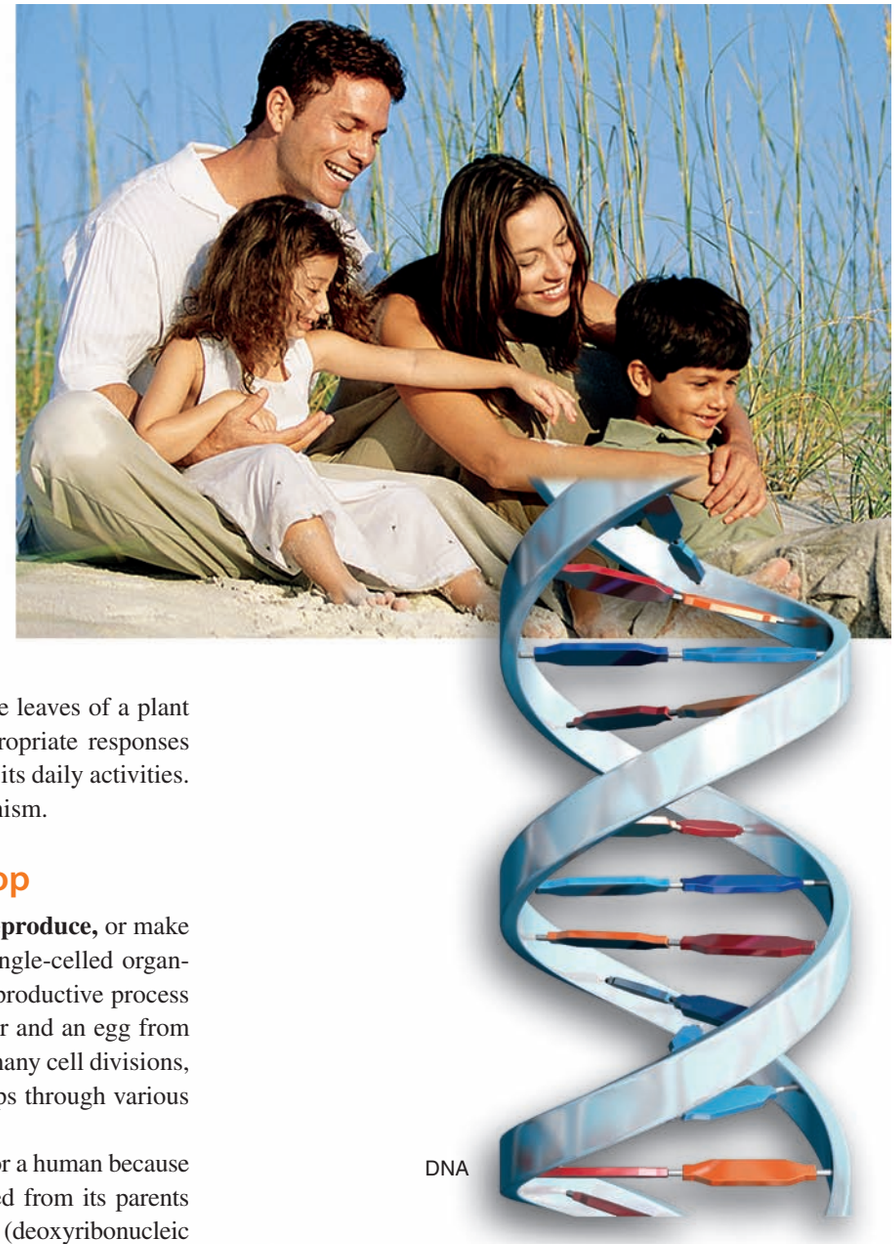


Figure 1.5 **A human family.**

Whether they are single-celled or multicellular, all organisms reproduce. Offspring receive a copy of their parents' DNA and therefore a copy of their genes.

Living Organisms Have Adaptations

Adaptations are modifications that make organisms suited to their way of life. Some hawks have the ability to catch fish (see Fig. 1.3); others are best at catching rabbits. Hawks can fly, in part, because they have hollow bones to reduce their weight and flight muscles to depress and elevate their wings. When a hawk dives, its strong feet take the first shock of the landing, and its long, sharp claws reach out and hold on to the prey. Hawks have exceptionally keen vision, which enables them not only to spot prey from great heights but also to estimate distance and speed.

Video
Harris Hawk

Penguins look very different from hawks, although they are both birds. Penguins are adapted to an aquatic existence in the Antarctic. While birds such as hawks have forelimbs proportioned for flying, penguins have stubby, flattened wings suitable for swimming. Their feet and tails serve as rudders in the water, but their flat feet also allow them to walk on land. Penguins live where it is cold; an extra layer of downy feathers is covered by short, thick feathers to form a waterproof coat. Layers of blubber also keep the birds warm in cold water.

Evolution, or the manner in which species become adapted to their environment, is discussed in the next section of this chapter.

1.1

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

All living organisms share the same basic feature.

Check Your Progress 1.1

1. List the basic characteristics common to all life.
2. List, in order starting with the least organized, the levels of biological organization.
3. Explain how chemical cycling and energy flow occur at both the organism and the ecosystem levels of organization.

1.2 Evolution: The Core Concept of Biology

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Define the term *evolution*.
2. Explain the process of natural selection and its relationship to evolutionary processes.
3. Summarize the general characteristics of the domains and major kingdoms of life.

Despite diversity in form, function, and lifestyle, organisms share the same basic characteristics. As mentioned, they are all composed of cells organized in a similar manner. Their genes are composed of DNA, and they carry out the same metabolic reactions to acquire energy and maintain their organization. The unity of living organisms suggests that they are descended from a common ancestor—the first cell or cells.

An evolutionary tree is like a family tree (**Fig. 1.6**). Just as a family tree shows how a group of people have descended from one couple, an evolutionary tree traces the ancestry of life on Earth to a common ancestor. One couple can have diverse children, and likewise a population can be a common ancestor to several other groups, each adapted to a particular set of environmental conditions. **Evolution** is the process in which populations accumulate adaptations over time to become more suited to their environments. Evolution may be considered the unifying concept of biology because it explains so many aspects of biology, including how living organisms arose from a single ancestor and the tremendous diversity of life on the planet.

Natural Selection and Evolutionary Processes

In the nineteenth century, two naturalists—Charles Darwin and Alfred Russell Wallace—came to the conclusion independently that evolution occurs by means of a process called **natural selection.** Charles Darwin is the more famous of the two because he wrote a book called *On the Origin of Species,* which presented much data to substantiate the occurrence of evolution by natural selection. Since that time, evolution has become the core concept of biology because the theory explains so many different types of observations in every field of biology.

The process of natural selection is based on how a population changes in response to its environment. Environments may change due to the influence of living factors (such as a new predator) or nonliving factors (such as temperature). As the environment changes over time, some individuals of a species may possess certain adaptations that make them better suited to the new environment. Individuals of a species that are better adapted to their environment tend to live longer and produce more offspring than other individuals. This differential reproductive success, called natural

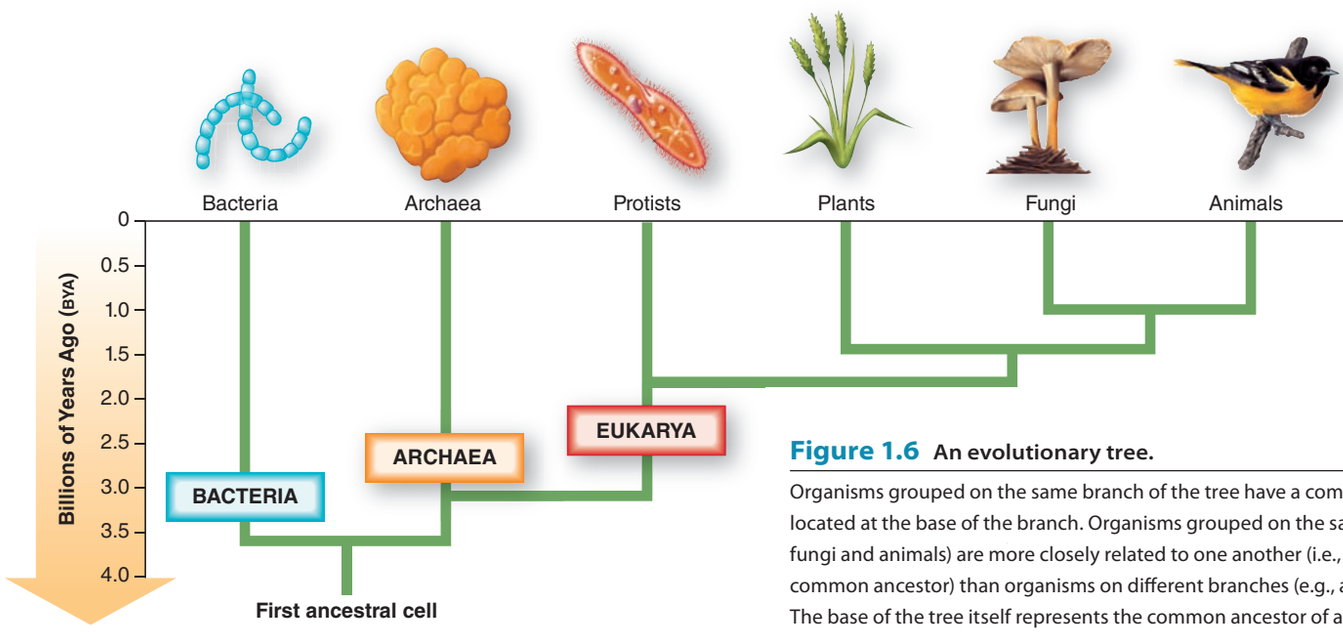


Figure 1.6 An evolutionary tree.

Organisms grouped on the same branch of the tree have a common ancestor located at the base of the branch. Organisms grouped on the same branch (e.g., fungi and animals) are more closely related to one another (i.e., have a more recent common ancestor) than organisms on different branches (e.g., animals and plants). The base of the tree itself represents the common ancestor of all living organisms.

selection, results in changes in the characteristics of a population over time. That is, adaptations that result in higher reproductive success tend to increase in frequency in a population from one generation to the next. This change in the frequency of traits in populations is called evolution.

The phrase "common descent with modification" sums up the process of evolution because it means that, as descent occurs from common ancestors, modifications occur that cause these organisms to be adapted (suited) to the environment. As a result, one species can be a common ancestor to several species, each adapted to a particular set of environmental conditions. Specific adaptations allow species to play particular roles in their environment. The Hawaiian honeycreepers are a remarkable example of this process (**Fig. 1.7**). The 50+ species of honeycreepers all evolved from one species of finch, which likely originated in North America and arrived in the Hawaiian islands between 3 and 5 million years ago. Modern honeycreepers have an assortment of bill shapes adapted to different types of food. Some honeycreeper species have curved, elongated bills used for drinking flower nectar. Others have strong, hooked bills suited to digging in tree bark and seizing wood-boring insects or have short, straight, finchlike bills for feeding on small seeds and fruits. Even with such dramatic differences in feeding habits and bill shapes, honeycreepers still share certain characteristics, which stem from their common finch ancestor. The various honeycreeper species are similar in body shape and size, as well as mating and nesting behavior.

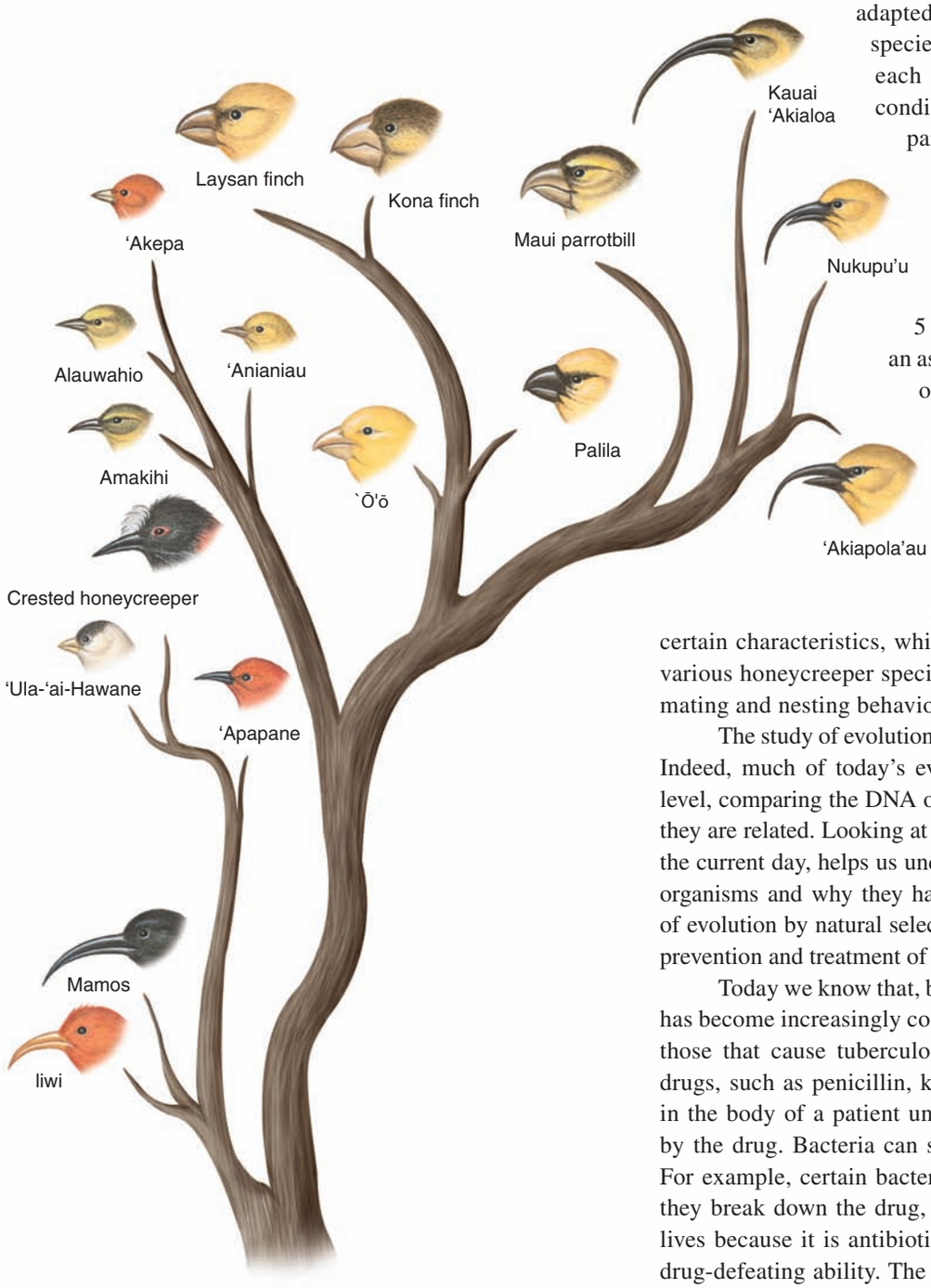


Figure 1.7 **Evolution of Hawaiian honeycreepers.**

Hawaiian honeycreepers, descendants of a single ancestral species, display an amazing diversity of bill shapes and sizes.

The study of evolution encompasses all levels of biological organization. Indeed, much of today's evolution research is carried out at the molecular level, comparing the DNA of different groups of organisms to determine how they are related. Looking at how life has changed over time, from its origin to the current day, helps us understand why there are so many different kinds of organisms and why they have the characteristics they do. An understanding of evolution by natural selection also has practical applications, including the prevention and treatment of disease.

Today we know that, because of selection, resistance to antibiotic drugs has become increasingly common in a number of bacterial species, including those that cause tuberculosis, gonorrhea, and staph infections. Antibiotic drugs, such as penicillin, kill susceptible bacteria. However, some bacteria in the body of a patient undergoing antibiotic treatment may be unharmed by the drug. Bacteria can survive antibiotic drugs in many different ways. For example, certain bacteria can endure treatment with penicillin because they break down the drug, rendering it harmless. If even one bacterial cell lives because it is antibiotic-resistant, then its descendants will inherit this drug-defeating ability. The more antibiotic drugs are used, the more natural selection favors resistant bacteria, and the more often antibiotic-resistant infections will occur.

Connections: Health

How does evolution affect me personally?

In the presence of an antibiotic, resistant bacteria are selected to reproduce over and over again, until the entire population of bacteria becomes resistant to the antibiotic. In 1959, a new antibiotic called methicillin became available to treat bacterial (staph) infections that were already resistant to penicillin. In 1974, 2% of the staph infections were classified as MRSA (methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), but by 2004, the number had risen to 63%. In response, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention conducted an aggressive campaign to educate health-care workers on MRSA prevention. The program was very successful, and between 2005 and 2008 the number of MRSA infections in hospitals declined by 28%. However, MRSA resistance remains an important concern of the medical community.

Organizing the Diversity of Life

Think of an enormous department store, offering thousands of different items for sale. The various items are grouped in departments—electronics, apparel, furniture, and so on—to make them easy for customers to find. Because life is so diverse, it is helpful to have a system that groups organisms into categories. Two areas of biology help us group organisms into categories: **Taxonomy** is the discipline of identifying and naming organisms according to certain rules, and **systematics** makes sense out of the bewildering variety of life on Earth by classifying organisms according to their presumed evolutionary relationships. As systematicists learn more about evolutionary relationships between species, the taxonomy of a given organism may change. Systematicists are even now making observations and performing experiments that will one day bring about changes in the classification system adopted by this text.

Categories of Classification

The classification categories, from least inclusive to most inclusive, are **species, genus, family, order, class, phylum, kingdom,** and **domain** (**Table 1.1**). Each successive category above species contains more types of organisms than the preceding one. Species placed within one genus share many specific characteristics and are the most closely related, while species placed in the same domain share only general characteristics. For example, all species in the genus *Pisum* look pretty much the same—that is, like pea plants—but species in the plant kingdom can be quite varied, as is evident when we compare grasses with trees. By the same token, only modern humans are in the genus *Homo,* but many types of species, from tiny hydras to huge whales, are members of the animal kingdom. Species placed in different domains are the most distantly related. For now, we will focus on the general characteristics of the domains and kingdoms of life.

Table 1.1 Levels of Biological Organization

Category	Human	Corn
Domain	Eukarya	Eukarya
Kingdom	Animalia	Plantae
Phylum	Chordata	Anthophyta
Class	Mammalia	Liliopsida
Order	Primates	Commelinales
Family	Hominidae	Poaceae
Genus	*Homo*	*Zea*
Species*	*H. sapiens*	*Z. mays*

* To specify an organism, you must use the full binomial name, such as *Homo sapiens.*

Table 1.2 Domains and Kingdoms of Life

Domain	Kingdom	Example	
Archaea		×20,000	Capable of living in extreme environments. *Methanasarcina mazei,* a methane-generating prokaryote.
Bacteria		×6,600	Structurally simple but metabolically diverse. *Escherichia coli,* a prokaryote found in our intestinal tracts.
Eukarya	Protists*	×150	Diverse group of eukaryotes, many single-celled. *Euglena,* an organism with both plant and animal-like characteristics.
	Plants		Multicellular photosynthesizers. The bristlecone pine, *Pinus longaeva,* one of the oldest organisms on the planet.
	Animals		Multicellular organisms that ingest food. *Homo sapiens*—humans.
	Fungi		Multicellular decomposers. *Amanita*—a mushroom.

* Many systemicists are suggesting that Kingdom Protista be subdivided to better reflect the evolutionary relationships of these organisms.

Domains

The most inclusive and general levels of classification are the domains (**Table 1.2**). Biochemical evidence (obtained from the study of DNA and proteins) suggests that there are only three domains of life: **domain Bacteria, domain Archaea,** and **domain Eukarya.** Both domain Archaea and domain Bacteria contain prokaryotes. Prokaryotes are single-celled, and they lack the membrane-bounded nucleus found in the eukaryotes of domain Eukarya.

Prokaryotes are structurally simple but metabolically complex. Archaea live in aquatic environments that lack oxygen or are too salty, too hot, or too acidic for most other organisms. Perhaps these environments are similar to those of the primitive Earth and archaea are representative of the first cells that evolved. Bacteria are found almost everywhere—in the water, soil, and atmosphere, as well as on our skin and in our mouths and large intestines. Although some bacteria cause diseases, others perform many services, both environmental and commercial. For example, they are used to conduct genetic research in our laboratories (the *E. coli* in Table 1.2 is one example), to produce innumerable products in our factories, and to purify water in our sewage treatment plants.

Kingdoms

Systematicists are just beginning to understand how to categorize domain Archaea and domain Bacteria into kingdoms. Currently, there are four kingdoms within domain Eukarya. **Protists** (kingdom Protista) are a very diverse group of eukaryotic organisms, some of which are single-celled and others are multicellular. Some protists are photosynthetic, some are decomposers, and some ingest their food. As we will see in Chapter 17, systemicists recognize that there are considerable differences among the members of this kingdom, and efforts are underway to introduce a new classification scheme for the protists. Among the **fungi** (kingdom Fungi) are the familiar molds and mushrooms that, along with many types of bacteria, help decompose dead organisms. **Plants** (kingdom Plantae) are well known as multicellular photosynthesizers. **Animals** (kingdom Animalia) are multicellular organisms that ingest their food.

The three domains and the four kingdoms within the domain Eukarya are depicted in the evolutionary tree in Figure 1.6. This tree, which is largely based on the DNA of organisms, says that the domain Bacteria was the first to arise in the history of life, followed by the domain Archaea and finally the domain Eukarya. The domain Archaea is more closely related to the domain Eukarya than either is to the domain Bacteria. Among the Eukarya, the protists gave rise to the kingdoms of plants, fungi, and animals. Later in this text, we will return to this evolutionary tree, and the evolution of each kingdom will be discussed separately.

Scientific Naming

Biologists give each living thing a two-part scientific name called a **binomial name.** For example, the scientific name for the garden pea is *Pisum sativum;* our own species is *Homo sapiens*. The first word is the genus, and the second word is the specific epithet of a species within a genus. The genus may be abbreviated, such as *P. sativum* or *H. sapiens*. Scientific names are universally used by biologists to avoid confusion. Common names tend to overlap, and often they are in the languages of the people who use those names. But scientific names are based on Latin, a universal language that not too long ago was

well known by most scholars. Table 1.2 provides some examples of binomial names. Now that we know the general groups to which organisms are classified, and how scientists assign scientific names, let's return to our discussion of evolution and the process by which diversity arises.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

1.2 The process of evolution has led to the diversity of living organisms on Earth today.

Check Your Progress 1.2

1. List the eight classification categories, from least to most inclusive.
2. Describe the process of natural selection and explain its relationship to evolutionary change.
3. Explain why the concept of descent with modification is important in understanding the evolutionary process.

1.3 Science: A Way of Knowing

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Identify the steps of the scientific method.
2. Describe the basic requirements for a controlled experiment.
3. Distinguish between a theory and a hypothesis.

Biology is the scientific study of life. Religion, aesthetics, ethics, and science are all ways that human beings have of finding order in the natural world. Science differs from the other fields by its process, which often involves the use of the scientific method (**Fig. 1.8**).

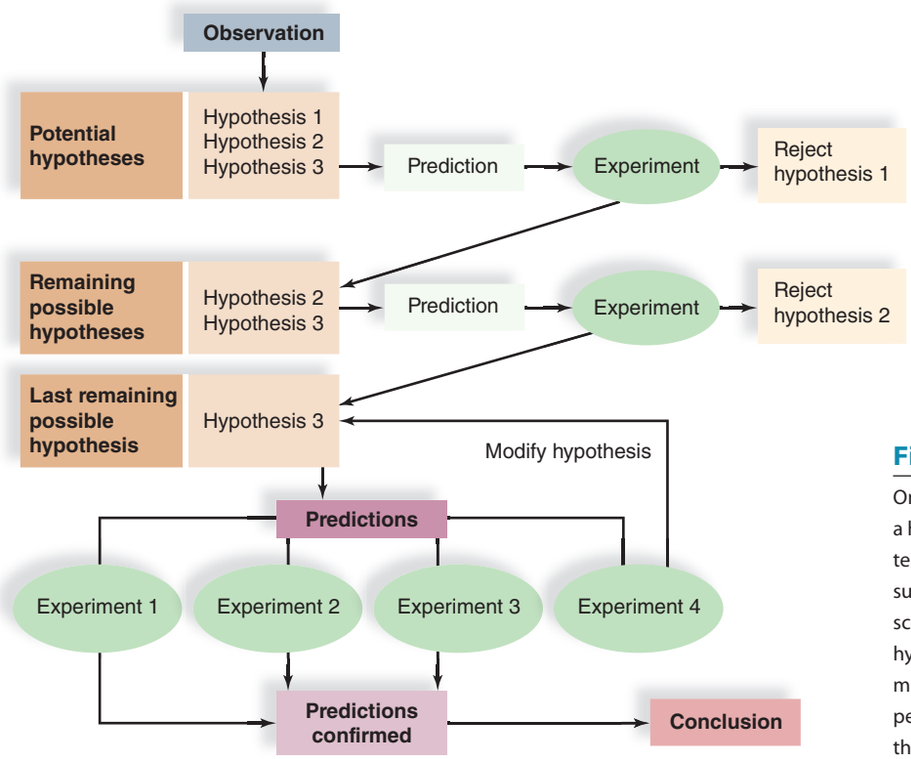


Figure 1.8 Flow diagram for the scientific method.

On the basis of new and/or previous observations, a scientist formulates a hypothesis. The hypothesis is used to develop predictions to be tested by further experiments and/or observations, and new data either support or do not support the hypothesis. Following an experiment, a scientist often chooses to retest the same hypothesis or to test a related hypothesis. Conclusions from many different but related experiments may lead to the development of a scientific theory. For example, studies pertaining to development, anatomy, and fossil remains all support the theory of evolution.

Start with an Observation

The scientific method begins with **observation.** We can observe with our noses that dinner is almost ready, observe with our fingertips that a surface is smooth and cold, and observe with our ears that a piano needs tuning. Scientists also extend the ability of their senses by using instruments; for example, a microscope enables them to see objects that could never be seen by the naked eye. Finally, scientists may expand their understanding even further by taking advantage of the knowledge and experiences of other scientists. For instance, they may look up past studies on the Internet or at the library, or they may write or speak to others who are researching similar topics.

Develop a Hypothesis

After making observations and gathering knowledge about a phenomenon, a scientist uses inductive reasoning. **Inductive reasoning** occurs whenever a person uses creative thinking to combine isolated facts into a cohesive whole. Chance alone can help a scientist arrive at an idea. The most famous case pertains to the antibiotic penicillin, which was discovered in 1928. While examining a petri dish of bacteria that had accidentally become contaminated with the mold *Penicillium,* Alexander Fleming observed an area around the mold that was free of bacteria. Fleming had long been interested in finding cures for human diseases caused by bacteria, and he was very knowledgeable about antibacterial substances. So when Fleming saw the dramatic effect of *Penicillium* mold on bacteria, he reasoned that the mold might be producing an antibacterial substance. We call such a possible explanation for a natural event a **hypothesis.** A hypothesis is based on existing knowledge, so it is much more informed than a mere guess. Fleming's hypothesis was supported by further study. Sometimes a hypothesis is not supported and must be either modified and subjected to additional study or rejected.

All of a scientist's past experiences, no matter what they might be, may influence the formation of a hypothesis. But a scientist considers only hypotheses that can be tested by experiments or further observations. Moral and religious beliefs, while very important to our lives, differ among cultures and through time and are not always testable.

Make a Prediction and Perform Experiments

Scientists often perform an **experiment,** which is a series of procedures designed to test a specific hypothesis. The manner in which a scientist intends to conduct an experiment is called the **experimental design.** A good experimental design ensures that scientists are testing what they want to test and that their results will be meaningful. If the hypothesis is well prepared, then the scientist should be able to make a **prediction** of what the results of the experiment will be. If the results of the experiment do not match the predictions, then the scientist must revisit the initial hypothesis and design a new set of experiments.

Experiments can take many forms, depending on the area of biology that the scientist is examining. For example, experiments in the laboratory may be confined to tubes and beakers, whereas ecological studies may require large

tracts of land. However, in all experimental designs, the researcher attempts to keep all of the conditions constant except for an **experimental variable,** which is deliberately changed. One or more **test groups** are exposed to the experimental variable, but one other group, called the **control group,** is not. If, by chance, the control group shows the same results as the test group, the experimenter knows the results do not support the hypothesis.

Scientists often use **model** organisms and model systems to test a hypothesis. Some common model organisms are shown in **Figure 1.9.** Model organisms are chosen because they allow the researcher to control aspects of the experiment, such as age and genetic background. Cell biologists may use mice for modeling the effects of a new drug. Like model organisms, model systems allow the scientist to control specific variables and environmental conditions in a way that may not be possible in the natural environment. For example, ecologists may use computer programs to model how human activities will affect the climate of a specific ecosystem. While models provide useful information, they do not always answer the original question completely. For example, medicine that is effective in mice should ideally be tested in humans, and ecological experiments that are conducted using computer simulations need to be verified by actual field experiments. Biologists, and all other scientists, continuously design and revise their experiments to better understand how different factors may influence their original observation.

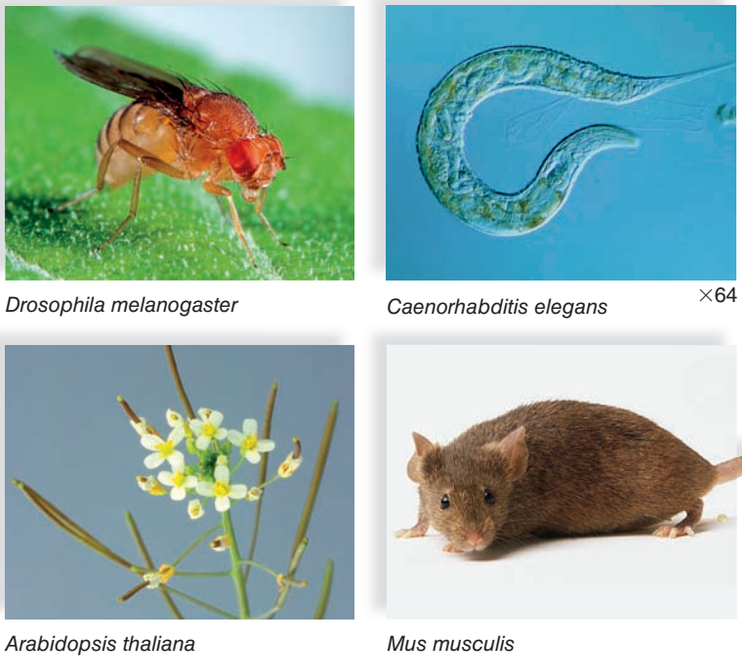
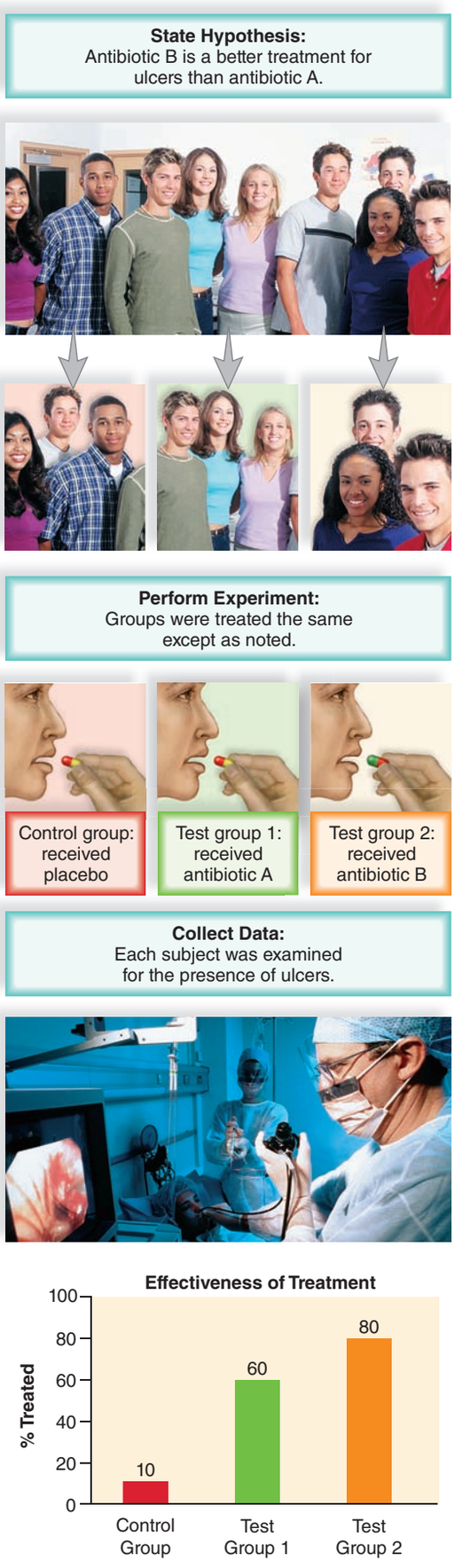


Figure 1.9 **Model organisms used in scientific studies.**

Drosophila melanogaster is used as a model organism in the study of genetics. *Mus musculis* is used in the study of medicine. *Caenorhabditis elegans* is used by developmental biologists, and *Arabidopsis thaliana* is used by botanists to understand plant genetics.

Collect and Analyze the Data

The results of an experiment are referred to as the **data.** Mathematical data are often displayed in the form of a graph or table. Sometimes studies rely on statistical data. Statistical analysis allows a scientist to detect relationships in the data that may not be obvious on the surface. Let's say an investigator wants to know if eating onions can prevent women from getting osteoporosis (weak bones). The scientist conducts a survey asking women about their onion-eating habits and then correlates these data with the condition of their bones. Other scientists critiquing this study would want to know the following: How many women were surveyed? How old were the women? What were their exercise habits? What criteria were used to determine the condition of their bones? And what is the probability that the data are in error? The greater the variance in the data, the greater the probability of error. In any case, even if the data do suggest a correlation, scientists would want to know if there is a specific ingredient in onions that has a direct biochemical or physiological effect on bones. After all, correlation does not necessarily mean causation. It could be that women who eat onions eat lots of vegetables and have healthier diets overall than women who do not eat onions. In this way, scientists are skeptics who always pressure one another to keep investigating.



Develop a Conclusion

Scientists must analyze the data in order to reach a **conclusion** about whether a hypothesis is supported or not. Because science progresses, the conclusion of one experiment can lead to the hypothesis for another experiment (see Fig. 1.8). In other words, results that do not support one hypothesis can often help a scientist formulate another hypothesis to be tested. Scientists report their findings in scientific journals, so that their methodology and data are available to other scientists. Experiments and observations must be *repeatable*—that is, the reporting scientist and any scientist who repeats the experiment must get the same results, or else the data are suspect.

Scientific Theory

The ultimate goal of science is to understand the natural world in terms of **scientific theories,** which are accepted explanations for how the world works. Some of the basic theories of biology are the cell theory, which says that all organisms are composed of cells; the gene theory, which says that inherited information dictates the form, function, and behavior of organisms; and the theory of evolution, which says that all organisms have a common ancestor and that each organism is adapted to a particular way of life.

The theory of evolution is considered the unifying concept of biology because it pertains to many different aspects of organisms. For example, the theory of evolution enables scientists to understand the history of life, the variety of organisms, and the anatomy, physiology, and development of organisms. The theory of evolution has been a very fruitful scientific theory, meaning that it has helped scientists generate new testable hypotheses. Because this theory has been supported by so many observations and experiments for over 100 years, some biologists refer to the theory of evolution as the **principle** of evolution, a term sometimes used for theories that are generally accepted by an overwhelming number of scientists. Others prefer the term **law** instead of *principle.*

An Example of a Controlled Study

We now know that most stomach and intestinal ulcers (open sores) are caused by the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori*. Let's say investigators want to determine which of two antibiotics is best for the treatment of an ulcer. When clinicians do an experiment, they try to vary just the experimental variables—in this case, the medications being tested. A control group is not given the medications, but one or more test groups are given the medications. If by chance, the control group shows the same results as a test group, the investigators immediately know the results of their study are invalid because the medications may have nothing to do with the results. The study depicted in **Figure 1.10** shows how investigators may study this hypothesis:

Hypothesis: Newly discovered antibiotic B is a better treatment for ulcers than antibiotic A, which is in current use.

Figure 1.10 **A controlled laboratory experiment to test the effectiveness of a medication in humans.**

In this study, a large number of people were divided into three groups. The control group received a placebo and no medication. One of the test groups received medication A, and the other test group received medication B. The results are depicted in a graph, and it shows that medication B was a more effective treatment than medication A for the treatment of ulcers.

Next, the investigators might decide to use three experimental groups: one control group and two test groups. It is important to reduce the number of possible variables (differences), such as sex, weight, and other illnesses, among the groups. Therefore, the investigators *randomly* divide a very large group of volunteers equally into the three groups. The hope is that any differences will be distributed evenly among the three groups. This is possible only if the investigators have a large number of volunteers.

The three groups are to be treated like this:

Control group: Subjects with ulcers are not treated with either antibiotic.
Test group 1: Subjects with ulcers are treated with antibiotic A.
Test group 2: Subjects with ulcers are treated with antibiotic B.

After the investigators have determined that all volunteers do have ulcers, they will want the subjects to think they are all receiving the *same* treatment. This is an additional way to protect the results from any influence other than the medication. To achieve this end, the subjects in the control group can receive a **placebo,** a treatment that appears to be the same as that administered to the other two groups but actually contains no medication. In this study, the use of a placebo would help ensure the same dedication by all subjects to the study.

The Results

After two weeks of administering the same amount of medication (or placebo) in the same way, the stomach and intestinal linings of each subject are examined to determine if ulcers are still present. Endoscopy, a procedure depicted in the photograph in Figure 1.10, is one way to examine a patient for the presence of ulcers. This procedure, which is performed under sedation, involves inserting an endoscope—a small, flexible tube with a tiny camera on the end—down the throat and into the stomach and the upper part of the intestine. Then, the doctor can see the lining of these organs and can check for ulcers. Tests performed during an endoscopy can also determine if *Helicobacter pylori* is present.

Because endoscopy is somewhat subjective, it is probably best if the examiner is not aware of which group the subject is in; otherwise, the examiner's prejudice may influence the examination. When neither the patient nor the technician is aware of the specific treatment, it is called a *double-blind* study.

In this study, the investigators may decide to determine the effectiveness of the medication by the percentage of people who no longer have ulcers. So, if 20 people out of 100 still have ulcers, the medication is 80% effective. The difference in effectiveness is easily read in the graph portion of Figure 1.10.

Conclusion: On the basis of their data, the investigators conclude that their hypothesis has been supported.

Publish Your Results

Scientific studies are customarily published in a scientific journal (**Fig. 1.11**), so that all aspects of a study are available to the scientific community. Before information is published in scientific journals, it is typically reviewed by experts, who ensure that the research is credible, accurate, unbiased, and well executed. Another scientist should be able to read about an experiment in a scientific journal, repeat the experiment in a different location, and get the same (or very similar) results. Some articles are rejected for publication by reviewers when they believe there is something questionable about the design of an experiment or the manner in which it was conducted. This process of rejection is important in science, since it causes researchers to critically review their

Figure 1.11 Scientific publications.

Scientific journals, such as *Science,* are scholarly journals in which researchers share their findings with other scientists. Scientific magazines, such as *Scientific American, New Scientist,* and *Science News,* contain articles that are usually written by reporters for a broader audience.

hypotheses, predictions, and experimental designs, so that their next attempt will more adequately address their hypotheses. Often, it takes several rounds of revision before research is accepted for publication in a scientific journal.

Scientific magazines (Fig. 1.11), such as *Scientific American,* differ from scientific journals in that they report scientific findings to the general public. The information in these articles is usually obtained from articles first published in scientific journals.

As mentioned previously, the conclusion of one experiment often leads to another experiment. The need for scientists to expand on findings explains why science changes and the findings of yesterday may be improved upon tomorrow.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The scientific method helps us understand the world we live in.

Check Your Progress 1.3

1. Summarize the purpose of each step in the scientific method.
2. Explain why a controlled study is important in research.
3. Explain why publishing scientific studies is important.

1.4 Challenges Facing Science

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish between science and technology.
2. Summarize some of the major challenges currently facing science.

As we have learned in this chapter, science is a systematic way of acquiring knowledge about the natural world. Science is a slightly different endeavor than technology. **Technology** is the application of scientific knowledge to the interests of humans. Scientific investigations are the basis for the majority of our technological advances. As is often the case, a new technology, such as your cell phone or a new drug, is based on years of scientific investigations. In this section, we are going to explore some of the challenges facing science, technology, and society.

Bioethics

Scientific thinking is based on the scientific method, which considers hypotheses that can be tested only by experimentation and observation and the review and criticism of research findings by experts on the topic. The inclusion of a review process means that science has a built-in safety mechanism. Still, the process is not perfect. A technology may be developed for one purpose, then adapted in a way not anticipated by the initial researcher. **Bioethics** is the branch of ethics concerned with the development and consequences of biological technology.

One example is gentic engineering. Investigations into cell structure and genes led to the current biotechnology revolution. We now know how to manipulate genes. If you have diabetes and are using insulin, it was produced by genetically modified (GM) bacteria. Despite its benefits, there are risks associated with biotechnology. Ecologists are concerned that GM crops could endanger the biosphere. For example, many farmers are now planting GM cotton that produces an insect-killing toxin. Though insect pests are their intended target, toxins may also kill the natural predators that feed on insect pests. It may not be wise to kill off friendly predatory insects. People are now eating GM foods and/or foods that have been manufactured by using GM products. Some people are concerned about the possible effects of GM foods on human health.

Biodiversity is perhaps the single most significant bioethical issue that we face today. Biodiversity may be defined as variation in life on Earth, and it usually refers to the number of different species. As the human population grows, more and more of the biosphere is exploited for human needs, such as food and housing.

Human Influence on Ecosystems

The human population tends to modify ecosystems for its own purposes. Humans clear forests or grasslands in order to grow crops; later, they build houses on what was once farmland; finally, they convert small towns into cities. As coasts are developed, humans send sediments, sewage, and other pollutants into the sea. In the process, they disrupt the normal flow of energy and nutrients in the ecosystem. Tropical rain forests, coral reefs, and most of the other ecosystems are severely threatened as the human population increases in size. Some coral reefs are 50 million years old, yet in just a few decades human activities have destroyed 10% of all reefs and seriously degraded another 30%. At this rate, nearly three-quarters could be destroyed within 50 years. Similar statistics are available for tropical rain forests.

As ecosystems decline in health, the level of biodiversity in that ecosystem also suffers. The present number of species has been estimated to be as high as 15 million, but so far around 2 million have been identified, named, and classified. The biodiversity that surrounds us is the result of approximately 3.5 billion years of evolution. Unfortunately, technology-enabled human activities present a major threat to biodiversity. When we talk about the loss of biodiversity, we often also mention extinction. **Extinction** is the death of a species or a larger taxonomic group. Although it is natural for species extinctions to occur over time, human activities have increased the extinction rate by a factor of 100 to 1,000. It is estimated that as many as 400 species per day are lost because of human activities (**Fig. 1.12**). Many biologists are alarmed about the present rate of extinction and the resulting loss of biodiversity worldwide.

Our own species may be in peril if biodiversity loss continues, because we are interconnected with all of life on Earth in ways that we do not yet fully understand. We depend on other living things to supply us with food, clothing, medicines, and construction materials. We need other species to help clean up our pollution, preserve soil fertility, and maintain the balance of gases in the atmosphere. We can protect biodiversity through the preservation of ecosystems. Just as a native fisherman who assists in overfishing a reef is doing away with his own food source, we as a society are contributing to the destruction of our home, the biosphere, when we destroy ecosystems. If instead we adopt a conservation ethic that preserves ecosystems, we are helping ensure the continued existence of all species, including our own.

Figure 1.12 **Preserving biodiversity.**

Lonesome George was the last known individual of the Pinta Island Tortoise, *Geochelone nigra abingdoni*. This species was declared extinct when George died in 2012.

Emerging Diseases

In the past several years, avian influenza (H5N1), swine flu (H1N1), and severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) have generated a lot of press. These are considered new, or emerging, diseases. Where do emerging diseases come from? Some of these diseases may result from new and/or increased exposure to animals or insect populations that act as vectors for disease. Changes in human behavior and use of technology can also result in new diseases. SARS is thought to have arisen in Guandong, China, due to the consumption of civets, a type of exotic cat considered a delicacy. The civets were possibly infected by exposure to horseshoe bats sold in open markets. Legionnaires' disease emerged in 1976 due to contamination of a large air-conditioning system in a hotel. The bacteria thrived in the cooling tower used as the water source for the air-conditioning system. In addition, globalization results in the transport of diseases all over the world that were previously restricted to isolated communities. The first SARS cases were reported in southern China the week of November 16, 2002. By the end of February 2003, SARS had reached nine countries/provinces, mostly through airline travel. Some pathogens mutate and change hosts, jumping from birds to humans, for example. Before 1997, avian flu was thought to affect only birds. A mutated strain jumped to humans in the 1997 outbreak. To control that epidemic, officials killed 1.5 million chickens to remove the source of the virus.

Climate Change

The term *climate change* refers to changes in the normal cycles of the Earth's climate that may be attributed to human activity. Climate change is primarily due to an imbalance in the chemical cycling of the element carbon. Normally, carbon is cycled within an ecosystem (see Fig. 1.4). However, due to human activities, more carbon dioxide is being released into the atmosphere than is being removed. In 1850, atmospheric CO_2 was at about 280 parts per million (ppm); today, it is over 400 ppm. This increase is largely due to the burning of fossil fuels and the destruction of forests to make way for farmland and pasture. Today, the amount of carbon dioxide released into the atmosphere is about twice the amount that remains in the atmosphere. It's believed that most of this dissolves in the ocean. The increased amount of carbon dioxide (and other gases) in the atmosphere is causing a rise in temperature called **global warming**. These gases allow the sun's rays to pass through, but they absorb and radiate heat back to Earth, a phenomenon called the greenhouse effect. Global warming is contributing to climate change, which is causing significant changes in many of the Earth's ecosystems. We will examine climate change in more detail in Chapter 32.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Science provides us with information to make informed decisions.

Check Your Progress 1.4

1. Explain the relationship between science and technology.
2. Explain why bioethics is an important aspect of science and technology.
3. Summarize why ecosystem degradation, emerging diseases, and climate change are current challenges of science.

Media Study Tools

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video	MP3 Files
1.2 Three Domains **1.4** Global Warming	**1.1** Coral Reef Ecosystem • Tallgrass Prairie Ecosystem • Harris Hawk **1.4** GM Food Safety • Coral Reef Ecosystem	**1.1** Life Characteristics

SUMMARIZE

1.1 The Characteristics of Life

All organisms share the following characteristics of life:

- Organization: The levels of biological organization extend as follows: atoms and molecules → cells → tissues → **organs** → **organ systems** → organisms → **populations** → **communities** → **ecosystems** → **biosphere.** In an ecosystem, populations interact with one another and with the physical environment.
- Acquire materials and energy from the environment: They need an outside source of nutrients and energy for **metabolism.** While chemicals cycle within an ecosystem, **photosynthesis** is needed to capture energy for use within the ecosytem.
- Maintain an internal environment: **Homeostasis** means they stay just about the same despite changes in the external environment.
- Respond to stimuli: They react to internal and external events.
- **Reproduce** and develop: They produce offspring that resemble themselves. The genetic information contained within the **genes** of the organism directs how the organism will develop over time.
- Have **adaptations** that make them suitable for their environment.

1.2 Evolution: The Core Concept of Biology

Evolution, or the change in a species over time, explains the unity and diversity of life. **Natural selection** is the process that results in evolution. Descent from a common ancestor explains why organisms share some characteristics, and adaptation to various ways of life explains the diversity of life-forms. An evolutionary tree diagram may be used to describe how groups of organisms are related to one another.

Life may be classified into large groups called domains and kingdoms. The three domains are

- **Domain Archaea: prokaryotes** that live in extreme environments
- **Domain Bacteria:** prokaryotes
- **Domain Eukarya: eukaryotes**

Within domain Eukarya are four kingdoms: Protista (**protists**); **Fungi;** Plantae (**plants**); and Animalia (**animals**).

Systematics is the classification of organisms based on evolutionary relationships. These categories include **species, genus, family, order, class, phylum, kingdom,** and **domain.** Taxonomy is involved in naming organims. A **binomial name** (such as *Homo sapiens*) consists of the genus (*Homo*) and the specific epithet (*sapiens*).

1.3 Science: A Way of Knowing

The scientific process uses **inductive reasoning** and includes a series of systematic steps known as the scientific method:

- **Observations,** which use the senses and may also include studies done by others
- A **hypothesis** that leads to a **prediction**
- Experiments that support or refute the hypothesis
- A **conclusion** reached by analyzing **data** to determine whether the results support or do not support the hypothesis

A hypothesis confirmed by many different studies becomes known as a **scientific theory.** Scientific theories are also referred to as **laws** or **principles.**

Experimental design is important in the scientific method. Experiments should test a single **experimental variable** and utilize both **test groups** and **control groups.** Control groups may use a **placebo** to ensure that the experiment is valid. Often, scientists use model organisms and **model systems** in their experimental designs.

1.4 Challenges Facing Science

Scientific findings often lead to the development of a **technology** that can be of service to human beings. Technologies have both benefits and drawbacks. **Bioethics** is concerned with the consequences of using biological technology.

There are a number of important issues facing science in today's world. These include emerging diseases; human influence on ecosystems, which is resulting in a loss of **biodiversity** and **extinction;** and **global warming,** which is contributing to climate change.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

An understanding of the diversity of life on Earth is essential for the well-being of humans. The process of science helps us increase our knowledge of the natural world.

1.1 All living organisms share the same basic features.

1.2 The process of evolution has led to the diversity of living organisms on Earth today.

1.3 The scientific method helps us understand the world we live in.

1.4 Science provides us with information to make informed decisions.

For more information about evolution, ecosystems, and the challenges facing science, see the following discussions:

Section 16.1 explores how evolutionary processes influence species over long periods of time.

Section 31.2 takes a more detailed look at the movement of energy and nutrients in an ecosystem.

Section 32.2 examines how human activity and population growth are influencing the levels of biodiversity on the planet.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

1.1 The Characteristics of Life

1. A modification that helps equip organisms for their way of life is a(n)
   a. homeostasis. **c.** adaptation.
   b. natural selection. **d.** extinction.
2. All of the chemical reactions that occur in a cell are called
   a. homeostasis. **c.** heterostasis.
   b. metabolism. **d.** cytoplasm.
3. Which of the following represents the lowest level of biological organization that still may be considered as alive?
   a. tissue **c.** cell
   b. molecule **d.** population
4. The region of the Earth's surface where all organisms are found is called the
   a. ecosystem. **c.** community.
   b. population. **d.** biosphere.

1.2 Evolution: The Core Concept of Biology

5. A group of interbreeding individuals is a(n)
   a. ecosystem. **c.** community.
   b. species. **d.** phylum.
6. Which of the following is not a domain?
   a. Archaea **c.** Plantae
   b. Eukarya **d.** Bacteria
7. A binomial name indicates
   a. the domain of the organism.
   b. the genus and species (specific epithet).
   c. the kingdom.
   d. the age of the organism.

1.3 Science: A Way of Knowing

8. A hypothesis cannot be formed without which of the following?
   a. experimentation **c.** data
   b. observation **d.** theory
9. Information collected from a scientific experiment is known as
   a. a scientific theory. **c.** data.
   b. a hypothesis. **d.** a conclusion.
10. Placebos are often used in which of the following?
    a. data analysis **c.** test groups
    b. control groups **d.** model organisms

1.4 Challenges Facing Science

11. _____ is the application of scientific investigations for the benefit of humans.
    a. Bioethics **c.** Adaptation
    b. Evolution **d.** Technology
12. Human influence can be associated with which of the following challenges facing science?
    a. loss of biodiversity **c.** emerging diseases
    b. climate change **d.** All of the above

ENGAGE

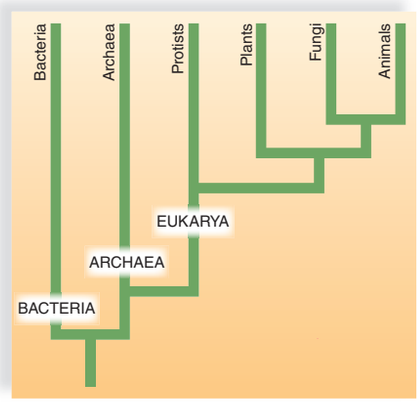
LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

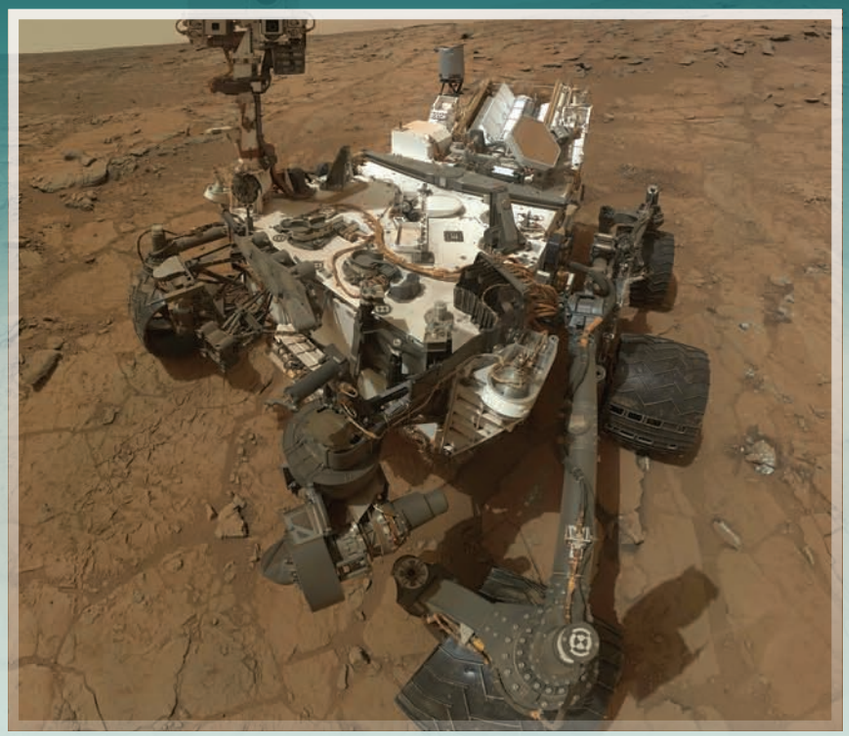
- Scientific Method

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Based on the accompanying evolutionary tree, which prokaryotic domain gave rise to the domain Eukarya? Which kingdom in domain Eukarya gave rise to plants, animals, and fungi?



2. Several years before Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin, he made another exciting discovery. Fleming had a bad cold but kept working in his lab. He decided to put some of his nasal mucus in a petri dish of bacteria to see what would happen. Fleming observed that, over time, the mucus-covered area of the petri dish became clear of bacteria. What hypothesis might he have formulated when he saw the effect of his nasal mucus on the bacteria? Fleming soon became notorious for squeezing lemon juice into people's eyes to make them produce tears. He would then place the tears in petri dishes of bacteria. What hypothesis do you think he was testing?
3. In a scientific study, individuals who receive the placebo often show some similar changes as those that receive the treatment. How would you scientifically account for this observation? Can you design an experiment to test your hypothesis?



2

The Chemical Basis of Life

The Search for Carbon and Water

On August 6, 2012, NASA's *Curiosity* rover successfully landed on the surface of Mars. *Curiosity* represents the next generation of space exploration vehicles. Previous missions, including the long-lived *Spirit* and *Opportunity* rovers, focused on exploring the planet and detecting whether water once existed on Mars. *Curiosity* was designed to explore whether Mars at one time may have had the conditions to support life by looking for elements that we know are associated with life on Earth.

Curiosity possesses a collection of highly sophistcated instruments that can detect trace levels of specific elements and minerals in the Martian soil and rocks. For example, ChemCam uses a small laser to blast away portions of rocks. As the rocks are vaporized, another instrument records the types of elements and molecules that are released. ChemCam can determine whether the rocks were formed in the presence of water, a molecule that is essential for life as we know it. Another set of experiments is called SAM (Sample Analysis at Mars). SAM contains a set of instruments, called a spectrometer, that can be used to detect the presence of carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and oxygen in the Martian soil. Other spectrometers on *Curiosity* are also able to detect the presence of elements and chemical compounds that are associated with life. By examining the data from these instruments, scientists are hoping to better understand whether the conditions on Mars may have supported life in the past, and in the process, develop a better understanding of how life may have evolved on our planet.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. Why are scientists looking for carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen on Mars?
2. What is an isotope and how would a scientific instrument detect its presence?
3. Why is water considered to be so important to life?

OUTLINE

2.1 Atoms and Atomic Bonds 22
2.2 Water's Importance to Life 29
2.3 Acids and Bases 33

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 1.1 What are the basic characteristics of all living organisms?

Figure 1.2 How do molecules relate to cells in the levels of biological organization?

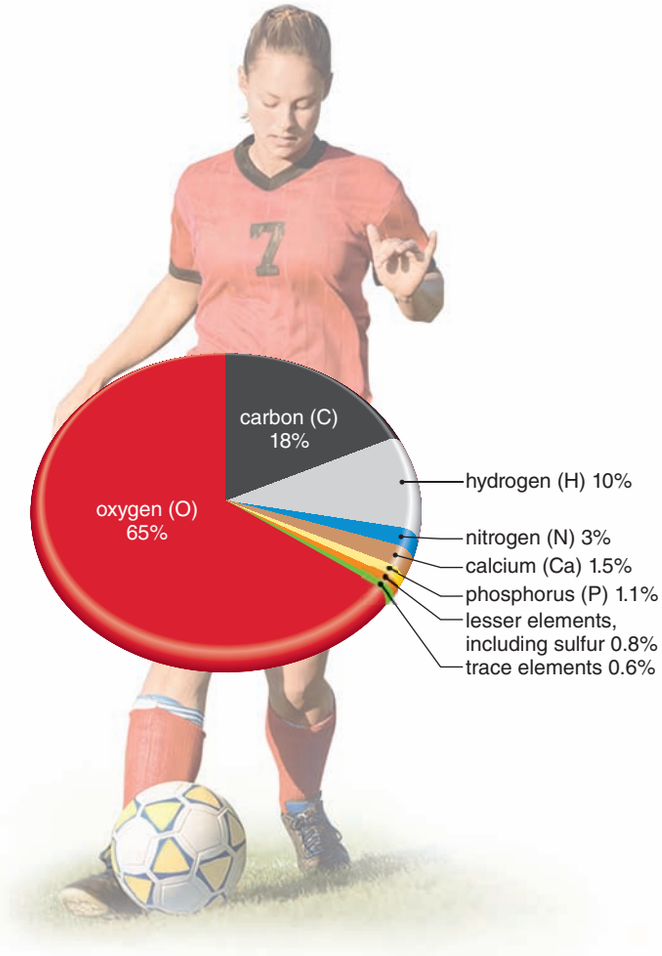


Figure 2.1 **Elements in living organisms.**

If analyzed at the level of atoms, humans, and all living organisms, are mostly composed of oxygen, carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, calcium, and phosphorus.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Where do elements come from?

We are all familiar with elements. Iron, sodium, oxygen, and carbon are all common in our lives, but where do they originate from?

Normal chemical reactions do not produce elements. The majority of the heavier elements, such as iron, are produced only by the intense chemical and physical reactions within stars. When these stars reach the end of their lives, they explode, producing a supernova. Supernovas scatter the heavier elements into space, where they eventually are involved in the formation of planets.

The late astronomer and philosopher Carl Sagan (1934–1996) frequently referred to humans as "star stuff." In many ways we, and all other living organisms, are formed from elements that originated within the stars.

2.1 Atoms and Atomic Bonds

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish among the types, location, and charge of subatomic particles.
2. Relate how the arrangement of electrons determines an element's reactivity.
3. Explain how isotopes are useful in the study of biology.
4. Contrast ionic and covalent bonds.
5. Identify the reactants and products in a chemical equation.

As you are studying right now, everything around you, including your desk and computer, is made of matter. **Matter** may be defined as anything that takes up space and has mass. Matter can exist as a solid, a liquid, or a gas. Living organisms, such as ourselves, and nonliving things, such as the air we breathe, are all made of matter.

All matter is composed of elements. An **element** is a substance that cannot be broken down into another substance by ordinary chemical means. There are only 92 naturally occurring elements, and each of these differs from the others in its chemical or physical properties, such as density, solubility, melting point, and reactivity.

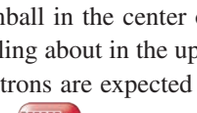
While all of the elements are present on Earth, the proportion of each element differs between living organisms and nonliving things. Four of these elements—carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and oxygen—make up about 96% of the body weight of most organisms (**Fig. 2.1**), from simple, one-celled lifeforms to complex, multicellular plants and animals. Other elements, such as phosphorus, calcium, and sulfur, may also be found in abundance. A number of elements, including minerals such as zinc and chromium, are found at very low, or *trace*, levels in living organisms. Regardless of their abundance and function in living organisms, the basic building blocks of each element share some common characteristics.

Atomic Structure

The *atomic theory* states that elements consist of tiny particles called **atoms.** Because each element consists of only one kind of atom, the same name is given to an element and its atoms. This name is represented by one or two letters, called the **atomic symbol.** For example, the symbol H stands for an atom of hydrogen, and the symbol Na (for *natrium* in Latin) stands for an atom of sodium.

If we could look inside a single atom, we would see that it is made mostly of three types of subatomic particles: **neutrons,** which have no electrical charge; **protons,** which have a positive charge; and **electrons,** which have a negative charge. Protons and neutrons are located within the center of an atom, which is called the **nucleus,** while electrons move about the nucleus.

Figure 2.2 shows the arrangement of the subatomic particles in a helium atom, which has only two electrons. In Figure 2.2*b*, the circle represents the approximate location of the electrons based on their energy state. However, electrons are in a constant state of motion, so their estimated location is often shown as a cloud (Fig. 2.2*a*). Overall, most of an atom is empty space. In fact, if we could draw an atom the size of a baseball stadium, the nucleus would be like a gumball in the center of the stadium, and the electrons would be tiny specks whirling about in the upper stands. Usually, we can only indicate where the electrons are expected to be. In our analogy, the electrons might very well stray outside the stadium at times.



From our discussion of elements, you might expect each atom to have a certain mass. In effect, the **mass number** of an atom is just about equal to the sum of its protons and neutrons. Protons and neutrons are assigned one mass unit each. Electrons, being matter, have mass, but they are so small that their mass is assumed to be zero in most calculations. The term *mass* is used, rather than *weight,* because mass is constant but weight is associated with gravity and thus would vary depending on your location in the universe.

All atoms of an element have the same number of protons. This is called the atom's **atomic number.** The number of protons makes an atom unique and may be used to identify which element the atom belongs to. As we will see, the number of neutrons may vary between atoms of an element. The average of the mass numbers for these atoms is called the **atomic mass.**

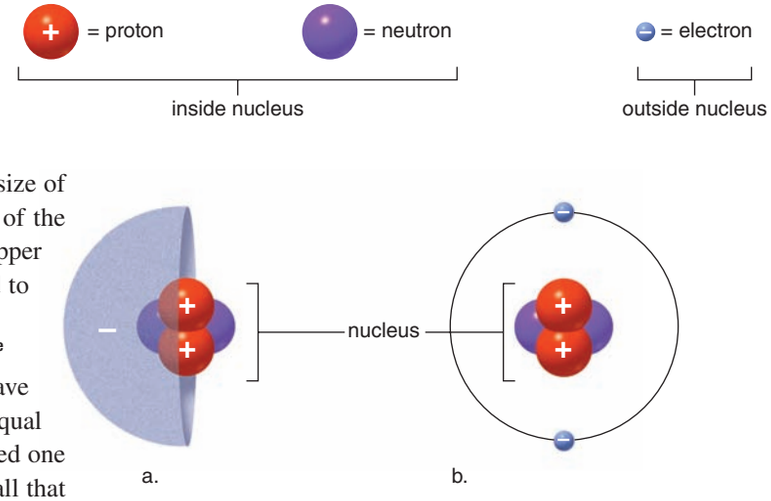
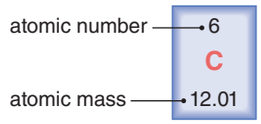


Figure 2.2 Two models of helium (He).

Atoms contain subatomic particles, which are located as shown in these two simplified models of helium. Protons are positively charged, neutrons have no charge, and electrons are negatively charged. Protons and neutrons are within the nucleus, and electrons are outside the nucleus. **a.** This model shows electrons as a negatively charged cloud around the nucleus. **b.** In this model, the average location of electrons is represented by a circle.

The Periodic Table

Once chemists discovered a number of the elements, they began to realize that the elements' chemical and physical characteristics recur in a predictable manner. The periodic table (**Fig. 2.3**) was developed as a way to display the elements, and therefore the atoms, according to these characteristics. In a periodic table, the atomic number is written above the atomic symbol. The atomic mass is written below the atomic symbol. For example, the carbon atom is shown in this way:



Every atom is in a particular period (the horizontal rows) and in a particular group (the vertical columns). The atoms in group 8 are called the *noble gases* because they are gases that rarely react with another atom, for reasons we will discuss later. Notice that helium (He) and neon (Ne) are noble gases.

The atomic number tells you the number of positively charged protons. If the atom is electrically neutral, then the atomic number also indicates the number of negatively charged electrons. To determine the usual number of neutrons, subtract the number of protons from the atomic mass, written below the atomic symbol, and take the closest whole number.

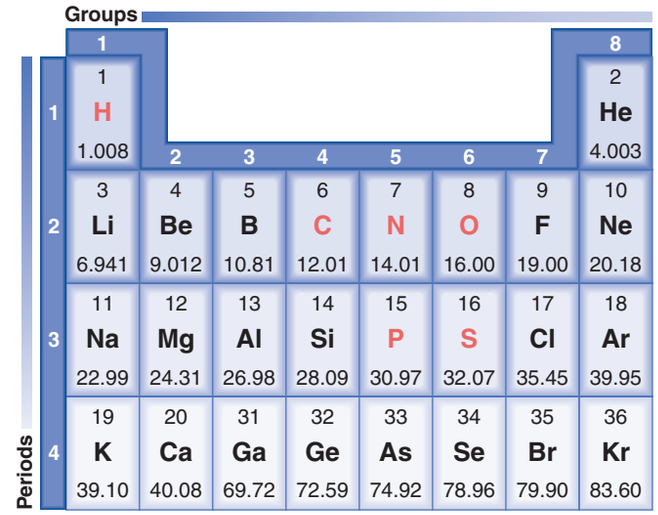


Figure 2.3 A portion of the periodic table.

In the periodic table, the elements, and therefore the atoms that compose them, are in the order of their atomic numbers but arranged in periods (horizontal rows) and groups (vertical columns). All the atoms in a particular group have certain chemical characteristics in common. The elements highlighted in red make up the the majority of matter in living organisms. A full periodic table is provided in Appendix B.

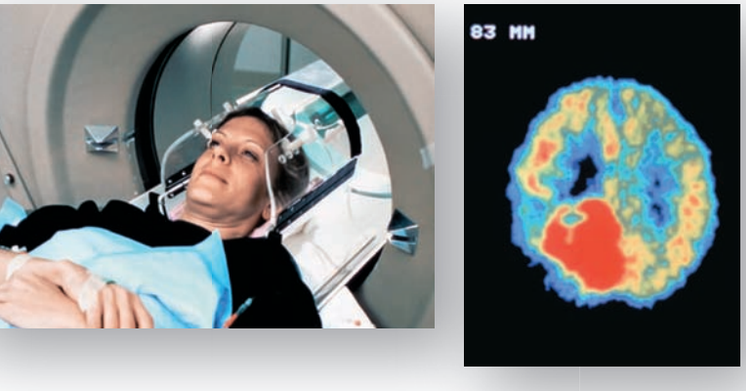


Figure 2.4 PET scan.

In a PET scan, red indicates areas of greatest metabolic activity, and blue means areas of least activity. Computers analyze the data from different sections of an organ—in this case, the human brain.

a.

b.

Figure 2.5 High levels of radiation.

a. The Fukushima nuclear facility. Following a tsunami, an accident at this facility released radioactive isotopes into the environment. **b.** Radiation can also be used to sterilize items, such as mail and packages, to protect us from biological agents, such as anthrax.

Isotopes

Isotopes are atoms of the same element that differ in the number of neutrons. In other words, isotopes have the same number of protons, but they have different mass numbers. In some cases, a nucleus with excess neutrons is unstable and may decay and emit radiation. These isotopes are said to be radioactive. However, not all isotopes are radioactive. The radiation given off by radioactive isotopes can be detected in various ways. Most people are familiar with the use of a Geiger counter to detect radiation. However, other methods to detect radiation exist that are useful in medicine and science.

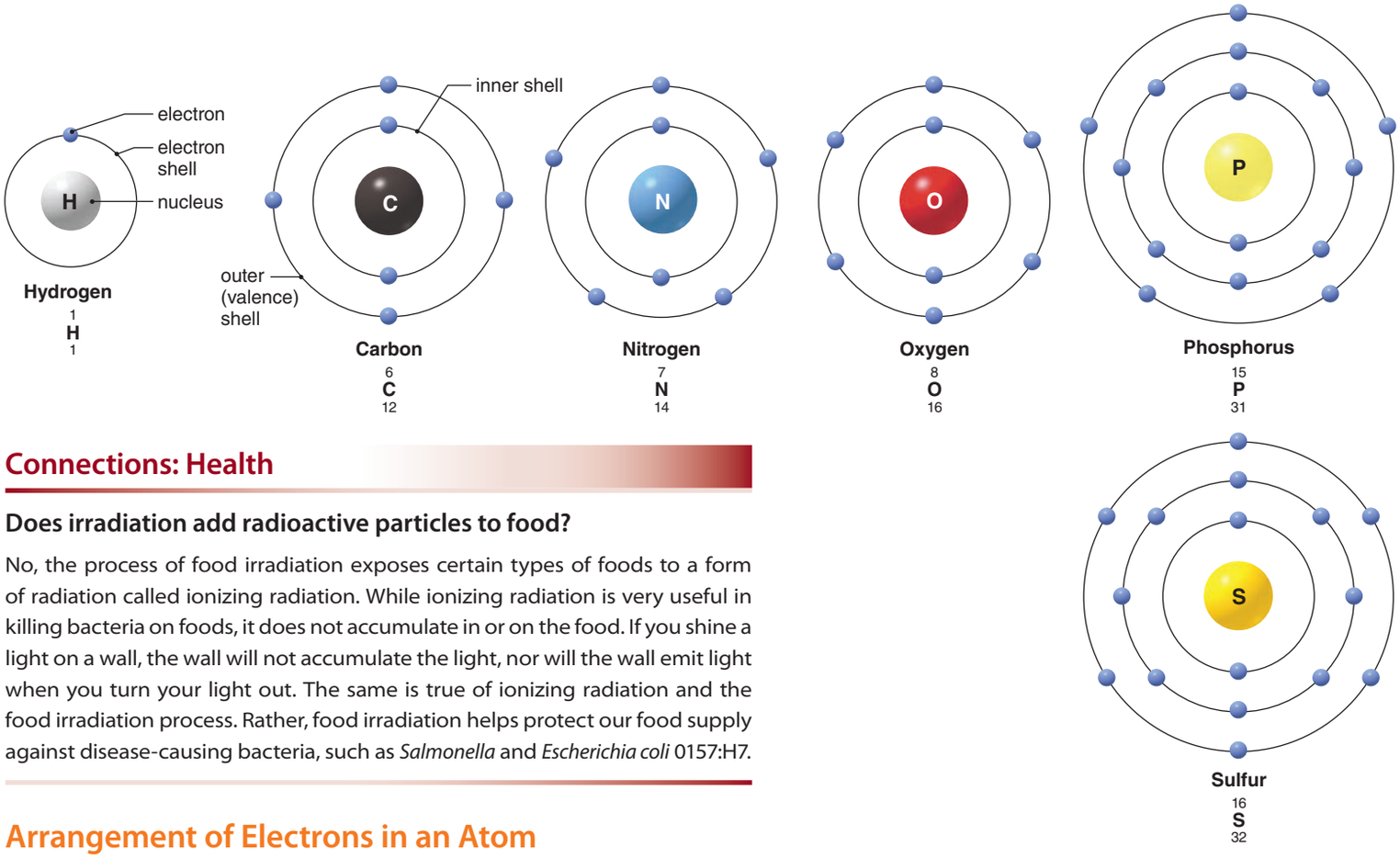
Animation Half-Life

Uses of Radioactive Isotopes The importance of chemistry to biology and medicine is nowhere more evident than in the many uses of radioactive isotopes. For example, radioactive isotopes can be used as tracers to detect molecular changes or to destroy abnormal or infectious cells. Since both radioactive isotopes and stable isotopes contain the same number of electrons and protons, they essentially behave the same in chemical reactions. Therefore, a researcher can use a small amount of radioactive isotope as a tracer to detect how a group of cells or an organ is processing a certain element or molecule. For example, by giving a person a small amount of radioactive iodine (I-131), it is possible to determine whether the thyroid is functioning properly. Another example is a procedure called positron-emission tomography (PET), which utilizes tracers to determine the comparative activity of tissues. A radioactively labeled glucose tracer that emits a positron (a subatomic particle that is the opposite of an electron) is injected into the body. Positrons emit small amounts of radiation, which may be detected by sensors and analyzed by a computer. The result is a color image that shows which tissues took up glucose and are thus metabolically active (**Fig. 2.4**). A number of conditions, such as tumors, Alzheimer disease, epilepsy, or a stroke, may be detected using PET scans.

Animation Nuclear Medicine

Radioactive substances in the environment can cause harmful chemical changes in cells, damage DNA, and cause cancer. The release of radioactive particles following a nuclear power plant accident can have far-reaching and long-lasting effects on human health. For example, the 2011 Pacific tsunamis caused a release of radioactive caesium-137 from the Fukushima nuclear facility (**Fig. 2.5***a*). But the effects of radiation can also be put to good use. Packets of radioactive isotopes can be placed in the body, so that the subatomic particles emitted destroy only cancer cells, with little risk to the rest of the body.

Radiation from radioactive isotopes has been used for many years to sterilize medical and dental equipment. Since the terror attacks in 2001, mail that is destined for the White House and congressional offices in Washington, DC, is irradiated to protect against dangerous biological agents, such as anthrax (Fig. 2.5*b*).



Connections: Health

Does irradiation add radioactive particles to food?

No, the process of food irradiation exposes certain types of foods to a form of radiation called ionizing radiation. While ionizing radiation is very useful in killing bacteria on foods, it does not accumulate in or on the food. If you shine a light on a wall, the wall will not accumulate the light, nor will the wall emit light when you turn your light out. The same is true of ionizing radiation and the food irradiation process. Rather, food irradiation helps protect our food supply against disease-causing bacteria, such as *Salmonella* and *Escherichia coli* 0157:H7.

Arrangement of Electrons in an Atom

Electrons in atoms are much like the blades of a ceiling fan. When the fan is moving, it is difficult to see the individual blades, and all you see is a whirling blur. When the fan is stopped, each blade has a specific location and can be seen. Likewise, the electrons of an atom are constantly moving. Although it is not possible to determine the precise location of an individual electron at any given moment, it is useful to construct models of atoms that show electrons at discrete energy levels about the nucleus (**Fig. 2.6**). It seems reasonable to suggest that negatively charged electrons are attracted to the positively charged nucleus, and therefore it takes an increasing amount of energy to push them farther away from the nucleus. Electrons in outer energy levels, therefore, contain more energy than those in inner energy levels.

Each energy level contains a certain number of electrons. In the models shown in Figure 2.6, the energy levels (also called electron shells) are drawn as concentric rings about the nucleus. These shells represent the energy of the electrons, not necessarily their physical location. The first shell closest to the nucleus can contain two electrons; thereafter, shells increase in the number of electrons that they may contain (second shell = 8, third = 16, etc.). In atoms with more than one electron shell, the lower level is generally filled with electrons first before electrons are added to higher levels.

The sulfur atom, with an atomic number of 16, has two electrons in the first shell, eight electrons in the second shell, and six electrons in the third, or outer, shell. Notice in the periodic table (see Fig. 2.3) that sulfur is in the third period. In other words, the period tells you how many shells an atom has. Also note that sulfur is in group 6. The group tells you how many electrons an atom has in its outer shell.

Figure 2.6 **Atoms of the six important elements.**

Electrons orbit the nucleus at particular energy levels (electron shells): The first shell contains up to two electrons, and each shell thereafter can contain up to eight electrons (until we consider atoms with an atomic number above 20). Each shell is to be filled before electrons are placed in the next shell.

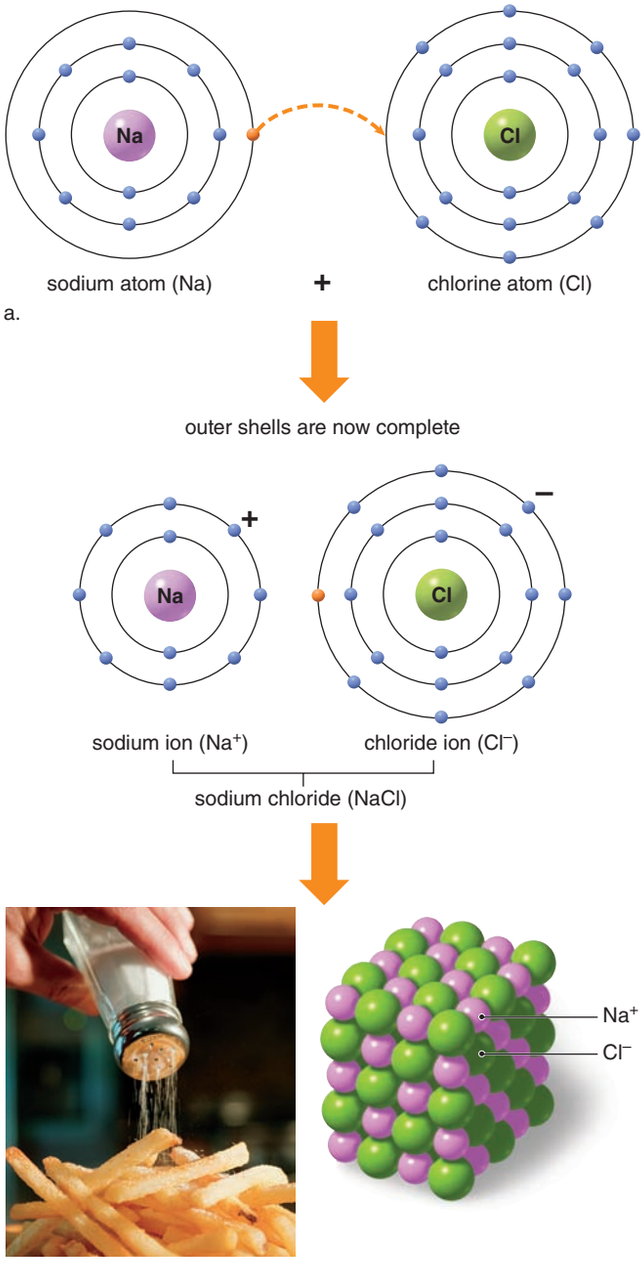


Figure 2.7 **Formation of sodium chloride.**

a. During the formation of sodium chloride, an electron is transferred from the sodium atom to the chlorine atom. At the completion of the reaction, each atom has eight electrons in the outer shell, but each also carries a charge as shown. **b.** In a sodium chloride crystal (commonly called salt), attraction between the Na^+ and Cl^- ions causes the atoms to assume a three-dimensional lattice shape.

If an atom has only one shell, the outer shell is complete when it has two electrons. If an atom has two or more shells, the outer shell is most stable when it has eight electrons; this is called the **octet rule.** As mentioned previously, atoms in group 8 of the periodic table are called the noble gases because they do not ordinarily undergo reactions. Atoms with fewer than eight electrons in the outer shell react with other atoms in such a way that each has a completed outer shell after the reaction. Atoms can give up, accept, or share electrons in order to have eight electrons in the outer shell. In other words, the number of electrons in an atom's outer shell, called the **valence shell,** determines its chemical reactivity. The size of an atom is also important. Both carbon (C) and silicon (Si) atoms are in group 4, and therefore they have four electrons in their valence shells. This means they can bond with as many as four other atoms in order to achieve eight electrons in their outer shells. But carbon in period 2 has two shells, and silicon in period 3 has three shells. The smaller atom, carbon, can bond to other carbon atoms and form long-chained molecules, while the larger silicon atom is unable to bond to other silicon atoms. This partially explains why carbon, and not silicon, plays an important role in building the molecules of life. Overall, the chemical properties of atoms—that is, the ways they react—are largely determined by the arrangement of their electrons.

Types of Chemical Bonds

MP3 Chemical Bonding

A group of atoms bonded together is called a **molecule.** When a molecule contains atoms of more than one element, it can be called a **compound.** Compounds and molecules contain two types of chemical bonds: ionic and covalent. The type of bond that forms depends on whether two bonded atoms share electrons or whether one has given electrons to the other. For example, in hydrogen gas (H_2) the two hydrogen atoms are sharing electrons in order to fill the valence shells of both atoms. When sodium chloride (NaCl) forms, however, the sodium atom (Na) gives an electron to the chlorine (Cl) atom, and in that way each atom has eight electrons in the outer shell.

Ionic Bonding

Animation Ionic Bonds

An **ionic bond** forms when two atoms are held together by the attraction between opposite charges. The reaction between sodium and chlorine atoms is an example of how an ionic bond is formed. Consider that sodium (Na), with only one electron in its third shell, usually gives up an electron (**Fig. 2.7***a*). Once it does so, the second shell, with eight electrons, becomes its outer shell. Chlorine (Cl), on the other hand, tends to take on an electron, because its outer shell has seven electrons. If chlorine gets one more electron, it has a completed outer shell. So, when a sodium atom and a chlorine atom react, an electron is transferred from sodium to chlorine. Now both atoms have eight electrons in their outer shells.

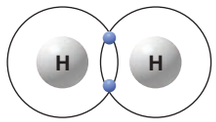
This electron transfer causes these atoms to become **ions,** or charged atoms. The sodium ion has one more proton than it has electrons; therefore, it has a net charge of +1 (symbolized by Na^+). The chloride ion has one more electron than it has protons; therefore, it has a net charge of −1 (symbolized by Cl^-). Negatively charged ions often have names that end in "ide," and thus Cl^- is called a chloride ion. In the periodic table (see Fig. 2.3), atoms in groups 1 and 2 and groups 6 and 7 become ions when they react with other atoms. Atoms in groups 2 and 6 always transfer two electrons. For example, calcium becomes Ca^{2+}, while oxygen becomes O^{2-}.

Ionic compounds are often found as **salts,** solid substances that usually separate and exist as individual ions in water. A common example is sodium

chloride (NaCl), or table salt. A sodium chloride crystal illustrates the solid form of a salt (Fig. 2.7*b*). When sodium chloride is placed in water, the ionic bonds disassociate, releasing Na^+ and Cl^- ions. Ionic compounds are most commonly found in this dissociated (ionized) form in biological systems because these systems are 70–90% water.

Covalent Bonding

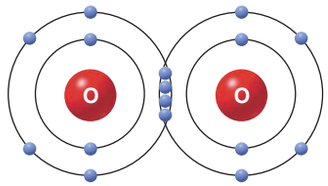
A **covalent bond** results when two atoms share electrons in order to have a completed outer shell. In a hydrogen atom, the outer shell is complete when it contains two electrons. If hydrogen is in the presence of a strong electron acceptor, it gives up its electron to become a hydrogen ion (H^+). But if this is not possible, hydrogen can share with another atom, and thereby have a completed outer shell. For example, one hydrogen atom can share with another hydrogen atom. In this case, the two orbitals overlap and the electrons are shared between them—that is, you count the electrons as belonging to both atoms:



Hydrogen gas (H_2)

Rather than drawing an orbital model like the one above, scientists often use simpler ways to indicate molecules. A *structural formula* uses straight lines, as in H—H. The straight line is used to indicate a pair of shared electrons. A *molecular formula* omits the lines that indicate bonds and simply shows the number of atoms involved, as in H_2.

Sometimes, atoms share more than two electrons to complete their octets. A double covalent bond occurs when two atoms share two pairs of electrons, as in this molecule of oxygen gas:



Oxygen gas (O_2)

In order to show that oxygen gas (O_2) contains a double bond, the structural formula is written as O=O to indicate that two pairs of electrons are shared between the oxygen atoms.

It is also possible for atoms to form triple covalent bonds, as in nitrogen gas (N_2), which can be written as N≡N. Single covalent bonds between atoms are quite strong, but double and triple bonds are even stronger.

A single atom may form bonds with more than one other atom. For example, the molecule methane results when carbon binds to four hydrogen atoms (**Fig. 2.8***a*). In methane, each bond actually points to one corner of a four-sided structure called a tetrahedron (Fig. 2.8*b*). The best model to show this arrangement is a ball-and-stick model (Fig. 2.8*c*). Space-filling models (Fig. 2.8*d*) come closest to showing the actual shape of a molecule. The shapes of molecules help dictate the functional roles they play in organisms.

MP3
Ionic and Chemical Bonding

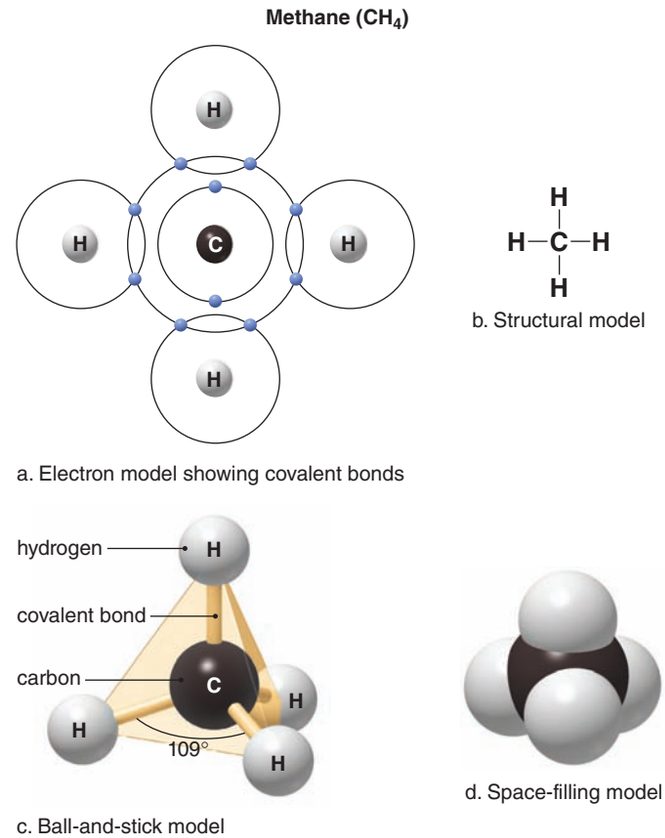
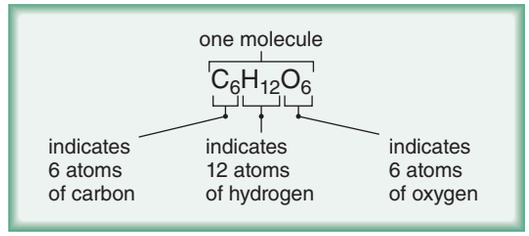


Figure 2.8 Shapes of covalently bonded molecules.

An electron model (**a**) and a structural model (**b**) show that methane (CH_4) contains one carbon atom bonded to four hydrogen atoms. **c.** The ball-and-stick model shows that, when carbon bonds to four other atoms, as in methane, each bond actually points to one corner of a tetrahedron. **d.** The space-filling model is a three-dimensional representation of the molecule.

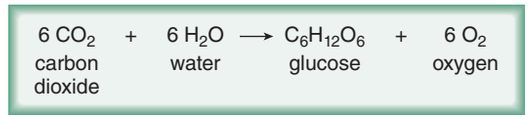
Chemical Formulas and Reactions

Chemical reactions are very important to organisms. In a chemical reaction, the molecules are often represented by a chemical formula, such as the one below for the energy molecule glucose.



Notice how the chemical formula for glucose indicates the type and quantity of each element that is found in the molecule. Chemical formulas do not indicate the arrangement of these elements. As we will see later, they are sometimes several different structures that can be formed based on a chemical formula.

We have already noted that the process of photosynthesis enables plants to make molecular energy available to themselves and other organisms. An overall equation for photosynthesis indicates that some bonds are broken and others are formed:



This equation says that six molecules of carbon dioxide react with six molecules of water to form one glucose molecule and six molecules of oxygen. The **reactants** (molecules that participate in the reaction) are shown on the left of the arrow, and the **products** (molecules formed by the reaction) are shown on the right. Notice that the equation is "balanced"—that is, the same number of each type of atom occurs on both sides of the arrow.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Subatomic particles determine how elements bond to form molecules and compounds.

Check Your Progress 2.1

1. Describe the structure of an atom, including the charge of each subatomic particle.
2. Define the term isotope, and list a few beneficial uses of radioactive isotopes.
3. Explain the differences between covalent and ionic bonds.
4. Summarize the octet rule and explain how it affects an element's reactivity.
5. Distinguish between reactants and products in a chemical equation.

2.2 Water's Importance to Life

Learning Outcome

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the general structure of a water molecule.
2. List the properties of water that are important to life.
3. Understand the importance of hydrogen bonds to the properties of water.

Life began in water, and it is the single most important molecule on Earth. All organisms are 70–90% water; their cells consist of membranous compartments enclosing aqueous solutions. The structure of a water molecule (**Fig. 2.9**) gives it unique properties. These properties play an important role in how living organisms function.

The Structure of Water

The electrons shared between two atoms in a covalent bond are not always shared equally. Atoms differ in their **electronegativity**—that is, their affinity for electrons in a covalent bond. The electronegativity of an atom is related to the number of protons in its nucleus; atoms with a larger number of protons tend to have a higher affinity, and electronegativity, for electrons than do atoms with fewer protons. In addition, atoms that are more electronegative tend to hold shared electrons more tightly than do those that are not. This causes the bond to become **polar,** meaning that the atoms on both sides of the bond are partially charged, even though the overall molecule itself bears no net charge. For example, in water, oxygen shares electrons with two hydrogen atoms. Oxygen is more electronegative than hydrogen, so the two bonds are polar. The shared electrons spend more time orbiting the oxygen nucleus than the hydrogen nuclei, and this unequal sharing of electrons makes water a polar molecule. The covalent bonds are angled, and the molecule is bent roughly into a ∧ shape. The point of the ∧ (oxygen) is the negative (−) end, and the two hydrogens are the positive (+) end (Fig. 2.9*a*).

The polarity of water molecules causes them to be attracted to one another. The positive hydrogen atoms in one molecule are attracted to the negative oxygen atoms in other water molecules. This attraction is called a **hydrogen bond,** and each water molecule can engage in as many as four hydrogen bonds (Fig. 2.9*b*). The covalent bond is much stronger than a hydrogen bond, but the large number of hydrogen bonds in water make for a strong attractive force. The properties of water are due to its polarity and its ability to form hydrogen bonds.

Properties of Water

We often take water for granted, but without water, life as we know it would not exist. The properties of water that support life are solvency, cohesion and adhesion, high surface tension, high heat capacity, high heat of vaporization, and varying density.

Animation Water Properties

Water Is a Solvent Because of its polarity and H-bonding ability, water dissolves a great number of substances. Molecules that are attracted to water are

Figure 2.9 The structure of water.

The properties of water play an important role in all life, including the kingfisher shown here. **a.** The space-filling model shows the ∧ shape of a water molecule. Oxygen attracts the shared electrons more than hydrogen atoms do, and this causes the molecule to be polar: The oxygen carries a slightly negative charge and the hydrogens carry a slightly positive charge. **b.** The positive hydrogens form hydrogen bonds with the negative oxygen in nearby molecules.

said to be **hydrophilic** (*hydro*, water; *phil*, love). Polar and ionized molecules are usually hydrophilic. Nonionized and nonpolar molecules that are not attracted to water are said to be **hydrophobic** (*hydro*, water; *phob*, fear).

When a salt such as sodium chloride (NaCl) is put into water, the negative ends of the water molecules are attracted to the sodium ions, and the positive ends of the water molecules are attracted to the chloride ions. This attraction causes the sodium ions and the chloride ions to break up, or dissociate, in water:

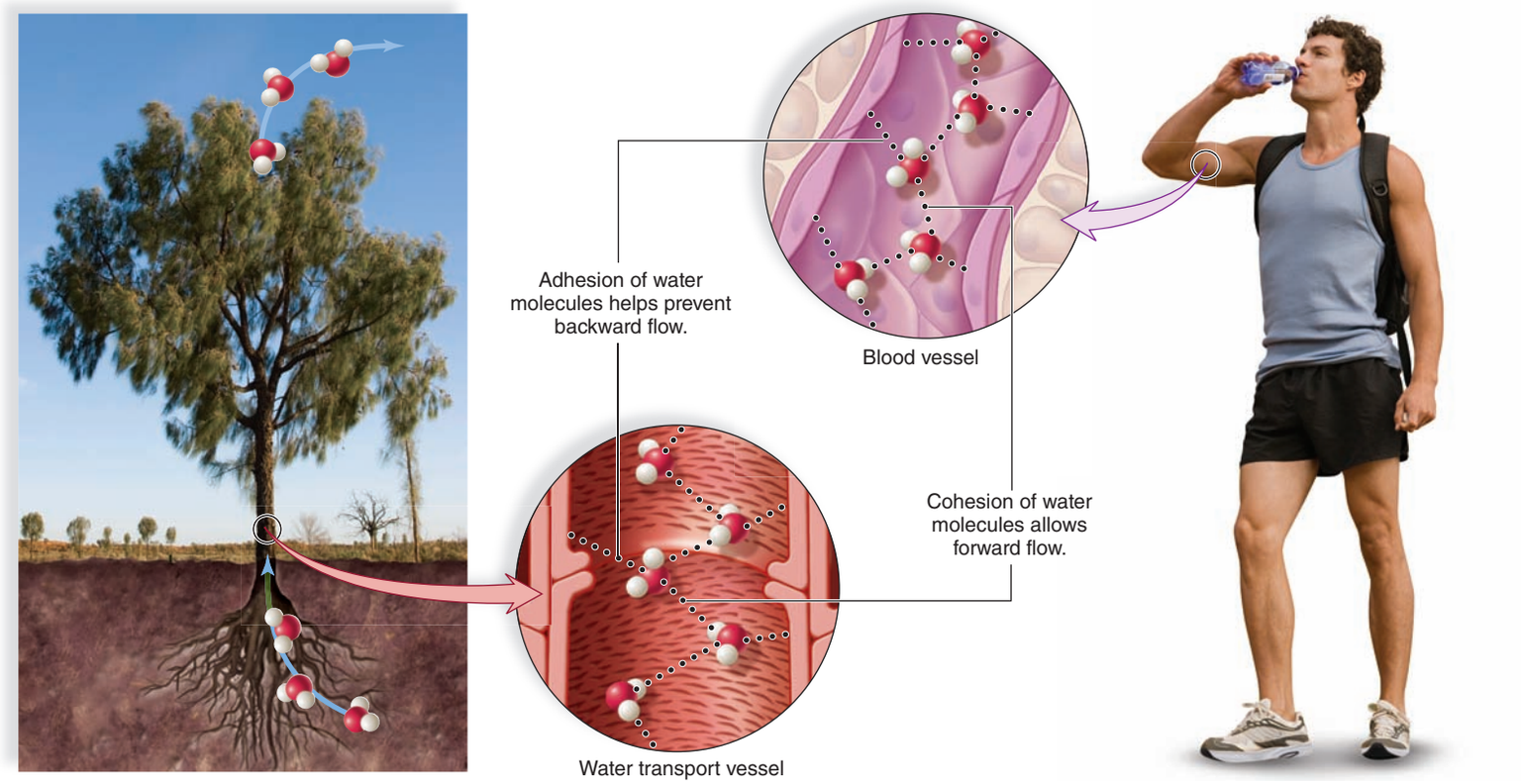
The salt NaCl dissociates in water.

Water dissolves many polar nonionic substances, such as long chains of glucose, by forming H bonds with them. When ions and molecules disperse in water, they move about and collide, allowing reactions to occur. As mentioned, cellular fluids are aqueous solutions of various substances, and so are the oceans. Without the dissolving power of water, aquatic organisms could not take up the substances they need from the water.

Water Molecules Are Cohesive and Adhesive *Cohesion* refers to the ability of water molecules to cling to each other due to hydrogen bonding. Because of cohesion, water exists as a liquid under ordinary conditions of temperature and pressure. The strong cohesion of water molecules is apparent because water flows freely, yet the molecules do not separate from each other. *Adhesion* refers to the ability of water molecules to cling to other polar surfaces. This is because of water's polarity. The positive and negative poles of water molecules cause them to adhere to other polar surfaces.

Figure 2.10 **Cohesion and adhesion of water molecules.**

Water's properties of cohesion and adhesion make it an excellent transport medium in both trees and humans.



Due to cohesion and adhesion, liquid water is an excellent transport system (**Fig. 2.10**). Both within and outside the cell, water assists in the transport of nutrient and waste materials. Many multicellular animals contain internal vessels in which water assists the transport of materials. The liquid portion of blood, which transports dissolved and suspended substances about the body, is 90% water. The cohesion and adhesion of water molecules allow blood to fill the tubular vessels of the cardiovascular system, making transport possible. Cohesion and adhesion also contribute to the transport of water in plants. Plants have their roots anchored in the soil, where they absorb water, but the leaves are uplifted and exposed to solar energy. Water evaporating from the leaves is immediately replaced with water molecules from transport vessels that extend from the roots to the leaves. Because water molecules are cohesive, a tension is created that pulls a water column up from the roots. Adhesion of water to the walls of the vessels also helps prevent the water column from breaking apart.

Water Has a High Surface Tension Because the water molecules at the surface are more strongly attracted to each other than to the air above, water molecules at the surface cling tightly to each other. Thus, we say that water exhibits surface tension. The stronger the force between molecules in a liquid, the greater the surface tension. Hydrogen bonding is the main force that causes water to have a high surface tension. If you slowly fill a glass with water, you may notice that the level of the water forms a small dome above the top of the glass. This is due to the surface tension of water.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How do some insects walk on water?

Anyone who has visited a pond or stream has witnessed insects walking on the surface of the water. These insects, commonly called water striders, have evolved this ability by adapting to two properties of water—its surface tension and the fact that water is a polar molecule. By trapping small air bubbles in the hairs on their legs, water striders are able to remain buoyant and not break the surface tension of the water molecules. Many water striders also secrete a nonpolar wax, which further repels the water molecules and keeps the insect afloat.

Water Has a High Heat Capacity The many hydrogen bonds that link water molecules allow water to absorb heat without greatly changing in temperature. Water's high heat capacity is important not only for aquatic organisms but for all organisms. Because the temperature of water rises and falls slowly, terrestrial organisms are better able to maintain their normal internal temperatures and are protected from rapid temperature changes.

Water also has a high heat of vaporization: It takes a great deal of heat to break the hydrogen bonds in water so that it becomes gaseous and evaporates into the environment. If the heat given off by our metabolic activities were to go directly into raising our body temperature, death would follow. Instead, the heat is dispelled as sweat evaporates (**Fig. 2.11**).

Figure 2.11 **Heat of vaporization.**

At room temperature, water is a liquid. **a.** Water takes a large amount of heat to vaporize at 100°C. **b.** It takes much body heat to vaporize sweat, which is mostly liquid water, and this helps keep our bodies cool when the temperature rises.

a.

b.

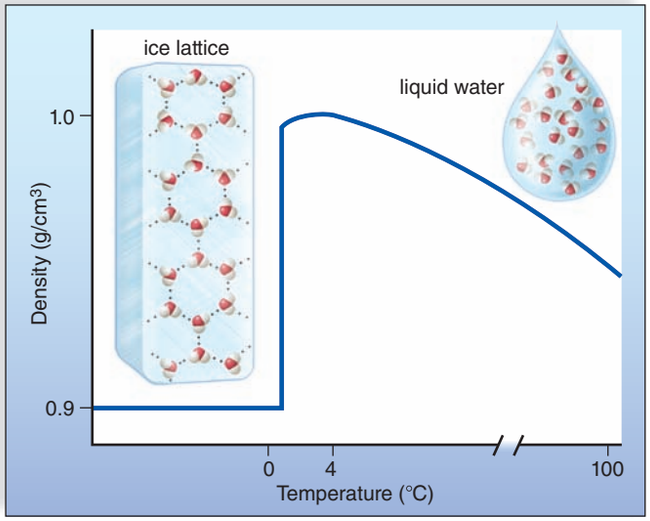


Figure 2.12 **Properties of ice.**

The geometric requirements of hydrogen bonding of water molecules cause ice to be less dense than liquid water.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Water is an essential molecule of life.

Because of water's high heat capacity and high heat of vaporization, temperatures along the Earth's coasts are moderate. During the summer, the ocean absorbs and stores solar heat; during the winter, the ocean releases it slowly. In contrast, the interior regions of the continents experience abrupt changes in temperature.

Ice Is Less Dense Than Water Unlike other substances, water expands as it freezes, which explains why cans of soda burst when placed in a freezer and how roads in northern climates become bumpy because of "frost heaves" in the winter. Since water expands as it freezes, it is less dense than liquid water, and therefore ice floats on liquid water (**Fig. 2.12**).

Connections: Ecology

Why is it important that ice is less dense than water?

If ice were more dense than water, it would sink, and ponds, lakes, and perhaps even the ocean would freeze solid, making life impossible in the water as well as on land. Instead, bodies of water always freeze from the top down. When a body of water freezes on the surface, the ice acts as an insulator to prevent the water below it from freezing. This protects aquatic organisms, so that they can survive the winter. As ice melts in the spring, it draws heat from the environment, helping prevent a sudden change in temperature that might be harmful to life.

Check Your Progress 2.2

1. Explain how the structure of a water molecule gives it unique properties.
2. Describe how the properties of water make it an important molecule for life.
3. Explain how hydrogen bonds relate to the properties of water.

2.3 Acids and Bases

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish between an acid and a base.
2. Interpret the pH scale.
3. Explain the purpose of a buffer.

As shown in the equation below, when water dissociates (breaks apart), it releases an equal number of hydrogen ions (H^+) and hydroxide ions (OH^-).

$$\underset{\text{water}}{H-O-H} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{hydrogen ion}}{H^+} + \underset{\text{hydroxide ion}}{OH^-}$$

We can determine whether a solution is acidic or basic by examining the proportion of hydrogen and hydroxide ions in the solution.

Acidic Solutions (High H^+ Concentration)

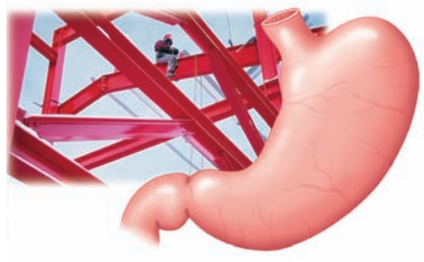
Lemon juice, vinegar, tomato juice, and coffee are all acidic solutions. Acidic solutions have a sharp or sour taste, and therefore we sometimes associate them with indigestion. What do they have in common? To a chemist, **acids** are substances that dissociate in water, releasing hydrogen ions (H^+). For example, an important acid is hydrochloric acid (HCl), which dissociates in this manner:

$$\underset{\text{hydrochloric acid}}{HCl} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{hydrogen ion}}{H^+} + \underset{\text{chloride ion}}{Cl^-}$$

Acidic solutions have a higher concentration of H^+ ions than OH^- ions. The acidity of a substance depends on how fully it dissociates in water. HCl dissociates almost completely; therefore, it is called a strong acid. If hydrochloric acid is added to a beaker of water, the number of hydrogen ions (H^+) increases greatly.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How strong is the acid in your stomach?



Within the gastric juice of the stomach is hydrochloric acid (HCl), which has a pH value between 1.0 and 2.0. This makes the contents of your stomach around 1 million times more acidic than water and 100 times more acidic than vinegar. While theoretically the gastric juice in your stomach is able to dissolve metals, such as steel, in reality the contents of your stomach are exposed to these extreme pH values for only a short period of time before moving into the remainder of the intestinal tract, where the acid levels are quickly neutralized.

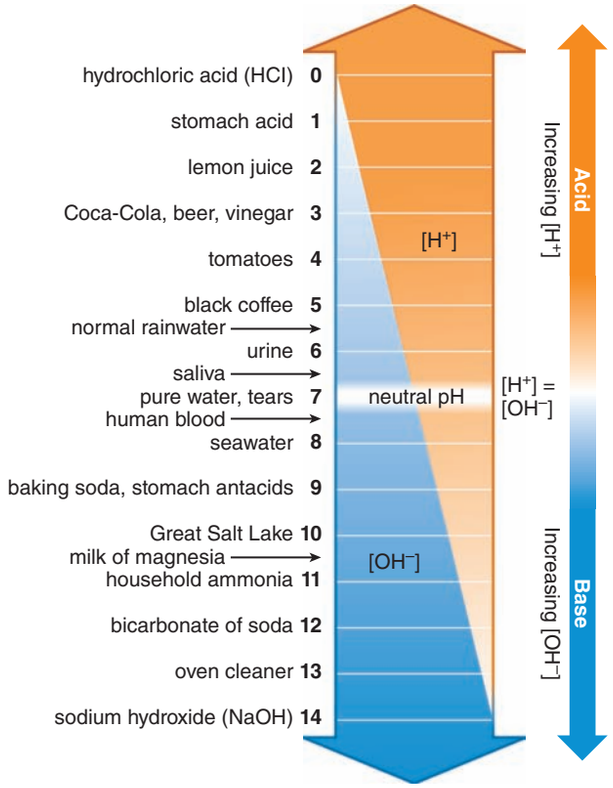


Figure 2.13 **The pH scale.**

The proportionate amount of hydrogen ions to hydroxide ions is indicated by the diagonal line. Any solution with a pH above 7 is basic, while any solution with a pH below 7 is acidic.

Basic Solutions (Low H^+ Concentration)

Milk of magnesia and ammonia are common basic (alkaline) solutions that most people are familiar with. Basic solutions have a bitter taste and feel slippery when in water. To a chemist, **bases** are substances that either take up hydrogen ions (H^+) or release hydroxide ions (OH^-). For example, an important base is sodium hydroxide (NaOH), which dissociates in this manner:

$$\underset{\text{sodium hydroxide}}{NaOH} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{sodium ion}}{Na^+} + \underset{\text{hydroxide ion}}{OH^-}$$

Basic solutions have a higher concentration of OH^- ions than H^+ ions. Like acids, the strength of a base is determined by how fully it dissociates. Dissociation of sodium hydroxide is almost complete; therefore, it is called a strong base. If sodium hydroxide is added to a beaker of water, the number of hydroxide ions increases.

Many strong bases, such as ammonia, are useful household cleansers. Ammonia has a poison symbol and carries a strong warning not to ingest the product. Neither acids nor bases should be tasted, because they are quite destructive to cells.

pH and the pH Scale

pH[1] is a mathematical way of indicating the number of hydrogen ions in a solution. The **pH scale** is used to indicate the acidity or basicity of a solution. The pH scale ranges from 0 to 14 (**Fig. 2.13**). A pH of 7 represents a neutral state in which the hydrogen ion and hydroxide ion concentrations are equal, as in pure water. A pH below 7 is acidic because the hydrogen ion concentration, commonly expressed in brackets as $[H^+]$, is greater than the hydroxide concentration, $[OH^-]$. A pH above 7 is basic because $[OH^-]$ is greater than $[H^+]$. Further, as we move down the pH scale from pH 7 to pH 0, each unit has 10 times the acidity $[H^+]$ of the previous unit. As we move up the scale from 7 to 14, each unit has 10 times the basicity $[OH^-]$ of the previous unit.

The pH scale was devised to eliminate the use of cumbersome numbers. For example, the hydrogen ion concentrations of these solutions are on the left, and the pH is on the right:

$[H^+]$ (moles per liter)			pH
0.000001	=	1×10^{-6}	6 (acid)
0.0000001	=	1×10^{-7}	7 (neutral)
0.00000001	=	1×10^{-8}	8 (base)

The effect of pH on organisms is dramatically illustrated by the phenomenon known as acid precipitation. When fossil fuels are burned, sulfur dioxide and nitrogen oxides are produced, and they combine with water in the atmosphere to form acids. These acids then come in contact with organisms and objects, leading to damage or even death (**Fig. 2.14**).

[1] pH is defined as the negative log of the hydrogen ion concentration, or -log[H^+]. A log is the power to which 10 must be raised to produce a given number.

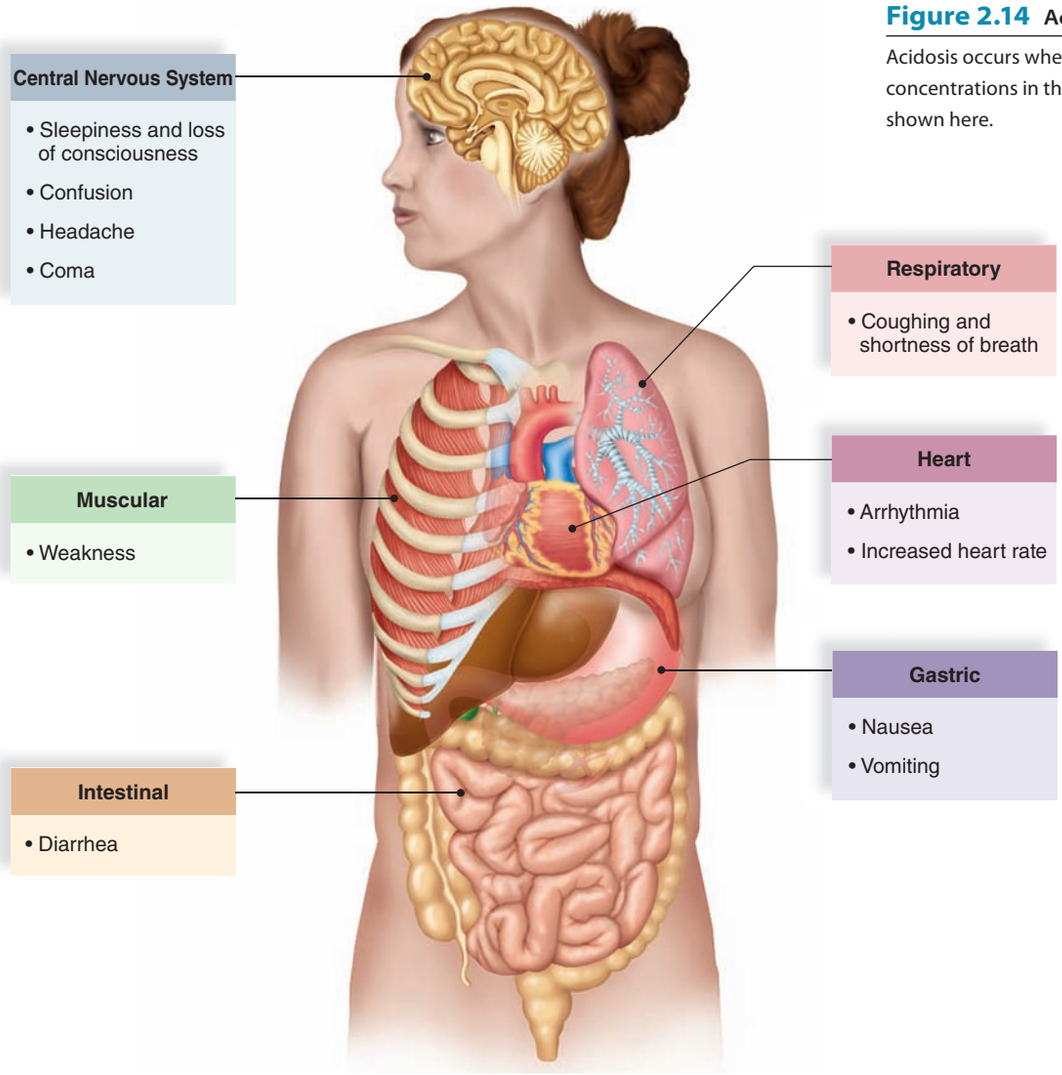


Figure 2.14 Acidosis.

Acidosis occurs when the body in unable to buffer high H^+ ion concentrations in the blood. Some of the symptoms of acidosis are shown here.

Buffers and pH

A **buffer** is a chemical or a combination of chemicals that keeps pH within normal limits. Buffers resist pH changes because they can take up excess hydrogen ions (H^+) or hydroxide ions (OH^-). In the human body, pH needs to be kept within a narrow range in order to maintain homeostasis. Diseases such as diabetes and congestive heart failure may bring on a condition called acidosis, in which the body is unable to buffer the excessive production of H^+ ions. If left untreated, acidosis can cause a number of health problems (**Fig. 2.14**) and may result in coma or death.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
Living organisms must maintain specific pH levels.

Check Your Progress 2.3

1. Distinguish between an acid and a basic solution.
2. Generalize what information is given by the pH of a solution.
3. Summarize how buffers are used to regulate the pH of the human body.

Media Study Tools

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Videos	MP3 Files
2.1 Atomic Structure • Half Life • Ionic Bonds **2.2** Water Properties	**2.1** Nuclear Medicine	**2.1** Chemical Bonding • Ionic and Chemical Bonding **2.3** Water and pH • Acid-Base Balance

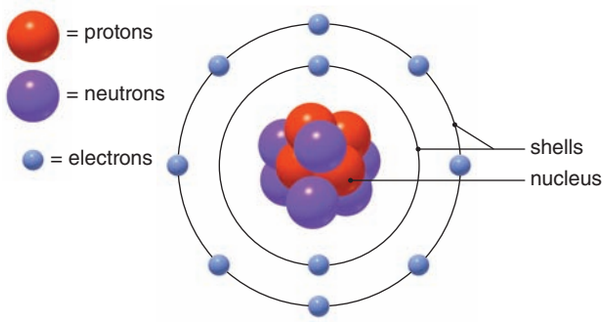
SUMMARIZE

2.1 Atoms and Atomic Bonds

Both living organisms and nonliving things are composed of **matter** consisting of **elements.** The major elements in living organisms are carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and oxygen. Elements contain **atoms,** which in turn contain subatomic particles. **Protons** have positive charges, **neutrons** are uncharged, and **electrons** have negative charges. Protons and neutrons in the **nucleus** determine the **mass number** of an atom. The **atomic number** indicates the number of protons in the nucleus. In an electrically neutral atom, the atomic number also indicates the number of electrons. **Isotopes** are atoms of a single element that differ in their number of neutrons. Radioactive isotopes have many uses, including serving as tracers in biological experiments and medical procedures.

The number of electrons in the **valence shell** (outer energy level) determines the reactivity of an atom. The first orbital is complete when it is occupied by two electrons. In atoms up through calcium, number 20, every orbital beyond the first one is complete with eight electrons. The **octet rule** states that atoms react with one another in order to have a completed outer orbital.

Atoms are often bonded together to form **molecules**. If the elements in a molecule are different, it is called a **compound.** Molecules and compounds may be held together by ionic or covalent bonds. **Ionic bonds** are formed by an attraction between oppositely charged ions. **Ions** form when atoms lose or gain one or more electrons to achieve a completed outer shell. **Covalent bonds** occur when electrons are shared between two atoms. There are single covalent bonds (sharing one pair of electrons), double (sharing two pairs of electrons), and triple (sharing three pairs of electrons).



2.2 Water's Importance to Life

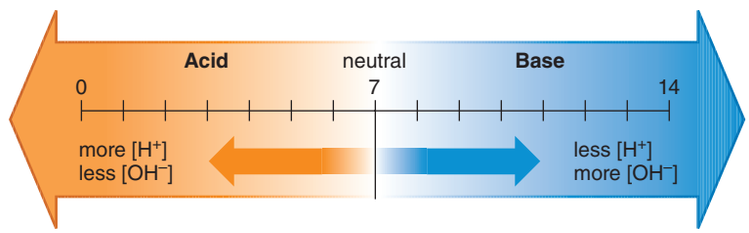
The two covalent O—H bonds of water are **polar** because the electrons are not shared equally between oxygen and hydrogen. This is because oxygen has a higher **electronegativity** than hydrogen. The positively and negatively charged ends of the molecules are attracted to each other to form **hydrogen bonds.** The polarity of water causes the attraction of **hydrophilic** molecules. Molecules that are not attracted to water are **hydrophobic.** The polarity and hydrogen bonding in water account for its unique properties, which are summarized in Table 2.1:

Table 2.1 Properties of Water

Properties	Chemical Reason(s)	Effect
Water is a solvent.	Polarity	Water facilitates chemical reactions.
Water is cohesive and adhesive.	Hydrogen bonding; polarity	Water serves as a transport medium.
Water has a high surface tension.	Hydrogen bonding	The surface tension of water is hard to break.
Water has a high heat capacity.	Hydrogen bonding	Water protects organisms from rapid changes in temperature.
Water has a high heat of vaporization.	Hydrogen bonding	Water helps organisms resist overheating.
Water is less dense than ice.	Hydrogen bonding	Ice floats on liquid water.

2.3 Acids and Bases

Water dissociates to produce an equal number of hydrogen ions (H^+) and hydroxide ions. This is neutral **pH. Acids** increase the H^+ concentration of a solution, while **bases** decrease the H^+ concentration. This **pH scale** shows the range of acidic and basic solutions:



Cells are sensitive to pH changes. Biological systems contain **buffers** that help keep the pH within a normal range.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

All life is composed of a similar set of elements. Living organisms perform chemical reactions to break down and build molecules to fit their specific needs. Knowledge of basic chemistry provides a foundation for understanding biology.

Subatomic particles determine how elements bond to form molecules and compounds.

Water is an essential molecule of life.

Living organisms must maintain specific pH levels.

For more information about the importance of chemistry in the study of biology, see the following discussions:

Section 5.3 examines how linked chemical reactions, called metabolic pathways, can be used to assemble complex compounds.

Section 20.5 examines how cohesion moves water in plants.

Section 24.1 explores how the respiratory system adjusts to changes in pH caused by the presence of carbon dioxide gas.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

2.1 Atoms and Atomic Bonds

1. The mass number of an atom depends primarily on the number of
   a. protons and neutrons. **c.** neutrons and electrons.
   b. positrons. **d.** protons and electrons.
2. The most abundant element by weight in the human body is
   a. carbon. **c.** oxygen.
   b. hydrogen. **d.** nitrogen.
3. In the following equation, name the reactants: NaCl → Na + Cl.
   a. Na **c.** NaCl
   b. Cl **d.** Both a and b
4. A covalent bond in which electrons are not shared equally is called
   a. polar. **c.** nonpolar.
   b. normal. **d.** neutral.
5. Refer to Figure 2.3. Which element has the same number of valence electrons as nitrogen (N)?
   a. carbon (C) **c.** neon (Ne)
   b. phosphorus (P) **d.** oxygen (O)

2.2 Water's Importance to Life

6. Water flows freely but does not separate into individual molecules because water is
   a. cohesive. **c.** hydrophobic.
   b. hydrophilic. **d.** adhesive.
7. Compounds having an affinity for water are said to be
   a. cohesive. **c.** hydrophobic.
   b. hydrophilic. **d.** adhesive.
8. Water freezes from the top down because
   a. water has a high surface tension.
   b. ice has a high heat capacity.
   c. ice is less dense than water.
   d. ice is less cohesive than water.
9. Water can absorb a large amount of heat without much change in temperature because it has a high
   a. surface tension.
   b. heat capacity.
   c. hydrogen ion (H^+) concentration.
   d. hydroxide ion (OH^-) concentration.

2.3 Acids and Bases

10. A pH of 3 is _____.
    a. basic **c.** acidic
    b. neutral **d.** a buffer
11. _____ contribute hydrogen ions (H+) to a solution
    a. Bases **c.** Acids
    b. Isotopes **d.** Compounds
12. To maintain a constant pH, many organisms use ____ to regulate the hydrogen ion concentration.
    a. buffers **c.** acids
    b. bases **d.** isotopes

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- pH and Cells

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. On a hot summer day you decide to dive into a swimming pool. Before you begin your dive, you notice that the surface of the water is smooth and continuous. After the dive, you discover that some water droplets are clinging to your skin and that your skin temperature feels cooler. Explain these observations based on the properties of water.
2. Like carbon, silicon has four electrons in its outer shell, yet life evolved to be carbon-based. What is there about silicon's structure that might prevent it from sharing with four other elements and prevent it from forming the many varied shapes of carbon molecules?
3. Antacids are a common over-the-counter remedy for heartburn, a condition caused by an overabundance of H^+ ions in the stomach. Based on what you know regarding pH, how do the chemicals in antacids work?
4. Acid precipitation is produced when atmospheric water is polluted by sulfur dioxide and nitrous oxide emissions. These emissions are mostly produced by the burning of fossil fuels, particularly coal. In the atmosphere, these compounds are converted to sulfuric and nitric acids, and are absorbed into water droplets in the atmosphere. Eventually they fall back to Earth as acid precipitation. How do you think that acid precipitation can negatively influence an ecosystem?

3

The Organic Molecules of Life

OUTLINE

3.1 Organic Molecules 39

3.2 The Biological Molecules of Cells 41

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 2.1 What is a covalent bond?

Section 2.2 What is the difference between hydrophobic and hydrophilic molecules?

Figure 2.8 How are molecules represented in a diagram?

Not All Cholesterol Is Bad

Without cholesterol, your body would not function well. What is it about cholesterol that can cause problems in your body? Although blood tests now distinguish between "good" cholesterol and "bad" cholesterol, in reality there is only one molecule called cholesterol. Cholesterol is essential to the normal functioning of cells. It is a part of the cell's outer membrane, and it serves as a precursor to hormones, such as the sex hormones testosterone and estrogen. Without cholesterol, your cells would be in major trouble.

So when does cholesterol become "bad"? Your body packages cholesterol in high-density lipoproteins (HDLs) or low-density lipoproteins (LDLs), depending on such factors as genetics, your diet, your activity level, and whether you smoke. Cholesterol packaged as HDL is primarily on its way from the tissues to the liver for recycling. This reduces the likelihood of the formation of deposits called plaques in the arteries; thus, HDL cholesterol is considered "good." LDL is carrying cholesterol to the tissues; high levels of LDL cholesterol contribute to the development of plaque, which can result in heart disease, making LDL the "bad" form. When cholesterol levels are measured, the ratio of LDL to HDL is determined. Exercising, improving your diet, and not smoking can all lower LDL levels. In addition, a variety of prescription medications can help lower LDL levels and raise HDL levels. These lipoproteins are just one example of the organic molecules that our bodies need to function correctly.

In this chapter, you will learn about the structure and function of the major classes of organic molecules, including carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What class of biological molecules does cholesterol belong to?
2. Is cholesterol a hydrophobic or hydrophilic molecule?
3. What distinguishes cholestrol from other biological molecules?

3.1 Organic Molecules

Learning Outcomes

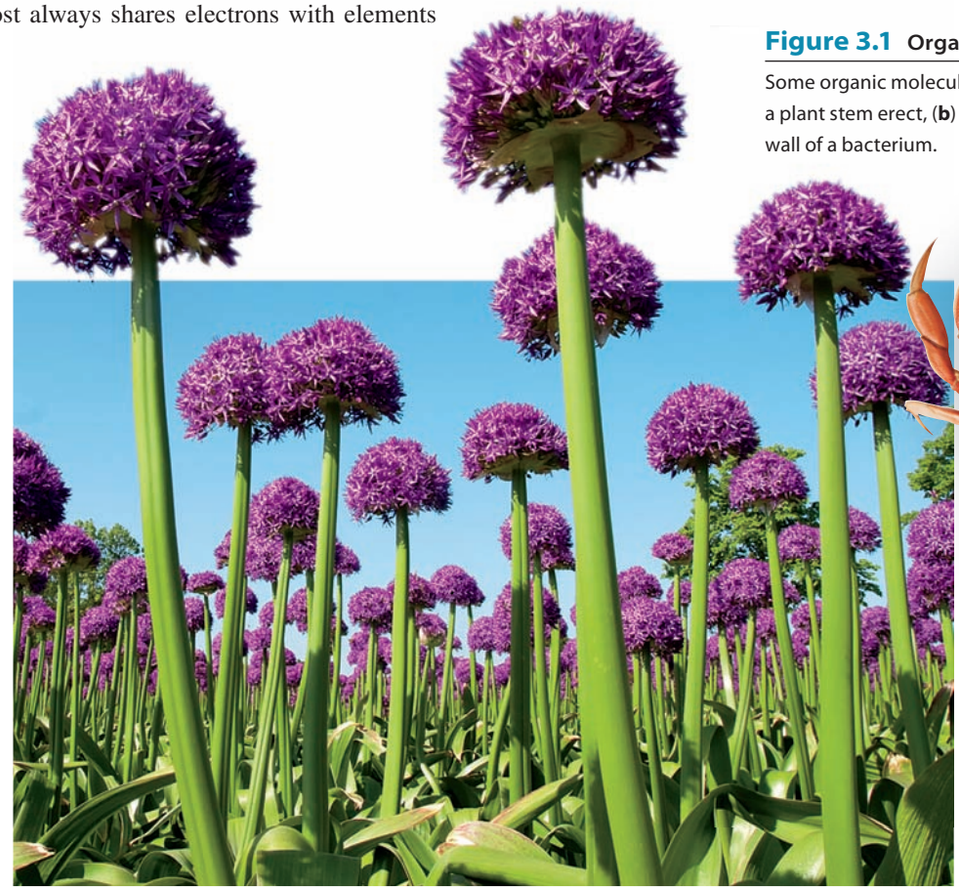
Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish between organic and inorganic molecules.
2. Recognize the importance of functional groups in determining the chemical properties of an organic molecule.

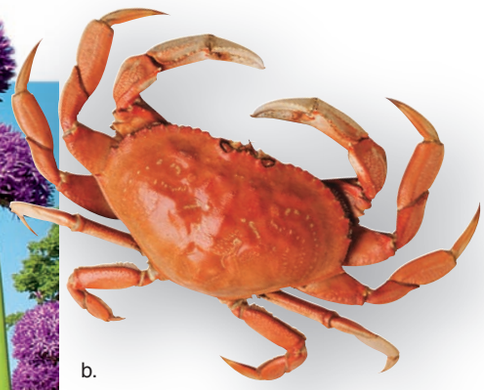
The study of chemistry can be divided into two major categories: organic chemistry and inorganic chemistry. The difference between the two is relatively simple. Organic chemistry is the study of organic molecules. An **organic** molecule contains atoms of carbon and hydrogen. Organic molecules make up portions of cells, tissues, and organs (**Fig. 3.1**). An inorganic molecule does not contain carbon and hydrogen. Water (H_2O) and table salt (NaCl) are examples of inorganic molecules. This chapter focuses on the diversity and functions of organic molecules in cells, also commonly referred to as **biological molecules**.

The Carbon Atom

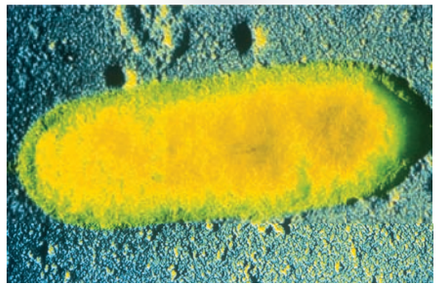
A bacterial cell can contain over 5,000 different organic molecules, and a plant or animal cell has twice that number. What is there about carbon that makes organic molecules so diverse and so complex? Recall that carbon, with a total of six electrons, has four electrons in the outer shell (see Fig. 2.8). In order to acquire four electrons to complete its outer shell, a carbon atom almost always shares electrons with elements



a.



b.



c. ×38,000

Figure 3.1 **Organic molecules as structural materials.**

Some organic molecules are purely structural in nature and (**a**) help hold a plant stem erect, (**b**) make the shell of a crab hard, and (**c**) support the wall of a bacterium.

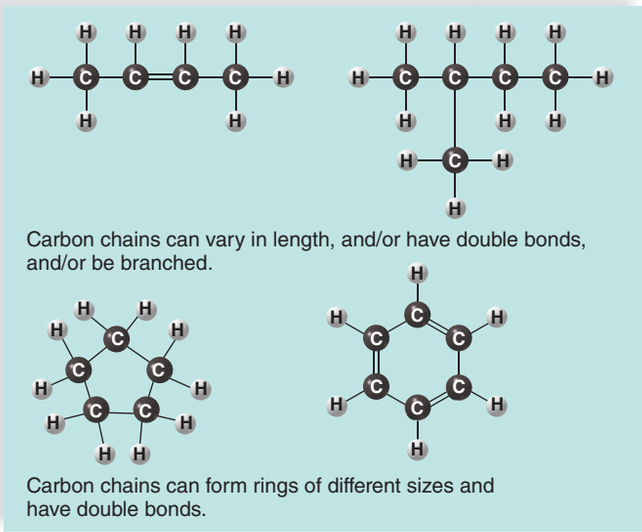
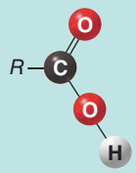
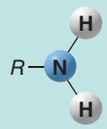
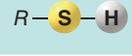
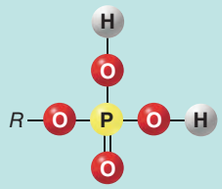


Figure 3.2 **Hydrocarbons are highly versatile.**

Hydrocarbons contain only hydrogen and carbon. Even so, they can be quite varied, according to the number of carbons, the placement of any double bonds, possible branching, and possible ring formation.

Functional Groups

Group	Structure	Found In
Hydroxyl		Alcohols, sugars
Carboxyl		Amino acids, fatty acids
Amino		Amino acids, proteins
Sulfhydryl		Amino acid cysteine, proteins
Phosphate		ATP nucleic acids

R = remainder of molecule

Figure 3.3 **Common functional groups.**

Molecules with the same carbon skeleton can still differ according to the type of functional group attached. These functional groups help determine the chemical reactivity of the molecule. In this illustration, the remainder of the molecule, the hydrocarbon chain, is represented by an *R*.

such as hydrogen, nitrogen, and oxygen—the elements that make up most of the weight of living organisms (see Section 2.1).

Because carbon is small and needs to acquire four electrons, carbon can bond with as many as four other elements. Carbon atoms most often share electrons with other carbon atoms. The C—C bond is stable, and the result is that carbon chains can be quite long. Hydrocarbons are chains of carbon atoms that are bonded only to hydrogen atoms. Any carbon atom of a hydrocarbon molecule can start a branch chain, and a hydrocarbon can turn back on itself to form a ring compound (**Fig. 3.2**). Carbon can also form double bonds with itself and other atoms.

The versatile nature of carbon means that it can form a variety of molecules with the same chemical formula (types of atoms), but different structures. Molecules with different structures, but the same combinations of atoms, are called **isomers.** The chemistry of carbon leads to a huge structural diversity of organic molecules. Since structure dictates function, it also means these molecules have a wide range of diverse functions.

The Carbon Skeleton and Functional Groups

The carbon chain of an organic molecule is called its skeleton, or backbone. This terminology is appropriate because, just as your skeleton accounts for your shape, so does the carbon skeleton of an organic molecule account for its shape. The reactivity of an organic molecule is largely dependent on the attached functional groups (**Fig. 3.3**). A **functional group** is a specific combination of bonded atoms that always has the same chemical properties and therefore always reacts in the same way, regardless of the particular carbon skeleton to which it is attached. As in Figure 3.3, we often use an *R* to stand for the rest of the molecule to save space, because only the functional group is involved in the reaction.

The functional groups of an organic molecule therefore help determine its chemical properties. For example, organic molecules, such as fats and proteins, containing carboxyl groups (—COOH) are both polar (hydrophilic) and weakly acidic. Phosphate groups contribute to the structure of nucleic acids, such as DNA. Sugars contain a carbon skeleton with many attached polar —OH groups. Thus, although hydrocarbons are nonpolar and **hydrophobic** (not soluble in water), glucose with several —OH groups is actually **hydrophilic** (soluble in water; see Chapter 2). Because cells are composed mainly of water, the ability to interact with and be soluble in water profoundly affects the activity of organic molecules in cells. The functional groups also identify the types of reactions that the molecule will undergo. For example, fats are formed by the interaction of molecules containing alcohols and carboxyl groups, and proteins are formed when the amino and carboxyl functional groups of nearby amino acids are linked.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Carbon and hydrogen are the basis of the organic molecules found in living organisms.

Check Your Progress 3.1

1. Identify what makes a molecule organic, and clarify the importance of the distinction.
2. List the attributes of a carbon atom that allow it to form a variety of molecules.
3. Explain the importance of functional groups.

Connections: Health

Is there a connection between organic molecules and organic produce?

As you just learned, organic molecules are those that contain carbon and hydrogen. Vegetables and fruits are all organic in that they contain these elements. The use of the term *organic* when related to farming means that there are certain production standards in place when growing the food. Normally, it means no pesticides or herbicides with harsh chemicals were used and the crop was grown as naturally as possible. So, as you can see, there are two different ways that the term *organic* may be used.

3.2 The Biological Molecules of Cells

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the categories of carbohydrates and provide examples of their diverse biological functions.
2. Summarize the categories of lipids and provide examples of their diverse biological functions.
3. Summarize the variety of protein types and provide examples of their diverse biological functions.
4. Summarize the two categories of nucleic acids and describe their biological functions.

Despite their great diversity, biological molecules are grouped into only four categories: carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids. You are very familiar with these molecules because certain foods are known to be rich in carbohydrates (**Fig. 3.4**), lipids (**Fig. 3.5**), and proteins (**Fig. 3.6**).

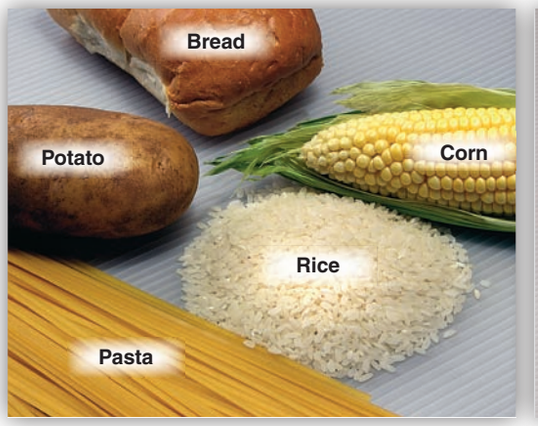


Figure 3.4 Carbohydrates.

The familiar carbohydrates, sugar and starch, are present in the foods shown. A diet loaded with these carbohydrates may make you prone to type 2 diabetes and other illnesses. In contrast, moderate amounts of multigrain foods are better for you and provide fiber to keep you regular.

Figure 3.5 Lipid foods.

A diet rich in fat can indeed make you fat. However, you do need some fat in your diet. Choose vegetable oils over the animal fat in lard, butter, and other dairy products. The fats in vegetable oils lower your risk of cardiovascular disease if they haven't been hydrogenated, as they are in processed foods.

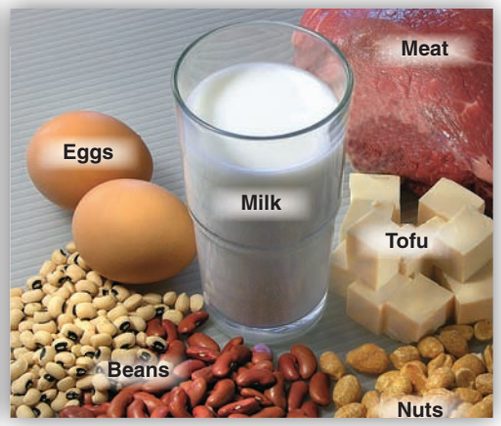


Figure 3.6 Protein foods.

It's surprising how little protein is needed in the diet. Just 6 ounces a day will provide you with all the amino acids you need. Some forms of protein, such as beef, contain high amounts of fat. Fish, however, contains beneficial oils that lower the incidence of cardiovascular disease. Also, the diet can include an egg a day, usually with no ill effects.

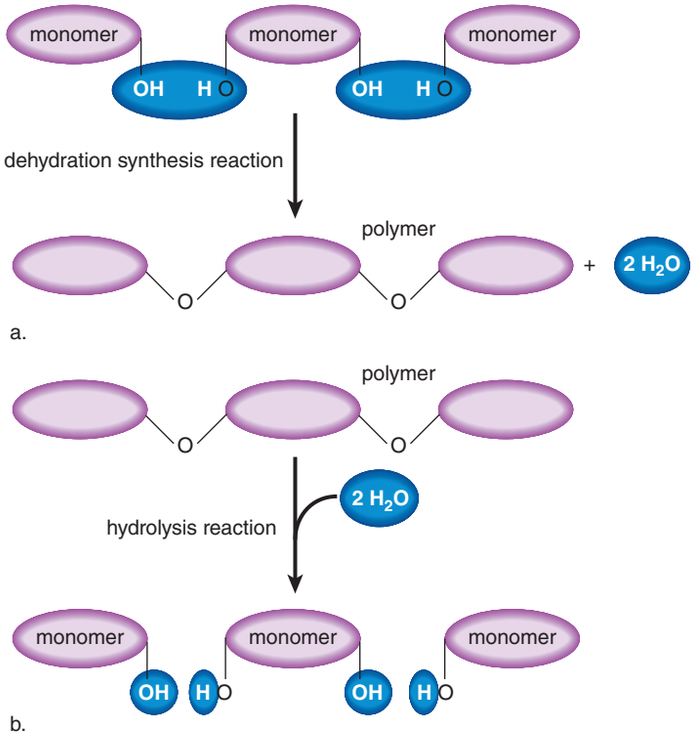


Figure 3.7 **Synthesis and breakdown of polymers.**

a. In cells, synthesis often occurs when monomers bond during a dehydration synthesis reaction (removal of H_2O). **b.** Breakdown occurs when the monomers in a polymer separate because of a hydrolysis reaction (the addition of H_2O).

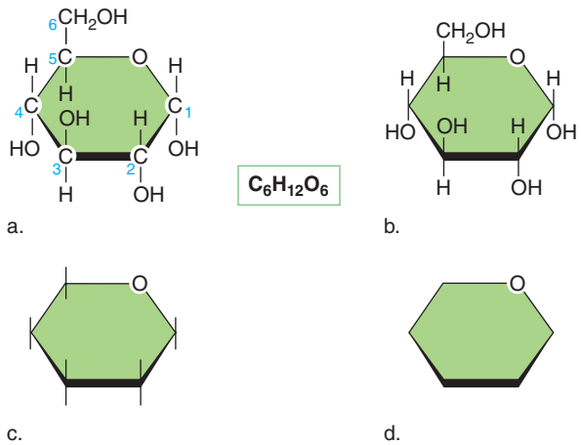


Figure 3.8 **Glucose.**

Each of these structural formulas represents glucose. **a.** The carbon skeleton (with carbon atoms numbered) and all attached groups are shown. **b.** The carbon skeleton is omitted. **c.** The carbon skeleton and attached groups are omitted. **d.** Only the ring shape of the molecule remains.

When you digest these foods, they break down into smaller molecules, or subunits. Your body then takes these subunits and builds from them the large macromolecules that make up your cells. Foods also contain nucleic acids, the type of biological molecule that forms the genetic material of all living organisms.

Certain biological molecules in cells are composed of a large number of the same type of subunits, called **monomers.** When many monomers join, the result is a **polymer.** A protein can contain hundreds of amino acid monomers, and a nucleic acid can contain hundreds of nucleotide monomers. How can polymers get so large? Just as a train increases in length when boxcars are hitched together one by one, so a polymer gets longer as monomers bond to one another.

A cell uses the same type of reaction to synthesize any type of biological molecule. It is called a **dehydration synthesis reaction,** because the equivalent of a water molecule—that is, an —OH (hydroxyl group) and an —H (hydrogen atom)—is removed as the reaction occurs (**Fig. 3.7***a*). To break down a biological molecule, a cell will use an opposite type of reaction: During a **hydrolysis** (*hydro*, water; *lysis*, break) **reaction,** an —OH group from water attaches to one monomer, and an —H from water attaches to the other monomer (Fig. 3.7*b*). In other words, water is used to break the bond holding monomers together.

Carbohydrates

In living organisms, **carbohydrates** are almost universally used as an immediate energy source. However, for many organisms, such as plants and fungi, they also have structural functions. Carbohydrates may exist either as saccharide (sugar) monomers or as polymers of saccharides. Typically, the sugar glucose is a common monomer of carbohydrate polymers. The term *carbohydrate* may refer to a single sugar molecule (monosaccharide), two bonded sugar molecules (disaccharide), or many sugar molecules bonded together (polysaccharide).

Monosaccharides: Ready Energy

Because **monosaccharides** have only a single sugar molecule, they are also known as simple sugars. A simple sugar can have a carbon backbone consisting of three to seven carbons. In a water environment, such as that within our cells, carbohydrates often form a ringlike structure, as you can see by examining the structural formula for glucose (**Fig. 3.8**). Monosaccharides, and carbohydrates in general, often possess many polar —OH functional groups, which make them soluble in water.

Glucose, with six carbon atoms, has a molecular formula of $C_6H_{12}O_6$. Glucose has two important isomers, called *fructose* and *galactose*, but even so, we usually think of glucose when we see the formula $C_6H_{12}O_6$. That's because glucose has a special place in the chemistry of organisms. Photosynthetic organisms, such as plants and bacteria, manufacture glucose using energy from the sun. Glucose is also the preferred immediate source of energy for nearly all types of organisms. In other words, glucose has a central role in the energy-reactions of cells.

Ribose and **deoxyribose,** with five carbon atoms, are significant because they are found in the nucleic acids RNA and DNA, respectively. RNA and DNA are discussed later in this chapter.

Disaccharides: Varied Uses

A **disaccharide** contains two monosaccharides linked together by a dehydration synthesis reaction. Some common disaccharides are maltose, sucrose, and lactose. The brewing of beer relies on maltose, a disaccharide usually derived from barley. During the production of beer, yeast breaks down maltose to two units of glucose and then uses the glucose as an energy source in a process called *fermentation.* A waste product of this reaction is ethyl alcohol (**Fig. 3.9**). Sucrose, a disaccharide acquired from sugar beets and sugarcane, is of special interest because we use it at the table and in baking as a sweetener. Our bodies digest sucrose into its two monomers, glucose and fructose. Later, the fructose is changed to glucose, our usual energy source. If the body doesn't need more energy at the moment, the glucose can be metabolized to fat. While glucose is the energy source of choice for animal cells, fat is the body's primary energy storage form. That's why eating lots of sugary desserts can make you gain weight.

Lactose is a disaccharide commonly found in milk. Lactose contains a glucose molecule combined with a galactose molecule. Individuals who are lactose intolerant are not able to break down the lactose disaccharide. The disaccharide then moves through the intestinal tract undigested, where the normal intestinal bacteria use it as an energy source. Symptoms of lactose intolerance include abdominal pain, gas, bloating, and diarrhea.

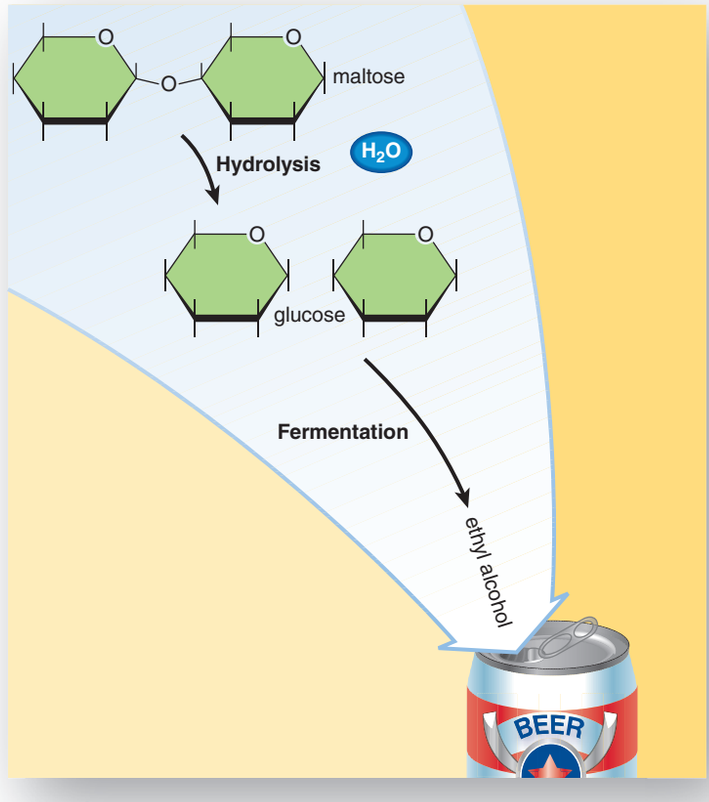


Figure 3.9 **Breakdown of maltose, a disaccharide.**

Maltose is the energy source for yeast during the production of beer. Yeasts differ as to the amount of maltose they convert to alcohol, so selection of the type of yeast is important for the correct result.

Connections: Health

What is high-fructose corn syrup?

Many beverages made commercially, including many cola drinks, contain high-fructose corn syrup (HFCS). In the 1980s, a commercial method was developed for converting the glucose in corn syrup to the much sweeter-tasting fructose. Nutritionists are not in favor of eating highly *processed* foods that are rich in sucrose, HFCS, and white starches. They say these foods provide "empty" calories, meaning that, although they supply energy, they don't supply any of the vitamins, minerals, and fiber needed in the diet. In contrast, minimally processed foods provide glucose, starch, and many other types of nutritious molecules.

Polysaccharides as Energy Storage Molecules

Polysaccharides are polymers of monosaccharides. Some types of polysaccharides function as short-term energy storage molecules because they are much larger than a sugar and are relatively insoluble. Polysaccharides cannot easily pass through the plasma membrane and are kept (stored) within the cell.

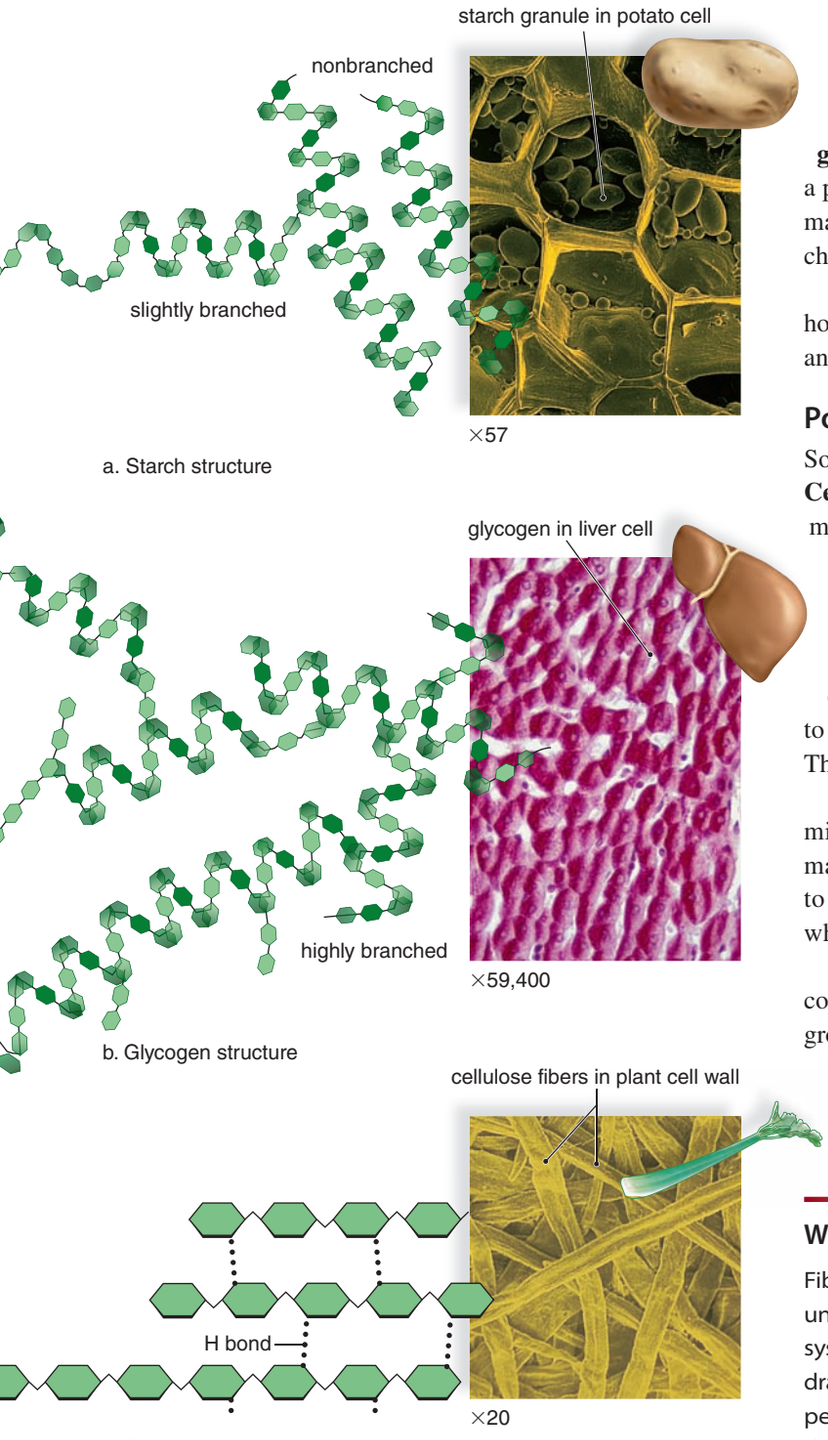


Figure 3.10 **Starch and glycogen structure and function.**

a. Glucose is stored in plants as starch. The electron micrograph shows the location of starch in plant cells. Starch is a chain of glucose molecules that can be nonbranched or branched. **b.** Glucose is stored in animals as glycogen. The electron micrograph shows glycogen deposits in a portion of a liver cell. Glycogen is a highly branched polymer of glucose molecules. **c.** In plant cell walls, each cellulose fiber contains several microfibrils. Each microfibril contains many polymers of glucose hydrogen-bonded together. Three such polymers are shown.

Plants store glucose as **starch.** The cells of a potato contain granules, where starch resides during winter until energy is needed for growth in the spring. Notice in **Figure 3.10***a* that starch exists in two forms—one is nonbranched and the other is slightly branched. Animals store glucose as **glycogen,** which is more highly branched (Fig. 3.10*b*). Branching subjects a polysaccharide to more attacks by hydrolytic enzymes; therefore, branching makes a polysaccharide easier to break down. Spiraling makes these polysaccharides more compact.

The storage and release of glucose from liver cells are controlled by hormones, such as insulin. We will take a much closer look at these hormones, and how the body regulates glucose levels, in Chapter 27.

Polysaccharides as Structural Molecules

Some types of polysaccharides function as structural components of cells. **Cellulose** is the most abundant of all the carbohydrates, which in turn are the most abundant of all the organic molecules on Earth. Plant cell walls contain cellulose, and therefore cellulose is plentiful in the wood of tree trunks. And the seeds of cotton plants have long fibers composed mostly of cellulose.

The bonds joining the glucose subunits in cellulose are different from those found in starch and glycogen (Fig. 3.10*c*). As a result, the molecule does not spiral or have branches. The long glucose chains are held parallel to each other by hydrogen bonding to form strong microfibrils and then fibers. The fibers crisscross within plant cell walls for even more strength.

The digestive systems of animals can't hydrolyze cellulose, but some microorganisms can digest it. Cows and other ruminants (cud-chewing animals) have an internal pouch, where microorganisms break down cellulose to glucose. In humans, cellulose has the benefit of serving as dietary fiber, which maintains regular elimination and digestive system health.

Chitin is a polymer of glucose molecules. However, in chitin, each glucose subunit has an amino group ($—NH_2$) attached to it. Since the functional groups attached to organic molecules determine their properties, chitin is chemically different from other glucose polymers, such as cellulose, even though the linkage between the glucose molecules is very similar. Chitin is found

Connections: Health

What is the difference between soluble and insoluble fiber?

Fiber, also called roughage, is composed mainly of the undigested carbohydrates that pass through the digestive system. Most fiber is derived from the structural carbohydrates of plants. This includes such material as cellulose, pectins, and lignin. Fiber is not truly a nutrient, since we do not use it directly for energy or cell building, but it is an extremely important component of our diet. Fiber not only adds bulk to material in the intestines, keeping the colon functioning normally, but also binds many types of harmful chemicals in the diet, including cholesterol, and prevents them from being absorbed. There are two basic types of fiber—insoluble and soluble. Soluble fiber dissolves in water and acts in the binding of cholesterol. Soluble fiber is found in many fruits, as well as oat grains. Insoluble fiber provides bulk to the fecal material and is found in bran, nuts, seeds, and whole-wheat foods.

in a variety of organisms, including animals and fungi. For animals such as insects, crabs, and lobsters, chitin is found in the external skeleton, or exoskeleton. Even though chitin, like cellulose, is not digestible by humans, it still has many good uses. Seeds are coated with chitin, and this protects them from attack by soil fungi. Because chitin also has antibacterial and antiviral properties, it is processed and used in medicine as a wound dressing and suture material. Chitin is even useful during the production of cosmetics and various foods.

Lipids

Although molecules classified as **lipids** are quite varied, they have one characteristic in common: They are all insoluble in water. You may have noticed that oil and water do not mix. For example, salad dressings are rich in vegetable oils. Even after shaking, the vegetable oil will separate out from the water. This is due to the fact that lipids possess long, nonpolar hydrocarbon chains and a relative lack of hydrophilic functional groups.

Lipids are very diverse and they have varied structures and functions. **Fats** (such as bacon fat, lard, and butter) and **oils** (such as corn oil, olive oil, and coconut oil) are some well-known lipids. You may wonder about the differences between these terms. In general, fats are solid at room temperature, while oils are liquid at room temperature. In animals, fats are used for both insulation and long-term energy storage. They are used to insulate marine mammals from cold arctic waters and to protect our internal organs from damage. Instead of fats, plants use oils for long-term energy storage. In animals, the secretions of oil glands help waterproof skin, hair, and feathers.

Fats and Oils: Long-Term Energy Storage

Fats and oils contain two types of subunit molecules: glycerol and fatty acids (**Fig. 3.11**). **Glycerol** contains three —OH groups. The —OH groups are polar; therefore, glycerol is soluble in water. A **fatty acid** has a long chain of carbon atoms bonded only to hydrogen, with a carboxyl group at one end. A fat or an oil forms when the carboxyl portions of three fatty acids react with the —OH groups of glycerol. This is a dehydration synthesis reaction because,

Connections: Health

What are omega-3 fatty acids?

Not all fats are bad. In fact, some of them are essential to our health. A special class of unsaturated fatty acids, the omega-3 fatty acids, are considered both an essential and a developmentally important nutrient. The name omega-3 (also called n-3 fatty acids) is derived from the location of the double bond in the carbon chain. The three important omega-3 fatty acids are linolenic acid (ALA), docosahexaenoic acid (DHA), and eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA). Omega-3 fatty acids are a major component of the fatty acids in the brain, and adequate amounts of them appear to be important in children and young adults. A diet that is rich in these fatty acids also offers protection against cardiovascular disease, and research is ongoing with regard to other health benefits. DHA may reduce the risk of Alzheimer disease. DHA and EPA may be manufactured from ALA in small amounts within our bodies. Some of the best sources of omega-3 fatty acids are cold-water fish, such as salmon and sardines. Flax oil, also called linseed oil, is an excellent plant-based source of omega-3 fatty acids.

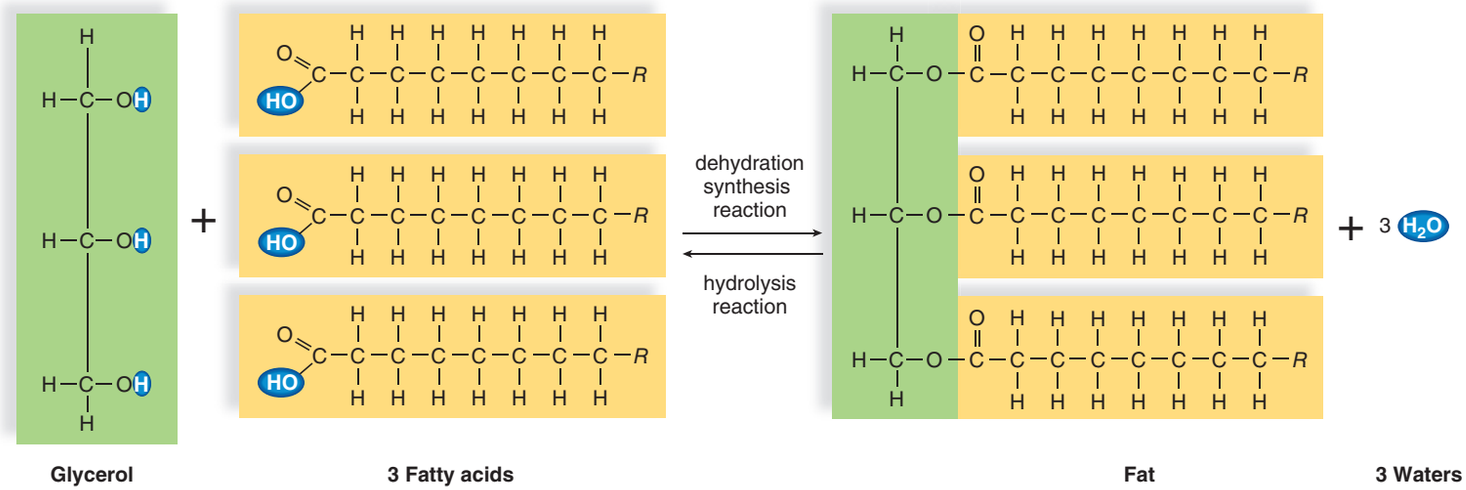


Figure 3.11 Synthesis and breakdown of fat.

Following a dehydration synthesis reaction, glycerol is bonded to three fatty acid molecules, and water is given off. Following a hydrolysis reaction, the bonds are broken due to the addition of water. *R* represents the remainder of the molecule, which in this case is a continuation of the hydrocarbon chain, composed of 16 or 18 carbons.

in addition to a fat molecule, three molecules of water result. Fats and oils are degraded during a hydrolysis reaction, in which water is added to the molecule (**Fig. 3.12**). Because three long fatty acids are attached to the glycerol molecule, fats and oils are called **triglycerides.** This structure can pack a lot of energy into one molecule. Thus, it is logical that fats and oils are the body's primary long-term energy storage molecules.

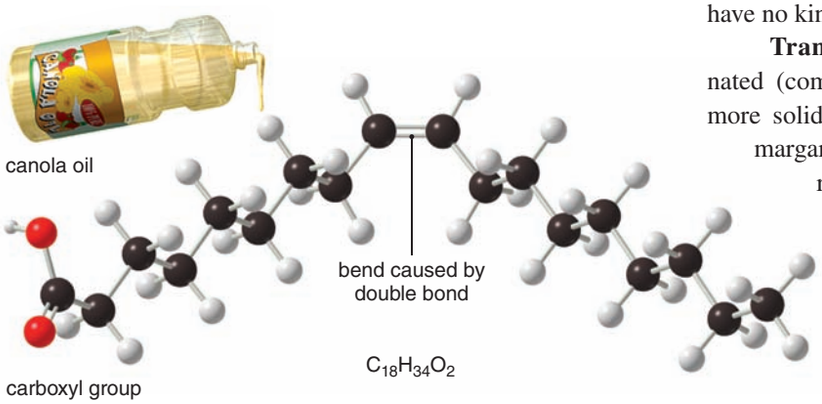
Fatty acids are the primary components of fats and oils. Most of the fatty acids in cells contain 16 or 18 carbon atoms per molecule, although smaller or larger ones are also found. Fatty acids are either saturated or unsaturated (Fig. 3.12). **Unsaturated fatty acids** have double bonds in the carbon chain wherever the number of hydrogens is less than two per carbon atom (Fig. 3.12*a*). **Saturated fatty acids** have no double bonds between the carbon atoms (Fig. 3.12*b*). The carbon chain is saturated, so to speak, with all the hydrogens it can hold. Saturation or unsaturation of a fatty acid determines its chemical and physical properties.

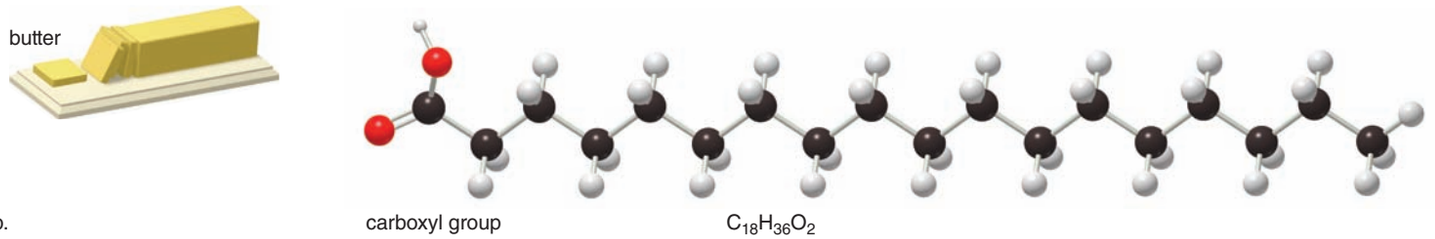
In general, oils are liquids at room temperature because they contain unsaturated fatty acids. Notice in Figure 3.13*a* that the double bond creates a bend in the fatty acid chain. Such kinks prevent close packing between the hydrocarbon chains and account for the fluidity of oils. On the other hand, butter, which contains mostly saturated fatty acids, is a solid at room temperature. The saturated fatty acid chains can pack together more tightly because they have no kinks (Fig. 3.12*b*).

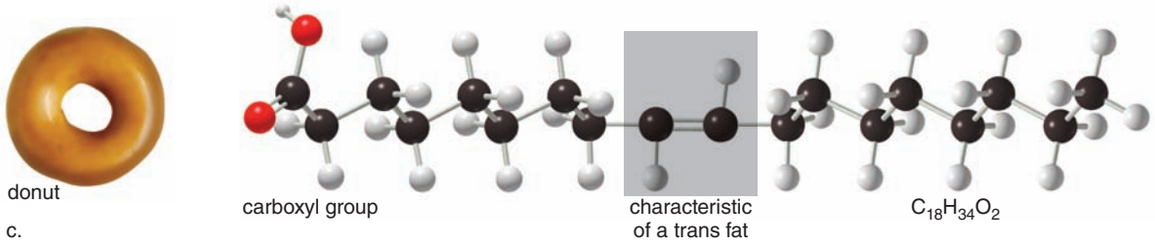
Trans fats contain fatty acids that have been partially hydrogenated (combined with hydrogen) to make them more saturated, and thus more solid (Fig. 3.12*c*). Trans fats are found in many processed foods—margarine, baked goods, and fried foods in particular. In our bodies, saturated fats and trans fats tend to stick together in the blood, forming plaque. The accumulation of plaque in the blood vessels causes a disease called atherosclerosis. Atherosclerosis contributes to high blood pressure and heart attacks. Unsaturated oils, particularly *monounsaturated* (one double bond) oils but also *polyunsaturated* (many double bonds) oils, have been found to be protective against atherosclerosis because they do not stick togeher as much in the blood. These healthy oils are found in abundance in olive oil, canola oil, and certain fish.

Figure 3.12 **Fatty acids.**

A fatty acid has a carboxyl group attached to a long hydrocarbon chain. **a.** If there is one double bond between adjacent carbon atoms in the chain, the fatty acid is monounsaturated. **b.** If there are no double bonds, the fatty acid is saturated. A diet high in saturated fats appears to contribute to diseases of the heart and blood vessels. **c.** Hydrogenation of oils is not always complete. Further, at some remaining double bonds, the attached hydrogens are in the trans configuration. If so, the fatty acid is a trans fatty acid. Trans fats are also linked to cardiovascular disease.







Phospholipids: Membrane Components

Phospholipids, as implied by their name, contain a phosphate functional group. Essentially, a phospholipid is constructed like a triglyceride, except that, in place of the third fatty acid attached to glycerol, there is a charged phosphate group. The phosphate group is usually bonded to another polar functional group, indicated by *R* in **Figure 3.13***a*. Thus, one end of the molecule is hydrophilic and water soluble. This portion of the molecule is the polar head. The hydrocarbon chains of the fatty acids, or the nonpolar tails, are hydrophobic and not water soluble.

Because phospholipids have both hydrophilic (polar) heads and hydrophobic (nonpolar) tails, they tend to arrange themselves so that only the polar heads interact with the watery environment outside and the nonpolar tails crowd inward away from the water. Between two compartments of water, such as the outside and inside of a cell, phospholipids become a bilayer in which the polar heads project outward and the nonpolar tails project inward. The bulk of the plasma membrane that surrounds cells consists of a fairly fluid phospholipid bilayer, as do all the other membranes in the cell (Fig. 3.13*b*). A plasma membrane is essential to the structure and function of a cell, and thus phospholipids are vital to humans and other organisms.

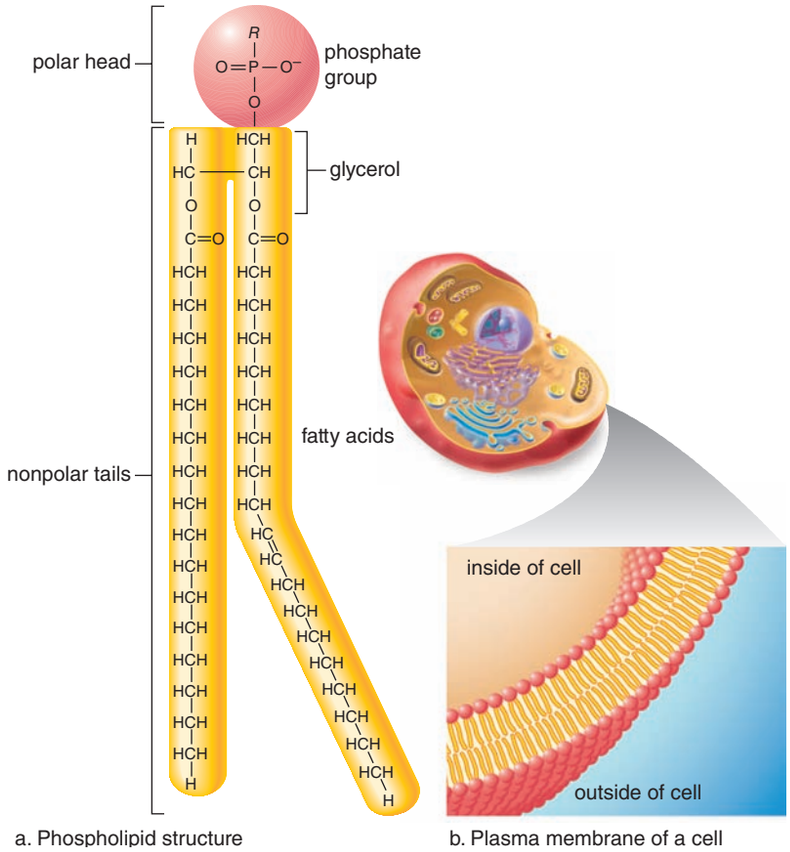


Figure 3.13 **Phospholipids from membranes.**

a. Phospholipids are constructed like fats, except that, in place of the third fatty acid, they have a charged phosphate group. The hydrophilic (polar) head group is soluble in water, whereas the two hydrophobic (nonpolar) tail groups are not. **b.** This causes the molecules to arrange themselves as a bilayer in the plasma membrane that surrounds a cell.

Steroids: Four Fused Rings

Steroids are lipids that possess a unique carbon skeleton made of four fused rings, shown in red in **Figure 3.14.** Unlike other lipids, steroids do not contain fatty acids, but they are similar to other lipids because they are insoluble in water. Steroids are also very diverse. The types of steroids differ primarily in the types of functional groups attached to their carbon skeleton.

Cholesterol (Fig. 3.14*a*) is a component of an animal cell's plasma membrane, and it is the precursor of other steroids, such as the sex hormones testosterone and estrogen. The male sex hormone, testosterone, is formed primarily in the testes, and the female sex hormone, estrogen, is formed primarily in the

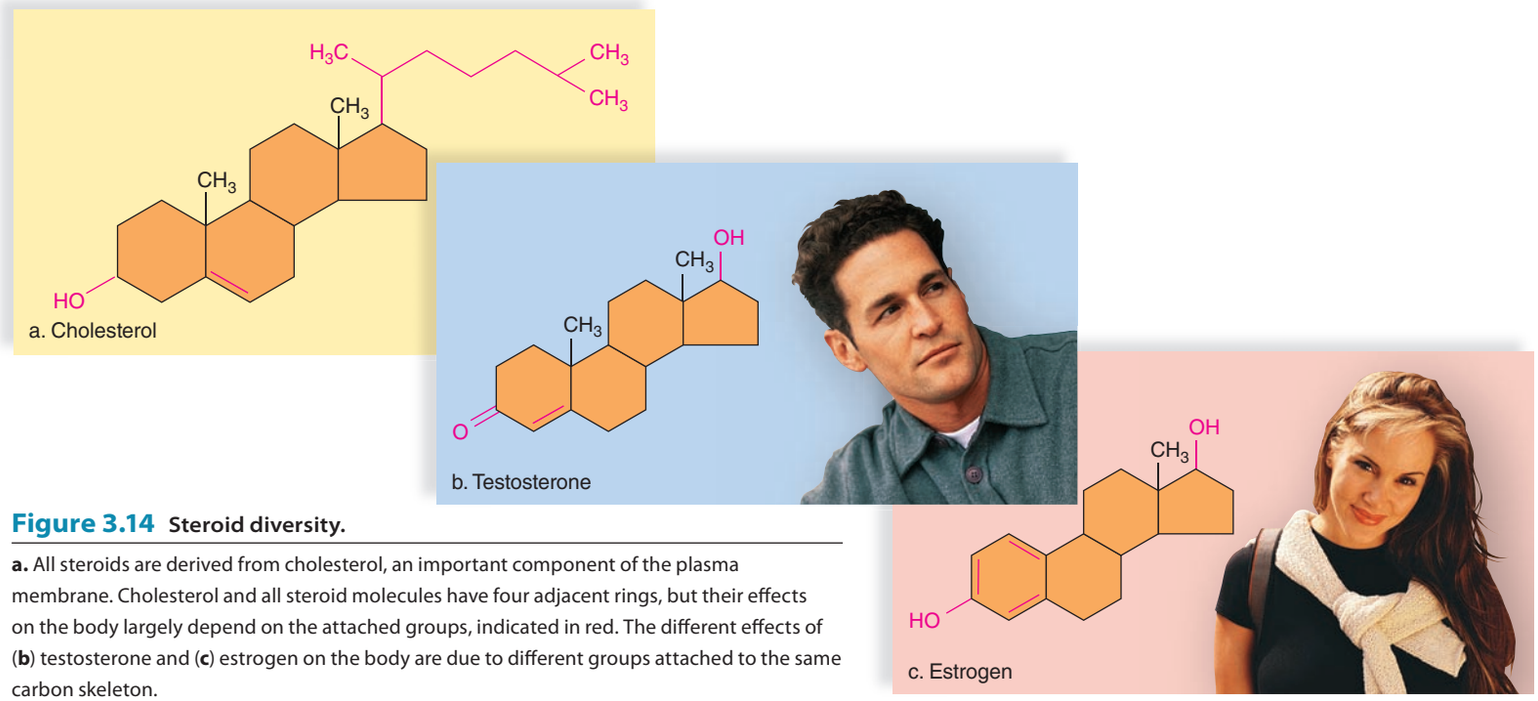


Figure 3.14 **Steroid diversity.**

a. All steroids are derived from cholesterol, an important component of the plasma membrane. Cholesterol and all steroid molecules have four adjacent rings, but their effects on the body largely depend on the attached groups, indicated in red. The different effects of (**b**) testosterone and (**c**) estrogen on the body are due to different groups attached to the same carbon skeleton.

ovaries (Fig. 3.14*b*,*c*). Testosterone and estrogen differ only by the functional groups attached to the same carbon skeleton, yet they have a profound effect on the body and the sexuality of humans and other animals.

Anabolic steroids, such as synthetic testosterone, can be used to increase muscle mass. The result is usually unfortunate, however. The presence of the steroid in the body upsets the normal hormonal balance: The testes atrophy (shrink and weaken), and males may develop breasts; females tend to grow facial hair and lose hair on their head. Because steroid use gives athletes an unfair advantage and destroys their health—heart, kidney, liver, and psychological disorders are common—they are banned by professional athletic associations.

Proteins

Proteins are of primary importance in the structure and function of cells. Here are some of their many functions:

Support Some proteins are structural proteins. Examples include the protein in spiderwebs; keratin, the protein that contributes to hair and fingernails; and collagen, the protein that lends support to skin, ligaments, and tendons (**Fig. 3.15***a*).

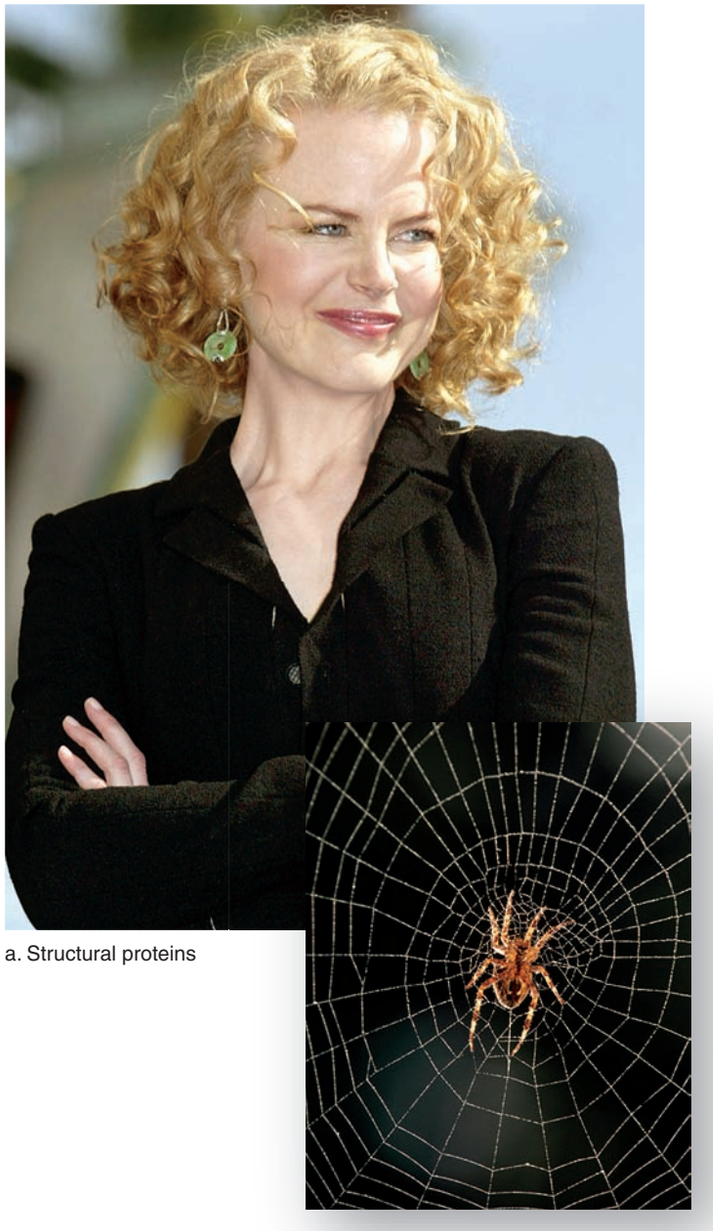
Metabolism Many proteins are **enzymes.** They bring reactants together and thereby act as catalysts, speeding up chemical reactions in cells. Enzymes are specific for particular types of reactions and can function at body temperature.

Transport Channel and carrier proteins in the plasma membrane allow substances to enter and exit cells. Other proteins transport molecules in the blood of animals—for example, hemoglobin**,** found in red blood cells, is a complex protein that transports oxygen (Fig. 3.15*b*).

Defense Some proteins, called antibodies, combine with disease-causing agents to prevent those agents from destroying cells and causing diseases and disorders.

Regulation Hormones are regulatory proteins. They serve as intercellular messengers that influence the metabolism of cells. For example, the hormone insulin regulates the concentration of glucose in the blood, while human growth hormone (hGH) contributes to determining the height of an individual.

Motion The contractile proteins actin and myosin allow parts of cells to move and cause muscles to contract (Fig. 3.15*c*). Muscle contraction enables animals to move from place to place and substances to move through the body. It also regulates body temperature.



a. Structural proteins

b. Transport proteins

×1,740

c. Contractile proteins

Figure 3.15 **Types of protein.**

a. The protein in hair, fingernails, and spiderwebs (keratin) is a structural protein, as is collagen. **b.** Hemoglobin, a major protein in red blood cells, is involved in transporting oxygen. **c.** The contractile proteins actin and myosin cause muscles to move.

The structures and functions of cells differ according to the type of protein they contain. Muscle cells contain actin and myosin; red blood cells contain hemoglobin; support cells produce the collagen they secrete. While proteins are often viewed as an energy molecule, we will see in Chapter 7 that they are not a preferred energy source for the cell.

Amino Acids: Subunits of Proteins

Proteins are polymers, and their monomers are called **amino acids.** Amino acids have a unique carbon skeleton, in which a central carbon atom bonds to a hydrogen atom, two functional groups, and a side chain, or *R* group (**Fig. 3.16***a*). The name *amino acid* is appropriate because one of the two functional groups is an —NH_2 (amino group) and another is a —COOH (an acid group, as discussed on page 40).

There are 20 different amino acids, which vary according to their particular *R* group. The *R* groups range in complexity from a single hydrogen atom to a complicated ring compound. The unique chemical properties of an amino acid depend on the chemical properties of the *R* group. For example, some *R* groups are polar, some are charged, and some are hydrophobic. The amino acid cysteine, for instance, has an *R* group that ends with a sulfhydryl (—SH) group, which can connect one chain of amino acids to another by a disulfide bond, —S—S—. Four amino acids commonly found in cells are shown in Figure 3.16*b*.

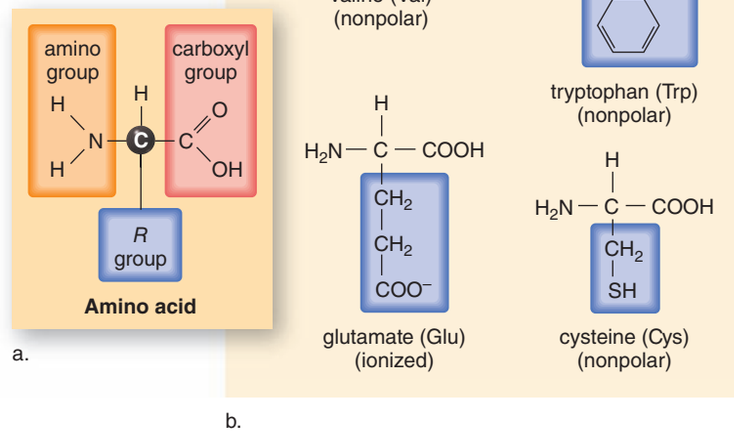
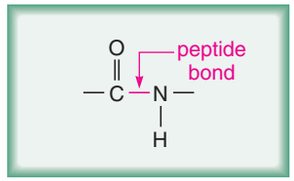


Figure 3.16 **Amino acids.**

a. Structure of an amino acid. **b.** Proteins contain arrangements of 20 different kinds of amino acids, four of which are shown here. Amino acids differ by the particular *R* group (blue) attached to the central carbon. Some *R* groups are nonpolar and hydrophobic, some are polar and hydrophilic, and some are ionized and hydrophilic.

Peptides

Figure 3.17 shows how two amino acids join by a dehydration synthesis reaction between the carboxyl group of one and the amino group of another. The resulting covalent bond between two amino acids is called a **peptide bond.** The atoms associated with the peptide bond share the electrons unevenly because oxygen is more electronegative than nitrogen.



Therefore, the peptide bond is polar, and hydrogen bonding is possible between the C = O of one amino acid and the N—H of another amino acid in a polypeptide.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How do perms and relaxers work on hair?

Hair, composed of proteins, can be altered chemically to be curly or straight. For instance, a perm contains chemicals that break and reform the bonds between the functional groups in the amino acids to form disulfide bonds, resulting in spirals and making curls. A relaxer will break the bonds between disulfide bond regions to straighten the proteins. Neither are permanent, because they do not alter the genes controlling the original shape of the proteins that make the hair.

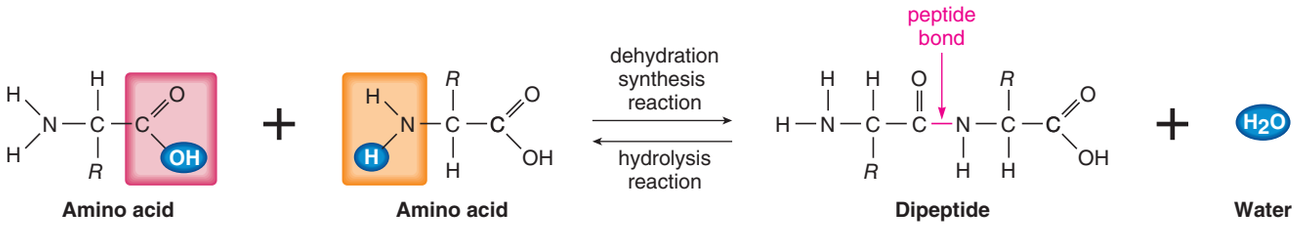


Figure 3.17 **Synthesis and degradation of peptide.**

Following a dehydration synthesis reaction, a peptide bond joins two amino acids, and water is given off. Following a hydrolysis reaction, the bond is broken due to the addition of water.

A **peptide** is two or more amino acids covalently bonded together, and a **polypeptide** is a chain of many amino acids joined by peptide bonds. Proteins are polypeptide chains that have folded into complex shapes (see the following section). A protein may contain one or more polypeptide chains. While some proteins are small, others are composed of a very large number of amino acids. Ribonuclease, a small protein that breaks down RNA, contains barely more than 100 amino acids. But some proteins are very large, as is titin, which contains over 33,000 amino acids! Titin is an integral part of the structure of your muscles; without it, your muscles would not function properly.

The amino acid sequence determines a protein's final three-dimensional shape, and thus its function. Each polypeptide has its own normal sequence. Proteins that have an abnormal sequence of amino acids often have the wrong shape and cannot function properly.

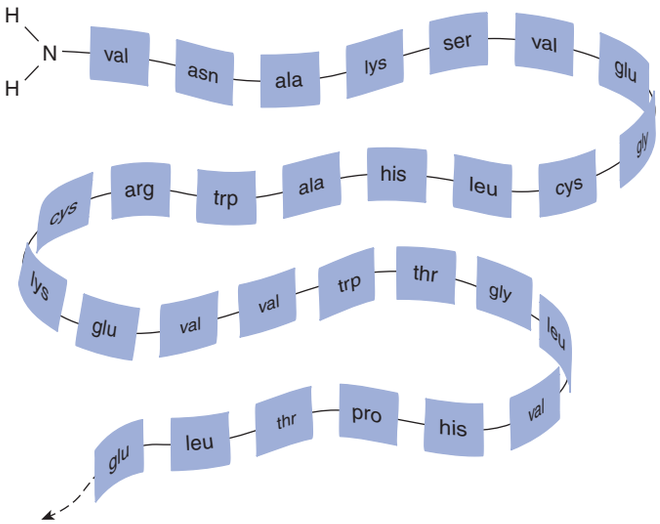
Shape of Proteins

All proteins have multiple levels of structure. These levels are called the primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary structures (**Fig. 3.18**). A protein's sequence of amino acids is called its *primary structure*. Consider that an almost infinite number of words can be constructed by changing the number and sequence of the 26 letters in our alphabet. In the same way, many different proteins can result by varying the number and sequence of just 20 amino acids.

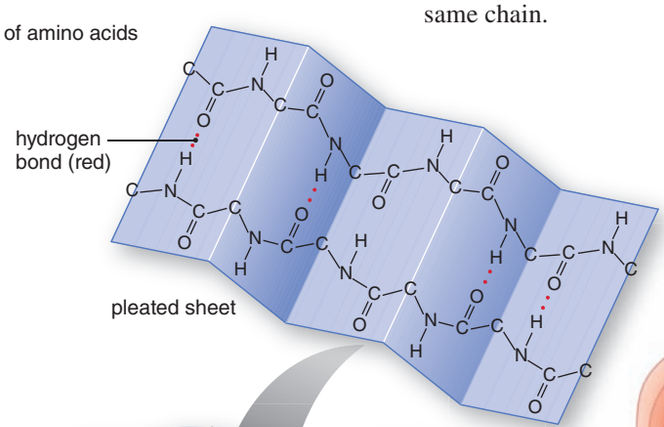
The *secondary structure* of a protein occurs when portions of the amino acid chain take on a certain orientation in space, depending on the number and identity of the amino acids present in the chain. Portions of the polypeptide can have the spiral shape called an alpha helix, or it can turn back on itself, like an accordion, a shape called a beta pleated sheet. Hydrogen bonds between nearby peptide bonds maintain the secondary structure of a protein. Any polypeptide may contain one or more secondary structure regions within the same chain.

Figure 3.18 **Levels of protein organization.**

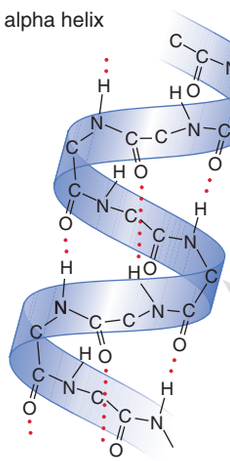
All proteins have a primary structure. Fibrous proteins have a secondary structure; they are either helices (e.g., keratin, collagen) or pleated sheets (e.g., silk). Globular proteins always have a tertiary structure, and most have a quaternary structure (e.g., hemoglobin, enzymes).



Primary structure: sequence of amino acids

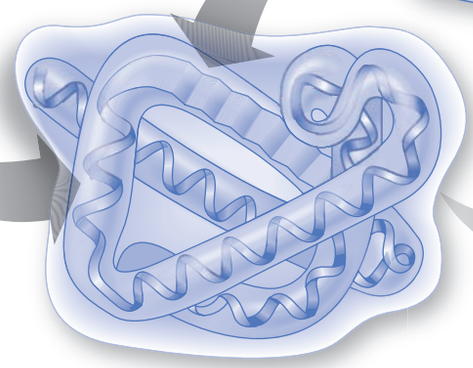


pleated sheet

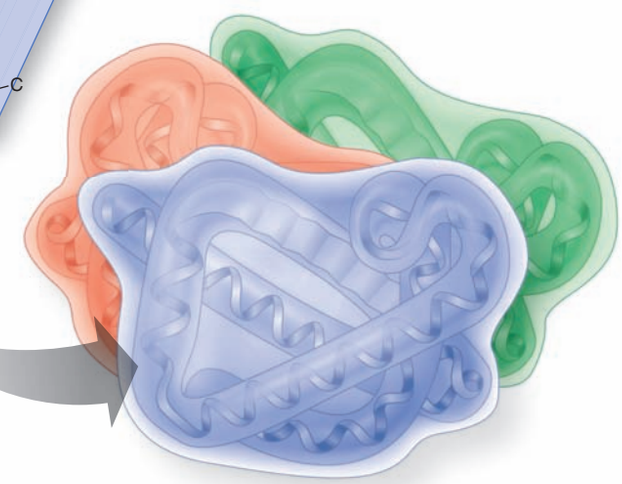


alpha helix

Secondary structure: alpha helix and pleated sheet



Tertiary structure: globular shape



Quaternary structure: more than one polypeptide

Proteins also have a *tertiary structure*. The tertiary structure of a protein is its overall three-dimensional shape that results from the folding and twisting of its secondary structure. The tertiary structure is held in place by interactions between the *R* groups of amino acids making up the helices and beta pleated sheets within the polypeptide. Several types of interactions are possible. For example, ionic bonds, hydrogen bonds, and even covalent bonds can occur between *R* groups. Also, a tight packing of side chains can occur when hydrophobic *R* groups come together to avoid contact with water.

The tertiary structure of a protein determines its function, and this structure can be affected by the environmental conditions, such as pH and temperature. Acids and bases may interrupt interactions between *R* groups and affect a protein's structure. Likewise, a rise in temperature can disrupt the shape of an enzyme. For example, frying an egg disrupts the tertiary structure of the proteins in it, causing the protein albumin to become solid and change color. The protein has been **denatured** (broken down and inactivated) and has lost its function.

Animation Protein Denaturation

Some proteins, such as hemoglobin and insulin, have a *quaternary structure* because they contain more than one polypeptide chain. Each polypeptide chain in the protein has its own primary, secondary, and tertiary structures. The quaternary structure is determined by how the individual polypeptide chains interact. The quaternary structure can also affect a protein's function. If hemoglobin's quaternary structure is disrupted, it can no longer carry oxygen in the blood.

The overall shapes of many proteins may be classified as fibrous or globular. Fibrous proteins adopt a rodlike structure. *Keratin,* the fibrous protein in hair, fingernails, horns, reptilian scales, and feathers, has many helical regions. *Collagen,* the protein that gives shape to the skin, tendons, ligaments, cartilage, and bones of animals, also contains many helical secondary structures and adopts a rodlike shape. Thus, most fibrous proteins have structural roles. Globular proteins have a rounded or irregular, three-dimensional tertiary shape. Enzymes are globular proteins, as is hemoglobin.

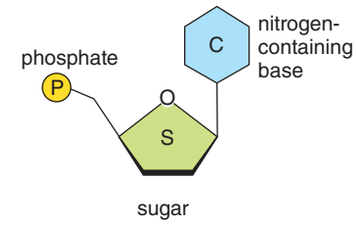
Nucleic Acids

DNA (*d*eoxyribo*n*ucleic *a*cid) and **RNA (*r*ibo*n*ucleic *a*cid)** are the **nucleic acids** found in cells. Early investigators called them nucleic acids because they were first detected in the nucleus. As already stated, DNA stores genetic information. Each DNA molecule contains many genes, and genes specify the sequence of the amino acids in proteins. RNA is the molecule that aids in transcribing and translating DNA into a protein.

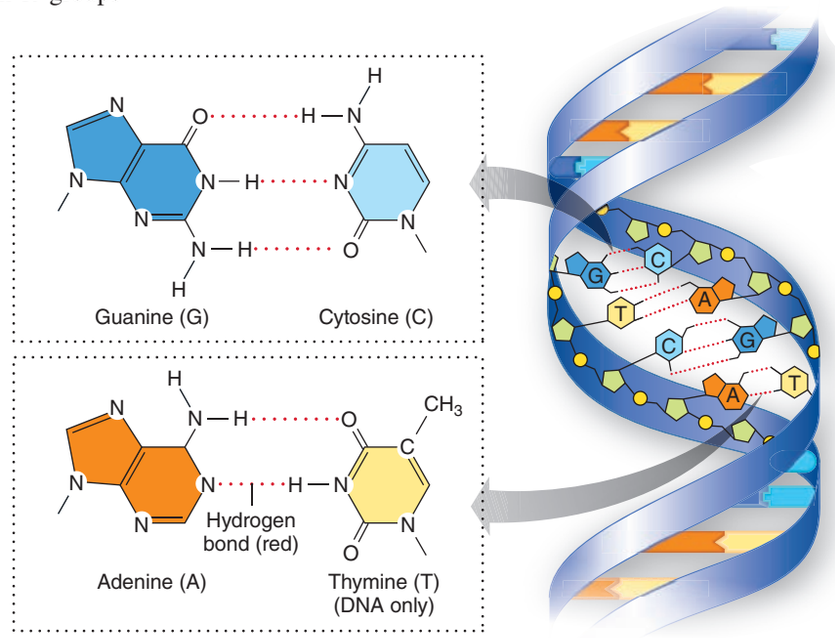
MP3 Nucleic Acids

Nucleic acids are polymers in which the monomer is called a **nucleotide.** All nucleotides, whether they are in DNA or RNA, have three parts: a phosphate, a 5-carbon sugar, and a nitrogen-containing base (**Fig. 3.19***a*). The phosphate is the $—PO_4$ functional group. The sugar is deoxyribose in DNA and ribose in RNA, which accounts for their names. (Deoxyribose has one less oxygen than does ribose.) Each nucleotide of DNA contains one of four bases: adenine (A), guanine (G), cytosine (C), or thymine (T).

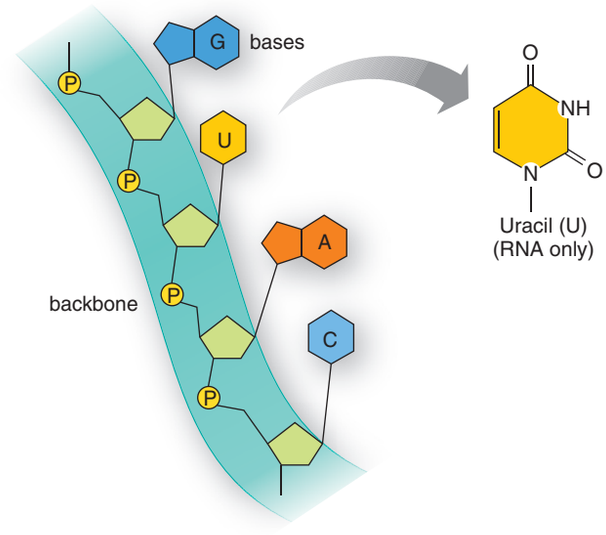
As you can see in Figure 3.19*b*, DNA is a double helix, meaning that two strands spiral around one another. In each strand, the backbone of the molecule is composed of phosphates bonded to sugars, and the bases project to the inside.



a. Nucleotide



b. DNA structure with base pairs: G with C and A with T



c. RNA structure with bases G, U, A, C

Figure 3.19 DNA and RNA structure.

a. Structure of a nucleotide. **b.** Structure of DNA and its bases. **c.** Structure of RNA in which uracil replaces thymine.

Interestingly, the base guanine (G) is always paired with cytosine (C), and the base adenine (A) is always paired with thymine (T). This is called *complementary base pairing*. Complementary base pairing holds the two strands together and is very important when DNA makes a copy of itself, a process called replication.

RNA differs from DNA not only by its sugar but also because it uses the base uracil (U) instead of thymine. Whereas DNA is double-stranded, RNA is single-stranded (Fig. 3.19*c*). Complementary base pairing also allows DNA to pass genetic information to RNA. The information is stored in the sequence of bases. DNA has a triplet code called codons, and every three bases stands for one of the 20 amino acids in cells. Once you know the sequence of bases in a gene, you know the sequence of amino acids in a polypeptide. As a result of the Human Genome Project, we now have a complete sequence of each of the 3.4 billion genes, and roughly 25,000 genes, in humans. As we will see throughout this text, this information has led to some important insights not only into our evolutionary past but also into the development of treatments for many diseases.

ATP: An Energy Molecule

In addition to being one of the subunits of nucleic acids, a derivative of the adenine nucleotide has a metabolic function that is very important to most cells. When adenosine (adenine plus ribose) is modified by the addition of three phosphate groups, it becomes adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which acts as an energy carrier in cells. ATP will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 5.

Relationship Between Proteins and Nucleic Acids

We have learned that the functional group of an amino acid determines its behavior and that the order of the amino acids within a polypeptide determines its shape. The shape of a protein determines its function. The structure and function of cells are determined by the types of proteins they contain. The same is true for organisms—that is, they differ with regard to their proteins.

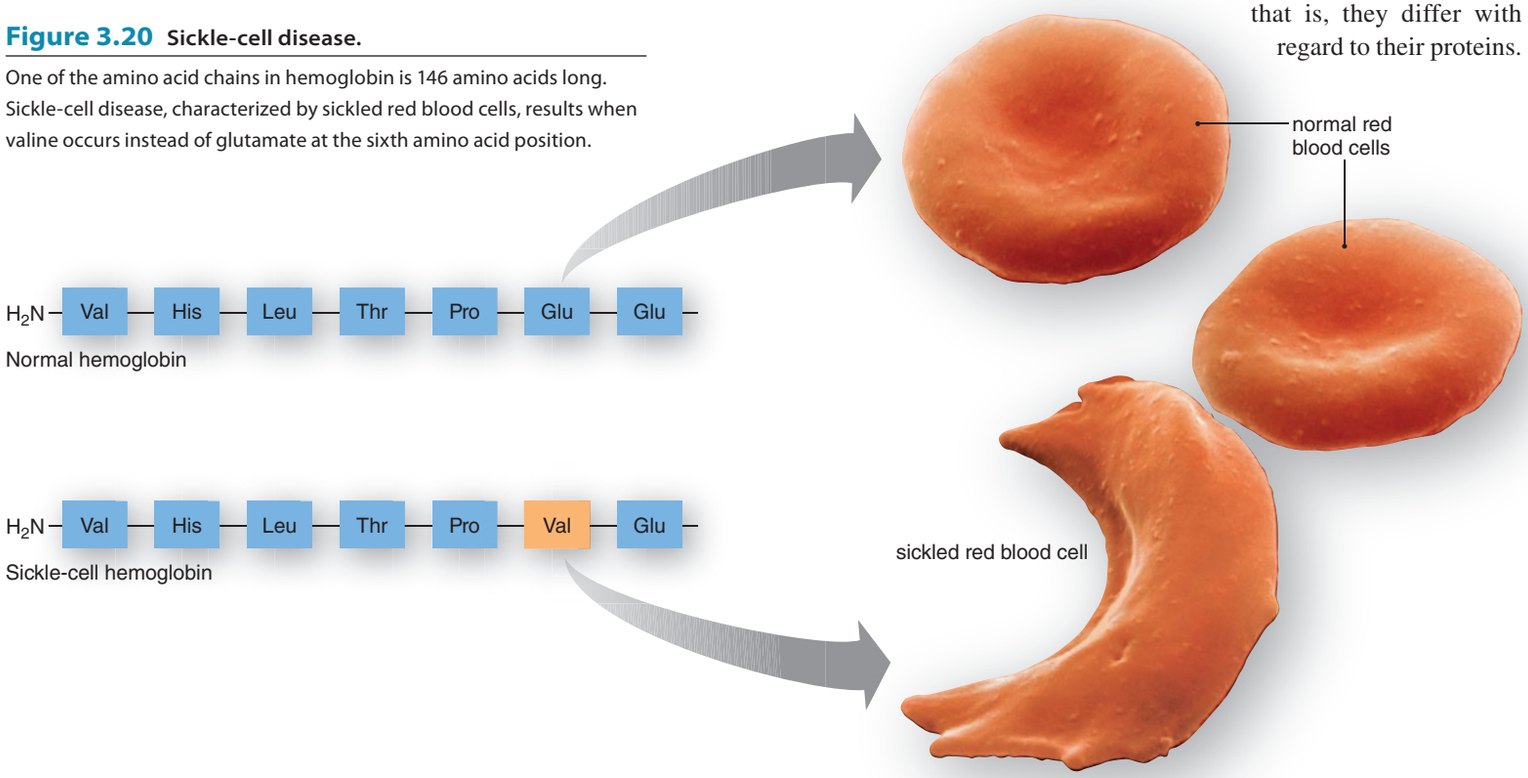


Figure 3.20 Sickle-cell disease.

One of the amino acid chains in hemoglobin is 146 amino acids long. Sickle-cell disease, characterized by sickled red blood cells, results when valine occurs instead of glutamate at the sixth amino acid position.

Next, we learned that DNA, the genetic material, bears instructions for the sequence of amino acids in polypeptides. The proteins of organisms differ because their genes differ.

Sometimes very small changes in a gene cause large changes in the protein encoded by the gene, resulting in illness. For example, in sickle-cell disease, the affected individual's red blood cells are sickle shaped because, in one location on the protein, the amino acid valine (Val) appears where the amino acid glutamate (Glu) should be (**Fig. 3.20**). This substitution makes red blood cells lose their normally round, flexible shape and become hard and jagged. When these abnormal red blood cells go through the small blood vessels, they may clog the flow of blood. This condition can cause pain, organ damage, and a low red blood cell count (called anemia), and it can be fatal if untreated. What's the root of the problem? The individual inherited a faulty DNA code for an amino acid in just one of the hemoglobin's polypeptides.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Organic molecules have a wide variety of biological functions.

Check Your Progress 3.2

1. Describe the different classes of carbohydrates, and give an example of a structural and energy carbohydrate.
2. List the classes of lipids and provide a function for each.
3. Summarize the roles of proteins in the body.
4. Describe the levels of protein structure.
5. Explain how nucleic acids differ in structure from other biological molecules.
6. Describe the relationship between nucleic acids and proteins.

Media Study Tools

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	MP3 Files
3.2 Protein Denaturation	**3.1** Organic Molecules **3.2** Carbohydrates • Lipids • Proteins • Nucleic Acids

SUMMARIZE

3.1 Organic Molecules

In order to be **organic,** a molecule must contain carbon and hydrogen. The chemistry of carbon contributes to the diversity of organic molecules. Functional groups determine the chemical reactivity of organic molecules. Some functional groups are nonpolar (**hydrophobic**), and others are polar (**hydrophilic**).

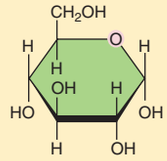
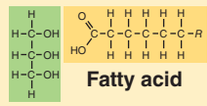
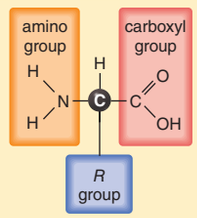
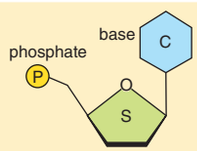
Isomers are molecules with a similar composition of atoms, but different structures.

3.2 The Biological Molecules of Cells

Biological molecules are synthesized by **dehydration synthesis reactions** and degraded by **hydrolysis reactions.** Living organisms are composed of four types of biological molecules: carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, and

nucleic acids. Polysaccharides, proteins, and nucleic acids are **polymers** constructed when their particular **monomer** forms long chains. Lipids are varied and do not have a particular monomer. The characteristics of these molecules are summarized in **Table 3.1:**

Table 3.1 Biological Molecules

Organic Molecule	Examples	Monomer	Functions
Carbohydrates	Monosaccharides, disaccharides, polysaccharides	 Glucose	Immediate energy and stored energy; structural molecules
Lipids	Fats, oils, phospholipids, steroids	 Glycerol; Fatty acid	Long-term energy storage; membrane components
Proteins	Structural, enzymatic, carrier, hormonal, contractile	 Amino acid	Support, metabolic, transport, regulation, motion
Nucleic acids	DNA, RNA	 Nucleotide	Storage of genetic information

Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates are primarily used as energy molecules, although some have structural characteristics. **Glucose** is a **monosaccharide** that serves as blood sugar and as a monomer of starch, glycogen, and cellulose. Its isomers are fructose and galactose. **Ribose** and **deoxyribose** are monosaccharides found in nucleic acids.

Sucrose is a **disaccharide** (glucose and fructose), which we know as table sugar. Other disaccharides are maltose and lactose.

Polysaccharides (all polymers of glucose) include **starch,** which stores energy in plants, **glycogen,** which stores energy in animals, and cellulose. Cellulose makes up the structure of plant cell walls. **Chitin** is a polysaccharide that contains an amino group.

Lipids

Lipids are hydrophobic molecules that often serve as long-term energy storage molecules. **Fats** and **oils,** which are composed of **glycerol** and **fatty acids,** are called **triglycerides.** Triglycerides made of **saturated fatty acids** (having no double bonds) are solids and are called fats. Triglycerides composed of **unsaturated fatty acids** (having double bonds) are liquids and are called oils. **Trans fats** are unsaturated fats that are found in many processed foods.

Phospholipids have the same structure as triglycerides, except that a group containing phosphate takes the place of one fatty acid. Phospholipids make up the plasma membrane, as well as other cellular membranes.

Steroids are lipids with a unique structure composed of four fused hydrocarbon rings. **Cholesterol,** a steroid, is a component of the plasma membrane. The sex hormones testosterone and estrogen are steroids.

Proteins

Proteins are polymers of **amino acids.** A peptide is composed of two amino acids linked by a **peptide bond,** forming a **peptide**. **Polypeptides** contain many amino acids. Proteins have a wide variety of functions, including acting as **enzymes** to accelerate chemical reactions.

A protein has several levels of structure. When a protein loses this structure, it is said to be **denatured.** The levels of structure include

- Primary structure is the primary sequence of amino acids.
- Secondary structure is a helix or pleated sheet.
- Tertiary structure forms due to folding and twisting of the secondary structure.
- Quaternary structure occurs when a protein has more than one polypeptide.

Nucleic Acids

Cells and organisms differ because of their proteins, which are coded for by genes composed of nucleic acids. **Nucleic acids** are polymers of **nucleotides**.

DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) contains deoxyribose sugar and is the chemical that makes up our genes. DNA is double-stranded and shaped like a double helix. The two strands of DNA are joined by complementary base pairing: Adenine (A) pairs with thymine (T), and guanine (G) pairs with cytosine (C).

RNA (ribonucleic acid) serves as a helper to DNA during protein synthesis. Its sugar is ribose, and it contains the base uracil in place of thymine. RNA is single-stranded and thus does not form a double helix. **Table 3.2** compares the structures of DNA and RNA. A modified nucleic acid, ATP, is used as a main energy carrier for most cells.

Table 3.2 DNA Structure Compared with RNA Structure

	DNA	RNA
Sugar	Deoxyribose	Ribose
Bases	Adenine, guanine, thymine, cytosine	Adenine, guanine, uracil, cytosine
Strands	Double-stranded with base pairing	Single-stranded
Helix	Yes	No

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The major classes of organic molecules, including carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids are essential for life.

3.1 Carbon and hydrogen are the basis of the organic molecules found in living organisms.

3.2 Organic molecules have a wide variety of biological functions.

For more information about the importance of organic molecules see the following discussions:

Section 4.2 demonstrates how the functional groups of a phospholipid help form the plasma membrane.

Section 6.1 explores how plants manufacture sugar molecules from carbon dioxide and water, using energy from the sun.

Section 11.2 examines how the information in DNA is used to build a functional protein.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

3.1 Organic Molecules

1. Which of the following is an organic molecule?
   a. CO_2 **d.** O_2
   b. H_2O **e.** More than one of these are correct.
   c. $C_6H_{12}O_6$
2. Carbon chains can vary in
   a. length. **c.** branching pattern.
   b. number of double bonds. **d.** all of these.
3. Organic molecules containing carboxyl groups are
   a. nonpolar. **c.** basic.
   b. acidic. **d.** More than one of these are correct.
4. Which of the following determines the chemical reactivity of biological molecules?
   a. isomers **c.** number of carbon atoms
   b. functional groups **d.** length of the hydrocarbon chain

3.2 The Biological Molecules of Cells

5. An amino acid is to a protein as a _____ is to a nucleic acid.
   a. nucleotide **c.** monosaccharide
   b. fatty acid **d.** triglyceride
6. Biological macromolecules are polymers that are formed when _____ are joined by a _____ reaction.
   a. monomers, dehydration synthesis **c.** subunits, reduction
   b. multimers, dehydration synthesis **d.** monomers, hydrolysis
7. Which of the following is a monosaccharide?
   a. glucose **c.** lactose
   b. cellulose **d.** sucrose

For questions 8–15, match the items to those in the key. Answers can be used more than once.

Key:

a. carbohydrate
b. lipid
c. protein
d. nucleic acid

8. Cellulose, the major component of plant cell walls
9. Keratin, found in hair, fingernails, horns, and feathers
10. Steroids such as cholesterol and sex hormones
11. Composed of nucleotides
12. Insoluble in water due to hydrocarbon chains
13. Sometimes undergoes complementary base pairing
14. May contain pleated sheets and helices
15. May be a ring of six carbon atoms attached to hydroxyl groups
16. A triglyceride contains
    a. glycerol and three fatty acids.
    b. glycerol and two fatty acids.
    c. protein and three fatty acids.
    d. a fatty acid and three sugars.
17. Variations in three-dimensional shapes among proteins are due to bonding between the
    a. amino groups. **c.** *R* groups.
    b. ion groups. **d.** H atoms.
18. The polysaccharide found in plant cell walls is
    a. glucose. **c.** maltose.
    b. starch. **d.** cellulose.

ENGAGE

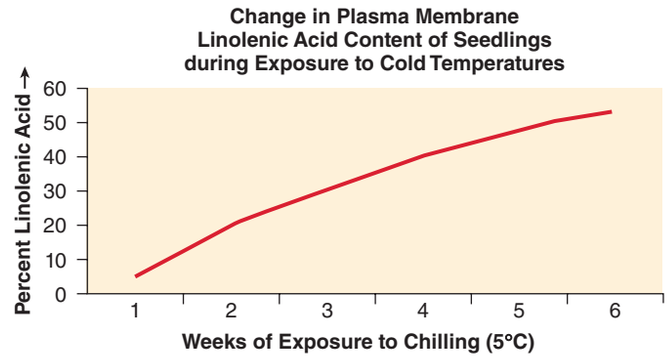
LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Chemical Composition of Cells

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Nutritionists advise us to avoid consuming oils from tropical plants because, compared with oils from temperate plants, they contain high levels of saturated fatty acids. Let's try to determine a physiological reason for this difference in fatty acid composition.



   a. Linolenic acid is an unsaturated fatty acid. What structure does an unsaturated fatty acid take? What happens to its level following exposure of plants to cold temperatures?
   b. If you put a product with a high level of unsaturated fats (such as canola oil) and a product with a high level of saturated fats (such as butter) in your refrigerator (chilling temperature), how would they differ in consistency? Why?
   c. How might fatty acid composition relate to chilling tolerance in plants?
2. In order to understand the relationship between enzyme structure and function, researchers often study mutations that swap one amino acid for another. In one enzyme, function is retained if a particular amino acid is replaced by one that has a nonpolar *R* group, but function is lost if the amino acid is replaced by one with a polar *R* group. Why might that be?
3. Scientists have observed that, while two species might have the same protein, the more distantly related they are the more likely the sequence of the amino acids has changed. What might account for this observation? Why would this be an important study?

4

Inside the Cell

OUTLINE

4.1 Cells Under the Microscope 57

4.2 The Plasma Membrane 59

4.3 The Two Main Types of Cells 62

4.4 Eukaryotic Cells 64

4.5 Outside the Eukaryotic Cell 74

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 1.1 What are the basic characteristics of life?

Section 2.2 What properties of water enable it to support life?

Section 3.2 What are the basic roles of carbohydrates, fats, proteins, and nucleic acids in living organisms?

The Diversity and Unity of Cells

Red blood cells are the most abundant cell type in your body, and they perform a critical job—delivering oxygen throughout your body and picking up carbon dioxide waste from its cells. Along with other types of blood cells, new red blood cells are continually produced from precursor cells, known as stem cells, located in the marrow of your bones. Red blood cells do not resemble a typical animal cell in structure because they are full of hemoglobin, the pigment that makes them red and enables them to carry oxygen. Human red blood cells also lack a nucleus and DNA. Because of this, they live only about 120 days before being destroyed by the liver and the spleen. Thus, the body continually faces the daunting task of replacing the 3 million red blood cells it loses every day. If this process of replacing the red blood cells is impaired, as occurs in a condition called aplastic anemia, a person can quickly die.

Cells are the fundamental unit of life. Although the diversity of organisms is incredible, the cells of all organisms share many similarities. In fact, there are only a few structural differences between most types of cells. In this chapter, you will learn about the two main evolutionary classes of cells and how they are similar as well as different. Learning about the structure of cells will later help you understand their complex functions and interactions.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions

1. What are some of the differences between human cells, such as blood cells, and bacterial cells?
2. What is the purpose of compartmentalization in a eukaryotic cell?

4.1 Cells Under the Microscope

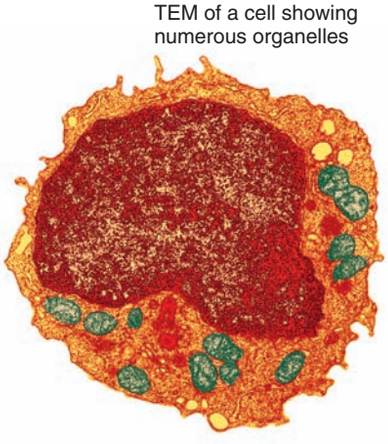
Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain why microscopes are needed to see most cells.
2. Summarize the relationship between the surface-area-to-volume ratio of a cell and its size.

A cell is the fundamental unit of life. In fact, all life is made of cells. However, cells are extremely diverse in their shape and function. Our own bodies are composed of several hundred cell types, and each type is present in billions of copies. For example, there are nerve cells to conduct information, muscle cells that allow movement, gland cells that secrete hormones, and bone cells to provide shape. As we will see, the structure of each of these is specialized to perform its particular function.

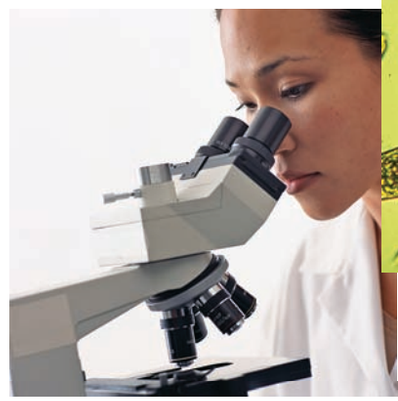
While cells are complex, they are tiny—most require a microscope to be seen (**Fig. 4.1**). The light microscope, invented in the seventeenth century, allows us to see cells, but not much of their complexity. That's because the properties of light limit the amount of detail a light microscope can reveal. Electron microscopes, invented in the 1930s, overcome this limit by using



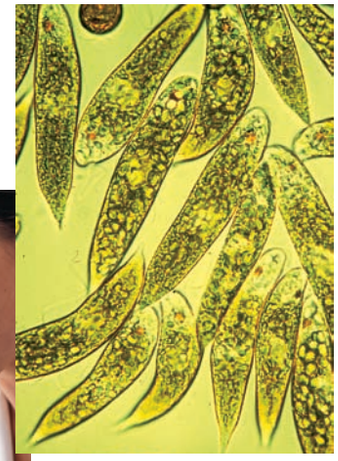
TEM of a cell showing numerous organelles

×24,570

Scientist using an electron microscope



Scientist using a light microscope



LM of *Euglena* ×150

SEM of spiderling ×25

Figure 4.1 **Using microscopes to see cells.**

Scientists use many types of microscopes to view cells, including the light microscope, the transmission electron microscope, and the scanning electron microscope. The light microscope and the transmission electron microscope reveal the insides of cells, while the scanning electron microscope shows three-dimensional surface features. Pictures resulting from the use of the light microscope are called light micrographs (LM), and those that result from the use of an electron microscope are called either transmission electron micrographs (TEM) or scanning electron micrographs (SEM).

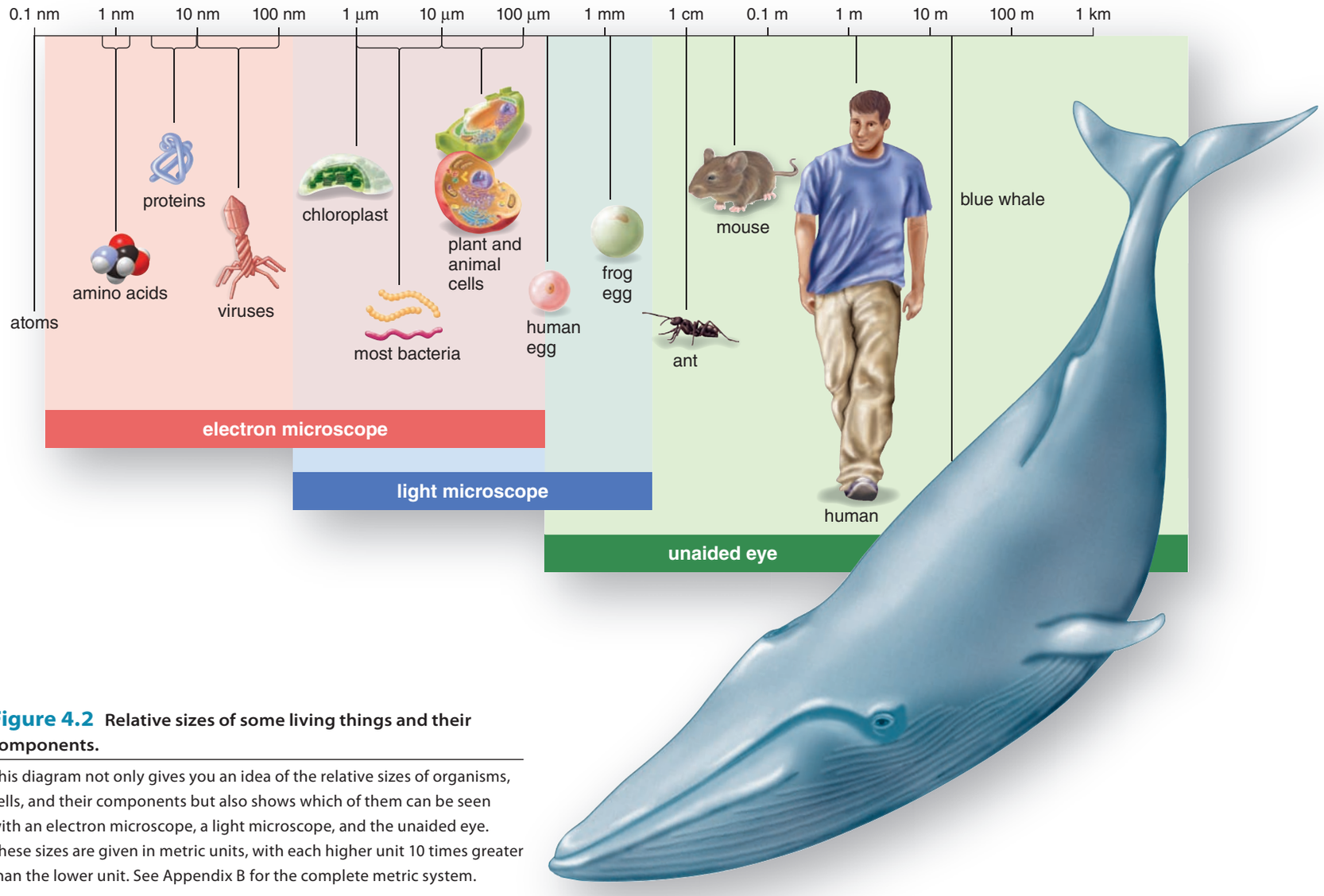


Figure 4.2 **Relative sizes of some living things and their components.**

This diagram not only gives you an idea of the relative sizes of organisms, cells, and their components but also shows which of them can be seen with an electron microscope, a light microscope, and the unaided eye. These sizes are given in metric units, with each higher unit 10 times greater than the lower unit. See Appendix B for the complete metric system.

beams of electrons instead of beams of light as their source of illumination. An electron microscope enables us to see the surface features and fine details of cells, and even some of the larger molecules within them. A newer type of microscope, called the atomic force microscope, is able to distinguish objects around a nanometer in size! **Figure 4.2** compares the visual ranges of the electron microscope, the light microscope, and the unaided eye.

Why are cells so small? Cells need to be able to rapidly exchange materials with the external environment. Therefore, a cell needs a surface area large enough to allow efficient movement of nutrients into the cell and waste material out of the cell. Let's use a simple cube as an example (**Fig. 4.3**). Cutting a larger cube into a smaller cube changes the **surface-area-to-volume ratio.** The higher the ratio of surface to internal volume, the faster the exchange of matearials with the environment. Therefore, small cells, not large cells, are most likely to have an adequate surface area for exchanging wastes and nutrients.

Many cells also possess adaptations that increase the surface-area-to-volume ratio. For example, cells in your small intestine have tiny, fingerlike projections (microvilli), which increase the surface area available for absorbing nutrients. Without this adaptation, your small intestine would have to be hundreds of meters long!

Figure 4.3 Surface-area-to-volume relationships.

While all three groups of cubes have the same volume, the cubes on the right have four times the surface area.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What is the largest known cell?

While the ostrich egg is frequently used as an example of the largest single cell, in fact, the record is currently held by the nerve cells of two of the most impressive animals on the planet, the giant squid (*Architeuthis dux*) and the colossal squid (*Mesonychoteuthis hamiltoni*). These deep-sea-living relatives of the octopus can grow to over 14 meters (46 feet) in length and weigh as much as a ton. The nerve cells of these squids span the length of their bodies, making them the longest and largest cells currently identified. Scientists often use these nerve cells as models for studying how the nervous system transmits information over long distances.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Cells have an optimal size due to surface-area-to-volume ratio.

Check Your Progress 4.1

1. Explain why microscopes are needed to view most cells.
2. Identify the types of microscope needed to view the following: frog egg, animal cell, amino acid, chloroplast, plant cell.
3. Explain why a large surface-area-to-volume ratio is needed for the proper functioning of cells.

4.2 The Plasma Membrane

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Recognize the key components of the cell plasma membrane.
2. Explain how the plasma membrane regulates the passage of molecules into and out of the cell.
3. Describe the diverse functions of the proteins embedded in the plasma membrane.

All cells have an outer membrane called the **plasma membrane,** which acts as the boundary between the outside and inside of a cell. The integrity and function of the plasma membrane are vital to a cell because it acts much as a gatekeeper, regulating the passage of molecules and ions into and out of the cell.

In all cells, the plasma membrane is a phospholipid bilayer (see Fig. 3.13*b*) with embedded proteins. In this bilayer, the polar (hydrophilic)

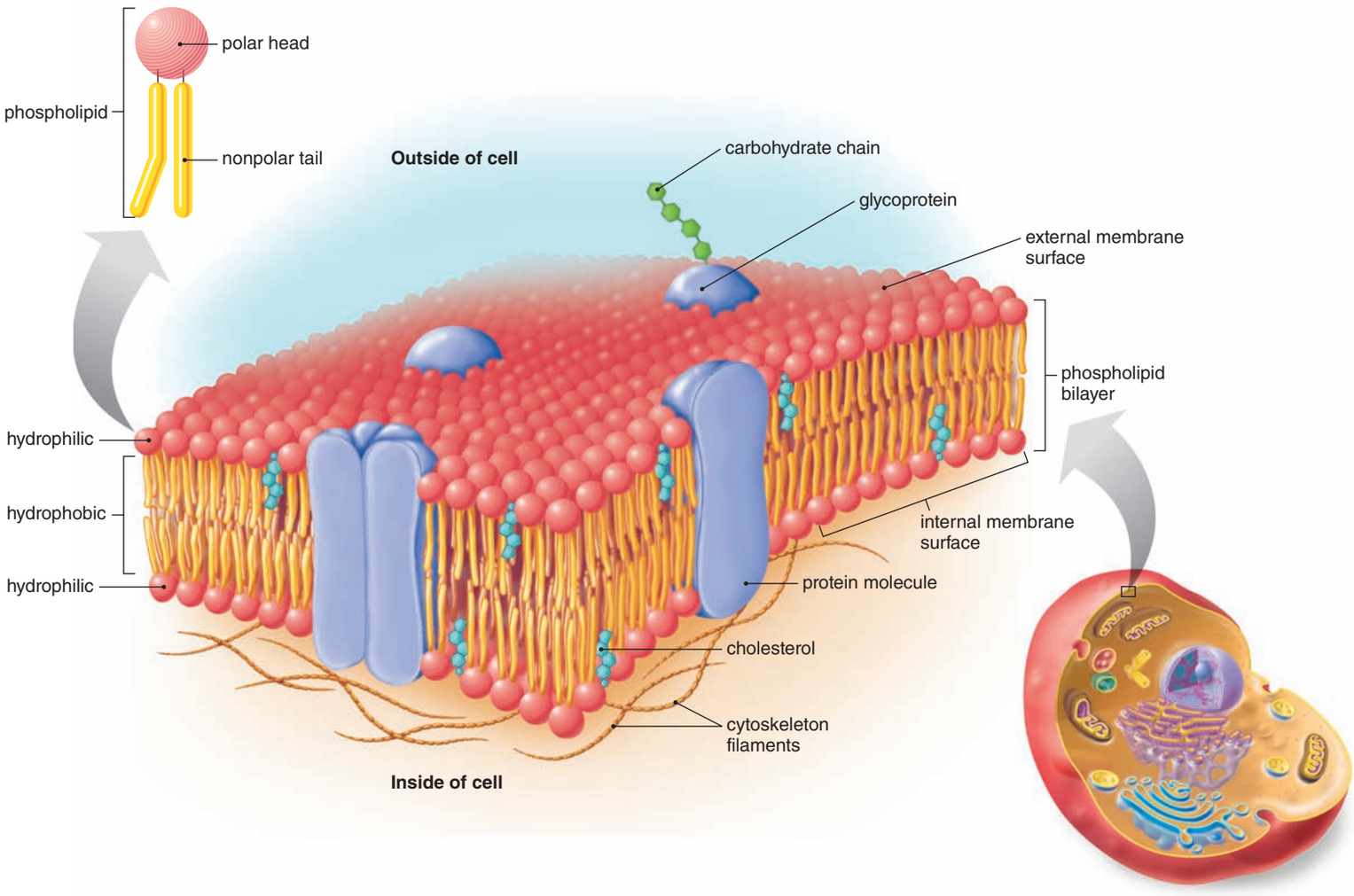
heads of the phospholipids are oriented in two directions (**Fig. 4.4**). In the outer layer of the membrane, the phospholipid heads face toward the external environment. On the interior layer of the membrane, the heads of phospholipid molecules are directed toward the interior cytoplasm of the cell. The nonpolar (hydrophobic) tails of the phospholipids face inward toward each other, where there is no water. Cholesterol molecules, present in the plasma membrane of some cells, lend support to the membrane, giving it the general consistency of olive oil.

The structure of the plasma membrane, as presented in Figure 4.4, is often called the *fluid-mosaic model,* since the protein molecules embedded in the membrane have a pattern (a mosaic) within the fluid phospholipid bilayer. The pattern varies according to the type of cell, but it may also vary within the same membrane at different times. When you consider that the plasma membrane of a red blood cell contains over 50 different types of proteins, you can see why the membrane is said to be a mosaic. Short chains of sugars are attached to the outer surface of some of these proteins, forming *glycoproteins*. The sugar chain helps a protein perform its particular function. Many glycoproteins are involved in establishing the identity of the cell. They often play an important role in the immune response against disease-causing agents entering the body.

MP3 Membrane Structure

Figure 4.4 A model of the plasma membrane.

The plasma membrane is composed of a phospholipid bilayer. The polar heads of the phospholipids are at the surfaces of the membrane; the nonpolar tails make up the interior of the membrane. Proteins embedded in the membrane have various functions (see Fig. 4.5).



Functions of Membrane Proteins

The proteins within a membrane have a variety of functions.

Channel Proteins

Channel proteins form a tunnel across the entire membrane, allowing only one or a few types of specific molecules to simply move across the membrane (**Fig. 4.5***a*). For example, aquaporins are channel proteins that allow water to enter or exit a cell. Without aquaporins in the kidneys, your body would soon dehydrate.

Transport Proteins

Transport proteins are also involved in the passage of molecules and ions through the membrane. They often combine with a substance and help it move across the membrane, with an input of energy (Fig. 4.5*b*). For example, a transport protein conveys sodium and potassium ions across a nerve cell membrane. Without this transport protein, nerve conduction would be impossible.

Cell Recognition Proteins

Cell recognition proteins are glycoproteins (Fig. 4.5*c*). Among other functions, these proteins enable our bodies to distinguish between our own cells and the cells of other organisms. Without this distinction, pathogens would be able to freely invade the body.

Receptor Proteins

A receptor protein has a shape that allows a specific molecule, called a signal molecule, to bind to it (Fig. 4.5*d*). The binding of a signal molecule causes the receptor protein to change its shape and thereby bring about a cellular response. For example, the hormone insulin binds to a receptor protein in liver cells, and thereafter these cells store glucose.

Enzymatic Proteins

Some plasma membrane proteins are enzymatic proteins that directly participate in metabolic reactions (Fig. 4.5*e*). Without enzymes, some of which are attached to the various membranes of a cell, the cell would never be able to perform the degradative and synthetic reactions that are important to its function.

Junction Proteins

Proteins are also involved in forming various types of junctions (Fig. 4.5*f*) between cells (see page 75). The junctions assist cell-to-cell adhesion and communication. The adhesion junctions in your bladder keep the cells bound together as the bladder swells with urine.

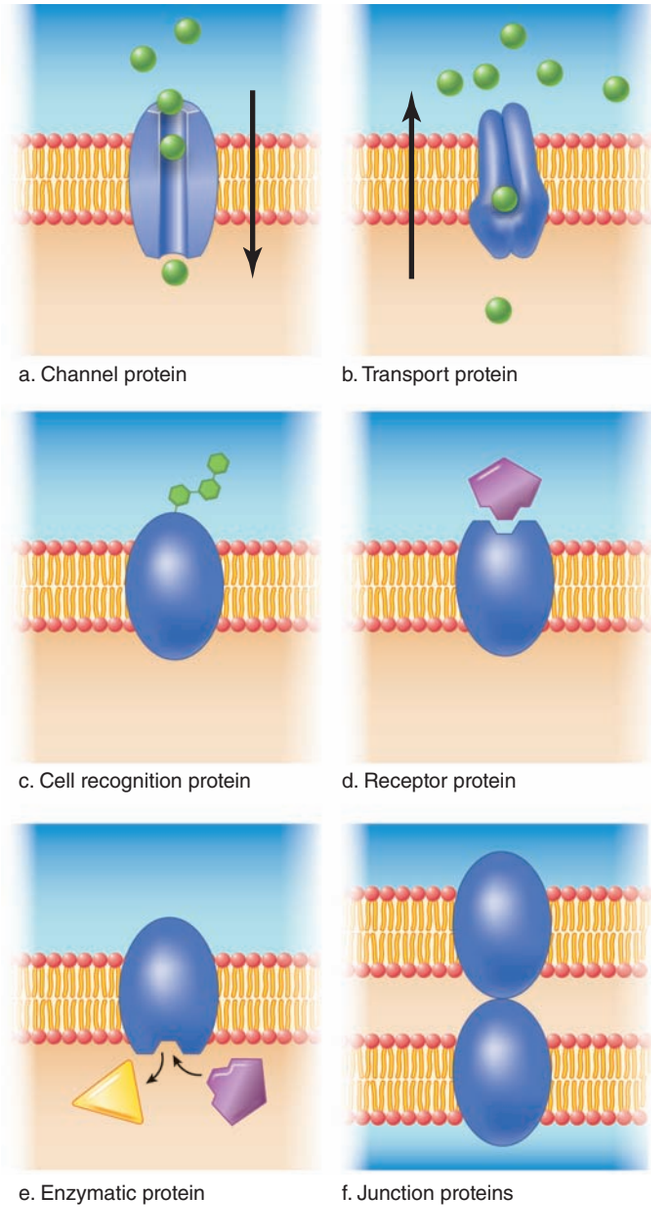


Figure 4.5 **Membrane protein diversity.**

These are some of the types of proteins embedded in the plasma membrane.

4.2 CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
The plasma membrane is common to all cells.

Check Your Progress 4.2

1. Identify the basic components that make up the structure of the plasma membrane.
2. Explain why the plasma membrane is described as a fluid-mosaic model.
3. Distinguish among the types of membrane proteins by function.

4.3 The Two Main Types of Cells

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Identify the characteristics common to all cells.
2. Distinguish between prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells.
3. Identify the structures of a prokaryotic cell.

The idea that all organisms are composed of cells and that cells come only from preexisting cells are the two central tenets of the **cell theory.** We can identify some characteristics that are common to all cells:

- A plasma membrane made of phospholipids that regulates the movement of material into and out of the cell
- A semifluid interior, called the cytoplasm, where chemical reactions occur
- Genetic material (DNA) that provides the information needed for cellular activities, including growth and reproduction

Cells are divided into two main types, according to the way their genetic material is organized. **Prokaryotic cells** (Greek; *pro*, before, and *karyon*, kernel or nucleus) are so named because they lack a membrane-bounded nucleus. Their DNA is located in a region of the cytoplasm called the nucleoid. The other type of cell, **eukaryotic cells** (Greek; *eu*, true), has a nucleus that houses its DNA. Eukaryotic cell structure is discussed in Section 4.4.

Prokaryotic Cells

Organisms from the domains Archaea and Bacteria are prokaryotic cells (see Table 1.2) whose evolutionary history dates back to the first cells on Earth (around 3.5 billion years ago). Prokaryotic cells are generally much smaller in size and simpler in structure than eukaryotic cells. Their small size and simple structure allow them to reproduce very quickly and effectively; they exist in great numbers in the air, in bodies of water, in the soil, and even on you. Prokaryotes are an extremely successful group of organisms.

Bacteria are well known because they cause some serious diseases, including tuberculosis, throat infections, and gonorrhea. Even so, the biosphere would not long continue without bacteria. Many bacteria decompose dead remains and contribute to ecological cycles. Bacteria also assist humans in another way—we use them to manufacture all sorts of products, from industrial chemicals to food products and drugs. The active cultures found in a container of yogurt are bacteria that are beneficial to us. There are also billions of bacteria teeming within your intestines! We are dependent on them for many things, including the synthesis of some vitamins we can't make ourselves.

Our knowledge about how DNA specifies the sequence of amino acids in proteins was much advanced by doing experiments utilizing *E. coli*, a bacterium that lives in the human large intestine. The fact that this information applies to all prokaryotes and eukaryotes, even ourselves, reveals the remarkable unity of life and gives evidence that all organisms share a common descent.

Connections: Health

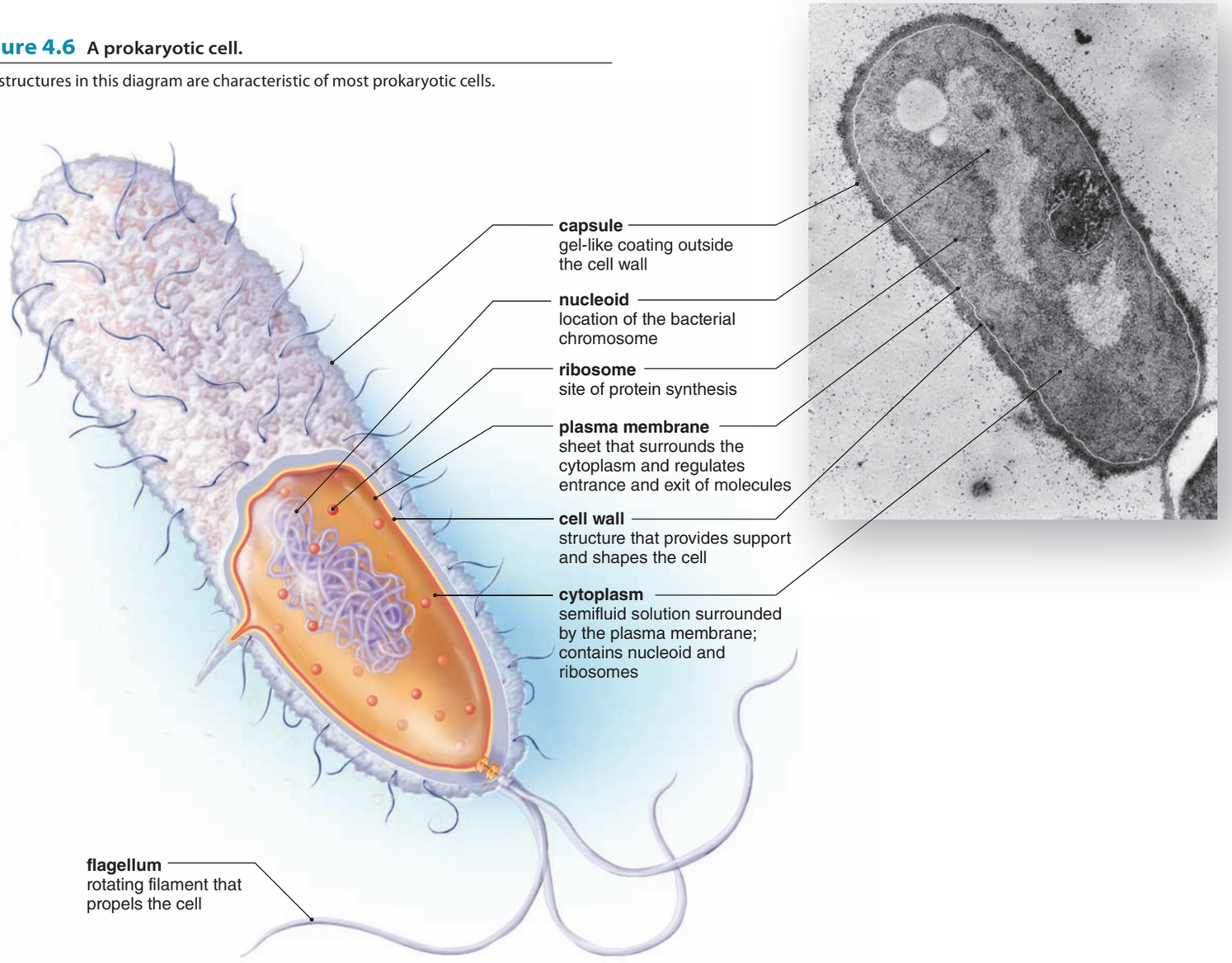
Doesn't *E. coli* cause intestinal problems?

The majority of *E. coli* in our bodies not only do not cause disease but actually benefit us by providing small amounts of vitamin K and some B vitamins. These *E. coli* even defend your intestinal tract against infection by other bacteria. However, one strain of *E. coli* (called O157:H7) produces a toxin (called Shiga toxin) that causes the intestines to become inflamed and secrete fluids, causing diarrhea. It typically is obtained from eating undercooked meat products. Still, even friendly strains of *E. coli* can cause problems in humans if they enter the urinary or genital tract.

Video
E. coli Wars

Figure 4.6 **A prokaryotic cell.**

The structures in this diagram are characteristic of most prokaryotic cells.



Bacterial Structure

In bacteria, the cytoplasm is surrounded by a plasma membrane. Most bacteria possess a cell wall, and sometimes also a capsule (**Fig. 4.6**). The cytoplasm contains a variety of enzymes. Enzymes are organic catalysts that speed up the many types of chemical reactions that are required to maintain an organism. As we have discussed, the plasma membranes of prokaryotes and eukaryotes have a similar structure (see Section 4.2). The **cell wall** maintains the shape of the cell, even if the cytoplasm should happen to take up an abundance of water. The **capsule** is a protective layer of polysaccharides lying outside the cell wall.

The DNA of a bacterium is located in a single circular, coiled chromosome that resides in a region of the cell called the **nucleoid.** The many proteins specified by bacterial DNA are synthesized on tiny structures called **ribosomes.** A bacterial cell contains thousands of ribosomes.

Some bacteria have **flagella** (sing., flagellum), which are tail-like appendages that allow bacteria to propel themselves. The bacterial flagellum does not move back and forth like a whip. Instead, it moves the cell in a rotary motion. Sometimes flagella occur only at the ends of a cell, and other times they are dispersed randomly over the surface. We will take a closer look at the structure of prokaryotic cells, and their methods of reproduction, in Chapter 17.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Prokaryotic cells have unique structures and are smaller than eukaryotic cells.

Check Your Progress 4.3

1. List the basic characteristics of all cells.
2. Identify the major distinctions between a prokaryotic cell and a eukaryotic cell.
3. Describe the role of the nucleoid, cell wall, ribosomes, and flagella in a prokaryotic cell.

4.4 Eukaryotic Cells

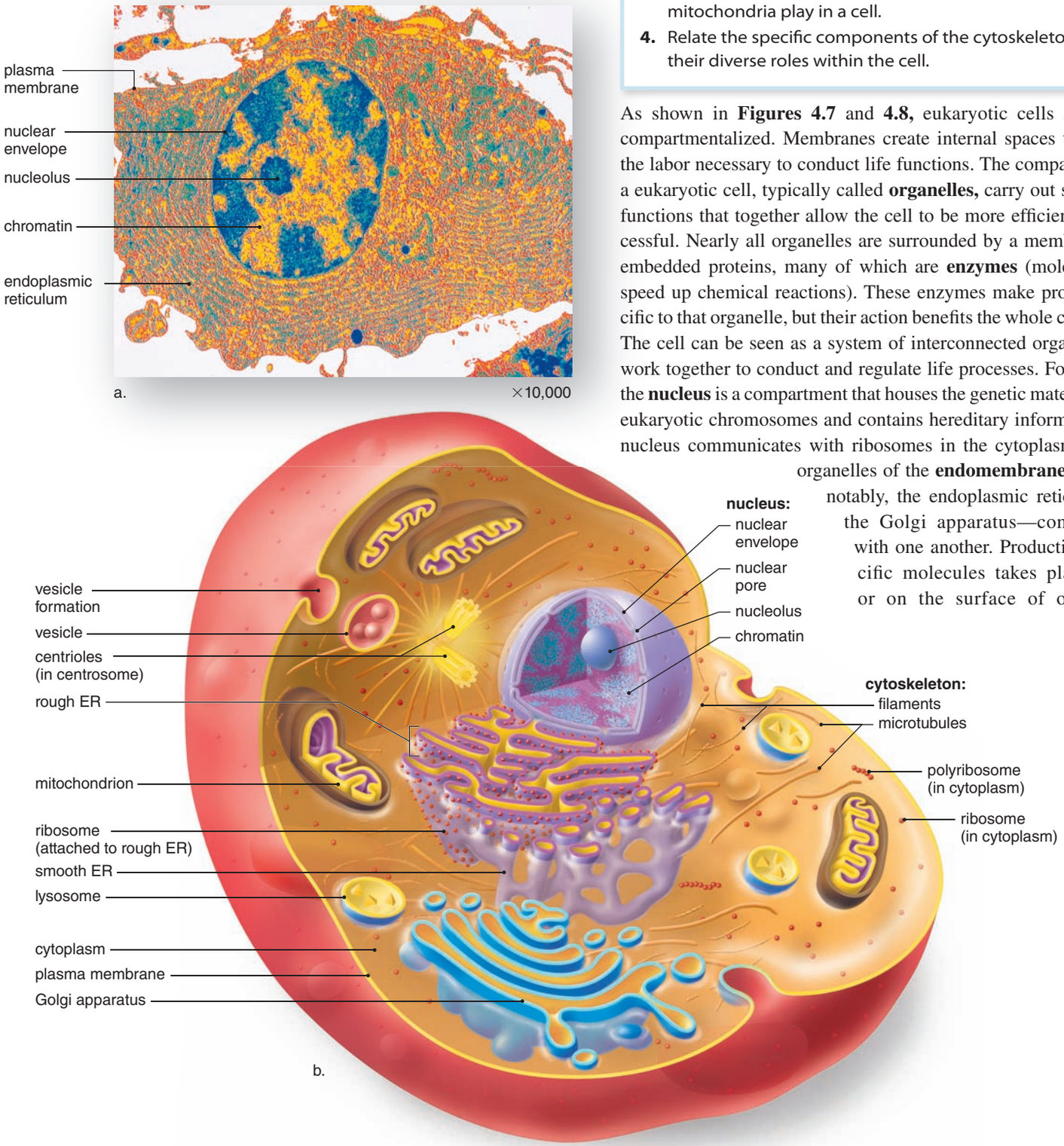
Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Recognize the role of the nucleus in cellular activities.
2. State the components of the endomembrane system and list their functions.
3. Identify the energy roles that chloroplasts and mitochondria play in a cell.
4. Relate the specific components of the cytoskeleton to their diverse roles within the cell.

Figure 4.7 **Structure of a typical animal cell.**

a. False-colored TEM of an animal cell. **b.** Generalized drawing of the same cell.



As shown in **Figures 4.7** and **4.8,** eukaryotic cells are highly compartmentalized. Membranes create internal spaces that divide the labor necessary to conduct life functions. The compartments of a eukaryotic cell, typically called **organelles,** carry out specialized functions that together allow the cell to be more efficient and successful. Nearly all organelles are surrounded by a membrane with embedded proteins, many of which are **enzymes** (molecules that speed up chemical reactions). These enzymes make products specific to that organelle, but their action benefits the whole cell system. The cell can be seen as a system of interconnected organelles that work together to conduct and regulate life processes. For example, the **nucleus** is a compartment that houses the genetic material within eukaryotic chromosomes and contains hereditary information. The nucleus communicates with ribosomes in the cytoplasm, and the organelles of the **endomembrane system**—notably, the endoplasmic reticulum and the Golgi apparatus—communicate with one another. Production of specific molecules takes place inside or on the surface of organelles.

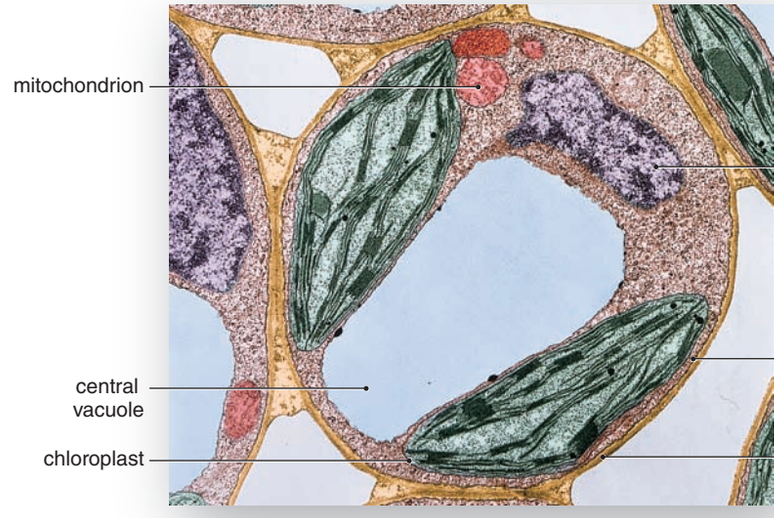
These products are then transported around the cell by transport **vesicles,** membranous sacs that enclose the molecules and keep them separate from the cytoplasm. For example, the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) communicates with the Golgi apparatus by means of transport vesicles.

Vesicles move around by means of an extensive network of protein fibers called the **cytoskeleton,** which also maintains cell shape and assists with cell movement. These protein fibers allow the vesicles to move from one organelle to another. Organelles are also moved from place to place using this transport system. Think of the cytoskeleton as a three-dimensional road system inside cells used to transport important cargo from place to place.

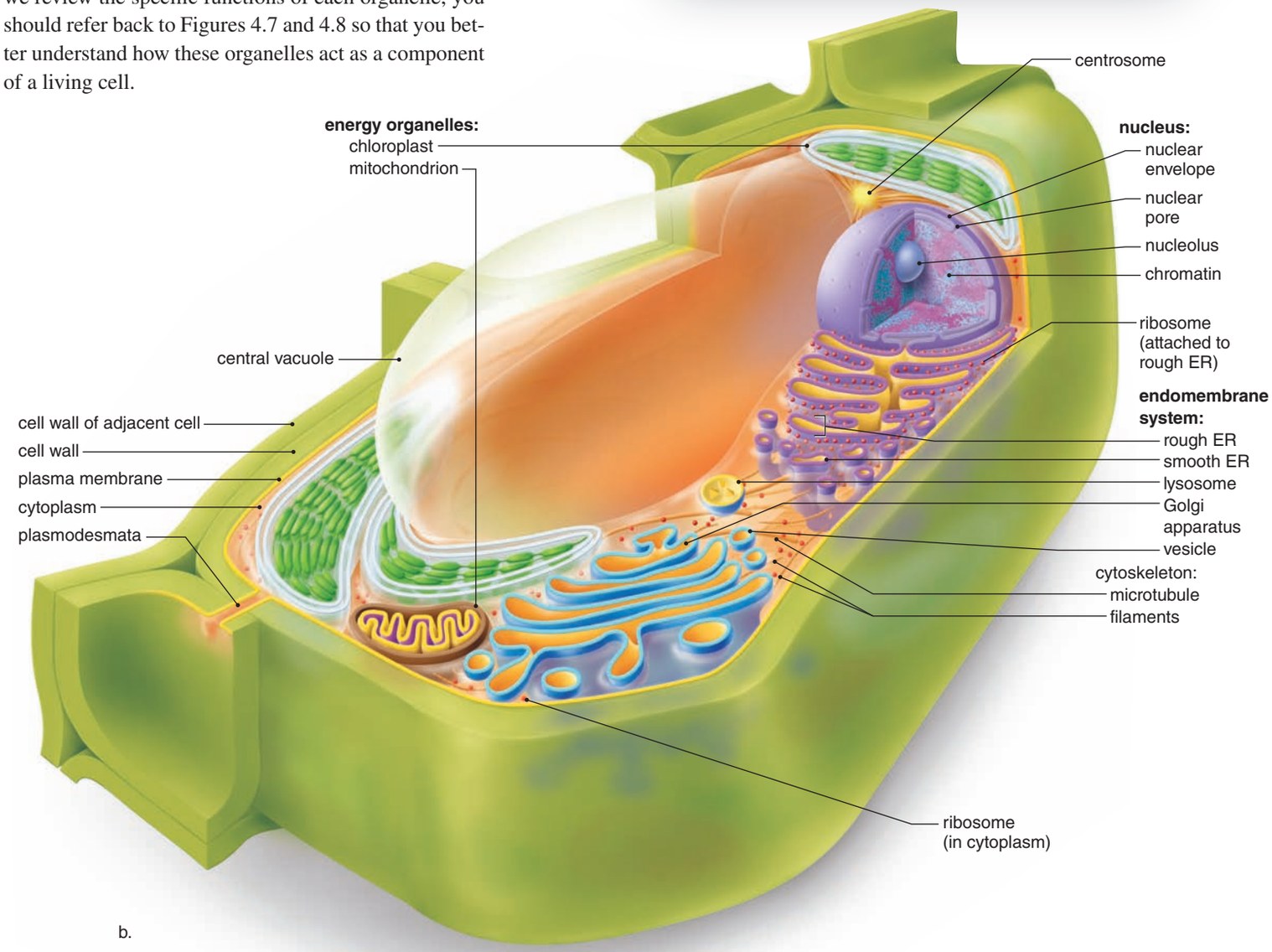
The energy-related organelles—chloroplasts in plants and mitochondria in both plant and animal cells—are responsible for generating the majority of the energy needed to perform cellular processes. As we review the specific functions of each organelle, you should refer back to Figures 4.7 and 4.8 so that you better understand how these organelles act as a component of a living cell.

Figure 4.8 **Structure of a typical plant cell.**

a. False-colored TEM of a plant cell. **b.** Generalized drawing of the same cell.



a. ×7,700



b.

Nucleus and Ribosomes

The nucleus stores genetic information, and the ribosomes in the cytoplasm use this information to carry out the manufacture of proteins.

The Nucleus

Because of its large size, the nucleus is one of the most noticeable structures in the eukaryotic cell (**Fig. 4.9**). The nucleus contains **chromatin** within a semifluid nucleoplasm. Chromatin is a network of DNA and protein. Just before the cell divides, the chromatin condenses and coils into rodlike structures called **chromosomes.** All the cells of an organism contain the same number of chromosomes, except for the egg and sperm, which usually have half this number.

Chromatin (and therefore chromosomes) is composed of DNA, protein, and some RNA. The DNA is organized into genes, each of which has a specific sequence of nucleotides that codes for a polypeptide. We will take a closer look at how this information is processed in Chapter 11. For now, it is just important to recognize that the information is transferred from the nucleus to the ribosome by an RNA molecule called messenger RNA (mRNA). At the ribosome, the information in the RNA is translated into a polypeptide chain. Because the proteins of a cell determine its structure and functions, the nucleus may be thought of as the command center of the cell.

Within the nucleus is a dark structure called a **nucleolus.** In the nucleolus, a type of RNA, called ribosomal RNA (rRNA), is produced. Proteins join with rRNA to form the subunits of ribosomes. The assembled ribosomal subunits are then sent out of the nucleus into the cytoplasm, where they join and assume their role in protein synthesis.

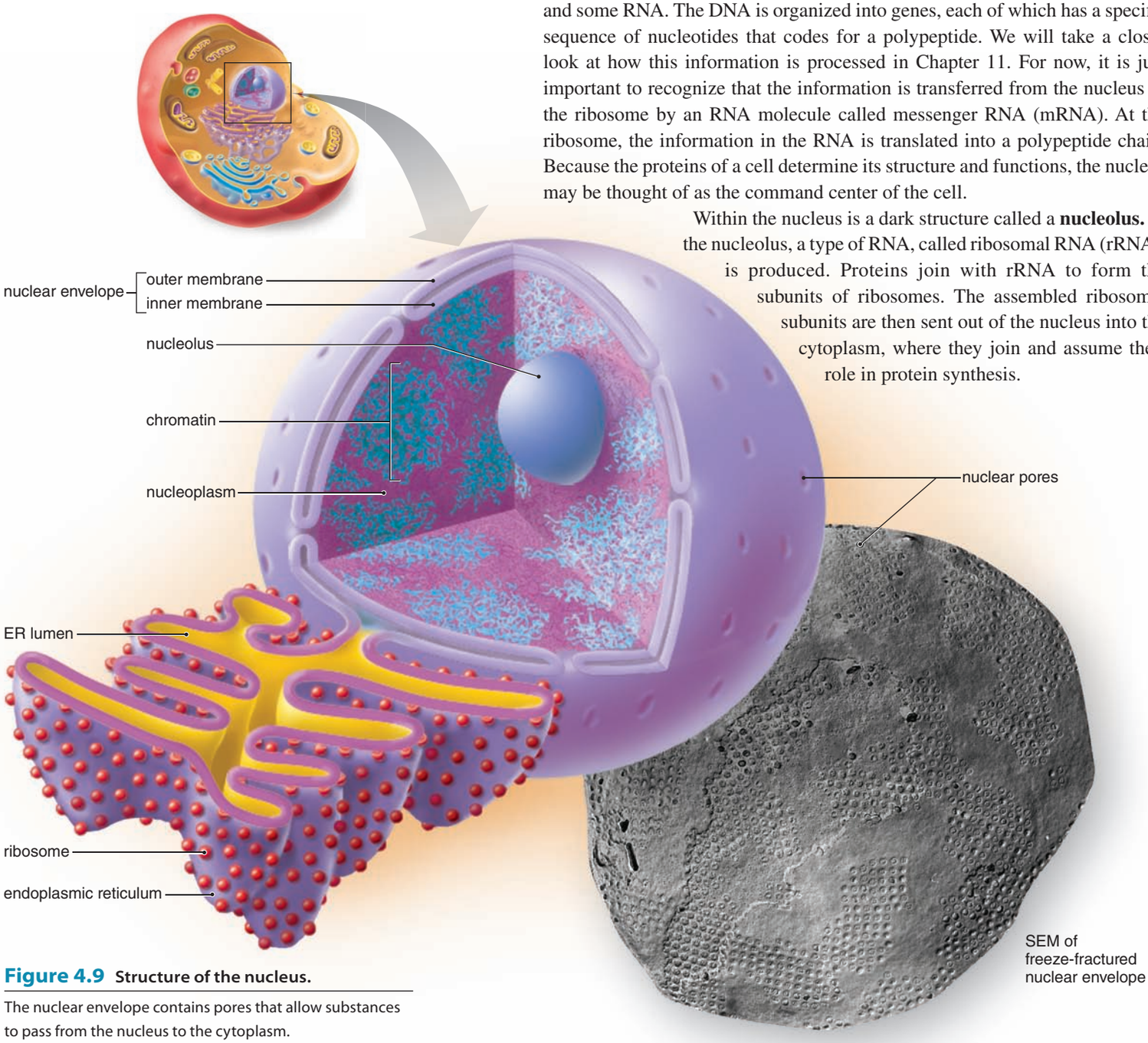


Figure 4.9 **Structure of the nucleus.**

The nuclear envelope contains pores that allow substances to pass from the nucleus to the cytoplasm.

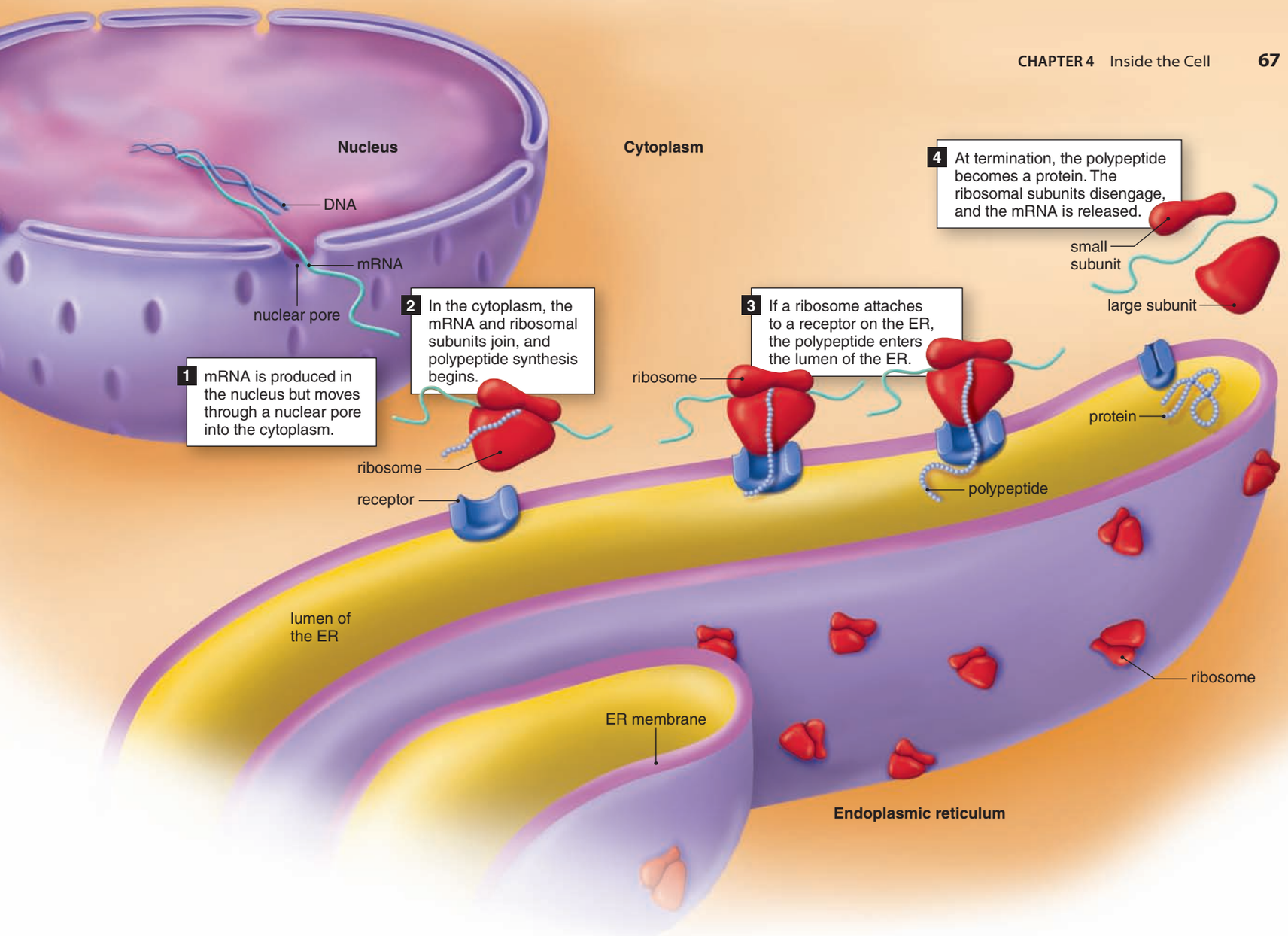


Figure 4.10 **The nucleus, ribosomes, and endoplasmic reticulum (ER).**

After mRNA leaves the nucleus, it attaches itself to a ribosome, and polypeptide synthesis begins. When a ribosome combines with a receptor at the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), the polypeptide enters the lumen of the ER through a channel in the receptor. Exterior to the ER, the ribosome splits, releasing the mRNA while a protein takes shape inside the ER lumen.

The nucleus is separated from the cytoplasm by a double membrane of phospholipids known as the **nuclear envelope.** Located throughout the nuclear envelope are *nuclear pores* that allow the nucleus to communicate with activities in the cytoplasm. The nuclear pores are of sufficient size (100 nm) to permit the passage of ribosomal subunits and RNA molecules out of the nucleus into the cytoplasm, as well as the passage of proteins from the cytoplasm into the nucleus.

Ribosomes

Ribosomes are found in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes. In both types of cells, ribosomes are composed of two subunits, one large and one small. Each subunit has its own mix of proteins and rRNA. The ribosome acts as a workbench, and it is here that the information contained within the RNA from the nucleus is used to synthesize a polypeptide chain (see Chapter 11). Proteins may contain one or more polypeptide chains.

In eukaryotic cells, some ribosomes occur freely within the cytoplasm. Other ribosomes are attached to the endoplasmic reticulum**,** an organelle of the endomembrane system. After the ribosome binds to a receptor at the ER, the polypeptide being synthesized enters the lumen (interior) of the ER, where it may be further modified (**Fig. 4.10**) and assume its final shape.

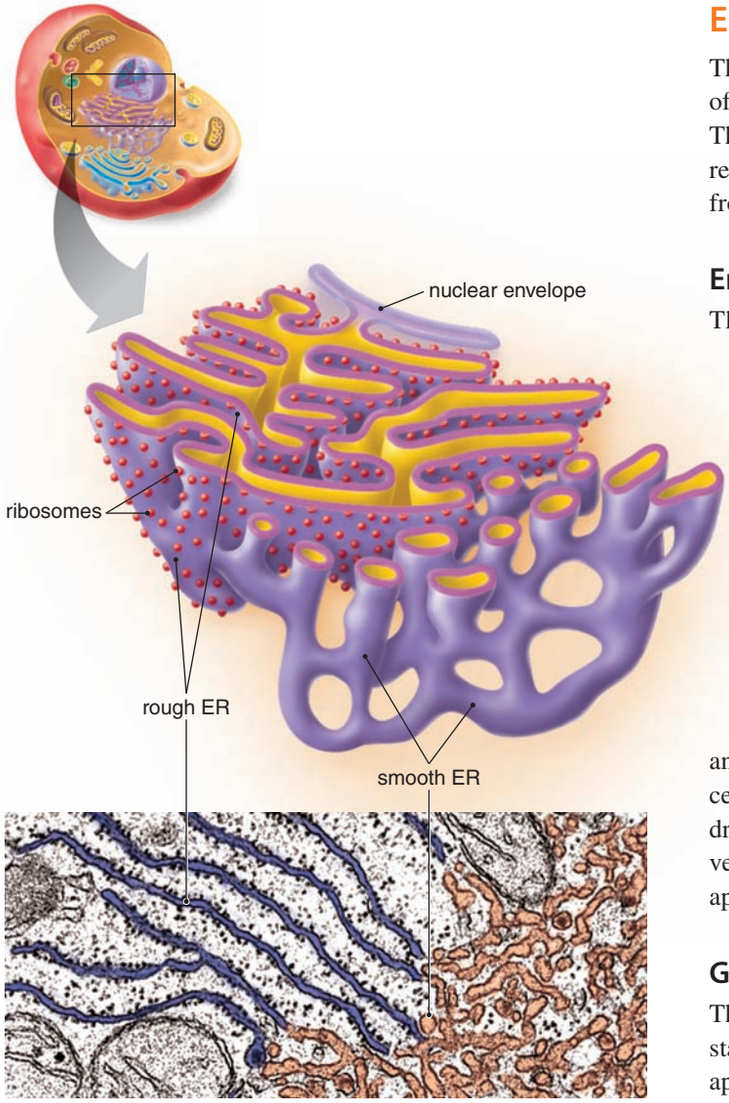


Figure 4.11 **Endoplasmic reticulum (ER).**

The rough ER consists of flattened saccules and has ribosomes present on its surface. The ribosomes synthesize polypeptides, which then enter the rough ER for modification. The smooth ER lacks ribosomes and is more tubular in structure. Lipids are synthesized by the smooth ER, which can have other functions as well.

Endomembrane System

The **endomembrane system** consists of the nuclear envelope, the membranes of the endoplasmic reticulum, the Golgi apparatus, and numerous vesicles**.** This system helps compartmentalize the cell, so that particular enzymatic reactions are restricted to specific regions. Transport vesicles carry molecules from one part of the system to another.

Endoplasmic Reticulum

The **endoplasmic reticulum (ER)** consists of a complicated system of membranous channels and saccules (flattened vesicles). It is physically continuous with the outer membrane of the nuclear envelope (**Fig. 4.11**).

Rough ER is studded with ribosomes on the side of the membrane that faces the cytoplasm; therefore, rough ER is able to synthesize polypeptides. It also modifies the polypeptides after they have entered the central enclosed region of the ER, called the lumen, where a protein takes shape. The rough ER forms transport vesicles, which take proteins to other parts of the cell. Often, transport vesicles are on their way to the plasma membrane or the Golgi apparatus (described below).

Smooth ER, which is continuous with rough ER, does not have attached ribosomes. Smooth ER synthesizes lipids, such as phospholipids and steroids. The functions of smooth ER are dependent on the particular cell. In the testes, it produces testosterone and, in the liver, it helps detoxify drugs. Regardless of any specialized function, smooth ER also forms transport vesicles that carry molecules to other parts of the cell, notably the Golgi apparatus (**Fig. 4.12**).

Golgi Apparatus

The **Golgi apparatus,** named for its discoverer, Camillo Golgi, consists of a stack of slightly curved, flattened saccules resembling pancakes. The Golgi apparatus may be thought of as a transfer station. First, it receives transport vesicles sent to it by rough and smooth ER. The molecules within the vesicles are modified as they move between saccules. For example, sugars may be added to or removed from proteins within the saccules of the Golgi. Finally, the Golgi apparatus sorts the modified molecules and packages them into new transport vesicles according to their particular destinations. Outgoing transport vesicles may return to the ER or proceed to the plasma membrane, where they discharge their contents during secretion**.** In animal cells, some of the vesicles that leave the Golgi are lysosomes, which are discussed next.

Lysosomes

Lysosomes are vesicles, produced by the Golgi apparatus, that digest molecules and even portions of the cell itself. Sometimes, after engulfing molecules outside the cell, a vesicle formed at the plasma membrane fuses with a lysosome. Lysosomal enzymes then digest the contents of the vesicle. In Tay-Sachs disease, a genetic disorder, lysosomes in nerve cells are missing an enzyme for a particular lipid molecule. The cells become so full of storage lipids that they lose their ability to function. In all cases, the individual dies, usually in childhood. Research is currently underway on using advances in medicine, such as gene therapy, to provide the missing enzyme for these children.

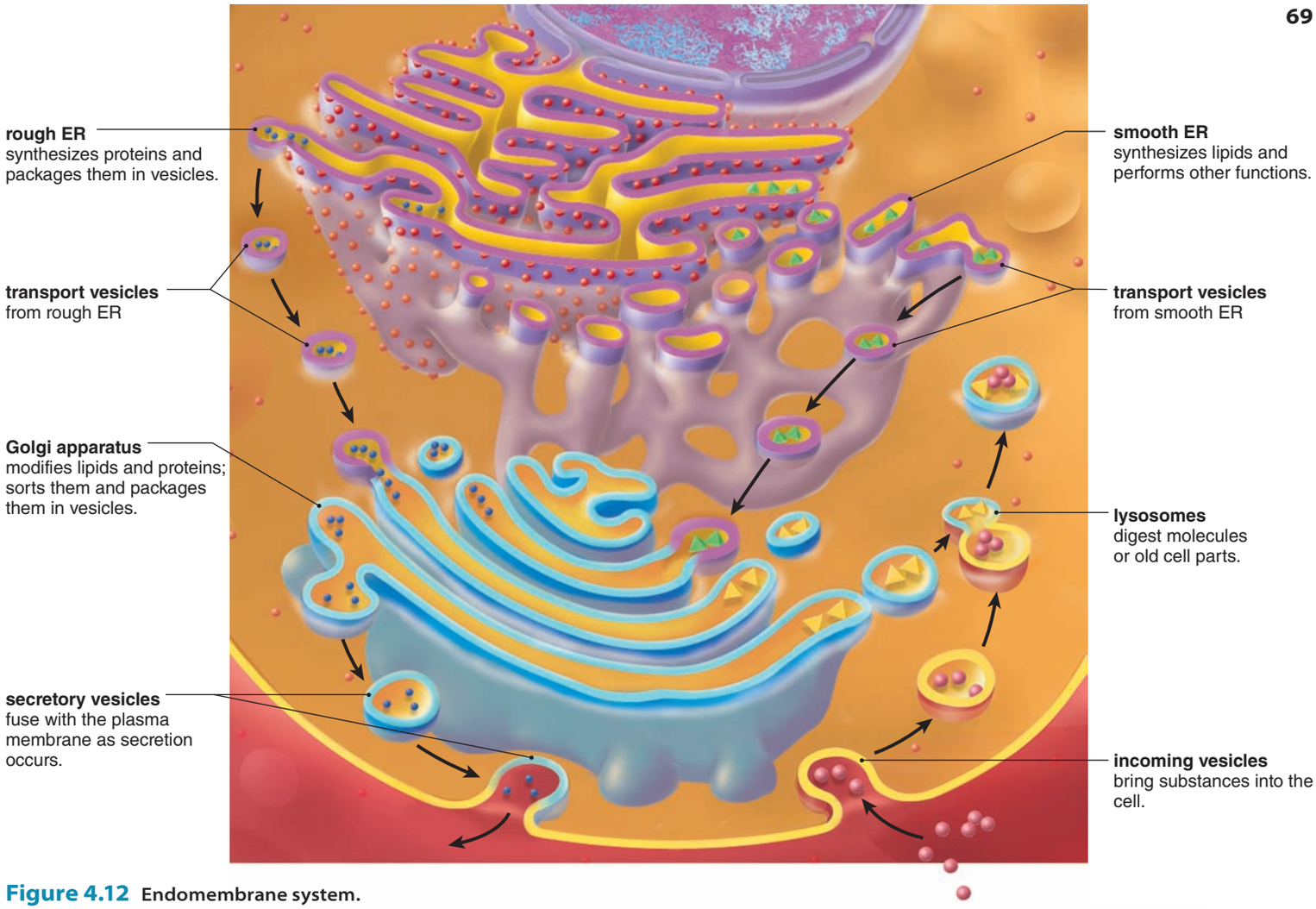


Figure 4.12 Endomembrane system.

The organelles in the endomembrane system work together to carry out the functions noted. Plant cells do not have lysosomes.

Vacuoles

Vacuoles, like vesicles, are membranous sacs, but vacuoles are larger than vesicles. The vacuoles of some protists are quite specialized; they include contractile vacuoles for ridding the cell of excess water and digestive vacuoles for breaking down nutrients (**Fig. 4.13*a***). Vacuoles usually store substances, such as nutrients or ions. Plant vacuoles contain not only water, sugars, and salts but also pigments and toxic molecules (Fig. 4.13*b*). The pigments are responsible for many of the red, blue, and purple colors of flowers and some leaves. The toxic substances help protect a plant from herbivorous animals. Few animal cells contain vacuoles. An exception is fat cells, or adipocytes, which contain a very large, lipid-engorged vacuole that takes up nearly two-thirds of the volume of the cell (Fig. 4.13*c*)!

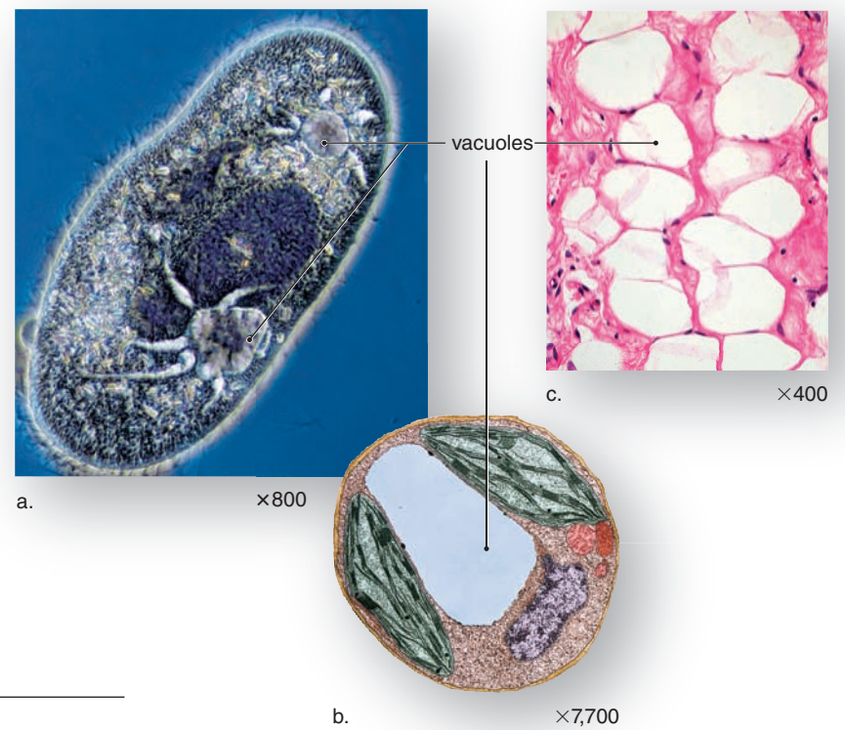


Figure 4.13 Vacuoles.

a. Contractile vacuoles of a protist. **b.** Plant vacuole. **c.** Fat cell vacuole.

Energy-Related Organelles

Chloroplasts and mitochondria are the two eukaryotic membranous organelles that specialize in energy conversion. **Chloroplasts** use solar energy to synthesize carbohydrates. **Mitochondria** (sing., mitochondrion) break down carbohydrates to produce **adenosine triphosphate (ATP)** molecules. The production of ATP is of great importance because ATP serves as a carrier of energy in cells. The energy of ATP is used whenever a cell synthesizes molecules, transports molecules, or carries out a special function, such as muscle contraction or nerve conduction. Without a constant supply of ATP, no cell could exist for long.

Chloroplasts

The chloroplast, an organelle found in plants and algae, is the location where carbon dioxide gas, water, and energy from the sun are used to produce carbohydrates by the process of **photosynthesis.** The chloroplast is quite large, being twice the width and as much as five times the length of a mitochondrion. Chloroplasts have a three-membrane system. They are bounded by a double membrane, which includes an outer membrane and an inner membrane. The large inner space, called the *stroma***,** contains a concentrated mixture of enzymes and disclike sacs called *thylakoids*. A stack of thylakoids is called a *granum***.** The lumens of thylakoid sacs form a large internal compartment called the *thylakoid space* (**Fig. 4.14**). The pigments that capture solar energy are located in the membrane of the thylakoids, and the enzymes that synthesize carbohydrates are in the stroma. The carbohydrates produced by chloroplasts serve as organic nutrient molecules for plants and, ultimately, for all living organisms on the planet. We will take a closer look at photosynthesis in Chapter 6.

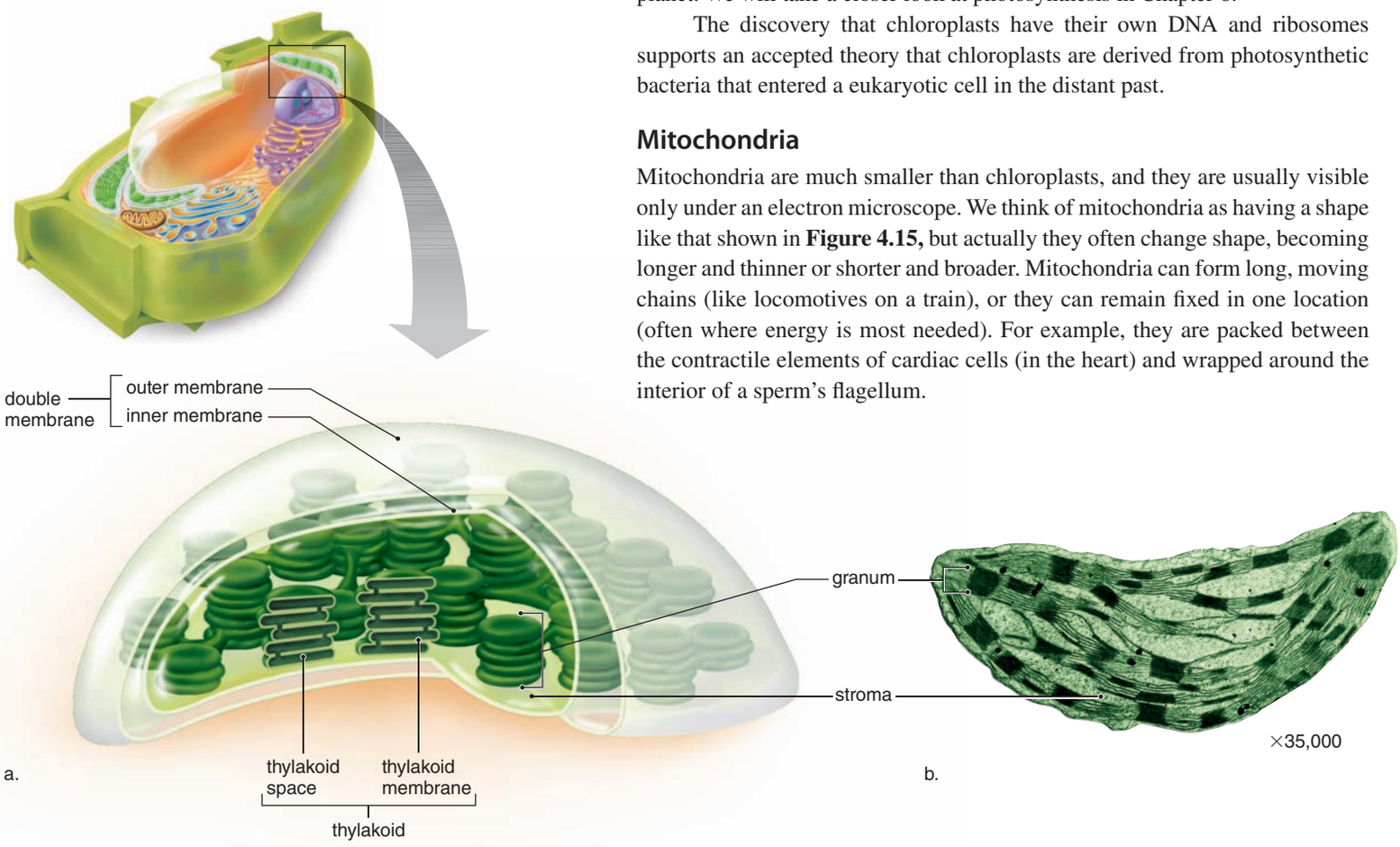
The discovery that chloroplasts have their own DNA and ribosomes supports an accepted theory that chloroplasts are derived from photosynthetic bacteria that entered a eukaryotic cell in the distant past.

Mitochondria

Mitochondria are much smaller than chloroplasts, and they are usually visible only under an electron microscope. We think of mitochondria as having a shape like that shown in **Figure 4.15,** but actually they often change shape, becoming longer and thinner or shorter and broader. Mitochondria can form long, moving chains (like locomotives on a train), or they can remain fixed in one location (often where energy is most needed). For example, they are packed between the contractile elements of cardiac cells (in the heart) and wrapped around the interior of a sperm's flagellum.

Figure 4.14 **Chloroplast structure.**

a. Generalized drawing of a chloroplast, the organelle that carries out photosynthesis, showing some of the internal structures. **b.** Electron micrograph of a chloroplast.



Like chloroplasts, mitochondria are bounded by a double membrane. The inner membrane is highly convoluted into folds, called *cristae*, that project into the matrix. Cristae increase the surface area of the inner membrane so much that, in a liver cell, they account for about one-third of the total membrane in the cell.

Mitochondria are often called the powerhouses of the cell because they produce most of the ATP the cell utilizes. The inner membrane encloses the *matrix,* which contains a highly concentrated mixture of enzymes that assists the breakdown of carbohydrates and other nutrient molecules. These reactions supply the chemical energy that permits ATP synthesis to take place on the cristae. The complete breakdown of carbohydrates, which also involves the cytoplasm, is called **cellular respiration** because oxygen is needed and carbon dioxide is given off. We will take a closer look at cellular respiration in Chapter 7.

The matrix also contains mitochondrial DNA and ribosomes. The presence of mitochondrial DNA and ribosomes is evidence that mitochondria and chloroplasts have similar origins and are derived from bacteria that took up residence in an early eukaryotic cell. All eukaryotic cells (with a few rare exceptions) have mitochondria, but only photosynthetic organisms (plants and algae) have chloroplasts.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How do we know that mitochondria and chloroplasts were once bacteria?

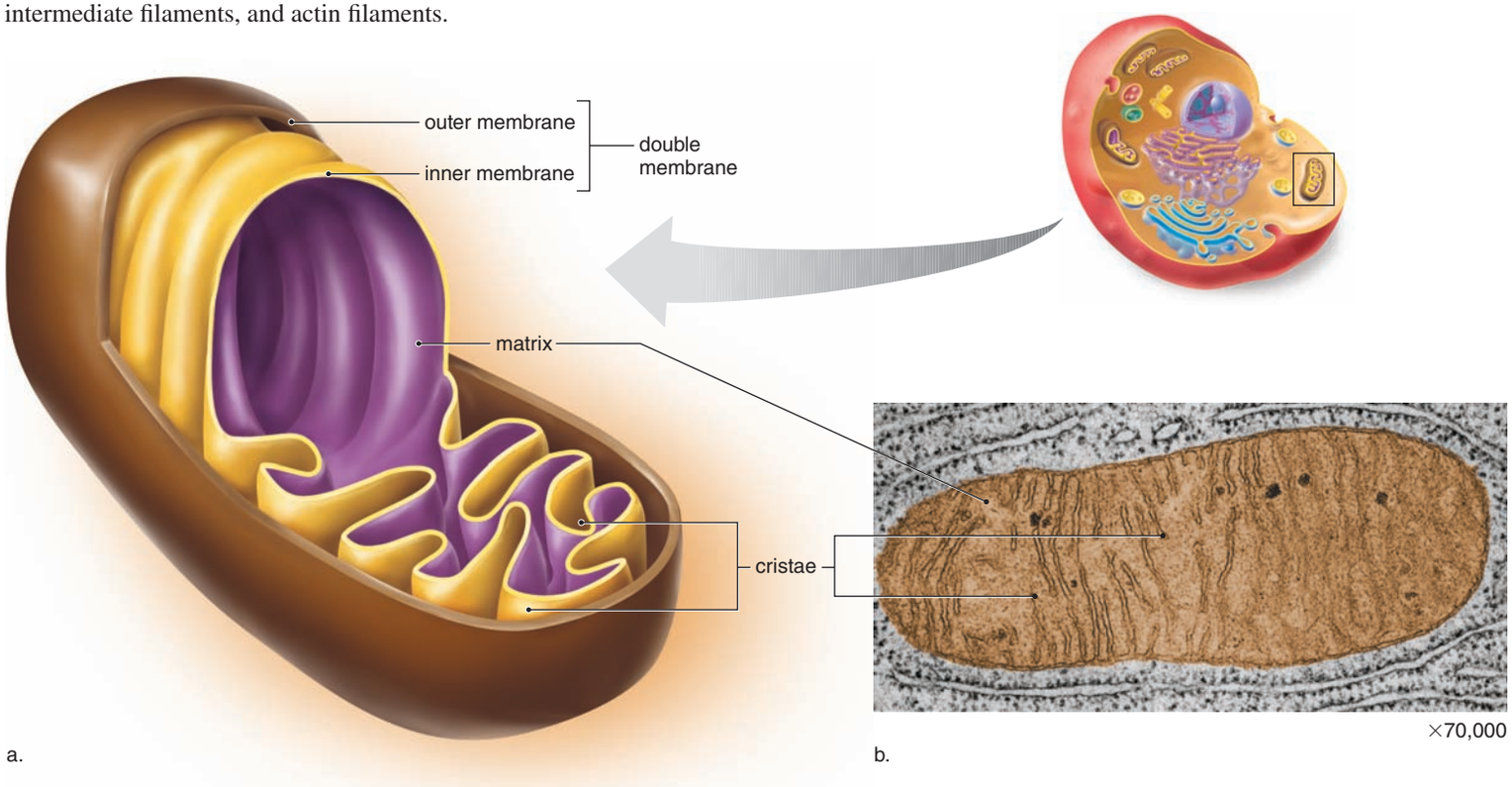
The DNA found in these organelles is structured differently than that found in the nucleus. Both mitochondria and chloroplasts contain a single, circular chromosome—similar to those found in prokaryotes. The genes located on this chromosome are very closely related to prokaryotic genes in both structure and function. In addition, both mitochondria and chloroplasts reproduce in a manner very similar to the process of binary fission in bacteria. These observations, coupled with detailed analyses of mitochondrial and chloroplast DNA, have strongly suggested that both of these organelles arose from an ancient symbiotic event (also called endosymbiosis) that played an important role in the evolution of the eukaryotic cell.

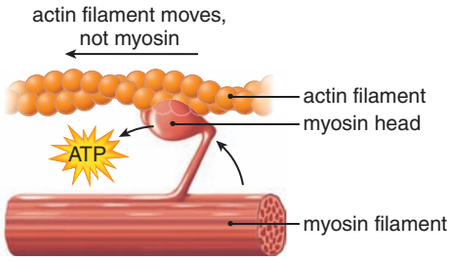
The Cytoskeleton and Motor Proteins

The **cytoskeleton** is a network of interconnected protein filaments and tubules that extends from the nucleus to the plasma membrane in eukaryotic cells. Much as bones and muscles give an animal structure and produce movement, the elements of the cytoskeleton maintain cell shape and, along with *motor proteins,* allow the cell and its organelles to move. But unlike an animal's skeleton, the cytoskeleton is highly dynamic—its elements can be quickly assembled and disassembled as appropriate. The cytoskeleton includes microtubules, intermediate filaments, and actin filaments.

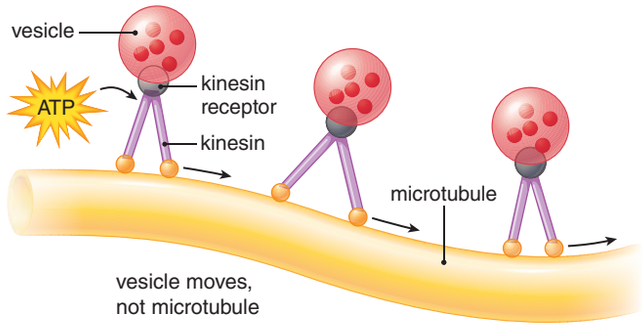
Figure 4.15 Mitochondrion structure.

a. Generalized drawing that reveals the internal structure of a mitochondrion, the organelle that is involved in cellular respiration.
b. Electron micrograph of a mitochondrion.





a. Myosin



b. Kinesin

Figure 4.16 **Motor proteins.**

a. Myosin creates movement by detaching and reattaching to actin to pull the actin filament along the myosin filament. **b.** The motor molecule kinesin carries organelles along microtubule tracks. One end binds to an organelle, and the other end attaches, detaches, and reattaches to the microtubule. ATP supplies the energy for both myosin and kinesin.

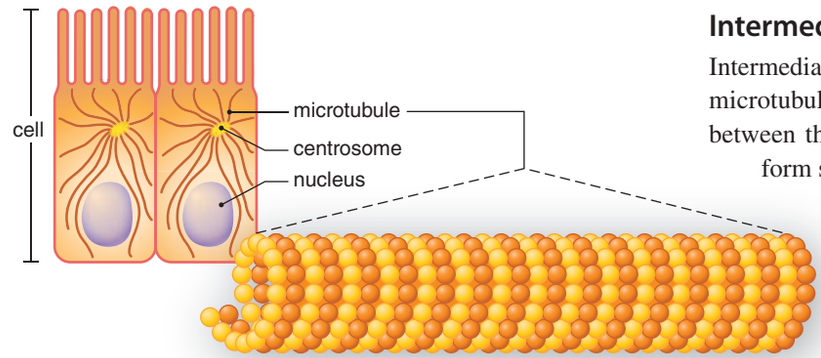


Figure 4.17 **Microtubules.**

Microtubules are located throughout the cell and radiate outward from the centrosome.

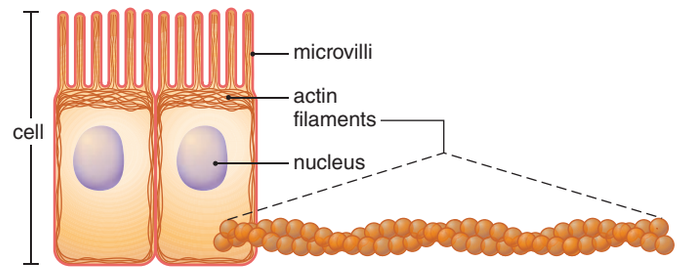


Figure 4.18 **Actin filaments.**

Actin filaments are organized into bundles or networks just under the plasma membrane, where they lend support to the shape of a cell.

Motor Proteins

Motor proteins associated with the cytoskeleton are instrumental in allowing cellular movements. The major motor proteins are myosin, kinesin, and dynein.

Myosin often interacts with actin filaments when movement occurs. For example, myosin is interacting with actin filaments when cells move in an amoeboid fashion and/or engulf large particles. During animal cell division, actin, in conjunction with myosin, pinches the original cell into two new cells. When a muscle cell contracts, myosin pulls actin filaments toward the middle of the cell (**Fig. 4.16***a*).

Kinesin and dynein move along microtubules much as a car travels along a highway. First, an organelle, perhaps a vesicle, combines with the motor molecule, and then the motor molecule attaches, detaches, and reattaches farther along the microtubule. In this way, the organelle moves from one place to another in the cell (Fig. 4.16*b*). Kinesin and dynein are acting similarly when transport vesicles take materials from the Golgi apparatus to their final destinations.

Microtubules

Microtubules are small, hollow cylinders composed of 13 long chains of tubulin dimers (two tubulin molecules at a time; **Fig. 4.17**). Microtubules are dynamic; they can easily change their length by removing tubulin dimers. This process is controlled by the **centrosome,** a microtubule organizing center, which lies near the nucleus. Microtubules radiating from the centrosome help maintain the shape of the cell and act as tracks along which organelles and other materials can move.

Intermediate Filaments

Intermediate filaments are intermediate in size between actin filaments and microtubules. They are ropelike assemblies of proteins that typically run between the nuclear envelope and the plasma membrane. The network they form supports both the nucleus and the plasma membrane.

The protein making up intermediate filaments differs according to the cell type. Intermediate filaments made of the protein keratin give great mechanical strength to skin cells.

Actin Filaments

Each **actin filament** consists of two chains of globular actin monomers twisted about one another in a helical manner to form a long filament. Actin filaments support the cell, forming a dense, complex web just under the plasma membrane (**Fig. 4.18**). Actin filaments also support projections of the plasma membrane, such as microvilli.

Centrioles

Located in the centrosome, **centrioles** are short, barrel-shaped organelles composed of microtubules (**Fig. 4.19**). It's possible that centrioles give rise to basal bodies, which lie at the base of and are believed to organize the microtubules in cilia and flagella. It's also possible that centrioles help organize the spindle, mentioned earlier, which is so necessary to cell division. However, some eukaryotes, such as the plants and fungi, lack centrioles (although they have centrosomes), suggesting that centrioles are not necessary for the assembly of cytoplasmic microtubules.

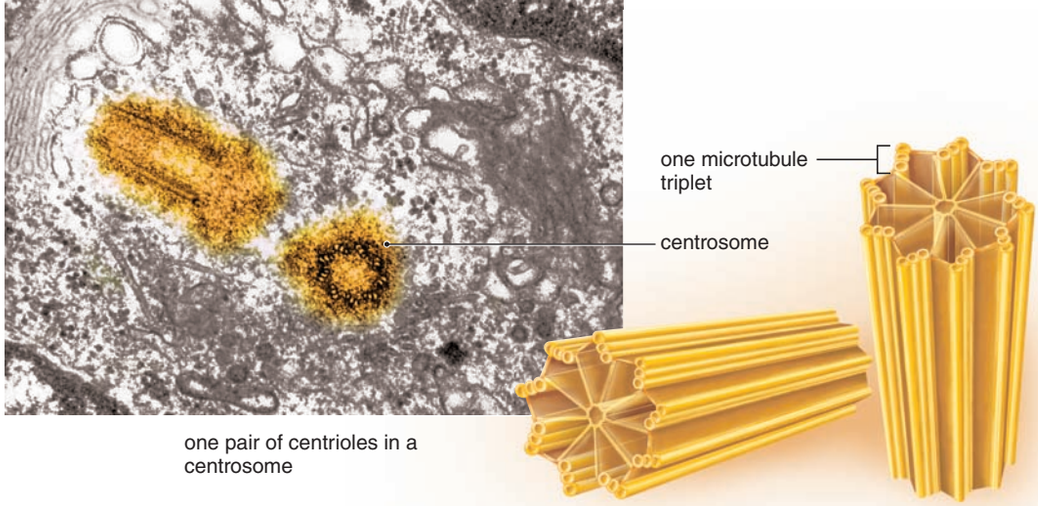


Figure 4.19 Centrioles.

A pair of centrioles lies to one side of the nucleus in an animal cell.

Cilia and Flagella

Cilia and flagella (sing., cilium, flagellum) are whiplike projections of cells (**Fig. 4.20**). **Cilia** move stiffly, like an oar, and **flagella** move in an undulating, snakelike fashion. Cilia are short (2–10 μm), and flagella are longer (usually no more than 200 μm). Some single-celled protists utilize cilia or flagella to move about. In our bodies, ciliated cells are critical to respiratory health and our ability to reproduce. The ciliated cells that line our respiratory tract sweep debris trapped within mucus back up into the throat, which helps keep the lungs clean. Similarly, ciliated cells move an egg along the oviduct, where it can be fertilized by a flagellated sperm cell.

cilia in bronchial wall of lungs

a.

flagella of sperm

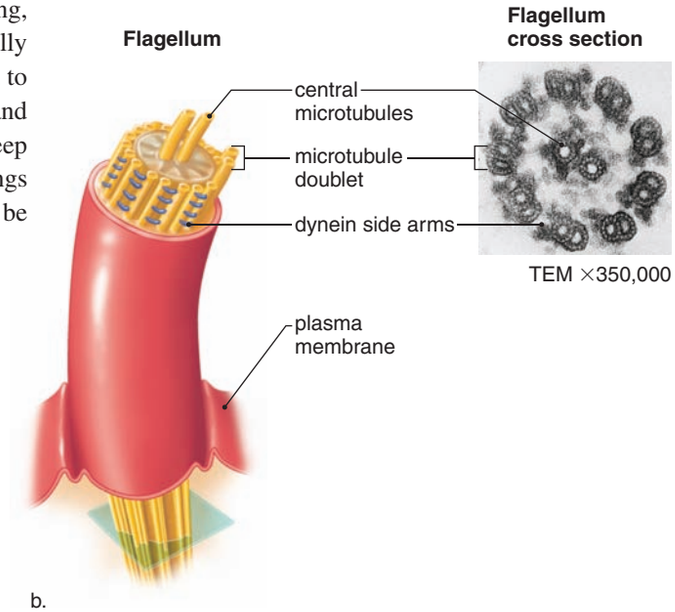


Figure 4.20 Cilia and flagella.

a. Cilia in the bronchial wall and the flagella of sperm are organelles capable of movement. The cilia in the bronchi of our lungs sweep mucus and debris back up into the throat, where it can be swallowed or ejected. The flagella of sperm allow them to swim to the egg. **b.** Cilia and flagella have a distinct pattern of microtubules bounded by a plasma membrane.

Check Your Progress 4.4

1. List the components of the nucleus and ribosomes and give a function for each.
2. List the components of the endomembrane system and list the function of each component.
3. Summarize the special functions of vacuoles and hypothesize what might happen if they are not present in a cell.
4. Compare and contrast the structure and function of the two energy-related organelles of a eukaryotic cell.
5. Describe the function of the cytoskeleton proteins and motor proteins in a eukaryotic cell.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Eukaryotic cells are identified by the presence of a nucleus.

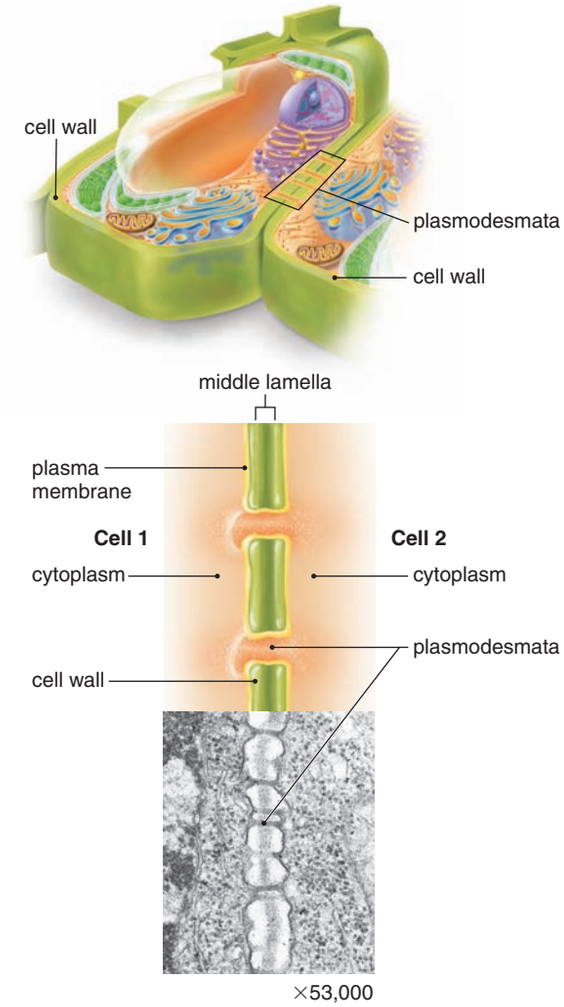


Figure 4.21 **Plasmodesmata.**

Plant cells are joined by membrane-lined channels, called plasmodesmata, that contain cytoplasm. Through these channels, water and small molecules can pass from cell to cell.

4.5 Outside the Eukaryotic Cell

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the structure of a plant cell wall.
2. State the purpose of the extracellular matrix.
3. Distinguish among the types of junctions present between eukaryotic cells.

Now that we have completed our discussion of the plasma membrane and the cell contents, you might think we have finished our tour of the cell. However, most cells also have extracellular structures formed from materials the cell produces and transports across its plasma membrane.

Plant Cell Walls

All plant cells have a **cell wall.** A *primary cell wall* contains cellulose fibrils and noncellulose substances, and these allow the wall to stretch when the cell is growing. Adhesive substances are abundant outside the cell wall in the middle lamella, a layer that holds two plant cells together.

For added strength, some plant cells have a *secondary cell wall* that forms inside the primary cell wall. The secondary wall has a greater quantity of cellulose fibrils, which are laid down at right angles to one another. Lignin, a substance that adds strength, is a common ingredient of secondary cell walls.

In a plant, living cells are connected by **plasmodesmata** (sing., plasmodesma), numerous narrow, membrane-lined channels that pass through the cell wall (**Fig. 4.21**). Cytoplasmic strands within these channels allow the direct exchange of some materials between adjacent plant cells and eventually among all the cells of a plant. The plasmodesmata allow only water and small solutes to pass freely from cell to cell.

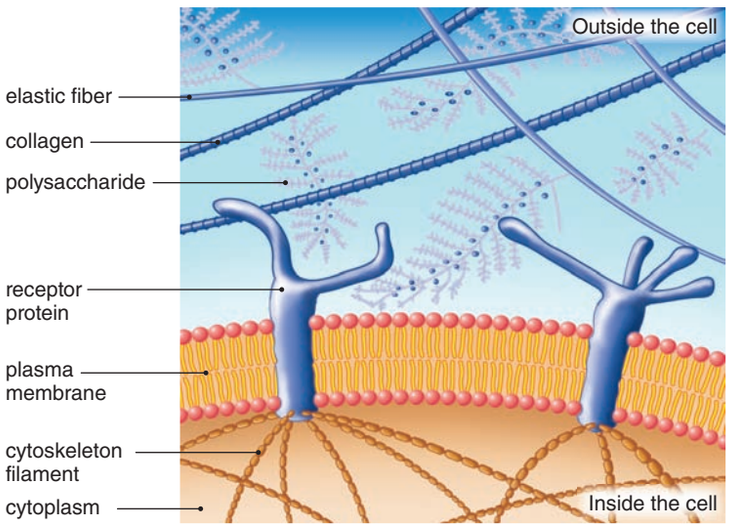


Figure 4.22 **Animal cell extracellular matrix.**

The extracellular matrix supports an animal cell and affects its behavior.

Exterior Cell Surfaces in Animals

Animal cells do not have a cell wall, but they do have two other exterior surface features of interest: (1) An extracellular matrix exists outside the cell, and (2) various junctions occur between some cell types.

Extracellular Matrix

An **extracellular matrix (ECM)** is a meshwork of fibrous proteins and polysaccharides in close association with the cell that produced them (**Fig. 4.22**). Collagen and elastin are two well-known proteins in the extracellular matrix. Collagen resists stretching and elastin gives it resilience. The polysaccharides play a dynamic role by directing the migration of cells along collagen fibers during development. Other ECM proteins bind to receptors in a cell's plasma membrane, permitting communication between the extracellular matrix and the cytoskeleton within the cytoplasm of the cell.

The extracellular matrices of tissues vary greatly. They may be quite flexible, as in cartilage, or rock solid, as in bone. The rigidity of the extracellular matrix is influenced mainly by the number and types

of protein fibers present and how they are arranged. The extracellular matrix of bone is very hard because, in addition to the components mentioned, mineral salts—notably, calcium salts—are deposited outside the cell.

Junctions Between Cells

Three types of junctions are found between certain cells: adhesion junctions, tight junctions, and gap junctions. The type of junction between two cells depends on whether or not the cells need to be able to exchange materials and if the cells need to be joined together very tightly.

In **adhesion junctions,** internal cytoplasmic plaques, firmly attached to the cytoskeleton within each cell, are joined by intercellular filaments (**Fig. 4.23***a*). The result is a sturdy but flexible sheet of cells. In some organs—such as the heart, stomach, and bladder, where tissues must stretch—adhesion junctions hold the cells together.

Adjacent cells are even more closely joined by **tight junctions,** in which plasma membrane proteins actually attach to each other, producing a zipperlike fastening (Fig. 4.23*b*). The cells of tissues that serve as barriers are held together by tight junctions; for example, urine stays within kidney tubules because the cells of the tubules are joined by tight junctions.

A **gap junction** allows cells to communicate. A gap junction is formed when two identical plasma membrane channels join (Fig. 4.23*c*). The channel of each cell is lined by six plasma membrane proteins that allow the junction to open and close. A gap junction lends strength to the cells, but it also allows small molecules and ions to pass between them. Gap junctions are important in heart muscle and smooth muscle because they permit the flow of ions that is required for the cells to contract as a unit.

Connections: Health

Do collagen creams remove wrinkles?

Not exactly. Collagen is a protein that is active in the middle layers of the skin, called the dermis. Collagen placed on the surface of the skin can't pass through the tough outer layers to where it is needed. However, the moisturizers that are present in the cream prevent water loss and make the skin more elastic, until the cream wears off.

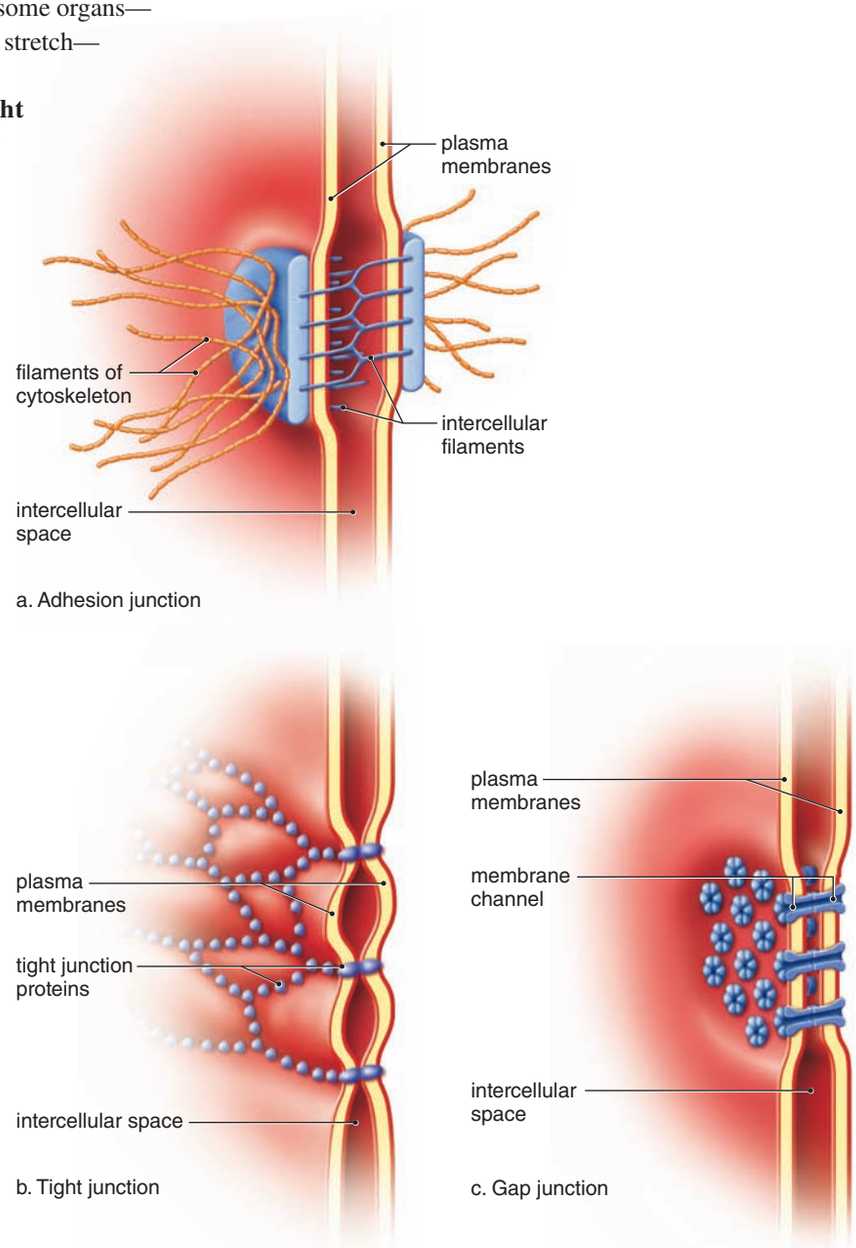


Figure 4.23 **Junctions between cells of the intestinal wall.**

a. In adhesion junctions, intercellular filaments run between two cells. **b.** Tight junctions between cells form an impermeable barrier because their adjacent plasma membranes are joined. **c.** Gap junctions allow communication between two cells because adjacent plasma membrane channels are joined.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

4.5 **Cells are held together by specialized junctions.**

Check Your Progress 4.5

1. Explain why some eukaryotic cells have cell walls.
2. Describe the composition of the extracellular matrix of an animal cell.
3. Compare the structure and function of adhesion, tight, and gap junctions.

Media Study Tools

Enhance your study of this chapter with media! Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Animations	Videos	MP3 Files
4.4 Lysosomes • Endosymbiosis	**4.3** *E. coli* Wars	**4.2** Membrane Structure **4.4** Organelles

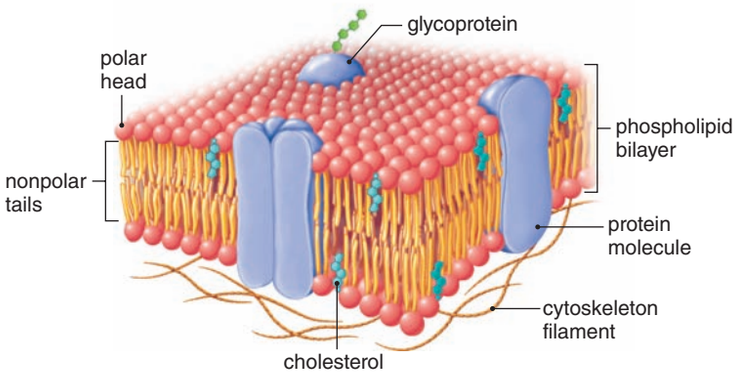
SUMMARIZE

4.1 Cells Under the Microscope

- **Cells** are microscopic in size. Although a light microscope allows you to see cells, it cannot make out the detail that an electron microscope can.
- The overall size of a cell is regulated by the **surface-area-to-volume ratio.**

4.2 The Plasma Membrane

- The **plasma membrane** of both prokaryotes and eukaryotes is a phospholipid bilayer.
- The phospholipid bilayer regulates the passage of molecules and ions into and out of the cell.
- The fluid-mosaic model of membrane structure shows that the embedded proteins form a mosaic (varying) pattern.
- The types of embedded proteins are channel, transport, cell recognition, receptor, and enzymatic proteins.



4.3 The Two Main Types of Cells

- The **cell theory** states that all life is made of cells.
- Some of the differences between **prokaryotic cells** and **eukaryotic cells** are presented in **Table 4.1**

Table 4.1 Differences Between Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells

Characteristic	Prokaryotic Cells	Eukaryotic Cells
Size	1–5 μm	Typically > 50 μm
DNA Location	Nucleoid region	Nucleus
Organelles	No	Yes
Chromosomes	One, circular	Multiple, linear

- All cells have a plasma membrane, a **cytoplasm,** and genetic material.
- Prokaryotic cells lack a nucleus but possess a **nucleoid** region where the genetic material is located. Prokaryotic cells are surrounded by a **cell wall** and **capsule,** and they often move with the use of a flagella. The cytoplasm contains **ribosomes** for protein synthesis.

4.4 Eukaryotic Cells

Eukaryotic cells, which are much larger than prokaryotic cells, contain **organelles,** compartments that contain enzymes for specialized functions. A summary of these organelles and other structures is provided in **Table 4.2.**

Table 4.2 Summary of Eukaryotic Organelles

Organelle	Description
Plasma membrane	Encloses the cytoplasm; regulates interactions with the external environment
Nucleus	Contains the genetic material (DNA); nucleolus is the site of ribosome formation
Ribosomes	Location where polypeptides and proteins are formed
Vesicles	Small sacs that move materials between organelles in the endomembrane system
Rough ER	Component of the endomembrane system that has ribosomes attached; synthesizes proteins
Smooth ER	Endomembrane system organelle where lipids and some carbohydrates are synthesized; detoxifies some chemicals
Golgi apparatus	Processing and packaging center
Lysosome	Vesicle that contains enzymes that break down incoming molecules and cellular components
Chloroplast	Site of photosynthesis and carbohydrate formation (not found in animals)
Mitochondrion	Site of cellular respiration and ATP synthesis
Cell wall	Layer of cellulose that supports cells (not found in animals)
Cytoskeleton	Internal framework of protein fibers; moves organelles and gives cell shape
Flagella and cilia	Involved in moving the cell or moving materials along the surface of the cell

Nucleus and Ribosomes

- The nucleus houses **chromatin,** which contains DNA, the genetic material. During division, chromatin becomes condensed into **chromosomes.**
- The **nucleolus** is an area within the nucleus where ribosomal RNA is produced. Proteins are combined with the rRNA to form the subunits of ribosomes, which exit the **nuclear envelope** through nuclear pores.
- Ribosomes in the cytoplasm synthesize polypeptides using information transferred to the DNA by mRNA.

Endomembrane System

- The **endoplasmic reticulum (ER)** is part of the endomembrane system. **Rough ER** has ribosomes, which produce polypeptides, on its surface. These polypeptides enter the ER, are modified, and become proteins, which are then packaged in transport vesicles.
- **Smooth ER** synthesizes lipids, but it also has various metabolic functions, depending on the cell type. It can also form transport vesicles.
- The **Golgi apparatus** is a transfer station that receives transport vesicles and modifies, sorts, and repackages proteins into transport vesicles that fuse with the plasma membrane as secretion occurs.
- **Lysosomes** are produced by the Golgi apparatus. They contain enzymes that carry out intracellular digestion.

Vacuoles and Vesicles

- **Vacuoles** are large, membranous sacs specialized for storage, contraction, digestion, and other functions.
- Vesicles are small, membranous sacs.

Energy-Related Organelles

- **Chloroplasts** capture the energy of the sun and carry on **photosynthesis,** which produces carbohydrates.
- **Mitochondria** are the site of **cellular respiration.** They break down carbohydrate-derived products to **adenosine triphosphate (ATP).**

The Cytoskeleton and Motor Proteins

- The **cytoskeleton** maintains cell shape and allows the cell and the organelles to move.
- **Microtubules** radiate from the **centrosome** and are present in cytoplasm. They also occur in centrioles, cilia, and flagella.
- Intermediate filaments support the nuclear envelope and the plasma membrane. They give mechanical strength to skin cells, for example.
- **Actin filaments** are long, thin, helical filaments that support the plasma membrane and projections of the cell.
- Motor proteins allow cellular movements to occur and move vesicles and organelles within the cell. The motor protein myosin is often interacting with actin when movement occurs, and kinesin interacts with microtubules to move vesicles and other organelles from place to place.

Centrioles

- **Centrioles** are present in animal cells, but not plant cells. They appear to be involved in microtubule formation.

Cilia and Flagella

- **Cilia** and **flagella** are hairlike projections that allow some cells to move.

4.5 Outside the Eukaryotic Cell

Plant cells have a freely permeable **cell wall,** with cellulose as its main component.

- Some plant cells have a secondary cell wall containing lignin and cellulose, which give them rigidity.
- Small, membrane-lined channels called **plasmodesmata** span the cell wall and contain strands of cytoplasm, which allow materials to pass from one cell to another.
- The **extracellular matrix (ECM)** contains proteins and polysaccharides produced by the cell that helps support cells and aids in communication between cells.
- **Adhesion junctions** and **tight junctions,** if present, help hold cells together.
- **Gap junctions** allow the passage of small molecules between cells.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Cells are the fundamental units of all living organisms. Health issues and disorders can arise from the failure of cell structures to function correctly.

Cells have an optimal size due to surface-area-to-volume ratio.

The plasma membrane is common to all cells.

Prokaryotic cells have unique structures and are smaller than eukaryotic cells.

Eukaryotic cells are identified by the presence of a nucleus.

Cells are held together by specialized junctions.

For more information about the properties of cells, see the following discussions:

Section 8.2 describes how the centrosomes and microtubules play a role in eukaryotic cell division.

Section 17.3 explores the evolutionary history of the prokaryotes and their relationship to the eukaryotes.

Section 22.1 contains micrographs of the cells found in each of the four types of animal tissues.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

4.1 Cells Under the Microscope

1. Which of the following can be viewed only with an electron microscope?
   a. virus **c.** bacterium
   b. chloroplast **d.** human egg
2. As a cell increases in size, its surface-to-volume ratio
   a. increases. **c.** stays the same.
   b. decreases.

4.2 The Plasma Membrane

3. The plasma membrane is called a fluid mosaic because it contains
   a. waxes suspended within a mosaic of phospholipids.
   b. a mosaic of proteins suspended within a phospholipid bilayer.
   c. a polysaccharide mosaic suspended within a protein bilayer.
   d. a mosaic of phospholipids suspended within a protein bilayer.
4. Which of the following types of proteins allow materials to move into, or out of, the cell?
   a. receptor proteins **c.** enzymatic proteins
   b. junction proteins **d.** channel proteins

4.3 The Two Main Types of Cells

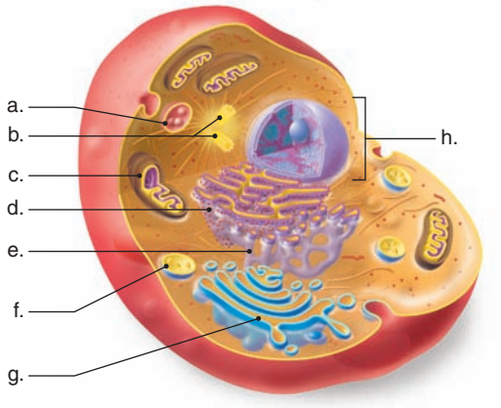
5. Which of the following is not found in a prokaryotic cell?
- **a.** cytoplasm
- **b.** ribosome
- **c.** plasma membrane
- **d.** mitochondrion
- **e.** nucleoid

6. The ____ is located outside the cell wall in a prokaryotic cell.
- **a.** nucleoid
- **b.** nucleus
- **c.** capsule
- **d.** ribosome

4.4 Eukaryotic Cells

7. Which of these structures is involved in protein synthesis?
- **a.** ribosome
- **b.** plasma membrane
- **c.** mitochondrion
- **d.** microtubule

8. Label the indicated structures in this diagram:



9. Which of the following is found in a plant cell, but not an animal cell?
- **a.** chloroplast
- **b.** Golgi apparatus
- **c.** mitochondrion
- **d.** ribosome
- **e.** plasma membrane

10. The endomembrane system consists of all of the following, except
- **a.** lysosomes.
- **b.** Golgi apparatus.
- **c.** mitochondria.
- **d.** endoplasmic reticulum.

11. The majority of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) needed by the cell is produced by the
- **a.** nucleus.
- **b.** chloroplasts.
- **c.** mitochondria.
- **d.** ribosomes.

12. _____ move materials between the organelles of the endomembrane system.
- **a.** Vesicles
- **b.** RNA
- **c.** Ribosomes
- **d.** Nuclear pores

4.5 Outside the Eukaryotic Cell

13. Centrioles are made of
- **a.** intermediate filaments.
- **b.** actin filaments.
- **c.** microtubules.

14. Which of the following is not part of the cytoskeleton?
- **a.** intermediate filaments
- **b.** actin filaments
- **c.** microtubules
- **d.** centrioles

15. _____ are involved in the movement of the cell.
- **a.** Cilia
- **b.** Flagella
- **c.** Centrioles
- **d.** Intermediate filaments
- **e.** Both a and b

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Microscopy Biology
- Cell Anatomy

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. The 1992 movie *Lorenzo's Oil* recounts the story of six-year-old Lorenzo Odone and his battle with adrenoleukodystrophy (ALD), which is caused by a malfunctioning organelle called a peroxisome. A peroxisome is an organelle that ordinarily contains enzymes capable of breaking down long-chain fatty acids. In ALD, the enzyme is missing, and when long-chain fatty acids accumulate, muscle weakness and loss of muscle control result.
- **a.** How might a dietitian be able to help a person with ALD?
- **b.** What organelle discussed in this chapter is most similar in structure and function to a peroxisome?

2. *Giardia lamblia* is a protist that is commonly known for contaminating water supplies and causing diarrhea. While *Giardia* is a eukaryote, its cells lack mitochondria. What would be the overall effect on a eukaryotic cell if it lacked mitochondria? How might have *Giardia* adapted for this potential difficulty?

3. Scientists reason that a cell could not evolve until it had an outer plasma membrane. Why does that seem logical?

5

The Dynamic Cell

Red Hot Chili Peppers

Have you ever bitten into a hot pepper and had the sensation that your mouth is on fire? This is because the chili pepper plant produces a chemical, called capsaicin, that binds to a protein found in the plasma membrane of pain receptors in your mouth. One of the important functions of a plasma membrane is to control what molecules move into and out of the cell. In the membrane are channel proteins that allow the movement of calcium ions across the membrane. When these channels are open, movement of the calcium ions into the cell causes the pain receptor to send a signal to the brain. The brain then interprets this signal as pain or discomfort, such as a burning sensation. Lots of things can trigger these channels, including temperature, acidic pH, heat, and chemicals such as capsaicin.

As long as the capsaicin is present, the pathway will remain active and signals will be sent to the brain. So the quickest way to alleviate the pain is to remove the capsaicin and close the channel protein. Unfortunately, since capsaicin is lipid-soluble, drinking cool water does very little to alleviate the pain. However, drinking milk, or eating bread or rice, often helps remove the capsaicin. Often the first bite is the worst, since the capsaicin causes an initial opening of all of the channels simultaneously. The receptors can become desensitized to capsaicin, which is why later bites of the same pepper don't produce the same results. Interestingly, as we will see in Chapter 18, plants produce capsaicin as a weapon in a long-standing evolutionary battle with the fungi.

In this chapter, we will explore not only how cells move materials in and out,but also the basic properties of energy and how cells use metabolic pathways and enzymes to conduct the complex reactions needed to sustain life.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How do transport and channel proteins function in a plasma membrane?
2. What type of transport are the calcium channels performing?

OUTLINE

5.1 What Is Energy? 80

5.2 ATP: Energy for Cells 82

5.3 Metabolic Pathways and Enzymes 85

5.4 Cell Transport 88

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 1.1 Why is metabolism important to all life?

Section 3.2 What are the four levels of structure associated with the three-dimensional shape of a protein?

Section 4.2 What are the roles of proteins in the plasma membrane of a cell?

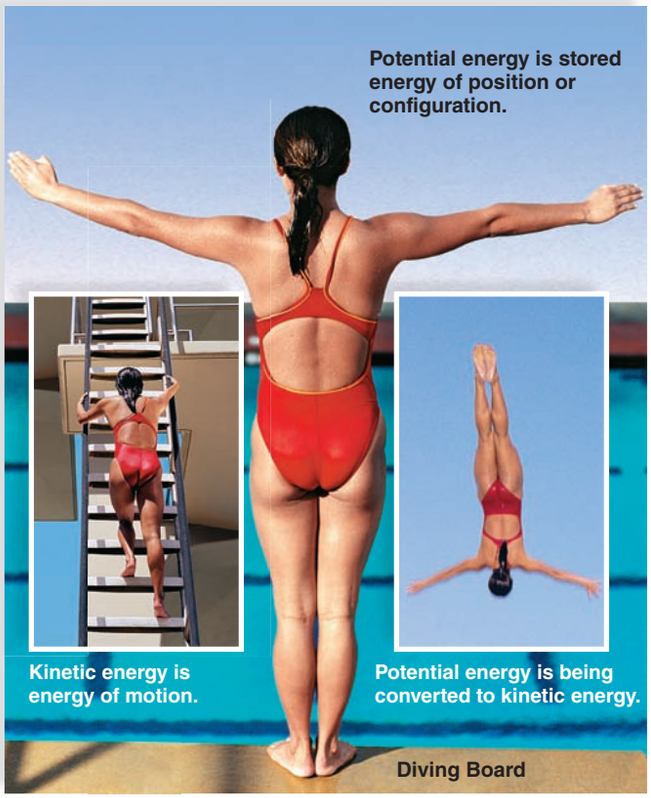


Figure 5.1 **Potential energy versus kinetic energy.**

Food contains potential energy, which a diver can convert to kinetic energy in order to climb a ladder. Height is potential energy due to location, which the diver converts to kinetic energy when she jumps. With every conversion to kinetic energy, some potential energy is lost as heat.

Connections: Health

How much energy do you need per day to sustain life?

The measurement of the minimum energy requirements needed to sustain life is called the basal metabolic rate, or BMR. The BMR is responsible for activities such as maintaining body temperature, heartbeat, and basic nervous functions. The BMR varies widely, depending on the age and sex of the individual, as well as body mass, genetics, and activity level. BMR values may be as low as 1,200 and as high as 2,000 kilocalories per day. There are numerous online calculators that can help you estimate your personal BMR values.

5.1 What Is Energy?

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish between potential and kinetic forms of energy.
2. Define the two laws of thermodynamics.
3. Summarize how the laws of thermodynamics and the concept of entropy relate to living organisms.

In Chapter 1 we dicussed that living organisms must acquire and use energy. So what is energy? **Energy** is defined as the capacity to do work—to make things happen. Without a source of energy, life, including humans, would not exist on our planet. Our biosphere gets its energy from the sun, and thereafter one form of energy is changed to another form as life processes take place. The two basic forms of energy are potential energy and kinetic energy. **Potential energy** is stored energy, and **kinetic energy** is the energy of motion. Potential energy is constantly being converted to kinetic energy, and vice versa. An example is shown in **Figure 5.1.** The food a diver has for breakfast contains chemical energy, which is a form of potential energy. As the diver climbs the ladder to the diving platform, the potential energy of food is converted to the kinetic energy of motion, a type of mechanical energy. By the time she reaches the top of the platform, kinetic energy has been converted to the potential energy of location. As she begins her dive, this potential energy is converted to the kinetic energy of motion again. But with each conversion, some energy is lost as heat and other unusable forms.

Measuring Energy

Chemists use a unit of measurement called the joule to measure energy, but it is common to measure food energy in terms of calories. A **calorie** is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water by 1 degree Celsius. This isn't much energy, so the caloric value of food is listed in nutrition labels and diet charts in terms of **kilocalories** (1,000 calories). On food label, and in scientific studies, an upper-case C (Calorie) indicates 1,000 calories.

Energy Laws

Two **energy laws** govern energy flow and help us understand the principles of energy conversion. Collectively, these are called the laws of thermodynamics.

MP3 Laws of Thermodynamics

Conservation of Energy

The first law of thermodynamics, also called the law of conservation of energy, tells us *energy cannot be created or destroyed, but it can be changed from one form to another.* Relating the law to our previous example, we know that the diver had to acquire energy by eating food before she could climb the ladder and that energy conversions occurred before she completed the dive. At the cellular level, energy is often changed between forms. For example, your muscles often store energy as the complex carbohydrate glycogen, which then may be converted to kinetic energy for muscle contraction.

Entropy

The second law of thermodynamics tells us *energy cannot be changed from one form to another without a loss of usable energy.* Many forms of energy are usable, such as the energy of the sun, food, and ATP. **Heat** is diffuse energy and the least usable form. Every energy conversion results in a loss of usable energy in the form of heat. In our example, much of the potential energy stored in the food is lost as heat as the diver converts it into the kinetic energy of motion. The generation of this heat allows us to maintain a constant body temperature, but eventually the heat is lost to the environment.

Every energy transformation leads to an increase in the amount of disorganization or disorder. The term **entropy** refers to the relative amount of disorganization. The only way to bring about or maintain order is to add more energy to a system. To take an example from your own experience, a tidy room is more organized and less stable than a messy room, which is disorganized and more stable **(Fig. 5.2*a*).** In other words, your room is much more likely to stay messy than it is to stay tidy. Why? Unless you continually add energy to keep your room organized and neat, it will inevitably become less organized and messy.

All energy transformations, including those in cells, lead to an increase in entropy. Figure 5.2*b* shows a process that occurs in cells because it proceeds from a more ordered state to a more disordered state. Just as a tidy room tends to become messy, hydrogen ions (H^+) that have accumulated on one side of a membrane tend to move to the other side unless they are prevented from doing so by the addition of energy. Why? Because when hydrogen ions are distributed equally on both sides of the membrane, no additional energy is needed to keep them that way, and the entropy, or disorder, of their arrangement has increased. The result is a more stable arrangement of H^+ ions in the cell.

What about reactions in cells that apparently proceed from disorder to order? For example, plant cells can make glucose out of carbon dioxide and water. How do they do it? In order to overcome the natural tendency toward disorder, energy input is required, just as energy is required to organize a messy room. Likewise, energy provided by the sun allows plants to make glucose, a highly organized molecule, from the more disorganized water and carbon dioxide. Even this process, however, involves a loss of some potential energy. When light energy is converted to chemical energy in plant cells, some of the sun's energy is always lost as heat. In other words, the organization of a cell has a constant energy cost that also results in an increase in the entropy of the universe.

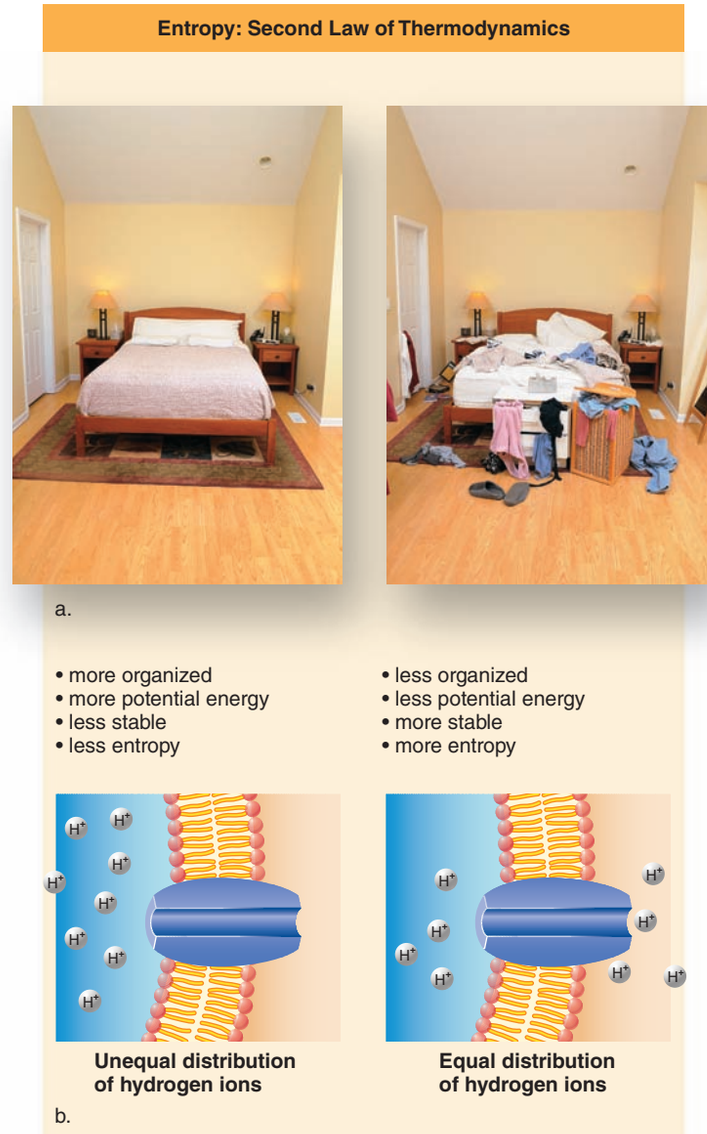


Figure 5.2 Cells and entropy.

The second law of thermodynamics states that entropy (disorder) always increases. Therefore, (**a**) a tidy room tends to become messy and disorganized, and (**b**) hydrogen ions (H^+) on one side of a membrane tend to move to the other side, so that the ions are equally distributed. Both processes result in a loss of potential energy and an increase in entropy.

Check Your Progress 5.1

1. Contrast potential energy with kinetic energy; give an example of potential energy moving to kinetic energy.
2. Describe the two laws of thermodynamics.
3. Hypothesize how cells avoid entropy (disorder) and maintain their organization.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The laws of thermodynamics determine how living organisms use energy.

5.2 ATP: Energy for Cells

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the role of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) in a cell.
2. Describe the phases of the ATP cycle.
3. Describe the flow of energy between photosynthesis and cellular respiration.

ATP (adenosine triphosphate) is the energy currency of cells. Just as you use coins to purchase all sorts of products, a cell uses ATP to carry out nearly all of its activities, including synthesizing proteins, transporting ions across the plasma membranes, and causing organelles and cilia to move. Cells use the readily accessible energy supplied by ATP to provide energy wherever it is needed.

Structure of ATP

ATP is a nucleotide, the type of molecule that serves as a monomer for the construction of DNA and RNA. ATP's name, adenosine triphosphate, means that it contains the sugar ribose, the nitrogen-containing base adenine, and three phosphate groups (**Fig. 5.3**). The three phosphate groups are negatively charged and repel one another. It takes energy to overcome their repulsion and link them by chemical bonds. However, the phosphate groups make the molecule unstable. ATP easily loses the last phosphate group because the breakdown products, ADP (adenosine diphosphate) and a separate phosphate group symbolized as Ⓟ, are more stable than ATP. This reaction is written as ATP → ADP + Ⓟ and energy is released as ATP breaks down. ADP can also lose a phosphate group to become AMP (adenosine monophosphate).

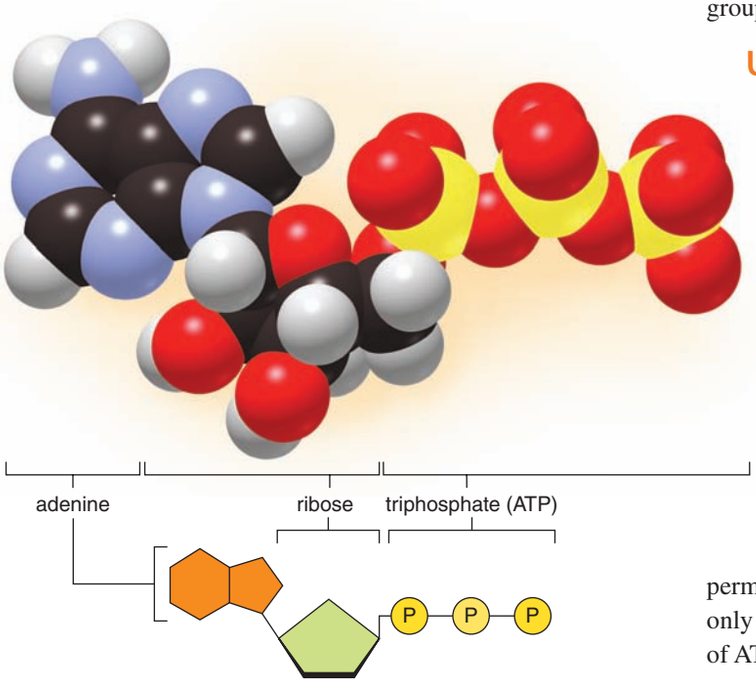


Figure 5.3 ATP.

ATP, the universal energy currency of cells, is composed of the nucleotide adenine, the sugar ribose, and three phosphate groups (called a triphosphate).

Use and Production of ATP

The continual breakdown and regeneration of ATP is known as the ATP cycle (**Fig. 5.4**). ATP holds energy for only a short period of time before it is used in a reaction that requires energy. Then ATP is rebuilt from ADP + Ⓟ. Each ATP molecule undergoes about 10,000 cycles of synthesis and breakdown every day. Our bodies use some 45 kg (about 99 lb) of ATP daily (assuming minimal activity!), and the amount on hand at any one moment is sufficiently high to meet only current metabolic needs for about 1 minute.

ATP's instability, the very feature that makes it an effective energy carrier, keeps it from being an energy storage molecule. Instead, the many H—C bonds of carbohydrates and fats make them the energy storage molecules of choice. Their energy is extracted during cellular respiration and used to rebuild ATP, mostly within mitochondria. You will learn in Chapter 7 that the breakdown of one molecule of glucose permits the buildup of around 38 molecules of ATP. During cellular respiration, only 39% of the potential energy of glucose is converted to the potential energy of ATP; the rest is lost as heat.

The production of ATP is still worthwhile for the cell for the following reasons:

1. ATP releases energy quickly, which facilitates the speed of enzymatic reactions.

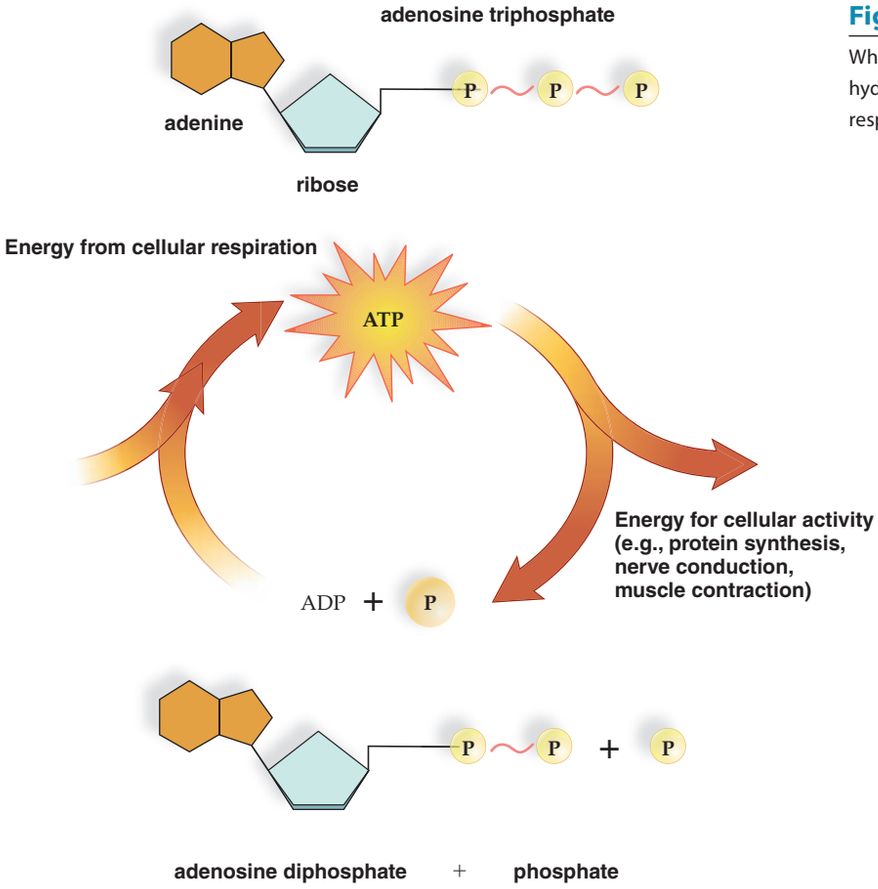


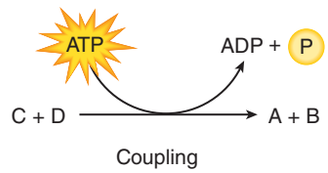
Figure 5.4 The ATP cycle.

When ATP is used as an energy source, a phosphate group is removed by hydrolysis. ATP is primarily regenerated in the mitochondria by cellular respiration.

2. When ATP becomes ADP + (P), the amount of energy released is usually just enough for a biological purpose. Breaking down an entire carbohydrate or fat molecule would be wasteful, since it would release much more energy than is needed.
3. The structure of ATP allows its breakdown to be easily *coupled* to an energy-requiring reaction, as described next.

Coupled Reactions

Many metabolic reactions require energy. Energy can be supplied when a reaction that requires energy (e.g., building a protein) occurs in the vicinity of a reaction that gives up energy (e.g., ATP breakdown). A coupled reaction brings them together in such a way that the energy-releasing reaction can drive the energy-requiring reaction. Usually, the energy-releasing reaction is ATP breakdown, which generally releases more energy than the amount consumed by the energy-requiring reaction. This increases entropy, but both reactions will proceed. The simplest way to represent a coupled reaction is like this:



This reaction tells you that coupling occurs, but it does not show how coupling is achieved. A cell has two main ways to couple ATP breakdown to an energy-requiring reaction: ATP may be used either to energize a reactant

Connections: Health

What is creatine and is it safe?

In humans, creatine is found in muscle cells as creatine phosphate (sometimes called phosphocreatine). Its function is to provide a brief, quick recharge to ATP molecules in muscle cells. Over the past several years, creatine supplements have gained popularity with athletes for muscle-building as a performance enhancement. While there is some evidence that creatine supplements may increase performance for some individuals, there have been no long-term FDA studies on the potential detrimental effects of creatine use on body organs—such as the kidneys, which are responsible for the secretion of excess creatine in the urine. In addition, creatine supplements can produce dangerous interactions when used with over-the-counter drugs, such as acetaminophen and sometimes even caffeine. Additional studies are needed to determine if creatine supplements are safe.

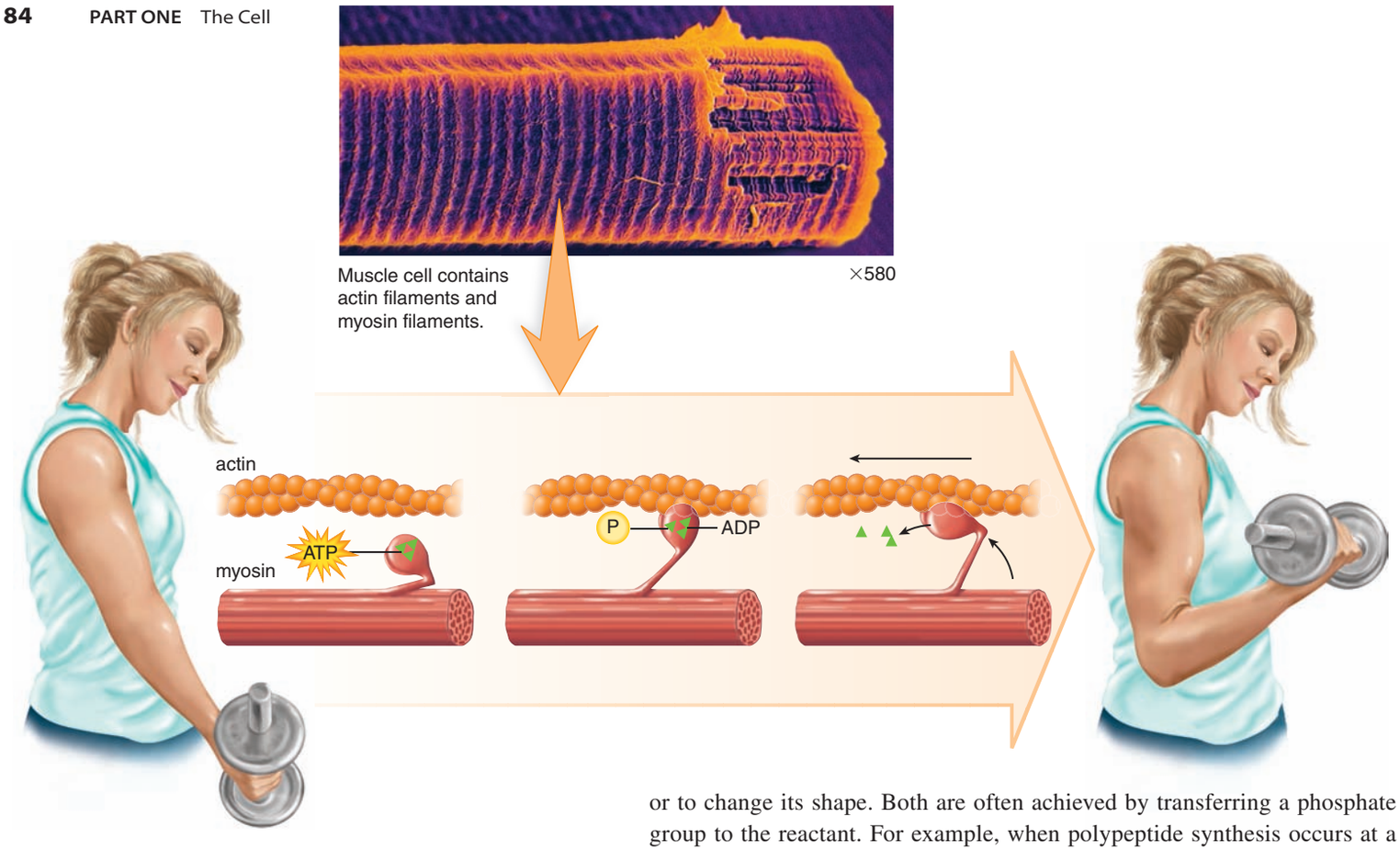


Figure 5.5 **Coupled reaction.**

Muscle contraction occurs only when it is coupled to ATP breakdown. Myosin combines with ATP prior to its breakdown. Release of ADP + (P) causes myosin to change position and pull on an actin filament.

or to change its shape. Both are often achieved by transferring a phosphate group to the reactant. For example, when polypeptide synthesis occurs at a ribosome, an enzyme transfers a phosphate group from ATP to each amino acid in turn, and this transfer activates the amino acid, causing it to bond with another amino acid.

Figure 5.5 shows how ATP breakdown provides the energy necessary for muscular contraction. During muscle contraction, myosin filaments pull actin filaments to the center of the cell, and the muscle shortens. First, myosin combines with ATP, and only then does ATP break down to ADP + (P). The release of ADP + (P) from the molecule causes myosin to change shape and pull on the actin filament.

Animation
Breakdown of ATP and Cross-Bridge Movement During Muscle Contraction

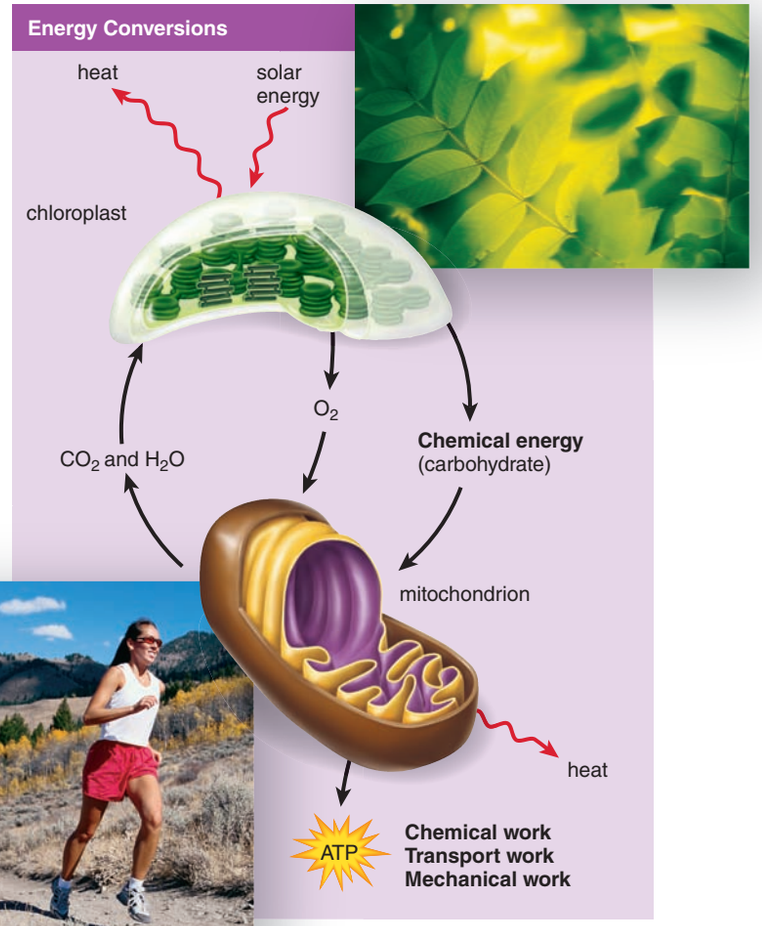
The Flow of Energy

In the biosphere, the activities of chloroplasts and mitochondria enable energy to flow from the sun through all living things. During photosynthesis, the chloroplasts in plants capture solar energy and use it to convert water and carbon dioxide to carbohydrates, which serve as food for themselves and for other organisms. During cellular respiration, mitochondria complete the breakdown of carbohydrates and use the released energy to build ATP molecules.

Notice in **Figure 5.6** that cellular respiration requires oxygen and produces carbon dioxide and water, the very molecules taken up by chloroplasts. It is actually the cycling of molecules between chloroplasts and mitochondria that allows a flow of energy from the sun through all living things. This flow of energy maintains the levels of biological organization from molecules to organisms to ecosystems. In keeping with the energy laws, useful energy is lost with each chemical transformation, and eventually the solar energy captured by plants is lost in the form of heat. In this way, living organisms are dependent upon an input of solar energy.

Figure 5.6 Flow of energy.

Chloroplasts convert solar energy to the chemical energy stored in nutrient molecules. Mitochondria convert this chemical energy to ATP molecules, which cells use to perform chemical, transport, and mechanical work.



Humans are also involved in the cycling of molecules between plants and animals and in the flow of energy from the sun. We inhale oxygen and eat plants and their stored carbohydrates, or we eat other animals that have eaten plants. Oxygen and nutrient molecules enter our mitochondria, which produce ATP and release carbon dioxide and water. Without a supply of energy-rich foods, we could not produce the ATP molecules needed to maintain our bodies and carry on activities.

5.2 CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
DNA acts as a template for RNA to code from when expressing our traits.

Check Your Progress 5.2

1. Identify how ATP is produced and explain why ATP cannot be used as an energy storage molecule.
2. Illustrate a coupled reaction and explain the role of ATP in a coupled reaction.
3. Describe the flow of energy through the biosphere.

5.3 Metabolic Pathways and Enzymes

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Illustrate how metabolic reactions are catalyzed by specific enzymes.
2. Identify the role that enzymes play in metabolic pathways.
3. Explain the induced fit model of enzymatic action.
4. Detail the processes that inhibit enzyme activity.
5. Relate the role of enzymes in lowering the energy of activation needed for a reaction.

Reactions do not occur haphazardly in cells. Just as a house is built in a series of ordered steps, chemical reactions in a cell usually occur in a particular order. They are part of a series of linked chemical reactions called a metabolic, or biochemical, pathway. Metabolic pathways begin with a particular reactant and terminate with an end product. For example, glucose is broken down by a series of consecutive reactions until the end products CO_2 and H_2O result. In the pathway, one reaction leads to the next reaction, which leads to the next reaction, and so forth in an organized, highly structured manner.

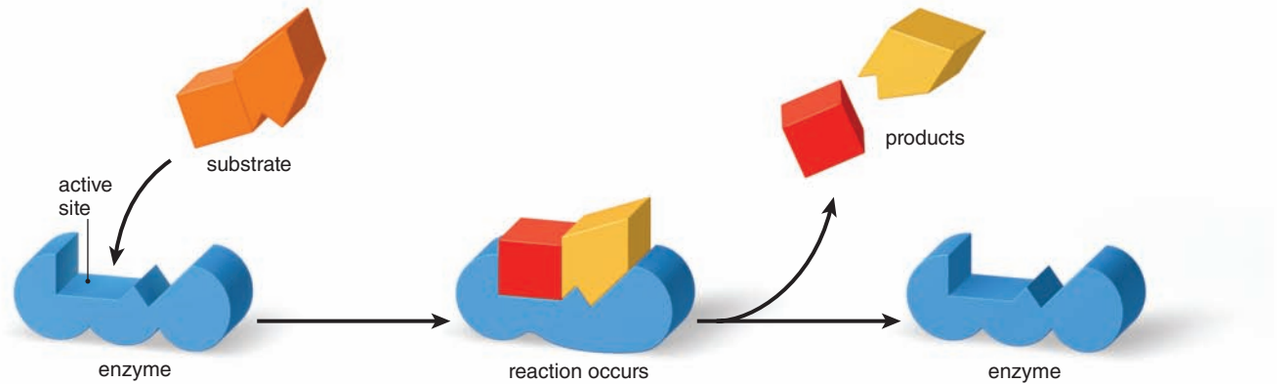


Figure 5.7 Enzymatic action.
An enzyme has an active site where the substrates and enzyme fit together in such a way that the substrates are oriented to react. Following the reaction, the products are released, and the enzyme is free to act again.

An example of a metabolic pathway is shown below. In this diagram, the letters A–F are reactants, and the letters B–G are products. In other words, the product from the previous reaction becomes the reactant of the next reaction. In the first reaction, A is the reactant and B is the product. Then B becomes the reactant in the next reaction of the pathway, and C is the product. This process continues until the final product (G) forms.

$$A \xrightarrow{e_1} B \xrightarrow{e_2} C \xrightarrow{e_3} D \xrightarrow{e_4} E \xrightarrow{e_5} F \xrightarrow{e_6} G$$

In this diagram, the letters e_1–e_6 represent **enzymes,** which are protein molecules that function as organic catalysts to speed chemical reactions. Enzymes can only speed reactions that are possible to begin with. In the cell, an enzyme is analogous to a mutual friend who causes two people to meet and interact, because an enzyme brings together particular molecules and causes them to react with one another.

The molecules acted on by an enzyme are called its **substrates.** An enzyme converts substrates into products. The substrates and products of an enzymatic reaction vary greatly (**Fig. 5.7**). Many enzymes facilitate the breakdown of a substrate into multiple products. Or an enzyme may convert a single substrate into a single product. Still others may combine two or more substrates into a single product.

An Enzyme's Active Site

In most instances, only one small part of the enzyme, called the **active site,** accommodates the substrate(s). At the active site, the substrate fits into the enzyme seemingly as a key fits a lock; thus, most enzymes can fit only one substrate. However, the active site undergoes a slight change in shape in order to accommodate the substrate(s). This is called the **induced fit model** because the enzyme is induced to undergo a slight alteration to achieve optimal fit (see Fig. 5.7).

The change in the shape of the active site facilitates the reaction that occurs next. After the reaction has been completed, the products are released, and the active site returns to its original state, ready to bind to another substrate molecule. Only a very small amount of each enzyme is needed in a cell because enzymes are not used up by the reaction.

Enzyme Inhibition

Enzyme inhibition occurs when an active enzyme is prevented from combining with its substrate. Enzyme inhibitors are often poisonous to certain organisms. Cyanide, for example, is an inhibitor of the enzyme cytochrome *c* oxidase, which performs a vital function in cells because it is involved in making ATP. Cyanide is a poison because it binds the enzyme, blocking its activity. But some enzyme inhibitors are useful drugs. For example, penicillin is a poison for bacteria, but not humans, because it blocks the active site of an enzyme unique to bacteria. Many other antibiotic drugs also act as enzyme inhibitors.

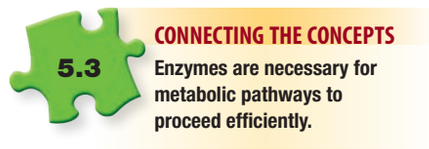
The activity of almost every enzyme in a cell is regulated by **feedback inhibition.** In the simplest case, when a product is in abundance, it competes with the substrate for the enzyme's active site. As the product is used up, inhibition is reduced, and then more product can be produced. In this way, the concentration of the product always stays within a certain range.

Animation Feedback Inhibition

Most metabolic pathways are regulated by more complex types of feedback inhibition (**Fig. 5.8**). In these instances, when the end product is plentiful, it binds to a site other than the active site of the first enzyme in the pathway. This binding changes the shape of the active site, preventing the enzyme from binding to its substrate. Without the activity of the first enzyme, the entire pathway shuts down.

Energy of Activation

Molecules frequently do not react with one another unless they are activated in some way. In the lab, activation is very often achieved by heating a mixture to increase the number of effective collisions between molecules. The added heat causes the molecules to move more quickly, increasing the likelihood of effective collisions between molecules. The energy needed to cause molecules to react with one another is called the **energy of activation (E_a).** The energy of activation acts as a metabolic speed bump; it limits how fast a reaction can proceed from reactants to products. Enzymes lower the amount of activation energy needed in a reaction (**Fig. 5.9).** In this way they act as catalysts that speed up the overall rate of the reaction. Enzymes do not change the amount of energy in the products or reactants, they simply alter the rate of the reaction.



CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Enzymes are necessary for metabolic pathways to proceed efficiently.

Check Your Progress 5.3

1. Explain the benefit of metabolic pathways in cells.
2. Describe how the induced fit model explains the binding of a substrate to an enzyme's active site.
3. Summarize the benefit of using feedback inhibition to control metabolic pathways.

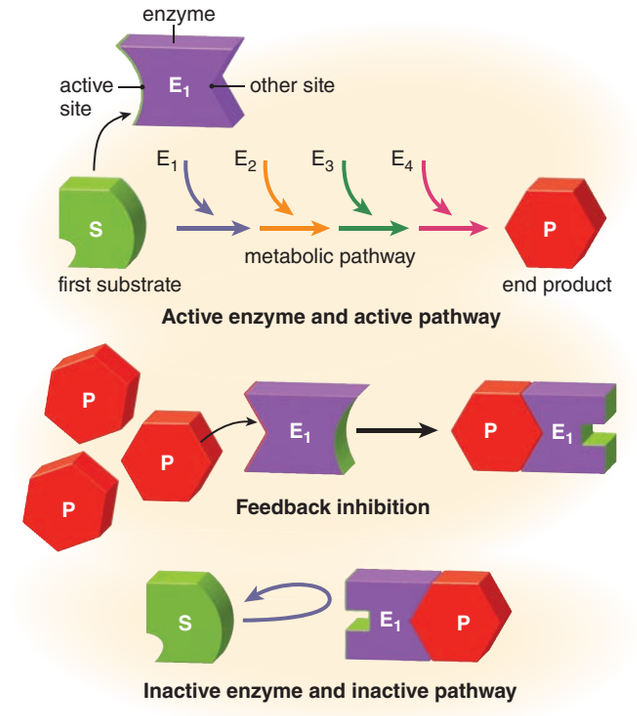


Figure 5.8 Feedback inhibition.

This type of feedback inhibition occurs when the end product (P) of an active enzyme pathway is plentiful and binds to the first enzyme (E_1) of the pathway at a site other than the active site. This changes the shape of the active site, so that the substrate (S) can no longer bind to the enzyme. Now the entire pathway becomes inactive.

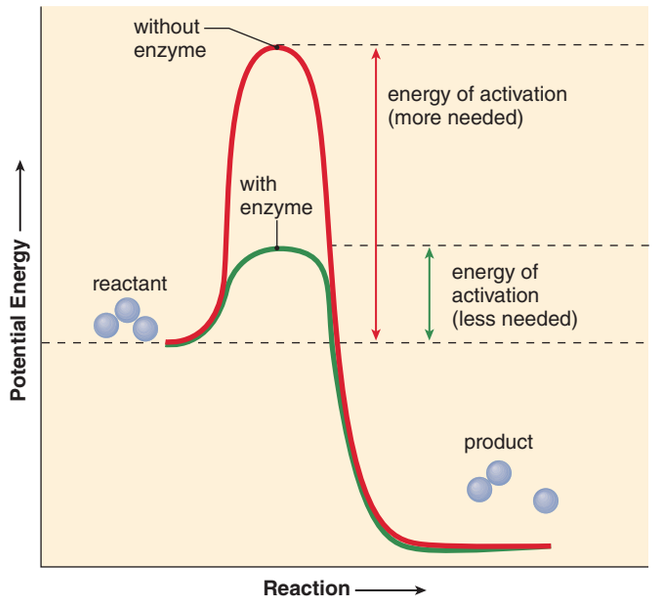


Figure 5.9 Energy of activation (E_a).

Enzymes speed the rate of reactions because they lower the amount of energy required for the reactants to react. Even reactions like this one, in which the energy of the product is less than the energy of the reactant, speed up when an enzyme is present.

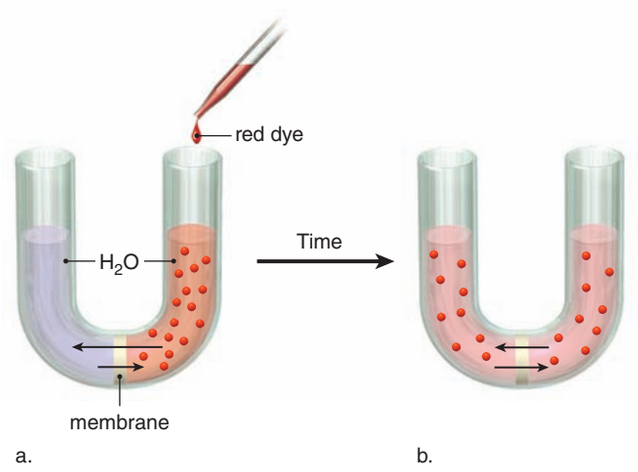


Figure 5.10 **Simple diffusion demonstration.**

Simple diffusion is spontaneous, and no energy is required to bring it about. **a.** Red dye is added to water separated by a membrane. The dye molecules can pass through the membrane. The dye molecules move randomly about, but over time the net movement of dye is toward the region of lower concentration. **b.** Eventually, the dye molecules are equally distributed throughout the container and there is no net movement of dye in either direction.

Connections: Health

What causes cystic fibrosis?

In 1989, scientists determined that defects in a gene on chromosome 7 causes cystic fibrosis (CF). This gene, called *CFTR* (cystic fibrosis conductance transmembraneregulator), codes for a protein that is responsible for the movement of chloride ions across the membranes of cells that produce mucus, sweat, and saliva. Defects in this gene cause an improper water/salt balance in the excretions of these cells, which in turn leads to the symptoms of CF. Currently, there are over 1,400 known mutations in the CF gene. This tremendous amount of variation accounts for the differences in the severity of the symptoms in CF patients. By knowing the precise gene that causes the disease, scientists have been able to develop new treatment options for people with CF. At one time, people with CF rarely saw their 20th birthday; now it is routine for people to live into their 30s and 40s. New treatments, such as gene therapy, are being explored for sufferers of CF.

Video
Good Poison

5.4 Cell Transport

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Categorize the various ways in which materials can move across plasma membranes.
2. List the types of passive transport that can be used by cells.
3. Explain osmosis and the effect it has on cells in various tonicity environments.
4. Describe how active transport is accomplished.
5. Define the various forms of bulk transport that can move materials into or out of a cell.

The plasma membrane regulates the passage of molecules into and out of the cell. This function is crucial because the life of the cell depends on the maintenance of its normal composition. The plasma membrane can carry out this function because it is selectively permeable, meaning that certain substances can freely pass through the membrane, some are transported across, and others are prohibited from entering or leaving. Basically, substances enter a cell in one of three ways: passive transport, active transport, or bulk transport. Although there are different types of passive transport, in all cases substances move from an area of high concentration to an area of lower concentration, and no energy is required. Active transport moves substances against a concentration gradient (from low to high concentration) and requires both a transport protein and lots of ATP. Bulk transport requires energy, but movement of the large substances involved is independent of concentration gradients.

Passive Transport: No Energy Required

One form of passive transport is diffusion. During **diffusion,** molecules move down their concentration gradient until equilibrium is achieved and they are distributed equally. Diffusion does not need to occur across a membrane; it occurs because molecules are in motion, but it is a *passive* form of transport because energy is not expended. In cells, diffusion may occur across a plasma membrane. Some small, noncharged molecules, such as oxygen and carbon dioxide, are able to slip between the phospholipid molecules making up the plasma membrane.

MP3
Diffusion

Animation
How Diffusion Works

3D Animation
Membrane Transport: Diffusion

Figure 5.10 illustrates how diffusion occurs across a membrane. Water is present on two sides of the membrane, and dye is added to one side. The dye particles move in various directions, but since there are more of them on the right side of the membrane, the net movement is toward the left side of the membrane. Eventually, the dye is dispersed, with equal numbers of dye particles on both sides of the membrane, and there is no net movement of dye in either direction. A **solution** contains both a solute and a solvent. In this case, the dye is called the **solute,** and the water is called the **solvent.** Solutes are usually solids or gases, and solvents are usually liquids.

Facilitated diffusion (**Fig. 5.11**) occurs when an ion or a molecule diffuses across a membrane faster than expected, either by way of a specific channel protein or with the assistance of a carrier protein. Water, a polar molecule, moves across the membrane through channels called *aquaporins*.

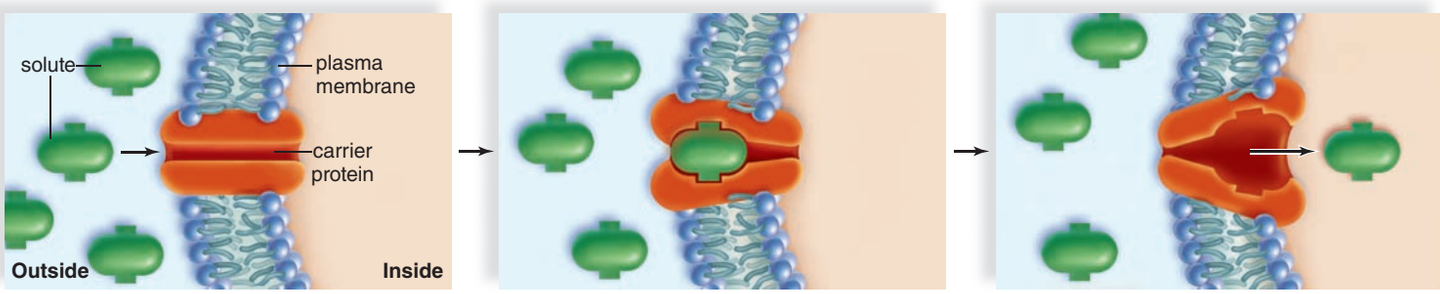


Figure 5.11 **Faciliated diffusion**

In faciliated diffusion, a carrier protein in the plasma membrane allows molecules to move from areas of high concentration to areas of low concentration.

This is why water can cross a membrane much more quickly than expected. Glucose and amino acids are assisted across the membrane by carrier proteins that change shape as they pass through. Channel proteins and carrier proteins are very specific to the molecule they assist across the membrane.

Animation How Faciliated Diffusion Works

Osmosis

Osmosis is the diffusion of water across a semipermeable membrane, from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration. Osmosis occurs through channel proteins called aquaporins. To illustrate osmosis, a tube containing a 5% salt solution and covered at one end by a membrane is placed in a beaker that contains water only (**Fig. 5.12***a*). Water can cross the membrane, but the solute (dissolved salt) cannot. Therefore, there will be a net movement of water across the membrane from the beaker to the inside of the tube. Theoretically, the solution inside the tube will rise until there is an equal concentration of water on both sides of the membrane (Fig. 5.12*b,c*). What would happen if the beaker contained a 2% salt solution? Water would still diffuse into the tube, because the tube at 5% salt would contain a lower concentration of water molecules than the beaker at 2%.

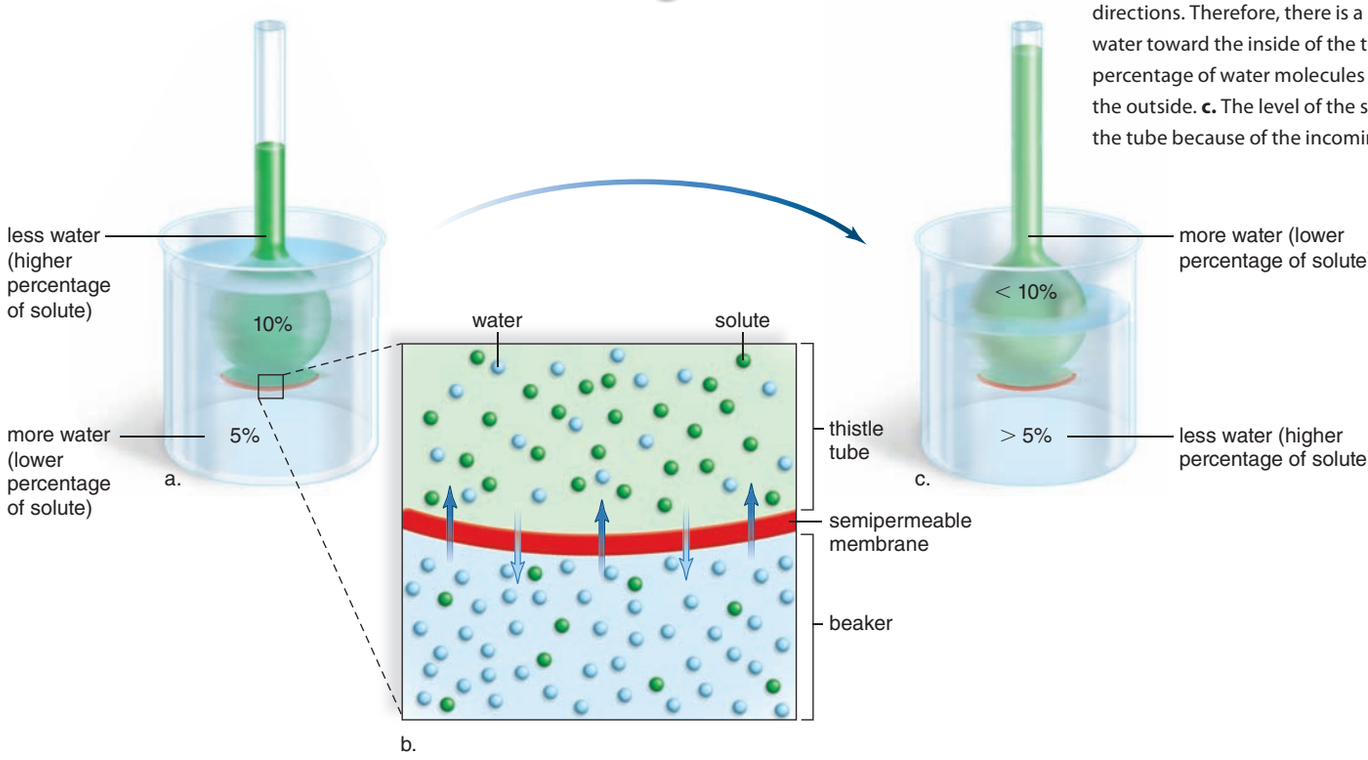
MP3 Osmosis

Animation How Osmosis Works

3D Animation Membrane Transport: Osmosis

Figure 5.12 **Osmosis demonstration.**

a. A thistle tube, covered at the broad end by a semipermeable membrane, contains a 10% salt solution. The beaker contains only a 5% solution. **b.** The solute (green circles) is unable to pass through the membrane, but the water molecules (blue circles) pass through in both directions. Therefore, there is a net movement of water toward the inside of the tube, where the percentage of water molecules is lower than on the outside. **c.** The level of the solution rises in the tube because of the incoming water.



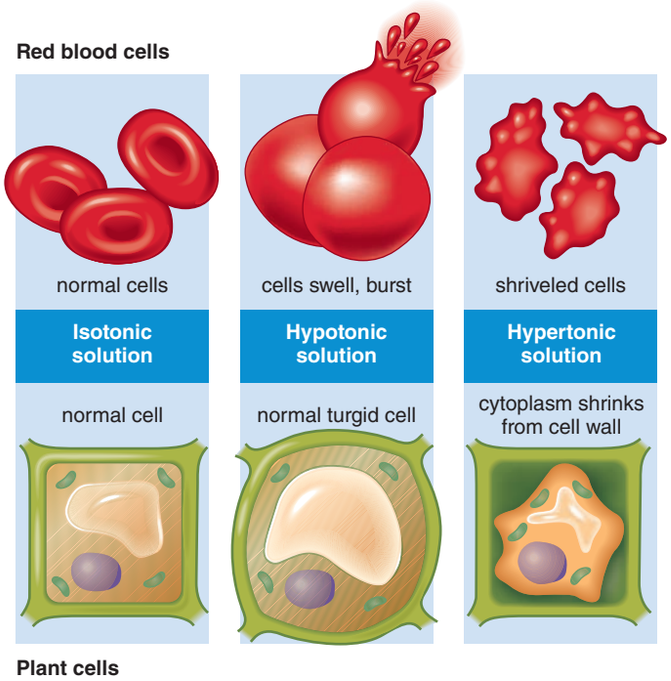


Figure 5.13 **Osmosis in animal and plant cells.**

In an isotonic solution, cells neither gain nor lose water. In a hypotonic solution, cells gain water. Red blood cells swell to bursting, and plant cells become turgid. In a hypertonic solution, cells lose water. Red blood cells shrivel, and plant cell cytoplasm shrinks away from the cell wall.

Connections: Health

Why can't you drink seawater?

Seawater is hypertonic to our cells. It contains approximately 3.5% salt, whereas our cells contain 0.9%. Once the salt had entered your blood, your cells would shrivel up and die as they lost water trying to dilute the excess salt. Your kidneys can only produce urine that is slightly less salty than seawater, so you would dehydrate providing the amount of water necessary to rid your body of the salt.

The Effect of Osmosis on Cells

When solutes are added to a cell's surroundings, its semipermeable membrane often limits movement of the solute back and forth. Instead, water moves back and forth across the membrane by osmosis. This can affect the size and shape of cells. In the laboratory, cells are normally placed in **isotonic solutions** (*iso,* same as) in which the cell neither gains nor loses water—that is, the concentration of water is the same on both sides of the membrane. In medical settings, a 0.9% solution of the salt sodium chloride (NaCl) is known to be isotonic to red blood cells; therefore, intravenous solutions usually have this concentration.

Cells placed in a **hypotonic solution** (*hypo,* less than) gain water (**Fig. 5.13**). Outside the cell, the concentration of solute is less, and the concentration of water is greater, than inside the cell. Animal cells placed in a hypotonic solution expand and sometimes burst. The term *lysis* refers to disrupted cells; *hemolysis,* then, is disrupted red blood cells.

Animation Hemolysis and Crenation

When a plant cell is placed in a hypotonic solution, the large central vacuole gains water, and the plasma membrane pushes against the rigid cell wall as the plant cell becomes *turgid.* The plant cell does not burst because the cell wall does not give way. Turgor pressure in plant cells is extremely important in maintaining their erect position.

Cells placed in a **hypertonic solution** (*hyper,* more than) lose water. Outside the cell, the concentration of solute is higher, and the concentration of water is lower, than inside the cell. Animal cells placed in a hypertonic solution shrink. For example, meats are sometimes preserved by being salted. Bacteria are killed not by the salt but by the lack of water in the meat.

When a plant cell is placed in a hypertonic solution, the plasma membrane pulls away from the cell wall as the large central vacuole loses water. This is an example of *plasmolysis,* shrinking of the cytoplasm due to osmosis. Cut flowers placed into salty water will wilt due to plasmolysis. The dead plants you may see along a roadside could have died due to exposure to a hypertonic solution during the winter, when salt was used on the road.

Animation Plasmolysis

Active Transport: Energy Required

During **active transport,** molecules or ions move through the plasma membrane, accumulating on one side of the cell (**Fig. 5.14**). For example, iodine collects in the cells of the thyroid gland; glucose is completely absorbed from the digestive tract by the cells lining the digestive tract; and sodium can be almost completely withdrawn from urine by cells lining the kidney tubules. In these instances, molecules move against their concentration gradients, a situation that requires both a transport protein and much ATP. Therefore, cells involved in active transport, such as kidney cells, have many mitochondria near their plasma membranes to generate the ATP that is needed.

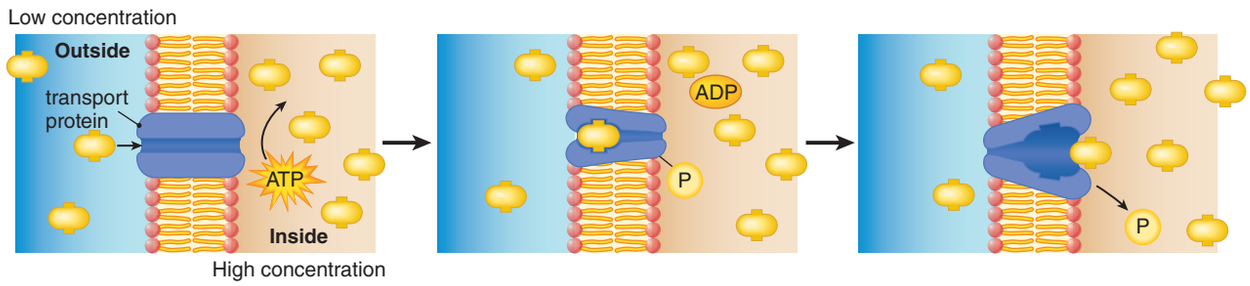


Figure 5.14
Active transport.

During active transport, a transport protein uses energy to move a solute across the plasma membranes toward a higher concentration. Note that the transport protein changes shape during the process.

The passage of salt (NaCl) across a plasma membrane is of primary importance in cells because the salt causes water to move to that side of the plasma membrane. First, sodium ions are actively transported across a membrane, and then chloride ions simply diffuse through channels that allow their passage. Chloride ion channels malfunction in persons with cystic fibrosis, leading to the symptoms of this inherited disorder. Proteins engaged in active transport are often called *pumps*. The **sodium-potassium pump,** vital in nerve conduction, undergoes a change in shape that allows it to combine alternately with sodium ions and potassium ions.

Animation
How the Sodium-Potassium Pump Works

3D Animation
Membrane Transport: Active Transport

Bulk Transport

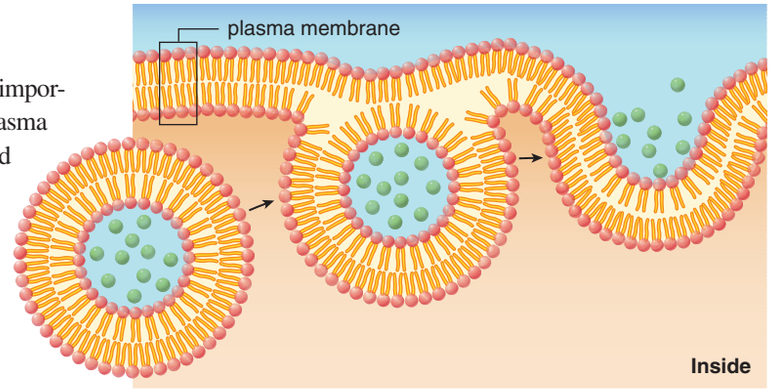
Macromolecules, such as polypeptides, polysaccharides, and polynucleotides, are often too large to be moved by transport proteins. Instead, vesicle formation takes them into or out of a cell. For example, digestive enzymes and hormones use molecules transported out of the cell by **exocytosis** (**Fig. 5.15***a*). In cells that synthesize these products, secretory vesicles accumulate near the plasma membrane. These vesicles release their contents when the cell is stimulated to do so.

When cells take in substances by vesicle formation, the process is known as **endocytosis** (Fig. 5.15*b*). If the material taken in is large, such as a food particle or another cell, the process is called *phagocytosis***.** Phagocytosis is common in single-celled organisms, such as amoebas. It also occurs in humans. Certain types of human white blood cells are amoeboid—that is, they are mobile, like an amoeba, and are able to engulf debris, such as worn-out red blood cells and bacteria. When an endocytic vesicle fuses with a lysosome, digestion occurs. In Chapter 26, we will see that this process is a necessary and preliminary step toward the development of immunity to bacterial diseases.

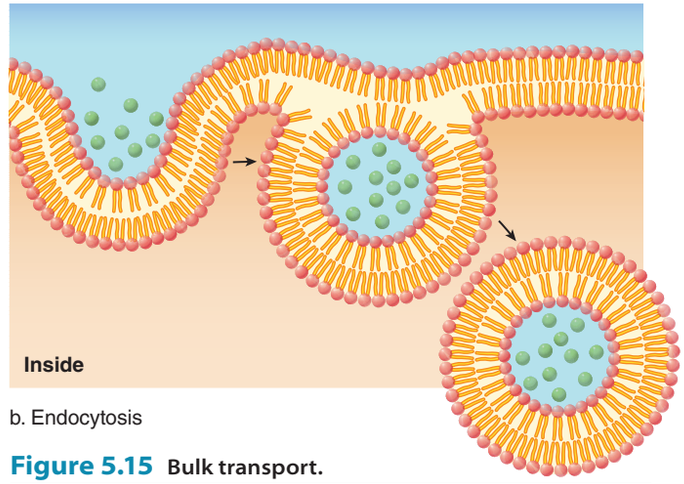
Animation
Endocytosis and Exocytosis

Pinocytosis occurs when vesicles form around a liquid or around very small particles. White blood cells, cells that line the kidney tubules and the intestinal wall, and plant root cells all use pinocytosis to ingest substances.

During **receptor-mediated endocytosis,** receptors for particular substances are found at one location in the plasma membrane. This location is called a coated pit because there is a layer of protein on its intracellular side (**Fig. 5.16**). Receptor-mediated endocytosis is selective and much more efficient than ordinary pinocytosis. It is involved when moving cholesterol from the blood into the cells of the body. Problems with this process can cause a disease called familial hypercholesterolemia, which results in elevated blood cholesterol levels.



a. Exocytosis



b. Endocytosis

Figure 5.15 **Bulk transport.**

During **(a)** exocytosis and **(b)** endocytosis, vesicle formation transports substances out of or into a cell, respectively.

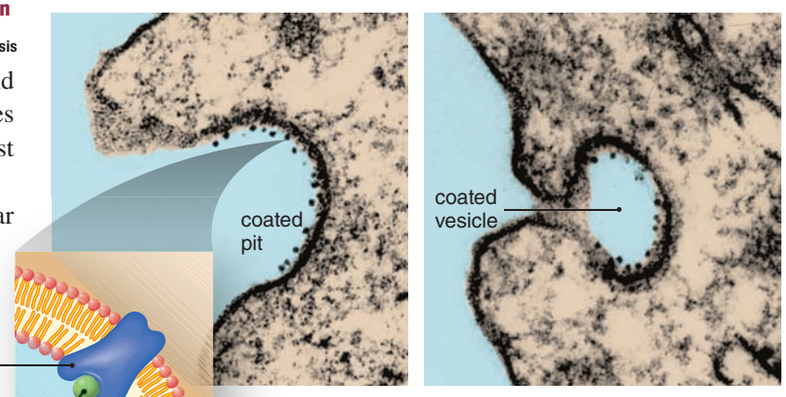


Figure 5.16 **Receptor-mediated endocytosis.**

During receptor-mediated endocytosis, molecules first bind to specific receptor proteins that are in a coated pit. The vesicle that forms contains the molecules and their receptors.

Check Your Progress 5.4

1. Identify the requirements for all types of passive transport.
2. Describe the effects of osmosis on cells.
3. Explain why a cell would use active transport.
4. Differentiate between the types of bulk transport.

5.4

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

A variety of methods move molecules across the plasma membrane.

Media Study Tools

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Videos	MP3 Files
5.2 Breakdown of ATP and Cross-Bridge Movement During Muscle Contraction **5.3** Biochemical Pathway • How Enzymes Work • Feedback Inhibition **5.4** How Diffusion Works • How Faciliated Diffusion Works • How Osmosis Works • Hemolysis and Crenation • Plasmolysis • How the Sodium-Potassium Pump Works • Endocytosis and Exocytosis	**5.4** Good Poison	**5.1** Laws of Thermodynamics **5.2** ATP **5.3** Enzymes **5.4** Diffusion • Osmosis

3D Animation Membrane Transport

To visualize the methods by which cells move molecules across the plasma membrane, watch McGraw-Hill's 3D animation "Membrane Transport."

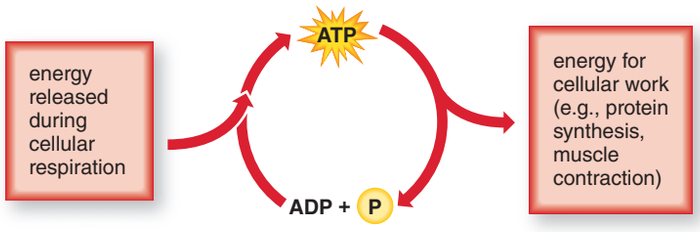
SUMMARIZE

5.1 What Is Energy?

- **Energy** represents the capacity to do work. **Potential energy** can be converted to **kinetic energy,** and vice versa. Solar and chemical energy are forms of potential energy; mechanical energy is a form of kinetic energy. Two energy laws hold true universally:
  - Energy cannot be created or destroyed, but it can betransferred or transformed. We can measure energy in many ways; a common one is the **calorie, or kilocalorie.**
  - When energy is converted from one form to another, some is lost as **heat.** Therefore, the **entropy,** or disorder**,** of the universe is increasing, and only a constant input of energy maintains the organization of living organisms.

5.2 ATP: Energy for Cells

Energy flows from the sun through chloroplasts and mitochondria, which produce ATP. Because ATP has three adjoining negative phosphate groups, it is a high-energy molecule that tends to break down to ADP + (P), releasing energy. ATP breakdown is coupled to various energy-requiring cellular reactions, including protein synthesis, active transport, and muscle contraction. Cellular respiration provides the energy for the production of ATP. The following diagram summarizes the ATP cycle:

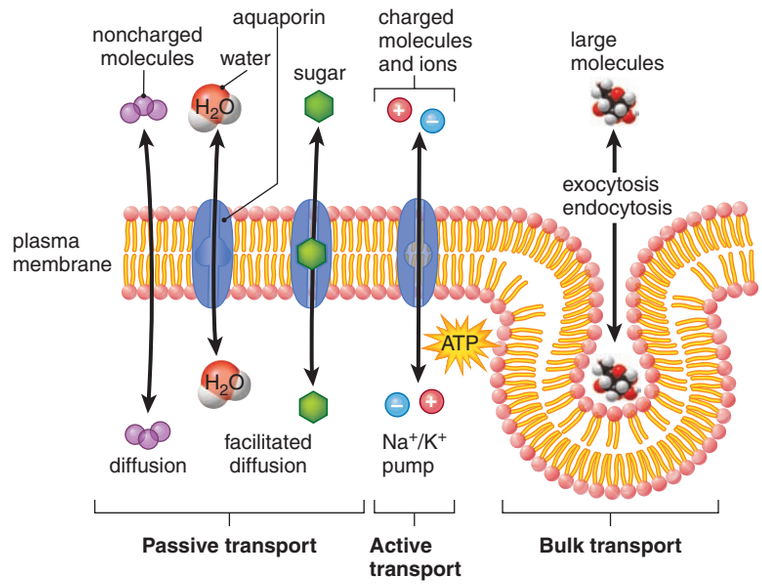


5.3 Metabolic Pathways and Enzymes

A metabolic pathway is a series of reactions that proceeds in an orderly, step-by-step manner. Each reaction requires an **enzyme** that is specific to its substrate. Enzymes bring **substrates** together at an enzyme's **active site** using the **induced fit model.** By doing so, they speed reactions by lowering the **energy of activation.** The activity of most enzymes and metabolic pathways is regulated by **feedback inhibition.**

5.4 Cell Transport

- The plasma membrane is semipermeable; some substances can freely cross the membrane, and some must be assisted across if they are to enter the cell.



Passive transport requires no metabolic energy and moves substances from a higher to a lower concentration.

In **diffusion,** molecules move from an area of higher concentration to the area of lower concentration until the concentration of molecules is the same at both sites. Some molecules, such as dissolved gases, cross plasma membranes by diffusion. In a **solution,** the **solute** is dissolved in the **solvent.**

- In **facilitated diffusion,** molecules diffuse across a plasma membrane through a channel protein (aquaporins are channel proteins for water) or with the assistance of carrier proteins.
- **Osmosis** is the diffusion of water (often using aquaporins) across a membrane toward the area of lower water concentration (higher solute concentration). Solutions may be classified as **isotonic, hypertonic,** or **hypotonic** by comparing the solute conentrations of two solutions (such as inside and outside the cell).
- *Active transport* requires metabolic energy (ATP) and moves substances from a lower to a higher concentration across a membrane.

In **active transport,** a transport protein acts as a pump that causes a substance to move against its concentration gradient. For example, the **sodium-potassium pump** carries Na^+ to the outside of the cell and K^+ to the inside of the cell.

- *Bulk transport* requires vesicle formation and metabolic energy. It occurs independently of concentration gradients.
- **Exocytosis** transports macromolecules out of a cell via vesicle formation and often results in secretion.
- **Endocytosis** transports macromolecules into a cell via vesicle formation.
- **Receptor-mediated endocytosis** makes use of receptor proteins in the plasma membrane.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

All living organisms require energy in order to live. Materials must move in and out of cells to produce the energy for life.

5.1 The laws of thermodynamics determine how living organisms use energy.

5.2 ATP is the energy currency used by all living organisms.

5.3 Enzymes are necessary for metabolic pathways to proceed efficiently.

5.4 A variety of methods move molecules across the plasma, membrane.

For more information about the importance of energy for living organisms see the following discussions:

Section 7.1 provides an overview of how living organisms convert potential energy to kinetic energy.

Section 20.5 describes how plants use osmotic pressure to move nutrients.

Section 24.3 examines some of the enzymes that are active in the human digestive system.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

5.1 What Is Energy?

1. Which of the following is not a fundamental law of energy?
   - **a.** Energy cannot be created or destroyed.
   - **b.** Energy can be changed from one form to another.
   - **c.** Energy is lost when it is converted from one form to another.
   - **d.** Potential energy cannot be converted to kinetic energy.
2. Entropy is a term used to indicate the relative amount of
   - **a.** organization.
   - **b.** disorganization.
   - **c.** enzyme action.
   - **d.** None of these are correct.
3. _____ is the amount of energy stored in a molecule.
   - **a.** Heat
   - **b.** Calorie
   - **c.** Entropy
   - **d.** ATP

5.2 ATP: Energy for Cells

4. Identify the incorrect statement:
   - **a.** When ATP becomes ADP + Ⓟ, the amount of energy released is enough for a biological purpose.
   - **b.** The structure of ATP allows its breakdown to be easily coupled.
   - **c.** ATP can be easily recycled.
   - **d.** ATP consists of an adenine, a sugar, and two phosphates.
5. ATP is a good source of energy for a cell because
   - **a.** it is versatile—it can be used in many types of reactions.
   - **b.** its breakdown is easily coupled with energy-requiring reactions.
   - **c.** it provides just the right amount of energy for cellular reactions.
   - **d.** All of these are correct.

5.3 Metabolic Pathways and Enzymes

6. In the induced fit model of enzyme catalysis,
   - **a.** the substrate exactly fits multiple enzymes.
   - **b.** many substrates fit every enzyme.
   - **c.** the enzyme changes shape slightly to accommodate the substrate.
   - **d.** the enzyme doesn't fit the substrate until it is induced by another substrate.
7. Enzymes catalyze reactions by
   - **a.** bringing the reactants together, so that they can bind.
   - **b.** lowering the activation energy.
   - **c.** Both a and b are correct.
   - **d.** Neither a nor b is correct.
8. The active site of an enzyme
   - **a.** is identical in structure for all enzymes.
   - **b.** is the part of the enzyme where its substrate can fit.
   - **c.** can be used only once.
   - **d.** is not affected by environmental factors, such as pH and temperature.

5.4 Cell Transport

For questions 9–12, match the items to the correct answers in the key. Each answer may include more than one item.

Key:

a. diffusion
b. facilitated diffusion
c. osmosis
d. active transport

9. Movement of molecules from high concentration to low concentration.

10. Requires energy input.

11. Movement of water across a membrane.

12. Uses a membrane protein.

13. The movement of water across the plasma membrane of a cell is facilitated by
a. aquaporins.
b. substrate-mediated endocytosis.
c. receptor-mediated diffusion.
d. channel proteins.
e. Both a and d are correct.

14. Seawater is _____ to blood because it contains a(n) _____ concentration of solutes.
a. isotonic, higher
b. hypotonic, higher
c. isotonic, equal
d. hypertonic, higher

15. A coated pit is associated with
a. simple diffusion.
b. osmosis.
c. receptor-mediated endocytosis.
d. pinocytosis.

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Diffusion
- Osmosis
- How Enzymes Function

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Some coupled reactions in cells, including many involved in protein synthesis, use the nucleotide GTP as an energy source instead of ATP. What would be the advantage of using GTP instead of ATP as an energy source for these cellular reactions?

2. As mentioned, cystic fibrosis is a genetic disorder caused by a defective membrane transport protein. The defective protein closes chloride channels in membranes, preventing chloride from being exported out of cells. This results in the development of a thick mucus on the outer surfaces of cells. This mucus clogs the ducts that carry digestive enzymes from the pancreas to the small intestine, clogs the airways in the lungs, and promotes lung infections. Why do you think the defective protein results in a thick, sticky mucus outside the cells, instead of a loose, fluid covering?

3. Some prokaryotes, especially archaea, are capable of living in extreme environments, such as deep-sea heat vents, where temperatures can reach 80°C (176°F). Few organisms can survive at this temperature. What adaptations might archaea possess that allow them to survive in such extreme heat?

6

Energy for Life

Colors of Fall

Taking a walk through the woods in the fall, as the leaves begin to change color, can be an enjoyable and relaxing form of exercise. But why are the leaves changing color? Leaves contain several different types of pigment, including the green chlorophylls and the yellow to red carotenoids. These pigments play an important role in the absorption of solar energy for photosynthesis. In the fall, when the lower temperatures signal a change in the seasons, the supply of water and nutrients to the leaves declines, and the chlorophyll begins to degrade. Now the carotenoids, which were always present but masked by the carotenoids, become visible, in the process causing the change in leaf color.

Interestingly, the same carotenoids act as antioxidants in our diets. Antioxidants protect us against free radicals, dangerous molecules that otherwise degrade the DNA and proteins within a cell. Antioxidants, such as beta-carotene, are common in red and yellow vegetables.

In this chapter, we will see how these pigments are involved in the process of photosynthesis and how plants capture solar energy to manufacture glucose, their food supply.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What is the role of the photosynthetic pigments in photosynthesis?
2. How do plants convert solar energy to chemical energy?
3. What is the role of water in these processes?

OUTLINE

6.1 Overview of Photosynthesis 96

6.2 The Light Reactions—Harvesting Energy 99

6.3 The Calvin Cycle Reactions—Making Sugars 103

6.4 Other Types of Photosynthesis 105

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 1.1 What is the role of the producers in an ecosystem?

Section 4.4 What is the structure of a chloroplast?

Section 5.2 How is ADP energized to form ATP?

6.1 Overview of Photosynthesis

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Identify the cellular structure where photosynthesis occurs and describe its function.
2. State the overall chemical equation for photosynthesis.
3. Recognize what is meant by the terms *reduction* and *oxidation*.

Photosynthesis transforms solar energy into the chemical energy of a carbohydrate. Photosynthetic organisms, including plants, algae, and cyanobacteria, produce an enormous amount of carbohydrate (**Fig. 6.1**). If the amount of carbohydrate were instantly converted to coal, and the coal loaded into standard railroad cars (each car holding about 50 tons), the photosynthesizers of the biosphere would fill more than 100 cars *per second* with coal.

It is no wonder, then, that photosynthetic organisms are able to sustain themselves and, with a few exceptions,[1] all of the other living organisms on Earth. To appreciate this, consider that most food chains lead back to plants.

[1]A few types of bacteria are chemosynthetic organisms, which obtain the necessary energy to produce their own organic nutrients by oxidizing inorganic compounds.

Figure 6.1 **Photosynthetic organisms.**

Photosynthetic organisms include plants, such as flowers and mosses, that typically live on land; photosynthetic protists, such as the *Euglena*, diatoms, and kelp shown here, which typically live in water; and cyanobacteria, a type of bacterium that lives everywhere.

In other words, producers, which have the ability to synthesize carbohydrates, feed not only themselves but also consumers, which must take in preformed organic molecules.

Our analogy about photosynthetic products becoming coal is apt because the bodies of plants formed the coal we burn today. This process occurred millions of years ago, and that is why coal is called a fossil fuel. The wood of trees is also commonly used as fuel. In addition, the fermentation of plant materials produces alcohol, which can be used to fuel automobiles directly or as a gasoline additive.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Where did the oxygen in the atmosphere come from?

The atmosphere of the early Earth was lacking in oxygen but rich in carbon dioxide and other gases. The first photosynthetic organisms are believed to have appeared around 3.5 billion years ago (BYA). Most scientists think that these were the cyanobacteria (see Fig. 6.1). For almost a billion years, these organisms churned out oxygen as a by-product of photosynthesis. Then, beginning around 1.5 BYA, single-celled photosynthetic eukaryotes (such as algae and diatoms) began to make a contribution. It was not until between 400 and 450 BYA that land plants participated in the production of oxygen.

Plants as Photosynthesizers

The green portions of plants, particularly the leaves, carry on photosynthesis. Carbon dioxide in the air enters the many spaces of mesophyll tissue through small openings called stomata (sing., stoma). These spaces ensure that carbon dioxide, a raw material for photosynthesis, is efficiently delivered to mesophyll cells. The roots of a plant absorb water, which then moves in vascular tissue up the stem to the leaves, where it exits at leaf veins. Carbon dioxide and water diffuse into mesophyll cells and then into **chloroplasts,** the organelles that carry on photosynthesis (**Fig. 6.2**).

In a chloroplast, a double membrane surrounds a fluid-filled area called the **stroma.** A third membrane system within the stroma forms flattened sacs called **thylakoids,** which in some places are stacked to form **grana** (sing., granum), which were so named because early microscopists thought they looked like piles of seeds. The space within each thylakoid is believed to be connected to the space within every other thylakoid, thereby forming an inner compartment within chloroplasts called the *thylakoid space*.

3D Animation
Photosynthesis: Structure of a Chloroplast

Chlorophyll and other pigments reside within the membranes of the thylakoids. These pigments are capable of absorbing solar energy, the energy that drives photosynthesis. A thylakoid membrane also contains complexes that convert solar energy into a chemical form usable by the enzymes in the stroma. The stroma is an enzyme-rich region in which carbon dioxide is first attached to an organic compound and then reduced to a carbohydrate using the chemical energy provided by the thylakoid membranes.

This carbohydrate is the only source of energy for most organisms on Earth. When they metabolize the carbohydrate produced by chloroplasts, they release carbon dioxide into the air. This carbon dioxide enters leaves and is converted to a carbohydrate. The relationship between producers (e.g., plants) and consumers (e.g., animals) is a fundamental part of the intricate web of life.

Video
Plants

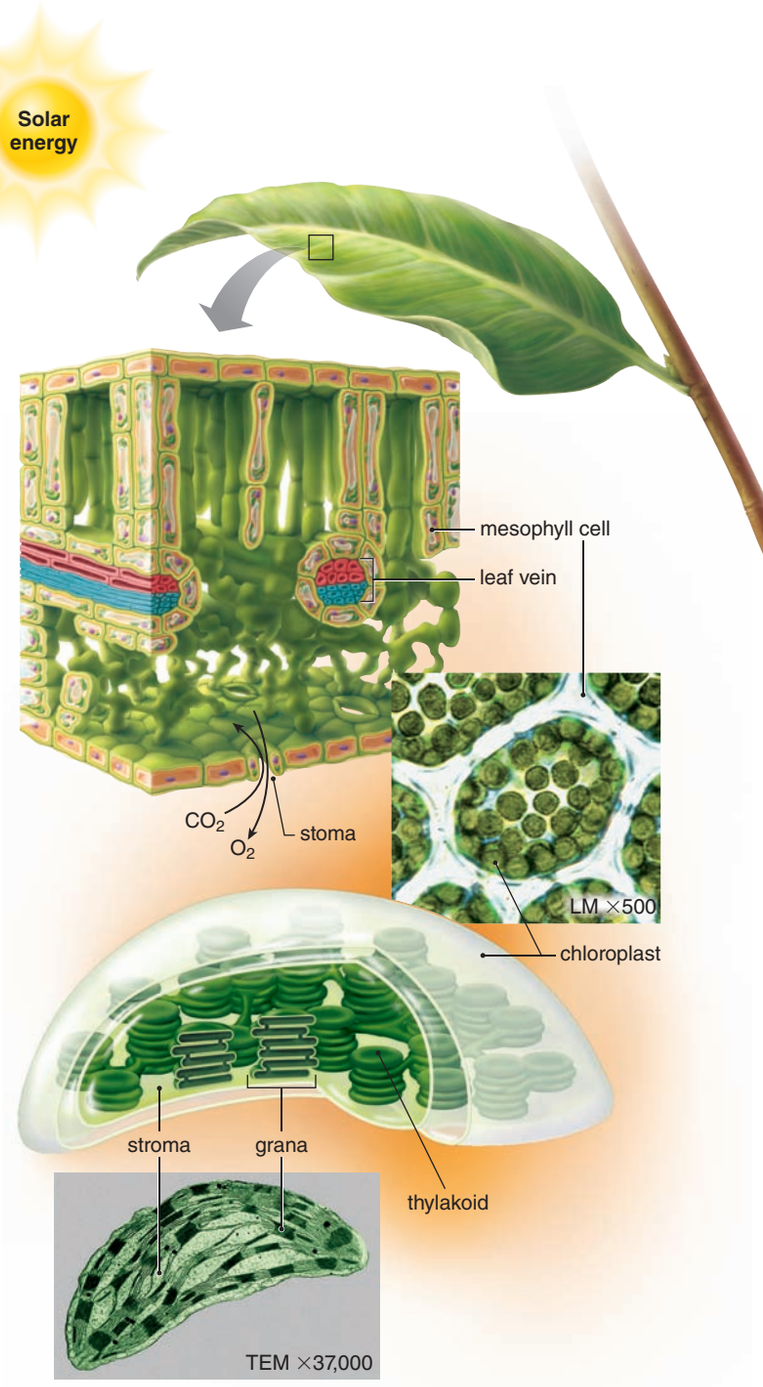
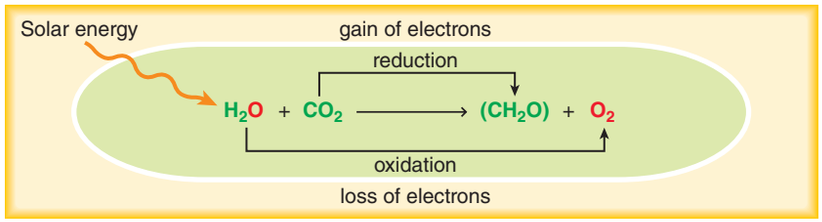


Figure 6.2 **Leaves and photosynthesis.**

The raw materials for photosynthesis are carbon dioxide and water. Water enters a leaf by way of leaf veins. Carbon dioxide enters a leaf by way of stomata. Chloroplasts have two major parts. The grana are made up of thylakoids, membranous disks that contain photosynthetic pigments, such as chlorophyll. These pigments absorb solar energy. The stroma is a fluid-filled space where carbon dioxide is enzymatically processed to form carbohydrates, such as glucose.

The Photosynthetic Process

The product of photosynthesis, carbohydrate (CH_2O), contains a lot more energy than the reactants carbon dioxide (CO_2) and water (H_2O). Why? Because electrons that are removed from H_2O are energized by solar energy before being transferred to CO_2 by an enzyme helper called $NADP^+$. These electrons are accompanied by hydrogen ions (H^+), and that's why hydrogen atoms are apparently transferred during photosynthesis:



Reduction occurs when a molecule gains electrons (e^-) and hydrogen ions (H^+), and the molecule is said to be reduced. In the equation above, carbon dioxide is reduced when it becomes CH_2O. **Oxidation** occurs when a molecule gives up (e^-) and hydrogen ions, and the molecule is said to be oxidized. In our equation, water is oxidized to form O_2. In a cell, reduction reactions are often coupled with oxidation reactions. Collectively, these coupled reactions are commonly called **redox reactions.**

Notice that if you multiplied CH_2O by 6 you would get $C_6H_{12}O_6$, which is the formula for glucose. While glucose is often described as the final product of photosynthesis, as we will see, the reduction of CO_2 produces a molecule called G3P (glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate). G3P molecules are often combined to form glucose shortly after the photosynthetic reactions.

Two Sets of Reactions

An overall equation for photosynthesis tells us the beginning reactant and the end products of the pathway. But much goes on in between. The word *photosynthesis* suggests that the process requires two sets of reactions. *Photo*, which means light, refers to the reactions that capture solar energy, and *synthesis* refers to the reactions that produce a carbohydrate. The two sets of reactions are called the **light reactions** and the **Calvin cycle** reactions (**Fig. 6.3**).

Light Reactions The following events occur in the thylakoid membrane during the light reactions:

- Chlorophyll within the thylakoid membranes absorbs solar energy and energizes electrons.
- Water is oxidized, releasing electrons, hydrogen ions (H^+), and oxygen.
- ATP is produced from ADP + Ⓟ with the help of an electron transport chain.
- $NADP^+$, an enzyme helper,[2] accepts electrons (is reduced) and becomes NADPH.

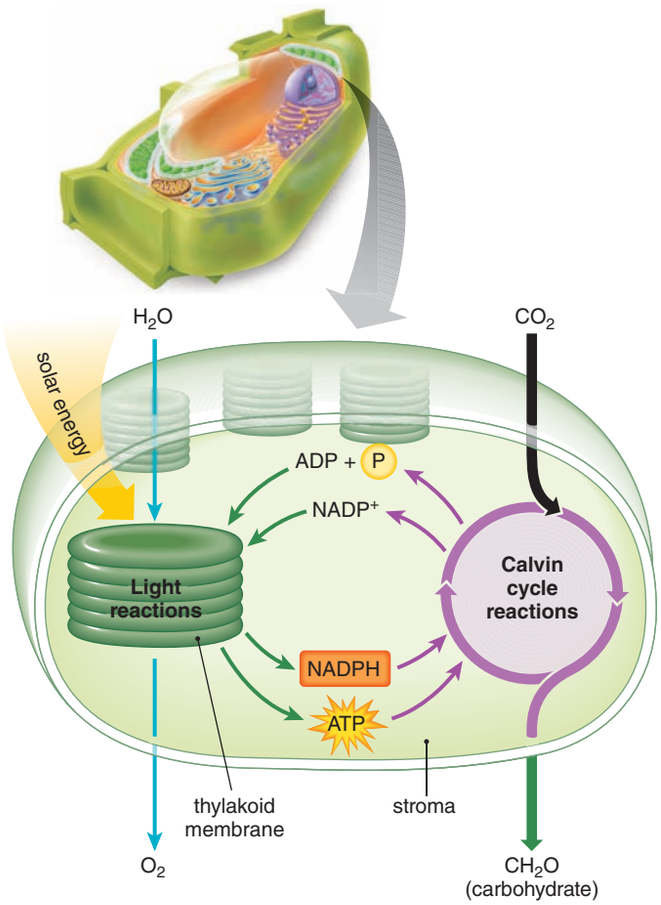


Figure 6.3 The photosynthetic process.

The process of photosynthesis consists of the light reactions and the Calvin cycle reactions. The light reactions, which produce ATP and NADPH, occur in a thylakoid membrane. These molecules are used by the Calvin cycle in the stroma to reduce carbon dioxide to a carbohydrate.

[2]NADP = nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate.

Calvin Cycle Reactions The following events occur in the stroma during the Calvin cycle reactions:

- CO_2 is taken up by one of the molecules in the cycle.
- ATP and NADPH from the light reactions reduce CO_2 to a carbohydrate (G3P).

In the following sections, we discuss the details of these two reactions.

Check Your Progress 6.1

1. Distinguish among the stroma, grana, and thylakoid of a chloroplast.
2. Summarize the reactions of photosynthesis in a chemical equation.
3. Distinguish between a reduction and an oxidation reaction.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Photosynthesis occurs within the chloroplasts of plants and some protists.

6.2 The Light Reactions—Harvesting Energy

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the function of photosynthetic pigments.
2. Explain the flow of electrons in the light reactions.
3. Explain how ATP and NADPH are generated in the light reactions of photosynthesis.

During the light reactions, the pigments within the thylakoid membranes absorb radiant energy from the sun. Radiant energy, also called solar energy, can be described in terms of its wavelength and its energy content. **Figure 6.4** lists the types of radiant energy, from the shortest wavelength, gamma rays, to the longest, radio waves. Notice how v*isible light* occupies only a small portion of this spectrum.

Visible light contains various wavelengths of light, as can be proven by passing it through a prism; the different wavelengths appear to us as the colors of the rainbow, ranging from violet (the shortest wavelength) to blue, green, yellow, orange, and red (the longest wavelength). The energy content is highest for violet light and lowest for red light.

3D Animation
Photosynthesis: Properties of Light

Only about 42% of the solar radiation that hits the Earth's atmosphere ever reaches its surface, and most of this radiation is within the visible-light range. Higher-energy wavelengths are screened out by the ozone layer in the atmosphere, and lower-energy wavelengths are screened out by water vapor and CO_2 before they reach the Earth's surface. Both the organic molecules within organisms and certain life processes, such as vision and photosynthesis, are adapted to utilize the radiation that is most prevalent in the environment.

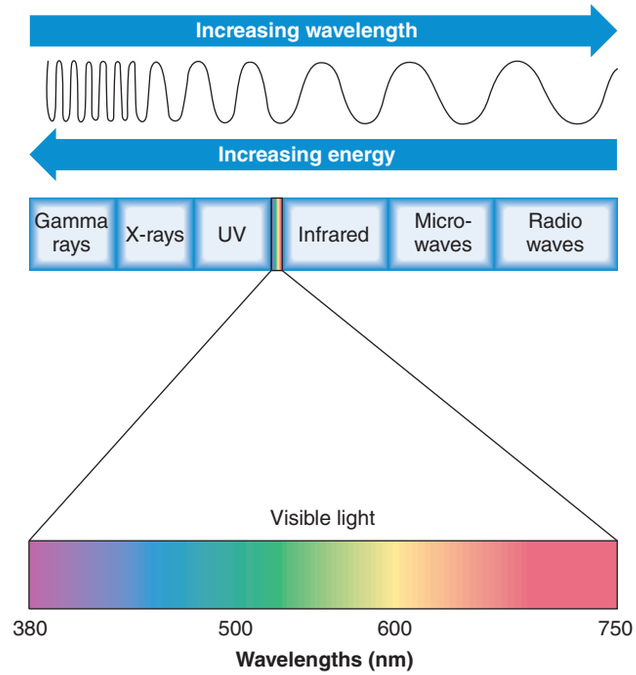


Figure 6.4 **Radiant energy.**

Radiant energy exists in a range of wavelengths extending from the very short wavelengths of gamma rays through the very long wavelengths of radio waves. Visible light, which drives photosynthesis, is expanded to show its component colors. The colors differ according to wavelength and energy content.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How do the grow-lights in a greenhouse work?

The grow-lights in commercial greenhouses do not emit all of the wavelengths of visible light. Instead, these lamps have been designed to emit more strongly in the blue and red wavelengths of light. Since these are the preferred wavelengths of the chlorophyll molecules, the growers can optimize plant growth. You will also notice that the color of your clothes may appear slightly different under a grow-light. This is because the light reaching the pigments in the cloth does not contain all of the wavelengths, so not all the colors are reflected back to your eyes.

Photosynthetic Pigments

The pigments found within most types of photosynthesizing cells are primarily **chlorophylls** and **carotenoids.** These pigments are capable of absorbing portions of visible light. Both chlorophyll *a* and chlorophyll *b* absorb violet, blue, and red wavelengths better than those of other colors. Because green light is reflected and only minimally absorbed, leaves appear green to us. Accessory pigments, such as the carotenoids, appear yellow or orange because they are able to absorb light in the violet-blue-green range, but not the yellow-orange range. As mentioned in the chapter opener, these pigments and others become noticeable in the fall when chlorophyll breaks down and the other pigments are uncovered (**Fig. 6.5**).

The Electron Pathway of the Light Reactions

Much as a solar energy panel captures the sun's energy and stores it in a battery, the light reactions capture the sun's energy and store it in the form of a hydrogen ion (H^+) gradient. This hydrogen ion gradient is used to produce ATP molecules. The light reactions also produce NADPH (**Fig. 6.6**).

The light reactions use two **photosystems,** called photosystem I (PS I) and photosystem II (PS II). The photosystems are named for the order in which they were discovered, not for the order in which they participate in the photosynthetic process. Here is a summary of how the pathway works:

- *Both photosystems receive photons.* PS II and PS I consist of a pigment complex (containing chlorophyll and carotenoid molecules) and an electron acceptor. The pigment complex serves as an "antenna" for gathering solar energy. The energy is passed from one pigment to the other until it is concentrated in a particular pair of chlorophyll *a* molecules, called the reaction center.

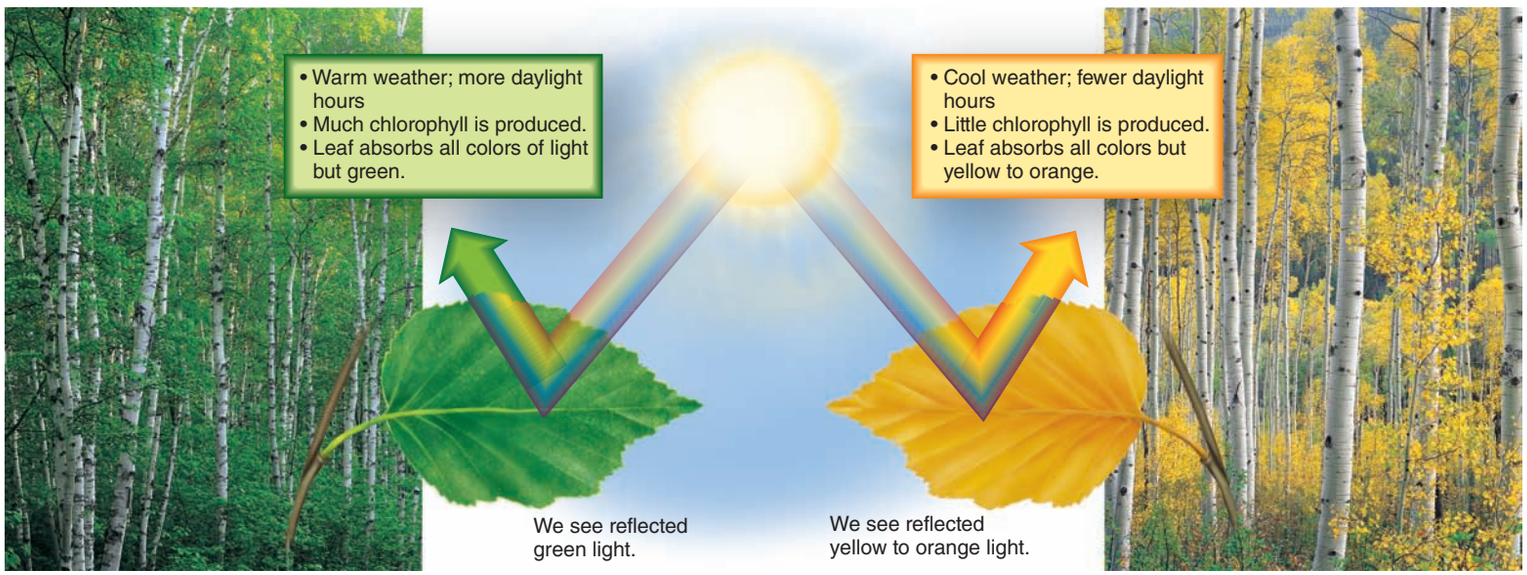


Figure 6.5 Leaf colors.

During the summer, leaves appear green because the chlorophylls absorb other portions of the visible spectrum better than they absorb green. During the fall, chlorophyll breaks down, and the remaining carotenoids cause leaves to appear yellow to orange because they do not absorb these colors.

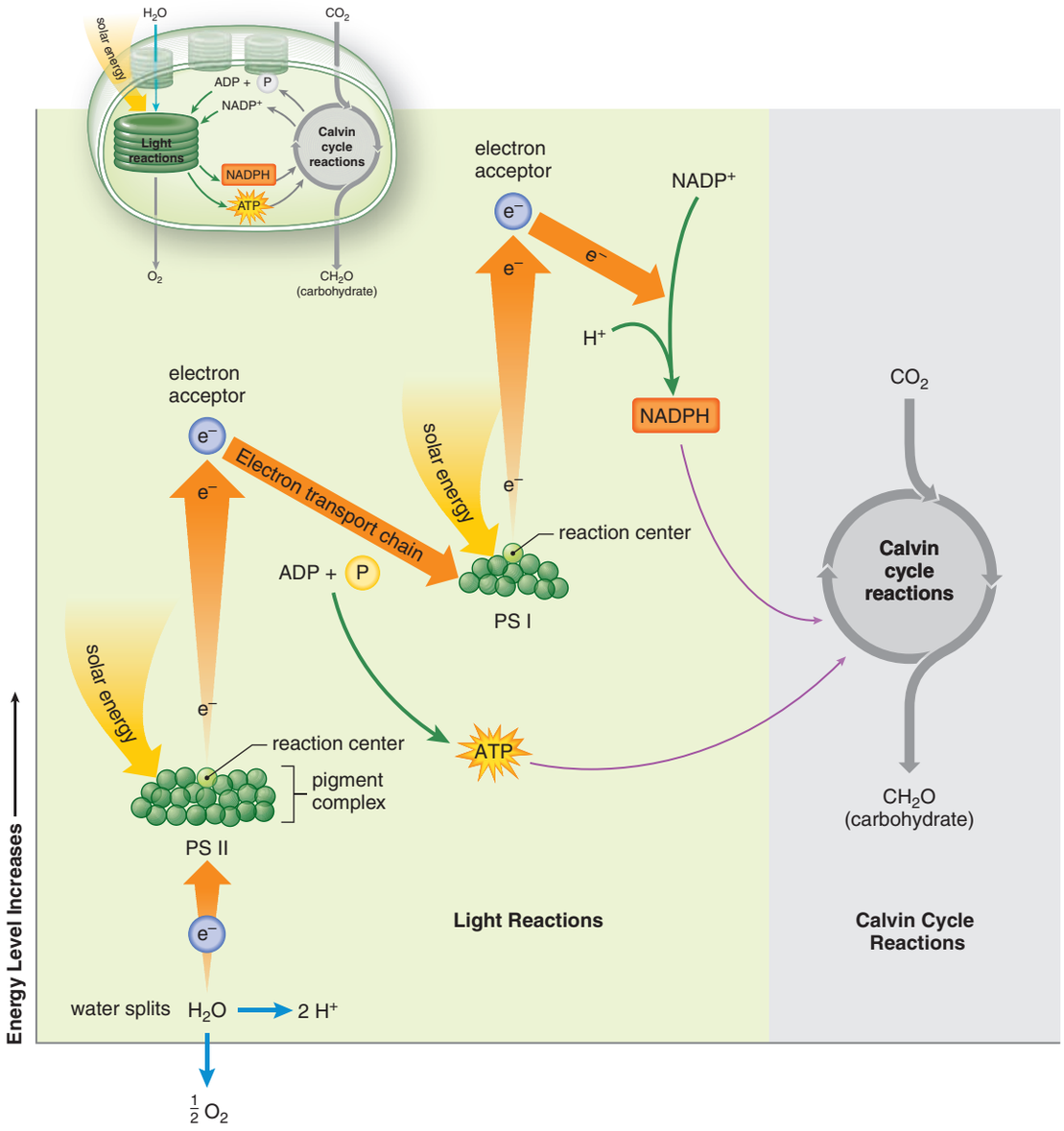


Figure 6.6 The electron pathway in the light reactions.

Energized electrons leave PS II and pass down an electron transport chain, leading to the formation of ATP. Energized electrons (replaced from PS II) leave PS I and pass to $NADP^+$, which then combines with H^+ to become NADPH. The electrons from PS II are replaced with electrons from water as it splits to release oxygen.

- *PS II splits water.* Due to the absorption of solar energy, electrons (e^-) in the reaction center of PS II become so energized that they escape and move to a nearby electron-acceptor molecule. Replacement electrons are removed from water, which splits, releasing oxygen and two hydrogen ions (H^+). The electron acceptor sends energized electrons, received from the reaction center, down an electron transport chain.
- *The electron transport chain establishes an energy gradient.* In an **electron transport chain,** a series of carriers pass electrons from one to the other, releasing energy stored in the form of a hydrogen ion (H^+) gradient. Later, ATP is produced (see page 102).
- *PS I produces NADPH.* When the PS I pigment complex absorbs solar energy, energized electrons leave its reaction center and are captured by a different electron acceptor. Low-energy electrons from the electron transport chain adjacent to PS II replace those lost by PS I. The electron acceptor in PS I passes its electrons to an $NADP^+$ molecule. $NADP^+$ accepts electrons and a hydrogen ion and is reduced, becoming NADPH.

Organization of the Thylakoid Membrane

PS I, PS II, and the electron transport chain are molecular complexes located within the thylakoid membrane (**Fig. 6.7**). The molecular complexes are densely clustered to promote efficient electron transfer between carriers. Also present is an ATP synthase complex.

ATP Production

During photosynthesis, the thylakoid space acts as a reservoir for hydrogen ions (H^+). First, each time water is split, two H^+ remain in the thylakoid space. Second, as the electrons move from carrier to carrier down the electron transport chain, the electrons give up energy. This energy is used to pump H^+ from the stroma into the thylakoid space. Therefore, there are many more H^+ in the thylakoid space than in the stroma, and a H^+ gradient has been established. This gradient contains a large amount of potential energy.

The H^+ then flow down their concentration gradient, across the thylakoid membrane at the ATP synthase complex, and energy is released. This causes the enzyme **ATP synthase** to change its shape and produce ATP from ADP + Ⓟ. The production of ATP captures the released energy.

NADPH Production

Enzymes often have nonprotein helpers called **coenzymes.** $NADP^+$ is a coenzyme that accepts electrons, becoming NADPH. When it gives up electrons to a substrate, the substrate is reduced.

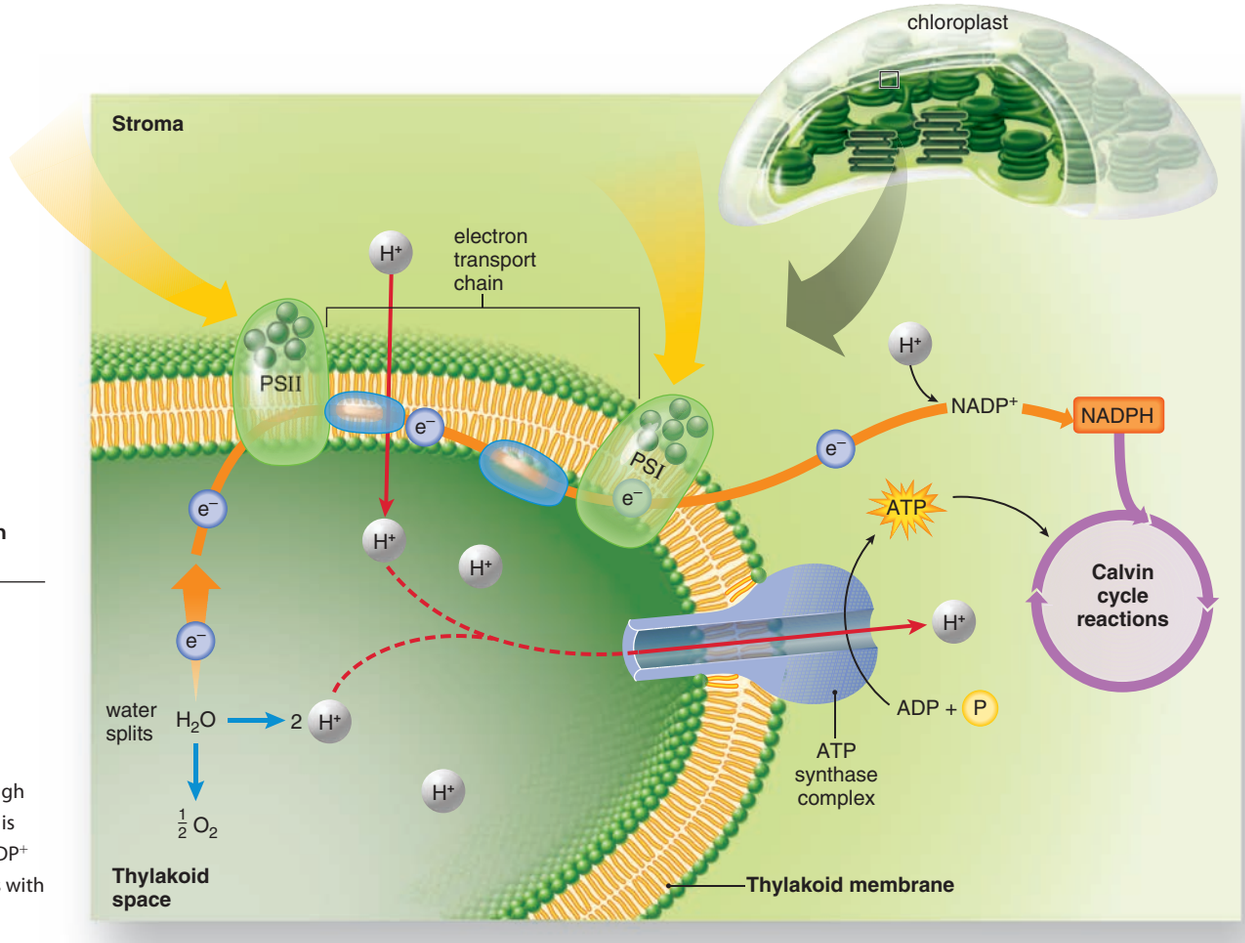


Figure 6.7 Organization of a thylakoid.

Molecular complexes of the electron transport chain within the thylakoid membrane pump hydrogen ions from the stroma into the thylakoid space. When hydrogen ions flow back out of the space into the stroma through the ATP synthase complex, ATP is produced from ADP + Ⓟ. $NADP^+$ accepts two electrons and joins with H^+ to become NADPH.

We have seen that, during the light reactions, $NADP^+$ receives electrons at the end of the electron pathway in the thylakoid membrane, and then it picks up a hydrogen ion to become NADPH (see page 101).

3D Animation
Photosynthesis: Light-Dependent Reactions

Video
Spinach Battery

Check Your Progress 6.2

1. Explain why plants have more than one photosynthetic pigment.
2. Describe the path of electrons from water to NADPH.
3. Summarize why reduction and oxidation reactions are often coupled.

6.2 CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
Various pigments are required to capture solar energy during the light reactions of photosynthesis.

6.3 The Calvin Cycle Reactions—Making Sugars

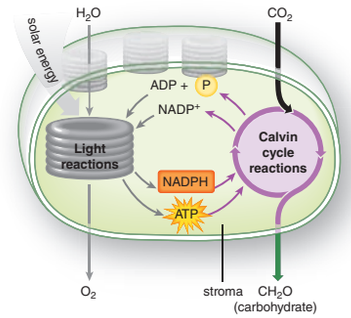
Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the three stages of the Calvin cycle and describe the major event that occurs during each stage.
2. Describe how ATP and NADPH are utilized in the reduction of CO_2.
3. Summarize how the output of the Calvin cycle is used to make other carbohydrates.

The ATP and NADPH generated by the light reactions power the Calvin cycle reactions. The Calvin cycle is often referred to as the light-independent reactions, since they do not require an input of solar energy but, rather, rely on the outputs of the light reactions. The cycle is named for Melvin Calvin, who, with colleagues, used the radioactive isotope ^{14}C as a tracer to discover the reactions that make up the cycle.

The Calvin cycle reactions occur in the stroma of chloroplasts (see Fig. 6.2). This series of reactions (**Fig. 6.8**) utilizes carbon dioxide from the atmosphere and consists of these three steps: (1) carbon dioxide fixation, (2) carbon dioxide reduction, and (3) regeneration of the first substrate, RuBP (ribulose-1, 5-bisphosphate). The reactions produce molecules of G3P (glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate), which plants use to produce glucose and other types of organic molecules. The Calvin cycle requires a lot of energy, which is supplied by ATP and NADPH from the light reactions.



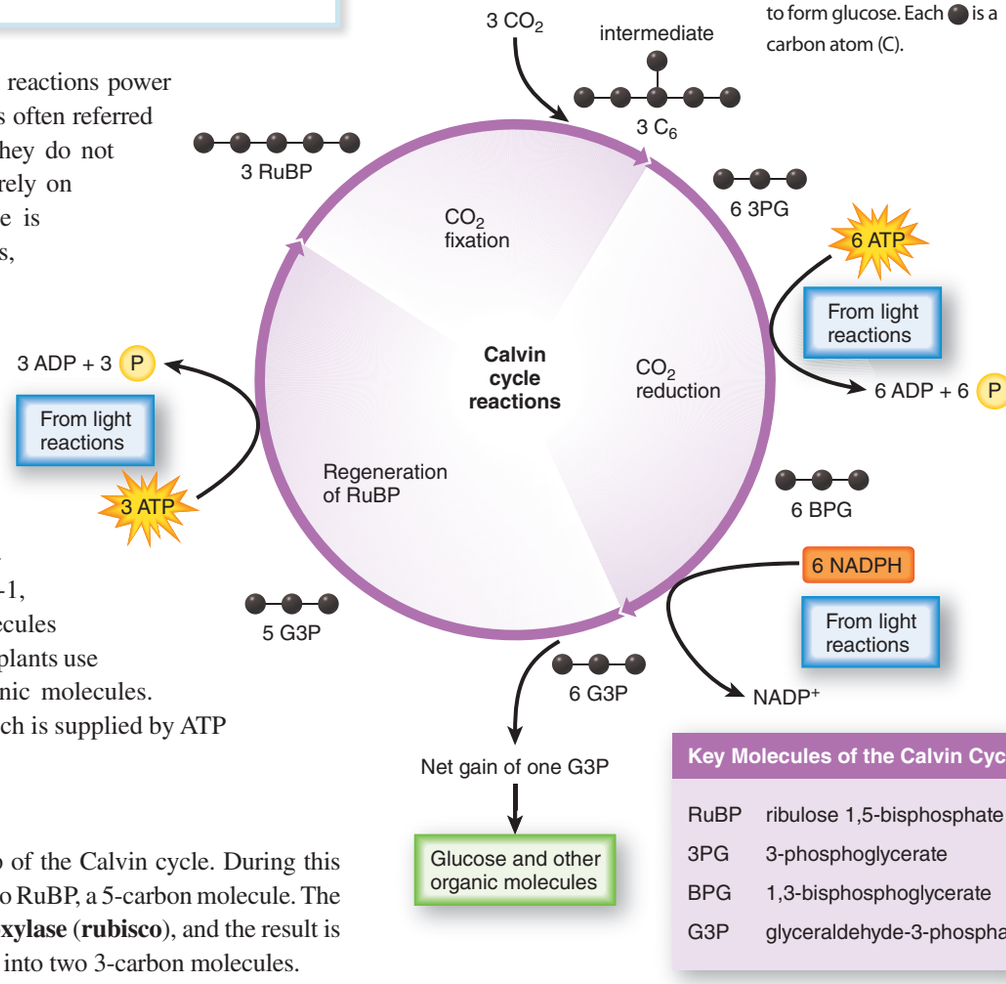


Figure 6.8 The Calvin cycle reactions.
The Calvin cycle is divided into three portions: CO_2 fixation, CO_2 reduction, and regeneration of RuBP. Because five G3P are needed to re-form three RuBP, it takes three turns of the cycle to achieve a net gain of one G3P. Two G3P molecules are needed to form glucose. Each ● is a carbon atom (C).

Key Molecules of the Calvin Cycle

RuBP	ribulose 1,5-bisphosphate
3PG	3-phosphoglycerate
BPG	1,3-bisphosphoglycerate
G3P	glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate

Fixation of Carbon Dioxide

Carbon dioxide (CO_2) fixation is the first step of the Calvin cycle. During this reaction, CO_2 from the atmosphere is attached to RuBP, a 5-carbon molecule. The enzyme for this reaction is called **RuBP carboxylase** (**rubisco**), and the result is a 6-carbon molecule that soon thereafter splits into two 3-carbon molecules.

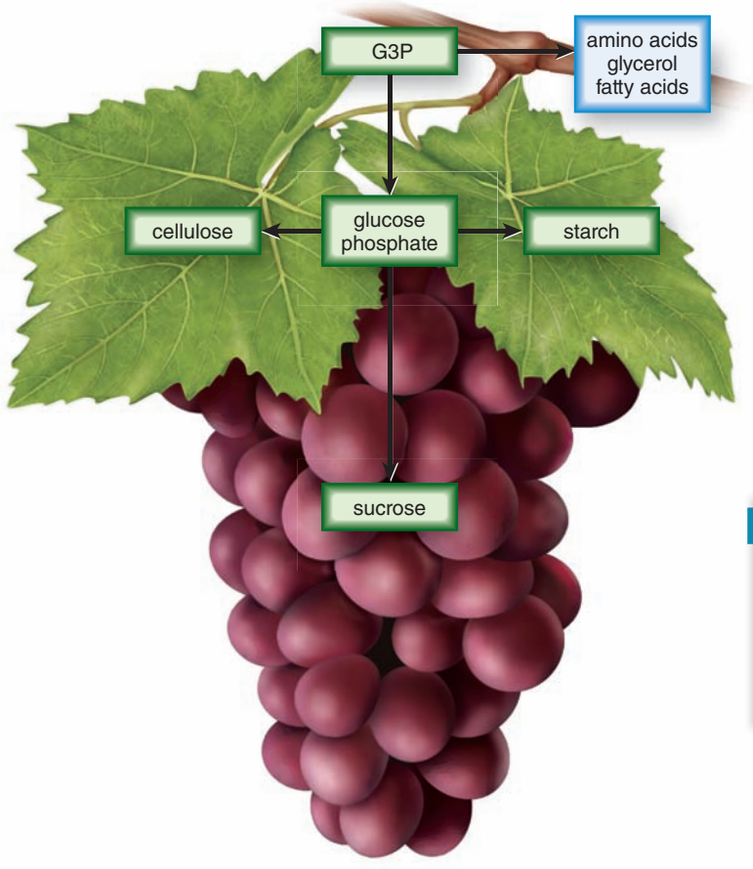
Connections: Ecology

Can forests absorb enough carbon dioxide to offset climate change?

When speaking of carbon absorption by forests, you are actually talking about the process of carbon dioxide fixation in the Calvin cycle. The U.S. Department of Agriculture estimates that forests absorb over 750 million metric tons of carbon dioxide per year. Unfortunately, this is only about 10% of the carbon dioxide emitted in the United States. While other factors are involved in the cycling of carbon (see Chapter 31), it is unlikely in the United States that forests alone can absorb enough carbon to balance the equation.

Figure 6.9 The fate of G3P.

G3P is the first reactant in a number of plant cell metabolic pathways, such as those that lead to products other than carbohydrates, such as oils (blue box), and those that are carbohydrates (green boxes). Two G3Ps are needed to produce glucose, the molecule that is often considered the end product of photosynthesis. However, other carbohydrates, such as sucrose (a transport sugar), starch (the storage form of glucose), and cellulose (a structural carbohydrate), may be produced.



Reduction of Carbon Dioxide

Reduction of CO_2 is the sequence of reactions that uses NADPH and some of the ATP from the light reactions. NADPH and ATP supply the needed electrons and energy for CO_2 reduction, respectively. Electrons are added from NADPH, and through a series of reactions carbon dioxide is reduced to form G3P, a carbohydrate.

Regeneration of RuBP

The reactions of the Calvin cycle are cyclic, which means that some of the product returns to the start of the reactions. Notice that the Calvin cycle reactions in Figure 6.8 are multiplied by three because it takes three turns of the Calvin cycle to allow one G3P to exit for making glucose and other carbohydrates. Why? For every three turns of the Calvin cycle, five molecules of G3P are used to re-form three molecules of RuBP, which are needed to begin the next cycle of the reactions. In the process, some of the ATP produced by the light reactions is used.

3D Animation
Photosynthesis: Calvin Cycle

The Fate of G3P

Compared with animal cells, algae and plants have enormous biochemical capabilities. From a G3P molecule, they can make all the molecules they need (**Fig. 6.9**). A plant can utilize the hydrocarbon skeleton of G3P to form fatty acids and glycerol, which are combined in plant oils. We are all familiar with the corn oil, sunflower oil, and olive oil used in cooking. Also, when nitrogen is added to the hydrocarbon skeleton derived from G3P, amino acids are formed.

Notice also that glucose phosphate is among the organic molecules that result from G3P metabolism. Glucose is the molecule that plants and animals most often metabolize to produce ATP molecules to meet their energy needs. Glucose phosphate can be combined with fructose (and the phosphate removed) to form sucrose, the molecule that plants use to transport carbohydrates from one part of the plant to another. Glucose phosphate is also the starting point for the synthesis of starch and cellulose. Starch is the storage form of glucose. Some starch is stored in chloroplasts, but most starch is stored in amyloplasts in plant roots. Cellulose is a structural component of plant cell walls; it serves as fiber in our diets because we are unable to digest it.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
The Calvin cycle is the stage of photosynthesis that produces carbohydrates.

Check Your Progress 6.3

1. Briefly summarize the role of the Calvin cycle in photosynthesis.
2. Identify the source of the NADPH and ATP used in the Calvin cycle.
3. Explain the importance of G3P to plants.

6.4 Other Types of Photosynthesis

Learning Outcomes

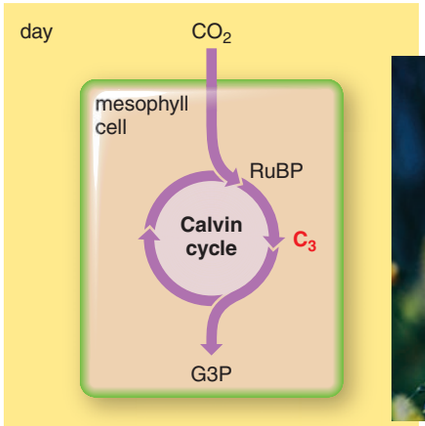
Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Define C_4 photosynthesis and explain why some plants must use this type of photosynthesis.
2. Describe both the advantages and the disadvantages of C_4 photosynthesis over C_3 photosynthesis.
3. Compare and contrast the leaf structure of a C_3 plant with that of a C_4 plant.
4. Explain CAM photosynthesis and describe the conditions under which plants can use it.

Plants are physically adapted to their environments. In the cold, windy climates of the north, evergreen trees have small, narrow leaves that look like needles. In the warm, wet climates of the south, some evergreen trees have large, flat leaves to catch the rays of the sun.

In the same way, plants are metabolically adapted to their environments. Where temperature and rainfall tend to be moderate, plants carry on **C_3 photosynthesis** and are therefore called C_3 plants. In a C_3 plant (**Fig. 6.10**), the first detectable molecule after CO_2 fixation (see Fig. 6.8) is a molecule composed of three carbon atoms, which accounts for the name C_3. In a C_3 leaf, **mesophyll cells,** arranged in parallel rows, contain well-formed chloroplasts. The Calvin cycle, including CO_2 fixation, occurs in the chloroplasts of mesophyll cells. The majority of plant species carry out C_3 photosynthesis.

If the weather is hot and dry, stomata close, preventing the loss of water, which might cause the plant to wilt and die. However, closing the stomata also prevents CO_2 from entering the leaf and traps O_2, a by-product of photosynthesis, within the leaf spaces, where it can diffuse back into mesophyll cells. In C_3 plants, this O_2 competes with CO_2 for the active site of *rubisco*, the first enzyme of the Calvin cycle, and less C_3 is produced. This is called *photorespiration*. Such yield decreases are of concern because many food crops are C_3 plants.



CO_2 fixation in a C_3 plant, wildflowers

Figure 6.10 **Carbon dioxide fixation in C_3 plants.**

In C_3 plants, such as these wildflowers, CO_2 is taken up by the Calvin cycle directly in mesophyll cells, and the first detectable molecule is a C_3 molecule (red).

C_4 Photosynthesis

Some plants have evolved an adaptation that allows them to be successful in hot, dry conditions. These plants carry out **C_4 photosynthesis** instead of C_3 photosynthesis. In a C_4 plant**,** the first detectable molecule following CO_2 fixation is a molecule composed of four carbon atoms (thus, *C_4*). C_4 plants are able to avoid the uptake of O_2 by rubisco. Let's explore how C_4 plants do this. The anatomy of a C_4 plant is different from that of a C_3 plant (**Fig. 6.11**). In a C_4 leaf, chloroplasts are located in the mesophyll cells, but they are also located in bundle sheath cells, which surround the leaf vein. Further, the mesophyll cells are arranged concentrically around the bundle sheath cells, shielding the bundle sheath cells from O_2 in the leaf spaces.

In C_4 plants, the Calvin cycle occurs only in the bundle sheath cells and not in the mesophyll cells. Because the bundle sheath cells are not accessible to leaf spaces, the CO_2 needed for the Calvin cycle is not directly taken from the air. Instead, CO_2 is fixed in mesophyll cells by a C_3 molecule, and a C_4 molecule forms. The C_4 molecule is modified and then pumped into bundle sheath cells (**Fig. 6.12**). Then CO_2 enters the Calvin cycle. This represents partitioning of CO_2 fixation and the Calvin cycle in space.

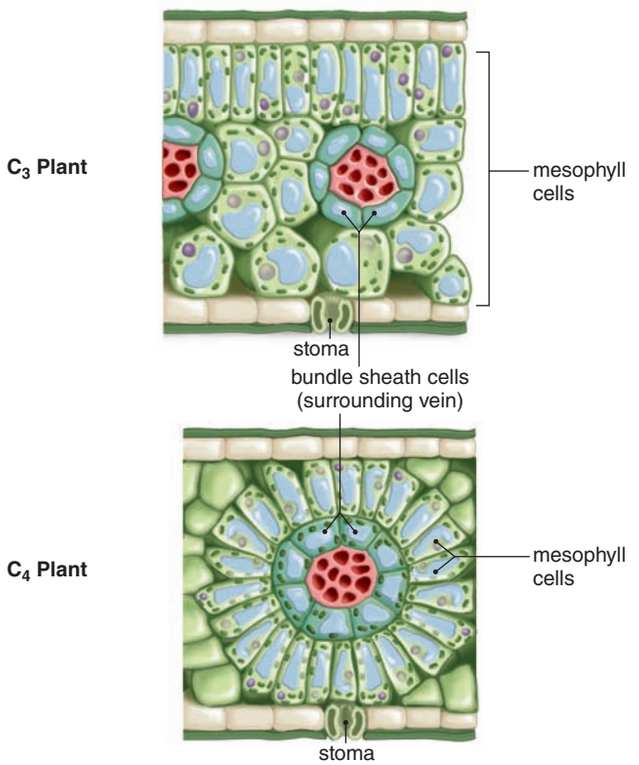
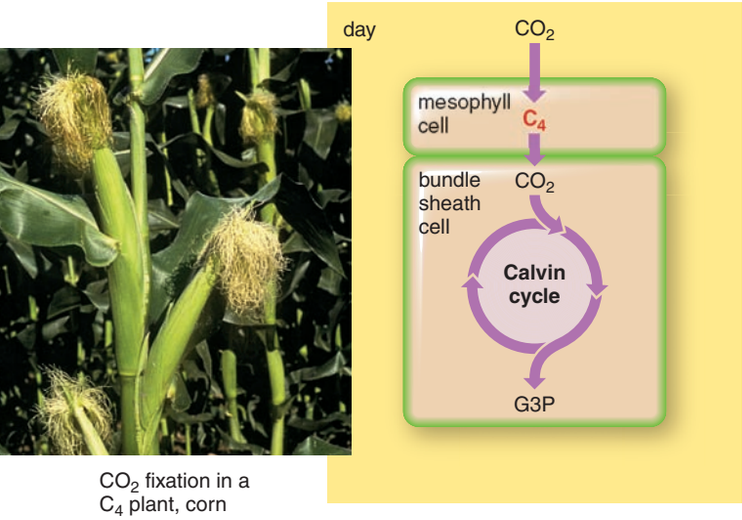


Figure 6.11 **Comparison of C_3 and C_4 plant anatomy.**

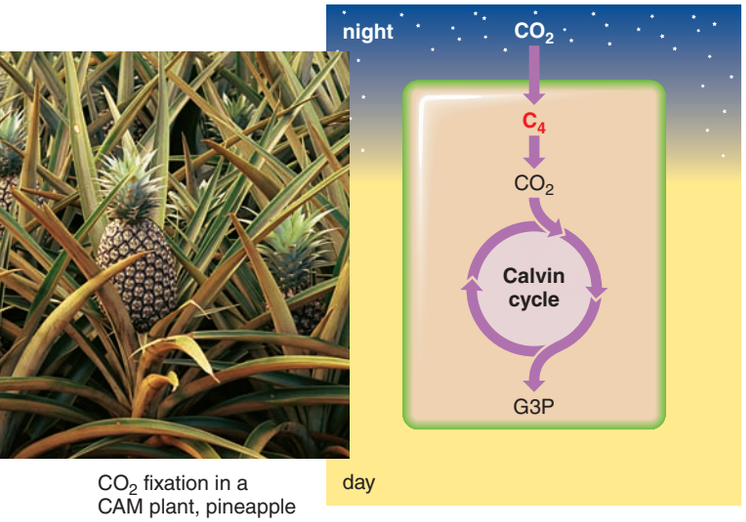
In C_3 plants, mesophyll cells are arranged in rows and contain chloroplasts. The Calvin cycle, including CO_2 fixation, occurs in mesophyll cells. In C_4 plants, mesophyll cells are arranged in rings around bundle sheath cells, and both contain chloroplasts. CO_2 fixation occurs within mesophyll cells, and the Calvin cycle occurs in the bundle sheath cells.



CO_2 fixation in a C_4 plant, corn

Figure 6.12 **Carbon dioxide fixation in C_4 plants.**

In C_4 plants, such as corn, CO_2 fixation results in C_4 molecules (red) in mesophyll cells. The C_4 molecule releases CO_2 to the Calvin cycle in bundle sheath cells.



CO_2 fixation in a CAM plant, pineapple

Figure 6.13 **Carbon dioxide fixation in a CAM plant.**

CAM plants, such as pineapple, fix CO_2 at night, forming a C_4 molecule (red). The C_4 molecule releases CO_2 to the Calvin cycle during the day.

It takes energy to pump molecules, and you would think that the C_4 pathway would be disadvantageous. But in hot, dry climates, the net photosynthetic rate of C_4 plants, such as sugarcane, corn, and Bermuda grass, is two to three times that of C_3 plants, such as wheat, rice, and oats. Why do C_4 plants enjoy such an advantage? When the weather is hot and dry and stomata close, rubisco is not exposed to O_2, and yield is maintained.

When the weather is moderate, C_3 plants ordinarily have the advantage, but when the weather becomes hot and dry, C_4 plants have their chance to take over, and we can expect them to predominate. In the early summer, C_3 plants, such as Kentucky bluegrass and creeping bent grass, predominate in lawns in the cooler parts of the United States, but in midsummer, crabgrass, a C_4 plant, begins to take over.

CAM Photosynthesis

Another type of photosynthesis is called **CAM,** which stands for crassulacean-acid metabolism. It gets its name from the Crassulaceae, a family of flowering succulent (water-containing) plants that live in warm, arid regions. CAM was first discovered in these plants, but now it is known to be prevalent among most succulent plants that grow in desert environments, including cactuses.

Whereas a C_4 plant represents partitioning in space (that is, CO_2 fixation occurs in mesophyll cells, and the Calvin cycle occurs in bundle sheath cells), CAM is partitioning by the use of time. During the night, CAM plants use C_3 molecules to fix CO_2, forming C_4 molecules. These molecules are stored in large vacuoles in mesophyll cells. During the day, the C_4 molecules release CO_2 to the Calvin cycle when NADPH and ATP are available from the light reactions (**Fig. 6.13**).

The primary advantage of this partitioning again relates to the conservation of water. CAM plants open their stomata only at night; therefore, only at that time is atmospheric CO_2 available. During the day, the stomata close. This conserves water, but CO_2 cannot enter the plant.

Photosynthesis in a CAM plant is minimal because of the limited amount of CO_2 fixed at night, but it does allow CAM plants to live under stressful conditions.

Evolutionary Trends

C_4 plants most likely evolved in, and are adapted to, areas of high light intensities, high temperatures, and limited rainfall. However, C_4 plants are more sensitive to cold, and C_3 plants probably do better than C_4 plants below 25°C (77°F).

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What is known about C_4 plant evolution?

Scientists are trying to understand the evolutionary triggers that gave rise to the C_4 plants. They do know that the first evidence of the C_4 plants dates back to around 25 MYA, which makes them a relatively young group of organisms. The exact location in which they first evolved is still a matter of debate, but most scientists agree it was probably a hot, dry environment. Despite being newcomers on the evolutionary scene, C_4 plants are very successful. Although only 4% of plant species are C_4 plants, over 20% of total annual plant growth is conducted by these plants. Of the 18 most problematic weed plants on the planet, 14 are C_4 plants.

CAM plants, on the other hand, compete well with either type of plant when the environment is extremely arid. Surprisingly, CAM is quite widespread and has evolved in 30 families of flowering plants, including cactuses, stonecrops, orchids, and bromeliads. It is also found among nonflowering plants, such as some ferns and cone-bearing trees.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Producers have modified the photosynthesis pathway in order to adapt to a variety of environments.

Check Your Progress 6.4

1. Identify the differences between C_3 and C_4 plants and give an example of each type.
2. Describe why C_4 plants need to fix CO_2 in their mesophyll cells.
3. Distinguish some advantages CAM plants have over C_4 plants.

Media Study Tools

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

connect BIOLOGY plus+

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Videos
6.2 Photosynthetic Electron and ATP Synthesis • Proton Pump	**6.1** Plants **6.2** Spinach Battery

3D Animation Photosynthesis — For an interactive exploration of the process of photosynthesis, take a moment to view McGraw-Hill's 3D animation "Photosynthesis."

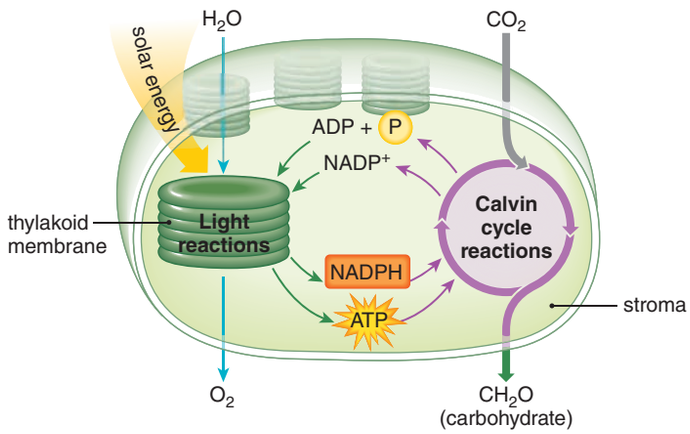
SUMMARIZE

6.1 Overview of Photosynthesis

Cyanobacteria, algae, and plants carry on **photosynthesis**, a process in which water is oxidized (split) and carbon dioxide is reduced using solar energy. The combination of a **reduction** and an **oxidation** reaction is called a **redox reaction.** The end products of photosynthesis include carbohydrate and oxygen:

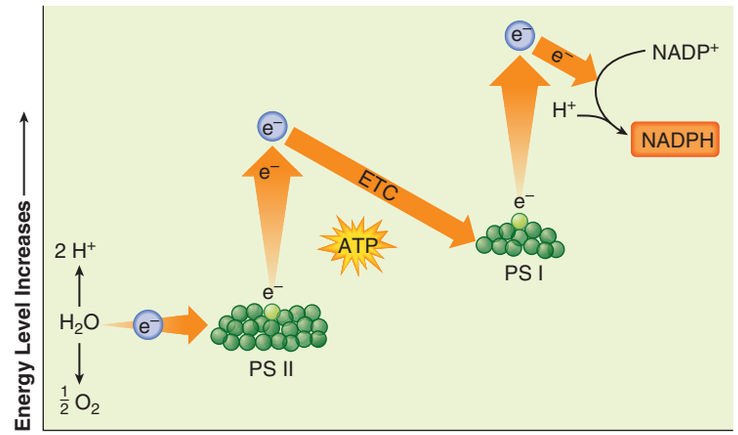
$$\text{solar energy} + CO_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow (CH_2O) + O_2$$

In plants, photosynthesis takes place in **chloroplasts.** A chloroplast is bounded by a double membrane and contains two main components: (1) the liquid **stroma** and (2) the membranous **grana** made up of **thylakoids.** During photosynthesis, the **light reactions** take place using **chlorophyll** molecules in the thylakoid membrane, and the **Calvin cycle** reactions take place in the stroma:



6.2 The Light Reactions—Harvesting Energy

- The light reactions use solar energy in the visible-light range. Pigment complexes, such as **chlorophyll** and **carotenoids,** in two **photosystems** (PS II and PS I) absorb various wavelengths of light. The collected solar energy results in high-energy electrons at the reaction centers of the photosystems.

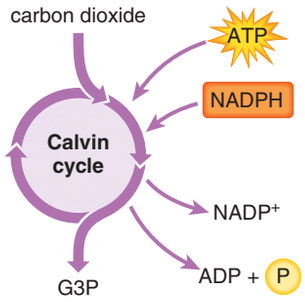


- Solar energy enters PS II, and energized electrons are picked up by an electron acceptor. The oxidation (splitting) of water replaces these electrons in the reaction center. Oxygen (O_2) is released to the atmosphere, and hydrogen ions (H^+) remain in the thylakoid space.
- As electrons pass from one acceptor to another in an **electron transport chain,** the release of energy allows the carriers to pump H^+ into the thylakoid space. The buildup of H^+ establishes an electrochemical gradient.
- When solar energy is absorbed by PS I, energized electrons leave and are ultimately received by $NADP^+$ (a **coenzyme**), which also combines with H^+ from the stroma to become NADPH. Electrons from PS II replace those lost by PS I.
- When H^+ flows down its concentration gradient through the channel present in **ATP synthase** complexes, ATP is synthesized from ADP and (P) by ATP synthase.

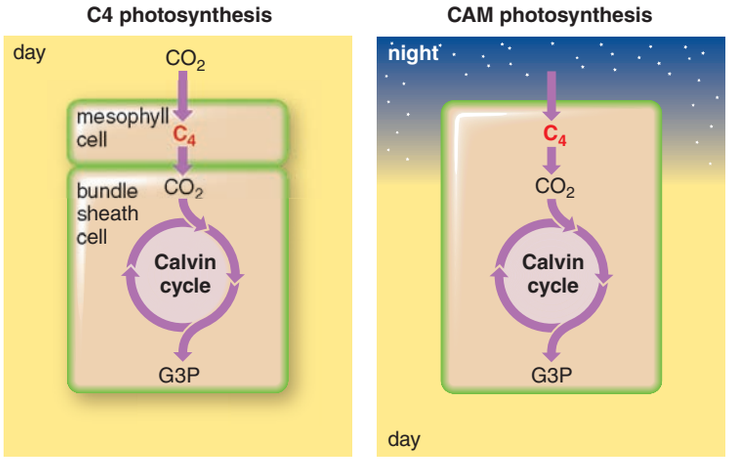
6.3 The Calvin Cycle Reactions—Making Sugars

The Calvin cycle consists of the following stages:

- *CO_2 fixation:* The enzyme **RuBP carboxyase** fixes CO_2 to RuBP, producing a 6-carbon molecule that immediately breaks down to two C_3 molecules.
- *CO_2 reduction:* CO_2 (incorporated into an organic molecule) is reduced to carbohydrate (CH_2O). This step requires the NADPH and some of the ATP from the light reactions.
- *Regeneration of RuBP:* For every three turns of the Calvin cycle, the net gain is one G3P molecule; the other five G3P molecules are used to re-form three molecules of RuBP. This step also requires the energy of ATP. G3P is then converted to all the organic molecules a plant needs. It takes two G3P molecules to make one glucose molecule.



6.4 Other Types of Photosynthesis



C_4 Photosynthesis

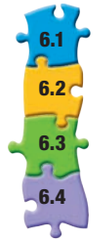
When the weather is hot and dry, plants using **C_3 photosynthesis** are at a disadvantage because stomata close and O_2 from photosynthesis competes with CO_2 for the active site of RuBP carboxylase. C_4 plants avoid this drawback. In **C_4 photosynthesis,** CO_2 fixation occurs in **mesophyll cells**, and the Calvin cycle reactions occur in bundle sheath cells. In mesophyll cells, a C_3 molecule fixes CO_2, and the result is a C_4 molecule, for which this type of photosynthesis is named. A modified form of this molecule is pumped into bundle sheath cells, where CO_2 is released to the Calvin cycle. This represents partitioning of CO_2 fixation and the Calvin cycle in space.

CAM Photosynthesis

Plants that used **CAM** photosynthesis live in hot, dry environments. At night when stomata remain open, a C_3 molecule fixes CO_2 to produce a C_4 molecule. The next day, CO_2 is released and enters the Calvin cycle within the same cells. This represents a partitioning of CO_2 fixation and the Calvin cycle in time: Carbon dioxide fixation occurs at night, and the Calvin cycle occurs during the day.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Photosynthesis produces the carbohydrates that the majority of living organisms on Earth use as a source of energy.



6.1 Photosynthesis occurs within the chloroplasts of plants and some protists.

6.2 Various pigments are required to capture solar energy during the light reactions of photosynthesis.

6.3 The Calvin cycle is the stage of photosynthesis that produces carbohydrates.

6.4 Producers have modified the photosynthesis pathway in order to adapt to a variety of environments.

For more information about the importance of the photosynthetic pathway, see the following discussions:

Figure 4.8 illustrates the structures found in a typical plant cell.
Section 20.5 examines the movements of carbohydrates and other nutrients in a plant.
Section 31.2 explores the role of photosynthetic organisms as producers in an ecosystem.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

6.1 Overview of Photosynthesis

1. The raw materials for photosynthesis are
   a. oxygen and water.
   b. oxygen and carbon dioxide.
   c. carbon dioxide and water.
   d. carbohydrates and water.
   e. carbohydrates and carbon dioxide.
2. During photosynthesis, carbon dioxide is _____ and water is _____.
   a. reduced, oxidized
   b. oxidized, reduced
   c. reduced, reduced
   d. oxidized, oxidized

6.2 The Light Reactions—Harvesting Energy

3. When electrons in the reaction center of PS I are passed to an energy-acceptor molecule, they are replaced by electrons that have been given up by
   a. oxygen.
   b. glucose.
   c. carbon dioxide.
   d. water.
4. During the light reactions of photosynthesis, ATP is produced when hydrogen ions move
   a. down a concentration gradient from the thylakoid space to the stroma.
   b. against a concentration gradient from the thylakoid space to the stroma.
   c. down a concentration gradient from the stroma to the thylakoid space.
   d. against a concentration gradient from the stroma to the thylakoid space.

5. Oxygen is generated by the
   a. light reactions.
   b. Calvin cycle.
   c. light reactions and the Calvin cycle reactions.
   d. closing of stomata.
6. The enzyme that produces ATP from ADP + (P) in the thylakoid is
   a. RuBP carboxylase.
   b. G3P.
   c. ATPase.
   d. ATP synthase.
   e. coenzyme A.

6.3 The Calvin Cycle Reactions—Making Sugars

7. Energy for the Calvin cycle is supplied by _____ from the light reactions.
   a. carbon dioxide and water
   b. ATP and NADPH
   c. carbon dioxide and ATP
   d. ATP and water
   e. electrons and hydrogen ions
8. Carbon dioxide fixation occurs when CO_2 combines with
   a. ATP.
   b. NADHP.
   c. G3P.
   d. RuBP.
9. The output of the Calvin cycle that is used to generate carbohydrates is
   a. NADPH.
   b. CO_2.
   c. G3P.
   d. RuBP.

6.4 Other Types of Photosynthesis

10. In C_4 plants, CO_2 fixation occurs
    a. by adding electrons and a hydrogen ion when splitting water in bundle sheath cells.
    b. by joining CO_2 to a C_3 molecule and pumping it into bundle sheath cells.
    c. by splitting water only in bundle sheath cells.
    d. by oxidizing a C_4 molecule with O_2 derived from bundle sheath cells.
11. A leaf of a C_4 plant differs from that of a C_3 plant because
    a. stomata cannot close.
    b. the mesophyll has no leaf spaces.
    c. bundle sheath cells are protected from leaf spaces by a ring of mesophyll cells.
    d. C_4 plant leaves are narrower to allow more O_2 to diffuse away.

ENGAGE

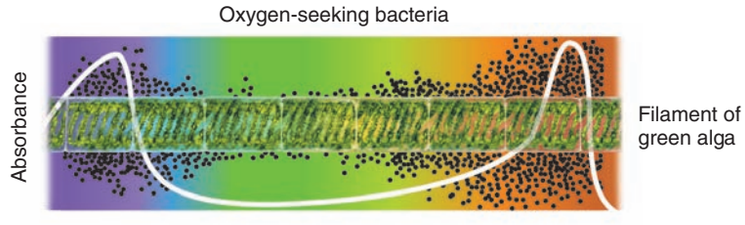
LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Photosynthesis

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. In 1882, T. W. Engelmann carried out an ingenious experiment to demonstrate that chlorophyll absorbs light in the blue and red portions of the spectrum. He placed a single filament of a green alga in a drop of water on a microscope slide. Then he passed light through a prism and onto the string of algal cells. The slide also contained aerobic bacterial cells. After some time, he peered into the microscope and saw the bacteria clustered around the regions of the algal filament that were receiving blue light and red light, as shown in the following illustration. Why do you suppose the bacterial cells were clustered in this manner?



2. Photosynthesis makes use of light in the visual range, the same range that is suitable to our vision. What explanation can you give to account for this observation?
3. Why do broad, thin leaves provide an advantage for photosynthesis?
4. How might climate change influence the distribution of C3 and C4 plants in North America?
5. The products of photosynthesis are increasingly being used to generate carbohydrates, which in turn are used to produce ethanol as a biofuel. The conversion of food crops, such as corn, into ethanol has created concerns about the reserves of food in the world. Based on your understanding of photosynthesis, what types of other plants might make a good choice for ethanol production in an increasingly warmer world?

7

Energy for Cells

OUTLINE

7.1 Cellular Respiration 111

7.2 Outside the Mitochondria: Glycolysis 113

7.3 Outside the Mitochondria: Fermentation 115

7.4 Inside the Mitochondria 117

7.5 Metabolic Fate of Food 121

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 3.2 What are the roles of carbohydrates in living organisms?

Section 4.4 What is the function of the mitochondria in a cell?

Section 5.2 Why does the ATP cycle resemble a rechargeable battery?

Metabolic Demands of Athletes

During a typical 40-minute basketball game, such as the one above involving the 2012 NBA Champion Miami Heat, the starting players run an average of 4 to 5 kilometers (about 3 miles). However, unlike the steady pace experienced by marathoners, basketball players experience periods of intense activity (sprinting), followed by brief periods of rest. This start-and-stop nature of the game means that the athletes' muscles are constantly switching between aerobic and anaerobic metabolism.

During aerobic metabolism, the muscle cells use oxygen in order to completely break down glucose and produce ATP, the energy "battery" of the cell. This process, which uses carbohydrates and produces carbon dioxide as a waste product, occurs in the cytoplasm and mitochondria of the cell. However, running short, fast sprints quickly depletes oxygen levels in the blood and drives the muscles into anaerobic metabolism. Without oxygen, the glucose cannot be completely broken down and is changed to lactate, which is responsible for the muscle "burn" we feel after intense exercise. Once oxygen is restored, usually after a brief rest, the body is able to return to aerobic metabolism. Professional athletes are conditioned to reduce the amount of time that they are in anaerobic metabolism and to maximize their aerobic metabolism.

In this chapter, we will not only examine these pathways but also explore how nutrients such as fats and proteins can be used to generate ATP for our cellular activities.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What are the differences between the aerobic and anaerobic pathways?
2. What is the role of oxygen in these pathways?
3. How are other organic nutrients, such as fats and proteins, used as energy?

7.1 Cellular Respiration

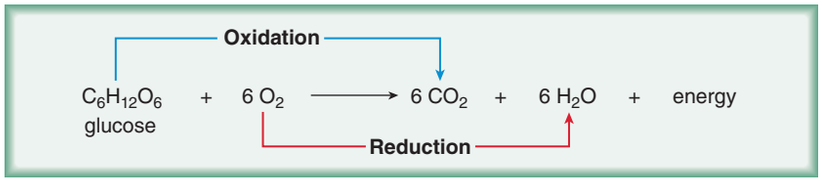
Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Define cellular respiration.
2. State the overall reaction for glucose breakdown.
3. Identify the four phases of cellular respiration and identify the location of each within the cell.

No matter what you are doing, from playing basketball to studying, ATP molecules are powering your activities at the cellular level. ATP molecules are produced during **cellular respiration,** a process that requires the participation of mitochondria. Cellular respiration is aptly named because, just as you take in oxygen (O_2) and give off carbon dioxide (CO_2) during breathing, so do the mitochondria in your cells (**Fig. 7.1**). In fact, cellular respiration, which occurs in all the cells of the body, is the reason you breathe.

Oxidation of substrates is a fundamental part of cellular respiration. Recall from Chapter 6 that oxidation represents the removal of electrons and hydrogen ions from a molecule, which are then used to reduce a second molecule, forming a redox reaction. Cellular respiration is a redox reaction. As cellular respiration occurs, glucose is oxidized to form carbon dioxide (CO_2). In the process, oxygen is reduced to form water (H_2O). In this case, this redox reaction releases energy, which is then used by the cell.



If you reverse the arrow in this equation, you will notice that cellular respiration is essentially the reverse of photosynthesis. In cellular respiration, the oxidation of carbohydrates produces energy and carbon dioxide. In photosynthesis, the reduction of carbon dioxide, using energy from the sun, produces carbohydrate.

MP3 Cellular Respiration

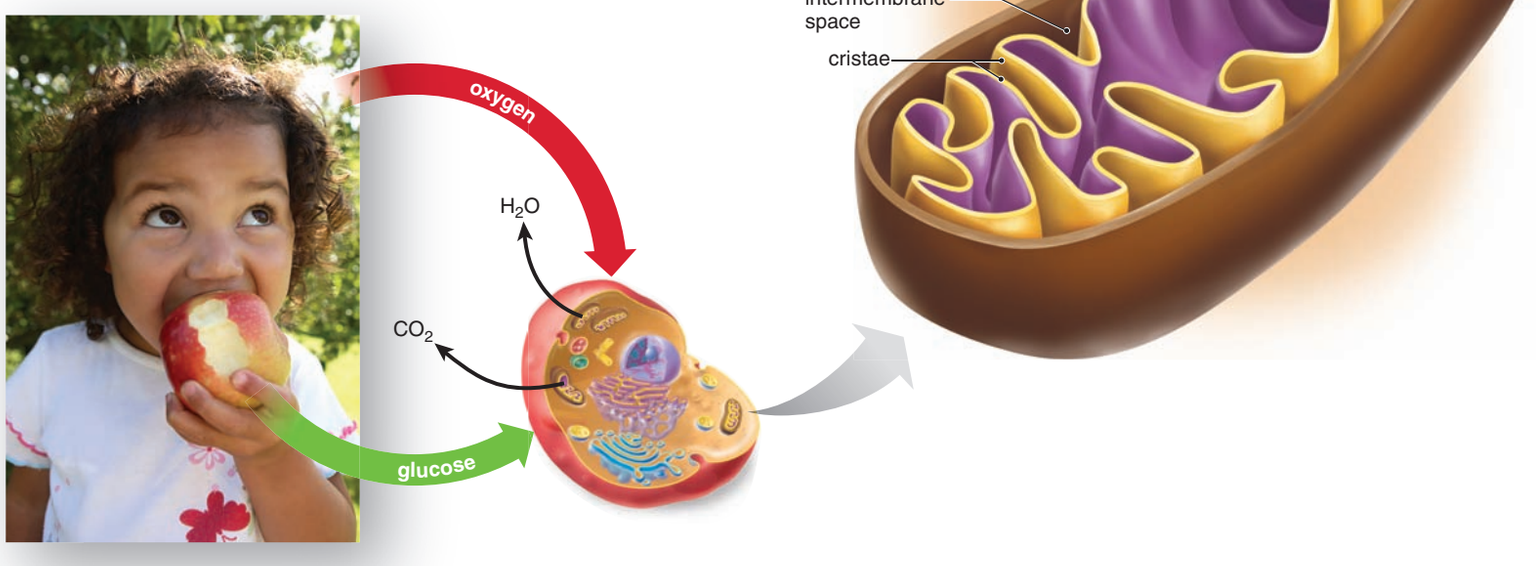


Figure 7.1 Cellular respiration.

Glucose from our food and the oxygen we breathe are requirements for cellular respiration. Carbon dioxide and water are released as by-products. The process begins in the cytoplasm but is completed in the mitochondria.

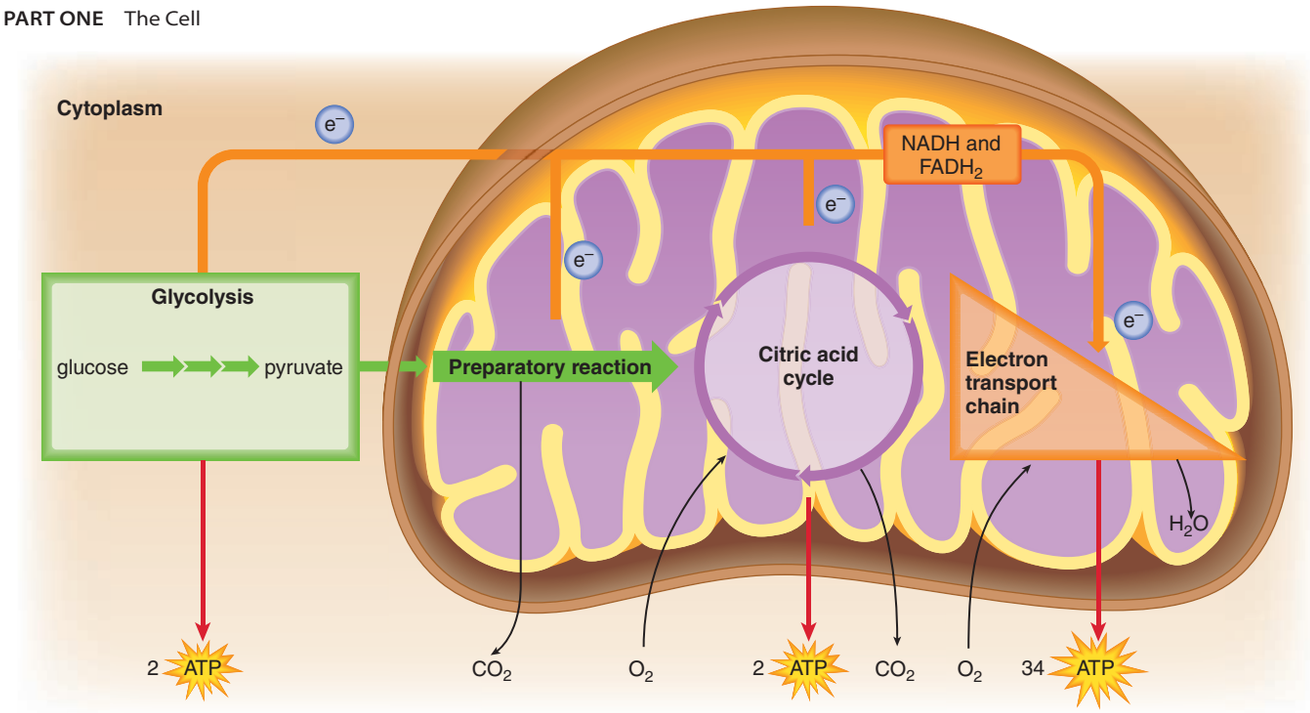


Figure 7.2 **The four phases of complete glucose breakdown.**

The enzymatic reactions of glycolysis take place in the cytoplasm. The preparatory reaction, the citric acid cycle, and the electron transport chain occur in mitochondria.

Phases of Complete Glucose Breakdown

The breakdown of glucose releases a lot of energy. However, unlike the burning of sugar on a stove, which releases most of the energy as heat, the cell controls the reactions so that the glucose molecules are broken down slowly. This allows the energy in the bonds of the glucose molecule to be more efficiently captured and used to make ATP molecules.

The enzymes that carry out oxidation during cellular respiration are assisted by nonprotein helpers called **coenzymes.** As glucose is oxidized, the coenzymes NAD^+ and FAD^+ receive hydrogen atoms ($H^+ + e^-$) and become NADH and $FADH_2$, respectively (**Fig. 7.2**).[1]

Animation How the NAD^+ Works

There are four phases to cellular respiration. During these phases, notice where CO_2 and H_2O are produced.

- **Glycolysis,** which occurs in the cytoplasm outside the mitochondria, is the breakdown of glucose to two molecules of pyruvate. Energy is invested to activate glucose, two ATP are gained, and oxidation results in NADH, which will be used later for additional ATP production.
- The **preparatory (prep) reaction** takes place in the matrix of mitochondria. Pyruvate is broken down to a 2-carbon acetyl group carried by coenzyme A (CoA). Oxidation of pyruvate results in not only NADH but also CO_2.
- The **citric acid cycle** also takes place in the matrix of mitochondria. As oxidation occurs, NADH and $FADH_2$ result and more CO_2 is released. The citric acid cycle is able to produce two ATP per glucose molecule.
- The **electron transport chain** is a series of electron carriers in the cristae of mitochondria. NADH and $FADH_2$ give up electrons to the chain. Energy is released and captured as the electrons move from a higher energy to a lower energy state. Later, this energy will be used for the production of ATP. Oxygen (O_2) is the final electron acceptor. It then combines with hydrogen ions (H^+) to produce water (H_2O).

[1]NAD = nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide; FAD = flavin adenine dinucleotide.

7.1 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**
Cellular respiration uses four steps to convert glucose into ATP.

Check Your Progress 7.1

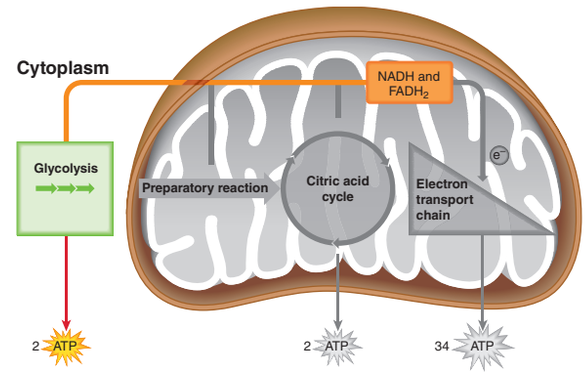
1. Explain why cellular respiration is needed by the cell.
2. Explain the similarities between the reactions for cellular respiration and photosynthesis.
3. Summarize the four stages of cellular respiration and list their locations in the cell.

7.2 Outside the Mitochondria: Glycolysis

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain the role of glycolysis in a cell.
2. Distinguish between the energy-investment and energy-harvesting steps of glycolysis.
3. Summarize how the metabolic pathway of glycolysis partially breaks down glucose.



In eukaryotes, such as plants and animals, glycolysis takes place outside the mitochondria, within the cytoplasm of the cell. During glycolysis, glucose, a 6-carbon molecule, is broken down to two molecules of pyruvate, a 3-carbon molecule. Glycolysis is divided into (1) the energy-investment step, when some ATP is used to begin the reactions, and (2) the energy-harvesting steps, when both NADH and ATP are produced. **Figure 7.3** outlines the basic steps of glycolysis, including some of the more important intermediate molecules. As you examine this figure, notice how it includes an initial investment of ATP, followed by an ATP-harvesting phase.

Animation How Glycolysis Works

Energy-Investment Step

During the energy-investment step, two ATP transfer phosphate groups to substrates, and two ADP + Ⓟ result. Why does this happen? Much the way your car battery starts the engine, the transfer of phosphates activates the substrates, so that they can undergo the energy-harvesting reactions.

3PG	3-phosphoglycerate
BPG	1,3-bisphosphoglycerate
G3P	glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate

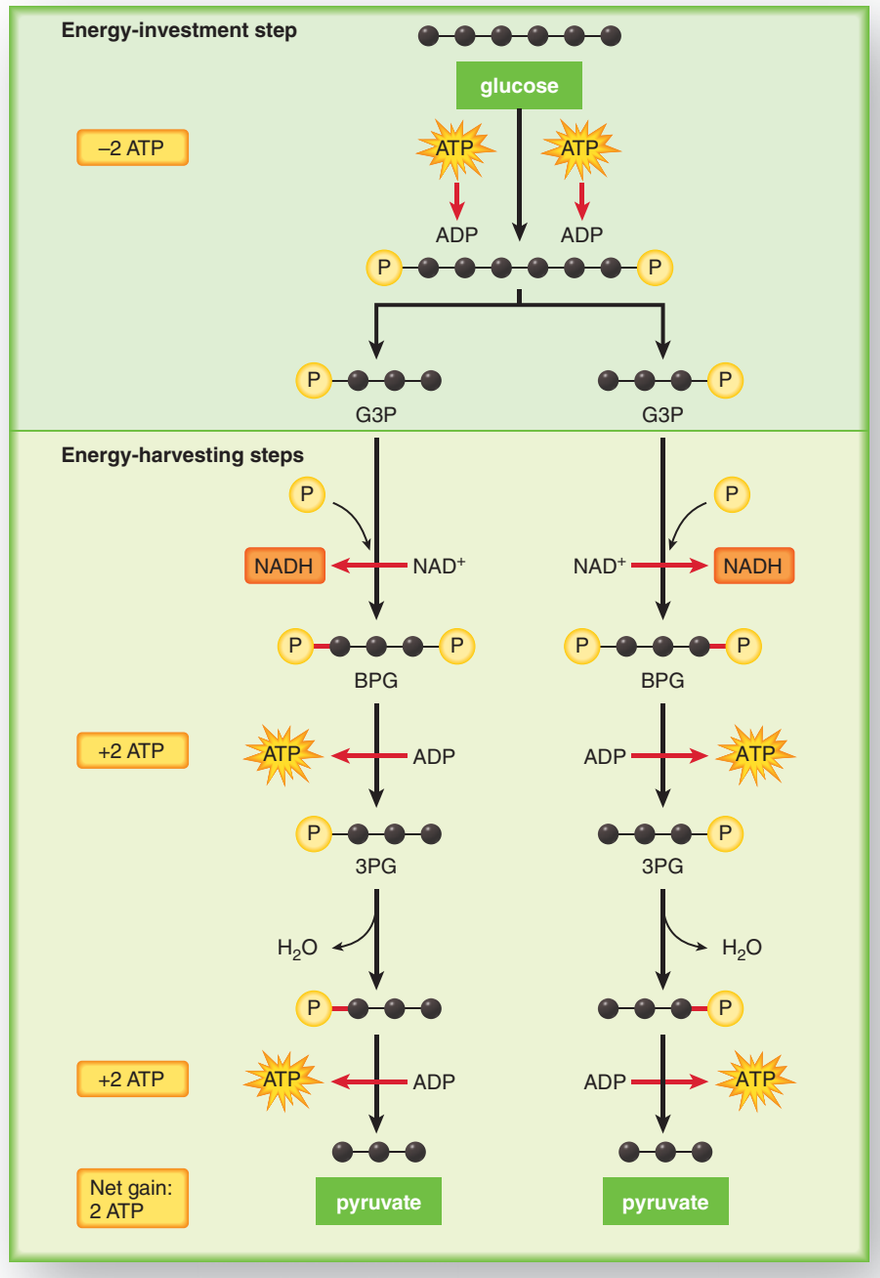


Figure 7.3 Glycolysis.

This metabolic pathway begins with a 6-carbon glucose and ends with two 3-carbon pyruvate molecules. A net gain of two ATP can be calculated by subtracting those expended during the energy-investment step from those produced during the energy-harvesting steps. Each ● is a carbon atom (C).

Energy-Harvesting Steps

During the energy-harvesting steps, electrons and hydrogen ions are removed from the substrates and captured by NAD^+, producing two NADH.

As the reactions proceed, the energized phosphate groups on the intermediates are used to synthesize four ATP. This is accomplished by a process called substrate-level ATP synthesis (**Fig. 7.4**), which basically involves a transfer of a phosphate group from the intermediate molecule (such as BPG) to ADP, thus forming ATP.

What is the net gain of ATP from glycolysis? Notice in Figure 7.3 that 2 ATP are used to get started, and 4 ATP are produced. Therefore, there is a net gain of 2 ATP from glycolysis.

How the reactions proceed from here is determined by whether oxygen is present. If oxygen is available (Section 7.4), pyruvate, the end product of glycolysis, enters the aerobic reactions within mitochondria, where it is used to generate more ATP. If oxygen is not available (Section 7.3), pyruvate enters the anaerobic fermentation pathways. In humans, if oxygen is not available, pyruvate is reduced to lactate (see the chapter opener). Since the anaerobic pathways also occur in the cytoplasm, we will follow them first.

Glycolysis	
Inputs	**Outputs**
glucose	2 pyruvate
2 NAD^+	2 NADH
2 ATP	2 ADP
4 ADP + 4 P	4 ATP
	2 ATP net

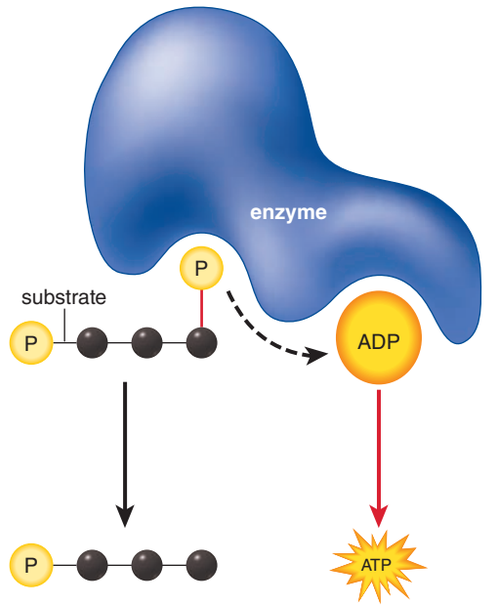


Figure 7.4 **Substrate-level ATP synthesis.**

At an enzyme's active site, ADP acquires an energized phosphate group from a substrate of a metabolic pathway, and ATP results. The net gain of two ATP from glycolysis is the result of substrate-level ATP synthesis.

7.2 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

Glycolysis, the first stage of cellular respiration, occurs within the cytoplasm of the cell.

Check Your Progress 7.2

1. Explain how glycolysis relates to the other reactions, both aerobic and anaerobic, of cellular respiration.
2. Contrast the energy-investment step of glycolysis with the energy-harvesting steps.
3. Summarize the net yield of ATP per glucose molecule as a result of glycolysis.

7.3 Outside the Mitochondria: Fermentation

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain why fermentation pathways are beneficial when oxygen is not available.
2. Give examples of products made by fermenting yeast and bacteria.

As you have learned, oxygen is required for the complete breakdown of glucose. But what happens when oxygen is not available and the complete breakdown of glucose is not possible? **Fermentation,** which is the anaerobic breakdown of glucose, resulting in the production of two ATP per glucose, ensures that ATP is available for cellular processes (**Fig. 7.5**).

During fermentation in animal cells, the pyruvate formed by glycolysis accepts two hydrogen atoms and is reduced to lactate. Notice in Figure 7.5 that two NADH pass hydrogen atoms to pyruvate, reducing it. Why is it beneficial for pyruvate to be reduced to lactate when oxygen is not available? The answer is that this reaction regenerates NAD^+, which can then pick up more electrons during the earlier reactions of glycolysis. This keeps glycolysis going, during which ATP is produced by substrate-level ATP synthesis. The inputs and outputs of fermentation are as follows.

Fermentation	
Inputs	**Outputs**
glucose	2 lactate or 2 alcohol and 2 CO_2
2 ATP	2 ADP
4 ADP + 4 P	4 ATP
	2 ATP net

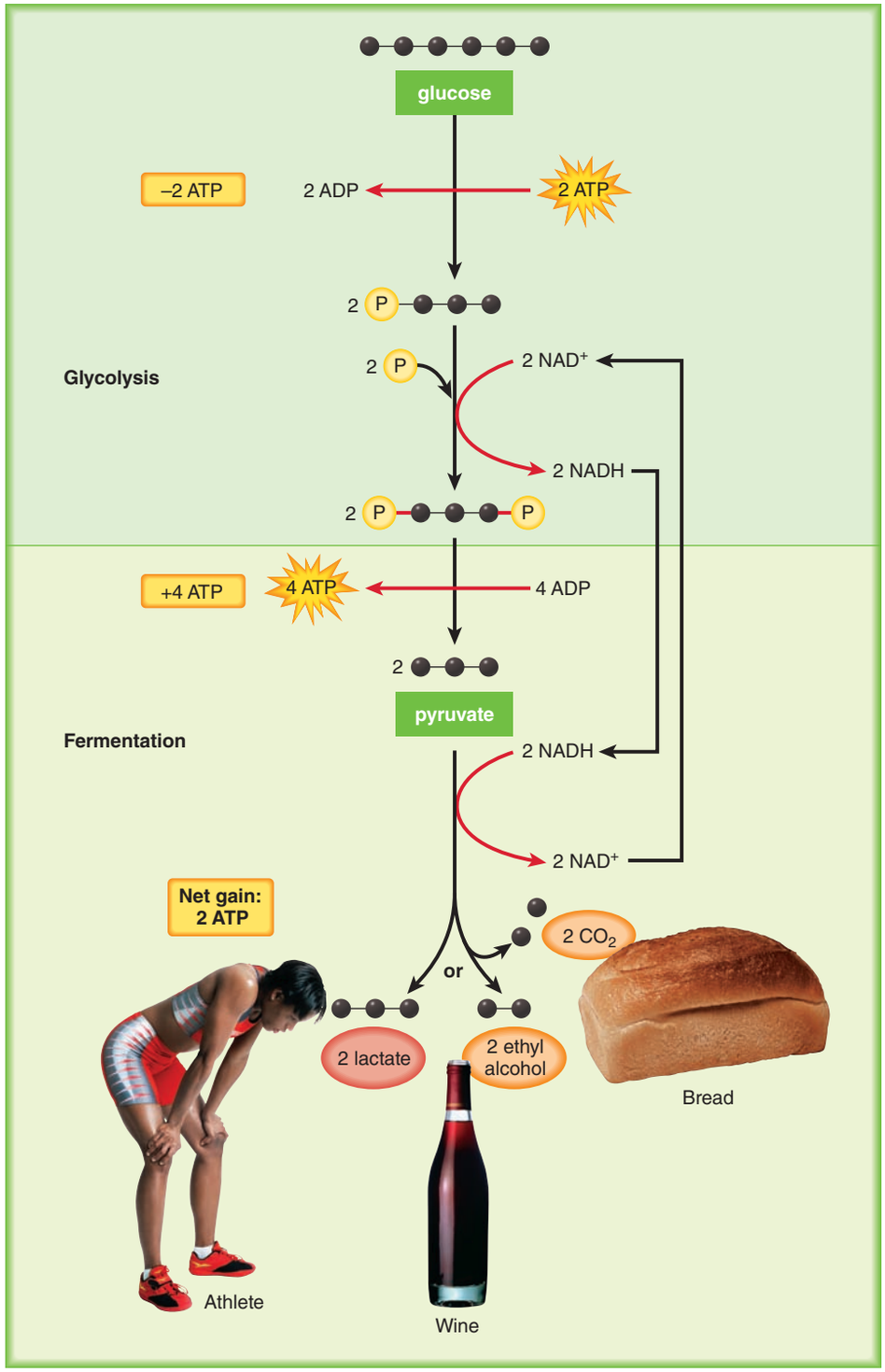
The two ATP produced by fermentation represent only a small fraction of the potential energy stored in a glucose molecule. Following fermentation, most of this potential energy is still waiting to be released. Despite its low yield of only two ATP, fermentation is essential. They can provide a rapid burst of ATP, and muscle cells are more apt than other cells to carry on fermentation. When our muscles are working vigorously over a short period of time, as when we run, fermentation is a way to produce ATP even though oxygen is temporarily in limited supply.

When we stop running, our bodies are in *oxygen deficit,* as signified by the fact that we continue to breathe very heavily for a time. Recovery is complete when enough oxygen is present to completely break down glucose. Blood carries away the lactate formed in muscles and transports it to the liver, where it is reconverted to pyruvate. Some of the pyruvate is oxidized completely, and the rest is converted back to glucose.

Connections: Health

Does lactic acid cause soreness in your muscles after exercise?

While the accumulation of lactic acid in muscles does cause the "burn" you may feel after prolonged exercise, it does not usually cause long-term muscle soreness. Instead, the tenderness that occurs a day or two after intense exercise is probably being caused by the anti-inflammatory components of the immune system responding to damage to the muscle tissues.



Microorganisms and Fermentation

Bacteria use fermentation to produce an organic acid, such as lactate, or an alcohol and CO_2, depending on the type of bacterium (Fig. 7.5).

Yeasts (a type of fungi) are good examples of microorganisms that generate ethyl alcohol and CO_2 when they carry out fermentation. When yeasts are used to leaven bread, the CO_2 makes the bread rise. When yeasts are used to ferment grapes for wine production or to ferment wort—derived from barley—for beer production, ethyl alcohol is the desired product. However, the yeasts are killed by the very product they produce.

Figure 7.5 **Fermentation.**

Fermentation consists of glycolysis followed by a reduction of pyruvate by NADH. This regenerates NAD^+, which returns to the glycolytic pathway to pick up more hydrogen atoms.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

When oxygen is absent, cells use fermentation to regenerate NAD^+.

Check Your Progress 7.3

1. Explain the difference between aerobic respiration and anaerobic fermentation.
2. Explain why fermentation is needed when oxygen is not present.
3. Identify the products of fermentation by humans and yeasts.

7.4 Inside the Mitochondria

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Identify the role of the preparatory reaction and the citric acid cycle in the breakdown of glucose.
2. Detail how the electron transport chain produces most of the ATP during cellular respiration.
3. Identify the inputs and outputs of each pathway of aerobic cellular respiration.
4. Explain the role of oxygen in cellular respiration.

If oxygen is present following glycolysis, the cell will enter the aerobic phases of cellular respiration. These reactions all occur inside the mitochondria (**Fig. 7.6**).

Preparatory Reaction

Occurring in the matrix, the preparatory (prep) reaction is so named because it produces a substrate that can enter the citric acid cycle. Recall that glycolysis produces two pyruvate molecules (see Fig. 7.3); thus, the preparatory reaction occurs twice per glucose molecule. During the preparatory reactions,

- Pyruvate is oxidized, and a CO_2 molecule is given off. This is part of the CO_2 we breathe out.
- NAD^+ accepts electrons and hydrogen ions, forming NADH.
- The product, a 2-carbon acetyl group, is attached to coenzyme A (CoA), forming **acetyl-CoA.**

Therefore,

- Per glucose molecule, the outputs are two CO_2, two NADH, and two acetyl-CoA.

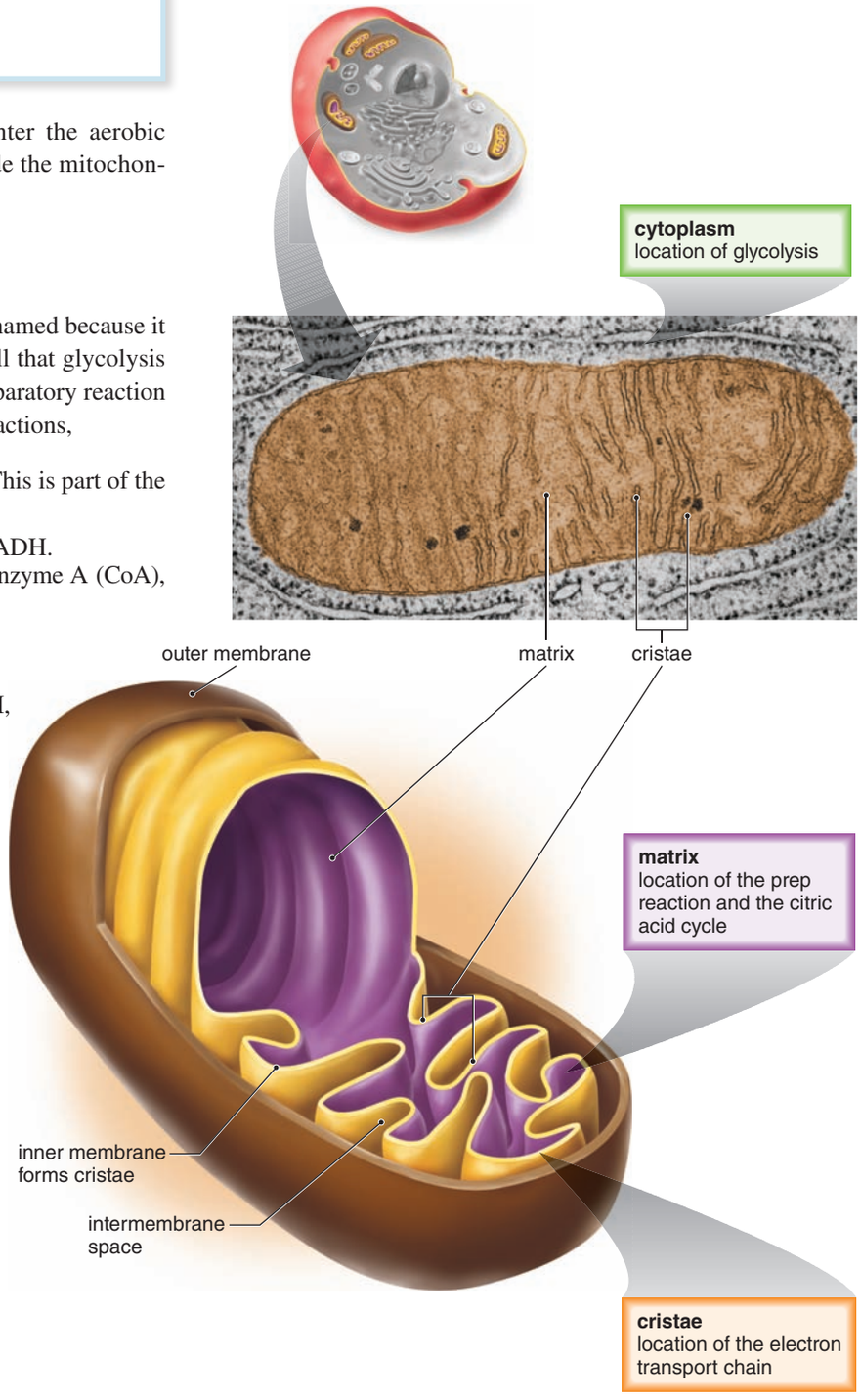


Figure 7.6 **Mitochondrion structure and function.**

A mitochondrion is bounded by a double membrane. The inner membrane folds inward to form the shelflike cristae. Glycolysis takes place in the cytoplasm outside the mitochondrion. The preparatory reaction and the citric acid cycle occur within the mitochondrial matrix. The electron transport chain is located on the cristae of a mitochondrion.

The Citric Acid Cycle

The citric acid cycle is a cyclical metabolic pathway located in the matrix of mitochondria (**Fig. 7.7**). It was originally called the *Krebs cycle* to honor the scientist who first studied it. At the start of the citric acid cycle, the 2-carbon acetyl group carried by CoA joins with a 4-carbon molecule, producing a 6-carbon citrate molecule. The CoA returns to the preparatory reaction to be used again.

Animation How the Krebs Cycle Works

During the citric acid cycle,

- The acetyl group is oxidized, in the process forming CO_2.
- Both NAD^+ and FAD accept electrons and hydrogen ions, resulting in NADH and $FADH_2$.
- Substrate-level ATP synthesis occurs (see Fig. 7.4), and an ATP results.

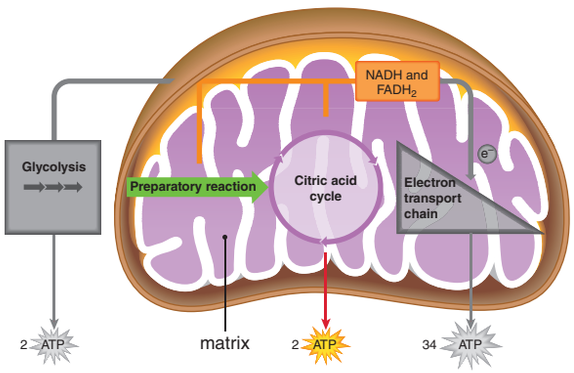
Because the citric acid cycle turns twice for each original glucose, the inputs and outputs of the citric acid cycle per glucose are as follows:

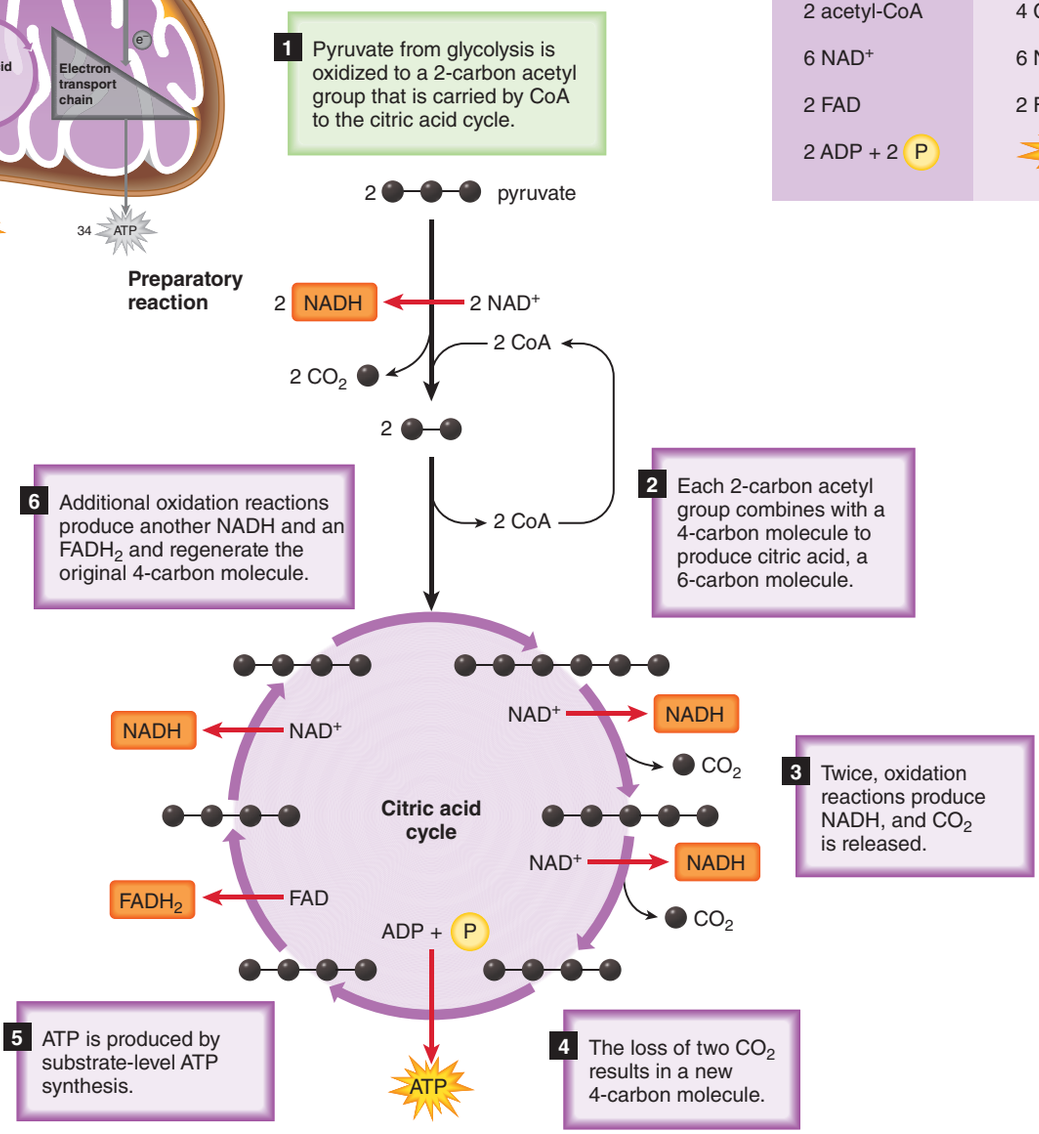
3D Animation Cellular Respiration: Citric Acid Cycle

Citric acid cycle	
Inputs	**Outputs**
2 acetyl-CoA	4 CO_2
6 NAD^+	6 NADH
2 FAD	2 $FADH_2$
2 ADP + 2 P	2 ATP

Figure 7.7 The preparatory reaction and the citric acid cycle.

Each acetyl-CoA from the preparatory reaction enters the citric acid cycle. The net result of one turn of this cycle of reactions is the oxidation of the acetyl group to two CO_2 and the formation of three NADH and one $FADH_2$. Substrate-level ATP synthesis occurs, and the result is one ATP. For each glucose, the citric acid cycle turns twice, doubling each of these amounts.





The Electron Transport Chain

The electron transport chain located in the cristae of mitochondria is a series of carriers that pass electrons from one to the other. NADH and $FADH_2$ deliver electrons to the chain. Consider that the hydrogen atoms attached to NADH and $FADH_2$ consist of an electron (e^-) and a hydrogen ion (H^+). The carriers of the electron transport chain accept only e^- and not H^+.

In **Figure 7.8,** notice that high-energy electrons are being transferred by NADH and $FADH_2$ from glycolysis, the preparatory reactions, and the citric acid cycle. The electron transport chain is a series of redox reactions that remove the high-energy electrons from NADH and $FADH_2$. As these reactions occur, energy is released and captured for ATP production. The final acceptor of electrons is oxygen (O_2). Your breathing provides the O_2 for cellular respiration. Overall, the role of oxygen in cellular respiration is to act as the final acceptor of electrons in the electron transport chain. Why can oxygen play this role? Because oxygen attracts electrons to a greater degree than the carriers of the chain. Once oxygen accepts electrons, it combines with H^+ to form a water molecule, which is one of the end products of cellular respiration (see the equation on page 111).

When each NADH delivers electrons to the first carrier of the electron transport chain, enough energy has been captured by the time the electrons are received by O_2 to permit the production of three ATP molecules. When each $FADH_2$ delivers electrons to the electron transport chain, only two ATP are produced.

Once NADH has delivered electrons to the electron transport chain, NAD^+ is regenerated and can be used again. In the same manner, FAD is regenerated and can be used again. The recycling of coenzymes, and for that matter ADP, increases cellular efficiency, since it does away with the need to synthesize NAD^+, FAD, and ADP anew.

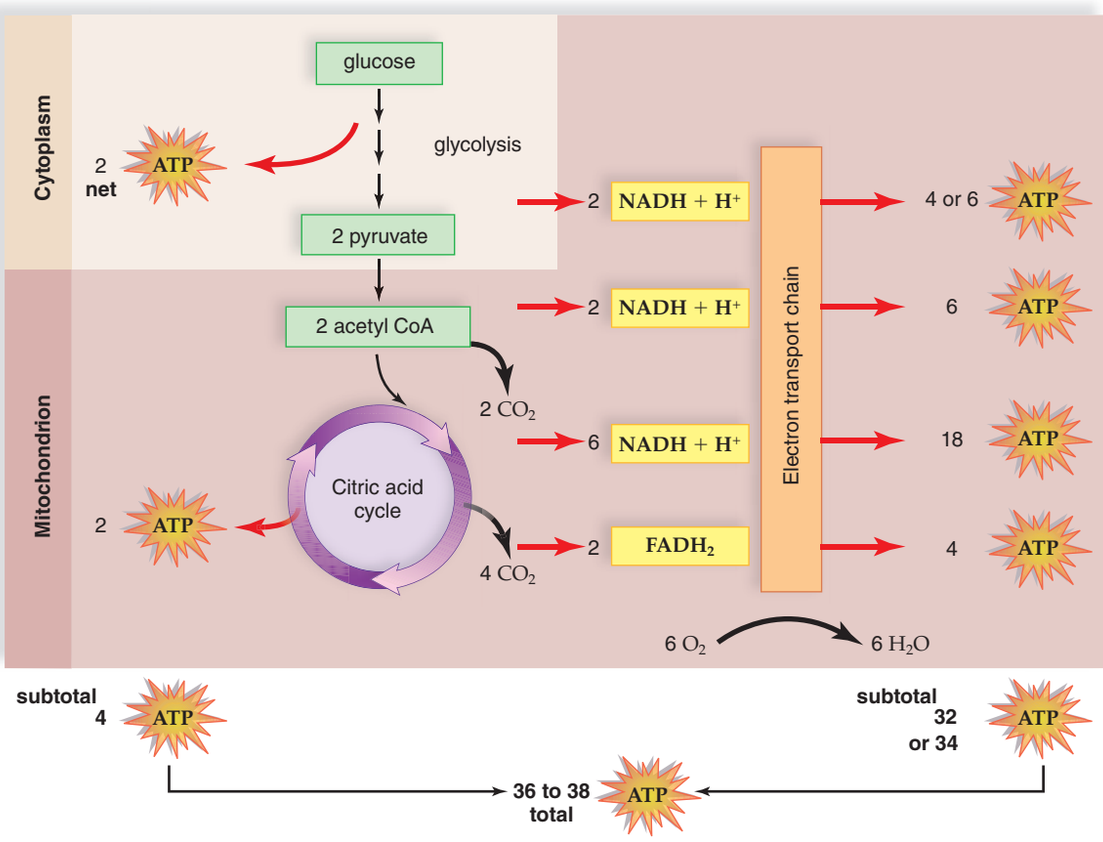


Figure 7.8 The electron transport chain.

An electron transport chain receives NADH and $FADH_2$, each carrying high-energy electrons, from glycolysis, the preparatory reactions, and the citric acid cycle. The majority of ATP production occurs in the electron transport chain.

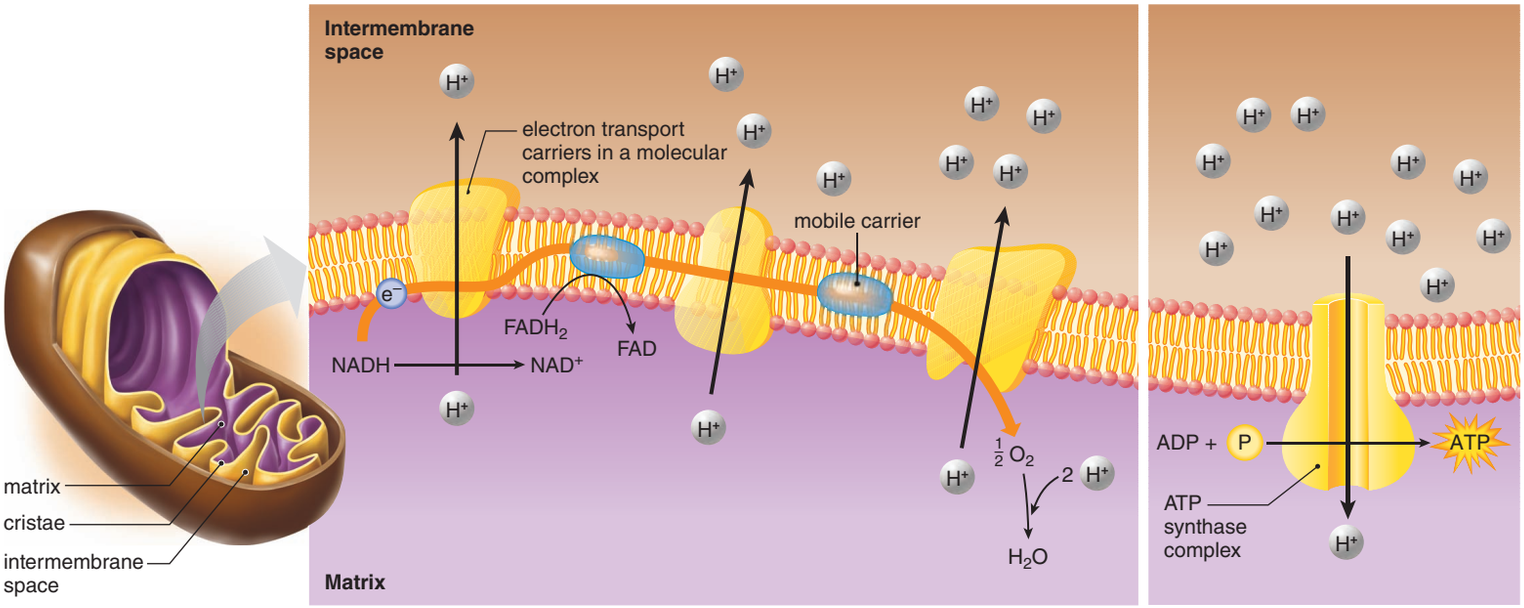


Figure 7.9 **The organization of cristae.**

Molecular complexes that contain the electron transport carriers are located in the cristae, as are ATP synthase complexes. **a.** As electrons move from one carrier to the other, hydrogen ions (H^+) are pumped from the matrix into the intermembrane space. **b.** As hydrogen ions flow back down a concentration gradient through an ATP synthase complex, ATP is synthesized by the enzyme ATP synthase.

Connections: Health

Why is carbon monoxide so dangerous?

Carbon monoxide (CO) is a colorless, odorless gas that is produced by the incomplete burning of organic material, such as fossil fuels and wood. Carbon monoxide binds more strongly than oxygen to the hemoglobin in your red blood cells. When this happens, the red blood cells cannot transport adequate oxygen to the mitochondria of your cells, and ATP production shuts down. Over 400 people die annually in the United States due to carbon monoxide poisoning. For a list of ways to prevent CO poisoning, visit the CDC website at http://www.cdc.gov/co/default.htm.

Check Your Progress 7.4

1. Summarize the roles of the preparatory reactions, citric acid cycle, and electron transport chain in cellular respiration.
2. Explain how oxygen is used in cellular respiration.
3. List the inputs and outputs of the preparatory reactions, citric acid cycle, and electron transport chain.

Generating ATP

The electron transport chain is a series of electron carriers (mostly proteins) located within the inner mitochondrial membrane. ATP synthesis is carried out by ATP synthase complexes, also located in this membrane (**Fig. 7.9**).

The carriers of the electron transport chain accept electrons from NADH or $FADH_2$ and then pass them from one to the other by way of two additional mobile carriers (orange arrow in Fig. 7.9). What happens to the hydrogen ions (H^+) carried by NADH and $FADH_2$? The complexes use the energy released by oxidation reduction to pump H^+ from the mitochondrial matrix into the intermembrane space located between the outer and inner membranes of a mitochondrion. The pumping of H^+ into the intermembrane space establishes an unequal distribution of H^+; in other words, there are many H^+ in the intermembrane space but few in the matrix of a mitochondrion.

Animation Proton Pump

Just as in photosynthesis, the H^+ gradient contains a large amount of stored energy that can be used to drive forward ATP synthesis. The cristae of mitochondria (like the thylakoid membrane of chloroplasts) contain an *ATP synthase complex* that allows H^+ to return to the matrix. The flow of H^+ through the ATP synthase complex brings about a conformational change, which causes the enzyme ATP synthase to synthesize ATP from ADP + Ⓟ. ATP leaves the matrix by way of a channel protein. This ATP remains in the cell and is used for cellular work.

Animation Electron Transport System and ATP Synthesis

3D Animation Cellular Respiration: Electron Transport Chain

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

7.4 If oxygen is present, cells will use the aerobic pathways within the mitochondria to generate ATP.

7.5 Metabolic Fate of Food

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Calculate the amount of ATP produced by each glucose molecule entering cellular respiration.
2. Recognize how alternate metabolic pathways allow proteins and fats to be used for ATP production.

Energy Yield from Glucose Metabolism

How much ATP is actually produced per glucose? **Figure 7.10** calculates the potential ATP yield for the complete breakdown of glucose to CO_2 and H_2O. Per glucose, there is a net gain of two ATP from glycolysis, which takes place in the cytoplasm. The citric acid cycle, which occurs in the matrix of mitochondria, accounts for two ATP per glucose. This means that a total of four ATP form due to substrate-level ATP synthesis outside the electron transport chain.

Most of the ATP produced comes from the electron transport chain and the ATP synthase complex. Per glucose, 10 NADH and 2 $FADH_2$ take electrons from glycolysis and the citric acid cycle to the electron transport chain. The maximum number of ATP produced by the chain is therefore 34 ATP, and the maximum number produced by both the chain and substrate-level ATP synthesis is 38. However, not all cells produce the maximum yield. Metabolic differences cause some cells to produce 36 or fewer ATP. Still, a yield of 36–38 ATP represents about 40% of the energy that was initially available in the glucose molecule. The rest of the energy is lost in the form of heat.

Phase	NADH	$FADH_2$	ATP Yield
Glycolysis	2	–	2
Prep reaction	2	–	–
Citric acid cycle	6	2	2
Electron transport chain	10 → 30	2 → 4	
Total ATP			38

Figure 7.10 **Calculating ATP energy yield per glucose molecule.**

Substrate-level ATP synthesis during glycolysis and the citric acid cycle accounts for 4 ATP. The electron transport chain produces a maximum of 34 ATP, and the maximum total is 38 ATP. Some cells, however, produce only 36 ATP per glucose, or even less.

Alternative Metabolic Pathways

You probably know that you can obtain energy from foods other than carbohydrates. For example, your body has the means of obtaining a meal of pepperoni pizza (**Fig. 7.11**), not all of which is carbohydrates. Let's start with the fats in the cheese and meat. When a fat is used as an energy source, it breaks down to glycerol and three fatty acid chains (see Fig. 3.11). Because glycerol is a carbohydrate, it enters the process of cellular respiration during glycolysis. Fatty acids can be metabolized to acetyl groups, which enter the citric acid cycle. A fatty acid with a chain of 18 carbons can make three times the number of acetyl groups that glucose does. For this reason, fats are an efficient form of stored energy. The complete breakdown of glycerol and fatty acids results in many more ATP per fat molecule than does the breakdown of glucose.

So how about the proteins in the pepperoni? Only the hydrocarbon backbone of amino acids can be used by the cellular respiration pathways. The amino group becomes ammonia (NH_3), which becomes part of urea, the primary excretory product of humans. Just where the hydrocarbon backbone from an amino acid begins degradation to produce ATP depends on its length. Figure 7.11 shows that the hydrocarbon backbone from an amino acid can enter cellular respiration pathways at pyruvate, at acetyl-CoA, or during the citric acid cycle.

The smaller molecules in Figure 7.11 can also be used to synthesize larger molecules. In such instances, ATP is used instead of generated. For example, some substrates of the citric acid cycle can become amino acids through the addition of an amino group, and these amino acids can be employed to

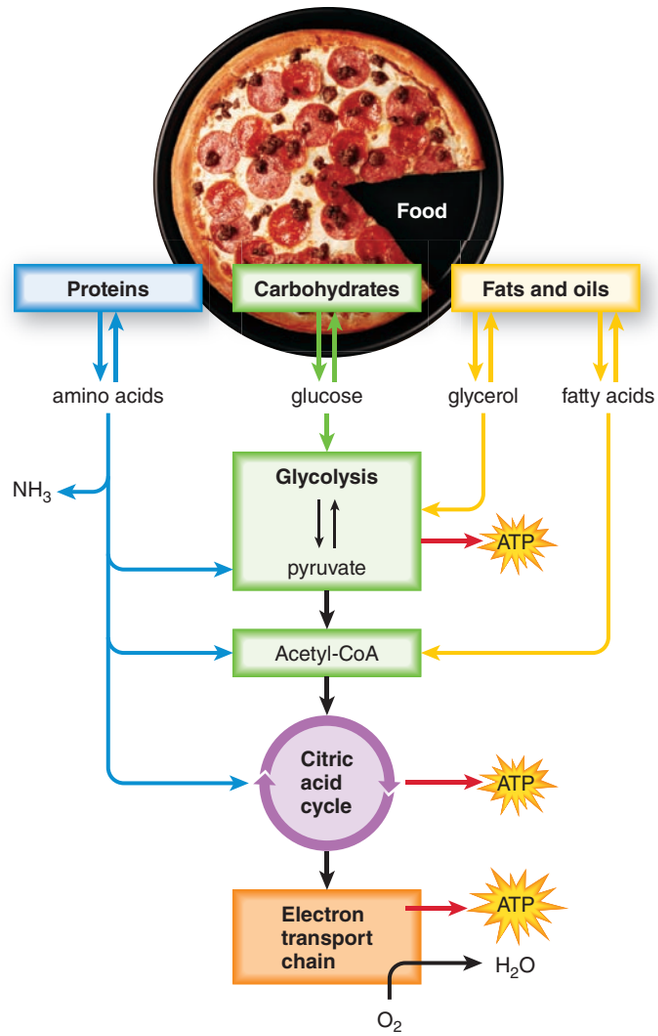


Figure 7.11 **Alternative metabolic pathways.**

The carbohydrates, proteins, and fats in a pizza can be used to generate ATP.

synthesize proteins. Similarly, substrates from glycolysis can become glycerol, and acetyl groups can be used to produce fatty acids. When glycerol and three fatty acids join, the result is a molecule of fat (triglyceride). This explains why you can gain weight from eating carbohydrate-rich foods.

Connections: Health

What is chromium?

Chromium is a trace mineral found naturally in many vegetables. Most commonly, people are familiar with chromium as a component of over-the-counter "fat-burning" medications. Chromium is known to have an influence on the activity of insulin, allowing the body to use carbohydrates and fats more efficiently as energy sources. However, most people are not deficient in chromium, and scientific studies have not shown a conclusive link between increased levels of chromium and weight loss. While chromium supplements are sometimes prescribed to treat some medical conditions, such as type 2 diabetes, it is important to note that the FDA does not regulate dietary supplements.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

7.5 Nutrients, such as fats and proteins, may be used by the cellular respiration pathways.

Check Your Progress 7.5

1. Summarize the amount of ATP produced during cellular respiration in the presence of oxygen.
2. Explain why fats produce more ATP than a glucose molecule.
3. Explain how cells use proteins for energy.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations

7.1 How the NAD^+ Works
7.2 How Glycolysis Works
7.4 How the Krebs Cycle Works • Proton Pump • Electron Transport System and ATP Synthesis

MP3 Files

7.1 Cellular Respiration

3D Animation
Cellular Respiration

For an interactive exploration of the processes involved in cellular respiration, take a moment to review McGraw-Hill's 3D animation "Cellular Respiration."

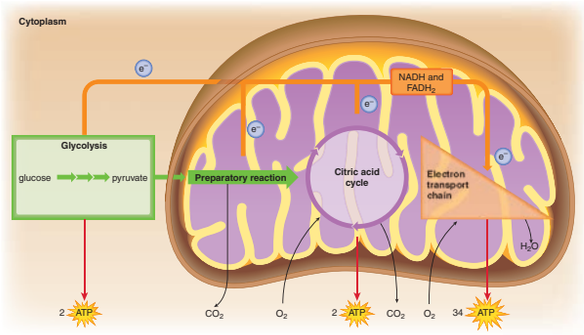
SUMMARIZE

7.1 Cellular Respiration

Cellular respiration produces ATP from molecules such as glucose. During cellular respiration, glucose is oxidized to CO_2, which we exhale. Oxygen (O_2), which we breathe in, is reduced to H_2O. When glucose is oxidized, energy is released. The following equation gives an overview of these events:

$$\underset{\text{glucose}}{C_6H_{12}O_6} + 6\,O_2 \longrightarrow 6\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O + \text{ATP}$$

Coenzymes, such as NAD^+ and FAD^+, assist with the process. Cellular respiration consists of a series of reactions (glycolysis, preparatory reactions, citric acid cycle, and electron transport chain) that capture the energy of oxidation and use it to produce ATP molecules.



7.2 Outside the Mitochondria: Glycolysis

Glycolysis, the breakdown of glucose to two molecules of pyruvate, is a series of enzymatic reactions that occur in the cytoplasm. During glycolysis,

- Glucose is oxidized by the removal of hydrogen ions (H^+) and electrons (e^-).
- When NAD^+ accepts electrons, NADH results.

Breakdown releases enough energy to immediately give a net gain of 2 ATP by substrate-level ATP synthesis. Following glycolysis, if oxygen is available, pyruvate from glycolysis enters a mitochondrion. If oxygen is absent, pyruvate enters the fermentation pathways.

7.3 Outside the Mitochondria: Fermentation

Fermentation involves glycolysis followed by the reduction of pyruvate by NADH, either to lactate or to alcohol and CO_2. The reduction of pyruvate regenerates NAD^+, which can accept more hydrogen atoms during glycolysis.

- Although fermentation results in only two ATP, it still provides a quick burst of ATP energy for short-term, strenuous muscular activity.
- The accumulation of lactate puts an individual in oxygen deficit, which is the amount of oxygen needed when lactate is completely metabolized to CO_2 and H_2O.

7.4 Inside the Mitochondria

In the presence of oxygen, the aerobic reactions of cellular respiration occur.

Preparatory Reaction

During the preparatory reaction in the matrix, pyruvate is oxidized, releasing CO_2.

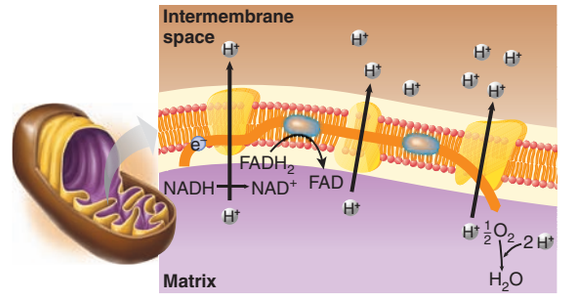
- NAD^+ accepts hydrogen ions and electrons, forming NADH.
- An acetyl group, the end product, combines with CoA, forming **acetyl-CoA.**
- This reaction takes place twice per glucose.

The Citric Acid Cycle

Acetyl groups enter the citric acid cycle, a series of reactions occurring in the mitochondrial matrix. During one turn of the cycle, oxidation results in two CO_2, three NADH, and one $FADH_2$. One turn also produces one ATP. There are two turns of the cycle per glucose.

The Electron Transport Chain

The final stage of cellular respiration involves the electron transport chain located in the cristae of the mitochondria. The chain is a series of electron carriers that accept high-energy electrons (e^-) from NADH and $FADH_2$ and pass electrons along until they are finally low-energy electrons received by oxygen, which combines with H^+ to produce water.



The carriers of the electron transport chain are located in molecular complexes on the cristae of mitochondria. These carriers capture energy from the passage of electrons and use it to pump H^+ into the intermembrane space of the mitochondrion. When H^+ flows down its gradient into the matrix through ATP synthase complexes, energy is released and used to form ATP molecules from ADP and (P).

7.5 Metabolic Fate of Food

Energy Yield from Glucose Metabolism

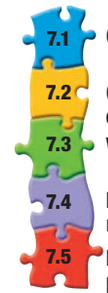
Of the maximum 38 ATP formed by complete glucose breakdown, 4 are the result of substrate-level ATP synthesis, and the rest are produced as a result of the electron transport chain and ATP synthase.

Alternative Metabolic Pathways

Besides carbohydrates, glycerol and fatty acids from fats and amino acids from proteins can undergo cellular respiration by entering glycolysis and/or the citric acid cycle. These metabolic pathways also provide substrates for the synthesis of fats and proteins.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Cellular respiration converts food into ATP, the universal energy required by all living organisms. Our understanding of ATP is important in managing our weight and other health issues.



7.1 Cellular respiration uses four steps to convert glucose into ATP.

7.2 Glycolysis, the first stage of cellular respiration, occurs within the cytoplasm of the cell.

7.3 When oxygen is absent, cells will use the fermentation pathway.

7.4 If oxygen is present, cells will use the aerobic pathways within the mitochondria to generate ATP.

7.5 Nutrients, such as fats and proteins, may be used by the cellular respiration pathways.

For more information about the importance of cellular respiration, see the following discussions:

Section 3.2 examines the role of carbohydrates as energy molecules.
Section 4.4 explores the structure of the mitochondria.
Section 18.3 examines the biology of yeasts and other fungi.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

7.1 Cellular Respiration

1. During cellular respiration, _____ is oxidized and _____ is reduced.
   a. glucose, oxygen
   b. glucose, water
   c. oxygen, water
   d. water, oxygen
   e. oxygen, carbon dioxide
2. Cellular respiration requires _____, and _____ are produced.
   a. water and carbon dioxide, oxygen and glucose
   b. oxygen and carbon dioxide, glucose and water
   c. oxygen and glucose, carbon dioxide and water
   d. water and glucose, oxygen and carbon dioxide
   e. ATP and glucose, oxygen and water

7.2 Outside the Mitochondria: Glycolysis

3. During the energy-investment step of glycolysis, which of the following is consumed?
   a. ATP
   b. NADH
   c. ADP + Ⓟ
   d. NAD^+
4. Which of the following is not true?
   a. Glycolysis can occur anaerobically.
   b. Glycolysis results in the production of pyruvate.
   c. Glycolysis can occur in the cytoplasm of the cell or the mitochondria.
   d. Glycolysis makes a net amount of two ATP.

7.3 Outside the Mitochondria: Fermentation

5. When animals carry out fermentation, they produce _____, while yeasts produce _____.
   a. lactate, NADH
   b. lactate, ethyl alcohol and CO_2
   c. NADH, ethyl alcohol and CO_2
   d. $FADH_2$, lactate
   e. ethyl alcohol and CO_2, lactate
6. Fermentation does not yield as much ATP as cellular respiration does because fermentation
   a. generates mostly heat.
   b. makes use of only a small amount of the potential energy in glucose.
   c. creates by-products that require large amounts of ATP to break down.
   d. creates ATP molecules that leak into the cytoplasm and are broken down.

7.4 Inside the Mitochondria

7. The citric acid cycle results in the release of
   a. carbon dioxide.
   b. pyruvate.
   c. oxygen.
   d. water.
8. Which of the following reactions occur in the matrix of the mitochondria?
   a. glycolysis and the preparatory reaction
   b. the preparatory reaction and the citric acid cycle
   c. the citric acid cycle and the electron transport chain
   d. the electron transport chain and glycolysis
9. The final electron acceptor in the electron transport chain is
   a. NADH.
   b. $FADH_2$.
   c. oxygen.
   d. water.
10. The citric acid cycle produces _____ ATP molecule(s) per glucose:
    a. 1
    b. 2
    c. 4
    d. 16
11. NAD^+ and FAD^+ act as _____ carriers in cellular respiration.
    a. oxygen
    b. carbon dioxide
    c. electron
    d. carbon
12. The preparatory reactions covert _____ to _____ for use in the citric acid cycle.
    a. glucose; ATP
    b. ATP; carbon dioxide
    c. pyruvate; acetyl-CoA
    d. NADH: NAD+

7.5 Metabolic Fate of Food

13. Which of the following do not enter the cellular respiration pathways?
    a. fats
    b. amino acids
    c. nucleic acids
    d. carbohydrates
14. The metabolic process that produces the most ATP molecules is
    a. glycolysis.
    b. the citric acid cycle.
    c. the electron transport chain.
    d. fermentation.
15. Under optimal conditions, how many ATP may be produced per molecule of glucose?
    a. 2
    b. 32
    c. 20
    d. 38

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Cellular Respiration

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. The compound malonate, a substrate of the citric acid cycle, can be poisonous at high concentrations because it can block cellular respiration. How might a substrate of the citric acid cycle block respiration when it is present in great excess?
2. Insulin resistance can lead to diabetes. Insulin normally causes cells to take in glucose from the blood, but insulin resistance causes cells to fail to respond properly to this signal. The pancreas then compensates by secreting even more insulin into the body. Researchers have found a connection among a high-fat diet, decreased mitochondrial function, and insulin resistance in some elderly patients. What might be the connection among these three events?
3. You observe that prokaryotic cells sometimes have invaginations of the plasma membrane where metabolic pathways take place. How could this observation be used to support your hypothesis that mitochondria evolved when a prokaryote cell was engulfed by a nucleated cell?
4. Rotenone is a broad-spectrum insecticide that inhibits the electron transport chain. Why might it be toxic to humans?

8

Cellular Reproduction

Genetics of Breast Cancer

In August 2008, actress Christina Applegate, then 36 years old, revealed to shocked fans that she had been diagnosed with breast cancer. Each year, over 230,000 American women are diagnosed with breast cancer. Christina's mother is a breast and cervical cancer survivor, and Christina tested positive for a *BRCA1* (*br*east *ca*ncer susceptibility gene *1*) gene mutation linked to both breast and ovarian cancer. Cancer results from a failure to control the cell cycle, a series of steps that all cells go through prior to initiating cell division. *BRCA1* is an important component of that control mechanism. *BRCA1* and a similar gene, *BRCA2*, are tumor suppressor genes. At specific points in the cell cycle, the proteins encoded by these genes check the DNA for damage. In Christina's case, the version of *BRCA1* that she inherited from her parents was not acting as a gatekeeper and, instead, was allowing cells to divide continuously, resulting in a tumor in one of her breasts.

It is estimated that 1 in 833 people possess a *BRCA1* mutation associated with breast cancer. Although this is not the only genetic contribution to breast and ovarian cancer, it does play a major role. By undergoing genetic testing, individuals can predict their chances of developing cancer and work with their physicians to decide the appropriate course of action. In this chapter, we will explore how cell division is regulated, as well as how genes such as *BRCA1* function in the regulation of the cycle.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What are the roles of the checkpoints in the cell cycle?
2. At what checkpoint do you think *BRCA1* would normally be active?
3. Why would a failure of these checkpoints result in cancer?

OUTLINE

8.1 The Basics of Cellular Reproduction 126

8.2 The Cell Cycle: Interphase, Mitosis, and Cytokinesis 128

8.3 The Cell Cycle Control System 133

8.4 The Cell Cycle and Cancer 136

8.5 The Characteristics of Cancer 139

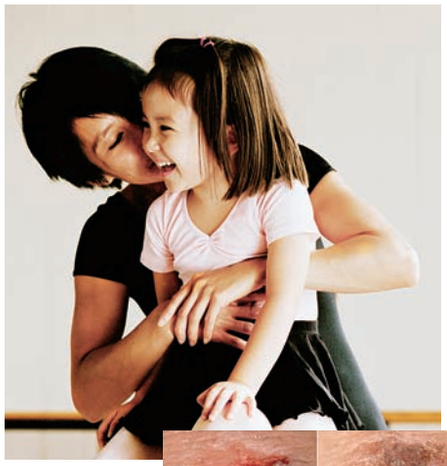
BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

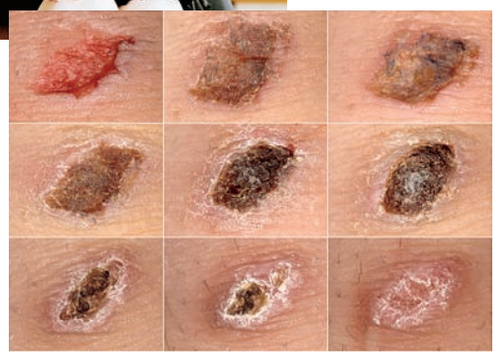
Section 3.2 What is the structure of DNA?

Section 4.4 What are the roles of the microtubules and nucleus in a eukaryotic cell?

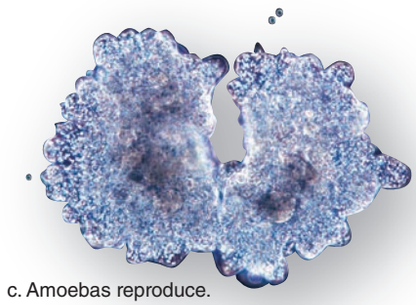
Section 4.5 What is a cell wall and what types of organisms is it found in?



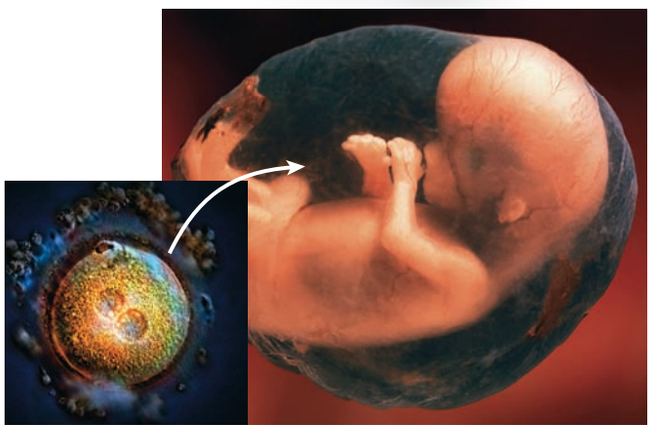
a. Children grow.



b. Tissues repair.



c. Amoebas reproduce.



d. Zygotes develop.

Figure 8.1 **Cellular reproduction.**

Cellular reproduction occurs (**a**) when small children grow to be adults and (**b**) when we repair our tissues. Cellular reproduction also occurs (**c**) when single-celled organisms reproduce and (**d**) when zygotes, the product of sperm and egg fusion, develop into multicellular organisms capable of independent existence.

8.1 The Basics of Cellular Reproduction

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the purpose of cellular reproduction.
2. Understand the relationship of sister chromatids to chromosomes.
3. Explain the role of histones and the nucleosome in the compaction of the chromatin.

We humans, like other multicellular organisms, begin life as a single cell. However, because of cellular reproduction in less than 10 months, we become an organism consisting of trillions of cells. Even after we are born, cellular reproduction doesn't stop—it continues as we grow (**Fig. 8.1***a*), and when we are adults, it replaces worn-out or damaged tissues (Fig. 8.1*b*). Right now, your body is producing thousands of new red blood cells, skin cells, and cells that line your respiratory and digestive tracts. If you suffer a cut, cellular reproduction helps repair the injury.

Cellular reproduction is also necessary for the reproduction of certain organisms. When an amoeba splits (Fig. 8.1*c*), two new individual amoebas are produced. **Binary fission** is a type of cell division in bacteria (Chapter 17) that produces two bacterial cells. These processes are forms of *asexual reproduction* because they produce new cells that are identical to the original. Sexual reproduction, which involves a sperm and an egg, introduces variation to the offspring. It is covered in Chapter 9.

Animation Binary Fission

The cell theory (Chapter 4) emphasizes the importance of cellular reproduction when it states that "all cells come from preexisting cells." Therefore, you can't have a new cell without a preexisting cell, and you can't have a new organism without a preexisting organism (Fig. 8.1*d*). Cellular reproduction is necessary for the production of both new cells and new organisms.

Cellular reproduction involves two important processes: growth and cell division. During growth, a cell duplicates its contents, including the organelles and its DNA. Then, during cell division, the DNA and other cellular contents of the *parent cell* are distributed to the *daughter cells*. These terms have nothing to do with gender; they are simply a way to designate the beginning cell and the resulting cells. Both processes are heavily regulated to prevent runaway cellular reproduction, which, as we will see, can have serious consequences.

Chromosomes

An important event that occurs in preparation for cell division is **DNA replication,** the process by which a cell copies its DNA (see Chapter 11). Once this is complete, a full copy of all the DNA may be passed on to both daughter cells. This step is critical because cells cannot continue to live without a copy of the genetic material. However, a human cell contains an astonishing 2 meters (about 6.6 feet) of DNA, and moving this large quantity of DNA is no easy task. However, DNA and associated proteins are packaged into a set of **chromosomes,** which allow it to be distributed to the daughter cells. The packaging of the DNA into chromosomes, and the process of DNA replication are the work of proteins and enzymes in the nucleus of the cell.

Chromatin to Chromosomes

When a eukaryotic cell is not undergoing cell division, the DNA and associated proteins have the appearance of thin threads called **chromatin.** Closer examination reveals that chromatin is periodically wound around a core of eight protein molecules, so that it looks like beads on a string. The protein molecules are **histones,** and each bead is called a **nucleosome** (**Fig. 8.2**). Chromatin normally adopts a zigzag structure, and then it is folded into loops for further compaction. This looped chromatin more easily fits within the nucleus.

Just before cell division occurs, the chromatin condenses multiple times into large loops, which produce highly compacted chromosomes. Each species has a characteristic number of chromosomes; a human cell has 46. We can easily see chromosomes with a light microscope because, just before division occurs, a chromosome is over 10,000 times more compact than is chromatin.

Prior to cell division, the chromosomes are duplicated. A duplicated chromosome is composed of two identical halves, called **sister chromatids,** held together at a constricted region called a **centromere.** Each sister chromatid contains an identical DNA double helix.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

In most cases, the end result of cellular reproduction is the production of two identical cells.

Check Your Progress 8.1

1. Explain why cellular reproduction is necessary for life.
2. Distinguish between a sister chromatid and a chromosome.
3. Summarize why histones and nucleosomes are needed by a cell.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Is the number of chromosomes related to the complexity of the organism?

In eukaryotes, such as humans, the number of chromosomes varies considerably. A fruit fly has 8 chromosomes, and humans have 46. So at first glance, you may think that a relationship exists between chromosome number and complexity. However, yeasts (one-celled eukaryotes) have 32 chromosomes, and horses have 64. Some ferns, as shown here, have 1,252 chromosomes. Thus, there is no definite relationship between the number of chromosomes and the complexity of the organism.

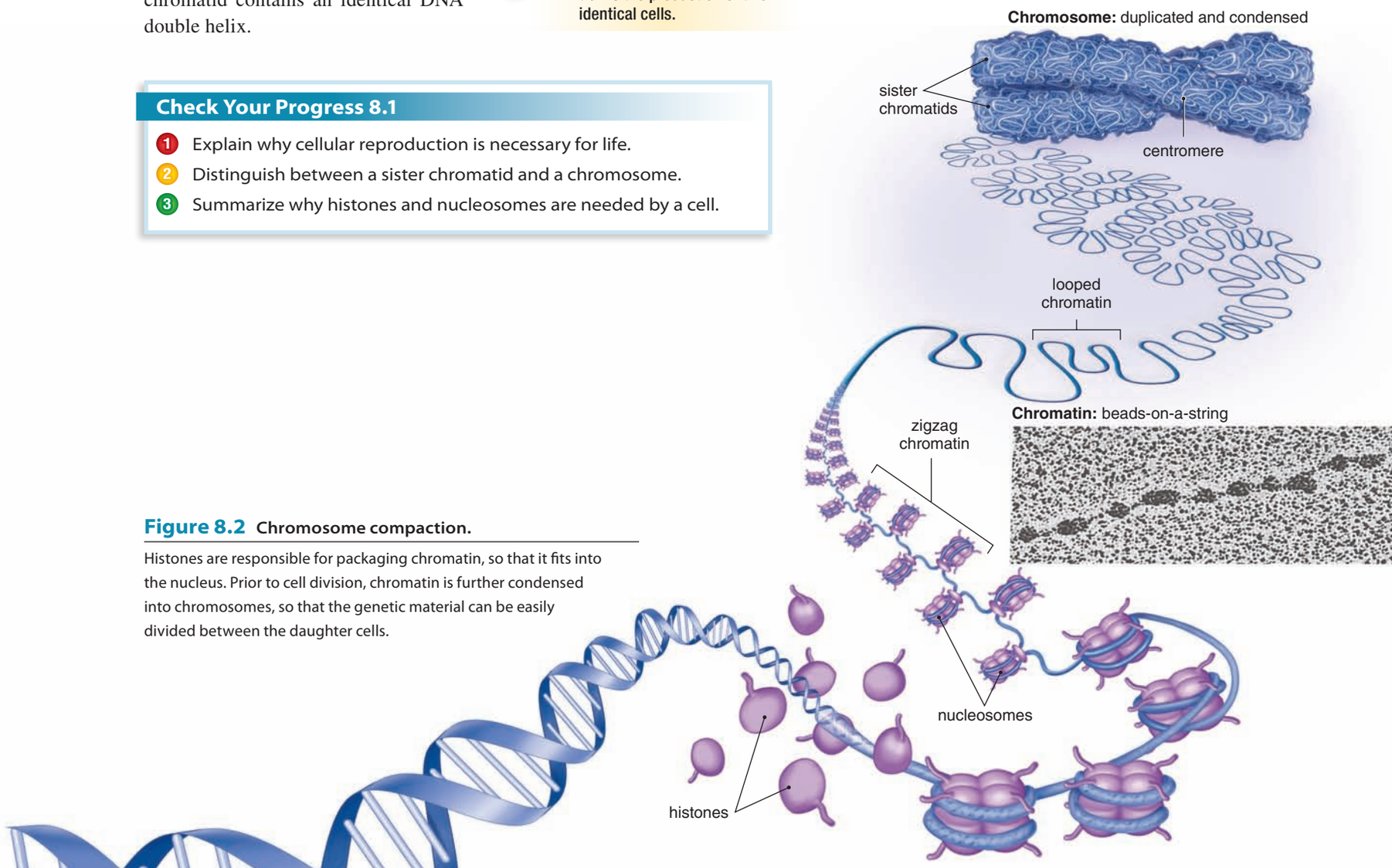


Figure 8.2 **Chromosome compaction.**

Histones are responsible for packaging chromatin, so that it fits into the nucleus. Prior to cell division, chromatin is further condensed into chromosomes, so that the genetic material can be easily divided between the daughter cells.

8.2 The Cell Cycle: Interphase, Mitosis, and Cytokinesis

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the activities that occur in the cell during interphase, mitosis, and cytokinesis.
2. Explain the significance of the S and G_0 stages of the cell cycle.
3. Summarize the events in each phase of mitosis.
4. Compare cytokinesis in a plant cell and an animal cell.

We have already seen that cellular reproduction involves duplication of cell contents followed by cell division. For cellular reproduction to be orderly, you would expect the first event to occur before the second event, and that's just what happens during the cell cycle. The **cell cycle** is an orderly sequence of stages that take place between the time a new cell has arisen from the division of the parent cell to the point when it has given rise to two daughter cells. It consists of **interphase,** the time when the cell performs its usual functions, a period of nuclear division called **mitosis,** and division of the cytoplasm, or **cytokinesis.**

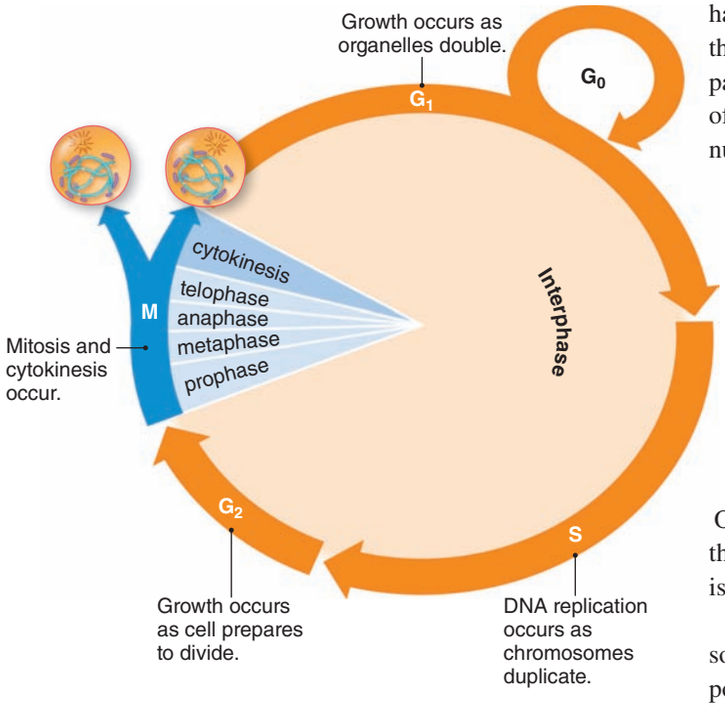


Figure 8.3 The cell cycle.

Cells go through a cycle consisting of four phases: G_1, S, G_2, and M. Interphase includes G_1, S, and G_2 phases. Some cells can exit G_1 and enter a G_0 phase.

Interphase

As **Figure 8.3** shows, most of the cell cycle is spent in interphase**.** The amount of time the cell takes for interphase varies widely. Embryonic cells complete the entire cell cycle in just a few hours. A rapidly dividing mammalian cell, such as an adult stem cell, typically takes about 24 hours to complete the cell cycle and spends 22 hours in interphase.

DNA replication occurs in the middle of interphase and serves as a way to divide interphase into three phases: G_1, S, and G_2. G_1 is the phase before DNA replication, and G_2 is the phase following DNA synthesis. Originally, G stood for "gap," but now that we know how metabolically active the cell is, it is better to think of G as standing for "growth." Protein synthesis is very much a part of these growth stages.

During G_1, a cell doubles its organelles (such as mitochondria and ribosomes) and accumulates materials that will be used for DNA replication. At this point, the cell integrates internal and external signals and "decides" whether to continue with the cell cycle. Some cells, such as muscle cells, typically remain in interphase, and cell division is permanently arrested. These cells are said to have entered a G_0 phase. If an injury occurs, many cells in the G_0 phase can reenter the cell cycle and divide again to repair the damage. But a few cell types, such as nerve cells, almost never divide again once they have entered G_0.

Following G_1, the cell enters the S phase. The S stands for "synthesis," and certainly DNA synthesis is required for DNA replication. At the beginning of the S phase, each chromosome has one **chromatid** consisting of a single DNA double helix. At the end of this stage, each chromosome is composed of two *sister chromatids,* each having one double helix. The two chromatids of each chromosome remain attached at the centromere. DNA replication produces the duplicated chromosomes.

The G_2 phase extends from the completion of DNA replication to the onset of mitosis. During this stage, the cell synthesizes the proteins that will be needed for cell division, such as the protein found in microtubules. The microtubules, part of the cytoskeleton, play an important role in cell division.

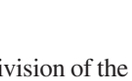
3D Animation
Cell Cycle and Mitosis: Interphase

M (Mitotic) Phase

Cell division occurs during the M phase, which encompasses both division of the nucleus and division of the cytoplasm. The type of nuclear division associated with the cell cycle is called mitosis, which accounts for why this stage is called the M phase.

During mitosis, the duplicated nuclear contents of the parent cell are distributed equally to the daughter cells. As a result of mitosis, the daughter nuclei are identical to the parent cell and to each other—they all have the same number and kinds of chromosomes.

Recall that, during the S phase, the DNA of each chromosome is replicated to produce a duplicated chromosome that contains two identical sister chromatids, which remain attached at the centromere (**Fig. 8.4**). Each chromatid is a single DNA double helix containing the same sequence of base pairs as the original chromosome. During mitosis, the sister chromatids of each chromosome separate and are now called *daughter chromosomes.* Because each original chromosome goes through the same process of DNA replication followed by separation of the sister chromatids, the daughter nuclei produced by mitosis are genetically identical to each other and to the parent nucleus. Thus, if the parent nucleus has four chromosomes, each daughter nucleus also has four chromosomes of exactly the same type. One way to keep track of the number of chromosomes in drawings is to count the number of centromeres, because every chromosome has a centromere.



Most eukaryotic cells have an even number of chromosomes because each parent has contributed half of the chromosomes to the new individual.

The Spindle

While it may seem easy to separate the chromatids of only 4 duplicated chromosomes, imagine the task when there are 46 chromosomes, as in humans, or 78, as in dogs. Certainly, it is helpful if chromosomes are highly condensed before the task begins, but some mechanism is needed to complete separation in an organized manner. Most eukaryotic cells rely on a **spindle,** a cytoskeletal structure, to pull the chromatids apart. A spindle has spindle fibers made of microtubules that are able to assemble and disassemble. First, the microtubules assemble to form the spindle that takes over the center of the cell and separates the chromatids. Later, they disassemble.

A **centrosome** is the primary microtubule organizing center of a cell. In an animal cell, each centrosome has two barrel-like structures, called **centrioles,** and an array of microtubules called an *aster*. Plant cells have centrosomes, but they are not clearly visible because they lack centrioles. Centrosome duplication occurs at the start of the S phase of the cell cycle and has been completed by G_2. During the first part of the M phase, the centrosomes separate and move to opposite sides of the nucleus, where they form the poles of the spindle. As the nuclear envelope breaks down, spindle fibers take over the center of the cell. Some overlap at the *spindle equator,* which is midway between the poles. Others attach to duplicated chromosomes in a way that ensures the separation of the sister chromatids and their proper distribution to the daughter cells. Whereas the chromosomes will be inside the newly formed daughter nuclei, a centrosome will be just outside.

Phases of Mitosis in Animal and Plant Cells

Traditionally, mitosis is divided into a sequence of events, even though it is a continuous process. We will describe mitosis as having four phases: **prophase,**

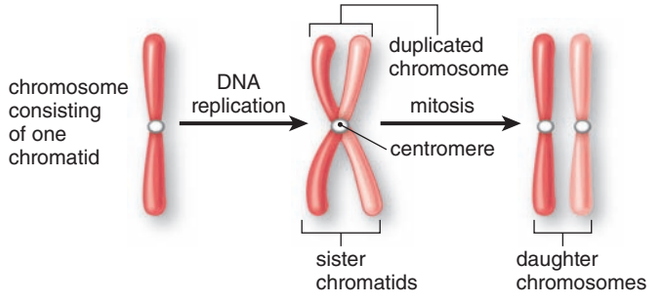


Figure 8.4 **Overview of mitosis.**

DNA replication forms the sister chromatids, which are separated to form daughter chromosomes by mitosis.

metaphase, anaphase, and **telophase.** With the exception of the movement of the centrioles, the descriptions of the phases of mitosis in this section apply to both animal (**Fig. 8.5**) and plant cells (**Fig. 8.6**).

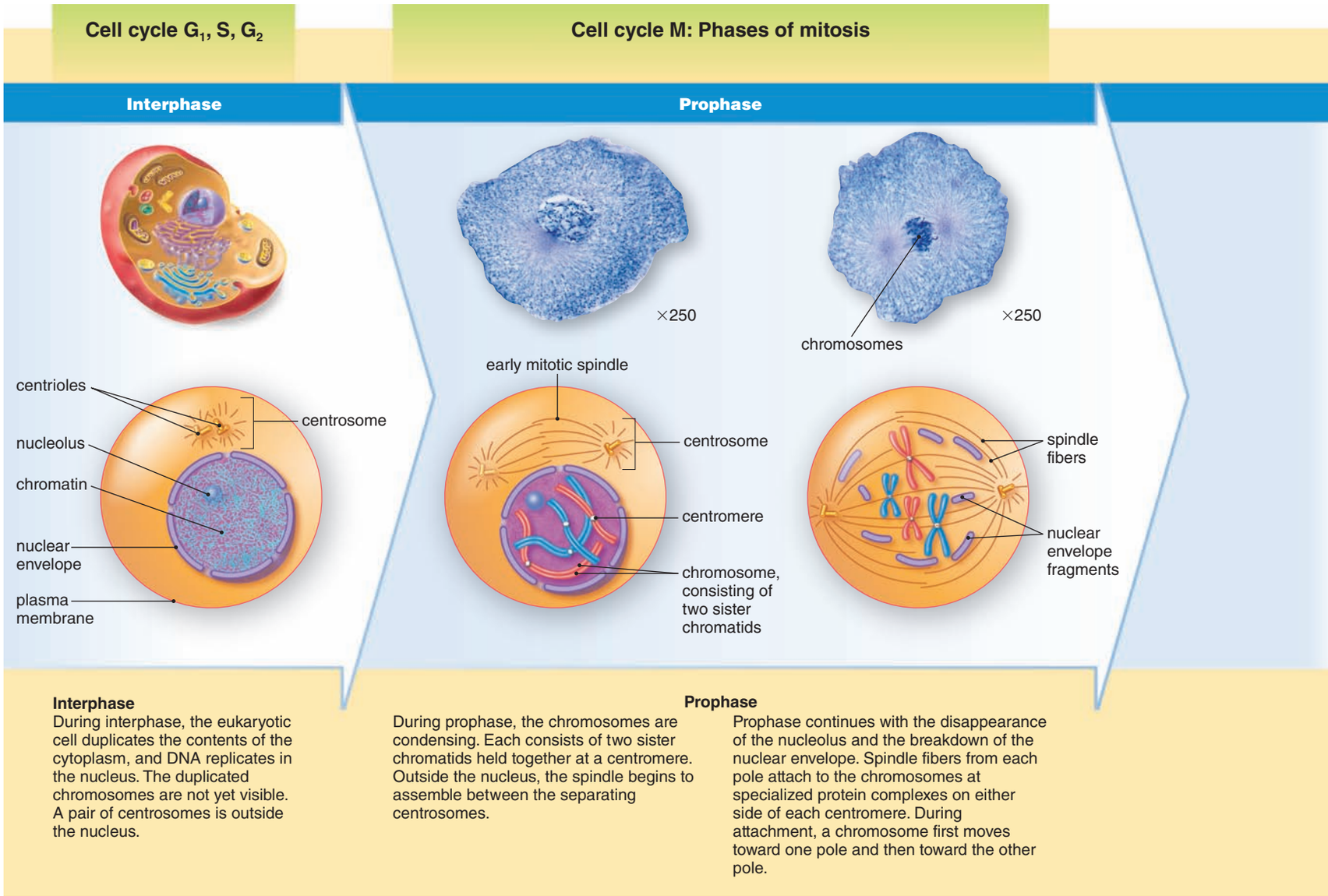
MP3 Mitosis

Before studying the descriptions of these phases in Figure 8.5, recall that, before mitosis begins, DNA has been replicated. Each chromatid contains a double helix of DNA, and each chromosome consists of two sister chromatids attached at a centromere. Notice that, in Figure 8.5, some chromosomes are colored red and some are colored blue. The red chromosomes were inherited from one parent, the blue chromosomes from the other parent.

During mitosis, a spindle arises that will separate the sister chromatids of each duplicated chromosome. Once separated, the sister chromatids become daughter chromosomes. In this way, the resulting daughter nuclei are identical to each other and to the parental nucleus. In Figure 8.5, the daughter nuclei not only have four chromosomes but they each have one red short, one blue short, one red long, and one blue long, the same as the parent cell had. In other words, each daughter nucleus is genetically the same as the original parent nucleus.

Figure 8.5 **Phases of mitosis in animal cells.**

The images on the top row are micrographs of an animal cell during mitosis. In the lower images, the red chromosomes were inherited from one parent and the blue chromosomes from the other parent.



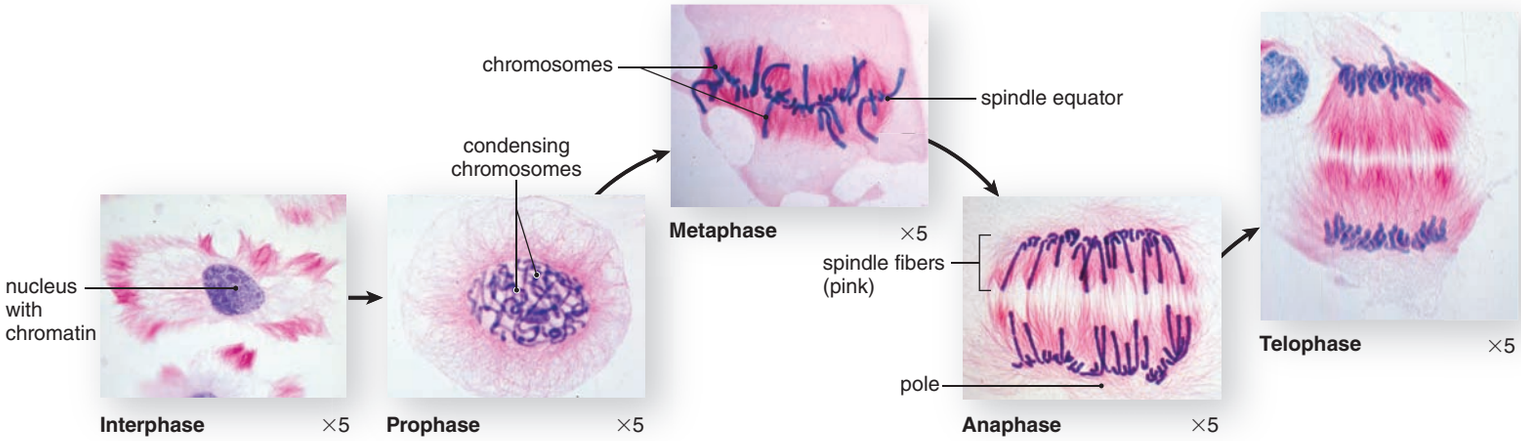
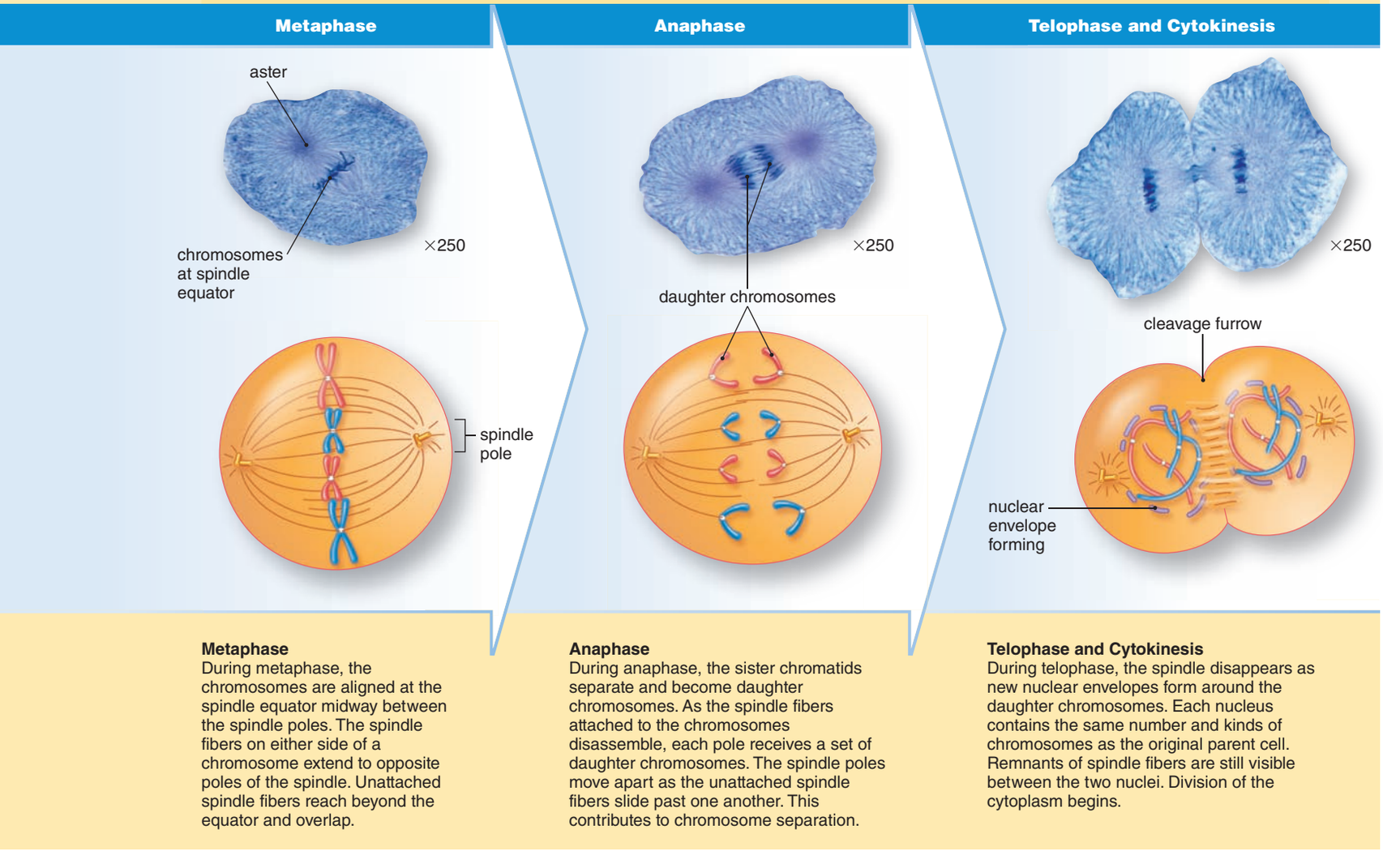


Figure 8.6 **Mitosis in a plant cell.**

The chromosomes are stained blue, and microtubules of the spindle fibers are stained pink in these photos of a dividing African blood lily. For a description of these phases, see Figure 8.5.

Phases of mitosis



Metaphase
During metaphase, the chromosomes are aligned at the spindle equator midway between the spindle poles. The spindle fibers on either side of a chromosome extend to opposite poles of the spindle. Unattached spindle fibers reach beyond the equator and overlap.

Anaphase
During anaphase, the sister chromatids separate and become daughter chromosomes. As the spindle fibers attached to the chromosomes disassemble, each pole receives a set of daughter chromosomes. The spindle poles move apart as the unattached spindle fibers slide past one another. This contributes to chromosome separation.

Telophase and Cytokinesis
During telophase, the spindle disappears as new nuclear envelopes form around the daughter chromosomes. Each nucleus contains the same number and kinds of chromosomes as the original parent cell. Remnants of spindle fibers are still visible between the two nuclei. Division of the cytoplasm begins.

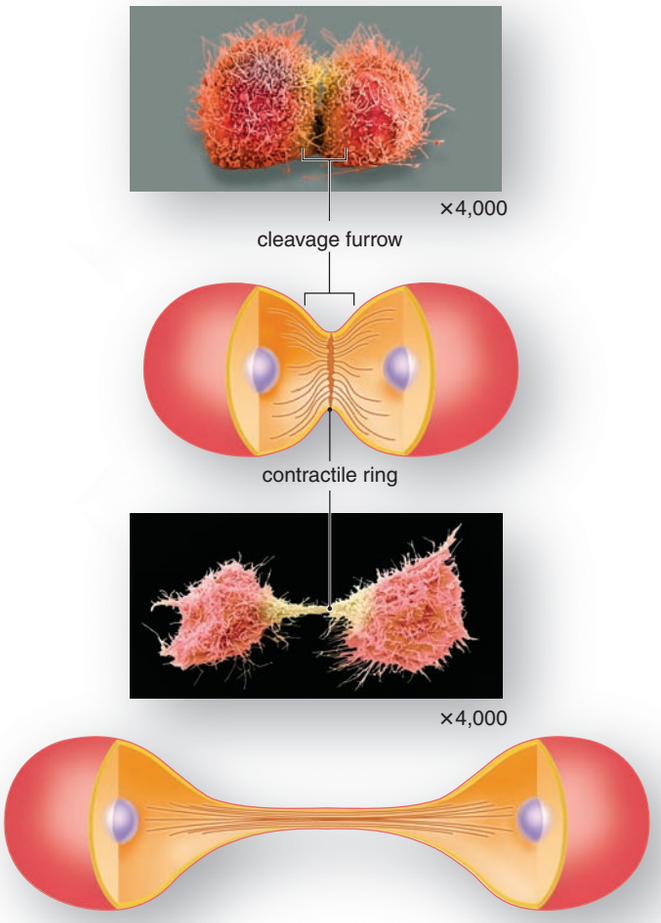


Figure 8.7 **Cytokinesis in animal cells.**

A single cell becomes two cells by a furrowing process. A cleavage furrow appears as early as anaphase, and a contractile ring, composed of actin filaments, gradually gets smaller until there are two cells.

Mitosis is usually followed by division of the cytoplasm, or cytokinesis. Cytokinesis begins during telophase and continues after the nuclei have formed in the daughter cells. The cell cycle is now complete, and the daughter cells enter interphase, during which the cell will grow and DNA will replicate once again.

3D Animation
Cell Cycle and Mitosis: Mitosis

Animation
Mitosis

Cytokinesis in Animal and Plant Cells

In most cells, cytokinesis follows mitosis. When mitosis occurs, but cytokinesis doesn't occur, the result is a multinucleated cell. Some organisms, such as fungi, slime molds, and certain structures in plants (such as the embryo sac), are multinucleated.

Cytokinesis in Animal Cells

In animal cells, a cleavage furrow, which is an indentation of the membrane between the two daughter nuclei, begins as anaphase draws to a close. The cleavage furrow deepens when a band of actin filaments, called the contractile ring, slowly forms a circular constriction between the two daughter cells. The action of the contractile ring can be likened to pulling a drawstring ever tighter around the middle of a balloon. A narrow bridge between the two cells is visible during telophase, and then the contractile ring continues to separate the cytoplasm until there are two independent daughter cells (**Fig. 8.7**).

Cytokinesis in Plant Cells

Cytokinesis in plant cells occurs by a process different from that seen in animal cells (**Fig. 8.8**). The rigid cell wall that surrounds plant cells does not permit cytokinesis by furrowing. Instead, cytokinesis in plant cells involves the building of new plasma membranes and cell walls between the daughter cells.

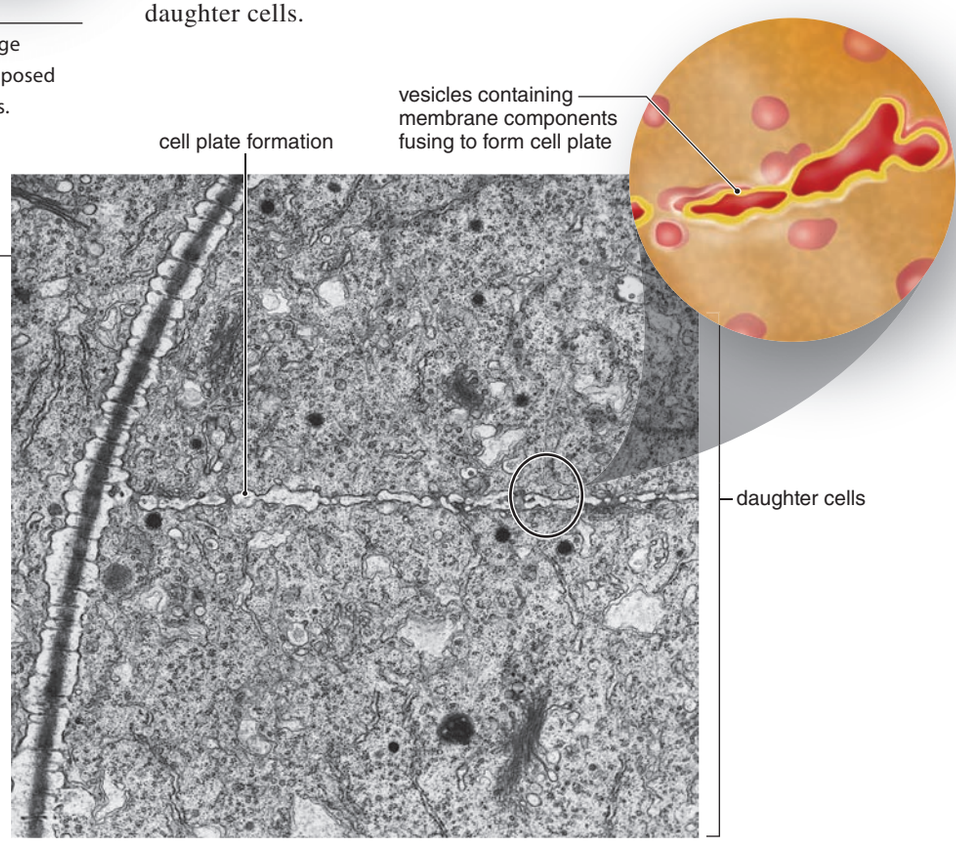


Figure 8.8 **Cytokinesis in plant cells.**

During cytokinesis in a plant cell, a cell plate forms midway between two daughter nuclei and extends to the original plasma membrane.

Cytokinesis is apparent when a small, flattened disk appears between the two daughter plant cells. In electron micrographs, it is possible to see that the disk is composed of vesicles. The Golgi apparatus produces these vesicles, which move along microtubules to the region of the disk. As more vesicles arrive and fuse, a cell plate can be seen. The **cell plate** is simply newly formed plasma membrane that expands outward until it reaches the old plasma membrane and fuses with it. The new membrane releases the molecules that form the new plant cell walls. These cell walls are later strengthened by the addition of cellulose fibrils.

3D Animation
Cell Cycle and Mitosis: Cytokinesis

Animation
Cytokinesis

Check Your Progress 8.2

1. Summarize the importance of the cell cycle.
2. Compare and contrast what is occurring during each phase of interphase: G_1, S, and G_2.
3. Identify the phases of mitosis and explain what happens to the chromosomes during each phase.
4. Explain why cytokinesis is different in plants and animals.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
Interphase, mitosis, and cytokinesis are all part of the cell cycle.

8.3 The Cell Cycle Control System

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the role of checkpoints in the cell cycle.
2. Explain how checkpoints are regulated by internal and external signals.
3. Describe the process of apoptosis.

In order for a cell to reproduce successfully, the cell cycle must be controlled. The importance of cell cycle control can be appreciated by comparing the cell cycle to the events that occur in a washing machine. The washer's control system starts to wash only when the tub is full of water, doesn't spin until the water has been emptied, and so forth. Similarly, the cell cycle's control system ensures that the G_1, S, G_2, and M phases occur in order and only when the previous phase has been successfully completed.

Cell Cycle Checkpoints

Just as a washing machine will not begin to agitate the load until the tub is full, the cell cycle has **checkpoints** that can delay the cell cycle until certain conditions are met. The cell cycle has many checkpoints, but we will consider only three: G_1, G_2, and the mitotic checkpoint (**Fig. 8.9**).

The *G_1 checkpoint* is especially significant because, if the cell cycle passes this checkpoint, the cell is committed to divide. If the cell does not pass

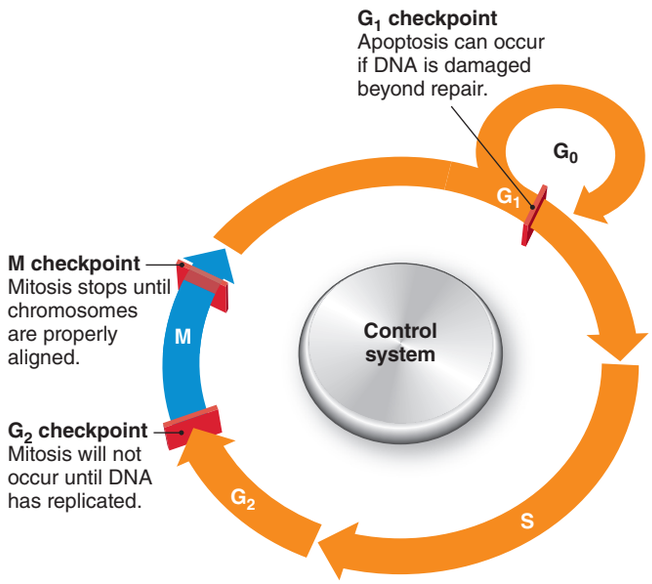


Figure 8.9 Cell cycle checkpoints.

Three important checkpoints are designated. Internal and external signals determine whether the cell is ready to proceed past cell cycle checkpoints.

Connections: Health

Is apoptosis the only cause of cell death?

Apoptosis allows an organism to control cell death. It is an important aspect of embryological development. The opposite of apoptosis is necrosis, or unprogrammed cell death, the death of cells due to disease or injury. For example, during a heart attack, the cells of the heart are deprived of oxygen and nutrients. The cells then burst and die, causing inflammation of the surrounding tissues. This can cause the death of the surrounding cells. In contrast, apoptosis does not cause inflammation and does not spread to surrounding cells.

this checkpoint, it can enter G_0, during which it performs its normal functions but does not divide. The proper growth signals, such as certain growth factors, must be present for a cell to pass the G_1 checkpoint. Additionally, the integrity of the cell's DNA is checked. If the DNA is damaged, the protein p53 can stop the cycle at this checkpoint and initiate DNA repair. If that is not possible, it can cause the cell to undergo programmed cell death, or **apoptosis.**

The cell cycle halts momentarily at the *G_2 checkpoint* until the cell verifies that DNA has replicated. This prevents the initiation of the M phase unless the chromosomes are duplicated. Also, if DNA is damaged, as from exposure to solar radiation or X-rays, arresting the cell cycle at this checkpoint allows time for the damage to be repaired, so that it is not passed on to daughter cells.

Another cell cycle checkpoint occurs during the mitotic stage. The cycle hesitates between metaphase and anaphase to make sure the chromosomes are properly attached to the spindle and will be distributed accurately to the daughter cells. The cell cycle does not continue until every chromosome is ready for the nuclear division process.

3D Animation
Cell Cycle and Mitosis: Checkpoints

Internal and External Signals

The checkpoints of the cell cycle are controlled by internal and external signals. These signals are typically molecules that stimulate or inhibit cellular functions. Researchers have identified a series of internal signals called **cyclins.** The levels of these proteins increase and decrease as the cell cycle progresses. The appropriate cyclin has to be present at the correct levels for the cell to proceed from the G_1 phase to the S phase, and from the G_2 phase into the M phase. In addition, enzymes called **kinases** remove phosphate from ATP and add it to another molecule. The addition of the energized phosphate from ATP often acts as an off/on switch for cellular activities. Kinases are active in the removal of the nuclear membrane and the condensation of the chromosomes early in prophase.

Some external signals, such as growth factors and hormones, stimulate cells to go through the cell cycle. Growth factors also stimulate tissue repair. Even cells that are arrested in G_0 will finish the cell cycle if growth factors stimulate them to do so. For example, epidermal growth factor (EGF) stimulates skin in the vicinity of an injury to finish the cell cycle, thereby repairing the damage. Hormones act on tissues at a distance, and some signal cells to divide. For example, at a certain time in the menstrual cycle of females, the hormone estrogen stimulates cells lining the uterus to divide and prepares the lining for implantation of a fertilized egg.

The cell cycle can be inhibited by cells coming into close contact with other cells. In the laboratory, eukaryotic cells will divide until they line a container in a one-cell-thick sheet. Then they stop dividing, due to a phenomenon termed **contact inhibition.** Some researchers suggest that contact inhibition prevents cells from overgrowing within the body. When tissues are damaged, cells divide to repair the damage. But once the tissue has been repaired, contact inhibition prevents cell overgrowth by halting the cell cycle.

Some years ago, it was noted that mammalian cells in cell culture divide about 70 times, and then they die. Cells seem to "remember" the number of times they have already divided, and they stop when they have reached the usual number of cell divisions. It's as if *senescence,* the aging of cells, is dependent on an internal battery-operated clock that runs down and then stops. We now know that senescence is due to the shortening of telomeres. A **telomere** is a repeating DNA base sequence (TTAGGG) at the end of the chromosomes that can be as long as 15,000 base pairs. Telomeres have been likened to the protective caps on the ends of shoelaces because they ensure chromosomal stability. Each time a cell divides, a portion of a telomere is lost. When telomeres become too short, the cell is "old" and dies by the process of apoptosis.

Apoptosis

Apoptosis is often defined as programmed cell death because the cell progresses through a typical series of events that bring about its destruction (**Fig. 8.10**). The cell rounds up and loses contact with its neighbors. The nucleus fragments, and the plasma membrane develops blisters, called blebs. Finally, the cell breaks into fragments, which are engulfed by white blood cells and/or neighboring cells. Oddly enough, healthy cells routinely harbor the enzymes, called caspases, that bring about apoptosis. These enzymes are ordinarily held in check by inhibitors but are unleashed by either internal or external signals.

Cell division and apoptosis are two opposing processes that keep the number of cells in the body at an appropriate level. In other words, cell division increases, and apoptosis decreases, the number of **somatic cells** (body cells). Both the cell cycle and apoptosis are normal parts of growth and development. An organism begins as a single cell that repeatedly undergoes the cell cycle to produce many cells, but eventually some cells must die for the organism to take shape. For example, when a tadpole becomes a frog, the tail disappears as apoptosis occurs. In humans, the fingers and toes of an embryo are at first webbed, but later they are freed from one another as a result of apoptosis.

Apoptosis occurs all the time, particularly if an abnormal cell that could become cancerous appears. Death through apoptosis prevents a tumor from developing.

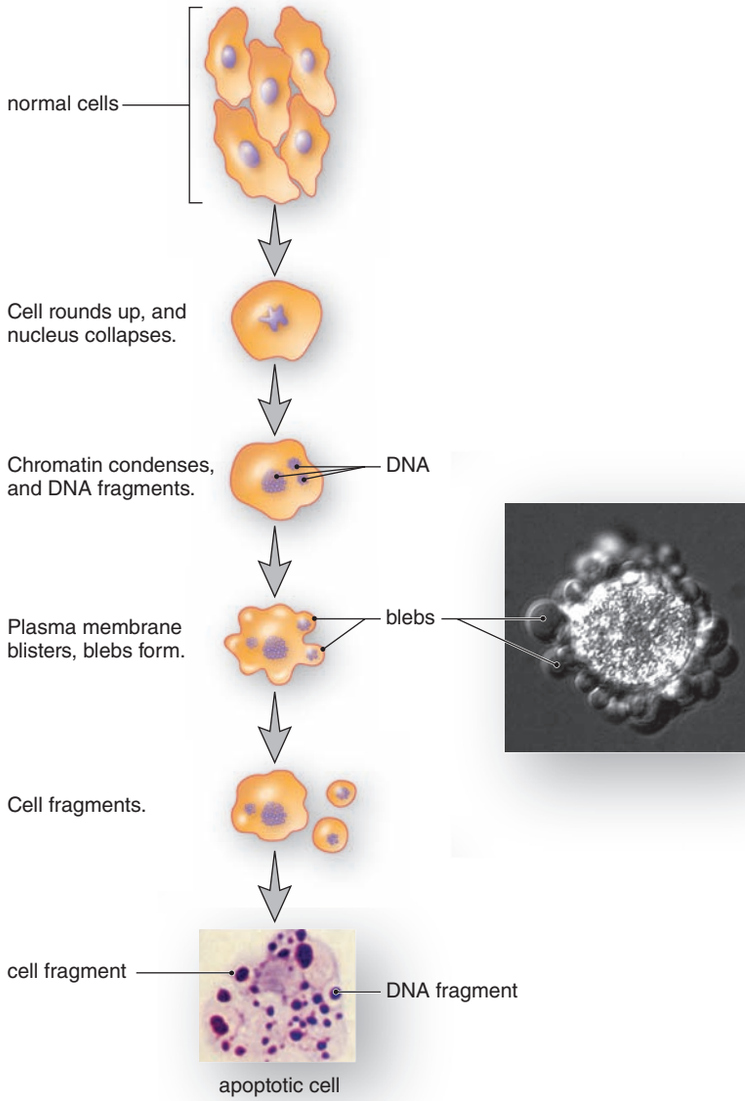


Figure 8.10 **Apoptosis.**

Apoptosis is a sequence of events that results in a fragmented cell. The fragments are phagocytized by white blood cells and neighboring tissue cells.

Check Your Progress 8.3

1. Explain the significance of checkpoints in the cell cycle.
2. Explain how signals are used for cell cycle control, and describe the two types of signals used by cells.
3. Predict what might happen to an organism if apoptosis is not regulated.

8.3

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

For successful reproduction, the cell cycle must be controlled.

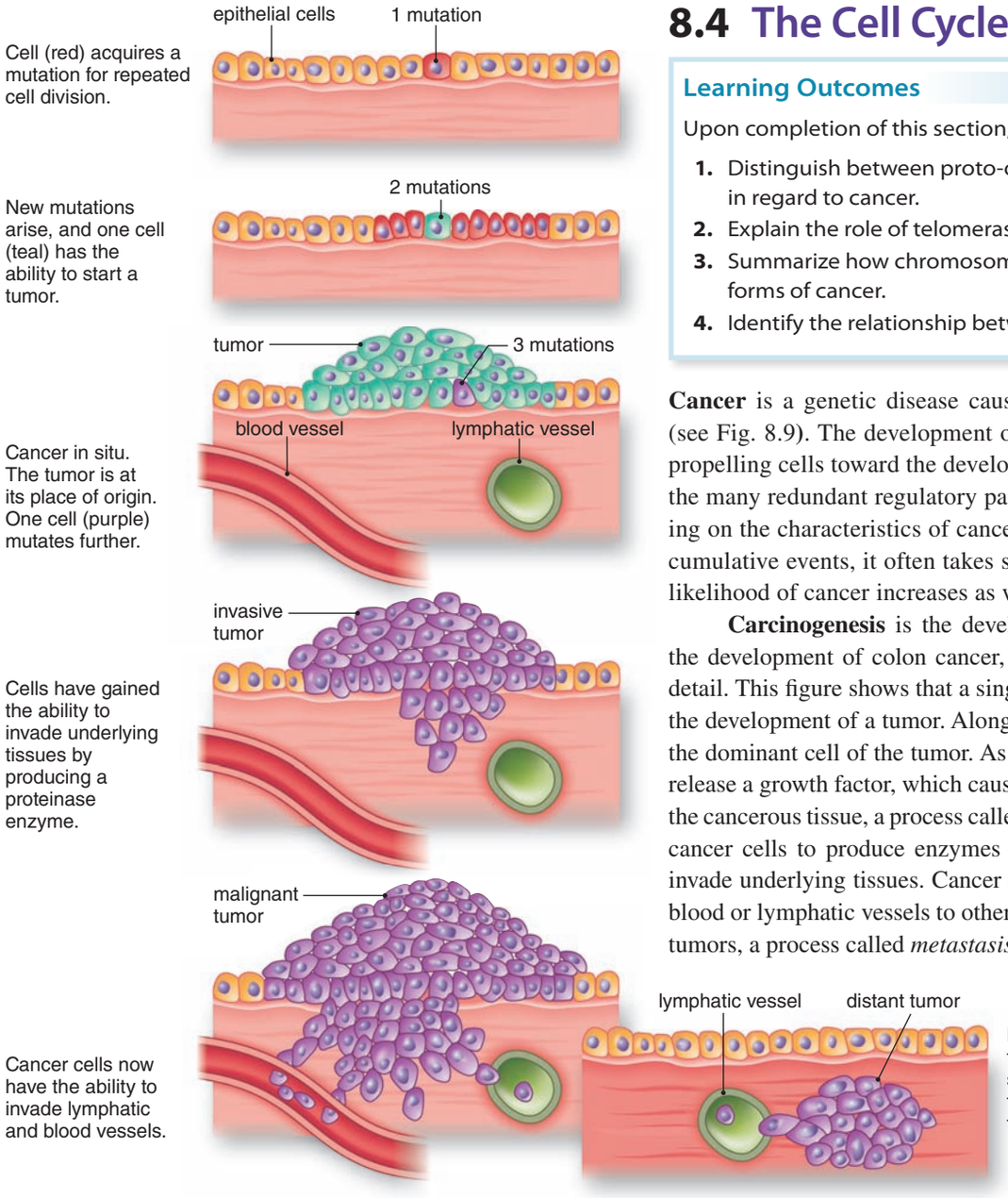


Figure 8.11 **Development of cancer.**

The development of cancer requires several mutations, each contributing to the development of a tumor. Normally, cells exhibit contact inhibition and controlled growth. They stop dividing when they are bordered by other cells. Tumor cells lack contact inhibition and pile up, forming a tumor. Cancer cells do not fulfill the functions of a specialized tissue, and they have abnormal chromosomes. As more mutations accumulate, the cancer cells may spread and form tumors in other parts of the body.

8.4 The Cell Cycle and Cancer

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish between proto-oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes in regard to cancer.
2. Explain the role of telomerase in stem cells and cancer cells.
3. Summarize how chromosomal rearrangements may cause some forms of cancer.
4. Identify the relationship between certain genes and cancer.

Cancer is a genetic disease caused by a lack of control in the cell cycle (see Fig. 8.9). The development of cancer requires several mutations, each propelling cells toward the development of a tumor. These mutations disrupt the many redundant regulatory pathways that prevent normal cells from taking on the characteristics of cancer cells (see Section 8.5). Because of these cumulative events, it often takes several years for cancer to develop, but the likelihood of cancer increases as we age.

Carcinogenesis is the development of cancer. **Figure 8.11** illustrates the development of colon cancer, a form of cancer that has been studied in detail. This figure shows that a single abnormal cell begins the process toward the development of a tumor. Along the way, the most aggressive cell becomes the dominant cell of the tumor. As additional mutations occur, the tumor cells release a growth factor, which causes neighboring blood vessels to branch into the cancerous tissue, a process called *angiogenesis*. Additional mutations allow cancer cells to produce enzymes that degrade the basement membrane and invade underlying tissues. Cancer cells are motile—able to travel through the blood or lymphatic vessels to other parts of the body—where they start distant tumors, a process called *metastasis*.

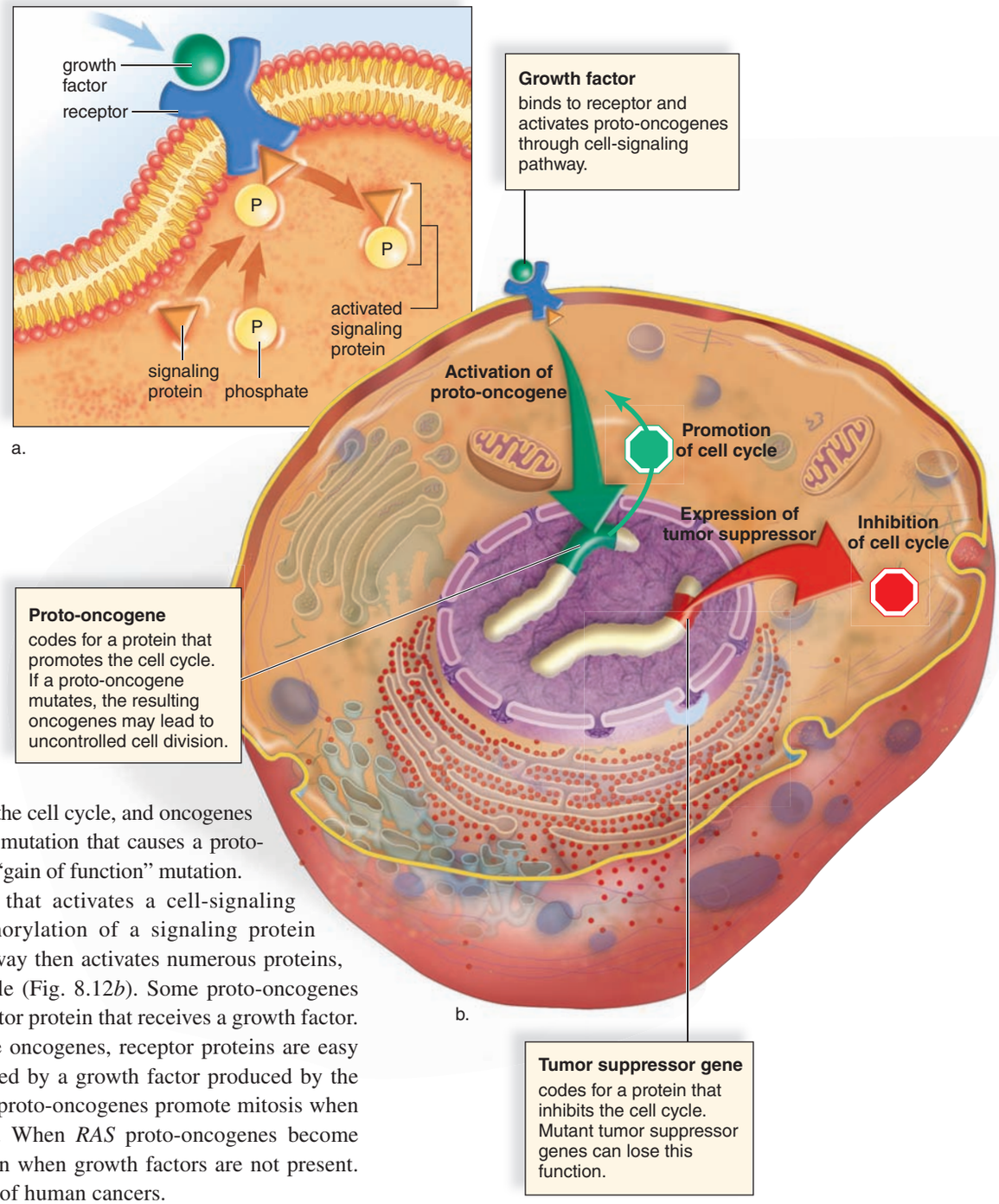
Cells that are already highly specialized, such as nerve cells and cardiac muscle cells, seldom become cancer cells because they rarely divide. Carcinogenesis is more likely to begin in cells that have the capacity to enter the cell cycle. Fibroblasts and cells lining the cavities of the lungs, liver, uterus, and kidneys are able to divide when stimulated to do so. Adult stem cells continue to divide throughout life. These include blood-forming cells in the bone marrow and basal cells of the skin and digestive tract. Continuous division of these cells is required because blood cells live only a short while, and the cells that line the intestines and the cells that form the outer layer of the skin are continually sloughed off.

Proto-Oncogenes and Tumor Suppressor Genes

Recall that the cell cycle (see Fig. 8.9) consists of interphase followed by mitosis. Special proteins help regulate the cell cycle at checkpoints. When

cancer develops, the cell cycle occurs repeatedly, due in large part to mutations in two types of genes. As shown in **Figure 8.12,**

1. **Proto-oncogenes** code for proteins that promote the cell cycle and inhibit apoptosis. They are often likened to the gas pedal of a car because they accelerate the cell cycle.
2. **Tumor suppressor genes** code for proteins that inhibit the cell cycle and promote apoptosis. They are often likened to the brakes of a car because they inhibit acceleration of the cell cycle and stop cells from dividing inappropriately. They are called tumor suppressors because tumors may occur when mutations cause these genes to become nonfunctional.



Proto-Oncogenes Become Oncogenes

When proto-oncogenes mutate, they become cancer-causing genes called **oncogenes.** Proto-oncogenes promote the cell cycle, and oncogenes accelerate the cell cycle. Therefore, a mutation that causes a proto-oncogene to become an oncogene is a "gain of function" mutation.

A **growth factor** is a signal that activates a cell-signaling pathway by bringing about phosphorylation of a signaling protein (Fig. 8.12*a*). The cell-signaling pathway then activates numerous proteins, many of which promote the cell cycle (Fig. 8.12*b*). Some proto-oncogenes code for a growth factor or for a receptor protein that receives a growth factor. When these proto-oncogenes become oncogenes, receptor proteins are easy to activate and may even be stimulated by a growth factor produced by the receiving cell. For example, the *RAS* proto-oncogenes promote mitosis when a growth factor binds to a receptor. When *RAS* proto-oncogenes become oncogenes, they promote mitosis even when growth factors are not present. *RAS* oncogenes are found in 20–30% of human cancers.

Tumor Suppressor Genes Become Inactive

When tumor suppressor genes mutate, their products no longer inhibit the cell cycle or promote apoptosis. Therefore, these mutations can be called "loss of function" mutations (Fig. 8.12).

The retinoblastoma protein (RB) controls the activity of a transcription activator called E2F. In the absence of growth factors, RB binds E2F and inhibits entry into the S stage of the cell cycle, but mutations in RB may cause it to release E2F and promote the cell cycle when it is not appropriate.

Animation
How Tumor Suppressor Genes Block Cell Division

Figure 8.12 Regulation of the cell cycle through control of gene expression.

a. A growth factor binds to a receptor, stimulating a signal transduction pathway (green arrow). **b.** The signal transduction pathway activates the expression of proto-oncogenes that promote the cell cycle. Tumor suppressor genes limit cell division by inhibiting the cell cycle (red arrow).

Connections: Health

What in cigarette smoke causes cancer?

There are over 4,000 known chemicals in tobacco smoke. Of these, 60 are carcinogens, or cancer-causing agents. Many carcinogens are also mutagens, meaning that they promote mutations in DNA, including genes such as tumor suppressor genes and proto-oncogenes. Included in this list of chemicals are arsenic (a heavy metal), benzene (an additive in gasoline), and cadmium (a metal found in batteries). In addition to the carcinogens, cigarette smoke contains high levels of carbon monoxide and hydrogen cyanide, both of which reduce the body's ability to process oxygen. Exposure to these chemicals is estimated to reduce life expectancy by 13.2 years for males, 14.5 years for females.

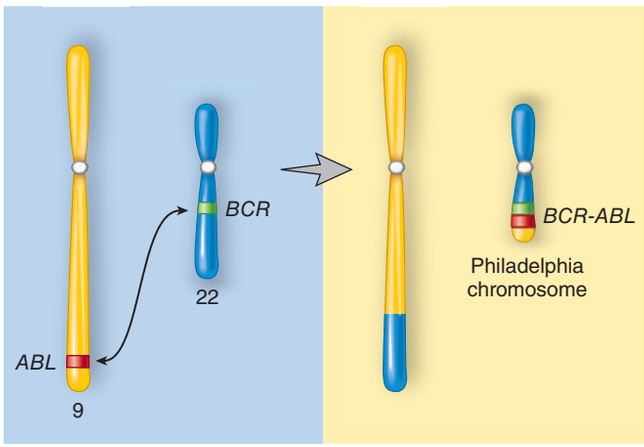


Figure 8.13 A translocation can create the Philadelphia chromosome.

The Philadelphia chromosome results when a portion of chromosome 9 is swapped for a portion of chromosome 22. This creates the *BCR-ABL* oncogene on chromosome 22. The Philadelphia chromosome is responsible for 95% of cases of chronic myelogenous leukemia.

Cancer develops gradually; multiple mutations usually occur before a cell becomes cancerous. As you can imagine, the conversion of proto-oncogenes into oncogenes, coupled with the inactivation of tumor suppressor genes, causes the cell cycle to continue unabated, just as a car with a sticking gas pedal and faulty brakes soon careens out of control.

Other Genetic Changes and Cancer

Other genetic influences can also contribute to cancer development.

Absence of Telomere Shortening

The telomeres at the end of the chromosomes play an important role in regulating cell division. Just as the caps at the ends of shoelaces protect them from unraveling, so telomeres promote chromosomal stability, so that replication can occur. Each time a cell divides, some portion of a telomere is lost; when telomeres become too short, the chromosomes cannot be replicated properly and the cell cycle is stopped.

Embryonic cells and certain adult cells, such as stem cells and germ cells, have an enzyme, called *telomerase,* that can rebuild telomeres. The gene that codes for telomerase is turned on in cancer cells. If this happens, the telomeres do not shorten, and cells divide over and over again. Telomerase is believed to become active only after a cell has already started proliferating wildly.

Chromosomal Rearrangements

When the chromosomes of cancer cells become unstable, portions of the DNA double helix may be lost, duplicated, or scrambled. For example, a portion of a chromosome may break off and reattach to another chromosome. These events, called **translocations,** may lead to cancer, especially if it disrupts genes that regulate the cell cycle.

A phenomenon called a *Philadelphia chromosome* is the result of a translocation between chromosomes 9 and 22 (**Fig. 8.13**). The *BCR* (*b*reakpoint *c*luster *r*egion) and *ABL* genes are fused, creating an oncogene, called *BCR-ABL,* that promotes cell division. This translocation causes nearly 95% of cases of chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), a cancer of the bone marrow. Recently, researchers have used a drug called Gleevec to successfully treat CML. Gleevec inhibits the activity of the protein coded for by *BCR-ABL.* Encouraged by this success, scientists are now seeking to develop similar drugs that can inhibit the products of other oncogenes. Although cancer is usually a somatic disease, meaning that it develops only in body cells, some individuals may inherit a predisposition for developing some forms of cancer.

Other Cell Cycle Genes Associated with Cancer

BRCA1* and *BRCA2 In 1990, DNA studies of large families in which females tended to develop breast cancer identified the first allele associated with that disease. Scientists named that gene *br*east *ca*ncer 1, or *BRCA1*. Other studies found that some forms of breast cancer were due to a faulty allele of another gene, called *BRCA2*. Both alleles are mutant tumor suppressor genes that are inherited in an autosomal recessive manner. If one mutated allele is inherited from either parent, a mutation in the other allele is required before the predisposition to cancer is increased. Because the first mutated gene is inherited, it is present in all cells of the body, and then cancer is more likely wherever the second mutation occurs, for example, the breast or ovaries.

***RB* Gene** The *RB* gene is also a tumor suppressor gene. It takes its name from its association with an eye tumor called a *r*etino*b*lastoma, which first appears as a white mass in the retina. A tumor in one eye is most common because it takes mutations in both alleles before cancer can develop. Children who inherit a mutated allele are more likely to have tumors in both eyes.

***RET* Gene** An abnormal allele of the *RET* gene, which predisposes a person to thyroid cancer, can be passed from parent to child. *RET* is a proto-oncogene known to be inherited in an autosomal dominant manner—only one mutated allele is needed to increase a predisposition to cancer. The remaining mutations necessary for thyroid cancer to develop are acquired (not inherited).

Testing for These and Other Genes

Genetic tests can detect the presence of specific alleles in the *BRCA*, *RET*, and *RB* genes. Persons who have inherited these alleles may decide to have surgery, by choice rather than necessity, or be examined frequently for signs of cancer.

Genetic tests are also available for other types of mutated genes that help a physician diagnose cancer. For example, a *RAS* oncogene can be detected in stool and urine samples. If the test for *RAS* oncogene in the stool is positive, the physician suspects colon cancer, and if the test for *RAS* oncogene in the urine is positive, the physician suspects bladder cancer. Tests are even being developed that can screen for many cancers using only saliva.

Video Melanoma Marker

Video New Cancer Clue

Connections: Health

Can transposons cause cancer?

Transposons are small, mobile sequences of DNA that have the ability to move throughout the genome. Also known as "jumping genes," transposons are known to cause mutations as they move (see Section 13.1). While the chances of a transposon disrupting the activity of a proto-oncogene or a tumor supressor gene in a specific cell are very small (our genome has over 3.4 billion nucleotides), there have been cases when a transposon has caused a loss of cell cycle control and been a factor in the development of cancer. Transposon activity may be associated with the development of other diseases, such as some forms of hemophilia and muscular dystrophy.

Check Your Progress 8.4

1. Contrast the activity of proto-oncogenes with that of tumor suppressor genes.
2. Summarize how chromosomal influences, such as telomeres and translocations, may cause cancer.
3. Explain the difference between how the *RB* gene and *RET* genes contribute to cancer.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Failure of the cell cycle controls may lead to cancer.

8.5 Characteristics of Cancer

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the characteristics of cancer cells.
2. Summarize the types of treatment for cancer.
3. Describe the factors that reduce the risk of cancer.

Cancers are classified according to their location. *Carcinomas* are cancers of the epithelial tissue that lines organs; *sarcomas* are cancers arising in muscle or connective tissue (especially bone or cartilage); and *leukemias* are cancers of the blood. In this section, we'll consider some general characteristics of cancer cells.

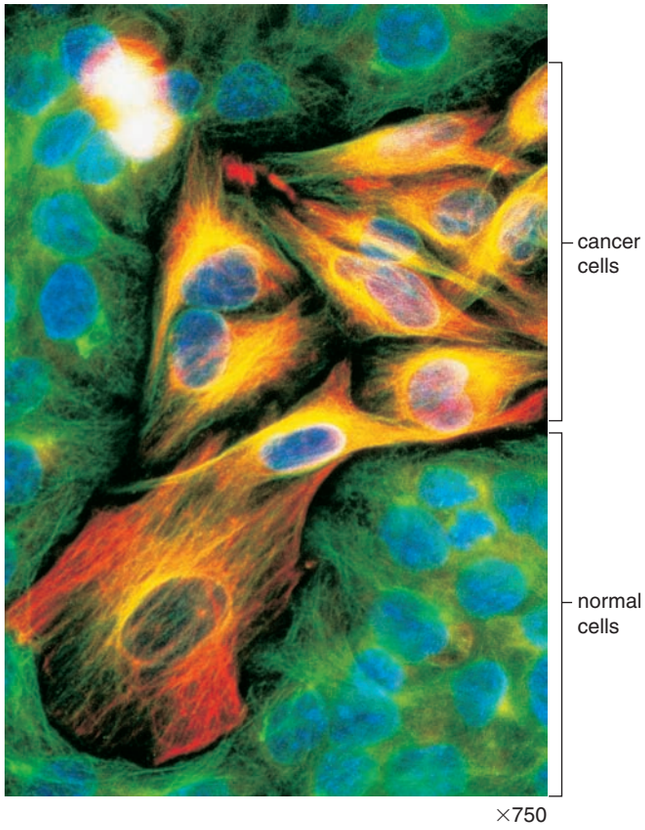


Figure 8.14 Cancer cells.

In this false-colored image, cancer cells (yellow and red) have an abnormal shape compared to normal cells (blue and green).

Characteristics of Cancer Cells

As we have seen carcinogenesis is a gradual process that requires the accumulation of multiple mutations over time. Therefore, it may be decades before a tumor is visible. Cancer cells then have the following characteristics.

Cancer cells lack differentiation. Cancer cells lose their specialization and do not contribute to the functioning of a body part. A cancer cell does not look like a differentiated epithelial, muscle, nervous, or connective tissue cell; instead, it looks distinctly abnormal (**Fig. 8.14**). As mentioned, normal cells can enter the cell cycle about 70 times, and then they die. Cancer cells can enter the cell cycle repeatedly; in this way, they are immortal.

Cancer cells have abnormal nuclei. The nuclei of cancer cells are enlarged and may contain an abnormal number of chromosomes. The chromosomes are also abnormal; some parts may be duplicated, or some may be deleted. In addition, gene amplification (extra copies of specific genes) is seen much more frequently than in normal cells.

Cancer cells do not undergo apoptosis. Ordinarily, cells with damaged DNA undergo apoptosis, preventing tumors from developing. Cancer cells, however, do not respond normally to the signals to initiate apoptosis, and thus they continue to divide.

Cancer cells form tumors. Normal cells anchor themselves to a substratum and/or adhere to their neighbors. Then, they exhibit contact inhibition and stop dividing. Cancer cells, on the other hand, have lost all restraint; they pile on top of one another and grow in multiple layers, forming a **tumor.** They have a reduced need for growth factors, and they no longer respond to inhibitory signals. As cancer develops, the most aggressive cell becomes the dominant cell of the tumor.

Cancer cells undergo metastasis and promote angiogenesis. A **benign tumor** is usually contained within a capsule and therefore cannot invade adjacent tissue. Additional changes may cause cancer cells to produce enzymes that allow tumor cells to escape the capsule and invade nearby tissues. The tumor has then become **malignant,** meaning that it is invasive and may spread. Cells from a malignant tumor may travel through the blood or lymph to start new tumors elsewhere within the body. This process is known as **metastasis** (**Fig. 8.15**).

An actively growing tumor can grow only so large before it becomes unable to obtain sufficient nutrients to support further growth. Additional mutations in cancer cells allow them to secrete factors that promote **angiogenesis,** the formation of new blood vessels. Additional nutrients and oxygen reach the tumor, allowing it to grow larger. Some modes of cancer treatment are aimed at preventing angiogenesis. The patient's prognosis (probable outcome) depends on (1) whether the tumor has invaded surrounding tissues and (2) whether there are metastatic tumors in distant parts of the body.

Cancer Treatment

Cancer treatments either remove the tumor or interfere with the cancer cells' ability to reproduce. For many solid tumors, removal by surgery is often the first line of treatment. When the cancer is detected at an early stage, surgery may be sufficient to cure the patient by removing all cancerous cells.

Because cancer cells are rapidly dividing, they are susceptible to radiation therapy and chemotherapy. The goal of radiation is to kill cancer cells within a specific tumor by directing high-energy beams at the tumor. DNA is damaged to the point that replication can no longer occur, and the cell undergoes apoptosis. Chemotherapy is a way to kill cancer cells that have spread throughout the body. Like radiation, most chemotherapeutic drugs lead to the death of cells by damaging their DNA or interfering with DNA synthesis. Others interfere with the functioning of the mitotic spindle. The drug vinblastine, first obtained from a flowering plant called a periwinkle, prevents the spindle from forming. Taxol, extracted from the bark of the Pacific yew tree, prevents the spindle from functioning as it should. Unfortunately, radiation and chemotherapy often damage cells other than cancer cells, leading to side effects, such as nausea and hair loss.

Hormonal therapy also prevents cell division, but in a different way. These drugs are designed to prevent cancer cell growth by preventing the cells from receiving the signals they need for continued growth and division. For example, the drug tamoxifen modifies the receptor for estrogen, so that this hormone cannot bind to it and promote the cell cycle. Other drug therapies are also being investigated. One proposed therapy that is now well underway uses drugs designed to inhibit angiogenesis, limiting a tumor's ability to grow and spread.

Prevention of Cancer

Evidence is clear that the risk of certain types of cancer can be reduced by adopting protective behaviors and following recommended dietary guidelines.

Protective Behaviors

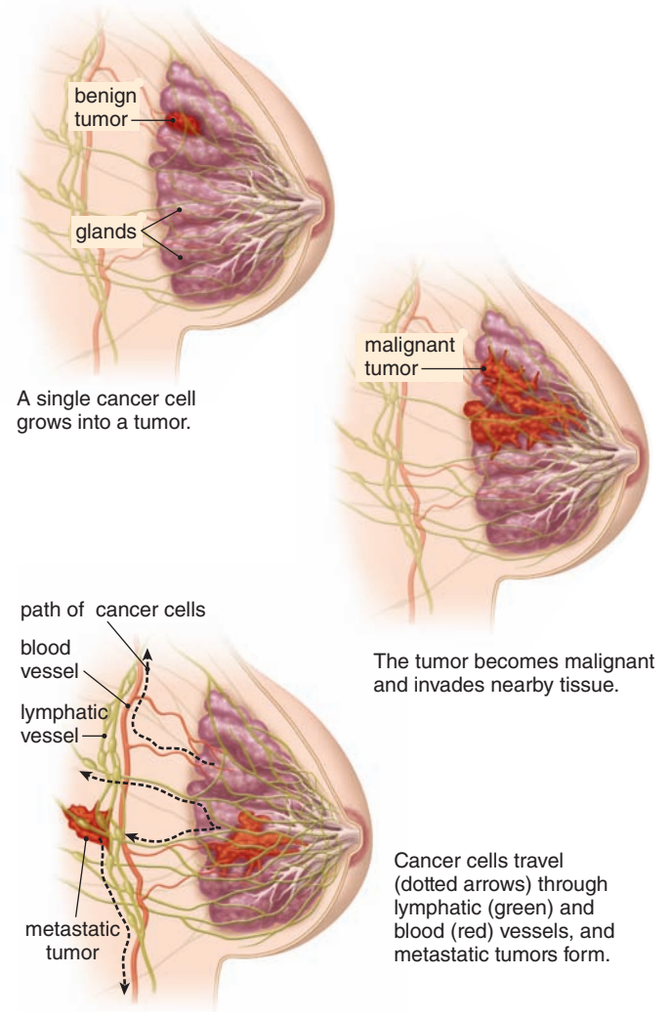
To lower the risk of developing certain cancers, people are advised to avoid smoking, sunbathing, and excessive alcohol consumption.

Cigarette smoking accounts for about 30% of all cancer deaths. Smoking is responsible for 90% of lung cancer cases among men and 80% among women. People who smoke two or more packs of cigarettes a day have lung cancer mortality rates 15 to 25 times greater than those of nonsmokers. Smokeless tobacco (chewing tobacco or snuff) increases the risk of cancers of the mouth, larynx, throat, and esophagus.

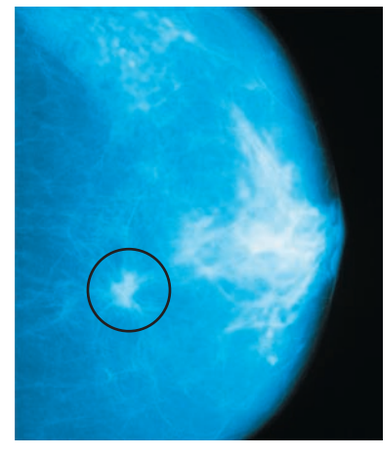
Many skin cancers are sun-related. Sun exposure is a major factor in the development of the most dangerous type of skin cancer, melanoma, and the incidence of this cancer increases in people living near the equator. Similarly, excessive radon gas[1] exposure in homes increases the risk of lung cancer, especially in cigarette smokers. It is best to test your home and, if necessary, take the proper remedial actions.

Cancers of the mouth, throat, esophagus, larynx, and liver occur more frequently among heavy drinkers, especially when accompanied by tobacco use (cigarettes, cigars, or chewing tobacco).

[1]Radon gas results from the natural radioactive breakdown of uranium in soil, rocks, and water.



a. Development of breast cancer and metastatic tumors



b. Mammogram showing tumor

Figure 8.15 Development of breast cancer.

a. Breast cancer begins as a single abnormal cell grows into a benign tumor. Additional changes allow the tumor to become invasive, or malignant, and invade nearby tissue. Metastasis occurs when the tumor invades blood and lymphatic vessels and new tumors develop some distance from the original tumor. **b.** A mammogram (X-ray image of the breast) can find a tumor (circled) too small to be felt.

Protective Diet

The risk of cancer is up to 40% higher for some forms of cancer among obese men and women compared with people of normal weight. Thus, weight loss in these groups can reduce cancer risk. In addition, the following dietary guidelines are recommended:

- Increase your consumption of foods that are rich in vitamins A and C (**Fig. 8.16**). Beta-carotene, a precursor of vitamin A, is found in dark green, leafy vegetables, carrots, and various fruits. Vitamin C is present in citrus fruits. These vitamins are called antioxidants, because in cells they prevent the formation of free radicals (organic ions having an unpaired electron), which can damage DNA. Vitamin C also prevents the conversion of nitrates and nitrites into carcinogenic nitrosamines in the digestive tract.
- Avoid salt-cured or pickled foods because they may increase the risk of stomach and esophageal cancers. Smoked foods, such as ham and sausage, contain chemical carcinogens similar to those in tobacco smoke. Nitrites are sometimes added to processed meats (e.g., hot dogs and cold cuts) and other foods to protect them from spoilage; as mentioned, nitrites are sometimes converted to cancer-causing nitrosamines in the digestive tract.
- Include in the diet vegetables from the cabbage family, which includes cabbage, broccoli, brussels sprouts, kohlrabi, and cauliflower. Eating these vegetables may reduce the risk of gastrointestinal and respiratory tract cancers.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

8.5 Cancer cells have distinct characteristics.

Check Your Progress 8.5

1. List the general characteristics of a cancer cell.
2. Summarize the ways that cancer may be treated.
3. Explain how lifestyle choices may reduce the risk of cancer.

Figure 8.16 The right diet helps prevent cancer.

Foods that help protect against cancer include fruits and dark green leafy vegetables , which are rich in vitamins A and C, and vegetables from the cabbage family, including broccoli.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video	MP3 Files
8.1 Binary Fission **8.2** Mitosis **8.4** How Tumor Suppressor Genes Block Cell Division	**8.2** Mitosis **8.4** Melanoma Marker • New Cancer Clue	**8.2** Mitosis

3D Animation
Cell Cycle and Mitosis

The 3D animation "Cell Cycle and Mitosis" provides an interactive exploration of how the cell cycle and mitosis contribute to the process of cell division.

SUMMARIZE

8.1 The Basics of Cellular Reproduction

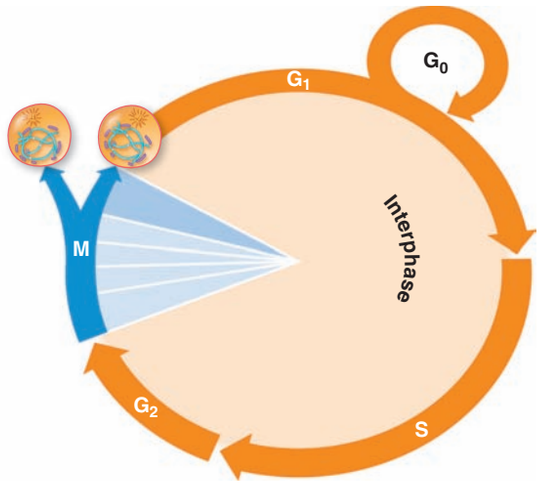
Cellular reproduction is involved not only in the growth of organisms from a single-celled zygote to a multicellular organism but also in the process of **binary fission** in single-celled organisms. It is responsible for the growth and repair of tissues. Cellular reproduction involves two processes: growth, during which a cell grows and doubles its contents, and cell division, during which the parent cell's contents are split between two daughter cells.

Prior to cell division, the DNA of a cell undergoes **DNA replication.** During cell division, one-half of the cytoplasm and a copy of the cell's DNA (packaged as **chromosomes**) are passed on to each of two daughter cells.

When a cell is not dividing, the DNA is wound around **histones** to form **nucleosomes,** then arranged into a zigzag configuration to form **chromatin.** Just before cell division, duplicated chromatin condenses into large loops to form duplicated chromosomes consisting of two chromatids, called **sister chromatids,** held together at a **centromere.**

8.2 The Cell Cycle: Interphase, Mitosis, and Cytokinesis

The **cell cycle** consists of interphase and the M (mitotic) phase, which consists of mitosis and cytokinesis.



Interphase has the following phases:

- *G_1:* The cell doubles its organelles and accumulates materials that will be used for DNA replication.
- *S:* The cell replicates its DNA.
- *G_2:* The cell synthesizes the proteins that will be needed for cell division.

Cell division consists of mitosis and cytokinesis.

Mitosis has four phases:

- During **prophase,** the chromosomes are condensing. Outside the nucleus, the **spindle** begins to assemble between the separating **centrosomes** (which contain **centrioles** in animals). Prophase continues with the disappearance of the nucleolus and the breakdown of the nuclear envelope. Spindle fibers from each pole attach to the chromosomes in the region of a centromere.
- During **metaphase,** the chromosomes are aligned at the spindle equator midway between the spindle poles.
- During **anaphase,** the sister chromatids separate and become daughter chromosomes. As the microtubules attached to the chromosomes disassemble, each pole receives a set of daughter chromosomes.
- During **telophase,** the spindle disappears as new nuclear envelopes form around the daughter chromosomes. Each nucleus contains the same number and kinds of chromosomes as the original parent nucleus. Division of the cytoplasm begins.

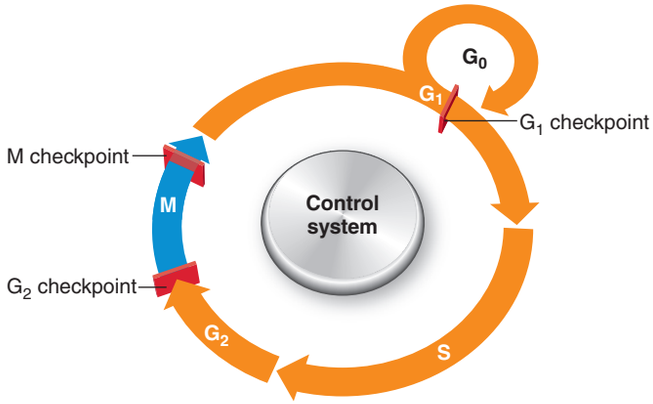
Cytokinesis differs for animal and plant cells:

- In animal cells, a furrowing process involving actin filaments divides the cytoplasm.
- In plant cells, a **cell plate** forms, from which the plasma membrane and cell wall develop.

8.3 The Cell Cycle Control System

Checkpoints are interacting signals that promote or inhibit the continuance of the cell cycle. Important checkpoints are these three:

- At G_1, the cell can enter G_0 or undergo apoptosis if DNA is damaged beyond repair. If the cell cycle passes this checkpoint, the cell is committed to complete the cell cycle.
- At G_2, the cell checks to make sure DNA has been replicated properly.
- At the mitotic (M) checkpoint, the cell makes sure the chromosomes are properly aligned and ready to be partitioned to the daughter cells.



Both internal and external signals act on checkpoints to control the cell cycle. **Cyclins** and **kinases** are internal signals that promote either DNA replication or mitosis. Growth factors and hormones are external signals that promote the cell cycle in connection with growth. Inhibitory external signals are responsible for **contact inhibition.** Internally, when **telomeres** are too short, the cell cycle stops because the chromosomes become unstable.

When DNA cannot be repaired, **apoptosis** occurs as enzymes bring about destruction of the nucleus and the rest of the cell. Apoptosis reduces the number of **somatic cells** in the body.

8.4 The Cell Cycle and Cancer

Cancer is a genetic disease of the cell cycle. Several genetic mechanisms control how fast the cell proceeds through the cell cycle.

Proto-Oncogenes and Tumor Suppressor Genes

- **Proto-oncogenes** ordinarily promote the cell cycle and inhibit apoptosis. Many are associated with **growth factors.** Mutation results in a gain of function for these activities.
- **Tumor suppressor genes** ordinarily suppress the cell cycle and promote apoptosis. Mutation results in loss of function for these activities.

The development of cancer is a gradual process. As control of gene expression is further compromised, cancer cells develop additional characteristics that lead to angiogenesis and metastasis.

Other Genetic Changes and Cancer

Other genetic influences contribute to cancer development:

- When telomerase is present, **telomeres** don't shorten and cells can continue to divide.
- Chromosomal rearrangements, such as **translocations,** may disrupt genes that regulate the cell cycle.
- Certain inherited genes are known to cause cancer: *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* are mutant genes associated with breast cancer; a mutant *RB* gene is associated with the development of eye tumors; a mutant *RET* gene predisposes a person to thyroid cancer.

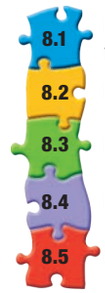
Genetic tests are available to help a physician diagnose cancer. These genes are turned off in normal cells but are active in cancer cells. For example, if a test for the presence of telomerase is positive, the cell is cancerous.

8.5 The Characteristics of Cancer

Carcinogenesis is the development of cancer. Cancer results when control of the cell cycle is lost and cells divide uncontrollably. Cancer cells are undifferentiated, have abnormal nuclei, do not undergo apoptosis, and form both **benign** and **malignant tumors**. A tumor may stimulate **angiogenesis**, allowing it to obtain more nutrients and grow larger. Tumors may also undergo **metastasis**, which allows them to spread throughout the body. Certain behaviors, such as avoiding smoking and sunbathing and adopting a diet rich in fruits and vegetables, are protective against cancer.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Cells in our bodies undergo a cellular reproduction cycle in order for us to grow, repair and maintain ourselves. When the cell cycle goes bad, diseases like cancer can result.



8.1 In most cases, the end result of cellular reproduction is the production of two identical cells.

8.2 Interphase, mitosis, and cytokinesis are all part of the cell cycle.

8.3 For successful reproduction, the cell cycle must be controlled.

8.4 Failure of the cell cycle controls may lead to cancer.

8.5 Cancer cells have distinct characteristics.

For more information about cellular reproduction, see the following discussions:

Section 4.4 describes the structure and function of a typical eukaryotic cell.

Section 9.1 explores how the exchange of information between the sister chromatids provides genetic variation.

Section 26.3 describes how the immune system uses apoptosis to destroy infected cells.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

8.1 The Basics of Cellular Reproduction

1. A duplicated chromosome is composed of identical
   a. chromosome arms. **c.** nucleosomes.
   b. sister chromatids. **d.** homologues.
2. The cell division that is responsible for cell division in amoeba, or other single-celled organisms, is called
   a. binary fission. **c.** mitosis.
   b. DNA replication. **d.** apoptosis.

8.2 The Cell Cycle: Interphase, Mitosis, and Cytokinesis

3. _____ is nuclear division, whereas _____ is division of the cytoplasm.
   a. Cytokinesis, mitosis **c.** Mitosis, apoptosis
   b. Apoptosis, mitosis **d.** Mitosis, cytokinesis

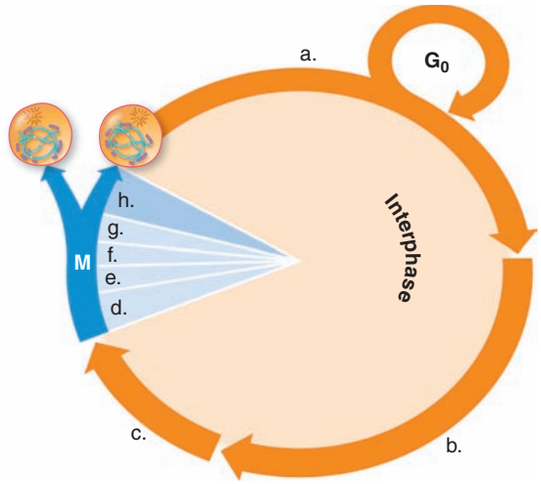
For questions 4–6, match the items to those in the key. Answers can be used more than once or not at all.

Key:

a. G_1 phase of interphase
b. G_2 phase of interphase
c. S phase of interphase

4. This phase follows mitosis.
5. DNA is replicated during this phase.
6. During this phase, the cell produces the proteins that will be needed for cell division.

7. Label the phases of the cell cycle on the following diagram. Include anaphase, cytokinesis, G_1 phase, G_2 phase, metaphase, prophase, S phase, and telophase.



For questions 8–11, match the items to those in the key. Answers can be used more than once or not at all.

Key:

a. prophase
b. metaphase
c. anaphase
d. telophase

8. The nucleolus disappears, and the nuclear membrane breaks down.
9. The spindle disappears, and the nuclear envelope forms.
10. Sister chromatids separate.
11. Chromosomes are aligned on the spindle equator.

8.3 The Cell Cycle Control System

12. Which cell cycle checkpoint allows damaged DNA to be repaired before it is passed on to daughter cells?
a. G_1 **c.** S
b. G_2 **d.** mitotic

13. Kinases and cyclins are
a. forms of microtubules.
b. internal signals that control cell division.
c. external signals that control cell division.
d. drugs used to prevent cancer.

8.4 The Cell Cycle and Cancer

14. Which of the following statements is true?
a. The gene product of a proto-oncogene inhibits the cell cycle.
b. Proto-oncogenes are mutant versions of oncogenes that cause cancer.
c. When mutated tumor suppressor genes lose their function, cancer may result.
d. When tumor suppressor genes mutate, they become oncogenes.
e. All of these are true.

15. Which of the following is not a tumor suppressor gene?
a. *RET* **c.** *BRCA1*
b. *RB* **d.** *BRCA2*

8.5 The Characteristics of Cancer

16. Which of the following is not a feature of cancer cells?
a. exhibit contact inhibition
b. have enlarged nuclei
c. stimulate the formation of new blood vessels
d. are capable of traveling through blood and lymph

17. Which of these is not a behavior that could help prevent cancer?
a. maintaining a healthy weight
b. eating more dark green, leafy vegetables, carrots, and various fruits
c. not smoking
d. maintaining estrogen levels through hormone replacement therapy
e. consuming alcohol only in moderation

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Mitosis & Meiosis

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. The survivors of the atomic bombs that were dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki have been the subjects of long-term studies of the effects of ionizing radiation on cancer incidence. The frequencies of different types of cancer in these individuals varied across the decades. In the 1950s, high levels of leukemia and cancers of the lung and thyroid gland were observed. The 1960s and 1970s brought high levels of breast and salivary gland cancers. In the 1980s, rates of colon cancer were especially high.
a. Why do you suppose the rates of different types of cancer varied across time?
b. Propose a study of the Fukushima nuclear disaster in Japan in 2011 that may be used to test these ideas.

2. During prophase of mitosis, the nuclear membrane breaks down. This is undoubtedly a complex, energy-consuming process that has to be carried out again, in reverse, at the end of mitosis. Why do you suppose the nuclear membrane must break down at the beginning of mitosis? What mechanism can you envision for the dismantling of the nuclear membrane?

3. Why is it advantageous that checkpoints evolved during the cell cycle?

4. BPA is a chemical compound that has historically been used in the manufacture of plastic products. However, cells often mistake BPA compounds for hormones that accelerate the cell cycle. Becuase of this, BPA is associated with an increased risk of certain cancers.
a. How might BPA interact with the cell cycle and its checkpoints?
b. Why do you think that very small concentrations of BPA might have a large effect on the cell?

9

Meiosis and the Genetic Basis of Sexual Reproduction

OUTLINE

9.1 The Basics of Meiosis 147

9.2 The Phases of Meiosis 152

9.3 Meiosis Compared with Mitosis 154

9.4 Changes in Chromosome Number 156

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 4.4 What is the role of the cytoskeleton in a eukaryotic cell?

Section 8.2 At what point of the cell cycle is the DNA replicated?

Section 8.2 What events occur during prophase, metaphase, telophase, and anaphase of mitosis?

Meiosis and the Genetic Variation of the Species

What are the chances that there will ever be another human like you on this planet? Because of a process called meiosis, two individuals can create offspring that are genetically different from themselves and from each other. This process creates an enormous amount of diversity; in humans, more than 70 trillion different genetic combinations are possible from the mating of just two individuals! In other words, meiosis ensures that you are unique; statistically it is unlikely that anyone will ever be the same genetically as you. In animals, meiosis begins the process that produces cells called gametes, which play an important role in sexual reproduction. In humans, sperm are the male gametes and eggs are the female gametes. The processes by which they are formed are called spermatogenesis and oogenesis, respectively.

Males and females differ in the ways that they form gametes. While meiosis in the two sexes is very similar, there are some important differences in how spermatogenesis and oogenesis occur. One major difference pertains to the age at which the process begins and ends. In males, sperm production does not begin until puberty but then continues throughout a male's lifetime. In females, the process of producing eggs has started before the female is even born and ends around the age of 50, a time called menopause.

Another difference concerns the number of gametes that can be produced. In males, sperm production is unlimited, whereas females produce only one egg a month. Many more eggs start the process than ever finish it. In this chapter, you will see how meiosis is involved in providing the variation so important in the production of gametes. We will focus on the role of meiosis in animals but will return to how plants use meiosis in Chapter 20.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. Why is meiosis sometimes called reduction division?
2. What is the role of meiosis in introducing new variation?
3. Why is genetic variation necessary for the success of a species?

9.1 The Basics of Meiosis

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain the purpose of meiosis.
2. Describe the human life cycle.
3. Define the terms *diploid, haploid, sister chromatid,* and *homologous chromosomes.*
4. Describe the processes of synapsis and crossing-over, and explain why these processes occur during meiosis.

Humans, like most other animals, practice sexual reproduction in which two parents pass chromosomes to their offspring. But why are the genetic and physical characteristics of siblings different from those of each other and from those of either parent? The answer is **meiosis,** a type of nuclear division that is important in sexual reproduction.

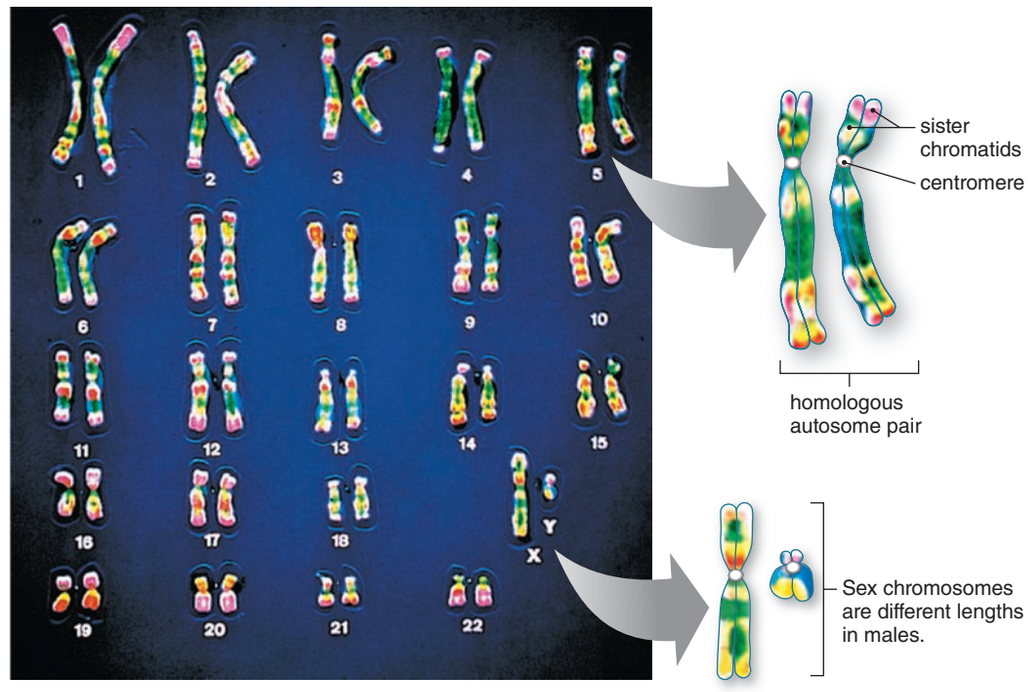
Meiosis serves two major functions: (1) reducing the chromosome number and (2) shuffling the chromosomes and genes to produce genetically different gametes, called sperm (males) and eggs (females). Since we can't predict which sperm will fertilize a given egg, random fertilization introduces another level of additional variation. In the end, each offspring is unique and has a different combination of chromosomes and genes than either parent. But how does meiosis bring about the distribution of chromosomes to offspring in a way that ensures not only the correct number of chromosomes but also a unique combination of chromosomes and genes? For the answer, let's start by examining the chromosomes.

Homologous Chromosomes

Geneticists and genetic counselors can visualize chromosomes by looking at a picture of the chromosomes called a **karyotype** (**Fig. 9.1**). Notice how the chromosomes occur in pairs. This is because we inherit one of each chromosome from each parent. Therefore, both males and females normally have 23 pairs of chromosomes. Of these 23 pairs, 22 of these, called **autosomes,** are the same in both males and females. The remaining pair are called the **sex chromosomes,** because they contain the genes that determine gender. The larger chromosome of this pair is the X chromosome, and the smaller is the Y chromosome. Females have two X chromosomes; males have a single X and Y. Twenty-three pairs of chromosomes, or 46 altogether, constitute the **diploid (2n) number** of chromosomes in humans. Half this number is the **haploid (n) number** of chromosomes. Notice that the haploid number (n) identifies the number of different chromosomes in a cell, while the diploid number is due to the fact that we inherit one set of 23 from each parent.

Figure 9.1 Homologous chromosomes.

In body cells, the chromosomes occur in pairs called homologous chromosomes. In this karyotype of chromosomes from a human cell, the pairs have been numbered. These chromosomes are duplicated, and each one is composed of two sister chromatids.



The members of a chromosome pair are called **homologous chromosomes,** or **homologues,** because they have the same size, shape, and location of the centromere (Fig. 9.1). When chromosomes are stained and viewed under a microscope, homologous chromosomes have the same characteristic banding pattern. One homologue of each pair was contributed by each parent. Homologous chromosomes contain the same types of genes arranged in the same order. A gene is a set of instructions responsible for a specifuc trait, for example, whether your earlobes are attached or unattached. Just as your mother may have unattached earlobes and your father may have attached earlobes, each homologue may have different versions of a gene. Alternate versions of a gene for a particular trait are called **alleles.** Alleles occur at the same location on each homologue. Your mother's allele for unattached earlobes is on one homologue, and your father's allele for attached earlobes is on the other homologue. We will take a closer look at alleles and patterns of inheritance in Chapter 10.

The Human Life Cycle

The term **life cycle** in sexually reproducing organisms refers to all the reproductive events that occur from one generation to the next. The human life cycle involves two types of nuclear division: mitosis and meiosis (**Fig. 9.2**).

During development and after birth, mitosis is involved in the continued growth of the child and the repair of tissues at any time. As a result of mitosis, each somatic (body) cell has the diploid number of chromosomes.

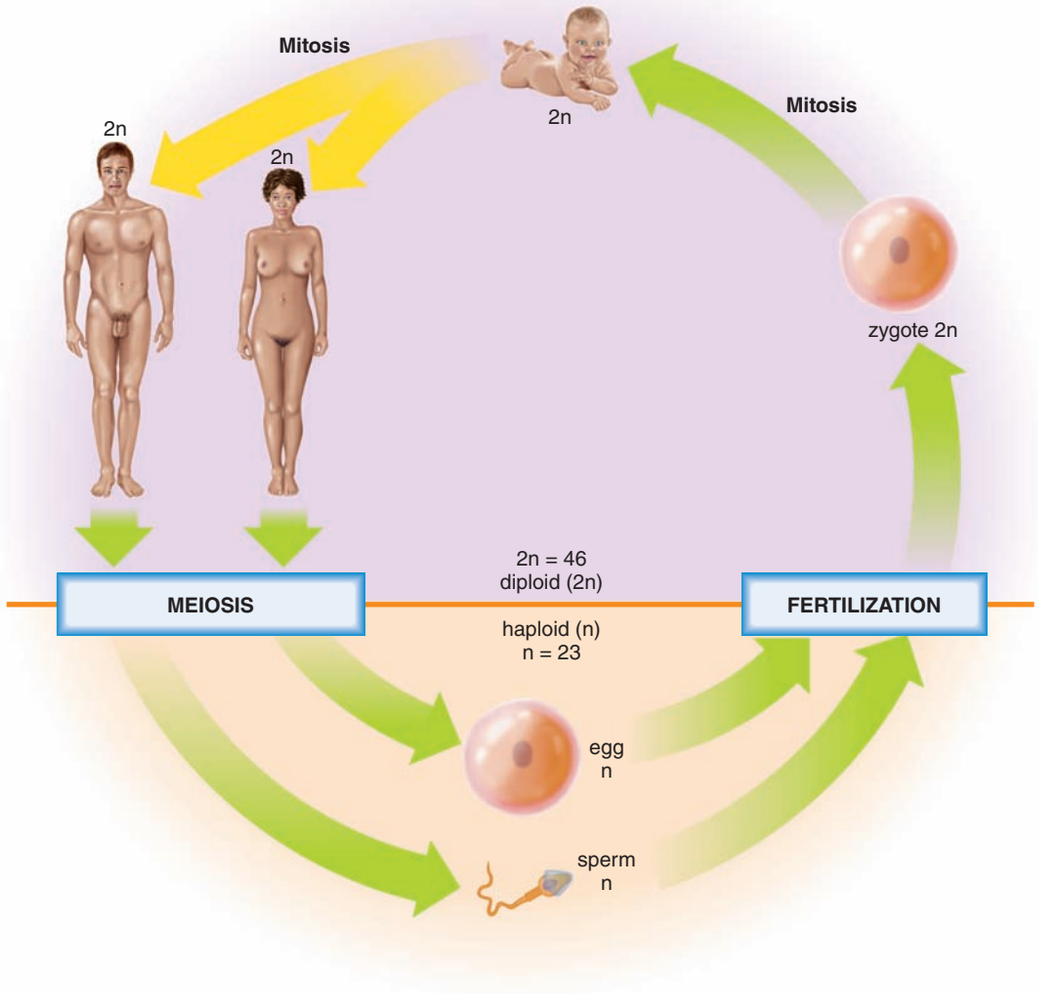


Figure 9.2 **Life cycle of humans.**

Meiosis is part of gamete production in both males (sperm) and females (eggs). When a haploid sperm fertilizes a haploid egg, the zygote is diploid. The zygote undergoes mitosis as it eventually develops into a newborn child. Mitosis continues throughout life during growth and repair.

During sexual reproduction, meiosis reduces the chromosome number from the diploid to the haploid number in such a way that the gametes (sperm and egg) have one chromosome derived from each homologous pair of chromosomes. In males, meiosis is a part of **spermatogenesis,** which occurs in the testes and produces sperm. In females, meiosis is a part of **oogenesis,** which occurs in the ovaries and produces eggs. After the sperm and egg join during fertilization, the resulting cell, called the **zygote,** again has a diploid number of homologous chromosomes. The zygote then undergoes mitosis and differentiation of cells to become a fetus, and eventually a new human.

Meiosis is important because, if it did not halve the chromosome number, the gametes would contain the same number of chromosomes as the body cells and the number of chromosomes would double with each new generation. Within a few generations, the cells of sexually reproducing organisms would be nothing but chromosomes! But meiosis, followed by fertilization, keeps the chromosome number constant in each generation.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Does meiosis always produce gametes?

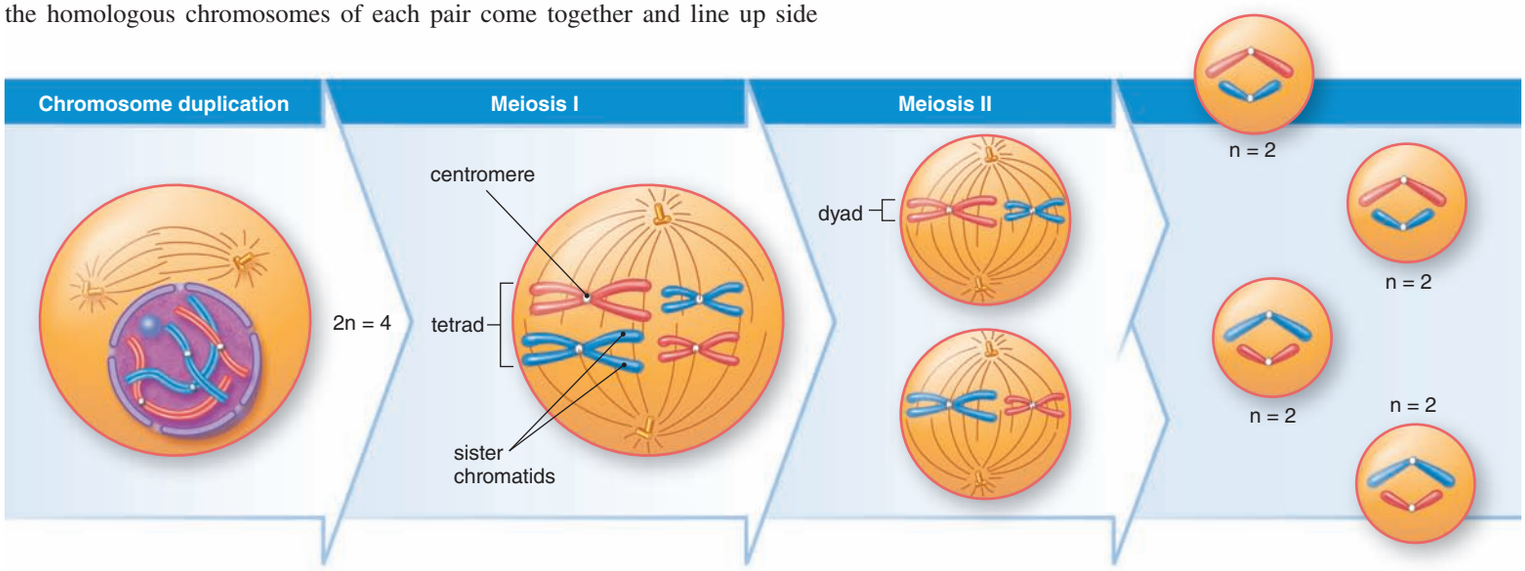
While meiosis is the first step in the production of gametes in animals, the life cycle of other organisms, such as plants, is slightly different. In plants, meiosis still reduces the number of chromosomes in half, but instead of producting gametes, it produces another reproductive structure called a spore. Spores are an important part of the plant life cycle (see Fig. 21.10). Although plants do use gametes, such as pollen, for sexual reproduction, they are produced by mitosis, not meiosis.

Overview of Meiosis

Meiosis results in four daughter cells because it consists of two divisions, called **meiosis I** and **meiosis II** (**Fig 9.3**). Before meiosis I begins, each chromosome has duplicated and is composed of two sister chromatids. During meiosis I, the homologous chromosomes of each pair come together and line up side

Figure 9.3 **Overview of meiosis.**

Following duplication of chromosomes, the diploid (2n) parent cell undergoes two divisions, meiosis I and meiosis II. During meiosis I, homologous chromosomes separate, and during meiosis II, sister chromatids separate. The final daughter cells are haploid (n). (The blue chromosomes were originally inherited from one parent, and the red chromosomes were originally inherited from the other parent.)



by side in an event called **synapsis** (**Fig 9.4**). Synapsis results in a **tetrad,** an association of four chromatids (two homologous chromosomes consisting of two chromatids each). The chromosomes of a tetrad stay in close proximity until they separate. Later in meiosis I, when the homologous chromosomes of each pair separate, one chromosome from each homologous pair goes to each daughter nucleus. No rules restrict which chromosome goes to which daughter nucleus. Therefore, all possible combinations of chromosomes may occur within the gametes.

The cell does not reenter interphase between meiosis I and meiosis II, so there is no duplication of the chromosomes. Why? One of the roles of meiosis is to reduce the chromosome number; therefore, following meiosis I, the daughter nuclei each have half the number of chromosomes, but the chromosomes are still duplicated. The chromosomes are called **dyads** because each one is composed of two sister chromatids. During meiosis II, the sister chromatids of each dyad separate and become daughter chromosomes. The resulting four new daughter cells have the haploid number of chromosomes. If the parent cell has four chromosomes, then following meiosis each daughter cell has two chromosomes. (Remember that counting the centromeres tells you the number of chromosomes in a nucleus.)

Recall that another purpose of meiosis is to produce genetically different gametes. Notice in Figure 9.3 that the daughter cells (on the right) do not have the same combinations of chromosomes as the original parent cell. Why not? The homologous chromosomes of each pair separated during meiosis I. Other chromosome combinations are possible in addition to those depicted. It's possible for the daughter cells to have chromosomes from only one parent (in our example, all red or all blue). The daughter cells from meiosis will complete either spermatogenesis (and become sperm) or oogenesis (and become eggs).

Crossing-Over

Meiosis not only reduces the chromosome number but also shuffles the genetic information between the homologous chromosomes. When a tetrad forms during synapsis, the **nonsister chromatids** may exchange genetic material, an event called **crossing-over** (Fig. 9.4*a*). Crossing-over occurs between nonsister chromatids of homologous chromosomes in a tetrad. Notice in Figure 9.4*b* how one of the blue sister chromatids is exchanging information with the red

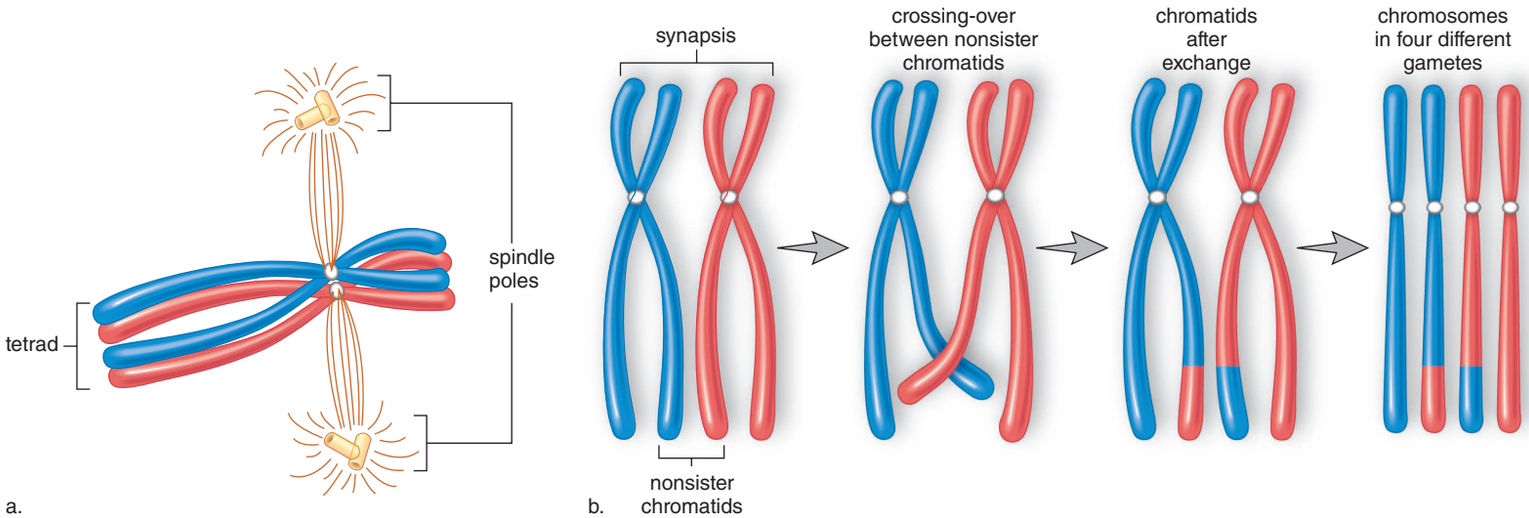


Figure 9.4 **Synapsis and Crossing-Over.**

a. During prophase I, homologous chromosomes line up side by side and form a tetrad, consisting of two chromosomes each, containing two chromatids, for a total of four chromatids. **b.** When homologous chromosomes are in synapsis, the nonsister chromatids exchange genetic material. This illustration shows only one crossover per chromosome pair, but the average is slightly more than two per homologous pair in humans. Following crossing-over, the sister chromatids of a dyad may no longer be identical and instead may have different combinations of alleles.

nonsister chromatid of its tetrad. Crossing-over between the nonsister chromatids shuffles the alleles and serves as the way that meiosis brings about genetic recombination in the gametes.

Recall that the homologous chromosomes carry genes for traits, such as shape of the earlobes, but that one allele might call for attached earlobes, for example, while the other allele calls for unattached earlobes. Therefore, when the nonsister chromatids exchange genetic material, the sister chromatids then have a different combination of alleles, and the resulting gametes will be genetically different. Thus, in Figure 9.4*b*, even though two of the gametes will have the same chromosomes, these chromosomes may not have the same combination of alleles as before because of crossing-over. Crossing-over increases the diversity of the gametes and, therefore, of the offspring.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Where do new alleles come from?

While meiosis is responsible for shuffling the genetic information in a parent cell so that the daughter cells are genetically different, it does not generate new alleles. Instead, genetic variation, in the form of new alleles of a gene, occurs primarily because of mutations in the DNA. These mutations change the sequence of nucleotides in the DNA. These changes may alter the structure of the protein encoded by the DNA, producing a slightly different variation of the trait (for example, attached or unattached earlobes). Other factors play a role, as we will discuss in Chapter 11.

The Importance of Meiosis

Meiosis is important for the following reasons:

- It helps keep the chromosome number constant by producing haploid daughter cells that become the gametes. When a haploid sperm fertilizes a haploid egg, the new individual has the diploid number of chromosomes.
- It introduces genetic variations because (1) crossing-over can result in different types of alleles on the sister chromatids of a homologue, and (2) every possible combination of chromosomes can occur in the daughter cells.

At fertilization, new combinations of chromosomes can occur, and a zygote can have any one of a vast number of combinations of chromosomes. In humans, $(2^{23})^2$, or 70,368,744,000,000, chromosomally different zygotes are possible, even assuming no crossing-over.

Check Your Progress 9.1

1. Explain why organisms use meiosis rather than mitosis.
2. Summarize the role of mitosis and meiosis in the human life cycle.
3. Explain the relationship between sister chromatids and homologous chromosomes.
4. Describe the two means by which meiosis results in genetically different gametes, and explain why this is important.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Meiosis reduces and shuffles the chromosomes of an individual.

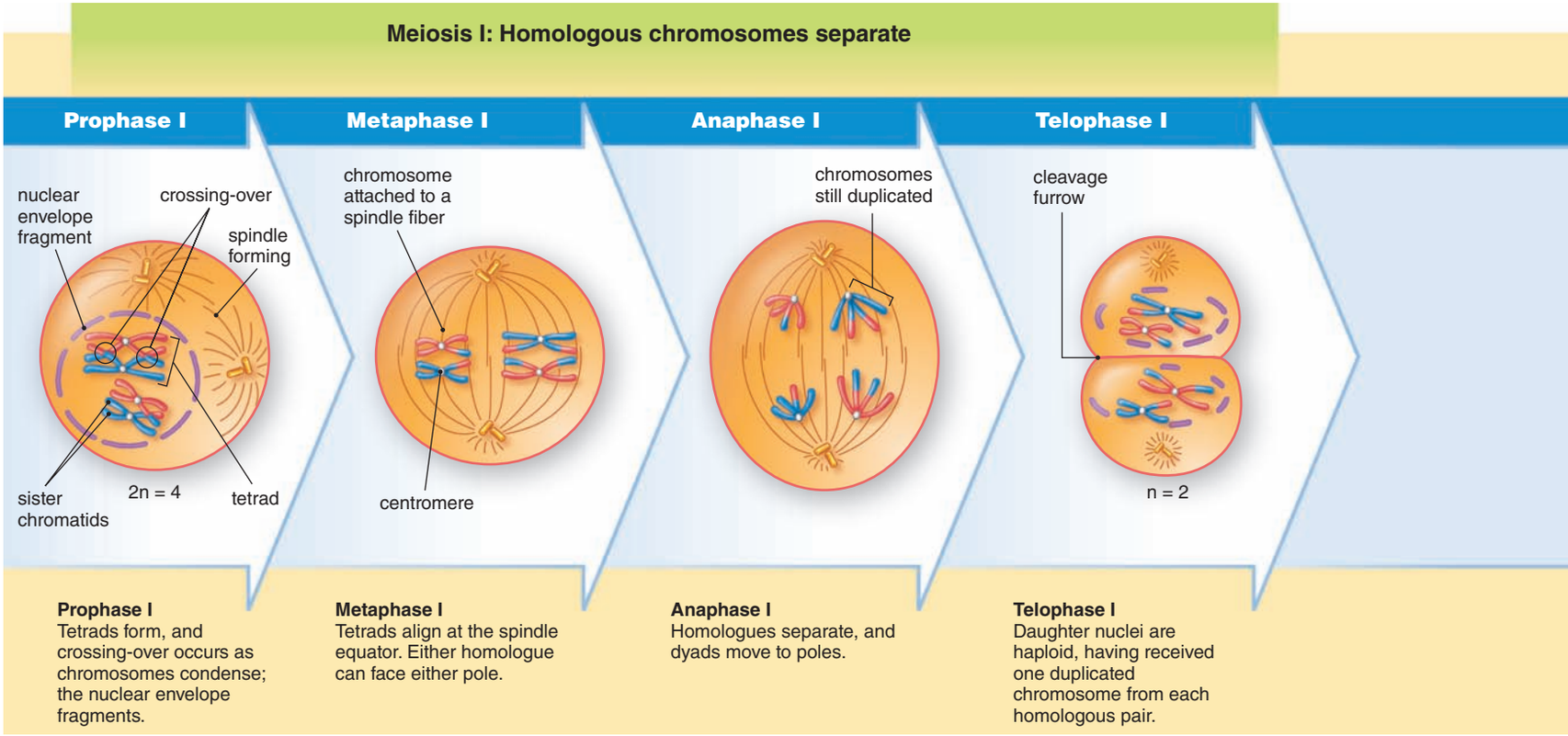


Figure 9.5 Meiosis

Meiosis I and meiosis II both contain prophase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase. Meiosis I shuffles the genetic combinations using crossing-over (prophase I) and alignment of the homologous chromosomes (metaphase I). The end result of meiosis II is four haploid (n) cells.

9.2 The Phases of Meiosis

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

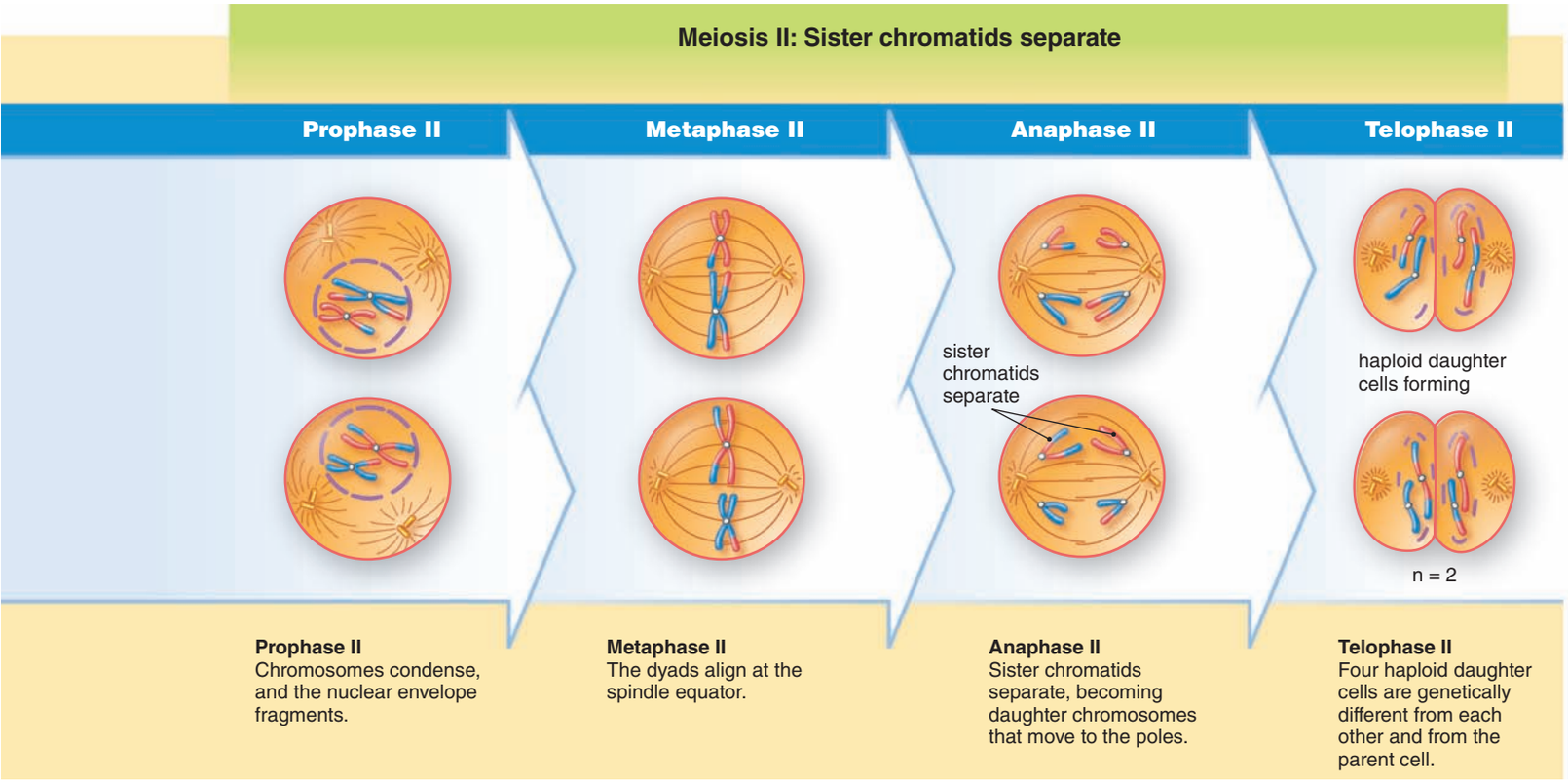
1. List the phases of meiosis and briefly explain what events occur during each phase.
2. Contrast the alignment of chromosomes during metaphase I and metaphase II of meiosis.

The same four stages of mitosis—prophase, metaphase, anaphase, and telephase—occur during both meiosis I and meiosis II. However, meiosis I and meiosis II differ from each other and from mitosis in the way chromosomes align during metaphase (**Fig 9.5**).

The First Division—Meiosis I

To help you recall the events of meiosis, keep in mind what meiosis accomplishes in humans—namely, the production of gametes that have a reduced chromosome number and are genetically different from each other and from the parent cell. During prophase I, the nuclear envelope fragments and the nucleolus disappears as the spindle appears. As the chromosomes condense, homologues undergo synapsis to produce tetrads. Crossing-over between nonsister chromatids occurs during synapsis, and this "shuffles" the alleles on chromosomes.

During metaphase I, the tetrads attach to the spindle and align at the spindle equator, with each homologue facing opposite spindle poles. It does not matter which homologous chromosome faces which pole; therefore, all possible combinations of chromosomes will occur in the gametes. In effect, metaphase of meiosis I shuffles the chromosomes into new combinations. The homologous



chromosomes then separate during anaphase I. Following re-formation of the nuclear envelopes during telophase and cytokinesis, the daughter nuclei are haploid: Each daughter cell contains only one chromosome from each homologous pair. The chromosomes are now dyads, and each still has two sister chromatids. No replication of DNA occurs between meiosis I and II, a period called **interkinesis.**

Animation Meiosis I

Animation Random Orientation of Chromosomes During Meiosis

3D Animation Meiosis: Interphase and Meiosis I

The Second Division—Meiosis II

Essentially, the events of meiosis II are the same as those for mitosis, except that the cells are haploid. At the beginning of prophase II, a spindle appears while the nuclear envelope fragments and the nucleolus disappears. Dyads are present, and each attaches to the spindle. During metaphase II, the dyads are lined up at the spindle equator, with sister chromatids facing opposite spindle poles. During anaphase II, the sister chromatids of each dyad separate and move toward the poles. Both poles receive the same number and kinds of chromosomes. In telophase II, the spindle disappears as nuclear envelopes form.

During cytokinesis, the plasma membrane pinches off to form two complete cells, each of which has the haploid, or n, number of chromosomes. The gametes are genetically dissimilar because they can contain different combinations of chromosomes and because crossing-over changes which alleles are together on a chromosome. Because both cells from meiosis I undergo meiosis II, four daughter cells are produced from the original diploid parent cell. Each daughter cell contains a unique combination of genes.

Animation Meiosis II

3D Animation Meiosis: Meiosis II

9.2 CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Meiosis consists of two divisions, each with four phases.

Check Your Progress 9.2

1. Describe the significance of prophase I and metaphase I of meiosis.
2. Compare the number and types of chromosomes that are present at metaphase I and metaphase II of meiosis.
3. Summarize the differences between meiosis I and meiosis II.

9.3 Meiosis Compared with Mitosis

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Contrast the events of meiosis I and meiosis II with the events of mitosis.
2. Contrast the events of meiosis I with the events of meiosis II.

Figure 9.6 compares meiosis with mitosis. As you examine this figure, notice that:

- Meiosis requires two consecutive nuclear divisions, but mitosis requires only one nuclear division.
- Meiosis produces four daughter nuclei, and there are four daughter cells following cytokinesis. Mitosis followed by cytokinesis results in two daughter cells.
- Following meiosis, the four daughter cells are haploid and have half the chromosome number of the parent cell. Following mitosis, the daughter cells have the same chromosome number as the parent cell.
- Following meiosis, the daughter cells are genetically different from each other and the parent cell. Following mitosis, the daughter cells are genetically identical to each other and to the parent cell.

Meiosis I Compared with Mitosis

The following events distinguish meiosis I from mitosis:

- During prophase I of meiosis, synapsis occurs. During synapsis, tetrads form and crossing-over occurs. These events do not occur during mitosis.
- During metaphase I of meiosis, tetrads align at the spindle equator, with homologous chromosomes facing opposite spindle poles. The paired chromosomes have a total of four chromatids each. During metaphase in mitosis, dyads align separately at the spindle equator.
- During anaphase I of meiosis, the homologous chromosomes of each tetrad separate, and dyads (with centromeres intact) move to opposite poles. Sister chromatids do not separate during anaphase I. During anaphase of mitosis, sister chromatids separate, becoming daughter chromosomes that move to opposite poles.

Meiosis II Compared with Mitosis

The events of meiosis II are like those of mitosis except that, in meiosis II, the cells have the haploid number of chromosomes.

Mitosis and Meiosis Occur at Different Times

Meiosis occurs only at certain times in the life cycle of sexually reproducing organisms, and only in specialized tissues. In humans, meiosis occurs only in the testes and ovaries, where it is involved in the production of gametes. The functions of meiosis are to provide gamete variation and to keep the chromosome number constant generation after generation. With fertilization, the full chromosome number is restored. Because unlike gametes fuse, fertilization introduces great genetic diversity into the offspring.

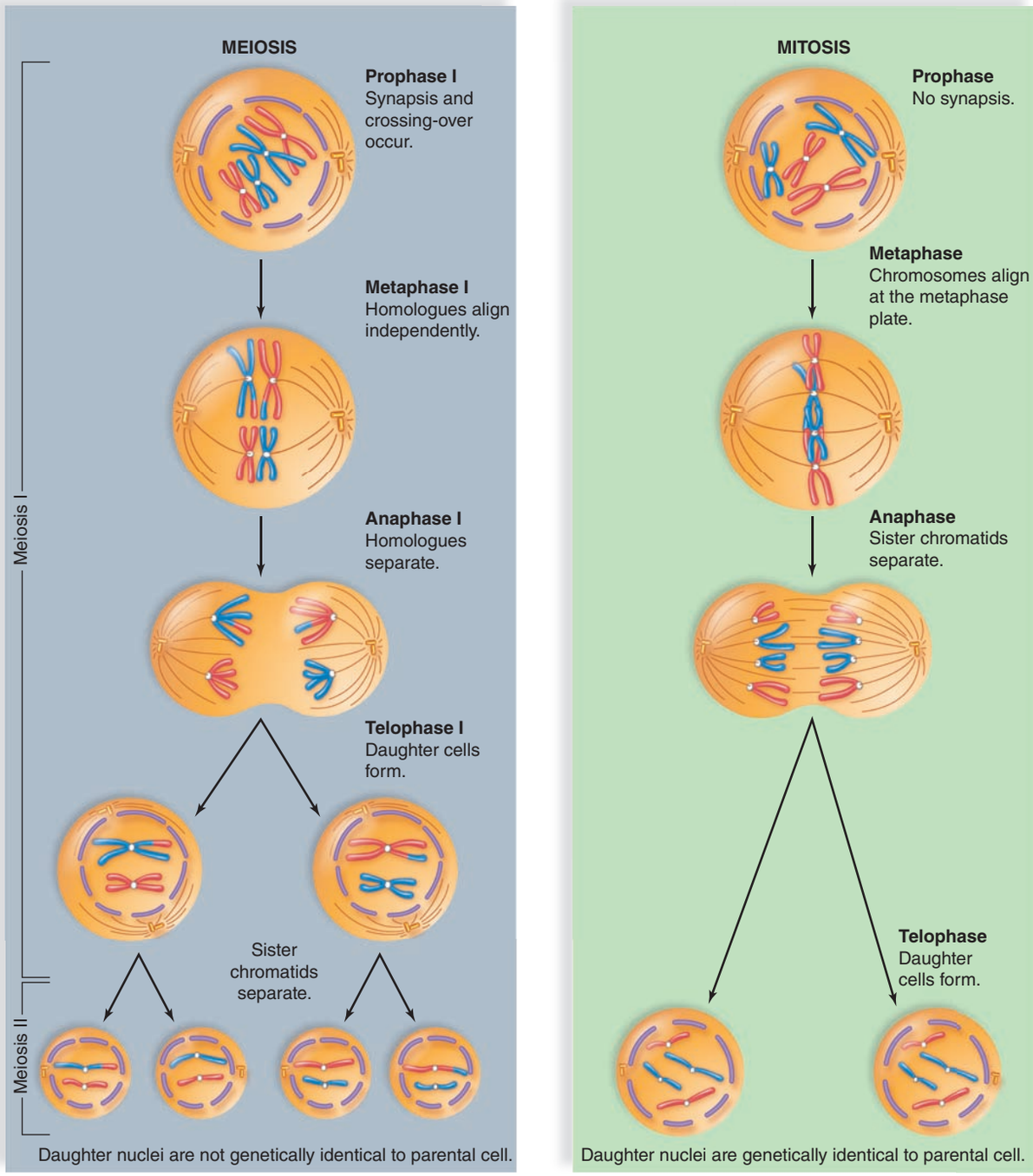


Figure 9.6 Meiosis compared with mitosis.

Notice that meiosis produces four haploid cells, whereas mitosis produces two diploid cells.

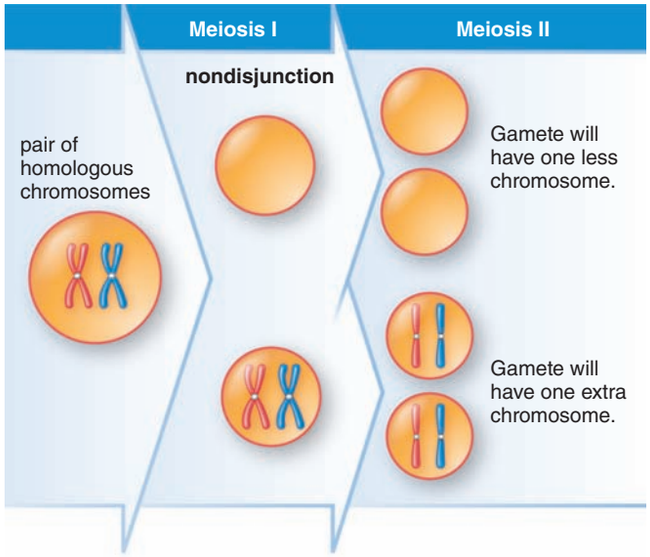
Mitosis is much more common because it occurs in all tissues during embryonic development and during growth and repair. The function of mitosis is to keep the chromosome number constant in all the cells of the body, so that every cell has the same genetic material. Consider that reproductive cloning results in an individual with the same genes as the parent because a single diploid nucleus gives genes to the new individual (see Fig. 12.4).

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

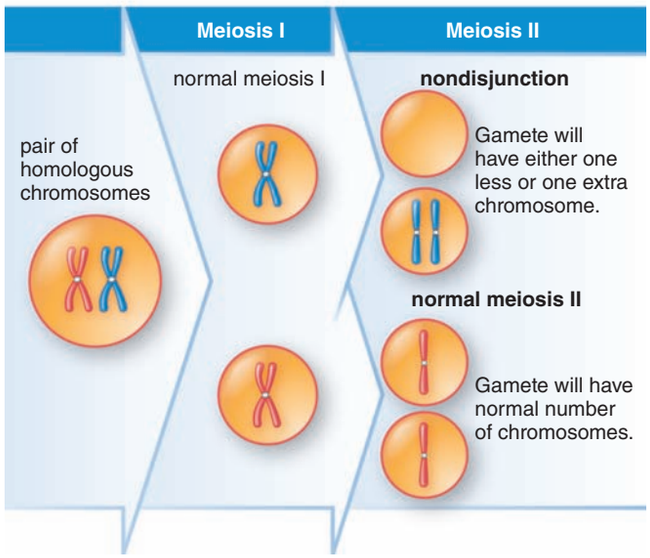
9.3 Meiosis differs from mitosis in that it produces four genetically unique cells.

Check Your Progress 9.3

1. Compare the number of cells produced by mitosis and meiosis.
2. Identify the number of chromosomes found in the daughter cells produced by mitosis and meiosis.
3. Summarize the major differences among the stages of meiosis I, meiosis II, and mitosis.



a. Nondisjunction during meiosis I



b. Nondisjunction during meiosis II

Figure 9.7 **Nondisjunction during meiosis.**

Because of nondisjunction, gametes either lack a chromosome or have an extra chromosome. Nondisjunction can occur **(a)** during meiosis I if homologous chromosomes fail to separate and **(b)** during meiosis II if the sister chromatids fail to separate completely.

9.4 Changes in Chromosome Number

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Define nondisjunction and briefly explain how nondisjunction may bring about an abnormal chromosome number.
2. List the causes and symptoms of Down syndrome.
3. List the syndromes that may result from an abnormal sex chromosome number and briefly explain the cause of each.

The normal number of chromosomes in human cells is 46 (2n = 46), but occasionally humans are born with an abnormal number of chromosomes because the chromosomes fail to separate correctly, called **nondisjunction**, during meiosis. If nondisjunction occurs during meiosis I, both members of a homologous pair go into the same daughter cell. If it occurs during meiosis II, the sister chromatids will fail to separate and both daughter chromosomes will go into the same gamete (**Fig. 9.7**). If an egg that ends up with 24 chromosomes instead of 23 is fertilized with a normal sperm, the result is a *trisomy*, so called because one type of chromosome is present in three copies. If an egg that has 22 chromosomes instead of 23 is fertilized by a normal sperm, the result is a *monosomy*, so called because one type of chromosome is present in a single copy.

Down Syndrome

Down syndrome, also called *trisomy 21,* is a condition which an individual has three copies of chromosome 21 (**Fig. 9.8**). In most instances, the egg contained two copies of this chromosome instead of one. However, in around 20% of cases the sperm contributed the extra chromosome 21.

Down syndrome is easily recognized by the following characteristics: short stature; an eyelid fold; stubby fingers; a wide gap between the first and second toes; a large, fissured tongue; a round head; a palm crease; and, at times, mental disabilities, which can sometimes be severe.

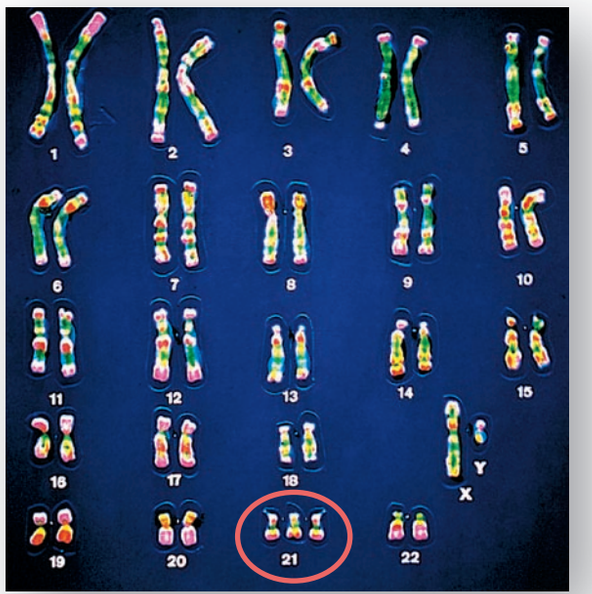


Figure 9.8 **Down syndrome.**

Down syndrome occurs when the egg or the sperm has an extra chromosome 21 due to nondisjunction in either meiosis I or meiosis II. When fertilized, the resulting cell has three copies of chromosome 21 (a trisomy; see red circle).

The chance of a woman having a Down syndrome child increases rapidly with age, starting at about age 40. The frequency of Down syndrome is 1 in 800 births for mothers under 40 years of age and 1 in 80 for mothers over 40. However, since women under 40 have more children nationally, most Down syndrome babies are born to this group than women over 40.

Abnormal Sex Chromosome Number

Nondisjunction during oogenesis or spermatogenesis can result in gametes that have too few or too many X or Y chromosomes. **Figure 9.9** can be used to illustrate nondisjunction of the sex chromosomes during oogenesis if we assume that the chromosomes shown represent X chromosomes.

Just as an extra copy of chromosome 21 causes Down syndrome, additional or missing X or Y chromosomes cause certain syndromes. Newborns with an abnormal sex chromosome number are more likely to survive than are those with an abnormal autosome number, and the explanation is quite surprising. Normal females, like normal males, have only one functioning X chromosome. The other X chromosome (or additional X chromosomes) becomes an inactive mass called a **Barr body** (after the person who discovered it).

In humans, the presence of a Y chromosome, not the number of X chromosomes, almost always determines maleness. The *SRY* (*s*ex-determining *r*egion *Y*) gene located on the short arm of the Y chromosome produces a hormone called testis-determining factor, which plays a critical role in the development of male genitals. No matter how many X chromosomes are involved, an individual with a Y chromosome is a male, assuming that a functional *SRY* is on the Y chromosome. Individuals lacking a functional *SRY* on their Y chromosome have Swyer syndrome, also known as an "XY female."

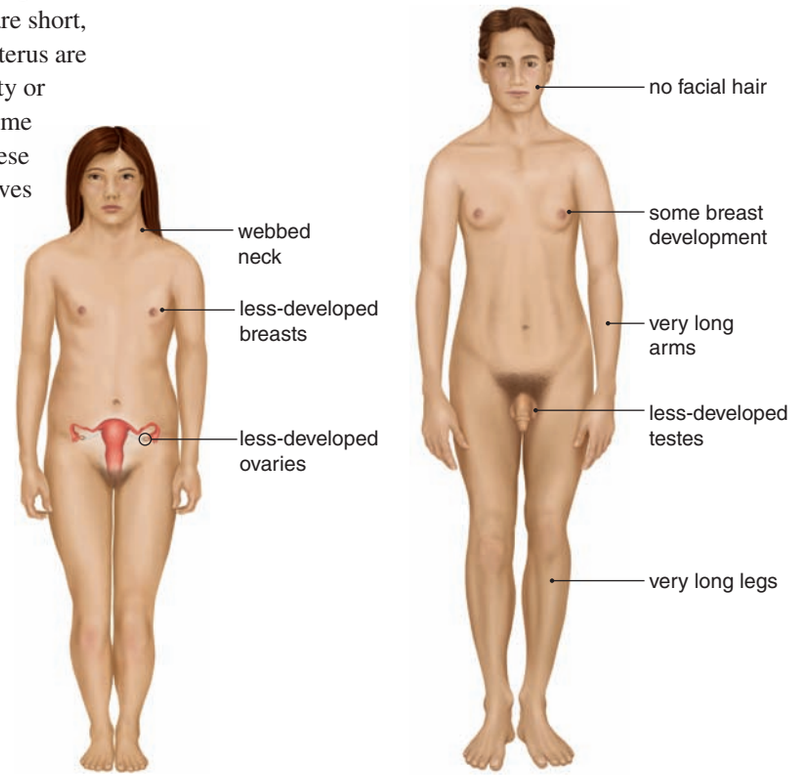
A person with **Turner syndrome** (45, XO) is a female. The number indicates the total number of chromosomes the individual has, and the O signifies the absence of a second sex chromosome. Turner syndrome females are short, with a broad chest and webbed neck. The ovaries, uterine tubes, and uterus are very small and underdeveloped. Turner females do not undergo puberty or menstruate, and their breasts do not develop (Fig. 9.9*a*). However, some have given birth following in vitro fertilization using donor eggs. These women usually have normal intelligence and can lead fairly normal lives if they receive hormone supplements.

A person with **Klinefelter syndrome** (47, XXY) is a male. A Klinefelter male has two or more X chromosomes in addition to a Y chromosome. The extra X chromosomes become Barr bodies. In Klinefelter males, the testes and prostate gland are underdeveloped. There is no facial hair, but some breast development may occur (Fig. 9.9*b*). Affected individuals generally have large hands and feet and very long arms and legs. They are usually slow to learn but not mentally handicapped unless they inherit more than two X chromosomes. As with Turner syndrome, it is best for parents to know as soon as possible that their child has Klinefelter syndrome because much can be done to help the child lead a normal life.

Connections: Health

Why is the age of a female a factor in Down syndrome?

There is a difference in the timing of meiosis between males and females. Following puberty, males produce sperm continuously throughout their lives. In contrast, meiosis for females begins about five months after being conceived. However, the process is paused at prophase I of meiosis. Only after puberty are a few of these cells allowed to continue meiosis as part of the female menstrual cycle. Since long periods of time may occur between the start and completion of meiosis, there is a greater chance that nondisjunction will occur, and thus there is a greater chance of producing a child with Down syndrome as a female ages.



a. A female with Turner (XO) syndrome b. A male with Klinefelter (XXY) syndrome

Figure 9.9 **Abnormal sex chromosome number.**

a. A female with Turner syndrome (XO) has a short, thick neck; short stature; and a lack of breast development. **b.** A male with Klinefelter syndrome (XXY) has immature sex organs and some development of the breasts.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Are individuals who are XYY more aggressive?

While the presence of the Y chromosome is a determining factor in the development of male sexual characteristics, the presence of two Y chromosomes, called Jacobs syndrome (XYY), does not appear to make an individual have a more aggressive personality. Early studies of Jacobs syndrome in the 1960s suggested that XYY males may be more prone to violent crimes; however, the study was conducted using a very small sample size, and subsequent studies quickly dispelled the link. While XYY males are known to have great height, and sometimes learning problems, there is very little evidence suggesting an increase in aggressive behavior. It is estimated that 1 in 1,000 males is actually an XYY individual.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

9.4 Errors during meiosis can result in offspring with abnormal numbers of chromosomes.

Check Your Progress 9.4

1. Describe how a zygote can receive an abnormal chromosome number.
2. Contrast monosomy with trisomy.
3. Distinguish between a chromosomal abnormality in the sex chromosomes from one in the autosomes.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	MP3 Files
9.1 How Meiosis Works • Meiosis with Crossing-Over **9.2** Meiosis I • Random Orientation of Chromosomes During Meiosis • Meiosis II	**9.1** Meiosis **9.2** Meiosis

3D Animation Meiosis

The 3D animation "Meiosis" provides for an interactive exploration of the phases of meiosis and the processes by which variation is generated .

SUMMARIZE

9.1 The Basics of Meiosis

Meiosis is a type of nuclear division that reduces the chromosome number and shuffles the genes between chromosomes. It produces haploid daughter cells with a unique combination of chromosomes and alleles.

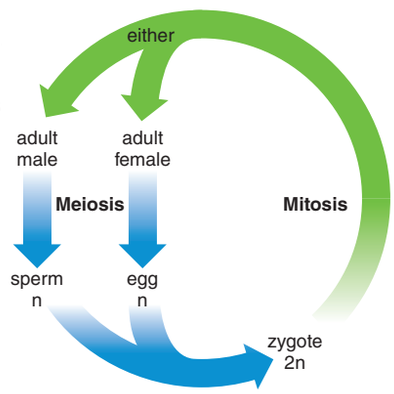
Homologous Chromosomes

Homologous chromosomes (**homologues**) are the same size with the same centromere position, and they contain the same genes. The **alleles** of a gene may differ between homologues. Diploid cells in humans have 22 homologous pairs of **autosomes** and 1 pair of **sex chromosomes**, for a total of 46 chromosomes. Males are XY and females are XX. In humans, the **haploid (n)** number of chromosomes is 23, and the **diploid (2n)** number is 46.

The Human Life Cycle

The human **life cycle** has two types of nuclear division:

- **Mitosis** ensures that every body cell has 23 pairs of chromosomes. It occurs during growth and repair.
- **Meiosis** is involved in the formation of gametes by either spermatogenesis (males) or oogenesis (females). It ensures that the gametes are haploid and have 23 chromosomes, 1 from each of the pairs of chromosomes.



Overview of Meiosis

Meiosis has two nuclear divisions called **meiosis I** and **meiosis II.** Meiosis results in four haploid (n) daughter cells.

- **Meiosis I: Synapsis** and the formation of **tetrads** lead to separation of homologous chromosomes. Because no restrictions govern which member goes to which pole, the gametes will contain all possible combinations of chromosomes.
- **Meiosis II:** The chromosomes are still duplicated at the beginning of meiosis II and are referred to as **dyads.** Sister chromatids later separate, forming daughter chromosomes. The daughter cells are haploid. If the

parent cell has four chromosomes, each of the daughter cells has two chromosomes. All possible combinations of chromosomes occur among the daughter cells.

- **Crossing-Over: Crossing-over** between **nonsister chromatids** during meiosis I shuffles the alleles on the chromosomes, so that each sister chromatid of a homologue has a different mix of alleles.
- **The Importance of Meiosis:** Meiosis is important because the chromosome number stays constant between the generations of individuals and because the daughter cells, and therefore the gametes, are genetically different. When fertilization occurs, the offspring are genetically unique.

9.2 The Phases of Meiosis

The First Division—Meiosis I

- **Prophase I:** Tetrads form, and crossing-over occurs as chromosomes condense; the nuclear envelope fragments.
- **Metaphase I:** Tetrads align at the spindle equator. Either homologue can face either pole.
- **Anaphase I:** Homologues of each tetrad separate, and dyads move to the poles.
- **Telophase I:** Daughter nuclei are haploid, having received one duplicated chromosome from each homologous pair.
- Following telophase I, the daughter cells enter **interkinesis.** There is no duplication of the DNA during interkinesis.

The Second Division—Meiosis II

- **Prophase II:** Chromosomes condense, and the nuclear envelope fragments.
- **Metaphase II:** The haploid number of dyads align at the spindle equator.
- **Anaphase II:** Sister chromatids separate, becoming daughter chromosomes that move to the poles.
- **Telophase II:** Four haploid daughter cells are genetically different from each other and from the parent cell.

9.3 Meiosis Compared with Mitosis

Table 9.1 summarizes the differences between meiosis and mitosis.

Table 9.1 Comparison of Important Events in Meiosis and Mitosis

Meiosis I	Mitosis
Prophase I	***Prophase***
Pairing of homologous chromosomes; crossing-over	No pairing of chromosomes; no crossing-over
Metaphase I	***Metaphase***
Tetrads at spindle equator	Dyads at spindle equator
Anaphase I	***Anaphase***
Homologues of each tetrad separate, and dyads move to poles.	Sister chromatids separate, becoming daughter chromosomes that move to the poles.
Telophase I	***Telophase***
Two haploid daughter cells, not identical to parent cell	Two diploid daughter cells, identical to the parent cell
Meiosis II	**Mitosis**
Prophase II	***Prophase***
No pairing of chromosomes	No pairing of chromosomes
Metaphase II	***Metaphase***
Haploid number of dyads at spindle equator	Diploid number of dyads at spindle equator
Anaphase II	***Anaphase***
Sister chromatids separate, becoming daughter chromosomes that move to the poles.	Sister chromatids separate, becoming daughter chromosomes that move to the poles.
Telophase II	***Telophase***
Four haploid daughter cells, different from each other genetically and from the parent cell	Two diploid daughter cells, genetically identical to the parent cell

9.4 Changes in Chromosome Number

Nondisjunction accounts for the inheritance of an abnormal chromosome number. Nondisjunction can occur during meiosis I if homologous chromosomes fail to separate and if both go into one daughter cell and the other daughter cell receives neither. It can also occur during meiosis II if chromatids fail to separate and if both go into one daughter cell and the other daughter cell receives neither.

Down Syndrome

In **Down syndrome**, an example of an autosomal syndrome, the individual inherits three copies of chromosome 21.

Abnormal Sex Chromosome Number

Examples of syndromes caused by inheritance of abnormal sex chromosomes are **Turner syndrome** (XO) and **Klinefelter syndrome** (XXY).

- **Turner syndrome:** An XO individual inherits only one X chromosome. This individual survives because, even in an XX individual, one X becomes a **Barr body**.
- **Klinefelter syndrome:** An XXY individual inherits two (or more) X chromosomes and a Y chromosome. This individual survives because one or more X chromosomes become a Barr body.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Meiosis occurs during sexual reproduction. It is often the basis for genetic diversity within a species.

9.1 Meiosis reduces and shuffles the chromosomes of an individual.

9.2 Meiosis consists of two divisions, each with four phases.

9.3 Meiosis differs from mitosis in that it produces four genetically unique cells.

9.4 Errors during meiosis can result in offspring with abnormal numbers of chromosomes.

For more information about sexual reproduction, see the following discussions:

Section 10.1 links the process of meiosis to Gregor Mendel's studies on patterns of inheritance.

Section 14.1 introduces the importance of genetic variation to the process of natural selection.

Section 29.2 explores some of the differences in meiosis between males and females.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

9.1 The Basics of Meiosis

1. Mitosis _____ chromosome number, whereas meiosis _____ the chromosome number of the daughter cells.
   a. maintains, increases
   b. increases, maintains
   c. increases, decreases
   d. maintains, decreases
2. A human cell contains _____ pair(s) of sex chromosomes.
   a. 1
   b. 2
   c. 22
   d. 23

9.2 The Phases of Meiosis

For questions 3–10, match the items to those in the key.

Key:

a. prophase I
b. metaphase I
c. anaphase I
d. telophase I
e. prophase II
f. metaphase II
g. anaphase II
h. telophase II

3. A cleavage furrow forms, resulting in haploid nuclei. Each chromosome contains two chromatids.
4. Tetrads form, and crossing-over occurs.
5. Dyads align at the spindle equator.
6. Four haploid daughter cells are created.
7. Homologous chromosomes separate and move to opposite poles.
8. Sister chromatids separate.
9. Tetrads align on the spindle equator.
10. Chromosomes in haploid nuclei condense.
11. Crossing-over
    a. involves recombination between nonhomologous chromosomes.
    b. involves recombination between sister chromatids.
    c. occurs only between members of a tetrad.
    d. occurs between adjacent tetrads.

9.3 Meiosis Compared with Mitosis

Key:

a. mitosis
b. meiosis
c. both mitosis and meiosis

12. produces daughter cells with different genetic combinations
13. produced haploid daughter cells
14. consists of prophase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase

9.4 Changes in Chromosome Number

15. Nondisjunction can result in
    a. monosomy.
    b. unequal cytoplasm.
    c. trisomy.
    d. Both a and c are correct.
16. An individual with Turner syndrome is conceived when a normal gamete unites with
    a. an egg that was produced by nondisjunction during oogenesis.
    b. a sperm that was produced by nondisjunction during spermatogenesis.
    c. Either a or b is correct.
    d. Neither a nor b is correct.

ENGAGE

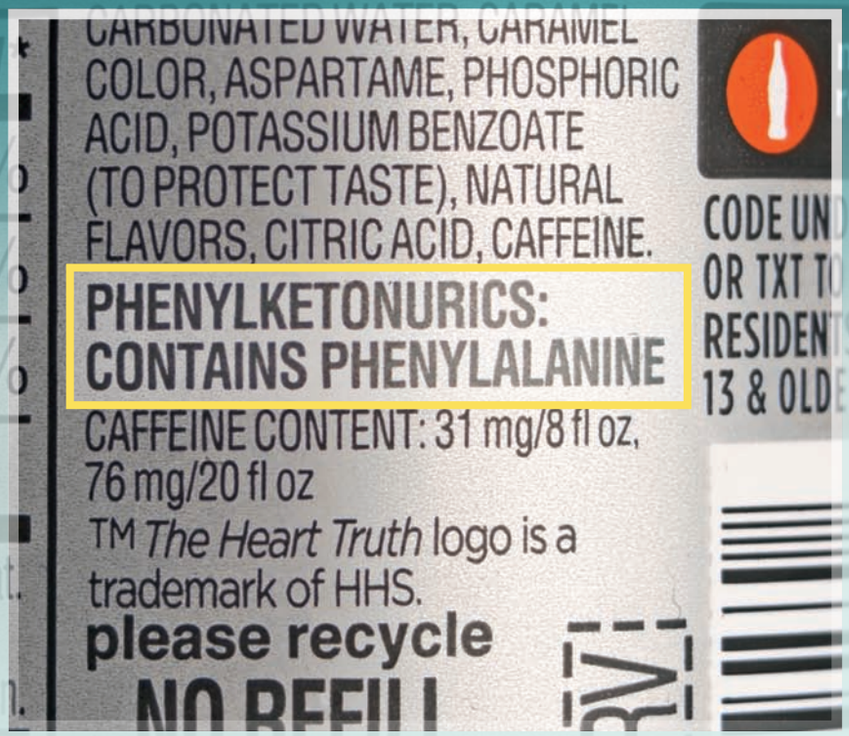
LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Mitosis & Meiosis

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Although most men with Klinefelter syndrome are infertile, some are able to father children. It was found that most fertile individuals with Klinefelter syndrome exhibit mosaicism, in which some cells are normal (46, XY) but others contain the extra chromosome (47, XXY). How might this mosaicism come about? What effects might result?
2. In the nineteenth century, physicians noticed that people with Down syndrome were often the youngest children in large families. Some physicians suggested that the disorder was due to "maternal reproductive exhaustion." What might be a reasonable explanation for the relationship between advanced maternal age and incidence of Down syndrome?
3. As you can reason, meiosis creates a very large amount of genetic variability within a population. Why might this be advantageous?



Phenylketonurics Warning

Have you ever looked at the back of a can of diet soda and wondered what the warning "Phenylketonurics: Contains Phenylalanine" means? Phenylalanine is an amino acid that is found in almost all foods containing protein. It is also found in the artificial sweetener aspartame. For most people, phenylalanine is an important amino acid, and one which does not present any problems since any excess is broken down by enzymes in the body. However, some people, called phenylketonurics, lack a functional copy of this enzyme, and thus are unable to break down the phenylalanine. The excess may accumulate in the body, causing a variety of nervous system disorders. An estimated 1 in 10,000 people in the United States are phenylketonurics.

Like the rest of us, you are the product of your family tree. The DNA you inherit from your parents directly affects the proteins that enable your body to function properly. Rare genetic disorders like phenylketonuria pique our curiosity about how traits are inherited from one generation to the next. In this chapter, you will learn that the process of meiosis can be used to predict the inheritance of a trait, and that the genetic diversity produced through meiosis can sometimes lead to phenylketonuria.

Through patterns of inheritance first described by Mendel, you will also learn that certain traits, such as phenylketonuria, are recessive and it takes two nonfunctional copies of that gene before you are affected. This chapter will introduce you to observable patterns of inheritance, including human genetic disorders that are linked to specific genes on the chromosomes.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How does the collection of chromosomes we inherit from our parents affect our bodies' appearance and function?
2. What patterns of inheritance apply to phenylketonuria?
3. How does meiosis help predict the probability of producing gametes and inheriting a trait?

10

Patterns of Inheritance

OUTLINE

10.1 Mendel's Laws 162
10.2 Mendel's Laws Apply to Humans 169
10.3 Beyond Mendel's Laws 173
10.4 Sex-Linked Inheritance 178

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a moment to review the following discussions.

Section 3.2 What are the roles of proteins and nucleic acids in a cell?

Section 8.2 What is a sister chromatid?

Section 9.2 How does meiosis introduce new genetic combinations?

10.1 Mendel's Laws

Learning Outcomes

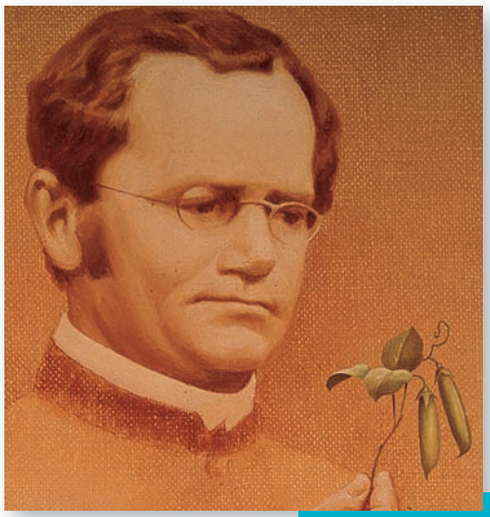
Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain Mendel's laws of inheritance.
2. Distinguish between genotype and phenotype.
3. Distinguish between dominant and recessive traits.
4. Apply Mendel's laws to solve and interpret monohybrid and dihybrid genetic crosses.
5. Recognize and explain the relationship between Mendel's laws and meiosis.

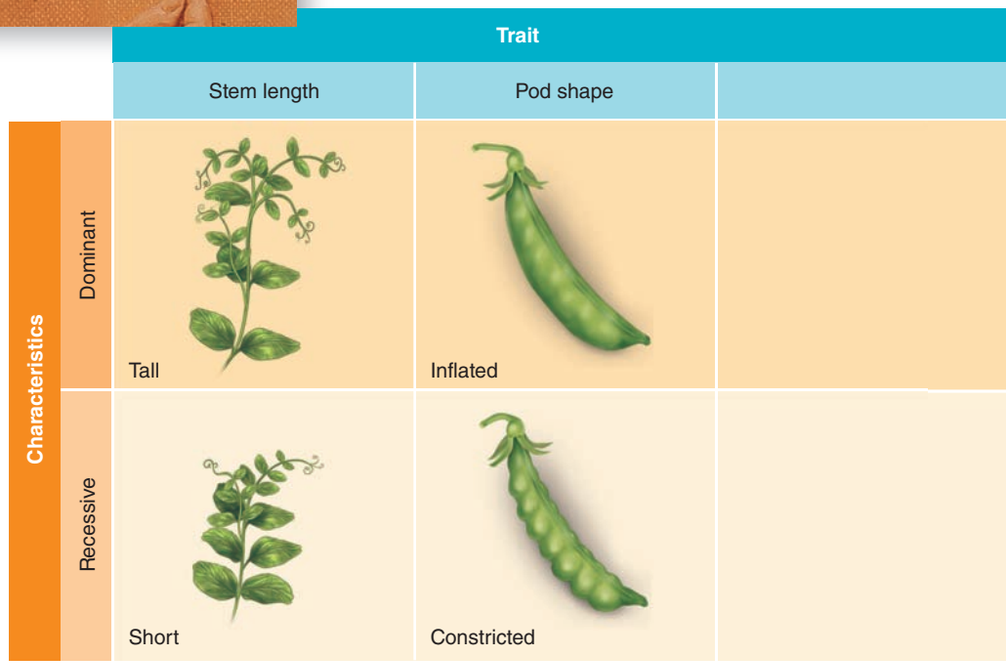
The science of genetics explains patterns of inheritance (why you share similar characteristics with your relatives) and variations between offspring from one generation to the next (why you have a different combination of traits than your parents). Virtually every culture in history has attempted to explain observed inheritance patterns. An understanding of these patterns has always been important to agriculture, animal husbandry (the science of breeding animals), and medicine.

Mendel's Experimental Procedure

Gregor Mendel was an Austrian monk who, after performing a series of ingenious experiments in the 1860s, developed a particulate theory of inheritance (**Fig. 10.1***a*). Mendel



a.



b.

Figure 10.1 **Mendel working in his garden.**

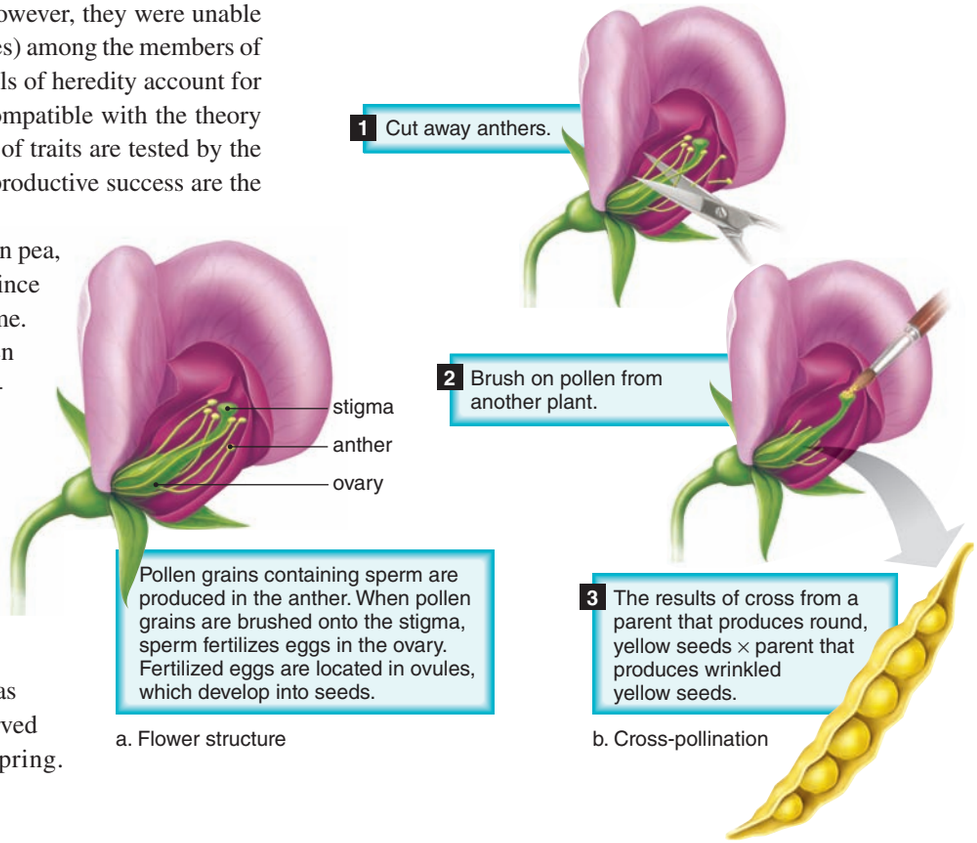
a. Mendel grew and tended the garden peas, *Pisum sativum,* he used for his experiments. **b.** Mendel selected these seven traits for study. Before he did any crosses, he made sure the parents bred true. All the offspring had either the dominant trait or the recessive trait.

studied science and mathematics at the University of Vienna, and at the time of his research in genetics, he was a substitute natural science teacher at a local high school. His background in mathematics prompted him to use a statistical basis for his breeding experiments. He prepared for his experiments carefully and conducted preliminary studies with various animals and plants. When Mendel began his work, most plant and animal breeders acknowledged that both sexes contribute equally to a new individual. However, they were unable to account for the presence of variations (or differences) among the members of a family, generation after generation. Mendel's models of heredity account for such variations. In addition, Mendel's models are compatible with the theory of evolution, which states that various combinations of traits are tested by the environment, and those combinations that lead to reproductive success are the ones that are passed on.

Mendel's experimental organism was the garden pea, *Pisum sativum*. The garden pea was a good choice, since it was easy to cultivate and had a short generation time. And although peas normally self-pollinate (pollen goes only to the same flower), they could be cross-pollinated by hand. Many varieties of peas were available, and Mendel initially grew 22 of them. For his experiments, Mendel chose 7 varieties that produced easily identifiable differences (Fig. 10.1*b*). When these varieties self-pollinated, they were *true-breeding*—meaning that the offspring were like the parent plants and like each other. In contrast to his predecessors, Mendel studied the inheritance of relatively simple and easily detected traits, such as seed shape, seed color, and flower color, and he observed no intermediate characteristics among the offspring. **Figure 10.2** shows Mendel's procedure.

Figure 10.2 Garden pea anatomy and traits.

a. In the garden pea, pollen grains produced in the anther contain sperm, and ovules in the ovary contain eggs. **b.** When Mendel performed crosses, he brushed pollen from one type of pea plant onto the stigma of another plant. After fertilization, the ovules developed into seeds (peas).



	Trait				
	Seed shape	Seed color	Flower position	Flower color	Pod color
	Round	Yellow	Axial	Purple	Green
	Wrinkled	Green	Terminal	White	Yellow

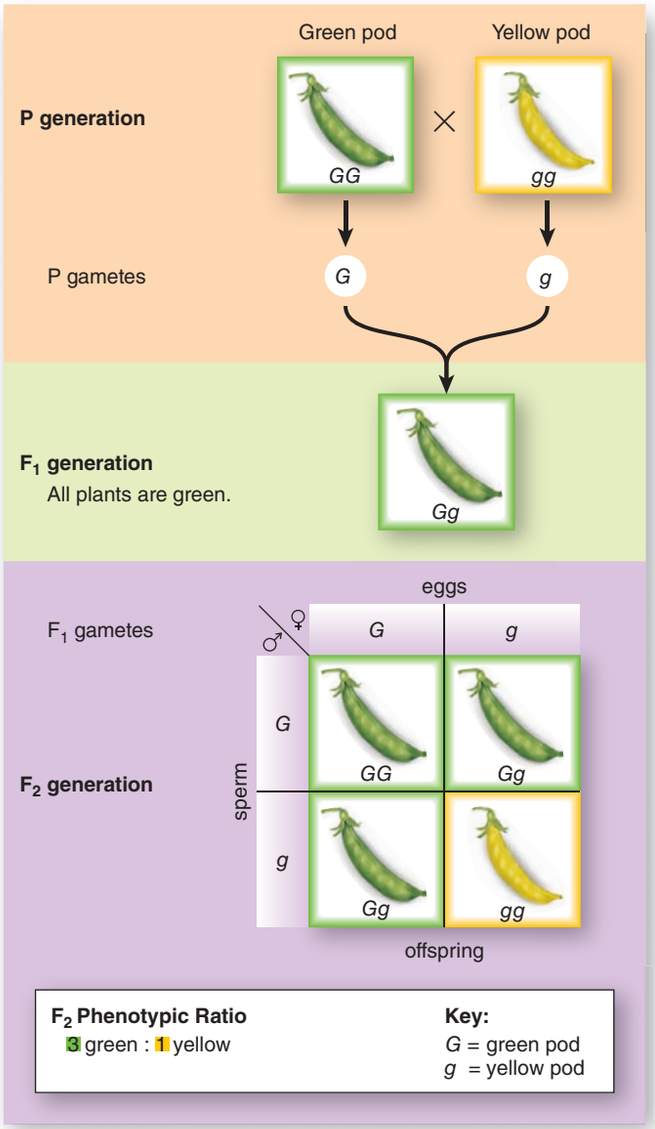


Figure 10.3 One-trait cross.

The P generation plants differ for one trait—the color of the pods. All the F_1 generation plants produced green pods, but the factor for yellow pods has not disappeared because one-fourth of the F_2 generation produced yellow pods. The 3:1 ratio allowed Mendel to deduce that individuals have two discrete genetic factors for each trait.

As Mendel followed the inheritance of individual traits, he kept careful records. He used his understanding of the mathematical laws of probability to interpret his results and to arrive at a theory that has since been supported by innumerable experiments. This theory is called the *particulate theory of inheritance,* because it is based on the existence of minute particles we now call genes. Inheritance involves the reshuffling of the same genes from generation to generation.

One-Trait Inheritance

After ensuring that his pea plants were true-breeding—for example, that his plants with green pods always produced green-pod offspring and the yellow-pod plants always produced yellow-pod offspring—Mendel was ready to perform a cross between these two strains. Mendel called the original parents the *P generation*, the first-generation offspring the F_1 (for filial) *generation*, and the second-generation offspring the F_2 *generation*. The diagram in **Figure 10.3** representing Mendel's F_1 cross is called a Punnett square (named after Reginald Punnett, an early-twentieth-century geneticist). In a **Punnett square,** all possible types of sperm are lined up vertically, and all possible types of eggs are lined up horizontally, or vice versa, so that every possible combination of gametes the offspring may inherit occurs within the square.

As Figure 10.3 shows, when Mendel crossed green-pod plants with yellow-pod plants, all the F_1 offspring resembled the green-pod parent. Did this mean that the other characteristic, yellow pods, had disappeared permanently? No, because when Mendel allowed the F_1 plants to self-pollinate, three-fourths of the F_2 generation produced green pods and one-fourth produced yellow pods, a 3:1 ratio. Therefore, the F_1 plants had been able to pass on a factor for the yellow color—it didn't just disappear. Mendel recognized that the F_1 plants produced green pods because the green color was dominant to the yellow color.

Mendel's mathematical approach led him to interpret his results differently than previous breeders had done. He reasoned that a 3:1 ratio among the F_2 offspring was possible only if (1) the F_1 parents contained two separate copies of each hereditary factor, one dominant and the other recessive; (2) the factors separated when the gametes were formed, and each gamete carried only one copy of each factor; and (3) random fusion of all possible gametes occurred upon fertilization. Only in this way would the yellow color reoccur in the F_2 generation.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Why so many peas?

Mendel did not have an obsession with pea plants. Instead, as a mathematician, he recognized that, in order for his results to be statistically significant, he needed to examine a large sample. Peas are ideal for this type of analysis, since each pea is an individual zygote. In his initial experiments, Mendel examined the shapes and colors of over 15,300 seeds and 1,700 pea pods! Only by doing so could Mendel be assured that the observed 3:1 ratios were not simply the result of randomness.

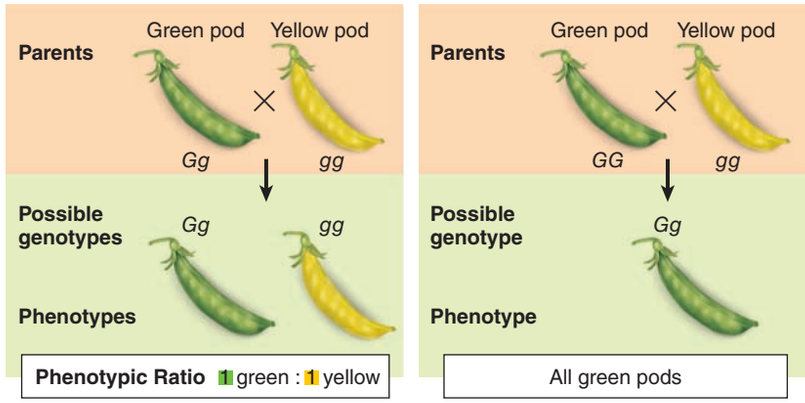


Figure 10.4 **One-trait testcross.**

Crossing an individual with a dominant appearance (phenotype) with a recessive individual indicates the genotype. **a.** If a parent with the dominant phenotype has only one dominant factor, the results among the offspring are 1:1. **b.** If a parent with the dominant phenotype has two dominant factors, all offspring have the dominant phenotype.

One-Trait Testcross

Mendel's experimental use of simple dominant and recessive characteristics allowed him to test his interpretation of his crosses. To see if the F_1 carries a recessive factor, Mendel crossed his F_1 generation plants with green pods with true-breeding plants with yellow pods. He reasoned that half the offspring would produce green pods and half would produce yellow pods (**Fig. 10.4***a*). And, indeed, those were the results he obtained; therefore, his hypothesis that factors segregate when gametes are formed was supported.

This is an example of a **testcross.** While the procedure has been largely replaced by more detailed genetic analyses (see Chapter 12), it is still used as an example of how to determine whether an individual with the dominant trait has two dominant factors for a particular trait. This is not possible to tell by observation because an individual can exhibit the dominant appearance while having only one dominant factor. Figure 10.4*b* shows that, if the individual has two dominant factors, all the offspring will produce green pods.

After doing one-trait crosses, Mendel arrived at his first law of inheritance, called the **law of segregation,** which is a cornerstone of the particulate theory of inheritance. The law of segregation states the following:

- Each individual has two factors for each trait.
- The factors segregate (separate) during the formation of the gametes.
- Each gamete contains only one factor from each pair of factors.
- Fertilization gives each new individual two factors for each trait.

The Modern Interpretation of Mendel's Work

In the early twentieth century, scientists noted the parallel behavior of Mendel's particulate factors and chromosomes and proposed the *chromosomal theory of inheritance,* which states that chromosomes are carriers of genetic information. Today, we recognize that traits are controlled by alleles (alternate forms of a gene) that occur on the chromosomes at particular locations called the **gene locus.** The **dominant allele** is so named because of its ability to mask the expression of the other allele, called the **recessive allele.** In many cases, the dominant allele is identified by an uppercase (capital) letter, the recessive allele by the same but lowercase (small) letter. In humans, for example, alleles for earlobe shape (see Fig. 10.8) might be *E* for unattached earlobes and *e* for attached earlobes. While the alleles on one homologue can be the alternates of the alleles on the other homologue, the sister chromatids have the same types of alleles (**Fig. 10.5**). Excluding environmental influences (see Section 10.3), an individual's traits are determined by the alleles that he or she inherits.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Why are some alleles dominant and others recessive?

Genes contain information for the production of a specific protein. In Mendel's peas, there is a gene for flower color that has two variations, or alleles. The dominant allele produces a purple flower color. However, the recessive allele codes for a variation of the protein that does not produce the correct pigmentation. In other words, it has lost its function. This results in a white color. In a flower with one dominant and one recessive allele (a heterozygote), the dominant purple color masks the recessive white color. As you will see later in this chapter, not all dominant alleles completely mask the recessive allele.

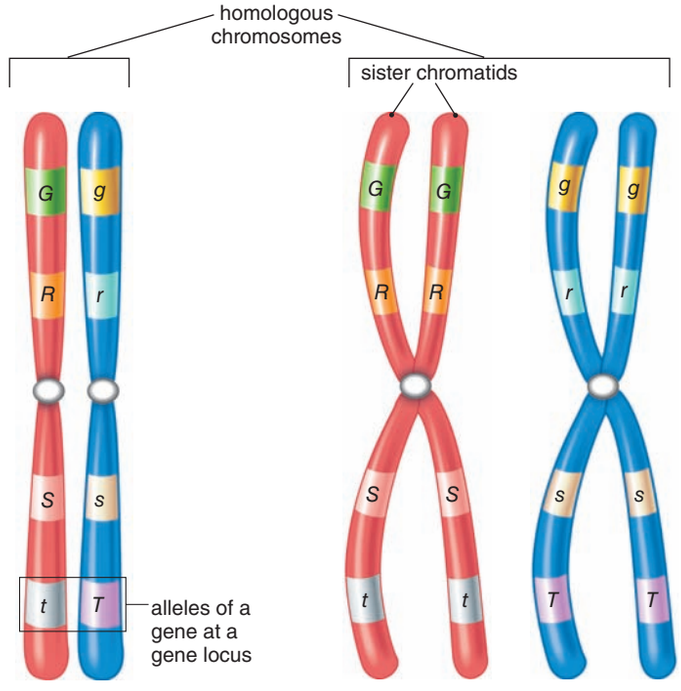


Figure 10.5 **Homologous chromosomes.**

a. The letters represent alleles—that is, alternate forms of a gene. Each allelic pair, such as *Gg* or *Tt,* is located on homologous chromosomes at a particular gene locus. **b.** Sister chromatids carry the same alleles in the same order.

Table 10.1 Genotype Versus Phenotype

Genotype	Genotype	Phenotype
EE	Homozygous dominant	Unattached earlobes
Ee	Heterozygous	Unattached earlobes
ee	Homozygous recessive	Attached earlobes

As you learned in Chapter 9, meiosis is the type of cell division that reduces the chromosome number. During meiosis I, the homologues separate. Therefore, the process of meiosis explains Mendel's law of segregation and why only one allele for each trait is in a gamete (see Fig. 10.8). When fertilization occurs, the resulting offspring again have two alleles for each trait, one from each parent.

Genotype Versus Phenotype Different combinations of alleles for a trait can give an organism the same outward appearance. For instance, *SS* and *Ss* individuals both have short fingers. For this reason, it is necessary to distinguish between the alleles present in an organism and the appearance of that organism.

The word **genotype** refers to the alleles an individual receives at fertilization. Genotype may be indicated by letters or by short, descriptive phrases. When an organism has two identical alleles, it is termed **homozygous.** A person who is homozygous dominant for unattached earlobes possesses two dominant alleles (*EE*). All gametes from this individual will contain an allele for unattached earlobes (*E*). Likewise, all gametes produced by a homozygous recessive parent (*ee*) contain an allele for attached earlobes (*e*). Therefore, all the offspring from this couple will have one allele for unattached earlobes and another for attached earlobes, as in *Ee*. This individual is **heterozygous,** meaning that he or she has two different alleles for the trait.

The word **phenotype** refers to the physical appearance of the individual. An organism's phenotype is mostly determined by its genotype. The homozygous dominant (*EE*) individual and the heterozygous (*Ee*) individual both show the dominant phenotype and have unattached earlobes, while the homozygous recessive individual (*ee*) shows the recessive phenotype and has attached earlobes (**Table 10.1**).

Two-Trait Inheritance

Mendel performed a second series of crosses in which he crossed true-breeding plants that differed in two traits. For example, he crossed tall plants having green pods (*TTGG*) with short plants having yellow pods (*ttgg;* **Fig. 10.6**). The F_1 plants showed both dominant characteristics (tall with green pods). As before, Mendel then allowed the F_1 plants to self-pollinate. Two possible results could occur in the F_2 generation:

1. If the dominant factors (*TG*) always go together into the F_1 gametes, and the recessive factors (*tg*) always stay together, then two phenotypes result among the F_2 plants—tall plants with green pods and short plants with yellow pods.
2. If the four factors segregate into the F_1 gametes independently, then four phenotypes result among the F_2 plants—tall plants with green pods, tall plants with yellow pods, short plants with green pods, and short plants with yellow pods.

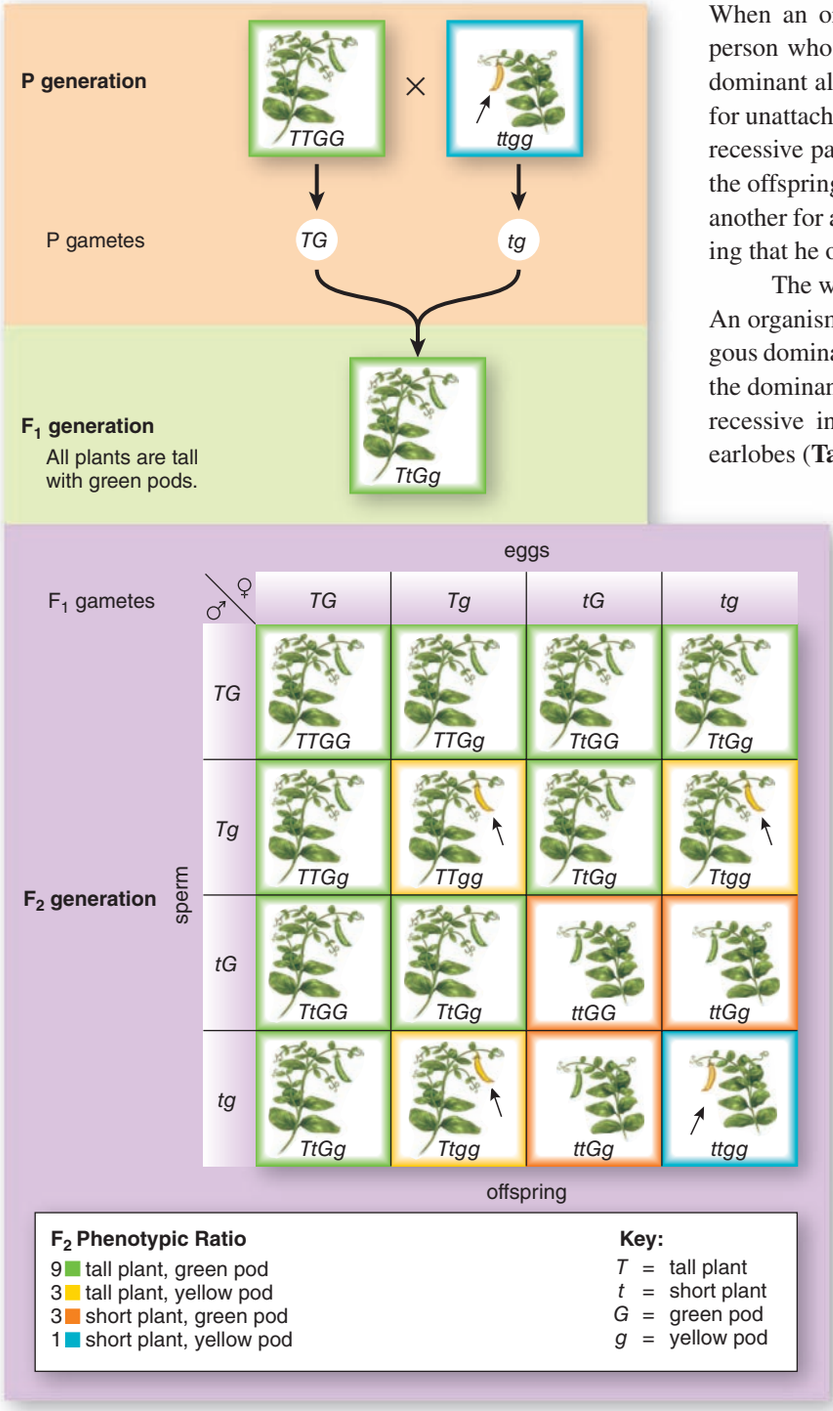


Figure 10.6 Two-trait cross done by Mendel.

P generation plants differ in two regards—stem length and pod color. The F_1 generation shows only the dominant phenotypes, but all possible phenotypes appear among the F_2 generation. The 9:3:3:1 ratio allowed Mendel to deduce that factors segregate into gametes independently of other factors. (Arrow indicates yellow pods.)

Figure 10.6 shows that Mendel observed four phenotypes among the F_2 plants, supporting the second hypothesis. Therefore, Mendel formulated his second law of heredity—the **law of independent assortment**—which states the following:

- Each pair of factors segregates (assorts) independently of the other pairs.
- All possible combinations of factors can occur in the gametes.

Note that when all possible sperm have an opportunity to fertilize all possible eggs, as in Figure 10.6, *the expected phenotypic results of a two-trait cross are always 9:3:3:1 when both parents are heterozygous for the two traits.*

Two-Trait Testcross

The fruit fly *Drosophila melanogaster,* less than one-fifth the size of a housefly, is a favorite subject for genetic research because it has several mutant characteristics that are easily determined. The *wild-type* fly—the type you are most likely to find in nature—has long wings and a gray body, while some mutant flies have short (vestigial) wings and black (ebony) bodies. The key for a cross involving these traits is L = long wings, l = short wings, G = gray body, and g = black body.

A two-trait testcross can be used to determine whether an individual is homozygous dominant or heterozygous for either of the two traits. Because it is not possible to determine the genotype of a long-winged, gray-bodied fly by inspection, the genotype may be represented as $L__\ G__$.

In a two-trait testcross, an individual with the dominant phenotype for both traits is crossed with an individual with the recessive phenotype for both traits because this fly has a *known* genotype. For example, a long-winged, gray-bodied fly is crossed with a short-winged, black-bodied fly. The heterozygous parent fly (*LlGg*) forms four different types of gametes. The homozygous parent fly (*llgg*) forms only one type of gamete:

P:	*LlGg*	×	*llgg*
Gametes:	*LG, Lg, lG, lg*		*lg*

As **Figure 10.7** shows, all possible combinations of phenotypes occur among the offspring. This 1:1:1:1 phenotypic ratio shows that the *L__G__* fly is heterozygous for both traits and has the genotype *LlGg*. Such an individual is called a **dihybrid.** A Punnett square can also be used to predict the chances of an offspring having a particular phenotype (Fig. 10.7). What are the chances of an offspring with long wings and a gray body? The chances are one in four, or 25%. What are the chances of an offspring with short wings and a gray body? The chances are also one in four, or 25%.

Mendel's Laws and Probability

The importance of Mendel's work is that it made a connection between observed patterns of inheritance and probability. When we use a Punnett square to calculate the results of genetic crosses, we assume that each gamete contains one allele for each trait (law of segregation) and that collectively the gametes have all possible combinations of alleles (law of independent assortment). Further, we assume that the male and female gametes combine at random—that is, all possible sperm have an equal chance to fertilize all possible eggs. Under these circumstances, we can use the rules of probability to calculate the expected phenotypic ratio. The *rule of multiplication* says that the chance

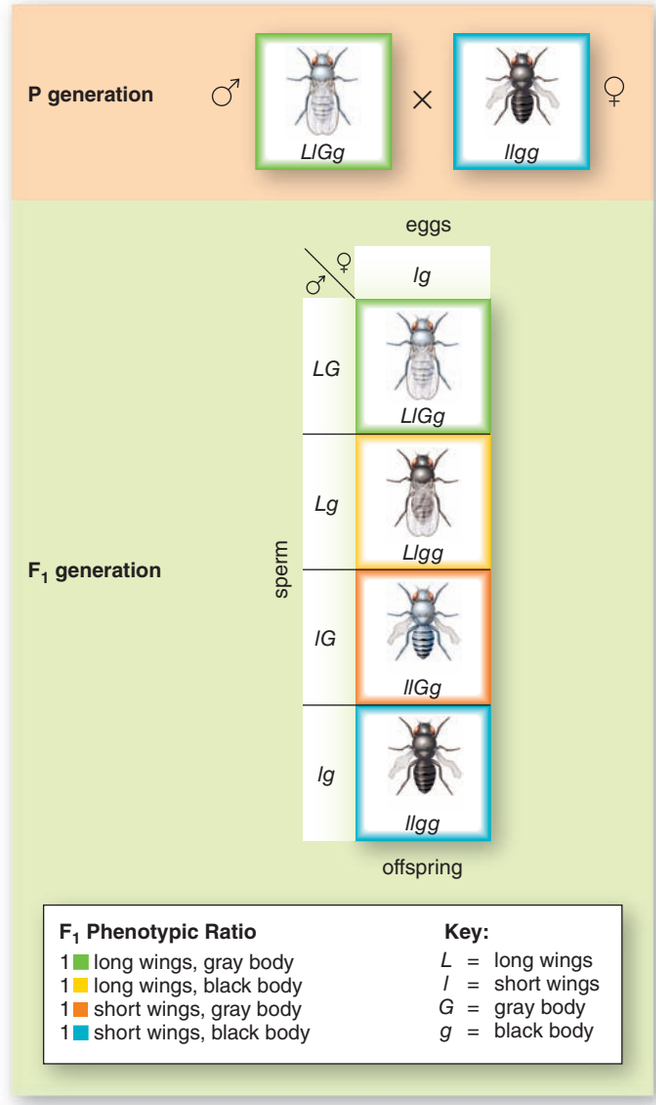
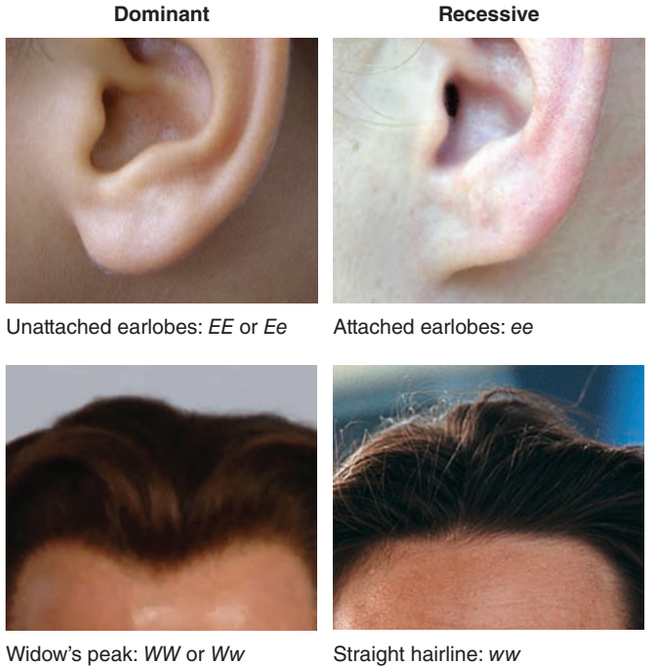


Figure 10.7 **Two-trait testcross.**

If a fly heterozygous for both traits is crossed with a fly that is recessive for both traits, the expected ratio of phenotypes is 1:1:1:1.



of two (or more) independent events occurring together is the product of their chances of occurring separately. For example, the chance of getting tails when you toss a coin is ½. The chance of getting two tails when you toss two coins at once is ½ × ½ = ¼.

Let's use the rule of multiplication to calculate the expected results in Figure 10.7. Because each allele pair separates independently, we can treat the cross as two separate one-trait crosses:

$$Ll \times ll\text{: Probability of } ll \text{ offspring} = \tfrac{1}{2}$$
$$Gg \times gg\text{: Probability of } gg \text{ offspring} = \tfrac{1}{2}$$

The probability of the offspring's genotype being *llgg is*

$$\tfrac{1}{2}\, ll \times \tfrac{1}{2}\, gg = \tfrac{1}{4}\, llgg$$

And the same results are obtained for the other possible genotypes among the offspring in Figure 10.7.

Mendel's Laws and Meiosis

Today, we are aware that Mendel's laws relate to the process of meiosis. In **Figure 10.8,** a human cell has two pairs of homologous chromosomes, recognized by length—one pair of homologues is short and the other is long. (The color signifies that we inherit chromosomes from our parents; one homologue of each pair is the "paternal" chromosome, and the other is the "maternal" chromosome.) When

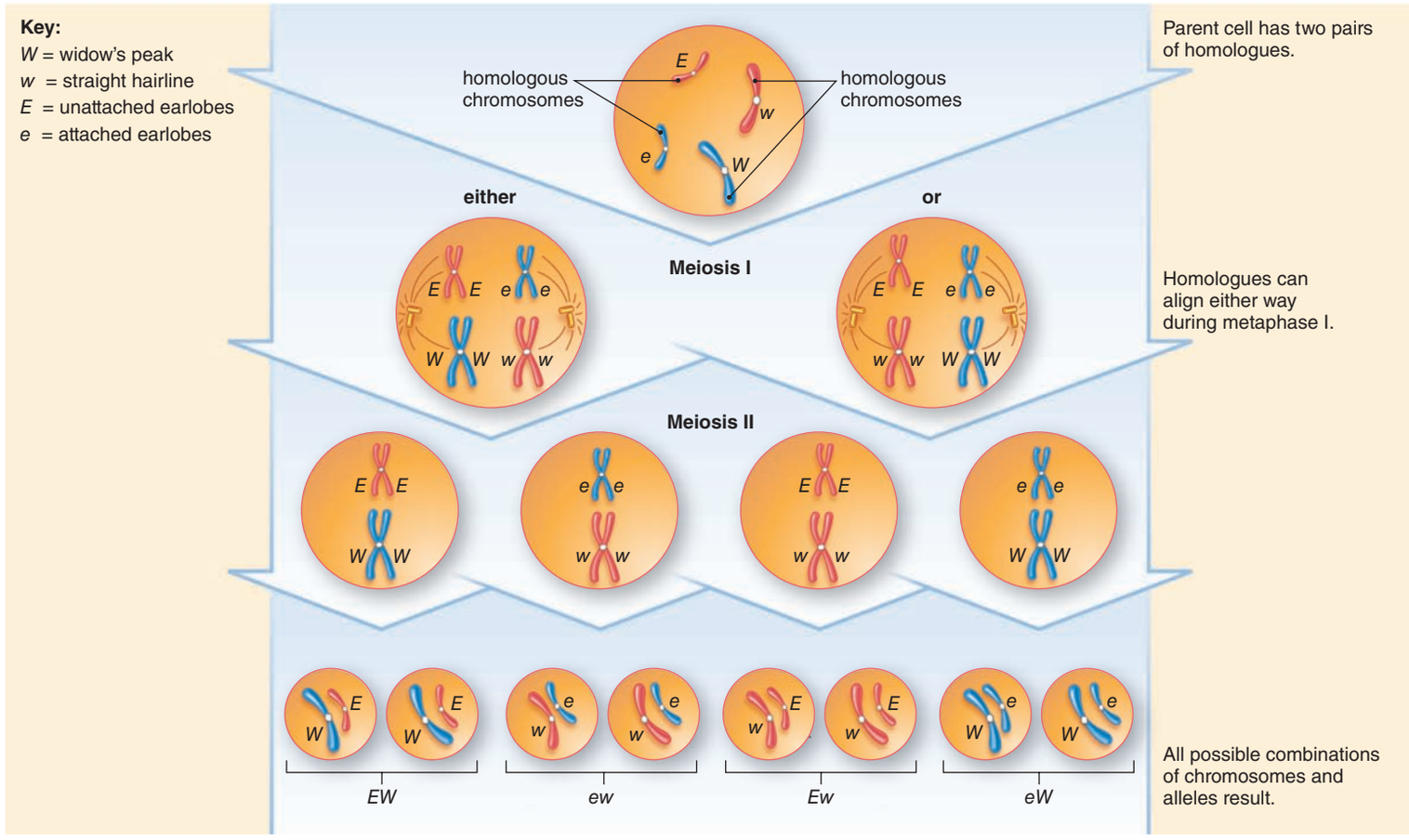


Figure 10.8 **Mendel's laws and meiosis.**

A human cell has 23 pairs of homologous chromosomes (homologues), of which 2 pairs are represented here. The homologues, and the alleles they carry, segregate independently during gamete formation. Therefore, all possible combinations of chromosomes and alleles occur in the gametes.

the homologues separate (segregate), each gamete receives one member from each pair. The homologues separate (assort) independently; it does not matter which member of each pair goes into which gamete. In the simplest of terms, a gamete in Figure 10.8 can receive one short and one long chromosome of either color. Therefore, all possible combinations of chromosomes are in the gametes.

The alleles *E* for unattached earlobes and *e* for attached earlobes are on one pair of homologues, and the alleles *W* for widow's peak and *w* for straight hairline are on the other pair of homologues. Because there are no restrictions as to which homologue goes into which gamete, a gamete can receive either an *E* or an *e* and either a *W* or a *w* in any combination because the chromosomes they are located on assort independently. In the end, collectively, the gametes will have all possible combinations of alleles.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Gregor Mendel established the laws of genetic inheritance.

Check Your Progress 10.1

1. Summarize what Mendel's experiments explained regarding patterns of inheritance.
2. Compare the phenotypic and genotypic ratios of a cross between two heterozygotes.
3. Solve the following (using Figure 10.6): What is the probablity of a Cross between two individuals with a *TtGg* genotype producing a short plant with green pods?
4. Explain how meiosis relates to Mendel's experiments with dihybrid crosses.

10.2 Mendel's Laws Apply to Humans

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Interpret a pedigree to determine if the pattern of inheritance is autosomal dominant or recessive.
2. List the characteristics of autosomal dominant and autosomal recessive pedigrees.
3. List some common genetic disorders, state the symptoms of each, and describe the inheritance pattern that each one exhibits.

Many traits and disorders in humans, and other organisms, are genetic in origin and follow Mendel's laws. These traits are often controlled by a single pair of alleles on the autosomal chromosomes. An **autosome** is any chromosome other than a sex (X or Y) chromosome. The patterns of inheritance associated with the sex chromosomes are discussed in Section 10.4.

Family Pedigrees

A **pedigree** is a chart of a family's history with regard to a particular genetic trait. In a pedigree, males are designated by squares and females by circles. Shaded circles and squares represent individuals expressing the genetic disorder. A line between a square and a circle represents a union. A vertical line going downward leads directly to a single child; if there are more children, they are placed off a horizontal line. The analysis of a pedigree is useful for genetic counselors. Once a pattern of inheritance has been established, the counselor can then determine the chances that any child born to the couple will have the abnormal phenotype.

Pedigrees for Autosomal Disorders

A family pedigree for an *autosomal recessive disorder* is shown in **Figure 10.9.** In this pattern, a child can be affected when neither parent is affected. Such heterozygous parents are *carriers* because, although they are unaffected, they are capable of having a child with the genetic disorder. If the family pedigree suggests that the parents are carriers for an autosomal recessive disorder, the

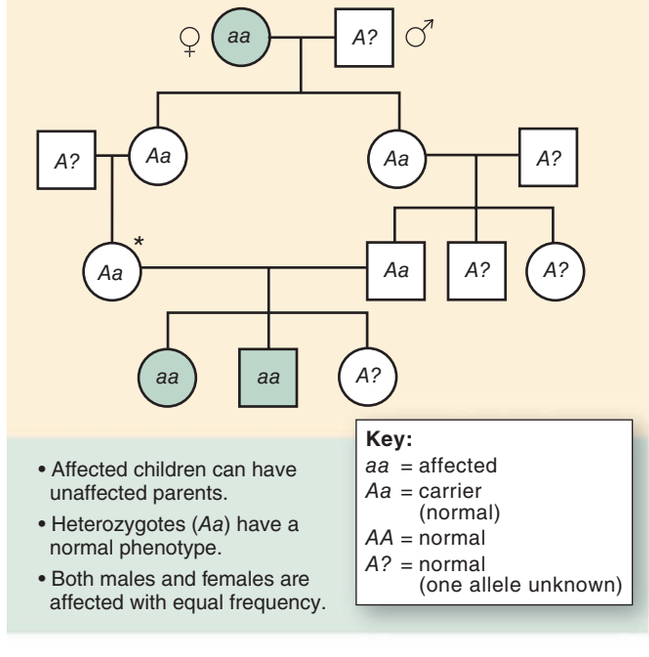


Figure 10.9 Autosomal recessive pedigree.

The list gives ways to recognize an autosomal recessive disorder. How would you know that the individual at the asterisk is heterozygous? (Answer is provided in Appendix A.)

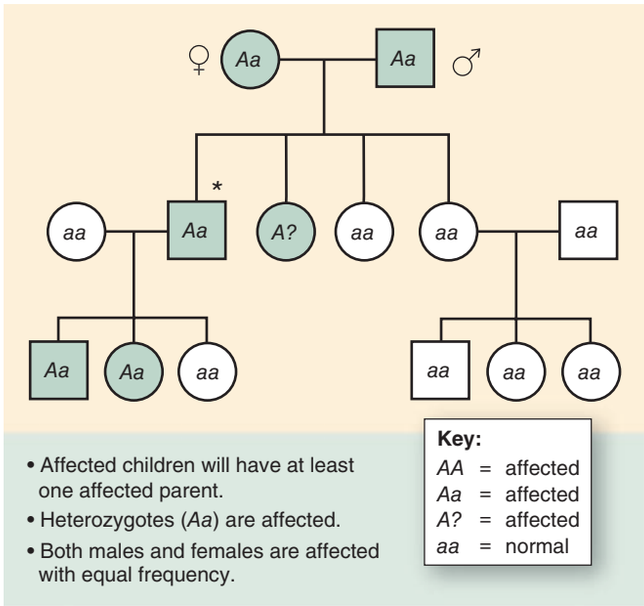


Figure 10.10 **Autosomal dominant pedigree.**

The list gives ways to recognize an autosomal dominant disorder. How would you know that the individual at the asterisk is heterozygous? (Answer is provided in Appendix A.)

*Note that the designated individual in Figure 10.9 does not have the disorder but she has children with the disorder. The designated individual in Figure 10.10 does have the disorder but he has children without the disorder.

Figure 10.11 **Methemoglobinemia.**

The hand of the woman on the right appears blue due to methemoglobinemia. Individuals with the disorder lack the enzyme diaphorase and are unable to clear methemoglobin from the blood.

counselor might suggest confirming this by doing the appropriate genetic test. Then, if the parents so desire, it would be possible to do prenatal testing of the fetus for the genetic disorder.

Figure 10.9 lists other ways that a counselor may recognize an autosomal recessive pattern of inheritance. Notice that, in this pedigree, cousins are the parents of three children, two of whom have the disorder. Aside from illustrating that reproduction between related individuals is more likely to bring out recessive traits, this pedigree also shows that "chance has no memory"; therefore, each child born to heterozygous parents has a 25% chance of having the disorder. In other words, if a heterozygous couple has four children, each child might have the condition.

Figure 10.10 shows an *autosomal dominant* pattern of inheritance. In this pattern, a child can be unaffected even when the parents are heterozygous and therefore affected. Figure 10.10 lists other ways to recognize an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance. This pedigree illustrates that, when both parents are unaffected, all their children are unaffected. Why? Because neither parent has a dominant gene that causes the condition to be passed on.

Genetic Disorders of Interest

Although many conditions are caused by interactions of genes and the environment (see Section 10.4), historically medical genetics has focused on disorders caused by single gene mutations. A few examples of autosomal disorders are provided in this section. Some of these disorders are recessive, and therefore an individual must inherit two affected alleles before having the disorder. Others are dominant, meaning that it takes only one affected allele to cause the disorder.

Methemoglobinemia

Methemoglobinemia is a relatively harmless autosomal recessive disorder that results from an accumulation of methemoglobin, an alternative form of hemoglobin, in the blood. Since methemoglobin is blue instead of red, the skin of people with the disorder appears bluish-purple in color (**Fig. 10.11**).

A persistent and determined physician finally solved the age-old mystery of what causes methemoglobinemia through blood tests and pedigree analysis of a family with the disorder, the Fugates of Troublesome Creek in Kentucky. On a hunch, the physician tested the Fugates for the enzyme diaphorase, which normally converts methemoglobin back to hemoglobin, and found that they indeed lacked the enzyme. Next, he treated a patient with the disorder in a simple but rather unconventional manner—by injecting a dye called methylene blue! The dye is a strong reducing agent capable of donating electrons to methemoglobin, converting it back into hemoglobin. The results were striking but immediate—the patient's skin quickly turned pink again.

Cystic Fibrosis

Cystic fibrosis is an autosomal recessive disorder that occurs among all ethnic groups, but it is the most common lethal genetic disorder among Caucasians in the United States. Research has demonstrated that chloride ions (Cl^-) fail to pass through a plasma membrane channel protein in the cells of these patients (**Fig. 10.12***a*). Ordinarily, after chloride ions have passed through the membrane, sodium ions (Na^+) and water follow. It is believed that the lack of water then causes abnormally thick mucus in the bronchial tubes and pancreatic ducts,

thus interfering with the function of the lungs and pancreas. To ease breathing in affected children, the thick mucus in the lungs must be loosened periodically, but still the lungs become infected frequently (Fig. 10.12*b*). Clogged pancreatic ducts prevent digestive enzymes from reaching the small intestine, and to improve digestion, patients take digestive enzymes mixed with applesauce before every meal.

Video
Good Poison

Alkaptonuria

Black urine disease, or *alkaptonuria,* is a rare genetic disorder that follows an autosomal recessive inheritance pattern. People with alkaptonuria lack a functional copy of the *homogentisate oxygenase* (*HGD*) gene found on chromosome 3. The HGD enzyme normally breaks down a compound called homogentisic acid. When the enzyme is missing, homogentisic acid accumulates in the blood and is passed into the urine. The compound turns black on exposure to air, giving the urine a characteristic color and odor (**Fig. 10.13**). Homogentisic acid also accumulates in joint spaces and connective tissues, leading to darkening of the tissues and eventually arthritis by adulthood.

Sickle-Cell Disease

Sickle-cell disease is an autosomal recessive disorder in which the red blood cells are not biconcave disks, like normal red blood cells, but are irregular in shape (**Fig. 10.14**). In fact, many are sickle-shaped. A single base change in the globin gene causes hemoglobin to differ from normal hemoglobin by a single amino acid. The abnormal hemoglobin molecules stack up and form insoluble rods, and the red blood cells become sickle-shaped.

Because sickle-shaped cells can't pass along narrow capillary passageways as well as disk-shaped cells can, they clog the vessels and break down. This is why persons with sickle-cell disease suffer from poor circulation, anemia, and low resistance to

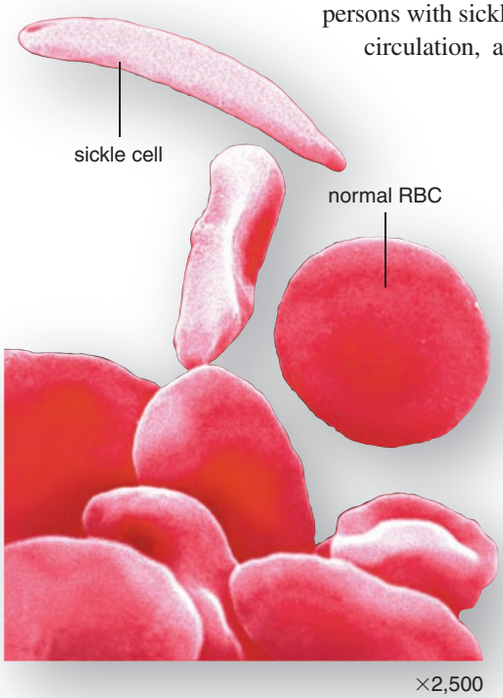
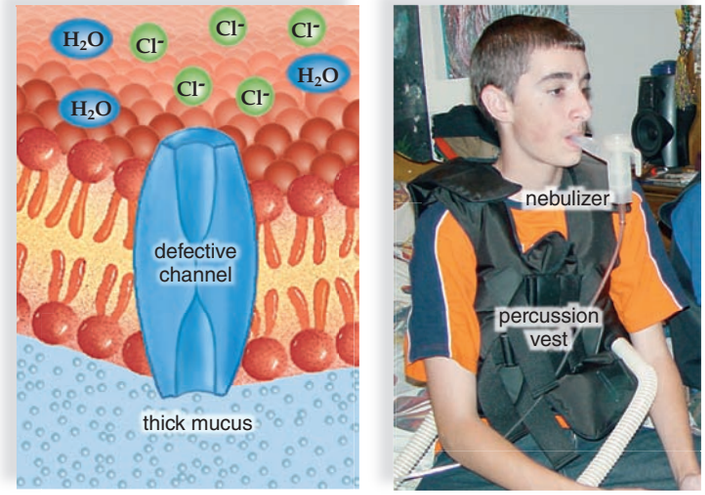


Figure 10.14 Sickle-cell disease.

Persons with sickle-cell disease have sickle-shaped red blood cells because of an abnormal hemoglobin molecule.



a. b.

Figure 10.12 Cystic fibrosis.

a. Cystic fibrosis is due to a faulty protein that is supposed to regulate the flow of chloride ions through the membrane using a channel protein. b. The nebulizer delivers drugs in an aerosol form to the bronchial passages.

Normal Alkaptonuria

Figure 10.13 Alkaptonuria.

Alkaptonuria is caused by the inability to metabolize a compound called homogentisic acid. Excess homogentisic acid accumulates in the urine, and its presence causes the urine to turn black when the urine is exposed to air.

infection. Internal hemorrhaging leads to further complications, such as jaundice, episodic pain in the abdomen and joints, and damage to internal organs.

Sickle-cell heterozygotes have normal blood cells but carry the sickle-cell trait. Most experts believe that persons that are heterozygous for the sickle-cell trait are generally healthy and do not need to restrict their physical activity. However, there occasionally may be problems if they experience dehydration or mild oxygen deprivation.

Osteogenesis imperfecta

Osteogenesis imperfecta is an autosomal dominant genetic disorder that results in weakened, brittle bones. Although at least nine types of the disorder are known, most are linked to mutations in two genes necessary to the synthesis of a type I collagen—one of the most abundant proteins in the human body. Collagen has many roles, including providing strength and rigidity to bone and forming the framework for most of the body's tissues. Osteogenesis imperfecta leads to a defective type I collagen that causes the bones to be brittle and weak. Because the mutant collagen can cause structural defects even when combined with normal type I collagen, osteogenesis imperfecta is generally considered to be dominant. Osteogenesis imperfecta, which has an incidence of approximately 1 in 5,000 live births, affects all racial groups similarly and has been documented as long as 300 years ago. Some historians think that the Viking chieftain Ivar Ragnarsson, who was known as Ivar the Boneless and was often carried into battle on a shield, had this condition.

In most cases, the diagnosis is made in young children who visit the emergency room frequently due to broken bones. Some children with the disorder have an unusual blue tint in the sclera, the white portion of the eye; reduced skin elasticity; weakened teeth; and occasionally heart valve abnormalities. Currently, the disorder is treatable with a number of drugs that help increase bone mass, but these drugs must be taken long-term.

Huntington Disease

Huntington disease is a dominant neurological disorder that leads to progressive degeneration of neurons in the brain (**Fig. 10.15**). The disease is caused by a single mutated copy of the gene for a protein called huntingtin. Most patients appear normal until they are middle-aged and have already had children, who may also have the inherited disorder. There is no effective treatment, and death usually occurs 10 to 15 years after the onset of symptoms.

Several years ago, researchers found that the gene for Huntington disease is located on chromosome 4. A test was developed for the presence of the gene, but few people want to know if they have inherited the gene because there is no cure. But now we know that the disease stems from an unusual mutation. Extra codons cause the huntingtin protein to have a series of extra glutamines. Whereas the normal version of huntingtin has stretches of between 10 and 25 glutamines, mutant huntingtin may contain 36 or more. Because of the extra glutamines, the huntingtin protein changes shape and forms large clumps inside neurons. Even worse, it attracts and causes other proteins to clump with it. One of these proteins, called CBP, helps nerve cells survive. Researchers hope to combat the disease by boosting CBP levels.

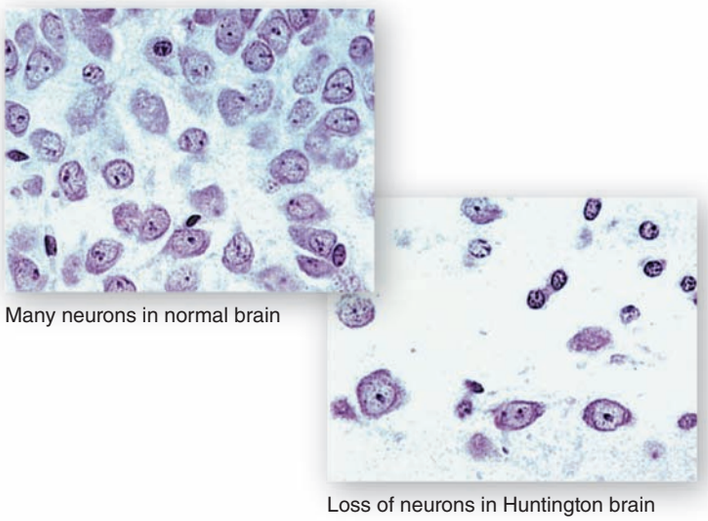


Figure 10.15 **Huntington disease.**

Huntington disease is characterized by increasingly serious psychomotor and mental disturbances because of a loss of neurons in the brain.

Check Your Progress 10.2

1. Summarize the difference in a pedigree showing autosomal recessive versus autosomal dominant inheritance.
2. Explain how two parents, neither one of which displays the phenotype of a disorder such as cystic fibrosis, can produce a child that has cystic fibrosis.
3. Describe the genetic causes of one autosomal recessive and one autosomal dominant disorder.

10.2 CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
Pedigree charts help counselors interpret inherited genetic disorders.

10.3 Beyond Mendel's Laws

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Solve and interpret genetic crosses that exhibit incomplete dominance and codominance.
2. Explain and provide examples of polygenic inheritance and pleiotropy.
3. Explain how the environment may influence the phenotype.
4. Explain what is meant by the term *linkage*.

Since Mendel's time, variations in the dominant/recessive relationship have been discovered. Some alleles are neither dominant nor recessive, and some genes have more than two alleles. Furthermore, some traits are affected by more than one pair of genes and by the environment. Together, these variations make it clear that the concept of the genotype alone cannot account for all the observable traits of an organism.

Incomplete Dominance

Incomplete dominance occurs when the heterozygote is intermediate between the two homozygotes. For example, when a curly-haired individual has children with a straight-haired individual, their children have wavy hair. When two wavy-haired persons have children, the expected phenotypic ratio among the offspring is 1:2:1—one curly-haired child to two with wavy hair to one with straight hair. We can explain incomplete dominance by assuming that only one allele codes for a product and the single dose of the product gives the intermediate result.

Another example of incomplete dominance in humans is familial hypercholesterolemia. This disease is due to a variation in the number of LDL-cholesterol receptor proteins in the plasma membrane. The number of receptors is related to the ability of the body to remove cholesterol from the blood. The fewer the number of receptors, the greater the concentration of cholesterol in the blood (**Fig. 10.16**). A person with two mutated alleles lacks LDL-cholesterol receptors. A person with only one mutated allele has half the normal number of receptors, and a person with two normal alleles has the usual number of receptors. People with the full number of receptors do not have familial hypercholesterolemia. When receptors are completely absent, excessive cholesterol is deposited in various places in the body, including under the skin.

The presence of excessive cholesterol in the blood causes cardiovascular disease. Therefore, those with no receptors die of cardiovascular disease as children. Individuals with half the number of receptors may die when young or after they have reached middle age.

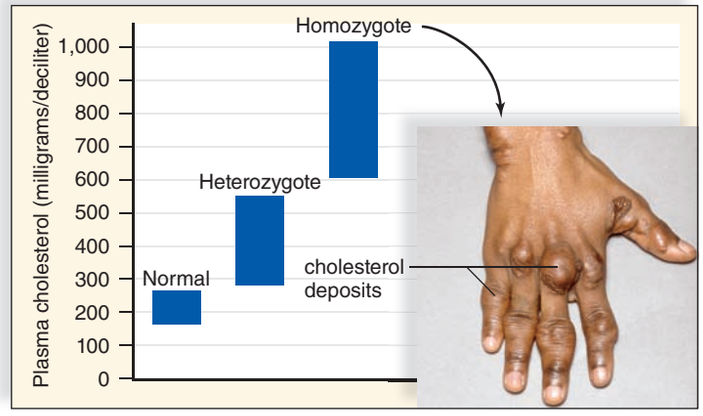


Figure 10.16 **Incomplete dominance.**

In incomplete dominance, the heterozygote is intermediate between the homozygotes. Familial hypercholesterolemia is an example in humans. Persons with one mutated allele have an abnormally high level of cholesterol in the blood, and those with two mutated alleles have a higher level still.

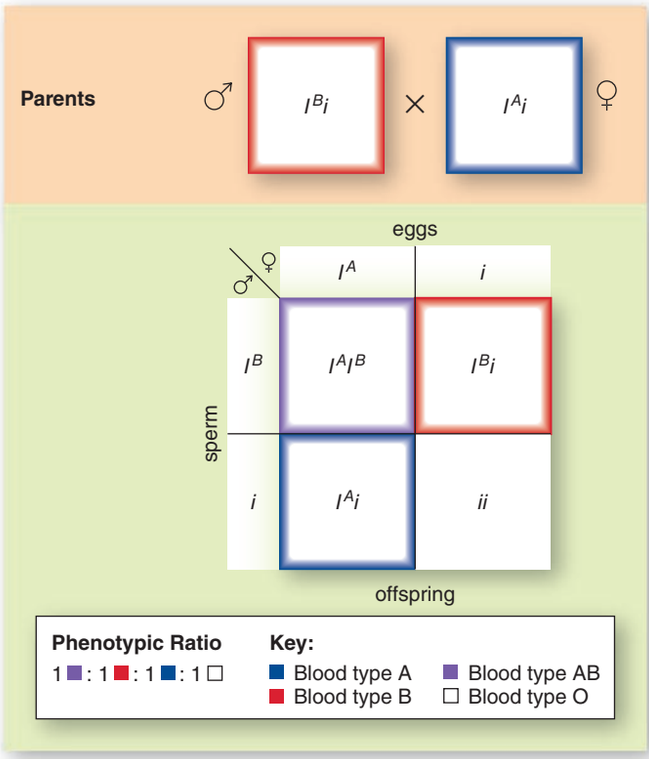


Figure 10.17 **Inheritance of ABO blood type.**

A mating between individuals with type A blood and type B blood can result in any one of the four blood types. Why? Because the parents are I^Bi and I^Ai. The i allele is recessive; both I^A and I^B are dominant.

Multiple-Allele Traits

In ABO blood group inheritance, three alleles determine the presence or absence of antigens on red blood cells and therefore blood type:

I^A = A antigen on red blood cells
I^B = B antigen on red blood cells
i = Neither A nor B antigen on red blood cells

Each person has only two of the three possible alleles, and both I^A and I^B are dominant over i. Therefore, there are two possible genotypes for type A blood (I^AI^A, I^Ai) and two possible genotypes for type B blood (I^BI^B, I^Bi). Type O blood can only result from one genotype (ii) because the i allele is recessive. But I^A and I^B are fully expressed in the presence of each other. Therefore, if a person inherits one of each of these alleles, that person will have a fourth blood type, AB. **Figure 10.17** shows that matings between certain genotypes can have surprising results in terms of blood type.

The possible genotypes and phenotypes for blood type are as follows:

Phenotype	Genotype
A	I^AI^A, I^Ai
B	I^BI^B, I^Bi
AB	I^AI^B
O	ii

Notice that human blood type inheritance is also an example of **codominance,** another type of inheritance that differs from Mendel's findings because more than one allele is fully expressed. When an individual has blood type AB, both A and B antigens appear on the red blood cells. The two different capital letters signify that both alleles are coding for an antigen.

Polygenic Inheritance

Polygenic traits, such as skin color and height, are governed by several sets of alleles. The individual has a copy of all allelic pairs, possibly located on many different pairs of chromosomes. Each dominant allele codes for a product; therefore, the dominant alleles have a quantitative effect on the phenotype, that is, these effects are additive. The result is a continuous variation of phenotypes, resulting in a distribution of these phenotypes that resembles a bell-shaped curve. The more genes involved, the more continuous the variations and distribution of the phenotypes. Also, environmental effects cause many intervening phenotypes. In the case of height, differences in nutrition bring about a bell-shaped curve (**Fig. 10.18**).

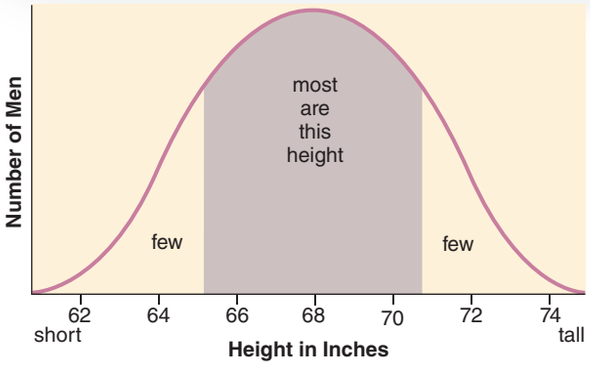


Figure 10.18 **Height in humans, a polygenic trait.**

When you record the heights of a large group of people chosen at random, the values follow a bell-shaped curve because multiple gene pairs control the trait. Environmental influences, such as nutrition, also affect the phenotype.

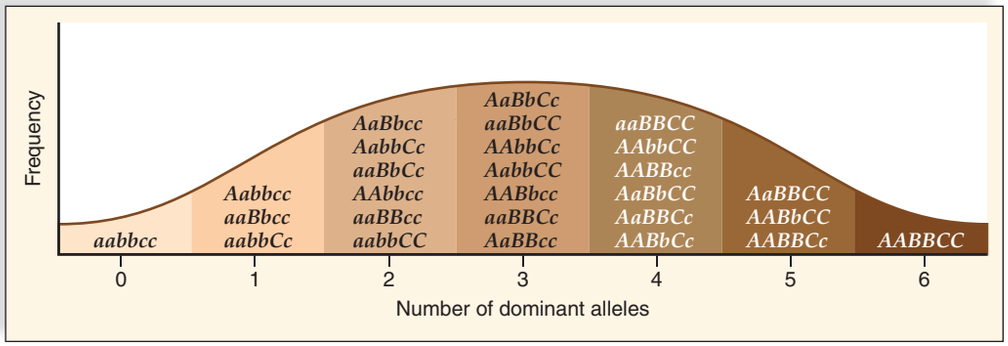


Figure 10.19 Skin color is a polygenic trait.

Skin color is controlled by many pairs of alleles, which results in a range of phenotypes. The vast majority of people have skin colors in the middle range, whereas fewer people have skin colors in the extreme range.

Skin color is the result of pigmentation produced by cells called melanocytes in the skin. We now know that there are over 100 different genes that influence skin color. For simplicity, skin color is an example of a polygenic trait that is likely controlled by many pairs of alleles. Skin color is controlled by many pairs of alleles, which results in a range of phenotypes. The vast majority of people have skin colors in the middle range, whereas fewer people have skin colors in the extreme range.

Even so, we will use the simplest model and we will assume that skin has only three pairs of alleles (*Aa* and *Bb* and *Cc*) and that each capital letter contributes pigment to the skin. When a very dark person reproduces with a very light person, the children have medium-brown skin. When two people with the genotype *AaBbCc* reproduce with one another, individuals may range in skin color from very dark to very light. The distribution of these phenotypes typically follows a bell-shaped curve, meaning that few people have the extreme phenotypes and most people have the phenotype that lies in the middle. A bell-shaped curve is a common identifying characteristic of a polygenic trait (**Fig. 10.19**).

However, skin color is also influenced by the sunlight in the environment. Notice again that a range of phenotypes exists for each genotype. For example, individuals who are *AaBbCc* may vary in their skin color, even though they possess the same genotype, and several possible phenotypes fall between the two extremes. The interaction of the environment with polygenic traits is discussed next.

Environmental Influences

Multifactorial traits are those controlled by polygenes subject to environmental influences. Many genetic disorders, such as cleft lip and/or palate, clubfoot, congenital dislocations of the hip, hypertension, diabetes, schizophrenia, and even allergies and cancers, are most likely multifactorial because they are likely due to the combined action of many genes plus environmental influences. The relative importance of genetic and environmental influences on the phenotype can vary and often it is a challenge to determine how much of the varation in the phenotype may be attributed to each factor. This is especially true in complex polygenic traits where there may be an additive effect of multiple genes on the phenotype. If each gene has several alleles, and each allele responds slightly differently to environmental factors, then the phenotype can vary considerably. Multifactorial traits are a real challenge for drug manufacturers, since they must determine the response to a new drug based on genetic factors (for example, the ethnic background of the patient) and environmental factors (such as diet).

Temperature is an example of an environmental factor that can influence the phenotypes of plants and animals. Primroses have white flowers when grown above 32°C but red flowers when grown at 24°C. The coats of Siamese

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Is skin color a good indication of a person's race?

The simple answer to this question is no, an individual's skin color is not a true indicator of his or her genetic heritage. People of the same skin color are not necessarily genetically related. Because only a few genes control skin color, a person's skin color may not indicate his or her ancestors' origins. Scientists are actively investigating the genetic basis of race and have found some interesting relationships between a person's genetic heritage and medicine. This will be explored in greater detail in Chapter 22.

Figure 10.20 Coat color in Himalayan rabbits.

The dark color on the ears, nose, and feet of these rabbits is believed to be due to a lower body temperature in these areas.

cats and Himalayan rabbits are darker in color at the ears, nose, paws, and tail. Himalayan rabbits are known to be homozygous for the allele *ch,* which is involved in the production of melanin. Experimental evidence suggests that the enzyme encoded by this gene is active only at a low temperature and that, therefore, black fur occurs only at the extremities where body heat is lost to the environment (**Fig. 10.20**). When the animal is placed in a warmer environment, new fur on these body parts is light in color.

In humans, the study of multifactorial traits contributes to our understanding of the nuture versus nature debate. Researchers are trying to determine what percentage of various traits is due to nature (inheritance) and what percentage is due to nurture (the environment). Some studies use twins separated from birth, because if identical twins in different environments share a trait, that trait is most likely inherited. Identical twins are more similar in their intellectual talents, personality traits, and levels of lifelong happiness than are fraternal twins separated from birth. Biologists conclude that all behavioral traits are partly determined by inheritance and that the genes for these traits act together in complex combinations to produce a phenotype that is modified by environmental influences.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Are all dominant alleles "normal"?

In most examples, the dominant allele represents the "normal" allele and the recessive allele represents the altered version. However, this is not always the case. For example, one form of polydactyly—the presence of extra fingers or toes—is due to the inheritance of a dominant allele. The "normal" allele is recessive, meaning that an individual only needs to inherit one copy of the polydactyly allele in order to display the phenotype. Polydactyly is also an example of a trait that has variable expressivity, meaning that for one person the presence of the allele may cause an extra finger but in another person it may be an extra toe.

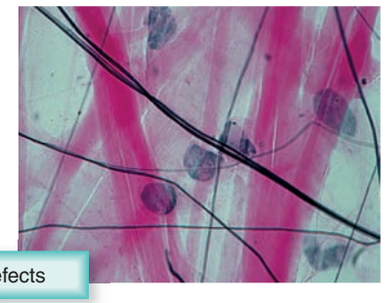
Pleiotropy

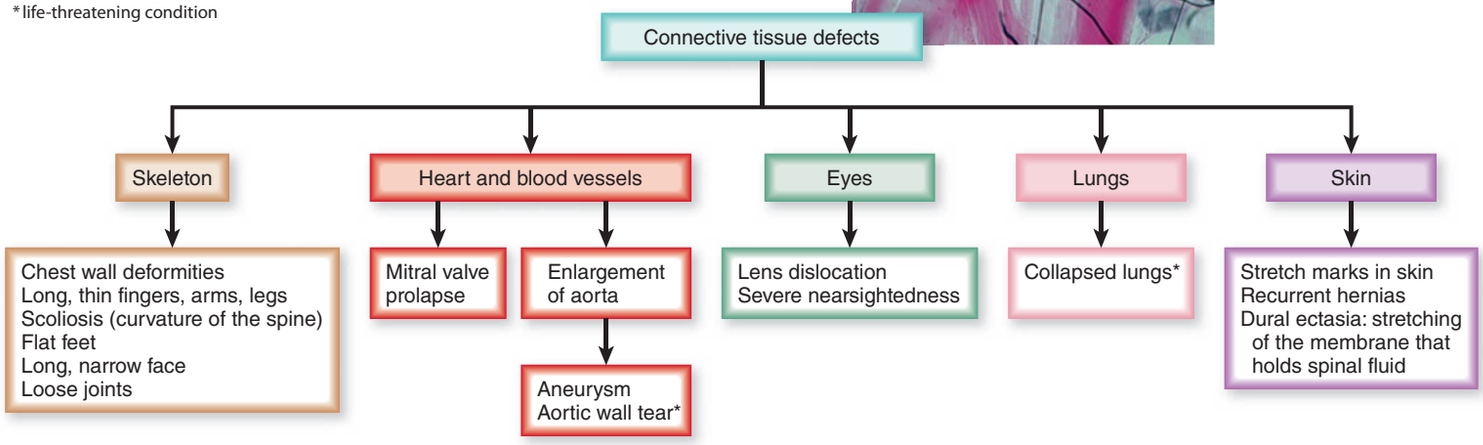
Pleiotropy occurs when a single gene has more than one effect. Often, this leads to a *syndrome,* a group of symptoms that appear together and indicate the presence of a particular genetic mutation. For example, persons with Marfan syndrome have disproportionately long arms, legs, hands, and feet; a weakened aorta; and poor eyesight (**Fig. 10.21**). All of these characteristics are due to the production of abnormal connective tissue. Marfan syndrome has been linked to a mutated gene (*FBN1*) on chromosome 15 that ordinarily specifies a functional protein called fibrillin. This protein is essential for the formation of elastic fibers in connective tissue. Without the structural support of normal connective tissue, the aorta can

Figure 10.21 Marfan syndrome, multiple effects of a single human gene.

Individuals with Marfan syndrome exhibit defects in the connective tissue throughout the body. Important changes occur in the skeleton, heart, blood vessels, eyes, lungs, and skin. All these conditions are due to mutation of the gene *FBN1*, which codes for a constituent of connective tissue.

*life-threatening condition





burst, particularly if the person is engaged in a strenuous sport, such as volleyball or basketball. Flo Hyman may have been the best American woman volleyball player ever, but she fell to the floor and died when only 31 years old because her aorta gave way during a game. Now that coaches are aware of Marfan syndrome, they are on the lookout for it among very tall basketball players. Chris Weisheit, whose career was cut short after he was diagnosed with Marfan syndrome, said, "I don't want to die playing basketball."

Many other disorders, including sickle-cell disease and porphyria, are also examples of pleiotropic traits. Porphyria is caused by a chemical insufficiency in the production of hemoglobin, the pigment that makes red blood cells red. The symptoms of porphyria are photosensitivity, strong abdominal pain, port-wine-colored urine, and paralysis in the arms and legs. Many members of the British royal family in the late 1700s and early 1800s suffered from this disorder, which can lead to epileptic convulsions, bizarre behavior, and coma. The vampire legends are most likely also based on individuals with a specific form of porphyria.

Linkage

Not long after Mendel's study of inheritance, investigators began to realize that many different types of alleles are on a single chromosome. A chromosome doesn't contain just one or two alleles; it contains a long series of alleles in a definite sequence. The sequence is fixed because each allele has its own locus on a chromosome. All the alleles on one chromosome form a **linkage group** because they tend to be inherited together. For example, **Figure 10.22** shows some of the traits in the chromosome 19 linkage group of humans.

When we do two-trait crosses (see Fig. 10.6), we are assuming that the alleles are on nonhomologous chromosomes and therefore are not linked. Alleles that are linked do not show independent assortment and therefore do not follow the typical Mendelian genotypic and phenotypic ratios. Historically, reseachers used the differences between the expected Mendelian ratios and observed ratios of linked genes to construct genetic maps of the chromosomes. These maps indicated the relative distance between the genes on a chromosome. Today, genetic maps of chromosomes are obtained by direct sequencing of the chromosomes and other biochemical procedures.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

New variations in genetic inheritance have been discovered since Mendel's laws were established.

Figure 10.22 **A selection of traits located on human chromosome 19 (not to scale).**

These traits form a single linkage group. In human genetics, genes are sometimes named after the disease that they are associated with, not their function in the body.

Check Your Progress 10.3

1. Define incomplete dominance and give an example.
2. Describe codominance and list all the possible genotypes for the ABO blood group in humans.
3. Compare and contrast polygenic inheritance, multifactorial traits, and pleiotropy.
4. Explain how gene linkage might upset normal Mendelian patterns of inheritance.

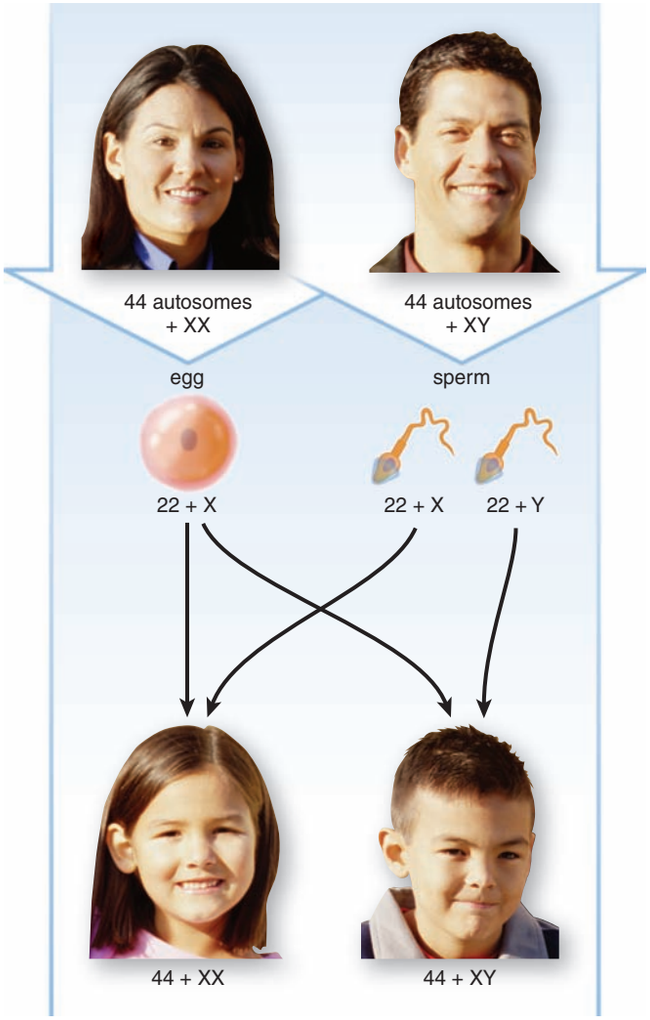


Figure 10.23 **Sex determination in human beings.**

Sperm determine the sex of an offspring because sperm can carry an X or a Y chromosome. Males inherit a Y chromosome. Genes on the Y chromosome also affect the gender of an individual.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What is an example of a sex-linked trait in humans?

Perhaps the best-known example of an X-linked trait in humans is hemophilia A. This disease is due to a recessive mutation in one of the genes associated with blood clotting. Since the gene is located on the X chromosome, males who inherit the defective allele from their mothers have hemophilia. Females must inherit a defective gene from both their mother and their father. Hemophilia A has been a problem in the royal families of England, Spain, Russia, and Germany for several centuries.

10.4 Sex-Linked Inheritance

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain differences in the inheritance of sex-linked traits between male and female offspring.
2. Solve and interpret genetic crosses that exhibit sex-linked inheritance.
3. Identify disorders that are associated with sex-linked inheritance.

Normally, both males and females have 23 pairs of chromosomes; 22 pairs are called autosomes, and 1 pair is the **sex chromosomes**. The sex chromosomes are so named because they differ between the sexes. In humans, males have the sex chromosomes X and Y, and females have two X chromosomes (**Fig. 10.23**).

The much shorter Y chromosome contains fewer than 200 genes, and most of these genes are concerned with sex differences between men and women. One of the genes on the Y chromosome, *SRY,* does not have a copy on the X chromosome. If the functional *SRY* gene is present, the individual becomes a male, and if it is absent, the individual becomes a female. Thus, female sex development is the "default setting."

In contrast, the X chromosome is quite large and contains nearly 2,000 genes, most of which have nothing to do with the gender of the individual. By tradition, the term **X-linked** refers to such genes carried on the X chromosome. Examples of X-linked traits in humans include hemophilia and red-green color blindness. The Y chromosome does not carry these genes, and that makes for an interesting inheritance pattern.

It would be logical to suppose that a sex-linked trait is passed from father to son or from mother to daughter, but this is not always the case. For X-linked traits, a male always receives an X-linked allele from his mother, from whom he inherited an X chromosome. Because the X and Y chromosomes are not homologous, the Y chromosome from the father does not carry an allele for the trait. Usually, a sex-linked genetic disorder is recessive. Therefore, a female must receive two alleles, one from each parent, before she has the condition.

Sex-Linked Alleles

For X-linked traits, the allele on the X chromosome is shown as a letter attached to the X chromosome. For example, following is the key for red-green color blindness, a well-known X-linked recessive disorder:

$$X^B = \text{normal vision } X^b = \text{color blindness}$$

The possible genotypes and phenotypes in both males and females are

Genotypes	Phenotypes
X^BX^B	Female who has normal color vision
X^BX^b	Carrier female with normal color vision
X^bX^b	Female who is color-blind
X^BY	Male who has normal vision
X^bY	Male who is color-blind

The second genotype is a *carrier* female because, although a female with this genotype has normal color vision, she is capable of passing on an allele for color blindness. Color-blind females are rare because they must receive the allele from both parents. Color-blind males are more common because they need only one recessive allele to be color-blind. The allele for color blindness has to be inherited from their mother because it is on the X chromosome. Males only inherit the Y chromosome from their father.

Now let us consider a mating between a man with normal vision and a heterozygous woman (**Fig. 10.24**). What is the chance that this couple will have a color-blind daughter? A color-blind son? All daughters will have normal color vision because they all receive an X^B from their father. The sons, however, have a 50% chance of being color blind, depending on whether they receive an X^B or an X^b from their mother. The inheritance of a Y chromosome from their father cannot offset the inheritance of an X^b from their mother. Because the Y chromosome doesn't have an allele for the trait, it can't possibly prevent color blindness in a son. Note in Figure 10.24 that the phenotypic results for sex-linked traits are given separately for males and females.

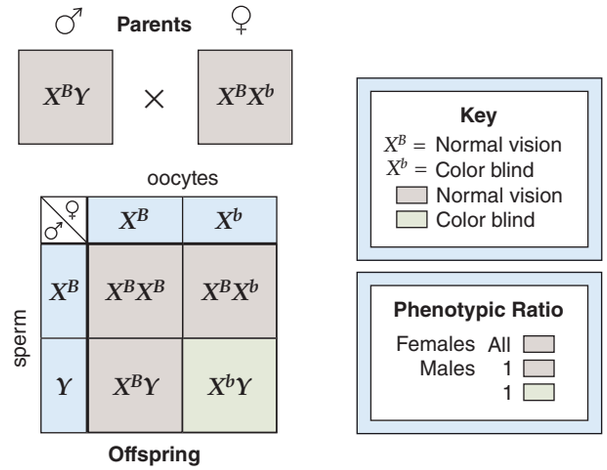


Figure 10.24 **X-linked inheritance.**

Some forms of color-blindness are associated with a gene on the X chromosome, and therefore follow a sex-linked pattern of inheritance.

Pedigrees for Sex-Linked Disorders

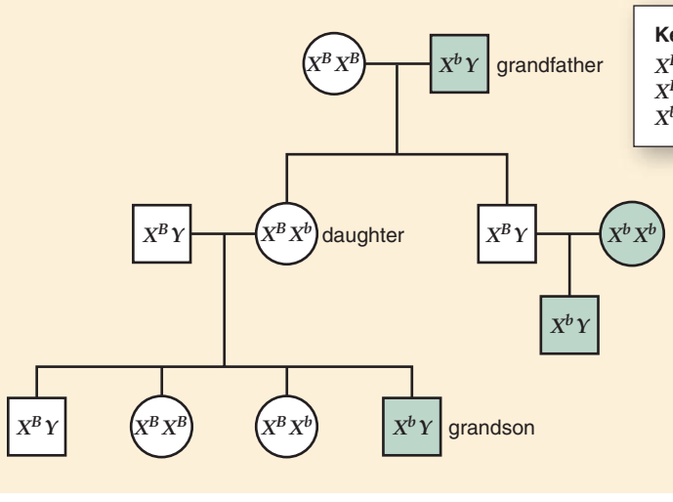
Figure 10.25 gives a pedigree for an *X-linked recessive disorder*. Recall that sons inherit X-linked recessive traits from their mothers because their only X chromosome comes from their mothers. More males than females have the disorder because recessive alleles on the X chromosome are always expressed in males—the Y chromosome lacks an allele. Females who have the condition inherited the allele from both their mother and their father, and all the sons of such a female will have the condition.

If a male has an X-linked recessive condition, his daughters are all carriers even if his partner is normal. Therefore, X-linked recessive conditions often appear to pass from grandfather to grandson. Figure 10.25 lists other ways to recognize an X-linked recessive disorder.

Still fewer traits are known to be *X-linked dominant.* If a condition is X-linked dominant, daughters of affected males have a 100% chance of having the condition. Females can pass an X-linked dominant allele to both sons and daughters. If a female is heterozygous and her partner is normal, each child has a 50% chance of escaping an X-linked dominant disorder, depending on which of the mother's X chromosomes is inherited.

Figure 10.25 **X-linked recessive pedigree.**

The list gives ways of recognizing an X-linked recessive disorder such as color blindness.



Key:
X^BX^B = normal female
X^BX^b = carrier female
X^bX^b = color-blind female
X^BY = normal male
X^bY = color-blind male

- More males than females are affected.
- An affected son can have parents who have the normal phenotype.
- For a female to have the characteristic, her father must also have it. Her mother must have it or be a carrier.

Still fewer genetic disorders involve genes carried on the Y chromosome. A counselor would recognize a *Y-linked pattern of inheritance* because Y-linked disorders are present only in males and are passed directly from father to *all* sons but not to daughters.

X-Linked Recessive Disorders

Color Blindness

Color blindness is a common X-linked recessive disorder. About 8% of Caucasian men have red-green color blindness (see Fig. 10.24). Most of them see brighter greens as tans, olive greens as browns, and reds as reddish-browns. A few cannot tell reds from greens at all; they see only yellows, blues, blacks, whites, and grays.

Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy

Duchenne muscular dystrophy is an X-linked recessive disorder characterized by wasting away of the muscles. The absence of a protein, now called dystrophin, is the cause of the disorder. Much investigative work determined that dystrophin is involved in the release of calcium from the sarcoplasmic reticulum in muscle fibers. The lack of dystrophin causes calcium to leak into the cell, which promotes the action of an enzyme that dissolves muscle fibers. When the body attempts to repair the tissue, fibrous tissue forms (**Fig. 10.26**), and this cuts off the blood supply, so that more and more cells die.

Symptoms such as waddling gait, toe walking, frequent falls, and difficulty in rising may appear as soon as the child starts to walk. Muscle weakness intensifies until the individual is confined to a wheelchair. Death usually occurs by age 20; therefore, affected males are rarely fathers. The recessive allele remains in the population through passage from carrier mother to carrier daughter.

As therapy, immature muscle cells can be injected into muscles, and for every 100,000 cells injected, dystrophin production occurs in 30–40% of muscle fibers.

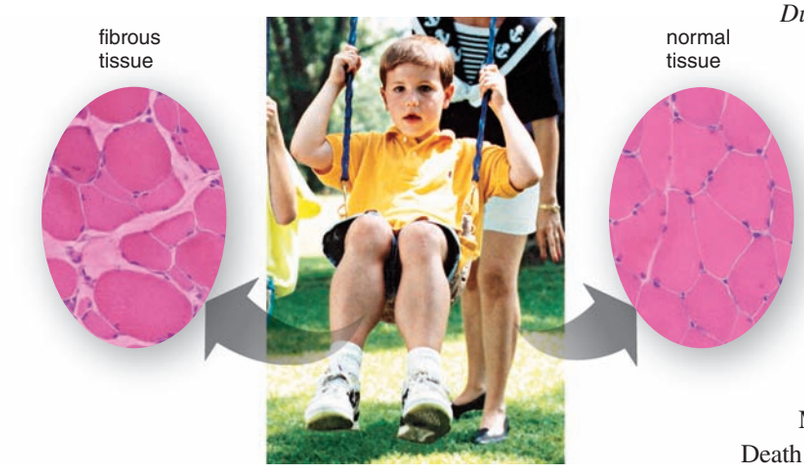


Figure 10.26 **Muscular dystrophy.**

In muscular dystrophy, the calves enlarge because fibrous tissue develops as muscles waste away due to a lack of the protein dystrophin.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Sex-linked traits present different patterns of inheritance than autosomal traits.

Check Your Progress 10.4

1. Explain why males produce two different gametes with respect to sex chromosomes.
2. Explain the differences between autosomal recessive and X-linked recessive patterns of inheritance.
3. List two examples of sex-linked disorders.

Media Study Tools

Enhance your study of this chapter with media! Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Video

10.2 Good Poison
10.4 Why a Guy Is a Guy

SUMMARIZE

10.1 Mendel's Laws

In 1860, Gregor Mendel, an Austrian monk, developed two laws of heredity based on crosses utilizing the garden pea. Mendelian crosses are often visualized using a **Punnett square**.

Law of Segregation

Mendel's **law of segregation** states the following:

- Each individual has two factors for each trait.
- The factors segregate (separate) during the formation of the gametes.
- Each gamete contains only one factor from each pair of factors.
- Fertilization gives each new individual two factors for each trait.

In the context of genetics today, an allele is a variation of a gene. Each allele exists at a specific locus on a chromosome. **Genotype** refers to the alleles of the individual, and **phenotype** refers to the physical characteristics associated with these alleles. **Dominant alleles** mask the expression of **recessive alleles. Homozygous** dominant individuals have the dominant phenotype (i.e., *EE* = unattached earlobes). Homozygous recessive individuals have the recessive phenotype (i.e., *ee* = attached earlobes). **Heterozygous** individuals have the dominant phenotype (i.e., *Ee* = unattached earlobes). A **testcross** may be used to determine if an individual with a homozygous phenotype is homozygous dominant or heterozygous.

- Gene pairs are on the chromosomes, one allele on each homologue. Each gene has a specific **locus**, or location, on the chromosome.

Law of Independent Assortment

Using **dihybrid** (two-trait) crosses, Mendel was able to develop the **law of independent assortment,** which states the following:

- Each pair of factors segregates (assorts) independently of the other pairs.
- All possible combinations of factors can occur in the gametes.

In the context of genetics today,

- Each pair of homologues separates independently of the other pairs.
- All possible combinations of chromosomes and their alleles occur in the gametes.
- Mendel's laws are consistent with the manner in which homologues and their alleles separate during meiosis.

Common Autosomal Genetic Crosses

A Punnett square allows all types of sperm to fertilize all types of eggs and gives these results:

Aa	×	*Aa*	3:1 phenotypic ratio
Aa	×	*aa*	1:1 phenotypic ratio
AaBb	×	*AaBb*	9:3:3:1 phenotypic ratio
AaBb	×	*aabb*	1:1:1:1 phenotypic ratio

10.2 Mendel's Laws Apply to Humans

Many traits and disorders in humans follow Mendel's laws. These traits are often controlled by a single pair of alleles on the **autosomes.**

Family Pedigrees

A family **pedigree** is a visual representation of the history of a genetic disorder in a family. Constructing pedigrees helps a genetic counselor decide whether a genetic disorder that runs in a family is autosomal recessive or autosomal dominant.

Human Autosomal Disorders

Some common human autosomal disorders include:

- Methemoglobinemia (inability to clear methemoglobin from the blood)
- Cystic fibrosis (faulty regulator of chloride channel)
- Alkaptonuria (inability to metabolize homogentisic acid)
- Sickle-cell disease (sickle-shaped red blood cells)
- Osteogenesis imperfecta (defective collagen tissue)
- Huntington disease (abnormal huntingtin protein)

10.3 Beyond Mendel's Laws

In some patterns of inheritance, the alleles are not just dominant or recessive.

Incomplete Dominance

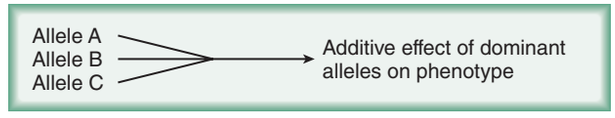
In **incomplete dominance**, the heterozygote is intermediate between the two homozygotes. For example, in hypercholesterolemia, heterozygous individuals have blood cholesterol levels between the extremes of homozygous dominant and homozygous recessive individuals.

Multiple-Allele Traits

The multiple-allele inheritance pattern is exemplified in humans by blood type inheritance. Every individual has two out of three possible alleles: I^A, I^B, i. Both I^A and I^B are expressed; therefore, this is also a case of **codominance.**

Polygenic Inheritance

In **polygenic** inheritance**,** a trait is controlled by more than one set of alleles. The dominant alleles have an additive effect on the phenotype. Human height and skin color are examples of polygenic inheritance.

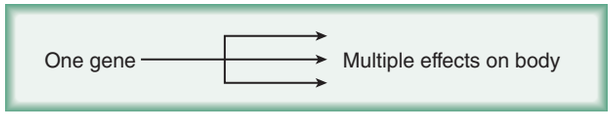


Environment and the Phenotype

Many phenotypes, especially those governed by polygenes, are modified by the environment. These traits are called **multifactorial traits.**

Pleiotropy

In **pleiotropy,** one gene (consisting of two alleles) has multiple effects on the body. For example, all the disorders common to Marfan syndrome are due to a mutation that leads to a defect in the composition of connective tissue.



Linkage

Alleles on the same chromosome are linked, and they are generally inherited together as a **linkage group.**

10.4 Sex-Linked Inheritance

Males produce two different types of gametes—those that contain an X and those that contain a Y. The contribution of the male determines the sex and gender of the new individual. XX = female, XY = male.

Alleles that are carried on the X chromosome are said to be **X-linked.** Y-linked alleles are found on the Y chromosome. Since males are XY, they need to inherit only one recessive allele on the X chromosome to have a recessive genetic disorder.

Common X-Linked Genetic Crosses

- $X^BX^b \times X^BY$ All daughters will be normal, even though they have a 50% chance of being carriers, but sons have a 50% chance of being color-blind.
- $X^BX^B \times X^bY$ All children are normal (daughters will be carriers).

Human X-Linked Disorders

- Color blindness (inability to detect colors normally)
- Duchenne muscular dystrophy (absence of dystrophin leading to muscle weakness)

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Our traits are determined not only by the genes we inherit from our parents, but also environmental factors.

10.1 Gregor Mendel established the laws of genetic inheritance.

10.2 Pedigree charts help counselors interpret inherited genetic disorders.

10.3 New variations in genetic inheritance have been discovered since Mendel's laws were established.

10.4 Sex-linked traits present different patterns of inheritance than autosomal traits.

For more information about patterns of inheritance, see the following discussions:

Section 9.1 distinguishes between the sex chromosomes and autosomes in humans.

Section 9.2 describes the independent assortment of chromosomes during meiosis.

Section 15.2 examines how natural selection may favor heterozygotes, as is the case with sickle-cell disease.

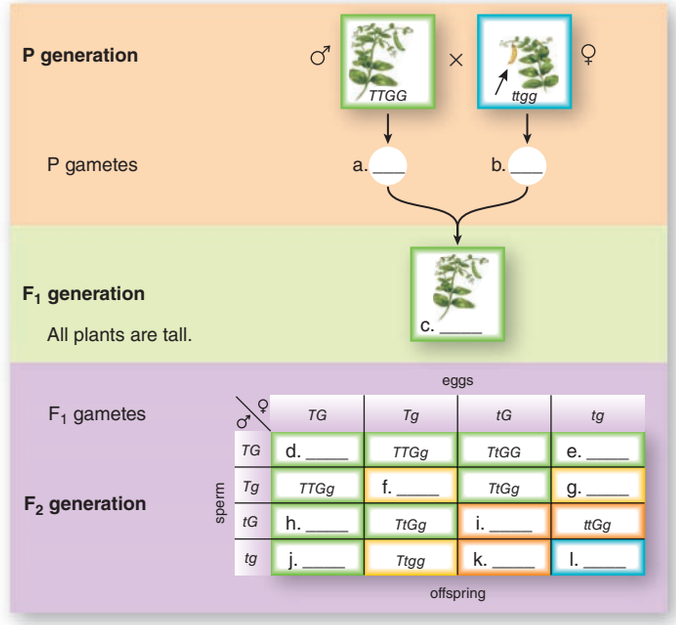
ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

10.1 Mendel's Laws

1. The offspring ratio from a testcross ($F_1 \times$ homozygous recessive) should be
   a. all dominant.
   b. ¾ dominant, ¼ recessive.
   c. ½ dominant, ½ recessive.
   d. all recessive.
2. Which of the following is not a component of the law of segregation?
   a. Each gamete contains one factor from each pair of factors in the parent.
   b. Factors segregate during gamete formation.
   c. Following fertilization, the new individual carries two factors for each trait.
   d. Each individual has one factor for each trait.
3. When using a Punnett square to predict offspring ratios, we assume that
   a. each gamete contains one allele of each gene.
   b. the gametes have all possible combinations of alleles.
   c. male and female gametes combine at random.
   d. All of these are correct.
4. Fill in the blank spaces in the following Punnett square.



10.2 Mendel's Laws Apply to Humans

For questions 5–7, identify whether the term applies to an (a) autosomal dominant or (b) autosomal recessive trait

5. Affected children always have at least one affected parent.
6. Affected children can have unaffected parents.
7. Two affected parents may have unaffected children.

For questions 8–10, classify the condition as (a) autosomal dominant or (b) autosomal recessive.

Key:

8. methemoglobinemia

9. Huntington disease

10. osteogenesis imperfecta

11. Cystic fibrosis (CF) is an autosomal recessive disorder in humans. If two unaffected individuals have a child with CF, what is the chance that their second child will have CF?

a. 25%
b. 50%
c. 75%
d. 100%
e. It is impossible to determine.

10.3 Beyond Mendel's Laws

12. When one physical trait is affected by two or more pairs of alleles, the condition is called

a. incomplete dominance.
b. codominance.
c. homozygous dominant.
d. multiple allele.
e. polygenic inheritance.

13. When two monohybrid round squashes are crossed, the offspring ratio is ¼ flat: ½ oblong: ¼ round. Squash shape, therefore, is controlled by incomplete dominance. What offspring ratio would you expect from a cross between a plant with oblong fruit and one with round fruit?

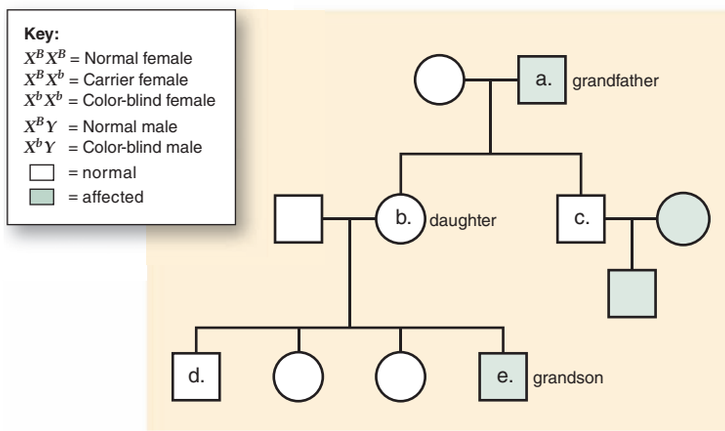
a. all oblong
b. all round
c. ¾ oblong: ¼ round
d. ¾ round: ¼ oblong
e. ½ oblong: ½ round

14. If a man of blood group AB marries a woman of blood group B whose father was type O, what phenotypes could their children be?

a. A only
b. A, AB, B, and O
c. AB only
d. A, AB, and B
e. O only

10.4 Sex-Linked Inheritance

15. Fill in the genotypes a.–e. of the family members in the following pedigree for an X-linked recessive trait. Shaded individuals are affected.



ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Mendelian Genetics
- Human Genetics

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Multiple gene pairs may also interact to produce a single phenotype. In peas, genes *C* and *P* are required for pigment production in flowers. Gene *C* codes for an enzyme that converts a compound into a colorless intermediate product. Gene *P* codes for an enzyme that converts the colorless intermediate product into anthocyanin, a purple pigment. A flower, therefore, will be purple only if it contains at least one dominant allele for each of the two genes (*C*__ *P*__). What phenotypic ratio would you expect in the F_2 generation following a cross between two double heterozygotes (*CcPp*)?

2. Assume for a moment that you are working in a genetics lab with *Drosophila melanogaster,* a model organism for genetic research. You want to determine whether a newly found *Drosophila* characteristic is dominant or recessive.

a. Explain how you would construct such a cross, as well as the expected outcomes that would indicate dominance.
b. Why would working with *Drosophila* be easier than working with humans?

3. Technology is available that can separate X-bearing and Y-bearing sperm offers prospective parents the opportunity to choose the sex of their child. First, the sperm are dosed with a DNA-staining chemical. Because the X chromosome has slightly more DNA than the Y chromosome, it takes up more dye. When a laser beam shines on the sperm, the X-bearing sperm shine more brightly than the Y-bearing sperm.

a. How might this technology be beneficial for couples that have a history of X-linked genetic disorders?
b. How might this technology be misused?

11

DNA Biology

OUTLINE

11.1 DNA and RNA Structure and Function 185

11.2 Gene Expression 191

11.3 Gene Regulation 197

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 3.2 What is the general structure of a DNA and RNA molecule?

Sections 4.3 and 4.4 What are the differences between prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells?

Section 8.1 What is the end result of DNA replication?

DNA: The Genetic Material of Life

All life on Earth has the four bases of DNA—A, G, C, and T—in common. Considering that up to 2.0 million different species have been discovered and named, with only a fraction of the total discovered, what makes one species different from another? It is largely due to differences in the DNA sequences that make up genes within each species. How do DNA sequence differences determine the uniqueness of a species—for example, whether an individual is a snow leopard, a crab, or a flower? Or the variation within a species, such as whether a human has blue, brown, or hazel eyes? The diversity of life is based on the flow of genetic information from genes to proteins to observable traits—that is, from genotype to phenotype. This expression of genes is responsible for producing proteins, the molecules that carry out life functions every day. As DNA sequences change via mutation and other mechanisms over evolutionary time, so do the proteins that are made from genes. Likewise, as proteins change, so do the life-forms and diversity we see on Earth. Given that different mixtures of genes and alleles can be inherited over generations, and that life has been in existence for millions of generations, it is not surprising to see how diverse life has become.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How is information contained within a molecule of DNA?
2. What are the differences between DNA and RNA?
3. How does the flow of genetic information from DNA to protein to trait work?

11.1 DNA and RNA Structure and Function

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the structure of a DNA molecule.
2. List the steps involved in the replication of DNA.
3. Compare and contrast the structure of RNA with that of DNA.
4. List the three major types of RNA and describe their functions.

Mendel knew nothing about DNA. It took many years for investigators to come to the conclusion that Mendel's factors, now called genes, are on the chromosomes. Then, researchers wanted to show that DNA, not protein, is responsible for heredity. One experiment, by Alfred Hershey and Martha Chase, involved the use of a virus that attacks bacteria, such as *E. coli* (**Fig. 11.1**). A virus is composed of an outer capsid made of protein and an inner core of DNA. The use of radioactive tracers showed that DNA, but not protein, enters bacteria and directs the formation of new viruses. By the early 1950s, investigators had learned that genes are composed of DNA and that mutated genes result in errors of metabolism. Therefore, DNA in some way must control the cell.

Animation
Hershey and Chase Experiment

Even though DNA took its name—deoxyribonucleic acid—from the chemical components of its nucleotides, its detailed structure was still to be determined. Finding the structure of DNA was the first step toward understanding how DNA is able to do the following:

- Be variable in order to account for species differences
- Replicate so that every cell gets a copy during cell division
- Store information needed to control the cell
- Undergo mutations, accounting for evolution of new species

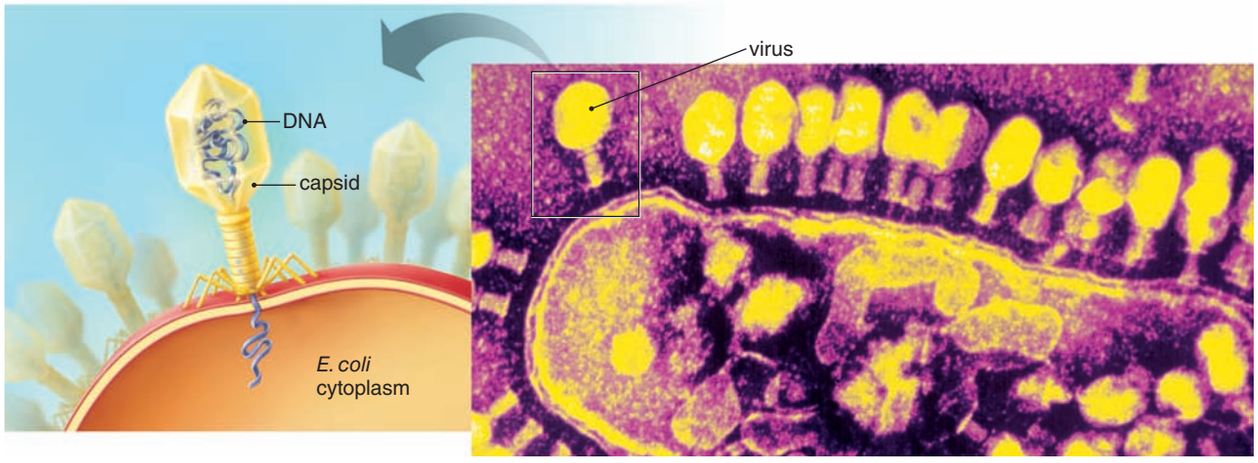


Figure 11.1 **DNA as the genetic material.**

An early experiment by Hershey and Chase helped determine that DNA is the genetic material. Their experiment involved a virus that infects bacteria, such as *E. coli*. They wanted to know which part of the virus—the capsid made of protein or the DNA inside the capsid—enters the bacterium. Radioactive tracers showed that DNA, not protein, enters the bacterium and guides the formation of new viruses. Therefore, DNA must be the genetic material.

Structure of DNA

Once researchers knew that genes are composed of DNA, they were racing against time and each other to determine the structure of DNA. They believed that whoever discovered it first would get a Nobel Prize. How James Watson and Francis Crick determined the structure of DNA (and eventually received a Nobel Prize) resembles a mystery, in which each clue was added to the total picture until the breathtaking design of DNA—a double helix—was finally revealed. To achieve this success, Watson and Crick particularly relied on studies done by Erwin Chargaff and Rosalind Franklin.

Chargaff's Rules

Before Erwin Chargaff began his work, it was known that DNA contains four different types of nucleotides based on their nitrogen-containing bases (**Fig. 11.2***d*). The bases **adenine (A)** and **guanine (G)** are purines with a double ring, and the bases **thymine (T)** and **cytosine (C)** are pyrimidines with a single ring. With the development of new chemical techniques in the 1940s, Chargaff decided to analyze in detail the base content of DNA in various species.

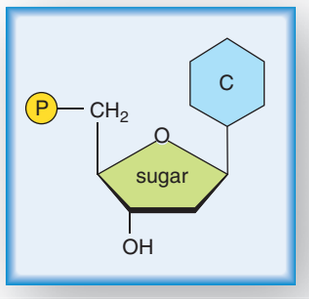
In contrast to accepted beliefs, Chargaff found that each species has its own percentages of each type of nucleotide. For example, in a human cell, 31% of bases are adenine; 31% are thymine; 19% are guanine; and 19% are cytosine. In all the species Chargaff studied, the amount of A always equaled the amount of T, and the amount of G always equaled the amount of C. These relationships are called *Chargaff's rules:*

1. The amount of A, T, G, and C in DNA varies from species to species.
2. In each species, the amount of A = T and the amount of G = C.

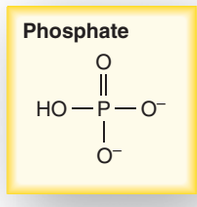
Chargaff's data suggest that DNA has a means to be stable, in that A can pair only with T and G can pair only with C. His data also show that DNA can be variable as required for the genetic material. Today, we know that the paired bases may

Figure 11.2 Nucleotide composition of DNA and RNA.

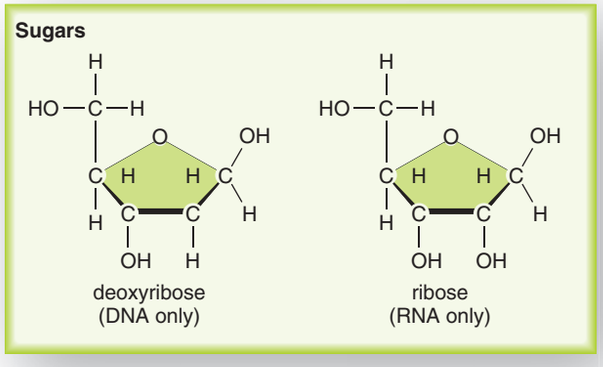
a. All nucleotides contain phosphate, a 5-carbon sugar, and a nitrogen-containing base, such as cytosine (C). **b.** Structure of phosphate. **c.** In DNA, the sugar is deoxyribose; in RNA, the sugar is ribose. **d.** In DNA, the nitrogen-containing bases are adenine, guanine, cytosine, and thymine; in RNA, the bases are adenine, guanine, cytosine, and uracil.



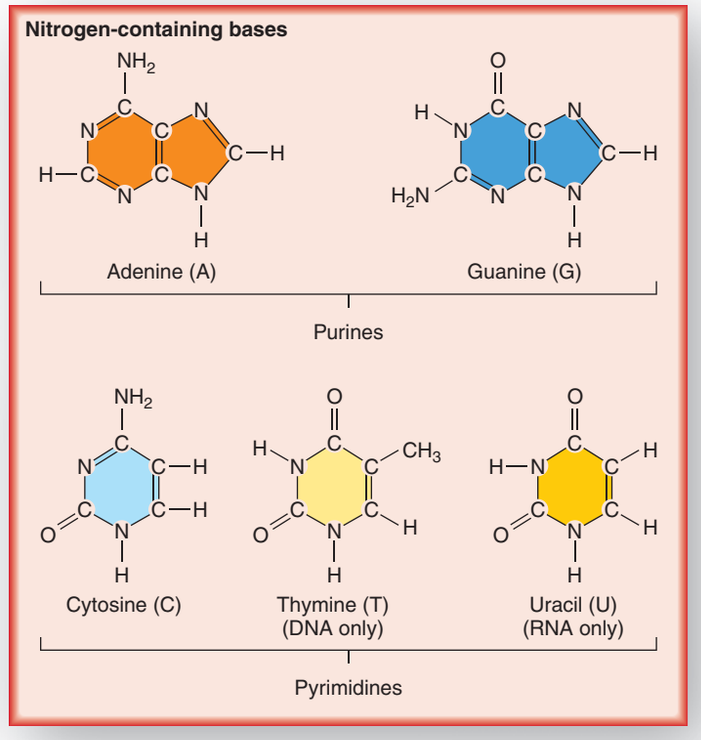
a.



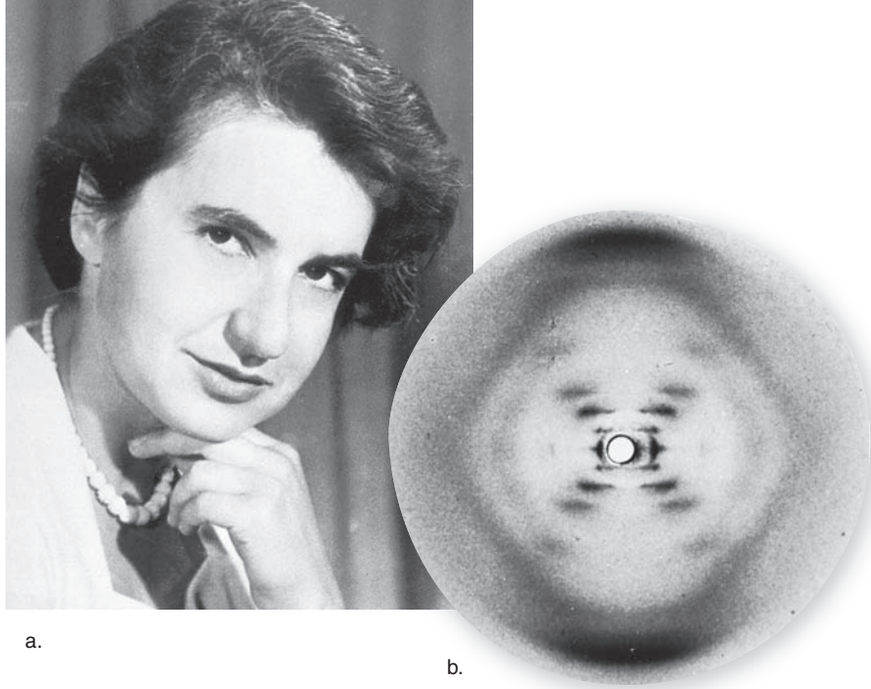
b.



c.



d.



a. b.

Figure 11.3 **X-ray diffraction pattern of DNA.**

a. Rosalind Franklin X-rayed DNA using crystallography techniques. **b.** The resulting pattern indicated that DNA is a double helix (see X pattern in the center) and that part of the molecule is repeated over and over again (see the dark portions at top and bottom). Watson and Crick said that this repeating feature is the paired bases.

occur in any order and the amount of variability in their sequences is overwhelming. For example, suppose a chromosome contains 140 million base pairs. Since any of the four possible nucleotide pairs can be present at each pair location, the total number of possible nucleotide pair sequences is $4^{140 \times 10^6}$, or $4^{140,000,000}$.

Franklin's X-Ray Diffraction Data

Rosalind Franklin was a researcher at King's College in London in the early 1950s (**Fig. 11.3***a*). She was studying the structure of DNA using X-ray crystallography. When a crystal (a solid substance whose atoms are arranged in a definite manner) is X-rayed, the X-ray beam is diffracted (deflected), and the pattern that results shows how the atoms are arranged in the crystal.

First, Franklin made a concentrated, viscous solution of DNA and then saw that it could be separated into fibers. Under the right conditions, the fibers were enough like a crystal that, when they were X-rayed, a diffraction pattern resulted. The X-ray diffraction pattern of DNA shows that DNA is a double helix. The helical shape is indicated by the crossed (X) pattern in the center of the photograph in Figure 11.3*b*. The dark areas at the top and bottom of the photograph indicate that some portion of the helix is repeated many times.

Video
DNA Dark Lady

The Watson and Crick Model

In 1951, James Watson, having just earned a Ph.D., began an internship at the University of Cambridge, England. There, he met Francis Crick, a British physicist who was interested in molecular structures. Together, they set out to determine the structure of DNA and to build a model that would explain how DNA varies from species to species, replicates, stores information, and undergoes mutation.

Based on the available data, they knew the following:

1. DNA is a polymer of four types of nucleotides with the bases adenine (A), guanine (G), cytosine (C), and thymine (T).
2. Based on Chargaff's rules, the amount of A = T and the amount of G = C.
3. Based on Franklin's X-ray diffraction photograph, DNA is a double helix with a repeating pattern.

Using these data, Watson and Crick built a model of DNA out of wire and tin (**Fig. 11.4**). The model showed that the deoxyribose sugar–phosphate

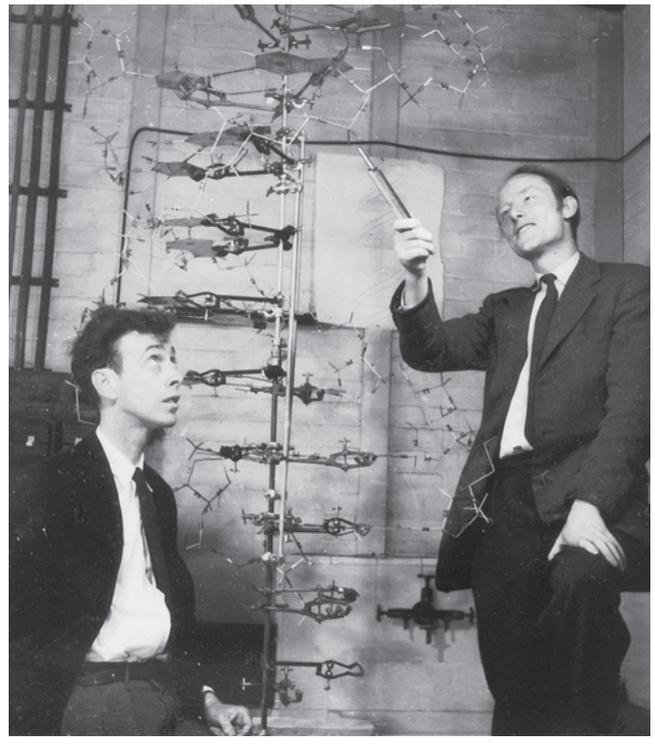


Figure 11.4 **Watson and Crick model of DNA.**

James Watson (left) and Francis Crick with their model of DNA.

molecules are bonded to one another to make up the sides of a twisted ladder. The nitrogenous bases make up the rungs of the ladder—they project into the middle and hydrogen bond with bases on the other strand. Indeed, the pairing of A with T and G with C—now called **complementary base pairing**—results in rungs of a consistent width, as elucidated by the X-ray diffraction data.

Figure 11.5 shows that DNA is a double-stranded molecule that wraps around itself to form a double helix. The two strands are antiparallel and run in opposite directions, as best seen in Figure 11.5*a,* where the carbon atoms in deoxyribose are numbered. The 5′ carbon has an attached Ⓟ group, and the 3′ carbon has an attached —OH group, which is circled and colored pink for easy recognition. Further, in the double helix (Fig. 11.5*b*), each strand has a 5′ end where a free Ⓟ appears and a 3′ end where a free —OH group appears.

The double-helix model of DNA permits the base pairs to be in any order, a necessity for genetic variability between species. Also, the model suggests that complementary base pairing may play a role in the replication of DNA. As Watson and Crick pointed out

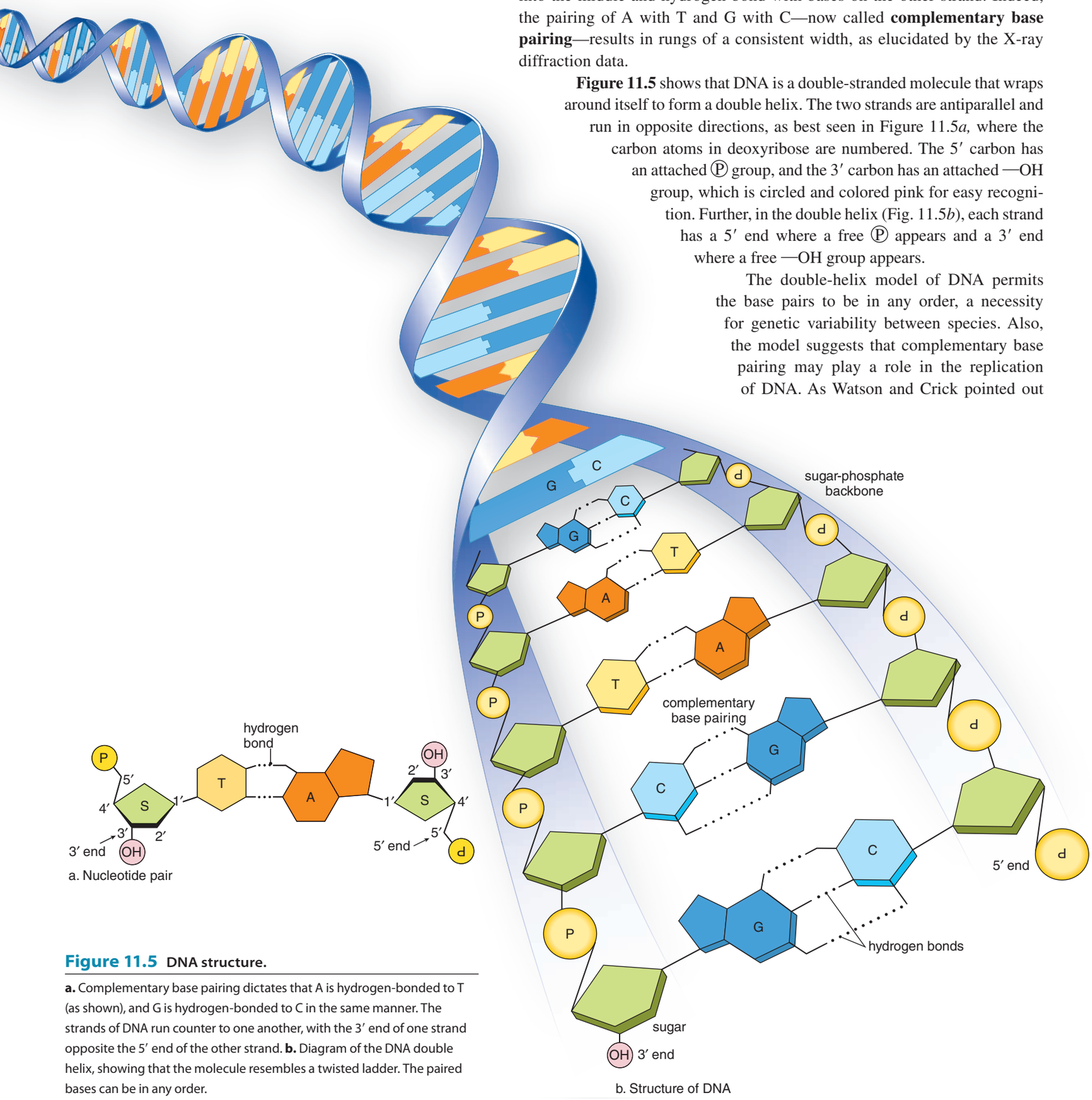


Figure 11.5 DNA structure.

a. Complementary base pairing dictates that A is hydrogen-bonded to T (as shown), and G is hydrogen-bonded to C in the same manner. The strands of DNA run counter to one another, with the 3′ end of one strand opposite the 5′ end of the other strand. **b.** Diagram of the DNA double helix, showing that the molecule resembles a twisted ladder. The paired bases can be in any order.

in their original paper, published in *Nature* in 1953, "It has not escaped our notice that the specific pairing we have postulated immediately suggests a possible copying mechanism for the genetic material."

Animation
DNA Structure

3D Animation
DNA Replication: DNA Structure

Replication of DNA

Cells need to make identical copies of themselves for the growth and repair of tissues. Before division occurs, each new cell requires an exact copy of the parent cell's DNA, or it will not be able to function as the original cell did. **DNA replication** refers to the process of making an identical copy of a DNA molecule. DNA replication occurs during the S phase of the cell cycle (see Fig. 8.3).

During DNA replication, the two DNA strands, which are held together by hydrogen bonds, are separated and each old strand of the parent molecule serves as a **template** for a new strand in a daughter molecule (**Fig. 11.6**). This process is referred to as **semiconservative,** since one of the two old strands is conserved, or present, in each daughter molecule.

To begin replication, the DNA double helix must separate and unwind. This is accomplished by breaking the hydrogen bonds between the nucleotides, then unwinding the helix structure using an enzyme called **helicase**. At this point, new nucleotides are added to the parental template strand. Nucleotides, ever present in the nucleus, will complementary base pair onto the now single-stranded parental strand. The addition of the new strand is completed using an enzyme complex called **DNA polymerase**. The daughter strand is synthesized by DNA polymerase in a 5′–3′ direction as shown in Figure 11.6. Any breaks in the sugar-phosphate backbone are sealed by the enzyme **DNA ligase**.

In Figure 11.6, the backbones of the parent molecule (original double strand) are blue. Following replication, the daughter molecules each have a green backbone (new strand) and a blue backbone (old strand). A daughter DNA double helix has the same sequence of base pairs as the parent DNA double helix had. Complementary base pairing has allowed this sequence to be maintained.

In eukaryotes, DNA replication begins at numerous sites, called origins of replication, along the length of the chromosome. At each origin of replication, replication forks form, allowing replication to proceed in both directions. Around each replication fork, a "replication bubble" forms. Within the replication bubble, the process of DNA replication occurs. The replication

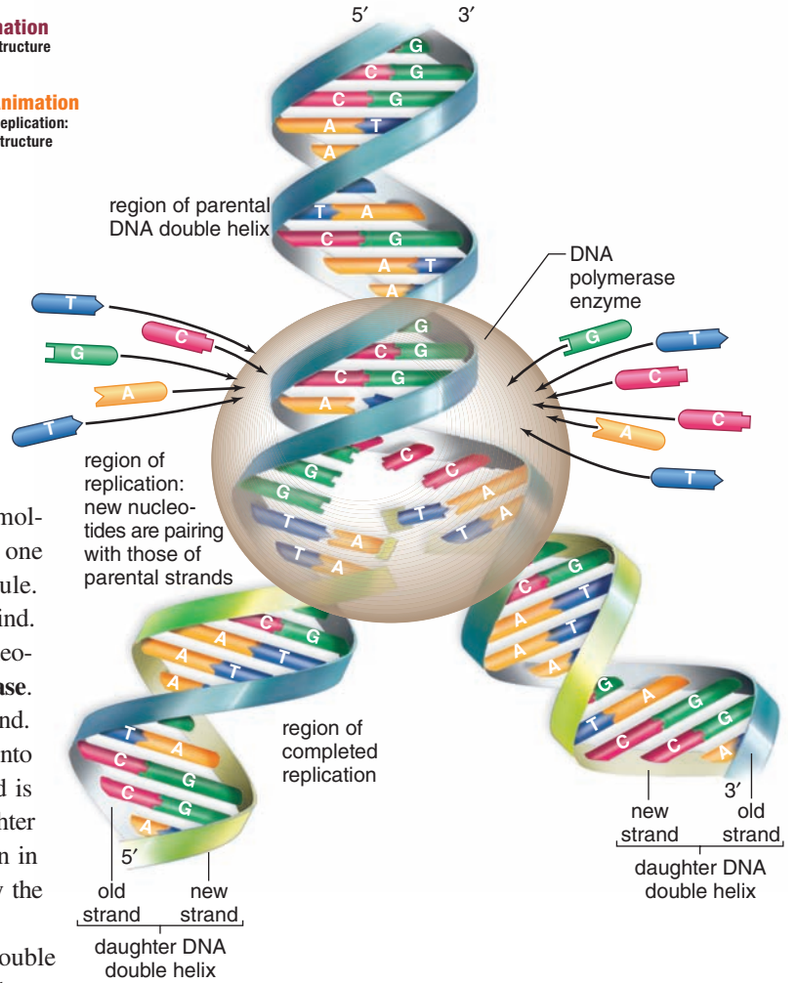


Figure 11.6 **Semiconservative replication.**

After the DNA molecule unwinds, each old strand serves as a template for the formation of a new strand. After replication is complete, there are two daughter DNA molecules, identical to each other and to the original double helix.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How long does it take to copy the DNA in one human cell?

The enzyme DNA polymerase in humans can copy approximately 50 bases per second. If only one DNA polymerase were used to copy human DNA, it would take almost three weeks. However, multiple DNA polymerases copy the human genome by starting at many different places. All 3 billion base pairs can be copied in about eight hours in a rapidly dividing cell.

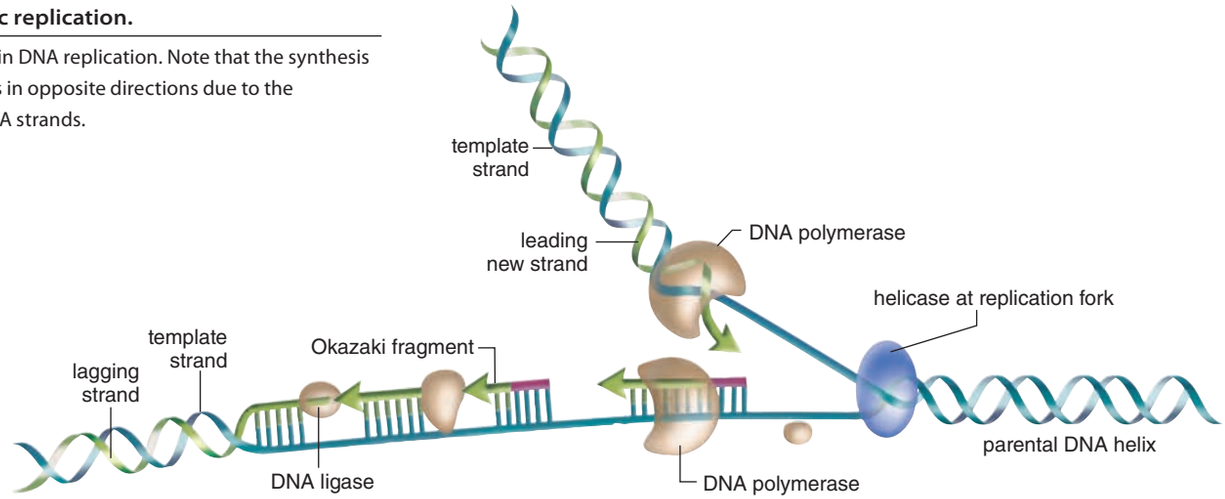


Figure 11.7 **Eukaryotic replication.**

The major enzymes involved in DNA replication. Note that the synthesis of new DNA molecules occurs in opposite directions due to the orientation of the original DNA strands.

bubbles spread in both directions until they meet (**Fig. 11.7**). Although eukaryotes replicate their DNA at a fairly slow rate—500 to 5,000 base pairs per minute—there are many individual origins of replication throughout the DNA molecule. Therefore, eukaryotic cells complete the replication of the diploid amount of DNA (in humans, over 3 billion base pairs) in a matter of hours!

RNA Structure and Function

Ribonucleic acid (RNA) is made up of nucleotides containing the sugar ribose, thus accounting for its name. The four nucleotides that make up an RNA molecule have the following bases: adenine (A), **uracil (U)**, cytosine (C), and guanine (G). Notice that, in RNA, uracil replaces the thymine in DNA (**Fig. 11.8**).

RNA, unlike DNA, is single-stranded, but the single RNA strand sometimes doubles back on itself, allowing complementary base pairing to occur. The similarities and differences between these two nucleic acid molecules are listed in **Table 11.1.**

In general, RNA is a helper to DNA, allowing protein synthesis to occur according to the genetic information that DNA provides. There are three major types of RNA, each with a specific function in protein synthesis.

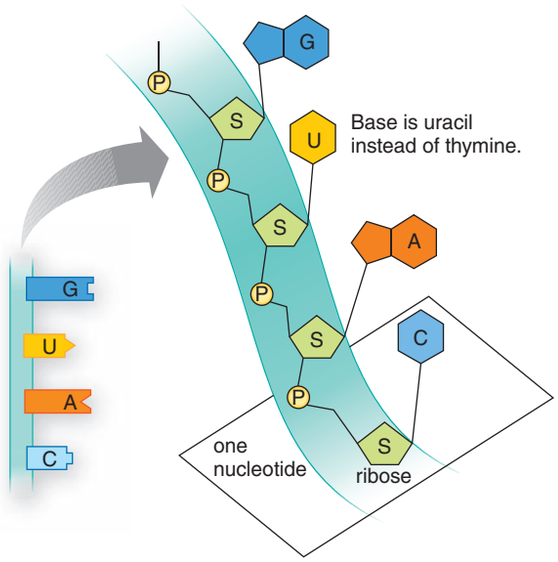


Figure 11.8 **Structure of RNA.**

Like DNA, RNA is a polymer of nucleotides. In an RNA nucleotide, the sugar ribose is attached to a phosphate molecule and to a base, either G, U, A, or C. Notice that, in RNA, the base uracil (U) replaces thymine as one of the bases. RNA is usually single-stranded, whereas DNA is double-stranded.

Messenger RNA

Messenger RNA (mRNA) is produced in the nucleus of eukaryotes, as well as in the nucleoid of prokaryotes. DNA serves as a template for the formation of mRNA during a process called transcription. Which DNA genes are transcribed into mRNA is highly regulated in each type of cell and accounts for the specific functions of all cell types. Once formed, mRNA carries genetic information from DNA in the nucleus to the ribosomes in the cytoplasm, where protein synthesis occurs through a process called translation.

Transfer RNA

Transfer RNA (tRNA) is also produced in the nucleus of eukaryotes. Appropriate to its name, tRNA transfers amino acids present in the cytoplasm to the ribosomes. There are twenty different amino acids, and each has its own tRNA molecule. At the ribosome a process called translation joins the amino acids to form a polypeptide chain.

Ribosomal RNA

In eukaryotic cells, **ribosomal RNA (rRNA)** is produced in the nucleolus of a nucleus, where a portion of DNA serves as a template for its formation. Ribosomal RNA joins with proteins made in the cytoplasm to form the subunits of **ribosomes,** one large and one small. Each subunit has its own mix of proteins and rRNA. The subunits leave the nucleus and come together in the cytoplasm when protein synthesis is about to begin.

Proteins are synthesized at the ribosomes, which look like small granules in low-power electron micrographs. Ribosomes in the cytoplasm may be free floating or in clusters called polyribosomes. Often, they are found attached to the edge of the endoplasmic reticulum. Proteins synthesized by ribosomes attached to the ER normally are used by the ER. Proteins synthesized by free ribosomes or polyribosomes are used in the cytoplasm, where the protein is carried in a transport vesicle to the Golgi apparatus for modification and transport to the plasma membrane, where it can leave the cell.

Table 11.1 Comparison of DNA and RNA

DNA-RNA SIMILARITIES	
Both are nucleic acids.	
Both are composed of nucleotides.	
Both have a sugar-phosphate backbone.	
Both have four different types of bases.	
DNA-RNA DIFFERENCES	
DNA	**RNA**
Found in nucleus	Found in nucleus and cytoplasm
Genetic material	Helper to DNA
Sugar is deoxyribose	Sugar is ribose
Bases are A, T, C, G	Bases are A, U, C, G
Double-stranded	Single-stranded
Is transcribed (to give mRNA, tRNA, and rRNA)	mRNA is translated (to give proteins)

Check Your Progress 11.1

1. Summarize the structure of DNA, focusing on the complementary nature and antiparallel configuration.
2. Compare and contrast the structures of DNA and RNA.
3. List the function of the major enzymes in DNA replication.
4. Explain the differences in function among mRNA, rRNA, and tRNA.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

DNA and RNA have similar structural components but differ in function.

11.2 Gene Expression

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the steps involved in gene expression and indicate the area of the cell in which each step occurs.
2. Explain what the genetic code is used for and explain why it is considered to be almost universal.
3. Describe how transcription copies the information from a gene into a messenger RNA molecule.
4. List the three modifications that occur during mRNA processing and briefly explain their importance.
5. Describe how the process of translation converts the chemical language of nucleic acids into a protein and list the three phases of this process.

In the early 1900s, the English physician Sir Archibald Garrod observed that family members often have the same metabolic disorder, and he said most likely they all lack the same functioning enzyme in a metabolic pathway. He introduced the phrase "inborn error of metabolism" to describe this relationship. Garrod's findings were generally overlooked until George Beadle and Edward Tatum devised a way in 1940 to confirm his hypothesis. These

investigators performed a series of experiments utilizing red bread mold and found that each of their mutant molds was indeed unable to produce a particular enzyme. This led them to propose that one gene directs the synthesis of one enzyme. Today we know that genes are also responsible for specifying any type of protein in a cell, not just enzymes, so their finding has been modified to "one gene–one polypeptide."

From DNA to RNA to Protein

It's one thing to know that genes specify proteins and another to explain how they do it. Molecular genetics, which largely began when Watson and Crick discovered the structure of DNA in the 1950s, is able to explain exactly how genes control the building of a specific type of protein. Consider that, in eukaryotes, DNA resides in the nucleus but RNA is found both in the nucleus and in the cytoplasm where protein synthesis occurs. This means that DNA must pass its genetic information to mRNA, which then actively participates in protein synthesis. The *central dogma of molecular biology* states that genetic information flows from DNA to RNA to protein (**Fig. 11.9**).

Gene expression has occurred when a gene's product—the protein it specifies—is functioning in a cell. Specifically, gene expression requires two processes, called transcription and translation. In eukaryotes, transcription takes place in the nucleus, and translation takes place in the cytoplasm. During **transcription,** a portion of DNA serves as a template for mRNA formation. During **translation,** the sequence of mRNA bases (which are complementary to those in template DNA) determines the sequence of amino acids in a polypeptide. So, in effect, molecular genetics tells us that genetic information lies in the sequence of the bases in DNA, which through mRNA determines the sequence of amino acids in a protein. tRNA assists mRNA during protein synthesis by bringing amino acids to the ribosomes. Proteins differ from one another by the sequence of their amino acids, and proteins determine the structure and function of cells and indeed the phenotype of the organism.

The Genetic Code

The information contained in DNA and RNA is written in a chemical language different from that in the protein specified by the DNA and RNA. The cell needs a way to translate one language into the other, and it uses the genetic code.

But how can the four bases of RNA (A, C, G, U) provide enough combinations to code for the 20 amino acids found in proteins? If the code were a singlet code (one base standing for an amino acid), only four amino acids could be encoded. If the code were a doublet (any two bases standing for one amino acid), it still would not be possible to code for 20 amino acids. But if the code were a triplet code**,** the four bases could supply 64 different triplets, far more than needed to code for 20 different amino acids. Each three-letter (nucleotide) unit of an mRNA molecule is called a **codon,** which codes for a single amino acid (**Fig. 11.10**). Sixty-one triplets correspond to a particular amino acid; the remaining three are stop codons that signal the end of a polypeptide. The codon that stands for the amino acid methionine is also used as a start codon that signals the initiation of translation. Most amino acids have more than one codon, which offers some protection against possibly harmful mutations that might change the sequence of the amino acids in a protein.

Cracking the genetic code was no simple matter. Researchers performed a series of experiments in which they added artificial mRNA to a medium

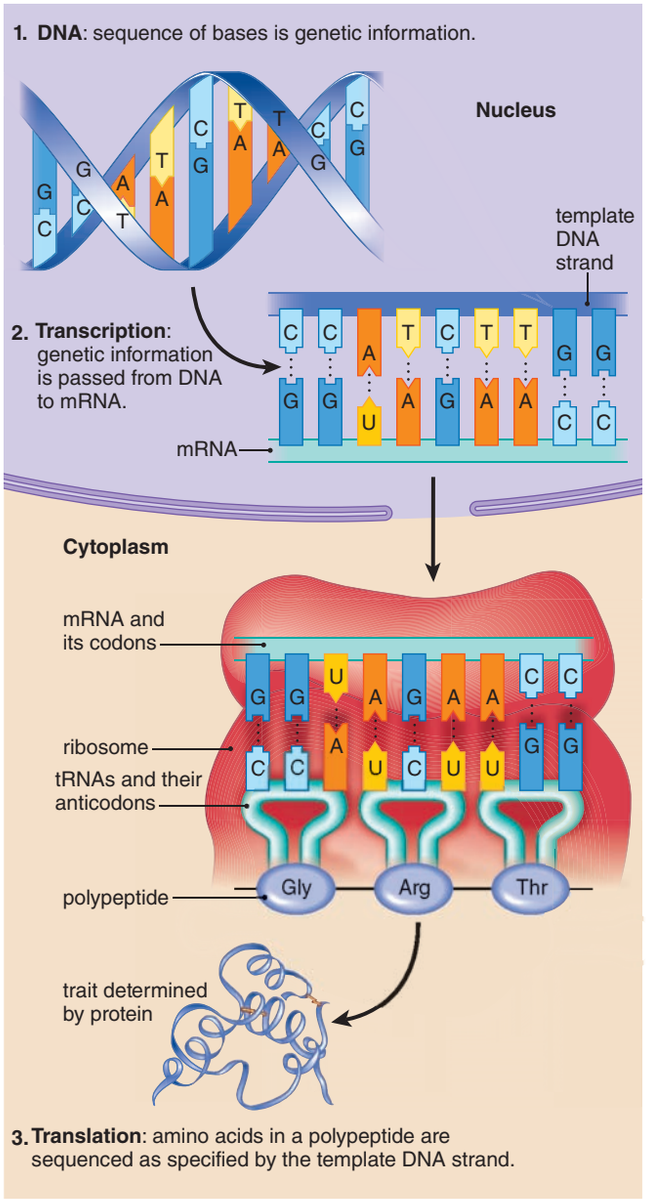


Figure 11.9 **Flow of genetic information.**

1. Genetic information (genes) consists of a particular sequence of bases. **2.** The process of transcription in the nucleus passes this genetic information to an mRNA molecule. The mRNA moves to a ribosome in the cytoplasm. **3.** During the process of translation at a ribosome in the cytoplasm, the genetic information results in a particular sequence of amino acids in a protein. The activity or inactivity of this protein contributes to a trait and often whether the phenotype is normal or not normal.

Second base

First base	U	C	A	G	Third base
U	UUU, UUC: phenylalanine (Phe) UUA, UUG: leucine (Leu)	UCU, UCC, UCA, UCG: serine (Ser)	UAU, UAC: tyrosine (Tyr) **UAA stop** **UAG stop**	UGU, UGC: cysteine (Cys) **UGA stop** UGG tryptophan (Trp)	U C A G
C	CUU, CUC, CUA, CUG: leucine (Leu)	CCU, CCC, CCA, CCG: proline (Pro)	CAU, CAC: histidine (His) CAA, CAG: glutamine (Gln)	CGU, CGC, CGA, CGG: arginine (Arg)	U C A G
A	AUU, AUC, AUA: isoleucine (Ile) **AUG** methionine (Met) (**start**)	ACU, ACC, ACA, ACG: threonine (Thr)	AAU, AAC: asparagine (Asn) AAA, AAG: lysine (Lys)	AGU, AGC: serine (Ser) AGA, AGG: arginine (Arg)	U C A G
G	GUU, GUC, GUA, GUG: valine (Val)	GCU, GCC, GCA, GCG: alanine (Ala)	GAU, GAC: aspartic acid (Asp) GAA, GAG: glutamic acid (Glu)	GGU, GGC, GGA, GGG: glycine (Gly)	U C A G

Figure 11.10 Messenger RNA codons.

Notice that, in this chart, each of the codons is composed of three letters. As an example, find the rectangle where C is the first base and A is the second base. U, C, A, or G can be the third base. CAU and CAC are codons for histidine; CAA and CAG are codons for glutamine.

containing bacterial ribosomes and a mixture of amino acids. By comparing the bases in the mRNA with the resulting polypeptide, they were able to learn the code. For example, an mRNA with a sequence of repeating guanines (GGG′GGG′…) would encode a string of glycine amino acids, so they concluded that the mRNA codon GGG specifies the amino acid glycine in a protein.

The genetic code is almost universal in all living organisms. This suggests an evolutionary aspect to the genetic code: that the code dates back to the very first organisms on Earth and that all life is related.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

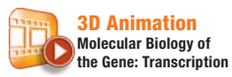
Which types of organisms use a different genetic code?

While almost all organisms use the genetic code presented in Figure 11.10, there are a few exceptions. Interestingly, in the mitochondria of the cell, the stop codon UGA codes for the amino acid tryptophan, and AUA is methionine, not leucine. There are similar differences in the chloroplasts of plants. Still, the number of exceptions is very small, and thus the genetic code may be considered as being "universal."

Transcription

During transcription of DNA, a strand of RNA forms that is complementary to a portion of DNA. While all three classes of RNA are formed by transcription, we will focus on transcription to create mRNA.

mRNA Is Formed Transcription begins when the enzyme **RNA polymerase** binds tightly to a **promoter,** a region of DNA with a special nucleotide sequence that marks the beginning of a gene. RNA polymerase opens up the DNA helix just in front of it, so that complementary base pairing can occur. Then the enzyme adds new RNA nucleotides that are complementary to the template DNA strand, and an mRNA molecule results (**Fig. 11.11**). The resulting **mRNA transcript** is a complementary copy of the sequence of bases in the template DNA strand. Once transcription is completed, the mRNA is ready to be processed before it leaves the nucleus for the cytoplasm.



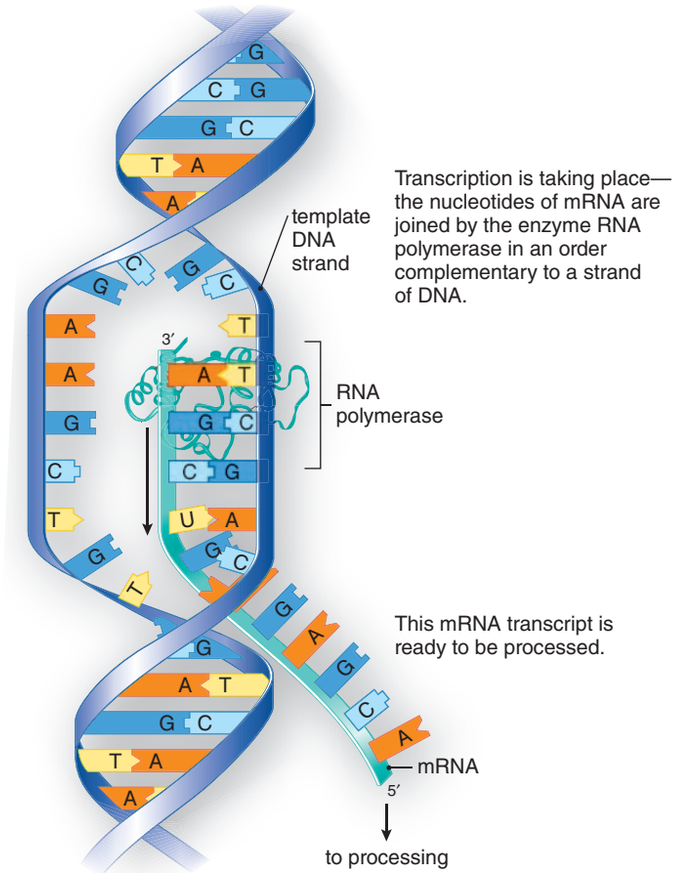


Figure 11.11 Transcription to form mRNA.

During transcription, complementary RNA is made from a DNA template. A portion of DNA unwinds and unzips at the point of attachment of RNA polymerase. A strand of RNA, such as mRNA, is produced when complementary bases join in the order dictated by the sequence of bases in the template DNA strand.

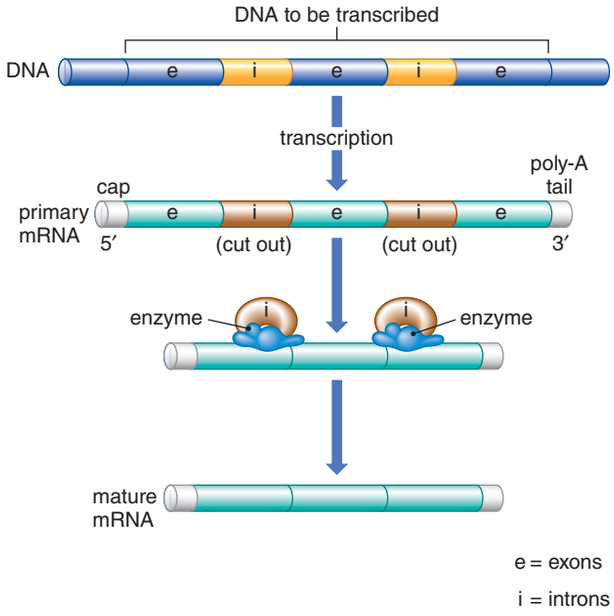


Figure 11.12 **mRNA processing.**

Primary mRNA results when both exons and introns are transcribed from DNA. A "cap" and a poly-A "tail" are attached to the ends of the primary-RNA transcript, and the introns are removed, so that only the exons remain. This mature mRNA molecule moves into the cytoplasm of the cell, where translation occurs.

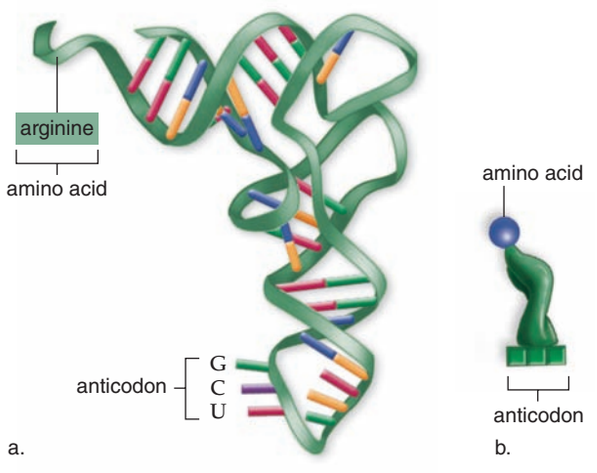


Figure 11.13 **tRNA structure and function.**

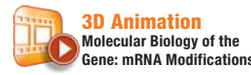
a. A tRNA, which is single-stranded but folded, has an amino acid attached to one end and an anticodon at the other end. The anticodon is complementary to a codon. **b.** The tRNA will be represented like this in the following illustrations.

mRNA Is Processed The newly synthesized *primary-mRNA* must be processed in order for it to be used properly. Processing occurs in the nucleus of eukaryotic cells. Three steps are required: capping, the addition of a poly-A tail, and splicing (**Fig. 11.12**). After processing, the mRNA is called a *mature mRNA* molecule.

The first nucleotide of the primary-mRNA is modified by the addition of a cap that is composed of an altered guanine nucleotide. On the 3′ end, enzymes add a poly-A tail, a series of adenosine nucleotides. These modifications provide stability to the mRNA; only those that have a cap and tail remain active in the cell.

Most genes in humans are interrupted by segments of DNA that do not code for protein. These portions are called *introns* because they are intervening segments. The other portions of the gene, called *exons,* contain the protein-coding portion of the gene. In *mRNA splicing,* the introns are removed and the exons joined together. The result is a mature mRNA molecule consisting of continuous exons. Scientists now know that the genetic sequences in the introns are not "junk" and that many play a regulatory function in gene expression.

Ordinarily, processing brings together all the exons of a gene. In some instances, however, cells use only certain exons rather than all of them to form the mature RNA transcript. The result is a different protein product in each cell. In other words, this is called *alternative mRNA splicing* and it increases the number of protein products that can be made from a single gene.



After the mRNA strand is processed, it passes from the cell nucleus into the cytoplasm for translation.

Translation: An Overview

Translation is the second step by which gene expression leads to protein (polypeptide) synthesis. Translation requires several enzymes, mRNA, and the other two types of RNA: transfer RNA and ribosomal RNA.

Transfer RNA Takes Amino Acids to the Ribosomes Each tRNA is a single-stranded nucleic acid that doubles back on itself such that complementary base pairing results in the cloverleaf-like shape shown in **Figure 11.13**. There is at least one tRNA molecule for each of the 20 amino acids found in proteins. The amino acid binds to one end of the molecule. The opposite end of the molecule contains an **anticodon,** a group of three bases that is complementary to a specific codon of mRNA.

During translation, the order of codons in mRNA determines the order in which tRNAs bind at the ribosomes. When a tRNA–amino acid complex comes to the ribosome, its anticodon pairs with an mRNA codon. For example, if the codon is ACC, what is the anticodon, and what amino acid will be attached to the tRNA molecule? From Figure 11.10, we can determine this:

Codon (mRNA)	Anticodon (tRNA)	Amino Acid (protein)
ACC	UGG	Threonine

After translation is complete, a protein contains the sequence of amino acids originally specified by DNA. This is the genetic information that DNA stores and passes on to each cell during the cell cycle, then to the next generation of individuals. DNA's sequence of bases determines the proteins in a cell, and the proteins determine the function of each cell.

Ribosomal RNA is in Ribosomes Ribosomes are the small structural bodies where translation occurs. Ribosomes are composed of many proteins and several ribosomal RNAs (rRNAs). In eukaryotic cells, rRNA is produced in a nucleolus within the nucleus. There, it joins with proteins manufactured in the cytoplasm to form two ribosomal subunits, one large and one small. The subunits leave the nucleus and join together in the cytoplasm to form a ribosome just as protein synthesis begins.

A ribosome has a binding site for mRNA as well as binding sites for two tRNA molecules at a time (Fig. 11.13). These binding sites facilitate complementary base pairing between tRNA anticodons and mRNA codons. The P binding site is for a tRNA attached to a *p*eptide, and the A binding site is for a newly arrived tRNA attached to an *a*mino acid. The E site is for tRNA molecules *e*xiting the ribosome.

Translation Has Three Phases

Polypeptide synthesis has three phases: initiation, an elongation cycle, and termination. Enzymes are required for each of the steps to occur, and energy is needed for the first two steps.

Initiation This is the step that brings all of the translation components together (**Fig. 11.14**):

- The small ribosomal subunit attaches to the mRNA in the vicinity of the start codon (AUG).
- The anticodon of the initiator tRNA–methionine complex pairs with this codon.
- The large ribosomal subunit joins to the small subunit.

Elongation Cycle During this step the polypeptide chain increases in length one amino acid at a time (**Fig. 11.15**):

- The tRNA at the P site contains the growing peptide chain.
- This tRNA passes its peptide to tRNA–amino acid at the A site. The tRNA at the P site enter the E site.

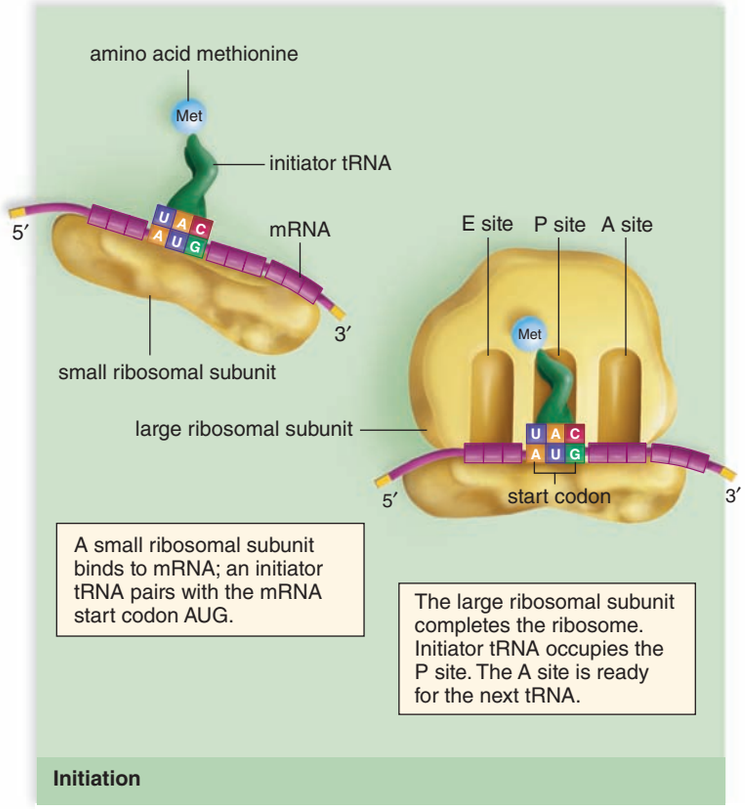
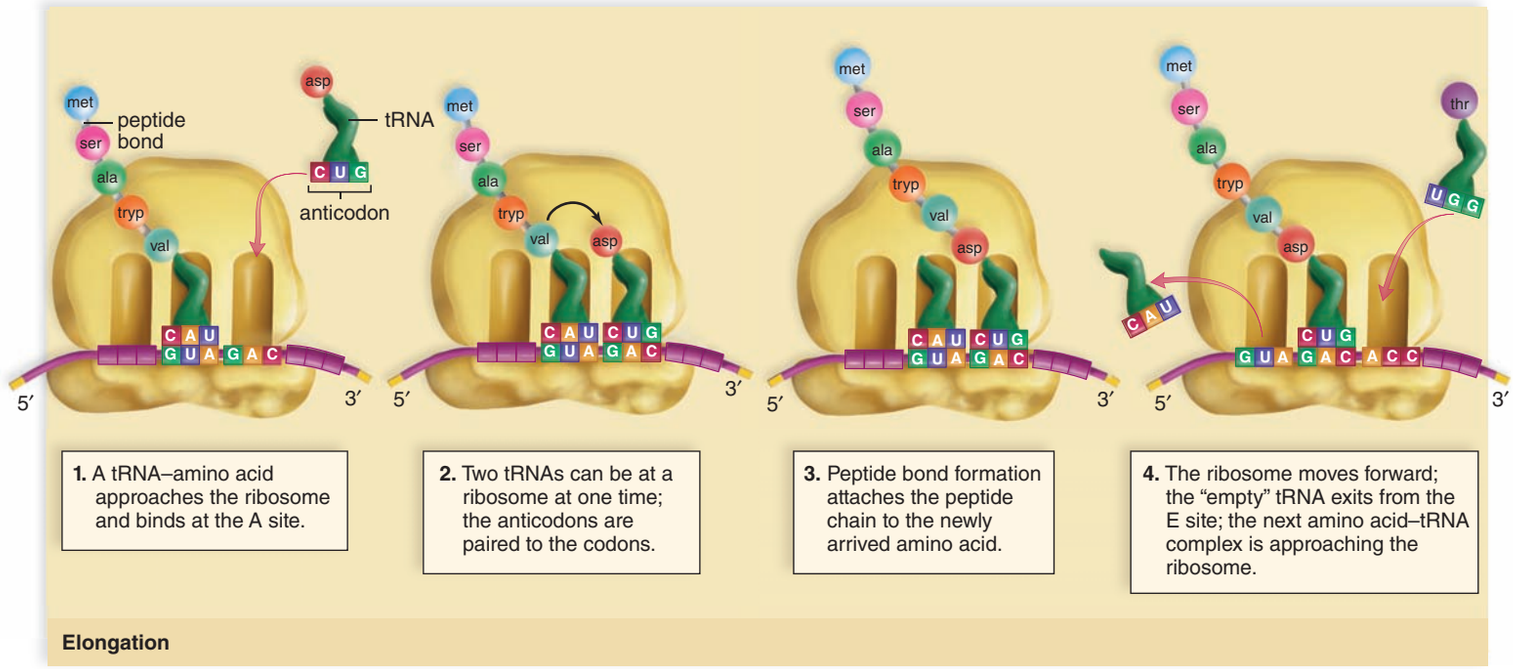


Figure 11.14 **Initiation.**

During initiation, the components needed for translation are assembled as shown.

Figure 11.15 **Elongation.**

Note that the polypeptide is already at the P site. During elongation, polypeptide synthesis occurs as amino acids are added one at a time to the growing chain.



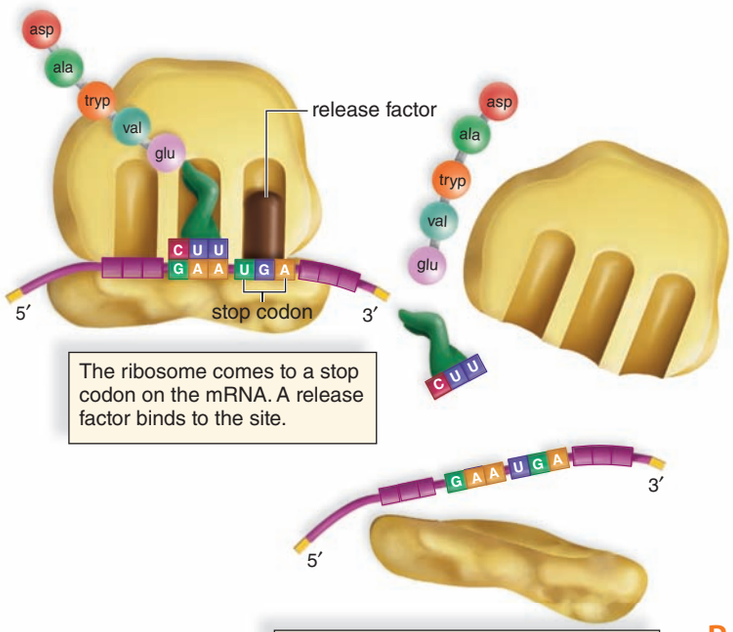


Figure 11.16 **Termination.**

During termination, the finished polypeptide chain is released and the translation components disassemble.

- During **translocation,** the tRNA-peptide moves to the P site, the empty tRNA in the E site exits the ribosome, and the codon at the A site is ready for the next tRNA–amino acid.

The complete cycle—complementary base pairing of new tRNA, transfer of the growing peptide chain, and translocation—is repeated at a rapid rate. The outgoing tRNA is recycled and can pick up another amino acid in the cytoplasm to take to the ribosome.

Termination Termination occurs when a stop codon (see Fig. 11.10) appears in the A site. Then, the polypeptide and the assembled components that carried out protein synthesis are separated from one another (**Fig. 11.16**).

- A protein called a **release factor** binds to the stop codon and cleaves the polypeptide from the last tRNA.
- The mRNA, ribosomes, and tRNA molecules can then be used for another round of translation.

Animation How Translation Works

3D Animation Molecular Biology of the Gene: Translation

Review of Gene Expression

Genes are segments of DNA that code for proteins. A gene is expressed when its protein product has been made. **Figure 11.17** reviews transcription and mRNA processing in the nucleus, as well as translation during protein synthesis in the cytoplasm of a eukaryotic cell. Note that it is possible for the cell to produce many copies of the same protein at the same time. As soon as the initial

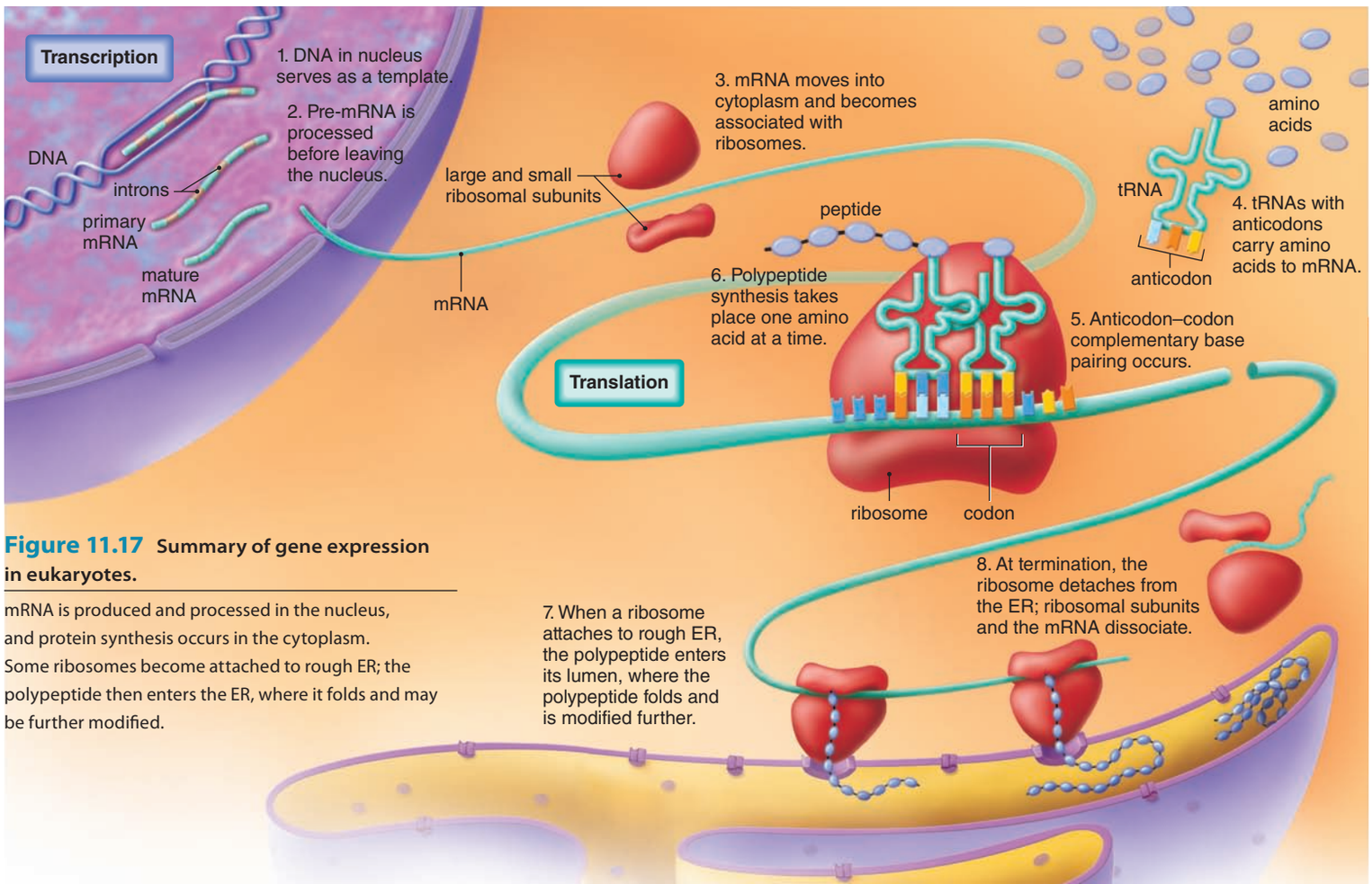


Figure 11.17 **Summary of gene expression in eukaryotes.**

mRNA is produced and processed in the nucleus, and protein synthesis occurs in the cytoplasm. Some ribosomes become attached to rough ER; the polypeptide then enters the ER, where it folds and may be further modified.

portion of mRNA has been translated by one ribosome and the ribosome has begun to move down the mRNA, another ribosome attaches to the same mRNA, forming a complex called a **polyribosome** (see #7 in Fig. 11.17).

Some ribosomes remain free in the cytoplasm, and others become attached to rough ER. In the latter case, the polypeptide enters the lumen of the ER by way of a channel, where it can be further processed by the addition of sugars. Transport vesicles carry the protein to other locations in the cell, including the Golgi apparatus, which may modify it further and package it in a vesicle for transport out of the cell or cause it to become embedded in the plasma membrane. Proteins have innumerable functions in cells, from enzymatic to structural. Proteins also have functions outside the cell. Together, they account for the structure and function of cells, tissues, organs, and the organism.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Gene expression involves both DNA and RNA molecules.

Check Your Progress 11.2

1. Summarize the stages of the central dogma of biology.
2. Detail how all three types of RNA function in translation.
3. Identify the location and major molecules involved in the processes of transcription and translation.

11.3 Gene Regulation

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the operation of the *lac* operon in prokaryotes.
2. List the levels of control of gene expression in eukaryotes.
3. Distinguish between euchromatin and heterochromatin.
4. Explain the role of transcription factors in eukaryotic gene regulation.

Levels of Gene Expression Control

The human body consists of many types of cells, which differ in structure and function. Each cell type must contain its own mix of proteins that makes it different from all other cell types. Therefore, only certain genes are active in cells that perform specialized functions, such as nerve, muscle, gland, and blood cells.

Some of these active genes are called housekeeping genes because they govern functions that are common to many types of cells, such as glucose metabolism. But the activity of some genes accounts for the specialization of cells. In other words, gene expression is controlled in a cell, and this control accounts for its specialization (**Fig. 11.18**). Let's begin by examining a simple system of controlling gene expression in prokaryotes.

Gene Expression in Prokaryotes

The bacterium *Escherichia coli* lives in the human large intestine and can quickly adjust its production of enzymes according to what we eat. If we drink a glass of milk, *E. coli* immediately begins to make three enzymes needed to metabolize lactose. The transcription of all three enzymes is under the control of one **promoter,** a short DNA sequence where RNA polymerase attaches. French microbiologists François Jacob and Jacques Monod called such a cluster of bacterial genes, along with the DNA sequences that control their transcription, an **operon.** They received a Nobel Prize in 1961 for their investigations because they were the first to show how gene expression is controlled—specifically, how the *lac* operon is controlled in lactose

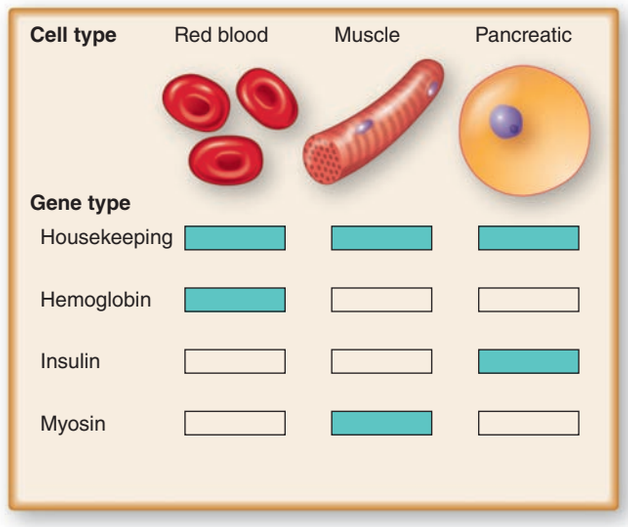
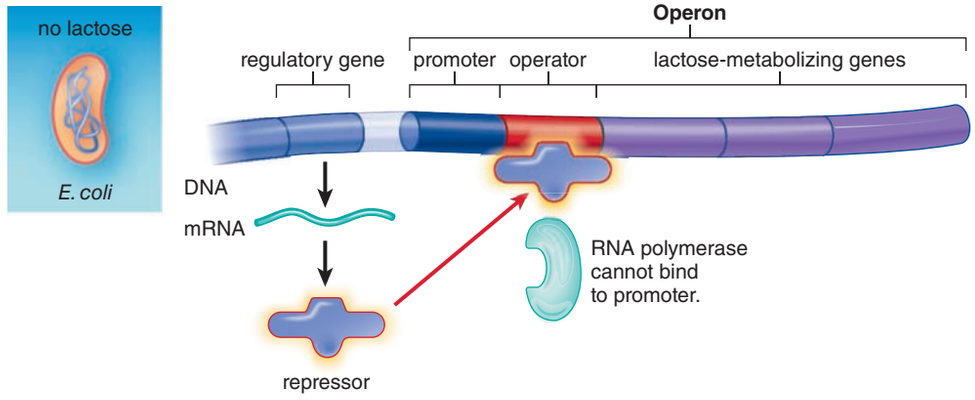


Figure 11.18 Gene expression in specialized cells.

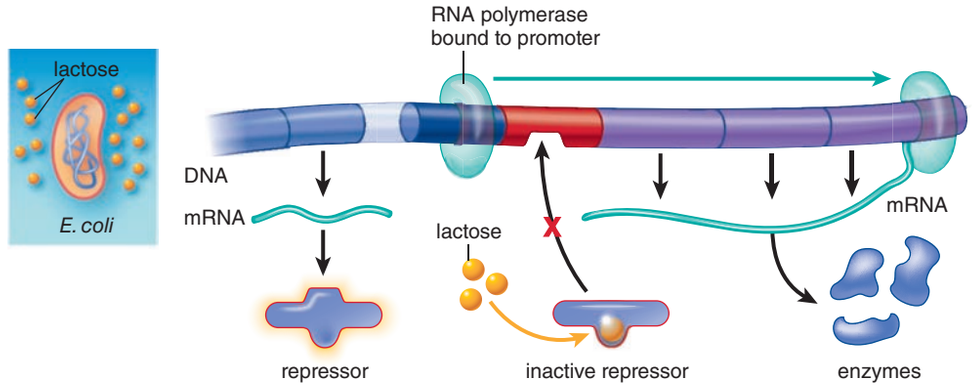
Each cell in your body contains a complete set of genes. While housekeeping genes are expressed in all cells, the expression of other genes is limited by the function of the cell.

Figure 11.19 The *lac* operon.

a. The regulatory gene codes for a repressor, which bonds to the operator and prevents RNA polymerase from attaching to the promoter. Therefore, transcription of the lactose-metabolizing genes does not occur. **b.** When lactose is present, it binds to the repressor, changing its shape. The repressor is then inactive and can no longer bind to the operator. Now RNA polymerase binds to the promoter, and the lactose-metabolizing genes are expressed.



a. **Lactose is absent—operon is turned off.**
Enzymes needed to metabolize lactose are not produced.



b. **Lactose is present—operon is turned on.**
Enzymes needed to metabolize lactose are produced.

metabolism (**Fig. 11.19**). Jacob and Monod proposed that a **regulatory gene** located outside the operon codes for a **repressor**—a protein that, in the *lac* operon, normally binds to the *operator,* which lies next to the promoter. When the repressor is attached to the operator, transcription of the lactose-metabolizing genes does not take place because RNA polymerase is unable to bind to the promoter. The *lac* operon is normally turned off in this way because lactose is usually absent (Fig. 11.19*a*).

What turns the operon on when lactose is present? Lactose binds to the repressor and it changes shape. Now the repressor is unable to bind to the operator and RNA polymerase is able to bind to the promoter (Fig. 11.19*b*). Transcription of the genes needed for lactose metabolism occurs. When lactose is present and glucose, the preferred sugar, is absent, a protein called CAP (not shown in Fig. 11.19) assists in the binding of RNA polymerase to the promoter. This further ensures that the lactose-metabolizing enzymes are transcribed when they are needed.

Animation *lac* Operon Regulation

Other bacterial operons, such as those that control amino acid synthesis, are usually turned on. For example, in the *trp* operon, the regulatory gene codes for a repressor that ordinarily is unable to attach to the operator. Therefore, the genes needed to make the amino acid tryptophan are ordinarily expressed. When tryptophan is present, it binds to the repressor. A change in shape activates the repressor and allows it to bind to the operator. Now the operon is turned off.

Animation Tryptophan Repressor

Gene Expression in Eukaryotes

In bacteria, a single promoter serves several genes that make up a transcription unit, while in eukaryotes, each gene has its own promoter where RNA polymerase binds. Bacteria rely mostly on transcriptional control, but eukaryotes employ a variety of mechanisms to regulate gene expression. These mechanisms affect whether the gene is expressed, the speed with which it is expressed, and how long it is expressed.

Some mechanisms of gene expression occur in the nucleus; others occur in the cytoplasm (**Fig. 11.20**). In the nucleus, chromatin condensation, DNA transcription, and mRNA processing all play a role in determining which genes are expressed in a particular cell type.

In the cytoplasm, mRNA translation into a polypeptide at the ribosomes can occur right away or be delayed. The mRNA can last a long time or be destroyed immediately, and the same holds true for a protein. These mechanisms control the quantity of gene product and/or how long it is active.

Chromatin Condensation Eukaryotes utilize chromatin condensation as a way to keep genes turned on or off. The more tightly chromatin is compacted, the less often genes within it are expressed. Darkly staining portions of chromatin, called **heterochromatin,** represent tightly compacted, inactive chromatin. A dramatic example of this is the *Barr body* in mammalian females. Females have a small, darkly staining mass of condensed chromatin adhering to the inner edge of the nuclear envelope. This structure is an inactive X chromosome.

How do we know that Barr bodies are inactive X chromosomes that are not producing gene product? Suppose 50% of the cells in a female have one X chromosome active, and 50% have the other X chromosome active. Wouldn't the body of a heterozygous female be a mosaic, with "patches" of genetically different cells? This is exactly what happens. For example, human females who are heterozygous for an X-linked recessive form of ocular albinism have patches of pigmented and nonpigmented cells at the back of the eye. And women who are heterozygous for the hereditary absence of sweat glands have patches of skin lacking sweat glands. The female calico cat also provides dramatic support for a difference in X-inactivation in its cells (**Fig. 11.21**).

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Why does X-inactivation occur?

While the X chromosome contains over 1,600 genes, the majority of these are not involved in anything related to sex. Therefore, in humans and other mammals, a female with two X chromosomes normally produces twice as much gene product (protein) as a male. Too much protein can negatively influence many metabolic pathways, so in order to regulate the amount of protein produced, females inactivate all but one of their X chromsomes. Most females possess a single Barr body, but the cells of XXX females have two Barr bodies, and males with Klinefelter syndrome (XXY) have a single Barr body in their cells, even though they are males.

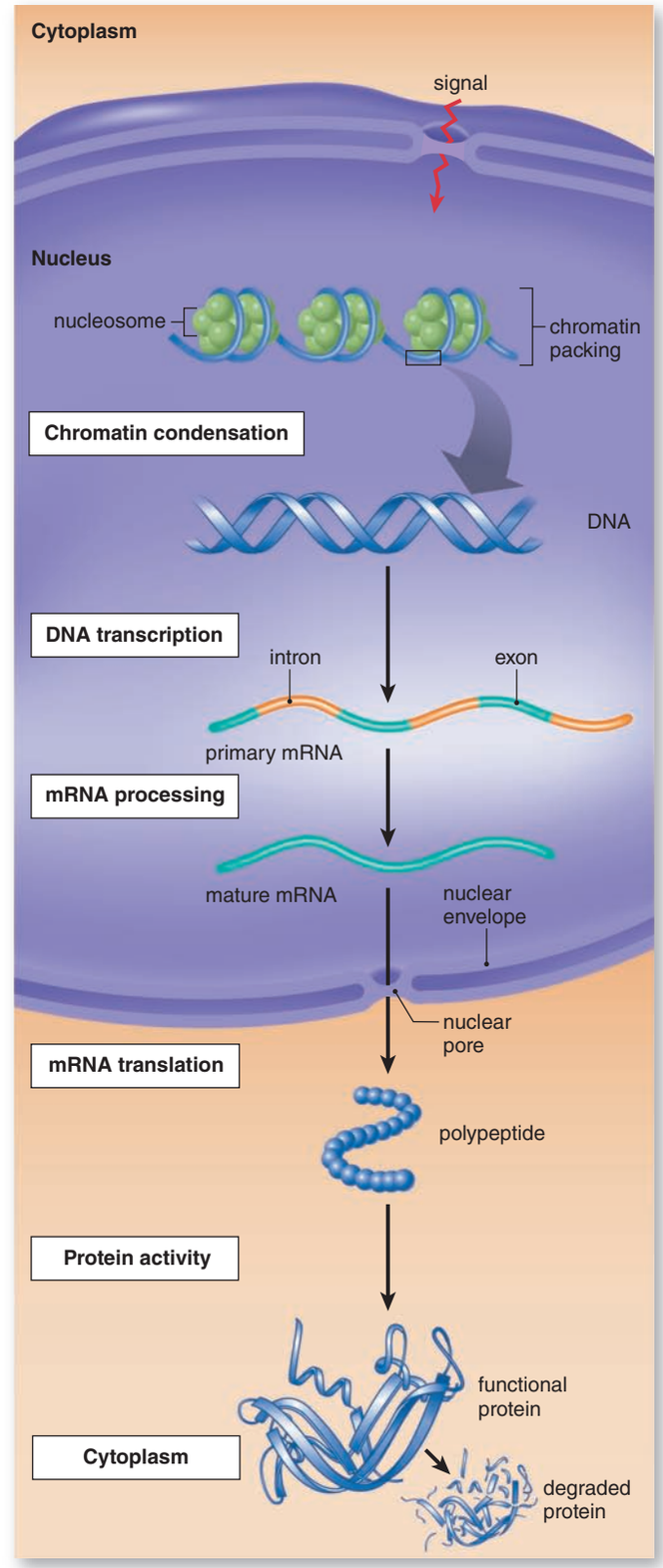


Figure 11.20 Control of gene expression in eukaryotic cells.

Gene expression is controlled at various levels in eukaryotic cells. Also, external signals (red arrow), such as growth factors, may alter gene expression.

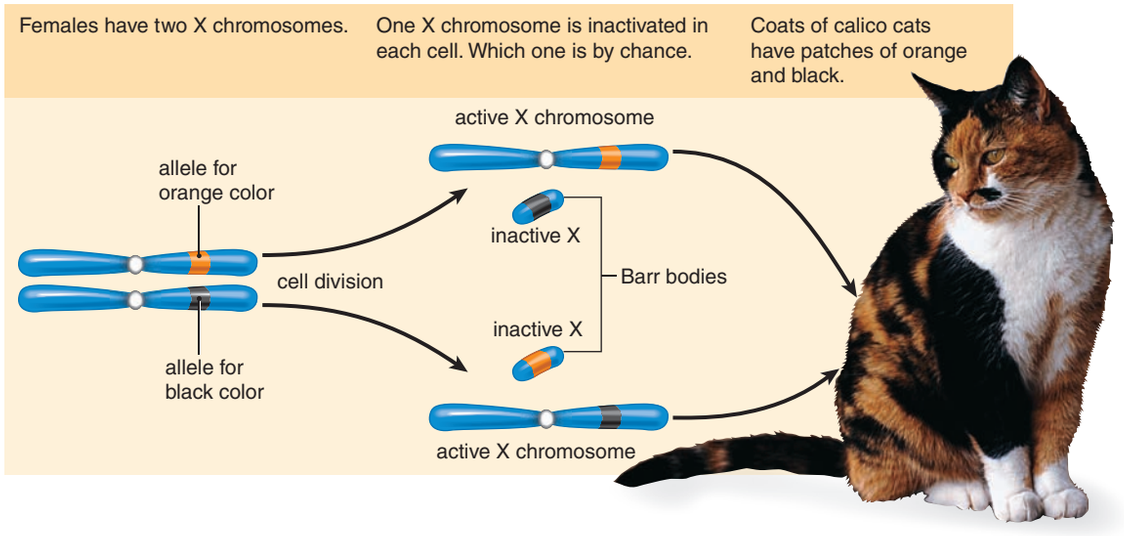


Figure 11.21 **X-inactivation in mammalian females.**

In cats, the alleles for black or orange coat color are carried on the X chromosome. Random X-inactivation occurs in females. Therefore, in heterozygous females, 50% of the cells have an allele for black coat color, and 50% of cells have an allele for orange coat color. The result is calico or tortoiseshell cats that have coats with patches of both black and orange. A calico cat, but not a tortoiseshell cat, has patches of white due to the activity of another gene.

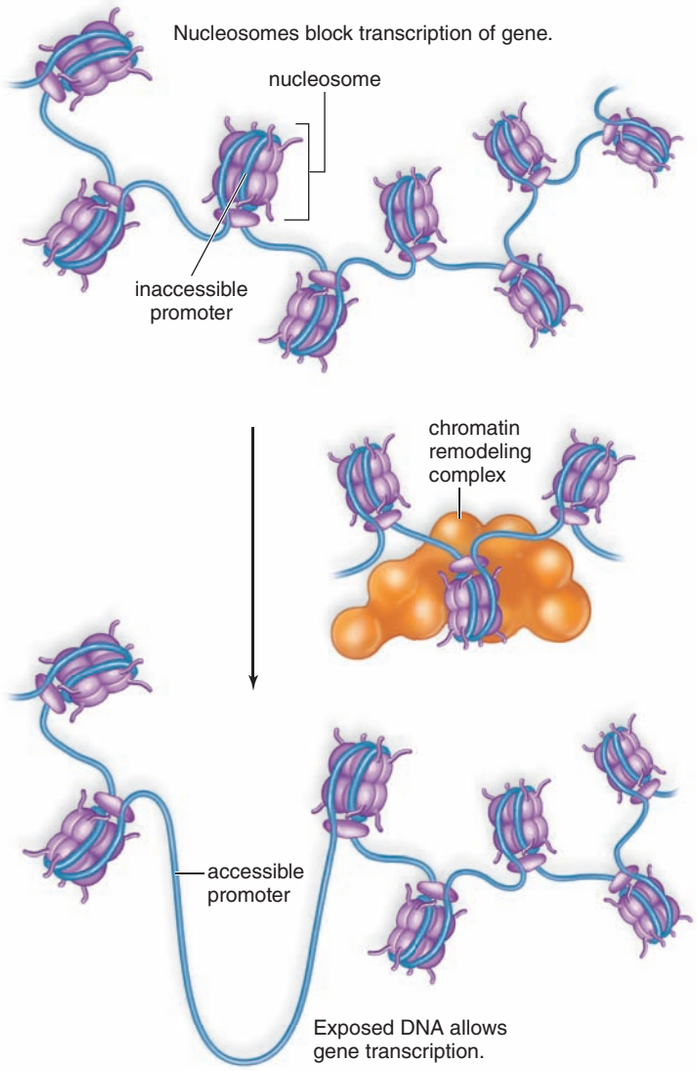


Figure 11.22 **Histone displacement.**

In euchromatin, a chromatin remodeling complex pushes aside the histone portions of nucleosomes, so that transcription can begin.

When heterochromatin undergoes unpacking, it becomes **euchromatin,** a more loosely packed form of chromatin that contains active genes. You learned in Chapter 8 that, in eukaryotes, a *nucleosome* is a portion of DNA wrapped around a group of histone molecules. When DNA is transcribed, a chromatin remodeling complex pushes aside the histone portions of nucleosomes, so that transcription can begin (**Fig. 11.22**). In other words, even euchromatin needs further modification before transcription can begin. The presence of histones limits access to DNA, and euchromatin becomes genetically active when histones no longer bar access to DNA. Only then is it possible for a gene to be turned on and expressed in a eukaryotic cell.

DNA Transcription Transcription in eukaryotes follows the same principles as in bacteria, except that many more regulatory proteins per gene are involved. The occurrence of so many regulatory proteins allows for not only greater control but also a greater chance of malfunction.

In eukaryotes, **transcription factors** are DNA-binding proteins that help RNA polymerase bind to a promoter. Several transcription factors are needed in each case; if one is missing, transcription cannot take place. All the transcription factors form a complex that also helps pull double-stranded DNA apart and even acts to position RNA polymerase so that transcription can begin. The same transcription factors, in different combinations, are used over again at other promoters, so it is easy to imagine that, if one malfunctions, the result could be disastrous to the cell. The genetic disorder Huntington disease is a devastating psychomotor ailment caused by a defect in a transcription factor.

In eukaryotes, *transcription activators* are DNA-binding proteins that speed transcription dramatically. They bind to a DNA region, called an **enhancer,** that can be quite a distance from the promoter. A hairpin loop in the DNA can bring the transcription activators attached to enhancers into contact with the transcription factor complex (**Fig. 11.23**).

A single transcription activator can have a dramatic effect on gene expression. For example, investigators have found one DNA-binding protein, MyoD, that alone can activate the genes necessary for fibroblasts to become muscle cells in various vertebrates. Another DNA-binding protein, called Ey, can bring about the formation of not just a single cell type but a complete eye in flies (**Fig. 11.24**).

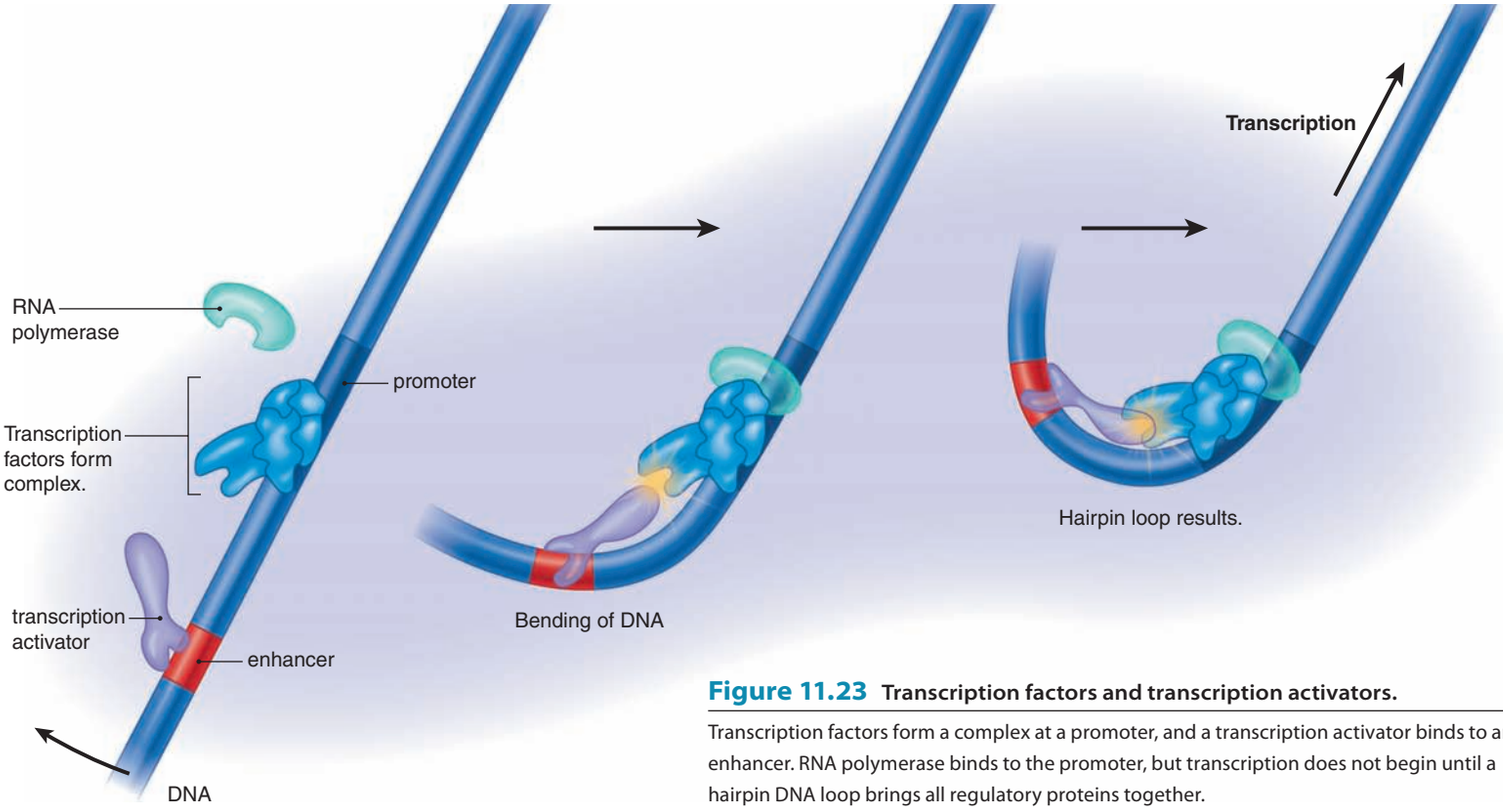


Figure 11.23 **Transcription factors and transcription activators.**

Transcription factors form a complex at a promoter, and a transcription activator binds to an enhancer. RNA polymerase binds to the promoter, but transcription does not begin until a hairpin DNA loop brings all regulatory proteins together.

mRNA Processing After transcription, the removal of introns and splicing of exons occur before mature mRNA leaves the nucleus and passes into the cytoplasm. **Alternative mRNA processing** is a mechanism by which the same primary-mRNA can produce different protein products according to which exons are spliced together to form mature mRNAs (**Fig. 11.25**).

Figure 11.24 ***Ey* gene.**

In fruit flies, the expression of the *Ey* gene, in the precursor cells of the leg, triggers the development of an eye on the leg.

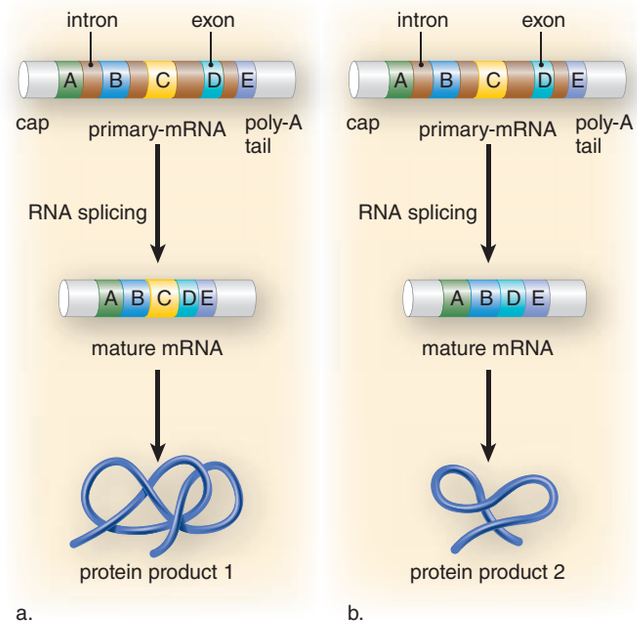


Figure 11.25 **Processing of mRNA transcripts.**

Because the primary-mRNAs are processed differently in these two cells, distinct proteins (a and b) result.

The fruit fly gene *DScam* offers a dramatic example of alternative mRNA processing. As many as 38,000 different proteins can be produced according to which of the gene's exons are combined in mature mRNAs. Evidence suggests that these proteins provide each nerve cell with a unique identity as it communicates with other nerve cells in the brain.

mRNA Translation The cytoplasm contains proteins that can control whether translation of mRNA takes place. For example, an initiation factor, known as IF-2, inhibits the start of protein synthesis when it is phosphorylated by a specific protein kinase. Environmental conditions can also delay translation. Red blood cells do not produce hemoglobin unless heme, an iron-containing group, is available.

The longer an mRNA remains in the cytoplasm before it is broken down, the more gene product is produced. During maturation, mammalian red blood cells eject their nuclei, yet they continue to synthesize hemoglobin for several months. The necessary mRNAs must be able to persist the entire time. Differences in the length of the poly-A tail can determine how long a particular transcript remains active. Hormones may also affect the stability of certain mRNA transcripts. An mRNA called vitellin persists for three weeks, instead of 15 hours, if it is exposed to estrogen.

Protein Activity Some proteins are not active immediately after synthesis. For example, insulin is a single, long polypeptide that folds into a three-dimensional structure. Only then is a sequence of about 30 amino acids enzymatically removed from the middle of the molecule. This leaves two polypeptide chains bonded together by disulfide (S—S) bonds, and an active insulin molecule results (**Fig. 11.26**). This mechanism allows a protein's activity to be delayed until it is needed.

Many proteins are short-lived in cells because they are degraded or destroyed. Cyclins, which are proteins involved in regulating the cell cycle, are destroyed by giant enzyme complexes called *proteasomes* when they are no longer needed. Proteasomes break down other proteins as well.

Epigenetics Scientists are beginning to recognize that some changes in gene regulation may be inherited from one generation to the next, especially at the cellular level. For example, in X-inactivation (see Fig. 11.21), the pattern of inactivation is inherited as the cell divides. In an XX cell, the inactive chromosome in the first cell is the same in all of its daughter cells. This explains the patches of colored fur on the cat in Figure 11.21; the black patches are all inherited from a cell that is expressing only the black allele because the orange is inactivated. This is an example of **epigenetic inheritance**, or the inheritance of changes in gene expression that are not the result of changes in the sequence of nucleotides on the chromosome. Epigenetic inheritance explains other physiological processes as well, such as genomic imprinting, in which the sex of the individual determines which alleles are to be expressed in the cell by suppressing genes on chromosomes inherited from the opposite sex.

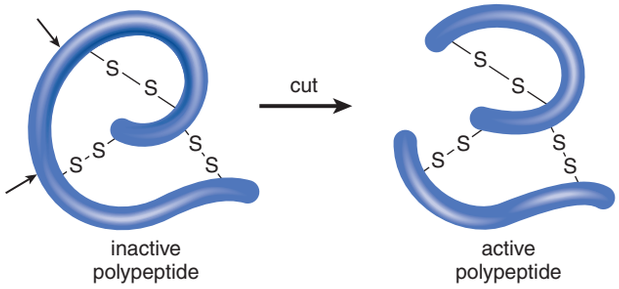


Figure 11.26 **Protein activity.**

The protein insulin is not active until an enzyme removes a portion of the initial polypeptide. The resulting two polypeptide chains are held together by two disulfide (S—S) bonds between like amino acids.

Signaling Between Cells in Eukaryotes

In multicellular organisms, cells are constantly sending out chemical signals that influence the behavior of other cells. During animal development, these signals determine the specialized role a cell will play in the organism. Later, the signals help coordinate growth and day-to-day functions. Plant cells also signal each other, so that their responses to environmental stimuli, such as direct sunlight, are coordinated.

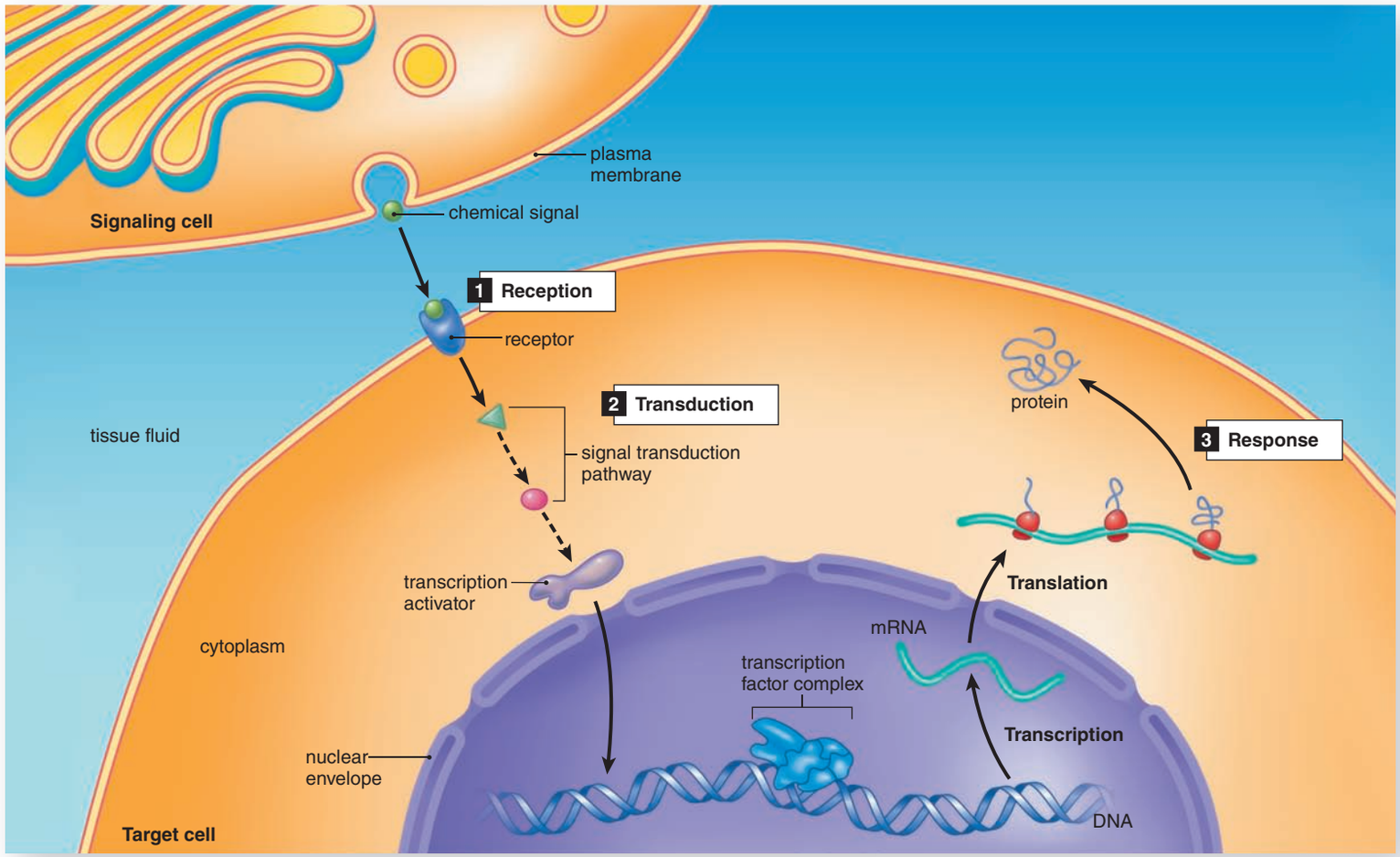


Figure 11.27 Cell-signaling.

1 Reception: A chemical signal is received at a specific receptor protein. 2 Transduction: A signal transduction pathway terminates when a transcription activator is stimulated. It enhances transcription of a specific gene. 3 Response: Translation of the mRNA transcript follows and a protein product results. The protein product is the response to the signal.

Typically, **cell-signaling** occurs because a chemical signal binds to a receptor protein in a target cell's plasma membrane. The signal causes the receptor protein to initiate a series of reactions within a **signal transduction pathway.** The end product of the pathway (not the signal) directly affects the metabolism of the cell. For example, growth is possible only if certain genes have been turned on by regulatory proteins.

In **Figure 11.27,** a signaling cell secretes a chemical signal that binds to a specific receptor located in the receiving cell's plasma membrane. The binding activates a series of reactions within a signal transduction pathway. The last reaction activates a transcription activator that enhances the transcription of a specific gene. Transcription leads to the translation of mRNA and a protein product that, in this case, stimulates the cell cycle, so that growth occurs.

A protein called Ras functions in signal transduction pathways that lead to the transcription of many genes, several of which promote the cell cycle. Ras is normally inactive, but the reception of a growth factor leads to its activation. If Ras is continually activated, cancer will develop because cell division will occur continuously.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Gene expression is controlled by a variety of cellular mechanisms.

Check Your Progress 11.3

1. Compare and contrast gene expression in prokaryotes and eukaryotes.
2. Detail the levels at which eukaryotes regulate gene expression.
3. Explain how transcription factors may fine tune the level of gene expression.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

Enhance your study of this chapter with media! Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Animations	Video	MP3 Files
11.1 Hershey and Chase Experiment • DNA Structure **11.2** mRNA Synthesis • Exon Shuffling • How Translation Works **11.3** *lac* Operon Regulation • Tryptophan Repressor • Control of Gene Expression in Eukaryotes • X-Inactivation	**11.1** DNA Dark Lady	**11.2** Protein Synthesis • Transcription • Translation

3D Animation
DNA Replication
Molecular Biology of the Gene

The 3D animations "DNA Replication" and "Molecular Biology of the Gene" provide an interactive view of the processes involved in copying the genetic material and expressing genes.

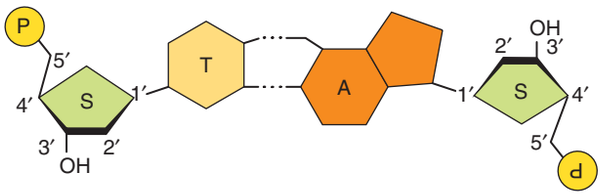
SUMMARIZE

11.1 DNA and RNA Structure and Function

Structure of DNA

DNA, the genetic material, has the following structure:

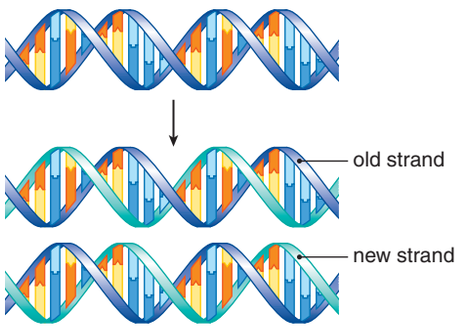
- DNA is a polymer in which four nucleotides differ by their bases. These bases are **adenine (A), guanine (G), cytosine (C),** and **thymine (T).** A is always paired with T, and G is always paired with C, a pattern called **complementary base pairing:**



- DNA is a double helix. The deoxyribose sugar–phosphate molecules make up the sides of a twisted ladder and run counter to one another. The paired bases are the rungs of the ladder. Base pairs can be in any order in each type of species.

Replication of DNA

DNA replicates during S phase of the cell cycle. During **DNA replication,** each old strand (a **template**) gives rise to a new strand. Therefore, the process is called **semiconservative.** Because of complementary base pairing, all these double-helical molecules are identical:



DNA replication uses a collection of enzymes, which include

- Helicase—unwinds the double helix
- DNA polymerase—synthesizes the new DNA strand
- DNA ligase—repairs breaks in the sugar-phosphate backbone of the DNA strand

RNA Structure and Function

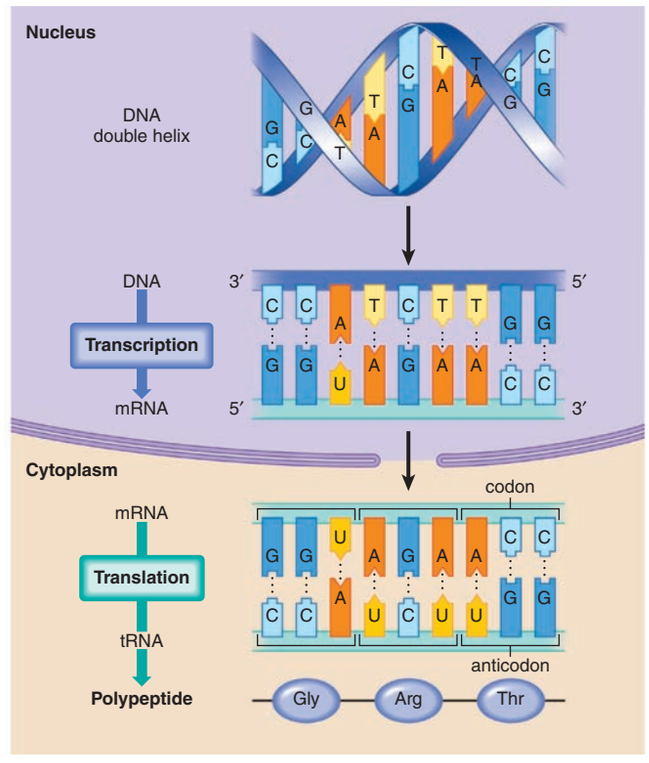
Ribonucleic acid (RNA) has the following characteristics:

- It is found in the nucleus and cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells.
- It contains the sugar ribose and the bases adenine (A), **uracil (U),** cytosine (C), and guanine (G).
- It is single-stranded.
- The three main forms are **messenger (mRNA),** which carries the DNA message to the ribosomes; **transfer (tRNA),** which transfers amino acids to the ribosomes, where protein synthesis occurs; and **ribosomal (rRNA),** which is found in the **ribosomes.**

11.2 Gene Expression

DNA specifies the sequence of amino acids in a protein. This information is represented by the genetic code. Gene expression requires two steps: transcription and translation.

From DNA to RNA to Protein



Transcription: During **transcription**, an RNA polymerase binds to the promoter, the regulatory region at the start of the gene. The RNA polymerase then makes a complementary mRNA copy of the nucleotides in the gene (substituting uracil for thymine). This is called an **mRNA transcript.**

Following transcription in eukaryotic cells, the mRNA is processed. Processing involves (1) the addition of a cap to one end, (2) the addition of a poly-A tail to the other end, and (3) the removal of introns, so that only exons remain. The mature mRNA now contains instructions for assembling a protein.

Translation: Translation requires three types of RNA:

mRNA contains codons in which every three bases code for a particular amino acid except when the codon means stop.

tRNA brings amino acids to the ribosomes. One end of the molecule binds to the amino acid, and the other end is the **anticodon**, three bases that pair with a **codon.** Each tRNA binds with only 1 of the 20 types of amino acids in a protein.

rRNA is located in the ribosomes. The P site of a ribosome contains a tRNA attached to a peptide, and the A site contains a tRNA attached to an amino acid. The E site represents the exit site for the tRNA once it has released its amino acid.

Translation Has Three Phases

The three phases of translation are initiation, the elongation cycle, and termination:

Initiation: During chain initiation at the start codon, the ribosomal subunits, the mRNA, and the tRNA–methionine complex come together.

Elongation cycle: The chain elongation cycle consists of the following events. A tRNA enters the A site. A peptide bond forms between the amino acids attached to the tRNAs in the P and A sites. As the ribosome translocates, the tRNA in the P site moves into the E site and exits, and the tRNA in the A site moves to the P site. The codon at the A site is ready for the next tRNA–amino acid.

Termination: During chain termination, a stop codon is reached on the mRNA. A release factor binds, the ribosome dissociates, the mRNA departs, and the polypeptide is released.

11.3 Gene Regulation

Levels of Gene Expression Control

The specialization of cells is not due to the presence or absence of genes; it is due to the activity or inactivity of genes.

In prokaryotes, gene expression is controlled at the level of transcription:

- In the *lac* operon, the repressor, a protein produced by a **regulatory gene,** usually binds to the operator. Then RNA polymerase cannot bind to the **promoter,** and the **operon** is turned off. When lactose is present, it binds to the **repressor,** and now RNA polymerase binds to the promoter and the genes for lactose metabolism are transcribed.
- In the *trp* operon, the genes are usually transcribed because the repressor is inactive. When tryptophan is present, the repressor becomes active, and RNA polymerase cannot bind to the promoter.

Eukaryotes regulate gene expression at various levels:

- Chromatin condensation—**heterochromatin** is converted to **euchromatin**, so that genes can be expressed.
- DNA transcription—**transcription factors** present at the promoter and transcription activators (bound to **enhancers**) are brought into contact and promote transcription.
- mRNA processing—**alternative mRNA processing** leads to a sequence of different exons in mature RNA and, therefore, different proteins.
- mRNA translation—various factors affect how long an mRNA stays active and how many times it is translated.
- Protein activity—activation of a protein may require further steps, and degradation of the protein can occur at once or after a while.
- **Epigenetic inheritance** represents an inheritable form of regulation of gene expression, as is the case with X-inactivation.

Eukaryotic cells constantly communicate with their neighbors through **cell-signaling:**

- Signals are received at receptor proteins located in the plasma membrane.
- A **signal transduction pathway** (enzymatic reactions) leads to a change in the behavior of the cell. For example, when stimulated via a transduction pathway, a transcription activator stimulates transcription of a particular gene.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

DNA and RNA are the genetic materials in all living organisms. Scientists have found ways to manipulate DNA to express different traits in organisms.

11.1 DNA and RNA have similar structural components but differ in function.

11.2 Gene expression involves both DNA and RNA molecules.

11.3 Gene expression is controlled by a variety of cellular mechanisms.

For more information about DNA biology, see the following discussions:

Section 3.2 describes the structure of DNA and RNA molecules.
Section 13.3 examines how an understanding of DNA biology relates to biotechnology.
Section 16.3 describes the science of systematics, which characterizes evolutionary relationships based on DNA sequences.

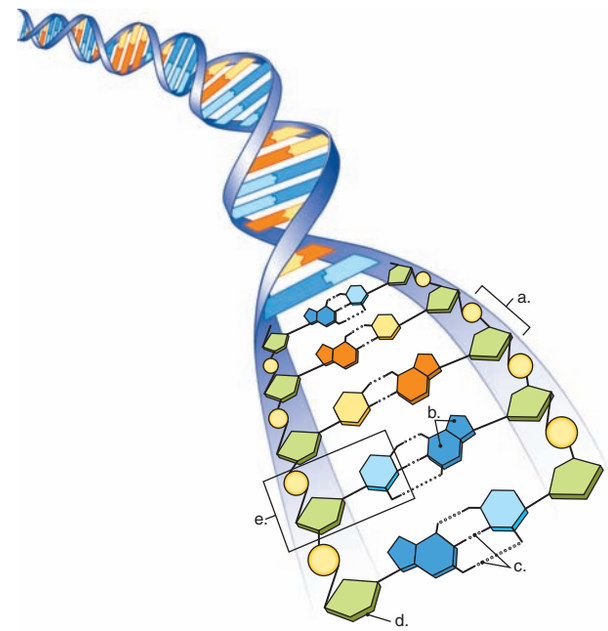
ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

11.1 DNA and RNA Structure and Function

1. In the following diagram, label all parts of the DNA molecule.



2. Chargaff's rules state that the amount of A, T, G, and C in DNA
   a. varies from species to species, and the amount of A = T and G = C.
   b. varies from species to species, and the amount of A = G and T = C.
   c. is the same from species to species, and the amount of A = T and G = C.
   d. is the same from species to species, and the amount of A = G and T = C.
3. The first picture of DNA, as a result of X-ray diffraction, was produced by
   a. Hershey and Chase.
   b. Watson and Crick.
   c. **Char**gaff.
   d. Franklin.

11.2 Gene Expression

4. DNA replication is said to be semiconservative because
   a. each new DNA molecule contains one new strand and one old one.
   b. every other new DNA molecule contains two old strands.
   c. each new DNA strand contains two new strands.
   d. every other new DNA molecule contains one new strand and one old one.
5. Which of the following is not a feature of eukaryotic DNA replication?
   a. Replication bubbles spread in two directions.
   b. A new strand is synthesized using an old one as a template.
   c. Complementary base pairing determines which nucleotides should be added to the new strand.
   d. Each chromosome has one origin of replication.

For questions 6–10, match the items to those in the key. Answers can be used more than once.

Key:

   a. messenger RNA
   b. transfer RNA
   c. ribosomal RNA

6. contains an anticodon
7. carries amino acids to the ribosome
8. carries genetic information from DNA to ribosomes
9. Along with proteins, forms the structure of the ribosome.
10. produced in the nucleolus
11. Which of the following statements about the genetic code is not true?
   a. The genetic code is almost universal.
   b. The genetic code is a doublet code.
   c. Multiple codons may encode the same amino acid.
   d. Some special codons mean "stop."
12. Transcription produces _____, while translation produces _____.
   a. DNA, RNA
   b. RNA, polypeptides
   c. polypeptides, RNA
   d. RNA, DNA

11.3 Gene Regulation

13. Which of the following is not a gene expression control mechanism seen in eukaryotes?
   a. alternative mRNA processing
   b. rate of ribosome synthesis
   c. longevity of mRNA
   d. chromatin condensation
14. Which of the following may produce more than one functional protein from an mRNA transcript?
   a. chromatin condensation
   b. transcriptional regulation
   c. epigenetics
   d. alternative mRNA processing
15. The form of gene regulation that may be inherited from one generation to the next is
   a. chromatin condensation.
   b. epigenetic inheritance.
   c. alternative mRNA splicing.
   d. Mendelian inheritance.

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- DNA & Biotechnology

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Experiments with bacteria in the 1930s showed that exposing a nonvirulent (noninfectious) strain of bacteria to a heat-killed virulent strain can convert the nonvirulent strain into a virulent one. What might explain this phenomenon?
2. How might an understanding of epigenetic inheritance be used to develop new medicines?
3. The search for life in our solar system is an ongoing process. If life, or early forms of life, are discovered, one of the primary goals of researchers will be to better understand the genetic information that it contains.
   a. What basic requirements are needed for a molecule to be an effective genetic information system?
   b. Suppose that the genetic information in these new samples turns out to be very similar to our own. What will this tell us about our DNA? What if it is very different?

12

Biotechnology and Genomics

Age of Biotechnology

Biotechnology is the study and application of living organisms and processes to manufacture products or to improve the characteristics of bacteria, plants, or animals. For example, biotechnologists are actively investigating ways of making our world less dependent on fossil fuels, such as oil. They have discovered that some bacteria produce biodegradable plastic-like granules inside their cells. By introducing these genes into plants, such as the corn plants show above, it may be possible someday to cheaply produce large quantities of biodegradable plastic.

Biotechnology is also making it possible for bioengineers and medical scientists to alter the genotype, and subsequently the phenotype, of other organisms. For example, genetically modified crops can be made not only resistant to disease but also able to weather extremes (drought and heat) brought on by climate change. It may be possible someday to grow plastic-producing corn plants in areas of the country that have been traditionally too hot or dry for agriculture.

But many people worry that genetically modified organisms, or GMOs, might harm the environment and that the food produced by these organisms might not be healthy for humans. Other ethical concerns are also developing. For example, is it ethical to give a cat a gene to make it glow in the dark? To what extent is it ethical to improve the human genome? In this chapter, we will explore some of these techniques and areas of study, so that you may be better informed to make decisions.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What procedures are used to introduce a bacterial gene into a plant?
2. What is the difference between genetically modified and transgenic organisms?
3. How is the study of genomics helping us identify candidates for biotechnology?

OUTLINE

12.1 Biotechnology 208

12.2 Stem Cells and Cloning 211

12.3 Biotechnology Products 213

12.4 Genomics and Proteomics 215

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 3.2 What are the roles of proteins and nucleic acids in a cell?

Section 11.1 What is the basic structure of a DNA molecule?

Section 11.1 How is the DNA of a cell replicated?

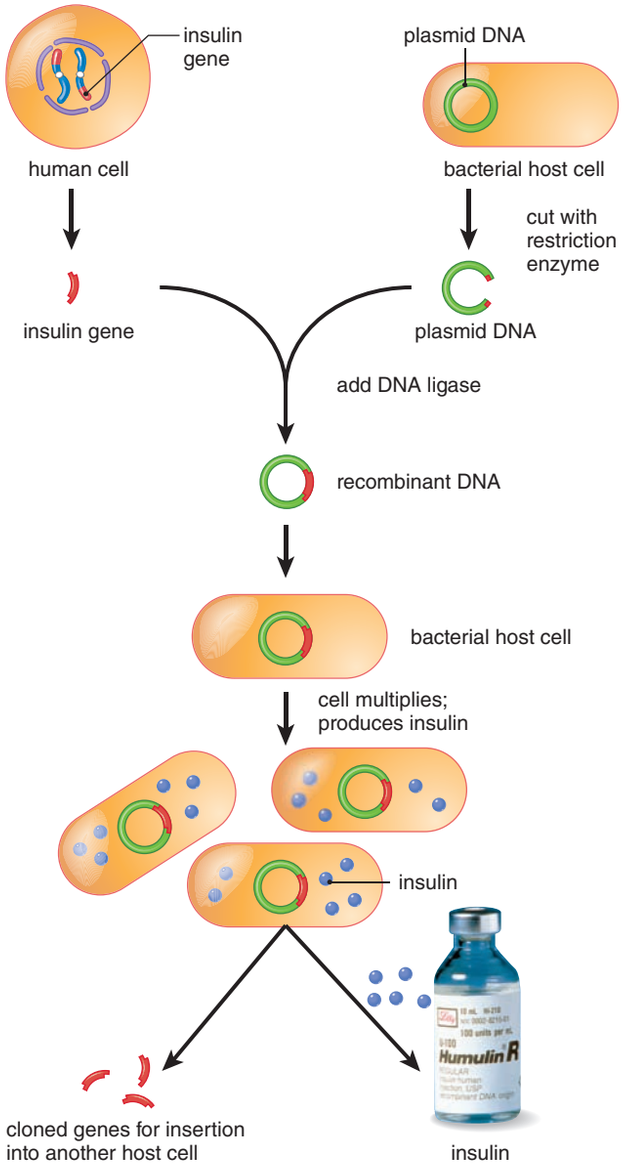


Figure 12.1 **Recombinant DNA technology.**

The production of insulin is one example of how recombinant DNA technology can benefit humans. In this process, human and plasmid DNA are spliced together and inserted into a bacterial host cell. As the cell undergoes cell division, the plasmid is replicated. This makes multiple copies, or clones of the gene. The gene may be isolated for use in additional experiments, or left in the bacterial host cell to produce human insulin protein.

12.1 Biotechnology

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the steps involved in making a recombinant DNA molecule.
2. Explain the purpose of the polymerase chain reaction.
3. Explain how DNA fingerprinting may be used for identification.

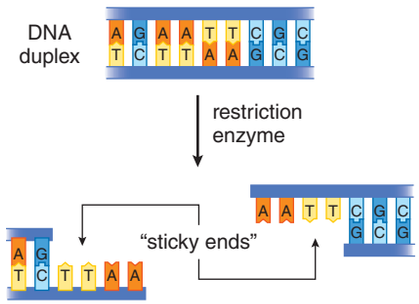
The term **biotechnology** refers to the use of natural biological systems to create a product or achieve some other end desired by human beings. Today, bacteria, plants, and animals can be genetically engineered to make biotechnology products. An understanding of how DNA functions in cells has allowed scientists to manipulate the genes of organisms. Genes can be cloned (identical copies made) and then used for various purposes. During **genetic engineering,** a cloned gene can be inserted into the genome of an organism, which is then called a **transgenic organism** (see Section 12.3). Because the genetic code is almost universal, it's possible to transfer cloned genes from virtually any organism into bacteria, plants, and animals.

Recombinant DNA Technology

Recombinant DNA (rDNA) contains DNA from two or more different sources (**Fig. 12.1**). To make rDNA, a researcher needs a **vector,** a piece of DNA that acts as a carrier for the foreign DNA. One common vector is a *plasmid,* which is a small accessory ring of DNA found in bacteria.

Two enzymes are needed to introduce foreign DNA into plasmid DNA: (1) **restriction enzymes** that can cleave, or cut, DNA at specific places (for example, the restriction enzyme *EcoRI* always cuts DNA at the base sequence GAATTC) and (2) DNA ligase, which can seal the foreign DNA into an opening in a cut plasmid.

Animation Restriction Endonucleases



If a plasmid is cut with *EcoRI,* a gap now exists into which a piece of foreign DNA can be placed if it ends in bases complementary to those exposed by the restriction enzyme. To ensure this, it is necessary to cleave the foreign DNA with the same restriction enzyme. The overhanging bases at the ends of the two DNA molecules are called "sticky ends," because they can bind a piece of foreign DNA by complementary base pairing. Sticky ends facilitate the insertion of foreign DNA into vector DNA, a process very similar to the way puzzle pieces fit together.

DNA ligase, the enzyme that functions in DNA replication to seal breaks in a double-stranded helix, seals the foreign piece of DNA into the

plasmid. Molecular biologists often give the rDNA to bacterial cells, which readily take up recombinant plasmids when the cells are treated to make them more permeable. Thereafter, as the bacteria replicate the plasmid, the gene is cloned. Cloned genes have many uses. A scientist may allow the **genetically modified** bacterial cells to express the cloned gene and retrieve the protein. Or copies of the cloned gene may be removed from the bacterial cells and then introduced into another organism, such as a corn plant, to produce a transgenic organism.

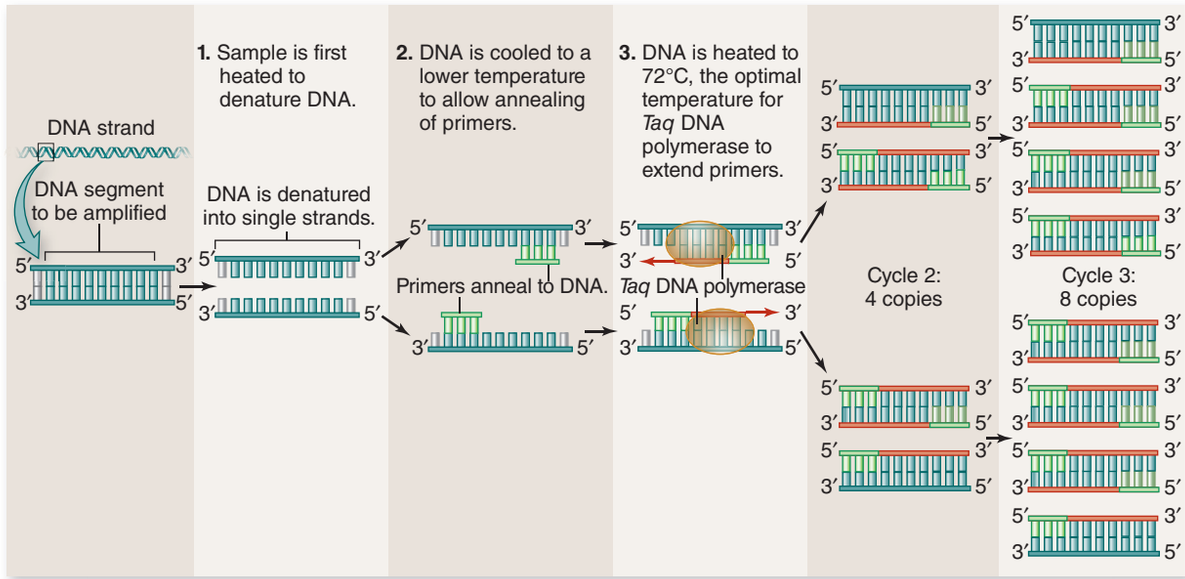
Polymerase Chain Reaction

The **polymerase chain reaction** (PCR) can create billions of copies of a segment of DNA in a test tube in a matter of hours. PCR is very specific—it amplifies (makes copies of) a targeted DNA sequence, usually a few hundred bases in length. PCR requires the use of DNA polymerase, the enzyme that carries out DNA replication, and a supply of nucleotides for the new DNA strands. PCR involves three basic steps (**Fig. 12.2**), which occur repeatedly, usually for about 35 to 40 cycles: (1) a denaturation step at 95°C, where DNA is heated to become single-stranded; (2) an annealing step at a temperature usually between 50° and 60°C, where a nucleotide primer hybridizes (or binds) to each of the single DNA strands; and (3) an extension step at 72°C, where a DNA polymerase adds complementary bases to each of the single DNA strands, creating double-stranded DNA.

PCR is a chain reaction because the targeted DNA is repeatedly replicated, much in the same way natural DNA replication occurs, as long as the process continues. Figure 12.2 uses color to distinguish the old strand from the new DNA strand. Notice that the amount of DNA doubles with each replication cycle. Thus, assuming you start with only one copy of DNA, after one cycle, you will have two copies, after two cycles four copies, and so on. PCR has been in use since its development in 1985 by Kary Banks Mullis, and now almost every laboratory has automated PCR machines to carry out

Figure 12.2 **The polymerase chain reaction.**

The polymerase chain reaction, or PCR, produces multiple copies of a segment of DNA. These segments may then be used by researchers in recombinant DNA studies.



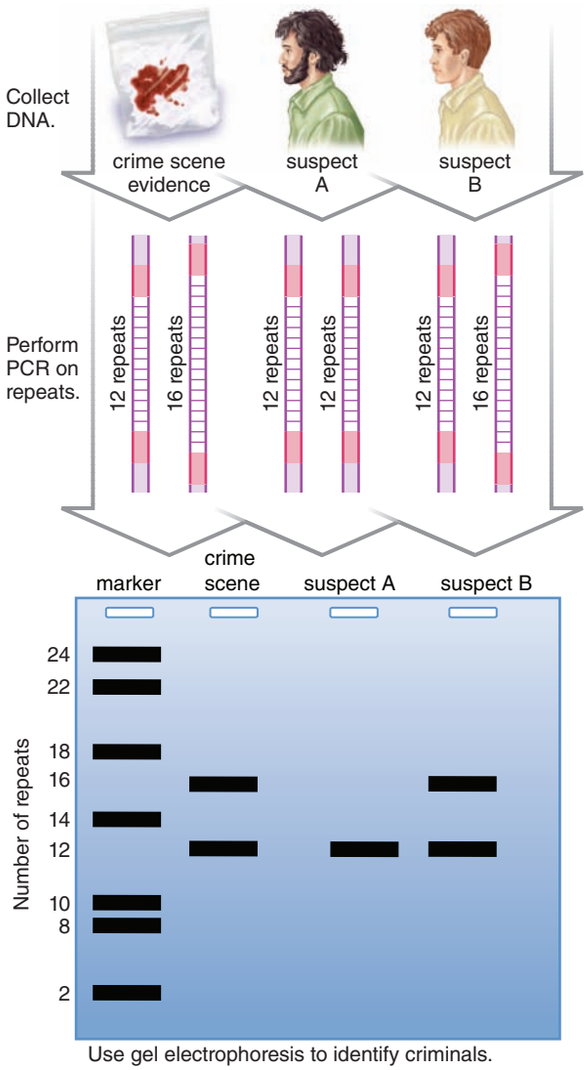


Figure 12.3 DNA Fingerprinting.

For DNA fingerprinting, PCR is used to generate copies of specific regions of DNA, which are then analyzed for length variations. These variations may be used to identify deceased individuals or suspects in a crime. In this example, the evidence suggests that suspect A is not the criminal.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

DNA technology allows scientists to copy and study the genes of organisms.

Check Your Progress 12.1

1. Explain the role of the plasmid in recombinant DNA technology.
2. Summarize how the polymerase chain reaction is used in biotechnology.
3. Describe the potential uses of DNA fingerprinting.

the procedure. Automation became possible after a temperature-insensitive (thermostable) DNA polymerase was extracted from the bacterium *Thermus aquaticus,* which lives in hot springs. The enzyme can withstand the high temperature used to denature double-stranded DNA. Therefore, replication does not have to be interrupted by the need to add more enzyme. Only a small amount of DNA is required for PCR to be effective, so it has even been possible to sequence DNA from the tiniest sample at a crime scene or from mummified human brains.

DNA Fingerprinting

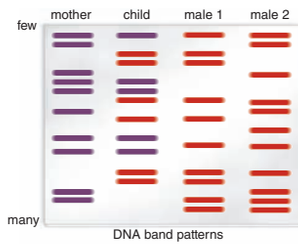
The polymerase chain reaction has enabled scientists to quickly identify segments of DNA, much as your fingerprints may be used to identify you. This process is called **DNA fingerprinting,** and it makes use of noncoding sections of DNA that consist of two to five bases repeated over and over again, as in ATCATCATCATC. People differ by how many times such a sequence is repeated, but how can this difference be detected? PCR is used to amplify the entire repeated region. The greater the number of repeats, the longer the segment of DNA that will result after PCR amplification is done. People can be heterozygous for the number of repeats, as in **Figure 12.3,** so the DNA from both homologues must be amplified separately. Following PCR, the DNA is subjected to gel electrophoresis, a process that separates DNA molecules according to their size with an electric current through a jellylike material. The shorter the segment of DNA, the farther it migrates through the gel material in a banding pattern.

DNA fingerprinting has many uses. Medically, it can identify the presence of a viral infection or a mutated gene that could predispose someone to cancer. In forensics, DNA fingerprinting from a single sperm is enough to identify a suspected rapist, because the DNA is amplified by PCR. It can also be used to identify the parents of a child or identify the remains of someone who has died, such as the victims of natural disasters. In the future, we will undoubtedly see more applications of recombinant DNA technology that will greatly enrich our lives and improve our health.

Video World Trade Center

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How is a paternity test done, and why are the results always a percentage instead of a certainty?



In a paternity test, a sample from the mother, child, and possible father are taken and amplified by PCR; then the samples are electrophoresed and the banding patterns compared. In a typical paternity test, 13–16 human identity markers (HID) are examined. These markers, or genes, are found in all humans, but in differing lengths of repeats, which are inherited from parent to child. When a certain amount of these markers match in the child and possible father, the result is a percentage of certainty that the man is the father (normally, 99.0% or higher). Only by comparing entire genomes, which contain hundreds of millions of base pairs and approximately 25,000 genes, can a paternity test result in 100% certainty.

12.2 Stem Cells and Cloning

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish between reproductive and therapeutic cloning.
2. Differentiate between embryonic and adult stem cells.

In this section we will explore some of the techniques used in biotechnology that have allowed scientists to explore some interesting areas of biology, including how the initial zygote becomes an organism potentially consisting of trillions of specialized cells.

The events of the cell cycle and DNA replication ensure that every cell of the body receives a copy of all the genes. This means that every one of your cells has the potential to become a complete organism. While some cells, such as stem cells, retain their ability to form any other type of cell, most other cells differentiate, or specialize, to become specific types of cells, such as muscle cells. This specialization is based on the expression of certain groups of genes at specific times in development. One of the best ways to understand how specialization influences the fate of a cell is to take a look at the processes of reproductive and therapeutic cloning.

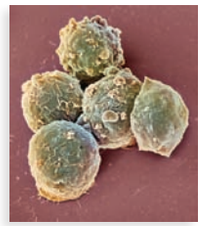
Reproductive and Therapeutic Cloning

In **reproductive cloning,** the desired end is an individual that is exactly like the original individual. The cloning of plants has been routine for sometime and has been responsible for much of the success of modern agriculture since. The cloning of some animals, such as amphibians, has been underway since the 1950s. However, at one time it was thought that the cloning of adult mammals would be impossible because investigators found it difficult to have the nucleus of an adult cell "start over," even when it was placed in another egg that had had its own nucleus removed (an enucleated egg cell).

In March 1997, Scottish investigators announced they had cloned a Dorset sheep, which they named Dolly. How was their procedure different from all the others that had been attempted? Again, an adult nucleus was placed in an enucleated egg cell; however, the donor cells had been starved. Starving the donor cells caused them to stop dividing and go into a resting stage (the G_0

Connections: Health

Have stem cells been used to cure human disease?



Stem cells have been used since the 1960s as a treatment for leukemia, a form of cancer in which the stem cells in bone marrow produce a large number of nonfunctional blood cells. In a bone marrow transplant, the patient's stem cells are destroyed using radiation or chemotherapy. Then, healthy stem cells from a donor are introduced into the patient's bone marrow. Stem cell therapy is available for a variety of human diseases, including type 2 diabetes, autoimmune diseases, heart conditions, and some forms of blindness.

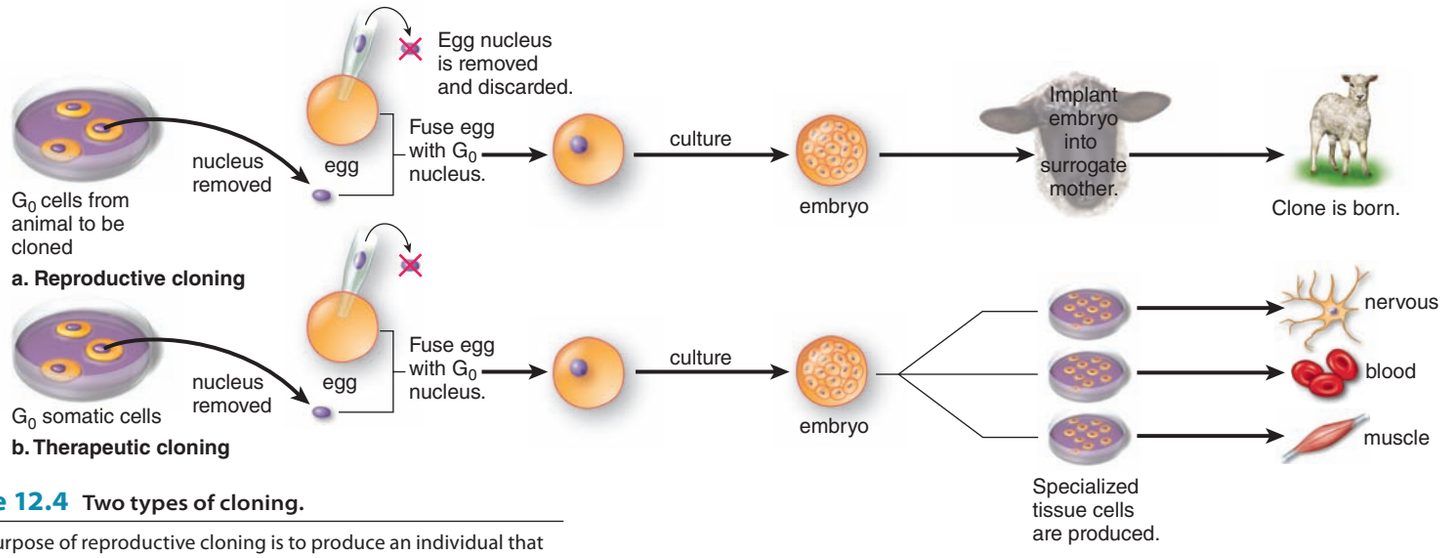


Figure 12.4 Two types of cloning.

a. The purpose of reproductive cloning is to produce an individual that is genetically identical to the one that donated a diploid (2n) nucleus. The 2n nucleus is placed in an enucleated egg; after several divisions, the embryo comes to term in a surrogate mother. **b.** The purpose of therapeutic cloning is to produce specialized tissue cells. A 2n nucleus is placed in an enucleated egg; after several divisions, the embryonic cells (called embryonic stem cells) are separated and treated to become specialized cells.

stage of the cell cycle). This was the change needed, because G_0 stage nuclei are open to cytoplasmic signals for the initiation of development (**Fig. 12.4**). Now it is common practice to clone farm animals that have desirable genetic traits, and even to clone rare animals that might otherwise become extinct.

Video Cloning Endangered Species

Currently in the United States, no federal funds can be used for experiments to clone humans. While there are advances in the science of cloning, many problems still exist. (1) In the case of Dolly, it took 247 tries before one was successful. (2) There are concerns that cloned animals may not have the same life expectancy as noncloned animals. Some, but not all, cloned animals have demonstrated symptoms of abnormal aging. For example, Dolly was put down by lethal injection in 2003 because she was suffering from lung cancer and crippling arthritis. She had lived only half the normal life span for a Dorset sheep.

Connections: Health

Are food products from cloned animals nutritious?

A comprehensive study by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 2008 indicated that meat and milk from cloned animals, such as cows, goats, and pigs, are just as nutritious as products from noncloned animals. Many people confuse cloned with "transgenic" organisms—those that contain genes from multiple species. While scientific studies are still underway to assess the health aspects of transgenics, a cloned animal is no different from its parent. The meat and milk from cloned animals have the same nutritional content as those of noncloned animals.

In **therapeutic cloning,** the desired end is not an individual organism but various types of mature cells. The purposes of therapeutic cloning are (1) to learn more about how cell specialization occurs and (2) to provide cells and tissues that could be used to treat human illnesses, such as diabetes, spinal cord injuries, and Parkinson disease.

Therapeutic cloning can be carried out in several ways. The most common method is to isolate **embryonic stem cells** and subject them to treatments

that cause them to become particular cell types, such as red blood cells, muscle cells, or nerve cells (Fig. 12.4*b*). Since embryonic stem cells have the potential to become any other type of cell in an organism, they are said to be **totipotent.** Eventually, it may be possible to produce entire tissues and organs from totipotent stem cells. Ethical concerns exist about this type of therapeutic cloning because, if the embryo had been allowed to continue development, it would have become an individual.

Another way to carry out therapeutic cloning is to use **adult stem cells,** found in many organs of an adult's body. Adult stem cells are said to be **multipotent,** since they have already started to specialize and are not able to produce every type of cell in the organism. For example, the skin has stem cells that constantly divide and produce new skin cells, while the bone marrow has stem cells that produce new blood cells. Currently, adult stem cells are limited in the number of cell types that they may become. However, scientists have been able to coax adult stem cells from skin into becoming more like embryonic stem cells by adding only four genes. Researchers are investigating ways of controlling gene expression in adult stem cells, so that they can be used in place of the more controversial embryonic stem cells in fighting disease in humans.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Various types of stem cells are involved in the different types of cloning.

Check Your Progress 12.2

1. Describe the differences between reproductive and therapeutic cloning.
2. Briefly describe the process of reproductive cloning.
3. Briefly describe the process of therapeutic cloning.

12.3 Biotechnology Products

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Define the term *transgenic.*
2. List the uses of transgenic bacteria, plants, and animals.

Today, bacteria, plants, and animals are genetically engineered to produce biotechnology products. Organisms that have had a foreign gene inserted into them are called **transgenic organisms**.

Transgenic Bacteria

Recombinant DNA technology is used to produce transgenic bacteria, grown in huge vats called bioreactors (**Fig. 12.5***a*). The gene product is collected from the medium. Biotechnology products on the market produced by bacteria include insulin, clotting factor VIII, human growth hormone, tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA), and hepatitis B vaccine. Transgenic bacteria have many other uses as well. Some have been produced to promote the health of plants. For example, bacteria that normally live on plants and encourage the formation of ice crystals have been changed from frost-plus to frost-minus bacteria. As a result, new crops, such as frost-resistant strawberries and oranges, have been developed.

Bacteria can be selected for their ability to degrade a particular substance, and this ability can then be enhanced by genetic engineering. For instance, naturally occurring bacteria that eat oil can be genetically engineered to do an even better job of cleaning up beaches after oil spills (Fig. 12.5*b*). Further, these bacteria are given "suicide" genes, which cause them to self-destruct when the job has been accomplished.

a.

b.

c.

d.

e.

Figure 12.5 Examples of transgenic organisms.

a. Transgenic bacteria can be used to produce medicines and **(b)** clean up environmental spills. **c.** Transgenic plants may be used to reduce pest damage. In this figure, the peas of the bottom two plants received genes for pest inhibitors. **d.** Transgenic corn can resist herbicides used to control weeds, increasing crop yield. **e.** Transgenic animals can be produced that are heavier and reproduce sooner because of introduced growth hormone genes.

Transgenic Plants

Corn, potato, soybean, and cotton plants have been engineered to be resistant to either insect predation or herbicides that are widely used (Fig. 12.5*c,d*). Some corn and cotton plants have been developed that are both insect- and herbicide-resistant. In 2011, 94% of the soybeans and 80% of the corn planted in the United States had been genetically engineered. If crops are resistant to a broad-spectrum herbicide and weeds are not, then the herbicide can be used to kill the weeds. When herbicide-resistant plants are planted, weeds are easily controlled, less tillage is needed, and soil erosion is minimized. The Herculex corn by Dupont has been developed with not only a large range of insect resistance but also hardier stalks that resist breakage in wind and rain.

Video
GM Food Safety

Crops with other improved agricultural and food quality traits are desirable. A salt-tolerant tomato has already been developed. First, scientists identified a gene coding for a protein that transports salt ions (Na^+) across the vacuole membrane. Sequestering the salt ions in a vacuole prevents them from interfering with plant metabolism. Then, the scientists cloned the gene and used it to genetically engineer plants that overproduce the channel protein. The modified plants thrived when watered with a salty solution. Today, crop production is limited by the effects of salinization on about 50% of irrigated lands. Salt-tolerant crops would increase yield on this land. Salt-, drought-, and cold-tolerant crops might help provide enough food for a world population that may nearly double by 2050.

Some progress has also been made to increase the food quality of crops. Soybeans have been developed that mainly produce the monounsaturated fatty acid oleic acid, a change that may improve human health. Other types of genetically engineered plants are made to increase productivity. Leaves can be engineered to lose less water and take in more carbon dioxide. This type of modification helps a range of crops grow successfully in various climates, including those that are more drought-susceptible or have a higher average temperature than the normal growing climate. Other single-gene modifications allow plants to produce various products, including human hormones, clotting factors, antibodies, and vaccines.

Video
Potato Vaccine

Transgenic Animals

Techniques have been developed to insert genes into the eggs of animals (Fig 12.5*e*). For example, many types of animal eggs have taken up the gene for bovine growth hormone (BGH). The procedure has been used to produce larger fish, cows, pigs, rabbits, and sheep. Transgenic pigs may be produced to supply transplant organs for humans, a process called *xenotransplantation*.

Gene pharming, the use of transgenic farm animals to produce pharmaceuticals, is being pursued by a number of firms. Genes that code for therapeutic and diagnostic proteins are incorporated into an animal's DNA, and the proteins appear in the animal's milk. Researchers are examining the possibility of producing drugs for the treatment of cystic fibrosis, cancer, blood diseases, and other disorders by this method.

Mouse models have also been created to study human diseases. An allele such as the one that causes cystic fibrosis can be cloned and inserted into mouse embryonic stem cells. Occasionally, a mouse embryo homozygous for cystic fibrosis will result. This embryo develops into a mutant mouse that has a phenotype similar to that of a human with cystic fibrosis. New drugs for the treatment of cystic fibrosis can then be tested in these mice. The same scenario is seen in the OncoMouse, which carries genes for the development of cancer.

Check Your Progress 12.3

1. Distinguish between transgenic and genetically modified organisms.
2. List some examples of how transgenic bacteria may be used.
3. Summarize how transgenic plants and animals may be used to remedy problems such as hunger and climate change.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Products of biotechnology include transgenic organisms that benefit human society.

12.4 Genomics and Proteomics

Learning Outcomes

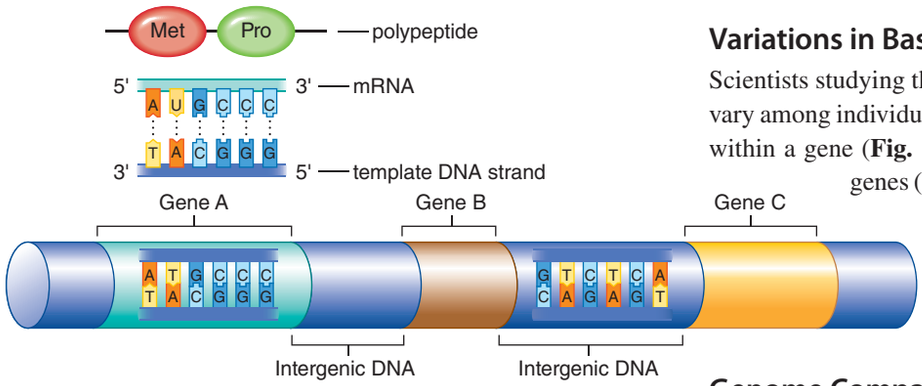
Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List some possible applications for the science of genomics.
2. Describe how genome comparisons are used by researchers.
3. Explain the various uses of proteomics and bioinformatics.

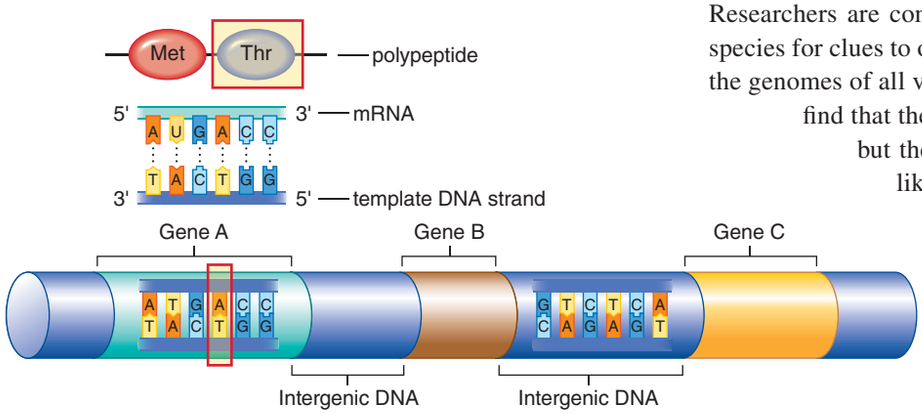
In the previous century, researchers discovered the structure of DNA, how DNA replicates, and how protein synthesis occurs. Genetics in the twenty-first century concerns **genomics,** the study of **genomes**—our genes and **intergenic DNA** sequences, as well as those of other organisms. Researchers now know the sequence of all the base pairs along the length of the human chromosomes. The enormity of the task can be appreciated by knowing that, at the very least, our DNA contains 3.2 billion base pairs and approximately 25,000 genes. Many organisms have even larger genomes. While genes that code for proteins make up only 3–5% of the human genome, we now know that the other regions are also important. Historically considered "junk" DNA, the regions between genes play an important role in generating the small RNA molecules that are involved in gene regulation. Many of these intergenic regions also have evolutionary significance and may provide us with useful hints on the evolution of our species.

Figure 12.6 **Variations in DNA sequence.**

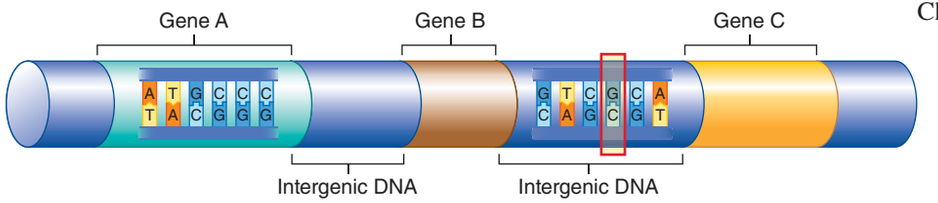
a. A section of DNA containing three genes (A, B, and C) and two intergenic sequences may vary between individuals. **b.** Mutation may introduce variation in the sequence of bases within a gene. This may alter the sequence of amino acids in the protein specified by the gene. **c.** Mutations in the intergenic regions may introduce variation that does not change the amino acid sequence of a protein. **d**. In addition to changes in the base sequence, DNA is also subject to changes in the number of copies of the gene. Note that in this example there are two copies of gene B.



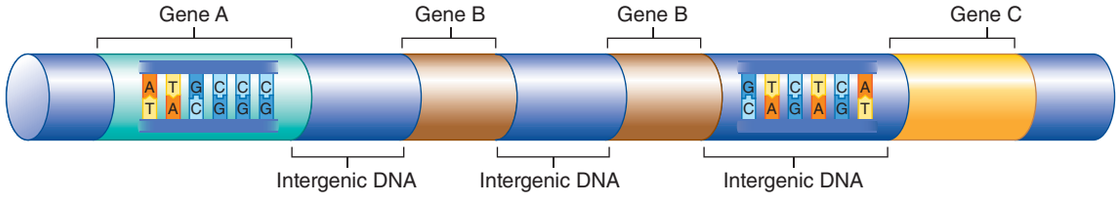
a. Normal chromosomal DNA



b. Variation in the order of the bases within a gene due to a mutation



c. Variation in the order of the bases within an intergenic sequence due to a mutation



d. Variation in the gene copy number

Sequencing the Bases of the Human Genome

The Human Genome Project, completed in 2003, represented a 13-year effort to determine the sequence of the 3.2 billion base pairs in the human genome. The project involved both university and private laboratories around the world. It was made possible by the rapid development of innovative technologies to sequence segements of DNA. Over the project's 13-year span, DNA sequencers were constantly improved to the point that modern automated sequencers can analyze and sequence up to 120 million base pairs of DNA in a 24-hour period.

Variations in Base Sequence

Scientists studying the human genome found that many small regions of DNA vary among individuals. For instance, there may be a difference in a single base within a gene (**Fig. 12.6***a,b*) or within an uncharacterized sequence between genes (Fig. 12.6*c*). One surprising finding is that some individuals even have additional copies of some genes (Fig. 12.6*d*)! Many of these differences have no ill effects, but some may increase or decrease an individual's susceptibility to disease.

Genome Comparisons

Researchers are comparing the human genome with the genomes of other species for clues to our evolutionary origins. One surprising discovery is that the genomes of all vertebrates are similar. Researchers were not surprised to find that the genes of chimpanzees and humans are over 90% alike, but they did not expect to find that our sequence is also 85% like that of a mouse. Scientists also discovered that we share a number of genes with much simpler organisms, including bacteria! As the genomes of more organisms are sequenced, genome comparisons will likely reveal evolutionary relationships between organisms never previously considered. These studies are also providing insight into our evolutionary heritage. By comparing our genomes with that of some of our more recent relatives, such as the Neandertals and Denisovans (see Chapter 19), we are developing a better understanding of how our species has evolved over time.

For example, several studies have compared the human genome with that of chromosome 22 in chimpanzees. Among the many genes that differed in sequence were several of particular interest: a gene for proper speech development, several for hearing, and several for smell (**Fig. 12.7**). The gene necessary for proper speech development is thought to have played an important role in human evolution. Recent genomic studies have suggested that a change in intergenic sequences between 1 and 6 million years ago may have fundamentally changed the way that the

brain processes speech. You can suppose that changes in hearing may have facilitated the use of language for communication between people. Changes in smell genes are a little more problematic, but it is believed that the olfaction genes may have affected dietary changes or sexual selection. It was a surprise to find that many of the other genes they located and studied are known to cause human diseases if abnormal. Perhaps comparing genomes is a way of finding genes associated with human diseases.

Proteomics and Bioinformatics

The known sequence of bases in the human genome predicts that the approximately 25,000 genes are translated into over 100,000 different proteins due to alternative mRNA splicing; collectively, all of these proteins are referred to as the human **proteome.** The field of **proteomics** explores the structure and function of these cellular proteins and examines how they interact to contribute to the production of traits. Because drugs tend to be proteins or small molecules that affect the behavior of proteins, proteomics is crucial in the development of new drugs for the treatment of disease.

Computer modeling of the three-dimensional shape of these proteins is an important part of proteomics, since structure relates to function. Researchers may then use the models to predict which molecules will be effective drugs. For example, a compound that fits the active site of an enzyme without being converted into a product may be an effective drug to inhibit that enzyme.

Bioinformatics is the application of computer technologies to the study of the genome and proteome. Genomics and proteomics produce raw data, and these fields depend on computer analysis to find significant patterns in the data. As a result of bioinformatics, scientists hope to find cause-and-effect relationships between an individual's overall genetic makeup and resulting genetic disorders.

More than half of the human genome consists of uncharacterized sequences that contain no genes and have no known function. Bioinformatics might find that these regions have functions by correlating any sequence changes with resulting phenotypes, or that some sequences are an evolutionary relic that once coded for a protein that we no longer need. New computational tools will most likely be needed in order to accomplish these goals.

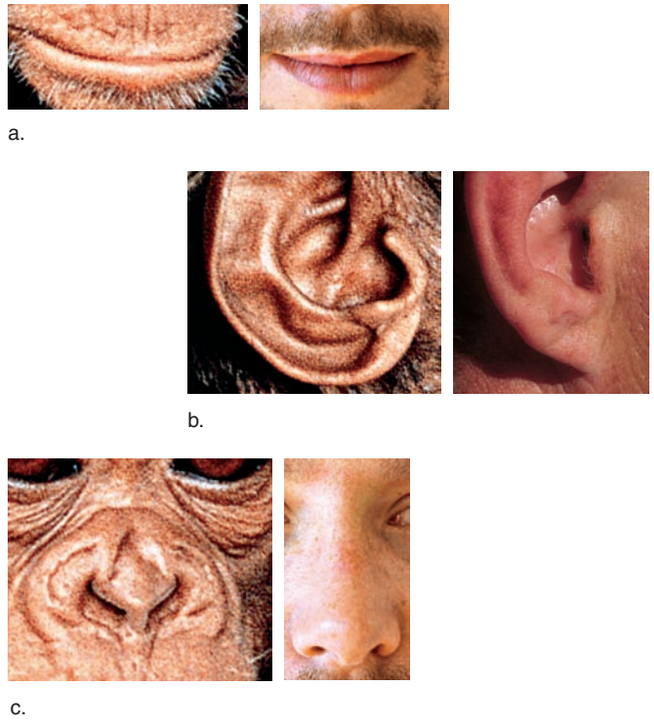


Figure 12.7 Genomic comparisons of humans and chimpanzees.

Comparisons of human and chimpanzee genomes have led to the discovery of genes that are associated with **(a)** speech, **(b)** hearing, and **(c)** smell.

Check Your Progress 12.4

1. Describe the goals of genomics research.
2. Explain why it is important to compare the genomes of different organisms.
3. Summarize why proteomics is important in the study of medicine.

12.4

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The application of genomics, protemics and bioinformatics enables scientists to understand evolutionary relationships..

Media Study Tools

Enhance your study of this chapter with media! Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Animations

12.1 Restriction Endonucleases • Polymerase Chain Reaction

Video

12.1 World Trade Center
12.2 Cloning Endangered Species
12.3 GM Food Safety • Potato Vaccine • Cloned Milk • Firefly Rx

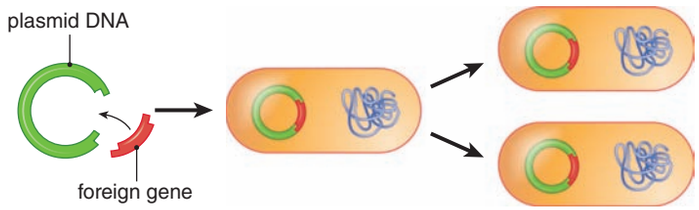
SUMMARIZE

12.1 Biotechnology

Biotechnology involves the study of life for the purpose of products or improving the characteristics of a living organism. Biotechnology often involves genetic engineering, or changing the genetic structure of a species. If a gene is inserted from one species to another, it is called transgenics.

Recombinant DNA Technology

Recombinant DNA (rDNA) technology uses **restriction enzymes** to cleave DNA, so that a foreign gene can be inserted into a **vector,** such as a plasmid. The plasmid can then be inserted into a bacterium, creating a **genetically modified** organism, which then expresses the inserted foreign gene.



Polymerase Chain Reaction

The **polymerase chain reaction** occurs in a test tube and is often used in conjunction with recombinant DNA technology. Heat separates double-stranded DNA. Primers flank the target DNA, and heat-insensitive DNA polymerase copies the target DNA. The cycle is repeated until millions of copies are produced.

DNA Fingerprinting

DNA fingerprinting helps identify relatives, remains, and criminals. Following PCR if needed, restriction enzymes are used to fragment samples of DNA. When the fragments are separated by gel electrophoresis, a pattern results that is unique to the individual.

12.2 Stem Cells and Cloning

The study of stem cells has provided insight into how gene expression results in the formation of the tissues of an organism. **Embryonic stem cells** are **totipotent,** meaning that they have the potential to form any other type of cell in an organism. **Adult stem cells** are **multipotent,** meaning that they have undergone some level of specialization and are restricted in the types of cells that they can form.

Reproductive and Therapeutic Cloning

Cloning, or the production of genetically identical cells and organisms, is possible with an understanding of gene expression. In **reproductive cloning,** the desired end is an individual genetically identical to the original individual. To achieve this type of cloning, the early embryo is placed in a surrogate mother until the individual comes to term. In **therapeutic cloning,** the cells of the embryo are separated and treated, so that they develop into specialized tissues that can be used to treat human disorders. Alternately, adult stem cells can be treated to become specialized tissues.

12.3 Biotechnology Products

Recombinant DNA technology may be used to produce organisms with enhanced capabilities, such as salt-tolerant plants. **Transgenic organisms** have foreign genes inserted into their DNA, which allows them to produce commercial products, such as medicines.

12.4 Genomics and Proteomics

Genomics

Genomics is the study of a species' **genome—**the sum of its genes and **intergenic DNA.** The study of genomics often involves making genome comparisons. **Proteomics** is the study of the proteins produced by a species. Collectively, these proteins are called a **proteome. Bioinformatics** involves the application of computer technologies to analyzing the structure and function of the proteome and genome.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

An understanding of DNA structure and function has allowed scientists to study biotechnology, or the use of technology to enhance or change the genetic composition of a species.

12.1 DNA technology allows scientists to copy and study the genes of organisms.

12.2 Various types of stem cells are involved in the different types of cloning.

12.3 Products of biotechnology include transgenic organisms that benefit human society.

12.4 The application of genomics, protemics and bioinformatics enables scientists to understand evolutionary relationships.

For more information about DNA biology and technology, see the following discussions:

Section 11.2 describes how the information in DNA is processed to form a functional protein.

Section 11.3 explores how genetic information is regulated.

Section 13.4 examines how gene therapy may be used to treat human diseases.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

12.1 Biotechnology

1. Which of the following procedures makes multiple copies of a piece of DNA for use in recombinant DNA studies?
   a. restriction enzymes **c.** DNA fingerprinting
   b. DNA sequencing **d.** polymerase chain reaction
2. Which enzyme has the ability to cut DNA at specific regions?
   a. DNA ligase **c.** DNA polymerase
   b. helicase **d.** restriction enzymes
3. DNA fingerprinting uses information contained with the _____ of an organism.
   a. proteins **c.** genes
   b. intergenic DNA **d.** ribosomes

12.2 Stem Cells and Cloning

4. Reproductive cloning differs from therapeutic cloning in that the goal of reproductive cloning is
   a. the production of specific cell types for medical purposes.
   b. an individual that is genetically identical to the original individual.
   c. an individual that is genetically different from the original individual.
   d. the production of specific tissues and organs for medical transplantation.
5. The major challenge to therapeutic cloning using adult stem cells is
   a. finding appropriate cell types.
   b. obtaining enough tissue.
   c. controlling gene expression.
   d. keeping cells alive in culture.
6. Adult stem cells are _____; embryonic stem cells are _____.
   a. totipotent, totipotent **c.** multipotent, totipotent
   b. totipotent, multipotent **d.** multipotent, multipotent

12.3 Biotechnology Products

7. A researcher inserts a gene from a drought-resistant species of plant into another species of plant. This is an example of
   a. a vector. **c.** bioinformatics.
   b. polymerase chain reaction. **d.** transgenics.
8. The process of _____ enhances a species' natural ability to perform a function.
   a. bioinformatics **c.** proteomics
   b. genetic engineering **d.** cloning

12.4 Genomics and Proteomics

9. The application of computer techniques to analyze the genome is called
   a. biotechnology. **c.** bioinformatics.
   b. biogenomics. **d.** bioengineering.
10. The sum of all the proteins in a cell is called the
    a. genome. **c.** proteome.
    b. intergenic DNA. **d.** chromosomes.

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- DNA & Biotechnology

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

The advances in biotechnology since the 1970s have made a huge impact on medicine and the treatment and management of certain diseases. The ability to combine DNA from two different organisms has given us the means to produce substances the body needs. It has also given doctors the ability to insert properly functioning genes into patients lacking those genes. With certain advances in biotechnology, ethical issues arise. Think about both sides when answering the following questions:

1. What are the advantages of using a recombinant DNA human product instead of a product isolated from another organism? (For example, what advantage would there be to using human recombinant insulin versus insulin produced from cows or pigs?)
2. Are there any disadvantages to using a recombinant DNA product? (Hint: You may want to think about how the product is produced and then purified.)
3. Recombinant human growth hormone is available for children and adults with growth hormone deficiency. When would the use of the hormone be appropriate? Under what circumstances would hormone use be improper?
4. How would a physician know that the hormone treatment was completely effective? What further information might you need to answer this question?

13

Genetic Counseling

OUTLINE

13.1 Genes and Gene Mutations 221

13.2 Chromosomal Mutations 223

13.3 Testing for Genetic Disorders 225

13.4 Gene Therapy 231

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 9.4 How does nondisjunction cause a change in chromosome number?

Section 10.1 How is probability used in analyzing patterns of inheritance?

Section 12.1 How are restriction enzymes and the polymerase chain reaction used in the study of DNA?

Trisomy 21: Down Syndrome

Down syndrome is a genetic disorder that affects over 400,000 Americans. Down syndrome occurs when an individual inherits an extra copy of chromosome 21, causing what is called a trisomy. Trisomy 21 is the most common chromosomal anomaly in humans, and the incidence of the condition is slowly rising in Western cultures. From 1983 to 2003, the total number of cases of Down syndrome increased by 24.2%. People with Down syndrome have similar characteristics, including an upward slant to the eyes, low muscle tone, a deep crease across the center of the palm, and an increased risk of cardiac defects. There is some degree of intellectual disability, but most individuals with Down syndrome have IQs in the mild to moderate disability range.

Despite these health concerns, the life expectancy of Down syndrome individuals has increased tremendously in recent years, from 25 years in 1983 to over 60 years today. This increase is primarily because scientists have identified not only how the extra copy of the chromosome ends up in the cell but also the specific gene that, when present in extra copies, is responsible for the symptoms of Down syndrome.

In this chapter, we will not only explore the causes of mutations, but also how these mutations are detected.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What causes a change in the number of chromosomes?
2. What is the genetic basis of the symptoms of Down syndrome?
3. How can the chromosome number of an individual be tested before he or she is born?

13.1 Genes and Gene Mutations

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain how mutations cause variation in genes.
2. Describe how transposons may cause mutation.
3. Distinguish between point and frameshift mutations.

Chapter 11 introduced the concept that a **gene** is a sequence of DNA bases that codes for a product, most often a protein. The information within a gene may vary slightly—these variations are called alleles. In Chapter 10 we examined a few examples of alleles in humans (for instance, attached and unattached earlobes). However, many alleles code for variations in proteins that are not easily observed, such as susceptibility to a medication. How are alleles formed? An allele is the result of a **mutation,** or a change in the nucleotide sequence of a gene. Mutations are not always bad, however. A mutation can increase the diversity of organisms by creating an entirely new gene product with a positive function for the organism. However, the results of a mutation can also be negative, as in the case of human diseases such as cystic fibrosis (see Chapter 10) and sickle-cell disease (see Chapter 23).

Causes of Gene Mutations

A gene mutation can be caused by a number of factors, including errors in DNA replication, a transposon, or an environmental mutagen. Mutations due to DNA replication errors are rare: a frequency of 1 in 100 million per cell division on average in most eukaryotes. This average is low due to DNA polymerase, the enzyme that carries out replication, proofreading the new strand against the old strand, detecting and correcting any mismatched pairs. **Transposons** (**Fig. 13.1**) are specific DNA sequences that have the remarkable ability to move within and between chromosomes. Their movement often disrupts genes, rendering them nonfunctional. These "jumping genes" have now been discovered in bacteria, plants, fruit flies, and humans, and it is likely that all organisms have such elements.

Mutagens are environmental influences that cause mutations. Different forms of radiation, such as radioactivity, X-rays, and ultraviolet (UV) light, and chemical mutagens, such as pesticides and compounds in cigarette smoke, may cause breaks or chemical changes in DNA. If mutagens bring about a mutation in the gametes, the offspring of the individual may be affected. If the mutation occurs in the body cells, cancer may result. The overall rate of mutation is low, however, because *DNA repair enzymes* constantly monitor and repair any irregularities.

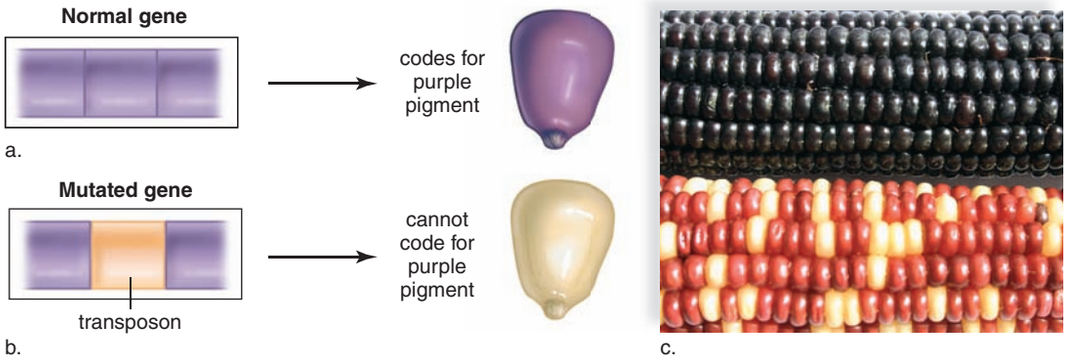


Figure 13.1 **Transposons may cause gene mutations.**

a. A purple-coding gene ordinarily codes for a purple pigment. **b.** A transposon "jumps" into the purple-coding gene. This mutated gene is unable to code for purple pigment, and a white kernel results. **c.** Indian corn displays a variety of colors and patterns due to transposon activity.

Types and Effects of Mutations

The effects of mutations vary greatly. The severity of a mutation usually depends on whether it affects one or more codons or a gene. In general, we know a mutation has occurred when the organism has a malfunctioning protein that leads to a genetic disorder or to the development of cancer. But many mutations go undetected because they have no observable effect or have no detectable effect on the protein's function. These are called silent mutations (**Fig. 13.2**).

Point mutations involve a change in a single DNA nucleotide, and the severity of the results depends on the particular base change that occurs. A single base change can result in a change in the amino acid at that location of the gene. For example, in hemoglobin, the oxygen-transporting molecule in blood, a point mutation causes a glutamic acid amino acid to be replaced by a valine (Fig. 13.2). This changes the structure of the hemoglobin protein. The abnormal hemoglobin stacks up inside cells, causing them to become sickle-shaped, resulting in sickle-cell disease.

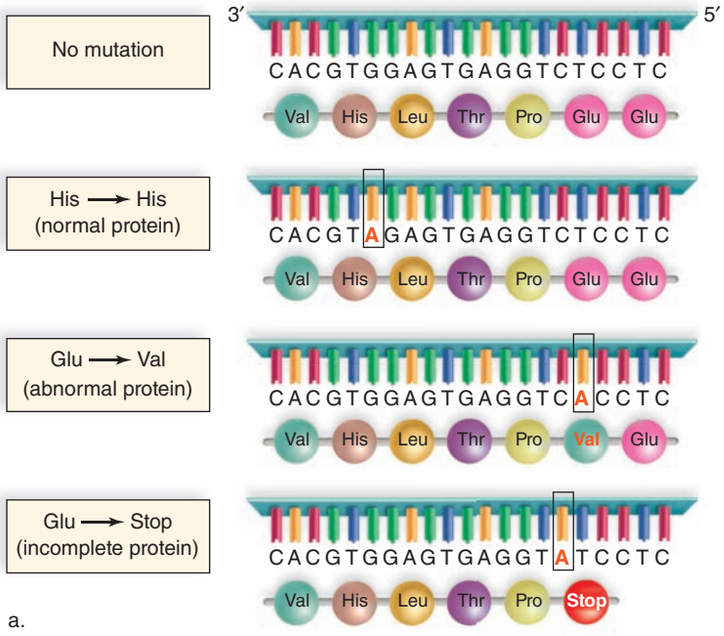
A **frameshift mutation** is caused by extra or missing nucleotides in a DNA sequence. They are usually much more severe than point mutations, because codons are read from a specific starting point. Therefore, all downstream codons are affected. For instance, if the letter *C* is deleted from the sentence THE CAT ATE THE RAT, the "reading frame" is shifted. The sentence now reads THE ATA TET HER AT—something that doesn't make sense. Likewise, a frameshift mutation in a gene often renders the protein nonfunctional, because it no longer makes sense (Fig. 13.2). The movement of a transposon can cause a frameshift mutation.

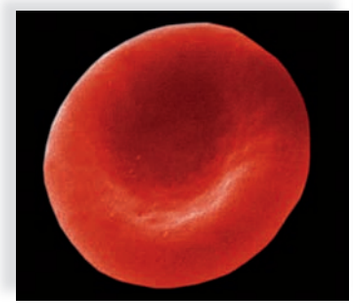
CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Mutagens, replication errors, and transposons can produce mutations.

Check Your Progress 13.1

1. Explain how mutations are related to alleles.
2. Summarize the role of transposons in causing mutations.
3. Explain why point mutations may be silent, but frameshift mutations rarely are.





b. Normal red blood cell ×7,000

c. Sickled red blood cell ×7,000

Figure 13.2 **Varying effects of a point mutation.**

a. Starting at the top: a normal sequence of bases in hemoglobin; next, the mutation is silent and has no effect; next, due to point mutation, DNA now codes for valine instead of glutamic acid, and the result is that (**b**) normal red blood cells become (**c**) sickle-shaped; next, a frameshift mutation (notice the missing C) causes the DNA to code for termination, and the protein will be incomplete.

13.2 Chromosomal Mutations

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe a chromosomal deletion and duplication.
2. Explain the consequences of a translocation or an inversion.
3. List examples of the effects of chromosomal mutations in humans.

While we have just reviewed the consequences of mutation at the level of the gene, it is also possible for events, such as nondisjunction and mutation, to cause changes in the number of each chromosome in the cell or the structure of individual chromosomes.

In humans, only a few variations in chromosome number, such as Down syndrome, Turner syndrome, and Klinefelter syndrome, are typically seen. These are usually caused by nondisjunction events during meiosis (see Section 9.4). Changes in chromosome structure, or chromosomal mutations, are much more common in the population. Syndromes that result from changes in chromosome structure are due to the breakage of chromosomes and their failure to reunite properly. Various environmental agents—radiation, certain organic chemicals, and even viruses—can cause chromosomes to break apart. Ordinarily, when breaks occur in chromosomes, the segments reunite to give the same sequence of genes. But their failure to do so results in one of several types of mutations: deletion, duplication, translocation, or inversion. Chromosomal mutations can occur during meiosis, and if the offspring inherits the abnormal chromosome, a syndrome may result.

Deletions and Duplications

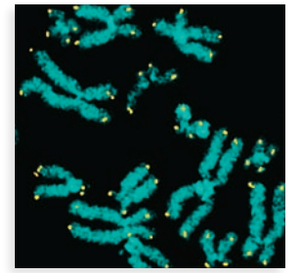
A **deletion** occurs when a single break causes a chromosome to lose an end piece, or when two simultaneous breaks lead to the loss of an internal chromosome segment. An individual who inherits a normal chromosome from one parent and a chromosome with a deletion from the other parent no longer has a pair of alleles for each trait, and a syndrome can result.

Williams syndrome occurs when chromosome 7 loses a tiny end piece (**Fig. 13.3**). Children with this syndrome have a turned-up nose, a wide mouth, a small chin, and large ears. Although their academic skills are poor, they exhibit excellent verbal and musical abilities. The gene that governs the production of the protein elastin is missing, and this affects the health of the cardiovascular system and causes their skin to age prematurely. Such individuals are very friendly but need an ordered life, perhaps because of the loss of a gene for a protein that is normally active in the brain.

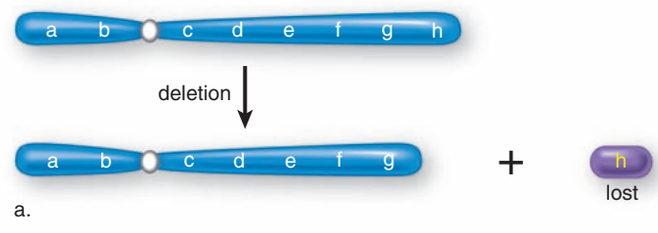
Cri du chat (cat's cry) syndrome occurs when chromosome 5 is missing an

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What do the colored bands on a karyotype represent?



The colored bands in a karyotype (see Fig. 13.7) are not the natural color of chromosomes. Instead, using a procedure called *fluorescent immunohistochemistry in situ hybridization* (*FISH*), short pieces of DNA are labeled with a fluorescent marker. These pieces of DNA bind to their complementary sequences on the chromosomes. When exposed to specific wavelengths of light, the markers emit different colors of light. This helps counselors more easily identify the chromosomes. A tagged piece of DNA can also be developed for a specific gene (see the accompanying figure), which helps researchers identify the chromosomal location of a gene of interest.



b.

Figure 13.3 Deletion.

a. When chromosome 7 loses an end piece, the result is Williams syndrome. **b.** These children, although unrelated, have the same appearance, health, and behavioral problems that are characteristic of Williams syndrome.

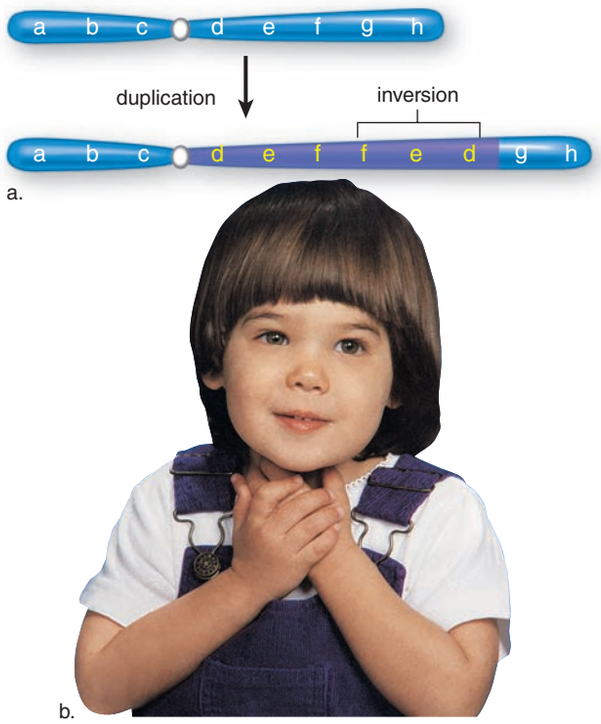
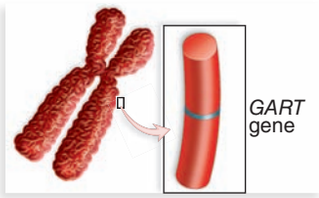


Figure 13.4 Duplication.

a. When a piece of chromosome 15 is duplicated and inverted, inv dup 15 syndrome results. **b.** Children with this syndrome have poor muscle tone and autistic characteristics.

Connections: Health

Do we know what genes cause Down syndrome?



Because individuals who inherit Down syndrome by a translocation event receive only a portion of chromosome 21, it has been possible to determine which genes on chromosome 21 are contributing to the symptoms of Down syndrome. One of the more significant genes appears to be *GART*, a gene involved in the processing of a type of nucleotide called a purine. Extra copies of *GART* are believed to be a major contributing factor in the symptoms of mental retardation shown in Down syndrome patients. Another gene that has been identified encodes for the protein collagen (*COL6A1*), a component of connective tissue. Too many copies of this gene cause the heart defects common in Down syndrome.

end piece. The affected individual has a small head, mental disabilities, and facial abnormalities. Abnormal development of the glottis and larynx results in the most characteristic symptom—the infant's cry resembles that of a cat.

In a **duplication,** a chromosome segment is repeated, so that the individual has more than two alleles for certain traits. An inverted duplication is known to occur in chromosome 15. (*Inversion* means that a segment joins in the direction opposite from normal.) Children with this syndrome, called *inv dup 15 syndrome,* have poor muscle tone, mental disabilities, seizures, a curved spine, and autistic characteristics that include poor speech, hand flapping, and lack of eye contact (**Fig. 13.4**).

Translocation

A **translocation** is an exchange of chromosome segments between two nonhomologous chromosomes. A person who has both of the involved chromosomes has the normal amount of genetic material and a normal phenotype, unless the chromosome exchange breaks an allele into two pieces or fuses two genes together. The person who inherits only one of the translocated chromosomes will have only one copy of certain alleles and three copies of other alleles. A genetic counselor begins to suspect a translocation has occurred when spontaneous abortions are commonplace and family members suffer from various syndromes. A special microscopic technique allows a technician to determine that a translocation has occurred.

In 5% of Down syndrome cases, a translocation that occurred in a previous generation between chromosomes 21 and 14 is the cause. As long as the two chromosomes are inherited together, the individual is normal. But in future generations a person may inherit two normal copies of chromosome 21 and the abnormal chromosome 14 that contains a segment of chromosome 21. In these cases, Down syndrome is not related to parental age but instead tends to run in the family of either the father or the mother.

Figure 13.5 shows an individual who has Alagille syndrome, a translocation between chromosomes 2 and 20. People with this syndrome ordinarily have a deletion on chromosome 20. The syndrome may also produce abnormalities of the eyes and internal organs. The symptoms of Alagille syndrome range from mild to severe, so some people may not be aware they have the syndrome. Translocations can also be responsible for a variety of other disorders, including certain types of cancer. In the 1970s, new staining techniques

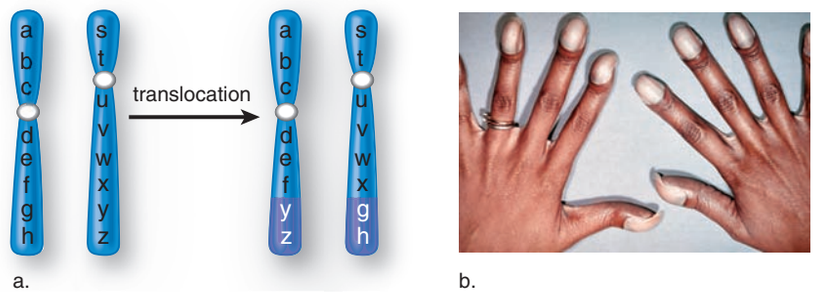


Figure 13.5 Translocation.

a. When chromosomes 2 and 20 exchange segments, (**b**) Alagille syndrome, with distinctive body features, sometimes results because the translocation disrupts an allele on chromosome 20.

identified that a translocation from a portion of chromosome 22 to chromosome 9 is responsible for chronic myelogenous leukemia. This translocated chromosome is called a Philadelphia chromosome.

Inversion

An **inversion** occurs when a segment of a chromosome is turned 180°. You might think this is not a problem because the same genes are present, but the reverse sequence of alleles can lead to altered gene activity if it disrupts the control of gene expression.

Inversions usually do not cause problems, but they can lead to an increased occurrence of abnormal chromosomes during sexual reproduction. Crossing-over between an inverted chromosome and the noninverted homologue can lead to recombinant chromosomes that have both duplicated and deleted segments. This happens because alignment between the two homologues is only possible when the inverted chromosome forms a loop (**Fig. 13.6**).

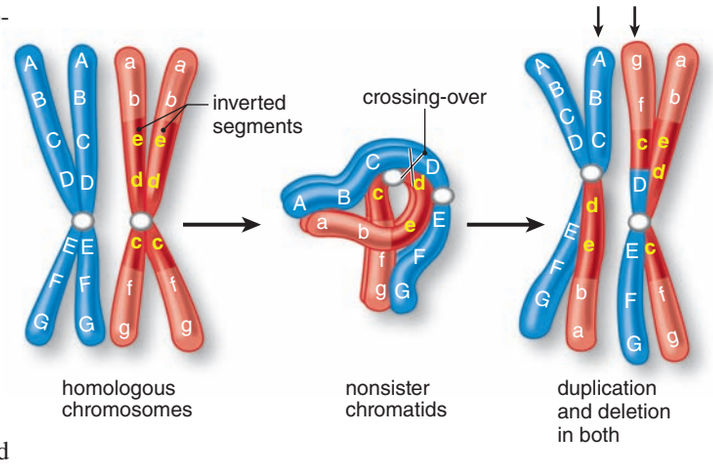


Figure 13.6 Inversion.

(*Left*) A segment is inverted in the sister chromatids of one homologue. Notice that, in the red chromosome, *edc* occurs instead of *cde*. (*Middle*) The nonsister chromatids can align only when the inverted sequence forms an internal loop. After crossing-over, a duplication and a deletion can occur. (*Right*) The nonsister chromatid at the left arrow has *AB* and *ab* alleles but not *fg* or *FG* alleles. The nonsister chromatid at the right arrow has *gf* and *GF* alleles but not *AB* or *ab* alleles.

Check Your Progress 13.2

1. Explain how a deletion on one chromosome may produce a duplication on its homologous chromosome.
2. Summarize why translocations and inversions may cause medical problems.
3. Describe the type of chromosomal mutation that produces cri du chat and Alagille syndromes.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Mutations can arise from various changes in chromosomal structure.

13.3 Testing for Genetic Disorders

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain the role of a karyotype in genetic counseling.
2. Summarize how genetic markers and DNA microarrays may be used to diagnose a genetic disorder.
3. Distinguish among the procedures used to test DNA, the fetus, and the embryo for specific genetic disorders.

Potential parents are becoming aware that many illnesses are caused by abnormal chromosomal inheritance or by gene mutations. Therefore, more couples are seeking **genetic counseling,** which is available at many major hospitals as a means to determine the risk of inherited disorders in a family. For example, a couple might be prompted to seek counseling after several miscarriages, when several relatives have a particular medical condition, or if they already have a child with a genetic defect. The counselor helps the couple understand the mode of inheritance, the medical consequences of a particular genetic disorder, and the decisions they might wish to make.

Figure 13.7 **Karyotype analysis.**

A karyotype can reveal chromosomal mutations. In this case, the karyotype shows that the newborn will have Down syndrome (trisomy 21).

Various human disorders may result from abnormal chromosome number or structure. When a pregnant woman is concerned that her unborn child might have a chromosomal defect, the counselor may recommend karyotyping the fetus's chromosomes.

Karyotyping

A **karyotype** is a visual display of chromosomes arranged by size, shape, and banding pattern. Any cell in the body except red blood cells, which lack a nucleus, can be a source of chromosomes for karyotyping. In adults, it is easiest to use white blood cells separated from a blood sample for this purpose. In fetuses, whose chromosomes are often examined to detect a syndrome, cells can be obtained by either amniocentesis or chorionic villus sampling. As described in Chapter 9, the karyotype of a person who has Down syndrome usually has three copies of chromosome number 21 instead of two (**Fig. 13.7**).

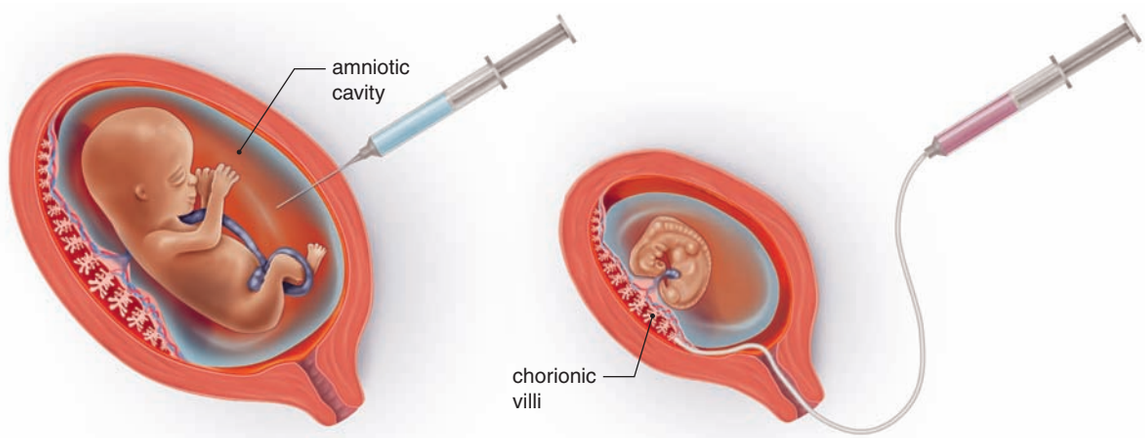
Amniocentesis is a procedure for obtaining a sample of amniotic fluid from the uterus of a pregnant woman. A long needle is passed through the abdominal and uterine walls to withdraw a small amount of fluid, which also contains fetal cells (**Fig. 13.8***a*). Tests are done on the amniotic fluid, and the cells are cultured for karyotyping. Karyotyping the chromosomes may be delayed as long as four weeks, so that the cells can be cultured to increase their number.

Blood tests and the age of the mother are considered when determining whether the procedure should be done. The risk of spontaneous abortion increases by about 0.3% due to amniocentesis, and doctors use the procedure only if it is medically warranted. Amniocentesis is not usually performed until the fourteenth to the seventeenth week of pregnancy.

Chorionic villus sampling (CVS) is a procedure for obtaining chorionic cells in the region where the placenta will develop. This procedure can be done as early as the fifth week of pregnancy. A long, thin suction tube is inserted through the vagina into the uterus (Fig. 13.8*b*). Ultrasound, which gives a picture of the uterine contents, is used to place the tube between the uterine lining and the chorionic villi. Then, a sampling of chorionic cells is obtained by suction. The cells do not have to be cultured, and karyotyping can be done immediately. But testing amniotic fluid is not possible, because no

Figure 13.8 **Testing for chromosomal mutations.**

To test the fetus for an alteration in the chromosome number or structure, fetal cells can be acquired by (**a**) amniocentesis or (**b**) chorionic villus sampling.



a. During amniocentesis, a long needle is used to withdraw amniotic fluid containing fetal cells.

b. During chorionic villus sampling, a suction tube is used to remove cells from the chorion, where the placenta will develop.

amniotic fluid is collected. Also, CVS carries a greater risk of miscarriage than amniocentesis—0.8% compared with 0.3%. The advantage of CVS is getting the results of karyotyping at an earlier date.

After a cell sample has been obtained, the cells are stimulated to divide in a culture medium. A chemical is used to stop mitosis during metaphase when chromosomes are the most highly compacted and condensed. The cells are then killed, spread on a microscope slide, and dried. In a traditional karyotype, stains are applied to the slides, and the cells are photographed. Staining causes the chromosome to have dark and light cross-bands of varying widths, and these can be used, in addition to size and shape, to help pair up the chromosomes. Today, technicians use fluorescent dyes and computers to arrange the chromosomes in pairs.

Following genetic testing, a genetic counselor can explain to prospective parents the chances that a child of theirs will have a disorder that runs in the family. If a woman is already pregnant, the parents may want to know whether the unborn child has the disorder. If the woman is not pregnant, the parents may opt for testing of the embryo or egg before she does become pregnant, as described shortly.

Testing depends on the genetic disorder of interest. In some instances, it is appropriate to test for a particular protein, and in others to test for the mutated gene.

Testing for a Protein

Some genetic mutations lead to disorders caused by a lack of enzyme activity. For example, in the case of methemoglobinemia, it is possible to test for the quantity of the enzyme diaphorase in a blood sample and, from that, determine whether the individual is likely homozygous normal, is a carrier, or has methemoglobinemia. If the parents are carriers, each child has a 25% chance of having methemoglobinemia. This knowledge may lead prospective parents to opt for testing of the embryo or egg, as described later in the chapter.

Testing the DNA

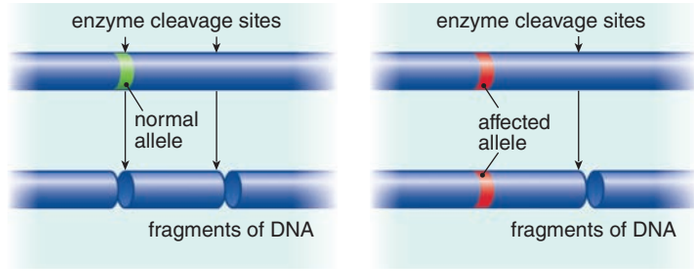
Two types of DNA testing are possible: testing for a genetic marker and using a DNA probe.

Genetic Markers

Testing for a genetic marker relies on a difference in the DNA due to the presence of the abnormal allele. As an example, consider that individuals with sickle-cell trait or Huntington disease have an abnormality in a gene's base sequence. This abnormality in sequence is a **genetic marker.** The presence of specific genetic markers can be detected using DNA sequencing. Another option is to use restriction enzymes to cleave DNA at particular base sequences (see Chapter 12). The fragments that result from the use of a restriction enzyme may be different for people who are normal than for those who are heterozygous or homozygous for a mutation (**Fig. 13.9**).

Genetic Profiling

New technologies have made DNA testing easy and inexpensive. For example, it is now possible to place thousands of known disease-associated mutant alleles onto a **DNA microarray**—a small silicon chip containing many DNA



a. Normal fragmentation pattern

b. Genetic disorder fragmentation pattern

Figure 13.9 Use of a genetic marker to test for a genetic mutation.

a. In this example, DNA from a normal individual has certain restriction enzyme cleavage sites. **b.** DNA from another individual lacks one of the cleavage sites, and this loss indicates that the person has a mutated gene. In heterozygotes, half of their DNA would have the cleavage site and half would not have it. (In other instances, the gain in a cleavage site could be an indication of a mutation.)

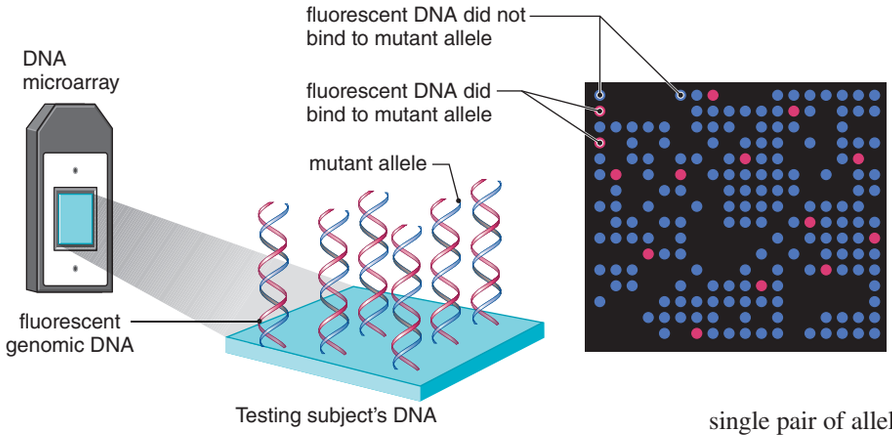


Figure 13.10 **Use of a DNA microarray to test for mutated genes.**

This DNA microarray contains many disease-associated mutant alleles. Fluorescently labeled genomic DNA from an individual has been added to the microarray. Any fluorescent spots indicate that binding has occurred and that the individual may have the genetic disorder or is at risk for developing it later in life.

samples—in this case, the mutant alleles (**Fig. 13.10**). Genomic DNA from the subject to be tested is labeled with a fluorescent dye, then added to the microarray. The spots on the microarray fluoresce if the DNA binds to the mutant alleles on the chip, indicating that the subject may have a particular disorder or is at risk of developing it later in life. An individual's complete genotype, including all the various mutations, is called a genetic profile.

Animation Using a DNA Microarray

With the help of a genetic counselor, individuals can be educated about their genetic profile. It's possible that a person has or will have a genetic disorder caused by a single pair of alleles. However, polygenic traits are more common, and in these instances, a genetic profile can indicate an increased or decreased risk for a disorder. Risk information can be used to design a program of medical surveillance and to foster a lifestyle aimed at reducing the risk. For example, suppose an individual has mutations common to people with colon cancer. It would be helpful for him or her to have an annual colonoscopy, so that any abnormal growths can be detected and removed before they became invasive.

Video Melanoma Marker

Connections: Health

Are over-the-counter (OTC) genetic tests accurate?

With advances in DNA technology that have provided the ability for DNA microarrays to be assembled inexpensively, a number of companies are now offering OTC genetic tests. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) does not regulate OTC genetic tests, and there are a number of concerns regarding the validity of the information obtained from these tests. In addition, some people worry that the test results may be used to discriminate against persons applying for insurance or jobs. It is recommended that genetic tests be performed by licensed labs, and only after all of the patient's rights have been discussed.

Testing the Fetus

If a woman is already pregnant, ultrasound can detect serious fetal abnormalities, and it is possible to obtain and test the DNA of fetal cells for genetic defects.

Ultrasound

Ultrasound images help doctors evaluate fetal anatomy. An ultrasound probe scans the mother's abdomen, and a transducer transmits high-frequency sound waves, which are transformed into a picture on a video screen. This picture shows the fetus inside the uterus. Ultrasound can be used to determine the baby's age and size, as well as whether there is more than one baby. Also, some chromosomal abnormalities, such as Down syndrome, Edwards syndrome (three copies of chromosome 18), and Patua syndrome (three copies of chromosome 13), cause anatomical abnormalities during fetal development that may be detected by ultrasound by the 20th week of pregnancy. For this reason, a routine ultrasound at this time is considered essential to good prenatal care.

Many other conditions, such as spina bifida, can be diagnosed by an ultrasound. Spina bifida results when the spine fails to close properly during the first month of pregnancy. Surgery to close a newborn's spine in such a case is generally performed within 24 hours after birth.

Testing Fetal Cells

Fetal cells can be tested for various genetic disorders. If the fetus has an incurable disorder, the parents may wish to consider an abortion.

For testing purposes, fetal cells may be acquired through amniocentesis or chorionic villus sampling, as described earlier in this chapter. In addition, fetal cells may be collected from the mother's blood. As early as nine weeks into the pregnancy, a small number of fetal cells can be isolated from the mother's blood using a cell sorter. Whereas mature red blood cells lack a nucleus, immature red blood cells do have a nucleus, and they have a shorter life span than mature red blood cells. Therefore, if nucleated fetal red blood cells are collected from the mother's blood, they are known to be from this pregnancy.

Only about 1/70,000 blood cells in a mother's blood are fetal cells, and therefore the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is used to amplify the DNA from the few cells collected. The procedure poses no risk to the fetus.

Video
Safer Fetal Test

Testing the Embryo and Egg

As discussed in Chapter 29, in vitro fertilization (IVF) is carried out in laboratory glassware. A physician obtains eggs from the prospective mother and sperm from the prospective father and places them in the same receptacle, where fertilization occurs. Following IVF, now a routine procedure, it is possible to test the embryo. Prior to IVF, it is possible to test the egg for any genetic defect. In any case, only normal embryos are transferred to the uterus for further development.

Video
In Vitro Fertilization

Testing the Embryo

If prospective parents are carriers for one of the genetic disorders discussed earlier, they may want assurance that their offspring will be free of the disorder. Genetic diagnosis of the embryo will provide this assurance.

Following IVF, the zygote (fertilized egg) divides. When the embryo has six to eight cells, one of these cells can be removed for diagnosis, with no effect on normal development (**Fig. 13.11**). Only embryos that test negative for the genetic disorders of interest are placed in the uterus to continue developing.

So far, thousands of children worldwide have been born free of alleles for genetic disorders that run in their families following embryo testing. In the future, embryos that test positive for a disorder could be treated by gene therapy, so that those embryos, too, would be allowed to continue to term.

Testing the Egg

Unlike males, which produce four sperm cells following meiosis, meiosis in females results in the formation of a single egg and at least two nonfunctional cells called polar bodies. Polar bodies, which later disintegrate, receive very little cytoplasm, but they do receive a haploid number of chromosomes and

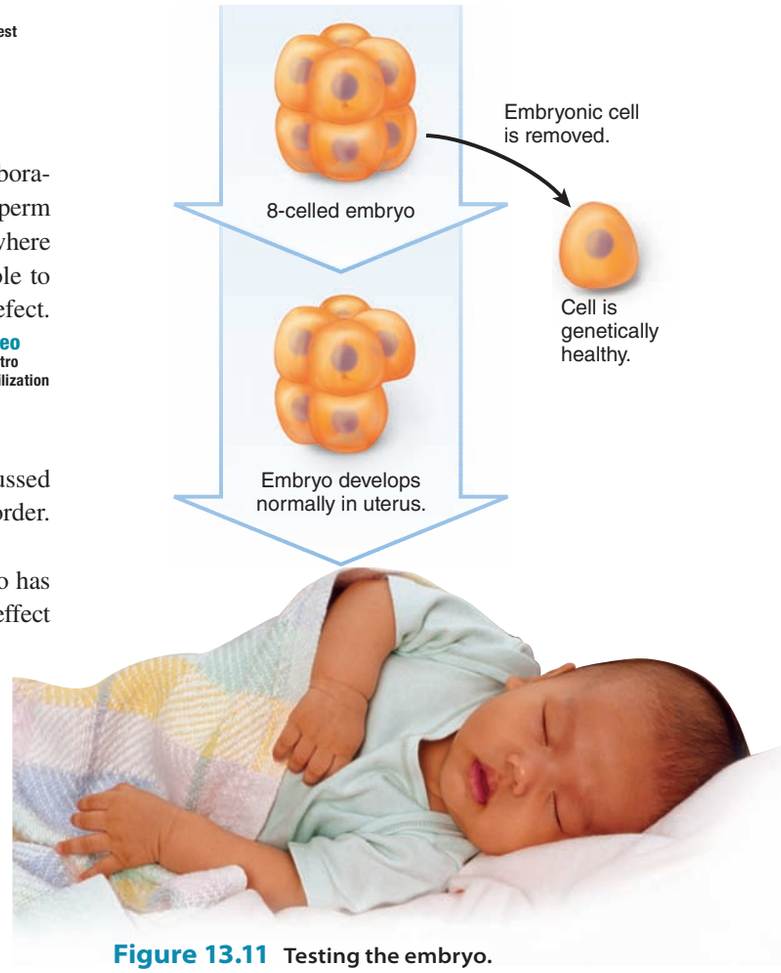
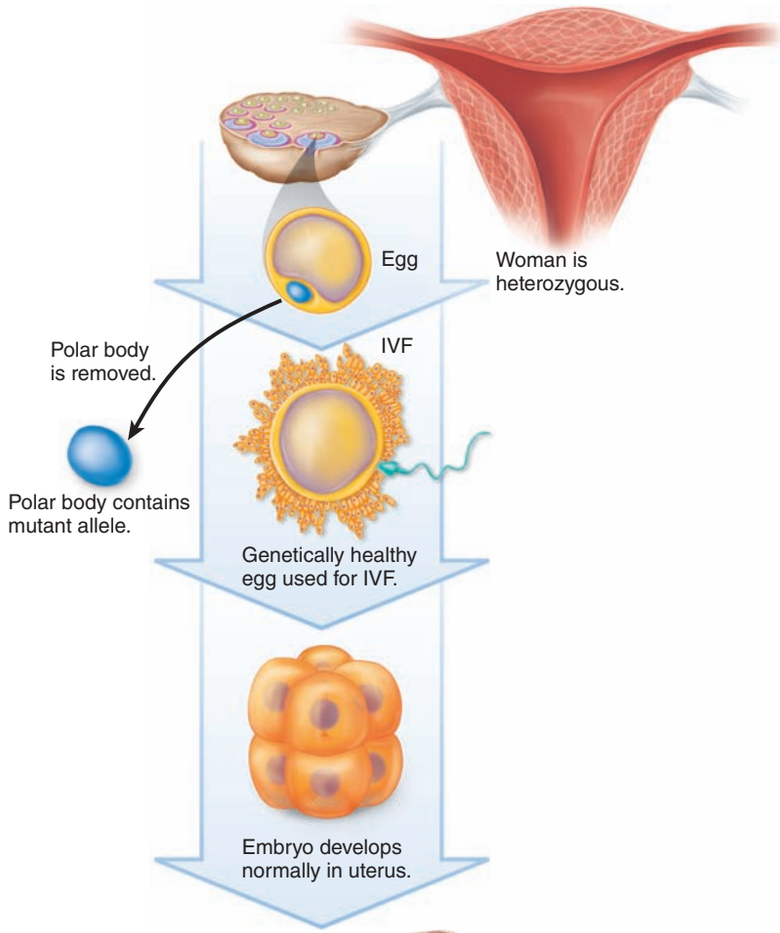


Figure 13.11 Testing the embryo.

Genetic diagnosis is performed on one cell removed from an eight-celled embryo. If this cell is found to be free of the genetic defect of concern, and the seven-celled embryo is implanted in the uterus, it develops into a newborn with a normal phenotype.

Figure 13.12 **Testing the egg.**

Genetic diagnosis is performed on a polar body removed from an egg. If the egg is free of a genetic defect, it is used for IVF, and the embryo is transferred to the uterus for further development.



13.3

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Genetic testing looks for mutations in the embryo or fetus. .

Check Your Progress 13.3

1. Summarize how a karotype can predict potential problems in a fetus.
2. Explain the differences between testing for a protein and testing the DNA for genetic disorders.
3. Describe the differences between an ultrasound, amniocentesis, and chorionic villus sampling. List the limitations of each.
4. Predict how changes in base sequence can be used to test for genetic disorders.

thus can be useful for genetic diagnosis. When a woman is heterozygous for a recessive genetic disorder, about half the polar bodies receive the mutated allele, and in these instances the egg receives the normal allele. Therefore, if a polar body tests positive for a mutated allele, the egg probably received the normal allele (**Fig. 13.12**). Only normal eggs are then used for IVF. Even if the sperm should happen to carry the mutation, the zygote will, at worst, be heterozygous. But the phenotype will appear normal.

If gene therapy becomes routine in the future, it's possible that an egg will be given genes that control traits desired by the parents, such as musical or athletic ability, prior to IVF. Such genetic manipulation, called *eugenics*, carries many ethical concerns.

13.4 Gene Therapy

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Differentiate between ex vivo and in vivo gene therapy and briefly describe how each procedure is performed.
2. Describe some methods used to deliver healthy genes to cells for gene therapy treatments.
3. List some human diseases being treated with gene therapy.

Gene therapy is the insertion of genetic material into human cells for the treatment of a disorder. It includes procedures that give a patient healthy genes to make up for faulty genes, as well as the use of genes to treat various other human illnesses, such as cardiovascular disease and cancer. Gene therapy includes both **ex vivo** (outside the body) and **in vivo** (inside the body) methods. Viruses genetically modified to be safe can be used to ferry a normal gene into cells (**Fig. 13.13**), and so can liposomes, which are microscopic globules of lipids specially prepared to enclose the normal gene. On the other hand, sometimes the gene is injected directly into a particular region of the body. This section discusses examples of ex vivo gene therapy (the gene is inserted into cells that have been removed and then returned to the body) and in vivo gene therapy (the gene is delivered directly into the body).

Ex Vivo Gene Therapy

Children who have severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) lack the enzyme adenosine deaminase (ADA), which is involved in the maturation of cells that produce antibodies. In order to carry out gene therapy, bone marrow stem cells are removed from the blood and infected with a virus that carries a normal gene for the enzyme. Then the cells are returned to the patient. Bone marrow stem cells are preferred for this procedure, because they divide to produce more cells with the same genes. Patients who have undergone this procedure show significantly improved immune function associated with a sustained rise in the level of ADA enzyme activity in the blood.

Ex vivo gene therapy is also used in the treatment of familial hypercholesterolemia, a genetic disorder in which high levels of plasma cholesterol make the patient subject to fatal heart attacks at a young age. A small portion of the liver is surgically excised and then infected with a retrovirus containing a normal gene for a cholesterol receptor before the tissue is returned to the patient. Several patients have experienced lowered plasma cholesterol levels following this procedure.

Some cancers are being treated with ex vivo gene therapy procedures. In one procedure, immune system cells are removed from a cancer patient and genetically engineered to display tumor antigens. After these cells are returned to the patient, they stimulate the immune system to kill tumor cells.

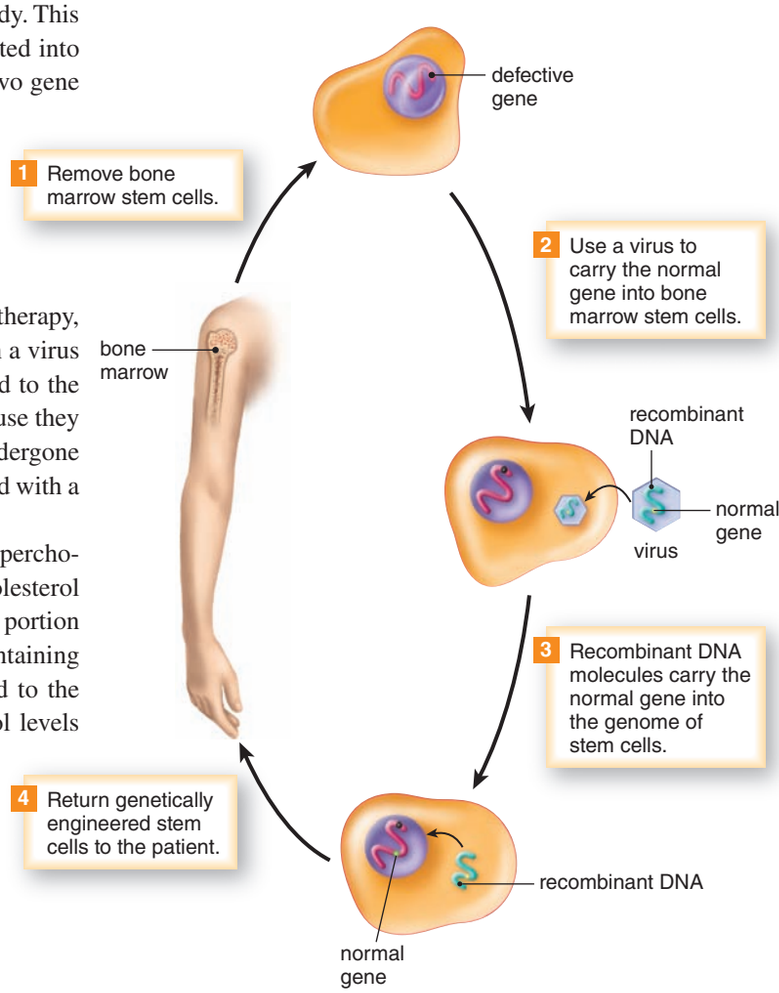


Figure 13.13 **Ex vivo gene therapy in humans.**

Bone marrow stem cells are withdrawn from the body. A virus is used to insert a normal gene into the host genome, and then the cells are returned to the body.

In Vivo Gene Therapy

Most cystic fibrosis patients lack a gene that codes for a regulator of a transmembrane carrier for the chloride ion. In gene therapy trials, the gene needed to cure cystic fibrosis is sprayed into the nose or delivered to the lower respiratory tract by adenoviruses or by the use of liposomes (microscopic vesicles that spontaneously form when lipoproteins are put into a solution). Investigators are trying to improve uptake of the genes and are hypothesizing that a combination of all three vectors might be more successful.

Genes are also being used to treat medical conditions such as poor coronary circulation. It has been known for some time that vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) can cause the growth of new blood vessels. The gene that codes for this growth factor can be injected alone, or within a virus, into the heart to stimulate branching of coronary blood vessels. Patients who have received this treatment report that they have less chest pain and can run longer on a treadmill.

Rheumatoid arthritis, a crippling disorder in which the immune system turns against a person's own body and destroys joint tissue, has recently been treated with in vivo gene therapy methods. Clinicians inject adenoviruses that contain an anti-inflammatory gene into the affected joint. The added gene reduces inflammation within the joint space and lessens the patient's pain and suffering. Clinical trials have been promising, and animal studies have even shown that gene therapy may stave off arthritis in at-risk individuals.

Figure 13.14 summarizes how gene therapy is being used to treat various illnesses.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What is RNA interference?

RNA interference, or RNAi, is an experimental procedure in which small pieces of RNA are used to "silence" the expression of specific alleles. These RNA sequences are designed to be complementary to the mRNA transcribed by a gene of interest. Once the complementary RNA sequences enter the cell, they bind with the target RNA, producing double-stranded RNA molecules. These double-stranded RNA molecules are then broken down by a series of enzymes within the cell. First discovered in worms, RNAi is believed to have evolved in eukaryotic organisms as a protection against certain types of viruses. Research into developing RNAi treatments for a number of human diseases, including cancer and hepatitis, is currently underway.

Animation
RNA Interference

Video
Halting Hepatitis

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Gene therapy is being used to help treat specific genetic disorders.

Check Your Progress 13.4

1. Explain why bone marrow stem cells are preferred for ex vivo gene therapy.
2. List the methods by which genes may be delivered to cells using in vivo gene therapy.
3. Explain how in vivo gene therapy is used to treat diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis.

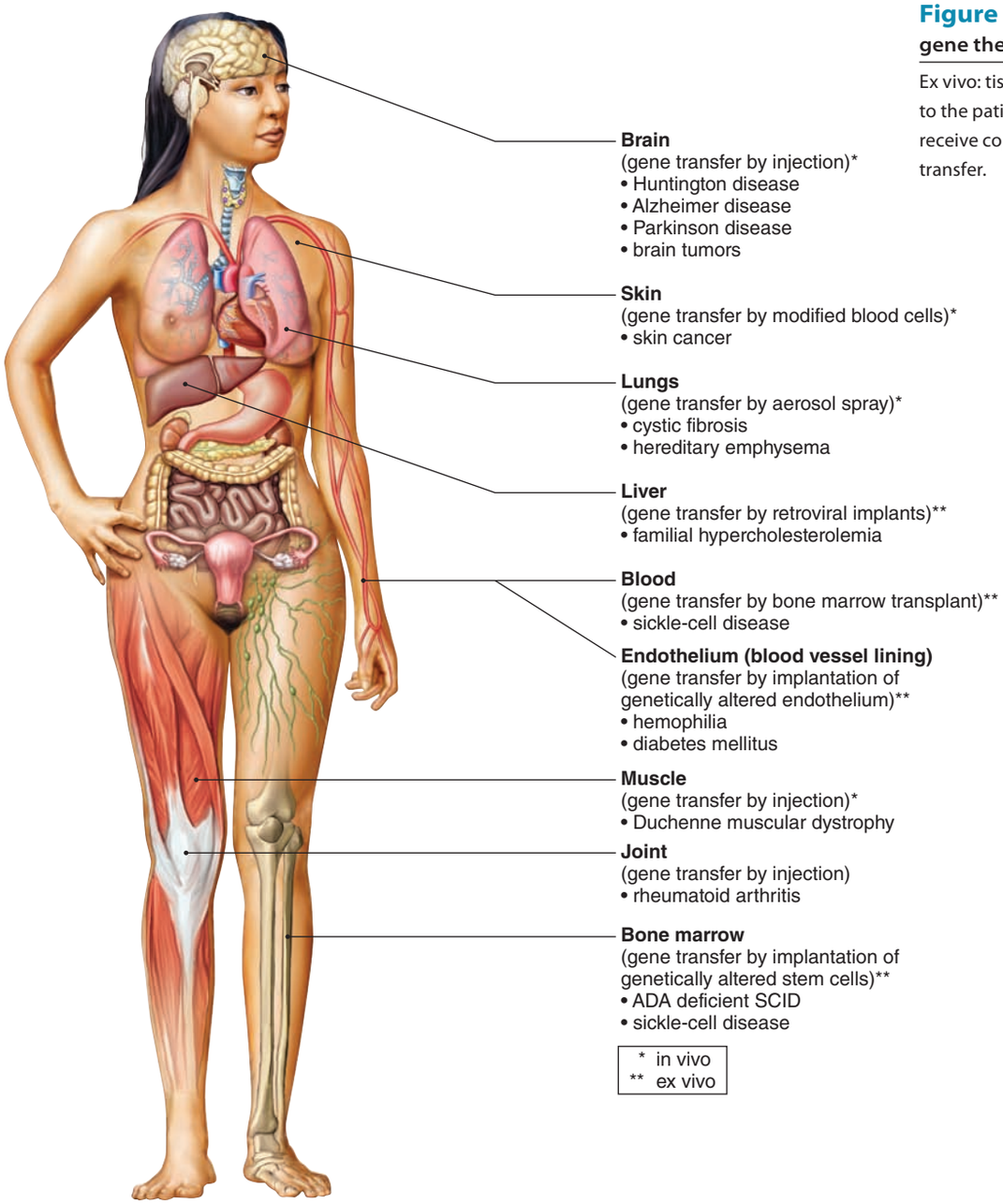


Figure 13.14 Sites of ex vivo and in vivo somatic gene therapy.

Ex vivo: tissue is removed, genetically modified, and returned to the patient. In vivo: targeted areas (e.g., brain, lungs) receive copies of normal genes by various methods of gene transfer.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

Enhance your study of this chapter with media! Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Animations

13.2 Changes in Chromosome Structure • The Consequence of Inversion
13.3 Restriction Endonucleases • Using a DNA Microarray
13.4 RNA Interference

Video

13.3 Melanoma Marker • Safer Fetal Test • In Vitro Fertilization
13.4 Halting Hepatitis

SUMMARIZE

13.1 Genes and Gene Mutations

Mutations are changes in the sequence of nucleotides in the DNA. Although some mutations are silent, others produce changes in the regulation of the DNA or the sequence of amino acids in the encoded protein. Some causes of mutations are

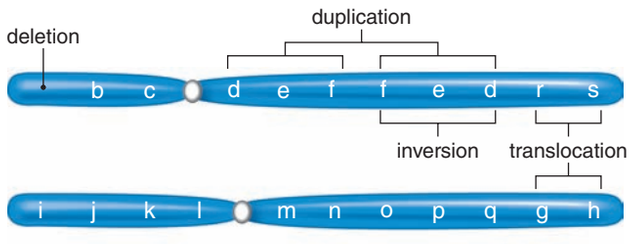
- **Transposons:** small sequences of DNA that have the ability to move within the genome, sometimes disrupting gene function
- **Mutagens:** environmental influences (e.g., chemicals, radiation) that cause mutations

Two types of mutation occur at the level of the gene:

- **Point mutation:** a change in a single nucleotide in the DNA; it may be silent (no effect) or change the structure of the protein
- **Frameshift mutation:** removal or insertion of nucleotides that change the way information within the gene is read

13.2 Chromosomal Mutations

Chromosomal mutations involve changes in chromosome number or structure. Abnormal chromosome number results from nondisjunction during meiosis. Changes in chromosome structure include **deletions, duplications, translocations,** and **inversions:**



In Williams syndrome, one copy of chromosome 7 has a deletion; in cri du chat syndrome, one copy of chromosome 5 has a deletion; and in inv dup 15 syndrome, chromosome 15 has an inverted duplication. Down syndrome can be due to a translocation between chromosomes 14 and 21 in a previous generation.

An inversion can lead to chromosomes that have a deletion and a duplication. During synapsis, the homologue with the inverted sequence must loop back to align with the normal homologue. Following crossing-over, one nonsister chromatid has a deletion and the other has a duplication.

13.3 Testing for Genetic Disorders

Karyotyping

A counselor can detect chromosomal mutations by studying a **karyotype** of the individual. A karyotype is a display of the chromosomes arranged by pairs; the autosomes are numbered from 1 to 22. The sex chromosomes are not numbered. **Genetic counseling** can use a variety of techniques to detect a disorder.

Testing for a Protein

Blood or tissue samples can be tested for enzyme activity. Lack of enzyme activity can sometimes indicate that a genetic disorder exists.

Testing the DNA

DNA sequencing techniques may be used to look for **genetic markers.** Restriction enzymes can also be used to cut the DNA and then compare the fragment pattern to the normal pattern. DNA can be labeled with fluorescent tags to see if fragments bind to DNA probes on a **DNA microarray** that contain the mutation.

Testing the Fetus

An ultrasound can detect disorders due to certain chromosomal abnormalities and other conditions, such as spina bifida, that are due to the inheritance of mutant alleles. Fetal cells can be obtained by **amniocentesis** or **chorionic villus sampling**, or by sorting out fetal cells from the mother's blood.

Testing the Embryo and Egg

Following in vitro fertilization (IVF), it is possible to test the embryo. A cell is removed from an eight-celled embryo, and if it is found to be genetically healthy, the embryo is implanted in the uterus, where it develops to term. Before IVF, a polar body can be tested. If the woman is heterozygous, and the polar body has the genetic defect, the egg does not have it. Following fertilization, the embryo is implanted in the uterus.

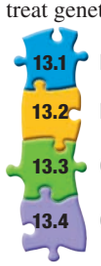
13.4 Gene Therapy

During **gene therapy,** a genetic defect is treated by giving the patient a foreign gene.

- **Ex vivo** therapy**:** Cells are removed from the patient, treated, and returned to the patient.
- **In vivo** therapy**:** A foreign gene is given directly to the patient via nasal spray, liposomes, or adenovirus.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Various techniques are available to help detect gene mutations and changes to chromosome structure. Technologies are also available to help test and treat genetic disorders.



13.1 Mutagens, replication errors, and transposons can produce mutations.

13.2 Mutations can arise from various changes in chromosomal structure.

13.3 Genetic testing looks for mutations in the embryo or fetus.

13.4 Gene therapy is being used to help treat specific genetic disorders.

For more information about mutations and genetic disorders, see the following discussions:

Section 9.4 describes how nondisjunction causes Down, Turner, and Klinefelter syndromes.

Section 12.1 examines how scientists use restriction enzymes and the polymerase chain reaction to study DNA.

Section 12.2 provides more information on stem cells.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

13.1 Genes and Gene Mutations

For questions 1–4, choose from the following:

Key:

a. transposon
b. point mutation
c. frameshift mutation

1. causes the information within a gene to be read in an incorrect order
2. may be silent
3. DNA sequences that move within the genome
4. causes a change in a single nucleotide in the DNA

13.2 Chromosome Mutations

5. Which of the following disorders is not caused by a change in chromosome structure?
a. cri du chat syndrome **c.** Klinefelter syndrome
b. inv dup 15 syndrome **d.** Alagille syndrome

6. In which of the following does the amount of genetic material on the chromsome remain the same?
a. inversion **c.** deletion
b. duplication **d.** All of the above are correct.

13.3 Testing for Genetic Disorders

7. Which of the following may be detected using a karyotype?
a. point mutations
b. a specific genetic marker
c. an abnormal number of chromosomes
d. the location of a transposon

8. The advantage of using a DNA microarray over testing for genetic markers is that a DNA microarray
a. tests for additional or missing restriction enzyme cleavage sites.
b. can test for many different mutations at once.
c. is the only method that can distinguish between heterozygous and homozygous individuals.
d. does not require the use of PCR to amplify DNA.

13.4 Gene Therapy

9. Ex vivo gene therapy involves
a. the delivery of genes to cells in the body.
b. only the use of liposomes to deliver genes.
c. the removal of cells from the body before treatment.
d. All of the above are correct.

10. Which of the following is a vector that can be used to deliver gene therapy directly into the cells of the body?
a. transposons **c.** amniocentesis
b. viruses **d.** mutagens

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

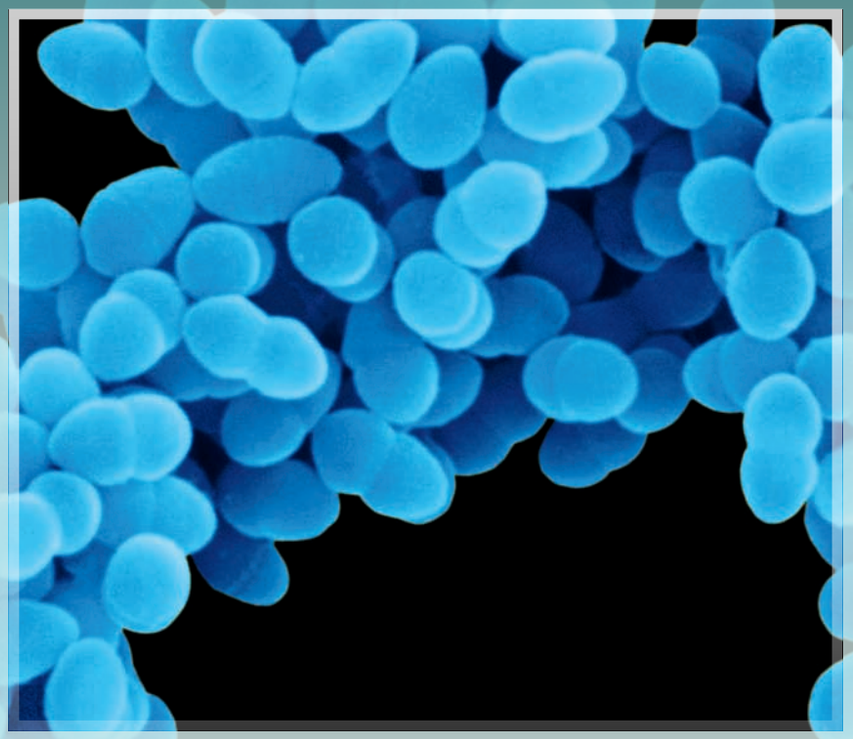
1. As you learned in Chapter 10, some individuals possess extra copies of certain genes. Recently, a few genetic diseases were linked to having extra copies of specific genes. How might extra copies of a gene be harmful? Can you think of any instances in which extra genes would not be harmful?

2. The use of adenoviruses to deliver genes used in gene therapy has sometimes proven problematic. Recently, adenoviruses were used in gene therapy trials performed on 10 infants with X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome (XSCID), also known as "bubble boy disease." Although the trial was considered a success because the gene was expressed and the children's immune systems were restored, researchers were shocked and disappointed when two children developed leukemia. How might you explain the development of leukemia in these gene therapy patients?

3. Genetic counselors note that certain debilitating diseases are maintained in a population even when they are disadvantageous. Why wouldn't they be removed by the evolutionary process? Can you think of any advantageous reason they remain in the gene pool?

14

Darwin and Evolution



OUTLINE

14.1 Darwin's Theory of Evolution 237

14.2 Evidence of Evolutionary Change 246

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 1.2 Why is evolution a core concept of biology?

Section 9.1 What is an allele?

Section 9.2 How does meiosis increase variation?

The Importance of Evolution

Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) is a strain of a common bacterium that can be deadly because of its resistance to several types of antibiotics. The bacterium is often found on the skin and in the noses of healthy people, but *S. aureus* can cause "staph" infections in scrapes, cuts, and open wounds. Until recently, severe staph infections were found primarily in hospitals. However, MRSA can now be found in prisons and schools, especially in gymnasiums and locker rooms.

The use and overuse of antibiotics has resulted in the evolution of resistant bacterial strains, such as MRSA. Although we tend to think of evolution as happening over long time scales, human activities can accelerate the process of evolution quite rapidly. In fact, evolution of resistance to the antibiotic methicillin occurred in just one year!

Some scientists believe that "superbugs," or bacteria that have evolved antibiotic resistance, will be a far bigger threat to human health than emerging diseases such as H1N1 flu and AIDS. The good news is that our understanding of evolutionary biology has helped change human behavior to deal with superbugs. For example, doctors no longer prescribe antibiotics unless they are relatively certain a patient has a bacterial infection. Antibiotic resistance is an example of why evolution is important in people's everyday lives. In this chapter, you will learn about evidence that indicates evolution has occurred and about how the evolutionary process works.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How does natural selection play a role in the evolution of antibiotic resistance?
2. What type of adaptation are MRSA bacteria exhibiting?

14.1 Darwin's Theory of Evolution

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the contributions of Cuvier, Lamarck, and Wallace to the study of evolutionary change.
2. Explain how Darwin's study of fossils and biogeography contributed to the development of the theory of natural selection.
3. Describe the steps in the theory of natural selection.
4. Distinguish between natural and artificial selection.

Charles Darwin was only 22 in 1831 when he accepted the position of naturalist aboard the HMS *Beagle*, a British naval ship about to sail around the world **(Fig. 14.1)**. Darwin had a suitable background for this position. He was a dedicated student of nature and had long been a collector of insects. His sensitive nature had prevented him from studying medicine, and he went to divinity school at Cambridge instead. Even so, he had an intense interest in science and attended many lectures in both biology and geology. Darwin spent the summer of 1831 doing geology fieldwork at Cambridge, before being recommended to the captain of the *Beagle* as the ship's naturalist. The voyage was supposed to take two years, but it took five. Along the way, Darwin had the chance to collect and observe a tremendous variety of life, many of which were very different from those in his native England.

Darwin's major mission was to expand the navy's knowledge of natural resources (e.g., water and food) in foreign lands. By the time the trip was over, Darwin had made observations that eventually led him to formulate the process by which life evolves over time in response to changes in the environment.

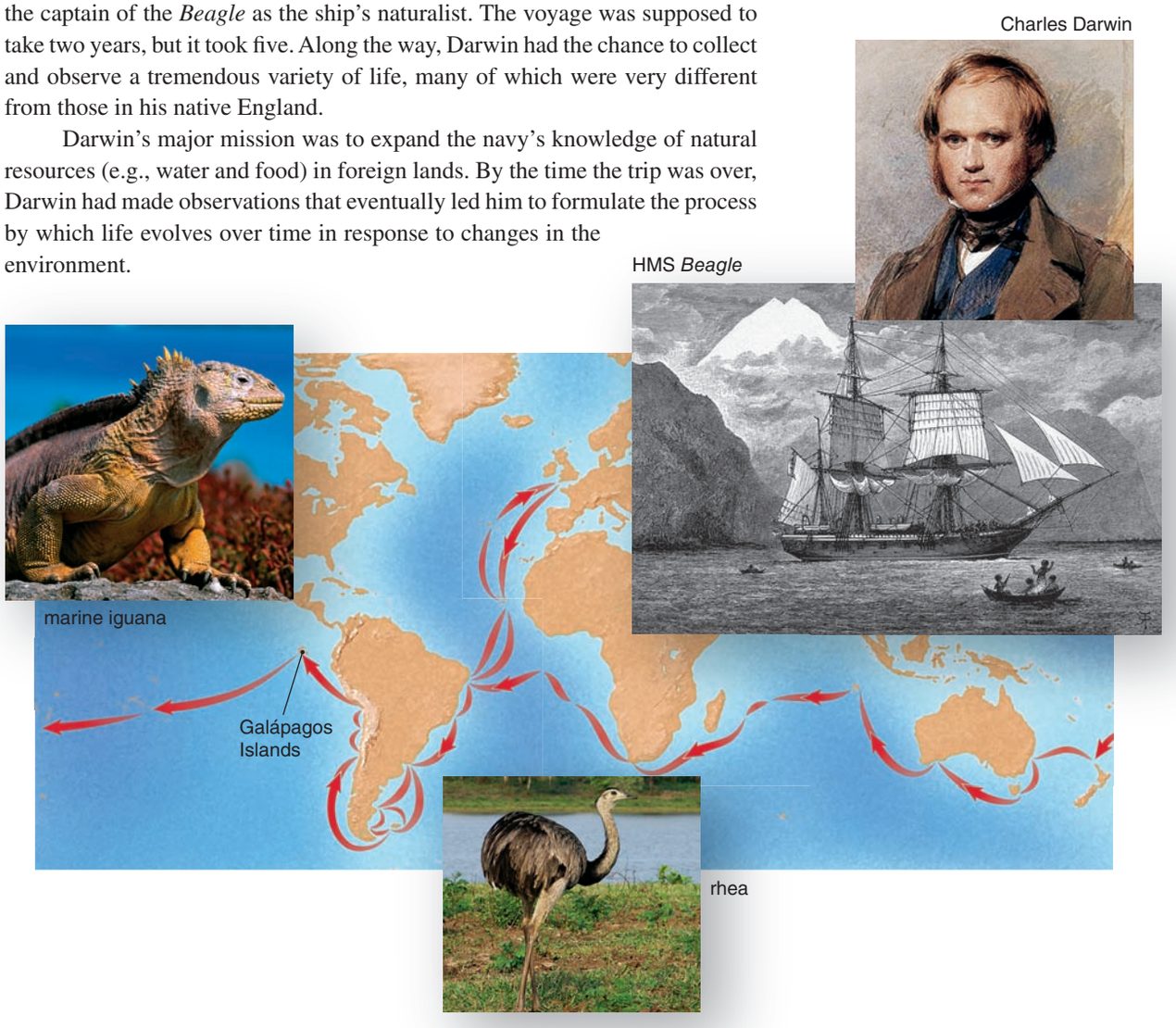


Figure 14.1 Voyage of the HMS *Beagle*.

The map shows the journey of the HMS *Beagle* around the world. As Darwin traveled along the east coast of South America, he noted that a bird called a rhea looked like the African ostrich. On the Galápagos Islands, marine iguanas, found no other place on Earth, use their large claws to cling to rocks and their blunt snouts for eating marine algae.

Before Darwin

Prior to Darwin, most people had an entirely different way of viewing the world. They believed that the Earth was only a few thousand years old and that, since the time of creation, species had remained exactly the same. Even so, studying the anatomy of organisms and then classifying them interested many investigators who wished to show that species were created to be suitable to their environment. Explorers and collectors traveled the world and brought back currently existing species and fossils to be classified. **Fossils** are the remains of once-living species often found in strata. *Strata* are layers of rock formed from sedimentary material **(Fig. 14.2)**. The age of the strata allows scientists to estimate when these species lived, and their characteristics indicate the environment that was found in the region during that time. For example, a fossil showing that snakes had hip bones and hindlimbs some 90 million years ago (MYA) indicates that this ancestor of today's snakes evolved in a land environment.

Visible strata

Figure 14.2 **Strata in rock.**

Due to erosion, it is often possible to see a number of strata, layers of rock or sedimentary material that contain fossils. The oldest fossils are in the lowest stratum.

A noted zoologist of the early nineteenth century, Georges Cuvier, founded the science of *paleontology*, the study of fossils. Cuvier was faced with a problem. He believed in the fixity of species (the idea that species do not change over time), yet Earth's strata clearly showed a succession of different lifeforms over time. To explain these observations, he hypothesized that a local catastrophe had caused a mass extinction whenever a new stratum of that region showed a new mix of fossils. After each catastrophe, the region was repopulated by species from surrounding areas, which accounted for the appearance of new fossils in the new stratum. The result of all these catastrophes was change appearing over time. Some of Cuvier's followers, who came to be called catastrophists, even suggested that worldwide catastrophes had occurred and that, after each of these events, new sets of species had been created.

In contrast to Cuvier, Jean-Baptiste de Lamarck, another biologist, hypothesized that evolution occurs and that adaptation to the environment is the cause of diversity. Therefore, after studying the succession of lifeforms in strata, Lamarck concluded that more complex organisms are descended from less complex organisms. To explain the process of adaptation to the environment, Lamarck proposed the idea of *inheritance of acquired characteristics*, in which the use and disuse of a structure can bring about inherited change. One example Lamarck gave—and the one for which he is most famous—is that the long neck of giraffes developed over time because giraffes stretched their necks to reach food high in trees and then passed on a long neck to their offspring (see Fig.14.9). However, the inheritance of acquired characteristics is not the primary mechanism that drives the change in species over time. If this were the case, then the knowledge you aquire over your lifetime would be passed on to your offspring. Still, in recent years scientists have unveiled some conditions by which aquired characteristics may be passed on to the next generation. For example, in *epigenetic inheritance,* changes in the expression of a gene that are not associated with mutations or other nucleotide changes may be passed from one to the next generation (see Chapter 13). These cases are relatively rare and usually relate only to the inheritance of specific genes.

Darwin's ideas were close to those of Lamarck. For example, Darwin said that living organisms share characteristics because they have a common ancestry.

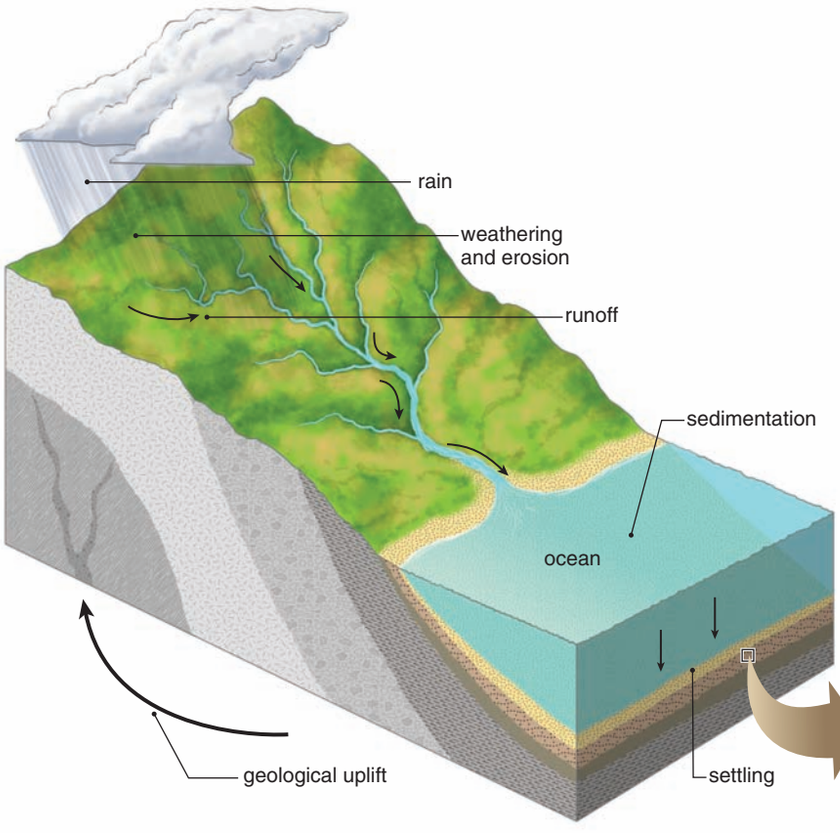
One of the most unfortunate misinterpretations of this statement was that humans are descendants of apes; we know that humans and apes shared a common ancestor, just as, say, you and your cousins can trace your ancestry back to the same grandparents. In contrast to Lamarck, Darwin's observations led him to conclude that species are suited to the environment through no will of their own but by natural selection. He saw the process of natural selection as the means by which different species come about (see Fig. 14.9).

Darwin's Conclusions

Darwin's conclusions that organisms are related through common descent and that adaptation to various environments results in diversity were based on several types of data, including his study of geology, fossils, and biogeography. **Biogeography** is the study of the distribution of lifeforms on Earth.

Darwin's Study of Geology and Fossils

Darwin took Charles Lyell's book *Principles of Geology* with him on the *Beagle* voyage. In contrast to former beliefs, this book gave evidence that Earth is subject to slow but continuous cycles of erosion and uplift. Weathering causes erosion; thereafter, dirt and rock debris are washed into the rivers and transported to oceans. When these loose sediments are deposited, strata result **(Fig. 14.3***a*). Then the strata, which often contain fossils, are uplifted over long periods of time from below sea level to form land. Given enough time, slow natural processes can account for extreme geological changes. Lyell went on to propose the theory of *uniformitarianism,* which stated that these slow changes occurred at a uniform rate. Even though uniformitarianism has been rejected, modern geology certainly



a.

b.

Figure 14.3 **Formation of strata.**

a. This diagram shows how water takes sediments into the sea; the sediments then become compacted to form a stratum. Fossils are often trapped in strata, and as a result of a later geological upheaval, the strata may be located on land. **b.** Fossil remains of freshwater snails, *Turritella*, in a stratum.

a. *Glyptodon*

b. *Mylodon*

Figure 14.4 Fossils discovered by Darwin .

Darwin discovered fossils of extinct mammals during his exploration of South America. **a.** A giant armadillo-like glyptodont, *Glyptodon,* is known only by the study of its fossil remains. Darwin found such fossils and came to the conclusion that this extinct animal must be related to living armadillos. The glyptodont weighed 2,000 kg. **b.** Darwin also observed the fossil remains of an extinct giant ground sloth, *Mylodon*.

substantiates a hypothesis of slow and continual geological change. Darwin, too, was convinced that Earth's massive geological changes are the result of slow processes and therefore Earth must be very old.

On his trip, Darwin observed massive geological changes firsthand. When he explored what is now Argentina, he saw raised beaches for great distances along the coast. In Chile, he witnessed the effects of an earthquake that caused the land to rise several feet and left marine shells inland, well above sea level. When Darwin also found marine shells high in the cliffs of the impressive Andes Mountains, he became even more convinced that Earth is subject to slow geological changes. While Darwin was making geological observations, he also was collecting fossil specimens that differed somewhat from modern species **(Fig. 14.4)**. Once Darwin accepted the supposition that Earth must be very old, he began to think that there would have been enough time for descent with modification to occur. Living forms could be descended from extinct forms known only from the fossil record. It would seem that species are not fixed; instead, they change over time.

Darwin's Study of Biogeography

Darwin could not help but compare the animals of South America with those he observed in England. For example, instead of rabbits, he found Patagonian hares in the grasslands of South America. The Patagonian hare is a rodent that has long legs and ears and the face of a guinea pig **(Fig. 14.5*a*)**. Does the Patagonian hare resemble a rabbit because the two types of animals adapted to the same type of environment—an outcome now called convergent evolution? Did the two distantly related species converge on the same overall body form because they live in similar habitats and have similar behaviors? Does the Patagonian hare have the face of a guinea pig because of a common ancestry with guinea pigs?

As Darwin sailed southward along the eastern coast of South America, he saw how similar species replaced one another. For example, the greater rhea (an ostrichlike bird) found in the north was replaced by the lesser rhea in the south. Therefore, Darwin reasoned that related species can be modified according to environmental differences caused by change in latitude. When he reached the

Figure 14.5 The Patagonian hare and European rabbit.

a. The Patagonian hare, native to South America, has long legs and other adaptations similar to those of a rabbit but has the face of a guinea pig. **b.** The characteristics of the Patagonian hare resemble those of the European rabbit, which does not occur naturally in South America.

a. Patagonian hare

b. European rabbit

Galápagos Islands, he found further evidence of this. The Galápagos Islands are a small group of volcanic islands located 965 kilometers off the western coast of South America. These islands are too far from the mainland for most terrestrial animals and plants to colonize, yet life was present. The types of plants and animals found there were slightly different from species Darwin had observed on the mainland; even more important, they also varied from island to island according to their unique environment. Where did the species inhabiting these islands come from, and what caused the islands to have different species?

Finches Although some of the finches on the Galápagos Islands seemed like mainland finches, others were quite different **(Fig. 14.6)**. Today, there are ground-dwelling finches with beak sizes dependent on the sizes of the seeds they eat. Tree-dwelling finches have beak sizes and shapes dependent on the sizes of their insect prey. A cactus-eating finch possesses a more pointed beak, enabling access to nectar within cactus flowers. The most unusual of the finches is a woodpecker-type finch. A woodpecker normally has a sharp beak to chisel through tree bark and a long tongue to probe for insects. The Galápagos woodpecker-type finch has the sharp beak but lacks the long tongue. To make up for this, the bird carries a twig or cactus spine in its beak and uses it to poke into crevices. Once an insect emerges, the finch drops this tool and seizes the insect with its beak.

Later, Darwin speculated as to whether all the different species of finches he had seen could have descended from a mainland finch. In other words, he wondered if a mainland finch was the common ancestor of all the types on the Galápagos Islands. Had **speciation,** the formation of a new species, occurred because the islands allowed isolated populations of birds to evolve independently? Could the present-day species have resulted from accumulated changes occurring within each of these isolated populations?

Video
Finches Adaptive Radiation

3D Animation
Mechanisms of Evolution: Finches of the Galápagos Islands

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What has happened to Darwin's finches since the nineteenth century?

The finches of the Galápagos Islands have continued to provide a wealth of information on evolutionary processes. Starting in 1973, a team of researchers led by Drs. Peter and Rosemary Grant began a 30-year study of a species of ground finch on the island of Daphne Major in the Galápagos. Through detailed measurements and observations of over 19,000 birds, the Grants were able to document the evolutionary change of a species in response to changes in the environment in action. The details of their study were reported in the Pulitzer Prize–winning book *The Beak of the Finches: A Story of Evolution in Our Time* by Jonathan Weiner.

Video
Finches Natural Selection

Figure 14.6 **Galápagos finches.**

Each of the present-day 13 species of finches has a beak adapted to a particular way of life. **a.** The heavy beak of the large ground-dwelling finch is suited to a diet of seeds. **b.** The beak of the woodpecker finch is suited for using tools to probe for insects in holes or crevices. **c.** The long, somewhat decurved beak and split tongue of the cactus finch are suited to probing cactus flowers for nectar.

Figure 14.7 **Variations in shells of a marine snail, *Liguus fascitus*.**

For Darwin, variations such as these in a species of snails were highly significant and were required in order for natural selection to result in adaptation to the environment.

Tortoises Each of the Galápagos Islands also seemed to have its own type of tortoise, and Darwin began to wonder if this could be correlated with a difference in vegetation among the islands. Long-necked tortoises seemed to inhabit only dry areas, where food was scarce, and most likely the longer neck was helpful in reaching tall-growing cactuses. In moist regions with relatively abundant ground foliage, short-necked tortoises were found. Had an ancestral tortoise from the mainland of South America given rise to these different types, each adapted to a different environment? An **adaptation** is any characteristic that makes an organism more suited to its environment. It often takes many generations for an adaptation to develop.

Natural Selection and Adaptation

Once Darwin realized that adaptations develop over time, he began to think about a mechanism by which adaptations might arise. Eventually, he proposed **natural selection** as the mechanism. Natural selection is a process that results in the evolution of organisms well adapted to their environment. Natural selection requires the following steps:

1. The members of a population have heritable variations **(Fig. 14.7)**.
2. The population produces more offspring than the resources of an environment can support.
3. The individuals that have favorable traits survive and reproduce to a greater extent than those that lack these traits.
4. Over time, the proportion of the favorable trait increases in the population, and the population becomes adapted to the environment.

Due to the fact that natural selection utilizes only variations that happen to be provided by genetic changes (such as mutations), it lacks any directedness or anticipation of future needs. Natural selection is an ongoing process, because the environment of living organisms is constantly changing. Extinction, or the complete loss of a species, can occur when previous adaptations are no longer suitable to a changed environment.

Organisms Vary in Their Traits

Darwin emphasized that the members of a population vary in their functional, physical, and behavioral characteristics. Prior to Darwin, variations were considered imperfections that should be ignored, since they were not important to the description of a species. Darwin, on the other hand, realized that variations are essential to the natural selection process. Darwin suspected that the occurrence of variations is completely random; they arise by accident and for no particular purpose.

We now know that genes, together with the environment, determine the phenotypes of an organism. The genes that each organism inherits are based on the assortment of chromosomes during meiosis and fertilization. New alleles of a gene are the result of inheritable mutations in the DNA of the organism. These mutations are more likely to be harmful than beneficial to an organism. However, occasionally, a mutation occurs that produces a benefit to the organism, such as a change in camouflage (**Fig. 14.8**). This type of variation, which makes adaptation to an environment possible, is passed on from generation to generation.

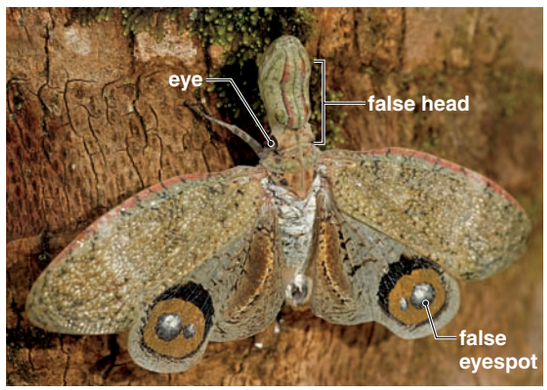


Figure 14.8 **Variation can lead to adaptation.**

The alligator bug of the Brazilian rain forest has antipredator adaptations. The insect blends into its background, but if discovered, the false head, which resembles a miniature alligator, may frighten a predator. If the predator is not frightened, the insect suddenly reveals huge false eyespots on its hindwings.

Organisms Struggle to Exist

In Darwin's time, a socioeconomist named Thomas Malthus stressed the reproductive potential of humans. He proposed that death and famine are inevitable, because the human population tends to increase faster than the supply of food. Darwin applied this concept to all organisms and saw that the available resources were not sufficient to allow all members of a population to survive. He calculated the reproductive potential of elephants and concluded that, after only 750 years, the descendants of a single pair of elephants would number about 19 million! Obviously, no environment has the resources to support an elephant population of this magnitude. Because each generation has the same reproductive potential as the previous generation, there is a constant struggle for existence, and only certain members of a population survive and reproduce each generation.

Organisms Differ in Fitness

Fitness is the reproductive success of an individual relative to other members of the population. Fitness is determined by comparing the number of surviving fertile offspring that are produced with each member of the population. The most fit individuals are the ones that capture a disproportionate amount of resources and convert these resources into a larger number of viable offspring. Because organisms vary anatomically and physiologically, and because the challenges of local environments vary, what determines fitness varies for different populations. For example, among western diamondback rattlesnakes living on lava flows, the most fit are those that are black. Among those living on desert soil, the most fit are typically light-colored with brown blotching. Background matching helps an animal both capture prey and avoid being captured; therefore, it is expected to lead to survival and increased reproduction.

Darwin noted that, when humans help carry out **artificial selection,** they breed selected animals with particular traits to reproduce. For example, prehistoric humans probably noted desirable variations among wolves and selected particular individuals for breeding. Therefore, the desired traits increased in frequency in the next generation. The same process was repeated many times, resulting in today's numerous varieties of dogs, all descended from the wolf. In a similar way, several varieties of vegetables can be traced to a single ancestor. Chinese cabbage, brussels sprouts, and kohlrabi are all derived from a single species, *Brassica oleracea*.

In nature, interactions with the environment determine which members of a population reproduce to a greater degree than other members. In contrast to artificial selection, the result of natural selection is not predesired. Natural selection occurs because certain members of a population happen to have a variation that allows them to survive and reproduce to a greater extent than other members. For example, any variation that increases the speed of a hoofed animal helps it escape predators and live longer; a variation that reduces water loss is beneficial to a desert plant; and one that increases the sense of smell helps a wild dog find its prey. Therefore, we expect the organisms with these characteristics to have increased fitness. **Figure 14.9** contrasts Lamarck's ideas with those of Darwin.

Organisms Become Adapted

An adaptation may take many generations to evolve. We can especially recognize an adaptation when unrelated organisms living in a particular environment display similar characteristics. For example, manatees, penguins, and sea turtles all have flippers, which help them move through the water—also

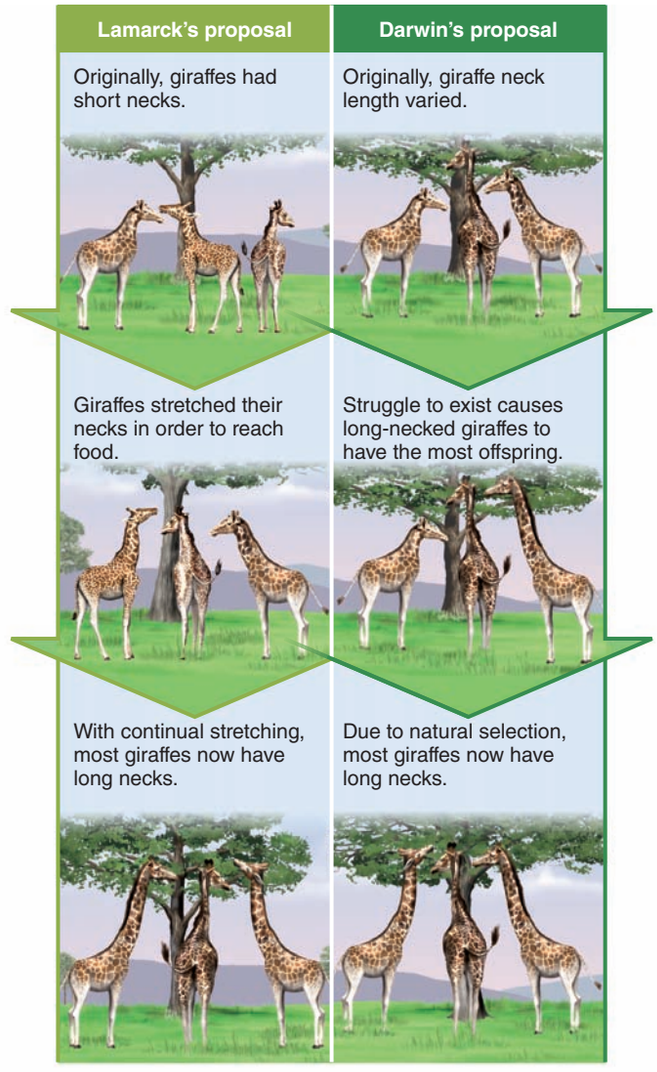


Figure 14.9 **Mechanism of evolution.**

This diagram contrasts Jean-Baptiste Lamarck's proposal of acquired characteristics with Charles Darwin's proposal of natural selection. Only natural selection is supported by data.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Are there examples of artificial selection in animals?

Almost all animals that are currently used in modern agriculture are the result of thousands of years of artificial selection by humans. But perhaps the greatest example of artificial selection in animals is the modern dog. Analysis of canine DNA indicates that the dog (*Canis familiaris*) is a direct descendant of the gray wolf (*Canis lupus*). This domestication and subsequent selection for desirable traits appears to have begun over 130,000 years ago. Artificial selection of dogs continues to this day, with over 150 variations (breeds) currently known.

an example of convergent evolution. Adaptations also account for why organisms are able to escape their predators (see Fig. 14.8) and why they are suited to their way of life (**Fig. 14.10**). Natural selection causes adaptive traits to be increasingly represented in each succeeding generation. There are other processes of evolution aside from natural selection (see Chapter 15), but natural selection is the only process that results in adaptation to the environment.

3D Animation
Mechanisms of Evolution: The Mechanism of Natural Selection

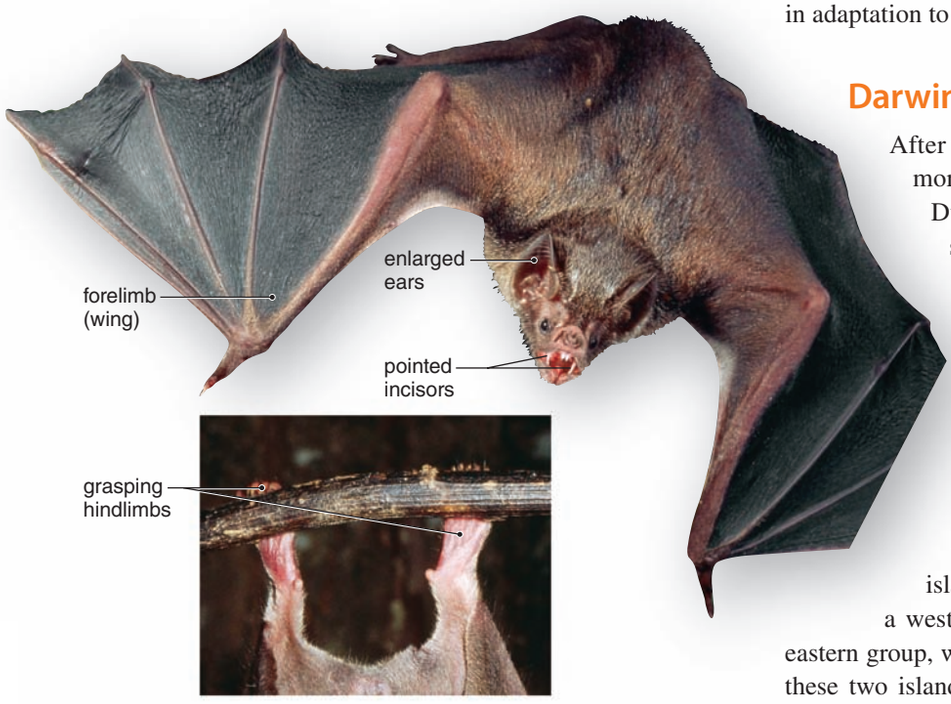


Figure 14.10 **Adaptations of the vampire bat.**

Vampire bats of the rain forests of Central and South America have the adaptations of a nocturnal, winged predator. The bat uses its enlarged ears and echolocation to locate prey in the dark. It bites its prey with two pointed incisors. Saliva containing an anticoagulant, called draculin, runs into the bite; the bat then licks the flowing blood. The vampire bat's forelimbs are modified to form wings, and it roosts by using its grasping hindlimbs.

Darwin and Wallace

After the HMS *Beagle* returned to England in 1836, Darwin waited more than 20 years to publish his book *On the Origin of Species*. During the intervening years, he used the scientific process to support his hypothesis that today's diverse lifeforms arose by descent from a common ancestor and that natural selection is a mechanism by which species can change and new species can arise. Darwin was prompted to publish his book after reading a similar hypothesis formulated by Alfred Russel Wallace.

Wallace was an English naturalist who, like Darwin, was a collector at home and abroad. He went on collecting trips, each of which lasted several years, to the Amazon and the Malay Archipelago. After studying the animals of every island within the Malay Archipelago, he divided the islands into a western group, with organisms like those found in Asia, and an eastern group, with organisms like those of Australia. The sharp line dividing these two island groups within the archipelago is now known as Wallace's Line (**Fig. 14.11**). A narrow but deep strait occurs at Wallace's Line. At times during the past 50 million years, this strait persisted even when sea levels were low and land bridges appeared between the other islands. Therefore, the strait would have always served as a barrier to the dispersal of organisms between the two groups of islands.

While traveling, Wallace also wrote an essay called "On the Law Which Has Regulated the Introduction of New Species." In this essay, he said that "every species has come into existence coincident both in time and

Figure 14.11 **The Wallace Line.**

Located in the southern Pacific Ocean, the Wallace Line was one of the earliest attempts to explain the biogeographical distribution of species.

space with a preexisting closely allied species." A year later, after reading Malthus's treatise on human population increase, Wallace conceived the idea of "survival of the fittest." He quickly completed an essay proposing natural selection as an agent for evolutionary change and sent it to Darwin for comment. Darwin was stunned. Here was the hypothesis he had formulated but had never dared to publish. He told his friend and colleague Charles Lyell that Wallace's ideas were so similar to his own that even Wallace's "terms now stand as heads of my chapters."

Darwin suggested that Wallace's paper be published immediately, even though Darwin himself as yet had nothing in print. However, Lyell and others who knew of Darwin's detailed work substantiating the process of natural selection suggested that a joint paper be read to the renowned Linnean Society. On July 1, 1858, Darwin presented an abstract of *On the Origin of Species,* which was published in 1859. The title of Wallace's section was "On the Tendency of Varieties to Depart Indefinitely from the Original Type." This professional presentation served as the announcement to the world that species share a common descent and have diverged through natural selection.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Both Darwin and Wallace used multiple lines of scientific evidence to formulate the theory of natural selection.

Check Your Progress 14.1

1. Summarize Cuvier's and Lamarck's views on evolutionary change.
2. Distinguish between the processes of natural selection and the inheritance of acquired characteristics.
3. Explain how natural selection can lead to adaptation.
4. Predict what might happen to a population of individuals over time if there is no diversity and variation in the gene pool.

14.2 Evidence of Evolutionary Change

Learning Outcome

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain how the fossil record, biogeography, comparative anatomy, development, and biochemistry support the hypothesis of common descent.

Evolutionary theory, which includes the theories of natural selection and descent with modification, states that all living organisms have a common ancestor, but each has become adapted to its environment by the process of natural selection. A hypothesis becomes a scientific theory only when a variety of evidence from independent investigators supports the hypothesis. It has been over 150 years since Darwin first suggested that natural selection represents the mechanism by which species change over time. Since then, countless scientific studies have supported the ideas that species (1) change over time, (2) are related through common descent, and (3) are adapted to their environment by the process of natural selection.

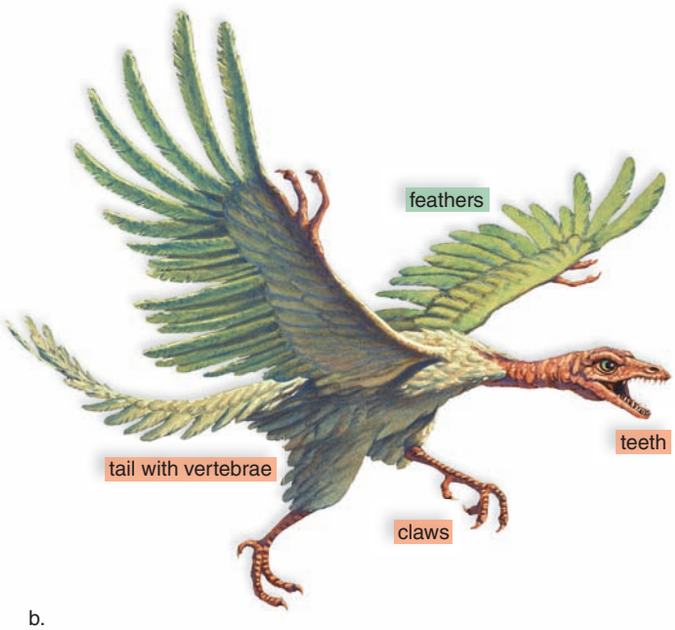
Evolution is recognized as the unifying principle in biology because it can explain so many different observations in various fields of biology. From the study of microbes to the function of ecosystems, evolutionary theory helps biologists understand the complex nature of life. In this section, we will explore the evidence that evolutionary change has occurred. With the exception of biochemical data, Darwin was aware of much of this evidence when he formulated his ideas.

Fossil Evidence

The fossils trapped in rock strata are the **fossil record** that tell us about the history of life. One of the most striking patterns in the fossil record is a succession of lifeforms from the simple to the more complex. Occasionally, this pattern is reversed, showing that evolution is not unidirectional. Particularly interesting are the fossils that serve as *transitional links* between groups. Even in Darwin's day, scientists knew of the *Archaeopteryx* fossils, which show that birds have reptilian features, including jaws with teeth and long, jointed tails. *Archaeopteryx* also had feathers and wings (**Fig. 14.12**).

In 2004, a team of paleontologists discovered fossilized remains of *Tiktaalik roseae*, nicknamed the "fishapod" because it is the transitional form between fish and four-legged animals, the tetrapods. *Tiktaalik* fossils are estimated to be 375 million years old and are from a time when the transition from fish to tetrapods is likely to have occurred. As expected of an intermediate fossil, *Tiktaalik* has a mix of fishlike and tetrapod-like features that illustrate the steps in the evolution of tetrapods from a fishlike ancestor (**Fig. 14.13**). For example, *Tiktaalik* has a very fishlike set of gills and fins, with the exception of the pectoral, or front, fins, which have the beginnings of wrist bones (or legs) similar to a tetrapod. Unlike a fish, however, *Tiktaalik* has a flat head, a flexible neck, eyes on the top of its head like a crocodile, and interlocking ribs that suggest it had lungs. These transitional features suggest that it had the ability to push itself along the bottom of shallow rivers and see above the surface of the water—features that would come in handy in its river habitat.

a.



b.

Figure 14.12 **Re-creation of *Archaeopteryx*.**

The (a.)fossil record suggests that *Archaeopteryx* had a feather-covered, reptilian-type tail, (b.) which shows up well in this artist's representation. (Red labels: reptilian characteristics; green labels: bird characteristics)

In 2006, a snake fossil dated to 90 MYA was discovered with hip bones and hindlimbs—a trait absent in all living snakes. Some snakes, such as pythons, have vestigial hindlimbs, but these snakes lack the hip bones present in this fossil. Since all lizards have hip bones and most have limbs, this fossil is now serving as a transitional fossil between lizards and snakes.

The fossil record also provides important insights into the evolution of whales from land-living, hoofed ancestors **(Fig. 14.14)**. The fossilized whale *Ambulocetus* may have been amphibious, walking on land and swimming in the sea. *Rodhocetus* swam with an up-and-down tail motion, as modern whales do; its reduced hindlimbs could not have helped in swimming.

Biogeographical Evidence

Biogeography is the study of the distribution of organisms throughout the world. Such distributions are consistent with the hypothesis that, when forms are related, they evolved in one locale and then spread to accessible regions. Therefore, you would expect a different mix of plants and animals wherever geography separated continents, islands, or seas. As previously mentioned, Darwin noted that South America lacked rabbits, even though the environment was quite suitable for them. He concluded that rabbits evolved elsewhere and had no means of reaching South America.

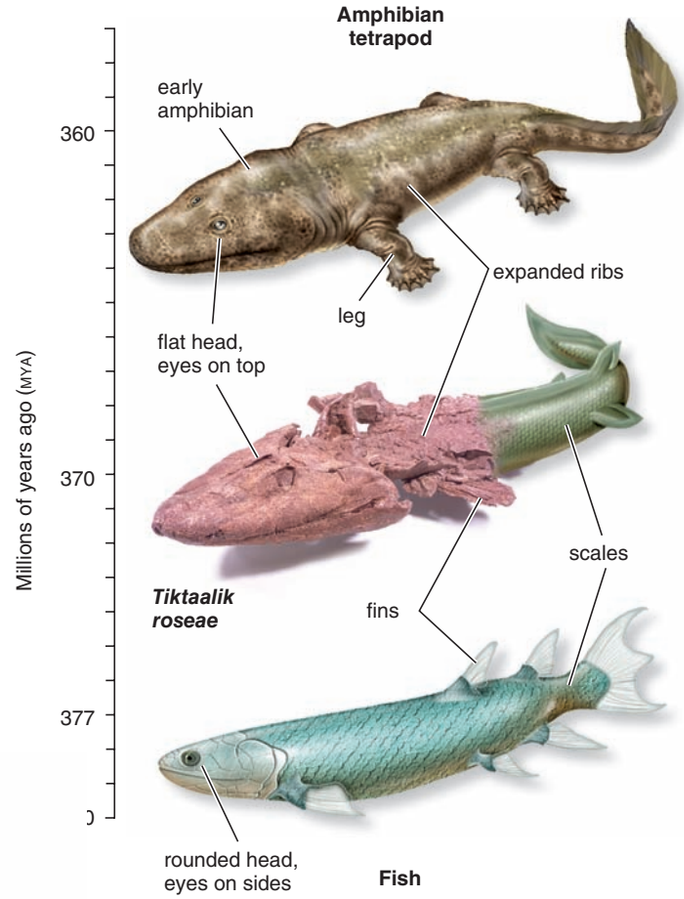


Figure 14.13 Evolution of tetrapods.

Tiktaalik roseae has a mix of fishlike and tetrapod-like features. Fossils such as *Tiktaalik* provide evidence that the evolution of new groups involves the modification of preexisting features in older groups. The evolutionary transition from one form to another, such as from a fish to a tetrapod, can be gradual, with intermediate forms having a suite of adapted, fully functional features.

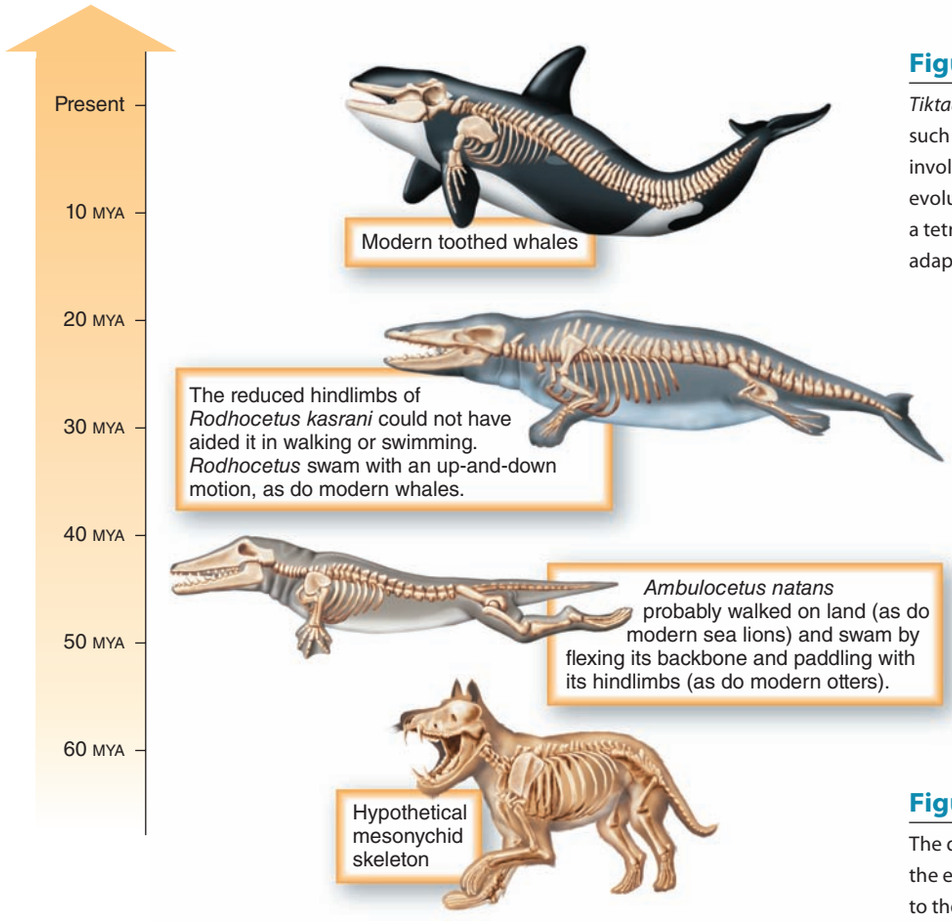


Figure 14.14 Evolution of whales.

The discoveries of *Ambulocetus* and *Rodhocetus* have filled in the gaps in the evolution of whales from extinct hoofed mammals that lived on land to the ocean-dwelling mammals we know today. MYA = million years ago

To take another example, both cactuses and spurges (*Euphorbia*) are plants adapted to a hot, dry environment—both are succulent, spiny, flowering plants. Why do cactuses grow in American deserts and most *Euphorbia* grow in African deserts, when each would do well on the other continent? It seems obvious that they evolved similar adaptations because their respective continents had similar environments.

The islands of the world are home to many unique species of animals and plants found nowhere else, even when the soil and climate are the same. Why do so many species of finches live on the Galápagos Islands and so many species of honeycreepers, a type of finch, live in the Hawaiian Islands when these species are not on the mainland? The reasonable explanation is that an ancestral finch migrated to all the different islands. Then geographic isolation allowed the ancestral finch to evolve into a different species on each island.

Also, long ago, South America, Antarctica, and Australia were connected (see Fig. 16.14). Marsupials (pouched mammals) and placental mammals arose at this time, but today marsupials are plentiful only in Australia, and placental mammals are plentiful in South America. Why are marsupials plentiful only in Australia **(Fig. 14.15)**? After marsupials arose, Australia separated and drifted away, and marsupials were free to evolve into many different forms because they had no competition from placental mammals. In the Americas, the placental mammals competed successfully against the marsupials, and the opossum is the only marsupial in the Americas. In some cases, marsupial and placental mammals physically resemble one another—two examples are the marsupial wombat and the marmot and the marsupial Tasmanian wolf and the wolf. This supports the hypothesis that evolution is influenced by the environment and by the mix of plants and animals on a particular continent—by biogeography, not by design.

Sugar glider, *Petaurus breviceps*, is a tree-dweller and resembles the placental flying squirrel.

The Australian wombat, *Vombatus*, is nocturnal and lives in burrows. It resembles the placental woodchuck.

Kangaroo, *Macropus*, is an herbivore that inhabits plains and forests. It resembles the placental Patagonian cavy of South America.

Figure 14.15 Marsupials of Australia.

Each type of marsupial in Australia is adapted to a different way of life. All of them presumably evolved from a common ancestor that entered Australia some 60 MYA.

Anatomical Evidence

Darwin was able to show that a common descent hypothesis offers a plausible explanation for vestigial structures and anatomical similarities among organisms.

Vestigial structures are anatomical features that are fully developed in one group of organisms but reduced and nonfunctional in other, similar groups. Most birds, for example, have well-developed wings used for flight. However, some bird species (e.g., ostrich) have greatly reduced wings and do not fly. Similarly, whales (see Fig. 14.14) and snakes have no use for hindlimbs, yet extinct whales and snakes had remnants of hip bones and legs. Humans have a tailbone but no tail. The presence of vestigial structures can be explained by the common descent hypothesis. Vestigial structures occur because organisms inherit their anatomy from their ancestors; they are traces of an organism's evolutionary history.

Vertebrate forelimbs are used for flight (birds and bats), orientation during swimming (whales and seals), running (horses), climbing (arboreal lizards), and swinging from tree branches (monkeys). However, all vertebrate forelimbs contain the same sets of bones organized in similar ways, despite their dissimilar functions **(Fig. 14.16)**. The most plausible explanation for this unity is that the basic forelimb plan belonged to a common ancestor, and then the plan became modified in the succeeding groups as each continued along its own evolutionary pathway. Anatomically

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What are some other vestigial organs in humans?

The human body is littered with vestigial organs from our evolutionary past—for example, the tiny muscles (called piloerectors) that surround each hair follicle. During times of stress, these muscles cause the hair to stand straight up—a useful defense mechanism for small mammals trying to escape predators but one that has little fuction in humans. Wisdom teeth are also considered to be vestigial organs, since most people now retain their teeth for the majority of their lives.

similar structures explainable by inheritance from a common ancestor are called **homologous structures.** In contrast, **analogous structures** serve the same function but are not constructed similarly, and therefore could not have a common ancestry. The wings of birds and insects are analogous structures.

The homology shared by vertebrates extends to their embryological development **(Fig. 14.17)**. At some point during development, all vertebrates have a postanal tail and exhibit paired pharyngeal pouches supported by cartilaginous bars. In fishes and amphibian larvae, these pouches develop into functioning gills. In humans, the first pair of pouches becomes the cavity of the middle ear and the auditory tube. The second pair becomes the tonsils; the third and fourth pairs become the thymus and parathyroid glands. Why should pharyngeal pouches, which have lost their original function, develop and then become modified in terrestrial vertebrates? The most likely explanation is that new structures (or structures with unique functions) originate by "modifying" the preexisting structures of one's ancestors.

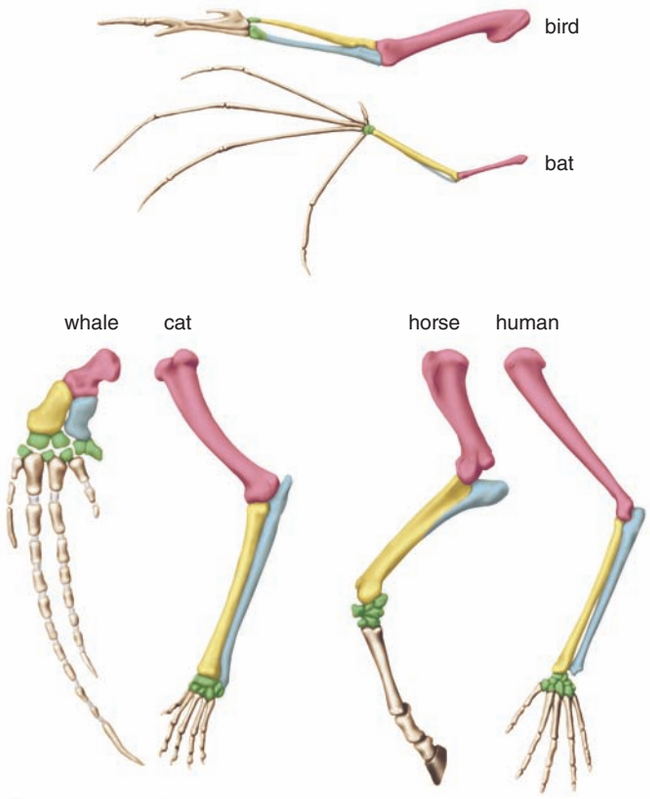


Figure 14.16 **Significance of structural similarities.**

Although the specific details of vertebrate forelimbs are different, the same basic bone stucture and position are present (color-coded here). This unity of anatomy is evidence of a common ancestor.

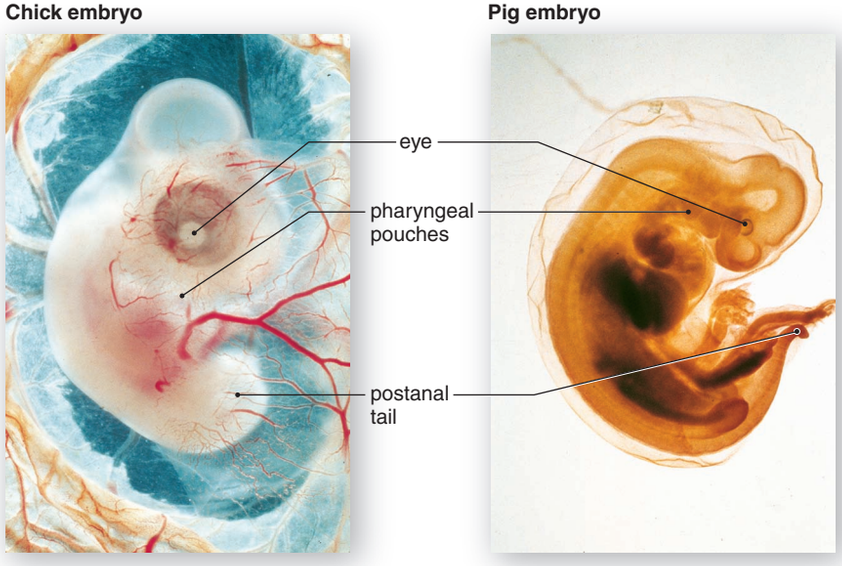


Figure 14.17 **Significance of developmental similarities.**

At this comparable developmental stage, a chick embryo and a pig embryo have many features in common, which suggests they evolved from a common ancestor.

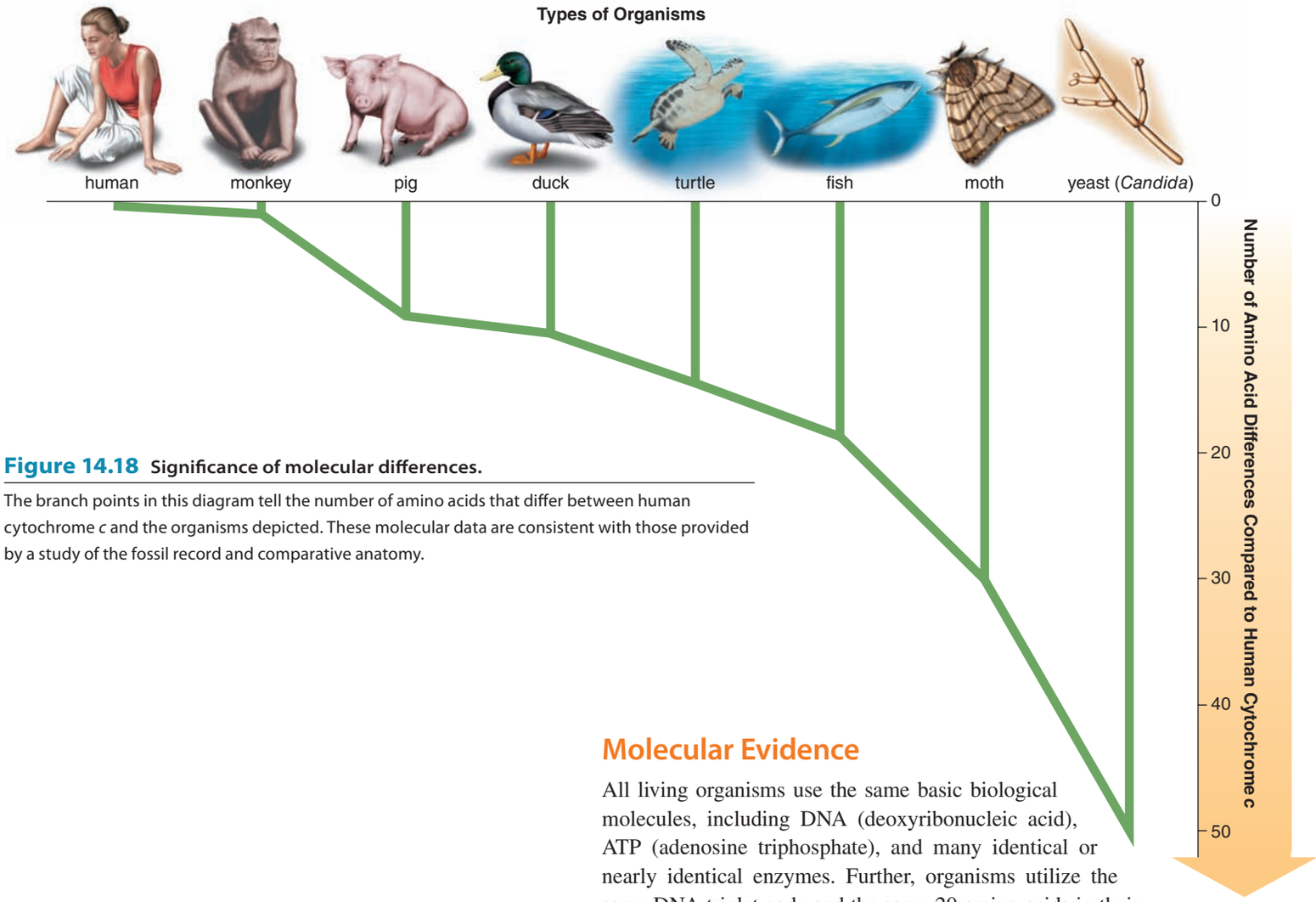


Figure 14.18 **Significance of molecular differences.**

The branch points in this diagram tell the number of amino acids that differ between human cytochrome *c* and the organisms depicted. These molecular data are consistent with those provided by a study of the fossil record and comparative anatomy.

Molecular Evidence

All living organisms use the same basic biological molecules, including DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), ATP (adenosine triphosphate), and many identical or nearly identical enzymes. Further, organisms utilize the same DNA triplet code and the same 20 amino acids in their proteins. Now that we know the sequence of DNA bases in the genomes of many organisms, it has become clear that humans share a large number of genes with much simpler organisms.

Also of interest, evolutionary developmental biologists have found that many developmental genes, called *Hox* genes, are shared in animals ranging from worms to humans. It appears that life's vast diversity has come about by only slight differences in the same genes. The results have been widely divergent body plans. For example, a similar gene in arthropods and vertebrates determines the back-to-front axis. However, although the base sequences are similar, the genes have opposite effects. In arthropods, such as fruit flies and crayfish, the nerve cord is toward the front; in vertebrates, such as chickens and humans, the nerve cord is toward the back.

When the degree of similarity in DNA base sequences of genes or in amino acid sequences of proteins is examined, the data are as expected, assuming common descent. Cytochrome *c* is a molecule used in the electron transport chain of all the organisms shown in **Figure 14.18.** Data regarding differences in the amino acid sequence of cytochrome *c* show that the sequence in a human differs from that in a monkey by only 1 amino acid, from that in a duck by 11 amino acids, and from that in *Candida*, a yeast, by 51 amino acids. These data are consistent with other data regarding the anatomical similarities of these organisms, and therefore their relatedness.

14.2 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

The fossil record, comparative anatomy, and molecular evidence all support the hypothesis of common descent.

Check Your Progress 14.2

1. Explain how biogeographical information about Galápagos finches supports the theory of evolution.
2. Describe how vestigial structures support the theory of evolution.
3. Contrast homologous structures with analogous structures.

Media Study Tools

Enhance your study of this chapter with media! Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Video

14.1 Finches Adaptive Radiation • Finches Natural Selection
14.2 Finches Adaptive Radiation

3D Animation
Mechanisms of Evolution

For an exploration of the process of natural selection and its effects on the finches of the Galápagos, watch the 3D animation "Mechanisms of Evolution"

SUMMARIZE

14.1 Darwin's Theory of Evolution

Charles Darwin is recognized for developing the theory of natural selection, which explains how species change over time.

Before Darwin

Before Darwin, people believed that Earth was young, species did not change, variations were imperfections, and observations could substantiate these views.

- Cuvier was an early paleontologist who believed that species do not change. He observed species come and go in the fossil record, and he said these changes were due to catastrophies.
- Lamarck was a zoologist who hypothesized that evolution and adaptation to the environment do occur. He suggested that acquired characteristics could be inherited. For example, he said giraffes stretched their necks to reach food in trees, and then this change was inherited by the next generation.

Darwin's Conclusions

Darwin's conclusions based on geology and **fossils** are

- The Earth is very old, giving time for evolution to occur.
- Living organisms are descended from extinct forms known only from the fossil record.

Darwin's conclusions based on **biogeography** are

- Living organisms evolve where they are. This explains, for example, why South America has the Patagonian hare, whereas England has the rabbit.
- Living organisms are adapted to their environments. This explains why there are many types of finches and tortoises in the Galápagos Islands.

Natural Selection and Adaptation

According to Darwin, the results of **natural selection** are **adaptations** that allow a species to be better suited to its local environment than previous generations. These adaptations improve the **fitness,** or reproductive success, of the species:

	Observation	Result	Conclusion
1	a. Organisms have variations.	b. New adaptations to the environment arise.	Organisms become more adapted with each generation.
2	a. Organisms struggle to exist.	b. More organisms are present than can survive.	
3	a. Organisms differ in fitness.	b. Organisms best suited to the environment survive and reproduce.	

Over time, these adaptations may result in the process of **speciation.** Darwin used examples of **artificial selection** to help explain the process of natural selection.

Darwin and Wallace

Alfred Russel Wallace was a naturalist who, like Darwin, traveled to other continents in the Southern Hemisphere. He also collected evidence of common descent, and his reading of Malthus caused him to develop the same mechanism for adaptation (natural selection) as Darwin. Darwin's work was more thorough, as evidenced by his book *On the Origin of Species.*

14.2 Evidence of Evolutionary Change

A theory in science is a concept supported by much evidence, and evolutionary theory is supported by several types of evidence:

- The **fossil record** indicates the history of life in general and allows us to trace the descent of a particular group. Transitional fossils play an important role in documenting the change in an organism over time.
- Biogeography shows that the distribution of organisms on Earth is explainable by assuming organisms evolved in one locale.
- Anatomy and development of organisms reveals homologies explainable only by common ancestry.
  - **Vestigial structures** are the nonfunctional remnants of structures.
  - **Homologous structures** are similar structures that may be explained by inheritance from a common ancestor.
  - **Analogous structures** are structures that have a similar function but different evolutionary origins.
- Molecular evidence compares biochemical molecules (DNA, proteins) for minor differences that may indicate the degree of relatedness.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The work of Charles Darwin helped shape modern evolutionary thought. All species on Earth, including humans, have a common ancestry due to the process of evolution.

14.1 Both Darwin and Wallace used multiple lines of scientific evidence to formulate the theory of natural selection.

14.2 The fossil record, comparative anatomy, and molecular evidence all support the hypothesis of common descent.

For more information about Darwin and evolution, see the following discussions:

Section 9.2 describes how sexual reproduction and meiosis increase the variation of a species.

Section 15.2 examines how populations evolve over time.

Section 19.6 explores the fossil evidence supporting human evolution.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

14.1 Darwin's Theory of Evolution

1. _____ developed the idea that acquired characteristics can be inherited.
   a. Darwin
   b. Lamarck
   c. Wallace
   d. Sedgwick
   e. Cuvier
2. Which of the following is not an example of natural selection?
   a. Insect populations exposed to pesticides become resistant to the chemicals.
   b. Plant species that produce fragrances to attract pollinators produce more offspring.
   c. Rabbits that sprint quickly are more likely to escape predation.
   d. On a tree, leaves that grow in the shade are larger than those that grow in the sun.
3. Natural selection is the only process that results in
   a. genetic variation.
   b. adaptation to the environment.
   c. phenotypic change.
   d. competition among individuals in a population.
4. Why was it helpful to Darwin to learn that Lyell concluded the Earth is very old?
   a. An old Earth has more fossils than a new Earth.
   b. It meant there was enough time for evolution to have occurred slowly.
   c. There was enough time for the same species to spread out into all continents.
   d. Darwin said artificial selection occurs slowly.
   e. All of these are correct.
5. New alleles for a trait arise by
   a. mutation.
   b. the needs of the species.
   c. sexual reproduction.
   d. mitosis.

14.2 Evidence of Evolutionary Change

6. DNA nucleotide differences between organisms
   a. indicate how closely related organisms are.
   b. indicate that evolution occurs.
   c. explain why there are phenotypic differences.
   d. are to be expected.
   e. All of these are correct.
7. The fossil record offers direct evidence for common descent because you can
   a. see that the types of fossils change over time.
   b. sometimes find common ancestors.
   c. trace the ancestry of a particular group.
   d. trace the biological history of living things.
   e. All of these are correct.
8. For there to be homologous structures,
   a. a common ancestor had to have existed.
   b. analogous structures also have to exist.
   c. the bones have to be used similarly.
   d. All of these are correct.

For questions 9–12, match the description with the type of evidence for evolution it supports, as listed in the key. Answers can be used more than once.

Key:

a. biogeographical
b. anatomical
c. biochemical

9. The genetic code is the same for all organisms.
10. The human knee bone and spine were derived from ancestral structures that supported four-legged animals.
11. The South American continent lacks rabbits, even though the environment is quite suitable.
12. The amino acid sequence of human hemoglobin is more similar to that of rhesus monkeys than to that of mice.
13. Fossils that serve as transitional links allow scientists to
    a. determine how prehistoric animals interacted with each other.
    b. deduce the order in which various groups of animals arose.
    c. relate climate change to evolutionary trends.
    d. determine why evolutionary changes occur.
14. Among vertebrates, the flipper of a dolphin and the fin of a tuna are
    a. homologous structures.
    b. homogeneous structures.
    c. analogous structures.
    d. reciprocal structures.

ENGAGE

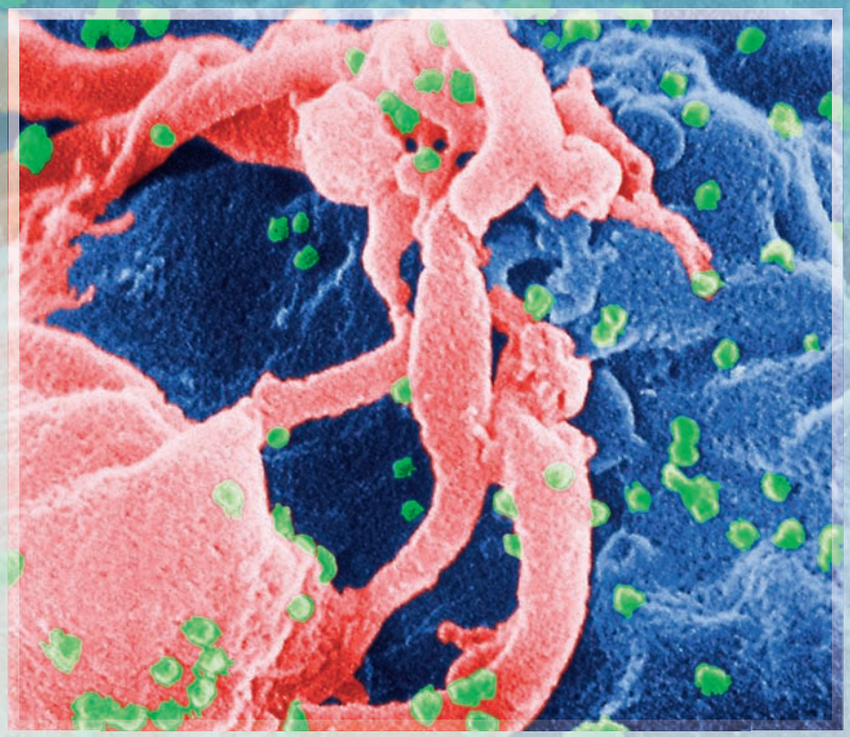
LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Evidence of Evolution
- Natural Selection

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. The human appendix, a vestigial extension of the large intestine, is homologous to a structure called a caecum in other mammals. A caecum, generally larger than our appendix, houses bacteria that aid in digesting cellulose, the main component of plants. How might the presence of the appendix be used to show our common ancestry with other mammals, and what might it tell us about the dietary history of humans?
2. Geneticists compare DNA base sequences among organisms and from these data determine a gene's rate of evolution. Different genes have been found to evolve at different rates. Explain why some genes have faster rates of evolution than other genes as populations adapt to their environments.
3. Both Darwin and Wallace, while observing life on islands, concluded that natural selection is the mechanism for biological evolution. The Hawaiian and nearby islands once had at least 50 species of honeycreepers, and they lived nowhere else on Earth. Natural selection occurs everywhere and in all species. What characteristics of islands allow the outcome of natural selection to be so obvious?



15

Evolution on a Small Scale

Evolution and HIV

In 1983, two research groups independently discovered that a new virus, the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), was responsible for the suppressed immune system in patients contracting rare forms of infections. HIV leads to the eventual development of acquired immune deficiency syndrome, or AIDS. There is no cure for HIV/AIDS, and if left untreated, the mortality rate is near 100%. New types of HIV emerge from mutations in the virus's genes. An infected individual can have dozens of different types of HIV in his or her body. The large amount of variation in populations of HIV makes it difficult for the human immune system to adapt quickly enough to recognize, and fight against, HIV. Recent advances in drug therapies for HIV/AIDS have come about from an understanding of the way in which HIV evolves.

This chapter is about microevolution and how a population's gene pool can change over time. An understanding of how populations evolve has helped humans combat pesticide resistance of agricultural pests, conserve the Earth's biodiversity, and treat diseases such as HIV/AIDS.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What is the link between genes, populations, and evolution?
2. How do scientists determine whether a population is evolving?
3. With regard to populations, how does natural selection work to shape genetic diversity?

OUTLINE

15.1 Natural Selection 254

15.2 Microevolution 260

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 1.2 Why is evolution considered to be the core concept of biology?

Section 9.3 How does sexual reproduction and meiosis increase variation in a population?

Section 14.1 How does natural selection act as the mechanism of evolutionary change?

15.1 Natural Selection

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this chapter, you should be able to

1. Describe the three types of natural selection—directional, stabilizing, and disruptive.
2. Explain how heterozygotes maintain variation in a population and summarize the concept of a heterozygote advantage.

Natural selection is the process that results in adaptation of a population to the biotic (living) and abiotic (nonliving) environments. In the biotic environment, organisms acquire resources through competition, predation, and parasitism. The abiotic environment includes weather conditions, dependent chiefly on temperatures and precipitation. Charles Darwin became convinced that species evolve with time and suggested natural selection as the mechanism for adaptation to the environment (see Chapter 14). In **Table 15.1,** Darwin's hypothesis of natural selection is stated in a way that is consistent with modern genetics.

As a result of natural selection, the most *fit* individuals become more prevalent in a population, and in this way, a population changes over time. The most fit individuals are those that reproduce more than others. The more fit individuals are likely those that are better adapted to the environment.

Table 15.1 Natural Selection

Evolution by natural selection requires
1. Variation. The members of a population differ from one another.
2. Inheritance. Many of these differences are heritable genetic differences.
3. Degrees of successful reproduction. Individuals that are better adapted to their environment are more likely to reproduce, and their fertile offspring will make up a greater proportion of the next generation.

Types of Selection

Most of the traits on which natural selection acts are *polygenic,* meaning that they are controlled by more than one pair of alleles located at different gene loci (see Section 10.3). Such traits have a range of phenotypes, the frequency distribution of which usually resembles a bell-shaped curve (**Fig. 15.1**).

Three types of natural selection are possible for any trait: directional selection, stabilizing selection, and disruptive selection.

Directional Selection

Directional selection occurs when an extreme phenotype is favored and the distribution curve shifts in that direction. Such a shift can occur when a population is adapting to a changing environment.

Resistance to antibiotics and insecticides are classic examples of directional selection. As you may know, the widespread use of antibiotics and pesticides results in populations of bacteria and insects that are resistant

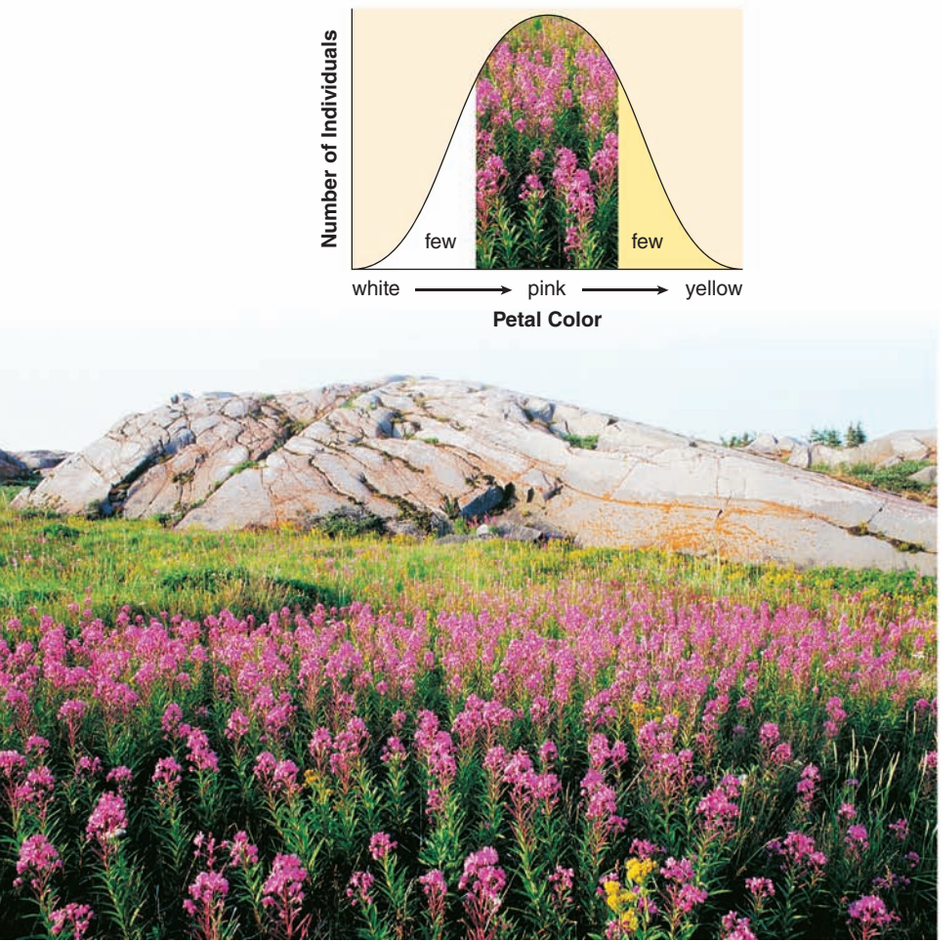


Figure 15.1 **Population of perennial flowers.**

Among the members of a flowering plant population, petal color can be a continuous variation, so that there is a range of phenotypes. Few individuals have the extreme phenotypes, white petals and yellow petals, and most individuals have the intermediate phenotype, pink petals. A graph of the phenotypes results in the bell-shaped curve, shown above the photo of the population.

to these chemicals. When an antibiotic is administered, some bacteria may survive because they are genetically resistant to the antibiotic. These are the bacteria that are likely to pass on their genes to the next generation. As a result, the number of resistant bacteria keeps increasing. Drug-resistant strains of bacteria that cause tuberculosis have now become a serious threat to the health of people worldwide.

Another example of directional selection is the human struggle against malaria, a disease caused by an infection of the liver and the red blood cells. The *Anopheles* mosquito transmits the disease-causing protozoan *Plasmodium* from person to person. In the early 1960s, international health authorities thought malaria would soon be eradicated. A new drug, chloroquine, seemed effective against *Plasmodium,* and spraying of DDT (an insecticide) had reduced the mosquito population. But by the mid-1960s, *Plasmodium* was showing signs of chloroquine resistance, and worse yet, mosquitoes were becoming resistant to DDT. A few drug-resistant parasites and a few DDT-resistant mosquitoes had survived and multiplied, shifting the distribution curve toward the resistant type of parasite.

The gradual increase in the size of the modern horse, *Equus,* is an example of directional selection that can also be correlated with a change in the environment—in this case, from forest conditions to grassland conditions **(Fig. 15.2)**. Even so, as discussed previously, the evolution of the horse should not be viewed as a straight line of descent, because we know of many side branches that became extinct.

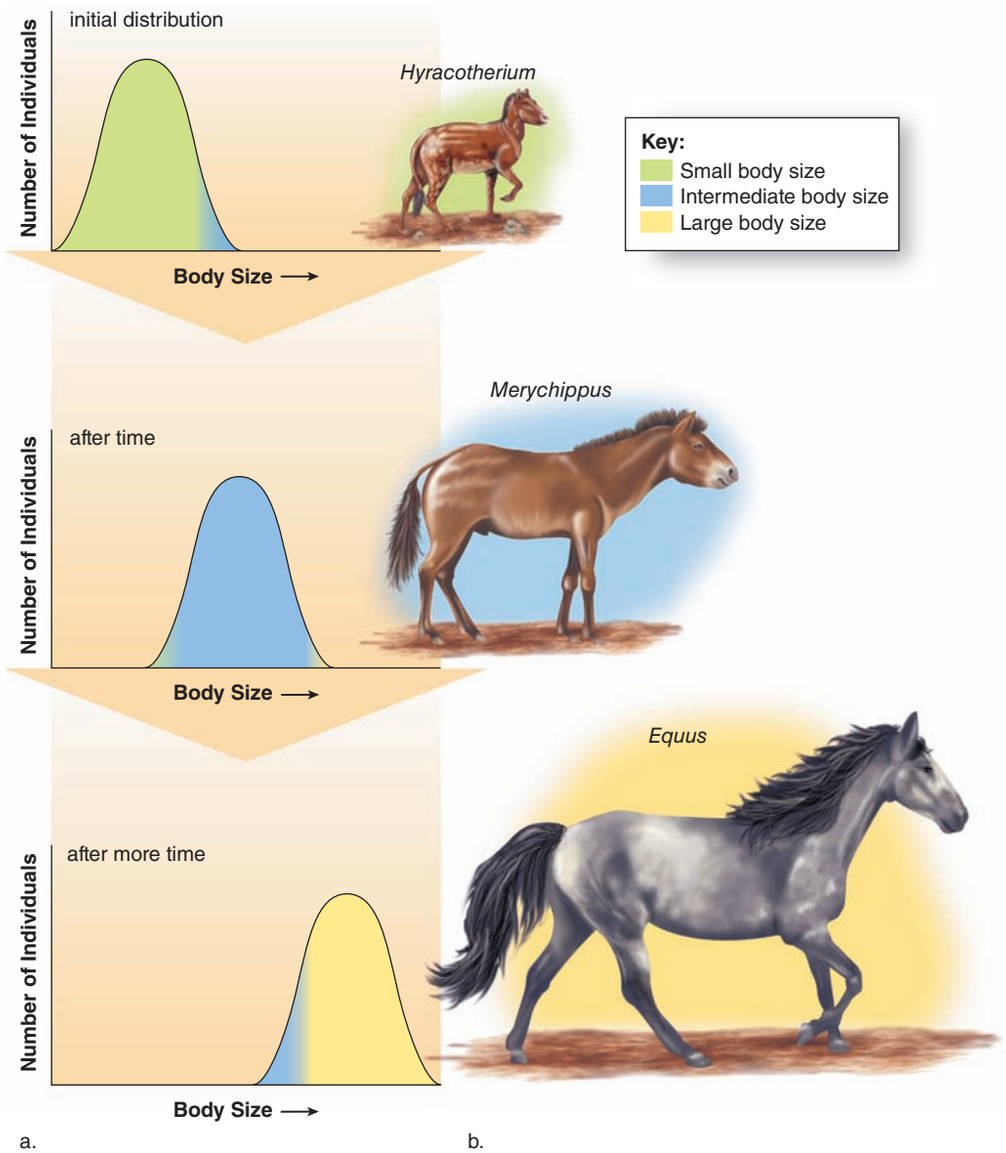


Figure 15.2 , irectional selection.

a. Natural selection favors one extreme phenotype, and the distribution curve shifts. **b.** Equus, the modern-day horse, evolved from *Hyracotherium*, which was about the size of a dog. This small animal could have hidden among trees, and it had low-crowned teeth for browsing. ˆ hen grasslands began to replace forests, the ancestors of Equus may have been sub%ect to selection pressure for the development of strength, intelligence, speed, and durable grinding teeth. Larger animals were stronger and more successful in combat, those with larger skulls and brains had better sensory processing, those with longer legs and better developed hooves could escape enemies, and those with durable teeth could feed more e‹ ciently on grass. Animals with these characteristics tended to produce more offspring.

Stabilizing Selection

Stabilizing selection occurs when an intermediate phenotype is favored. With stabilizing selection, extreme phenotypes are selected against, and individuals near the average are favored. This is the most common form of selection because the average individual is well adapted to its environment.

As an example, consider that when Swiss starlings (*Sturnus vulgaris*) lay four or five eggs, more young survive than when the female lays more or less than this number **(Fig. 15.3)**. Genes determining physiological characteristics, such as the production of yolk, and behavioral characteristics, such as how long the female will mate, are involved in determining clutch size.

Disruptive Selection

In **disruptive selection,** two or more extreme phenotypes are favored over any intermediate phenotype. Therefore, disruptive selection favors *polymorphism,* the occurrence of different forms in a population of the same species. For example, British land snails (*Cepaea nemoralis*) are found in low-vegetation areas (grass fields and hedgerows) and in forests. In low-vegetation areas, thrushes feed mainly on snails with dark shells that lack light bands; in forest areas, they feed mainly on snails with light-banded shells. Therefore, these two distinctly different phenotypes, each adapted to its own environment, are found in this population **(Fig. 15.4)**.

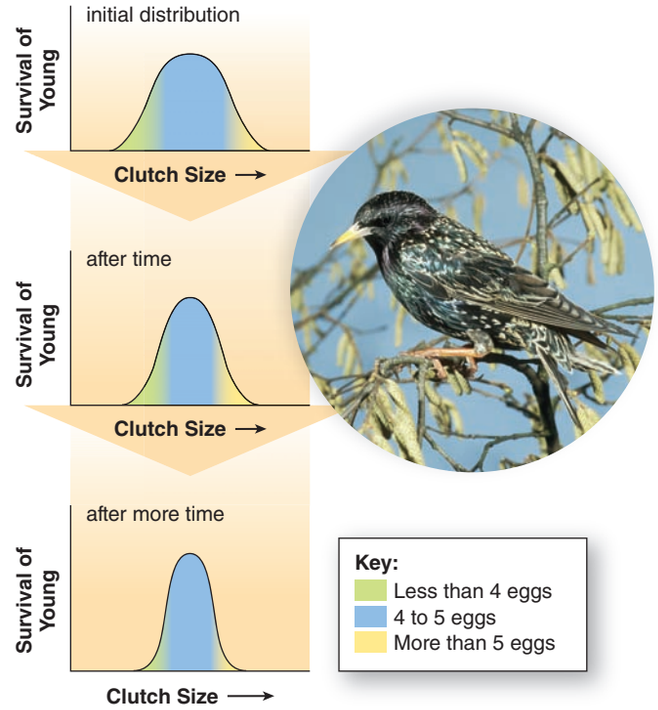


Figure 15.3 **Stabilizing selection.**

Stabilizing selection occurs when natural selection favors the intermediate phenotype over the extremes. For example, Swiss starling birds that lay four or five eggs (usual clutch size) have more young survive than those that lay fewer than four eggs or more than five eggs.

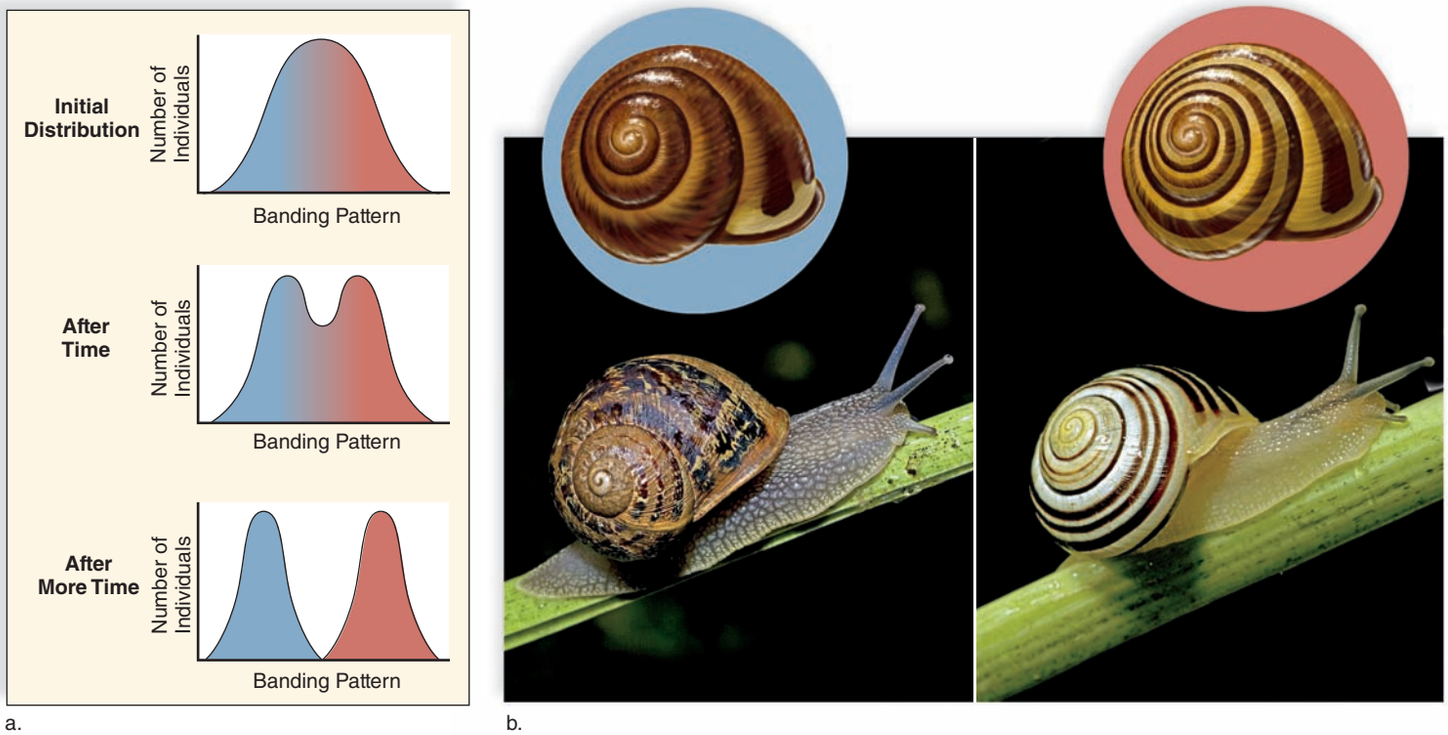
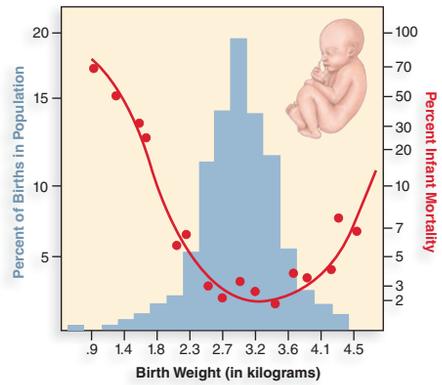


Figure 15.4 , **isruptive selection.**

a. Disruptive selection favors two extreme phenotypes among snails, no banding and banding. **b.** Today, ' ritish land snails mainly comprise these two different phenotypes, each adapted to a different habitat.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Are there examples of stabilizing selection in humans?



Perhaps the best example of stabilizing selection in humans is in regard to birth weight. Studies in England and the United States in the mid-twentieth century indicated that infants with birth weights beween 6 and 8 pounds had a higher rate of survival. Interestingly, advances in medical care for premature babies with low birth weights, and the increased use of cesarean sections for delivery of high-birth-weight babies, have relaxed the effects of stabilizing selection in some parts of the world.

Sexual Selection

The term **sexual selection** refers to adaptive changes in males and females that lead to an increased ability to secure a mate. Each sex has a different strategy with regard to sexual selection. Since females produce few eggs, the choice of a mate is a serious consideration. However, males can father many offspring because they continuously produce sperm in great quantity. Therefore, males often compete in order to inseminate as many females as possible. Because of this, sexual selection in males usually results in an increased ability to compete with other males for a mate. On the other hand, sexual selection in females favors the choice of a single male with the best **fitness,** or the ability to produce surviving offspring. Males often demonstrate their fitness by coloration or elaborate mating rituals (**Fig. 15.5**). By choosing a male with optimal fitness, the female increases the chances that her traits will be passed on to the next generation. Because of this, many consider sexual selection a form of natural selection.

Video Cichlid Territorality

Video Romance Genes

Adaptations Are Not Perfect

Natural selection doesn't always produce organisms that are perfectly adapted to their environment. Why not? First, it is important to realize that evolution doesn't start from scratch. Just as you can only bake a cake with the ingredients available to you, evolution is constrained by the available variations. Each species must build upon its own evolutionary history. This limits the amount of variation that may be acted on by natural selection. For example, while light-weight titanium bones might benefit birds, as a result of their evolutionary history, their bones contain calcium and other minerals. Second, as adaptations are evolving in a species, the environment may also be changing. Most adaptations provide a benefit to the species for a specific environment for a specific time. As the environment changes, the benefit of a certain adaptation may be minimalized. It is also important to recognize that imperfections are common because of necessary compromises. The success of humans is attributable to their dexterous hands, but the spine is subject to injury because the vertebrate spine did not originally evolve to stand erect. A feature that evolves has a benefit that is worth the cost. For example, the benefit of freeing the hands must have been worth the increased cost of spinal injuries from assuming an erect posture.

Maintenance of Variations

A population always shows some genotypic variation. The maintenance of variation is beneficial because populations with limited variation may not be able to adapt to new conditions, should the environment change, and may become extinct. How can variation be maintained in spite of selection constantly working to reduce it?

Figure 15.5 Sexual selection.

The elaborate coloration in the males of some species is a form of sexual selection that is intended to demonstrate an increased level of fitness.

First, we must remember that the forces that promote variation are still at work: Mutation still generates new alleles, recombination and independent assortment still shuffle the alleles during gametogenesis, and fertilization still creates new combinations of alleles from those present in the gene pool. Second, gene flow might be occurring between two populations (see Section 15.2). If the receiving population is small and is mostly homozygous, gene flow can be a significant source of new alleles. Finally, natural selection favors certain phenotypes, but the other types may still remain in reduced frequency. Disruptive selection even promotes polymorphism in a population. For diploid species, heterozygotes may also help maintain variation because they conserve recessive alleles in the population.

The Heterozygote Advantage

Only alleles that are expressed (cause a phenotypic difference) are subject to natural selection. In diploid organisms, this fact makes the heterozygote a potential protector of recessive alleles that might otherwise be weeded out of the gene pool. Because the heterozygote remains in a population, so does the possibility of the recessive phenotype, which might have greater fitness in a changing environment. When natural selection favors the ratio of two or more phenotypes in generation after generation, it is called a *balanced polymorphism.* Sickle-cell disease offers an example of a balanced polymorphism.

Sickle-Cell Disease Individuals with sickle-cell disease have the genotype Hb^SHb^S (*Hb* = hemoglobin, the oxygen-carrying protein in red blood cells; S = sickle cell) and tend to die at an early age due to hemorrhaging and organ destruction. Those who are heterozygous and have sickle-cell trait (Hb^AHb^S; *A* = normal) are better off because their red blood cells usually become sickle-shaped only when the oxygen content of the environment is low. Ordinarily, those with a normal genotype (Hb^AHb^A) are the most fit.

Geneticists studying the distribution of sickle-cell disease in Africa have found that the recessive allele (Hb^S) has a higher frequency (0.2 to as high as 0.4 in a few areas) in regions where malaria is also prevalent **(Fig. 15.6)**. What is the connection between higher frequency of the recessive allele and malaria? Malaria is caused by a parasite that lives in and destroys the red blood cells of the normal homozygote (Hb^AHb^A). However, the parasite is unable to live in the red blood cells of the heterozygote (Hb^AHb^S) because the infection causes the red blood cells to become sickle-shaped. Sickle-shaped red blood cells lose potassium, and this causes the parasite to die. In an environment where malaria is prevalent, the heterozygote is favored. Each of the homozygotes is selected against but is maintained because the heterozygote is favored in parts of Africa subject to malaria. **Table 15.2** summarizes the effects of the three possible genotypes.

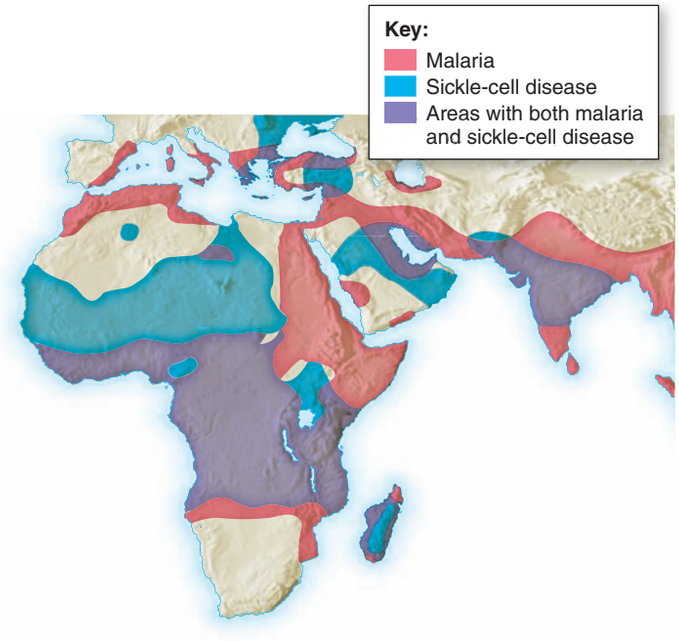


Figure 15.6 **Sickle-cell disease.**

Red shows the areas where malaria was prevalent in Africa, the Middle East, southern Europe, and southern Asia in 1920, before eradication programs began; shown in blue are the areas where sickle-cell disease most often occurred. The overlap of these two distributions (purple) suggested a causal connection.

Table 15.2 **Example of Heterozygous Advantage**

Genotype	Phenotype	Result
Hb^AHb^A	Normal	Dies due to malarial infection
Hb^AHb^S	Carrier of sickle-cell disease	Lives due to protection from both
Hb^SHb^S	Sickle-cell disease	Dies due to sickle-cell disease

15.1 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

Natural selection results in the adaptation of a population to its environment.

Check Your Progress 15.1

1. Contrast directional selection with stabilizing selection.
2. Describe the effect of disruptive selection.
3. List the forces that help maintain genetic variability in a population.
4. Explain the higher incidence of sickle-cell disease in populations subject to malaria.

15.2 Microevolution

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain how microevolution occurs when allele frequencies change from one generation to the next.
2. Demonstrate that the Hardy-Weinberg principle describes a nonevolving population in terms of allele frequencies.
3. Describe how mutations, gene flow, nonrandom mating, genetic drift, and natural selection can cause allele frequency changes in a population.

The idea that individuals evolve is a common misconception. Instead, as evolution occurs, genetic and therefore phenotypic changes occur within a population. A **population** is all the members of a single species occupying a particular area at the same time and reproducing with one another. **Microevolution** pertains to small, measurable evolutionary changes within a population from generation to generation.

Darwin stressed that the members of a population vary, but he did not know how variations are generated or how they are passed down from parents to offspring. Today, DNA sequencing in a number of plants and animals shows that each gene in sexually reproducing organisms has many alleles. The reshuffling of alleles during sexual reproduction can result in a range of phenotypes among the members of a population (see Chapter 10). Even though sexual reproduction can cause genotypes and phenotypes to vary, it cannot in and of itself bring about microevolution. Microevolution is influenced by several other circumstantial factors.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Why don't individuals evolve?

Evolution represents the genetic change of a population over periods of time. While individuals, such as humans, may develop new skills and abilities (such as learning a new language or playing a guitar), their genetic material remains unchanged. These new abilities are not passed on to the next generation and do not change the genetic composition of the population.

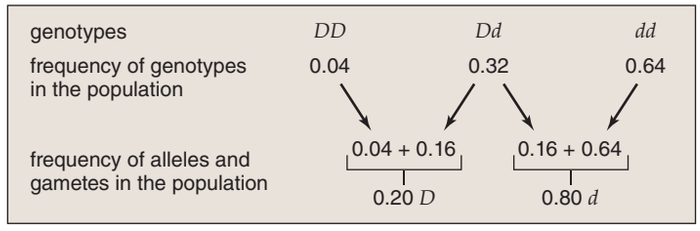
Evolution in a Genetic Context

It was not until the 1930s that biologists were able to apply the principles of genetics to populations and thereafter to develop a way to recognize when evolution has occurred and measure how much population has changed.

In **population genetics,** the various alleles at all the gene loci in all individuals make up the **gene pool** of the population. It is customary to describe the gene pool of a population in terms of genotype and allele frequencies. The genotype frequency is the percentage of a specific genotype—for example, homozygous dominant individuals—in a population. The allele frequency represents how much a specific allele is represented in the gene pool of the population. Let's take an example based on peppered moths, which can be light-colored or dark-colored (**Fig. 15.7**). Suppose you research the literature and find that the color of peppered moths is controlled by a single set of alleles and you decide to use the following key:

D = dark color $\quad$ d = light color

Furthermore, you find that, in one Great Britain population before pollution fully darkened the trees (Fig. 15.7*a*), only 4% (0.04) of the moths were homozygous dominant (*DD*); 32% (0.32) were heterozygous (*Dd*), and 64% (0.64) were homozygous recessive (*dd*). From these genotype frequencies, you can calculate the allele frequencies in the population:



a. b.

Figure 15.7 **Industrial melanism and microevolution.**

Coloration in the peppered moth (Biston *b*etularia) is due to two alleles in the gene pool. **a.** ' efore widespread pollution in England, the light-colored phenotype was more frequent in the population, because birds were unable to see the light-colored moths on the light tree trunks. **b.** After pollution darkened the trunks of the trees, the dark-colored phenotype became more frequent in the population. Microevolution occurred with changes in gene pool frequencies™ in this case, due to natural selection.

In this population, the frequency of the *D* allele (dark) in the gene pool is 20% (0.20), and the frequency of the *d* allele (light) is 80% (0.80). Therefore, the gametes (sperm and egg) produced by this population will have a 20% chance of carrying the *D* allele and an 80% chance of carrying the *d* allele. Assuming random mating (all possible gametes have an equal chance to combine with any other), we can use these frequencies to calculate the ratio of genotypes in the next generation by using a Punnett square **(Fig. 15.8)**. For example, to produce a homozygous dominant (*DD*) moth, both parents must contribute the *D* allele. Since this allele is present in only 20% of the gene pool, the chances that the male will contribute a sperm cell with the *D* allele is 20% (0.20) and that the female will contribute an egg with the *D* allele is 20% (0.20). The chances that both of these events will occur is 0.20 times 0.20, or 0.04 (4%). Therefore, if the moths are randomly mating, 4% of the next generation should be homozygous dominant (*DD*).

There is an important difference between a Punnett square that represents a cross between individuals (as was the case with one-trait and two-trait inheritance; see Chapter 10) and the one shown in Figure 15.8. In Figure 15.8, we are using the gamete frequencies in the *population* to determine the genotype frequencies in the next generation. As you can see, the results show that the genotype frequencies (and therefore the allele frequencies) in the next generation are the same as they were in the previous generation. In other words, the homozygous dominant moths (*DD*) are still 0.04, the heterozygous moths (*Dd*) are still 0.32, and the homozygous recessive moths (*dd*) are still 0.64 of the population. This remarkable finding tells us that *se•ual reproduction alone cannot bring about a change in genotype and allele •requencies.* Also, the dominant allele need not increase from one generation to the next. Dominance does not cause an allele to become a common allele.

The fact that the allele frequencies of the gene pool appear to remain at equilibrium from one generation to the next, as demonsrated in Figure 15.8, was independently recognized in 1908 by G. H. Hardy, an English mathematician, and W. Weinberg, a German physician. They

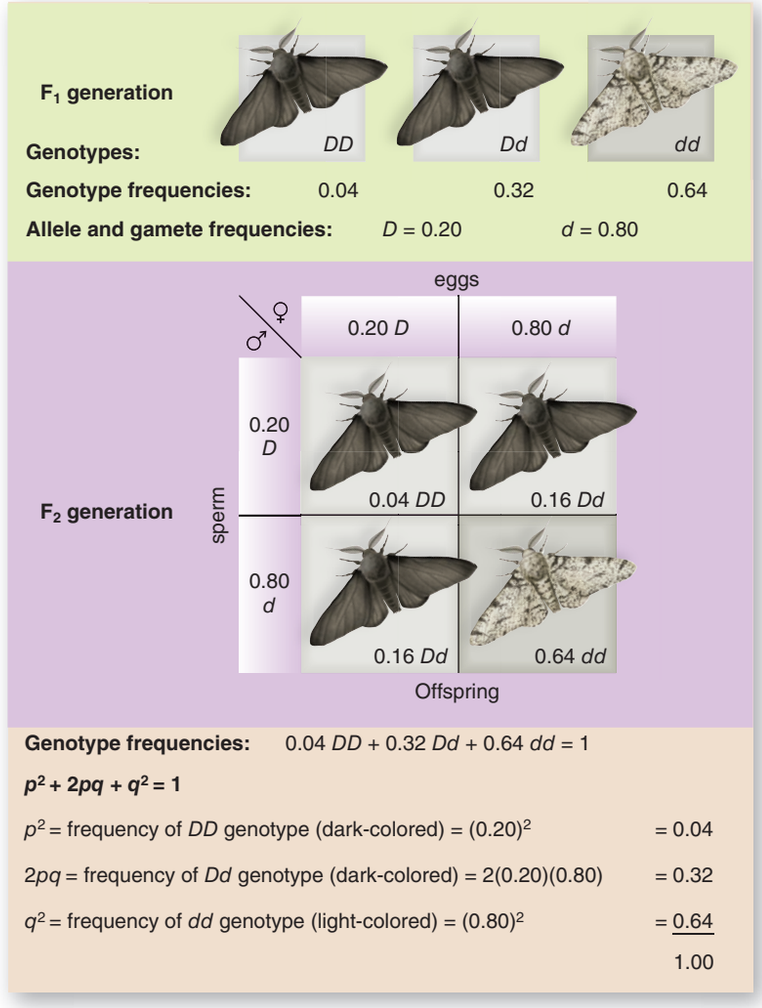


Figure 15.8 **The relationship between genotype and phenotype frequencies in a population.**

š sing the gamete frequencies in a population, it is possible to employ a › unnett square to calculate the genotype frequencies of the next generation. ˆ hen this is done, it can be shown that sexual reproduction alone does not alter the genotype and therefore allele frequencies.

developed a binomial equation to calculate the genotype and allele frequencies of a population (Fig. 15.8). In this equation,

p = frequency of the dominant allele (in the case of the moths, the *D* allele)

q = frequency of the recessive allele (the *d* allele for the moths)

The *Hardy-• einberg principle* states that an equilibrium (balance) of genotype frequencies exists in a gene pool and may be represented by the expression:

$$p^2 + 2pq + q^2 = 1.$$

Let's take a look at this equation in relation to our example with the peppered moths (Fig. 15.8). In our example, the dark allele (*D*) was the dominant allele, and it was present in 20% (0.20) of the population. Therefore, p = 0.20, and the probability that both parents would contribute the allele would be $p \times p$ (p^2), or 0.04 (4%). In order for an individual to be homozygous recessive (*dd*), he or she must inherit a recessive allele from both parents. Since the recessive allele (*d*) has a frequency of 0.80 in the gene pool (represented by *q*), the probability is 0.8×0.8 (q^2), or 0.64 (64%). Notice from the Punnett square in Figure 15.8 that there are two ways that an individual may be heterozygous, which in our equation is represented by $2pq$. Therefore, the probability of being heterozygous is $2 \times 0.2 \times 0.8$, or 0.32 (32%).

The mathematical relationships of the Hardy-Weinberg principle will remain in effect in each succeeding generation of a sexually reproducing population as long as five conditions are met:

1. No mutations: Allelic changes do not occur, or changes in one direction are balanced by changes in the opposite direction.
2. No gene flow: Migration of alleles into or out of the population does not occur.
3. Random mating: Individuals pair by chance, not according to their genotypes or phenotypes.
4. No genetic drift: The population is very large, and changes in allele frequencies due to chance alone are insignificant.
5. Selection: Natural selection is not occurring or does not favor an allele or a combination of alleles over another.

These conditions are rarely, if ever, met, and genotype and allele frequencies in the gene pool of a population do change from one generation to the next. Therefore, microevolution does occur, and the extent of change can be measured. The significance of the Hardy-Weinberg principle is that it tells us what factors cause evolution—those that violate the conditions listed. Microevolution can be detected and measured by noting the amount of deviation from a Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium of genotype frequencies in the gene pool of a population.

For genotype frequencies to be subject to natural selection, they must result in a change of phenotype frequencies. *•ndustrial melanism*, an increase in the frequency of a dark phenotype due to pollution, provides us with an example. We supposed that only 36% of our moth population was dark-colored (homozygous dominant plus heterozygous). Why might that be? Before the rise of industry, dark-colored moths rested on light tree trunks, where they were seen and eaten by birds. However, with the advent of industry, the trunks of trees darkened, and the light-colored moths became visible and were eaten (see Fig. 15.7*b*). Predatory birds acted as a selective agent, and microevolution occurred—in the mid-1950s, the number of dark-colored moths in some Great Britain populations exceeded 80%. Aside from showing that natural selection can occur within a short period of time, our example illustrates that a change in gene pool frequencies does occur as microevolution occurs.

Causes of Microevolution

Any conditions that deviate from the list of conditions for allelic equilibrium cause evolutionary change. Thus, the following five conditions can cause a divergence from the Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium: genetic mutation, gene flow, nonrandom mating, genetic drift, and natural selection (see Section 15.1).

Genetic Mutation

Mutations, which are permanent genetic changes, are the raw material for evolutionary change. Without mutations, there can be no new variations among members of a population on which natural selection can act. However, the rate of mutations is generally very low—on the order of 1 mutation per 100,000 cell divisions. In addition, many mutations are neutral (**Fig. 15.9**), meaning that they are not selected for or against by natural selection. Prokaryotes do not reproduce sexually and therefore are more dependent on mutations to introduce variations. All mutations that occur and result in phenotypic differences can be tested by the environment. However, in sexually reproducing organisms, mutations, if recessive, do not immediately affect the phenotype.

In a changing environment, even a seemingly harmful mutation that results in a phenotypic difference can be the source of an adaptive variation. For example, the water flea *Daphnia* ordinarily thrives at temperatures around 20§C, but a mutation exists that requires *Daphnia* to live at temperatures between 25§C and 30§C. The adaptive value of this mutation is entirely dependent on environmental conditions.

Gene FloŒ

Gene flow, also called *gene migration,* is the movement of alleles among populations by migration of breeding individuals. Gene flow can increase the variation within a population by introducing novel alleles that were produced by mutation in another population. Continued gene flow due to migration of individuals makes gene pools similar and reduces the possibility of allele frequency differences among populations now and in the future. Indeed, gene flow among populations can prevent speciation from occurring. Due to gene flow, the snake populations featured in **Figure 15.10** are

Figure 15.9 †reckles.

A dominant allele causes freckles, so why doesn‡t everyone have freckles Ÿ The ¡ ardy-ˆ einberg principle, which states that sexual reproduction in and of itself doesn‡t change allele frequencies, explains why dominant alleles don‡t become more prevalent with each generation.

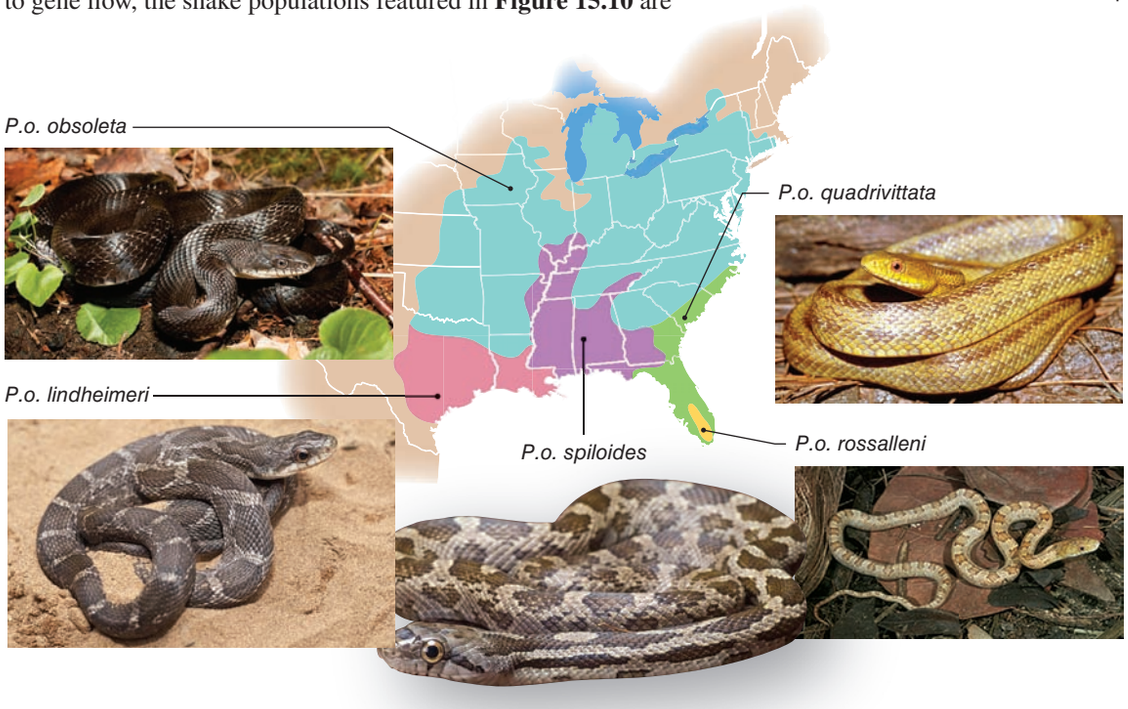


Figure 15.10 ‡ ene flow.

Each rat snake represents a separate population of snakes. ’ ecause the populations are ad%acent to one another, interbreeding occurs, and so does gene flow between the populations. This keeps their gene pools somewhat similar, and each of these populations is considered a subspecies of the species Pantherophis *obs*oleta (as indicated by the three-part name).

subspecies—different populations within the same species. Despite somewhat distinctive characteristics, there is enough genetic similarity between the populations that these subspecies of *Pantherophis obsoleta* can readily interbreed when they come in contact with one another.

Nonrandom Mating

Random mating occurs when individuals select mates and pair by chance, not according to their genotypes or phenotypes. Inbreeding, or mating between relatives, is an example of **nonrandom mating.** Inbreeding does not change allele frequencies, but it does gradually increase the proportion of homozygotes, because the homozygotes that result must produce only homozygotes.

Assortative mating occurs when individuals tend to mate with those that have the same phenotype with respect to a certain characteristic. In humans, cultural differences often cause individuals to select members of their own group. Assortative mating causes the population to subdivide into two phenotypic classes, between which gene exchange is reduced. Homozygotes for the gene loci that control the trait in question increase in frequency, and heterozygotes for these loci decrease in frequency.

Sexual selection favors characteristics that increase the likelihood of obtaining mates, and in this way it promotes nonrandom mating. In most species, males that compete best for access to females and¨or have a phenotype that attracts females are more apt to mate and have increased fitness (see Section 15.1).

Genetic Drift

Genetic drift refers to changes in the allele frequencies of a gene pool due to chance. This pattern of evolution is called genetic drift because allele frequencies "drift" over time. They can increase or decrease due to which members of a population die, survive, or reproduce with one another. Although genetic drift occurs in both large and small populations, a larger population is expected to suffer less of a sampling error than a smaller population. Suppose you had a large bag containing 1,000 green balls and 1,000 blue balls, and you randomly drew 10%, or 200, of the balls. Because of the large number of balls of each color in the bag, you can reasonably expect to draw 100 green balls and 100 blue balls, or at least a ratio close to this. It is extremely unlikely that you would draw 200 green or 200 blue balls. But suppose you had a bag containing only 10 green balls and 10 blue balls, and you drew 10%, or only 2 balls. You could easily draw 2 green balls or 2 blue balls, or 1 of each color.

When a population is small, random events may reduce the ability of one genotype in the production of the next generation. Suppose that, in a small population of frogs, certain frogs by chance do not pass on their traits. Certainly, the next generation will have a change in allele frequencies **(Fig. 15.11).** When genetic drift leads to a loss of one or more alleles, other alleles over time become *fi•ed* in the population.

In an experiment involving brown eye color, each of 107 *Drosophila* populations was kept in its own culture bottle. Every bottle contained eight heterozygous flies of each sex. There were no homozygous recessive or homozygous dominant flies. From the many offspring, the experimenter chose at random eight males and eight females. This action, which represented genetic drift, continued for 19 generations. By the nineteenth generation, 25% of the populations contained only homozygous recessive flies, and 25% contained only homozygous dominant flies having the allele for brown eye color.

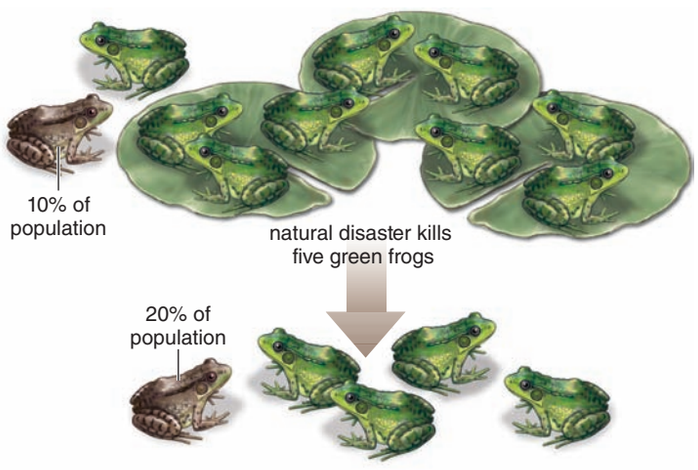


Figure 15.11 ‡ enetic drift.

¢ enetic drift occurs when a random event changes the frequency of alleles in a population. The allele frequencies of the next generationž gene pool may be markedly different from those of the previous generation.

Genetic drift is a random process, and therefore it is not likely to produce the same results in several populations. In California, there are a number of cypress groves, each a separate population. The phenotypes within each grove are more similar to one another than they are to the phenotypes in the other groves. Some groves have longitudinally shaped trees, and others have pyramidally shaped trees. The bark is rough in some colonies and smooth in others. The leaves are gray to bright green or bluish, and the cones are small or large. Because the environmental conditions are similar for all the groves, and no correlation has been found between phenotype and environment across groves, scientists hypothesize that these variations among populations are due to genetic drift.

Bottleneck Effect Sometimes a species is subjected to near extinction because of a natural disaster (e.g., earthquake or fire) or because of overharvesting and habitat loss. It is as though most of the population has stayed behind and only a few survivors have passed through the neck of a bottle **(Fig. 15.12)**. Called a **bottleneck effect,** it prevents the majority of genotypes from participating in the production of the next generation.

The extreme genetic similarity found in cheetahs is believed to be due to a bottleneck. In a study of 47 different enzymes, each of which can occur in several different forms in other types of cats, all the cheetahs studied had exactly the same form. This demonstrates that genetic drift can cause certain alleles to be lost from a population. Exactly what caused the cheetah bottleneck is not known. It is speculated that cheetahs were slaughtered by nineteenth-century cattle farmers protecting their herds, were captured by Egyptians as pets 4,000 years ago, or were decimated by a mass extinction tens of thousands of years ago. Today, cheetahs suffer from relative infertility because of the intense inbreeding that occurred after the bottleneck.

Founder Effect The **founder effect** is an example of genetic drift in which rare alleles, or combinations of alleles, occur at a higher frequency in a population isolated from the general population. After all, founding individuals contain only a fraction of the total genetic diversity of the original gene pool. The alleles carried by their founder or founders are dictated by chance alone. The Amish of Lancaster County, Pennsylvania, are an isolated group founded by German settlers. Today, as many as 1 in 14 individuals carries a recessive allele that causes an unusual form of dwarfism (affecting only the lower arms and legs) and polydactylism (extra fingers). In most populations, only 1 in 1,000 individuals has this allele.

3D Animation
Mechanisms of Evolution: Molecular Processes and Evolution

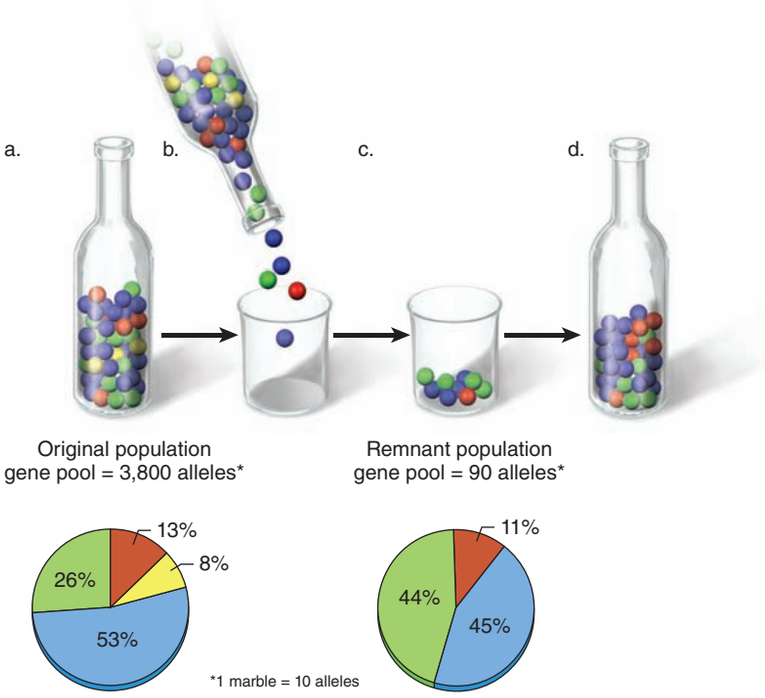


Figure 15.12 **Bottleneck and founder effects.**

a. In this example, the gene pool of a population contains four different alleles, each represented by a colored marble in the bottle. Each allele has a different frequency in the population. **b.** A bottleneck event occurs, limiting the number of individuals in the resulting population. **c.** The gene pool has changed from the initial population. Note the absence of yellow marbles. **d.** The population may return to its original size, but the frequency of each allele has changed. A founder effect is similar to a bottleneck effect, except that in the founder effect the original population still exists.

Check Your Progress 15.2

1. Define the term *gene pool* and explain how it relates to allele frequencies in a population.
2. Explain the Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium. What happens to this equilibrium when microevolution occurs?
3. List the five conditions that can cause microevolution to occur.
4. Describe the significance of mutations in terms of evolution.
5. Explain how gene flow and nonrandom mating cause microevolution.
6. Explain the consequences of genetic drift and why it is more likely to happen in a small population.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
Various factors contribute to the microevolution of a population.

Media Study Tools

Enhance your study of this chapter with media! Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Video

15.1 DDT • Cichlid Territoriality
• Romance Genes

3D Animation
Mechanisms of Evolution

The 3D animation, "Mechanisms of Evolution," explores the process of natural selection and how evolution influences allele frequencies in a population.

SUMMARIZE

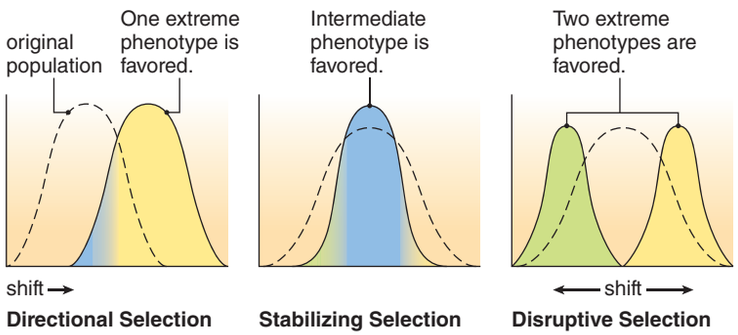
15.1 Natural Selection

Natural selection results in adaptation of a species to its environment. Adaptation occurs when the most-fit individuals reproduce more than others. These individuals usually possess traits better suited for survival in the environment, and over generations the frequency of this adaptive trait increases within the population.

Types of Selection

Most of the traits of evolutionary significance are polygenic, and a range of phenotypes in a population results in a bell-shaped curve. Three types of selection occur:

- **Directional selection:** The curve shifts in one direction, as when dark-colored peppered moths become prevalent in polluted areas.
- **Stabilizing selection:** The peak of the curve increases, as when most human babies have an intermediate birth weight. Babies that are very small or very large are less fit than those of intermediate weight.
- **Disruptive selection:** The curve has two peaks, as when British land snails vary because a wide geographic range causes selection to vary.



Sexual Selection

Sexual selection is different between males and females. Sexual selection is associated with choosing a mate with the best **fitness,** or ability to produce surviving offspring.

Adaptations Are Not Perfect

Adaptations are not perfect because evolution builds on what variation exists. Only certain types of variations are available, and developmental procedures tend toward the same types of results. The result is often a compromise between a benefit and a cost. Sexual selection has a reproductive benefit that may not pertain to adaptation.

Maintenance of Variations

Despite constant natural selection, variation is maintained because

- Mutations and recombination still occur, gene flow among populations can introduce new alleles, and natural selection may not eliminate less favored phenotypes.
- In sexually reproducing diploid organisms, the heterozygote acts as a repository for recessive alleles whose frequency is low. In sickle-cell disease, the heterozygote is more fit in areas where malaria occurs; therefore, both homozygotes are maintained in the population.

15.2 Microevolution

Microevolution is the process by which small changes occur in a population over time. The study of microevolution is often referred to as population genetics**.**

Evolution in a Genetic Context

Microevolution involves several elements:

- All the various genes of a population make up its **gene pool.**
- The Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium is present when gene pool allele frequencies remain the same from generation to generation. Certain conditions have to be met to achieve an equilibrium.
- The conditions are (1) no mutations, (2) no gene flow, (3) random mating, (4) no genetic drift, and (5) no selection. Since these conditions are rarely met, a change in gene pool frequencies is likely.
- When gene pool frequencies change, microevolution has occurred. Deviations from a Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium allow us to determine when evolution has taken place and to measure the extent of change.

Causes of Microevolution

Microevolution is caused by five conditions:

- **Mutations** are the ultimate source of variation. Certain genotypic variations may be of evolutionary significance, only if the environment changes. Genetic diversity is promoted when there are several alleles for each locus and when single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) exist.
- **Gene flow** occurs when a breeding individual (in animals) migrates to another population or when gametes and seeds (in plants) are carried into another population.
- **Nonrandom mating** occurs when relatives mate (inbreeding) or when assortative mating takes place. **Sexual selection**, which occurs when a characteristic that increases the chances of mating is favored, favors random mating.
- **Genetic drift** occurs when allele frequencies are altered by chance. Genetic drift may be caused by a **bottleneck effect** or **founder effect**, both of which change the frequency of alleles in the gene pool.
- Natural selection (see Section 15.1)

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Populations change over time due to the effects of natural selection. Microevolution is what leads to new variations within the population, such as antibiotic-resistant bacteria.

15.1 Natural selection results in the adaptation of a population to its environment.

15.2 Various factors contribute to the microevolution of a population.

For more information about the factors that produce evolution on a small scale, see the following discussions:

Section 1.2 describes the importance of evolution and natural selection in the study of biology.

Section 14.1 explains how natural selection plays a role in evolution over a long period of time.

Section 16.1 explains the processes of speciation and macroevolution.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

15.1 Natural Selection

For questions 1–5, choose the type of selection that best matches the statement. Each answer may be used more than once.

Key:

a. sexual selection
b. stabilizing selection
c. directional selection
d. disruptive selection

1. Selection occurs against the most common phenotype.
2. Choice is made based on the fitness of the mate.
3. favors the extreme range of a phenotype
4. favors the intermediate phenotype
5. Examples are antibiotic and insecticide resistance.

15.2 Microevolution

6. A population consists of 48 *AA*, 54 *Aa*, and 22 *aa* individuals. What is the frequency of the *A* allele?
   a. 0.60 **d.** 0.42
   b. 0.40 **e.** 0.58
   c. 0.62
7. Which of the following is the binomial equation for the Hardy-Weinberg principle?
   a. $2p^2 + 2pq + 2q^2$ **c.** $2p^2 + pq + 2q^2$
   b. $p^2 + pq + q^2$ **d.** $p^2 + 2pq + q^2$
8. The offspring of better-adapted individuals are expected to make up a larger proportion of the next generation. The most likely explanation is
   a. mutations and nonrandom mating.
   b. gene flow and genetic drift.
   c. mutations and natural selection.
   d. mutations and genetic drift.
9. A small, reproductively isolated religious sect called the Dunkers was established by 27 families that came to the United States from Germany 200 years ago. The frequencies for blood group alleles in this population differ significantly from those in the general U.S. population. This is an example of
   a. negative assortative mating.
   b. natural selection.
   c. the founder effect.
   d. the bottleneck effect.
   e. gene flow.
10. When a population is small, there is a greater chance of
    a. gene flow. **d.** mutations.
    b. genetic drift. **e.** sexual selection.
    c. natural selection.
11. The sickle-cell allele is maintained in regions where malaria is revalent because
    a. the allele confers resistance to the parasite.
    b. gene flow is high in those regions.
    c. disruptive selection is occurring.
    d. genetic drift randomly selects for the allele.

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Natural Selection

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. A farmer uses a new pesticide. He applies the pesticide as directed by the manufacturer and loses about 15% of his crop to insects. A farmer in the next state learns of these results, applies three times as much pesticide, and loses only around 3% of the crop to insects. Each farmer follows this pattern for five years. At the end of five years, the first farmer is still losing about 15% of his crop to insects, but the second farmer is now losing around 40%.
   a. Explain how natural selection may be causing this effect.
   b. Describe the form of selection that is occurring in this population.
   c. Which of these populations would still be in equilibrium? How do you know?
2. You are observing a grouse population in which two feather phenotypes are present in males. One is relatively dark and blends into shadows well, and the other is relatively bright and is more obvious to predators. All of the females are uniformly dark-feathered. Observing the frequency of mating between females and the two types of males, you record the following:
   Matings with dark-feathered males: 13
   Matings with bright-feathered males: 32
   a. Propose a hypothesis that explains why females may prefer bright-feathered males.
   b. Explain the selective advantage that might be occurring in choosing a bright-feathered male.
   c. Outline an experiment to test your hypothesis.

16

Evolution on a Large Scale

OUTLINE

16.1 Speciation and Macroevolution 269

16.2 The Fossil Record 275

16.3 Systematics 280

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 14.2 What roles do the fossil records and the study of comparative anatomy have in understanding evolutionary change?

Section 15.1 How does natural selection act as the mechanism of evolutionary change?

Section 15.2 What is microevolution?

New Species in Borneo: Micro-frogs

In 2007, a new species of micro-frog, *Microhyla nepenthicola*, was discovered in the forests of Borneo. Only a fraction of the size of a penny, this 12-mm long frog mates and lays eggs in a pitcher plant, *Nepenthes ampullaria*, that lives on the forest floor. The pitcher plant collects water, in which the frog tadpoles develop into adult frogs. For a long time, *M. nepenthicola* was considered to be a juvenile of a different species, but a closer look revealed a suite of unique features that allow it to scale the waxy, smooth walls of the pitcher plant. The origin of *M. nepenthicola* has been shaped by a tightly knit relationship with *N. ampullaria,* its nest and nursery.

In this chapter we take microevolution one step further and look at how a population, over time, accumulates differences large enough to become a new species. The origin of species is the key to understanding the origin of the diversity of all life on Earth.

As you read this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How do scientists determine whether an organism is a new species?
2. What processes drive the evolution of new species? Are they different from those that drive the evolution of populations?
3. What can the fossil record tell us about the origin and extinction of species over time?

16.1 Speciation and Macroevolution

Learning Outcomes

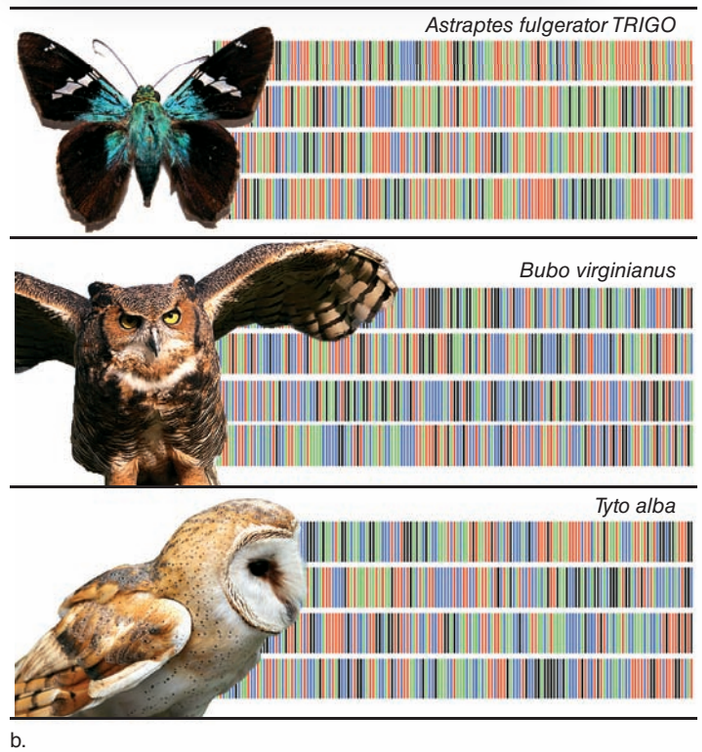
Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Define a biological species and describe the limitation of this definition.
2. Distinguish between prezygotic and postzygotic isolating mechanisms and provide an example of each.
3. Contrast allopatric speciation with sympatric speciation and explain how each method may result in the creation of a new species.
4. Explain how new species may arise by adaptive radiation.

In Chapter 15 we explored the process of microevolution, or the small changes in a population over a short period of time. In this chapter, we turn our attention to the process called **macroevolution,** or the changes in a population over very long periods of time. The history of life on Earth is a part of macroevolution. Macroevolution requires **speciation,** the splitting of one species into two or more new species. As we will see, speciation is due to changes in the gene pool and the divergence of two populations genetically, all of which is based on the principles of microvolution.

As species originate, they evolve adaptations to their environments. Over time, these species may also undergo speciation, forming more species, or go extinct. The history of life on Earth, as recorded in the fossil record (**Fig 16.1***a*) and our genetic information (Fig 16.1*b*), is the documentation of the processes of microevolution, macroevolution, and speciation.

a.



b.

Defining Species

Before we consider the origin of species, we first need to define a species. Appearance is not always a good way of distinguishing between two species. The members of different species can look quite similar, while the members of a single species can be diverse in appearance. Although many definitions have been proposed, the **biological species concept** offers a testable way to define a species that does not depend on appearance: The members of a species interbreed and have a shared gene pool, and each species is reproductively isolated from every other

Figure 16.1 History of life.

The history of life is recorded in the (**a**) fossil record and in the (**b**) DNA of every organism.

species. For example, the flycatchers in **Figure 16.2** are members of separate species because they do not interbreed in nature.

According to the biological species concept, gene flow occurs between the populations of a species, but not between populations of different species. The red maple and the sugar maple are found over a wide geographic range in the eastern half of the United States, and each species is made up of many populations. However, the members of each species' population rarely hybridize in nature. Therefore, these two types of plants are separate species. In contrast, the human species has many populations, which certainly differ in physical appearance (**Fig. 16.3**). We know, however, that all humans belong to one species because the members of these populations can produce fertile offspring.

The biological species concept is useful, as we will see, but even so, it has its limitations. For example, it applies only to sexually reproducing organisms and cannot apply to asexually reproducing organisms. Then, too, sexually reproducing organisms are not always as reproductively isolated as we would expect. Some North American orioles live in the western half of the continent, some in the eastern half, yet even the two most genetically distant oriole species, as recognized by analyzing their mitochondrial DNA, will hybridize where they meet in the middle of the continent.

There are other definitions of species aside from the biological definition. Several of these are based on studies of the evolutionary relationships between species. As we will see later in this chapter (Section 16.3), a species is a category of classification below the rank of genus. Species in the same genus share a recent common ancestor. A **common ancestor** is a single ancestor for two or more different groups. For example, your father's mother is the common ancestor for you, your siblings, and your

Acadian flycatcher, *Empidonax virescens*

Least flycatcher, *Empidonax minimus*

Traill's flycatcher, *Empidonax traillii*

Figure 16.2 **Three species of - ycatchers.**

Although these flycatcher species are nearly identical in appearance, we know they are separate species because they are reproductively isolated—the members of each species reproduce only with one another. Each species has a characteristic song and its own habitat during the mating season as well.

a.

b.

Figure 16.3 **Human populations.**

(**a**) The Maasai of East Africa and (**b**) the ‡una Indians from the San Blas Islands of Panama are both members of the species *Homo sapiens* because the Maasai and ‡una can reproduce and produce fertile offspring.

paternal cousins. By studying the relationships of species within a genus, and between closely related genuses, scientists are able to gather a better understanding of how species evolve over time.

Reproductive Barriers

As mentioned, for two species to be separate, they must be reproductively isolated. This means that gene flow must not occur between them. Reproductive barriers are isolating mechanisms that prevent successful reproduction (**Fig. 16.4**). In evolution, reproduction is successful only when it produces fertile offspring.

Prezygotic isolating mechanisms are those that occur before the formation of a zygote. In general, they prevent reproductive attempts and make it unlikely that fertilization will be successful if mating is attempted. Habitat isolation, temporal isolation, behavioral isolation, mechanical isolation, and gamete isolation make it highly unlikely that particular genotypes will contribute to the gene pool of a population.

Habitat isolation When two species occupy different habitats, even within the same geographic range, they are less likely to meet and attempt to reproduce. This is one of the reasons that the flycatchers in Figure 16.2 do not mate and the red maple and sugar maple do not exchange pollen. In tropical rain forests, many animal species are restricted to a particular level of the forest canopy; in this way, they are isolated from similar species.

Temporal isolation Two species can live in the same locale, but if they reproduce at different times of year, they do not attempt to mate. For example, *Reticulitermes hageni* and *R. virginicus* are two species of termites. The former has mating flights in March through May, whereas the latter mates in the fall and winter months.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How can we determine if an organism that does not reproduce sexually is a distinct species?

Many organisms either do not or very rarely reproduce sexually. For example, there are species of moss that reproduce sexually only every 200 to 300 years! To determine if two populations of asexual organisms are distinct species, scientists rely on DNA analysis, morphological studies, and a close examination of the organisms' ecology to determine whether the two populations would reproduce naturally. Often, scientists have to revisit the classification of a species as research unveils new information.

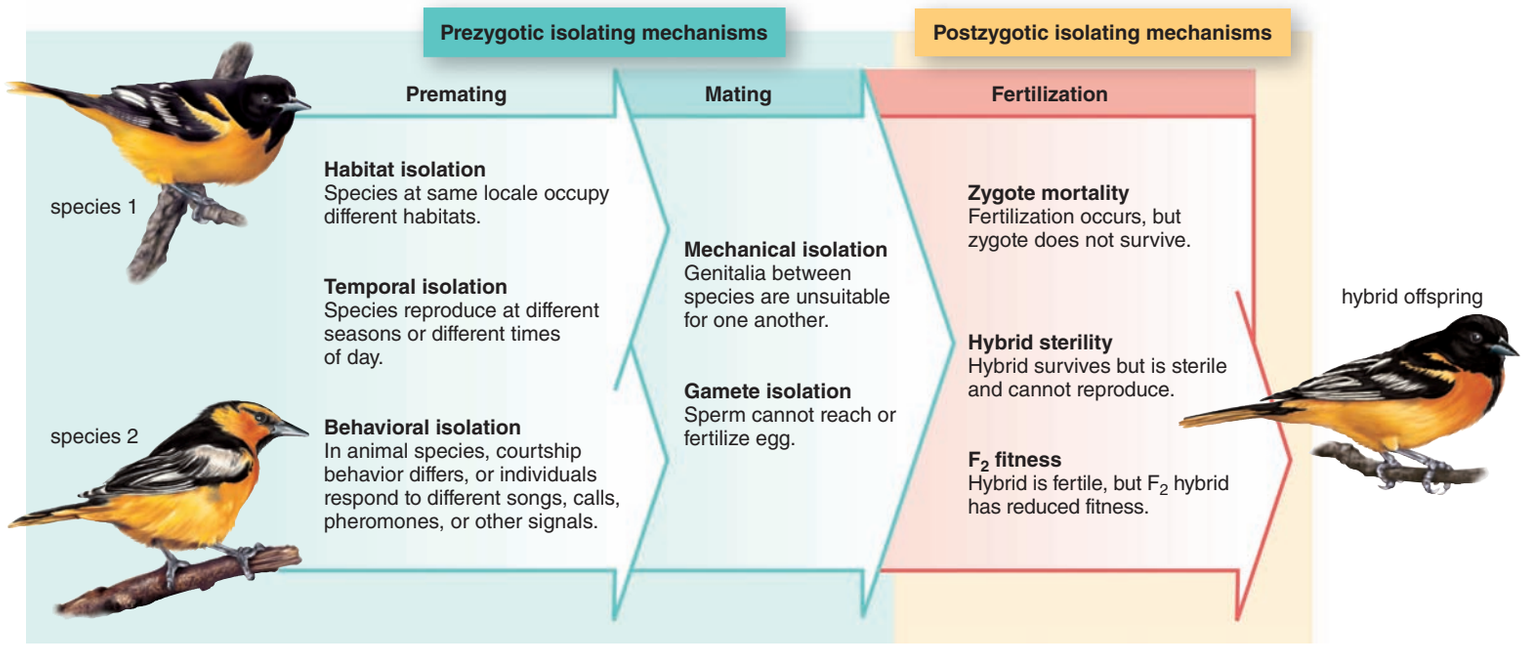


Figure 16.4 **Reproductive barriers.**

Prezygotic isolating mechanisms prevent mating attempts or a successful outcome, should mating take place—for example, between two species of orioles. No zygote is ever formed if these mechanisms are successful. Postzygotic isolating mechanisms prevent offspring from reproducing—that is, if a hybrid oriole should result, it would be unable to breed successfully.

Figure 16.5 Prezygotic isolating mechanism.

An elaborate courtship display allows the blue-footed boobies of the Gal"pagos Islands to select a mate. The male lifts his feet in a ritualized manner that shows off their bright blue color.

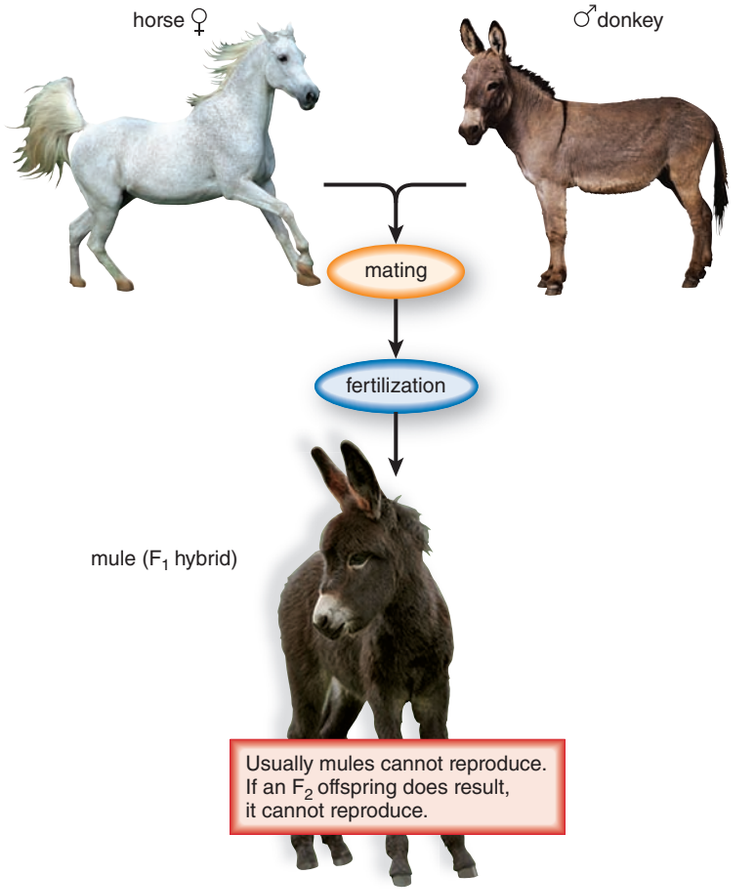


Figure 16.6 Postzygotic isolating mechanism.

Mules are horse-donkey hybrids. Mules are infertile due to a difference in the chromosomes inherited from their parents.

B*ehavioral isolation* Many animal species have courtship patterns that allow males and females to recognize one another (**Fig. 16.5**). Female fireflies recognize males of their species by the pattern of the males' flashings; similarly, female crickets recognize males of their species by the males' chirping. Many males recognize females of their species by sensing chemical signals, called pheromones. For example, female gypsy moths secrete chemicals from abdominal glands. These chemicals are detected downwind by receptors on the antennae of males.

M*echanical isolation* When animal genitalia or plant floral structures are incompatible, reproduction cannot occur. Inaccessibility of pollen to certain pollinators can prevent cross-fertilization in plants, and the sexes of many insect species have genitalia that do not match, or other characteristics that make mating impossible. For example, male dragonflies have claspers that are suitable for holding only the females of their own species.

G*amete isolation* Even if the gametes of two different species meet, they may not fuse to become a zygote. In animals, the sperm of one species may not be able to survive in the reproductive tract of another species, or the egg may have receptors only for sperm of its species. Also, in each type of flower, only certain pollen grains can germinate, so that sperm successfully reach the egg.

Postzygotic isolating mechanisms are those that occur after the formation of a zygote. In general, they prevent hybrid offspring (reproductive product of two different species) from developing or breeding, even if reproduction attempts have been successful.

Z*ygote mortality* The hybrid zygote may not be viable, so it dies. A zygote with two different chromosome sets may fail to go through mitosis properly, or the developing embryo may receive incompatible instructions from the maternal and paternal genes, so that it cannot continue to exist.

Hybrid sterility The hybrid zygote may develop into a sterile adult. As is well known, a cross between a horse and a donkey produces a mule, which is usually sterile– it cannot reproduce (**Fig. 16.6**). Sterility of hybrids generally results from complications in meiosis, which lead to an inability to produce viable gametes. A cross between a cabbage and a radish produces offspring that cannot form gametes, most likely because the cabbage chromosomes and the radish chromosomes cannot align during meiosis.

F_2 f*tness* If hybrids can reproduce, their offspring are unable to reproduce. In some cases, mules are fertile, but their offspring (the F_2 generation) are not fertile.

Models of Speciation

DNA comparisons suggest that iguanas of South America may be the common ancestor for both the marine iguana on the Galápagos Islands (to the west of South America) and the rhinoceros iguana on Hispaniola (the Caribbean island containing the countries of Haiti and the Dominican Republic). If so, how could it have happened? Green iguanas are strong swimmers, so by chance a few could have migrated to these islands, where they formed populations separate from each other and from the parent population in South America. Each population continued on its own evolutionary path as new mutations, genetic drift, and natural selection occurred. Eventually, reproductive isolation developed, and there were three species of iguanas. A speciation model based on geographic isolation of populations is called **allopatric speciation** (*allo,* different; *patria,* homeland).

Figure 16.7 features an example of allopatric speciation that has been extensively studied in California. Members of an ancestral population of • *nsatina* salamanders existing in the Pacific Northwest migrated southward, establishing a range of populations. Each population was exposed to its own selective pressures along the coastal mountains and along the Sierra Nevada Mountains. Due to the barrier created by the Central Valley of California, limited gene flow occurred between the eastern populations and the western populations. Genetic differences increased from north to south, resulting in two distinct forms of • *nsatina* salamanders in southern California that differ dramatically in color and interbreed only rarely.

With **sympatric speciation,** a population develops into two or more reproductively isolated groups without prior geographic isolation. One of the best examples to easily illustrate this type of speciation is found among plants, where it can occur by means of *polyploidy,* an increase in the number of sets of chromosomes to 3n or above. The presence of sex chromosomes makes it difficult for polyploidy speciation to occur in animals. In plants, hybridization between two species can be followed by a doubling of the chromosome number. Such polyploid plants are reproductively isolated by a postzygotic mechanism; they can reproduce successfully only with other similar polyploids, and backcrosses with their parents are sterile. Therefore, three species instead of two species result. **Figure 16.8** shows that the parents of our present-day bread wheat had 28 and 14 chromosomes, respectively. The hybrid with 21 chromosomes is sterile, but polyploid bread wheat with 42 chromosomes is fertile because the chromosomes can align during meiosis.

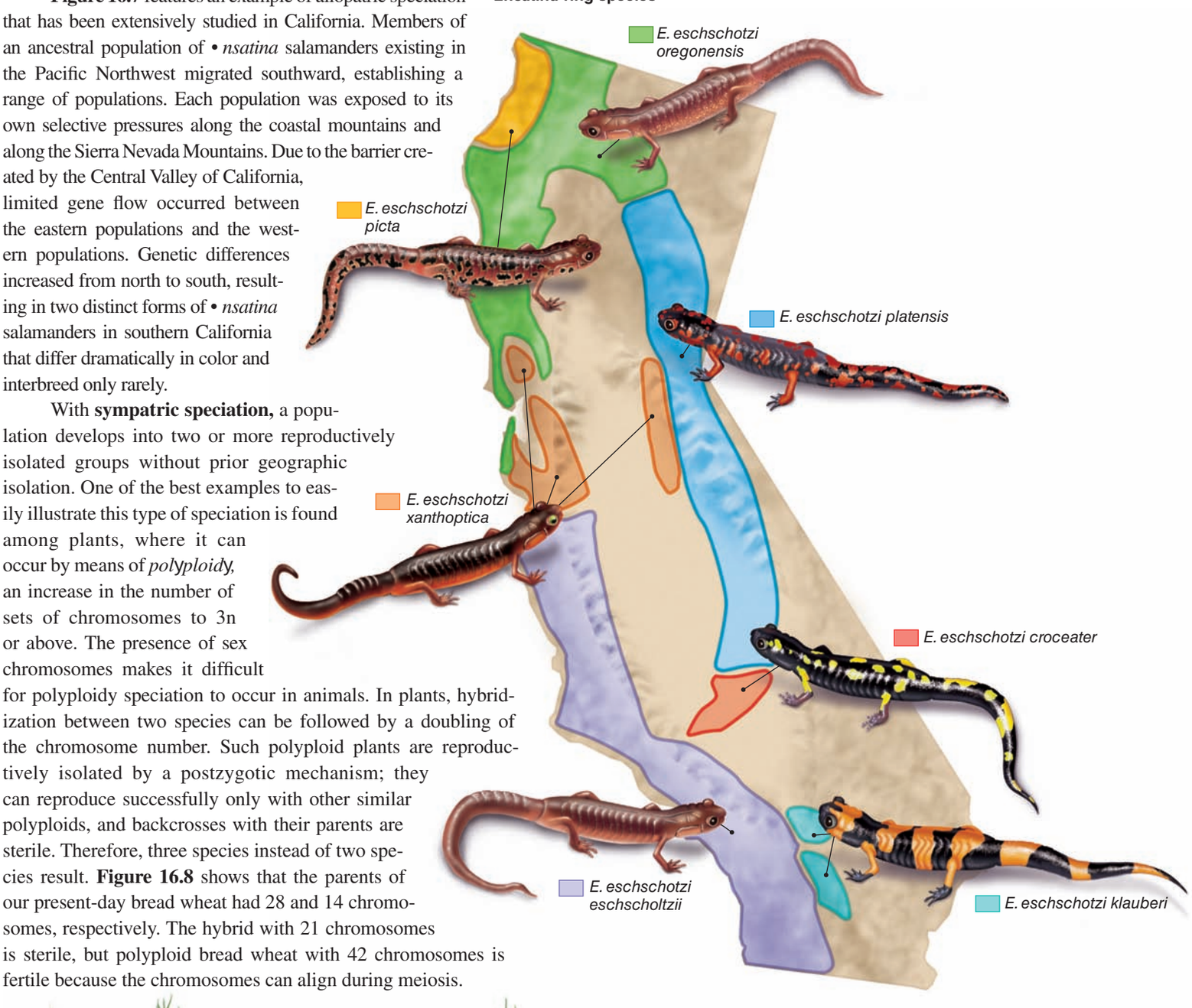


Figure 16.7 Allopatric speciation.

In this example of allopatric speciation, the " entral • alley of " alifornia is separating a range of populations descended from the same northern ancestral species. The limited contact between the populations on the west and those on the east allow genetic changes to build up to such an extent that members of the two southern populations rarely reproduce with each other and are designated as subspecies.

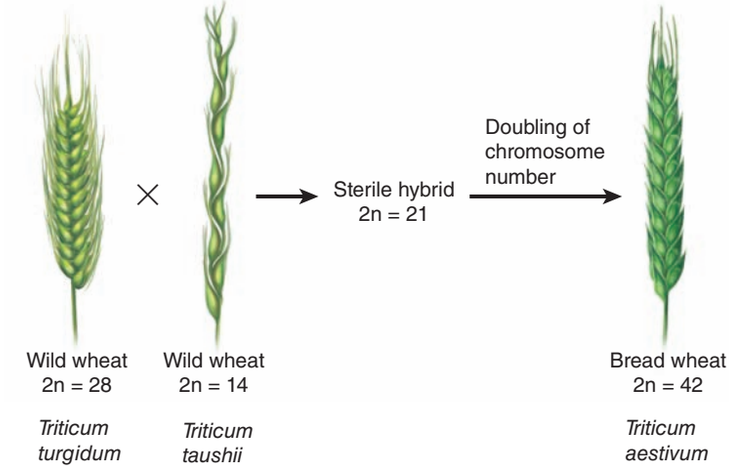


Figure 16.8 Sympatric speciation.

In this example of sympatric speciation, two populations of wild wheat hybridized many years ago. The hybrid is sterile, but chromosome doubling allowed some plants to reproduce. These plants became today's bread wheat.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Are there examples of polyploid species in animals?

In general, polyploidy is rarer in animals than in plants. However, there are examples of polyploid insects and fish, and polyploidy appears to occur frequently in the amphibians, specifically in salamanders. In 1999, scientists reported a polyploid rat species (*Typanoctomys barrerae*) in Argentina, but later genetic analysis refuted this claim. Most geneticists believe that polyploidy in mammals is unlikely due to the well-defined role of mammalian sex chromosomes and the balance between the number of autosomes and sex chromosomes.

Check Your Progress 16.1

1. Explain how the biological species concept can be used to define a species.
2. Describe the limitations of the biological species concept.
3. Categorize the different types of reproductive barriers as being either a prezygotic or postzygotic barrier, and give an example of each.
4. Compare and contrast allopatric speciation with sympatric speciation. Give an example of each.
5. Relate adaptive radiation to Darwin's finches.

Adaptive Radiation

A clear example of speciation through adaptive radiation is provided by the finches on the Galápagos Islands, which are often called Darwin's finches because Darwin first realized their significance as an example of how evolution works. During **adaptive radiation,** many new species evolve from a single ancestral species. The many species of finches that live on the Galápagos Islands are hypothesized to be descendants of a single type of ancestral finch from the mainland (**Fig. 16.9**). The populations on the various islands were subjected to the founder effect involving genetic drift, genetic mutations, and the process of natural selection. Because of natural selection, each population became adapted to a particular habitat on its island. In time, the various populations became so genotypically different that now, when by chance they reside on the same island, they do not interbreed and are therefore separate species. There is evidence that the finches use beak shape to recognize members of the same species during courtship. Rejection of suitors with the wrong type of beak is a behavioral prezygotic isolating mechanism.

Video
Finches Adaptive Radiation

3D Animation
Mechanisms of Evolution: Finches of the Galapagos

Similarly, inhabiting the Hawaiian Islands is a wide variety of honeycreepers, all descended from a common goldfinch-like ancestor that arrived from Asia or North America about 5 MYA. Today, honeycreepers have a range of beak sizes and shapes (see Fig. 1.7) for feeding on various food sources, including seeds, fruits, flowers, and insects.

16.1 CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
Speciation occurs due to an interruption of gene flow between two populations.

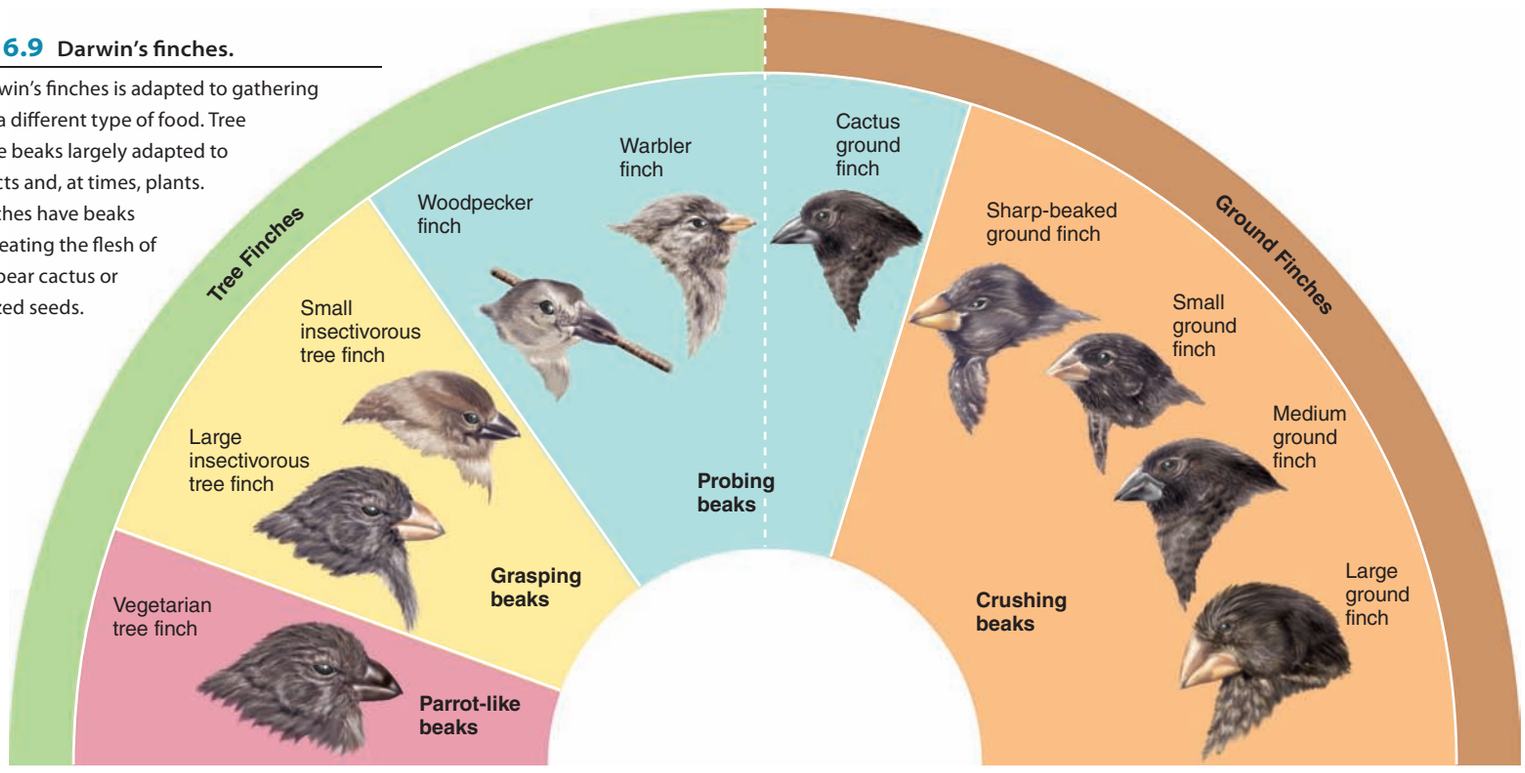


Figure 16.9 Darwin's finches.
Each of Darwin's finches is adapted to gathering and eating a different type of food. Tree finches have beaks largely adapted to eating insects and, at times, plants. Ground finches have beaks adapted to eating the flesh of the prickly pear cactus or different-sized seeds.

16.2 The Fossil Record

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe how the geological timescale is divided into eras, periods, and epochs.
2. Contrast the gradualistic model of evolution with the punctuated equilibrium model of evolution.
3. Explain some of the ways in which mass extinctions of organisms may have occurred.

The history of the origin and extinction of species on Earth is best discovered by studying the fossil record (**Fig 16.10**). **Fossils** are the traces and remains of past life or any other direct evidence of past life. **Paleontology** is the science of discovering and studying the fossil record and, from it, making decisions about the history of species.

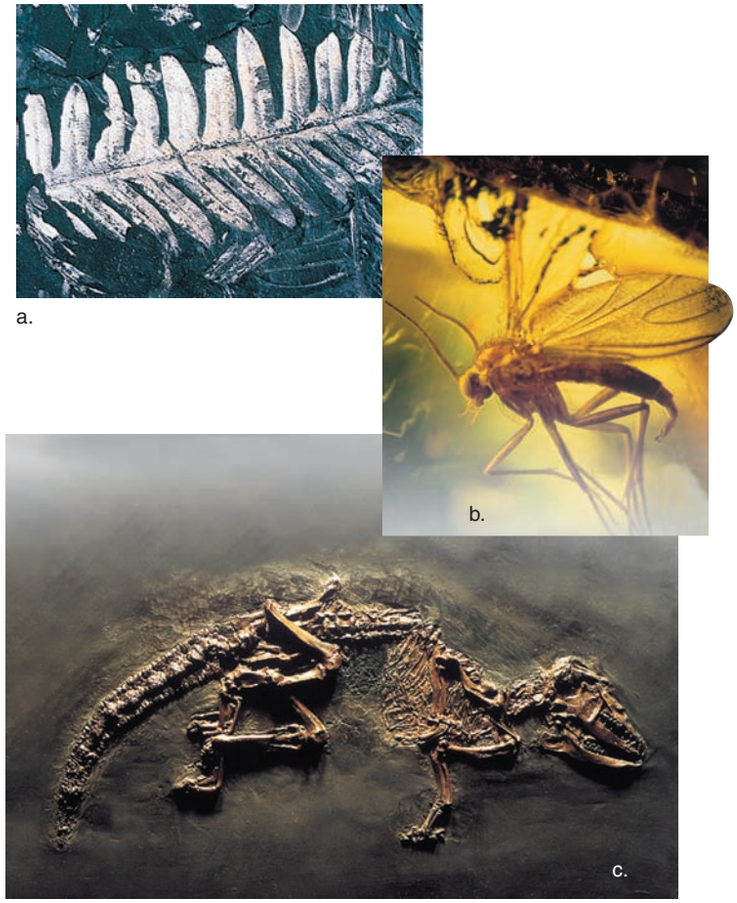


Figure 16.10 **Fossils.**

a. A fern leaf from 245 million years ago (MYA) remains because it was buried in sediment that hardened to rock. **b.** This midge (40 MYA) became embedded in amber (hardened resin from a tree). **c.** Most fossils, such as this early insectivore mammal (47 MYA) are remains of hard parts because they do not decay as the soft parts do.

The Geological Timescale

Because lifeforms have evolved over time, the strata (layers of sedimentary rock, see Fig. 14.2*a*) of the Earth's crust contain different fossils. By studying the strata and the fossils they contain, geologists have been able to construct a geological timescale (**Table 16.1**). It divides the history of life on Earth into eras, then periods, and then epochs. This timescale includes descriptions of the types of fossils common to each of these divisions of time. Notice in the geological timescale that only the periods of the Cenozoic era are divided into epochs, meaning that more attention is given to the evolution of primates and flowering plants than to the earlier evolving organisms. Despite an epoch assigned to modern civilization, humans have only been around about .04% of the history of life.

It is often easier to visualize the vastness of the geological timescale by placing it in reference to a single day. **Figure 16.11** shows the history of the Earth as if it had occurred during a 24-hour time span that started at midnight. (The actual years are shown on an inner ring of the diagram.) If the Earth formed at midnight, prokaryotes did not appear until about 5 A.M., eukaryotes at approximately 4 P.M., and multicellular forms not until around 8 P.M. Invasion of the land didn't occur until about 10 P.M., and humans didn't appear until 30 seconds before the end of the day. This time table has been worked out by studying the fossil record. In addition to sedimentary fossils, more recent fossils can be found in tar, ice, bogs, and amber. Shells, bones, leaves, and even footprints are commonly found in the fossil record.

In contrast to the brief amount of time that humans have been on the planet, prokaryotes existed for some 2 billion years before the eukaryotic cell and multicellularity arose during Precambrian time. Some prokaryotes became the first photosynthesizers to add oxygen to

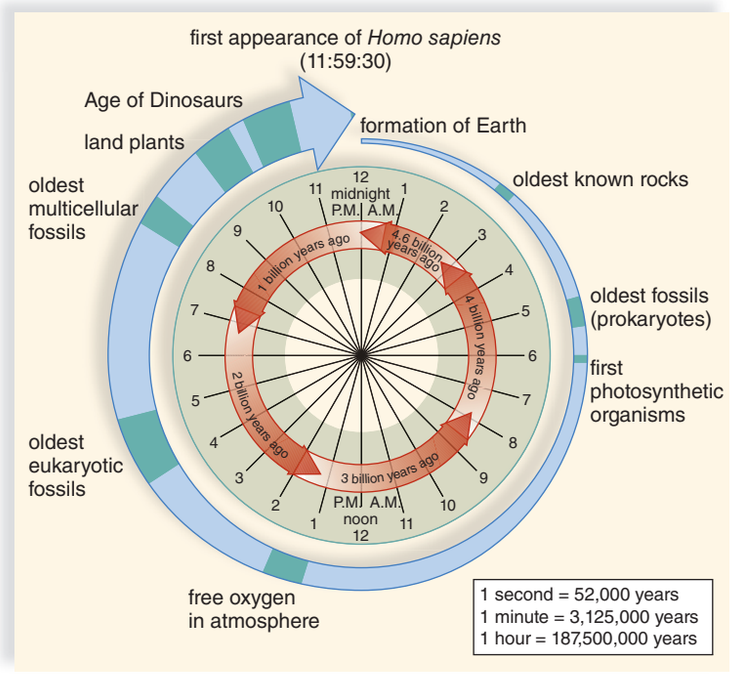


Figure 16.11 **The history of life in 24 hours.**

The blue ring of this diagram shows the history of life as it would be measured on a 24-hour timescale starting at midnight. The red ring shows the actual years going back in time to around 4.6 BYA.

T€, le 16.1 The Š eological Timescale: Ma‹or Divisions of Š eological Time and a Summary of Ma‹or Evolutionary Events

Er€	Perio„	E..och	MYA	Pl€nt €n„ Ani‡ €l Life
		™olocene	0.0š› 0	AGE œF ™ž MAN ” I• IŸ¡ ATIœN¢Destruction of ecosystems accelerates extinctions.
				SŠNŒŒANT MAMMALŒAN E‘ TŒNCTŒN
	£uaternary	Pleistocene	š.8› 0.0š	Modern humans appear¤modern plants spread and diversify.
		Pliocene	5.¥› š.8	First hominids appear¤modern angiosperms flourish.
” enozoic		Miocene	2¥.0› 5.¥	Apelike mammals, grazing mammals, and insects flourish¤grasslands spread¤and forests contract.
	Tertiary	œligocene	¥¥.9› 2¥.0	Monkeylike primates appear¤modern angiosperms appear.
		Eocene	55.8› ¥¥.9	All modern orders of mammals are present¤ subtropical forests flourish.
		Paleocene	65.5› 55.8	Primates, herbivores, carnivores, and insectivores are present¤angiosperms diversify.
				MASS E‘ TŒNCTŒN: ’ “” OF ALL SPECŒS, DŒNOSA• RS, AND MOST REPTŒES
	” retaceous		š45› 65.5	Placental mammals and modern insects appear¤ angiosperms spread and conifers persist.
Mesozoic	¦urassic		š99› š45	Dinosaurs flourish¤birds and angiosperms appear.
				MASS E‘ TŒNCTŒN: 4–” OF ALL SPECŒS, ŒNCL• DŒNŠ CORALS AND FERNS
	Triassic		25š› š99	First mammals and dinosaurs appear¤forests of conifers and cycads dominate land¤corals and molluscs dominate seas.
				MASS E‘ TŒNCTŒN –THE ˜ŠREAT D™ŒNŠš›: –œ‘ OF ALL SPECŒS ON LAND AND SEA
	Permian		299› 25š	Reptiles diversify¤amphibians decline¤and gymnosperms diversify.
	” arboniferous		¥59› 299	Amphibians diversify¤reptiles appear¤and insects diversify. Age of great coal-forming forests.
				MASS E‘ TŒNCTŒN: OžER ’ “” OF COASTAL MARŒNE SPECŒS, CORALS
	Devonian		4š6› ¥59	¦awed fishes diversify¤insects and amphibians appear¤seedless vascular plants diversify and seed plants appear.
Paleozoic	Silurian		44¥› 4š6	First jawed fishes and seedless vascular plants appear.
				MASS E‘ TŒNCTŒN: OžER ’Ÿ” OF MARŒNE SPECŒS
	œrdovician		488› 44¥	Invertebrates spread and diversify¤jawless fishes appear¤nonvascular plants appear on land.
	” ambrian		542› 488	Marine invertebrates with skeletons are dominant and invade land¤marine algae flourish.
			6¥0	œldest soft-bodied invertebrate fossils
			š,000	Protists evolve and diversify.
Precambrian time			2,š00	œldest eukaryotic fossils
			2,500	O_2 accumulates in atmosphere.
			¥,500	œldest known fossils (prokaryotes)
			4,570	Earth forms.

the atmosphere. The presence of oxygen may have spurred the evolution of the eukaryotic cell and multicellularity during the Precambrian. All major groups of animals evolved during what is sometimes called the Cambrian explosion. The fossil record for Precambrian time is meager, but the fossil record for the Cambrian period is rich. The evolution of the invertebrate external skeleton accounts for this increase in the number of fossils. Perhaps this skeleton, which impedes the uptake of oxygen, couldn't evolve until oxygen was plentiful. Or perhaps the external skeleton was merely a defense against predation.

The origin of life on land is another interesting topic. During the Paleozoic era, plants were present on land before animals. Nonvascular plants preceded vascular plants, and among these, cone-bearing plants (gymnosperms) preceded flowering plants (angiosperms). Among vertebrates, the fishes were aquatic, and the amphibians invaded land. The reptiles, including dinosaurs and birds, shared an amniote ancestor with the mammals. The number of species in the world has continued to increase until the present time, despite the occurrence of five mass extinctions, including one significant mammalian extinction during the history of life on Earth.

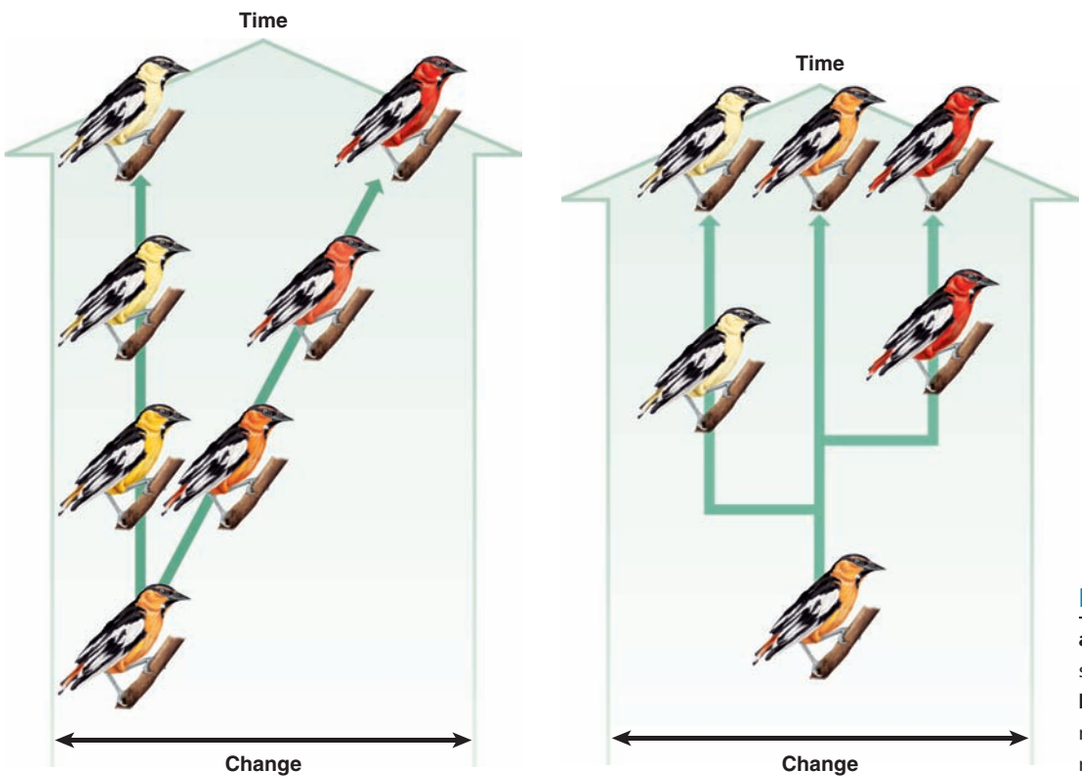
The Pace of Speciation

Darwin theorized that evolutionary changes occur gradually. In other words, he supported a *gradualistic model* to explain the pace of evolution. Speciation probably occurs after populations become isolated, with each group continuing slowly on its own evolutionary pathway. The gradualism model often shows the evolutionary history of groups of organisms by drawing the type of **evolutionary tree** shown in **Figure 16.12***a*. In this diagram, note that an ancestral species has given rise to two separate species, represented by a slow change in plumage color. The gradualistic model suggests that it is difficult to indicate

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What is the Burgess Shale?

The Burgess Shale is the name for a rock formation in the Canadian Rocky Mountains near the Burgess Pass. Around 525 MYA, this region was located along the coast. It is believed that an earthquake caused a landslide that almost instantly buried much of the marine life in the shallow coastal waters. Unlike many fossil beds, the Burgess Shale contains the remains of soft-shelled organisms, such as worms and sea cucumbers, as well as other organisms from the Cambrian explosion—a period of rapid diversification in marine life around 545 MYA. Over 60,000 unique types of fossils have been found in the Burgess Shale (including the trilobite fossils shown here), making this fossil bed one of our most valuable assets for studying the early evolution of life in the oceans.



a. Gradualistic model

b. Punctuated equilibrium model

Figure 16.12 Pace of evolution.

a. According to the gradualistic model, new species evolve slowly from an ancestral species. **b.** According to the punctuated equilibrium model, new species appear suddenly and then remain largely unchanged until they become extinct.

when speciation has occurred because there would be so many transitional links between species (see Section 14.2). In some cases, it has been possible to trace the evolution of a group of organisms by finding transitional links.

More often, however, species appear quite suddenly in the fossil record, and then they remain essentially unchanged phenotypically until they undergo extinction. Paleontologists have therefore developed a *punctuated e•uilibrium model* to explain the pace of evolution. The model says that a period of equilibrium (no change) is punctuated (interrupted) by speciation. Figure 16.12*b* shows the type of diagram paleontologists prefer to use when representing the history of evolution over time. This model suggests that transitional links are less likely to become fossils and less likely to be found. Speciation probably involves only an isolated subpopulation at one locale. Only when this new subpopulation expands and replaces existing species is it apt to show up in the fossil record.

The differences between these two models are subtle, especially when we consider that the "sudden" appearance of a new species in the fossil record could represent many thousands of years because geological time is measured in millions of years.

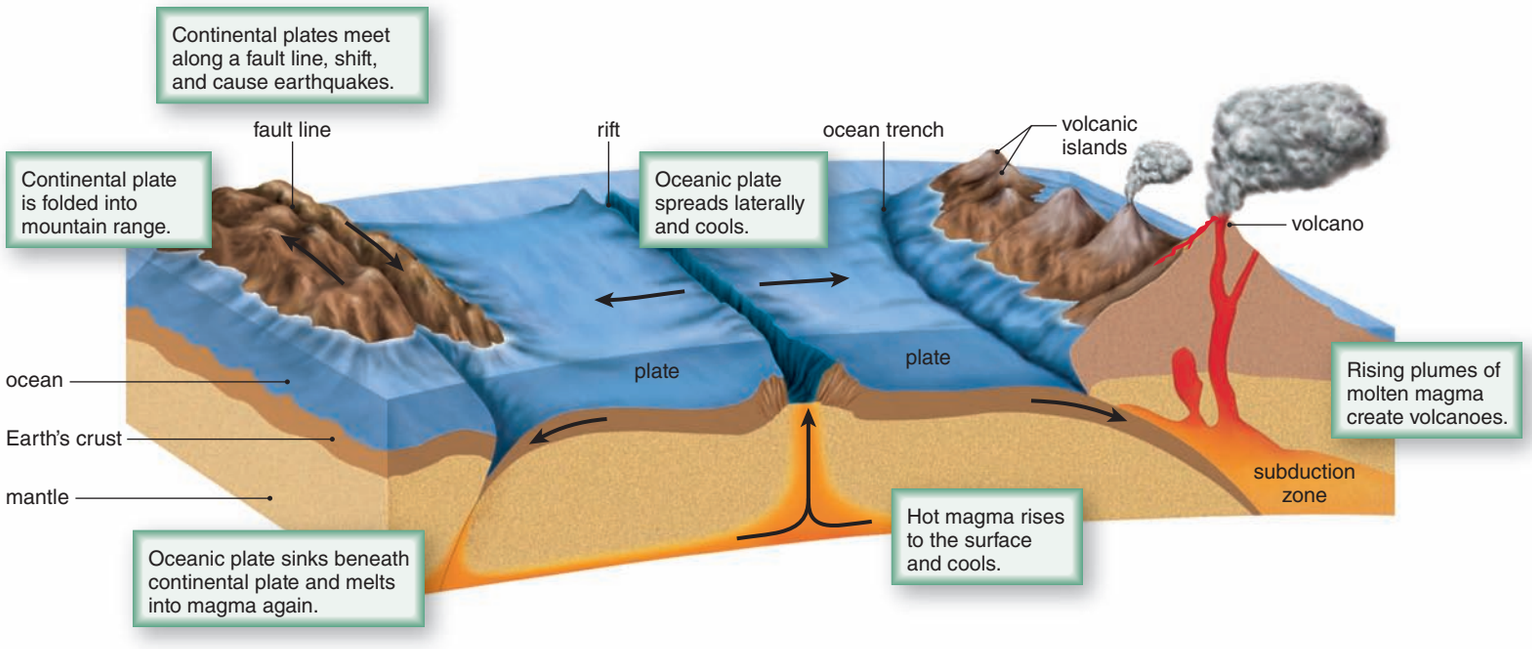
Mass Extinctions of Species

As researchers have noted, most species exist for only a limited amount of time (measured in millions of years), and then they die out (become extinct). **Mass extinctions** are the disappearance of a large number of species or a higher taxonomic group within a relatively short period of time. The geological timescale in Table 16.1 shows the occurrence of five mass extinctions: at the ends of the Ordovician, Devonian, Permian, Triassic, and Cretaceous periods. Also, there was a significant mammalian extinction at the end of the Pleistocene epoch. While many factors contribute to mass extinctions, two possible types of events (continental drift and meteorite impacts) have particular significance.

• *ontinental dri•t*– the movement of continents– has contributed to several extinctions. You may have noticed that the coastlines of several continents are mirror images of each other. For example, the outline of the west coast of Africa matches that of the east coast of South America. Also, the same geological structures are found in many of the areas where the continents touched at one

Figure 16.13 **Plate tectonics.**

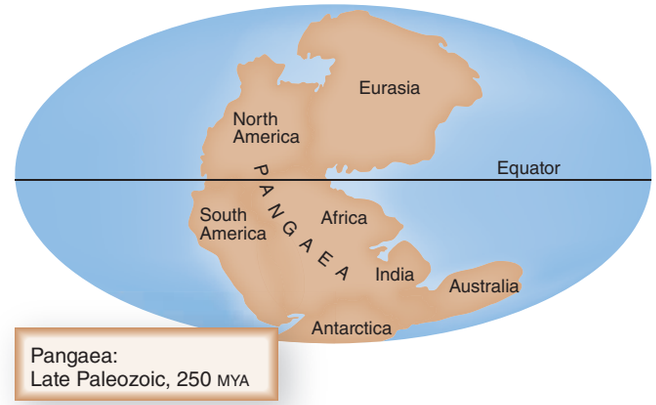
The Earth's surface is divided into several solid tectonic plates floating on the fluid magma beneath them. At rifts in the ocean floor, two plates gradually separate as fresh magma wells up and cools, enlarging the plates. Mountains, including volcanoes, are raised where one plate pushes beneath another at subduction zones. © here two plates slowly grind past each other at a fault line, tension builds up, which is released occasionally in the form of eathquakes.



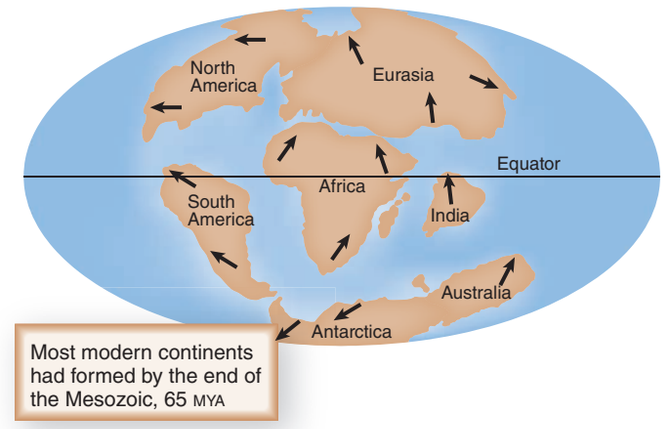
time. A single mountain range runs through South America, Antarctica, and Australia, for example. But the mountain range is no longer continuous because the continents have drifted apart. The reason the continents drift is explained by a branch of geology known as *plate tectonics,* which is based on the fact that the Earth's crust is fragmented into slablike plates that float on a lower, hot mantle layer (**Fig. 16.13**). The continents and the ocean basins are a part of these rigid plates, which move like conveyor belts.

The loss of habitat is a significant cause of extinctions, and continental drift can lead to massive habitat changes. We know that 250 million years ago, at the time of the Permian mass extinction, all the Earth's continents came together to form one supercontinent called Pangaea (**Fig. 16.14***a*). The result was dramatic environmental change through the shifting of wind patterns, ocean currents, and most importantly the amount of available shallow marine habitat. Marine organisms suffered as the oceans merged, and the amount of shoreline, where many marine organisms lived, was drastically reduced. Species diversity did not recover until some continents drifted away from the poles, shorelines increased, and warmth returned (Fig. 16.14*b*). Terrestrial organisms were affected as well because the amount of interior land, which tends to have a drier and more erratic climate, increased. Immense glaciers developing at the poles withdrew water from the oceans and chilled even once tropical land.

The other event that is known to have contributed to mass extinctions is the impact of a meteorite as it crashed into the Earth. The result of a large meteorite striking Earth could have been similar to that of a worldwide atomic bomb explosion: A cloud of dust would have mushroomed into the atmosphere, blocking out the sun and causing plants to freeze and die. This type of event has been proposed as a primary cause of the Cretaceous extinction that saw the demise of the dinosaurs. Cretaceous clay contains an abnormally high level of iridium, an element that is rare in the Earth's crust but more common in meteorites. A layer of soot has been identified in the strata alongside the iridium, and a huge crater that could have been caused by a meteorite was found in the Caribbean–Gulf of Mexico region on the Yucatán peninsula.



a.



b.

Figure 16.14 Continental drift.

a. About 250 MYA, all the continents were joined into a supercontinent called Pangaea. **b.** By 65 MYA, all the continents had begun to separate. This process is continuing today. North America and Europe are separating at a rate of about 2 centimeters per year.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What is the "Sixth Mass Extinction Event"?

Many ecologists now support the concept that we are currently involved in the Earth's sixth mass extinction event. However, unlike the first five major events, this one is caused not by geological or astronomical events but by human actions. Pollution, land use, invasive species, and global climate change associated with the burning of fossil fuels are all recognized as contributing factors. The exact rate of species loss can be difficult to determine, but international agencies report that the current loss of species is between 100 and 1,000 times faster than the pre-human rates recorded by the fossil record.

16.2 CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The fossil record provides a rich history of the species diversity that has occurred on Earth.

Check Your Progress 16.2

1. Summarize how the fossil record is the best evidence for macroevolution.
2. Explain the phrase "punctuated equilibrium model."
3. Relate the mass extinctions of species with the types of events that can cause them.
4. Discuss some of the major evolutionary events that occurred during different periods of geological time to form the geological timescale (Table 16.1).

16.3 Systematics

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the hierarchical levels of Linnaean classification from the most inclusive to the least inclusive.
2. Explain what information can be learned from a phylogenetic tree and list some of the types of information that is used in constructing them.
3. Contrast a homologous structure with an analogous structure.
4. Define cladistics and explain how this method may be used to study the evolutionary relationships between groups of organisms.
5. List the three domains of living organisms and describe the general characteristics of organisms contained within each domain.

All fields of biology, but especially **systematics,** are dedicated to understanding the evolutionary history of life on Earth. Systematics is very analytical and relies on a combination of data from the fossil record and comparative anatomy and development, with an emphasis today on molecular data, to determine **phylogeny,** the evolutionary history of a group of organisms. Classification is a part of systematics because ideally organisms are classified according to our present understanding of evolutionary relationships.

Linnaean Classification

Taxonomy is the branch of biology concerned with identifying, naming, and classifying organisms. A **taxon** (pl., taxa) is an organism or a group of organisms at a particular level in a classification system. The binomial system of nomenclature assigns a two-part name to each type of organism. For example, the plant in **Figure 16.15** has been named *Cypripedium acaule.* This name means that the plant is in the genus *Cypripedium* and that the specific epithet is *acaule.* Notice that the scientific name is in italics and only the genus is capitalized. The genus can be abbreviated to a single letter if the full name has been given previously and if it is used with a specific epithet. For example, *C. acaule* is an acceptable way to designate this plant. The name of an organism usually tells you something about the organism. In this instance, the genus name, *Cypripedium,* refers to the slipper shape of the flower, and the specific epithet, *acaule,* says that the flower has no independent stem.

Why do organisms need scientific names? And why do scientists use Latin, rather than common names, to describe organisms? There are several reasons. First, a common name varies from country to country because different countries use different languages. Second, even people who speak the same language sometimes use different common names to describe the same organism—for example, bowfin, grindle, choupique, and cypress trout are all the same common

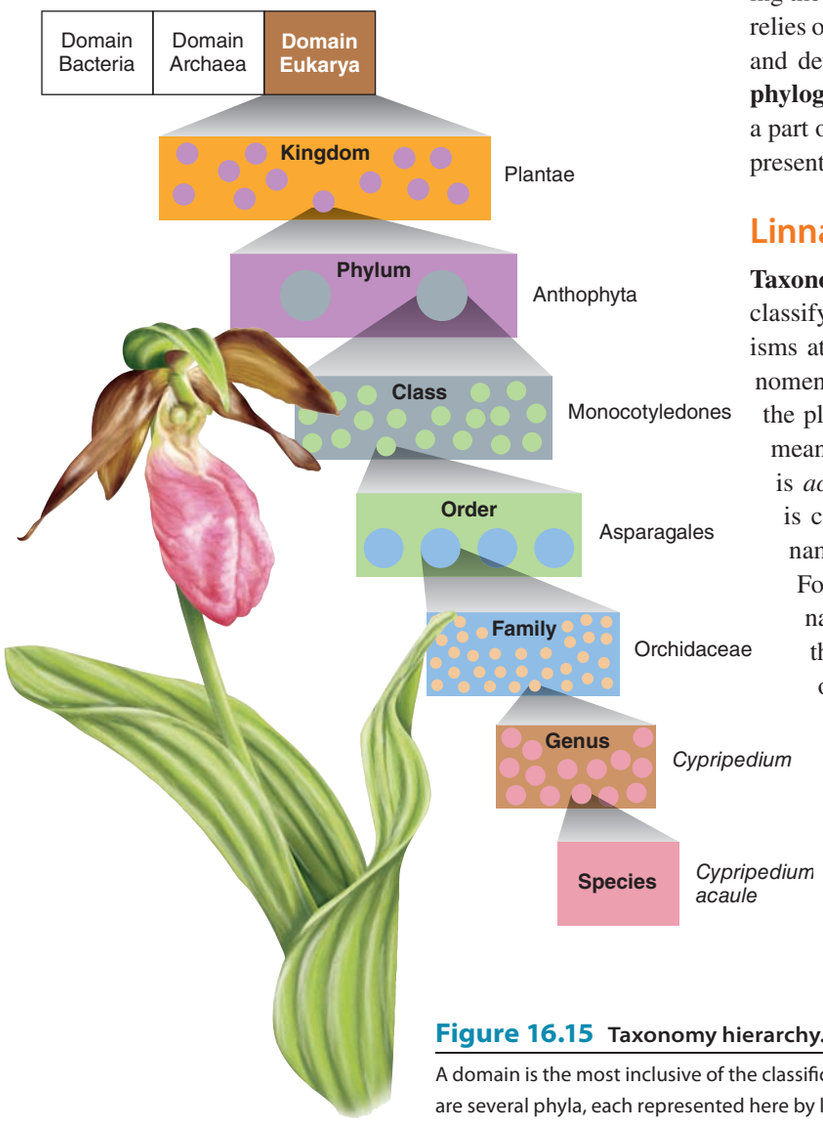


Figure 16.15 **Taxonomy hierarchy.**

A domain is the most inclusive of the classification categories. The plant kingdom is in the domain Eukarya. In the plant kingdom are several phyla, each represented here by lavender circles. The phylum Anthophyta has only two classes (the monocots and eudicots). The class Monocotyledones encompasses many orders. In the order Orchidales are many families; in the family Orchidaceae are many genera; and in the genus *Cypripedium* are many species—for example, *Cypripedium acaule.* (This illustration is diagrammatic and doesn't necessarily show the correct number of subcategories.)

fish, *Amia calva.* Furthermore, between countries the same common name is sometimes given to different organisms. A robin in England is very different from a robin in the United States, for example. Latin, on the other hand, is a universal language that not too long ago was well known by most scholars, many of whom were physicians or clerics. When scientists throughout the world use a scientific binomial name, they know they are speaking of the same organism.

Today, taxonomists use several categories of classification created by Swedish biologist Carl Linnaeus in the 1700s to show varying levels of similarity: **species, genus, family, order, class, phylum, kingdom, domain.** There can be several species within a genus, several genera within a family, and so forth. In this hierarchy, the higher the category, the more inclusive it is (Fig. 16.15). Therefore species in the same domain have general traits in common, while those in the same genus have quite specific traits in common.

Taxonomists often subdivide each category of classification into additional categories, such as superorder, order, suborder, and infraorder. This allows for a further level of distinction within each major category.

Phylogenetic Trees

Figure 16.16 shows how the classification of groups of organisms allows us to construct a **phylogenetic tree,** a diagram that indicates common ancestors and lines of descent (lineages). The common ancestor at the base of the tree has traits that are shared by all the other groups in the tree. For example, the Artiodactyla are characterized by having hoofs with an even number of toes. On the other hand, notice that the Cervidae have antlers but the Bovidae have no antlers. Finally, among the Cervidae, the antlers are highly branched in red deer but palmate (having the shape of a hand) in reindeer. As the lineage moves from common ancestor to common ancestor, the traits become more specific to just particular groups of animals. It is this progression in specificity that allows classification categories to serve as a basis for depicting a phylogenetic tree.

Tracing Phylogeny

While Figure 16.16 makes use of morphological data, systematists today use a multitude of data in order to discover the evolutionary relationships between species. They rely heavily on a combination of fossil record, morphological, and molecular data to determine the correct sequence of common ancestors in any group of organisms.

Morphological data include homologies, which are similarities among organisms that stem from having a common ancestor. Comparative anatomy, including embryological evidence and fossil data, provides information regarding homology. **Homologous structures** are related to each other through common descent. The forelimbs of vertebrates are homologous because they contain the same bones organized in the same general way as in a common ancestor (see Fig. 14.16). This is the case even though a horse has but a single digit and toe (the hoof), while a bat has four lengthened digits that support its membranous wings.

Deciphering homology is sometimes difficult because of convergent evolution. **Convergent evolution** is the acquisition of the same or similar traits in distantly related lines of descent. Similarity due to convergence is termed **analogy.** The wings of an insect and the wings of a bat are analogous. You may

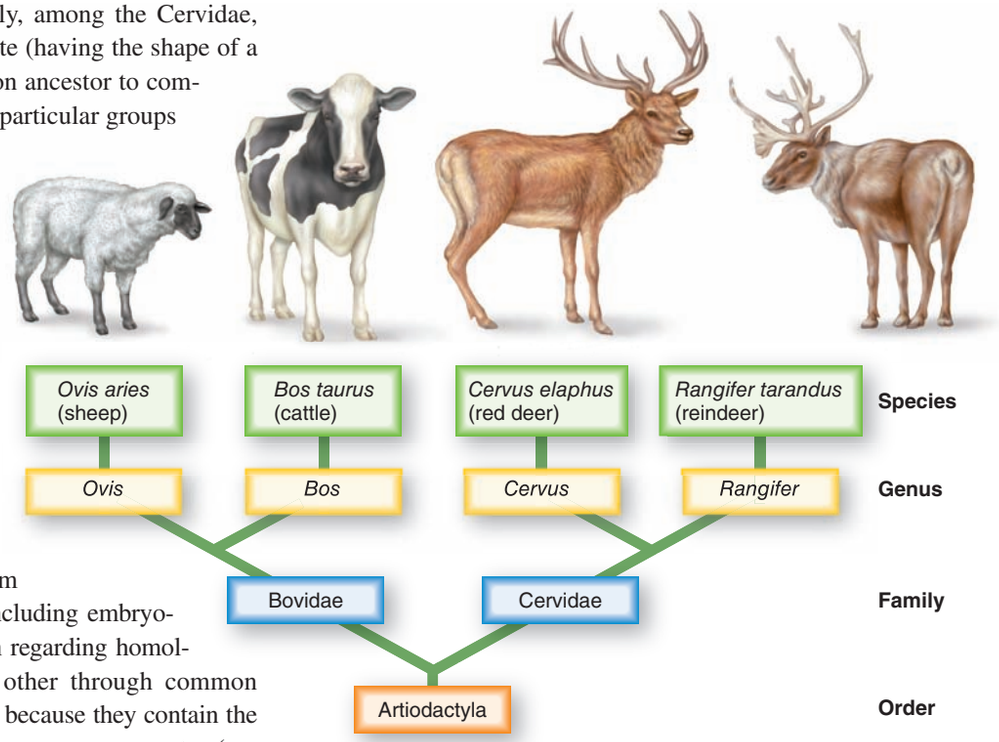


Figure 16.16 Classification and phylogeny.

The classification and phylogenetic tree for a group of organisms is ideally constructed to reflect their phylogenetic history. A species is most closely related to other species in the same genus, more distantly related to species in other genera of the same family, and so forth on through order, class, phylum, and kingdom.

recall from Chapter 14 that **analogous structures** have the same function in different groups but organisms with these structures do not have a recent common ancestor. *Analogous structures arise because of adaptations to the same type of environment*. Both cactuses and spurges are adapted similarly to a hot, dry environment, and both are succulent, spiny, flowering plants. However, the details of their flower structure indicate that these plants are not closely related.

Speciation occurs when mutations bring about changes in the base-pair sequences of DNA. Systematists, therefore, assume that the more closely species are related, the fewer changes will be found in DNA base-pair sequences. Because molecular data are straightforward and numerical, they can sometimes sort out relationships obscured by inconsequential anatomical variations or convergence. Computer software breakthroughs have made it possible to analyze nucleotide sequences quickly and accurately. Also, these analyses are available to anyone doing comparative studies through the Internet, so that each investigator doesn't have to start from scratch. The combination of accuracy and availability of vast amounts of data, even entire genomes, has made molecular systematics a standard way to study the relatedness of organisms.

All cells have ribosomes essential for protein synthesis, and the genes that code for ribosomal RNA (rRNA) have changed very slowly during evolution because drastic changes lead to malfunctioning cells. Therefore, comparative rRNA sequencing provides a reliable indicator of the similarity between organisms. Ribosomal RNA sequencing helped investigators conclude that all living things can be divided into the three domains.

One study involving DNA differences produced the data shown in **Figure 16.17.** Notice the close relationship between chimpanzees and humans. This relationship has recently been recognized by the designation of a new subfamily, Homininae, that includes not only chimpanzees and humans but

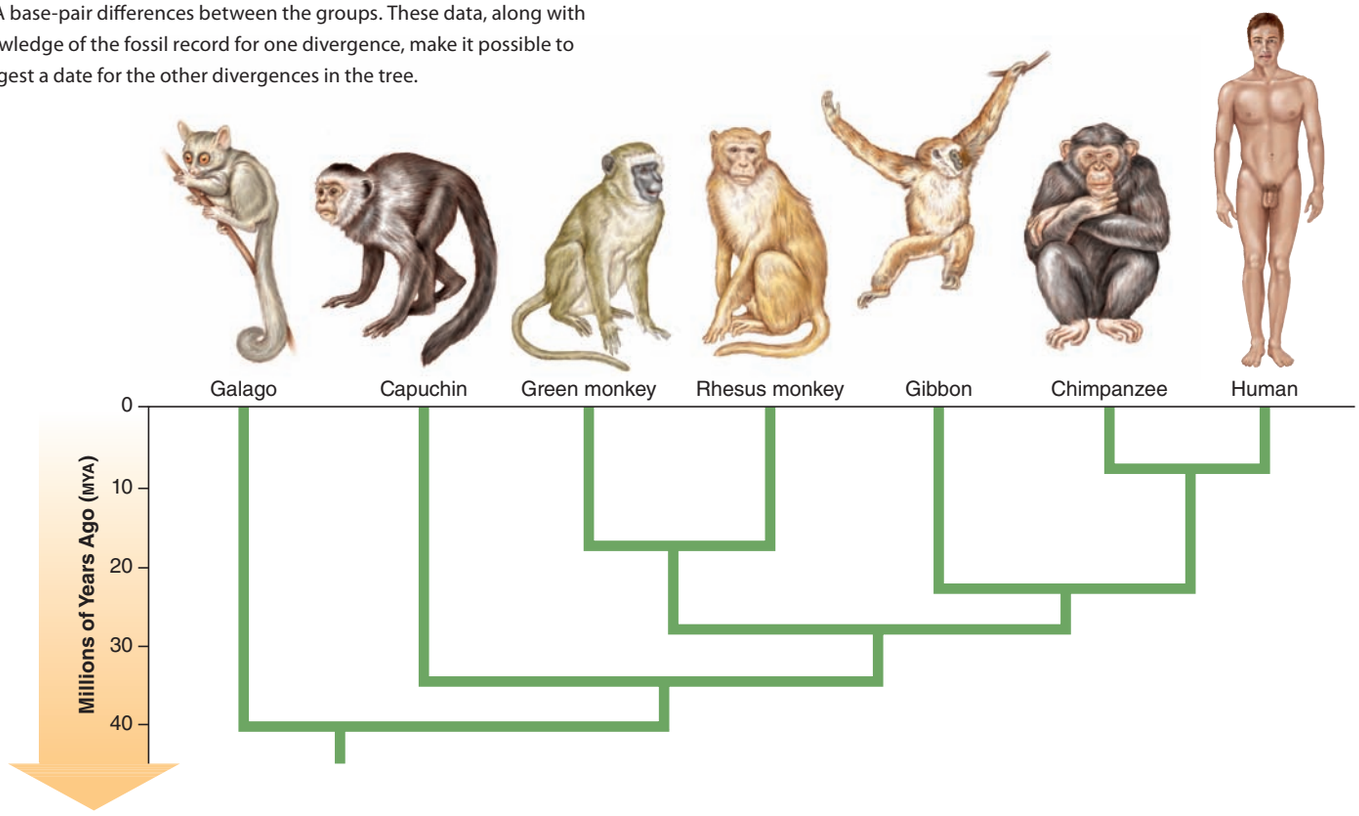


Figure 16.17 Interpretation of molecular data.

The relationships of certain primate species are based on a study of their genomes. The length of the branches indicates the relative number of DNA base-pair differences between the groups. These data, along with knowledge of the fossil record for one divergence, make it possible to suggest a date for the other divergences in the tree.

also gorillas. Molecular data indicate that gorillas and chimpanzees are more closely related to humans than they are to orangutans. Below the taxon subfamily, humans and chimpanzees are placed together in their own tribe, a rarely used classification category.

Cladistics and Cladograms

Cladistics is a way to trace the evolutionary history of a group by using traits derived from a common ancestor to determine relationships. These traits are then used to construct phylogenetic trees called cladograms. A **cladogram** depicts the evolutionary history of a group based on the available data.

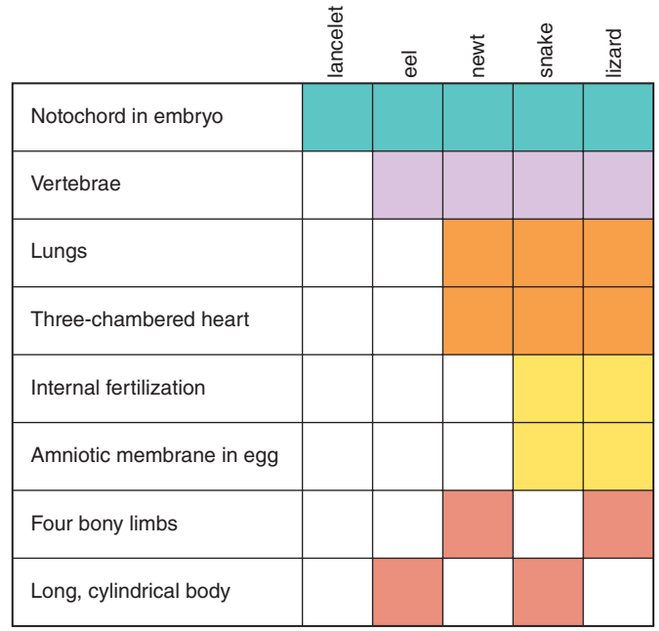
The first step in constructing a cladogram is to draw up a table that summarizes the traits of the species being compared. At least one but preferably several species are considered an *outgroup*. The outgroup is not part of the study group, also called the *ingroup*. In **Figure 16.18***a,* lancelets are the outgroup because, unlike the species in the ingroup, they are not vertebrates. Any trait, such as a notochord, found in both the outgroup and the ingroup is a shared *ancestral trait,* presumed to have been present in an ancestor common to both the outgroup and the ingroup. Ancestral traits are not shared derived traits and therefore are not used to construct a cladogram. They merely help determine which traits will be used to construct the cladogram.

A rule that many cladists follow is the principle of *parsimony,* which states that the least number of assumptions is the most probable. Thus, they construct a cladogram that minimizes the number of assumed evolutionary changes or that leaves the fewest number of derived traits unexplained. Therefore, any trait in the table found in scattered species (in this case, four bony limbs and a long, cylindrical body) is not used to construct the cladogram because we would have to assume that these traits evolved more than once among the species of the study group. The other differences are designated as *shared derived traits*– that is, they are homologies shared by only certain species of the study group. Combining the data regarding shared derived traits will tell us how the members of the ingroup are related to one another.

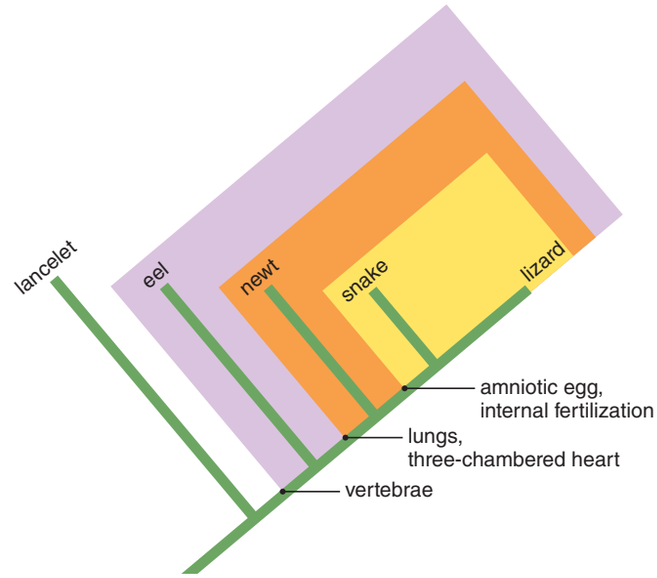
The Cladogram

A cladogram contains several clades; each **clade** includes a common ancestor and all of its descendant species. The cladogram in Figure 16.18*b* has three clades, which differ in size because the first includes the other two and so forth. All the species in the study group belong to a clade that has vertebrae; only newts, snakes, and lizards are in a clade that has lungs and a three-chambered heart; and only snakes and lizards are in a clade that has an amniotic egg and internal fertilization. (An amniotic egg has a sac that surrounds and protects the embryo– fish and amphibian eggs do not have this sac.) Following the principle of parsimony, this is the sequence in which these traits must have evolved during the evolutionary history of vertebrates. Any other arrangement of species would produce a less parsimonious evolutionary sequence– that is, a tree that would be more complicated.

A cladogram is typically constructed using as much morphological, fossil, and molecular data as is available at the time. Still, any cladogram should be viewed as a hypothesis. Whether our tree is consistent with the one, true evolutionary history of life can be tested, and modifications can be made on the basis of additional data.



a.



b.

Figure 16.18 Constructing a cladogram.

a. First, a table is drawn up, listing characters for all the taxa. An examination of the table shows which characters are ancestral (aqua) and which are derived (lavender, orange, and yellow). The shared derived characters distinguish the taxa. **b.** In a cladogram, the shared derived characters are sequenced in the order they evolved and are used to define clades. A clade contains a common ancestor and all the species that share the same derived characters (homologies). Four bony limbs and a long, cylindrical body (light red) were not used in constructing the cladogram because they are in scattered taxa.

%innaean Classification Šersus Cladistics

Figure 16.19 illustrates the types of problems that arise when trying to reconcile Linnaean classification with the principles of cladistics. Figure 16.19, which is based on cladistics, shows that birds are in a clade with crocodiles, with which they share a recent common ancestor. This ancestor had a gizzard. An examination of the skulls of crocodiles and birds would show other derived traits that they share. Birds have scaly skin and share this ancestor with other reptiles as well. However, Linnaean classification places birds in their own group, separate from crocodiles and from reptiles in general. In many other instances, Linnaean classification is not consistent with new understandings about phylogenetic relationships. Therefore, some cladists have proposed a different system of classification, called the International Code of Phylogenetic Nomenclature, or PhyloCode, which sets forth rules for the naming of clades. Other biologists are hoping to modify Linnaean classification to be consistent with the principles of cladistics.

Two major problems may be unsolvable: (1) Clades are hierarchical, as are Linnaean categories. However, there may be more clades than Linnaean taxonomic categories, and it is therefore difficult to equate clades with taxons. (2) The taxons are not necessarily equivalent in the Linnaean system. For example, the family taxon within kingdom Plantae may not be equivalent to the family taxon in kingdom Animalia. Because of such problems, some cladists recommend abandoning Linnaeus altogether.

The Three‹Domain System

Classification systems change over time. Historically, most biologists utilized the **five-kingdom system** of classification, which contains kingdoms for the plants, animals, fungi, protists, and monerans. Organisms were placed into these kingdoms based on type of cell (prokaryotic or eukaryotic), level of organization (single-celled or multicellular), and type of nutrition. In the five-kingdom system, the monerans were distinguished by their structure– they were prokaryotic (lack a membrane-bounded nucleus)– whereas the organisms in the other kingdoms were eukaryotic (have a membrane-bounded nucleus). The kingdom Monera contained all prokaryotes, which evolved first, according to the fossil record.

Sequencing the genes for rRNA has provided new information that challenged the five-kingdom system of classification. Aside from molecular data, cellular data also suggest that there are two groups of prokaryotes, named the Bacteria and the Archaea. These two groups are so fundamentally different from each other that they have been assigned to separate domains, a category of classification that is higher than the kingdom category. The Bacteria arose first, followed by the Archaea and then the Eukarya (**Fig.†16.20**). The Archaea and Eukarya are more closely related to each other than either is to the Bacteria. Systematists, using the **three-domain system** of classification, are in the process of sorting out what

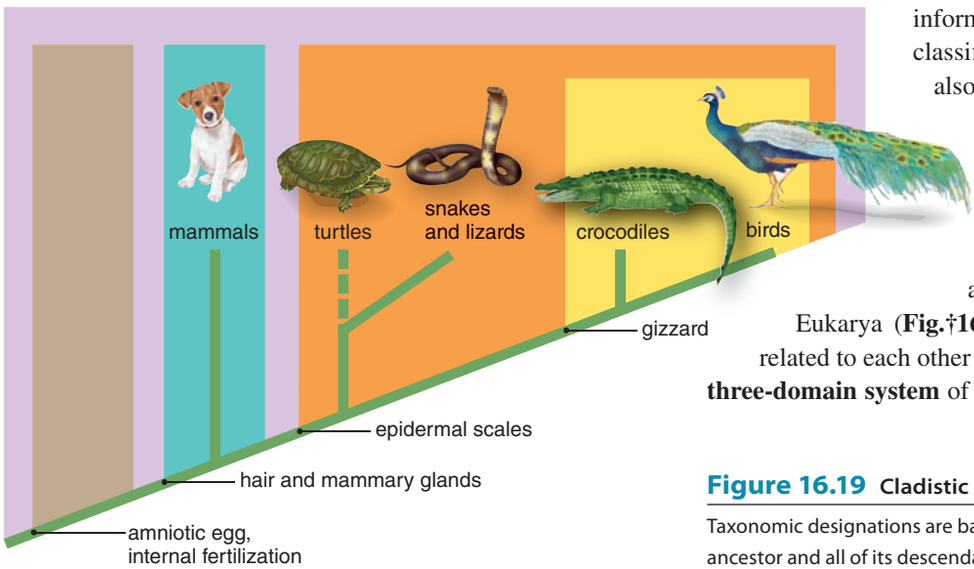


Figure 16.19 Cladistic classification.

Taxonomic designations are based on evolutionary history. Each taxon includes a common ancestor and all of its descendants.

kingdoms belong within **domain Bacteria** and **domain Archaea. Domain Eukarya** contains kingdoms for protists, animals, fungi, and plants. Later in this text, we will study the individual kingdoms that occur within the domain Eukarya. The protists do not share one common ancestor, and some suggest that the kingdom should be divided into many different kingdoms. The number of kingdoms is still being determined among systematists, illustrating that classification can be changed as new data become available.

Animation
Three Domains

16.3

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Systematics is the science of studying the evolutionary history of the species on Earth.

Check Your Progress 16.3

1. List the categories of classification in order from smallest to largest.
2. Name the types of data used to determine evolutionary relationships.
3. Contrast homologous structure with analogous structure.
4. Explain why the sequencing of ribosomal RNA (rRNA) is done for evolutionary studies.
5. Explain why the Linnaean classification is difficult to reconcile with the principles of cladistics.

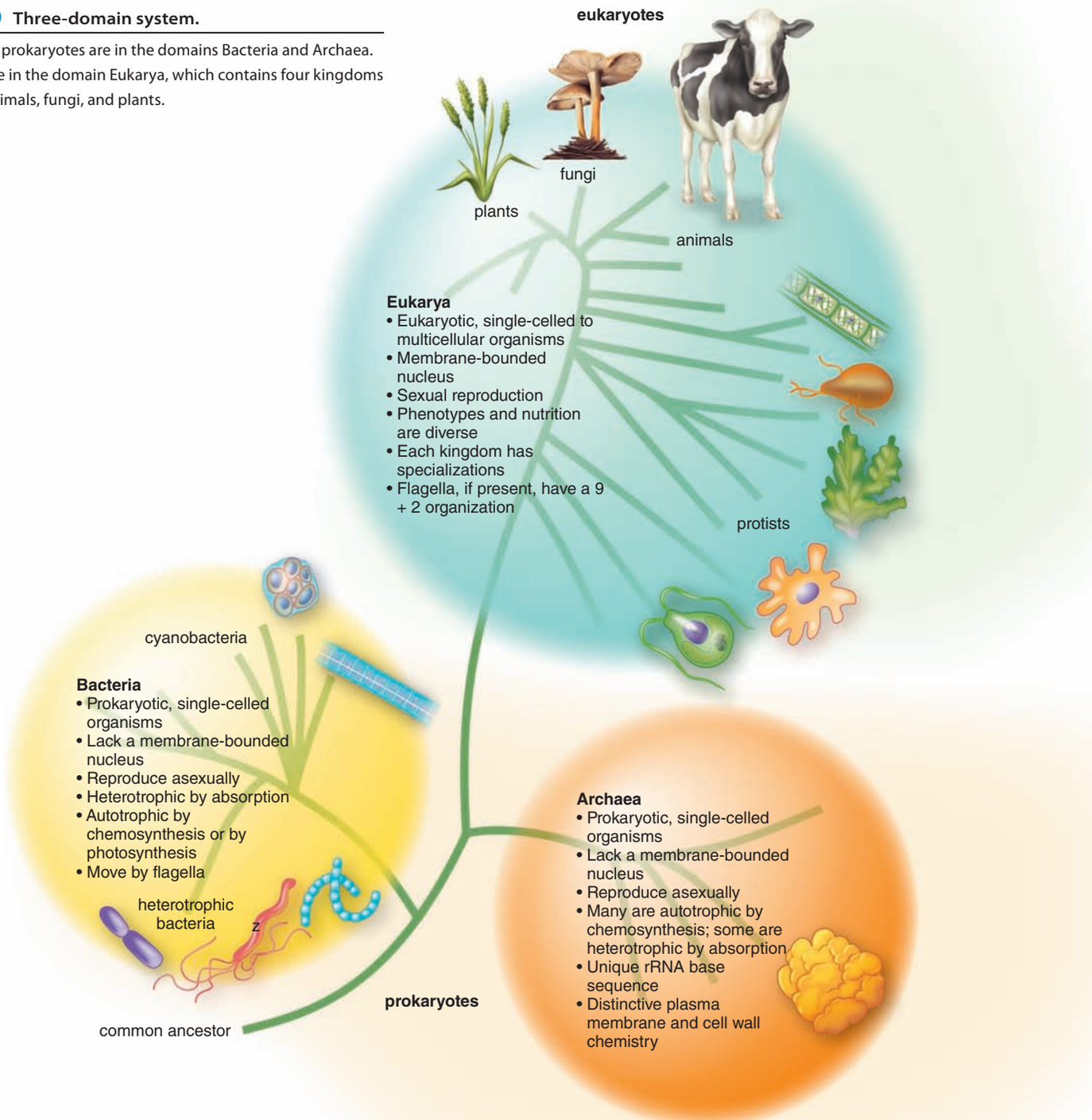


Figure 16.20 Three-domain system.

In this system, the prokaryotes are in the domains Bacteria and Archaea. The eukaryotes are in the domain Eukarya, which contains four kingdoms for the protists, animals, fungi, and plants.

Media Study Tools

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations. Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Animations	Video
16.3 Phylogenetic Trees • Three Domains	**16.1** Finches Adaptive Radiation

3D Animation
Mechanisms of Evolution

For a more detailed look at the processes of adaptive radiation and macroevolution, view the 3D animation "Mechanisms of Evolution."

SUMMARIZE

16.1 Speciation and Macroevolution

Macroevolution is evolution on a large scale because it considers the history of life on Earth. Macroevolution begins with **speciation,** the origin of new species. Without speciation and the extinction of species, life on Earth would not have a history.

Defining Species

The **biological species concept**

- recognizes a species by its inability to produce viable fertile offspring with members of another group.
- is useful because species can look similar, and members of the same species can have different appearances.
- has its limitations. Hybridization does occur between some species, and it is only relevant to living, sexually reproducing organisms.

Reproductive Barriers

Speciation occurs when prezygotic and postzygotic barriers keep species from reproducing with one another.

- **Prezygotic isolating mechanisms** include habitat isolation, temporal isolation, and behavioral isolation.
- **Postzygotic isolating mechanisms** prevent hybrid offspring from developing or breeding if reproduction has been successful.

Models of Speciation

Allopatric speciation and sympatric speciation are two models of speciation.

- The **allopatric speciation** model proposes that a geographic barrier keeps groups of populations apart. Meanwhile, prezygotic and postzygotic isolating mechanisms develop, and these prevent successful reproduction if these two groups come in future contact.
- In **sympatric speciation,** a geographic barrier is not required for speciation to occur.
- Following speciation, **adaptive radiation** allows the new species to adapt to changes in its unique environment.

16.2 The Fossil Record

The fossil record, as outlined by the geological timescale, traces the history of life in broad terms. **Paleontologists** are able to absolutely date **fossils** using radioactive dating techniques.

Pace of Speciation

- Gradualistic model: Two groups of organisms arise from an ancestral species and gradually become two different species.
- Punctuated equilibrium model: A period of equilibrium (no change) is interrupted by speciation within a relatively short period of time.

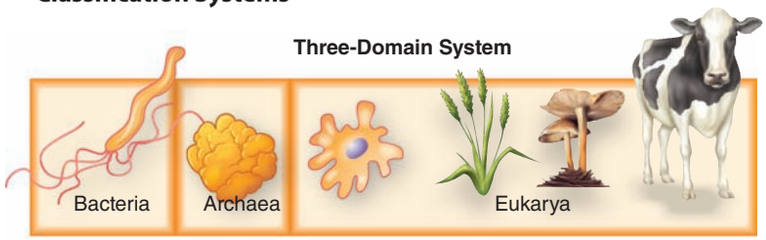
Mass Extinctions

- The fossil record shows that at least five mass extinctions, including one significant mammalian extinction, have occurred during the history of life on Earth. Two major contributors to mass extinctions are the loss of habitat due to continental drift and the disastrous results from a meteorite impacting Earth.

16.3 Systematics

- **Systematics** is the study of the evolutionary relationships, or **phylogeny,** among all organisms, past and present. Systematics relies on the fossil record, homology, and molecular data to determine relationships among organisms.
- **Taxonomy** involves the identification, naming, and classification of organisms. In the Linnaean system of classification, every organism belongs to a **taxon** and is assigned a scientific name, which indicates its **genus** and specific epithet. The combination of genus and specific epithet forms the name of the **species.** Species are also assigned to a **family,** an **order,** a **class,** a **phylum,** a **kingdom,** and a **domain** according to their molecular and structural similarities, as well as evolutionary relationships to other species.
- **Phylogenic trees** depict the evolutionary history of a group of organisms. Phylogenetic trees can help distinguish between **homologous structures** (those related by common descent) and **analogous structures** (those that are a result of **convergent evolution**). Cladists use shared derived characteristics to construct cladograms. In a **cladogram,** a **clade** consists of a common ancestor and all the species derived from that ancestor. Each of these species have shared derived characteristics.
- Linnaean classification has come under severe criticism because it does not always follow the principles of cladistics in the grouping of organisms.

Classification Systems



- The **five-kingdom system** was historically based on criteria such as cell type, level of organization, and type of nutrition.
- The **three-domain system** uses molecular data to designate three evolutionary domains: Bacteria, Archaea, and Eukarya.
- **Domain Bacteria** and **domain Archaea** contain prokaryotes.
- **Domain Eukarya** contains kingdoms for the protists, animals, fungi, and plants.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

When evolution occurs on a large scale, the result is the appearance of new species. The fossil record shows how species have evolved during the course of the Earth's history.

Speciation occurs due to an interruption of gene flow between two populations.

The fossil record provides a rich history of the species diversity that has occurred on Earth.

Systematics is the science of studying the evolutionary history of the species on Earth.

For more information about the factors that produce evolution on a large scale, see the following discussions:

Section 14.1 examines the role that the Galápagos finches played in establishing natural selection as the mechanism for evolutionary change.

Section 14.2 describes how the fossil record is used as evidence of evolutionary change.

Section 19.1 provides the phylogenetic tree of animal evolution.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

16.1 Speciation and Macroevolution

1. A biological species
   - **a.** always looks different from other species.
   - **b.** always has a different chromosome number from that of other species.
   - **c.** is reproductively isolated from other species.
   - **d.** never occupies the same niche as other species.

For questions 2–9, indicate the type of isolating mechanism described in each scenario.

Key:

- **a.** habitat isolation
- **b.** temporal isolation
- **c.** behavioral isolation
- **d.** mechanical isolation
- **e.** gamete isolation
- **f.** zygote mortality
- **g.** hybrid sterility
- **h.** low F_2 fitness

2. Females of one species do not recognize the courtship behaviors of males of another species.
3. One species reproduces at a different time of year than another species.
4. A cross between two species produces a zygote that always dies.
5. Two species do not interbreed because they occupy different areas.
6. A hybrid between two species produces gametes that are not viable.
7. Two species of plants do not hybridize because they are visited by different pollinators.
8. The sperm of one species cannot survive in the reproductive tract of another species.
9. The offspring of two hybrid individuals exhibit poor vigor.
10. Allopatric, but not sympatric, speciation requires
    - **a.** reproductive isolation.
    - **b.** geographic isolation.
    - **c.** spontaneous differences between males and females.
    - **d.** prior hybridization.
    - **e.** a rapid rate of mutation.

16.2 The Fossil Record

11. One benefit of the fossil record is
    - **a.** that hard parts of bodies are more likely to fossilize.
    - **b.** that fossils can be dated.
    - **c.** its completeness.
    - **d.** that fossils congregate in one place.
    - **e.** All of these are correct.
12. Which of the following is not a contribution to mass extinctions?
    - **a.** loss of habitat
    - **b.** continental drift
    - **c.** adaptive radiation
    - **d.** impacts of meteorites

16.3 Systematics

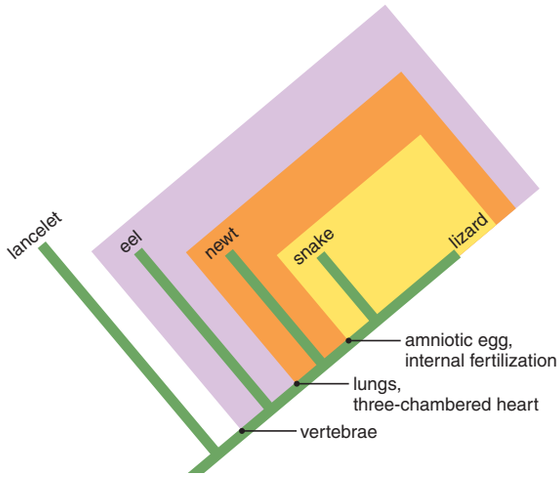
13. Which of the following is the scientific name of an organism?

a. *Rosa rugosa*
b. *Rosa*
c. *rugosa*
d. *rugosa rugosa*
e. Both a and d are correct.

14. Which of these statements best pertains to taxonomy?

a. Species always have three-part names, such as *Homo sapiens sapiens.*
b. Species are always reproductively isolated from other species.
c. Species share ancestral traits but may have their own unique derived traits.
d. Species always look exactly alike.
e. Both c and d are correct.

15. Answer these questions about the following cladogram.



a. This cladogram contains how many clades? How are they designated in the diagram?
b. What character is shared by all animals in the study group? What characters are shared by only snakes and lizards?
c. Which animals share the most recent common ancestor? How do you know?

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

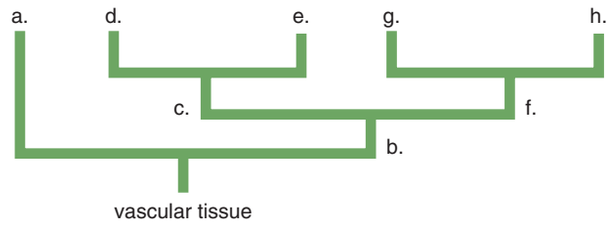
The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Natural Selection

Thinking Critic€llŒA, out the Conce..ts

1. Using as many terms as necessary (from both ± and Y axes), fill in the proposed phylogenetic tree for vascular plants.

	Ferns	Conifers	Ginkgos	Monocots	Eudicots
vascular tissue	x	x	x	x	x
produce seeds		x	x	x	x
naked seeds		x	x		
needlelike leaves		x			
fan-shaped leaves			x		
enclosed seeds				x	x
one embryonic leaf				x	
two embryonic leaves					x



2. The Hawaiian Islands are located thousands of kilometers from any mainland. Each island arose from the sea bottom and was colonized by plants and animals that drifted in on ocean currents or winds. Each island has a unique environment in which its inhabitants have evolved. Consequently, most of the plant and animal species on the islands do not exist anywhere else in the world.

In contrast, on the islands of the Florida ⊠eys, there are no unique or indigenous species. All of the species on those islands also exist on the mainland. Suggest an explanation for these two different patterns of speciation.

3. Reconstructing evolutionary relationships can have its benefits. For example, an emerging virus is apt to jump to a related species rather than to an unrelated species. We now know, for example, that the HIV virus jumped from the chimpanzee– with which we share over 90% of our DNA sequence– to humans. Chimpanzees don't become ill from the virus; therefore, studying their immune system might help us develop strategies to combat AIDS in humans. But what about the study of evolutionary relationships between organisms that are not closely related to humans?

a. Should the public be willing to fund all types of research or only research that has immediate medical benefits, as was described for HIV research?
b. Would you be willing to fund systematics research that helps us understand our evolutionary past, even if the medical benefit is not immediately known?

17

The Microorganisms: Viruses, Bacteria, and Protists

Bird Flu: H5N1 and H7N9

H5N1 is commonly called the "bird flu," or avian flu. However, these influenza viruses infect more than just birds. Since 2003, over 600 people have been infected with H5N1. While cases of H5N1 are still rare, there is a 60% mortality rate among individuals who are exposed to H5N1, making it a concern of health officials around the world. And H5N1 is not the only form of "bird flu." In 2013 a new strain of avian flu, called H7N9, was reported in Southeast Asia. Although present in bird populations for sometime, H7N9 has just recently made the jump to humans. While both H5N1 and H7N9 are not able to be transmitted from one human to another, other forms of viruses are easily passed between people.

In this chapter we will see that certain viruses and other microbes, such as bacteria, are the cause of many serious diseases in plants and animals, including humans. The reason is that microbes such as the H5N1 virus have the ability to evolve, often fast enough to outmaneuver our own immune systems and our ability to develop effective immunizations and medical treatments. Yet not all microbes cause illness. Our skin is home to over 180 different bacterial species, and our guts are full of bacteria that assist with digestion. Bacteria have uses that include cleaning up oil spills, treating sewage, and even producing human proteins through genetic engineering. In addition, microbes are an essential component of ecosystems. Archaea and bacteria are at the base of the tree of life and were the first living organisms on Earth. Surprisingly, molecular biologists tell us we are more closely related to archaea than to bacteria. In this chapter, we examine these amazing microbes—viruses and prokaryotes.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. Based on the characteristics shared by all living organisms, should viruses be considered living?
2. Although some cause disease, why are microorganisms essential to life?

OUTLINE

17.1 The Viruses 290
17.2 Viroids and Prions 294
17.3 The Prokaryotes 295
17.4 The Protists 303

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Figure 4.2 How much smaller is a virus than a bacterial cell? Than an animal or a plant cell?

Section 4.3 What are the differences between the structure of a prokaryotic and that of a eukaryotic cell?

Figure 16.20 What two domains of life contain prokaryotic organisms?

17.1 The Viruses

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the structure of a virus.
2. Explain the basis of viral host specificity.
3. Describe the process of viral reproduction.

The study of **viruses** has contributed much to our understanding of disease, genetics, and even the characteristics of living things. Their contribution is surprising, because viruses are not included in the classification of organisms. They are noncellular, while all organisms are cellular. Viruses can be amazingly small; most are only about 0.2 microns (or μ), or one-fifth the size of a bacterium.

Each type of virus always has at least two parts: an outer **capsid,** composed of protein subunits, and an inner core of nucleic acid—either DNA or RNA. The influenza shown in **Figure 17.1** also has spikes (formed from a glycoprotein), which are involved in attaching the virus to the host cell. In the case of influenza viruses, there are two types of spikes, and the variations in their structure give the virus its name, such as H5N1 and H7N9. In some animal viruses, the capsid is surrounded by an outer membranous envelope with glycoprotein spikes. The envelope is actually a piece of the host's plasma membrane, which also contains proteins produced by the virus. The interior of a virus can contain various enzymes that assist in the manufacture of new viruses. The viral genome may be either DNA or RNA, but it has at most several hundred genes; by contrast, a human cell contains around 25,000 genes.

Should viruses be considered living? Both scientific and philosophical debates have raged with regard to this question. Viruses are *obligate intracellular parasites,* because they can reproduce only inside a living cell (*obligate* means restricted to a specific form). Outside a living cell, viruses can be stored independently of living cells or even synthesized in the laboratory from chemicals. Still, viruses do have a genome that mutates and functions to direct their reproduction when inside a cell.

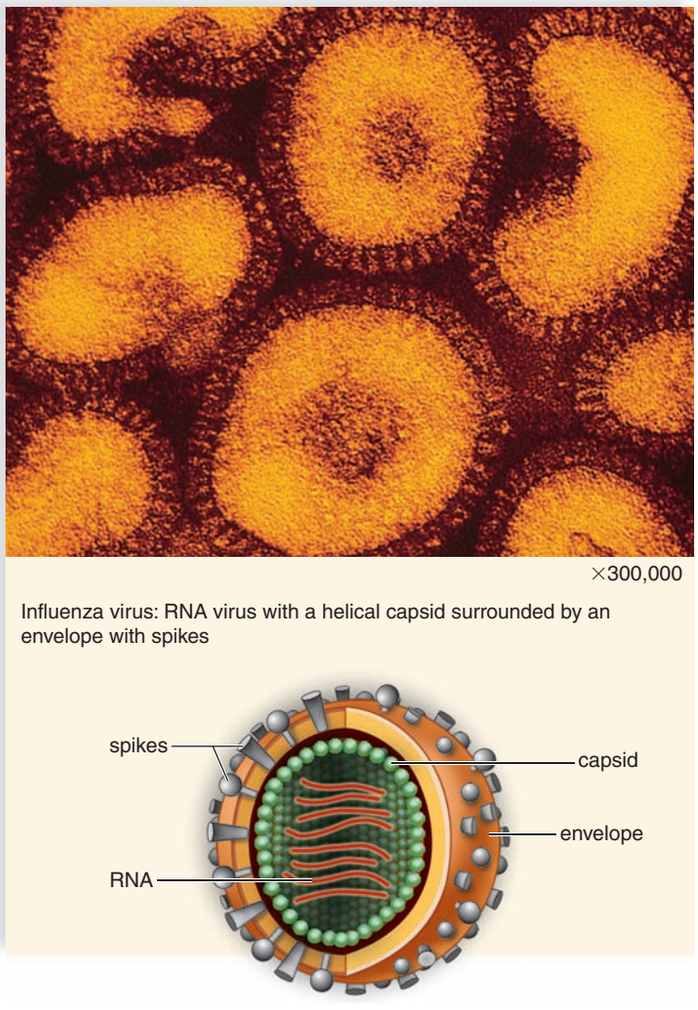


Figure 17.1 **Anatomy of an influenza virus.**

Typical of viruses, influenza has a nucleic acid core (in this case, RNA) and a coat of protein called the capsid. The projections, called spikes, help a virus enter a cell and account for the name of an influenza virus.

Viral Reproduction

Viruses are specific to a particular host cell because a spike, or some portion of the capsid, adheres in a lock-and-key manner to a specific molecule (called a receptor) on the host cell's outer surface. A virus cannot infect a host cell to which it is unable to attach. For example, the tobacco mosaic virus (discussed on page 292) cannot infect an exposed human because its capsid cannot attach to the receptors on the surfaces of human cells. Once inside a host cell, the viral genome takes over the metabolic machinery of the host cell. In large measure, the virus uses this machinery, including the host's enzymes, ribosomes, transfer RNA (tRNA), and ATP, for its reproduction.

Video How Viruses Attack

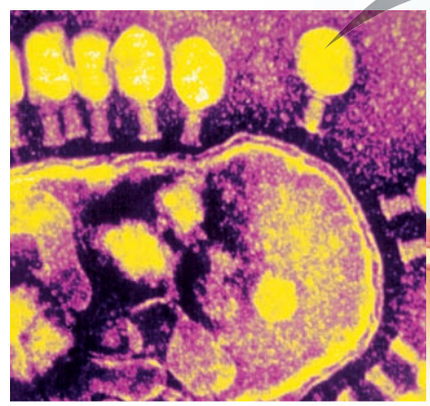
Reproduction of Bacteriophages

Video
Virus Lytic Cycle

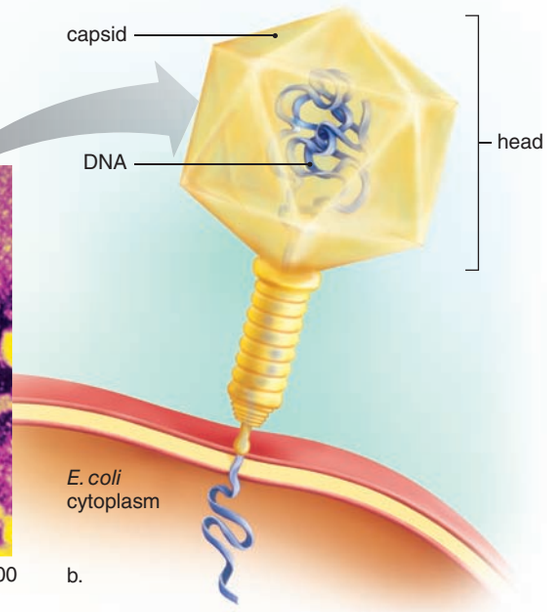
Animation
Lambda Phage Replication

A **bacteriophage,** or simply *phage,* is a virus that reproduces in a bacterium. Bacteriophages are named in different ways; the one shown in **Figure 17.2** is called lambda (λ). When phage λ reproduces, it can undergo the lytic cycle or the lysogenic cycle. The **lytic cycle** (**Fig. 17.3***a*) may be divided into five stages: attachment, penetration, biosynthesis, maturation, and release. 1 During *attachment,* the capsid combines with a receptor in the bacterial cell wall. 2 During *penetration,* a viral enzyme digests away part of the cell wall, and viral DNA is injected into the bacterial cell. 3 *Biosynthesis* of viral components begins after the virus inactivates host genes not necessary to viral replication. The machinery of the host cell then carries out viral DNA replication and production of multiple copies of the capsid protein subunits. 4 During *maturation,* viral DNA and capsids assemble to produce several hundred viral particles. Lysozyme, an enzyme coded for by a viral gene, disrupts the cell wall, and 5 *release* of phage particles occurs. The bacterial cell dies as a result.

In the **lysogenic cycle** (Fig. 17.3*b*), the infected bacterium does not immediately produce phage, but it may do so in the future. In the meantime, the phage is *latent*—not actively reproducing. Following attachment and penetration, *integration* occurs: Viral DNA becomes incorporated into bacterial DNA with no destruction of host DNA. While latent, the viral DNA is called a *prophage*. The prophage is replicated along with the host DNA, and all subsequent cells, called lysogenic cells, carry a copy of the prophage. Certain environmental factors, such as ultraviolet radiation, can induce the prophage to enter the lytic stage of biosynthesis, followed by maturation and release.



a. ×15,300



b.

Figure 17.2 **Bacteriophage lambda (λ).**

a. A micrograph shows many viral particles attached to a bacterium.
b. How DNA from a virus enters a bacterium, such as *E. coli.*

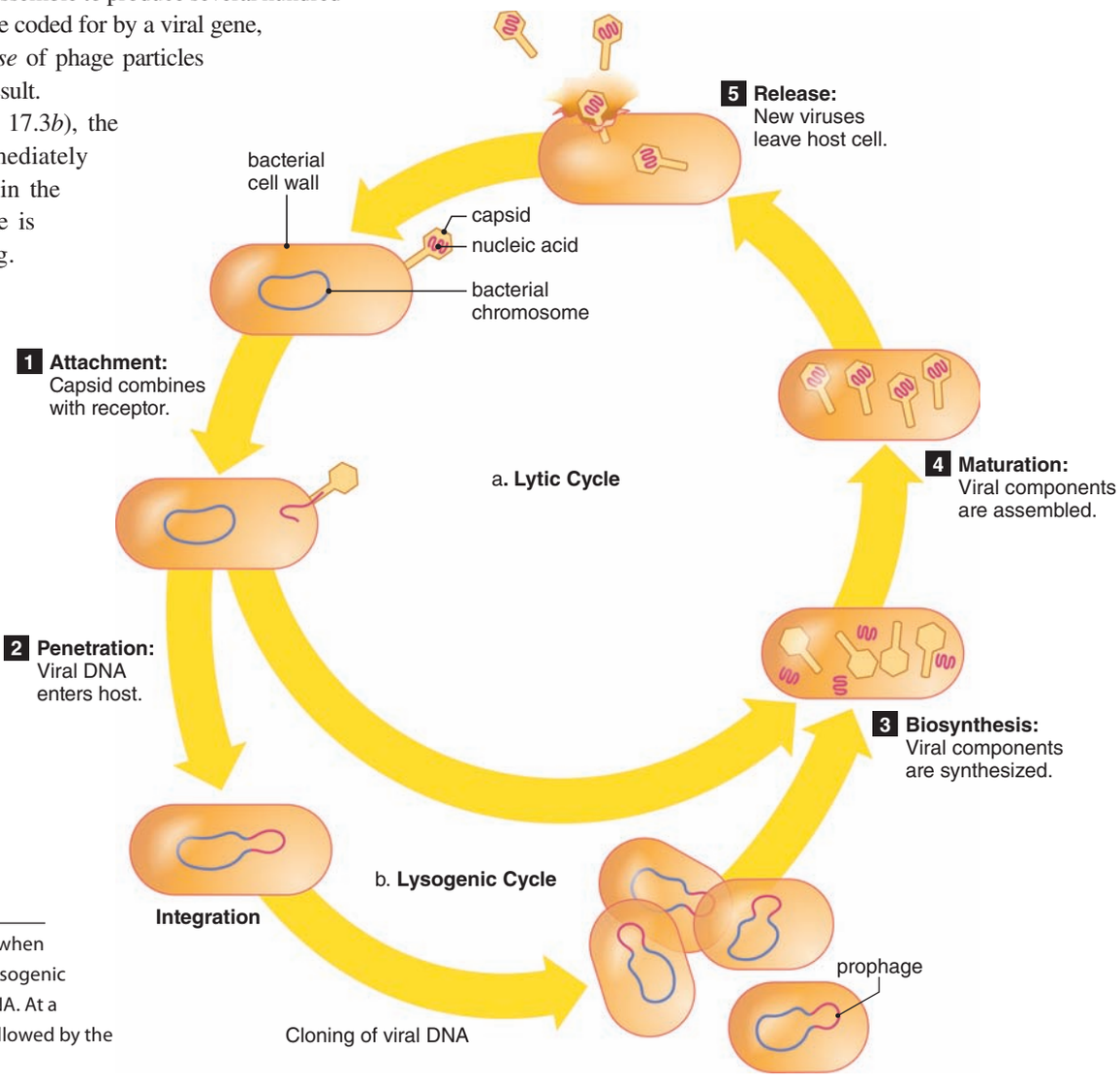


Figure 17.3 **Lytic and lysogenic cycles of a virus called lambda.**

a. In the lytic cycle, viral particles escape when the cell is lysed (broken open). **b.** In the lysogenic cycle, viral DNA is integrated into host DNA. At a future time, the lysogenic cycle can be followed by the last three steps of the lytic cycle.

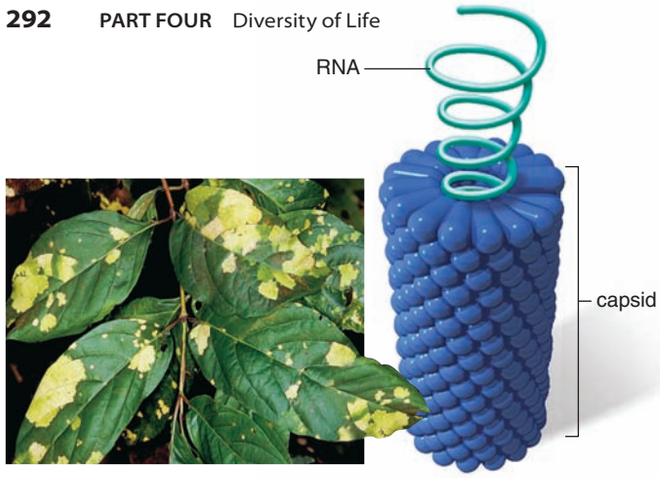


Figure 17.4 **Infected tobacco plant.**

Mottling and a distorted leaf shape are typical of a tobacco mosaic virus infection.

Plant Viruses

Crops and garden plants are also subject to viral infections. Plant viruses tend to enter through damaged tissues and then move about the plant through *plasmodesmata,* cytoplasmic strands that extend between plant cell walls. The best studied plant virus is tobacco mosaic virus, a long, rod-shaped virus with only one type of protein subunit in its capsid (**Fig. 17.4**). Not all viruses are deadly, but over time, they often debilitate a plant.

Viruses are often passed from one plant to another by insects and gardening tools, which move sap from one plant to another. Viral particles are also transmitted by way of seeds and pollen. Unfortunately, no chemical can control viral diseases. Until recently, the only way to deal with viral diseases was to destroy symptomatic plants and to control the insect vector, if there is one. Now that bioengineering is routine (see Chapter 12), it is possible to transfer genes conferring disease resistance between plants. One of the most successful examples is the creation of papaya plants resistant to papaya ring spot virus (PRSV) in Hawaii. One transgenic line is now completely resistant to PRSV.

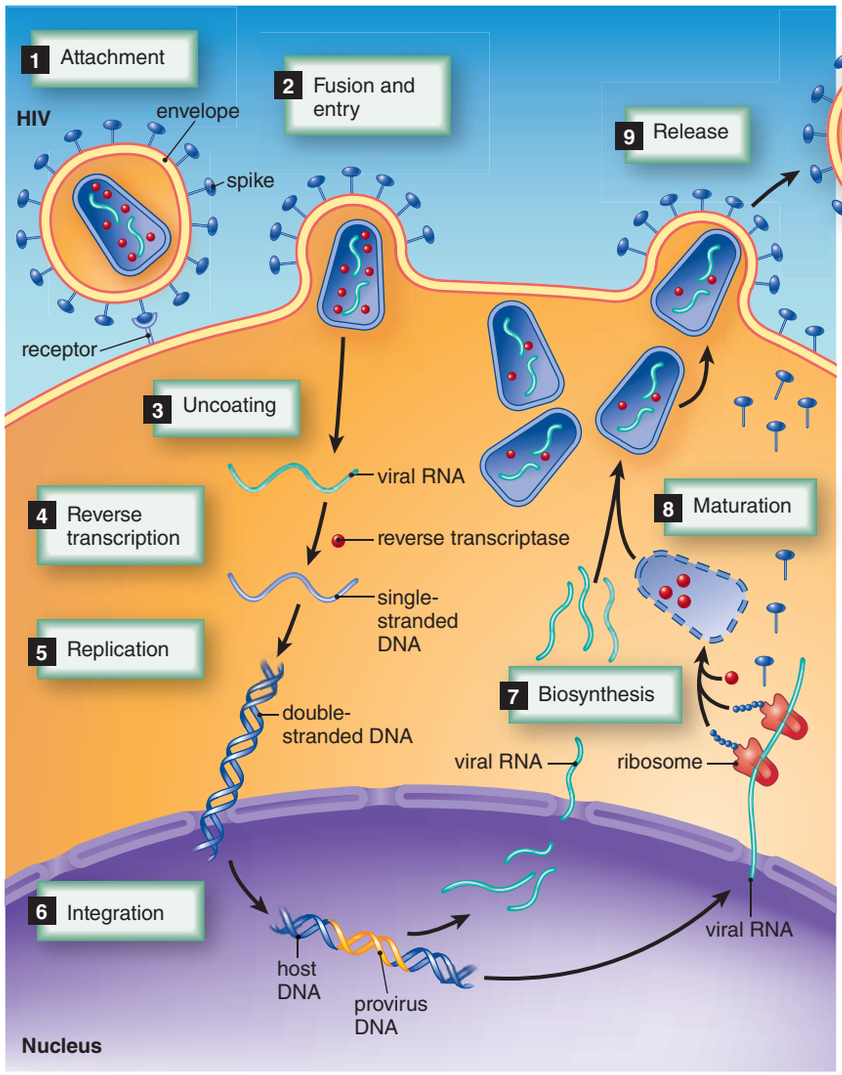


Figure 17.5 **Reproduction of HIV.**

HIV, the virus that causes AIDS, goes through the steps noted in the boxes. Because HIV is a retrovirus with an RNA genome, the enzyme reverse transcriptase is utilized to produce a single-stranded DNA copy of the genome. After synthesis of a complementary strand, the double-stranded viral DNA integrates into the host DNA.

Animal Viruses

Viruses that cause disease in animals, including humans, reproduce in a manner similar to that of bacteriophages (**Fig. 17.5**). However, there are modifications. In particular, some, but not all, animal viruses have an outer membranous envelope beyond their capsid. After attachment to a receptor in the plasma membrane, viruses with an envelope either fuse with the plasma membrane or enter by endocytosis. After an enveloped virus enters, uncoating follows—that is, the capsid is removed by enzymes within the host cell (see 1 to 3). Once the viral genome, either DNA or RNA, is free of its covering, biosynthesis plus the other steps then proceed (see 7 to 9). While a naked animal virus exits the host cell in the same manner as does a bacteriophage, those with an envelope bud from the cell. During budding, the virus picks up its envelope, consisting mainly of lipids and proteins, from the host plasma membrane. Spikes, those portions of the envelope that allow the virus to enter a host cell, are coded for by viral genes.

The herpesviruses, which cause cold sores, genital herpes, and chickenpox in humans, are examples of infections that remain latent much of the time. Herpesviruses linger in spinal ganglia until stress, excessive sunlight, or some other stimulus causes them to undergo the lytic cycle. The human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the cause of AIDS, remains relatively latent in lymphocytes, slowly releasing new viruses.

Animation Entry of an Animal Virus into a Host Cell

Video Halting Hepatitis

Retroviruses

Retroviruses are RNA animal viruses that have a DNA stage. Figure 17.5 illustrates the reproduction of the retrovirus HIV. A retrovirus contains an enzyme called reverse transcriptase, which carries out transcription of RNA to DNA. The enzyme synthesizes one strand of DNA using the viral RNA as a template, as well as a DNA strand that is complementary to the first one. Using host enzymes, the resulting double-stranded DNA is integrated into the host genome. The viral DNA (*provirus*) remains in the host genome and is replicated when host DNA is replicated (see 4 to 6). When or if this DNA is transcribed, new viruses are produced by the steps we have already cited: biosynthesis, maturation, and release. Being an animal virus with an envelope, HIV buds from the cell. More information on HIV, and the disease AIDS, is provided in Chapter 26.

Animation Replication Cycle of a Retrovirus

Emerging Viruses

HIV is an **emerging virus,** the causative agent of a disease that only recently has infected large numbers of people. Other examples of emerging viruses are West Nile virus, SARS virus, hantavirus, Ebola virus, and avian influenza (H5N1) virus (**Fig. 17.6**).

Infectious diseases emerge in several different ways. In some cases, the virus is simply transported from one location to another. The West Nile virus is an emerging virus because it changed its range: It was transported into the United States and is taking hold in bird and mosquito populations. Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) was clearly transported from Asia to Toronto, Canada. A world in which you can begin your day in Bangkok and end it in Los Angeles is a world in which disease can spread at an unprecedented rate.

Video Killer Flu

Other factors can also cause infectious viruses to emerge. Viruses are well known for their high mutation rates. Some of these mutations affect the structure of the spikes or capsids, so a virus that previously could infect only a particular animal species can now also infect the human species. For example, the diseases AIDS and Ebola fever are caused by viruses that at one time infected only monkeys and apes. SARS is another mutant virus that most likely jumped species. A related virus was isolated from the palm civet, a catlike carnivore sold for food in China. Wild ducks are resistant to avian influenza viruses that can spread from them to chickens, which increases the likelihood the disease, such as influenza, will spread to humans. Another way a virus could emerge is by a change in the mode of transmission—for example, from requiring contact to being transmitted through the air. Health officials are concerned that this may occur for viruses such as H5N1, thus greatly increasing the number of people who may be exposed to diseases such as bird flu.

Video Virus Crisis

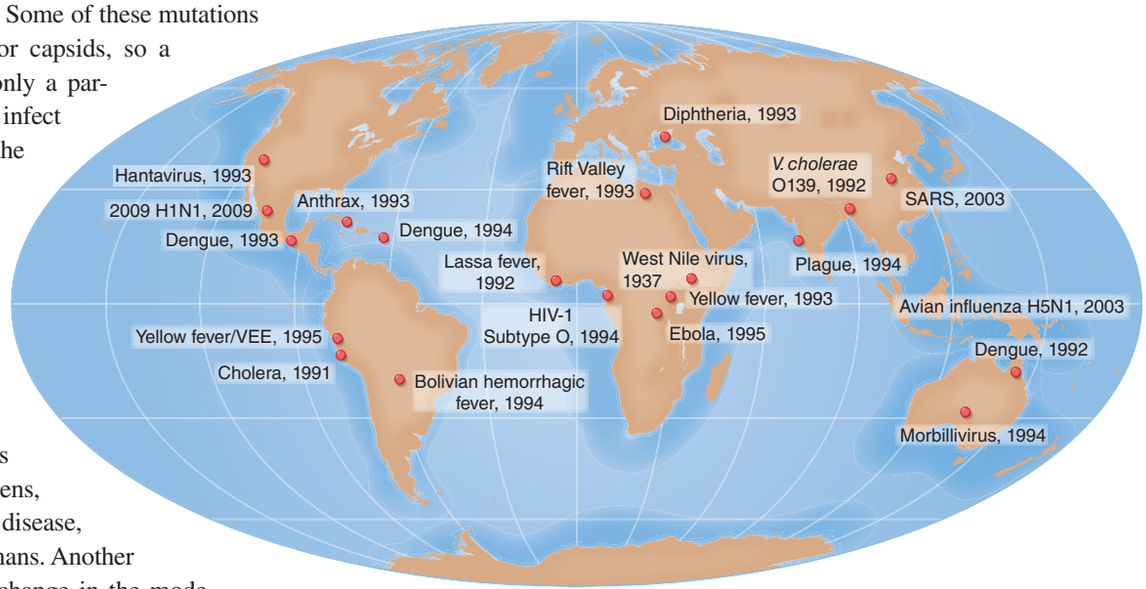
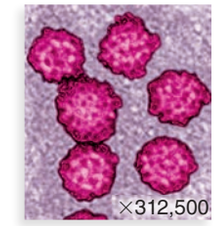


Figure 17.6 **Emerging diseases.**

Emerging diseases, such as those noted here according to their country of origin, are new or demonstrate increased prevalence. These disease-causing agents may have acquired new virulence factors, or environmental factors may have encouraged their spread to an increased number of hosts.

Connections: Health

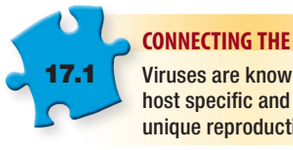
What is norovirus?



Sometimes called "stomach flu" or "food poisoning," norovirus is one of the types of viruses that can cause gastroenteritis, or an inflammation of the stomach and intestines. It is a highly contagious virus that can be contracted by coming in contact with food, surfaces, or other people that have been exposed to norovirus. While most people recover from norovirus in a few days, the virus can cause several forms of illness and death. The most effective way of protecting yourself from norovirus is by thorough hand-washing, since most hand sanitizers do not destroy the virus.

Drug Control of Human Viral Diseases

Because viruses reproduce using the metabolic machinery of the cell, it has been difficult to develop antiviral drugs. If a patient has not been vaccinated against the agent, he or she is usually told to simply let the virus run its course. However, some antiviral drugs are available. Most antiviral compounds, such as ribavirin and acyclovir, are structurally similar to nucleotides; therefore, they interfere with viral genome synthesis. Compounds related to acyclovir are commonly used to suppress herpes outbreaks. HIV is treated with antiviral compounds specific to a retrovirus. The well-publicized drug AZT and others block reverse transcriptase. And HIV protease inhibitors block the enzymes required for the maturation of viral proteins.



CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Viruses are known to be host specific and have unique reproductive cycles.

Check Your Progress 17.1

1. Describe the structure of a virus.
2. Describe the two ways that a virus may infect a cell.
3. Explain why a virus is specific in the types of cells that it will infect.

17.2 Viroids and Prions

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the composition of viroids and prions.
2. Compare and constrast the structure of a viroid with that of a virus.

About a dozen crop diseases have been attributed not to viruses but to **viroids,** which are strands of RNA that are naked (not covered by a capsid). Like viruses, though, viroids direct the cell to produce more viroids. Viroids are a concern of agriculture, since they can not only cause the plant to be unhealthy but can also alter the physical characteristics of the plant, thus reducing its economic value.

Some diseases in humans have been attributed to **prions,** a term coined for *proteinaceous infectious* particles. The discovery of prions began when it was observed that members of a primitive tribe, the Fore, in the highlands of Papua New Guinea died from a disease called kuru (meaning trembling with fear) after participating in the cannibalistic practice of eating a deceased person's brain (**Fig. 17.7**). The causative agent was smaller than a virus—it was a misshapen protein. It appears that a normal protein changes shape, so that its polypeptide chain is in a different configuration. The result is a fatal prion infection and a neurodegenerative disorder.

a.

b.

Figure 17.7 Viroids diseases in plants.

a. Viroids infect plants. For example, PSTVd causes potatoes to be become elongated and fiberous compared to normal potatoes.
b. Cannibalistic tribesman in Papau, New Guinea.

It is believed that a prion can interact with normal proteins, causing them to change shape and, in some cases, to act as infectious agents themselves. The process has been best studied in a disease called scrapie, which attacks sheep. Other prion diseases include the widely publicized mad cow disease; human maladies, such as Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD); and a variety of chronic wasting syndromes in several other animal species.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

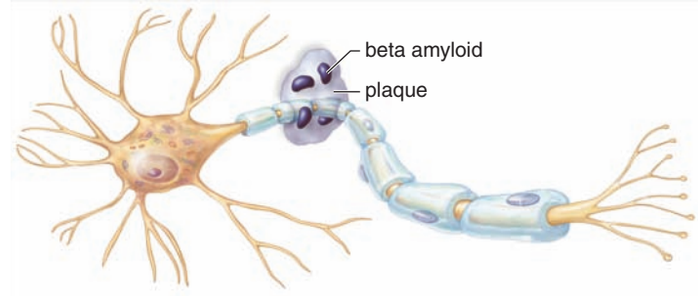
Viroids and prions have many similarities of viruses.

Check Your Progress 17.2

1. Contrast a viroid with a virus.
2. Explain how prions and proteins are related.
3. List a few prion disorders.

Connections: Health

Do prions cause Alzheimer disease?



One of the symptoms of Alzheimer disease is an accumulation of a protein called beta amyloid. This accumulation forms tangled structures in the brain called plaques. In normal brain cells, a protein prevents plaques of beta amyloid from forming. In some individuals, a mutation in a gene (*PrP*) causes this protein to malfunction and, in effect, become a prion. For people who have this mutation, beta amyloid accumulates and causes the death of nerve cells associated with Alzheimer disease.

17.3 The Prokaryotes

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Discuss how chemical and biological evolution contributed to the formation of the first cells.
2. Describe the structure and reproductive process of a prokaryotic cell.
3. Explain how bacteria benefit humans and society.
4. Distinguish between bacteria and archaea.

What was the first cellular life on Earth like? What features in modern organisms are the most primitive? The answers to these questions will probably come from a study of **prokaryotes**. These cells harbor no nucleus to contain their genome. They have no sealed compartments and no membrane-bounded organelles to perform specific functions, yet these structurally simple, single-celled organisms are endowed with far greater metabolic capabilities than more structurally complex organisms; some of them need neither air nor organic matter to survive. The two types of prokaryotes are the bacteria and the archaea. First, we will discuss the origin of cells, then examine the bacteria, the best-known prokaryotes, followed by the archaea.

The Origin of Cells

Until the nineteenth century, many thought that prokaryotes could arise spontaneously. But in 1850, Louis Pasteur showed that previously sterilized broth cannot become cloudy with growth unless it is exposed directly to the air,

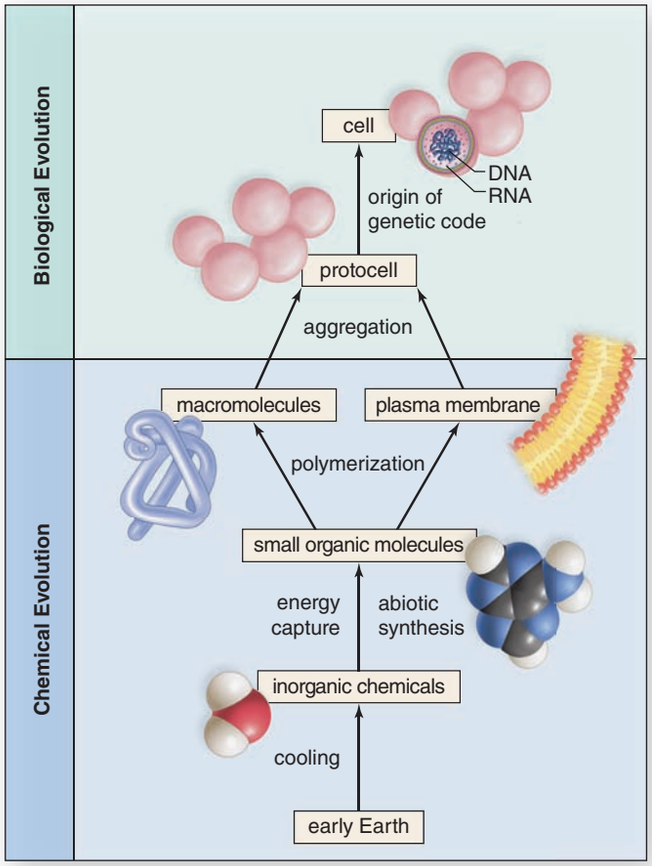


Figure 17.8 **Origin of the first cell(s).**

There was an increase in the complexity of macromolecules, leading to a self-replicating system (DNA → RNA → protein) enclosed by a plasma membrane. The protocell underwent biological evolution, becoming a true cell.

where bacteria are abundant. The cell theory formulated about this time states that all organisms are composed of cells, and cells come only from preexisting cells. How, then, did the first cells arise? Much work has gone into studying this question, which pertains to the origin of life, because all living organisms are composed of cells.

The first living cells were prokaryotes, possessing DNA but lacking a nucleus. Fossilized prokaryotes have been found in rocks that are 3.5 billion years old; scientists think that prokaryotes are likely to have existed for millions of years prior to these most ancient fossils. The first cells were preceded by biological macromolecules, such as proteins and nucleic acids. Today, amino acids, nucleotides, and other building blocks for biological macromolecules are routinely produced by living cells; this is known as *biotic synthesis*. Prior to cellular life, macromolecules must have formed by *abiotic synthesis.*

Conditions on the early Earth were very different than they are today. Initially, temperatures were very high. Although there was little free oxygen (O_2) in the atmosphere, there would have been an abundance of other gases, such as water vapor (H_2O), carbon dioxide (CO_2), and nitrogen (N_2), along with smaller amounts of hydrogen (H_2), methane (CH_4), ammonia (NH_3), hydrogen sulfide (H_2S), and carbon monoxide (CO). As the early Earth cooled, water vapor condensed to liquid water, and rain began to fall, producing the oceans. The process of chemical evolution, or the abiotic synthesis of organic monomers under these special conditions, may have occurred with the input of energy from a variety of possible sources, including lightning, sunlight, meteorite impacts, volcanic activity, or radioactive decay (**Fig. 17.8**). In the 1950s, Stanley Miller conducted a now famous experiment in which he attempted to replicate these conditions. His results indicated that it was possible to form amino acids under these conditions. Scientists are still debating whether these first reactions occured within the atmosphere, deep in the ocean, or elsewhere in the solar system. However, they widely agree that the first macromolecules arose by abiotic synthesis.

Protocells, cell-like structures complete with an outer membrane, may have resulted from the self-assembly of macromolecules and eventually given rise to cellular life. In fact, researchers have studied cell-like structures that arise from collections of biological macromolecules under laboratory conditions. Some are water-filled spheres with an outer layer similar to that of a cell. If enzymes are trapped inside a sphere, they can catalyze chemical reactions, such as those of cellular metabolism.

An important development in the biological evolution of life would have been a molecule capable of passing information about metabolism and structure from one generation to the next, the role fulfilled by DNA in today's cells. Some researchers think the first hereditary molecule may have been RNA. It is hypothesized that, over time, the more stable DNA replaced RNA as a long-term repository for genetic information, leading to the self-replicating system seen in all living cells today.

Bacteria

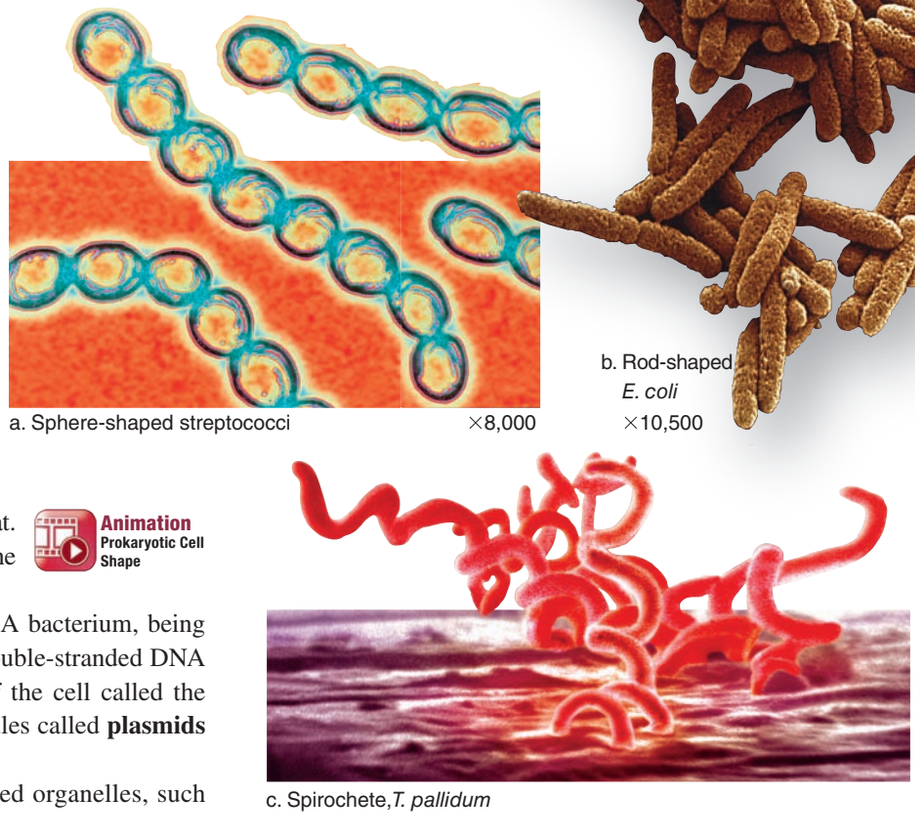
Bacteria are the most diverse and prevalent organisms on Earth. Billions of bacteria exist in nearly every square meter of soil, water, and air. They also make a home on our skin and in our intestines. Although tens of thousands of different bacteria have been identified, this is likely only a very small fraction of the total species on the planet. For example, less than 1% of bacteria in the

soil can be grown in the laboratory. However, molecular genetic techniques are being used to discover the extent of bacterial diversity.

General Biology of Bacteria

Bacterial Structure Bacteria have a variety of shapes. However, most bacteria are spheres (called cocci), rods (called bacilli), or spirals (called spirilla; sing., spirillum) if they are rigid; they are called spirochetes if they are flexible (**Fig. 17.9**). Intermediate forms between a sphere and a rod are coccobacilli; a slightly curved rod is called a vibrio. Many bacteria grow as single cells, but some form doublets (the diplococci and diplobacilli). Others form chains, as do the streptococci, the cause of strep throat. A third growth habit resembles a bunch of grapes, as in the staphylococci, a cause of food poisoning.

Animation
Prokaryotic Cell Shape



a. Sphere-shaped streptococci ×8,000

b. Rod-shaped *E. coli* ×10,500

c. Spirochete, *T. pallidum*

Figure 17.9 **Shapes of bacteria.**

a. Streptococci, which exist as chains of cocci, cause a number of illnesses, including strep throat. **b.** *Escherichia coli*, which lives in your intestines, is a rod-shaped bacillus. **c.** *Treponema pallidum*, the cause of syphilis, is a spirochete.

Figure 17.10*a* shows the structure of a bacterium. A bacterium, being a prokaryote, has no nucleus. A single, closed circle of double-stranded DNA constitutes the chromosome, which occurs in an area of the cell called the **nucleoid.** In some cases, extrachromosomal DNA molecules called **plasmids** are also found in bacteria.

Bacteria have ribosomes but not membrane-bounded organelles, such as mitochondria and chloroplasts. However, some bacteria have internal folds of membranes, which contain enzymes for cellular functions. These do not enclose spaces in the same way as an eukaryotic organelle. An example in photosynthetic bacteria are the thylakoid membranes, which contain the pigments needed for the light-reactions. Motile bacteria generally use **flagella** for locomotion, but never cilia. The bacterial flagellum is not structured like a eukaryotic flagellum (Fig. 17.10*b*). It has a filament composed of three strands of the protein flagellin wound in a helix. The filament is inserted into a hook that is anchored by a basal body. The fully reversible 360° rotation causes the bacterium to spin as it moves forward and backward.

Animation
Bacterial Locomotion

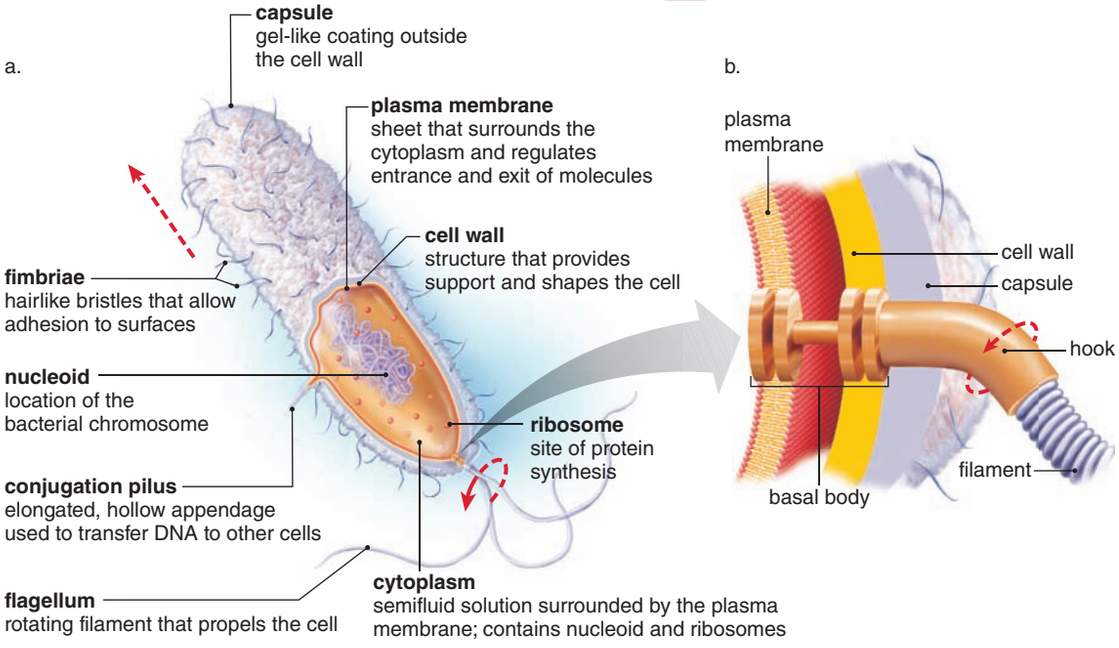


Figure 17.10 **Flagella.**

a. The structure of a prokaryotic cell. **b.** Each flagellum of a bacterium contains a basal body, a hook, and a filament. The red-dashed arrows indicate that the hook and filament rotate 360°.

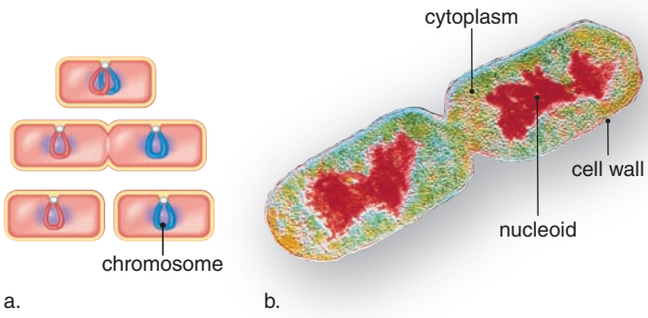


Figure 17.11 Binary fission.

a. Binary fission produces two cells with identical genetic information. **b.** A prokaryotic cell undergoing binary fission.

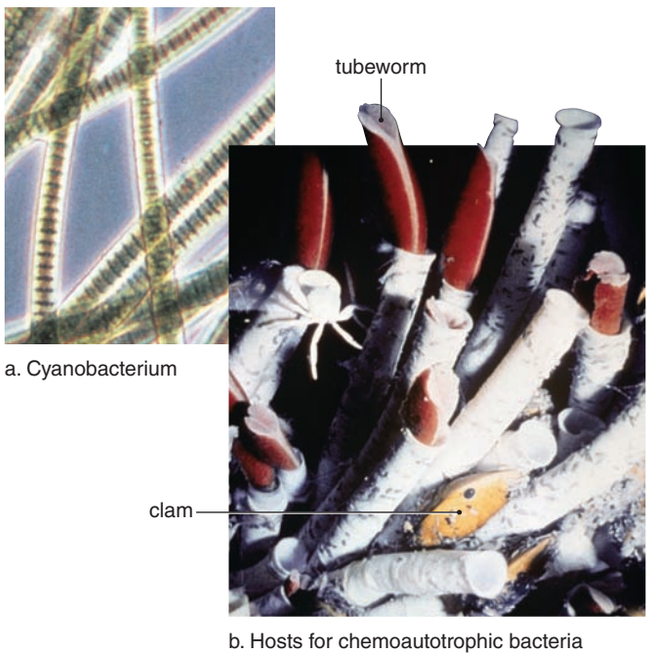


Figure 17.12 Bacterial autotrophs.

a. Cyanobacteria are photoautotrophs that photosynthesize in the same manner as plants—they split water and release oxygen. **b.** Certain chemoautotrophic bacteria live inside tube worms, where they produce organic compounds without the need of sunlight. In this way, they help support ecosystems at hydrothermal vents deep in the ocean.

Bacteria have an outer cell wall strengthened not by cellulose but by **peptidoglycan,** a complex of polysaccharides linked by amino acids. The cell wall prevents bacteria from bursting or collapsing due to osmotic changes. Parasitic bacteria are further protected from host defenses by a polysaccharide capsule that surrounds the cell wall.

Bacterial Reproduction Bacteria (and archaea) reproduce asexually by means of **binary fission.** The single, circular chromosome replicates, and then the two copies separate as the cell enlarges. The newly formed plasma membrane and cell wall partition the two new cells, with a chromosome in each one (**Fig. 17.11**). Mitosis, which requires the formation of a spindle apparatus, does not occur in prokaryotes. Binary fission turns one cell into two cells, two cells into four cells, four cells into eight cells, and so on until billions of cells have been produced.

In eukaryotes, genetic recombination occurs as a result of sexual reproduction. Sexual reproduction does not occur among prokaryotes, but three means of genetic recombination have been observed in bacteria. **Conjugation** occurs when a donor cell passes DNA directly to a recipient cell. During conjugation, the donor and recipient are temporarily linked together, often by means of a *conjugation pilus*. While they are linked, the donor cell passes DNA to the recipient cell. **Transformation** occurs when a bacterium picks up (from the surroundings) free pieces of DNA secreted by live prokaryotes or released by dead prokaryotes. During **transduction,** bacteriophages carry portions of bacterial DNA from one cell to another. Plasmids, which sometimes carry genes for resistance to antibiotics, can be transferred between infectious bacteria by any of these means.

When faced with unfavorable environmental conditions, some bacteria form **endospores.** A portion of the cytoplasm and a copy of the chromosome dehydrate and are then encased by three heavy, protective spore coats. The rest of the bacterial cell deteriorates, and the endospore is released. Spores survive in the harshest of environments—desert heat and desiccation, boiling temperatures, polar ice, and extreme ultraviolet radiation. They also survive for very long periods. When anthrax spores 1,300 years old germinate, they can still cause a severe infection (usually seen in cattle and sheep). Humans also fear a deadly but uncommon type of food poisoning called botulism, which is caused by the germination of endospores inside cans of food. Spore formation is not a means of reproduction, but it does allow the survival and dispersal of bacteria to new places.

Bacterial Nutrition Prokaryotes are more metabolically diverse than eukaryotes. For example, plants are **photoautotrophs** (many times called autotrophs or photosynthesizers) that can only perform oxygenic photosynthesis: They depend on solar energy to split water and energize electrons for the reduction of carbon dioxide. An example of a photosynthetic bacteria are the **cyanobacteria.** The cyanobacteria may well represent the oldest lineage of oxygenic organisms (**Fig. 17.12***a*). Some fossil cyanobacteria have been dated at 3.5 billion years old. The evolution of cyanobacteria drastically altered the atmosphere of the early Earth by adding vast amounts of oxygen. Many cyanobacteria are capable of fixing atmospheric nitrogen and reducing it to an organic form. Therefore, they need only minerals, air, sunlight, and water for growth.

Other bacterial photosynthesizers don't release oxygen because they take electrons from a source other than water; some split hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) and release sulfur (S) in marshes where they live anaerobically.

The **chemoautotrophs** (also called chemosynthesizers) don't use solar energy at all. They reduce carbon dioxide using energetic electrons derived from inorganic molecules, such as ammonia or hydrogen gas. Electrons can also be extracted from certain minerals, such as iron. Some chemoautotrophs oxidize sulfur compounds spewing from deep-sea vents 2.5 kilometers below sea level. The organic compounds they produce support the growth of communities of organisms found at vents, where only darkness prevails (Fig. 17.12*b*).

Most bacteria are **chemoheterotrophs** (often referred to as simply heterotrophs); like animals, they take in organic nutrients, which they use as a source of energy and building blocks to synthesize macromolecules. The first cells were most likely chemoheterotrophs that fed on the abundant organic molecules in their environment. Autotrophs would have appeared later as the nutrient supply was depleted and the ability to make one's own food became advantageous. Unlike animals, chemoheterotrophic bacteria are **saprotrophs** that send enzymes into the environment and decompose almost any large organic molecule to smaller ones that are absorbable. There is probably no natural organic molecule that cannot be digested by at least one bacterial species. Bacteria play a critical role in recycling matter and making inorganic molecules available to photosynthesizers.

Heterotrophic bacteria may be either free-living or **symbiotic,** meaning that they form relationships that are (1) mutualistic (both partners benefit), (2) commensalistic (one partner benefits and the other is not harmed), or (3) parasitic (one partner benefits but the other is harmed). Mutualistic bacteria that live in human intestines release vitamins K and B_{12}, which we can use to help produce blood components. In the stomachs of cows and goats, mutualistic prokaryotes digest cellulose, enabling these animals to feed on grass.

Commensalism often occurs when one population modifies the environment in such a way that a second population benefits. Obligate anaerobes can live in our intestines only because the bacterium *Escherichia coli* uses up the available oxygen. The parasitic bacteria cause diseases, as discussed on page 300.

Environmental and Medical Importance of Bacteria

Bacteria in the Environment For an ecosystem to sustain its populations, the chemical elements available to living things must eventually be recycled. A fixed and limited number of elements are available to living organisms; the rest are either buried too deep in the Earth's crust or present in forms that are not usable. All living organisms, including producers, consumers, and decomposers, are involved in the important process of cycling elements to sustain life (see Fig. 1.4). Bacteria are *decomposers* that digest dead organic remains and return inorganic nutrients to producers. Without the work of decomposers, life would soon come to a halt.

While decomposing, bacteria perform the reactions needed for biogeochemical cycling, such as for the carbon and nitrogen cycles. Let's examine how bacteria participate in the nitrogen cycle (see Chapter 31). Plants are unable to fix atmospheric nitrogen (N_2), but they need a source of ammonia or nitrate in order to produce proteins. Bacteria in the soil can fix atmospheric nitrogen and/or change nitrogen compounds into forms that plants can use. In addition, mutualistic bacteria live in the root nodules of soybean, clover, and alfalfa plants, where they reduce atmospheric nitrogen to ammonia, which is used by plants (**Fig. 17.13**). Without the work of bacteria, nitrogen would not

Figure 17.13 Nodules of a legume.

Although some free-living bacteria carry on nitrogen fixation, those of the genus *Rhizobium* invade the roots of legumes, with the resultant formation of nodules. Here the bacteria convert atmospheric nitrogen to an organic nitrogen that the plant can use. These are nodules on the roots of a soybean plant.

a.

b.

Figure 17.14
Bioremediation.

a. Bacteria have been used for many years in sewage treatment plants to break down human wastes. **b.** Increasingly, the ability of bacteria to break down pollutants, such as oil spills, is being researched and enhanced.

be available for plants to produce proteins or available to animals that feed on plants or other animals.

Bioremediation is the biological cleanup of an environment that contains harmful chemicals called *pollutants.* To help correct the situation, the vast ability of bacteria to break down almost any substance, including sewage, is being exploited (**Fig. 17.14***a*). People have added thousands of tons of slowly degradable pesticides and herbicides, nonbiodegradable detergents, and plastics to the environment. Strains of bacteria are being developed specifically for cleaning up these types of pollutants. Some strains have been used to remove agent orange, a potent herbicide, from soil samples, and dual cultures of two types of bacteria have been shown to degrade PCBs, chemicals formerly used as coolants and industrial lubricants. Oil spills, such as the Deep Water Horizon spill in the Gulf of Mexico in 2010, are very damaging to aquatic ecosystems. The damage can be lessened by the use of genetically modified bacteria that can break down the carbon-carbon bonds within the oil. However, the effectiveness of these bacteria is based on weather conditions and the availability of certain nutrients, such as nitrogen and phosphates.

Bacteria in Food Science and Biotechnology

A wide variety of food products are created through the action of bacteria (**Fig. 17.15**). Under anaerobic conditions, bacteria carry out fermentation, which results in a variety of acids. One of these acids is lactate, a product that pickles cucumbers, curdles milk into cheese, and gives these foods their characteristic tangy flavor. Other bacterial fermentations can produce flavor compounds, such as the propionic acid in swiss cheese. Bacterial fermentation is also useful in the manufacture of such products as vitamins and antibiotics—in fact, most antibiotics known today were discovered in soil bacteria.

As you know, biotechnology can be used to alter the genome and the products generated by bacterial cultures. Bacteria can be genetically engineered to produce medically important products, such as insulin, human growth hormone, antibiotics, and vaccines against a number of human diseases. The natural ability of bacteria to perform all manner of reactions is also enhanced through biotechnology.

Bacterial Diseases in Humans

Microbes that can cause disease are called **pathogens.** Pathogens are able to (1) produce a toxin, (2) adhere to surfaces, and sometimes (3) invade organs or cells.

Toxins are small organic molecules, small pieces of protein, or parts of the bacterial cell wall that are released when bacteria die. Toxins are poisonous, and bacteria that produce a toxin usually cause serious diseases. In almost all cases, the growth of the microbes themselves does not cause disease; the toxins they release cause disease. When someone steps on a rusty nail, bacteria may be introduced deep into damaged tissue. The damaged area does not have good blood flow and can become anaerobic. *Clostridium tetani,* the cause of tetanus (lockjaw), proliferates under these conditions. The bacteria never leave the site of the wound, but the tetanus toxin they produce does

move throughout the body. This toxin prevents the relaxation of muscles. In time, the body contorts because all the muscles have contracted. Eventually, the person suffocates.

Adhesion factors allow a pathogen to bind to certain cells, and this determines which organs or cells of the body will be its host. Like many bacteria that cause dysentery (severe diarrhea), *Shigella dysenteriae* is able to stick to the intestinal wall. In addition, *S. dysenteriae* produces a toxin called Shiga toxin, which makes it even more life-threatening. Also, invasive mechanisms that give a pathogen the ability to move through tissues and into the bloodstream result in a more medically significant disease than if it were localized. Usually, a person can recover from food poisoning caused by *Salmonella*. But some strains of *Salmonella* have virulence factors—including a needle-shaped apparatus that injects toxin into body cells—that allow the bacteria to penetrate the lining of the colon and move beyond this organ. Typhoid fever, a life-threatening disease, can then result.

While some bacteria are pathogens that cause immediate diseases, such as dysentery, the presence of some bacteria in our bodies may cause long-term health problems. Scientists are beginning to recognize that the composition of the bacterial population in our instestines, sometimes called the *natural flora*, may be associated with medical conditions such as obesity and cardiovascular disease. These bacteria cause health problems not by attacking our cells directly but by altering the metabolism of compounds in our food, so that the by-products cause health problems.

Antibiotics are often used to treat medical conditions known to be associated with bacteria. However, since bacteria are cells in their own right, antibiotics need to target the differences between the prokaryotic bacterial cells and the eukaryotic cells in our bodies. In general, antibiotics target the cell walls of bacteria (which are absent in eukaryotic cells) or the prokaryotic-specific enzymes that are involved in protein and DNA synthesis. Although a number of antibiotic compounds are active against bacteria and are widely prescribed, the overuse of antibiotics in both humans and agriculture has led to an increasing level of bacterial resistance to antibiotics.

Figure 17.15 **Bacteria in food processing.**

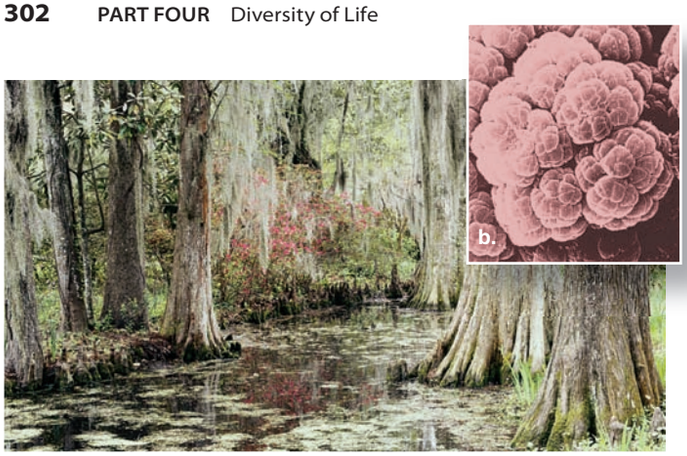
Bacteria are used to help produce food products. Bacterial fermentation results in acids that give some types of cheeses their characteristic taste.

Archaea

As discussed in Chapter 16, the tree of life now contains three domains: Archaea, Bacteria, and Eukarya. Because many **archaea** and some bacteria are found in extreme environments (hot springs, thermal vents, salt basins), they may have diverged from a common ancestor relatively soon after life began. Later, the eukarya are believed to have split off from the archaeal line of descent. Archaea and eukarya share some of the same ribosomal proteins (not found in bacteria), initiate transcription in the same manner, and have similar types of tRNA.

Structure

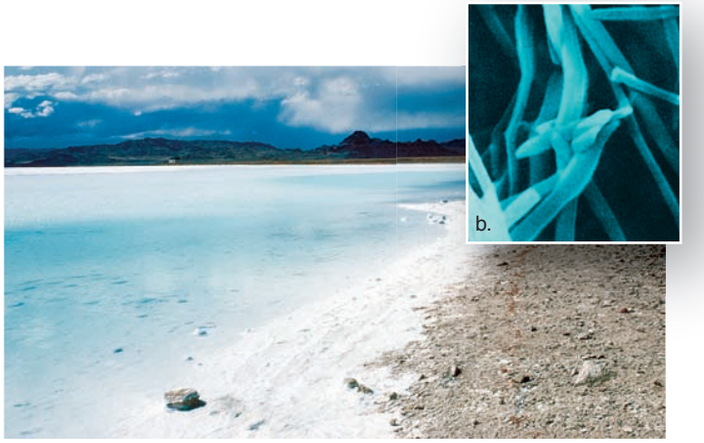
The plasma membranes of archaea contain unusual lipids that allow many of them to function at high temperatures. The archaea have also evolved diverse cell wall types, which facilitate their survival under extreme conditions. The cell walls of archaea do not contain peptidoglycan, as do the cell walls of bacteria. In some archaea, the cell wall is largely composed of polysaccharides; in others, the wall is pure protein. A few have no cell wall.



a.

Figure 17.16 **Methanogen habitat and structure.**

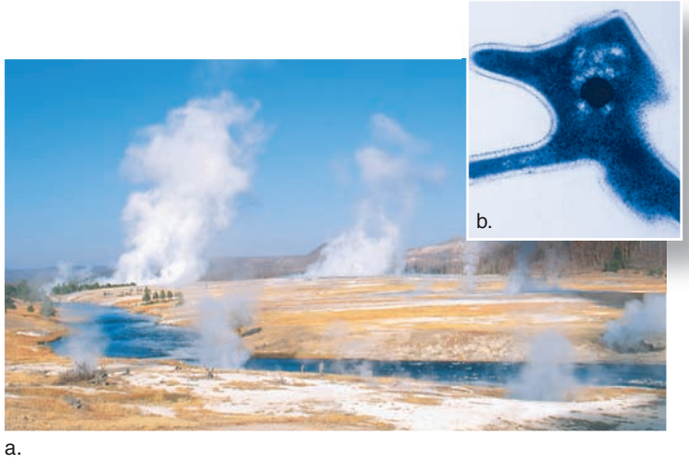
a. A swamp where methanogens live. **b.** Micrograph of *Methanosarcina mazei*, a methanogen.



a.

Figure 17.17 **Halophile habitat and structure.**

a. Great Salt Lake, Utah, where halophiles live. **b.** Micrograph of *Halobacterium salinarium*, a halophile.



a.

Figure 17.18 **Thermoacidophile habitat and structure.**

a. Boiling springs and geysers in Yellowstone National Park, where thermoacidophiles live. **b.** Micrograph of *Sulfolobus acidocaldarius*, a thermoacidophile.

Types of Archaea

Archaea are often discussed in terms of their unique habitats. The **methanogens** (methane makers) are found in anaerobic environments, such as in swamps, marshes, and the intestinal tracts of animals. Those found in animal intestines exist as mutualists or commensals, not as parasites—that is, archaea are not known to cause infectious diseases. Methanogens are chemoautotrophs that couple the production of methane (CH_4) from hydrogen gas (H_2) and carbon dioxide to the formation of ATP (**Fig. 17.16**). This methane, which is also called *biogas*, is released into the atmosphere, where it contributes to the greenhouse effect and global warming. About 65% of the methane in our atmosphere is produced by methanogenic archaea.

The **halophiles** require high-salt concentrations for growth (usually 12–15%; by contrast, the ocean is about 3.5% salt). Halophiles have been isolated from highly saline environments, such as the Great Salt Lake in Utah, the Dead Sea, solar salt ponds, and hypersaline soils (**Fig. 17.17**). These archaea have evolved a number of mechanisms to survive in high-salt environments. They depend on a pigment related to the rhodopsin in our eyes to absorb light energy for pumping chloride and another, similar pigment for synthesizing ATP.

A third major type of archaea are the **thermoacidophiles** (**Fig. 17.18**). These archaea are isolated from extremely hot, acidic environments, such as hot springs, geysers, submarine thermal vents, and the area around volcanoes. They reduce sulfur to sulfides and survive best at temperatures above 80°C; some can even grow at 105°C (remember that water boils at 100°C). The metabolism of sulfides results in acidic sulfates, and these bacteria grow best at pH 1 to 2.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The prokaryotes are single-celled organisms that play a variety of roles in the ecosystem.

Check Your Progress 17.3

1. Summarize how life may have arisen from chemicals in the environment.
2. List and describe the three common shapes a bacterial cell can take.
3. Differentiate the three means of introducing variation in bacterial cells.
4. Describe the chromosome of a bacterium. Contrast how it is different from a eukaryotic chromosome.
5. Distinguish between a bacterium and an archaean.

17.4 The Protists

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain the role of endosymbiosis in the origin of the eukaryotic cell.
2. Summarize the general characteristics of all protistans.
3. List the groups of algae based on their pigments.
4. List the groups of protozoans based on locomotion.
5. Relate the impact of selected protozoans on human health.

Like ancient creatures from another planet, the **protists** inhabit the oceans and other watery environments of the world. Their morphological diversity is their most outstanding feature. Single-celled diatoms may be encrusted in silica "petri dishes," while dinoflagellates have plates of armor and ciliates are shaped like slippers.

Evolution of Protists

Many protists are single celled, but all are eukaryotes with a nucleus and a wide range of organelles. There is now ample evidence that the organelles of eukaryotic cells arose from close symbiotic associations between bacteria and primitive eukaryotes (**Fig. 17.19**). The **endosymbiotic theory** is supported by the presence of double membranes around mitochondria and chloroplasts. Also, these organelles have their own genomes, although incomplete, and their ribosomal genes point to bacterial origins. The mitochondria appear closely related to certain bacteria, and the chloroplasts are most closely related to cyanobacteria.

To explain the diversity of protists, we can well imagine that, once the eukaryotic cell arose, it provided the opportunity for many different lineages to begin. Some single-celled protists have organelles not seen in other eukaryotes. For example, food is digested in food vacuoles, and excess water is expelled when contractile vacuoles discharge their contents.

Protists also possibly give us insight into the evolution of a multicellular organism with differentiated tissues. Some protists are a colony of single cells, with certain cells specialized to produce eggs and sperm; others are multicellular, with tissues specialized for various purposes. Perhaps the first type of organization preceded the second in a progression toward multicellular organisms.

Classification of Protists

Many different classification schemes have been devised to define relationships between the protists. Protists can have a combination of characteristics not seen in other eukaryotic groups, which makes them difficult to classify. Traditionally, protists have been classified by their source of energy and nutrients: The algae are photosynthetic (but use a variety of pigments); the protozoans are heterotrophic by ingestion; and the water molds and slime molds are heterotrophic by absorption. Newer data, especially genetic sequence information, have resulted in some controversy, however. One system that has gained popularity divides all eukaryotes, including the protists, into six supergroups, high-level taxonomic groups just below the domain level. Each of these supergroups represents a separate evolutionary lineage (**Table 17.1**).

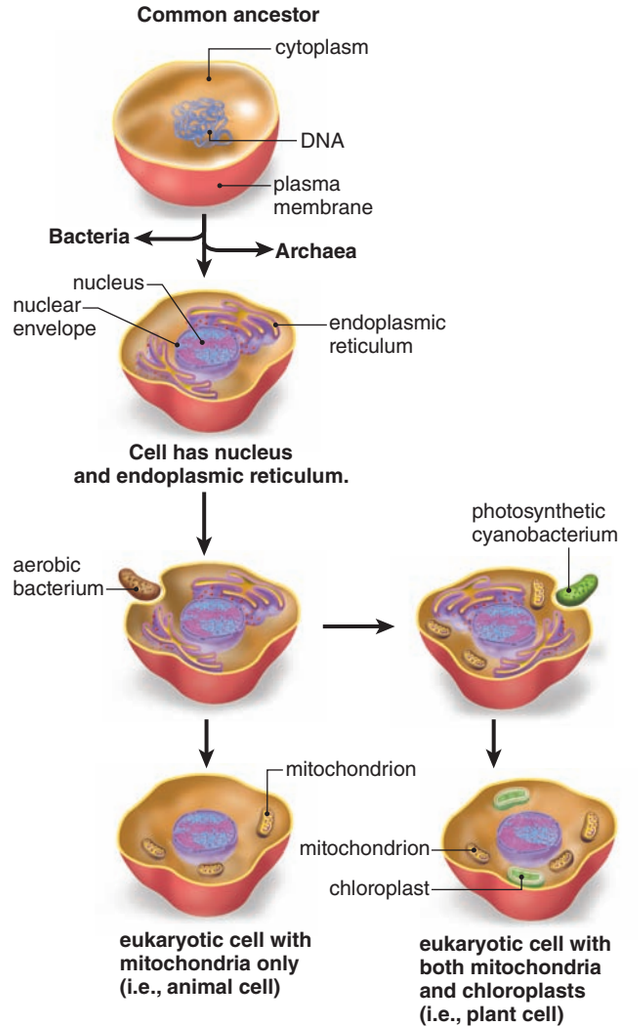


Figure 17.19 Evolution of the eukaryotic cell.

Invagination of the plasma membrane accounts for the formation of the nucleus and certain other organelles. The endosymbiotic theory states that mitochondria and chloroplasts are derived from prokaryotes that were taken up by a much larger eukaryotic cell.

Table 17.1 Eukaryotic Supergroups

Supergroup	Types of Organisms
Archaeplastids	Land plants as well as green and red algae
Chromalveolates	Brown algae, diatoms, ciliates, sporozoans, and water molds
Excavates	Euglenids and certain other flagellates
Amoebozoans	Amoeboids, as well as plasmodial and cellular slime molds
Rhizarians	Foraminiferans and radiolarians
Opisthokonts	Animals, fungi, and certain flagellates

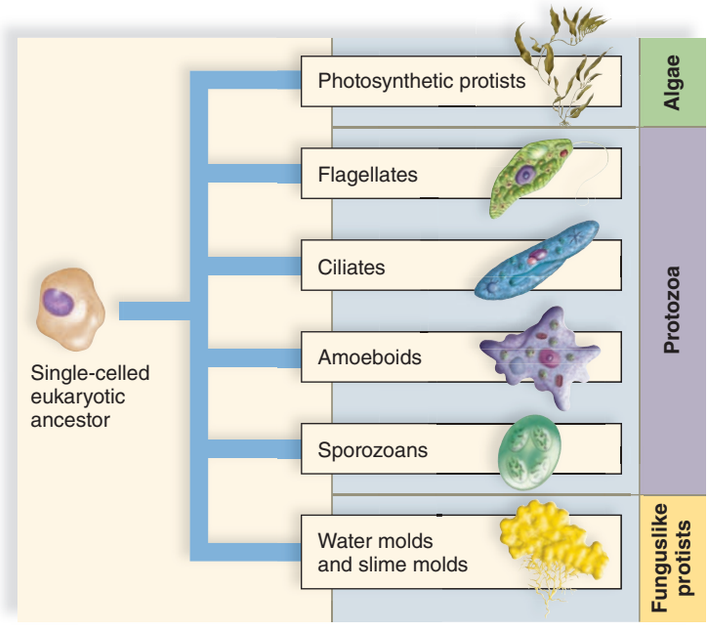


Figure 17.20 **Major groups of protists.**

Because the precise evolutionary relationships between these groups are not yet known, they are grouped here by major shared characteristics.

As biologists continue to learn more about these organisms, more agreement will likely emerge on how to classify the protists. In this chapter, we will group the protists as to whether they are photosynthetic (algae), or heterotrophic protozoans (**Fig. 17.20**).

There is one other group of protists: the fungilike slime molds and water molds. These microorganisms are chemoheterotrophs, but the slime molds ingest their food in the same manner as the protozoan called an amoeba, while the water molds are saprotrophic, like fungi.

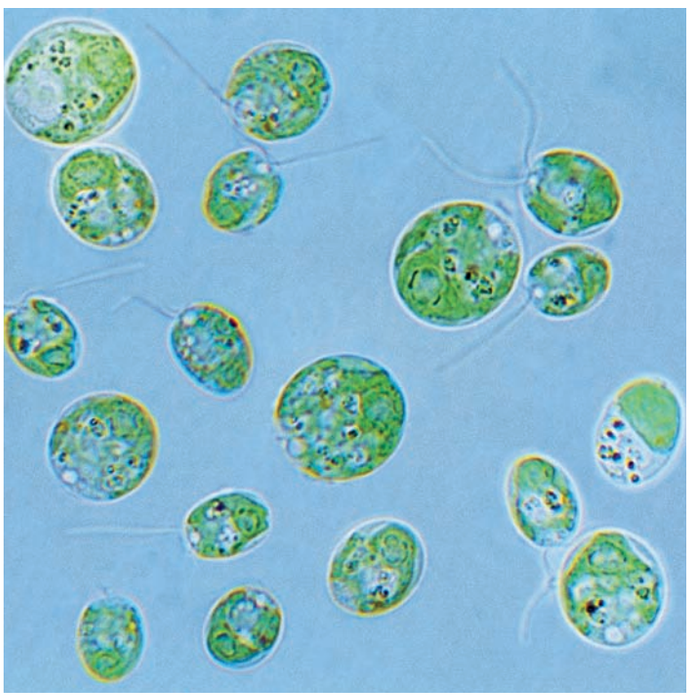
Algae

Traditionally, the term **algae** (sing., alga) means aquatic photosynthesizer. At one time, botanists classified algae as plants because they contain chlorophyll *a* and carry on photosynthesis. In aquatic environments, algae are a part of the phytoplankton, photosynthesizers that lie suspended in the water. They are producers, which serve as a source of food for other organisms and pour oxygen into the environment. In terrestrial systems, algae are found in soils, on rocks, and in trees. One type of alga is a symbiote of animals called corals, which depend on them for food as they build the coral reefs of the world. Others partner with fungi in lichens capable of living in harsh terrestrial environments.

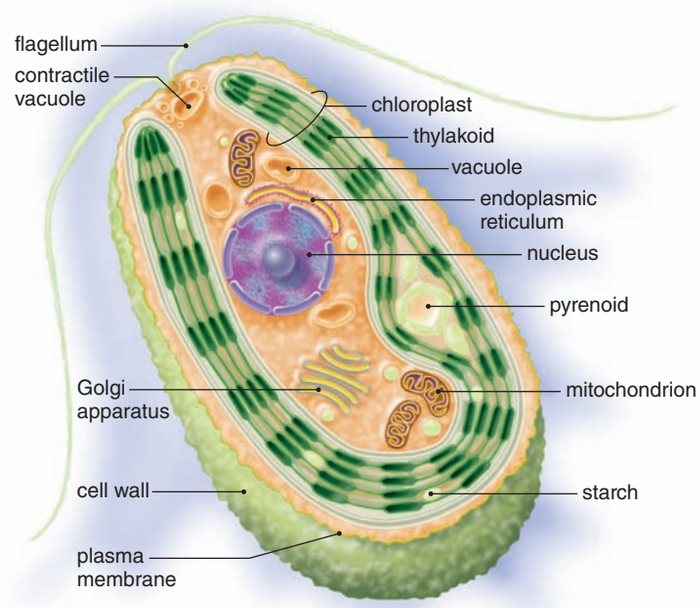
The green alga *Chlamydomonas* serves as our model for algal structure (**Fig. 17.21**). The most conspicuous organelle in the algal cell is the chloroplast. Algal chloroplasts share many features with those of plants, and the two groups likely have a common origin; for example, the photosynthetic pigments are housed in thylakoid membranes. Not surprisingly, then, algae perform photosynthesis in the same manner as plants. Pyrenoids are organelles found in algae that are active in starch storage and metabolism. Vacuoles are seen in algae, along with mitochondria. Algae generally have a cell wall, and many produce a slime layer that can be harvested and used for food processing. Some algae are nonmotile, while others possess flagella.

Figure 17.21 ***Chlamydomonas*.**

Chlamydomonas, a green alga, has the organelles and other structures typical of a motile algal cell.



×1,000



Algae can reproduce asexually or sexually, in most cases. Asexual reproduction can occur by binary fission, as in bacteria. Some proliferate by forming flagellated spores called zoospores, while others simply fragment, with each fragment becoming a progeny alga. Sexual reproduction generally requires the formation of gametes that combine to form a zygote.

One traditional way to classify algae is based on the color of the pigments in their chloroplasts: green algae, red algae, golden-brown algae, and brown algae (**Fig. 17.22**). The green algae are most closely related to plants, and they are commonly represented by three species: *Chlamydomonas*; colonial *Volvox*, a large, hollow sphere with dozens to hundreds of cells; and *Spirogyra*, a filamentous alga in which the chloroplasts form a green spiral ribbon. The coralline red algae deposit calcium carbonate in their cell walls and contribute to the formation of coral reefs. The golden-brown algae are represented by the diatoms, which have a petri dish structure with each half an elaborate shell composed of silica. The green algae, red algae, and brown algae include the multicellular seaweeds.

The Protozoans

The definition of a **protozoan** as a single-celled chemoheterotroph explains why protozoans were originally classified with the animals. Often, a protozoan has some form of locomotion, by either flagella, pseudopods, or cilia. In aquatic environments, protozoans are a part of the zooplankton, suspended

Figure 17.22 **Algal diversity.**

(a) *Acetabularia*, a unicellular green alga; (**b**) *Bossiella*, a coralline red alga; (**c**) *Fucus*, a brown alga; (**d**) *Licmorpha*, a stalked diatom; (**e**) *Volvox*, a colonial green alga with daughter colonies inside; (**f**) *Spirogyra*, a filamentous green alga undergoing conjugation to form zygotes; (**g**) *Ceratium*, an armored dinoflagellate; (**h**) *Macrocystis*, a brown alga; (**i**) *Sargassum*, a brown alga.

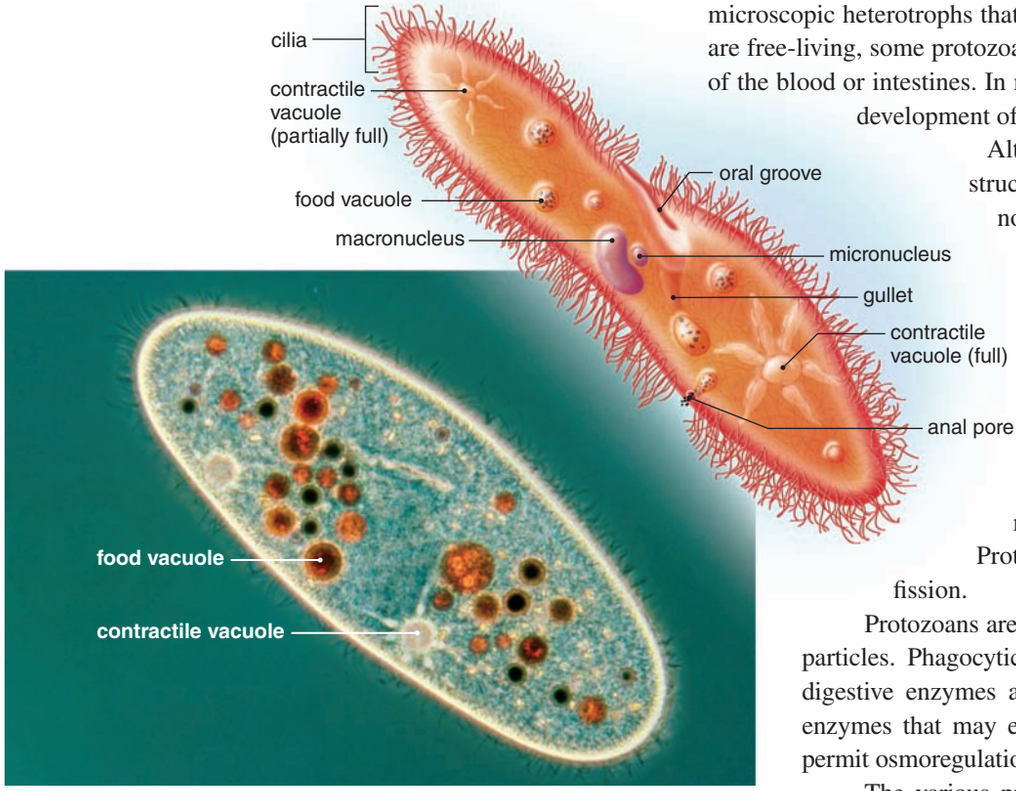


Figure 17.23 **A paramecium.**

A paramecium is a ciliate, a type of complex protozoan that moves by cilia.

microscopic heterotrophs that serve as a food source for animals. While most are free-living, some protozoans are human pathogens, often causing diseases of the blood or intestines. In many cases, their complex life cycles inhibit the development of suitable treatments.

Although protozoans are single celled, their cell structure is very complex. Many of the functions we normally associate with the organs of multicellular organisms are performed by organelles in protozoans. Some protozoans have more than one nucleus. In some cases, the two nuclei are identical in size and function. Other protozoans, such as *Paramecium*, have a large macronucleus and a small micronucleus (**Fig. 17.23**). The macronucleus produces mRNA and directs metabolic functions. The micronucleus is important for reproduction. Protozoans usually reproduce asexually by binary fission.

Protozoans are heterotrophic, and many feed by engulfing food particles. Phagocytic vacuoles act as their "stomachs," into which digestive enzymes and acid are added. Secretory vacuoles release enzymes that may enhance any pathogenicity. Contractile vacuoles permit osmoregulation, particularly in fresh water.

The various protozoans shown in **Figure 17.24** illustrate that they are usually motile. The ciliates, so named because they move by cilia, are represented by the paramecium, and the amoeboids by amoebas, which move by cytoplasmic extensions called pseudopods. The radiolarians and foraminiferans are two types of marine amoeboids with calcium carbonate skeletons important in limestone formations—including the White Cliffs of Dover in Britain. The amoeba *Entamoeba histolytica* causes amoebic dysentery. The zooflagellates, which move by flagella, also cause diseases. In this group,

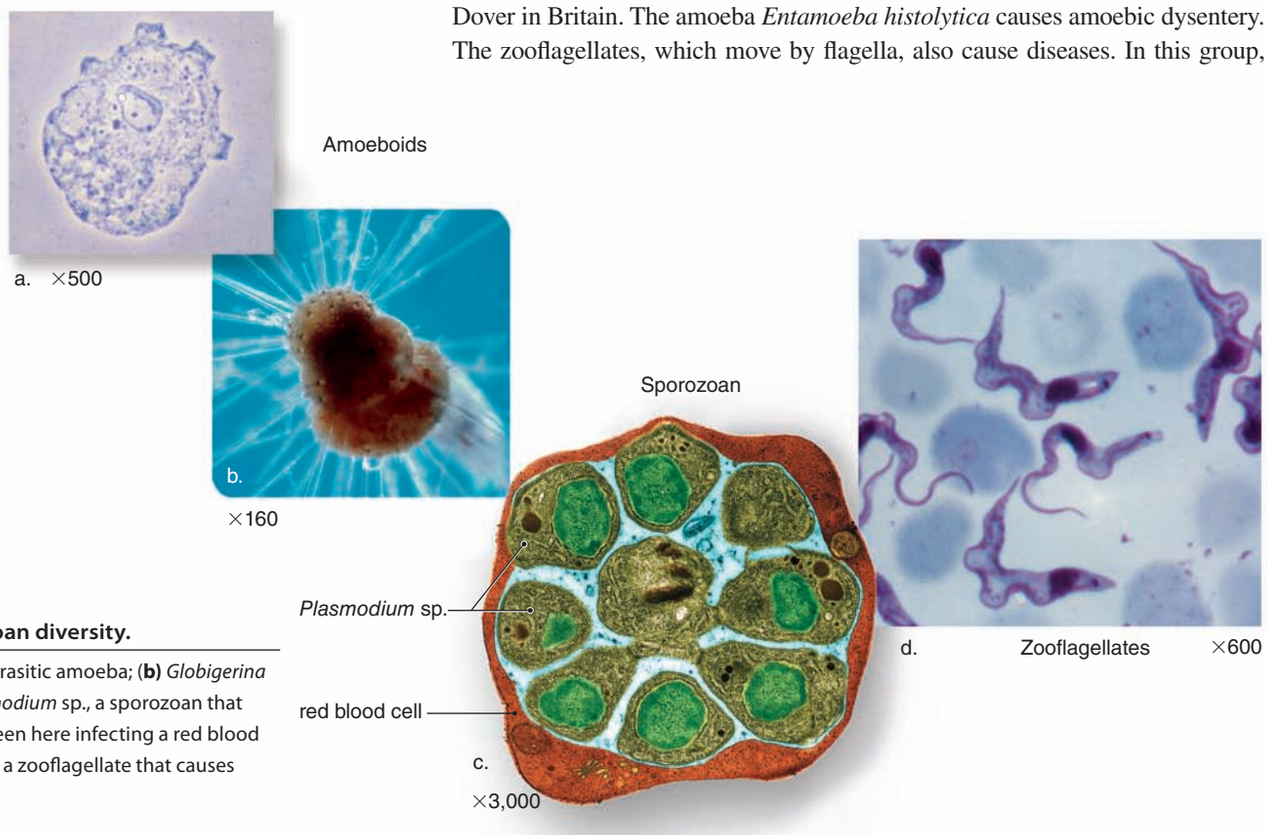


Figure 17.24 **Protozoan diversity.**

(a) *Entamoeba invadens*, a parasitic amoeba; **(b)** *Globigerina* sp., a foraminiferan; **(c)** *Plasmodium* sp., a sporozoan that causes malaria (several are seen here infecting a red blood cell); **(d)** *Trypanosoma brucei*, a zooflagellate that causes African sleeping sickness.

a trypanosome is the cause of African sleeping sickness, a blood disease that cuts off circulation to the brain. *Apicomplexans,* commonly called sporozoans because they produce spores, are unlike other protozoan groups because they are not motile. One genus, *Plasmodium,* causes malaria, the most widespread and dangerous protozoan disease. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), there are approximately 350–500 million cases of malaria worldwide every year; more than a million people die of the infection. Malaria is transmitted by a mosquito. Toxoplasmosis, another protozoan disease, is commonly transmitted by cats.

Slime Molds and Water Molds

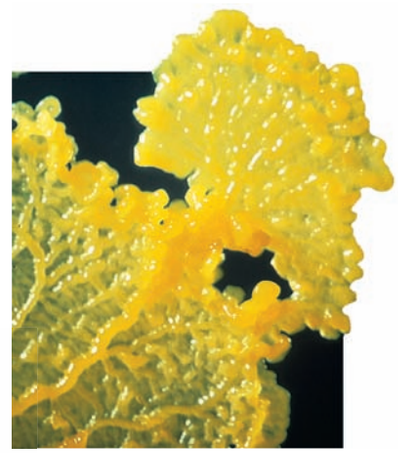
Both slime molds and the water molds are chemoheterotrophs, but the slime molds ingest their food in the same manner as the protozoan called an amoeba, whereas the water molds are saprotrophic, like fungi. In forests and woodlands, **slime molds** feed on, and therefore help dispose of, dead plant material. They also feed on bacteria, keeping their population sizes under control. Usually, plasmodial slime molds exist as a plasmodium—a diploid, multinucleated, cytoplasmic mass enveloped by a slime sheath that creeps along, phagocytizing decaying plant material in a forest or an agricultural field. At times unfavorable to growth, such as during a drought, the plasmodium develops many sporangia. A sporangium is a reproductive structure that produces spores resistant to dry conditions. When favorable moist conditions return, the spores germinate, releasing a flagellated cell or an amoeboid cell. Eventually, two of them fuse to form a zygote that feeds and grows, producing a multinucleated plasmodium once again. **Figure 17.25** shows the life cycle of a plasmodial slime mold.

The **water molds** decompose remains but are also significant parasites of plants and animals in ecosystems. The potato blight that brought about famine in nineteenth-century Ireland was caused by a water mold. Slime molds and water molds were once classified as fungi, but unlike fungi, all have flagellated

Connections: Health

What is giardiasis?

The intestinal disorder known as giardiasis is caused by a zooflagellate called *Giardia lamblia*. *Giardia* lives in the intestines of a variety of animals, including humans, cattle, deer, dogs, and cats. It is commonly spread by drinking water that has been contaminated by the feces of an infected animal, although it is possible to contract *Giardia* from the soil or food. Symptoms of giardiasis include diarrhea, stomach and/or intestinal cramping, and excess gas (flatulence). For most people, a *Giardia* infection lasts several weeks, but the parasite has been known to cause complications in the elderly, young children, and individuals with compromised immune systems. Since *Giardia* is a eukaryote, antibiotics are ineffective, although other medications are available.



Plasmodium phagocytizes food

Sporangia produce spores

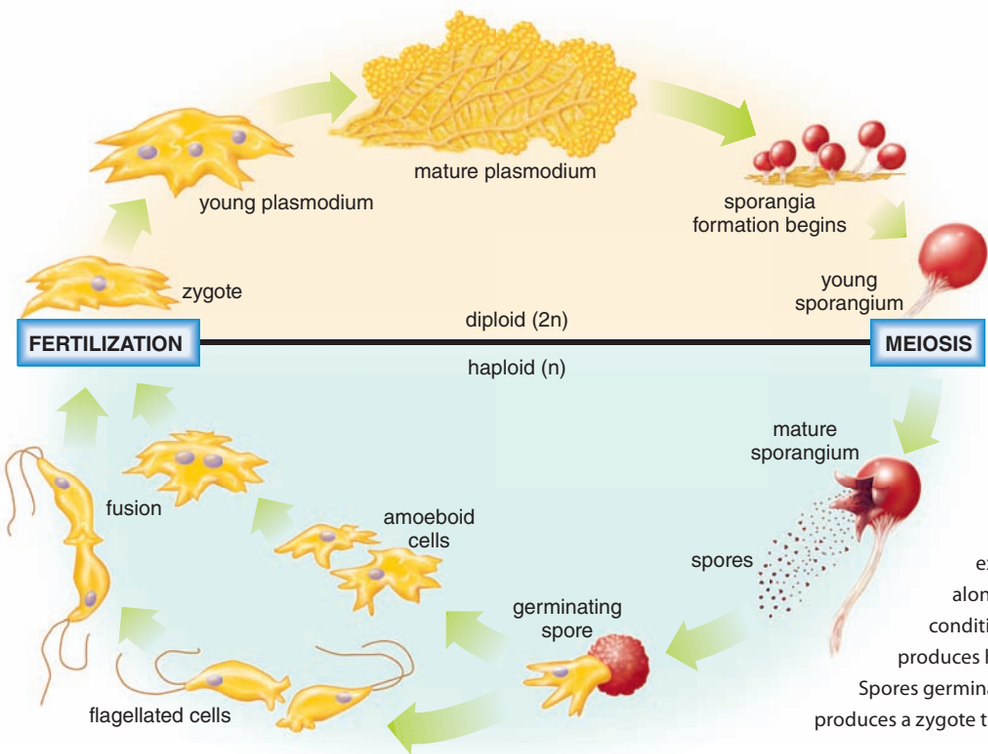


Figure 17.25 Plasmodial slime molds.

As long as conditions are favorable, a plasmodial slime mold exists as a multinucleated diploid plasmodium that creeps along the forest floor, phagocytizing organic remains. When conditions become unfavorable, sporangia form where meiosis produces haploid spores, structures that can survive unfavorable times. Spores germinate to release independent haploid cells. Fusion of these cells produces a zygote that becomes a mature plasmodium once again.

cells at sometime during their life cycles. Only the water molds have a cell wall, but it contains cellulose, not the chitin of fungal cell walls. Both slime molds and water molds form spores, each a small, single-celled reproductive body capable of becoming a new organism. The spores of water molds are flagellated, but those of slime molds are windblown.

Although grouped together here, slime molds and water molds may not be very closely related to one another. Some experts suggest that water molds may be near relatives of diatoms and brown algae, while slime molds are associated with the amoeboids. Indeed, the vegetative state of the slime molds is mobile and amoeboid, and like the amoeboids, they ingest their food by phagocytosis.

17.4

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The protists are one of the most diverse groups of organisms on Earth, and they serve a wide variety of ecological roles.

Check Your Progress 17.4

1. Describe the features of mitochondria and chloroplasts that support the endosymbiotic theory.
2. Explain the general characteristics of a protist.
3. Compare and contrast the algae, protozoans, and slime molds.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

Enhance your study of this chapter with media! Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Animations

17.1 Lambda Phage Replication • Entry of an Animal Virus into a Host Cell • Replication Cycle of a Retrovirus • Antiviral Agents
17.2 Prion Diseases
17.3 Miller-Urey • Prokaryotic Cell Shape • Bacterial Locomotion • Binary Fission Bacterial Conjugation • Bacterial Transformation • Bacterial Spore Formation
17.4 Endosymbiosis

Video

17.1 How Viruses Attack • Virus Lytic Cycle • Halting Hepatitis • Killer Flu • Virus Crisis
17.3 Decomposers

SUMMARIZE

17.1 The Viruses

Viruses are noncellular particles.

- Virus particle
  - Capsid
    - Protein subunits
    - Envelope (in some)
  - Inner core
    - Nucleic acids (DNA or RNA)
    - Various proteins, especially enzymes

Structure

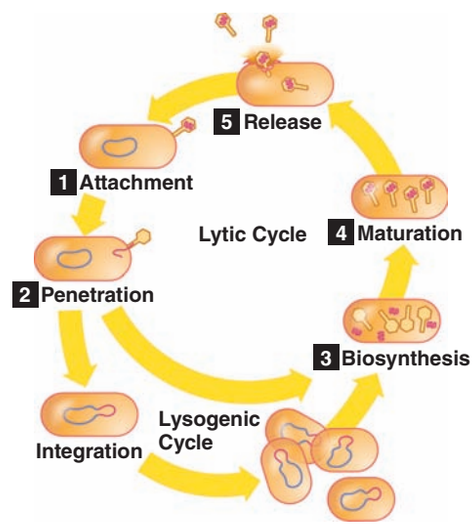
- Viruses have at least two parts: an outer capsid composed of protein subunits and an inner core of nucleic acid, either DNA or RNA.
- Animal viruses either are naked (no outer envelope) or have an outer membranous envelope.

Reproduction

Viruses are obligate intracellular parasites that can reproduce only inside living cells. **Bacteriophages** can have a lytic or lysogenic life cycle.

The **lytic cycle** consists of these steps:

- 1 Attachment
- 2 Penetration
- 3 Biosynthesis
- 4 Maturation
- 5 Release



In the **lysogenic cycle,** viral DNA is integrated into bacterial DNA for an indefinite period of time, but it can undergo the last three steps of the lytic cycle at any time.

Plant Viruses

Crops and garden plants are subject to viral infections. Not all viruses are deadly, but over time they debilitate a plant.

Animal Viruses

The reproductive cycle in animal viruses has the same steps as in a bacteriophage, with modifications if the virus has an envelope, in which case:

- Fusion or endocytosis brings the virus into the cell.
- Uncoating is needed to free the genome from the capsid.
- Budding releases the viral particles from the cell.

HIV, the AIDS virus, is an RNA **retrovirus.** These viruses have an enzyme, reverse transcriptase, which carries out reverse transcription. This produces single-stranded DNA, which replicates, forming a double helix that becomes integrated into host DNA.

Drug Control of Human Viral Diseases

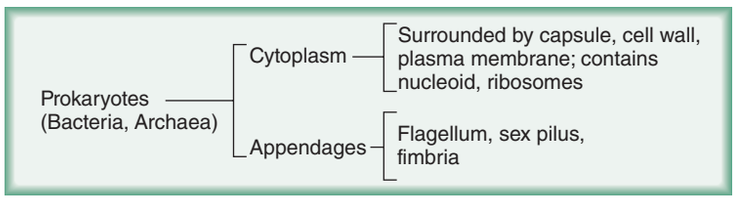
Emerging viruses are relatively new to humans. Antiviral drugs are structurally similar to a nucleotide and interfere with viral genome synthesis.

17.2 Viroids and Prions

Viroids are naked (not covered by a capsid) strands of RNA that can cause disease. **Prions** are protein molecules that have a misshapen tertiary structure. Prions cause such diseases as CJD in humans and mad cow disease in cattle when they cause other proteins of their own kind to also become misshapen.

17.3 The Prokaryotes

The bacteria and archaea are prokaryotes. **Prokaryotes** lack a nucleus and most of the other cytoplasmic organelles found in eukaryotic cells.



The Origin of Cells

The first cells were prokaryotes. Before the first cells appeared, biological macromolecules formed spontaneously in the unique conditions of the early Earth's atmosphere. Scientists have shown that collections of biological macromolecules assemble to form nonliving, cell-like structures, or **protocells,** under laboratory conditions.

Table 17.2 Comparison of Viruses and Prokaryotes

Characteristics of Life	Viruses	Prokaryotes
Consist of cell	No	Yes
Metabolize	No	Yes
Respond to stimuli	No	Yes
Multiply	Yes (always inside living cell)	Yes (usually independently)
Evolve	Yes	Yes

General Biology of Bacteria

Bacterial Structure

- Structures include rods (bacilli), spheres (cocci), and spirals (spirilla or spirochetes).
- A single, closed circle of double-stranded DNA (chromosome) is in a **nucleoid. Plasmids** are small pieces of DNA in the cytoplasm.
- The f**lagellum** is unique and rotates, causing the organism to spin.
- The cell wall contains **peptidoglycan.**

Bacterial Reproduction and Survival

- Production is asexual by **binary fission.**
- Genetic recombination occurs by means of **conjugation**, **transformation,** and **transduction.**
- **Endospore** formation allows bacteria to survive an unfavorable environment.

Bacterial Nutrition

- Bacteria can be autotrophic. **Cyanobacteria** are **photoautotrophs**—they photosynthesize, as do plants. **Chemoautotrophs** oxidize inorganic compounds, such as hydrogen gas, hydrogen sulfide, and ammonia, to acquire energy to make their own food. Like animals, most bacteria are **chemoheterotrophs** (heterotrophs), but they are **saprotrophs** (decomposers). Many heterotrophic prokaryotes are **symbiotic,** such as the mutualistic nitrogen-fixing bacteria that live in nodules on the roots of legumes.

Environmental and Medical Importance of Bacteria
Bacteria in the Environment

- As decomposers, bacteria keep inorganic nutrients cycling in ecosystems.
- The reactions they perform keep the nitrogen cycle going.
- Bacteria play an important role in **bioremediation.**

Bacteria in Food Science and Biotechnology

- Bacterial fermentations are important in the production of foods.
- Genetic engineering allows bacteria to produce medically important products.

Bacterial Diseases in Humans

- Bacterial **pathogens** that can cause diseases are able to (1) produce a toxin, (2) adhere to surfaces, and (3) sometimes invade organs or cells.
- Indiscriminate antibiotic therapy has led to bacterial resistance to some antibiotics.

Archaea

The **archaea** (domain Archaea) are the second type of prokaryote. The following are some characteristics of archaea:

- They appear to be more closely related to the eukarya than to the bacteria.
- They do not have peptidoglycan in their cell walls, as do the bacteria, and they share more biochemical characteristics with the eukarya than do bacteria.
- Some are well known for living under harsh conditions, such as anaerobic marshes (**methanogens**), salty lakes (**halophiles**), and hot sulfur springs (**thermoacidophiles**).

17.4 The Protists

General Biology of Protists

- **Protists** are eukaryotes. The **endosymbiotic theory** accounts for the presence of mitochondria and chloroplasts in eukaryotic cells. Some are multicellular with differentiated tissues.
- Protists have great ecological importance, because in largely aquatic environments they are the producers (algae) or sources (algae and protozoans) of food for other organisms.

Algae

- **Algae** possess chlorophylls. They store reserve food as starch and have cell walls, as do plants.
- Algae are divided according to their pigments—green, brown, golden-brown, or red. Many are unicellular, but the green, red, and brown algae include multicellular seaweeds.

Protozoans

- **Protozoans** are heterotrophic and usually motile by means of cilia (paramecia), pseudopods (amoebas), or flagella (zooflagellates).
- Sporozoans (apicomplexans) cause diseases, including malaria, the most serious protozoan disease.
- A zooflagellate (trypanosome) causes African sleeping sickness; *Giardia* causes severe diarrhea.

Slime Molds and Water Molds

- **Slime molds** are decomposers in forests and woodlands.
- **Water molds** have cell walls of cellulose, which distinguish them from fungi.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Viruses, bacteria, and protists are commonly called microorganisms. Although some are known to cause disease, research is also looking at the many benefits that these organisms provide to humans.

17.1 Viruses are known to be host specific and have unique reproductive cycles.

17.2 Viroids and prions have many similarities of viruses.

17.3 The prokaryotes are single-celled organisms that play a variety of roles in the ecosystem.

17.4 The protists are one of the most diverse groups of organisms on Earth, and they serve a wide variety of ecological roles.

For more information about the diversity and roles of microorganisms on Earth. see the following discussions:

Section 1.2 provides a description of the major domains of life..

Section 26.5 provides additional information on the HIV virus and the disease AIDS.

Section 31.2 includes information on how bacteria are involved in nutrient cycling—specifically, the nitrogen cycle.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

17.1 The Viruses

1. A virus contains which of the following?
   a. a cell wall **c.** nucleic acid
   b. a plasma membrane **d.** cytoplasm
2. The five stages of the bacteriophage lytic cycle occur in this order:
   a. penetration, attachment, release, maturation, biosynthesis.
   b. attachment, penetration, release, biosynthesis, maturation.
   c. biosynthesis, attachment, penetration, maturation, release.
   d. attachment, penetration, biosynthesis, maturation, release.
   e. penetration, biosynthesis, attachment, maturation, release.
3. The enzyme that is unique to retroviruses is
   a. reverse transcriptase. **c.** DNA gyrase.
   b. DNA polymerase. **d.** RNA polymerase.

17.2 Viroids and Prions

4. Which of the following statements about viroids is false?
   a. They are composed of naked RNA.
   b. They cause plant diseases.
   c. They die once they reproduce.
   d. They cause infected cells to produce more viroids.
5. Prion proteins cause disease when they
   a. enlarge.
   b. break into small pieces.
   c. cause normal proteins to change shape.
   d. interact with DNA.

17.3 The Prokaryotes

6. A bacterium contains all of the following, except
   a. ribosomes. **d.** cytoplasm.
   b. DNA. **e.** a plasma membrane.
   c. mitochondria.

For questions 7–12, determine which type of organism is being described. Each answer in the key may be used more than once.

Key:

a. bacteria
b. archaea
c. both bacteria and archaea
d. neither bacteria nor archaea

7. peptidoglycan in the cell wall
8. methanogens
9. sometimes parasitic
10. contain a nucleus
11. plasma membrane contains lipids
12. reproduction by binary fission

17.4 The Protists

13. Which of these is mismatched?
- **a.** amoeboids—pseudopods
- **b.** sporozoans—disease agents
- **c.** algae—variously colored
- **d.** slime molds—trypanosomes

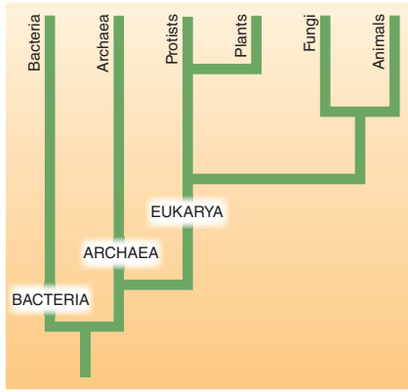
14. Which of the following is incorrect about protists?
- **a.** Some protists are prokaryotic.
- **b.** Protozoans can be unicellular.
- **c.** Algae can reproduce asexually or sexually.
- **d.** Slime molds and water molds are decomposers.
- **e.** Protozoans are heterotrophic.

15. Unlike plants, algae contain
- **a.** chloroplasts.
- **b.** vacuoles.
- **c.** mitochondria.
- **d.** pyrenoids.
- **e.** cell walls.

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Based on the accompanying tree, are the protists more closely related to bacteria or to archaea? What evidence supports this relationship? Why are viruses not shown on the tree?



2. In the former Soviet Union and Eastern Europe, bacteriophage therapy has long been used as an alternative to antibiotic drugs for treating bacterial infections. How could introducing bacteriophages into a patient's body help fight a bacterial infection? What are some potential benefits and shortcomings of bacteriophage therapy?

3. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) estimates that physicians annually write 50 million unnecessary prescriptions for antibiotics to treat viral infections. Of course, these antibiotics are ineffective against viruses. Furthermore, the frequent exposure of bacteria to these drugs has resulted in the development of numerous strains with antibiotic resistance. Doctors may prescribe antibiotics because patients demand them. In addition, if the cause of the illness is not known, it may be safer to prescribe an antibiotic that turns out to be ineffective for the symptoms than to withhold the antibiotic when it would have helped. The FDA has, therefore, initiated a policy requiring manufacturers to label antibiotics with precautions about their misuse.
- **a.** Do you think this type of labeling information will educate consumers enough to significantly reduce the inappropriate use of antibiotics?
- **b.** Physicians already know about the dangers of antibiotic resistance but may prescribe them, anyway. This is probably due, in large part, to the fact that they are liable for erring on the side of withholding an antibiotic but not for inappropriately prescribing one. Should physicians be held more accountable for prescribing antibiotics? If so, how?

18

Land Environment: Plants and Fungi

OUTLINE

18.1 Overview of the Land Plants 313

18.2 Diversity of Plants 316

18.3 The Fungi 326

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 6.2 What process produces oxygen during photosynthesis?

Section 9.3 What are the differences between mitosis and meiosis with regard to chromosome number?

Section 16.3 What domain of life do the plants and fungi belong to?

Pepper Versus Fungi—an Evolutionary War

Have you ever thought about a plant being at war? In fact, plants are constantly at war with a variety of organisms, such as plant-eating animals (herbivores), bacteria, and fungi. In response, plants have evolved a number of adaptive strategies to protect themselves. In the case of chili peppers, the plant produces a pain-inducing chemical, called capsaicin, within the pepper. Capsaicin stimulates pain receptors in mammals, giving their brains the "mouth on fire" sensation. While capsaicinoids deter some animals, their real target are fungi, the ancient enemy of the plants. Fungi are decomposers, and provide an important ecological service by digesting and breaking down dead organisms and recycling nutrients back into the soil. However, some fungi do not wait for an organism to die and instead prey upon living organisms, including pepper plants.

The chemical warfare begins when a chili pepper is attacked by a fungus attempting to penetrate the pepper. The pepper responds by producing capsaicin, which ward off the fungus. The amount of capsaicinoids they produce varies with the environment. Since fungi prefer moist environments, the farmers grow milder chilis in drier environments, where there is less fungal attack, and grow the hotter chilis in wetter environments, where fungi thrive and the plant is in full antifungal defense mode!

In this chapter, you will explore the evolution and diversity of both the plants and the fungi and will examine some of the evolutionary adaptations in these two kingdoms.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How did the physical appearance of plants change as they evolved from living in water to living on land?
2. What aspects of the fungal body make fungi so successful as decomposers?

18.1 Overview of the Land Plants

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the similarities and differences between the green algae and land plants.
2. List the five significant events in the evolution of land plants.
3. Describe the alternation of generations life cycle in plants.

Plants (kingdom Plantae) are multicellular, photosynthetic eukaryotes that have become adapted to a land existence. Although a land environment offers advantages, such as plentiful light, it also has challenges, such as the constant threat of desiccation (drying out). Most importantly, all stages of reproduction—gametes, zygote, and embryo—must be protected from the drying effects of air. To keep the internal environment of cells moist, a land plant must acquire water and transport it to all parts of the body, while keeping the body in an erect position. We will see how plants have adapted to these problems by evolving an internal vascular system.

The evolutionary history of plants begins in the water. Most likely, land plants evolved from a form of freshwater green algae some 500 MYA (million years ago). Green algae are not plants, but like plants they (1) contain chlorophylls *a* and *b* and various accessory pigments, (2) store excess carbohydrates as starch, and (3) have cellulose in their cell walls. A comparison of DNA and RNA base sequences suggests that land plants are most closely related to a group of freshwater green algae known as **charophytes.** Although *Spirogyra* (see Fig. 17.22) is a charophyte, molecular scientists tell us that the ancestors of land plants were more closely related to the charophytes shown in **Figure 18.1.** Although the common ancestor of modern charophytes and land plants no longer exists, if it did, it would have features resembling those of the *Chara* and *Coleochaete*.

Let's take a look at these filamentous green algae. *Chara* are commonly known as stoneworts because they are encrusted with calcium carbonate deposits. The body consists of a single file of very long cells anchored in mud by thin filaments. Whorls of branches occur at regions called nodes, located between the cells of the main axis. Male and female reproductive structures grow at the nodes. A *Coleochaete* looks flat, like a pancake, but the body is actually composed of long, branched filaments of cells. Most important to the evolution of plants, charophytes protect the zygote. Land plants not only protect the zygote but also protect and nourish the resulting embryo—an important feature that separates land plants from green algae.

To illustrate the evolution of land plants, we will discuss five groups. It is possible to associate each group with one of five evolutionary events, each one representing a major adaptation to existence on land.

Mosses are low-lying plants that lack vascular tissue and therefore have no means of transporting water, but they do protect the body of the plant from drying out and protect the embryo within a special structure.

The lycophytes, which evolved around 420 MYA, are among the first plants to have a vascular system that transports water and solutes from the roots to the leaves of the plant body. Plants with vascular tissue have true roots, stems, and leaves. The leaves of lycophytes, called **microphylls,** are very narrow.

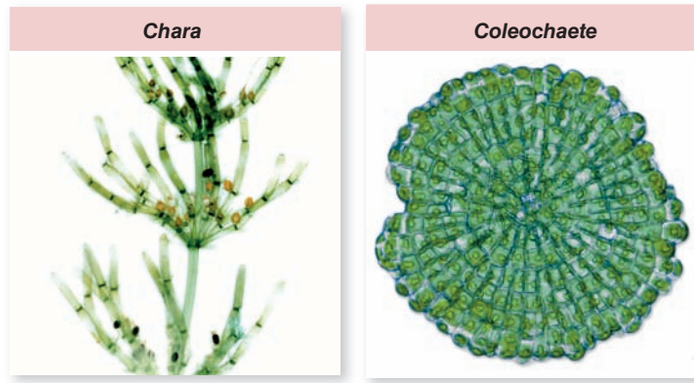


Figure 18.1 Close algal relatives of plants.

The closest living relatives of land plants are green algae known as charophytes. **a.** *Chara*, commonly called stoneworts, lives in shallow freshwater lakes and ponds. **b.** The body of this *Coleochaete* is a flat disk found living on wet stones or on other aquatic plants; even so, it is only the size of a pinhead and one cell layer thick.

Ferns are well-known plants with large leaves called **megaphylls.** The evolution of branching and leaves allows a plant to increase the amount of exposure to the sun, thus increasing photosynthesis and sugars produced. Without adequate food production, a plant can't increase in size. The next evolutionary event was the evolution of **seeds.** A seed contains an embryo and stored organic nutrients within a protective coat (see Fig. 18.10). Seeds are highly resistant structures well suited to protect a plant embryo from drying out until conditions are favorable for germination. The gymnosperms were the first seed plants to appear, about 360 MYA. The final evolutionary event of interest to us is the evolution of the **flower,** a reproductive structure found in angiosperms. Flowers attract pollinators, such as insects, and they give rise to fruits that cover seeds. Plants with flowers evolved between 120 and 140 MYA. **Figure 18.2** traces the evolutionary history of land plants and will serve as a backdrop as we discuss the major groups of plants in the pages that follow.

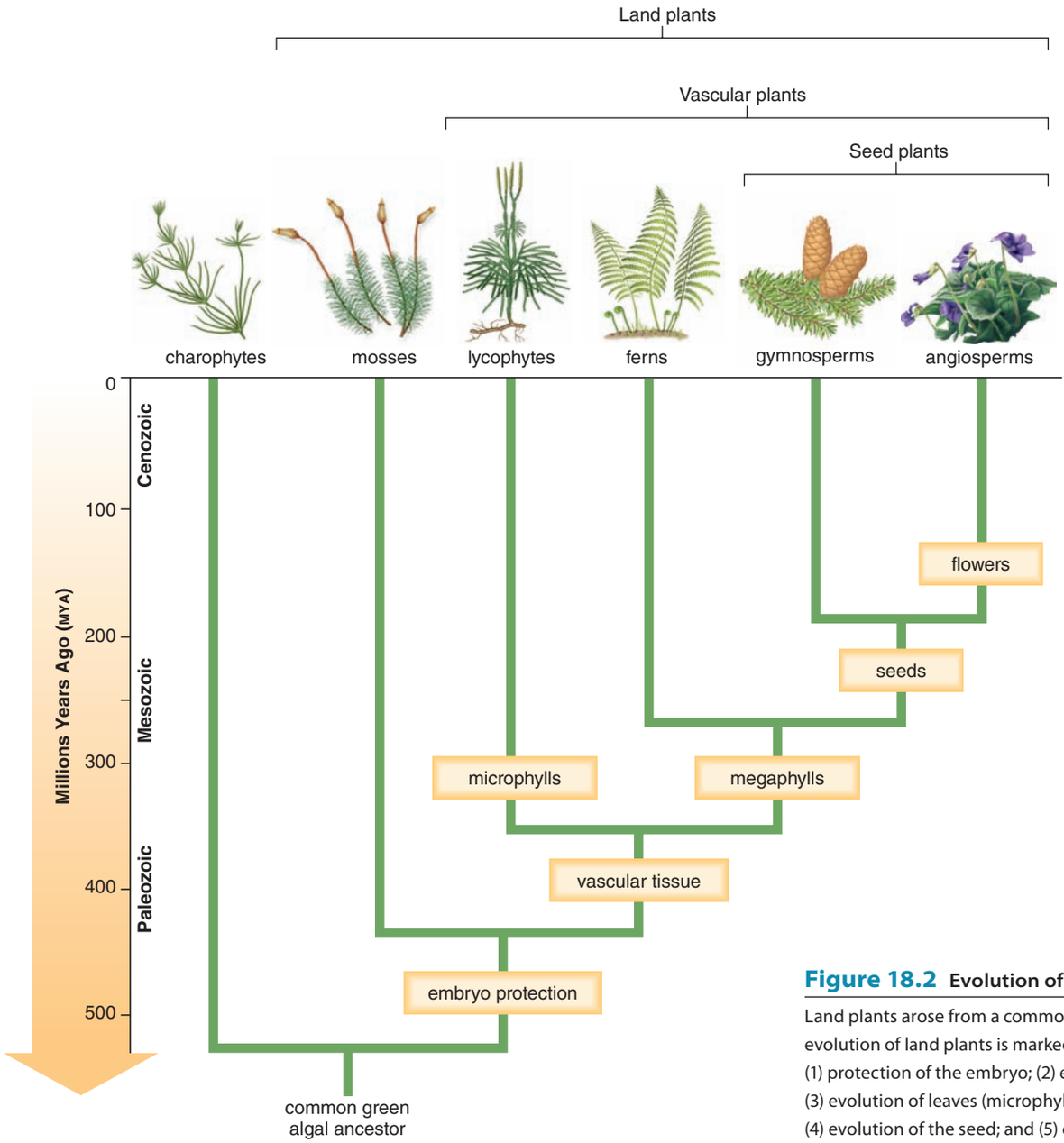


Figure 18.2 **Evolution of land plants.**

Land plants arose from a common green algal ancestor. The evolution of land plants is marked by five significant events: (1) protection of the embryo; (2) evolution of vascular tissue; (3) evolution of leaves (microphylls and megaphylls); (4) evolution of the seed; and (5) evolution of the flower.

Alternation of Generations

The life cycle of land plants is quite different from that of animals. Unlike humans and other animals, which exhibit a diploid life cycle (see Fig. 9.2), plants undergo an **alternation of generations,** meaning that plants exist in two forms (**Fig. 18.3**). One form is the diploid (2n) sporophyte, and the other is the haploid (n) gametophyte. The **sporophyte** is named for its production of haploid spores by meiosis. A **sporangium** is a structure that produces haploid cells called **spores;** it develops into a new organism. In the plant life cycle, a spore undergoes mitosis and becomes a gametophyte. The **gametophyte** is named for its production of gametes (sperm and eggs). A sperm and an egg fuse, forming a diploid zygote, which undergoes mitosis and becomes the sporophyte.

You'll want to make two observations in Figure 18.3. First, in plants, meiosis produces haploid spores. This is consistent with the realization that the sporophyte is the diploid generation, and spores are haploid. Second, mitosis occurs as a spore becomes a gametophyte, and it occurs as a zygote becomes a sporophyte. Mitosis must happen in both places in order to have two generations.

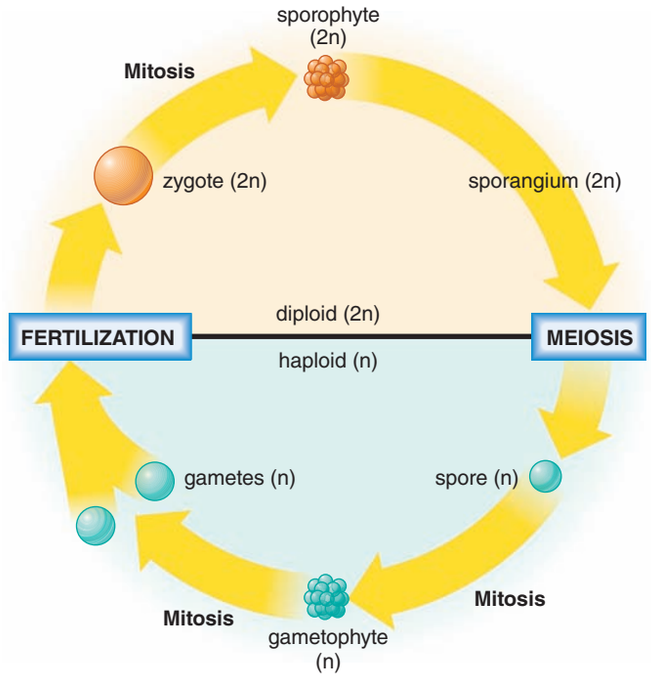


Figure 18.3 Alternation of generations life cycle.

Plants alternate between a sporophyte (2n) stage and a gametophyte (n) stage. The dominant stage is photosynthetic.

The Dominant Generation

As you walk through a park, you may notice a tree or the spongy moss below your feet. These more visually conspicuous parts of the plant are the dominant generation. The dominant generation is the generation that conducts photosynthesis and is responsible for the growth and nourishment of the plant tissues. In nonvascular plants, the gametophyte is the dominant generation, and in vascular plants, the sporophyte is the dominant generation. In the history of plants, *only the sporophyte evolves vascular tissue;* therefore, the trend toward sporophyte dominance is an adaptation to life on land. As the sporophyte gains in dominance, the gametophyte becomes microscopic. It also becomes dependent on the sporophyte, the generation best adapted to a dry land environment.

Note the appearance of the generations in **Figure 18.4.** In mosses (*bryophytes*), the gametophyte is much larger than the sporophyte. In lycophytes and ferns, the gametophyte is a small, independent structure. In contrast, the female gametophyte of cone-bearing plants (*gymnosperms*) and flowering

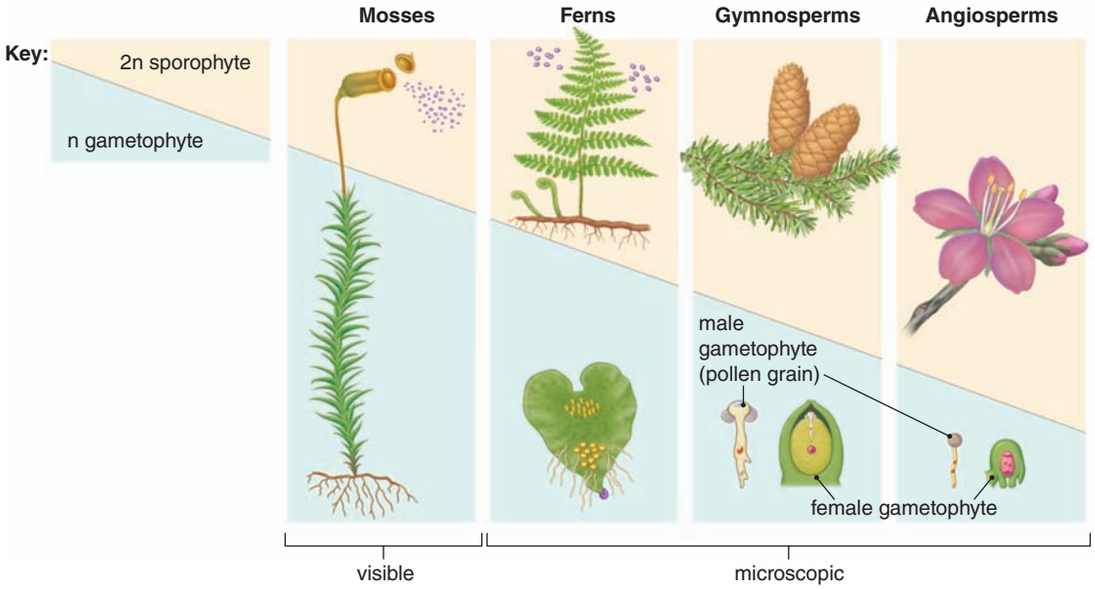


Figure 18.4 Reduction in the size of the gametophyte.

Notice the reduction in the size of the gametophyte among these representatives of today's plants. This trend occurred as plants became adapted for life on land.

Check Your Progress 18.1

1. List the similarities between charophytes and land plants.
2. Describe the five evolutionary events that allowed plants to successfully inhabit land.
3. Summarize alternation of generations, identifying the stages that are haploid versus those that are diploid.

plants (*angiosperms*) is microscopic—it is retained within the body of the sporophyte plant. This protects the female gametophyte from drying out. Also, the male gametophyte of seed plants lies within a pollen grain. Pollen grains have strong, protective walls and are transported by wind, insects, and birds to reach the egg. In the life cycle of seed plants, the spores, the gametes, and the zygote are protected from drying out in the land environment.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Land plants are multicellular eukaryotes that have adapted to a land-based existence.

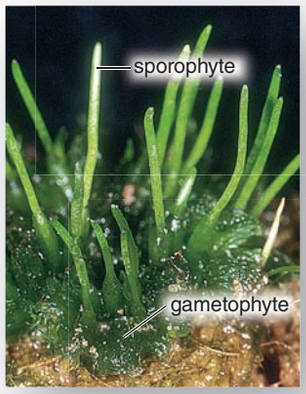
18.2 Diversity of Plants

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

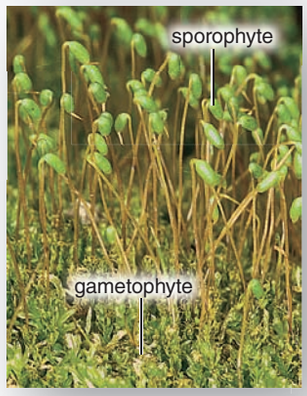
1. Characterize and give examples of the various groups of plants.
2. Describe the life cycles of and reproductive strategies used by each group of plants.
3. Summarize the economic and ecological significance of plants.

Plants can be grouped into two categories: nonvascular and vascular. **Nonvascular** plants receive water and nutrients through diffusion and osmosis directly into the plant body. The plant needs to stay wet and remains very short. **Vascular** plants have internal "pipes" that facilitate the movement of water and nutrients throughout the body. These plants live in drier conditions and can grow tall.



Hornwort

Liverwort gametophyte



Moss

Figure 18.5 Bryophytes.

In bryophytes, the gametophyte is the dominant generation. Bryophytes are short and need to stay wet. Although their habitat can be varied, bryophytes can easily be found on tree trunks, wet rocks, or the cracks in a sidewalk.

Nonvascular Plants

The nonvascular plants include the liverworts, hornworts, and mosses (**Fig. 18.5**). Collectively, they are often called the **bryophytes.** Bryophytes, in general, do not have true roots, stems, and leaves—all of which, by definition, must contain well-developed vascular tissue. In bryophytes, the gametophyte is the dominant generation.

The most familiar bryophytes are the liverworts and mosses, which are both low-lying plants. In bryophytes, the gametophyte is the green, "leafy" part, which produce the gametes. The gametophyte stage of a bryophyte is completely dependent on water for reproduction. Flagellated sperm swim in a film of water to reach an egg. After a sperm fertilizes an egg, the resulting zygote becomes an embryo that develops into a sporophyte. The sporophyte is attached to, and derives its nourishment from, the photosynthetic gametophyte. The sporophyte produces spores in a structure called a *sporangium.* The spores are released into the air, where they can be dispersed by the wind, an adaptation to life on land. The spores will germinate if they land in moist surroundings. Upon germination, male and female gametophytes develop.

The common name of several organisms implies that they are mosses, when they are not. Irish moss is an edible red alga that grows in leathery tufts along northern seacoasts. Reindeer moss, a lichen, is the dietary mainstay of reindeer and caribou in northern lands. Club mosses, discussed later in this chapter, are vascular plants, and Spanish moss, which hangs in grayish clusters from trees in the southeastern United States, is a flowering plant of the pineapple family.

Adaptations and Uses of Bryophytes

The lack of well-developed vascular tissue and the presence of swimming sperm largely account for the short height of bryophytes, such as mosses. Still, mosses can be found from the Antarctic through the tropics to parts of the Arctic. Although most mosses prefer damp, shaded locations in the temperate zone, some survive in deserts and some inhabit bogs and streams. In forests, they frequently form a mat that covers the ground and rotting logs. In dry environments, they may become shriveled, turn brown, and look dead. As soon as it rains, the plant becomes green and resumes metabolic activity. Mosses are much better than flowering plants at living on stone walls, on fences, and in shady cracks of hot, exposed rocks. When bryophytes colonize bare rock, the rock degrades to soil that can be used for their own growth and the growth of other organisms.

In areas such as bogs, where the ground is wet and acidic, dead mosses, especially *Sphagnum,* do not decay. The accumulated moss, called peat or bog moss, can be used as fuel. Peat moss is also commercially important in another way. Because it has special, nonliving cells that can absorb moisture, peat moss is often used in gardens to improve the water-holding capacity of the soil. In addition, *Sphagnum* has antiseptic qualities and was used as a bandage in World War I when medics ran out of traditional bandages.

Vascular Plants

All the other plants we will study are **vascular plants.** The vascular plants usually have *true* roots, stems, and leaves. The roots absorb water from the soil, and the stem conducts water to the leaves. The leaves are fully covered by a waxy cuticle, except where it is interrupted by stomata, little pores for gas exchange, the opening and closing of which can be regulated to control water loss.

Vascular tissue consists of **xylem,** which conducts water and minerals up from the roots, and **phloem,** which conducts sucrose from one part of a plant to another. The walls of conducting cells in xylem are strengthened by **lignin,** an organic compound that makes them stronger, more waterproof, and resistant to attack by parasites and predators. Only because of strong cell walls can plants reach great heights.

Seedless Vascular Plants

Certain vascular plants (e.g., lycophytes and ferns) are seedless; the other two groups of vascular plants (gymnosperms and angiosperms) are seed plants. In seedless vascular plants, the dominant sporophyte produces windblown spores, and the independent gametophyte produces flagellated sperm that require outside moisture to swim to an egg (see Fig. 18.8).

Lycophytes

Lycophytes, also called *club mosses,* were among the first land plants to have vascular tissue. Unlike true mosses (bryophytes), the lycophytes have well-developed vascular tissue in roots, stems, and leaves (**Fig. 18.6**). Typically, a fleshy underground and horizontal stem, called a rhizome, sends up upright aerial stems. Tightly packed, scalelike leaves cover the stems and branches, giving the plant a mossy look. The small leaves, termed *microphylls,* each have a single vein composed

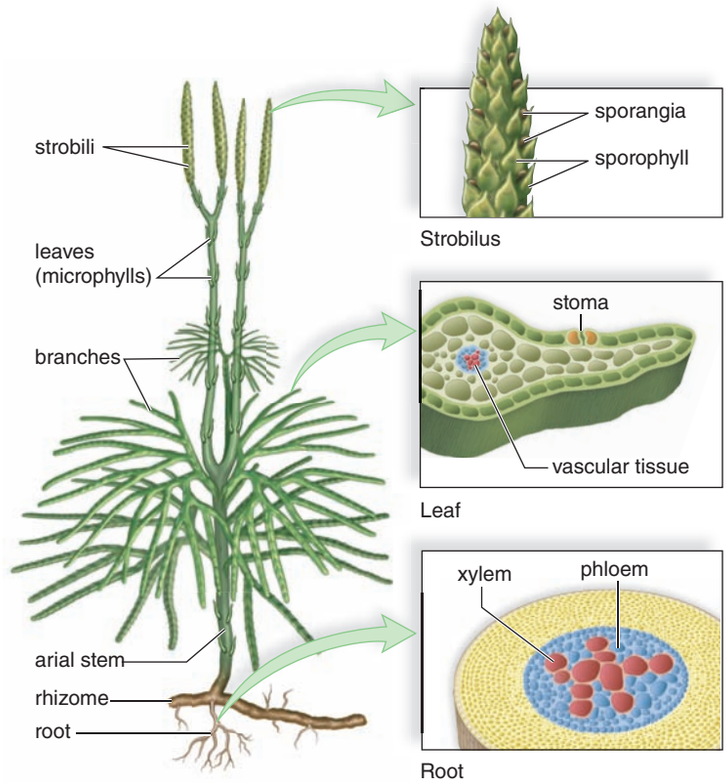


Figure 18.6 ***Lycopodium,*** **a type of club moss.**

Lycophytes, such as *Lycopodium,* have vascular tissue and thus true roots, stems, and leaves. *Top right*, the *Lycopodium* sporophyte develops a conelike strobilus, where sporangia are located. *Bottom right, Lycopodium* develops an underground rhizome system. A rhizome is an underground stem; this rhizome produces roots along its length.

Figure 18.7 Diversity of ferns.

of xylem and phloem. The sporangia are borne on terminal clusters of leaves, called strobili, which are club-shaped. The spores are sometimes harvested and sold as lycopodium powder, or vegetable sulfur, for use in pharmaceuticals and in fireworks because it is highly flammable. The *Lycopodium* featured in Figure 18.6 are common in moist woodlands in temperate climates, where they are called ground pines; they are also abundant in the tropics and subtropics.

Ferns

Ferns are a widespread group of plants that are well known for their attractiveness. Unlike lycophytes, ferns have *megaphylls,* or large leaves with branched veins. Megaphylls provide a large surface area for capturing the sunlight needed for photosynthesis, and the veins conduct water and minerals throughout the leaf tissue. Ferns and other plants with megaphylls are better able to produce food and thus can grow and reproduce more efficiently than plants with microphylls. Fern megaphylls are called **fronds.** The leatherleaf fern (found in flower arrangements) has fronds that are broad, with subdivided leaflets; those of a tree fern can be about 1.4 meters long; and those of the hart's tongue fern are straplike and leathery (**Fig. 18.7**). Sporangia are often located in clusters, called **sori** (sing., sorus), on the undersides of the fronds, where they may be shielded by thin, protective structures called *indusia* (**Fig. 18.8**).

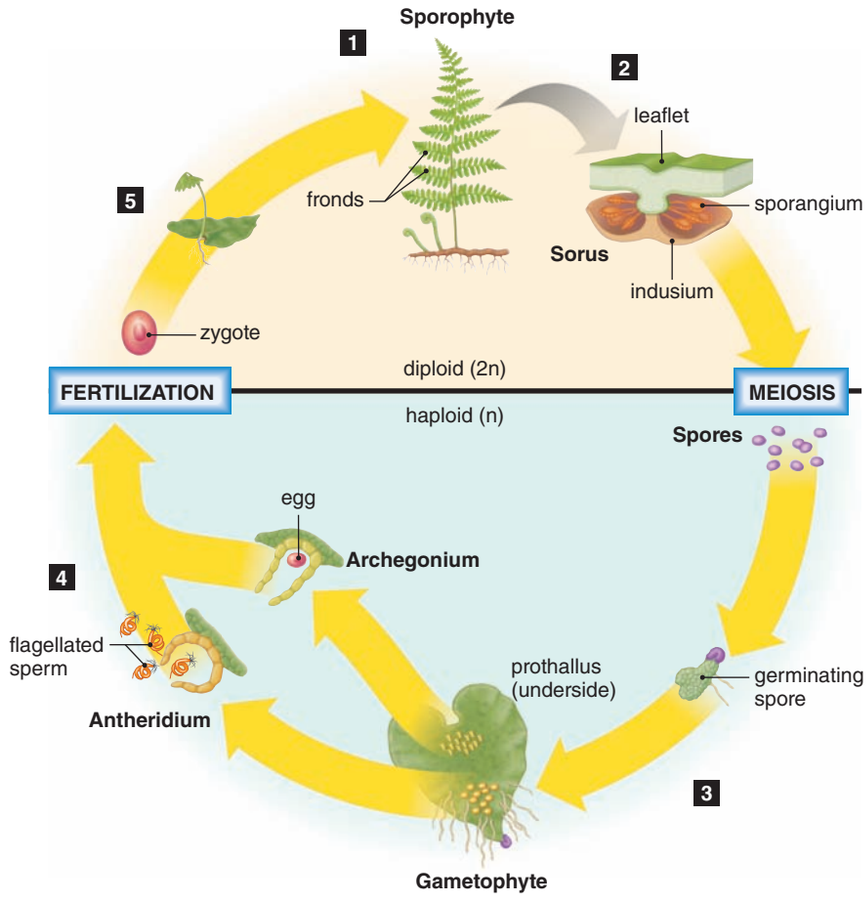


Figure 18.8 Fern life cycle.

1 The sporophyte is dominant in ferns. 2 In the fern shown here, sori are on the underside of the fern. Each sorus, protected by an indusium, contains sporangia, in which meiosis occurs and spores are produced and then released. 3 A spore germinates into a prothallus (the gametophyte), which has sperm-bearing (antheridium) and egg-bearing (archegonium) structures on its underside. 4 Fertilization takes place when moisture is present, because the flagellated sperm must swim in a film of water to the egg. 5 The resulting zygote begins its development inside an archegonium, and eventually a young sporophyte becomes visible. The young sporophyte develops, and fronds appear.

Adaptations and Uses of Ferns Ferns are most often found in moist environments because the small, water-dependent gametophyte, which lacks vascular tissue, is separate from the sporophyte. Also, flagellated sperm require an outside source of moisture in which to swim to the eggs (Fig. 18.8). Once established, some ferns, such as the bracken fern, can spread into drier areas because their rhizomes, which grow horizontally in the soil, produce new plants.

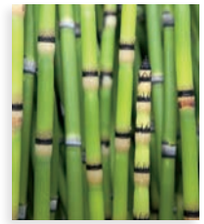
At first it may seem that ferns do not have much economic value, but they are frequently used by florists in decorative bouquets and as ornamental plants in the home and garden. Wood from tropical tree ferns is often used as a building material because it resists decay, particularly by termites. Ferns, especially the ostrich fern, are used as food—in the northeastern United States, many restaurants feature fiddleheads (that season's first growth) as a special treat. Ferns also have medicinal value; many Native Americans use ferns as an astringent during childbirth to stop bleeding, and the maidenhair fern is the source of a cold medicine.

Coal Age Plants

Ferns and the other seedless vascular plants we have been discussing were as large as trees and more abundant during the Carboniferous period, when a great swamp forest encompassed what is now northern Europe, the Ukraine, and the Appalachian Mountains in the United States (**Fig. 18.9**). A large number of these plants died but did not decompose completely. Instead, they were compressed to form the coal that we still mine and burn today; therefore, seedless vascular plants are sometimes called the *Coal Age* plants. (Oil has a similar origin, but it most likely formed in marine sedimentary rocks and includes animal remains.)

Connections: Health

What do horsetail dietary supplements do?



Horsetail belongs to a genus of plants called *Equisetum*, which are close relatives of the ferns. The use of horsetail supplements to treat a variety of illnesses, including tuberculosis and ulcers, goes back to the time of the ancient Romans. While some people have suggested that horsetail supplements may be used to prevent osteoporosis (since horsetails contain the mineral silicon), there have been very few studies on the long-term effects of horsetail use. For unknown reasons, horsetail causes a reduction in some B vitamins in the body, and it may interact with other medications and supplements. As always, you should consult with a physician before you start taking any new dietary supplements.

Figure 18.9 **The Carboniferous period.**

Growing in the swamp forests of the Carboniferous period were treelike club mosses (*left*), treelike horsetails (*right*), and lower, fernlike foliage (*left*). When the trees fell, they were covered by water and did not decompose completely. Sediment built up and turned to rock, the pressure of which caused the organic material to become coal, a fossil fuel that helps run our industrialized society.

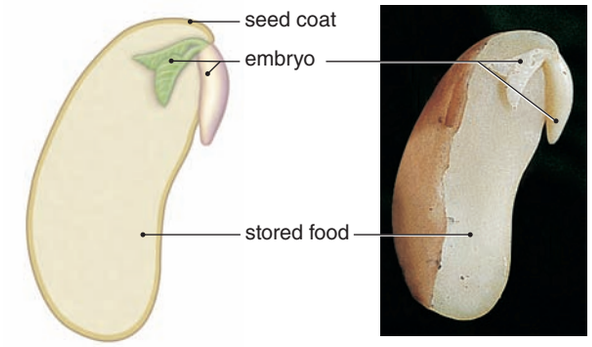


Figure 18.10 **Seed anatomy.**

A split bean seed showing the seed coat, sporophyte embryo, and stored food.

Seed Plants

Seed plants are the most plentiful land plants in the biosphere. Most trees, bushes, and garden plants are seed plants. The major parts of a seed are shown in **Figure 18.10.** The seed coat and stored food protect the sporophyte embryo and allow it to survive harsh conditions during a period of dormancy (arrested state), until environmental conditions become favorable for growth. Seeds can even remain dormant for hundreds of years. When a seed germinates, the stored food is a source of nutrients for the growing seedling. This evolutionary adaptation has contributed to the success of the seed plants. In fact, most of the plant species on the planet are seed plants.

Seed plants have two types of spores that produce two types of microscopic gametophytes—a male and a female gametophyte (**Fig. 18.11**). The male gametophyte is the **pollen grain** and produces sperm. The female gametophyte is the **ovule,** which contains the egg. **Pollination** occurs when the pollen lands on the female reproductive structure. The pollen will grow a pollen tube, and the sperm migrates toward the egg. This represents a major adaptation to the land environment, since the sperm does not need water to swim to the egg. **Fertilization** occurs when the sperm reaches the egg and they combine to form a diploid zygote. The zygote eventually becomes the embryo and the ovule becomes the seed. When the seed germinates, the embryo will become the new sporophyte generation. In gymnosperms the seeds remain "naked" and lie within the grooves of cones. In angiosperms the seeds are "covered" and can be found inside a fruit.

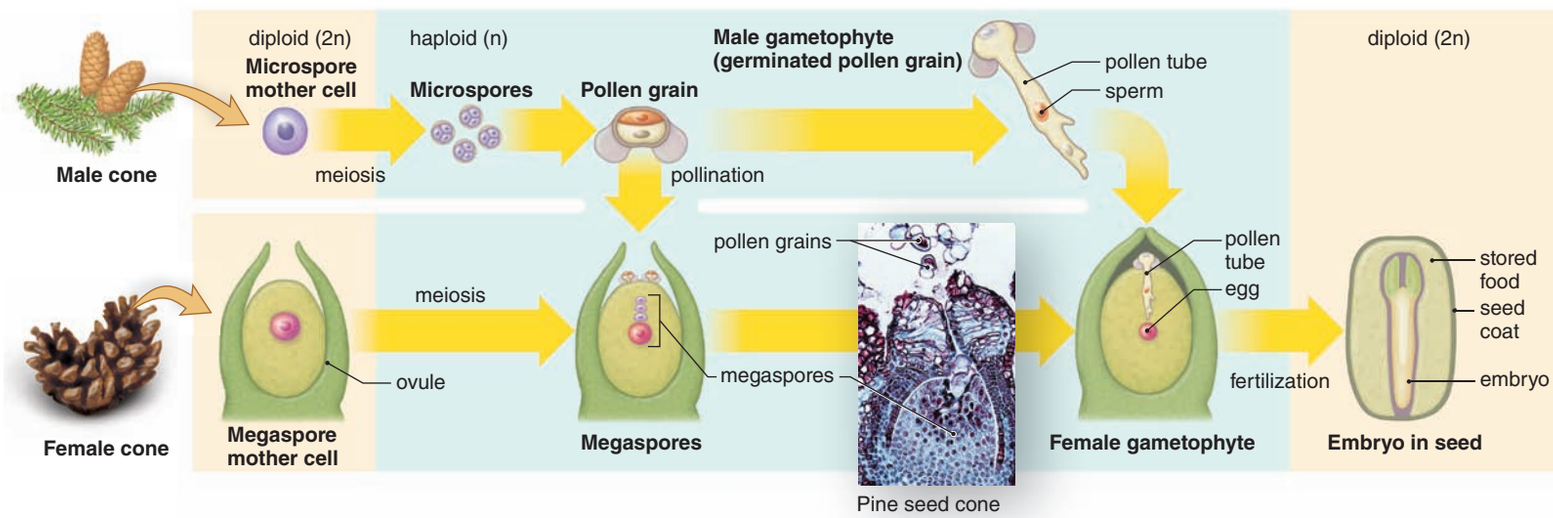


Figure 18.11 **Production of a seed.**

Development of the male gametophyte (*above*) begins when a microspore mother cell undergoes meiosis to produce microspores, each of which becomes a pollen grain. Development of the female gametophyte (*below*) begins in an ovule, where a megaspore mother cell undergoes meiosis to produce megaspores, only one of which will undergo mitosis to become the female gametophyte. During pollination, the pollen grain is carried to the vicinity of the ovule. The pollen grain germinates, and a nonflagellated sperm travels in a pollen tube to the egg produced by the female gametophyte. Following fertilization, the zygote becomes the sporophyte embryo; tissue within the ovule becomes the stored food, and the ovule wall becomes the seed coat.

Gymnosperms

The term **gymnosperm** means naked seed. In gymnosperms, ovules and seeds are exposed on the surface of a cone scale (modified leaf). Ancient gymnosperms, including cycads, were present in the swamp forests of the Carboniferous period (**Fig. 18.12**). Of these, the conifers have become a dominant plant group.

Figure 18.12 Cycads.

Cycads are an ancient group of gymnosperms that are threatened today because they grow slowly. They are typical landscape plants in tropical climates.

Conifers

Pines, spruces, firs, cedars, hemlocks, redwoods, and cypresses are all **conifers** (**Fig. 18.13**). The name *conifer* signifies plants that bear **cones** containing the reproductive structures of the plant, but other types of gymnosperms are also cone-bearing. The coastal redwood, a conifer native to northwestern California and southwestern Oregon, is the tallest living vascular plant; it can attain nearly 100 meters in height. Another conifer, the bristlecone pine of the White Mountains of California, is the oldest living tree. One living specimen is over 4,500 years old, and there is evidence that some bristlecone pines have lived as long as 4,900 years.

Adaptations and Uses of Pine Trees Pine trees are well adapted for dry conditions. For instance, vast areas of northern temperate regions are covered in evergreen coniferous forests. The tough, needlelike leaves of pines conserve

a.

b.

c.

Figure 18.13 Conifers.

a. Pine trees are the most common of the conifers. The pollen cones (male) are smaller than the seed cones (female) and produce plentiful pollen. A cluster of pollen cones may produce more than a million pollen grains. Other conifers include (**b**) the spruces, which make beautiful Christmas trees, and (**c**) the junipers, which possess fleshy seed cones.

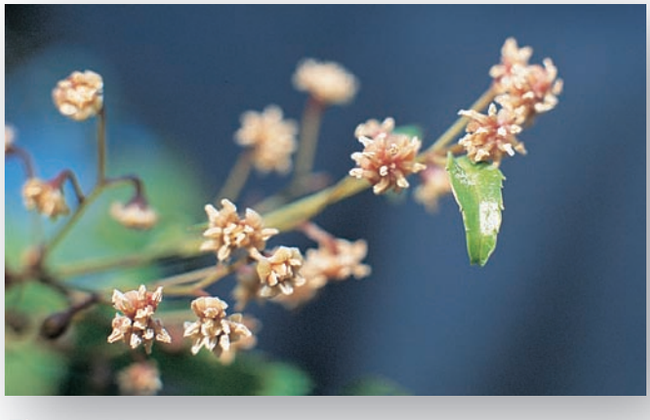


Figure 18.14 ***Amborella trichopoda.***

Molecular data suggest that this plant is most closely related to the first flowering plants.

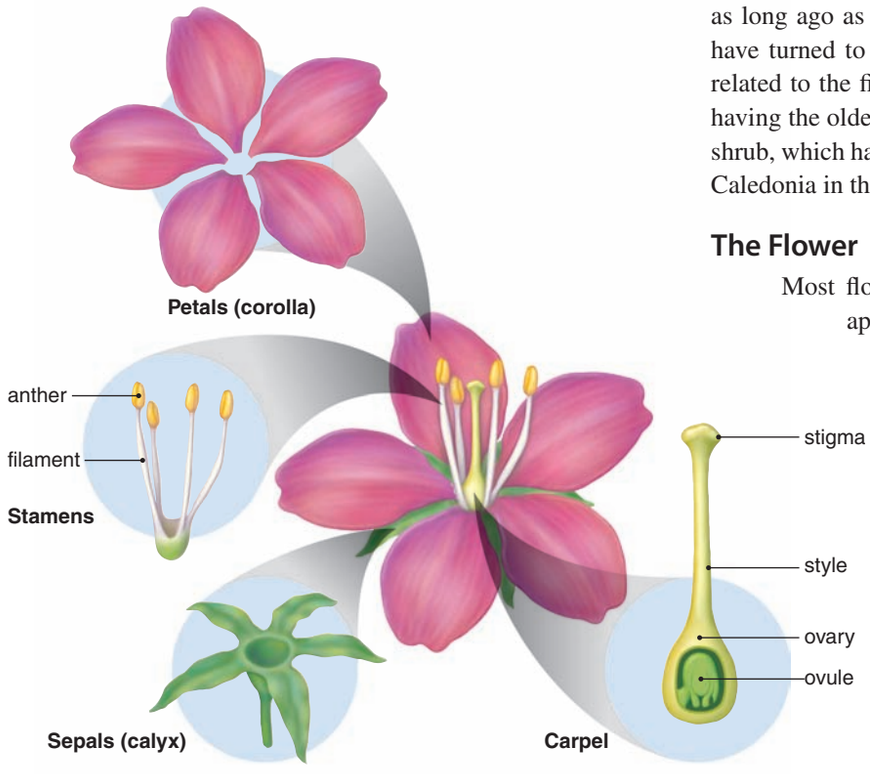


Figure 18.15 **Generalized flower.**

A flower has four main parts: sepals, petals, stamens, and carpels. A stamen has a filament and an anther. A carpel has an ovary, a style, and a stigma. The ovary contains ovules.

water because they have a thick cuticle and recessed stomata. This type of leaf helps them live in areas where frozen topsoil makes it difficult for the roots to obtain plentiful water.

A substance called resin protects leaves and other parts of the tree from insect and fungal attacks. The resin of certain pines is harvested; the liquid portion, called turpentine, is a paint thinner, while the solid portion is used on stringed instruments. The wood of pines is used extensively in construction, and vast forests of pines are planted for this purpose. The wood consists primarily of xylem tissue that lacks some of the more rigid cell types found in flowering trees. Therefore, it is considered a "soft" rather than a "hard" wood.

Angiosperms

The **angiosperms** (meaning covered seeds) are an exceptionally large and successful group of land plants, with 250,000 known species—six times the number of species of all the other plant groups combined. Angiosperms, also called the flowering plants, live in all sorts of habitats, from fresh water to desert, and from the frigid north to the torrid tropics. They range in size from the tiny, almost microscopic duckweed to *Eucalyptus* trees over 35 meters tall. Most garden plants produce flowers and therefore are angiosperms. In northern climates, the trees that lose their leaves are flowering plants. In subtropical and tropical climates, flowering trees as well as gymnosperms tend to keep their leaves all year.

Although the first fossils of angiosperms are no older than about 135 million years, the angiosperms probably arose much earlier. Indirect evidence suggests that the possible ancestors of angiosperms may have originated as long ago as 160 MYA. To help solve the mystery of their origin, botanists have turned to DNA comparisons to find a living plant that is most closely related to the first angiosperms. Their data point to *Amborella trichopoda* as having the oldest lineage among today's angiosperms (**Fig. 18.14**). This small shrub, which has small, cream-colored flowers, lives only on the island of New Caledonia in the South Pacific.

The Flower

Most flowers have certain parts in common, despite their dissimilar appearances. The flower parts, called **sepals, petals, stamens,** and **carpels,** occur in whorls (circles) (**Fig. 18.15**). The sepals, collectively called the **calyx,** protect the flower bud before it opens. The sepals may drop off or may be colored like the petals. Usually, however, sepals are green and remain in place. The petals, collectively called the **corolla,** are quite diverse in size, shape, and color. The petals often attract a particular pollinator. Each stamen consists of a stalk, called a **filament,** and an **anther,** where pollen is produced in pollen sacs. In most flowers, the anther is positioned where the pollen can be carried away by wind or a pollinator. One or more carpels are at the center of a flower. A carpel has three major regions: the ovary, style, and stigma. The swollen base is the **ovary,** which contains from one to hundreds of ovules. The **style** elevates the **stigma,** which is sticky or otherwise adapted for the reception of pollen grains. Glands located in the region of the ovary produce nectar, a nutrient that is gathered by pollinators as they go from flower to flower.

Flowering Plant Life Cycle

In angiosperms, the flower produces seeds enclosed by fruit. The ovary of a carpel contains several ovules, and each of these eventually holds an egg-bearing female gametophyte called an embryo sac. During pollination, a pollen grain is transported by various means from the anther of a stamen to the stigma of a carpel, where it germinates. The **pollen tube** carries the two sperm into a small opening of an ovule. During **double fertilization,** one sperm unites with an egg nucleus, forming a diploid zygote, and the other sperm unites with two other nuclei, forming a triploid (3n) **endosperm** (**Fig. 18.16**). In angiosperms, the endosperm is the stored food.

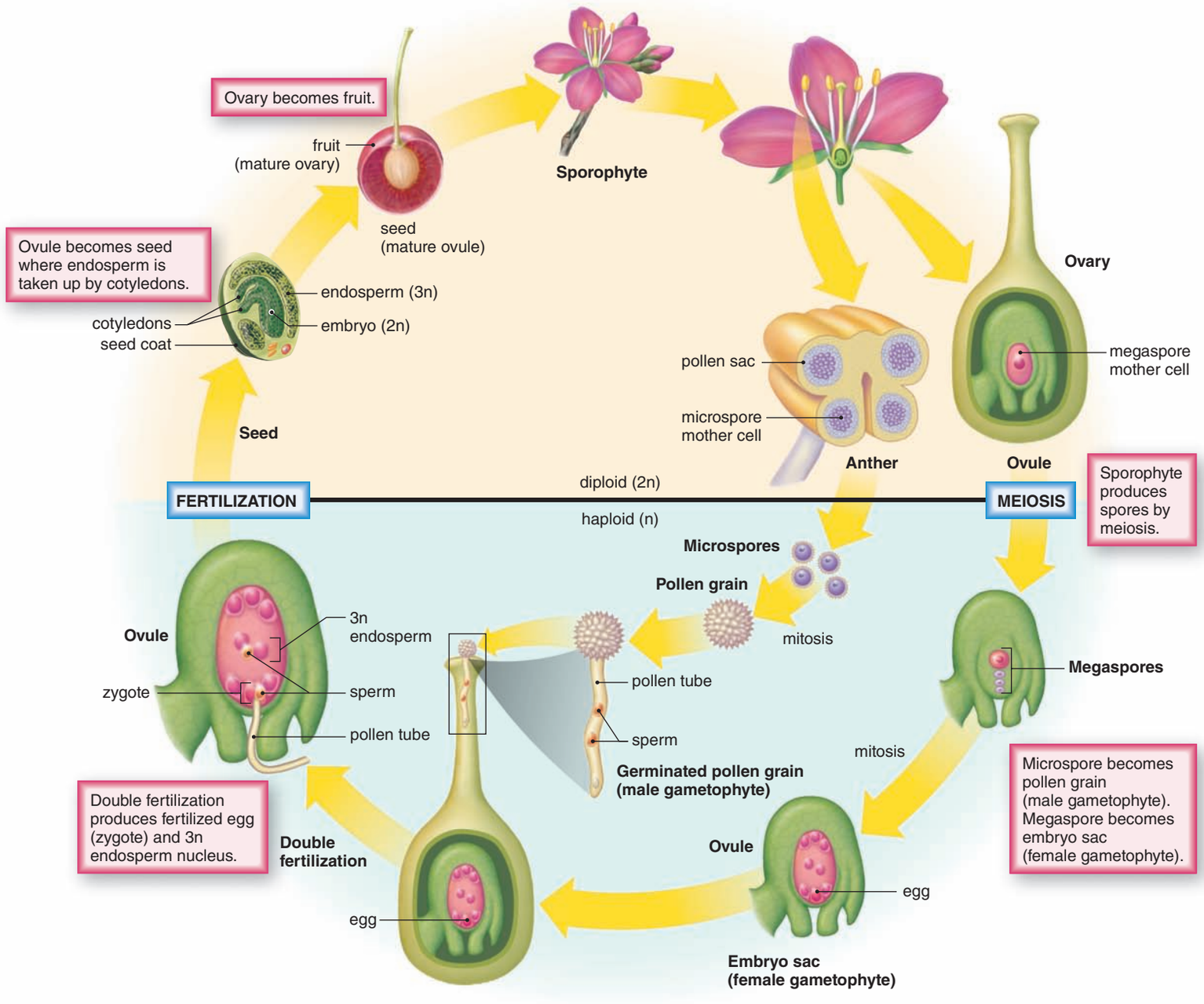


Figure 18.16 Life cycle of a flowering plant.

Flowering plants use double fertilization to produce a diploid zygote and a triploid endosperm.

Figure 18.17 Pollinators.

a. A bee-pollinated flower is typically a color other than red (bees cannot see red). **b.** Butterfly-pollinated flowers are wide, allowing the butterfly to land. **c.** Hummingbird-pollinated flowers are curved back, allowing the bird's beak to reach the nectar. **d.** Bat-pollinated flowers are large and sturdy and able to withstand rough treatment.

Ultimately, the ovule becomes a seed that contains a sporophyte embryo. In some seeds, the endosperm is absorbed by the seed leaves, called **cotyledons;** whereas in other seeds, endosperm is digested as the seed germinates. When you open a peanut, the two halves are the cotyledons. If you look closely, you will see the embryo between the cotyledons. A **fruit** is derived from an ovary and possibly accessory parts of the flower. Some fruits (e.g., apple) provide a fleshy covering for their seeds, and other fruits provide a dry covering (e.g., pea pod, peanut shell).

Adaptations and Uses of Angiosperms

Successful completion of sexual reproduction in angiosperms requires the effective dispersal of pollen and then seeds. Adaptations have resulted in various means of dispersal of pollen and seeds. Wind-pollinated flowers are usually not showy, whereas many insect- and bird-pollinated flowers are colorful (**Fig. 18.17*a–c***). Night-blooming flowers attract nocturnal mammals and insects; these flowers are usually aromatic and white or cream-colored (Fig. 18.17*d*). Although some flowers disperse their pollen by wind, many are adapted to attract specific pollinators, such as bees, wasps, flies, butterflies, moths, and even bats, which carry only particular pollen from flower to flower. For example, bee-pollinated flowers are usually blue or yellow and have ultraviolet shadings that lead the pollinator to the location of nectar at the base of the flower. In turn, the mouthparts of bees are fused into a long tube that is able to obtain nectar from this location. Today, there are some 250,000 species of flowering plants and well over 1 million species of insects. Insects and the flowers they pollinate have *coevolved,* so that both have become dependent on each other for survival.

Video Pollinators

The fruits of flowers protect and aid in the dispersal of seeds. Dispersal occurs when seeds are transported by wind, gravity, water, and animals to another location. Fleshy fruits may be eaten by animals, which transport the seeds to a new location and then deposit them when they defecate. Because animals live in particular habitats and/or have particular migration patterns, they are apt to deliver the fruit-enclosed seeds to a suitable location for seed germination (initiation of growth) and development of the plant.

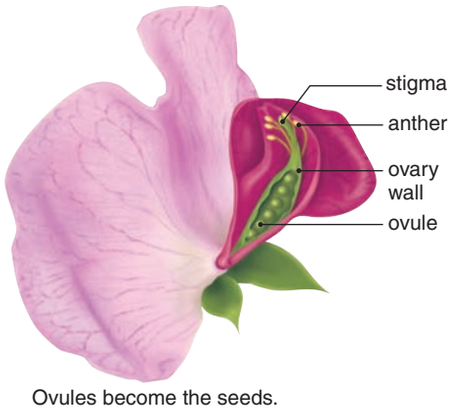
Video Dung Seed Dispersal

Video Fruit Bat Seed Dispersal

Connections: Environment

Are all pollinators attracted to flowers for a food reward?

All flowers need a strategy to attract pollinators to their flowers. Instead of beautiful colors and sweet, tempting nectar, some species of *Ophyrys* orchids use "sexual mimicry" to attract their wasp pollinators. The orchid flowers look like female wasps and emit pheromones to attract male wasps. A male will engage in "pseudocopulation" with a "female" and end up with pollen attached to his head. Frustrated, the male wasp leaves the flower and attempts to mate with another flower. The male then deposits pollen to the second flower, thereby completing the cross-pollination that the orchid intended.



a.

b.

Figure 18.18 **Pea flower and the development of a pea pod.**

Plants have flowers and develop fruit. **a.** Pea flower. **b.** Pea pod (the fruit) develops from the ovary.

Economic Benefits of Plants

One of the primary economic benefits of plants is the use of their fruits as food. Botanists use the term *fruit* in a much broader way than do laypeople. You would have no trouble recognizing an apple as a fruit, but a coconut is also a fruit, as are grains (corn, wheat, rice) and pods that contain beans or peas (**Fig. 18.18**). Cotton is derived from the cotton boll, a fruit containing seeds with seed hairs that become textile fibers used to make cloth.

Other economic benefits of plants include foods and commercial products made from roots, stems, and leaves. Cassava and sweet potatoes are edible roots; white potatoes are the tubers of underground stems. Most furniture, paper, and rope is made from the wood of a tree trunk or fibers from woody stems (**Fig. 18.19**). Also, the many chemicals produced by plants make up 50% of all pharmaceuticals and various other types of products we can use. The cancer drug taxol originally came from the bark of the Pacific yew tree. Today, plants are even bioengineered to produce certain substances of interest.

Indirectly, the economic benefits of land plants are often dependent on pollinators. Only if pollination occurs can these plants produce a fruit and propagate themselves. In recent years, the populations of honeybees and other pollinators have been declining worldwide, principally due to a parasitic mite but partly because of the widespread use of pesticides. Consequently, some plants are endangered because they have lost their normal pollinators. Because of our dependence on flowering plants, we should protect pollinators!

Ecological Benefits of Plants

The ecological benefits of flowering plants are so important that we could not exist without them. Plants produce food for themselves and directly or indirectly for all other organisms in the biosphere. And all organisms that carry out cellular respiration use the oxygen that plants produce through photosynthesis.

Forests are an important part of the water cycle and the carbon cycle. In particular, the roots of trees hold soil in place and absorb water, which returns to the atmosphere. Without these functions of trees and other plants, rainwater runs

Connections: Ecology

Do carnivorous plants capture insects for food?

All plants, including carnivorous plants, such as the sundew plant, are autotrophic organisms that get their energy from photosynthesis. However, some plants that live in mineral-poor soils have evolved adaptations to allow them to capture insects and sometimes small amphibians. The goal of these plants is not to extract energy from their prey. Instead the plant is after a mineral or nutrient (often nitrogen) that is lacking in the soil of their environment. There are over 600 known species of carnivorous plants.

Video Carnivorous Plants

Figure 18.19 **Humans use plant products for daily life.**

Check Your Progress 18.2

1. List the differences between nonvascular and vascular plant structure.
2. List the ecological benefits of plants.
3. Describe the production of a seed.
4. Detail the life cycle of a flowering plant.
5. Predict what might occur if nonvascular plants are not near a water source.
6. Discuss the potential economic hardships that may occur if either gymnosperms or angiosperms went extinct.

off and contributes to flooding. Plants' absorption of carbon dioxide lessens the amount in the atmosphere. CO_2 in the atmosphere contributes to global warming because it and other gases trap heat near the surface of the Earth. The burning of tropical rain forests is double trouble for global warming because it adds CO_2 to the atmosphere and removes trees that otherwise would absorb CO_2. Some plants can also be used to clean up toxic messes. For example, poplar, mustard, and mulberry species take up lead, uranium, and other pollutants from the soil.

Video
Warming Hurts Rice

In addition to all the other uses of land plants, we should not forget their aesthetic value. Almost everyone prefers to vacation in a natural setting and enjoys the sight of trees and flowers.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Plants are grouped in two major categories based on the presence or absence of transport tissues..

18.3 The Fungi

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the general biology of a fungus.
2. Compare and contrast fungi with animals and plants.
3. Explain the life cycles of black bread molds and mushrooms.
4. Summarize the economic and ecological significance of fungi.
5. Provide examples of fungal diseases.

Asked whether members of the kingdom Fungi are more closely related to animals or plants, most would choose plants. But this would be wrong, because **fungi** do not have chloroplasts, and they can't photosynthesize. Then, too, fungi are not animals, even though they are chemoheterotrophs, like animals. Animals ingest their food, but fungi must grow into their food. Fungi release digestive enzymes into their immediate environment and then absorb the products of digestion. Also, animals are motile, but most fungi are nonmotile and do not have flagella at any stage in their life cycle. The fungal life cycle differs from that of both animals and plants because fungi produce windblown spores during both an asexual and a sexual life cycle.

Table 18.1 contrasts fungi with plants and animals. The many unique features of fungi indicate that, although fungi are multicellular eukaryotes (except for the unicellular yeasts and chytrids), they are not closely related to any other group of organisms. DNA sequence data suggest that fungi are distantly related to animals rather than plants and may be descendants of a flagellated protist.

Table 18.1 How Fungi Differ from Land Plants and Animals

Feature	Fungi	Land Plants	Animals
Nutrition	Chemoheterotrophic by absorption	Photosynthetic	Chemoheterotrophic by ingestion
Movement	Most nonmotile	Nonmotile	Motile
Body	Mycelium of hyphae	Specialized tissues/organs	Specialized tissues/organs
Adult chromosome number	Haploid	Haploid/diploid	Diploid
Cell wall	Composed of chitin	Composed of cellulose	No cell wall
Reproduction	Most have spores/mating hyphae	Spores/gametes	Gametes

General Biology of a Fungus

The evolutionary relationships of the major groups of fungi are illustrated in **Figure 18.20.** Representative members of kingdom Fungi are shown in **Figure 18.21.** Our description of fungal structure applies best to the zygospore fungi, sac fungi, and club fungi. All parts of a typical fungus are composed of **hyphae** (sing., hypha), which are thin filaments of cells. The hyphae are packed closely together to form a complex structure, such as a mushroom. However, the main body of a fungus is not the mushroom, puffball, or morel; these are just temporary reproductive structures. The main body of a fungus is a mass of hyphae called a **mycelium** (**Fig. 18.22**). Mycelia can penetrate the soil, wood, or our perishable foods. In Michigan, mycelia in the soil can be found covering 38 acres, making it the largest organism on Earth and earning the label "The Humongous Fungus."

Fungal cells have cell walls, but unlike plants, the fungal cell walls do not contain cellulose. They are made of another polysaccharide in which the glucose monomers contain amino groups (amino sugars) and form a polymer called chitin. This polymer is also the major structural component of the exoskeleton of insects and arthropods, such as lobsters and crabs. Walls, or *septa* (sing., septum), divide the cells of a hypha in many types of fungi. Septa have pores that allow the cytoplasm to pass from one cell to another along the length of the hypha. The hyphae give

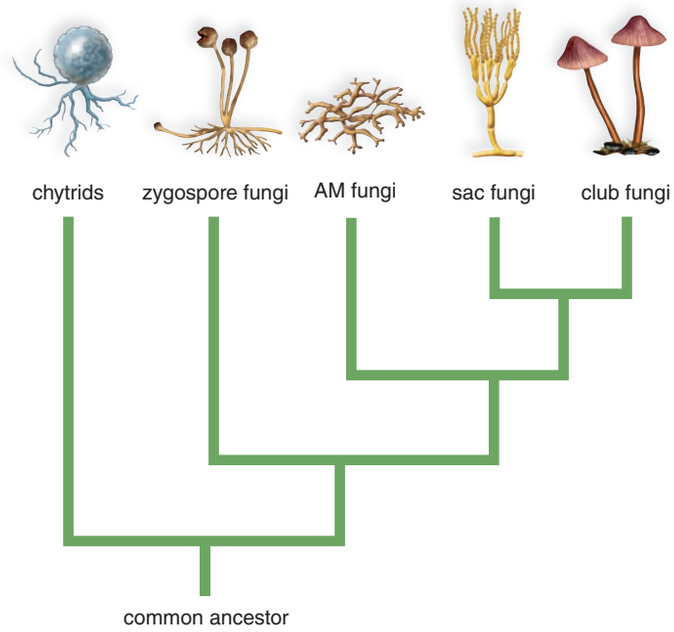
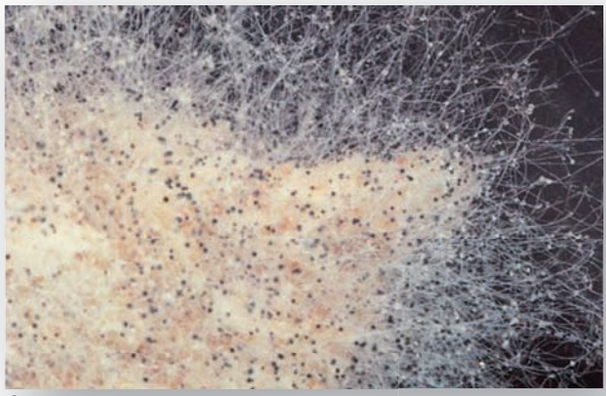


Figure 18.20 **Evolutionary relationships of the major groups of fungi.**

The AM fungi consist of those species that form mycorrhizal relationships with plants.

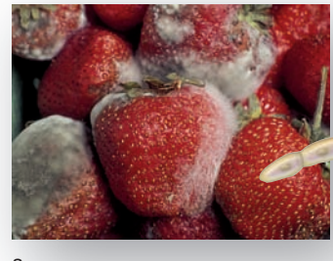

a.

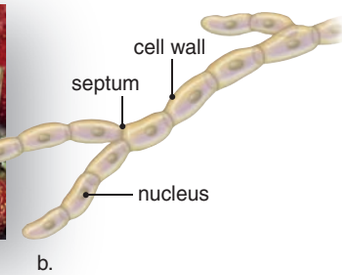
b.

c.

Figure 18.21 **Diversity of fungi.**

a. A zygospore fungus, the common bread mold. **b.** A morel, an edible sac fungus. **c.** A club fungus, the white button mushroom.


a.



b.

Figure 18.22 **Body of a fungus.**

a. This white mass of fungi is called a mycelium. **b.** A mycelium contains many individual strands, and each strand is called a hypha.

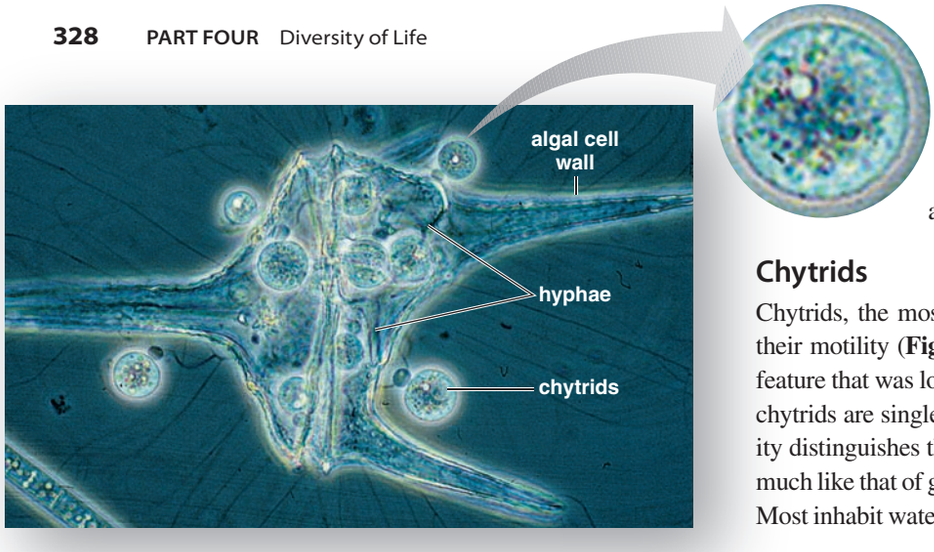


Figure 18.23 Chytrids.

Chytriomyces hyalinus, a chytrid, attacking a dinoflagellate, a single-celled alga.

the mycelium quite a large surface area, which facilitates the ability of the mycelium to absorb nutrients. Hyphae extend toward a food source by growing at their tips, and the hyphae of a mycelium absorb and then pass nutrients on to the growing tips.

Chytrids

Chytrids, the most primitive of the fungi, are a unique group characterized by their motility (**Fig. 18.23**). Both spores and gametes of chytrids have flagella, a feature that was lost at some point in the evolution of the other fungi. Some of the chytrids are single-celled, while others form hyphae without septa. Another oddity distinguishes the chytrids: Some have an alternation of generations life cycle, much like that of green plants and certain algae, but very uncommon among fungi. Most inhabit water and soil, although some live as parasites of plants and animals.

Zygospore Fungi—Black Bread Mold

Multicellular organisms are characterized by specialized cells. Black bread mold, a type of zygospore fungi, demonstrates that the hyphae of a fungus may be specialized for various purposes (**Fig. 18.24**). In this fungus, horizontal

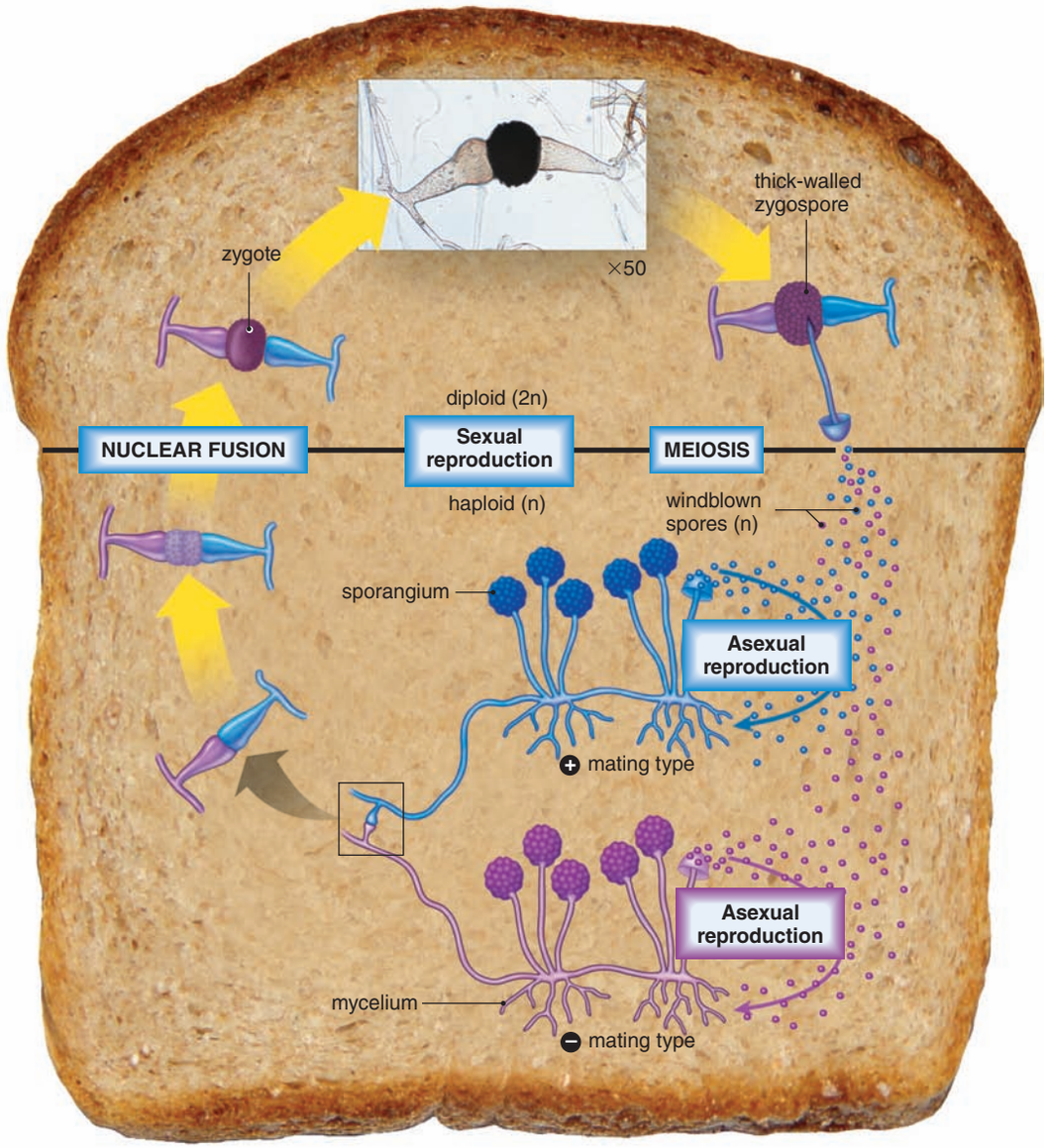


Figure 18.24 Life cycle of black bread mold.

During asexual reproduction, sporangia produce asexual spores. During sexual reproduction, two hypha tips fuse, and then two nuclei fuse, forming a zygote that develops a thick, resistant wall (zygospore). When conditions are favorable, the zygospore germinates, and meiosis within a sporangium produces windblown spores.

hyphae exist on the surface of the bread; other hyphae grow into the bread, anchoring the mycelium and carrying out digestion; and some form stalks that bear sporangia.

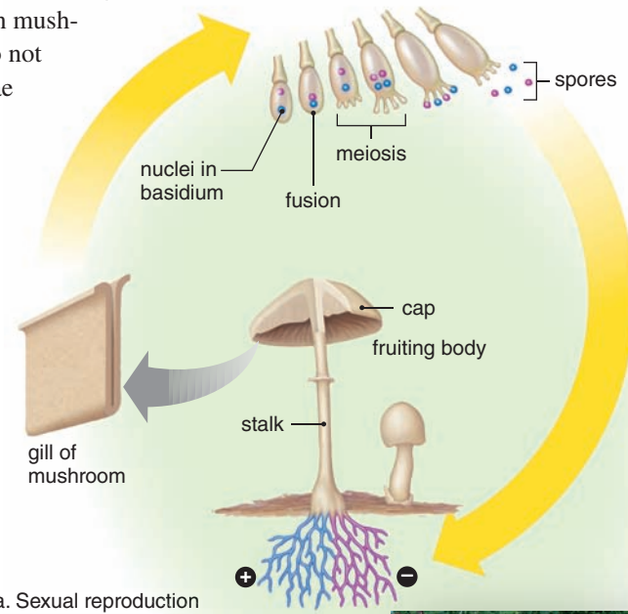
The mycelia of two different mating types are featured in the center and bottom of Figure 18.24. During asexual reproduction, each mycelium produces sporangia, where spore formation occurs. Spores are resistant to environmental damage, and they are often made in large numbers. Fungal spores are windblown, a distinct advantage for a nonmotile organism living on land. When spores encounter a moist environment, they germinate into new mycelia without going through any developmental stages, another feature that distinguishes fungi from animals.

Sexual reproduction in fungi involves the conjugation of hyphae from different mating types (usually designated + and –). In black bread mold, the tips of + and – hyphae join, the nuclei fuse, and a thick-walled zygospore results. The zygospore undergoes a period of dormancy before it germinates, producing sporangia. Meiosis occurs within the sporangia, producing spores of both mating types. The spores, which are dispersed by air currents, give rise to new mycelia. In fungi, only the zygote is diploid, and all other stages of the life cycle are haploid, a distinct difference from animals.

Club and Sac Fungi—the "Mushrooms"

The common term *mushroom* is often used to describe the part of the fungi called the *fruiting body*. Most mushrooms belong to the club fungi (see Fig. 18.20), although a few, such as the morel (see Fig. 18.21*b*) are actually sac fungi. The function of the fruiting body is to produce spores. In mushrooms, when the tips of + and – hyphae fuse, the haploid nuclei do not fuse immediately. Instead, so-called dikaryotic (two nuclei) hyphae form a mushroom consisting of a stalk and a cap. Club-shaped structures called basidia (sing., basidium) project from the gills located on the underside of the cap (**Fig. 18.25*a***). Fusion of nuclei inside these structures is followed by meiosis and the production of windblown spores. Each cap of a mushroom produces tens of thousands of spores.

In the soil, a mycelium is absorbing nutrients and may form a ring. Therefore, when the weather turns warm and rain is plentiful, the mycelium may put forth a circle of mushrooms on your lawn. At one time, people believed this ring indicated where fairies had joined hands and danced the night before (Fig. 18.25*b*).



a. Sexual reproduction

b.

Figure 18.25 Sexual reproduction in club fungi produces mushrooms.

a. For club fungi, fusion of + and – hyphae tips results in hyphae that form the mushroom (a fruiting body). The nuclei fuse in clublike structures (basidia) attached to the gills of a mushroom, and meiosis produces spores. **b.** A circle of mushrooms is called a fairy ring.

Ecological Benefits of Fungi

Most fungi are **saprotrophs** that decompose the remains of plants, animals, and microbes in the soil. Fungal enzymes can degrade cellulose and even lignin in the woody parts of plants. That is why fungi so often grow on dead trees. This also means that fungi can be used to remove excess lignin from paper pulp. Ordinarily, lignin is difficult to extract from pulp and ends up being a pollutant once it is removed.

Along with the bacteria, which are also decomposers, fungi play an indispensable role in the environment by returning inorganic nutrients to the soil. Many people take advantage of the activities of bacteria and fungi by composting their food

Figure 18.26 Carnivorous fungus.

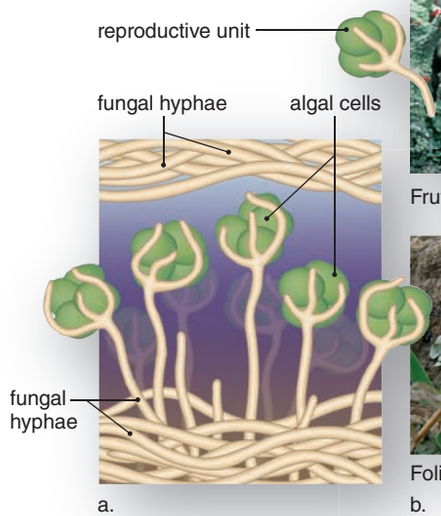
Fungi like this oyster fungus, a type of bracket fungus, grow on trees because they can digest cellulose and lignin. If this fungus meets a roundworm in the process, it immobilizes the worm and digests it also. The worm is a source of nitrogen for the fungus.

scraps or yard waste. When a gardener makes a compost pile and provides good conditions for decomposition to occur, the result is a dark, crumbly material that serves as an excellent fertilizer. And while the material may smell bad as decomposition is occurring, the finished compost looks and smells like rich, moist earth.

Some fungi eat animals that they encounter as they feed on their usual meals of dead organic remains. For example, the oyster fungus (**Fig. 18.26**) secretes a substance that anesthetizes any nematodes (roundworms) feeding on it. After the worms become inactive, the fungal hyphae penetrate and digest their bodies, absorbing the nutrients. Other fungi snare, trap, or fire projectiles into nematodes and other small animals before digesting them. The animals serve as a source of nitrogen for the fungus.

Figure 18.27 Lichens.

a. Morphology of a lichen. **b.** Examples of lichens.



a.

Crustose lichen

Fruticose lichen

Foliose lichen

b.

Mutualistic Relationships

In a mutualistic relationship, two different species live together and help each other. **Lichens** are a mutualistic association between a particular fungus and cyanobacteria or green algae (**Fig. 18.27**). In a lichen, the fungal partner provides water and minerals for the photosynthetic partner. The fungus uses organic acids to release these minerals from rocks or trees. The photosynthesizing partner in turn provides organic molecules, such as sucrose, to the fungus. Overall, lichens are ecologically important because they produce organic matter and create new soil, allowing plants to invade the area.

Lichens occur in three varieties: compact crustose lichens, often seen on bare rocks or tree bark; shrublike fruticose lichens; and leaflike foliose lichens. Regardless, the body of a lichen has three layers. The fungal hyphae form a thin, tough upper layer and a loosely packed lower layer. These layers shield the photosynthetic cells in the middle layer. Specialized fungal hyphae that penetrate or envelop the photosynthetic cells transfer organic nutrients to the rest of the mycelium. The fungus

not only provides minerals and water to the photosynthesizer but also offers protection from predation and desiccation. Lichens can reproduce asexually by releasing fragments that contain hyphae and an algal cell. At first, the relationship between the fungi and algae was likely a parasite-and-host interaction. Over evolutionary time, the relationship apparently became more mutually beneficial, although how to test this hypothesis is a matter of debate.

Mycorrhizal fungi form mutualistic relationships with the roots of most plants, helping the plants grow more successfully in dry or poor soils, particularly those deficient in inorganic nutrients (**Fig. 18.28**). The fungal hyphae greatly increase the surface area from which the plant can absorb water and nutrients. It has been found beneficial to encourage the growth of mycorrhizal fungi when restoring lands damaged by strip mining or chemical pollution.

Mycorrhizal fungi may live on the outside of roots, enter between root cells, or penetrate root cells. *Arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungi* (see Fig. 18.20) penetrate root cells with clumps of bushy hyphae and are associated with 80% of all vascular plants. Ultimately, the fungus and plant cells exchange nutrients, with the fungus bringing water and minerals to the plant and the plant providing organic carbon to the fungus. Early plant fossils indicate that the relationship between fungi and plant roots is an ancient one, and therefore it may have helped plants adapt to life on dry land. The general public is not familiar with mycorrhizal fungi, but a few people relish truffles, the fruiting bodies of a mycorrhizal fungus that grows in oak and beech forests. Truffles are considered a gourmet delicacy.

Figure 18.28 **Plant roots showing mycorrhizae.**

Mycorrhizal fungi increase the surface area for the absorption of water and nutrients.

Economic Benefits of Fungi

Fungi help us produce medicines and many types of food (**Fig. 18.29**). The mold *Penicillium* was the original source of penicillin, a breakthrough antibiotic that led to an important class of cillin antibiotics. Cillin antibiotics have saved millions of lives.

Fermenting yeast (single-celled fungi) are utilized to make bread, beer, wine, and distilled spirits. During fermentation, yeast cells produce the carbon dioxide that causes dough to rise when gas pockets are preserved as the bread bakes. Ethanol is also a product of yeast fermentation and is used to make alcoholic beverages. Other types of fungal fermentation contribute to the manufacture of various cheeses and soy sauce from soybeans. Another commercial application of interest is the use of fungi to soften the centers of certain candies.

Figure 18.29 **Commercial importance of fungi.**

Delicacies such as various types of mushrooms are fungi, and some of our other favorite foods require the participation of fungi to produce them. Some antibiotics, such as amoxicillin, are derived from fungi.

Fungi as Food

In the United States, the consumption of mushrooms has been steadily increasing. Today it is common to see up to a dozen varieties in specialty markets. In addition to adding taste and texture to soups, salads, and omelets and being used in stir-fries, mushrooms are an excellent low-calorie meat substitute with great nutritional value and lots of vitamins. Although there are thousands of mushroom varieties in the world, the white button mushroom, *Agaricus bisporus,* dominates the U.S. market. However, in recent years, brown-colored

Connections: Health

Are all fungi edible?

No! In fact, very few species of fungi are edible. Each year, many people are poisoned and some die from eating poisonous mushrooms. One of the most common poisonous mushrooms is the death cap, or *Amanita phalloides*. The poison in the death cap causes liver and kidney failure, and most people who ingest these fungi die within a few weeks. At the cellular level, the death cap's poison is a polypeptide that shuts down the process of transcription, causing cell death. The color and shape of the death cap are similar to those of many edible mushrooms, resulting in accidental poisonings.

Figure 18.30 **Plant fungal diseases.**

a. Peach leaf curl invades leaves. **b.** Corn smut invades corn kernels. **c.** Cedar apple rust invades cedar trees (shown) then apple trees later.

a.

b.

c.

variants have surged in popularity and have been one of the fastest-growing segments of the mushroom industry. Portabella is a marketing name used by the mushroom industry for the more flavorful brown strains of *A. bisporus*. The mushroom is brown because it is allowed to open, exposing the mature gills with their brown spores; crimini is the same brown strain, but it is not allowed to open before it is harvested. Non-*Agaricus* varieties, especially shiitake and oyster, have slowly gained in popularity over the past decade. Shiitake is touted for lowering cholesterol levels and having antitumor and antiviral properties.

Fungi as Disease-Causing Organisms

Fungi cause diseases in both plants and animals, including humans.

Fungi and Plant Diseases

Fungal pathogens, which usually gain access to plants by way of the stomata or a wound, are a major concern for farmers. Serious crop losses occur each year due to fungal disease. As much as a third of the world's rice crop is destroyed each year by rice blast disease. Corn smut is a major problem in the midwestern United States. Various rusts attack grains, and leaf curl is a disease of fruit trees (**Fig. 18.30**).

The life cycle of rusts may be particularly complex, since it requires two different host species to complete the cycle. Black stem rust of wheat uses barberry bushes as an alternate host. Eradication of barberry bushes in areas where wheat is grown helps control this rust. Fungicides are regularly applied to crops to limit the negative effects of fungal pathogens. Wheat rust can also be controlled by producing new and resistant strains of wheat.

Video Christmas Tree Threat

Fungi and Animal Diseases

As is well known, certain mushrooms are poisonous. The ergot fungus that grows on grain can result in ergotism when a person eats contaminated bread. Ergotism is characterized by hysteria, convulsions, and sometimes death.

Mycoses are diseases caused by fungi. Mycoses have three possible levels of invasion: Cutaneous mycoses affect only the epidermis; subcutaneous mycoses affect deeper skin layers; and systemic mycoses spread their effects throughout the body by traveling in the bloodstream. Fungal diseases that can be contracted from the environment include ringworm from soil, rose gardener's disease from thorns, Chicago disease from old buildings, and basketweaver's disease from grass cuttings. Opportunistic fungal infections now seen in AIDS patients stem from fungi that are always present in the body but take the opportunity to cause disease when the immune system becomes weakened.

Candida albicans, a yeast, causes the widest variety of fungal infections. Disease occurs when antibacterial treatments kill off the microflora community, allowing *Candida* to proliferate. Vaginal *Candida* infections are commonly called "yeast infections" in women. Oral thrush is a *Candida* infection of the mouth common in newborns and AIDS patients (**Fig. 18.31***a*). In individuals with inadequate immune systems, *Candida* can move throughout the body, causing a systemic infection that can damage the heart, the brain, and other organs.

a.

b.

c.

Figure 18.31 Human fungal diseases.

a. Thrush, or oral candidiasis, is characterized by the formation of white patches on the tongue. **b.** Ringworm and (**c**) athlete's foot are caused by *Tinea* spp.

Ringworm is a group of related diseases caused, for the most part, by fungi in the genus *Tinea*. Ringworm is a cutaneous infection that does not penetrate the skin. The fungal colony grows outward, forming a ring of inflammation. The center of the lesion begins to heal, giving the lesion its characteristic appearance, a red ring surrounding an area of healed skin (Fig. 18.31*b*). Athlete's foot is a form of tinea that affects the foot, mainly causing itching and peeling of the skin between the toes (Fig. 18.31*c*).

Batrachochytrium dendrobatidis is a parasitic chytrid that causes a cutaneous infection called chytridiomycosis in frogs around the world. The disease is thought to have originated in South Africa. It began to spread in the 1930s after African clawed frogs were captured and sold as pets and for use in medicine and research. Chytridiomycosis has recently decimated frog populations in Australia and Central and South America.

Figure 18.32 Brown bats in a hibernation cave exhibiting fungal growth on their muzzles.

Bats found in the eastern United States and Canada are currently under attack by *Geomyces destructans*—a filamentous fungus causing white nose syndrome (**Fig. 18.32**). In winter, hibernating cave-dwelling bats have a slow metabolism and live off their fat reserves. The fungus grows on their muzzles and wings, irritating the bats and essentially "waking them up." The irritated bats fly out of the cave and starve to death. To date, 6.7 million bats have died from this disease, and efforts by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service are underway to control this fungus and save North American bats.

Because fungi are eukaryotes and more closely related to animals than to bacteria, it is hard to design an antibiotic against fungi that does not also harm animals. Thus, researchers exploit any biochemical differences they can discover between animals and fungi.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Fungi are decomposers and have ecological and medical significance.

Check Your Progress 18.3

1. Contrast sexual reproduction in black bread mold with sexual reproduction in a mushroom.
2. Describe the role of fungi in the environment.
3. List the organisms that make up a lichen, and describe what the photosynthetic partner provides and what the fungal partner provides.
4. List and describe three examples of fungal diseases affecting humans or other animals.

Media Study Tools

connect BIOLOGY plus+ Enhance your study of this chapter with media! Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Animations

18.2 Vascular System of Plants

Video

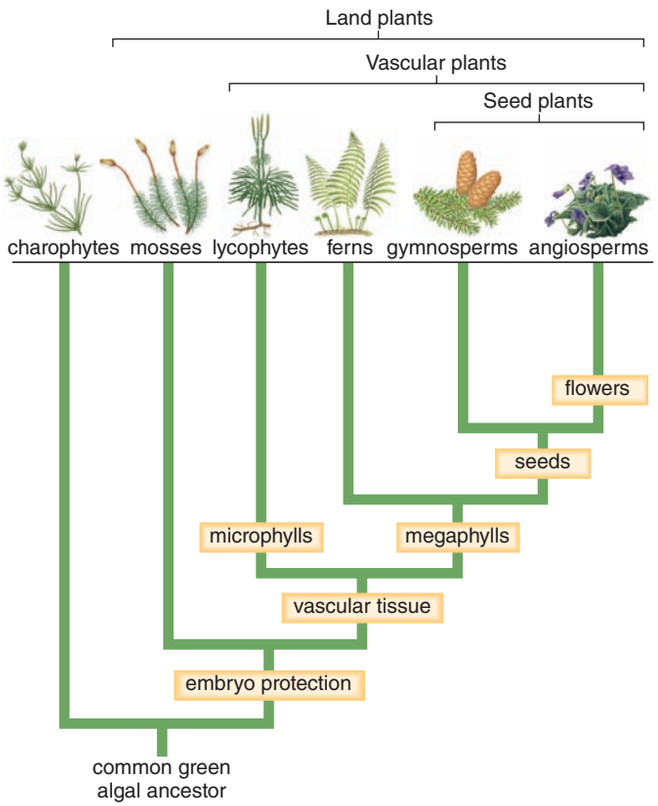
18.1 Plants
18.2 Pollinators • Dung Seed Dispersal • Warming Hurts Rice • Fruit Bat Seed Dispersal • Carnivorous Plants
18.3 Christmas Tree Threat

SUMMARIZE

18.1 Overview of the Land Plants

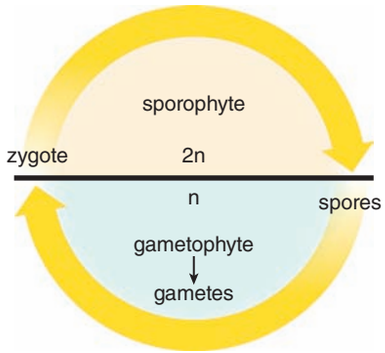
Plants (kingdom Plantae) probably evolved from a multicellular, freshwater green alga about 500 MYA. Whereas algae are adapted to life in the water, plants are adapted to living on land.

- The freshwater green algae known as **charophytes** appear to be the closest living relatives of land plants. The charophytes have some characteristics that could be helpful on land.
- During the evolution of plants, five significant events are associated with adaptation to a land existence: evolution of (1) embryo protection, (2) vascular tissue, (3) leaves, (4) seeds, and (5) the flower.



Plants Have a Unique Life Cycle

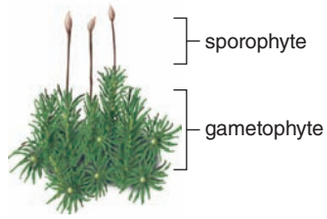
Land plants have an **alternation of generations** life cycle, in which each type of plant exists in two forms, the **sporophyte** (2n) and the **gametophyte** (n):



18.2 Diversity of Plants

Some Plants Are Nonvascular

Bryophytes, like the mosses, are short plants with no **vascular tissue**. The plant must stay wet so flagellated sperm can swim to the egg. The gametophyte is the dominant generation. Spores are windblown.



Most Plants Are Vascular Plants

In vascular plants, the sporophyte generation is the dominant generation. Vascular plants have two kinds of well-defined conducting tissues. **Xylem** is specialized to conduct water and dissolved minerals, and **phloem** is specialized to conduct organic nutrients and hormones. Vascular plants thus have true roots, stems, and leaves and plants can grow taller due to more efficient transport of water, minerals, nutrients, and hormones.

- **Lycophytes** are seedless and have narrow leaves called **microphylls.**
- **Ferns** are seedless and have large leaves with branching veins called megaphylls. **Megaphylls** increase surface area for photosynthesis. Ferns have winblown spores and still require water for sperm to swim to the egg.

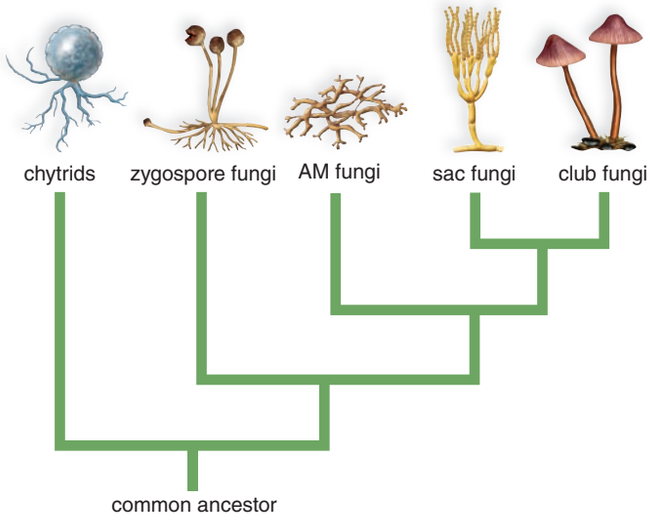
Most Vascular Plants Have Seeds

Plants with **seeds** have reproductive structures that are protected from drying out. Seed plants have male and female gametophytes. Gametophytes are reduced in size. The female gametophyte is retained within an **ovule,** and the male gametophyte is the mature **pollen grain.** The fertilized ovule becomes the seed, which contains a sporophyte embryo, food, and a seed coat.

- **Gymnosperms,** like pine trees, are plants with cones and have "naked seeds" because the seeds are not enclosed by fruit.
- **Angiosperms** are the flowering plants. Angiosperm reproductive organs are in the **flower.** Pollen is produced in pollen sacs inside an anther. Pollen is transported by wind or from flower to flower by birds, insects, or bats. Fertilized ovules in the **ovary** become seeds, and the ovary becomes **fruit.** Thus, angiosperms have "covered seeds."

18.3 The Fungi

Kingdom **Fungi** includes flagellated chytrids, unicellular yeasts, and multicellular molds and mushrooms.



General Biology of a Fungus

The body of a typical fungus is composed of thin filaments of cells, called **hyphae,** that form a mass called a **mycelium.** The cell wall contains chitin. Most fungi produce windblown spores during both asexual and sexual reproduction. Some fungi have a fruiting body (mushroom) for spore dispersal.

Fungi in the Environment

- Fungi are **saprotrophs** that carry on external digestion. As decomposers, fungi keep ecological cycles going in the biosphere.
- **Lichens** (fungi plus cyanobacteria or green algae) are primary colonizers in poor soils or on rocks.
- **Mycorrhizal fungi** grow on or in plant roots and help the plant absorb minerals and water.
- Fungi can have economic benefits by helping produce foods and medicines, as well as serving as a source of food themselves.
- Fungi can cause diseases. Fungal pathogens of plants include blasts, smuts, and rusts that attack crops of great economic importance, such as rice and wheat. Animal diseases caused by fungi include thrush, ringworm, chytridiomycosis, and white nose syndrome.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

While plants and fungi have separate evolutionary histories, they have coevolved over time to form both beneficial and harmful relationships. Both plants and fungi are important to life on Earth.

Land plants are multicellular eukaryotes that have adapted to a land-based existence.

Plants are grouped in two major categories based on the presence or absence of transport tissues.

Fungi are decomposers and have ecological and medical significance.

For more information about the diversity and roles of land plants and fungi, see the following discussions:

Table 16.1 outlines the major events in the evolution of life, including the plants.

Section 16.3 describes how fungi are related to plants and animals in domain Eukarya.

Section 31.1 provides an overview of the role of plants in an ecological community.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

18.1 Overview of the Land Plants

1. Which of the following is not a plant adaptation to land?
   a. ability to undergo photosynthesis
   b. protection of embryo in maternal tissue
   c. development of flowers
   d. presence of vascular tissue
   e. seed production
2. Charophytes
   a. are freshwater green algae.
   b. lack vascular tissue.
   c. are the closest living relatives of land plants.
   d. enclose their zygotes within protective structures.
   e. All of these are correct.
3. The alternation of generations life cycle shows that
   a. plants are only haploid.
   b. plants are only diploid.
   c. plants spend part of their lives as haploid and diploid.
   d. None of these are correct.

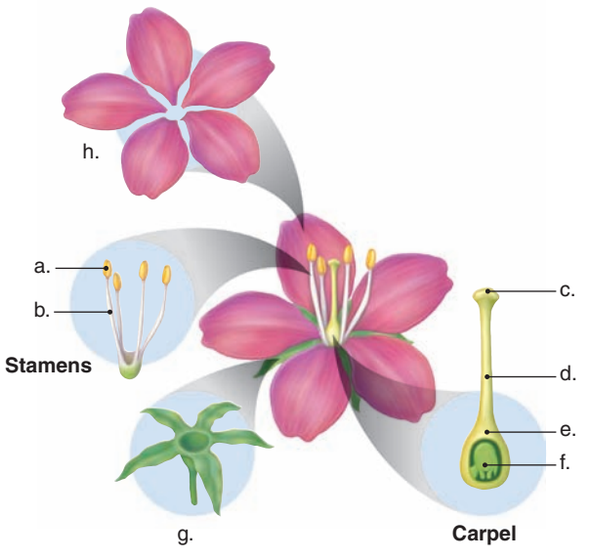
18.2 Diversity of Plants

For items 4–8, identify the plant that fits the description. Use each answer only once.

a. bryophytes
b. lycophytes
c. ferns
d. gymnosperms
e. angiosperms

4. short plants in which the gametophyte generation is the dominant generation
5. true leaves in the form of microphylls
6. seeds enclosed in a fruit
7. cones with naked seeds
8. windblown spores, swimming sperm, and megaphylls

9. Label the parts of the flower in the following illustration.



10. A flower
- **a.** captures spores.
- **b.** attracts pollinators.
- **c.** protects seeds.
- **d.** increases photosynthesis.

11. A fruit is derived from
- **a.** the corolla.
- **b.** an ovary.
- **c.** an ovule.
- **d.** the calyx.

12. A seed protects the
- **a.** embryo.
- **b.** ovule.
- **c.** ovary.
- **d.** pollen grain.

18.3 The Fungi

13. Fungi fullfill an ecological role by decaying mostly dead organic matter. Fungi are therefore called
- **a.** pathogens.
- **b.** carnivores.
- **c.** saprotrophs.
- **d.** photosynthesizers.

14. Which of the following statements about fungi is false?
- **a.** Most fungi are multicellular.
- **b.** Fungal cell walls are composed of cellulose.
- **c.** Most fungi are nonmotile.
- **d.** Fungi digest their food before ingesting it.

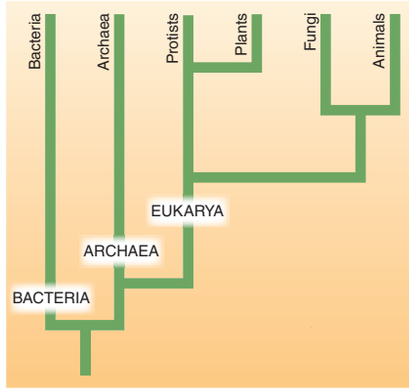
15. A mycelium is
- **a.** a mass of fungal filaments.
- **b.** a type of fungus with flagellated spores and gametes.
- **c.** the main body of a typical fungus.
- **d.** a mutualistic association between a fungus and a green alga or cyanobacterium.
- **e.** Both a and c are correct.

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Bare-root pine tree seedlings transplanted into open fields often grow very slowly. However, pine seedlings grow much more vigorously if they are dug from their native environment and then transplanted into a field, as long as some of the original soil is retained on the seedlings. Why is it so important to retain some native soil on the seedlings?

2. Evolutionary trees, such as the one that follows, indicate that members of kingdoms Plantae and Fungi had protist ancestors. All three groups of organisms belong to which domain? What characteristics would distinguish the protist ancestors of plants from those of fungi?



3. Bristlecone pines are among the oldest trees on Earth. In 1964, a graduate student working in the southwestern United States took core samples from several trees to determine their age. One tree was found to be over 4,000 years old. When the student's coring tool broke, the U.S. Forest Service gave him permission to cut down the tree in order to accurately determine its age. The tree was found to be 4,862 years old—the oldest known living creature on Earth.

Did the student do anything wrong, scientifically or morally, considering that he was given permission to cut down the tree?

Who should be responsible for protecting unique trees like the bristlecone pine?

19

Both Water and Land: Animals

World's Smallest Vertebrate

There are almost 58,000 species of vertebrates (animals with a backbone) known to science. Vertebrates first evolved approximately 500 million years ago (MYA) in the marine environment. From this original ancestor the fish, amphibians, reptiles (and birds), and mammals (and humans) would eventually arise. While many species of vertebrates are well, there may be an estimated 18,000 unidentified vertebrate species waiting to be discovered.

In the past few years, scientists have discovered two new species of frogs in New Guinea—one of which, *Paedophryne amanuensis*, averages 7.7 mm in size and is believed to be the world's smallest vertebrate. These miniature frogs primarily inhabit the leaf litter on the floor of tropical environments, occupying a unique ecological niche. This adaptation appears to be a common feature among miniaturized frogs, allowing them to exploit novel food sources in their environment. The small body size also reduces the number of eggs carried by the females to just two. Scientists are still uncertain as to the advantage this may provide *P. amanuensis*.

While new species of both vertebrates and invertebrates (animals without a backbone) are being discovered all the time, both groups are facing an extinction crisis. In fact, approximately 20% of the known species of mammals, 12% of the birds, and 33% of the amphibians are threatened with extinction. The future of many vertebrates may, in large part, depend on our ability to protect them. However, amid such discouraging messages, there are rays of hope. Large-scale cooperative efforts to conserve critical habitats, which will help protect a wide range of the species that inhabit these areas, are an example of how people can work together to protect biodiversity.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What are the common characteristics of all animals?
2. What is the major difference between a vertebrate and an invertebrate?

OUTLINE

19.1 Evolution of Animals 338

19.2 Sponges and Cnidarians: The Early Animals 342

19.3 Flatworms, Molluscs, and Annelids: The Lophotrochozoans 344

19.4 Roundworms and Arthropods: The Ecdysozoans 348

19.5 Echinoderms and Chordates: The Deuterostomes 353

19.6 Human Evolution 363

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 14.2 What is the difference between a homologous and an analogous structure?

Table 16.1 During what geological time frame did the first animals appear? The first land vertebrates?

Section 16.3 To what domain of life do the animals belong?

19.1 Evolution of Animals

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain how animals are distinguished from other groups of organisms.
2. Identify the key events in the evolution of animals.
3. List the characteristics that distinguish protostomes from deuterostomes.

Animals, along with protists, plants, and fungi, are members of the domain Eukarya. Like the plants and fungi, animals are multicellular eukaryotes, but unlike plants, which make their food through photosynthesis, animals are chemoheterotrophs and must acquire nutrients from an external source. So must fungi, but fungi digest their food externally and absorb the breakdown products. Animals ingest (eat) their food and digest it internally.

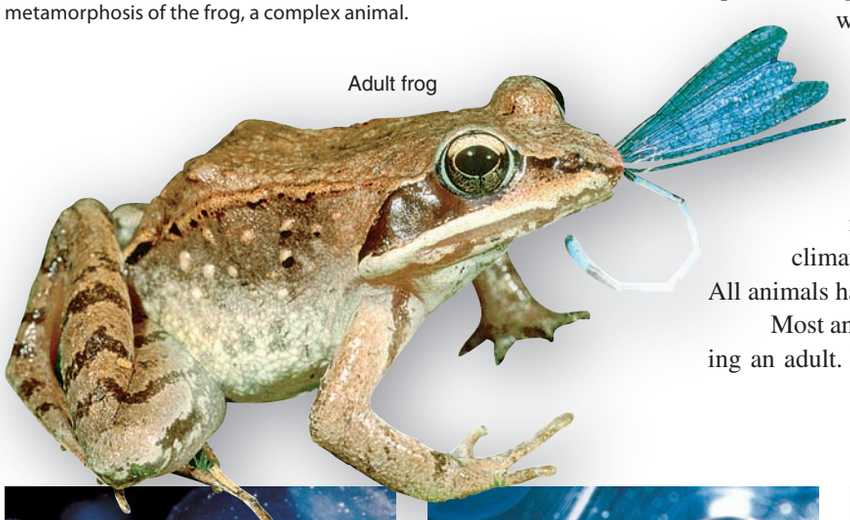
Animation Three Domains

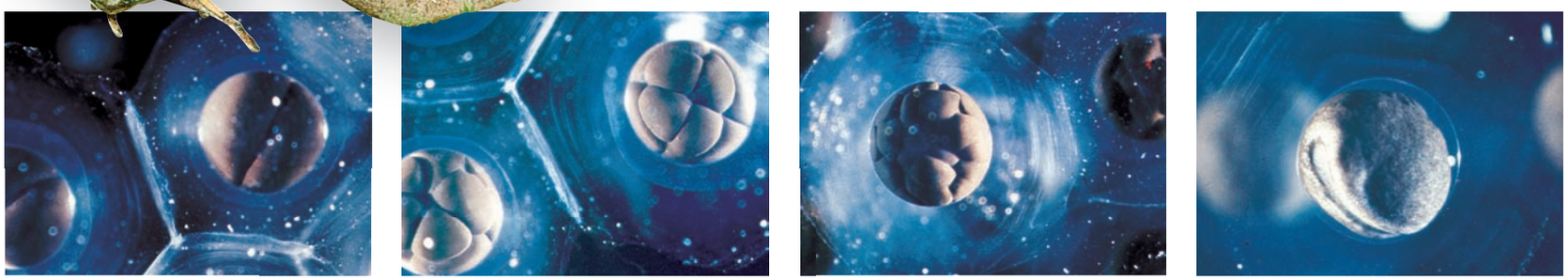
Animals usually carry on sexual reproduction and typically begin life as a fertilized diploid egg. From this starting point, they undergo a series of developmental stages to produce an organism that has specialized tissues, usually within organs that carry on specific functions. Two types of tissues in particular—muscles and nerves—characterize animals. The presence of these tissues allows an animal to exhibit motility and a variety of flexible movements. The evolution of these tissues enables many types of animals to search actively for their food and to prey on other organisms. Coordinated movements also allow animals to seek mates, shelter, and a suitable climate—behaviors that have resulted in the vast diversity of animals. All animals have evolved from a single ancestor.

Most animals undergo a complex process of development before becoming an adult. **Figure 19.1** illustrates the development of an animal, with the

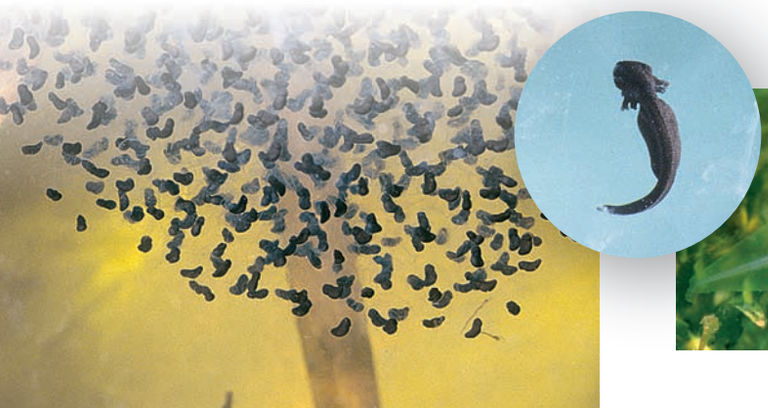
Figure 19.1 Animals.

Most animals begin life as a fertilized egg. The egg undergoes development to produce a multicellular organism that has specialized tissues. Animals depend on a source of external food to carry on life's processes. This series of images shows the development and metamorphosis of the frog, a complex animal.





Stages in development, from zygote to embryo.



Stages in metamorphosis, from hatching to tadpole.

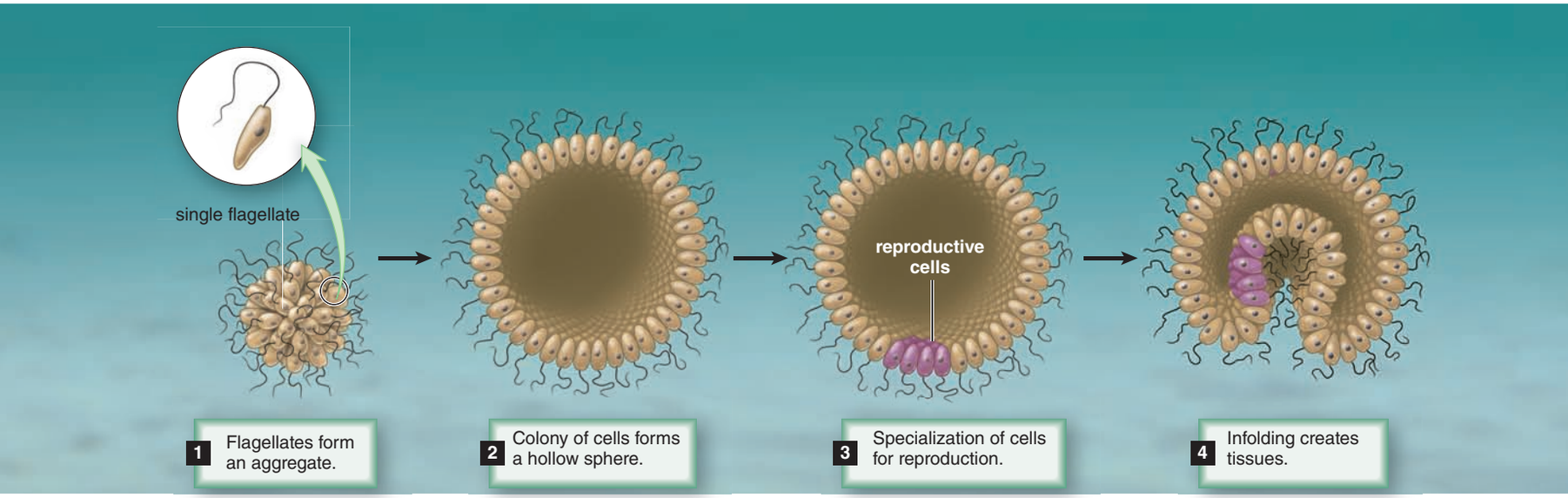


Figure 19.2 **The colonial flagellate hypothesis.**

The hypothesis explains how a colony of protistans may have formed some of the specialized structures characteristic of the first animals.

frog as an example. A frog goes through a number of embryonic stages to become a larval form (the tadpole) with specialized organs, including muscular and nervous systems that enable it to swim. A larva is an immature stage that typically lives in a different habitat and feeds on different foods than the adult. By means of a change in body form called *metamorphosis*, the larva, which only swims, turns into a sexually mature adult frog that swims and hops. The aquatic tadpole lives on plankton, and the terrestrial adult typically feeds on insects and worms. A large African bullfrog will try to eat just about anything, including other frogs, as well as small fish, reptiles, and mammals.

Ancestry of Animals

In Chapter 18, we discussed evidence that plants most likely share a green algal ancestor with the charophytes. Most scientists agree that animals also evolved from a protist, most likely a protozoan. The *colonial flagellate hypothesis* states that animals are descended from an ancestor that resembled a hollow, spherical colony of flagellated cells. **Figure 19.2** shows how the process would have begun with an aggregate of a few flagellated cells. From there, a larger number of cells could have formed a hollow sphere. Individual cells within the colony would have become specialized for particular functions, such as reproduction. Two tissue layers could have arisen by an infolding of certain cells into a hollow sphere. Tissue layers do arise in this manner during the development of animals today. Among the protists, choanoflagellates (collared flagellates) most likely resemble the last single-celled ancestor of animals, and molecular data tell us that they are the closest living protist relative of animals. A choanoflagellate is a single cell, 3–10 µm in diameter, with a flagellum surrounded by a collar of 30–40 microvilli (**Fig. 19.3**).

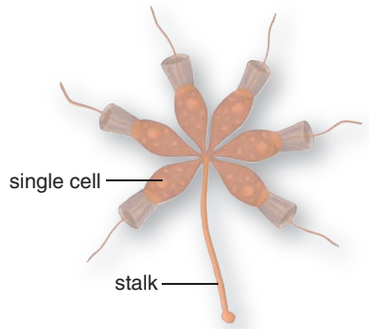


Figure 19.3 **Choanoflagellates.**

The choanoflagellates are the living protozoans most closely related to animals and may resemble their last single-celled ancestor. Some choanoflagellates live in colonies like these, in which a group of cells is attached to a surface by means of a stalk.

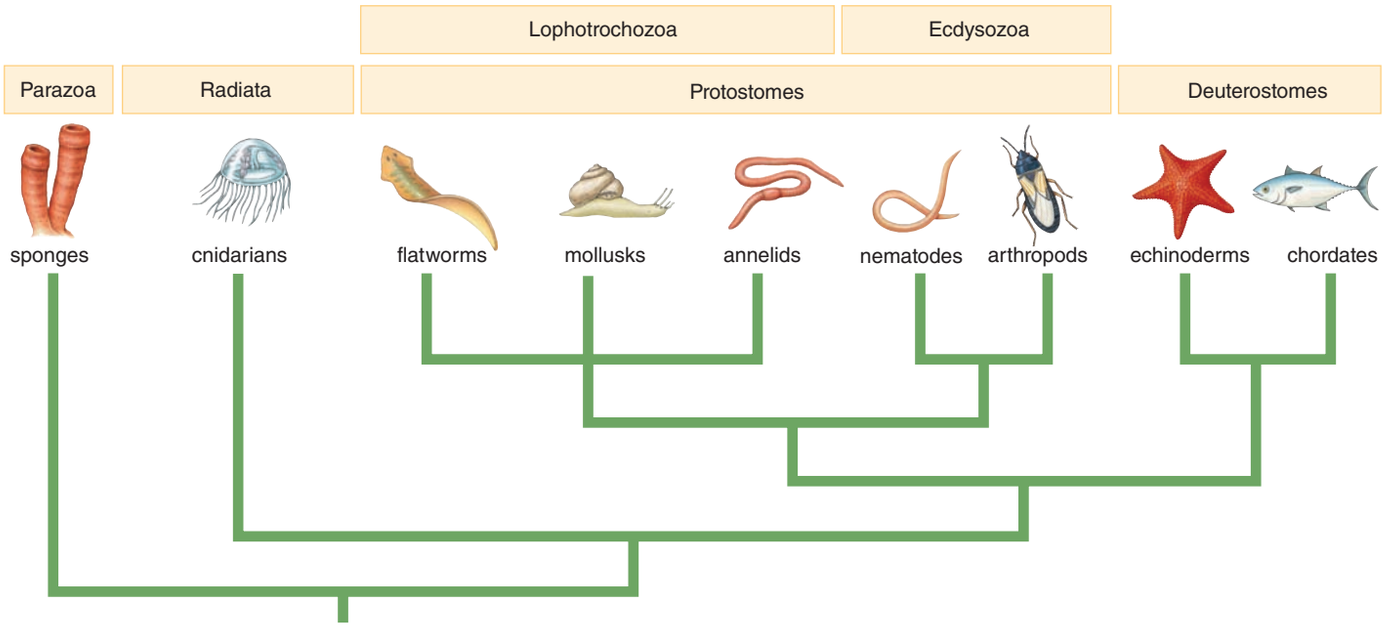


Figure 19.4 **A modern look at the animal evolutionary tree.**

The relationships in this diagram are based on research into the developmental biology of each group, as well as molecular studies of DNA, RNA, and protein similarity.

The Evolutionary Tree of Animals

The animal kingdom is currently divided into 35 groups, or phyla. The majority of these animals are **invertebrates.** Invertebrates lack an internal skeleton, or endoskeleton, of bone or cartilage. The invertebrates evolved first, and they far outnumber the **vertebrates** (animals with an endoskeleton). Because early animals were simple invertebrates, the fossil record is sparse regarding the early evolution of animals. However, systemicists have been able to establish a fairly clear record of the evolutionbary history of animals (**Fig. 19.4**) based primarily on molecular, developmental, and anatomical data. Molecular comparisons have played a major role, because the more closely related two organisms are the more their DNA sequences they will have in common with regard to their DNA sequences. Advances in the study of genomics and proteomics (see Section 12.4) have greatly enhanced the ability to distinguish one group of animals from another.

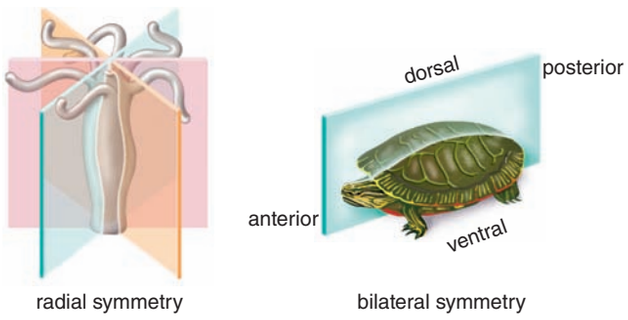


Figure 19.5 **Radial versus bilateral symmetry.**

a. With radial symmetry, two mirror images are obtained no matter how the animal is sliced longitudinally. Radially symmetrical animals tend to stay in one place and reach out in all directions to get their food. **b.** With bilateral symmetry, mirror images are obtained only if the animal is sliced down the middle. Bilaterally symmetrical animals tend to actively go after their food.

Evolutionary Trends

Animals differ in biological organization. Sponges, like all animals, are *multicellular,* but they have no true tissues and therefore have the cellular level of organization. Because of these characteristics, sponges are classifed as parazoans, which means "beside the animals," referring to their position on the evolutionary tree alongside the "true animals," or eumetazoans. Cnidarians, such as *Hydra*, are eumetazoans. They have true tissues, which are formed from two germ layers when they are embryos. All other eumetazoans have three germ layers (ectoderm, mesoderm, endoderm) as embryos. The term **germ layers** refers to cells that give rise to all the other tissues and organs in an animal's body.

Animals differ in symmetry. Many sponges have no particular symmetry and are therefore asymmetrical. **Radial symmetry**, as seen in cnidarians, means that the animal is organized circularly, similar to a wheel. No matter where the animal is sliced longitudinally, two mirror images are obtained (**Fig. 19.5*a***). **Bilateral symmetry**, as seen in flatworms, means that the animal has definite right and left halves; only a longitudinal cut down the center of the animal will produce mirror images (Fig. 19.5*b*). During the evolution of animals, the trend toward bilateral symmetry is accompanied by **cephalization,** localization of a brain and specialized

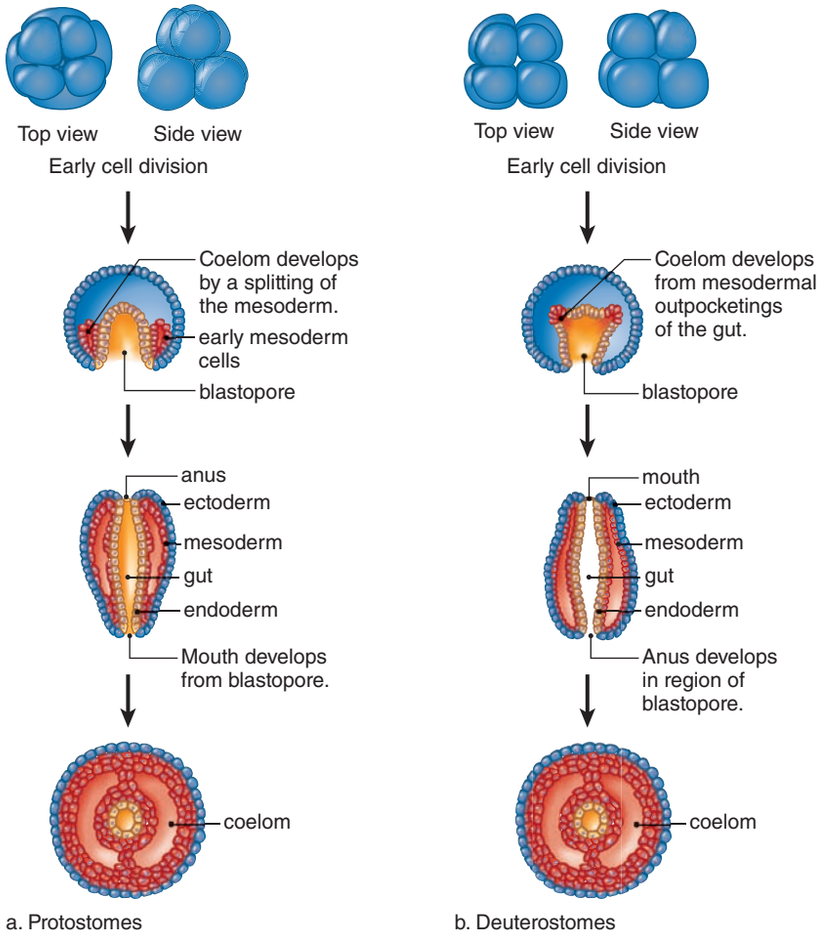


Figure 19.6 **Development in protostomes and deuterostomes.**

a. Protostomes are characterized by spiral cell division when the embryo first forms and a blastopore that becomes the mouth. Further, if a coelom is present, it forms by a splitting of the mesoderm. **b.** Deuterostomes are characterized by radial cell division when the embryo first forms and a blastopore that becomes the anus. Also, the primitive gut outpockets to form the coelom.

sensory organs at the anterior end of an animal. Therefore, bilateral symmetry was an important precursor for the evolutionary trend of increasing complexity of the nervous system and sensory organs. The appearance of bilateral symmetry marked the evolution of animals that were able to exploit environmental resources in new ways through their more active lifestyles.

Animals are also distinguished by the patterns of development as an early embyro. Notice in **Figure 19.6** that the cell division to form an embryo is different in **protostomes** (flatworms, roundworms, molluscs, annelids, and arthropods) than in **deuterostomes** (echinoderms and chordates). In both protostomes and deuterostomes, the first embryonic opening is called the blastopore. However, in protostomes the blastopore becomes the mouth and in deuterostomes it becomes the anus. This is the feature that explains their names; the mouth is the first opening in protostomes (*proto*, before) and the second opening in deuterostomes (*deutero*, second).

Molecular and developmental data suggest that the protostomes are more closely related to each other than they are to the deuterostomes**.** The protostomes are divided into two subgroups, the lophotrochozoa and the ecdysozoa (see Fig. 19.4). The difference between the two is based on how they grow. Lophotrochozoans (flatworms, molluscs, and annelids) grow by adding mass to their existing body, while the ecdysozoans (nematodes and arthropods) grow by molting. The protostome group also differs with regard to the presence of a **coelom,** or body cavity. Some protostomes have no body cavity and are **acoelomates,** as are flatworms (**Fig. 19.7*a***). Acoelomates are packed solid with mesoderm. In contrast,

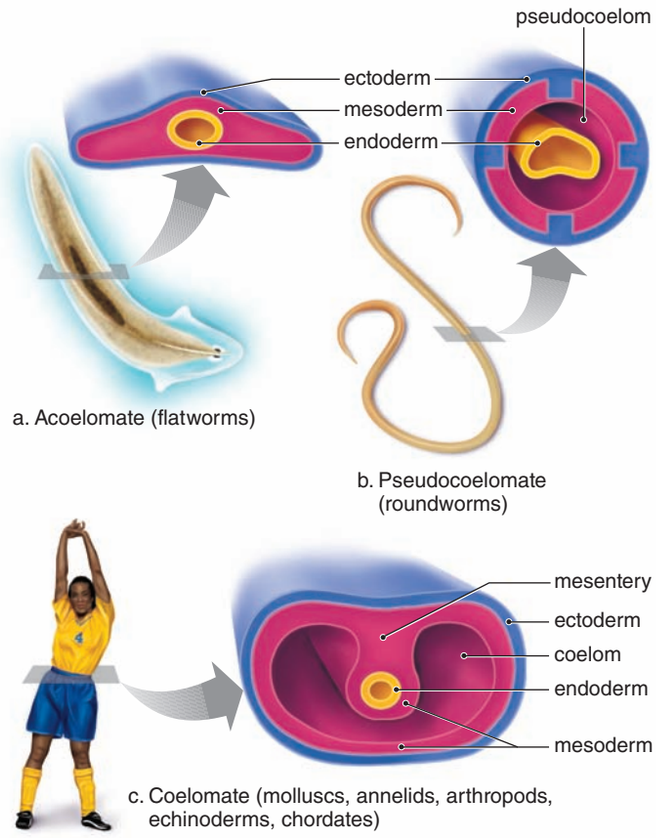


Figure 19.7 **Type of body cavity.**

a. Flatworms don't have a body cavity; they are acoelomates, and mesoderm fills the space between ectoderm and endoderm. **b.** Roundworms are pseudocoelomates; they have a body cavity, and mesoderm lies next to the ectoderm but not the endoderm. **c.** Other animals are coelomates, and mesoderm lines the entire body cavity.

19.1 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

All animals have similar characteristics and can trace their ancestors back to a single-celled protist.

Check Your Progress 19.1

1. Summarize the key events in the evolution of animals.
2. Compare and contrast the differences in cell divisions to form an embryo in protostomes and deuterostomes.
3. Summarize what distinguishes an animal from a plant or fungi.

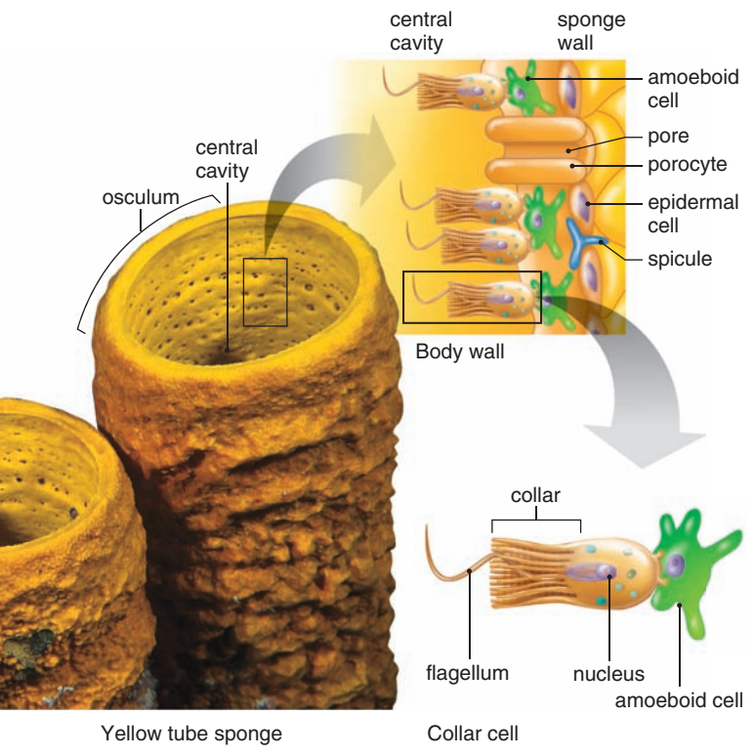


Figure 19.8 **Sponge anatomy.**

Water enters a sponge through pores and circulates past collar cells before exiting at the mouth, or osculum. Collar cells digest small particles that become trapped by their appendages, flagella in the microvilli of their collar. Amoeboid cells transport nutrients from cell to cell.

a body cavity provides a space for the various internal organs. Roundworms are **pseudocoelomates,** and their body cavity is incompletely lined by mesoderm—that is, a layer of mesoderm exists beneath the body wall but not around the gut (Fig. 19.7*b*). The other protostomes and the deuterostomes are **coelomates** in which the body cavity is completely lined with mesoderm (Fig. 19.7*c*). In protostomes, the coelom develops by a splitting of the mesoderm, while in deuterostomes the coelum develops as outpockets of the primitive gut (see Fig. 19.6). In animals with a coelom, mesentery, which is composed of strings of mesoderm, supports the internal organs. In coelomate animals, such as earthworms, lobsters, and humans, the mesoderm can interact not only with the ectoderm but also with the endoderm. Therefore, body movements are freer because the outer wall can move independently of the organs, and the organs have the space to become more complex. In animals without a skeleton, the coelom may acts as a hydrostatic (fluid-filled) skeleton.

Animals can be nonsegmented or *segmented*. **Segmentation** is the repetition of body parts along the length of the body. Annelids, such as earthworms; arthropods, such as lobsters; and chordates, such as ourselves, are segmented. To illustrate your segmentation, run your hand along your backbone, which is composed of a series of vertebrae. Segmentation leads to specialization of parts because the various segments can become differentiated for specific purposes. In the case of your backbone, the two small vertebrae just beneath your skull are specialized to permit you to move your head up and down and side to side. The vertebrae of your lower back are much larger and sturdier, as they support the weight of your upper body.

19.2 Sponges and Cnidarians: The Early Animals

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the evolutionary trends that occur in the sponges and cnidarians.
2. Distinguish between a parazoan and a eumetazoan and give an example of each.

This section describes the first two groups of invertebrate animals—the sponges and cnidarians. As we will see, although both of these groups are classified as simple animals, they differ significantly in their level of organization.

Sponges: Multicellularity

Sponges (phylum Porifera) have saclike bodies perforated by many pores (**Fig. 19.8**). Sponges are aquatic, largely marine animals that vary greatly in size, shape, and color. Sponges are multicellular but lack organized tissues. Therefore, sponges have a *cellular level of organization*. Molecular data place sponges as Parazoans, which are located at the base of the evolutionary tree of animals.

The body wall of a sponge is lined internally with flagellated cells called *collar cells*, or choanocytes (Fig. 19.8). The beating of the flagella produces water currents that flow through the pores into the central cavity and out through the osculum, the upper opening of the body. Even a simple sponge only 10 centimeters

tall is estimated to filter as much as 100 liters of water each day. It takes this much water to supply the needs of the sponge. A sponge is a sedentary filter feeder**,** an organism that filters its food from the water by means of a straining device—in this case, the pores of the walls and the microvilli making up the collar of collar cells. Microscopic food particles that pass between the microvilli are engulfed by the collar cells, which digest the food particles in food vacuoles.

Sponges can reproduce both asexually and sexually. They reproduce asexually by fragmentation or by *budding*. During budding, a small protuberance appears and gradually increases in size until a complete organism forms. Budding produces colonies of sponges that can become quite large. During sexual reproduction, eggs and sperm are released into the central cavity, and the zygote develops into a flagellated larva, which may swim to a new location. If the cells of a sponge are mechanically separated, they will reassemble into a complete and functioning organism! Like many less specialized organisms, sponges are also capable of regeneration, or growth of a whole from a small part.

Some sponges have an endoskeleton composed of *spicules*, small, needle-shaped structures with one to six rays. Most sponges have fibers of spongin, a modified form of collagen; a bath sponge is the dried spongin skeleton from which all living tissue has been removed. Today, however, commercial "sponges" are usually synthetic.

Cnidarians: True Tissues

Cnidarians (phylum Cnidaria) are an ancient group of invertebrates with a rich fossil record. Cnidarians are radially symmetrical and capture their prey with a ring of tentacles that bear specialized stinging cells, called cnidocytes (**Fig. 19.9**). Each cnidocyte has a capsule, called a **nematocyst,** containing a long, spirally coiled, hollow thread. When the trigger of the cnidocyte is touched, the nematocyst is discharged. Some nematocysts merely trap a prey or predator; others have spines that penetrate and inject paralyzing toxins before the prey is captured and drawn into the gastrovascular cavity. Most cnidarians live in the sea, though there are a few freshwater species.

During development, cnidarians have two germ layers (ectoderm and endoderm); as adults, cnidarians have a *tissue level of organization*. Therefore, cnidarians are classified as the first of the eumetazoans. Two basic body forms are seen among cnidarians—the polyp and the medusa. The mouth of a polyp is directed upward from the substrate, while the mouth of the medusa is directed downward. A medusa has much jellylike packing material and is commonly called a "jellyfish." Polyps are tubular and generally attached to a rock (Fig. 19.9).

Cnidarians, as well as other marine animals, have been the source of medicines, particularly drugs that counter inflammation.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Sponges and cnidarians represent early forms of animals.

Check Your Progress 19.2

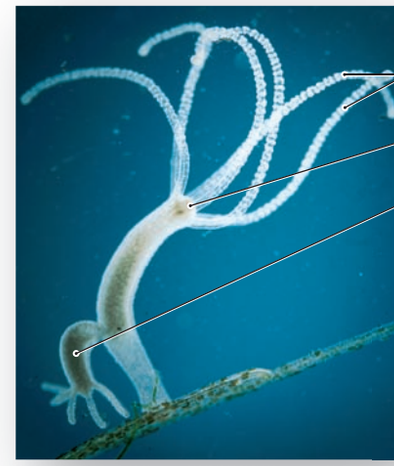
1. List the key evolutionary trends seen in sponges and cnidarians.
2. Compare and contrast the body style and development of sponges and cnidarians.
3. Describe the position of sponges and cnidarians in the animal kingdom.

Connections: Ecology

What is causing the loss of the coral reefs?

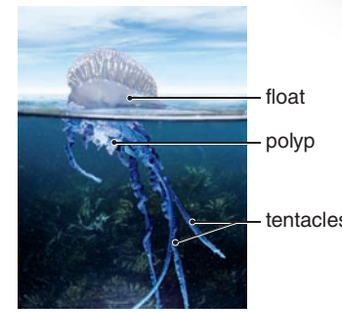
Coral reefs are widely recognized as biodiversity hot spots—areas where large numbers of species can be found. However, scientists estimate that, over the past few decades, over 25% of the world's coral reefs have been lost and another 33% are in danger. What is causing this loss? Destructive fishing practices, pollution and sediment from poor coastal land management, and the removal of coastal mangrove forests are all contributing factors. In addition, the elevation of ocean temperatures associated with global climate change are causing coral reefs to die, a phenomenon called "coral bleaching."

Video
Coral Reef Ecosystems



a. Hydra

b. Sea anemone



c. Portuguese man-of-war

d. Cup coral

Figure 19.9 **Cnidarians.**

(**a**) Hydras and (**b**) sea anemones are solitary polyps that use tentacles laden with stinging cells to capture their food. **c.** The Portuguese man-of-war is a colony of polyp and medusa types of individuals. One polyp becomes a gas-filled float, and the other polyps are specialized for feeding. **d.** The calcium carbonate skeletons of corals form the coral reefs.

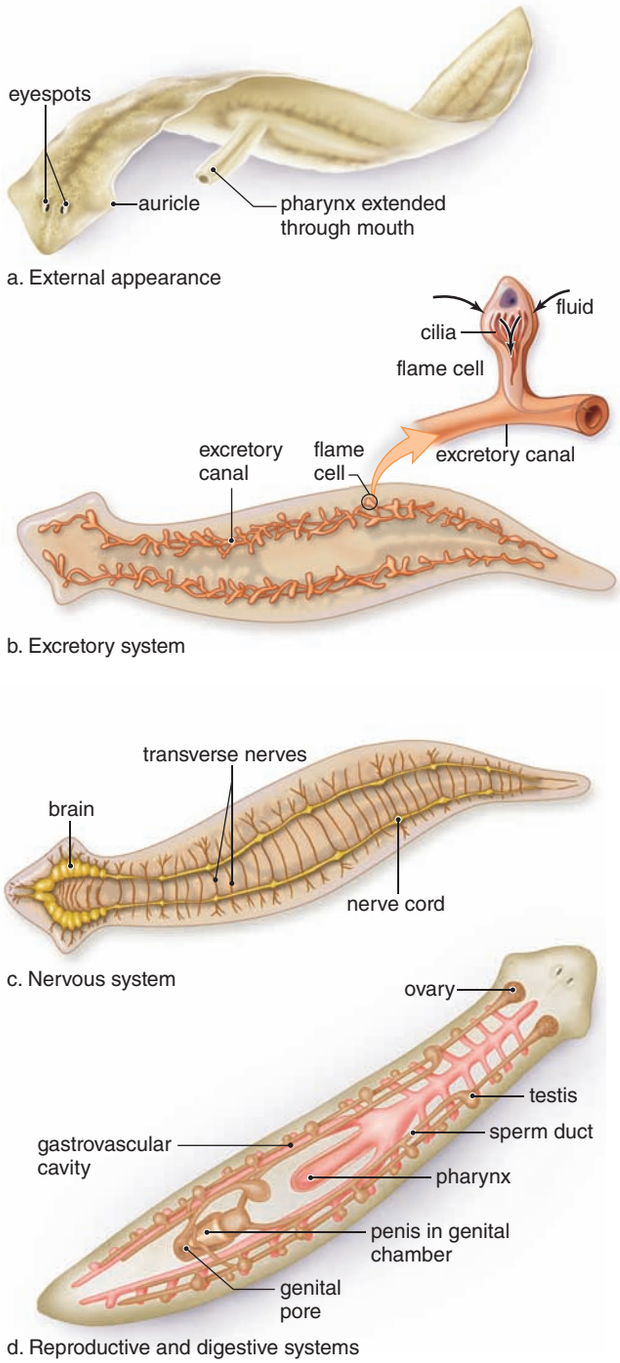


Figure 19.10 **Anatomy of a planarian.**

a. This drawing shows that flatworms are bilaterally symmetrical and have a head region with eyespots. **b.** The excretory system with flame cells is shown in detail. **c.** The nervous system has a ladderlike appearance. **d.** The reproductive system (shown in brown) has both male and female organs, and the digestive system (shown in pink) has a single opening. When the pharynx is extended, as shown in (a), a planarian sucks food up into a gastrovascular cavity, which branches throughout its body.

19.3 Flatworms, Molluscs, and Annelids: The Lophotrochozoans

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the distinguishing characteristics of a lophotrochozoan.
2. Distinguish among the flatworms, molluscs, and annelids based on body plan.

Flatworms, molluscs, and annelids all belong to the group of protostome animals called lophotrochozoans. The *lopho* portion of their name is derived from a tentacle-like feeding structure called a lophophore. The *trocho* portion of the name refers to a larval stage, called a trochophore, that is characterized by a distinct band of cilia. While not all members of this group have both a lophophore and a trochophore larval stage, molecular analyses have supported the hypothesis that all members share a common evolutionary ancestor. Lophotrochozoans are also distinct from other protostomes, such as the arthropods and nematodes, in that they increase their body mass gradually without molting.

Flatworms: Bilateral Symmetry

Flatworms (phylum Platyhelminthes) have *bilateral symmetry*. Like all the other animal phyla we will study, they also have three germ layers. The presence of mesoderm in addition to ectoderm and endoderm gives bulk to the animal and leads to greater complexity. Flatworms are acoelomates, meaning that they lack a body cavity, or coelom.

Free-living flatworms, called **planarians,** have several body systems (**Fig. 19.10**), including a ladderlike nervous system. A small anterior brain and two lateral nerve cords are joined by cross-branches called transverse nerves. Planarians exhibit cephalization; aside from a brain, the "head" end has light-sensitive organs (the eyespots) and chemosensitive organs located on the auricles. Their three muscle layers—an outer circular layer, an inner longitudinal layer, and a diagonal layer—allow for varied movement. Their ciliated lower epidermis allows planarians to glide along a film of mucus.

The animal captures food by wrapping itself around the prey, entangling it in slime, and pinning it down. Then the planarian extends a muscular pharynx and, by a sucking motion, tears up and swallows its food. The pharynx leads into a three-branched gastrovascular cavity, where digestion occurs. The digestive tract is incomplete because it has only one opening.

Planarians are **hermaphrodites,** meaning that they possess both male and female sex organs. The worms practice cross-fertilization: The penis of one is inserted into the genital pore of the other, and a reciprocal transfer of sperm takes place. The fertilized eggs hatch in two to three weeks as tiny worms.

The parasitic flatworms belong to two classes: the tapeworms and the flukes. As adults, tapeworms are endoparasites (internal parasites) of various vertebrates, including humans (**Fig. 19.11*a***). They vary in size from a few millimeters to nearly 20 meters. Tapeworms have a well-developed anterior region called the scolex, which bears hooks and suckers for attachment to the intestinal wall of the host. Behind the scolex, a series of reproductive units called proglottids contains a full set of female and male sex organs. After fertilization, the organs within a proglottid disintegrate, and it becomes filled with mature eggs. The eggs, or the mature proglottids, are eliminated in the feces of the host.

Flukes are all endoparasites of various vertebrates. The anterior end of these animals has an oral sucker and at least one other sucker used for attachment to the host. Flukes are usually named for the organ they inhabit; for example, there are blood, liver, and lung flukes. Adults are small (approximately 2.5 centimeters long) and may live for years in their human hosts (Fig. 19.11*b*). Blood flukes (*Schistosoma* spp.) occur predominantly in the Middle East, Asia, and Africa. Nearly 243 million people each year require treatment for blood fluke infection, called schistosomiasis.

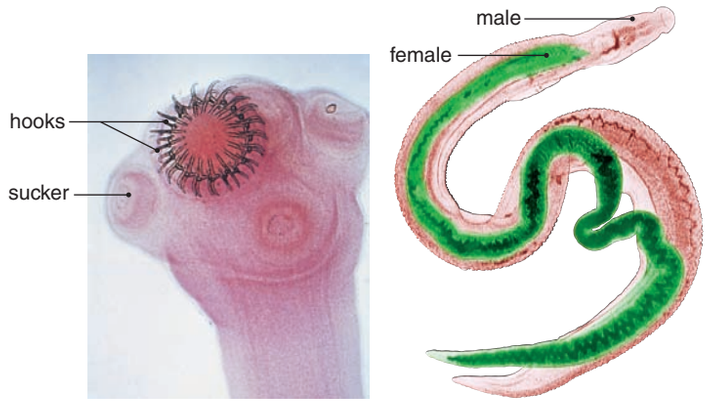


Figure 19.11 **Parasitic flatworms.**

a. The anterior end of a tapeworm has hooks and suckers for attachment to the intestinal wall. **b.** Sexes are separate in blood flukes, which cause schistosomiasis.

Molluscs

Molluscs (phylum Mollusca) are coelomate organisms with a complete digestive tract. Despite being a very large and diversified group, all molluscs have a body composed of at least three distinct parts: (1) The *visceral mass* is the soft-bodied portion that contains internal organs; (2) the *foot* is the strong, muscular portion used for locomotion; and (3) the *mantle* is a membranous or sometimes muscular covering that envelops, but does not completely enclose, the visceral mass. In addition, the *mantle cavity* is the space between the two folds of the mantle. The mantle may secrete an exoskeleton called a *shell*. Another feature often present is a rasping, tonguelike *radula*, an organ that bears many rows of teeth and is used to obtain food (**Fig. 19.12**).

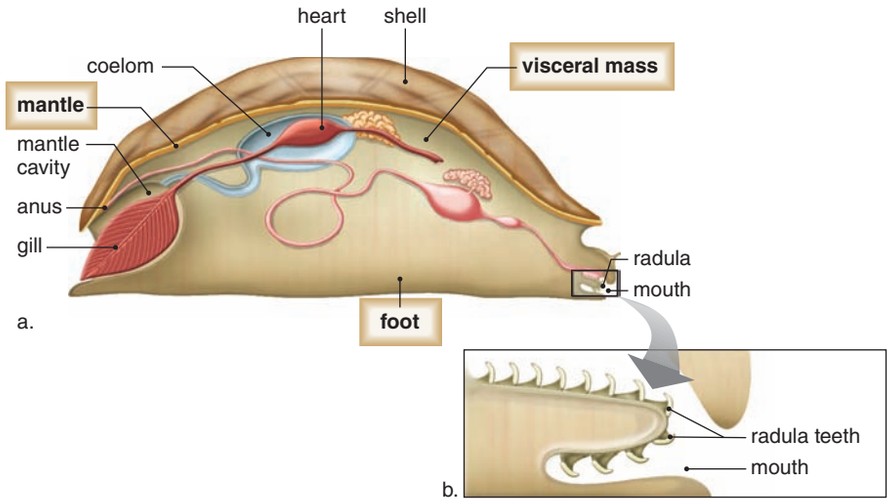


Figure 19.12 **Body plan of molluscs.**

a. Molluscs have a three-part body: a muscular foot, a visceral mass, and a mantle. **b.** In the mouth, the radula is a tonguelike organ that bears rows of tiny, backward-pointing teeth.

Figure 19.13 **Molluscan diversity.**

Top: Snails (*left*) and nudibranchs (*right*) are gastropods. *Middle*: Octopuses (*left*) and nautiluses (*right*) are cephalopods. *Bottom*: Scallops (*left*) and mussels (*right*) are bivalves.

In **gastropods** (meaning stomach-footed), including nudibranchs, conchs, and snails, the foot is ventrally flattened, and the animal moves by muscle contractions that pass along the foot (**Fig. 19.13**). Many gastropods are herbivores that use their radulas to scrape food from surfaces. Others are carnivores, using their radulas to bore through surfaces, such as bivalve shells, to obtain food. In snails that are terrestrial, the mantle is richly supplied with blood vessels and functions as a lung.

Video Snail's Pace

In **cephalopods** (meaning head-footed), including octopuses, squids, and nautiluses, the foot has evolved into tentacles about the head (Fig. 19.13). The tentacles seize prey; then a powerful beak and a radula tear it apart. Cephalopods possess well-developed nervous systems and complex sensory organs. The large brain is formed from a fusion of ganglia, and nerves leaving the brain supply various parts of the body. An especially large pair of nerves control the rapid contraction of the mantle, allowing these animals to move quickly by jet propulsion of water. Rapid movement and the secretion of a brown or black pigment from an ink gland help cephalopods escape their enemies. In the squid and octopus, a well-developed eye resembles that of vertebrates, having a cornea, a lens, a retina, and an iris. Octopuses have no shell, and squids have only a remnant of one concealed beneath the skin. Scientific experiments reveal that octopuses, in particular, are highly intelligent.

Clams, oysters, scallops, and mussels are called **bivalves** because of the two parts to their shells (Fig. 19.13). A muscular foot projects ventrally from the shell. In a clam, such as the freshwater clam, the calcium carbonate shell has an inner layer of mother-of-pearl. The clam is a filter feeder; food particles and water enter the mantle cavity by way of the incurrent siphon, a posterior opening between the two valves. Mucous secretions cause smaller particles to adhere to the gills, and ciliary action sweeps them toward the mouth.

Video Clam Locomotion

Molluscs have some economic importance as a source of food and pearls. If a foreign body is placed between the mantle and the shell of a clam, concentric layers of shell are deposited about the particle to form a pearl.

Annelids: Segmented Worms

Annelids (phylum Annelida) are *segmented,* as can be seen externally by the rings that encircle the body of an earthworm. Partitions called septa divide the well-developed, fluid-filled coelom, which is used as a hydrostatic skeleton to facilitate movement. In annelids, the complete digestive tract body plan has led to the specialization of parts (**Fig. 19.14**). For example, the digestive system may include the pharynx, esophagus, crop, gizzard, intestine, and accessory glands. Annelids have an extensive closed circulatory system with blood vessels that run the length of the body and branch to every segment. The nervous system consists of a brain connected to a ventral nerve cord, with ganglia in each segment. The excretory system consists of nephridia in most segments. A *nephridium* is a tubule that collects waste material and excretes it through an opening in the body wall.

Most annelids are polychaetes (having many setae per segment) that live in marine environments. Setae are bristles that anchor the worm or help it move. A clam worm is a predator; it preys on crustaceans and other small animals, capturing them with a pair of strong, chitinous jaws that extend with a part of the pharynx (**Fig. 19.15***a*). In support of its predatory way of life, a

clam worm has a well-defined head region, with eyes and other sense organs. Other polychaetes are sedentary (sessile) tube worms, with tentacles that form a funnel-shaped fan. Water currents created by the action of cilia trap food particles, which are directed toward the mouth (Fig. 19.15*b*).

The oligochaetes (few setae per segment) include the earthworms (see Fig. 19.14). Earthworms do not have a well-developed head, and they reside in soil where there is adequate moisture to keep the body wall moist for gas exchange. They are scavengers, feeding on leaves and any other organic matter, living or dead, that can conveniently be taken into the mouth along with dirt.

Leeches have no setae but have the same body plan as other annelids. Most are found in fresh water, but some are marine or even terrestrial. The medicinal leech can be as long as 20 centimeters, but most leeches are much shorter. A leech has two suckers, a small one around the mouth and a large posterior one. While some leeches are free-living, most are fluid feeders that penetrate the surface of an animal by using a proboscis or their jaws and then suck in fluids with their powerful pharynx. Leeches are able to keep blood flowing and prevent clotting by means of a substance in their saliva known as hirudin, a powerful anticoagulant. This secretion adds to their potential usefulness in the field of medicine (Fig. 19.15*c*).

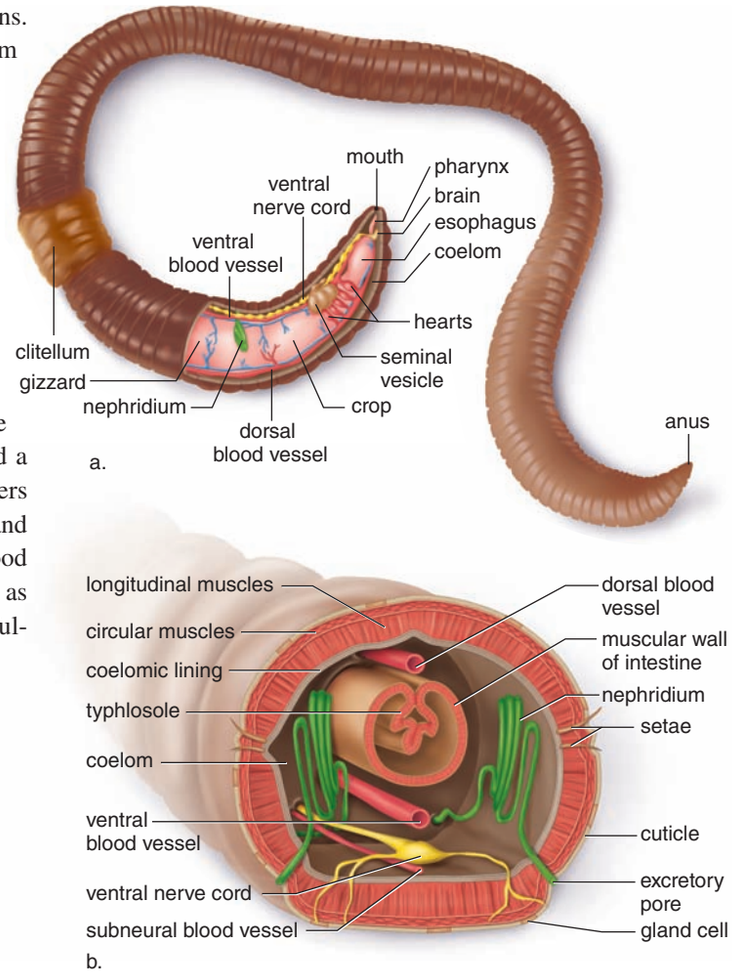


Figure 19.14 **Earthworm anatomy.**

a. Internal anatomy of the anterior part of an earthworm. **b.** Cross section of an earthworm.

Figure 19.15 **Examples of annelids.**

A polychaete can be predacious, (**a**) like this marine clam worm, or live in a tube, (**b**) like this fan worm called the Christmas tree worm. **c.** The medicinal leech, also an annelid, is sometimes used to remove blood from tissues after surgery.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Evolution of bilateral symmetry and cephalization led to the lophotrochozoans.

Check Your Progress 19.3

1. Explain why flatworms, molluscs, and annelids are classified as lophotrochozoans.
2. Contrast the body styles of a typical flatworm and annelid.
3. Summarize the differences between gastropods, cephalopods, and bivalves.

19.4 Roundworms and Arthropods: The Ecdysozoans

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the characteristics that classify an animal as an ecdysozoan.
2. Distinguish between the roundworms and arthropods with regard to their body plans.
3. Explain the success of the arthropods.

Like the lophotrochozoans in the previous section, the ecdysozoans are invertebrate protostomes. The name ecdysozoan is derived from the fact that these organisms secrete a nonliving exoskeleton (cuticle) that must be shed in order for the organism to grow. This process is called molting, or *ecdysis*. The ecdysozoans consist of the roundworms, or nematodes, and the highly successful arthropods.

Roundworms: Pseudocoelomates

The **roundworms** (phylum Nematoda) are nonsegmented, meaning that they have a smooth outside body wall. They possess a pseudocoelom that is incompletely lined with mesoderm (see Fig. 19.7). The fluid-filled pseudocoelom supports muscle contraction and enhances flexibility. The digestive tract is complete because it has both a mouth and an anus (**Fig. 19.16**). Roundworms are generally colorless and less than 5 centimeters long, and they occur almost everywhere—in the sea, in fresh water, and in the soil—in such numbers that thousands of them can be found in a small area. Many are free-living and feed on algae, fungi, microscopic animals, dead organisms, and plant juices, causing great agricultural damage. Parasitic roundworms live anaerobically in every type of animal and many plants. Several parasitic roundworms infect humans.

A female *Ascaris lumbricoides,* a human parasite, is very prolific, producing over 200,000 eggs daily. The eggs are eliminated with host feces, and under the right conditions they can develop into a worm within two weeks. The eggs enter the body via uncooked vegetables, soiled fingers, or ingested fecal material and hatch in the intestines. The juveniles make their way into the cardiovascular

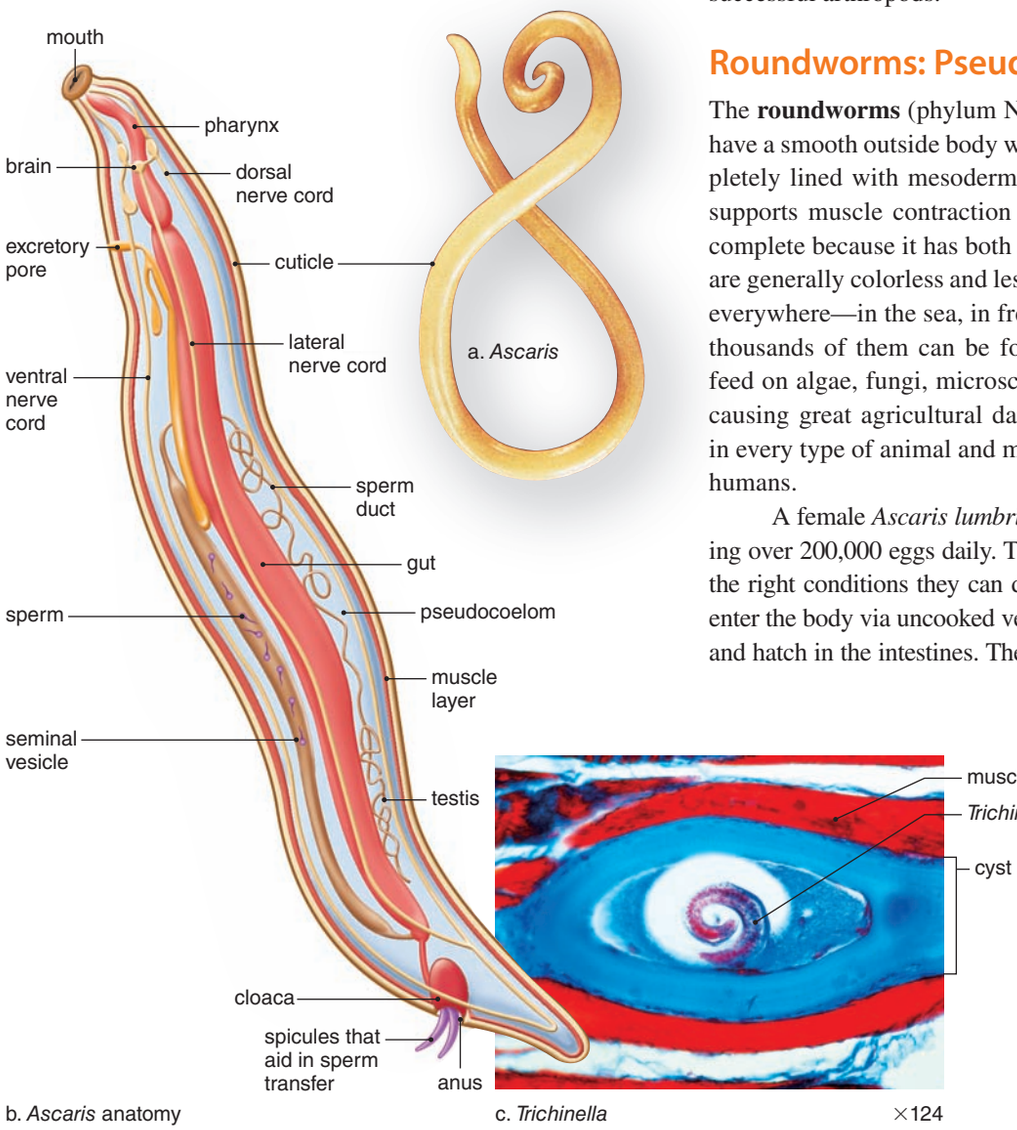


Figure 19.16 **Roundworm anatomy.**

a. The roundworm *Ascaris*. **b.** Roundworms, such as *Ascaris,* have a pseudocoelom and a complete digestive tract with a mouth and an anus. The sexes are separate; this is a male roundworm. **c.** The larvae of the roundworm *Trichinella* penetrate striated muscle fibers, where they coil in a sheath formed from the muscle fiber.

system and are carried to the heart and lungs. From the lungs, the larvae travel up the trachea, where they are swallowed and eventually reach the intestines. There the larvae mature and begin feeding on intestinal contents.

Trichinosis is a fairly serious human infection, rarely seen in the United States. The female trichina worm burrows into the wall of the host's small intestine; there she deposits live larvae, which are carried by the bloodstream to the skeletal muscles (Fig. 19.16c), where they encyst. Once the adults are in the small intestine, digestive disorders, fatigue, and fever occur. After the larvae encyst, the symptoms include aching joints, muscle pain, and itchy skin. Humans catch the disease when they eat infected meat.

Elephantiasis is caused by a roundworm called a filarial worm, which utilizes mosquitoes as a secondary host. Because the adult worms reside in lymphatic vessels, fluid return is impeded and the limbs of an infected human can swell to an enormous size, even resembling those of an elephant. When a mosquito bites an infected person, it can transport larvae to a new host.

Other roundworm infections are more common in the United States. Children frequently acquire pinworm infection, and hookworm is seen in the southern states, as well as worldwide. A hookworm infection can be very debilitating because the worms attach to the intestinal wall and feed on blood. Good hygiene, proper disposal of sewage, thorough cooking of meat, and regular deworming of pets usually protect people from parasitic roundworms.

Arthropods: Jointed Appendages

Arthropods (phylum Arthropoda) are extremely diverse. Over 1 million species have been discovered and described, but some experts suggest that as many as 30 million arthropod species may exist—most of them insects. The success of arthropods can be attributed to the following six characteristics:

1. *Jointed appendages.* Basically hollow tubes moved by muscles, jointed appendages have become adapted to different means of locomotion, food gathering, and reproduction (**Fig. 19.17**). These modifications account for much of the diversity of arthropods.
2. *Exoskeleton.* A rigid but jointed exoskeleton is composed primarily of **chitin,** a strong, flexible, nitrogenous polysaccharide. The exoskeleton serves many functions, including protection, prevention of desiccation, attachment for muscles, and locomotion. Because an exoskeleton is hard and nonexpandable, arthropods must undergo molting**,** or shedding of the exoskeleton, as they grow larger.
3. *Segmentation.* In many species, the repeating units of the body are called segments. Each has a pair of jointed appendages. In others, the segments are fused into a head, a thorax, and an abdomen.
4. *Well-developed nervous system*. Arthropods have a brain and a ventral nerve cord. The head bears various types of sense organs, including compound and simple eyes. Many arthropods also have well-developed touch, smell, taste, balance, and hearing capabilities. Arthropods display many complex behaviors and communication skills.
5. *Variety of respiratory organs.* Marine forms utilize gills; terrestrial forms have book lungs (as do spiders) or air tubes called tracheae. Tracheae serve as a rapid way to transport oxygen directly to the cells. The circulatory system is open, with the dorsal heart pumping blood into various sinuses throughout the body.

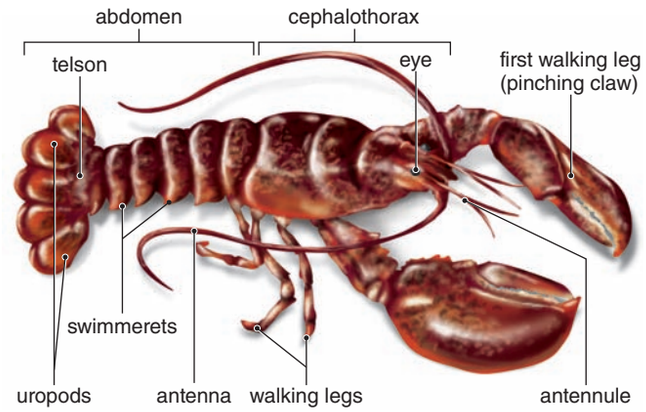


Figure 19.17 **Body plan of an arthropod.**

Arthropods, such as a lobster, have various appendages attached to the head region of a cephalothorax and five pairs of walking legs attached to the thorax region. Appendages called swimmerets, used in reproduction and swimming, are attached to the abdomen. The uropods and telson make up a fan-shaped tail.

Figure 19.18 **Monarch butterfly metamorphosis.**

a. A caterpillar (larva) eats and grows. **b.** After the larva goes through several molts, it builds a chrysalis around itself and becomes a pupa. **c.** Inside the pupa, the larva undergoes changes in organ structure to become an adult. **d, e.** The adult butterfly emerges from the chrysalis and reproduces, and the cycle begins again.

6. *Metamorphosis.* Many arthropods undergo a change in form and physiology as a larva becomes an adult. Metamorphosis allows the larva to have a different lifestyle than the adult (**Fig. 19.18**). For example, larval crabs live among and feed on plankton, while adult crabs are bottom dwellers that catch live prey or scavenge dead organic matter. Among insects such as butterflies, the caterpillar feeds on leafy vegetation, while the adult feeds on nectar.

Crustaceans, a name derived from their hard, crusty exoskeleton, are a group of largely marine arthropods that include barnacles, shrimps, lobsters, and crabs (**Fig. 19.19**). There are also some freshwater crustaceans, including the crayfish, and some terrestrial ones, including the sowbug, or pillbug. Although crustacean anatomy is extremely diverse, the head usually bears a pair of compound eyes and five pairs of appendages. The first two pairs of appendages, called antennae and antennules, respectively, lie in front of the mouth and have sensory functions. The other three pairs are mouthparts used in feeding. In a lobster, the thorax bears five pairs of walking legs. The first walking leg is a pinching claw. The *gills* are situated above the walking legs. The head and thorax are fused into a cephalothorax, which is covered on the top and sides by a nonsegmented carapace. The abdominal segments, which are largely muscular, are equipped with swimmerets—small, paddlelike structures. The last two segments bear the uropods and the telson, which make up a fan-shaped tail to propel the lobster backward (see Fig. 19.17).

Video Lobster Larvae

Video Voice of the Lobster

Crustaceans play a vital role in the food chain. Tiny crustaceans known as krill are a major source of food for baleen whales, sea birds, and seals. Countries such as Japan are harvesting krill for human use. Copepods and other small crustaceans are primary consumers in marine and aquatic ecosystems. Many species of lobster, crab, and shrimp are important in the seafood industry, and some barnacles are destructive to wharfs, piers, and boats.

Video Barnacle-Free Boats

Among arthropods, the **arachnids** include spiders, scorpions, ticks, mites, and harvestmen (**Fig. 19.20*a***). Spiders have a narrow waist that separates the cephalothorax from the abdomen. Most spiders inject venom into their prey and digest their food externally before sucking it into their stomach. Spiders use silk threads for all sorts of purposes, from lining their nests to catching prey. The internal organs of spiders also show how they are adapted to a terrestrial way of life. Malpighian tubules work in conjunction with rectal glands to reabsorb ions and water before a relatively dry nitrogenous waste (uric acid) is excreted. Invaginations of the inner body wall form structures called book lungs, the respiratory surface of spiders and other arachnids.

Scorpions are among the oldest terrestrial arthropods (Fig. 19.20*b*) and may be the direct descendants of the first arthropods to leave aquatic

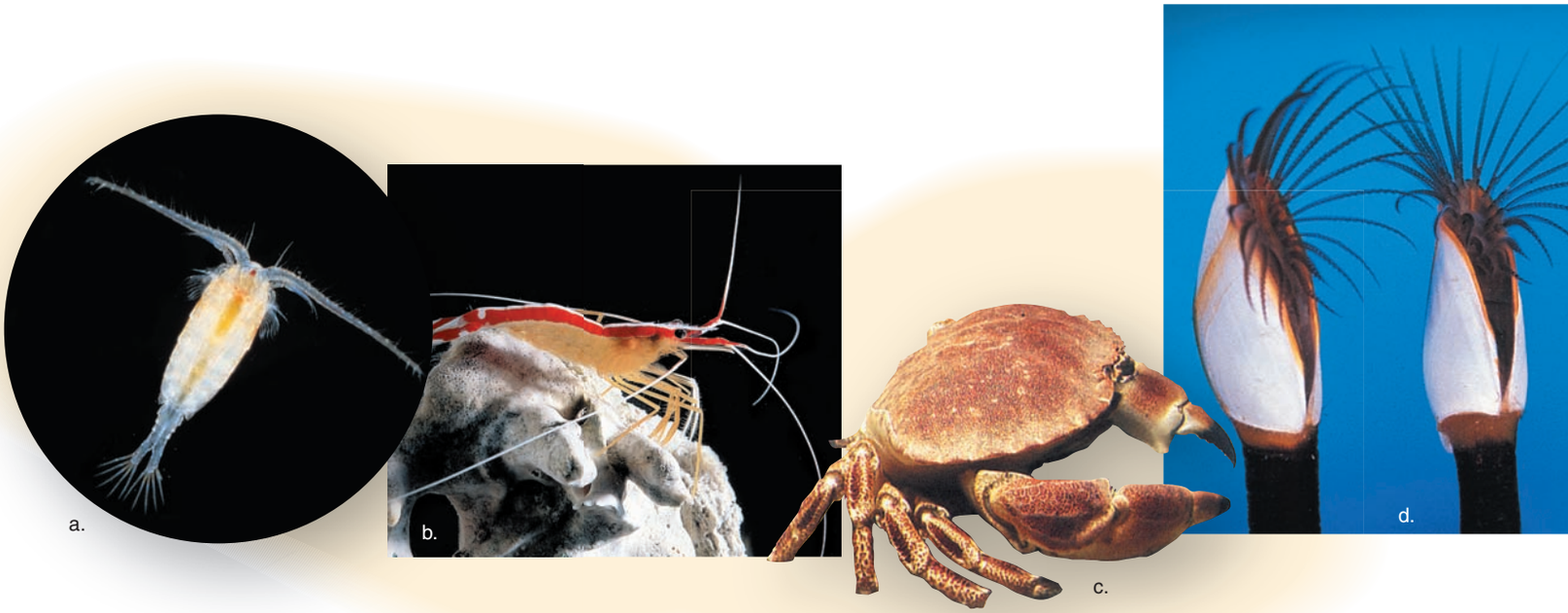


Figure 19.19 **Crustacean diversity.**

a. A copepod uses its long antennae for floating and its feathery maxillae for filter feeding. (**b**) Shrimp and (**c**) crabs are decapods—they have five pairs of walking legs. Shrimp resemble crayfish more closely than they do crabs, which have a reduced abdomen. Marine shrimp feed on copepods. **d.** The gooseneck barnacle is attached to an object by a long stalk. Barnacles have no abdomen and a reduced head; the thoracic legs project through a shell to filter feed. Barnacles often live on human-made objects, such as ships, buoys, and cables.

environments. Today, they occur in the tropics, subtropics, and temperate regions worldwide. They are nocturnal and spend most of the day hidden under a log or rock. Ticks and mites are parasites. Ticks suck the blood of vertebrates and sometimes transmit diseases, such as Rocky Mountain spotted fever or Lyme disease. Chiggers, the larvae of certain mites, feed on the skin of vertebrates.

Video
Lyme Disease

The horseshoe crab is grouped with the arachnids because its first pair of appendages are pincerlike structures used for feeding and defense. Horseshoe crabs have pedipalps, which they use as feeding and sensory structures, and four pairs of walking legs (Fig. 19.20*c*). Horseshoe crabs are of great interest to medical science. An extract from the horseshoe crab's blood cells is used to ensure that vaccines are free of bacterial toxins. Other compounds from the horseshoe crab are being investigated for antibiotic, antiviral, and anticancer properties.

While millipedes (Fig. 19.20*d*), with two pairs of legs on most segments, are herbivorous, centipedes (Fig. 19.20*e*), with a pair of appendages on every segment, are carnivorous. The head appendages of these animals are similar to those of insects, which are the largest group of arthropods (and, indeed, all animals).

Insects are so numerous (well over 1 million species) and so diverse that the study of this one group is a major specialty in biology called entomology

Figure 19.20 **Arthropod diversity.**

a. The black widow spider is venomous and spins a web. **b.** Scorpions have large pincers in front and a long abdomen, which ends with a stinger containing venom. **c.** Horseshoe crabs are common along the North American east coast. **d.** A millipede has two pairs of legs on most segments. **e.** A centipede has a pair of appendages on almost every segment.

Figure 19.21 **Insect diversity.**

Over 1 million insect species have been identified, but scientists estimate that over 30 million species may exist on the planet.

(**Fig. 19.21**). Some insects show remarkable behavior adaptations, as exemplified by the social systems of bees, ants, termites, and other colonial insects.

Insects are adapted to an active life on land, although some have secondarily invaded aquatic habitats. The body is divided into a head, a thorax, and an abdomen. The head usually bears a pair of sensory antennae, a pair of compound eyes, and several simple eyes. The mouthparts are adapted to each species' particular way of life: A grasshopper has mouthparts that chew (**Fig. 19.22**), and a butterfly has a long tube for siphoning nectar from flowers. The abdomen contains most of the internal organs; the thorax bears three pairs of legs and the wings—either one or two pairs, or none. Wings enhance an insect's ability to survive by providing a way of escaping enemies, finding food, facilitating mating, and dispersing the offspring. The exoskeleton of an insect is lighter and contains less chitin than that of many other arthropods. The male has a penis, which passes sperm to the female. The female, as in the grasshopper, may have an ovipositor for laying the fertilized eggs. Some insects, such as butterflies, undergo complete metamorphosis, involving a drastic change in form (see Fig. 19.18).

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The ecdysozoans include the most successful organisms on the planet—the arthropods.

Check Your Progress 19.4

1. Describe the two anatomical features of roundworms that are not seen in the previously discussed organisms.
2. List the six major characteristics of arthropods.
3. Discuss why insects are the most numerous and diverse group of organisms on Earth.

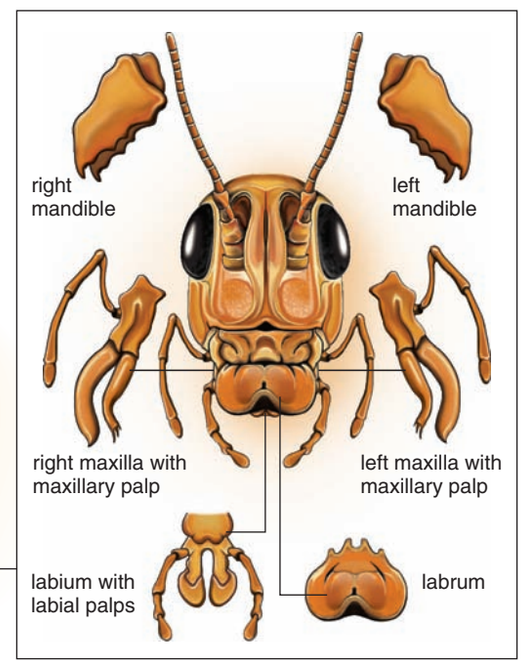


Figure 19.22 **Grasshopper mouthparts.**

The mouthparts of a grasshopper are specialized for chewing. The mouthparts of other insect species are adapated for their food source.

19.5 Echinoderms and Chordates: The Deuterostomes

Learning Outcomes

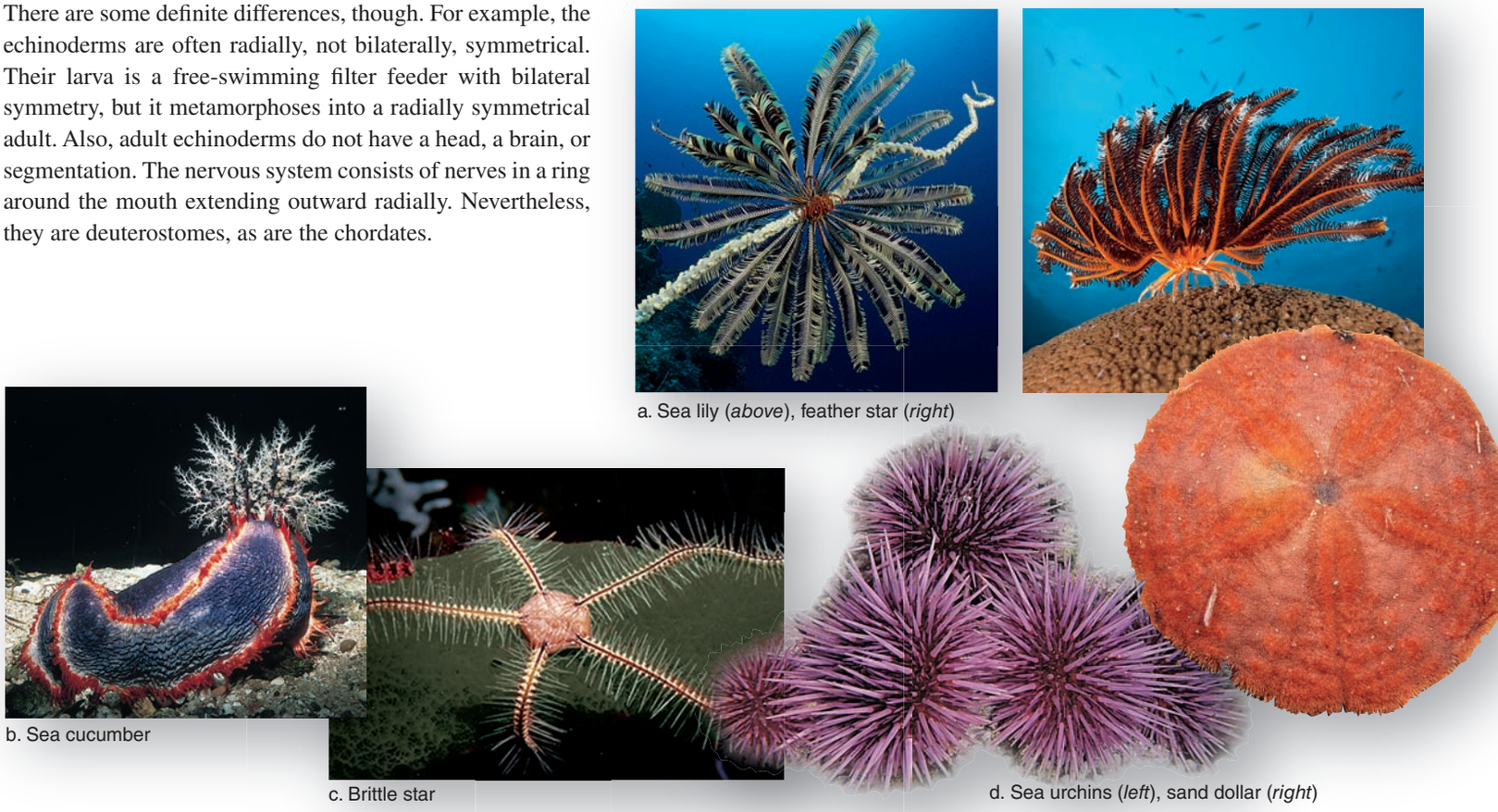
Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Recognize the common characteristics of echinoderms and chordates.
2. Describe the defining characteristics of echinoderms.
3. Describe the defining characteristics of the invertebrate and vertebrate chordates.
4. Describe the defining characteristics of each group of vertebrates: fishes, amphibians, reptiles, and mammals.

As presented in the evolutionary tree of animals (see Fig. 19.4), the deuterostomes (see Fig. 19.6) include the echinoderms and the chordates.

Echinoderms

It may seem surprising that **echinoderms** (phylum Echinodermata) lack features associated with vertebrates, such as humans; however, of all the invertebrates, they are most closely related to chordates (**Fig. 19.23**). There are some definite differences, though. For example, the echinoderms are often radially, not bilaterally, symmetrical. Their larva is a free-swimming filter feeder with bilateral symmetry, but it metamorphoses into a radially symmetrical adult. Also, adult echinoderms do not have a head, a brain, or segmentation. The nervous system consists of nerves in a ring around the mouth extending outward radially. Nevertheless, they are deuterostomes, as are the chordates.



a. Sea lily (*above*), feather star (*right*)

b. Sea cucumber

c. Brittle star

d. Sea urchins (*left*), sand dollar (*right*)

Figure 19.23 **Echinoderm diversity.**

a. Sea lilies are immobile, but feather stars can move about. They usually cling to coral or sponges, where they feed on plankton. **b.** Sea cucumbers have a long, leathery body that resembles a cucumber, except for the feeding tentacles about the mouth. **c.** Brittle stars have a central disk from which long, flexible arms radiate. **d.** Sea urchins and sand dollars have spines for locomotion, defense, and burrowing.

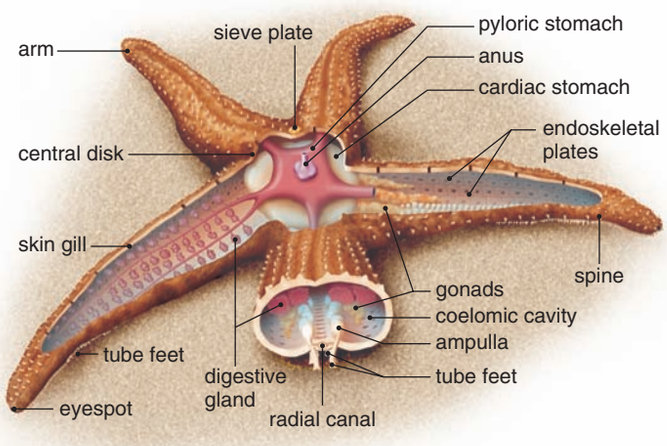


Figure 19.24 **Anatomy of a sea star.**

Many echinoderms, including this sea star, exhibit radial symmetry as adults.

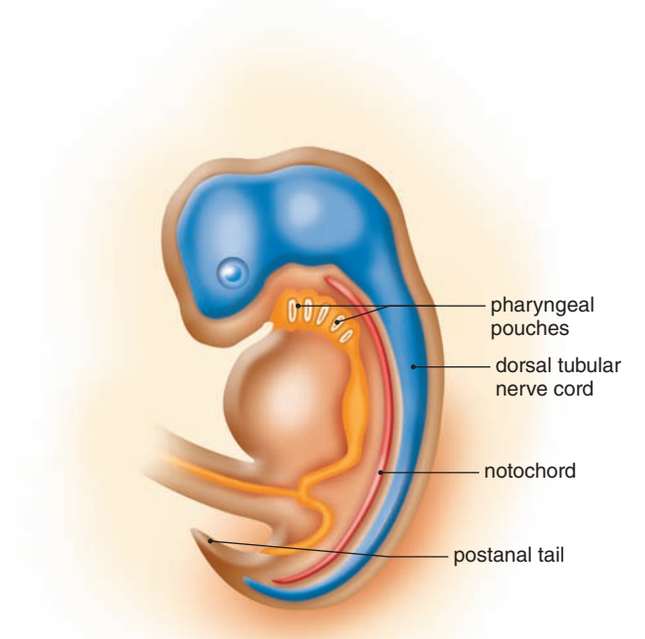


Figure 19.25 **The four chordate characteristics.**

All chordates, from tunicates to mammals, share these characteristics at some point in their lives.

Echinoderm locomotion depends on a water vascular system (**Fig. 19.24**). In the sea star, water enters this system through a sieve plate, or madreporite. Eventually, it is pumped into many tube feet, expanding them. When the foot touches a surface, the center withdraws, producing suction that causes the foot to adhere to the surface. By alternating the expansion and contraction of its many tube feet, a sea star moves slowly along.

Echinoderms don't have a complex respiratory, excretory, or circulatory system. Fluids within the coelomic cavity and a water vascular system carry out many of these functions. For example, gas exchange occurs across the skin gills and the tube feet. Nitrogenous wastes diffuse through the coelomic fluid and the body wall.

Most echinoderms feed variously on organic matter in the sea or substratum, but sea stars prey upon crustaceans, molluscs, and other invertebrates. From the human perspective, sea stars cause extensive economic loss because they consume oysters and clams before they can be harvested. However, they are important in many ways. In many ecosystems, fishes and sea otters eat echinoderms, and scientists favor echinoderms for embryological research.

Video
Sea Urchin Reproduction

Chordates

At sometime in their life history, a **chordate** (phylum Chordata) has the four characteristics depicted in **Figure 19.25:**

1. A *dorsal supporting rod,* called a **notochord.** The notochord is located just below the nerve cord toward the back (i.e., dorsal). Vertebrates have an endoskeleton of cartilage or bone, including a vertebral column that has replaced the notochord during development.
2. A *dorsal tubular nerve cord. Tubular* means that the cord contains a canal filled with fluid. In vertebrates, the nerve cord is protected by the vertebrae. Therefore, it is called the spinal cord because the vertebrae form the spine.
3. *Pharyngeal pouches.* These structures are seen only during embryonic development in most vertebrates. In the invertebrate chordates, the fishes, and some amphibian larvae, the pharyngeal pouches become functioning gills. Water passing into the mouth and the pharynx goes through the gill slits, which are supported by gill arches. In terrestrial vertebrates that breathe with lungs, the pouches are modified for various purposes. In humans, the first pair of pouches become the auditory tubes. The second pair become the tonsils, while the third and fourth pairs become the thymus gland and the parathyroids.
4. *A tail.* Because the tail extends beyond the anus, it is called a *postanal tail.*

The Invertebrate Chordates

In a few invertebrate chordates, the notochord is never replaced by the vertebral column. **Tunicates** live on the ocean floor and take their name from a tunic that makes the adults look like thick-walled, squat sacs. They are also called sea squirts because they squirt water from one of their siphons when disturbed (**Fig. 19.26*a***). The tunicate larva is bilaterally symmetrical and has the four

chordate characteristics. Metamorphosis produces the sessile adult in which numerous cilia move water into the pharynx and out numerous gill slits, the only chordate characteristic that remains in the adult.

Lancelets are marine chordates only a few centimeters long. They have the appearance of a lancet—a small, two-edged surgical knife (Fig. 19.26*b*). Lancelets are found in the shallow water along most coasts, where they usually lie partly buried in sandy or muddy substrates with only their anterior mouth and gill apparatus exposed. They feed on microscopic particles filtered out of the constant stream of water that enters the mouth and exits through the gill slits. Lancelets retain the four chordate characteristics as adults. In addition, segmentation is present, as witnessed by the fact that the muscles are segmentally arranged and the dorsal tubular nerve cord has periodic branches.

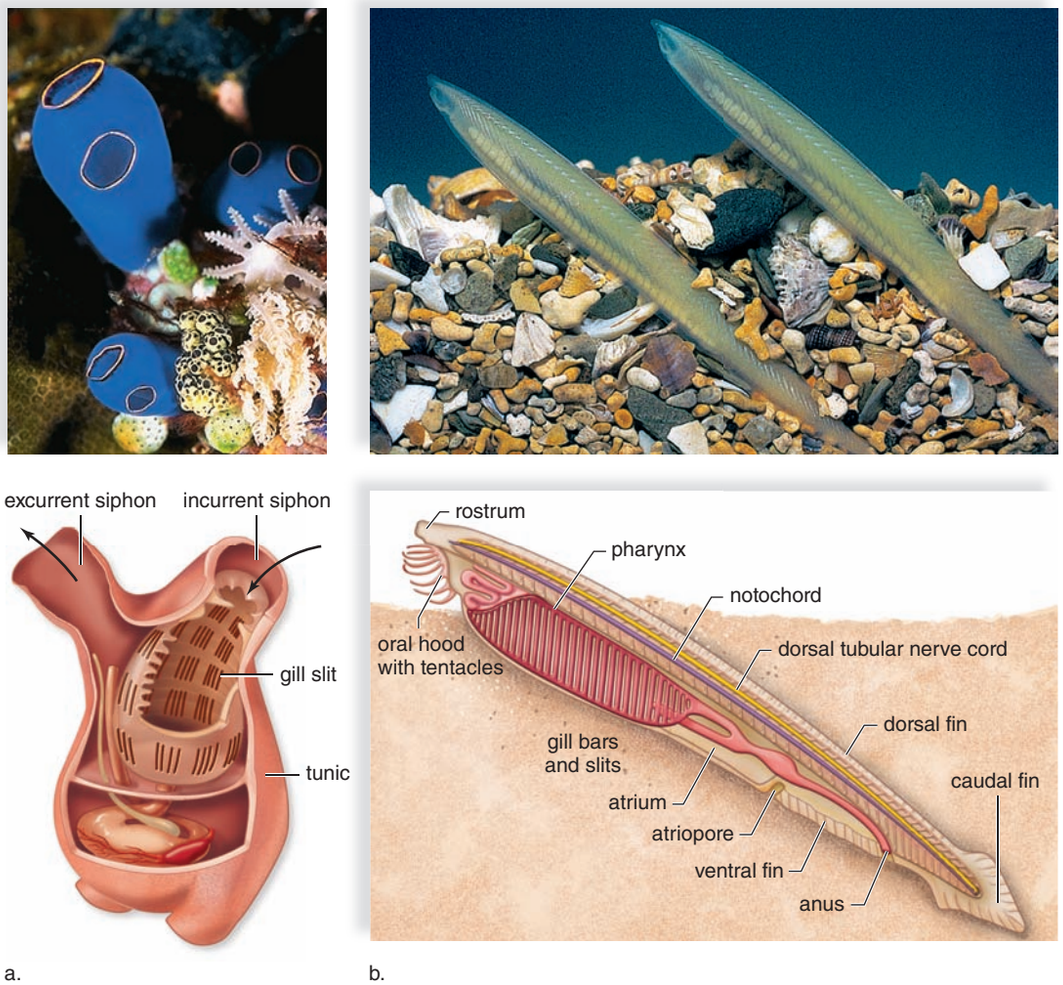


Figure 19.26 **Invertebrate chordates.**

a. Tunicates (sea squirts) have numerous gill slits, the only chordate characteristic that remains in the adult. **b.** Lancelets have all four chordate characteristics as adults.

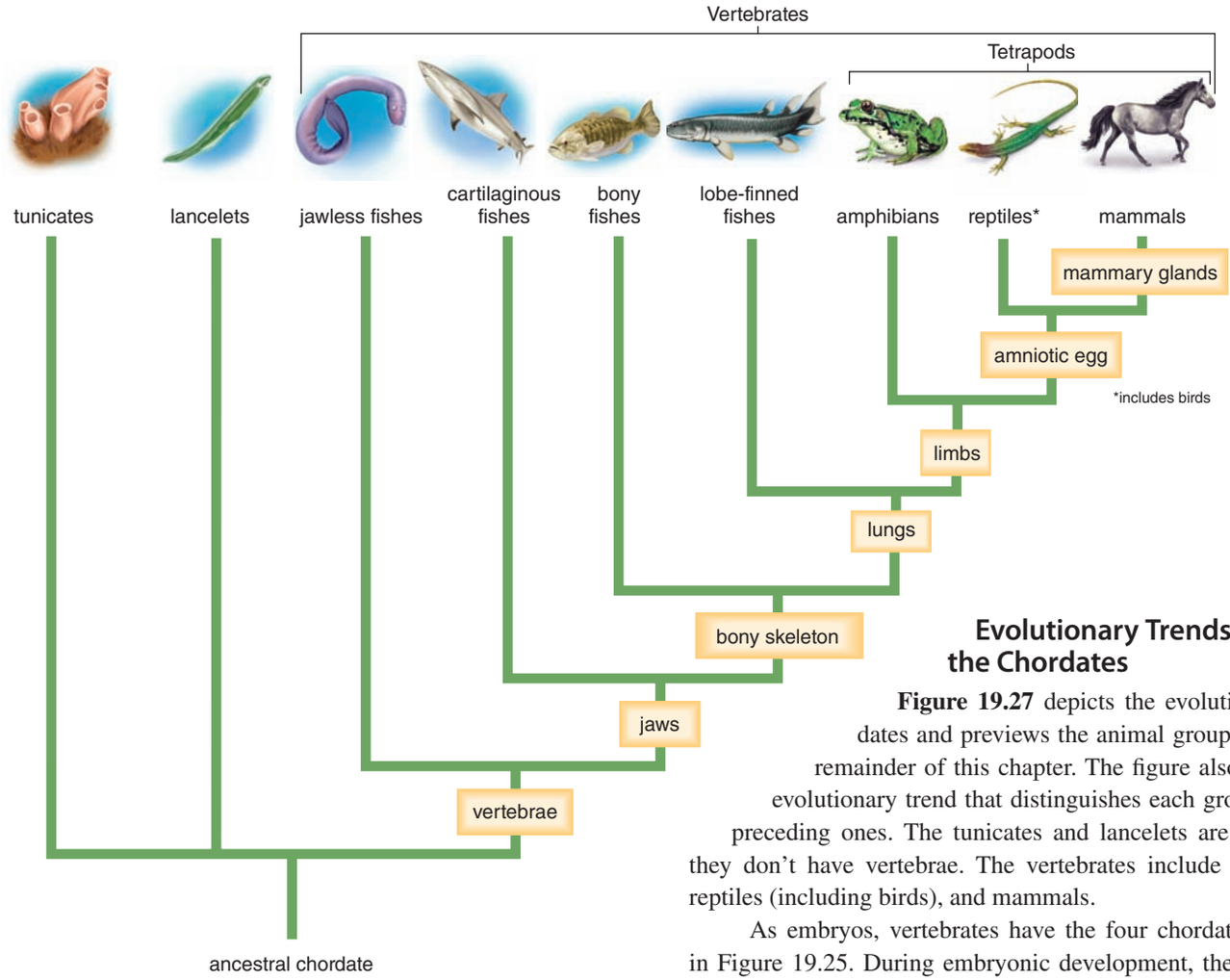


Figure 19.27 Evolutionary tree of chordates.

Each of the innovations is shared by the classes beyond that point. For example, the bony fishes possess bony skeletons, jaws, and vertebrae.

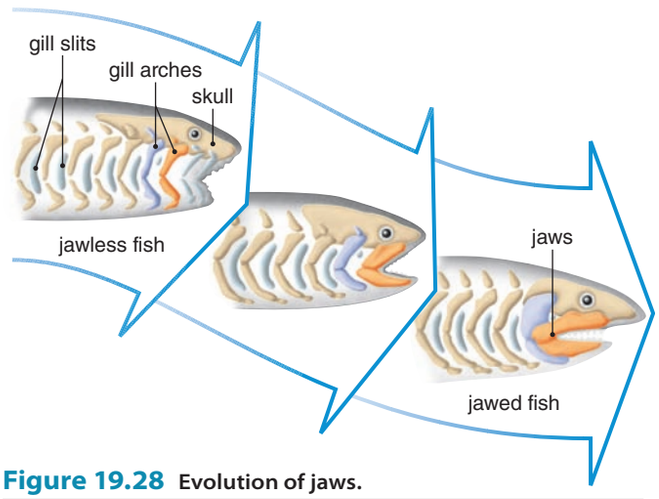


Figure 19.28 Evolution of jaws.

Jaws evolved from the anterior gill arches of ancient jawless fishes.

Evolutionary Trends Among the Chordates

Figure 19.27 depicts the evolutionary tree of the chordates and previews the animal groups we will discuss in the remainder of this chapter. The figure also lists at least one main evolutionary trend that distinguishes each group of animals from the preceding ones. The tunicates and lancelets are invertebrate chordates; they don't have vertebrae. The vertebrates include the fishes, amphibians, reptiles (including birds), and mammals.

As embryos, vertebrates have the four chordate characteristics shown in Figure 19.25. During embryonic development, the notochord is generally replaced by a vertebral column composed of individual vertebrae. Remnants of the notochord are seen in the intervertebral discs, which are compressible, cartilaginous pads between the vertebrae. The vertebral column, which is a part of the flexible but strong endoskeleton, gives evidence that vertebrates are segmented.

Fishes with an endoskeleton of cartilage and some bone in their scales were the first to have jaws. Early bony fishes had lungs. Amphibians were the first group to have jointed appendages and to invade land. The typical life cycle of amphibians includes a larval stage that lives in the water (see Fig. 19.1). However, amphibians exploit a wide range of habitats and many reproduce on land. Reptiles, birds, and mammals have a means of reproduction more suited to land. During development, an amnion and other extraembryonic membranes are present. These membranes carry out all the functions needed to support the embryo as it develops into a young offspring, capable of feeding on its own.

Fishes: First Jaws and Lungs

The first vertebrates were jawless fishes, which wiggled through the water and sucked up food from the ocean floor. Today, there are three living classes of fishes: jawless fishes, cartilaginous fishes, and bony fishes. The last two groups have jaws, tooth-bearing bones of the head. Jaws are believed to have evolved from the first pair of gill arches, structures that ordinarily support gills (**Fig. 19.28**). The presence of jaws permits a predatory way of life.

Living representatives of the **jawless fishes** are cylindrical and up to a meter long. They have smooth, scaleless skin and no jaws or paired fins. The two groups of living jawless fishes are *hagfishes* and *lampreys* (**Fig. 19.29*a***). The hagfishes are scavengers, feeding mainly on dead fish, while some lampreys are parasitic. When lampreys are parasitic, their round mouth serves as a sucker; the lamprey attaches itself to another fish and taps into its circulatory system. Water cannot move in through the lamprey's mouth and out over the gills, as is common in all other fishes. Instead, water moves in and out through the gill openings.

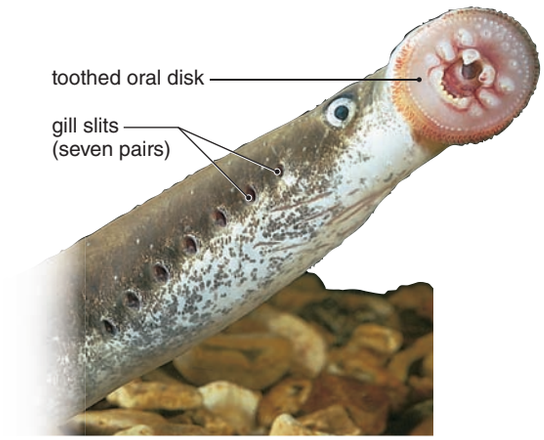
The **cartilaginous fishes** are the sharks (Fig. 19.29*b*), the rays, and the skates, which have skeletons of cartilage instead of bone. The small dogfish shark is often dissected in biology laboratories. One of the most dangerous sharks inhabiting both tropical and temperate waters is the hammerhead shark. The largest sharks, the whale sharks, feed on small fishes and marine invertebrates and do not attack humans. Skates and rays are rather flat fishes that live partly buried in the sand and feed on mussels and clams.

Three well-developed senses enable sharks and rays to detect their prey: (1) They have the ability to sense electric currents in water—even those generated by the muscle movements of animals; (2) they, and all other types of fishes, have a lateral line system, a series of cells that lie within canals along both sides of the body and can sense pressure caused by a fish or another animal swimming nearby; and (3) they have a keen sense of smell—the part of the brain associated with this sense is twice as large as the other parts. Sharks can detect about one drop of blood in 115 liters (25 gallons) of water.

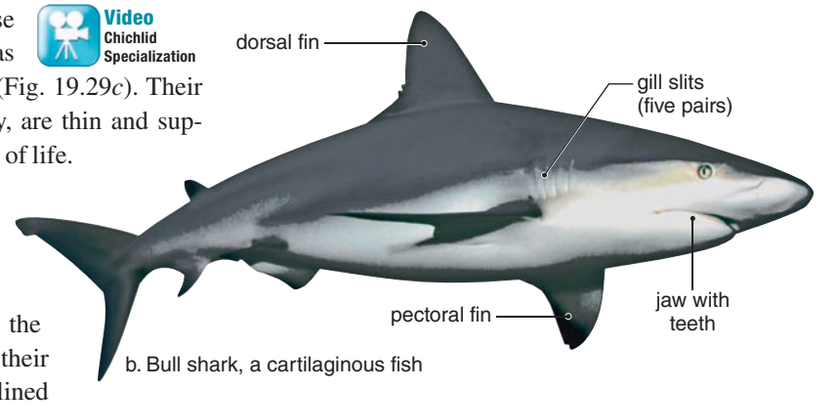
Bony fishes are by far the most numerous and diverse of all the vertebrates. Most of the bony fishes we eat, such as perch, trout, salmon, and haddock, are **ray-finned fishes** (Fig. 19.29*c*). Their fins, which are used in balancing and propelling the body, are thin and supported by bony spikes. Ray-finned fishes have various ways of life. Some, such as herring, are filter feeders; others, such as trout, are opportunists; and still others, such as piranhas and barracudas, are predaceous carnivores.

Video
Chichlid Specialization

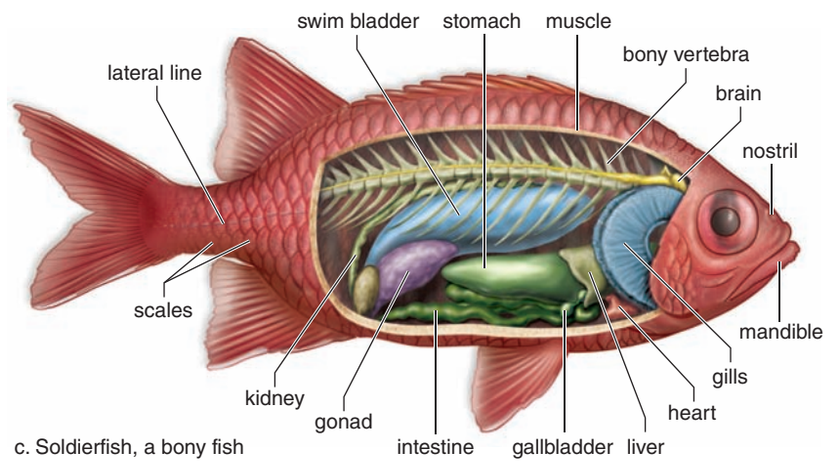
Ray-finned fishes have a swim bladder, which usually serves as a buoyancy organ. By secreting gases into the bladder or absorbing gases from it, these fishes can change their density, and thus go up or down in the water. The streamlined shape, fins, and muscle action of ray-finned fishes are all suited to locomotion in the water. Their skin is covered by bony scales that protect the body but do not prevent water loss. When ray-finned fishes respire, the gills are kept continuously moist by the passage of water through the mouth and out the gill slits. As the water passes over the gills, oxygen is absorbed by the blood, and carbon dioxide is given off. Ray-finned fishes have a single-circuit circulatory system. The heart is a simple pump, and the blood flows through the chambers, including a nondivided atrium and ventricle, to the gills. Oxygenated blood leaves the gills and goes to the body proper, eventually returning to the heart for recirculation.



a. Lamprey, a jawless fish



b. Bull shark, a cartilaginous fish



c. Soldierfish, a bony fish

Figure 19.29 Diversity of fishes.

a. The lamprey is a jawless fish. Note the toothed oral disk. **b.** The shark is a cartilaginous fish. **c.** The internal anatomy of a soldierfish, a bony fish.

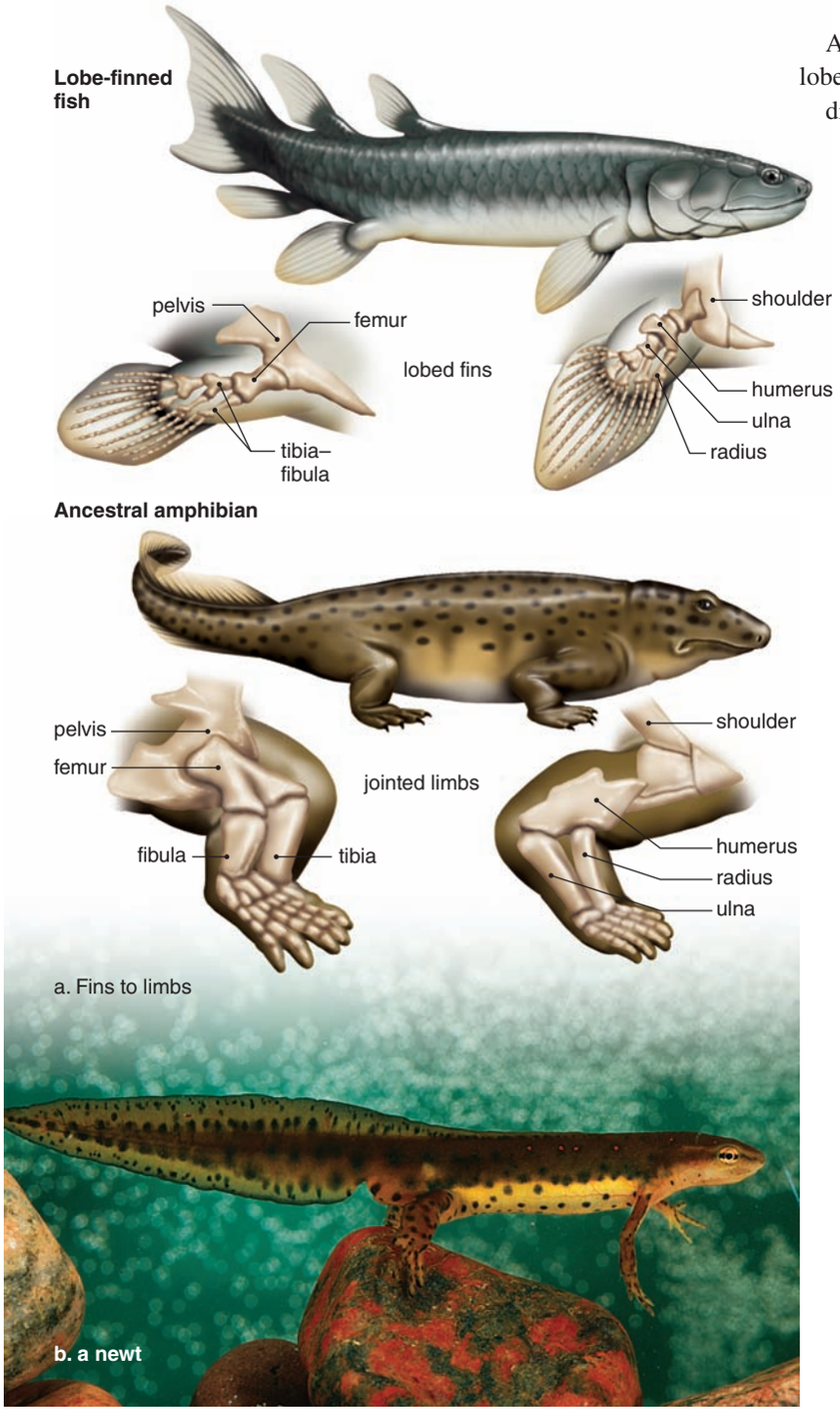


Figure 19.30 Evolution of amphibians.

a. A lobe-finned fish compared with an amphibian. A shift in the position of the bones in the forelimbs and hindlimbs lifted and supported the body. **b.** Newts (shown here) and frogs (see Fig. 19.1) are types of living amphibians.

Another type of bony fish are called the **lobe-finned fishes.** Ancient lobe-finned fishes gave rise to the amphibians (**Fig. 19.30*a***). Not only did these fishes have fleshy appendages that could be adapted to land locomotion, but most also had a **lung,** which was used for respiration.

Video Early Vertebrates

Amphibians: Jointed Vertebrate Limbs

The first chordates to make their way to the land environment were the amphibians. **Amphibians,** whose name means living both on land and in the water, are represented today by frogs, toads, newts, and salamanders. Amphibians are variously colored. Some brightly colored ones have skin toxins that sicken or even kill predators. Usually, their color pattern is protective because it allows them to remain unnoticed.

Aside from *jointed limbs* (Fig. 19.30*b*), amphibians have other features not seen in bony fishes: eyelids for keeping their eyes moist, a sound-producing larynx, and ears adapted to picking up sound waves. Their brain is larger than that of a fish. Adult amphibians usually have small lungs: Air enters the mouth by way of nostrils, and when the floor of the mouth is raised, air is forced into the relatively small lungs. Respiration is supplemented by gas exchange through the smooth, moist, glandular skin. The amphibian heart has only three chambers, compared with the four of mammals. Mixed blood is sent to all parts of the body; some is sent to the skin, where it is further oxygenated.

Most members of this group lead an amphibious life—that is, the larval stage lives in the water and the adult stage lives on the land (see Fig. 19.1). While metamorphosis is a distinctive characteristic of amphibians, some do not practice it. Some salamanders and even some frogs are direct developers; the adults do not return to the water to reproduce, and there is no tadpole stage. A great variety of reproductive strategies are seen among amphibians. In the gastric-brooding frogs, the female ingests as many as 20 fertilized eggs, which undergo development in her stomach, and then she vomits them up as tadpoles or froglets, depending on the species. The great variety of life histories observed among amphibians made them successful colonizers of the land environment. However, water pollution and human-made chemicals, such as pesticides, have caused a drastic reduction in amphibian populations worldwide. Many amphibian species are now in danger of extinction.

Video Tadpole Development

Video Frog Reproduction

Reptiles: Amniotic Egg

The **reptiles** diversified and were most abundant between 245 and 66 MYA. These animals included the dinosaurs, which are remembered for their great size. *Brachiosaurus,* an herbivore, was about 23 meters (75 feet) long and about 17 meters (56 feet) tall. *Tyrannosaurus rex,* a carnivore, was 5 meters (16 feet) tall when standing on its hind legs. The bipedal stance of some reptiles was preadaptive for the evolution of wings in birds.

The reptiles living today include turtles, crocodiles, snakes, lizards, and birds (discussed next). The typical reptilian body is covered with hard, keratinized scales, which protect the animal from desiccation and predators (**Fig. 19.31**). Reptiles

Video Basilisk Lizard

Video Leaf-Tailed Gecko

have well-developed lungs enclosed by a protective rib cage. Most reptiles have a three-chambered heart because a septum that divides a third chamber is incomplete. This allows some mixing of O_2-rich and O_2-poor blood in this chamber.

Perhaps the most outstanding adaptation of the reptiles is that they have a means of reproduction suitable to a land existence. The penis of the male passes sperm directly to the female. Fertilization is internal, and the female lays leathery, flexible, shelled eggs. The *amniotic egg* (**Fig. 19.32**) made development on land possible and eliminated the need for a water environment during development. The amniote egg provides the developing embryo with atmospheric oxygen, food, and water; removes nitrogenous wastes; and protects the embryo from drying out and from mechanical injury. This is accomplished by the presence of extraembryonic membranes, such as the chorion.

Fishes, amphibians, and reptiles (other than birds) are **ectothermic,** meaning that their body temperature matches the temperature of the external environment. If it is cold externally, their internal body temperature drops; if it is hot externally, their internal body temperature rises. Most reptiles regulate their body temperature by exposing themselves to the sun if they need warmth and hiding in the shadows if they need cooling off.

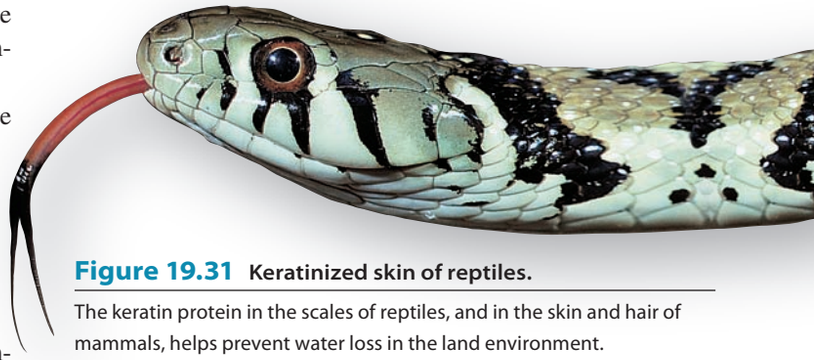


Figure 19.31 Keratinized skin of reptiles.

The keratin protein in the scales of reptiles, and in the skin and hair of mammals, helps prevent water loss in the land environment.

Feathered Reptiles: Birds

Birds share a common ancestor with crocodiles and have traits such as a tail with vertebrae, clawed feet, and the presence of scales that show they are, in fact, reptiles. Perhaps you have noticed the scales on the legs of a chicken; in addition, a bird's *feathers* are actually modified reptilian scales. However, birds lay a hard-shelled amniote egg rather than the leathery egg of other reptiles. The exact history of birds is still in dispute, but recent discoveries of feathered reptiles in China and other locations indicate that birds are closely related to bipedal dinosaurs and that they should be classified as such.

Nearly every anatomical feature of a bird can be related to its ability to fly (**Fig. 19.33**). The forelimbs are modified as wings. The hollow, very light bones

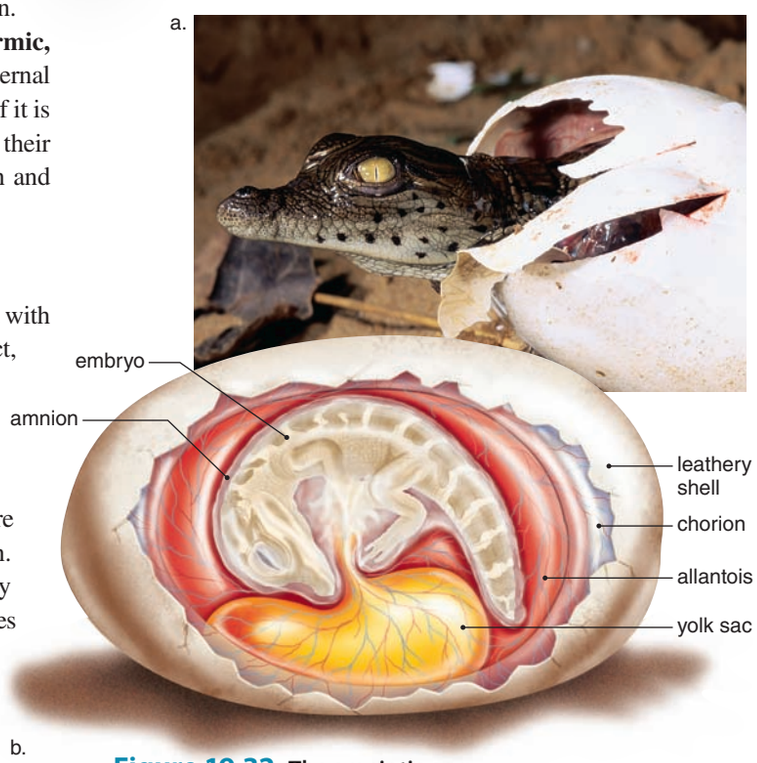


Figure 19.32 The amniotic egg.

a. A baby American crocodile hatching out of its shell. Note that the shell is leathery and flexible—not brittle, like a bird's egg. **b.** Inside the egg, the embryo is surrounded by extraembryonic membranes. The chorion aids gas exchange, the yolk sac provides nutrients, the allantois stores waste, and the amnion encloses a fluid that prevents drying out and provides protection.

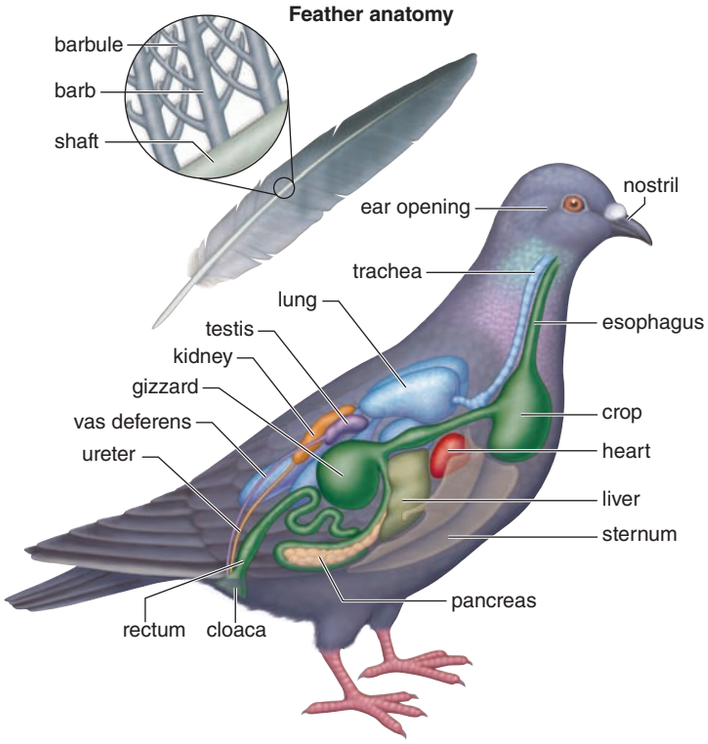


Figure 19.33 Birds are well adapted for flight.

Feathers and hollow bones are important adaptations for birds. This figure illustrates the internal anatomy of a typical bird.

are laced with air cavities. A horny beak has replaced jaws equipped with teeth, and a slender neck connects the head to a rounded, compact torso. Respiration is efficient, since the lobular lungs form anterior and posterior air sacs. The presence of these sacs means that the air moves one way through the lungs, and gases are continuously exchanged across respiratory tissues. Another benefit of air sacs is that they lighten the body and aid flying.

Birds have a four-chambered heart that completely separates O_2-rich blood from O_2-poor blood. Birds are **endothermic** and generate internal heat. Many endotherms can use metabolic heat to maintain a constant internal temperature. This may be associated with their efficient nervous, respiratory, and circulatory systems. Also, their feathers provide insulation. Birds have no bladder and excrete uric acid in a semidry state.

Birds have particularly acute vision and well-developed brains. Their muscle reflexes are excellent. These adaptations are suited to flight. An enlarged portion of the brain seems to be the area responsible for instinctive behavior. A ritualized courtship often precedes mating. Many newly hatched birds require parental care before they are able to fly away and seek food for themselves. A remarkable aspect of bird behavior is the seasonal migration of many species over very long distances. Birds navigate by day and night, whether it's sunny or cloudy, by using the sun and stars and even the Earth's magnetic field to guide them.

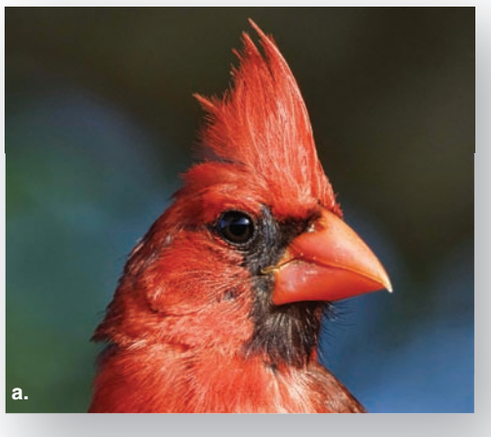
Video Harris Hawk

Video Bird Radar

Traditionally, the classification of birds was particularly based on beak and foot types (**Fig. 19.34**) and to some extent on habitat and behavior. The various orders include birds of prey with notched beaks and sharp talons; shorebirds with long, slender, probing bills and long, stiltlike legs; woodpeckers with sharp, chisel-like bills and grasping feet; waterfowl with webbed toes and broad bills; penguins with wings modified as flippers; and songbirds with perching feet. Now genetics is used to determine relationships among birds.

Figure 19.34 Bird beaks.

a. A cardinal's beak allows it to crack tough seeds. **b.** A flamingo's beak strains food from the water with bristles that fringe the mandibles. **c.** A bald eagle's beak allows it to tear prey apart.



a.

b.

c.

Mammals: Hair and Mammary Glands

Mammals (class Mammalia) are amniotes, and as such, they share a common ancestor with reptiles. However, mammals represent a separate evolutionary lineage from the reptile lineage that led to the birds. The first mammals evolved during the Triassic (251–199.6 MYA). They were small, about the size of mice. Due to many factors, including the dominance of the dinosaurs, mammals changed little during the Triassic and Jurassic (199.6–145.5 MYA) periods. Some of the earliest mammalian groups are still represented by the monotremes and marsupials. However, neither of these groups is as abundant as the placental mammals, which can be found in most environments on the planet.

The two chief characteristics of mammals are hair and milk-producing mammary glands. Almost all mammals are endotherms and generate internal heat. Many of the adaptations of mammals are related to temperature control. Hair, for example, provides insulation against heat loss and allows mammals to be active, even in cold weather.

Mammary glands enable females to feed (nurse) their young without leaving them to find food. Nursing also creates a bond between mother and offspring that helps ensure parental care while the young are helpless. In most mammals, the young are born alive after a period of development in the uterus, a part of the female

reproductive system. Internal development shelters the young and allows the female to move actively about while the young are maturing.

Monotremes are mammals that, like birds, have a *cloaca,* a terminal region of the digestive tract serving as a common chamber for feces, excretory wastes, and sex cells. They also lay hard-shelled amniote eggs. They are represented by the spiny anteater and the duckbill platypus, both of which live in Australia. The female duckbill platypus lays her eggs in a burrow in the ground. She incubates the eggs, and after hatching, the young lick up milk that seeps from mammary glands on her abdomen. The spiny anteater has a pouch on the belly side formed by swollen mammary glands and longitudinal muscle (**Fig. 19.35*a***). Hatching takes place in this pouch, and the young remain there for about 53 days. Then they stay in a burrow, where the mother periodically visits and nurses them.

The young of **marsupials** begin their development inside the female's body, but they are born in a very immature condition. Newborns crawl up into a pouch on their mother's abdomen. Inside the pouch, they attach to the nipples of mammary glands and continue to develop. Frequently, more are born than can be accommodated by the number of nipples.

The Virginia opossum is the only marsupial north of Mexico (Fig. 19.35*b*). In Australia, however, marsupials underwent adaptive radiation for several million years without competition. Thus, marsupial mammals are now found mainly in Australia, with some in Central and South America as well. Among the herbivorous marsupials, koalas are tree-climbing browsers (Fig. 19.35*c*), and kangaroos are grazers. The Tasmanian wolf or tiger, now known to be extinct, was a carnivorous marsupial about the size of a collie dog.

a.

b.

c.

Figure 19.35 **Monotremes and marsupials.**

a. The spiny anteater is a monotreme that lives in Australia. **b.** The opossum is the only marsupial in the United States. The Virginia opossum is found in a variety of habitats. **c.** The koala is an Australian marsupial that lives in trees.

a.

b.

c.

d.

Figure 19.36 **Placental mammals.**

Placental mammals have adapted to various ways of life. **a.** Deer are herbivores that live in forests. **b.** Lions are carnivores on the African plain. **c.** Monkeys typically inhabit tropical forests. **d.** Whales are sea-dwelling placental mammals.

The vast majority of living mammals are **placental mammals** (**Fig. 19.36**). In these mammals, the extraembryonic membranes of the amniote egg (see Fig. 19.32) have been modified for internal development within the uterus of the female. The chorion contributes to the fetal portion of the placenta, while a part of the uterine wall contributes to the maternal portion. Here, nutrients, oxygen, and waste are exchanged between fetal and maternal blood.

Mammals are adapted to life on land and have limbs that allow them to move rapidly. In fact, an evaluation of mammalian features leads us to the obvious conclusion that they lead active lives. The brain is well developed; the lungs are expanded not only by the action of the rib cage but also by the contraction of the diaphragm, a horizontal muscle that divides the thoracic cavity from the abdominal cavity; and the heart has four chambers. The internal temperature is constant, and hair, when abundant, helps insulate the body.

The mammalian brain is enlarged due to the expansion of the cerebral hemispheres that control the rest of the brain. The brain is not fully developed until after birth, and the young learn to take care of themselves during a period of dependency on their parents.

Video
Mom Grizzle Teaches Her Cubs

Mammals can be distinguished by their methods of obtaining food and their mode of locomotion. For example, bats have membranous wings supported by digits; horses have long, hoofed legs; and whales have paddle-like forelimbs. The specific shape and size of the teeth may be associated with whether the mammal is an herbivore (eats vegetation), a carnivore (eats meat), or an omnivore (eats both meat and vegetation). For example, mice have continuously growing incisors; horses have large, grinding molars; and dogs have long canine teeth.

Video
Bat Echolocation

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

19.5 All chordates have shared characteristics, including a dorsal notochord.

Check Your Progress 19.5

1. List the unique features of the echinoderms.
2. Detail the evolutionary lineage of mammals.
3. Contrast the structure of a cartilaginous and a bony fish.
4. Summarize the innovations shared by classes on the evolutionary tree of chordates.
5. Relate the special characteristics of amphibians to their adaptation to land.
6. Discuss the reason for the diversity of mammals.

19.6 Human Evolution

Learning Outcomes

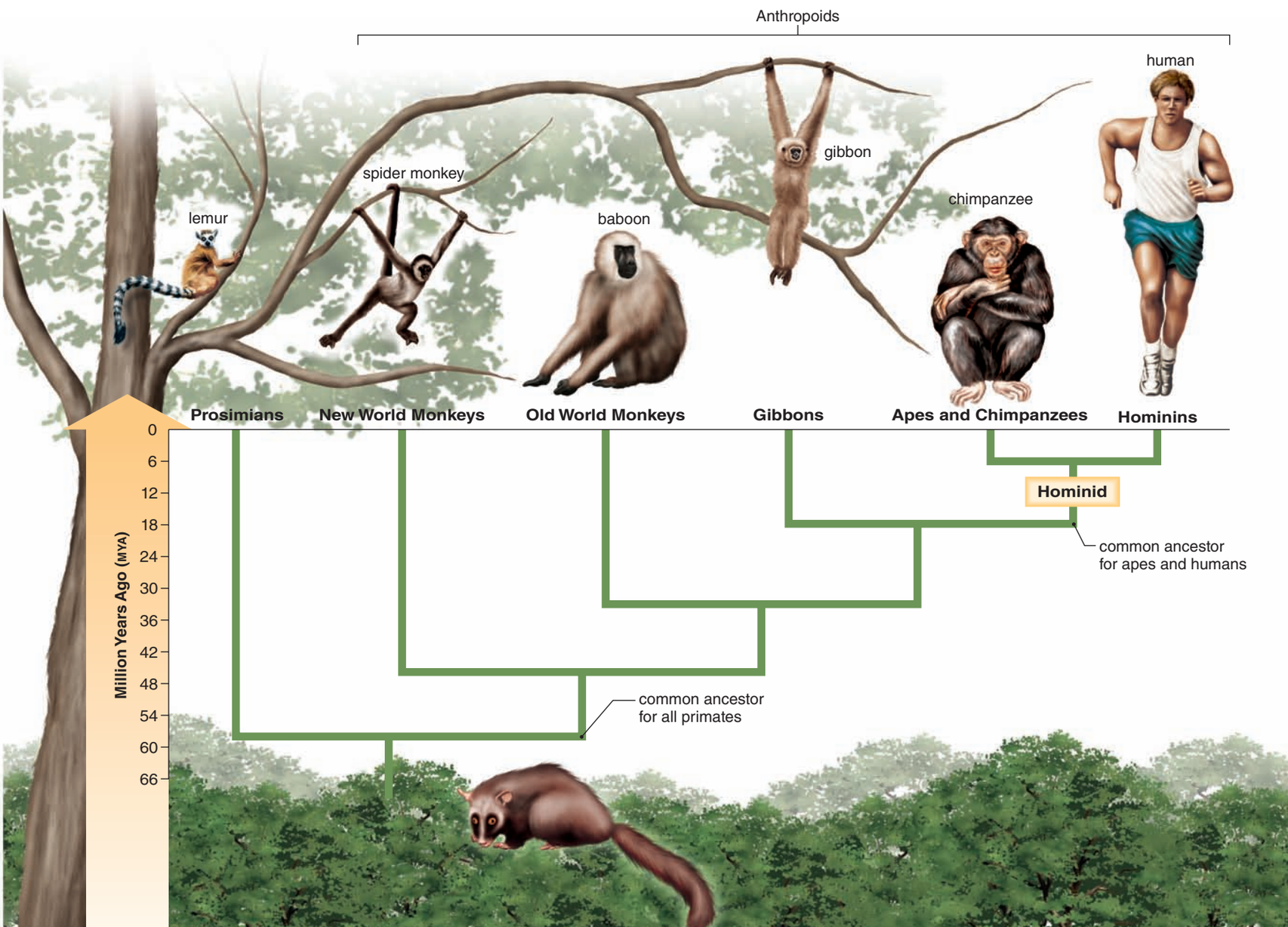
Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain how the evolutionary tree of primates is constructed.
2. Describe evolutionary trends among the hominins.
3. Summarize the replacement model hypothesis for the evolution of modern humans.

The evolutionary tree in **Figure 19.37** shows that all primates share one common ancestor and that the other types of primates diverged from the human line of descent (called a **lineage**) over time. The **prosimians** include the lemurs, tarsiers, and lorises. The **anthropoids** include the monkeys, apes, and humans. The designation **hominid** includes the apes (African and Asian), chimpanzees, humans, and closest extinct relatives of humans. The term **hominin** refers to our species, *Homo sapiens*, and their close humanlike ancestors.

Figure 19.37 **Evolutionary tree of primates.**

Primates are descended from an ancestor that may have resembled a tree shrew. The descendants of this ancestor adapted to the new way of life and developed traits such as a shortened snout and nails instead of claws. The time when each type of primate diverged from the main line of descent is known from the fossil record. A common ancestor was living at each point of divergence. For example, there was a common ancestor for hominids (humans and the African apes) about 7 MYA and one for anthropoids about 45 MYA.



Primates are adapted to an arboreal life—life in trees. Primate limbs are mobile, and the hands and feet have five digits each. Many primates have both an opposable big toe and an opposable thumb—that is, the big toe and the thumb can touch each of the other toes or fingers. (Humans don't have an opposable big toe, but the thumb is opposable, resulting in a grip that is both powerful and precise.) The opposable thumb allows a primate to easily reach out and bring food, such as fruit, to the mouth. When locomoting, primates grasp and release tree limbs freely because nails have replaced claws.

The evolutionary trend among primates is toward a larger and more complex brain—the brain is smallest in prosimians and largest in modern humans. In humans, the cerebral cortex has many association areas and expands so much that it becomes extensively folded. The portion of the brain devoted to smell gets smaller, and the portions devoted to sight increase in size and complexity during primate evolution. Also, more and more of the brain is involved in controlling and processing information received from the hands and the thumb. The result is good hand-eye coordination in humans.

Notice that prosimians were the first type of primate to diverge from the human line of descent, and African apes were the last group to diverge from our line of descent. The evolutionary tree also indicates that humans are most closely related to African apes. One of the most unfortunate misconceptions concerning human evolution is that Darwin and others suggested that humans evolved from apes. On the contrary, humans and apes share a common, apelike ancestor. Today's apes are our distant cousins, and we couldn't have evolved from our cousins, because we are contemporaries—living on Earth at the same time. Presently, researchers hypothesize that the last common ancestor for African apes and humans lived about 7 MYA.

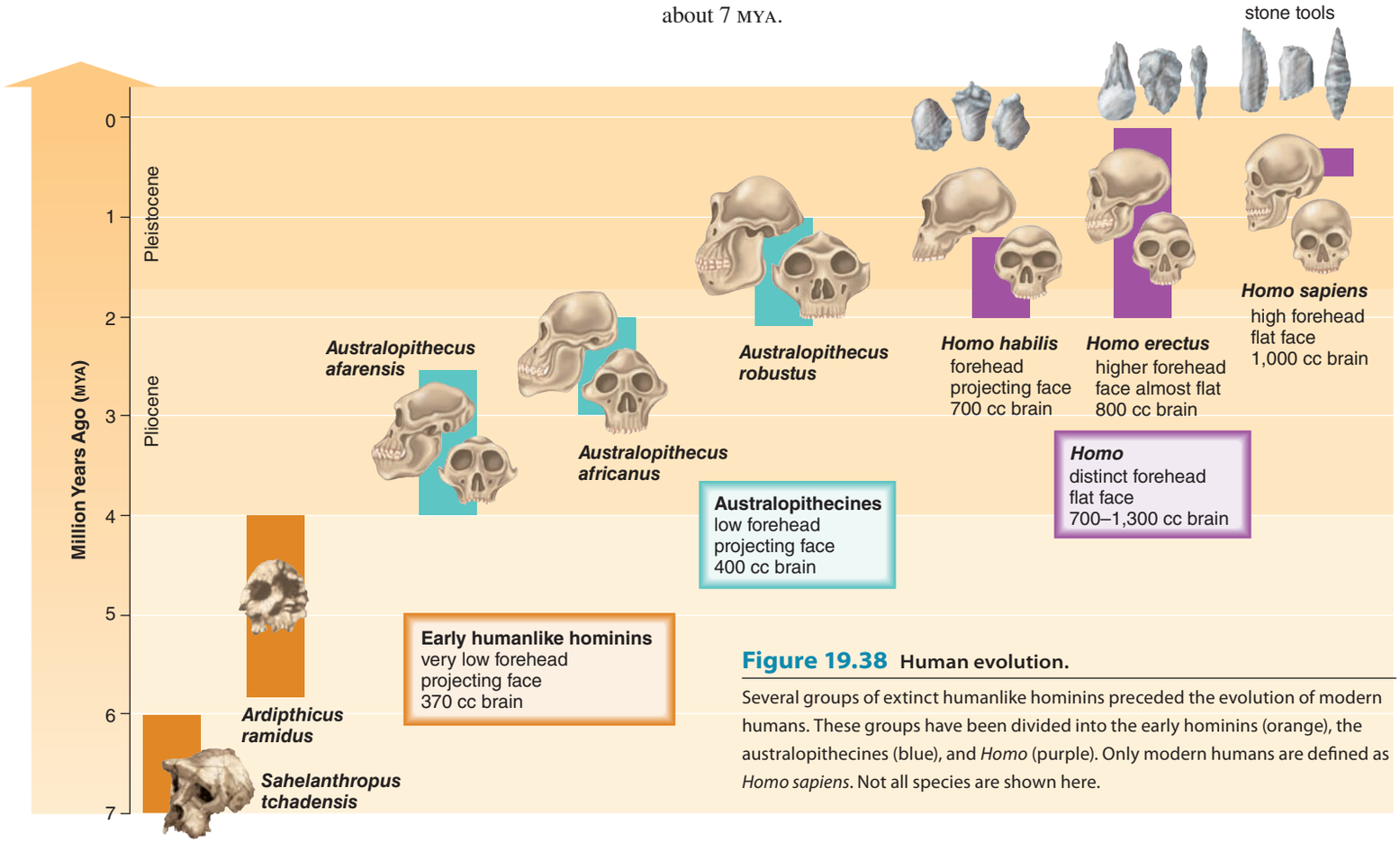


Figure 19.38 Human evolution.

Several groups of extinct humanlike hominins preceded the evolution of modern humans. These groups have been divided into the early hominins (orange), the australopithecines (blue), and *Homo* (purple). Only modern humans are defined as *Homo sapiens*. Not all species are shown here.

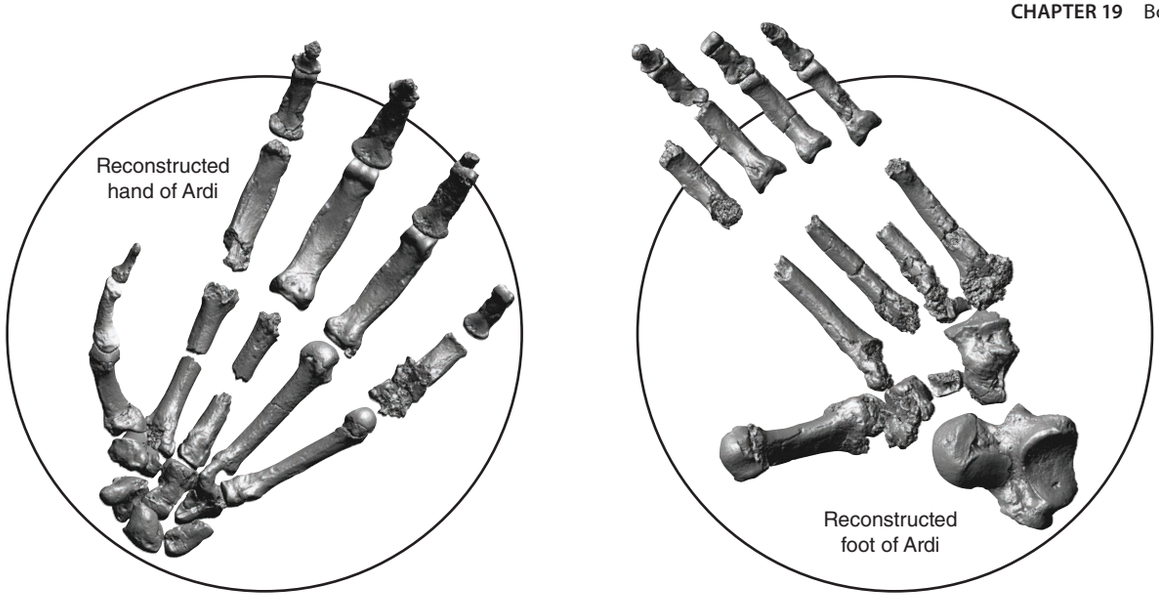


Figure 19.39 Ardipithecines.
Reconstructions of the fossil remains of *Ardipithicus ramidus* ("Ardi") suggest that this species was well adapted for life both in the trees and on the ground.

Evolution of Humanlike Hominins

All the fossils shown in **Figure 19.38** are humanlike hominins. This illustration tells when these various hominins lived and emphasizes their type of face and brain size. However, to be a humanlike hominin, it is only necessary that the fossil have an anatomy suitable for standing erect and walking on two feet, a characteristic called **bipedalism.** The bars in Figure 19.38 extend from the date of a species' appearance in the fossil record to the date it became extinct.

Early Humanlike Hominins

In Figure 19.38, early hominins are represented by orange-colored bars. Scientists have now found several fossils dated around the time the ape lineage and the human lineage are believed to have split, and one of these is *Sahelanthropus tchadensis.* Only the braincase has been found and dated at 7 MYA. Although the braincase is very apelike, the location of the opening for the spine at the back of the skull suggests bipedalism. Also, the canines are smaller and the tooth enamel is thicker than those of an ape.

Another early hominin, *Ardipithecus ramidus,* is representative of the ardipithecines of 4.5 MYA. The fossil remains of this species are commonly called "Ardi." Reconstructions of the fossils (**Fig. 19.39**) suggest that the species was bipedal and that some individuals may have been 122 centimeters tall. The teeth seem intermediate between those of earlier apes and later hominins. Recently, fossils dated at 4 MYA show a direct link between *A. ramidus* and the australopithecines, discussed next.

Australopithecines

It's possible that one of the **australopithecines,** a group of hominins that evolved and diversified in Africa about 4 MYA, is a direct ancestor of humans. More than 20 years ago, a team led by Donald Johanson unearthed nearly 250 fossils of a hominid called *Australopithecus afarensis.* A now famous female skeleton dated at 3.18 MYA is known worldwide by its field name, Lucy. Although her brain was quite small (400 cc), the shapes and relative proportions of Lucy's limbs indicate that she stood upright and walked bipedally (**Fig. 19.40*a***). Even better evidence of bipedal locomotion comes from a trail of footprints dated about 3.7 MYA. The larger prints are double, as though a smaller individual was stepping in the footfalls of another—and there are additional small prints off to the side, within hand-holding distance (Fig. 19.40*b*).

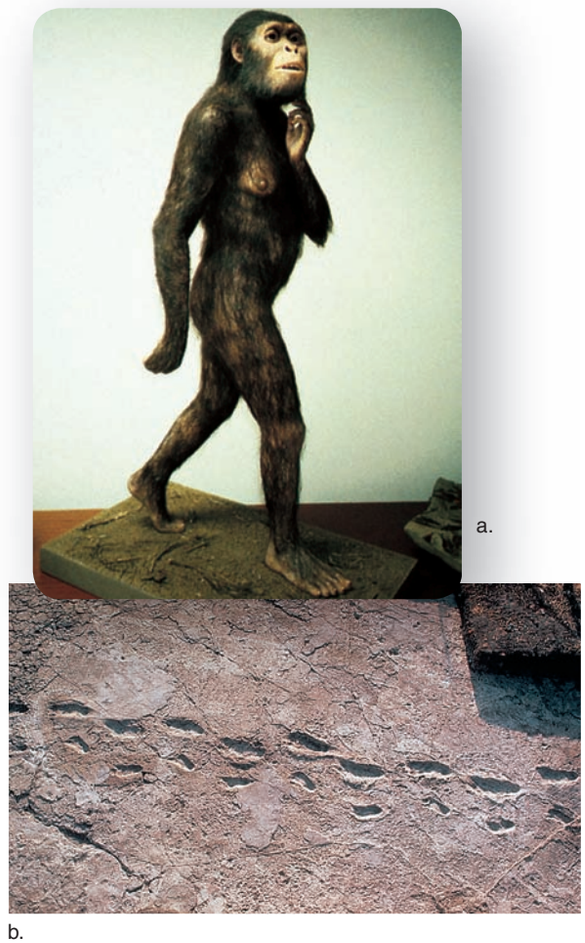


Figure 19.40 *Australopithecus afarensis.*
a. A reconstruction of Lucy on display at the St. Louis Zoo. **b.** These fossilized footprints occur in ash from a volcanic eruption some 3.7 MYA. The larger footprints are double, and a third, smaller individual was walking to the side. (A female holding the hand of a youngster may have been walking in the footprints of a male.) The footprints suggest that *A. afarensis* walked bipedally.

Because the australopithecines were apelike above the waist (small brain) and humanlike below the waist (walked erect), it seems that human characteristics did not evolve all at one time. The term **mosaic evolution** is applied when different body parts change at different rates and therefore at different times.

Homo habilis

Homo habilis, dated between 2.0 and 1.9 MYA, may be ancestral to modern humans. Some of these fossils have a brain size as large as 775 cc, which is about 45% larger than the brain of *A. afarensis.* The cheek teeth are smaller than those of any of the australopithecines. Therefore, it is likely that this early *Homo* was omnivorous and ate meat in addition to plant material. Bones at the campsites of *H. habilis* bear cut marks, indicating that they used tools to strip the meat from bones.

The stone tools made by *H. habilis,* whose name means "handyman," are rather crude. These hominins may have used sharp flakes of broken rocks to scrape away hide, cut tendons, and easily remove meat from bones.

The skulls of *H. habilis* suggest that the portions of the brain associated with speech areas were enlarged. We can speculate that the ability to speak may have led to hunting cooperatively. Some members of the group may have remained plant gatherers; if so, both hunters and gatherers most likely ate together and shared their food. In this way, society and culture could have begun. **Culture,** which encompasses human behavior and products (such as technology and the arts), is dependent on the capacity to speak and transmit knowledge. We can further speculate that the advantages of a culture to *H. habilis* may have hastened the extinction of the australopithecines.

Homo erectus

Homo erectus and like fossils are found in Africa, Asia, and Europe and dated between 1.9 and 0.3 MYA. Although all fossils assigned the name *H. erectus* are similar in appearance, there is enough discrepancy to suggest that several different species have been included in this group. Compared with *H. habilis, H. erectus* had a larger brain (about 1,000 cc) and a flatter face. The recovery of an almost complete skeleton of a 10-year-old boy indicates that *H. erectus* was much taller than the hominins discussed thus far. Males were 1.8 meters tall (about 6 feet), and females were 1.55 meters (approaching 5 feet). Indeed, these hominins were erect and most likely had a striding gait, like that of modern humans. The robust and most likely heavily muscled skeleton still retained some australopithecine features. Even so, the size of the birth canal indicates that infants were born in an immature state that required an extended period of care.

It is believed that *H. erectus* first appeared in Africa and then migrated into Asia and Europe. At one time, the migration was thought to have occurred about 1 MYA, but recently *H. erectus* fossil remains in Java and the Republic of Georgia have been dated at 1.9 and 1.6 MYA, respectively. These remains push the evolution of *H. erectus* in Africa to an earlier date than has yet been determined. In any case, such an extensive population movement is a first in the history of humankind and a tribute to the intellectual and physical skills of the species.

H. erectus was the first hominin to use fire, and it fashioned more advanced tools than earlier *Homo* species. These hominins used heavy, teardrop-shaped axes and cleavers, as well as flakes that were probably used for cutting and scraping. Some investigators believe *H. erectus* was a systematic hunter that took kills to the same site over and over again. In one location, researchers have found over 40,000 bones and 2,647 stones. These sites could

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What are the "hobbits"?

In 2004, a new piece of our human heritage, *Homo floresiensis,* was discovered on the Indonesian island of Flores. Sometimes called "hobbits" due to their very small size (less than a meter in height), *H. floresiensis* also had a very small brain, but it is believed that they used stone tools. Most scientists believe that *H. floresiensis* is more closely related to *H. erectus* than *Homo sapiens.* Interestingly, some dating techniques suggest that *H. floresiensis* may have occupied Flores as little as 15,000 years ago. If so, then it most likely would have interacted with *H. sapiens* in the not too distant past.

have been "home bases," where social interaction occurred and a prolonged childhood allowed time for learning. Perhaps a language evolved and a culture more like our own developed.

Evolution of Modern Humans

The most widely accepted hypothesis for the evolution of modern humans from archaic, or early humanlike hominins is referred to as the **replacement model,** or out-of-Africa hypothesis (**Fig. 19.41**), which proposes that modern humans evolved from archaic humans only in Africa, and then modern humans migrated to Asia and Europe, where they replaced the archaic species about 100,000 years BP (before the present). However, even this hypothesis is being challenged as new genomic information becomes available on the Neandertals and Denisovans.

Neandertals

Neandertals (*H. neandertalensis*) take their name from Germany's Neander Valley, where one of the first Neandertal skeletons, dated some 200,000 years BP, was discovered. The Neandertals had massive brow ridges, and their nose, jaws, and teeth protruded far forward. Their forehead was low and sloping, and their lower jaw lacked a chin. New fossils show that their pubic bone was long compared with ours.

According to the replacement model, Neandertals were eventually supplanted by modern humans. However, this traditional view is being challenged by studies of the Neandertal genome (completed in 2010), which suggests not only that Neandertals interbred with Homo sapiens but also that between 1% and 4% of the genomes of non-African *Homo sapiens* contains remnants of the Neandertal genome. Some scientists are suggesting that Neandertals were not a separate species but simply a race of *Homo sapiens* that was eventually absorbed into the larger population. Research continues into these and other hypotheses that explain these similarities.

Physiologically, the Neandertal brain was, on the average, slightly larger than that of *H. sapiens* (1,400 cc, compared with 1,360 cc in most modern humans). The Neandertals were heavily muscled, especially in the shoulders and neck. The bones of the limbs were shorter and thicker than those of modern humans. It is hypothesized that a larger brain than that of modern humans was required to control the extra musculature. The Neandertals lived in Europe and Asia during the last Ice Age, and their sturdy build could have helped conserve heat.

The Neandertals give evidence of being culturally advanced. Most lived in caves, but those living in the open may have built houses. They manufactured a variety of stone tools, including spear points, which could have been used for hunting. Scrapers and knives could have helped in food preparation. They most likely successfully hunted bears, woolly mammoths, rhinoceroses, reindeer, and other contemporary animals. They used and could control fire, which probably helped them cook meat and keep themselves warm. They even buried their dead with flowers and tools and may have had a religion. Perhaps they believed in life after death. If so, they were capable of thinking symbolically.

Denisovans

In 2008, a fragment of a finger bone was discovered in Denisova cave in southern Siberia. Initially, scientists thought that it might be the remains of a species of early *Homo,* possibly related to *Homo erectus*. However, mitochondrial DNA studies indicate that the fossil belonged to a species that existed around 1 million years ago, around the same time as Neandertals. The analyses

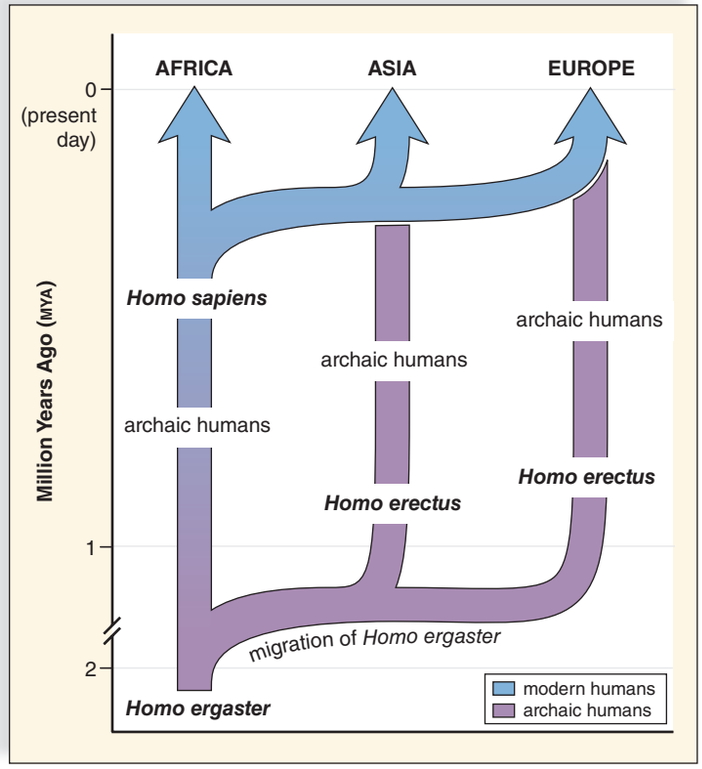


Figure 19.41 **The replacement model.**

The replacement model is used to explain the geographic distribution of humans.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How closely is *Homo sapiens* related to Neandertals?

In 2010, geneticists completed their first sequence analysis of the Neandertal genome. The results of this study revealed some very interesting facts regarding Neandertals and *Homo sapiens*. First, these two species were more genetically alike than previous thought. The initial analysis suggested that as few as 100 genes in *Homo sapiens* may show evidence of evolution since the Neanderthal-*sapiens* split, making the Neandertals one of our closest cousins. Second, some studies suggest that there is evidence that Neandertals and *H. sapiens* might have interbred. Although this is still being investigated, we know that these two species occupied overlapping territories in the Middle East and Europe for almost 14,000 years. Since Neandertals and *H. sapiens* were genetically similar, many scientists believe that interbreeding may have been possible, although research is continuing into other explanations for these similarities.

Figure 19.42 Cro-Magnons.

Cro-Magnon people are the first to be designated *Homo sapiens*. Their tool-making ability and other cultural attributes, including their artistic talents, are legendary.

suggest that the **Denisovans** and Neandertals had a common ancestor but did not interbreed with one another, possibly because of their geographic locations. However, what is interesting is the fact that *Homo sapiens* in the Oceania region (New Guinea and nearby islands) share around 5% of their genomes with the Denisovans. No evidence of the Denisovan genome has yet been detected in other groups of *Homo sapiens*. When coupled with the Neandertal data, this suggests that modern *Homo sapiens* did not simply replace groups of archaic humans but rather may have assimilated them by inbreeding. Scientists are just beginning to unravel the implications of the Denisovan discovery.

Cro-Magnons

Cro-Magnons are the oldest fossils to be designated *H. sapiens*. Cro-Magnons, who are named after a fossil location in France, had a thoroughly modern appearance. They made advanced tools, including compound tools, as when stone flakes were fitted to a wooden handle. They may have been the first to make knifelike blades and to throw spears, enabling them to kill animals from a distance. They were such accomplished hunters that some researchers believe they were responsible for the extinction of many larger mammals, such as the giant sloth, mammoth, saber-toothed tiger, and giant ox, during the late Pleistocene epoch.

Cro-Magnons hunted cooperatively and were perhaps the first to have a language. They are believed to have lived in small groups, with the men hunting by day while the women remained at home with the children, gathering and processing food items. Probably, the women also were engaged in maintenance tasks. The Cro-Magnon culture included art. They sculpted small figurines out of reindeer bones and antlers. They also painted beautiful drawings of animals, some of which have survived on cave walls in Spain and France (**Fig. 19.42**).

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

19.6 Humans evolved from primate ancestors. Their success can be attributed to bipedalism and an increase in brain size.

Check Your Progress 19.6

1. Distinguish between a hominin and an anthropoid.
2. Explain the importance of bipedalism and brain size in the evolution of humans.
3. Summarize how the replacement model is used to explain the evolution of modern humans.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

Enhance your study of this chapter with media! Visit **www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4e** and go to "Media Study Tools" for this chapter.

Animations

19.1 Three Domains

Videos

19.1 Tadpole Development
19.2 Coral Reef Ecosystems
19.3 Snail's Pace • Clam Locomotion
19.4 Lobster Larvae • Voice of the Lobster • Barnacle-Free Boats • Lyme Disease
19.5 Sea Urchin Reproduction • Chichlid Specialization • Early ertebrates • Tadpole Development • Frog Reproduction • Basilisk Lizard • Leaf-Tailed Gecko • Harris Hawk • Bird Radar • Mom Grizzle Teaches Her Cubs • Bat Echolocation

SUMMARIZE

19.1 Evolution of Animals

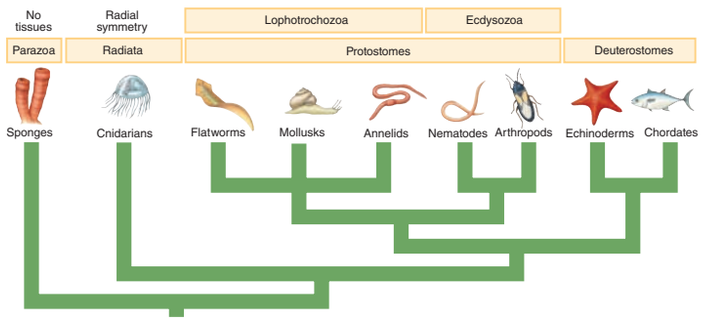
Animals are motile, multicellular heterotrophs that ingest their food.

Ancestry of Animals

The choanoflagellates are protists that most likely resemble the last unicellular ancestor of animals. A colony of flagellated cells could have led to a multicellular animal that formed tissues by invagination.

The Evolutionary Tree of Animals

The evolutionary tree of animals is chiefly based on molecular and developmental data.



The majority of animals are **invertebrates** (lack a backbone). Some, like humans are **vertebrates** (possess a backbone).

Evolutionary Trends

There are several important trends in the evolution of animals:

- In eumetazoans multicellularity led to the formation of **germ layers** (ectoderm, mesoderm, endoderm).
- **Radial symmetry** preceded **bilateral symmetry.** Bilateral symmetry led to cephalization, or formation of a head.
- Bilaterally symmetrical animals undergo either **protostome** development or **deuterostome** development. In protostomes, the first embryonic opening becomes the mouth. In deuterostomes, the second embryonic opening becomes the mouth.
- Animals may be further identified as **coelomates, pseudocoelomates,** or **acoelomates** depending on the structure of their body cavity.
- Some coelomate animals exhibit **segmentation,** or repetition of parts of the body.

19.2 Sponges and Cnidarians: The Early Animals

Sponges are multicellular (lack tissues) and have various symmetries.**Cnidarians** have two tissue layers, are radially symmetrical, have a saclike digestive cavity, and possess stinging cells and **nematocysts**.

19.3 Flatworms, Molluscs, and Annelids: The Lophotrochozoans

Lophotrochozoans are characterized by feeding structure and larval development. They increase their body mass gradually without molting.

Flatworms

Flatworms (such as planarians) have ectoderm, endoderm, and mesoderm, but no coelom. They are bilaterally symmetrical and have a saclike digestive cavity. Many are **hermaphroditic.**

Molluscs

The body of a **mollusc** typically contains a visceral mass, a mantle, and a foot.

- **Gastropods:** Snails, representatives of this group, have a flat foot, a one-part shell, and a mantle cavity that carries on gas exchange.
- **Cephalopods:** Octopuses and squids display marked cephalization, move rapidly by jet propulsion, and have a closed circulatory system.
- **Bivalves:** Bivalves, such as clams, have a hatchet foot and a two-part shell and are filter feeders.

Annelids: Segmented Worms

Annelids are segmented worms; segmentation is seen both externally and internally.

- Polychaetes are worms that have many setae. A clam worm is a predaceous marine worm with a defined head region.
- Earthworms are oligochaetes that scavenge for food in the soil and do not have a well-defined head region.
- Leeches are annelids that feed by sucking blood.

19.4 Roundworms and Arthropods: The Ecdysozoans

The ecdysozoans are invertebrate protostomes that increase their body mass by molting their exoskeleton or cuticle.

Roundworms

Roundworms have a pseudocoelom and a complete digestive tract.

Arthropods: Jointed Appendages

Arthropods are the most varied and numerous of animals. Their success is largely attributable to a flexible exoskeleton (made of **chitin**) and specialized body regions.

- **Crustaceans** have a head that bears compound eyes, antennae, and mouthparts. Five pairs of walking legs are present.
- **Arachnids** include spiders, scorpions, ticks, mites, harvestmen, and horseshoe crabs. Spiders live on land and spin silk, which they use to capture prey as well as for other purposes.
- **Insects** have three pairs of legs attached to the thorax. Insects have adaptations to a terrestrial life, such as wings for flying.

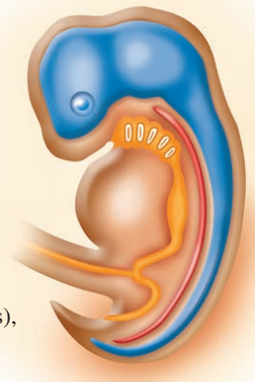
19.5 Echinoderms and Chordates: The Deuterostomes

Echinoderms

Echinoderms have radial symmetry as adults (not as larvae) and endoskeletal spines. Typical echinoderms have tiny skin gills, a central nerve ring with branches, and a water vascular system for locomotion, as exemplified by the sea star.

Chordates

Chordates have a **notochord**, a dorsal tubular nerve cord, pharyngeal pouches, and a postanal tail at sometime in their life history.



- **Invertebrate chordates:** Adult **tunicates** lack chordate characteristics except gill slits, but adult **lancelets** have the four chordate characteristics and show obvious segmentation.
- **Vertebrate chordates:** Vertebrate chordates include the fishes, amphibians, reptiles (and birds), and mammals.

Fishes

- The first vertebrates, the **jawless fishes** (represented by hagfishes and lampreys), lacked jaws and fins.
- **Cartilaginous fishes,** represented by sharks and rays, have jaws and a skeleton made of cartilage.
- **Bony fishes** have jaws and fins supported by bony spikes; the bony fishes include the **ray-finned fishes** and **lobe-finned fishes.** Some of the lobe-finned fishes have **lungs.**

Amphibians

Amphibians, such as frogs, toads, newts, and salamanders, evolved from ancient lobe-finned fishes and have two pairs of jointed vertebrate limbs. Frogs usually return to the water to reproduce and metamorphose into terrestrial adults.

Reptiles

Reptiles, such as snakes, lizards, turtles, crocodiles, and birds, lay a shelled egg, which contains extraembryonic membranes, including an amnion that allows them to reproduce on land. **Birds** are feathered reptiles, which helps them maintain a constant body temperature. They are adapted for flight; their bones are hollow, with air cavities; lungs form air sacs that allow one-way ventilation; and they have well-developed sense organs. All reptiles, except birds, are **ectothermic.** Birds are **endothermic.**

Mammals

Mammals are amniotes that have hair and mammary glands. The former helps them maintain a constant body temperature, and the latter allow them to nurse their young.

- **Monotremes** lay eggs.
- **Marsupials** have a pouch in which the newborn matures.
- **Placental mammals**, which are far more varied and numerous, retain offspring inside the uterus until birth.

19.6 Human Evolution

Arboreal primates are mammals adapted to living in trees. During the evolution of primates, various groups diverged in a particular sequence, or **lineage**. Several important classifications include

- Prosimians—lemurs and tarsiers
- Anthropoids—monkeys, apes, and humans
- Hominids—apes, chimpanzees, and humans
- Hominins—humans and their direct humanlike ancestors; exhibit **bipedalism**

Evolution of Humanlike Hominins

Human evolution occurred in Africa, where it has been possible to find the remains of several early hominins that date back to 7 MYA. The evolution of hominins includes these innovations:

Bipedal	The most famous **australopithecine** is Lucy (3.18 MYA), whose brain was small but who walked bipedally. Australopithecines exhibited **mosaic evolution** of body parts.
Tool Use	***Homo habilis,*** present about 2 MYA, is certain to have made tools and may have been the first to exhibit **culture**.
Brain Size Increased	***Homo erectus,*** with a brain capacity of 1,000 cc and a striding gait, was the first to migrate out of Africa.

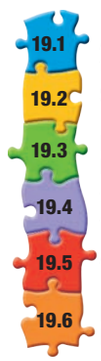
Evolution of Modern Humans

The **replacement model** explains that modern humans originated in Africa and, after migrating into Europe and Asia, replaced the other *Homo* species (including the **Neandertals** and possibly **Denisovans)** found there.

Cro-Magnon was the first hominid to be considered *Homo sapiens*. Mitochondrial DNA analysis supports the replacement model.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The evolution of animals follows a series of trends that can trace the evolution of all animals, from sponges to humans.



19.1 All animals have similar characteristics and can trace their ancestors back to a single-celled protist.

19.2 Sponges and cnidarians represent early forms of animals

19.3 Evolution of bilateral symmetry and cephalization led to the lophotrochozoans.

19.4 The ecdysozoans include the most successful organisms on the planet—the arthropods.

19.5 All chordates have shared characteristics, including a dorsal notochord.

19.6 Humans evolved from primate ancestors. Their success can be attributed to bipedalism and an increase in brain size.

For more information about the diversity and roles of land plants and fungi, see the following discussions:

Section 14.2 examines how the fossil record is used to support evolutionary change over time.

Table 16.1 describes the geological time frame over which life evolved.

Section 16.3 outlines how the science of systematics is involved in the study of evolutionary relationships.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

19.1 Evolution of Animals

1. Which of these protists is hypothesized to be ancestral to animals?
   a. a green algal protist **c.** an amoeboid protist
   b. a choanoflagellate **d.** a slime mold
2. Which of the following is not a feature of a coelomate?
   a. radial symmetry
   b. three germ layers
   c. a complete digestive tract body plan
   d. organ level of organization
3. The evolution of bilateral symmetry allowed for
   a. multicellularity. **c.** the notochord.
   b. germ layers. **d.** cephalization.

19.2 Sponges and Cnidarians: The Early Animals

4. Sponges are classified as
   a. eumetazoans. **c.** protists.
   b. parazoans. **d.** vertebrates.
5. Cnidarians are organized at the tissue level because they contain
   a. ectoderm and endoderm. **d.** endoderm and mesoderm.
   b. ectoderm. **e.** mesoderm.
   c. ectoderm and mesoderm.

19.3 Flatworms, Molluscs, and Annelids: The Lophotrochozoans

6. A feature of annelids is
   a. a segmented body. **c.** a sac body plan.
   b. acoelomate. **d.** radial symmetry.
7. What characteristic is common to the flatworms, molluscs, and annelids?
   a. All have bilateral symmetry. **c.** All are parazoans.
   b. All are acoelomates. **d.** All are vertebrates.
8. Gastropods and cephalopods are examples of
   a. molluscs. **c.** flatworms.
   b. annelids. **d.** None of the above are correct.

19.4 Roundworms and Arthropods: The Ecdysozoans

9. Which of the following is not a feature of an insect?
   a. compound eyes **d.** an exoskeleton
   b. eight legs **e.** jointed legs
   c. antennae
10. Elephantiasis and trichinosis are diseases caused by
    a. mites. **c.** insects.
    b. spiders. **d.** roundworms.

19.5 Echinoderms and Chordates: The Deuterostomes

11. Which of the following is not a feature of mammals?
    a. hair
    b. milk-producing glands
    c. ectothermic capability
    d. four-chambered heart
    e. diaphragm to help expand lungs
12. Unlike bony fishes, amphibians have
    a. ears. **c.** a circulatory system.
    b. jaws. **d.** a heart.
13. Mammals are distinguished based on
    a. size and hair type.
    b. mode of reproduction.
    c. number of limbs and method of caring for young.
    d. number of mammary glands and number of offspring.

19.6 Human Evolution

14. The first humanlike feature to evolve in the hominins was
    a. a large brain. **c.** a slender body.
    b. massive jaws. **d.** bipedal locomotion.
15. Which of the following is an anthropoid but not a hominid?
    a. human **d.** chimpanzee
    b. gibbon **e.** gorilla
    c. orangutan
16. The replacement model supports which of the following in the evolution of modern humans?
    a. evolution of bipedalism
    b. evolution of brain size
    c. distribution of modern humans across the planet
    d. development of culture

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Recently, three fossil skulls of *Homo sapiens,* dating to about 160,000 years BP, were discovered in eastern Africa. These skulls fill a gap between the 100,000-year-old *H. sapiens* skulls found in Africa and Israel and the 500,000-year-old skulls of archaic *H. sapiens* found in Ethiopia. Supporters of the replacement model (out-of-Africa hypothesis) argue that this discovery strengthens their position by documenting the succession of human ancestors from 6 MYA through this most recent group. Does this finding prove that the replacement model is correct? If not, what fossil evidence might yet be found to support the multiregional continuity hypothesis?
2. Think of the animals in this chapter that are radially symmetrical (cnidarians, many adult echinoderms). How is their lifestyle different from that of bilaterally symmetrical animals? How does their body plan complement their lifestyle?

20

Plant Anatomy and Growth

OUTLINE

20.1 Plant Cells and Tissues 373

20.2 Plant Organs 375

20.3 Organization of Leaves, Stems, and Roots 377

20.4 Plant Nutrition 385

20.5 Transport of Nutrients 387

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 5.4 How does diffusion and osmosis affect the transport of water and solutes between cells?

Section 6.1 What are the inputs and outputs of photosynthesis?

Section 18.1 What are the major adaptations of plants to the land environment?

Carnivorous Plants Are Adapted to Harsh Conditions

Pitcher plants are unusual in that they like to grow in areas that lack nitrogen and phosphorus, which are required nutrients for plants. What's their secret? Pitcher plants feed on animals, particularly insects, to get the nutrients they need. That's right—like a few other types of plants, pitcher plants are carnivorous.

A pitcher plant is named for its leaves, which are shaped like a container we call a pitcher. The pitcher attracts flying insects because it has a scent, is brightly colored, and provides nectar that insects can eat. When an insect lands on the lip of the pitcher, a slippery substance and downward-pointing hairs encourage it to slide into a pit. There, juices secreted by the leaf begin digesting the insect. The plant then absorbs these nutrients into its tissues. Although the pitcher is designed to attract insects, animals as large as rats have been found in pitcher plants! The unique adaptations of pitcher plants allow them to thrive in hostile environments where few plants can survive.

Some animals are able to turn the tables on the pitcher plant by taking advantage of the liquid they provide. Larvae of mosquitoes and flies have been known to develop safely inside a pitcher plant.

Carnivorous plants, such as the pitcher plant, are fairly unusual in the plant world, but so are many others, such as the coastal redwoods—the tallest trees on planet Earth. In this chapter, you will learn about the organs and structures of flowering plants, the nutrition they need, and how they transport nutrients within plant tissues.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How does each plant organ contribute to the life of the plant?
2. What nutrients do plants need, and how are those nutrients acquired from the environment?
3. How are nutrients distributed throughout the plant body?

20.1 Plant Cells and Tissues

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the three types of specialized tissues of a plant and describe their functions.
2. Describe the modifications that may occur to epidermal tissue in a plant.
3. List the three types of ground tissue, and compare and contrast their structures and functions.
4. Explain how the vascular tissues of a plant are organized to move water and nutrients within a plant.

Plants have levels of biological organization similar to those of animals (see Fig. 1.1). As in animals, a *cell* is a basic unit of life, and a *tissue* is composed of specialized cells that perform a particular function. An *organ* is a structure made up of multiple tissues.

When a plant embryo first begins to develop, the first cells are called meristem cells (**Fig. 20.1**). Meristem cells organize into **meristem tissue,** allowing a plant to grow its entire life. Even a 5,000-year-old tree is still growing! Early on, meristem tissue is present at the very top and the very bottom of a plant. Because they are located at the ends, they are called the **apical meristems.** Apical meristems develop (differentiate) into the three types of specialized tissues of the plant body:

Video Seedling Growth

1. **Epidermal tissue** forms the outer protective covering of a plant.
2. **Ground tissue** fills the interior of a plant and helps carry out the functions of a particular organ.
3. **Vascular tissue** transports water and nutrients in a plant and provides support.

Plants not only grow up and down, but they can also grow wide. The **vascular cambium** is another type of meristem that gives rise to new vascular tissue called *secondary growth*. Secondary growth causes a plant to increase in girth.

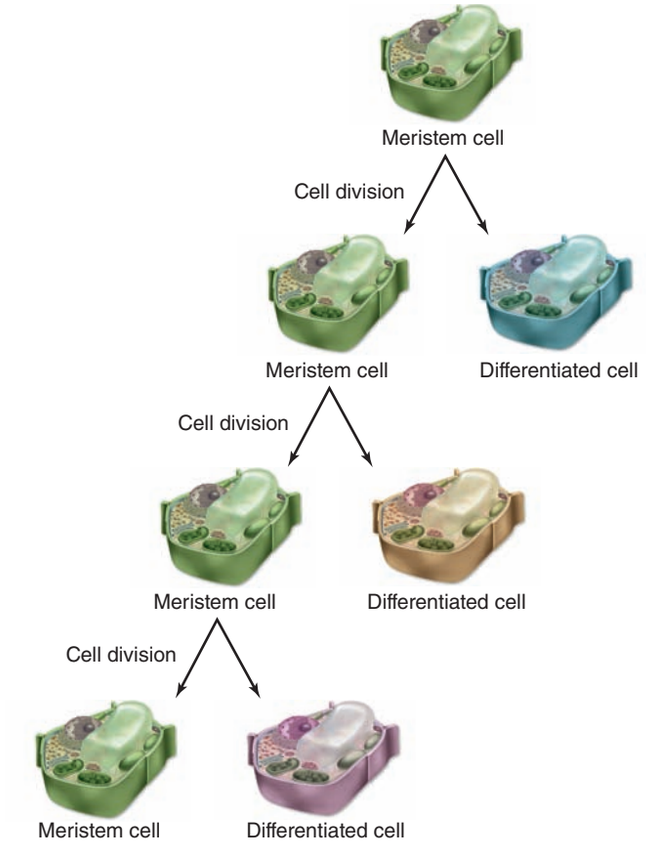


Figure 20.1 Meristem cell division.

Meristem cells are located in new and developing parts of a plant. Meristem cells divide and eventually differentiate, making up specialized plant tissues, such as the epidermal, ground, and vascular tissues.

Epidermal Tissue

Like skin, the entire body of a plant is covered by an **epidermis,** a layer of closely packed cells that act as a barrier. The walls of epidermal cells that are exposed to air are covered with a waxy **cuticle** to minimize water loss. The cuticle also protects against bacteria and other organisms that might cause disease. Epidermal cells can be modified (changed) into other types of cells. **Root hairs** are long, slender projections of epidermal cells that increase the surface area of the root for absorption of water and minerals (**Fig. 20.2*a***). In leaves, the epidermis often contains **stomata** (sing., stoma). A stoma is a small opening surrounded by two guard cells (Fig. 20.2*b*). When the stomata are open, gas exchange and water loss occur. *Trichomes* are another type of epidermal cell that make plants feel prickly or hairy and discourage insects from eating the leaves or stems (Fig. 20.2*c*).

In the trunk of a tree, the epidermis is replaced by cork, which is a part of bark (Fig. 20.2*d*). New cork cells are made by a meristem called *cork cambium*. As the new cork cells mature, they increase slightly in volume, and their walls become encrusted with *suberin,* a lipid material, so that they are waterproof and

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How is paper made?

Most paper is made from the cellulose fibers of trees. Recall from Chapter 3 that cellulose is a component of the cell wall of plants. After the tree is harvested, it is debarked and cut into small chips to increase the surface area. However, before the cellulose can be extracted from the cells, the lignin and resins must be removed. This is done either mechanically or by using a combination of steam and sulfur-based chemicals to separate the lignin and resins from the cellulose fibers. In the next step, the lignins and resins are removed by bleaching with chlorine gas (or chlorine dioxide), which also makes the fibers white. In the final steps, fibers are dried and treated in a machine that forms rolls of paper for commercial use.

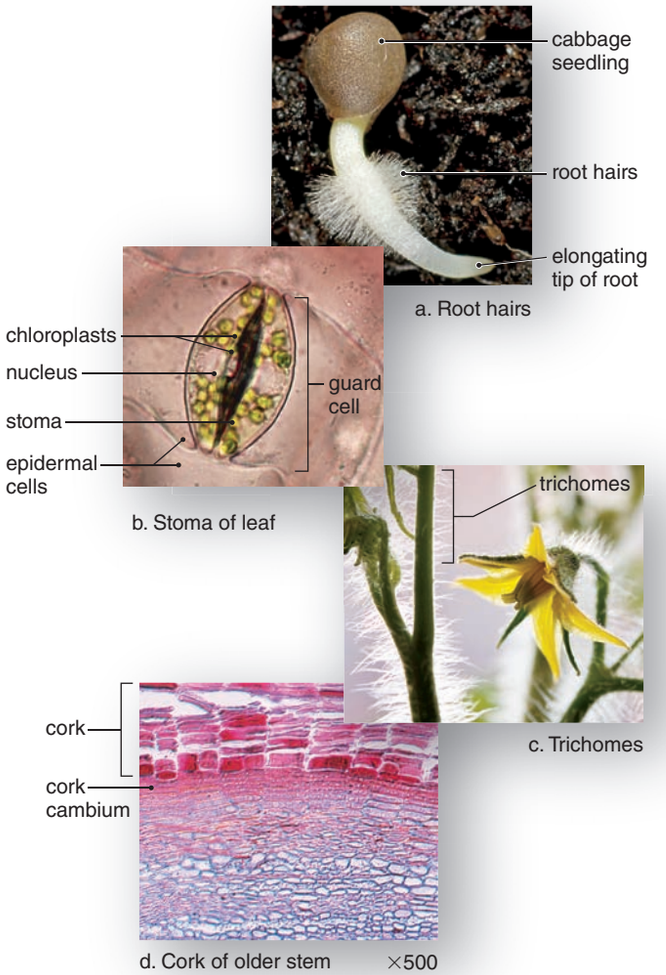


Figure 20.2 **Modifications of epidermal tissue.**

a. Root epidermis has root hairs, which help absorb water. **b.** Leaf epidermis contains stomata (sing., stoma) for gas exchange. **c.** Trichomes are hairy extensions of the leaf or stem and protect the plant from herbivory. **d.** Cork, which is a part of bark, replaces epidermis in older, woody stems.

chemically inert. These nonliving cells protect the plant and make it resistant to attack by fungi, bacteria, and animals.

Ground Tissue

Ground tissue forms the internal bulk of leaves, stems, and roots. Ground tissue contains three types of cells (**Fig. 20.3**). *Parenchyma* cells are the least specialized of the cell types and are found in all the organs of a plant. They may contain chloroplasts and carry on photosynthesis, or they may contain colorless organelles that store the products of photosynthesis. *Collenchyma* cells are like parenchyma cells except that they have irregularly shaped corners and thicker cell walls. Collenchyma cells often form bundles just beneath the epidermis and give flexible support to immature regions of a plant body. The familiar strands in celery stalks are composed mostly of collenchyma cells. *Sclerenchyma* cells have thick secondary cell walls containing *lignin,* which makes plant cell walls tough and hard. If we compare a cell wall to reinforced concrete, cellulose fibrils would play the role of steel rods, and lignin would be analogous to the cement. Most sclerenchyma cells are nonliving; their primary function is to support the mature regions of a plant. The hard outer shells of nuts are made of sclerenchyma cells. The long fibers in plants, composed of strings of sclerenchyma, make them useful for a number of purposes. For example, cotton and flax fibers can be woven into cloth, and hemp fibers can make strong rope.

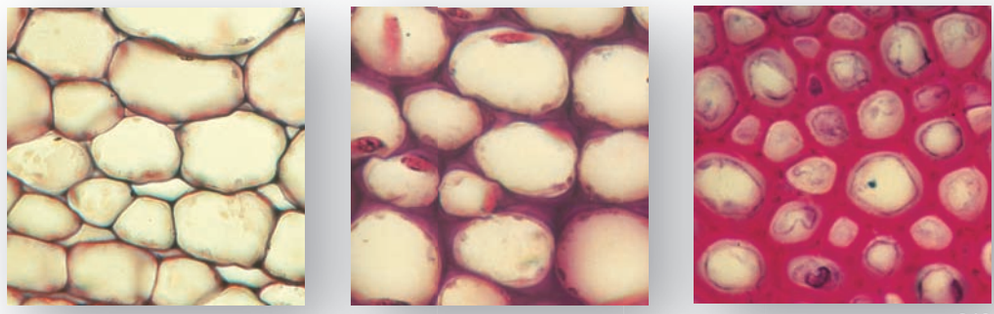
Vascular Tissue

Vascular tissue extends from the root through the stem to the leaves and vice versa. In the root, the vascular tissue is located in a central cylinder; in the stem, vascular tissue can be found in multiple vascular bundles; and in the leaves, it is found in leaf veins. Although both types of vascular tissue are usually found together, they have different functions. **Xylem** transports water and minerals from the roots to the leaves. **Phloem** transports sugar, in the form of sucrose, and other organic compounds, such as hormones, often from the leaves to the roots.

Xylem contains two types of conducting cells: **vessel elements** and **tracheids** (**Fig. 20.4*a***). Both types of conducting cells are hollow and nonliving, but the vessel elements are larger, have perforated end walls, and are arranged to form a continuous pipeline for water and mineral transport. The end walls and side walls of tracheids have pits that allow water to move from one tracheid to another.

Figure 20.3 **Ground tissue cells.**

a. Parenchyma cells are the least specialized of the plant cells. **b.** Collenchyma cells have thicker and more irregular cell walls than parenchyma cells. **c.** Sclerenchyma cells have very thick walls and are nonliving—their only function is to give strong support.



The conducting cells of phloem are **sieve-tube members,** so called because they contain a cluster of pores in their end walls. The pores are collectively known as a *sieve plate*. The sieve-tube members are arranged to form a continuous sieve tube (Fig. 20.4*b*). Sieve-tube members contain cytoplasm but no nuclei. Each sieve-tube member has a **companion cell,** which does have a nucleus. The companion cells may very well be involved in the transport function of phloem.

Animation Vascular System of Plants

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

20.1

Plants have specialized cells that make up unique tissues.

Check Your Progress 20.1

1. List the three types of tissue in a plant, the cells that make up these tissues, and the functions of each.
2. Contrast the function of xylem with that of phloem.
3. Discuss what might occur to a plant if it did not include an epidermis.

20.2 Plant Organs

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Define primary growth and describe where primary growth occurs.
2. Describe the root system and the shoot system.
3. Compare and contrast the seeds, roots, stems, leaves, and flowers of a monocot and a eudicot plant.

As you learned in Chapter 18, the earliest plants were simple and lacked true leaves, stems and roots. As plants gained vascular tissue and began moving onto land away from water, organs developed to facilitate living in drier environments. Even though all vascular plants have vegetative organs, this chapter focuses on the organs commonly identified with flowering plants, or angiosperms.

A flowering plant, whether a cactus, a daisy, or an apple tree, has a shoot system and a root system (**Fig. 20.5**). The **shoot system** consists of the stem, leaves, flowers, and fruit. A stem supports the leaves, transports materials between the roots and leaves, and produces new tissue. At the end of a stem, a *terminal bud* contains an apical meristem and produces new leaves and other tissues during the initial, or *primary growth* (**Fig. 20.6**). Lateral (side) branches grow from a *lateral bud* located at the angle where a leaf joins the stem. A **node** occurs where a leaf or leaves are attached to the stem, and an *internode* is the region between the nodes (see Fig. 20.5). Vascular tissue transports water and minerals from the roots through the stem to the leaves and transports the products of photosynthesis, usually in the opposite direction.

The **root system** simply consists of the roots. The root tip also contains an apical meristem and results in primary growth downward. Primary growth at the terminal bud and root tip would be equivalent to your increasing in height by growing from your head and your feet! Ultimately, the three vegetative organs—the leaf, the stem, and the root—perform functions that allow a plant to live and grow. Flowers and fruit are reproductive organs and will be discussed in Chapter 21.

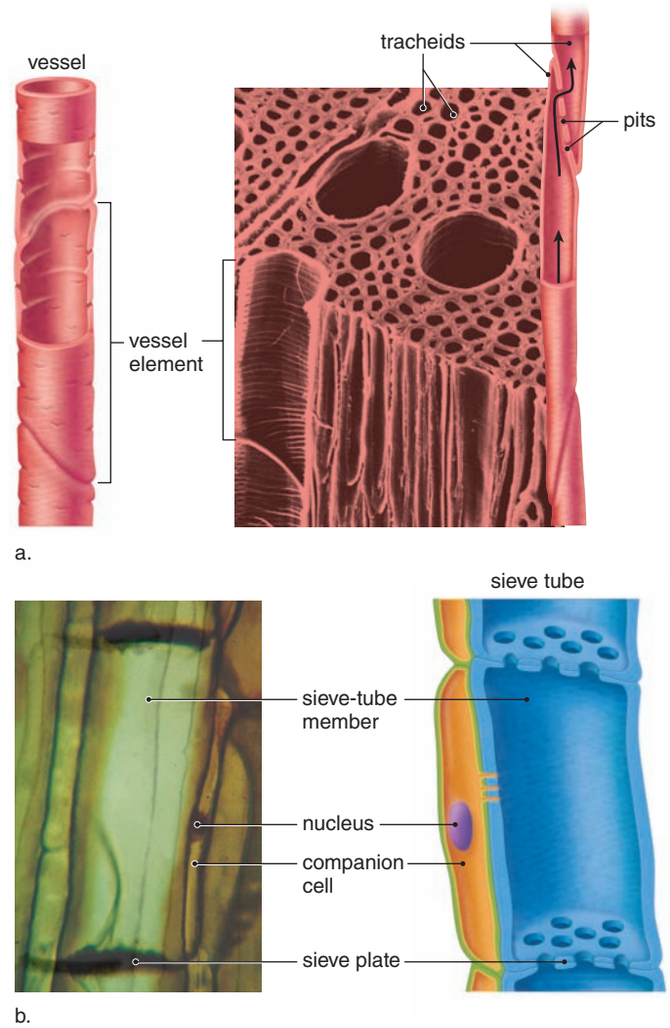


Figure 20.4 Vascular tissue.

a. Photomicrograph of xylem vascular tissue, with (*left*) drawing of a vessel (composed of vessel elements) and (*right*) of tracheids.
b. Photomicrograph of phloem vascular tissue, with drawing of a sieve tube. Each sieve-tube member has a companion cell.

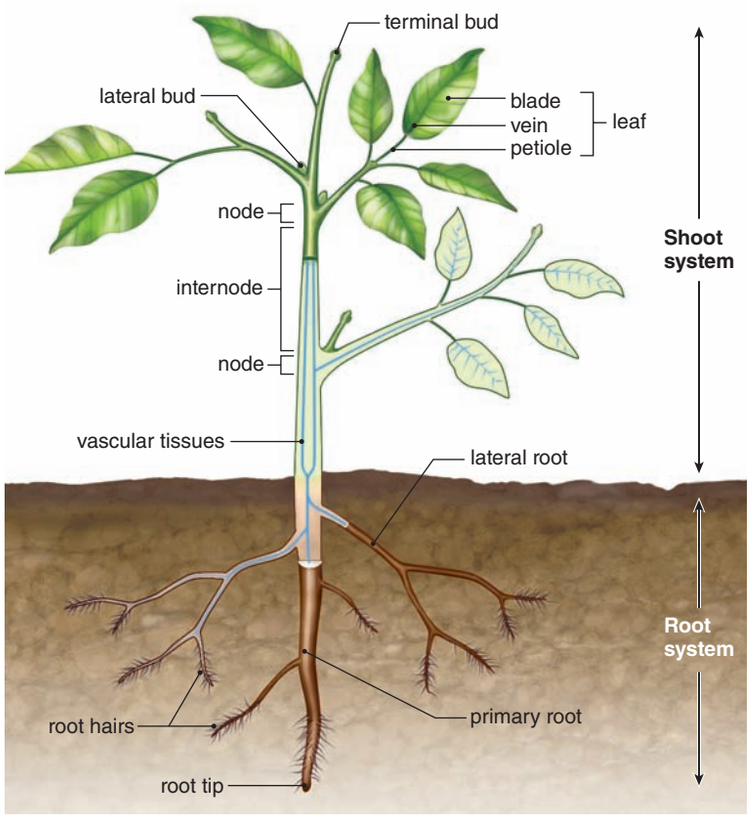


Figure 20.5 **The vegetative body of a plant.**

A plant has a root system, which extends below ground, and a shoot system, which is composed of the stem and leaves. Cell division at the terminal bud and the root tip allows a plant to increase in length, a process called primary growth.

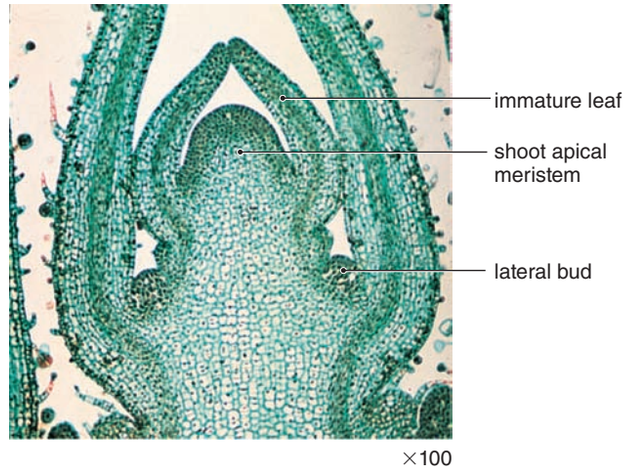


Figure 20.6 **A terminal bud.**

A terminal bud contains an apical meristem and produces new leaves and other tissues during primary growth. Lateral (side) branches grow from a lateral bud.

Monocot Versus Eudicot Plants

Plant organs are arranged in different patterns depending on the type of flowering plant. **Figure 20.7** shows how flowering plants can be divided into two major groups. One of the differences between the two groups concerns the **cotyledons,** which are embryonic leaves present in seeds. The cotyledons wither after the first true leaves appear. Plants whose embryo has one cotyledon are known as monocotyledons, or **monocots.** Other embryos have two

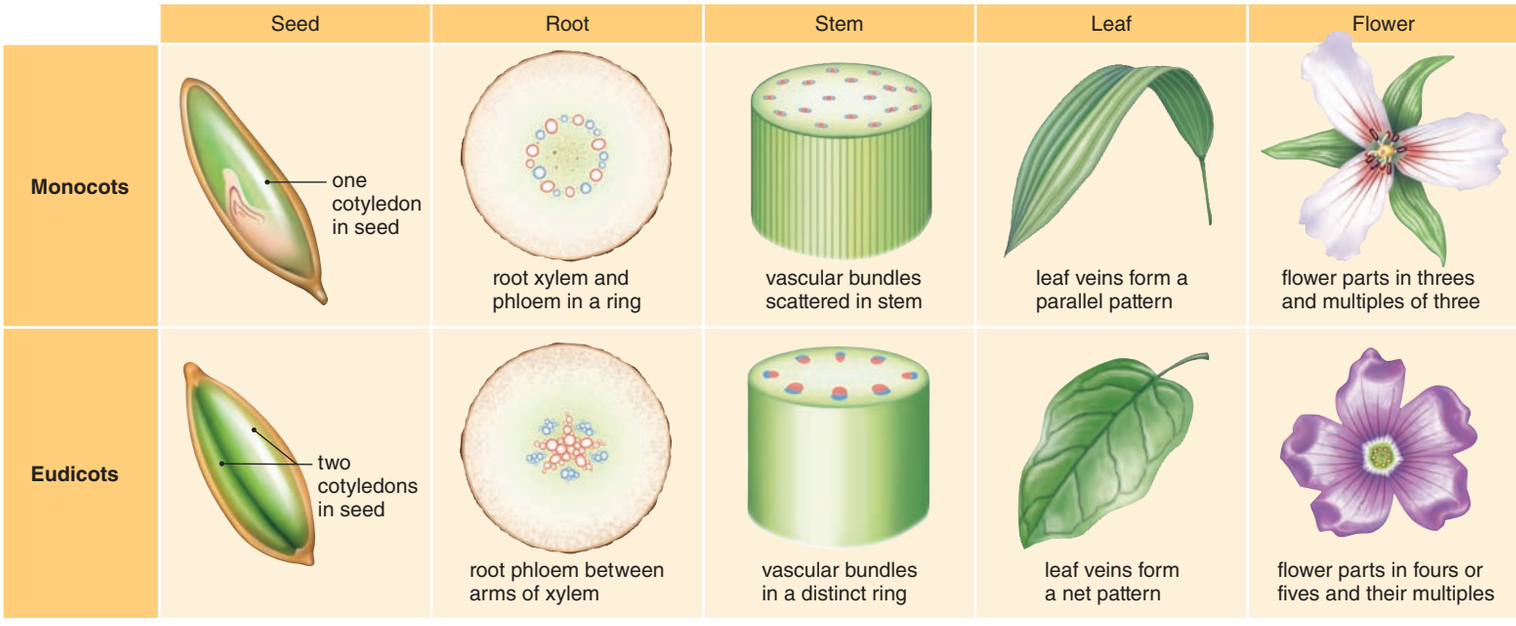


Figure 20.7 **Flowering plants are either monocots or eudicots.**

Five features are typically used to distinguish monocots from eudicots: number of cotyledons; arrangement of vascular tissue in roots, stems, and leaves; and number of flower parts.

cotyledons, and these plants are known as eudicotyledons, or **eudicots** (true dicots). The cotyledons of eudicots supply nutrients for seedlings, but the cotyledons of monocots store some nutrients and act as a transfer tissue for nutrients stored elsewhere.

Although the distinction between monocots and eudicots may seem minimal at first glance, there are many differences in their structures. For example, a microscopic view would show that the location and arrangement of vascular tissue differ between monocots and eudicots. Recall that vascular plants contain two main types of transport tissue: the *xylem* for water and minerals and the *phloem* for organic nutrients. In a sense, xylem and phloem are to plants what veins and arteries are to animals. In the monocot root, vascular tissue occurs in a ring around the center. But in the eudicot, vascular tissue is located in the center. The xylem forms a star shape, and phloem is located between the points of the star. In a stem, vascular tissue occurs in the **vascular bundles.** The vascular bundles are scattered in the monocot stem, and they occur in a ring in the eudicot stems.

To the naked eye, the vascular tissue forms *leaf veins***.** In monocots, the veins are parallel, while in eudicots, the leaf veins form a net pattern. Monocots and eudicots also have different numbers of flower parts, and this difference will be discussed further in Chapter 21.

The eudicots are the larger group and include some of our most familiar flowering plants—from dandelions to oak trees. The monocots include grasses, lilies, orchids, and palm trees, among others. Some of our most significant food sources are monocots, including rice, wheat, and corn.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Plant tissues combine to form vegetative organs.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Do "magical" plants really exist?

Strange and poisonous plants have been made famous by popular series such as *Harry Potter* and *The Hunger Games*. But do these types of plants really exist? Yes! Mandrake roots look like a human body, and giant hogweed leaves will cause painful blisters to sprout on the skin. Cuckoopint ("bloody man's finger") will cause the tongue to swell, and the black berries of the deadly nightshade are indeed lethal.

Check Your Progress 20.2

1. Explain where apical meristems are found in developing plants.
2. Define a cotyledon and explain its function.
3. Detail the major differences in the organization of vascular tissue between monocots and eudicots.

20.3 Organization of Leaves, Stems, and Roots

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the structures found in a typical eudicot leaf.
2. Contrast nonwoody stems with woody stems.
3. Explain how secondary growth of a woody eudicot stem occurs and contrast spring wood with summer wood.
4. List the three zones of a eudicot root tip.

Leaves

Leaves are the chief organs of photosynthesis, and as such they require a supply of solar energy, carbon dioxide, and water. Broad and thin foliage leaves maximize the surface area to collect sunlight and absorb carbon dioxide. Leaves receive water from the root system by way of vascular tissue that terminates in the leaves. *Deciduous* plants lose their leaves, often due to a yearly dry season or the onset of winter. Other trees, called *evergreens***,** retain their leaves for the entire year.

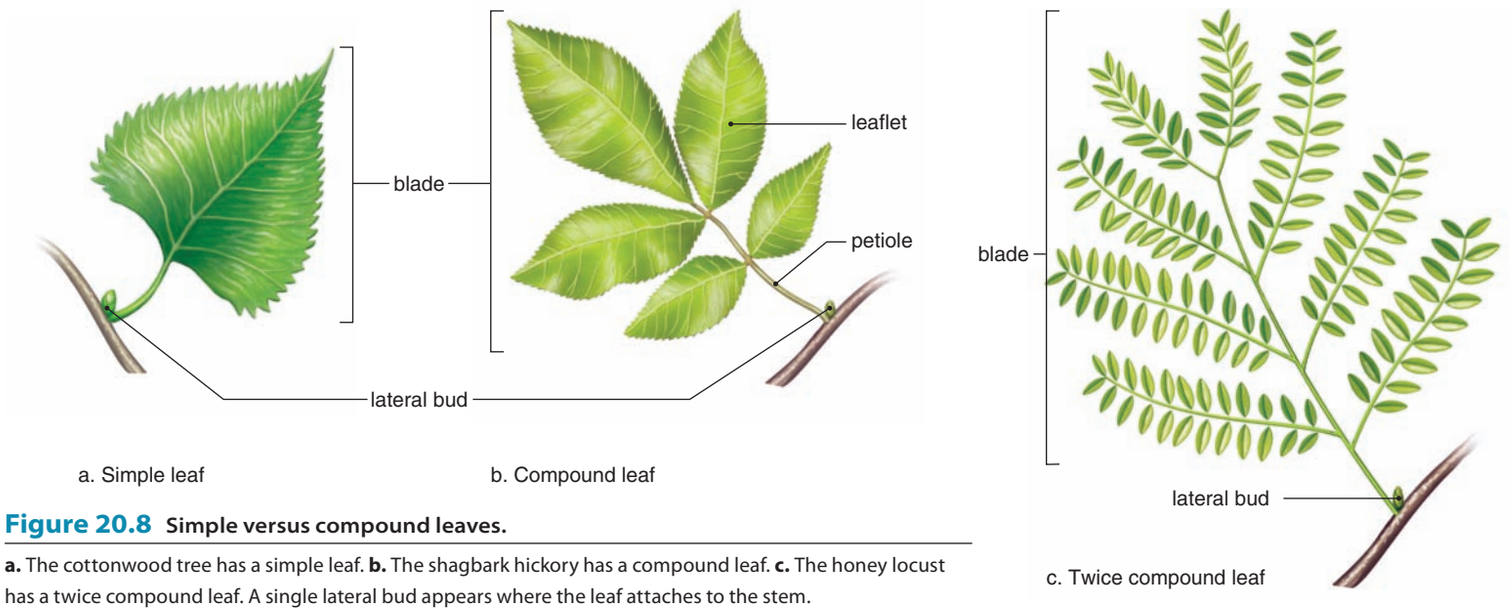


Figure 20.8 **Simple versus compound leaves.**

a. The cottonwood tree has a simple leaf. **b.** The shagbark hickory has a compound leaf. **c.** The honey locust has a twice compound leaf. A single lateral bud appears where the leaf attaches to the stem.

Figure 20.8 shows the general structure of a leaf. The wide portion of a foliage leaf is called the *blade.* The *petiole* is a stalk that attaches the blade to the stem. The blade of a leaf is often undivided, or *simple,* as in a cottonwood (Fig. 20.8*a*). But in some leaves, the blade is divided, or *compound,* as in a shagbark hickory or honey locust (Fig. 20.8*b,c*). Notice that it is possible to tell from the placement of the lateral bud whether you are looking at several individual leaves or one compound leaf.

Figure 20.9 shows a cross section of a typical eudicot leaf. The outermost structure, the waxy cuticle, prevents water loss. Next, the epidermal layer can be found above and below. The lower epidermis contains the stomata, allowing gas exchange. The interior area of a leaf is composed of **mesophyll,** the tissue that carries out photosynthesis. Vascular tissue terminating at the mesophyll transports water and minerals to a leaf and transports the product of photosynthesis, a sugar, away from the leaf. The mesophyll has two distinct regions: *Palisade mesophyll* contains tightly packed cells, thereby increasing the surface area for the absorption of sunlight, and *spongy mesophyll* contains irregular cells surrounded by air spaces. The loosely packed arrangement of the cells in the spongy layer increases the amount of surface area for gas exchange and water loss. Water taken into a leaf by xylem tissue evaporates from spongy mesophyll and exits at the stomata.

Leaves may have several other functions aside from photosynthesis (**Fig. 20.10**). Leaves may be modified as tendrils that allow the plant to attach to objects (Fig. 20.10*a*) or as traps for catching insects (Fig. 20.10*b*). The leaves of a cactus are spines that reduce water loss and protect the plant from hungry animals (Fig. 20.10*c*).

Stems

If you carry a bouquet of daisies in one hand and lean up against a tree with the other hand, you would actually be touching two different kinds of **stems.** The daisy has a nonwoody stem and the tree trunk is a woody stem.

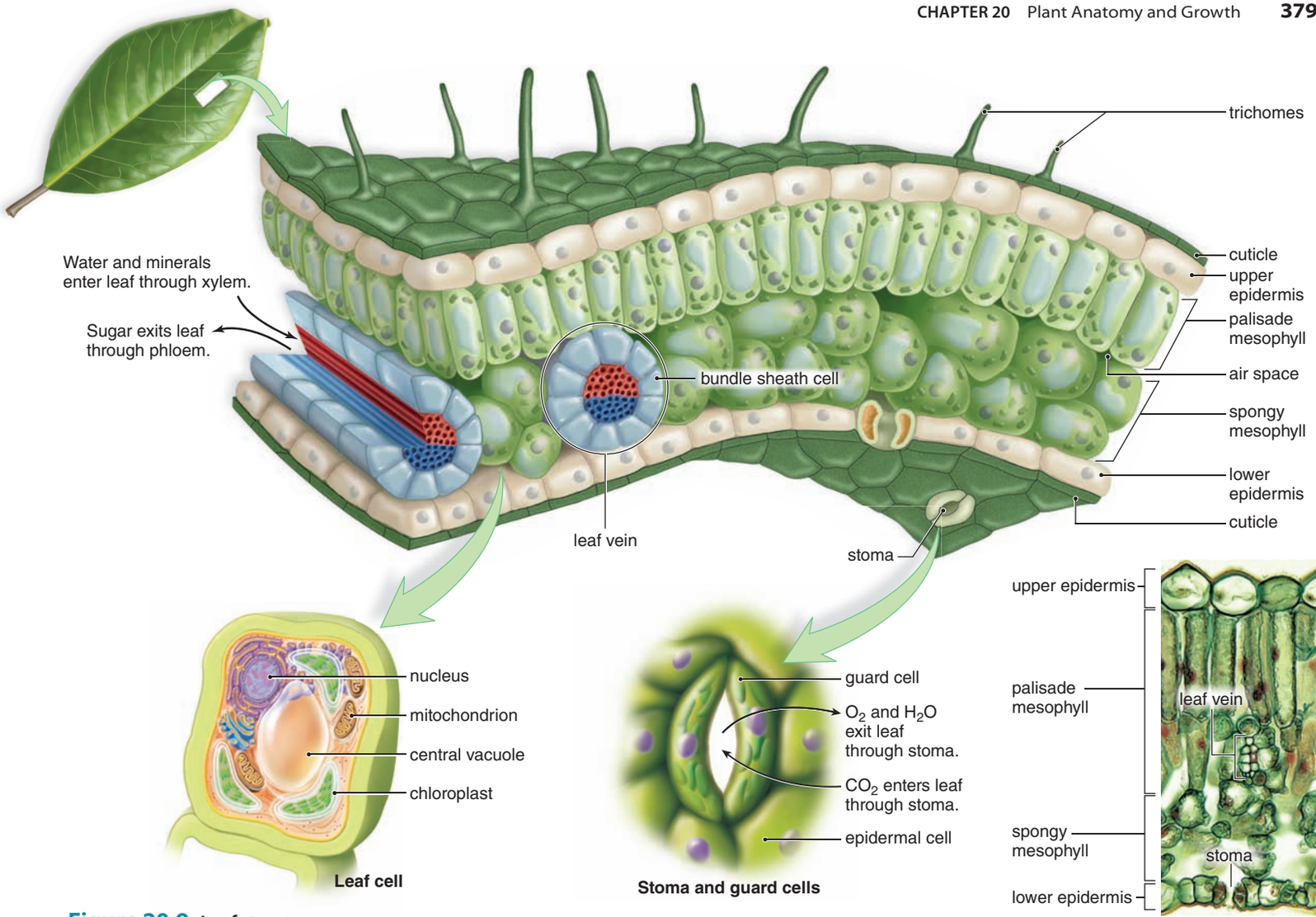


Figure 20.9 **Leaf structure.**

Photosynthesis takes place in mesophyll tissue of leaves. The leaf is enclosed by epidermal cells covered with a waxy layer, the cuticle. Water and solutes travel throughout the plant using the leaf veins, which contain xylem and phloem. A stoma is an opening in the epidermis that permits the exchange of gases.

a. Cucumber b. Venus's flytrap c. Cactus d. Potato

Figure 20.10 **Leaf and stem diversity.**

a. The tendrils of a cucumber are leaves modified to attach the plant to a support. **b.** Venus's flytrap leaves serve as the trap for unsuspecting insects. After digesting this fly, the plant will absorb the nutrients released. **c.** The spines of a cactus protect the fleshy stem from herbivores. The cactus uses its fleshy stem for both food production and water storage. **d.** The familiar potato is actually an underground stem, or tuber, that is used for food storage.

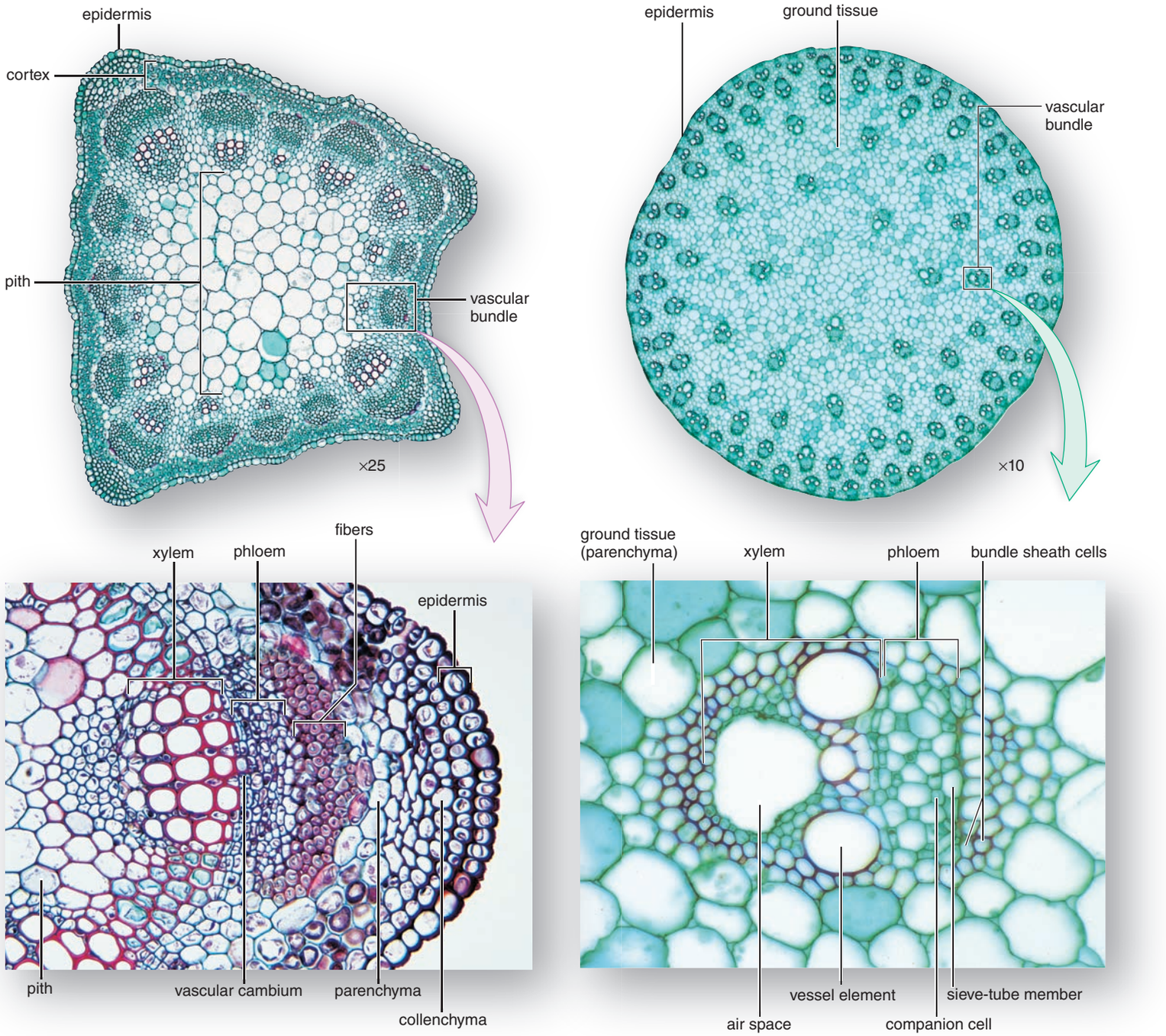


Figure 20.11 **Nonwoody (herbaceous) stems.**

a. In eudicot stems, the vascular bundles are arranged in a ring around well-defined ground tissue called pith. **b.** In monocot stems, the vascular bundles are scattered within the ground tissue.

Nonwoody Stems

A stem that experiences only primary growth is nonwoody. Plants that have nonwoody stems, such as zinnias, mint, and daisies, are termed *herbaceous* plants. As with leaves, the outermost tissue of a herbaceous stem is the epidermis, which is covered by a waxy cuticle to prevent water loss. Beneath the epidermis of eudicot stems is the **cortex,** a narrow band of parenchyma cells. The cortex is sometimes green and carries on photosynthesis. The ground tissue in the center is called the **pith.** A monocot stem lacks an organized cortex or pith.

Herbaceous stems have distinctive vascular bundles, where xylem and phloem are found. In each bundle, xylem is typically found toward the inside of the stem, and phloem is found toward the outside. In the herbaceous eudicot stem, the vascular bundles are arranged in a distinct ring that separates the cortex from the pith. In a herbaceous monocot stem, the vascular bundles are scattered throughout the stem and have a characteristic "monkey face" appearance. **Figure 20.11** contrasts herbaceous eudicot and monocot stems.

Imagine placing a heavy object on top of a straw. The straw would bend and buckle under the weight. Stems resist breaking during growth because of the internal strength provided by vessel members, tracheids and sclerenchyma cells impregnated with lignin. The herbaceous stem of the mammoth sunflower holds up a flower head that can weigh 5 pounds!

Stems may have functions other than those mentioned. In a cactus, the stem is the primary photosynthetic organ and serves as a water reservoir (see Fig. 20.10*c*), and the tuber of a potato plant is a food storage portion of an underground stem (Fig. 20.10*d*). *Perennial plants* are able to regrow each season from varied underground stems, such as tubers and rhizomes, all of which bear nodes that can produce a new shoot system.

Woody Stems

Plants with woody stems, such as trees and shrubs, experience both primary and secondary growth. *Secondary growth* increases the girth of stems, branches, and roots. It occurs because of a difference in the location and activity of vascular cambium, which, as you may recall from Section 20.1, is a type of meristem tissue. In herbaceous eudicot plants, vascular cambium is usually present between the xylem and phloem of each vascular bundle. In woody plants, the vascular cambium forms a ring of meristem that produces new xylem and phloem each year. In an older woody stem, vascular cambium occurs between the bark and the wood (**Fig. 20.12**).

Bark

The **bark** of a tree contains cork, cork cambium, cortex, and phloem. It is very harmful to remove the bark of a tree, because without phloem, organic nutrients cannot be transported. Although new phloem tissue is produced each year by vascular cambium, it does not build up in the same manner as xylem.

Cork cambium is located beneath the epidermis and is another region of active cell division. When cork cambium first begins to divide, it produces tissue that disrupts the epidermis and replaces it with cork cells. *Cork cells* are impregnated with suberin, a waxy layer that makes them waterproof but also causes them to die. In a woody stem, gas exchange is impeded, except at *lenticels,* which are pockets of loosely arranged cork cells not impregnated with suberin.

Wood

When a plant first begins growing, the xylem is made by the apical meristem. Later, as the plant matures, xylem is made by the vascular cambium and is called *secondary xylem*. **Wood** is secondary xylem that builds up year after year, thereby increasing the girth of trees. In trees that have a growing season, vascular cambium is dormant during the winter and then active again in the spring when temperatures increase and water becomes more available. In the spring, vascular cambium produces secondary xylem tissue that contains wide vessels with thin walls. This is called *spring wood,* and the wider vessels

Connections: Environment

What trees are used to produce cork bottle stoppers?

Cork stoppers, such as those traditionally found in wine bottles, are manufactured almost exclusively in Spain and Portugal from the cork oak tree (*Quercus suber*). Cork from these trees can be harvested once the tree reaches an age of about 20 years. Then, every 9 years, the outer 1–2 inches of cork may be removed from the tree without harming it. This yields about 16 kilograms (35 pounds) of cork per tree, and cork trees can continue to produce cork for around 150 years. Cork is considered to be an environmentally friendly forest product because the trees are not harmed during its production.

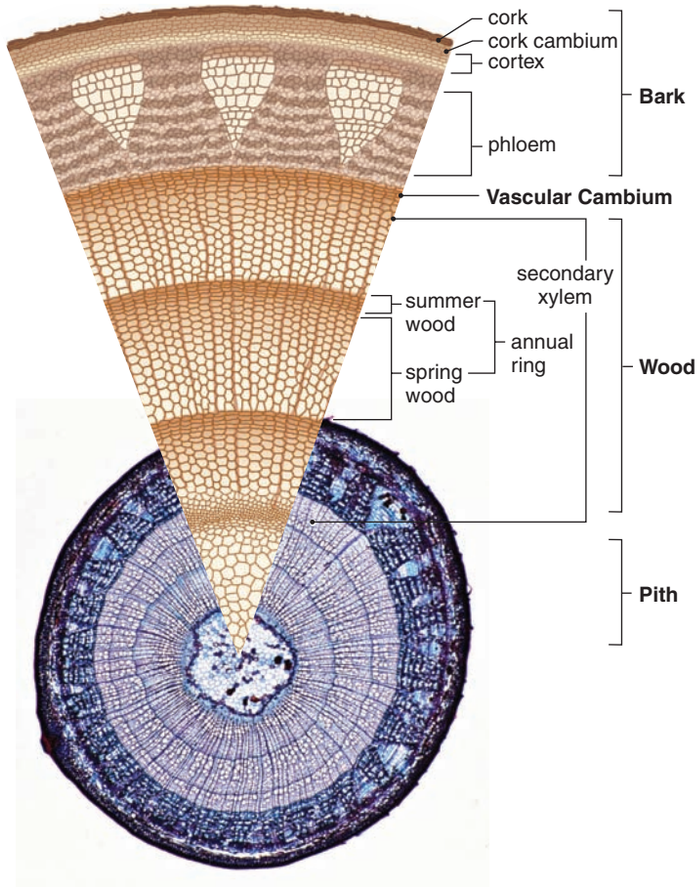


Figure 20.12 **Organization of a woody stem.**

In a woody stem, vascular cambium produces new secondary phloem and secondary xylem each year. Secondary xylem builds up to form wood consisting of annual rings. Counting the annual rings tells you that this woody stem is three years old.

transport sufficient water to the growing leaves. In summer, there is less rain and the wood at this time, called *summer wood,* has a lower proportion of vessels. Strength is required because the tree is growing larger, and summer wood contains numerous thick-walled tracheids. At the end of the growing season, just before the vascular cambium becomes dormant again, only heavy fibers with especially thick secondary walls may develop. When the trunk of a tree has spring wood followed by summer wood, the two together make up one year's growth, or an **annual ring** (Fig. 20.12). A dendrochronologist is a scientist who studies annual rings to determine the age of a tree. Annual rings can also give clues on water availability and forest fires in the past, and support predictions on global climate change.

Wood is one of the most useful and versatile materials known. It is used for building structures and for making furniture. Much wood is also used for heating and cooking, as well as for producing paper, chemicals, and pharmaceuticals. The resins derived from wood are used to make turpentine and rosin.

Roots

A plant's root system supports the plant by anchoring it in the soil, as well as absorbing water and minerals from the soil for the entire plant. As a rule of thumb, the root system is at least equivalent in size and extent to its shoot system. Therefore, an apple tree has a much larger root system than a corn plant. Also, the extent of a root system depends on the environment. A single corn plant may have roots as deep as 2.5 meters (m), while a mesquite tree in the desert may have roots that penetrate to a depth of 20 m.

Roots have a cylindrical shape and a slimy surface. This allows roots to penetrate the soil as they grow and permit water to be absorbed from all sides. In a special zone near the root tip, there are many root hairs that greatly increase the absorptive capacity of the root. **Root hairs** are so numerous that they increase the absorption of water and minerals tremendously. It has been estimated that a single rye plant has about 14 billion root-hair cells! Root-hair cells are constantly being replaced, so the same rye plant forms about 100 million new root-hair cells every day. You probably know that a plant yanked out of the soil will not fare well when transplanted. This is because small lateral roots and root hairs are torn off. Transplantation is more apt to be successful if you take a part of the surrounding soil along with the plant, leaving as many of the lateral roots and root hairs intact as possible.

Growth Zones of a Root

Both monocot and eudicot roots contain the same growth zones. **Figure 20.13,** a longitudinal section of a eudicot root, reveals these zones where cells are in various stages of differentiation as primary growth occurs. The apical meristem of a root contains actively dividing cells and is surrounded by a *root cap.* The root cap is covered with a slimy substance to help penetrate downward into the abrasive soil and is meant to be damaged to protect the apical meristem. The dividing cells of the apical meristem are found in the zone of cell division. As more cells are made, older cells are pushed into the zone of elongation, where cells lengthen as they become specialized. In the zone of maturation, which contains fully differentiated cells, many of the epidermal cells have root hairs.

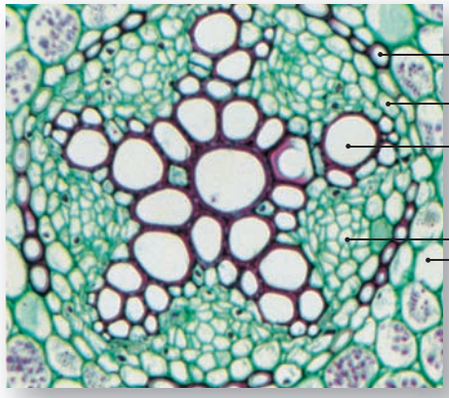


Figure 20.13 **Eudicot root tip.**

The root tip is divided into three zones, best seen in a longitudinal section, such as this. In the eudicot, xylem is typically star-shaped, and phloem lies between the points of the star. Water and minerals must eventually pass through the cytoplasm of endodermal cells in order to enter xylem; endodermal cells regulate the passage of minerals into xylem.

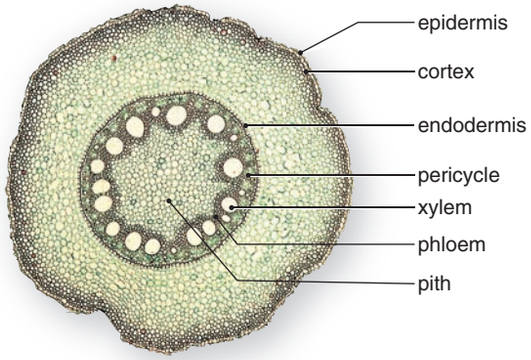


Figure 20.14 **Monocot root.**

In a monocot root, the same zones and tissues are present, but xylem and phloem form a ring surrounding the pith in the center.

Tissues of a Root

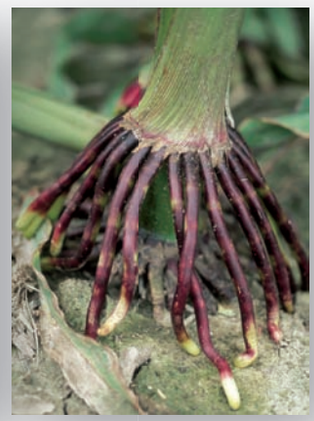
The five tissues of a root are:

1. **Vascular tissue** Both monocot and eudicot roots have a *vascular cylinder* that contains xylem and phloem, but they are arranged differently. In a eudicot root (Fig. 20.13) the xylem is star-shaped because several xylem arms radiate from a common center. Phloem is found in separate regions between the points of the star. In a monocot root (**Fig. 20.14**), the vascular cylinder consists of alternating xylem and phloem bundles that surround a pith. Pith can function as a storage site.
2. **Endodermis** The endodermis is a single layer of rectangular cells that fit snugly together. A layer of impermeable material on all but two sides forces water and minerals to pass through endodermal cells. In this way, the endodermis regulates the entrance of minerals into the vascular tissue of the root.
3. **Pericycle** The pericycle is the first layer of cells inside the endodermis. It can continue to divide and form lateral roots.
4. **Cortex** Large, thin-walled parenchyma cells make up the cortex of the root. The cells contain starch granules, and the cortex may function in food storage.
5. **Epidermis** The epidermis, which forms the outer layer of the root, consists of only a single layer of largely thin-walled, rectangular cells. In the zone of maturation, many epidermal cells have root hairs.

Just as stems and leaves are diverse, so are roots. A carrot plant has one main taproot, which stores the products of photosynthesis (**Fig. 20.15*a***). Grass has fibrous roots that cling to the soil (Fig. 20.15*b*), and corn plants have prop roots that grow from the stem for better support (Fig. 20.15*c*).

a. Taproot

b. Fibrous root system



c. Prop roots

Figure 20.15 **Root diversity.**

a. A taproot has one main root. **b.** A fibrous root has many slender roots with no main root. **c.** Prop roots are organized for support.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Roots, stems, and leaves all work together to make the plant functional.

Check Your Progress 20.3

1. Explain how the structure of a leaf aids in photosynthesis.
2. List the components that make up wood and bark.
3. List the functions of the tissues of an eudicot root.

20.4 Plant Nutrition

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Differentiate between macronutrients and micronutrients and list the macronutrients and micronutrients that plants require.
2. Explain why some farmers do crop rotation.
3. Describe some adaptations of roots for obtaining minerals from the soil.

Plant nutrition is remarkable to us because plants require only inorganic nutrients, and from these they make all the organic compounds that compose their bodies. Of course, they require carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, which they can acquire from carbon dioxide and water, but they also need other elements, or minerals, which they obtain from the environment. An element is termed an essential nutrient if a plant cannot live without it. The essential nutrients are divided into *macronutrients* and *micronutrients,* according to their relative concentrations in plant tissue. The following diagram indicates which are the macronutrients and which are the micronutrients:

Notice that iron (Fe) is considered to be a micronutrient for some plants and a macronutrient for others. All of these elements play vital roles in plant cells, but deficiencies of the macronutrients tend to be the most devastating. Nitrogen, for example, is necessary for protein production. The carnivorous plants mentioned earlier in the chapter have evolved to capture insects because of the lack of nitrogen in boggy soils. Traditional farming depletes the nitrogen in soil, and many farmers turn to crop rotation to keep soils healthy. **Figure 20.16** shows how an insufficient supply of the macronutrient nitrogen can affect the growth of a plant.

Figure 20.16 Nitrogen deficiency.

a. Experiment showing that sunflower plants respond poorly if their growth medium lacks nitrogen. **b.** A field showing crop rotation. One crop is the target crop and the other is a legume plant with root nodules. The legume plant will leach nitrogen back into the soil thus helping the target crop grow.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

What do the numbers on a bag of fertilizer mean?

When you buy a bag of fertilizer, you will notice three numbers on the outside of the bag (for example, 20-20-20). These are called the NPK ratio, and the numbers refer to the amount of nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P), and potassium (K) in the fertilizer. All three of these are macronutrients that are important for plant health and growth. Nitrogen promotes the vegetative growth of the plant, while the plant needs phosphorus to maintain a healthy root system. Potassium is also involved in the general health of a plant and is needed for the formation of the chlorophyll molecules involved in photosynthesis. The optimal amount of each nutrient is dependent on the type of plant; thus, larger numbers do not always signify a better fertilizer.

The micronutrients are often cofactors for enzymes in various metabolic pathways. *Cofactors* are elements that ensure that enzymes have the correct shape. It's interesting to observe that humans make use of a plant's ability to take minerals from the soil. For example, we depend on plants for supplies of iron to help carry oxygen to our cells. Eating plants provides minerals such as copper and zinc, which are also cofactors for our own enzymes.

Adaptations of Roots for Mineral Uptake

Minerals enter a plant at its root system, and two mutualistic relationships assist roots in fulfilling this function. Air contains about 78% nitrogen (N_2), but plants can't make use of it. Most plants depend on bacteria in the soil to *fix* nitrogen—that is, the bacteria change atmospheric nitrogen (N_2) to nitrate (NO_3^-) or ammonium (NH_4^+), both of which plants can take up and use. Legume plants, such as soybean and peas, have roots colonized by bacteria that are able to take up atmospheric nitrogen and reduce it to a form suitable for incorporation into organic compounds (**Fig. 20.17***a*). The bacteria live in **root nodules,** and the plant supplies the bacteria with carbohydrates; the bacteria in turn furnish the plant with nitrogen compounds.

Another mutualistic relationship involves **mycorrhizal fungi** and almost all plant roots (Fig. 20.17*b*). The hyphae of the fungus increase the surface area available for water uptake and break down organic matter, releasing inorganic nutrients that the plant can use. In return, the root furnishes the fungus with sugars and amino acids. Plants are extremely dependent on mycorrhizal fungi. For example, orchid seeds, which are quite small and contain limited nutrients, do not germinate until a mycorrhizal fungus has invaded their cells.

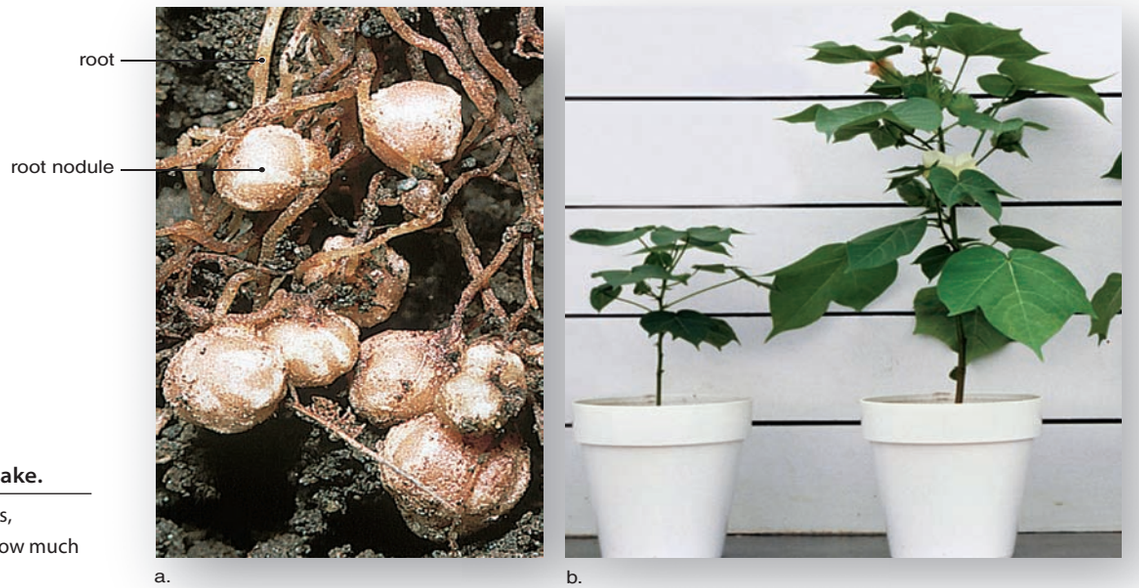


Figure 20.17 **Adaptations of roots for mineral uptake.**

a. Nitrogen-fixing bacteria live in nodules on the roots of plants, particularly legumes. **b.** Plants with mycorrhizal fungi (*right*) grow much better than plants without mycorrhizal fungi (*left*).

20.4

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Both macronutrients and micronutrients are absorbed through the root system of the plant.

Check Your Progress 20.4

1. Explain the difference between a macronutrient and a micronutrient.
2. List the macronutrients needed for plant growth.
3. Discuss what might happen to a plant if there are no mutualistic relationships with fungi.

20.5 Transport of Nutrients

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain how the cohesion-tension model describes the movement of water in the xylem tissue of a plant from the roots to the leaves.
2. Define transpiration and explain how the opening and closing of stomata regulate this process.
3. Describe how the pressure-flow model explains the movement of nutrients in the phloem tissue of a plant from a source to a sink.

Water Transport in Xylem

People have long wondered how plants, especially very tall trees, lift water from the roots to the leaves against gravity. The **cohesion-tension model** is a mechanism that describes how water and minerals travel upward in xylem cells. To understand how it works, one must start in the soil. Recall the concept of osmosis. In plants, water will move from an area of high concentration in the soil to an area of low concentration in the root hairs (**Fig. 20.18**). All of the water entering the roots creates root pressure. Root pressure is helpful for the upward movement of water but is not nearly enough to get it all the way up to the leaves.

Transpiration is the phenomenon that explains how water can completely resist gravity and travel upward. Focusing on the top of the tree (Fig. 20.18), notice the water molecules escaping from the spongy mesophyll and into the air through the stomata. The key is that it is not just one water molecule escaping but a chain of water molecules. Think about drinking water from a straw. Drinking exerts pressure on the straw and a chain of water molecules is drawn upward. Water molecules are polar and "stick" together with hydrogen bonds. Water's ability to stay linked in a chain is called *cohesion,* and its ability to stick to the inside of a straw is *adhesion* (see Fig. 2.10). In plants, evaporation of water at the leaves provides the *tension* that pulls on a chain of water molecules. Transpiration is the constant tugging or pulling of the water column from the top due to evaporation. Cohesion of water molecules and adhesion to the inside of a xylem vessel facilitate this process. As transpiration occurs, the water column is pulled upward—first within the leaf, then from the stem, and finally from the roots.

The total amount of water a plant loses through transpiration over a long period of time is surprisingly large. At least 90% of the water taken up by roots is eventually lost at the leaves. A single corn plant loses between 135 and 200 liters of water through transpiration during a growing season.

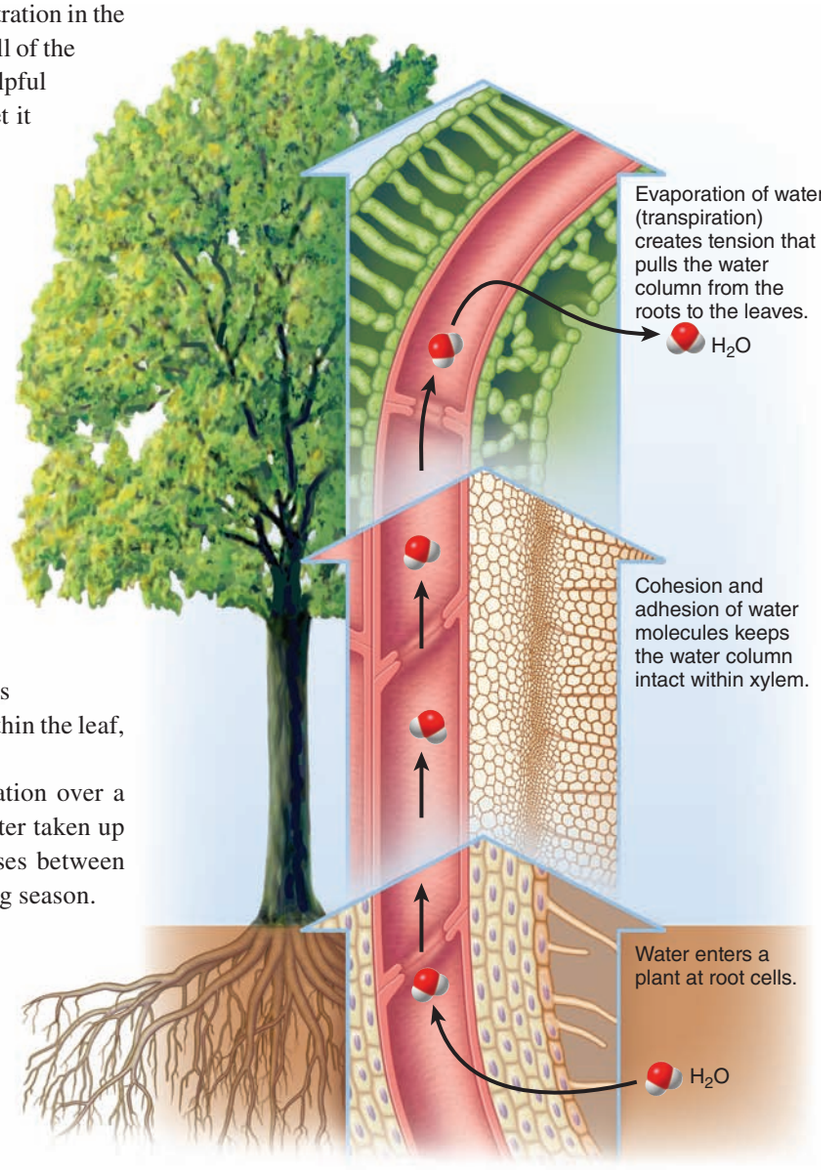


Figure 20.18 **Cohesion-tension model of xylem transport.**

How does water rise to the top of tall trees? Xylem vessels are water-filled pipelines from the roots to the leaves. When water evaporates from spongy mesophyll into the air spaces of leaves, this water column is pulled upward due to the cohesion of water molecules with one another and the adhesion of water molecules to the sides of the vessels.

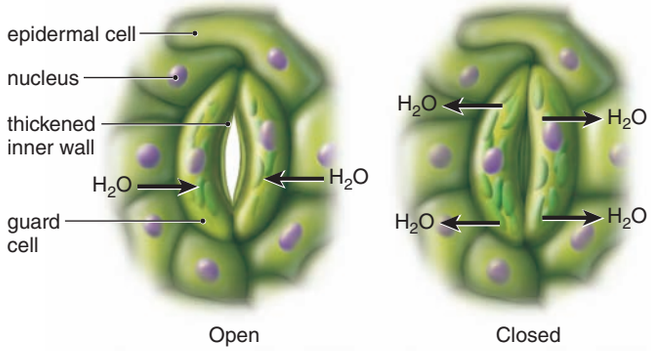


Figure 20.19 **Opening and closing of stomata.**

Stomata open when water enters guard cells and turgor pressure increases. Stomata close when water exits guard cells and turgor pressure is lost.

Opening and Closing of Stomata

A plant cell that is full of water will bulge (see Fig. 5.13). *Turgor pressure* is the force of the water creating this bulge. Stomata open and close due to turgor pressure changes within guard cells (**Fig. 20.19**). When water enters the guard cells, turgor pressure is created and the guard cell's unique "banana" shape causes the cells to bow out and expose the pore (stoma); when water leaves the guard cells, turgor pressure is lost and the pore is once again covered.

For transpiration to occur, the stomata must stay open. But when a plant is under stress and about to wilt from lack of water, the stomata close. Now the plant is unable to take up carbon dioxide from the air, and photosynthesis ceases.

Sugar Transport in Phloem

A plant must make and store sugar, then provide that sugar to developing parts of the plant, such as the roots, flowers, and fruit. The location where the sugar is made or stored is called the *source,* and the location where the sugar will be used is the *sink*. Transporting sugar from the source to the sink can be explained using the **pressure-flow model (Fig. 20.20)**.

Leaves undergoing photosynthesis make sugar and become the source. The sugar is actively transported from the cells in the leaf mesophyll into the sieve tubes of the phloem. Recall that, like xylem, phloem is a continuous "pipeline" throughout the plant. High concentrations of sugar in the sieve tubes cause water to follow by osmosis. Like turning the nozzle on a hose, there is an increase in positive pressure as water flows in. The sugar (sucrose) solution at the source is forced to move to areas of lower pressure at the sink, like a root.

When the sugar arrives at the root, it is actively transported out of the sieve tubes into the root cells. There, the sugar is used for cellular respiration or other metabolic processes. The high concentration of sugar in the root cells causes water to follow by osmosis, where it is later reclaimed by the xylem tissue.

Although leaves are generally the source, modified roots and stems such as carrots, beets, and potatoes are also examples of sources providing much needed sugar during winter or periods of dormancy.

The high pressure of sucrose in phloem has resulted in a very interesting mutualistic relationship between aphids and some species of ants. Aphids are tiny insects with needlelike mouthparts. These mouthparts can poke a

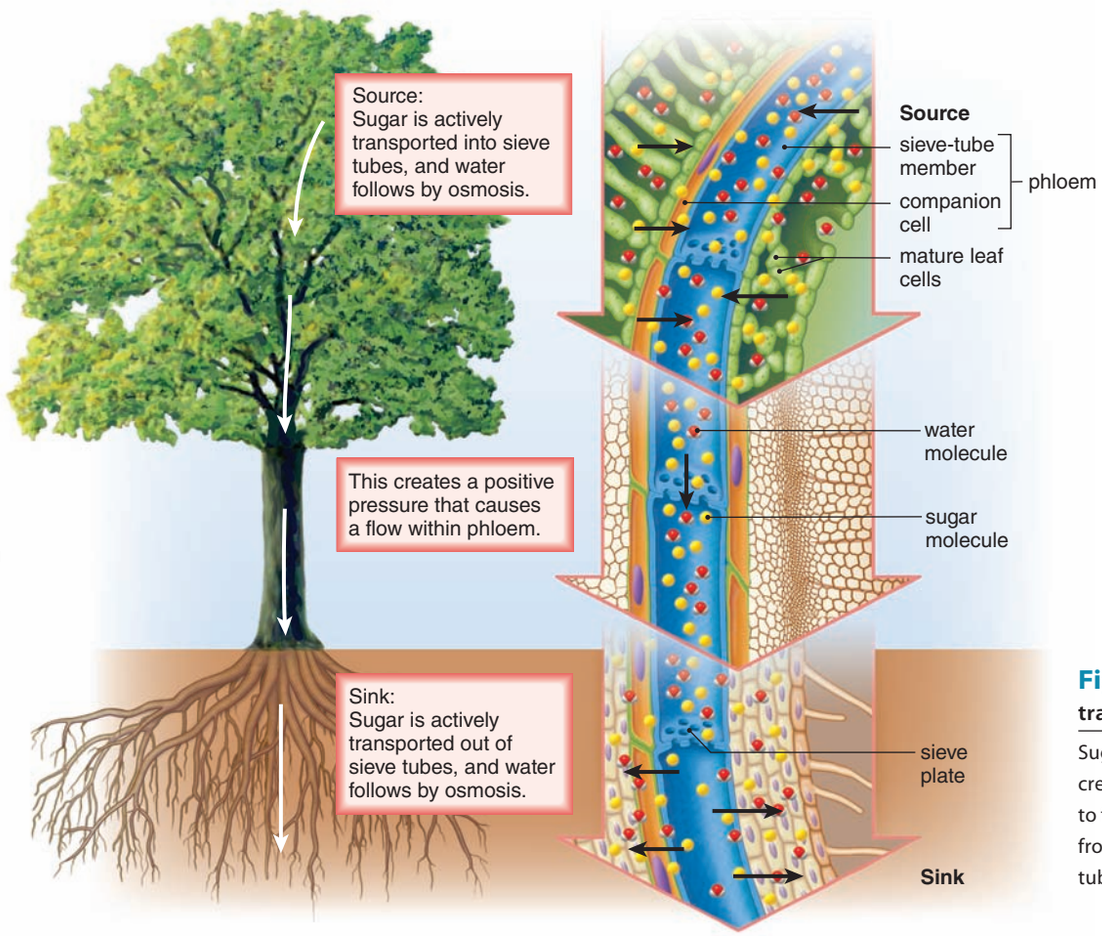


Figure 20.20 **Pressure-flow model of phloem transport.**

Sugar and water enter sieve-tube members at a source. This creates a positive pressure, which causes phloem contents to flow. Sieve-tube members form a continuous pipeline from a source to a sink, where sugar and water exit sieve-tube members.

a. An aphid feeding on a plant stem

b. Some ants protect aphids and in turn consume honeydew.

Figure 20.21 **Aphids acquire sucrose from phloem.**

Aphids are small insects that remove sucrose from phloem by means of a needlelike mouthpart called a stylet. **a.** Excess sucrose appears as a droplet after passing through the aphid's body. **b.** A protective ant farming aphids and drinking honeydew.

stem and tap into a sieve tube (**Fig. 20.21**). The high-pressure sucrose solution is forced through their digestive tracts very quickly, resulting in a droplet of sucrose at the rear called honeydew. Ants stroke the aphids with their antennae to induce honeydew production and then drink the bead of sucrose from the aphids' rear ends! These "aphid farms" provide whole colonies of ants with all the sugar they need and in turn protect the aphids against predators.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Xylem and phloem conduct the nutrients throughout the plant.

Check Your Progress 20.5

1. Explain the role of transpiration in water transport.
2. Detail how the cohesive and adhesive properties of water assist water transport in xylem.
3. Describe how the pressure-flow model explains the movement of sugar in the phloem.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video
20.1 Vascular System of Plants	**20.1** Seeding Growth

3D Animation Plant Transport

The 3D animation "Plant Transport" take a more in-depth look at how nutrients are moved within the vascular tissues of plants.

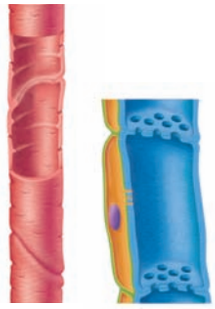
SUMMARIZE

20.1 Plant Cells and Tissues

Plants begin with meristem cells that organize into **meristem tissue. Apical meristems** are located at growing ends and give rise to three tissues:

- **Epidermal tissue** is composed of only epidermal cells and can be modified to form **stomata, root hairs,** and trichomes.
- **Ground tissue** makes up the bulk of the plant and can contain parenchyma cells, which are thin-walled and capable of photosynthesis when they contain chloroplasts; collenchyma cells, which have thicker walls for flexible support; and sclerenchyma cells, which are hollow, nonliving support cells with secondary walls.

- **Vascular tissue** transports water and nutrients and is made up of **xylem** and **phloem.** Xylem transports water and minerals and contains vessels composed of **vessel elements** and **tracheids**. Phloem transports organic nutrients and contains sieve tubes composed of **sieve-tube members**, each of which has a **companion cell**.

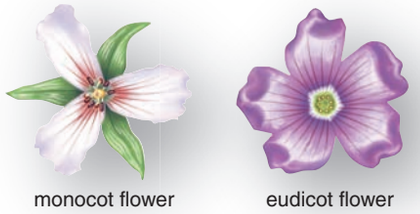


20.2 Plant Organs

Apical meristems are located at the **terminal bud** and root tip, and become specialized into tissues, then organs. A flowering plant has a **shoot system** and a **root system.** The three vegetative organs are leaves, stems, and roots.

Monocot Versus Eudicot Plants

Flowering plants are divided into **monocots** or **eudicots** based on the number of **cotyledons** in the seed; the arrangement of vascular tissue in leaves, stems, and roots; and the number of flower parts.



20.3 Organization of Leaves, Stems, and Roots

Leaves

Leaves carry on photosynthesis but may be modified for other purposes. A leaf has a **cuticle**-covered epidermis, with stomata mostly in the lower layer. Stomata allow water vapor and oxygen to escape and carbon dioxide to enter the leaf. **Mesophyll** (palisade and spongy) forms the body of a leaf and carries on photosynthesis.

Stems

Stems support leaves, conduct materials to and from roots and leaves, and produce new tissues. Stems can be nonwoody or woody.

- Nonwoody (herbaceous) eudicots have an epidermis, **cortex** tissue, vascular bundles in a ring, and an inner **pith.** Monocot stems have scattered vascular bundles and lack a distinct cortex or pith.
- Woody stems have secondary growth due to **vascular cambium,** which produces new xylem and phloem every year. Cork replaces epidermis in woody plants. A woody stem has **bark** (containing cork, cork cambium, cortex, and phloem). **Wood** contains **annual rings** of xylem.

Roots

Roots anchor a plant, absorb water and minerals, and store the products of photosynthesis.

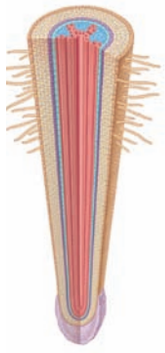
- A monocot and a eudicot root tip has three zones: zone of cell division (contains root apical meristem) protected by the root cap; zone of elongation, where cells elongate and differentiate; and zone of maturation (has root hairs).
- Within the zone of maturation, a monocot and a eudicot root contains the following tissues. The **vascular tissue i**n eudicot roots shows xylem arranged in a star shape, with phloem between the arms of the xylem. In monocot roots, a central pith is surrounded by a ring of vascular tissue containing alternating bundles of xylem and phloem. The **endodermis** regulates the entrance of minerals into vascular tissue. The **pericycle** contains cells that can divide and form lateral roots. The **cortex** is made of parenchyma cells that function in food storage, and the **epidermis** forms the outer layer and may possess root hairs.

20.4 Plant Nutrition

Plants need only inorganic nutrients to make all the organic compounds that make up their bodies. Some nutrients are essential, being either macronutrients or micronutrients. Some roots have adaptations for mineral uptake, such as **root nodules,** where bacteria fix nitrogen and produce forms that plants can use, and most roots have **mycorrhizal fungi** that increase the surface area for water and mineral absorption.

20.5 Transport of Nutrients

- The **cohesion-tension model** of xylem transport states that **transpiration** (evaporation of water from spongy mesophyll at stomata) creates tension, which pulls water upward in xylem. This method works only because water molecules are cohesive and adhesive and form a water column in xylem.
- The **pressure-flow model** of phloem transport states that sugar is actively transported into phloem at a source, and water follows by osmosis. The resulting increase in pressure creates a flow, which moves water and sugar to a sink.



CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The organizational system of plants is as complex as our own. They use a variety of adaptations in order to survive in various environments.

20.1 Plants have specialized cells that make up unique tissues.

20.2 Plant tissues combine to form vegetative organs.

20.3 Roots, stems, and leaves all work together to make the plant functional.

20.4 Both macronutrients and micronutrients are absorbed through the root system of the plant.

20.5 Xylem and phloem conduct the nutrients throughout the plant.

For more information about plant anatomy and growth, see the following discussions:

Section 5.4 examines how water and solute concentration contribute to osmotic pressure.

Section 18.1 outlines the adaptations that have made the flowering plants successful on land.

Section 18.2 examines the evolution of the plant kingdom.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

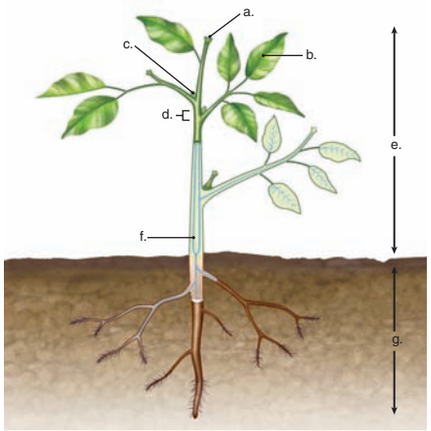
Choose the best answer for each question.

20.1 Plant Cells and Tissues

1. A region of active cell division where primary growth occurs is the
   a. internode. **d.** cork cambium.
   b. apical meristem. **e.** vascular cambium.
   c. root nodule.
2. Hard materials in plants, such as the husks of nuts, are composed primarily of these dead cells.
   a. vascular tissue. **d.** parenchyma cells.
   b. collenchyma cells. **e.** epidermal tissue.
   c. sclerenchyma cells.
3. Which of the following cell types does not originate from epidermal tissue?
   a. root hair **c.** guard cells (stomata)
   b. trichome **d.** vessel elements

20.2 Plant Organs

4. Label the parts of a plant in the following diagram.



5. A monocot stem differs from a eudicot stem in that, in the monocot stem,
   a. xylem and phloem are in a ring surrounding the pith.
   b. xylem and phloem are in bundles scattered throughout the stem.
   c. there is an organized cortex and pith.
   d. xylem forms a star in the center, with phloem between the points of the star.
   e. the epidermis does not have a waxy cuticle surrounding it.

20.3 Organization of Leaves, Stems, and Roots

6. The main function of leaves is to
   a. transport water. **c.** transport sugar.
   b. support the weight of the plant. **d.** absorb sunlight.
7. During secondary growth, a tree adds more xylem and phloem through the activity of the
   a. apical meristems. **c.** pericycle.
   b. vascular cambium. **d.** cork cambium.
8. Which root zone contains the root cap and apical meristem?
   a. zone of maturation **c.** zone of cell division
   b. zone of elongation **d.** All of these are correct.

20.4 Plant Nutrition

9. Nitrogen is an example of a(n) _____ because plants need this element in large quantities.
   a. organic molecule **c.** macronutrient
   b. micronutrient **d.** deficiency
10. Root nodules are important because they
    a. encourage the growth of mycorrhizal fungi.
    b. represent areas of extensive branch root growth.
    c. contain nitrogen-fixing bacteria.
    d. provide extra oxygen to the plant root system.

20.5 Transport of Nutrients

11. Because of transpiration, water
    a. evaporates directly from the root surface.
    b. flows from leaf veins through the stem, toward the roots.
    c. exits the leaf through stomata, pulling water into the leaf from leaf veins.
    d. exits xylem in leaf veins and enters phloem by osmosis.
12. According to the pressure-flow model, sugar is actively transported into phloem and
    a. enters xylem, where it is moved toward the leaves due to transpiration.
    b. creates pressure to move water toward the roots.
    c. is transported out of the leaves through stomata.
    d. water follows by osmosis, providing a pressure that moves sugar along.

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Scientists observe that the roots of legumes grow around nitrogen-fixing bacteria capable of forming nodules. Discuss how the roots might recognize these bacteria (see Fig. 20.17).
2. Plants of the genus *Welwitschia* live in the deserts in Africa. Annual rainfall averages only 2.5 centimeters per year, but every night a fog rolls in. Why might these plants be adapted to opening their stomata at night? What about the fog allows the plant to survive?
3. In 2012, forest fires devastated large areas in California and revived the debate over forest fire prevention. Many blamed the numerous wildfires on poor management of national forests, proposing that limited logging of old-growth forests on federal lands occur. This logging, they contend, would clear flammable underbrush and thin out forests, so that fires could not spread as easily. Many environmentalists, however, are skeptical. They point out that thinning the forests not only would disturb critical habitat for many endangered species but also could make forests even more combustible by allowing more sunlight to penetrate the canopy and dry out organic matter on the forest floor. Many feel that the proposed logging would merely enrich the timber industry without accomplishing much. In light of the loss of life and property due to these devastating wildfires, should the federal government allow the thinning of national forests? Or would this only exacerbate the problem?

21

Plant Responses and Reproduction

OUTLINE

21.1 Plant Hormones 393

21.2 Plant Responses 397

21.3 Sexual Reproduction in Flowering Plants 400

21.4 Asexual Reproduction and Genetic Engineering in Plants 407

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Figure 11.27 How does a signal transduction pathway relay information?

Figure 18.16 How does the sporophyte stage differ from the gametophyte stage in a flowering plant?

Section 20.2 What are an apical meristem and a terminal bud?

Bananas—Mules of the Fruit World

Your typical supermarket banana is sterile, meaning that it contains no viable seeds; there is nothing to plant if you want to grow more. This is because in the mid-1800s two varieties of wild bananas were crossed to form the sweet, but sterile, banana that we all enjoy today. So how do farmers grow bananas if there are no seeds? The answer lies in three alternative techniques: asexual reproduction, tissue culture, and genetic engineering.

Sometimes, farmers use asexual reproduction—simply cutting a piece of the banana stem or root and planting it directly in the ground. This creates an identical plant, but it may pass on diseases from the first plant.

In an effort to make new disease-free banana plants, many plantations have turned to tissue culture. In this procedure, a technician scrapes a piece of the apical meristem and puts it in a petri dish containing nutrients and growth hormones. Eventually, new plants form and are transplanted in the field. However fungi and insects often attack these disease-free plants. These pests can destroy entire banana plantations. In the 1950s a fungus wiped out banana plantations throughout the Caribbean and Central America.

Another technique for growing disease-resistant bananas involves creating genetically engineered plants. Scientists are taking antifungal genes from rice plants and inserting them into banana plants. These modified banana plants are then better able to fight off infection.

In this chapter we will explore methods of sexual versus asexual reproduction in plants.

As you read through the chapter think about the following questions:

1. How is genetic engineering used in asexual reproduction?
2. What are the advantages and disadvantages of plants reproducing sexually versus asexually?

21.1 Plant Hormones

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the five classes of plant hormones and briefly describe their effects on plant growth.
2. Define apical dominance and explain the effect of auxin on it.
3. Explain how gibberellins are used in the seedless grape industry.
4. Define senescence and explain how cytokinins prevent it.
5. Explain the role of abscisic acid in dormancy and in the closure of stomata.
6. Describe the effect of ethylene on fruit and explain how it brings about abscission in a plant.

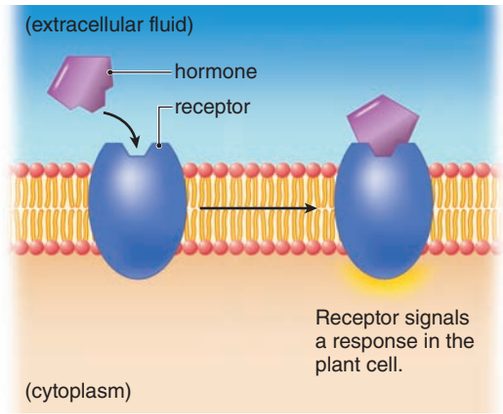


Figure 21.1 **Plant hormones.**

Hormones are chemical signals produced as a result of an environmental stimulus, such as sunlight, water loss, or temperature. The hormone binds receptor proteins, inducing a response in the specific cells or tissues of the plant.

Animals respond to environmental stimuli (danger, food, etc.) by *moving* toward or away from the stimulus. Plants respond to environmental stimuli (light, water, etc.) by *growing* toward or away from the stimulus. Most of these growth responses occur at the cellular level and are mediated by hormones. Much like our own hormones, plant **hormones** are small, organic molecules produced by the plant that serve as chemical signals between cells and tissues. **Figure 21.1** shows how most hormones are signals that bind to receptor proteins. Receptor proteins in turn signal the cell to respond to the stimulus. Currently, the five commonly recognized groups of plant hormones are auxins, gibberellins, cytokinins, abscisic acid, and ethylene.

Auxins

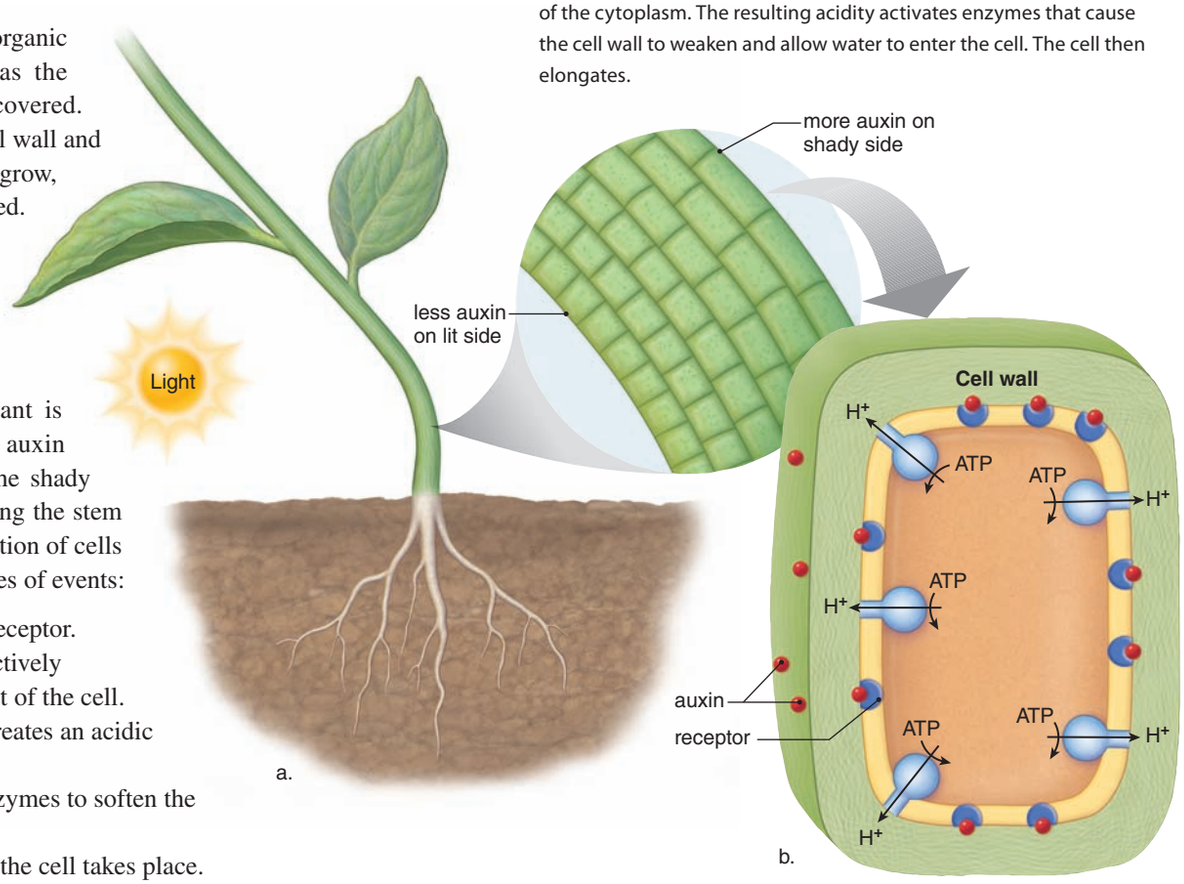
More than a century ago, an organic substance known as **auxin** was the first plant hormone to be discovered. Recall that plant cells have a cell wall and that, in order for a plant cell to grow, the cell wall needs to be softened. Auxin softens the cell wall so that growth can occur.

Auxin is involved in **phototropism,** observable when stems bend toward a light source (**Fig. 21.2**). When a plant is exposed to light on one side, auxin moves to the shady side. On the shady side, cells become longer, causing the stem to bend *toward* the light. Elongation of cells in the shade occurs due to a series of events:

1. Auxin binds to a protein receptor.
2. Hydrogen ions (H^+) are actively (needing ATP) pumped out of the cell.
3. The increase of H^+ ions creates an acidic environment.
4. The acid triggers other enzymes to soften the cell wall.
5. Growth and elongation of the cell takes place.

Figure 21.2 **Mode of action of auxin, a plant hormone.**

a. Plant cells on the shady side undergo elongation, and this causes the stem to bend toward the light. **b.** Elongation occurs after auxin (red balls) binds to a receptor and hydrogen ions (H^+) are actively transported out of the cytoplasm. The resulting acidity activates enzymes that cause the cell wall to weaken and allow water to enter the cell. The cell then elongates.



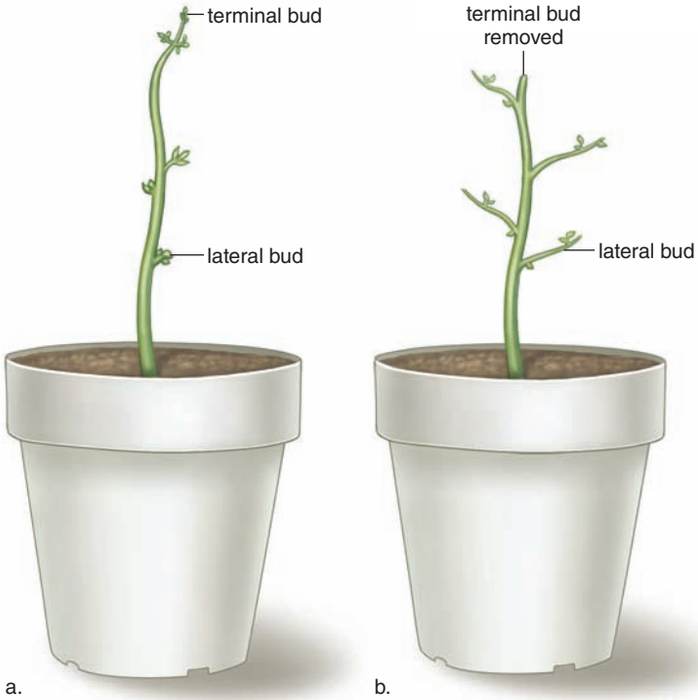


Figure 21.3 **Apical dominance.**

a. Lateral bud growth is inhibited when a plant retains its terminal bud. **b.** When the terminal bud is removed, lateral branches develop and the plant is bushier.

Auxin is also responsible for a phenomenon called **apical dominance** (**Fig. 21.3**). Experienced gardeners know that, to produce a bushier plant, they must remove the terminal bud. In a plant that has not been altered, auxin produced in the apical meristem of the terminal bud is transported downward, inhibiting the growth of lateral buds. Release from apical dominance occurs when pruning removes the shoot tip. Then, the lateral buds grow and the plant takes on a fuller appearance. Interestingly, if auxin were to be applied to the broken terminal stem, apical dominance would be restored.

Auxin has many commerical uses. It can be used to stimulate root formation and promote the growth of fruit. Lawn herbicides are a form of synthetic auxin that kills eudicot weeds but not monocot grasses. Agent Orange is a powerful synthetic auxin that was used in extremely high concentrations to defoliate the forests in Vietnam during the Vietnam War. This powerful auxin proved to be carcinogenic and harmed many of the local people.

Gibberellins

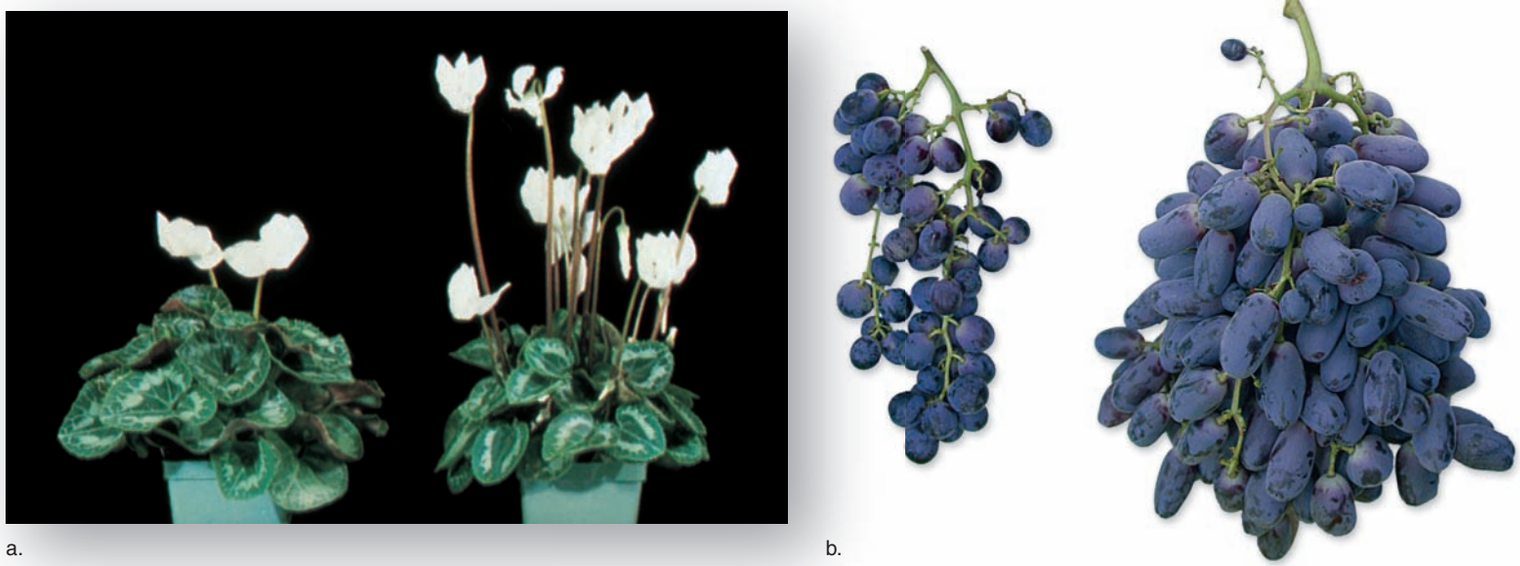
Gibberellins were discovered in 1926 when a Japanese scientist was investigating a fungal disease of rice plants called "foolish seedling disease." Rapid stem elongation weakened the plants and caused them to collapse. The fungus infecting the plants produced an excess of a chemical called gibberellin, named after the fungus *Gibberella fujikuroi*. It wasn't until 1956 that a form of gibberellin now known as gibberellic acid was isolated from a flowering plant rather than from a fungus. We now know of about 70 gibberellins. The most common of these is gibberellic acid, GA_3 (the subscript designation distinguishes it from other gibberellins). Young leaves, roots, embryos, seeds, and fruits are places where natural gibberellins can be found.

Gibberellins are growth-promoting hormones that bring about elongation of the cells. When gibberellins are applied externally to plants, the most obvious effect is stem elongation between the nodes (**Fig. 21.4*a***). Gibberellins can cause dwarf plants to grow, cabbage plants to become as much as 2 meters tall, and bush beans to become pole beans.

There are many commercial uses for gibberellins that promote growth and variety of crops such as apples, cherries, and sugarcane. A notable example

Figure 21.4 **Effect of gibberellins.**

a. The plant on the right was treated with gibberellins; the plant on the left was not treated. Gibberellins are often used to promote stem elongation in economically important plants. **b.** Grapes untreated (left) and treated (right) with gibberellins. The treated grapes have a longer stem length and fruit size.



is their use on many of the table grapes grown in the United States. Commercial grapes are a genetically seedless variety that would naturally produce small fruit on very small bunches. Treating with GA_3 substitutes for the presence of seeds, which would normally be the source of native gibberellins for fruit growth. Treatments increase both fruit stem length (producing looser clusters) and fruit size (Fig. 21.4*b*). In the brewing industry, the production of beer relies on the breakdown of starch in barley grains (seeds). Barley grains would naturally be dormant—a period in which a seed does not grow. Gibberellins are used to break the dormancy of barley grains, yielding fermentable sugars, mainly maltose, which are then fermented by yeast to produce ethanol.

Cytokinins

Cytokinins were discovered as a result of attempts to grow plant tissues and organs in culture vessels in the 1940s. It was found that cell division occurs when coconut milk (a liquid endosperm) and yeast extract are added to the culture medium. Although the effective agent or agents could not be isolated at the time, they were collectively called cytokinins because, as you may recall, *cytokinesis* means division of the cytoplasm. A naturally occurring cytokinin was not isolated until 1967. Because it came from the kernels of maize (*Zea*), it was called zeatin.

Cytokinins influence plant growth by promoting cell division. Cytokinins are found in plant meristems, young leaves, root tips, and seeds and fruits. Whenever a plant grows, cytokinins are involved.

Other Effects of Cytokinins

Cytokinins also prevent **senescence,** or aging, of plant organs. As cytokinin levels drop within a plant organ, such as a leaf, growth slows or even stops. Then, the leaf loses its natural color as large molecules are broken down and transported to other parts of the plant. Senescence is a necessary part of a plant's growth. For example, as some plants grow taller, they naturally lose their lower leaves.

Plant organ formation is influenced by cytokinins. For example, researchers are well aware that the ratio of auxin to cytokinin and the acidity of the culture medium determine whether a plant tissue forms an undifferentiated mass, called a *callus* (see Fig. 21.23*a*), or differentiates to form roots, shoots, leaves, or flowers. Some reports suggest that chemicals called oligosaccharins (chemical fragments released from the cell wall) are effective in directing differentiation. Perhaps the receptor proteins responding to auxin and cytokinins lead to the activation of enzymes, releasing these fragments from the cell wall.

Abscisic Acid

If environmental conditions are not favorable, a plant will need to protect itself. **Abscisic acid** is sometimes called the stress hormone because it initiates and maintains seed and bud dormancy and brings about the closure of stomata. Dormancy has begun when a plant stops growing and prepares for adverse conditions (even though conditions at the time may be favorable for growth). For example, it is believed that abscisic acid moves from leaves to vegetative buds in the fall, and thereafter these buds are converted to winter buds. A winter bud is covered by thick, hardened scales (**Fig. 21.5*a***). A reduction in the level of abscisic acid and an increase in the level of gibberellins are believed to break seed and bud dormancy. Seeds would germinate, and buds would develop into leaves.

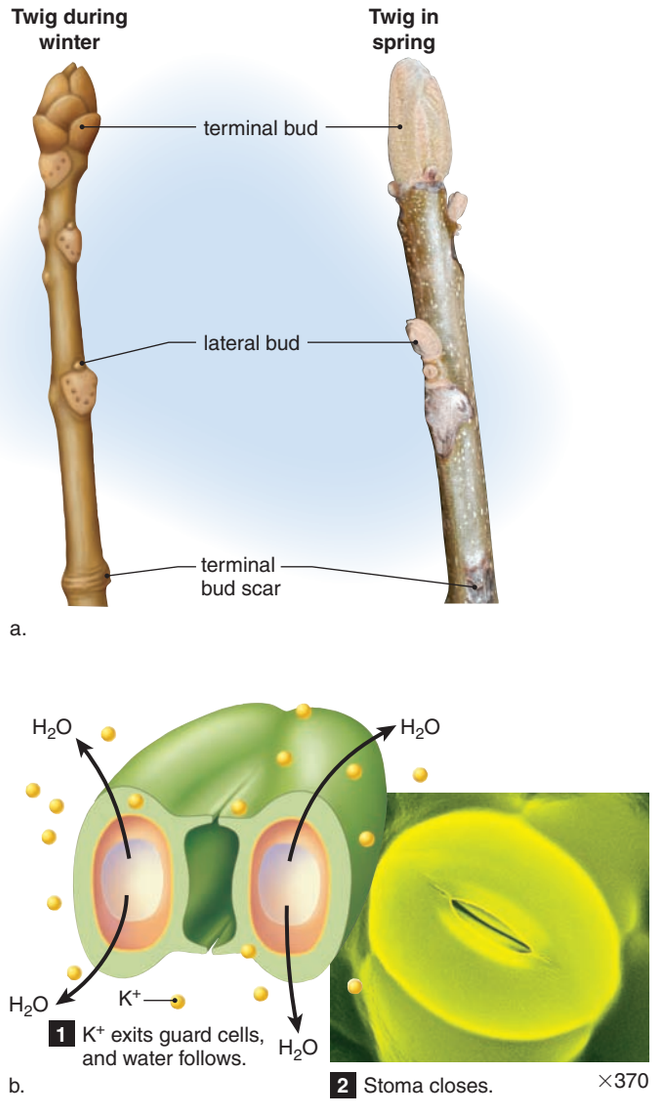


Figure 21.5 Effects of abscisic acid.

a. Abscisic acid encourages the formation of winter buds (*left*), and a reduction in the amount of abscisic acid breaks bud dormancy (*right*). **b.** Abscisic acid also brings about the closing of a stoma by influencing the movement of potassium ions (K^+) out of guard cells.

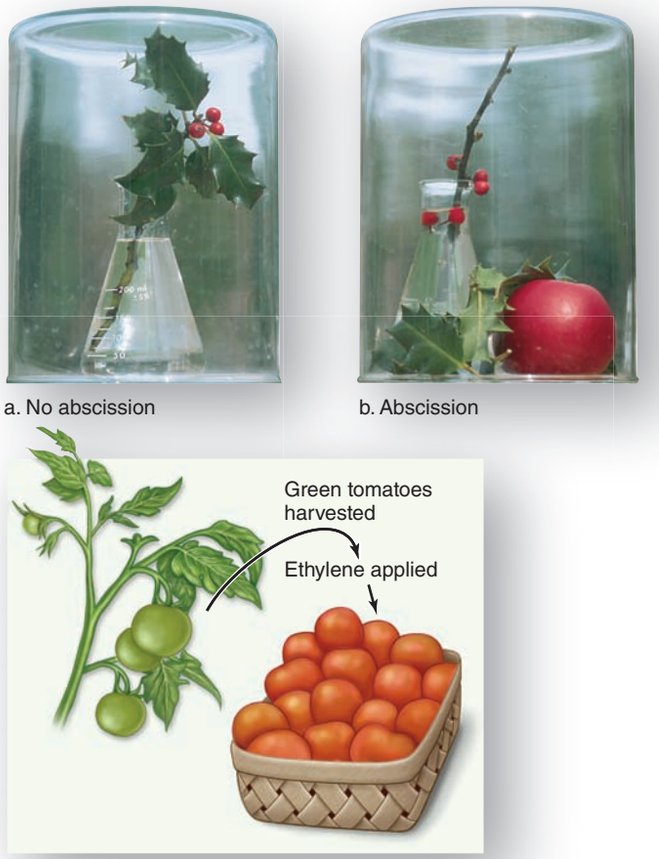


Figure 21.6 Functions of ethylene.

a. Normally, there is no abscission when a holly twig is placed under a glass jar for a week. **b.** When an ethylene-producing ripe apple is also under the jar, abscission of the holly leaves occurs. **c.** Ethylene is used to ripen tomatoes after they are harvested.

Abscisic acid brings about the closing of stomata when a plant is under water stress (Fig. 21.5*b*). In some unknown way, abscisic acid causes potassium ions (K^+) to leave guard cells. Thereafter, the guard cells lose water, and a stoma closes.

It was once believed that abscisic acid functioned in **abscission,** the dropping of leaves, fruits, and flowers from a plant. Although the external application of abscisic acid promotes abscission, this hormone is no longer believed to function naturally in this process. Instead, the hormone ethylene, discussed next, is thought to bring about abscission.

Ethylene

Ethylene is a gas that can move freely in the air, causing fruit ripening and abscission. Ethylene stimulates certain enzymes, such as cellulase, that cause leaf, fruit, or flower drop (**Fig. 21.6*a,b***). Cellulase hydrolyzes cellulose in plant cell walls and weakens that part of the plant.

In the early 1900s, it was common practice to prepare citrus fruits for market by placing them in a room with a kerosene stove. Only later did researchers realize that ethylene, an incomplete combustion product of kerosene, was ripening the fruit. Because it is a gas, ethylene can act from a distance, and is often used commercially to ripen fruit just before it is delivered to the grocery store (Fig. 21.6*c*). A barrel of ripening apples can induce ripening in a bunch of bananas, even if they are in different containers. If a plant is wounded due to physical damage or infection, ethylene is released at the wound site. This is why one rotten apple spoils the whole barrel.

Table 21.1 summarizes the effects of the five groups of plant hormones.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Plants use hormones to regulate their growth and development.

Check Your Progress 21.1

1. List the five commonly recognized groups of plant hormones.
2. Describe the main action of each of the five main plant hormones.
3. Discuss why if all of the plant hormones have some effect on plant growth they can be found in different areas of the plant.

Table 21.1 Functions of the Major Plant Hormones

Hormone	Functions	Where Produced or Found in Plant
Auxins	Maintain apical dominance; are involved in phototropism and gravitropism; promote growth of roots in tissue culture; prevent leaf and fruit drop	Apical meristems, immature leaves
Gibberellins	Promote stem elongation between nodes; break seed and bud dormancy and influence germination of seeds	Apical meristem, immature leaves, seeds
Cytokinins	Promote cell division; prevent senescence; along with auxin, promote differentiation, leading to roots, shoots, leaves, or floral shoots	Root apical meristem
Abscisic acid	Initiates and maintains seed and bud dormancy; promotes formation of winter buds; promotes closure of stomata	Endosperm, roots, tissues containing chloroplasts
Ethylene	Promotes abscission (leaf, fruit, or flower drop); promotes ripening of fruit	Aging parts of plant and ripening fruit, apical meristem and nodes of stem

21.2 Plant Responses

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Define tropism and give examples of three common tropisms in plants.
2. Explain how and why seedlings are affected by positive and negative gravitropism.
3. Describe how phytochrome affects a flowering plant's photoperiod.

Plant responses are strongly influenced by such environmental stimuli as light, day length, gravity, and touch. A plant's ability to respond to environmental signals increases the survival of the plant and the species in that environment.

Plant responses to environmental signals can be rapid, as when stomata open in the presence of light, or they can take some time, as when a plant flowers in season. Despite their variety, most plant responses to environmental signals are due to growth and sometimes changes in plant tissues, brought about at least in part by certain hormones.

Tropisms

Plant growth toward or away from a directional stimulus is called a **tropism.** Differential growth causes one side of an organ to elongate faster than the other, and the result is a curving toward or away from the stimulus. Growth toward a stimulus is called a positive tropism, and growth away from a stimulus is called a negative tropism. The following tropisms were each named for the stimulus that causes the response:

phototropism	growth in response to a light stimulus
gravitropism	growth in response to gravity
thigmotropism	growth in response to touch

Phototropism is the unidirectional growth of plants toward a source of light. Auxin migrates to the shady side of the plant and cell elongation causes the stem and leaves to bend toward the sunlight (**Fig. 21.7*a***). **Thigmotropism** is a response to touch from another plant, an animal, rocks or the wind. Climbing vines such as English ivy use touch contact with rocks, tree trunks, or other supports for growth (Fig. 21.7*b*). This adaptation for thigmotropism

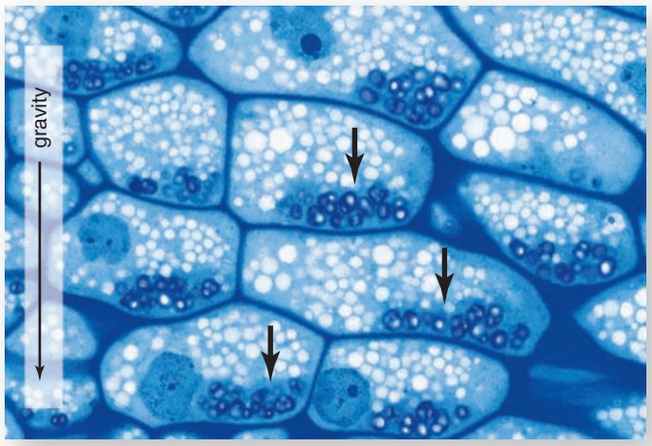
Figure 21.7 **Photo- and thigmotropisms.**

a. The stem of a plant curves toward the light, exhibiting phototropism. This response is due to the accumulation of auxin on the shady side of the stem. **b.** English ivy is thigmotropic and climbs a tree trunk.

a.

b.

a.



b.

Figure 21.8 Gravitropism.

a. The corn seed was germinated in a sideways orientation and in the dark. The shoot is growing upward (negative gravitropism) and the root downward (positive gravitropism). **b.** Amyloplasts settle toward the bottom of the cell and play a role in the perception of gravity by roots.

supports leaf growth toward sunlight rather than investing energy in building supportive tissues of the stem.

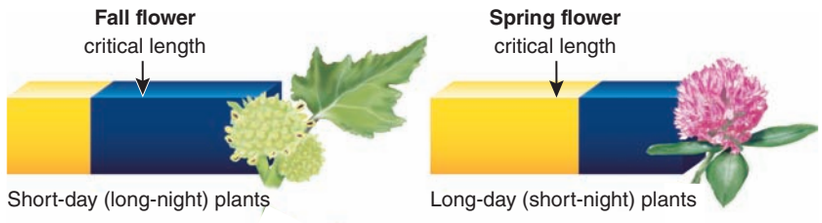
Gravitropism is the effect of gravity on plant growth. When a seed germinates, the embryonic shoot exhibits negative gravitropism by growing upward *against* gravity. Increased auxin concentration on the lower side of the young stem causes the cells in that area to grow more than the cells on the upper side, resulting in growth upward. The embryonic root exhibits positive gravitropism by growing *with* gravity downward into the soil (**Fig. 21.8*a***). Root cells know which way is down because of the presence of an organelle called an *amyloplast*. Imagine placing a few marbles in a tennis ball. No matter how you move the ball, the marbles will always settle to the bottom. The same holds true for amyloplasts, which settle at the bottom of endodermal root cells and signal downward growth (Fig. 21.8*b*).

Photoperiodism

Flowering in angiosperms is a striking response to environmental seasonal changes. In some plants, flowering occurs according to the **photoperiod,** which is the ratio of the length of day to the length of night over a 24-hour period.

You may know someone who suffers from seasonal allergies. In the spring, the days are longer and the nights are shorter, triggering the long-day/short-night plants to flower, produce pollen, and affect individuals with spring allergies. In the fall, the days are shorter and the nights are longer, triggering short-day/long-night plants to flower, produce pollen, and affect individuals with fall allergies.

The spring-flowering and fall-flowering plants are responding to a *critical length*—a period of light specific in length for any given species, which appears to initiate flowering (**Fig. 21.9*a,b***). Recent experiments have shown



a.

b.

Figure 21.9 The photoperiod controls flowering.

a. In the fall, the cocklebur plant flowers when the day is shorter (night is longer) than 8.5 hours; in the spring, the clover plant flowers when the day is longer (night is shorter) than 8.5 hours. **b.** Nurseries know how to regulate the photoperiod so that many types of flowers are available year-round.

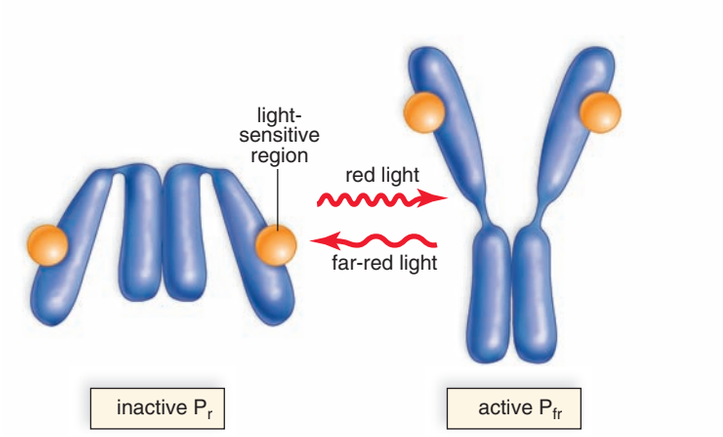


Figure 21.10 Phytochrome control of growth.

When phytochrome is inactive, the plant senses that it is evening. When phytochrome is in its active form, the plant senses that it is daytime.

that the length of continuous darkness, not light, is what actually controls flowering in many plants. Nurseries use these kinds of data to make all types of flowers available throughout the year (Fig. 21.9*b*).

Phytochrome

If flowering is dependent on night length, plants must have a way to detect these periods. In some plants, this appears to be the role of a leaf pigment called **phytochrome.** Phytochrome can detect the color wavelengths from the sun (see Fig. 6.4) and can distinguish between red wavelengths and far-red wavelengths of light.

Animation Phytochrome Signaling

Figure 21.10 shows how the presence of red light to far-red light determines the particular form of phytochrome:

P_r (phytochrome red) absorbs red light and is converted into P_{fr} in the daytime.

P_{fr} (phytochrome far-red) absorbs far-red light and is converted into P_r in the evening.

During the day, sunlight contains more red light than far-red light, and P_r is converted into P_{fr}. But at dusk, more far-red light is available, and P_{fr} is converted to P_r. There is also a slow metabolic replacement of P_{fr} by P_r during the night.

Plant spacing is another interesting function of phytochrome. Next time you are at a garden center, read the instructions on a seed packet and notice the specific details on spacing the seeds placed in the ground. In nature, red and far-red light also signal spacing. Leaf shading increases the amount of far-red light relative to red light. Plants somehow measure the amount of far-red light bounced back to them from neighboring plants. The closer together plants are, the more far-red relative to red light they perceive and the more likely they are to grow tall, a strategy for outcompeting others for sunshine!

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Plants respond to stimuli in their environment.

Check Your Progress 21.2

1. Compare and contrast the three tropisms described.
2. Explain the difference between short-day and long-day plants.
3. Explain how phytochrome is affected by red wavelengths of light.

21.3 Sexual Reproduction in Flowering Plants

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain the alternation of generations between sporophyte and gametophyte in flowering plants.
2. Identify the parts of a flower and briefly define their functions.
3. Contrast a monoecious plant with a dioecious plant.
4. Describe the processes and result of double fertilization.
5. List some methods of seed dispersal.
6. Compare and contrast seed germination in a eudicot versus in a monocot.

In Chapter 18, we noted that plants have two multicellular stages in their life cycle, and therefore their life cycle is called an **alternation of generations.** In this life cycle, a diploid (2n) sporophyte alternates with a haploid (n) gametophyte:

- The **sporophyte** (2n) produces haploid spores by meiosis. The spores develop into gametophytes.
- The **gametophytes** (n) produce gametes. Upon fertilization, the cycle returns to the 2n sporophyte.

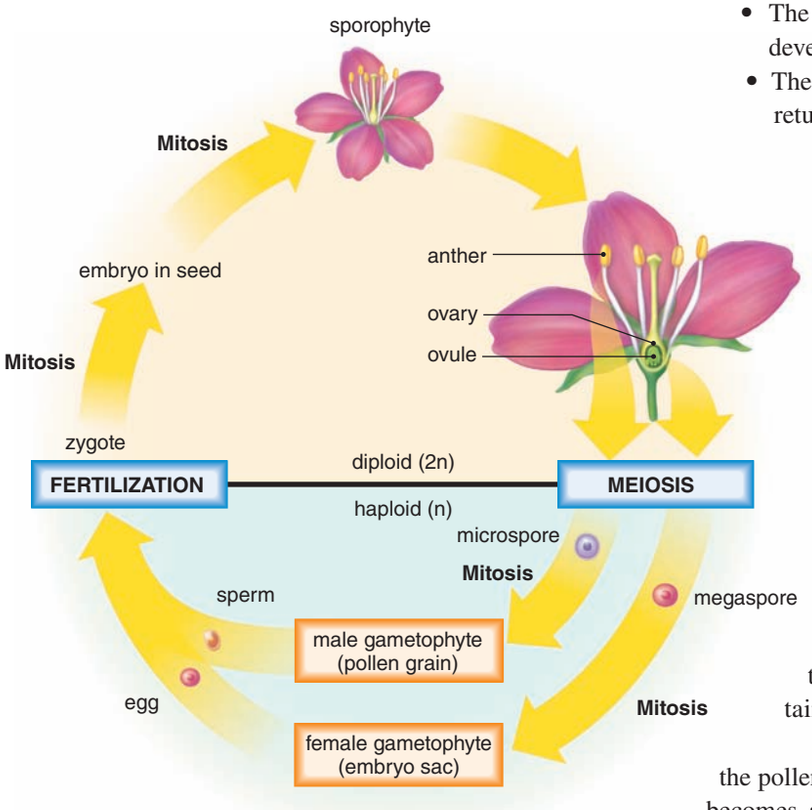


Figure 21.11 Alternation of generations in flowering plants.

In flowering plants, there are two types of spores and two gametophytes, male and female. Flowering plants are adapted to a land existence: The spores, the gametophytes, and the zygote are protected from drying out, in large part by the sporophyte.

Overview of the Plant Life Cycle

Flowering plants have an alternation-of-generations life cycle, but with the modifications shown in **Figure 21.11.** First, we will give an overview of the flowering plant life cycle, and then we will discuss the life cycle in more depth. In flowering plants, the sporophyte is dominant, and it is the generation that produces flowers. The flower is the reproductive organ of angiosperms. The flower of the sporophyte produces two types of spores: microspores and megaspores. A *microspore* develops into a male gametophyte, which is a pollen grain. A *megaspore* develops into a female gametophyte, the embryo sac, which is microscopic and housed deep within the flower.

A pollen grain is either windblown or carried by an animal to the vicinity of the embryo sac. At maturity, a pollen grain contains two nonflagellated sperm. The embryo sac contains an egg.

A pollen grain develops a pollen tube, and the sperm move down the pollen tube to the embryo sac. After a sperm fertilizes an egg, the zygote becomes an embryo, still within the flower. The structure that houses the embryo develops into a seed. The seed also contains stored food and is surrounded by a seed coat. The seeds are often enclosed by a fruit, which aids in dispersing the seeds. When a seed germinates, a new sporophyte emerges and develops.

As you learned in Chapter 18, the life cycle of flowering plants is well adapted to a land existence. No external water is needed to transport the pollen grain to the embryo sac, or to enable the sperm to reach the egg. All stages of the life cycle are protected from drying out.

Flowers

The **flower** is a unique reproductive structure, found only in angiosperms (**Fig. 21.12**). Flowers produce the spores and protect the gametophytes. They often attract pollinators, which help transport pollen from plant to plant. Flowers also produce the fruits that enclose the seeds. The success of angiosperms, with over 250,000 species, is largely attributable to the evolution of the flower.

In monocots, flower parts occur in threes and multiples of three; in eudicots, flower parts are in fours or fives and multiples of four or five (**Fig. 21.13**).

A typical flower has four whorls of modified leaves attached to a *receptacle* at the end of a flower stalk.

1. The *sepals* are the most leaflike of all the flower parts. They are usually green but some resemble petals (see Figs. 21.12 and 21.13*a*). Sepals protect the bud as the flower develops.
2. An open flower also has a whorl of *petals,* whose color accounts for the attractiveness of many flowers. The size, shape, and color of petals are attractive to specific pollinators. Wind-pollinated flowers may have no petals at all.
3. *Stamens* are the "male" portion of the flower. Each stamen has two parts: the *anther,* a saclike container, and the *filament,* a slender stalk. Pollen grains develop from the microspores produced in the anther.
4. At the very center of a flower is the *carpel,* a vaselike structure that represents the "female" portion of the flower. A carpel usually has three parts: the *stigma,* an enlarged, sticky knob; the *style,* a slender stalk; and the *ovary,* an enlarged base that encloses one or more *ovules.* The ovule becomes the seed, and the ovary becomes the fruit.

A flower can have a single carpel or multiple carpels. Sometimes several carpels are fused into a single structure, in which case the ovary has several chambers, each of which contains ovules. A carpel usually contains many ovules, which increases the number of seeds the plant may produce.

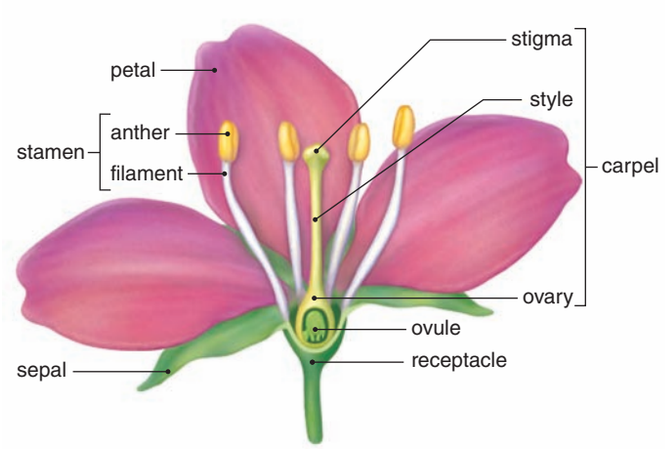


Figure 21.12 Anatomy of a flower.

A complete flower has all flower parts: sepals, petals, stamens, and at least one carpel.

Figure 21.13 Monocot versus eudicot flowers.

a. Monocots, such as daylilies, have flower parts in threes. In particular, note the three petals. **b.** Geraniums are eudicots. They have flower parts in fours or fives; note the five petals of this flower.

Figure 21.14 ***Jatropha*** **plants are monoecious.**

The flowers of the mature *Jatropha* plant are monoecious with both female (left) and male flowers (right) on the same plant.

Not all flowers have sepals, petals, stamens, and a carpel. Those that do are said to be *complete,* and those that do not are said to be *incomplete*. Flowers that have both stamens and carpels are called bisexual flowers; those with only stamens are male flowers. Those with only carpels are female flowers. If both male and female flowers are on one plant, the plant is called *monoecious* (**Fig. 21.14**). But if male and female flowers occur on separate plants, the plant is called *dioecious*. Holly trees are dioecious, and if red berries are a priority, it is necessary to acquire a plant with male flowers and another plant with female flowers.

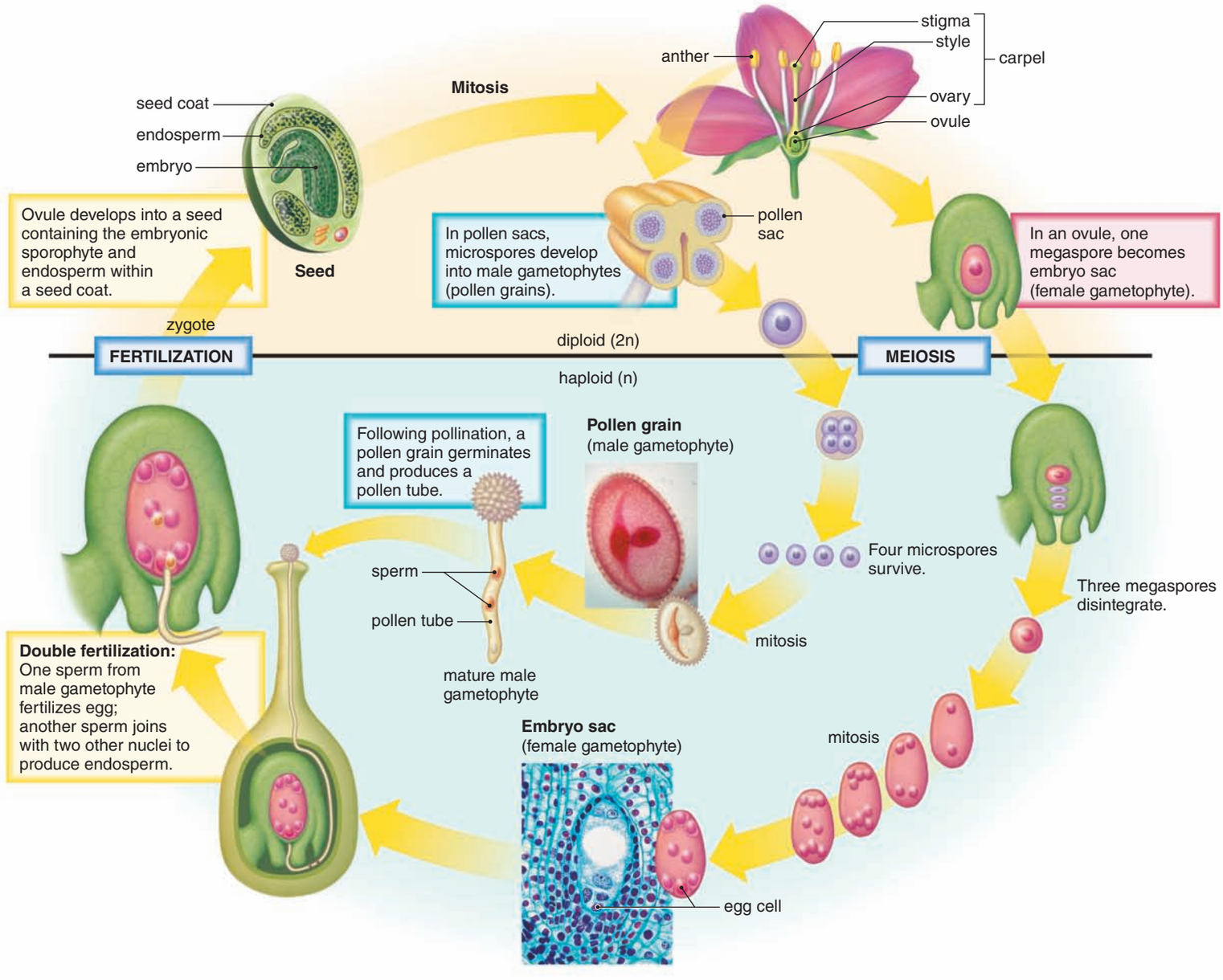


Figure 21.15 **Life cycle of a flowering plant.**

Follow the development of a microspore into a germinated pollen grain that contains sperm. Also follow the development of a megaspore into the female gametophyte that contains an egg. Note the occurrence of double fertilization, in which one sperm from the pollen tube fertilizes the egg, producing a zygote, and the other joins with two other female gametophyte cells to become endosperm. Then the ovule becomes a seed.

From Spores to Fertilization

Now that we have some acquaintance with the flowering plant life cycle, we will examine it in more detail. As you may recall, the sporophyte of seed plants produces two types of spores: microspores, which become male gametophytes (mature pollen grains), and megaspores, which become the female gametophyte**,** or **embryo sac.** Just exactly where does this happen, and how do these events contribute to the life cycle of flowering plants?

Microspores develop into pollen grains in the anthers of stamens (**Fig. 21.15**). A **pollen grain** at first consists of two cells. The larger cell will eventually produce a pollen tube. The smaller cell divides, either now or later, to become two sperm. This is why the stamen is called the "male" portion of the flower.

Pollen grains are distinctive to the particular plant (**Fig. 21.16**), and **pollination** is simply the transfer of pollen from the anther to the stigma of a carpel. Plants often have adaptations that favor *cross-pollination,* which occurs when the pollen landing on the stigma is from a different plant of the same species. For example, the carpels may mature only after the anthers have released their pollen. Cross-pollination may also be brought about with the assistance of an animal pollinator. If a pollinator, such as a bee, goes from flower to flower of only one type of plant, cross-pollination is more likely to occur in an efficient manner. The secretion of nectar is one way that plants attract insects; over time, certain pollinators have become adapted to reach the nectar of only one type of flower. In the process, pollen is inadvertently picked up and taken to another plant of the same type. Plants attract particular pollinators in still other ways. For example, through the evolutionary process, some species have flowers that smell of rotting flesh; they are called carrion, or stinking flowers. The putrid smell attracts flies, which in turn pick up the pollen and move it to another "rotting" plant!

Video
Pollinators

Figure 21.15 also allows you to follow the development of the megaspore. In an ovule, within the ovary of a carpel, meiosis produces four megaspores. One of the cells develops into the female gametophyte, or so-called embryo sac, which is a seven-celled structure containing a single egg cell. Fertilization of the egg occurs after a pollen grain lands on the stigma of a carpel and develops a pollen tube. A pollen grain that has germinated and produced a pollen tube is the mature male gametophyte (see Fig. 21.15, *middle*). A pollen tube contains two sperm. Once the sperm reaches the ovule, **double fertilization** occurs. One sperm unites with the egg, forming a 2n (diploid) zygote. The other sperm unites with two nuclei centrally placed in the embryo sac, forming a 3n (triploid) endosperm cell.

Figure 21.16 **Pollen.**

a. Pollen grains are so distinctive that a paleontologist can use fossilized pollen to date the appearance of a plant in a particular area. Pollen grains can become fossils because their strong walls are resistant to chemical and mechanical damage. **b.** Pollen grains of Canadian goldenrod. **c.** Pollen grains of a pussy willow.

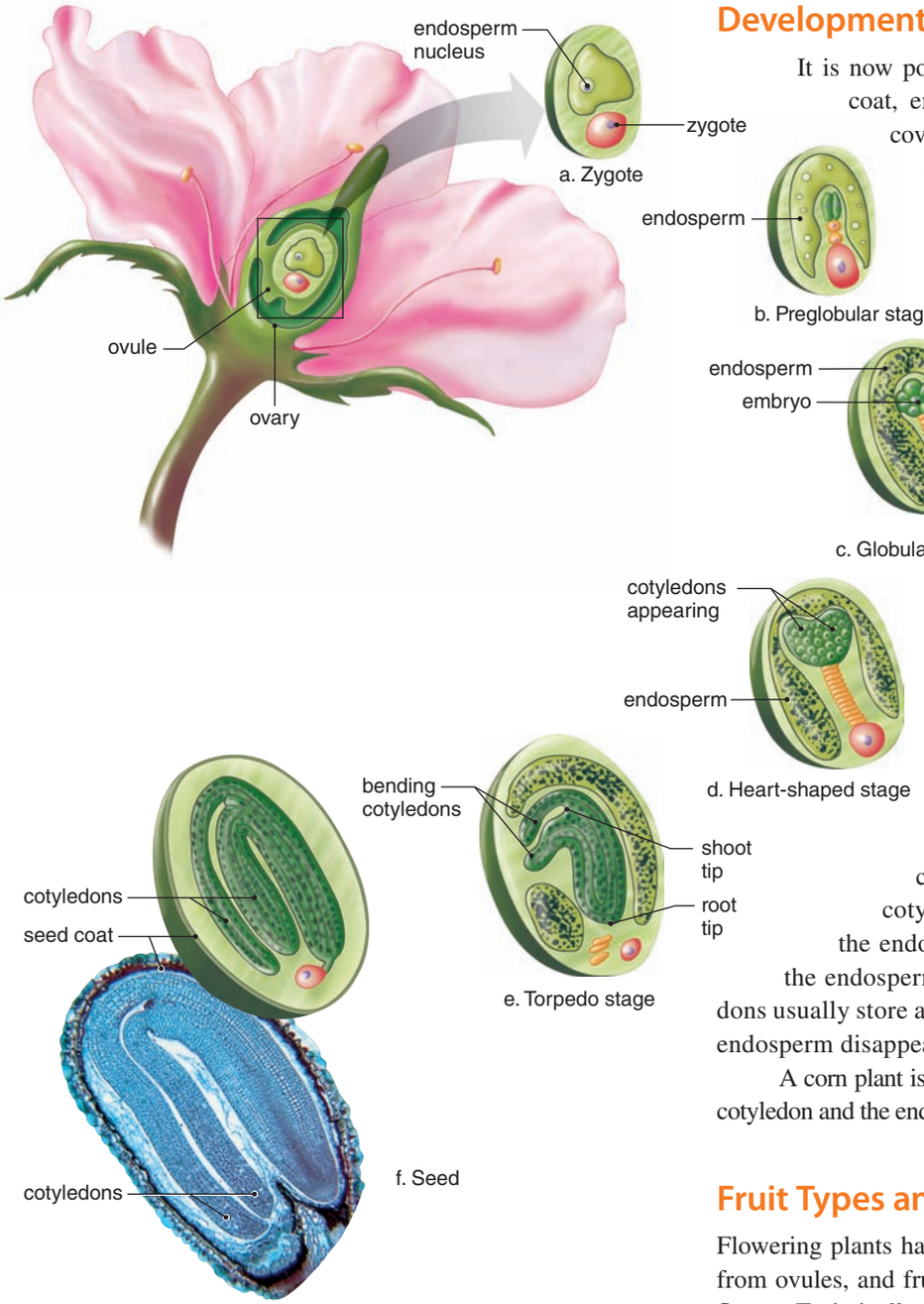


Figure 21.17 **Development of the seed in a eudicot.**

Development begins with (**a**) the zygote and ends with (**f**) the seed. As the embryo develops, it progresses through the stages noted from (**b**) to (**e**).

Development of the Seed in a Eudicot

It is now possible to account for the three parts of a seed: the seed coat, embryo, and endosperm. The *seed coat* is a protective covering that once was the ovule wall. Double fertilization, as discussed earlier, results in an endosperm nucleus and a zygote. Cell division produces a multicellular *embryo* and a multicellular **endosperm,** which is the stored food of a seed.

Figure 21.17 shows the stages in the development of the seed. Tissues become specialized until eventually a shoot and root tip containing apical meristems develop.

Notice that the **cotyledons,** or embryonic leaves, absorb the developing endosperm and become large and fleshy (Fig. 21.17*f*). The food stored by the cotyledons will nourish the embryo when it resumes growth. Cotyledons wither when the first *true leaves* grow and become functional. The common garden bean is a good example of a eudicot seed with large cotyledons and no endosperm (see Fig. 21.20).

Monocots Versus Eudicots

Whereas eudicot embryos have two cotyledons, monocot embryos have only one cotyledon. In monocots, the cotyledon stores food, and it absorbs food molecules from the endosperm and passes them to the embryo. In other words, the endosperm is retained in monocot seeds. In eudicots, the cotyledons usually store all the nutrient molecules the embryo uses. Therefore, the endosperm disappears, because it has been taken up by the two cotyledons.

A corn plant is a monocot; consequently, in a corn kernel, there is only one cotyledon and the endosperm is present (see Fig. 21.21).

Fruit Types and Seed Dispersal

Flowering plants have seeds enclosed by a **fruit** (**Fig. 21.18**). Seeds develop from ovules, and fruits develop from ovaries and sometimes other parts of a flower. Technically, market produce, such as cucumber, tomatoes, and sugar snap peas, are fruits—not vegetables—because they contain seeds. A *vegetable* is an edible plant part without seeds, such as celery (a stem), lettuce (leaves), and carrots (roots).

Fruits are quite diverse. *Dry fruits* are generally a dull color with a thin, dry ovary wall, so that the potential food for animals is largely confined to the seeds. In grains such as wheat, corn, and rice, the fruit looks like a seed. Nuts (e.g., walnuts, pecans) have a hard, outer shell covering a single seed. A legume, such as a pea, has a several-seeded fruit that splits open to release the seeds.

Figure 21.18 **Examples of fruits.**

Some fruits are dry, as in walnuts and peas. Some fruits are fleshy, as in peaches and apples. To a botanist, any plant product derived from an ovary plus perhaps other flower parts is a fruit.

In contrast to dry *fruits, fleshy fruits* have a juicy portion that is sometimes brightly colored to attract animals. A drupe (e.g., peach, cherry, olive) is a "stone fruit"—the outer part of the ovary wall is fleshy, but there is an inner, stony layer. Inside the stony layer is the seed. A berry, such as a tomato, contains many seeds. An apple is a *pome,* in which a dry ovary covers the seeds, and the fleshy part is derived from the receptacle of the flower. A strawberry is an interesting fruit, because the flesh is derived from the receptacle, and what appear to be the seeds are actually dry fruits!

Dispersal of Seeds

In order for plants to be successful in the environment, their seeds have to be dispersed—that is, moved long distances from the parent plant. Various means of dispersal are well known. Birds and mammals sometimes eat fruits, including the seeds, which then pass out of the digestive tract with the feces some distance from the parent plant (**Fig. 21.19*a***). Squirrels and other animals gather seeds and fruits, which they bury some distance away. Some plants have evolved unusual ways to ensure dispersal. The hooks and spines of clover, cocklebur, and burdock fruits attach to the fur of animals and the clothing of humans, which carry them far away from the parent plant (Fig. 21.19*b*). Other seeds are dispersed by wind. Woolly hairs, plumes, and wings are all adaptations for this type of dispersal. The dandelion fruit is attached to several hairs that function as a parachute and aid dispersal (Fig. 21.19*c*). The winged fruit of a maple tree, which contains two seeds, has been known to travel up to 10 kilometers from its parent (Fig. 21.19*d*). Different still, a touch-me-not plant has seed pods that swell as they mature. A passing animal may cause the swollen pods to burst, hurling the ripe seeds a great distance away from the plant.

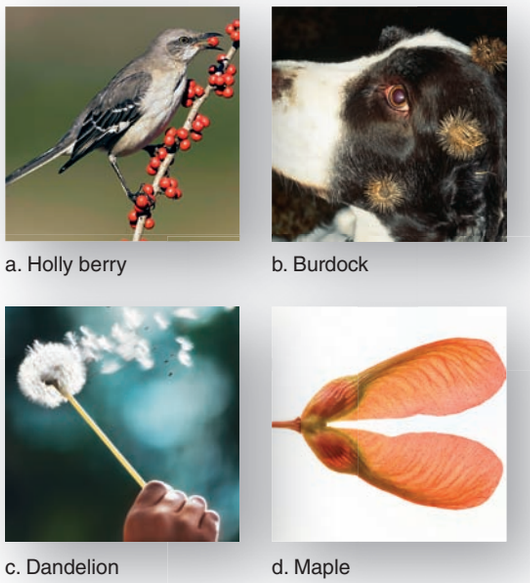


Figure 21.19 **Methods of seed dispersal.**

Many plants have adaptations to ensure that their seeds are spread some distance from the parent plant. **a.** The mockingbird will carry the seed of a holly some distance away. **b.** The spines of burdock fruit stick to a passerby. **c.** Dandelion and (**d**) maple fruits have adaptations that allow them to be carried long distances by wind.

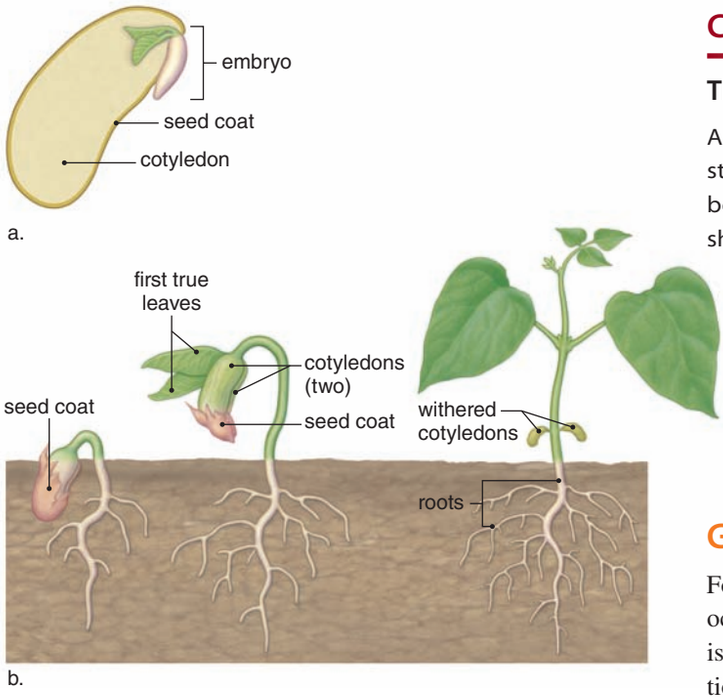


Figure 21.20 Common garden bean, a eudicot.

a. Seed structure. **b.** Germination and development of the seedling. Notice that there are two cotyledons and that the leaves are net-veined.

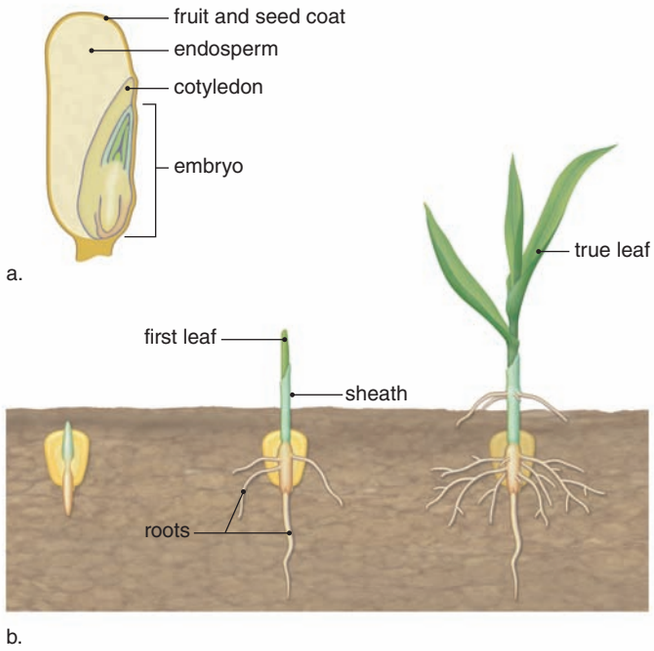


Figure 21.21 Corn, a monocot.

a. Corn kernel structure. **b.** Germination and development of the seedling. Notice that there is one cotyledon and that the leaves are parallel-veined.

Connections: Health

The Versatile Coconut

A coconut is a large nut, and the white, milky substance on the inside is the endosperm. Humans have been using this versatile nut for food, oil, and the shredded fiber of the husk. Health food stores sell electrolyte-packed coconut water as a hydrating energy drink, and coconut oil is a favorite for cooks who do not use dairy products to achieve a butterlike consistency. In the Philippines and Papua New Guinea, a coconut oil blend is being used to power ships, trucks, and cars!

Germination of Seeds

Following dispersal, if all goes well, the seeds will **germinate.** As growth occurs, a seedling appears. Germination does not usually take place until there is sufficient water, warmth, and oxygen to sustain growth. In deserts, germination does not occur until there is adequate moisture. These requirements help ensure that seeds do not germinate until the most favorable growing season has arrived. Some seeds do not germinate until they have been dormant for a period of time. For seeds, dormancy is the time during which no growth occurs, even though conditions may be favorable for growth. In the temperate zone, seeds often have to be exposed to a period of cold weather before dormancy is broken. Fleshy fruits (e.g., apples, pears, oranges, and tomatoes) contain inhibitors, so that germination does not occur until the seeds are removed and washed. Aside from water, bacterial action and even fire can act on the seed coat, allowing it to become permeable to water. The uptake of water causes the seed coat to burst and germination to occur.

Video Fruit Bat Seed Dispersal

Video Dung Seed Dispersal

Eudicot Versus Monocot Germination

If the two cotyledons of a bean seed are parted, you can see the cotyledons and a rudimentary plant with immature leaves. As the eudicot seedling emerges from the soil, the shoot is hook-shaped to protect the immature leaves as they start to grow. The cotyledons shrivel up as the true leaves of the plant begin photosynthesizing (**Fig. 21.20**). A corn kernel is actually a fruit, and therefore the outer covering is the fruit and seed coat combined (**Fig. 21.21**). Inside is the single cotyledon. Also, both the immature leaves and the root are covered by sheaths. The sheaths are discarded when the seedling begins growing, and the immature leaves become the first true leaves of the corn plant.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Sexual reproduction in flowering plants has made them successful.

Check Your Progress 21.3

1. Describe the anatomy of a flower.
2. Detail the life cycle of a flowering plant.
3. Discuss the importance of seeds and seed dispersal.

21.4 Asexual Reproduction and Genetic Engineering in Plants

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List some natural methods of asexual reproduction in flowering plants and describe the structures involved.
2. Describe the propagation of plants in tissue culture and explain the reason for using this method.
3. List the possible benefits and concerns of using genetically modified plants.
4. Explain how the pharmaceutical industry uses plant genetic engineering.

In asexual reproduction, there is only one parent and all the offspring are **clones**—genetically identical individuals. Clones are desirable for plant sellers, because they know exactly how the plant will grow and look.

Propagation of Plants in a Garden

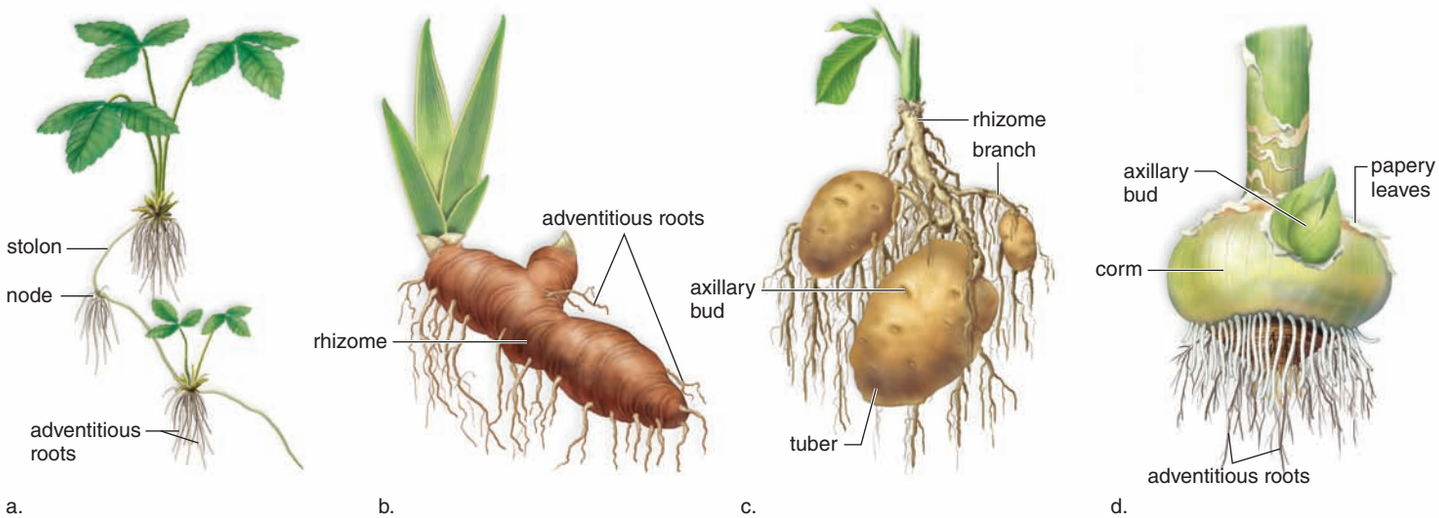
If you wanted to create a bed of tulips, irises, or gladiolas in your garden, you would not plant seeds but instead would rely on bulbs, rhizomes, or corms and reproduce the plant asexually (**Fig. 21.22**). Baking potatoes are modified stems called tubers, and each "eye" has a bud that can become a new plant. All of these structures are typically fleshy, underground food-storage tissues and contain buds that will sprout in the spring. Runners, or stolons, such as those found in strawberries, are horizontal stems that can also result in new clonal plants.

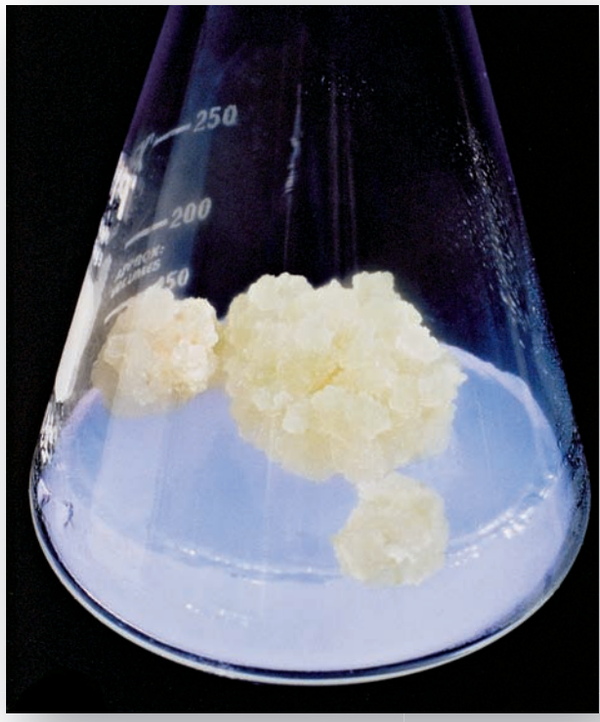
Propagation of Plants in Tissue Culture

One of the major disadvantages of most asexual propagation techniques is that they also propagate pathogens. Plant pathogens can be viruses, bacteria, or fungi, and clones created from an infected parent will also be infected. However, it is possible to maintain plants in a disease-free status if clones from an uninfected

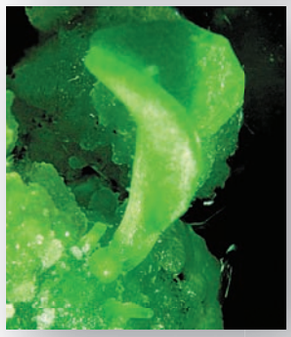
Figure 21.22 Structures for asexual propagation.

New plants can grow by the separation of parts from the original plant. **a.** A strawberry plant has aboveground horizontal stems called stolons. Every other node produces a new shoot system. **b.** An iris rhizome; **c.** a potato tuber; and **d.** a gladiola corm are all modified stems that can produce clonal offshoots.





a.



b.

c.

d.

Figure 21.23 **Tissue culture.**

a. Meristem tissue is grown on sterile media and an undifferentiated mass, called a callus, develops. **b.** From the callus, embryos develop organs such as leaves and roots. **c.** The embryos develop into plantlets. **d.** Plantlets can be stored, then shipped in sterile containers and transferred to soil for growth into adult plants.

parent are made in sterile test tubes through tissue culture. Hence, **tissue culture** is simply plant propagation done in a laboratory under sterile conditions.

If you were to take one cell from an animal and try to grow it in a test tube, you would not be able to make another whole animal. On the other hand, if you take one cell from a plant you *can* grow an entirely new plant. This capacity of one plant cell to give rise to a mature plant is called *totipotency* and is the reason plant tissue culture is so successful.

Techniques for tissue culture vary, but most begin with cells from the meristem of the parent plant. Meristematic cells are grown in a sterile, jellylike substrate in flasks, tubes or petri dishes. The substrate, also called a medium, contains growth hormones, vitamins, and macro- and micronutrients and provides dividing plant cells with all the support, nutrients and water they need. Initially, a mass of undifferentiated (unspecialized) cells, called a *callus,* forms (**Fig. 21.23*a***). The addition of more nutrients and hormones will signal organ formation until a fully developed plantlet is formed (Fig. 21.23*b,c*). Plantlets can then be shipped off in their sterile containers to growers for transplantation into soil pots or the field (Fig. 21.23*d*).

Tissue culture is an important technique for propagating many fruits and vegetables found in local supermarkets. As described in the beginning of the chapter, bananas are sterile fruit that do not produce seeds. The only way to provide this commercially important fruit for the whole world is through tissue culture. Asparagus is a dioecious plant and all commercial stalks are male. The female stalks favor the production of flowers and are undesirable for eating. Tissue culture is therefore a more efficient means of producing disease-free male asparagus for growers.

Many botanical gardens and universities use tissue culture for plant conservation. The Atlanta Botanical Garden has a tissue culture lab that propagates native species of orchids and lilies. The propagated plants are shared with local nurseries, resulting in fewer plants being removed from the wild by collectors. Tissue culture of rare species is also used to help increase the population in the wild as they are replanted in native habitats, both locally and internationally (**Fig. 21.24**).

Figure 21.24 **Tissue culture helps plant conservation.**

This rare Kentucky ladyslipper orchid is grown in a tissue culture lab and will be replanted into native habitats.

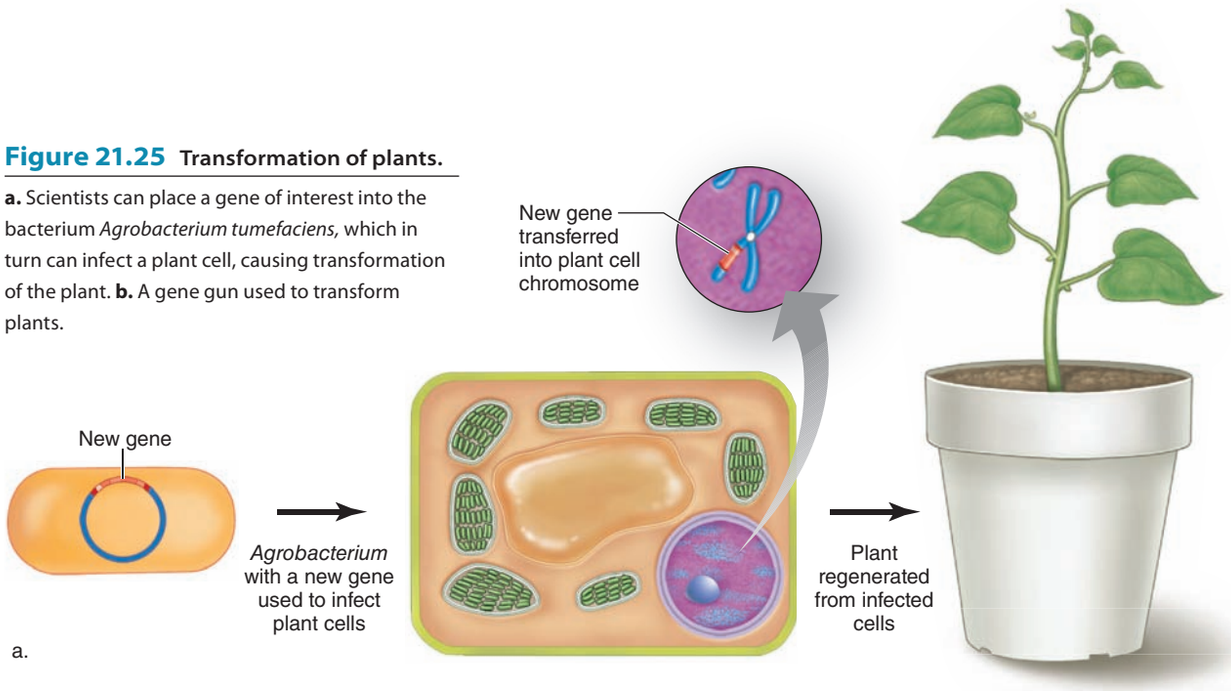


Figure 21.25 **Transformation of plants.**

a. Scientists can place a gene of interest into the bacterium *Agrobacterium tumefaciens,* which in turn can infect a plant cell, causing transformation of the plant. **b.** A gene gun used to transform plants.

When the desired product is not an entire plant but merely a substance the plant produces, scientists can use a technique called *cell suspension culture*. In one method, rapidly growing calluses are cut into small pieces and shaken in a liquid nutrient medium, so that single cells or small clumps of cells break off and form a suspension. The target chemical is then extracted from the liquid the cells are growing in. Cell suspension cultures of cells from the quinine tree produce quinine, a drug used to combat malaria, and those of the woolly foxglove produce digitoxin, used to treat certain types of heart disease.

b.

Genetic Engineering of Plants

At least 10,000 years ago humans began to leave the hunting and gathering lifestyle and settled down to farm. Plants were selected and hybridized to obtain the most desirable crops for food and textiles. Following simple Mendelian genetics, *hybridization* is the crossing of different varieties of plants to produce plants with desirable traits. Farming in this manner was suitable for feeding small communities of people.

Today, there are many more people who need to be fed. Providing enough food and textiles rests on scientists' ability to modify plants through genetic engineering. The invention of large-scale DNA sequencing and advances in modern molecular genetics have increased the understanding on how genes work and how they can be incorporated into plant DNA for very precise additions of desirable traits. A plant that has had its DNA altered in some way is called a *transgenic,* or **genetically modified** (**GM**), plant; more generally, any organism that has been modified is a genetically modified organism (GMO).

Video
No Mow
Grass

Figure 21.25 shows two ways genetic engineering is accomplished. The parent plant lacks a desirable trait; a gene from another organism is studied, isolated, and used to transform the parent plant. A common *transformation* technique relies on a natural genetic engineer, *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*. This bacterium infects plant cells and then inserts DNA from its plasmids into

Table 21.2 GM Plants

IMPROVED AGRICULTURAL TRAITS
Herbicide resistance: wheat, rice, sugar beets, canola
Salt tolerance: cereals, rice, sugarcane, canola
Drought tolerance: cereals rice, sugarcane
Cold tolerance: cereals, rice, sugarcane
Improved yield: cereals, rice, corn, cotton
Disease protection: wheat, corn, potatoes, cotton
IMPROVED FOOD-QUALITY TRAITS
Fatty acid/oil content: corn, soybeans
Protein/starch content: cereals, potatoes, soybeans, rice, corn
Amino acid content: corn, soybeans
Vitamin A content: rice
MEDICINAL BENEFITS
Vaccine production: corn, soybeans, tomatoes
Antibody production: tobacco

the plant's chromosomes. Another technique uses a particle gun that shoots DNA into plant cells for transformation (Fig. 21.25*b*). The transformed plant is then isolated for its new trait, and plantlets are generated. Depending on the purpose, the GM plant can then be cloned through tissue culture or can be used in sexual reproduction to produce seeds.

GM plants are often modified with genes that improve agricultural, food-quality, and medicinal traits (**Table 21.2**). A notable GM plant is Bt corn. In the past, corn plants were attacked by a butterfly larva called a corn borer. Growers sprayed their fields with insecticides that were costly and had a negative impact on the environment. The Bt gene, isolated from the soil bacterium *Bacillus thuringiensis*, produces proteins that kill corn borers. The Bt gene was inserted into corn chromosomes, resulting in corn plants resistant to the larvae. Currently, 65% of the total U.S. corn crop is Bt corn. Other GM crops, such as Bt potato and Bt cotton, also have this gene (**Fig. 21.26**).

Video Pesticide Plants

Video Good Tobacco

One of the recent successes of GM crops is the development of golden rice. This rice has been genetically modified with daffodil and bacterial genes to produce beta-carotene (provitamin A). The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that vitamin A deficiency affects between 140 and 250 million preschool children worldwide. The deficiency is especially severe in developing countries where the major staple food is rice. Provitamin A in the diet can be converted by enzymes in the body to vitamin A, alleviating the deficiency.

Environmental concerns over GM plants have been over possible cross-hybridization with wild plants, the possibility of creating herbicide-resistant "super weeds," and the effects of GM pollen on pollinators. The biggest social concern is about the human and livestock consumption of GM plants, and laws have been proposed to place labels on all foods made with GM crops (**Fig. 21.27**). Currently, the development of new GM crops must show rigorous analysis and testing before being approved in the United States. After citing a study that reviewed 25 years of GM crop research, the American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS) released a statement in 2012 stating that genetic engineering, resulting in crop improvement, is safe and that food labeling would only falsely alarm consumers.

Video GM Food Safety

a.

b.

Figure 21.26 Genetically engineered Bt plants.

a. A field of Bt corn genetically modified to be resistant to corn borer larvae (inset). **b.** Cotton fields comparing unmodified and modified Bt cotton.

Pharmaceutical Products

Genetic engineering has resulted in a new wave of research into the development of plant-made pharmaceuticals. Plants can produce antigens, antibodies, hormones, and therapeutic proteins. The advantages of using plants to produce pharmaceuticals include decreased cost, increased amount of protein produced, and decreased risk of contamination with animal and human pathogens. One type of antibody made by tobacco plants is being developed to combat tooth decay. Already approved for veterinary use, a plant-made antibody against certain forms of the cancer lymphoma is being developed for humans. In addition to producing antibodies, plants excel at creating "hard-to-make" proteins, such as anticoagulants, growth hormones, blood substitutes, collagen replacements, and antimicrobial agents, to name a few.

Video Potato Vaccine

Figure 21.27 Controversy over GM food labeling.

Activists protest laws that do not require food companies to indicate if foods are made with genetically modified organisms.

Connections: Health

Are genetically modified crops organic?

According to the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), an organic crop is one that is produced without the use of pesticides, irradiation, hormones, antibiotics, or bioengineering. Therefore, a genetically modified crop may not be marketed as an organic crop, since it is a product of artificial technology.

Check Your Progress 21.4

1. List the structures that some plants have for asexual reproduction.
2. Give three examples of uses for plant tissue culture.
3. Summarize the pros and cons of genetically modified plants.

21.4 CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Scientists use asexual reproduction in plants to culture tissues for plant cloning.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video
21.2 Phytochrome Signaling	**21.3** Pollinators • Fruit Bat Seed Dispersal • Dung Seed Dispersal **21.4** No Mow Grass • Pesticide Plants • Good Tobacco • GM Food Safety • Potato Vaccine

SUMMARIZE

21.1 Plant Hormones

Plant **hormones** lead to physiological changes within the cell. The five commonly recognized groups of plant hormones are

- **Auxins:** Affect growth patterns and cause **apical dominance** and **phototropism**
- **Gibberellins:** Promote stem elongation and break seed dormancy
- **Cytokinins:** Promote cell division, prevent senescence of leaves, and influence differentiation of plant tissues
- **Abscisic acid:** Initiates and maintains seed and bud dormancy and closing of stomata
- **Ethylene:** Causes **abscission** of leaves, fruits, and flowers and ripens fruits

21.2 Plant Responses

Environmental signals play a significant role in plant growth and development.

Tropisms

Tropisms are growth responses toward (positive) or away from (negative) unidirectional stimuli.

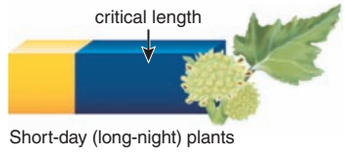
phototropism:	response to a light
gravitropism:	response to gravity
thigmotropism:	response to touch

Auxins cause shoots to experience negative **gravitropism,** and amyloplasts cause roots to experience positive gravitropism. Other tropisms include **phototropism,** or the growth toward a light source, and **thigmotropism,** or the growth toward contact with an object (touch).

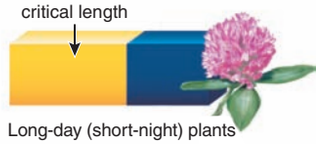
Photoperiodism

Flowering is a response to a seasonal change—namely, length of a **photoperiod.**

- Short-day plants flower when nights are longer than a critical length.
- Long-day plants flower when nights are shorter than a critical length.



Short-day (long-night) plants



Long-day (short-night) plants

Phytochrome is a plant pigment that responds to daylight. Phytochrome in plant cells brings about flowering and affects plant spacing.

21.3 Sexual Reproduction in Flowering Plants

The life cycle of flowering plants is adapted to a land existence.

- Flowering plants have an **alternation-of-generations** life cycle with distinct **sporophyte** and **gametophytes.**
- **Pollen grain** is the male gametophyte. Pollination brings together the male and female gametophytes.
- The embryo sac, located within the ovule of a flower, is the female gametophyte.
- **Double fertilization** occurs, and the zygote and **endosperm** result.

Development of the Seed in a Eudicot

The zygote undergoes a series of developmental stages to become an embryo. In eudicots, the embryo has two cotyledons, which absorb the endosperm. In monocots, the embryo has a single cotyledon and endosperm. Aside from the embryo and stored food, a seed has a seed coat.

eudicot seed

monocot seed

Fruit Types and Seed Dispersal

A **fruit** is a mature, ripened ovary and may be composed of other **flower** parts. Some fruits are dry (e.g., nuts, legumes), and some are fleshy (e.g., apples, peaches). In general, fruits aid the dispersal of seeds. Following dispersal, a seed **germinates.**

21.4 Asexual Reproduction and Genetic Engineering in Plants

Propagation of Plants in a Garden

Many flowering plants reproduce asexually.

- Bulbs, corms, rhizomes, and tubers are fleshy, modified stems or leaves that give rise to new plants.
- Stolons are aboveground stems that create new plants.

Propagation of Plants in Tissue Culture

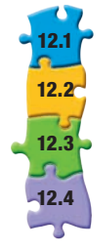
The production of clonal plants utilizing **tissue culture** for many common fruits and vegetables is now a commercial venture. Plant cells in tissue culture can also produce chemicals of medical and commercial importance.

Genetic Engineering of Plants

Genetic engineering produces **genetically modified (GM)** plants that have improved agricultural or food-quality traits; two examples are Bt corn and golden rice. Plants can also be engineered to produce chemicals of use to humans.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Even though they lack nervous systems, plants can respond to various stimuli. Understanding the reproduction of plants has enabled humans to increase their sources of food.



12.1 Plants use hormones to regulate their growth and development.

12.2 Plants respond to stimuli in their environment.

12.3 Sexual reproduction in flowering plants has made them successful.

12.4 Scientists use asexual reproduction in plants to culture tissues for plant cloning.

For more information about plant responses and reproduction see the following discussions:

Section 4.4 describes the structure of a general plant cell.

Figure 18.15 illustrates the structures of a flower.

Figure 20.7 illustrates some additional differences between monocot and eudicot plants.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

21.1 Plant Hormones

For questions 1–8, identify the plant hormone in the key that is associated with each phenomenon. Each answer may be used more than once.

Key:

a. auxin
b. gibberellin
c. cytokinin
d. abscisic acid
e. ethylene

1. initiates and maintains seed and bud dormancy
2. stimulates root development
3. is capable of moving from plant to plant through the air
4. causes phototropism in stems
5. is responsible for apical dominance
6. stimulates leaf, fruit, and flower drop
7. is needed to break seed and bud dormancy
8. prevents senescence

21.2 Plant Responses

9. A tropism is defined as
a. a growth response to a directional stimulus.
b. a plant response to water stress.
c. a hormonal response to overcrowding by other plants.
d. abscission of leaves due to plant hormones.

10. Root cells exhibit positive gravitropism with the help of
a. auxin in the root cells.
b. amyloplasts in root cells.
c. exposure to sunlight.
d. a nearby substrate.

11. Phytochrome
a. can recognize red and far-red wavelengths of light.
b. affects a plant's photoperiod.
c. helps plants sense proximity to neighboring plants.
d. All of the above are correct.

21.3 Sexual Reproduction in Flowering Plants

12. Stigma is to carpel as anther is to
a. sepal.
b. stamen.
c. ovary.
d. style.

13. The megaspore is similar to the microspore in that both
a. have the diploid number of chromosomes.
b. become an embryo sac.
c. become a gametophyte that produces a gamete.
d. are necessary for seed production.
e. Both c and d are correct.

14. Double fertilization is the formation of a _____ and a(n) _____.
a. zygote, zygote
b. zygote, pollen grain
c. zygote, megaspore
d. zygote, endosperm

21.4 Asexual Reproduction and Genetic Engineering in Plants

15. Which of the following is a natural method of asexual reproduction in plants?
a. meristem culture
b. propagation from stolons or rhizomes
c. infection with *Agrobacterium*
d. cell suspension culture

16. Plant tissue culture takes advantage of
a. phototropism.
b. gravitropism.
c. asexual reproduction from tubers.
d. totipotency

17. Plant biotechnology can lead to
a. increased crop production.
b. disease-resistant plants.
c. treatment of human disease.
d. more nutritious crops
e. All of these are correct.

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. In late November every year, florists ship truckloads of poinsettia plants to stores around the country. Typically, the plants are individually wrapped in plastic sleeves. If the plants remain in the sleeves for too long during shipping and storage, their leaves begin to curl under and eventually fall off. What plant hormone do you think causes this response? How do you suppose the plastic sleeves affect the response?

2. Snow buttercups (*Ranunculus adoneus*) live in alpine regions and produce sun-tracking flowers. The flowers face east in the morning to absorb the sun's warmth in order to attract pollinators and speed the growth of fertilized ovules. The flowers track the sun all day, continually bending to face the sun. How might you determine whether the flowers or stems are responsible for sun tracking? Assuming you have determined that the stem is responsible, how would you determine which region of the stem follows the sun?

3. Witchweed is a parasitic weed that destroys 40% of Africa's cereal crop annually. Because it is intimately associated with its host (the cereal crop), witchweed is difficult to selectively destroy with herbicides. One control strategy is to create genetically modified cereals with herbicide resistance. Then, herbicides will kill the weed without harming the crop. Herbicide-resistant sorghum was created to help solve the witchweed problem. However, scientists discovered that the herbicide resistance gene could be carried via pollen into johnsongrass, a relative of sorghum and a serious problem in the United States. Farmers would have a new challenge if johnsongrass could no longer be effectively controlled with herbicides. Consequently, efforts to create herbicide-resistant sorghum were put on hold. Do you think farmers in Africa should be able to grow herbicide-resistant sorghum, allowing them to control witchweed? Or should the production of herbicide-resistant sorghum be banned worldwide in order to avoid the risk of introducing the herbicide resistance gene into johnsongrass?

22

Being Organized and Steady

OUTLINE

22.1 The Body's Organization 415
22.2 Organs and Organ Systems 423
22.3 Homeostasis 426

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 1.1 How do tissues and organs fit into the levels of biological organization?

Section 4.2 What are the functions of proteins in the plasma membrane?

Section 4.5 What types of junctions link cells together to form tissues?

Going Gaga over Biology

When Stephanie Joanne Angelina Germanotta, better known as Lady Gaga, performs on stage, she is constantly in motion. Whether she is singing or dancing, she is demonstrating how the human body is able to perform very complicated feats. Her nervous system must coordinate a variety of tasks, including monitoring her breathing rate and remembering the words and tempo to the song. This is influenced by sensory input from her eyes and ears. At the same time, her brain is instructing her muscles how to move onstage, as well as working to maintain her balance while interacting with the other dancers onstage.

Of course, in biological terms, the same observations can be made about humans engaging in almost any other type of physical activity, such as playing sports, building a house, performing surgery, or driving a car. Even while you are sitting quietly, perhaps reading a textbook, your body systems are undergoing a flurry of activity. Your muscles and bones work to keep your body upright. Your respiratory and circulatory systems provide oxygen to your tissues while transporting wastes for elimination. Your digestive system is providing the nutrients needed to power all of these activities while your immune system is keeping a watch out for harmful microbes. Each of these activities is being coordinated by the nervous and endocrine systems. Even when you are asleep, these body systems are at work.

In this chapter we will explore the basic nature of how our bodies are organized, as well as how the body maintains a stable internal environment in the face of changing external conditions.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What types of tissue make up each of the human body's major organ systems?
2. How does the type of tissue found in each organ relate to the organ's function?
3. What is the role of feedback in the maintenance of the internal conditions of the body?

22.1 The Body's Organization

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List in order of increasing complexity the levels of organization of an animal body.
2. Describe epithelial tissue and explain its functions.
3. Describe the primary characteristics of connective tissue.
4. Compare and contrast the three types of muscle tissue.
5. Describe the function of nervous tissue.

In Chapter 4, you studied the general structure and function of a plant cell and an animal cell. Here we will take that knowledge of animal cell structure and see how millions of individual cells of different types come together to make an organism. Cells of the same structural and functional type occur within a **tissue.** An **organ** contains different types of tissues, each performing a function to aid in the overall action of the organ. In other words, the structure and function of an organ are dependent on the tissues it contains. That is why it is sometimes said that tissues, not organs, are the structural and functional units of the body. An organ system contains multiple organs that work together to perform a specific physiological function within the organism.

Let's look at an example (**Fig. 22.1**). In humans, one purpose of the urinary system is to filter wastes out of the blood, produce urine from those waste products, and permanently remove the urine from the body. The urinary system is composed of several individual organs—the kidneys, ureters, bladder, and urethra—each with a particular function in the process. The kidneys are composed of several different tissue types; one type in particular, the epithelial tissue, contains cells that function in filtration. These cells can filter blood and remove the waste products (forming urine) into another organ, the ureters. The tissues in the ureters form a tubelike structure that allows urine to pass from the kidneys into the bladder. The bladder, also composed of many different types of tissues, has one tissue made of cells that allow the entire organ to distend, or expand, when full of urine. And finally, the urethra, like the ureters, is composed of tissues that form a cylindrical structure, allowing urine to flow from the bladder out of the body. The overall functions of the urinary system—to produce, store, and rid the body of metabolic wastes—are dependent on the cells that make up the tissues, the tissues that make up the organs, and the organs that make up the organ system.

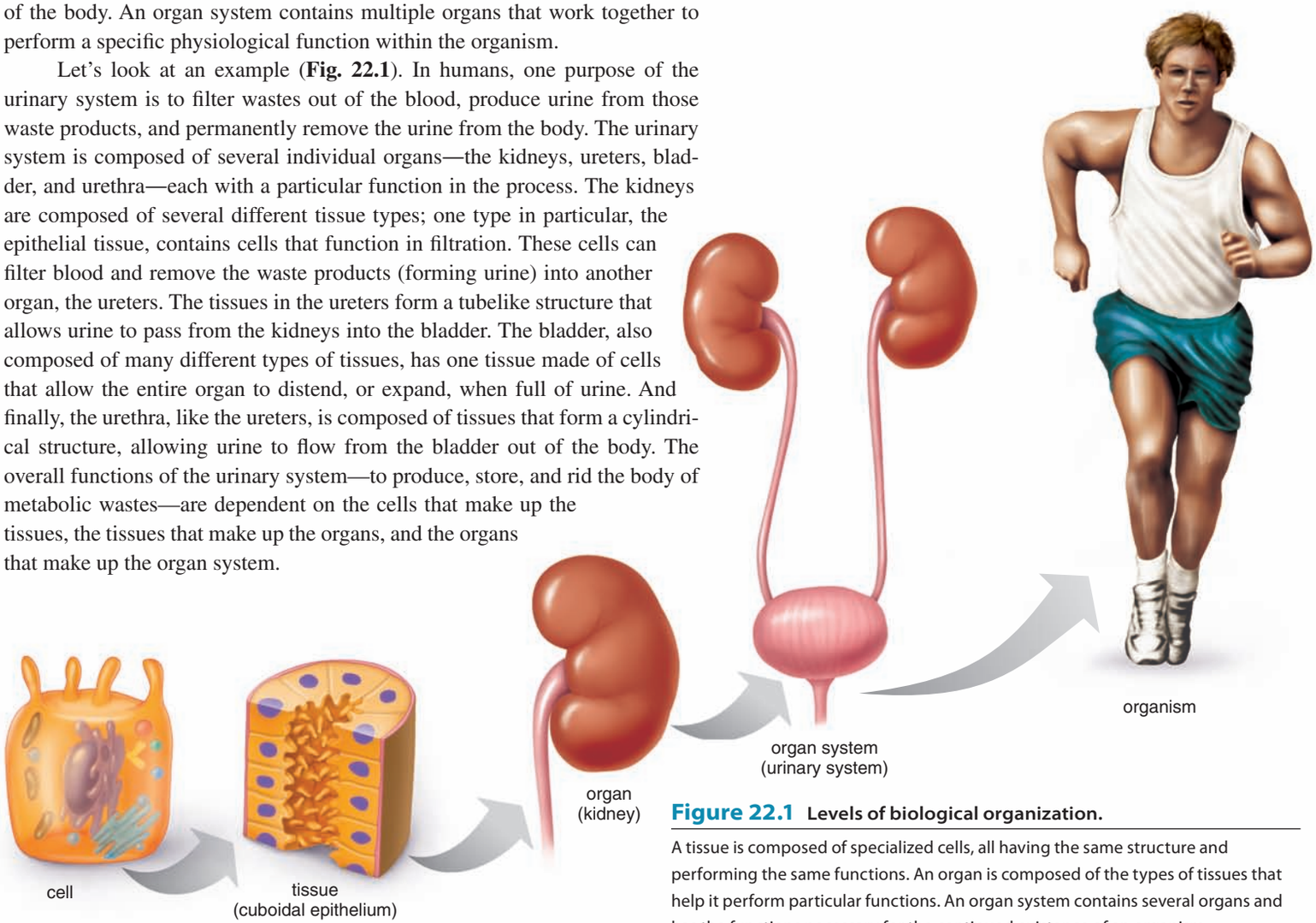


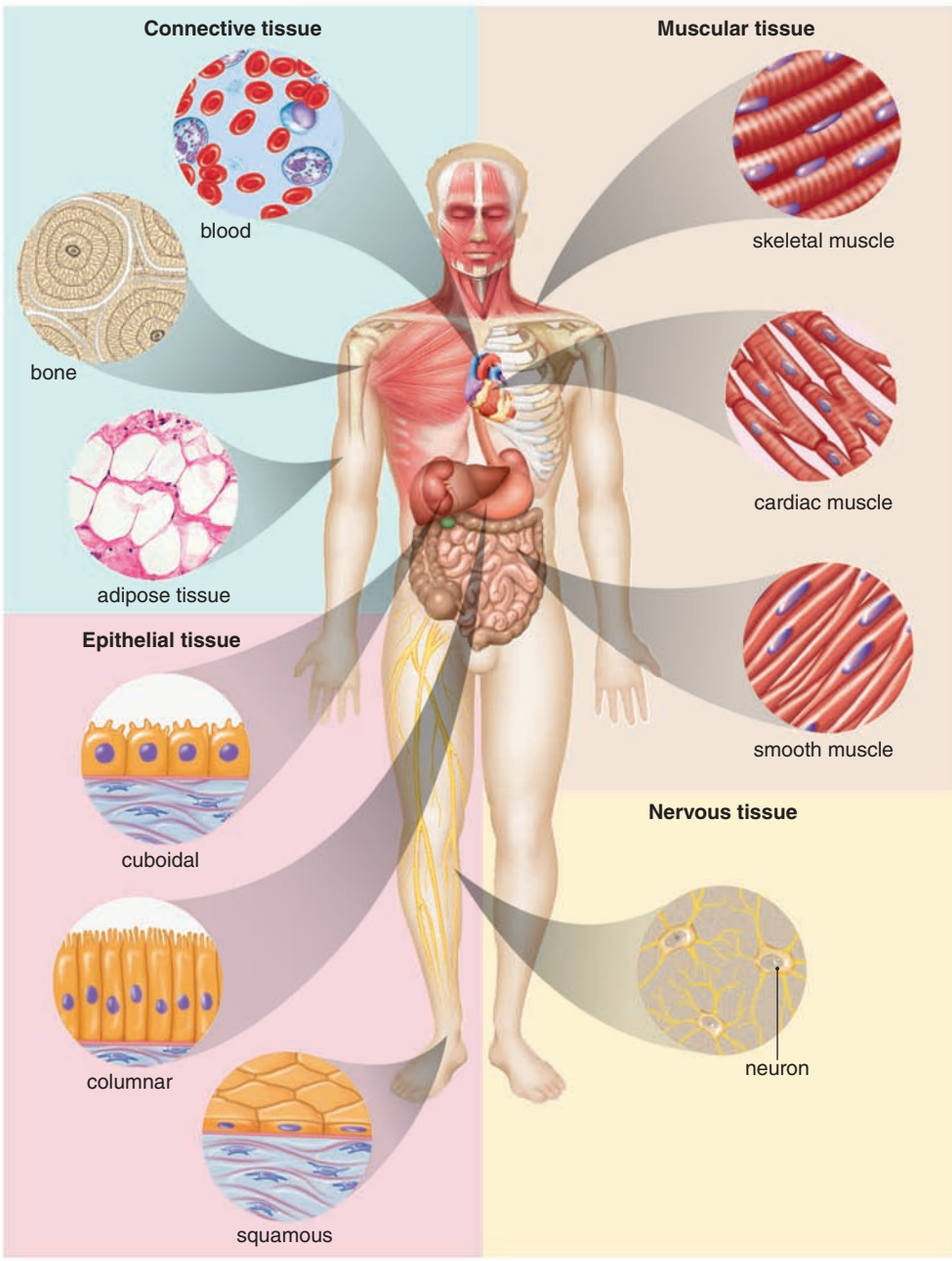
Figure 22.1 Levels of biological organization.

A tissue is composed of specialized cells, all having the same structure and performing the same functions. An organ is composed of the types of tissues that help it perform particular functions. An organ system contains several organs and has the functions necessary for the continued existence of an organism.

The structure of the cells, the tissues, and the organs they compose also directly aid function. A common saying in biology is "structure equals function," meaning that the structure of an organ (and hence the tissues and cells that compose it) dictates its function. For example, the small intestine functions in the absorption of nutrients from the digestive tract. The larger the surface area of each cell, the more absorption can occur. Some intestinal cells have areas covered in microvilli (small, fingerlike projections that are extensions of the plasma membrane) that increase the surface area of the cell, thus increasing areas where absorption can occur, without increasing the overall size of the cell itself. A skeletal muscle cell has an internal arrangement of contractile fibers that can slide past each other when the cell contracts, instead of having an arrangement of fibers that would curl or twist in order for a contraction to occur. This strucure enables the entire muscle tissue to contract, without wear and tear on the fibers that might increase the possibility of damage.

Figure 22.2 **Classes of tissues.**

The four classes of tissues are epithelial (pink), connective (blue), muscular (tan), and nervous (yellow).



From the many different types of animal cells, biologists have been able to categorize tissues into just four major types:

- *Epithelial tissue* (epithelium) covers body surfaces and lines body cavities.
- *Connective tissue* binds and supports body parts.
- *Muscular tissue* moves the body and its parts.
- *Nervous tissue* receives stimuli and conducts nerve impulses.

Except for nervous tissue, each type of tissue is subdivided into even more types (**Fig. 22.2**). This chapter looks at the structure and function of each of these tissue types, as well as the organs and organ systems where they are used.

Epithelial Tissue Protects

Epithelial tissue, also called *epithelium,* forms the external coverings and internal linings of many organs and covers the entire surface of the body. Therefore, for a substance to enter or exit the body—for example, in the digestive tract, the lungs, or the genital tract—it must cross an epithelial tissue. Epithelial cells adhere to one another, but an epithelium is generally only one cell layer thick. This enables an epithelium to serve a protective function, as substances have to pass through epithelial cells in order to reach a tissue beneath them.

MP3 Epithelial Tissue

Epithelial cells differ in shape (**Fig. 22.3**). *Squamous epithelium,* such as that lining blood vessels and areas of gas exchange in the lungs, is composed of thin, flattened cells. The outer region of the skin, called the epidermis, is stratified squamous epithelium in which the cells have been reinforced by

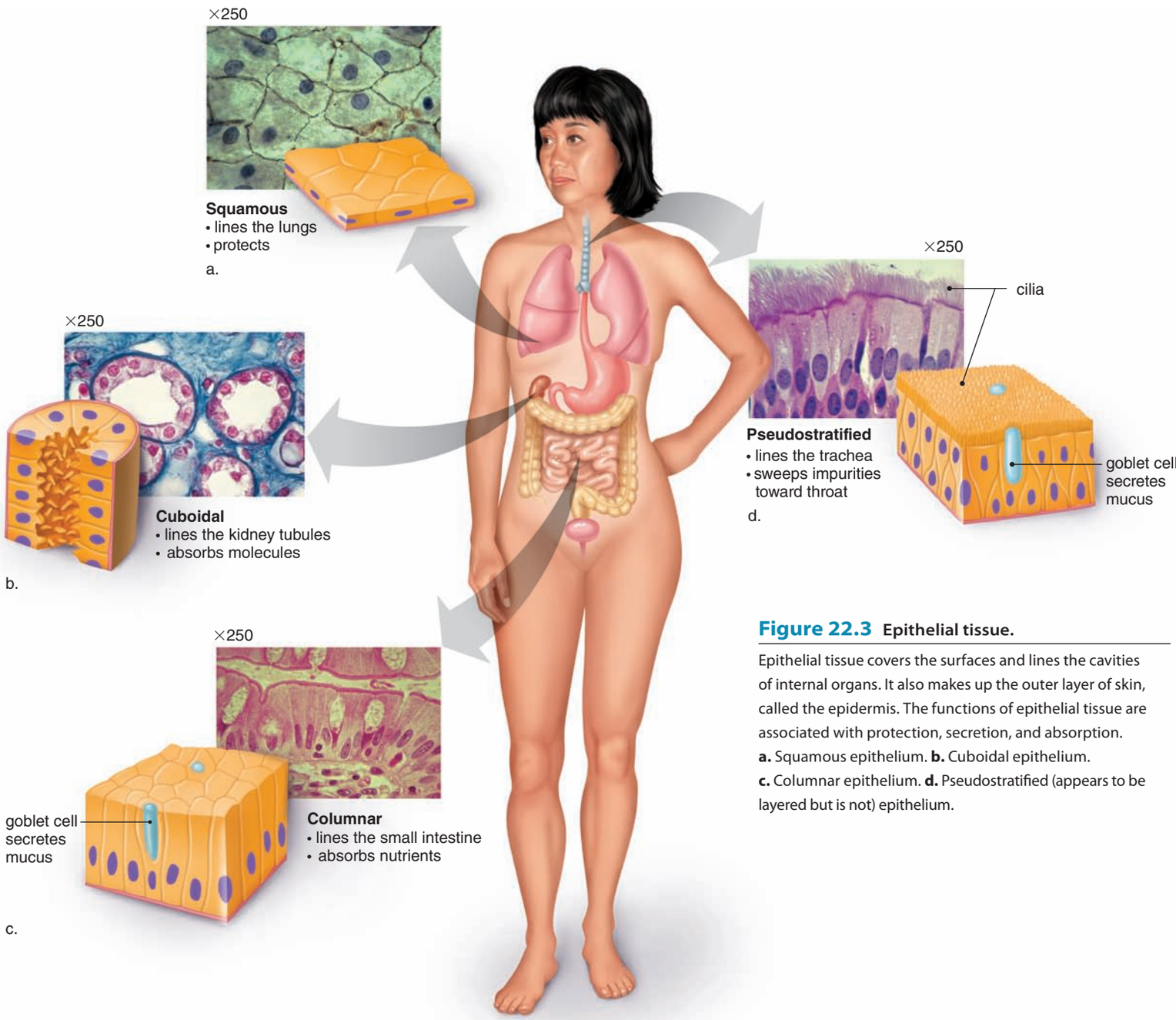


Figure 22.3 Epithelial tissue.

Epithelial tissue covers the surfaces and lines the cavities of internal organs. It also makes up the outer layer of skin, called the epidermis. The functions of epithelial tissue are associated with protection, secretion, and absorption. **a.** Squamous epithelium. **b.** Cuboidal epithelium. **c.** Columnar epithelium. **d.** Pseudostratified (appears to be layered but is not) epithelium.

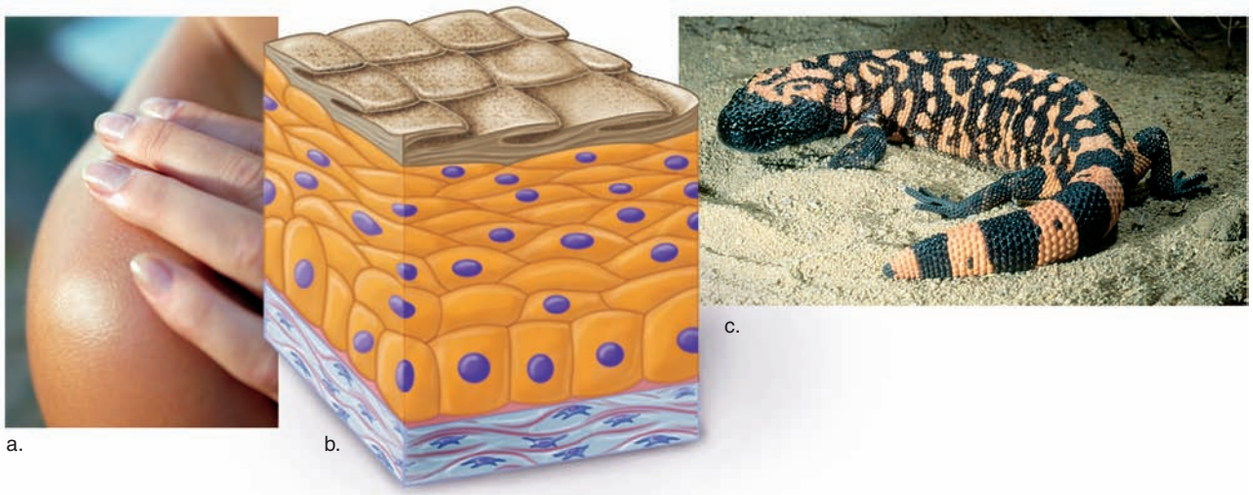


Figure 22.4 Skin.

a. The outer portion of skin, called the epidermis, is a stratified epithelium (**b.**). The many layers of tightly packed cells reinforced by the protein keratin make the skin protective against water loss and pathogen invasion. New epidermal cells arise in the innermost layer and are shed at the outer layer. **c.** In reptiles, such as a gila monster, the epidermis forms scales, which are simply projections hardened with keratin.

keratin, a protein that provides strength and waterproofing (**Fig. 22.4**). A stratified epithelium allows skin to protect the body from injury, drying out, and possible pathogen (virus and bacterium) invasion. *Cuboidal epithelium,* which lines the *lumen* (cavity) of a portion of the kidney, contains cube-shaped cells that are roughly the same height as width. *Columnar epithelium* has cells resembling rectangular pillars or columns, with nuclei usually located near the bottom of each cell. Columnar epithelium lines portions of the lumen of the digestive tract. In addition to the shape difference, epithelial cells can be classified by the number of layers these cells make in tissues. A layer that is only one cell thick is referred to as simple. Multiple layers of cells are called stratified. Pseudostratified epithelium is a special classification in which the tissue appears to have multiple layers of cells but actually has only one. This is normally found in columnar cells, where the nuclei of the cells, instead of all being near the bottom of each cell, are in various locations in each cell, giving the appearance of multiple layers (see Fig. 22.3). Pseudostratified epithelium lines the trachea (windpipe) (see Fig. 22.3*d*), where mucus traps foreign particles and the upward motion of cilia on the cells carries the mucus to the back of the throat, where it may be either swallowed or expelled. Smoking can cause a change in mucus production and secretion and inhibit ciliary action, resulting in an inflammatory condition called chronic bronchitis.

One or more types of epithelial cells are the primary components of **glands**, which produce and secrete products (mainly hormones). For example, each mucus-secreting goblet cell in the lining of the digestive tract is a single-celled gland that produces mucus that protects the digestive tract from acidic gastric juices (see Fig. 22.3*c*). In the pancreas, special cells form glands that secrete the hormones responsible for maintaining blood glucose levels.

Epithelial tissue cells can go through mitosis frequently and quickly, which is why it is found in places that get a lot of wear and tear. This feature is particularly useful along the digestive tract, where rough food particles and enzymes can damage the lining. Swallowing a potato chip and having a sharp edge scrape down the esophagus is a typical injury that can heal quickly due to the epithelial cell lining of the digestive tract. The liver, which is composed of cells of epithelial origin, can regenerate whole portions of itself that have been removed due to injury or surgery. But there is a price to pay for the ability of epithelial tissue to divide constantly—it is more likely than other tissue types to become cancerous. Cancers of epithelial tissue within the digestive tract, lungs, and breast are called carcinomas.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How quickly does epithelial tissue renew?

On average, if there is no injury and the body is simply replacing worn-out cells, a new epithelial cell, such as the kind in your skin, can renew and move to the top of the five layers of skin (in thick skin) in about a month. When there is an injury or damage, various hormones, such as epidermal growth factor, will speed up the process during wound healing, and it may take only a week or two.

Connective Tissue Connects and Supports

The many types of **connective tissue (Fig. 22.5)** are all involved in binding organs together and providing support and protection. As a rule, connective tissue cells are widely separated by a **matrix,** a noncellular material that varies from solid to semifluid to fluid. The matrix usually has fibers—notably, collagen fibers. Collagen, used mainly for structural support, is the most common protein in the human body, which gives you some idea of the prevalence of connective tissue.

MP3 Connective Tissue

Loose Fibrous and Related Connective Tissues

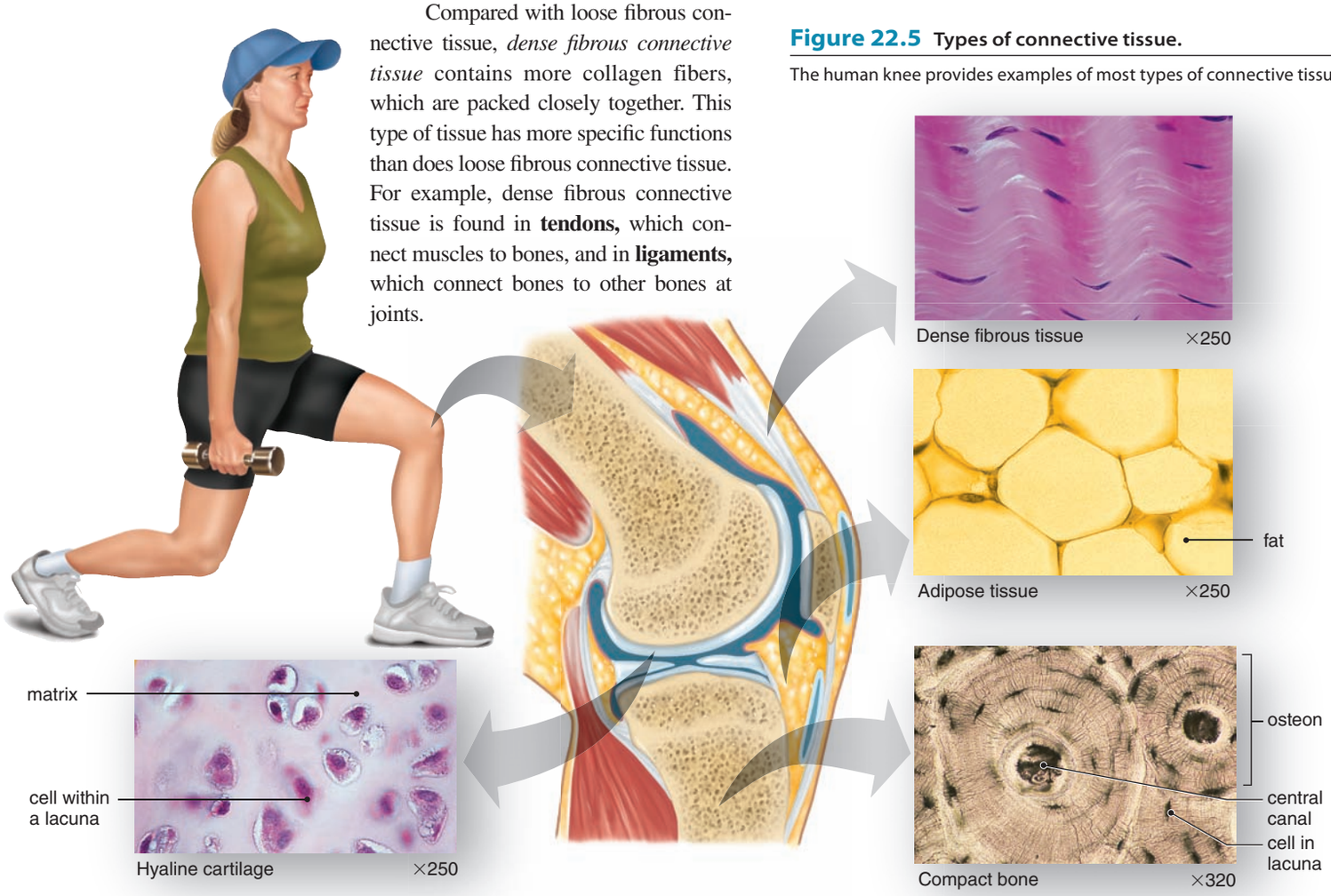
Let's consider *loose fibrous connective tissue* first and then compare the other types with it (see Fig. 22.2). This tissue occurs beneath an epithelium and connects it to the other tissues within an organ. It also forms a protective covering for many internal organs, such as muscles, blood vessels, and nerves. Its cells are called *fibroblasts* because they produce a matrix that contains fibers, including collagen fibers and elastic fibers, that stretch under tension and return to their original shape when released. The presence of loose fibrous connective tissue in the walls of lungs and arteries gives these organs resilience, the ability to expand and then return to their original shape without damage.

Adipose tissue is a type of loose connective tissue in which the fibroblasts enlarge and store fat, and there is limited matrix. Adipose tissue is located beneath the skin and around organs, such as the heart and kidneys, where it cushions and protects the organs and serves as long-term energy storage.

Compared with loose fibrous connective tissue, *dense fibrous connective tissue* contains more collagen fibers, which are packed closely together. This type of tissue has more specific functions than does loose fibrous connective tissue. For example, dense fibrous connective tissue is found in **tendons,** which connect muscles to bones, and in **ligaments,** which connect bones to other bones at joints.

Figure 22.5 Types of connective tissue.

The human knee provides examples of most types of connective tissue.



In **cartilage,** the cells lie in small, open cavities called *lacunae,* separated by a matrix that is semisolid yet flexible. *Hyaline cartilage,* the most common type of cartilage, contains only very fine collagen fibers (Fig. 22.5). The matrix has a white, translucent appearance when unstained. Hyaline cartilage is found in the nose and at the ends of the long bones and the ribs, and it forms rings in the walls of respiratory passages. The human fetal skeleton is also made of this type of cartilage, which makes it easier to pass through the birth canal. Most of the cartilage is later replaced by bone. Cartilaginous fishes, such as sharks, have a cartilaginous skeleton throughout their lives.

Bone is the most rigid connective tissue (Fig. 22.5). It consists of an extremely hard matrix of inorganic salts, primarily calcium salts, which are deposited around collagen fibers. The inorganic salts give bone rigidity, and the protein fibers provide elasticity and strength, much as steel rods do in reinforced concrete. The inorganic salts found in bone also act as storage for calcium and phosphate ions for the entire body. *Compact bone,* the most common type of bone in humans, consists of cylindrical structural units called osteons. The central canal of each osteon is surrounded by rings of hard matrix. Bone cells are located in lacunae between the rings of matrix. Blood vessels in the central canal carry nutrients that allow bone to renew itself.

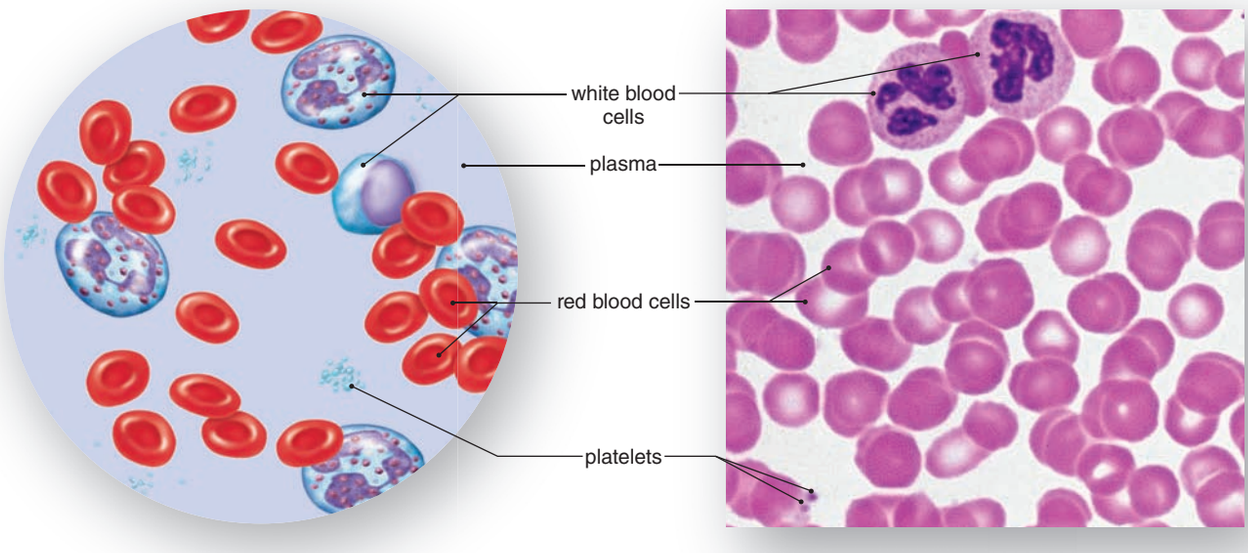
Blood

Blood is composed of several types of cells suspended in a liquid matrix called plasma. Blood is unlike other types of connective tissue in that the matrix is not made by the cells of the connective tissue (**Fig. 22.6**). Even though the blood is liquid, it is a connective tissue by definition; it consists of cells within a matrix. Blood has many functions for overall homeostasis of the body. It transports nutrients and oxygen to cells and removes their wastes. It helps distribute heat and plays a role in fluid, ion, and pH balance. Also, various components of blood help protect us from disease, and blood's ability to clot prevents fluid loss.

Blood contains three formed elements: red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets. **Red blood cells** are small, biconcave, disk-shaped cells without nuclei. The presence of the red pigment hemoglobin makes the cells red, as well as making blood as a whole red. Hemoglobin binds oxygen and allows the red blood cells to transport oxygen to the cells of the body.

Figure 22.6 **Blood, a liquid tissue.**

Blood is classified as connective tissue because the cells are separated by a matrix—plasma, the liquid portion of blood. The cellular components of blood are red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets (which are actually fragments of larger cells).



White blood cells can be distinguished from red blood cells by the fact that they are usually larger, have a nucleus, and would appear translucent without staining. White blood cells fight infection in two primary ways: (1) Some are phagocytic and engulf infectious pathogens; (2) others produce antibodies, molecules that combine with foreign substances to inactivate them.

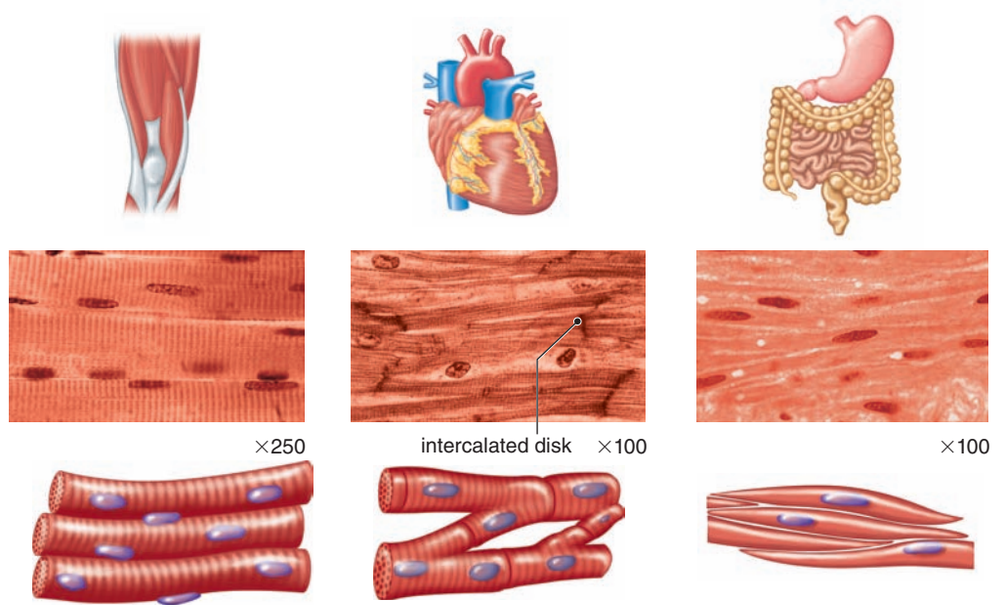
Platelets are another component of blood, but they are not complete cells; rather, they are fragments of giant cells present only in bone marrow. When a blood vessel is damaged, platelets form a plug that seals the vessel; along with injured tissues, platelets release molecules that help the clotting process.

Muscular Tissue Moves the Body

Muscular tissue and nervous tissue work together to enable animals to move. **Muscular tissue** contains contractile protein filaments, called actin and myosin filaments, that interact to produce movement. The three types of vertebrate muscles are skeletal, cardiac, and smooth.

Skeletal muscle, which works under voluntary movement, is attached by tendons to the bones of the skeleton, and when it contracts, bones move. Contraction of skeletal muscle, being under voluntary control, occurs faster than in the other two muscle types. The cells of skeletal muscle, called fibers, are cylindrical and quite long—sometimes they run the entire length of the muscle (**Fig. 22.7*a***). They arise during development when several cells fuse, resulting in one fiber with multiple nuclei. The nuclei are located at the edge of the cell, just inside the plasma membrane. The fibers have alternating light and dark bands running across the cell, giving them a striated appearance. These bands are due to the arrangement of actin filaments and myosin filaments in the cell.

Cardiac muscle is found only in the walls of the heart, and its contraction pumps blood and accounts for the heartbeat. Like skeletal muscle, cardiac muscle has striations, but the contraction of the heart is autorhythmic (occurring at a set pace) and involuntary (Fig. 22.7*b*). Cardiac muscle cells also differ from skeletal muscle cells in that they have a single, centrally placed nucleus. The cells are branched and seemingly fused, one with the others. The heart appears to be composed of one large, interconnecting mass of muscular cells. Actually, cardiac muscle cells are separate and individual, but they are bound end to end at intercalated disks**,** areas where folded plasma membranes allow the contraction impulse to spread from cell to cell.



a. **Skeletal muscle**
- has striated, tubular, multinucleated fibers
- is usually attached to skeleton
- is voluntary

b. **Cardiac muscle**
- has striated, branched, uninucleated fibers
- occurs in walls of heart
- is involuntary

c. **Smooth muscle**
- has spindle-shaped, nonstriated, uninucleated fibers
- occurs in walls of internal organs
- is involuntary

Figure 22.7 Types of muscular tissue.

The three types of muscular tissue are (**a**) skeletal, (**b**) cardiac, and (**c**) smooth.

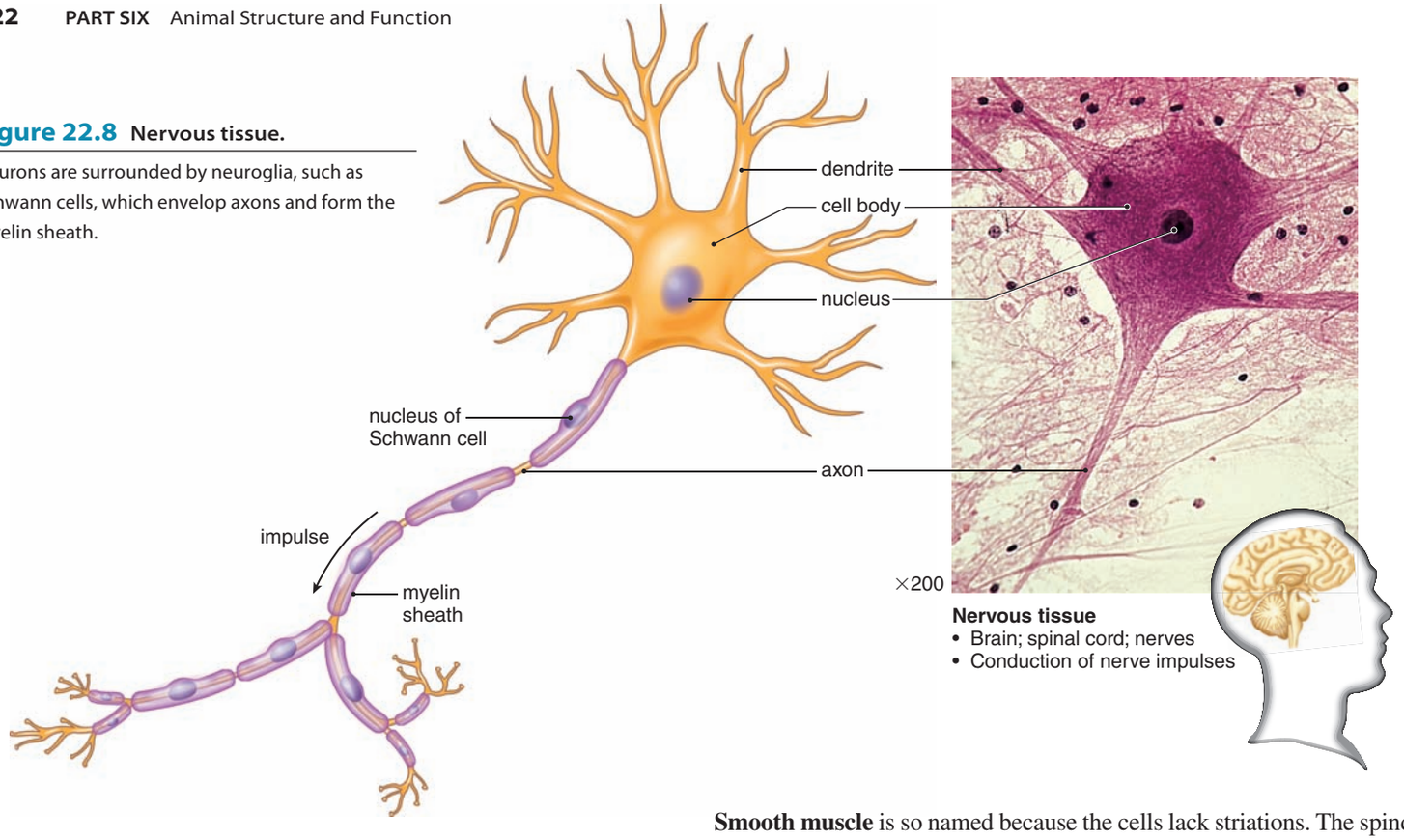


Figure 22.8 **Nervous tissue.**

Neurons are surrounded by neuroglia, such as Schwann cells, which envelop axons and form the myelin sheath.

Smooth muscle is so named because the cells lack striations. The spindle-shaped cells form layers in which the thick middle portion of one cell is opposite the thin ends of adjacent cells. Consequently, the nuclei form an irregular pattern in the tissue (Fig. 22.7*c*). Like cardiac muscle, smooth muscle is involuntary. Smooth muscle is also sometimes called *visceral* muscle because it is found in the walls of the viscera (intestines, stomach, and other internal organs) and blood vessels. Smooth muscle contracts more slowly than skeletal muscle but can remain contracted for a longer time. When the smooth muscle of the intestines contracts, food moves along its lumen. When the smooth muscle of the blood vessels contracts, blood vessels constrict, helping raise blood pressure.

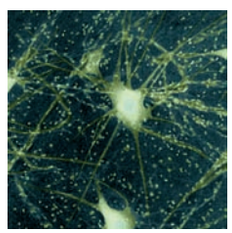
Nervous Tissue Communicates

Nervous tissue coordinates the functions of body parts and allows an animal to respond to external and internal environments. The nervous system depends on (1) sensory input, (2) integration of data, and (3) motor output to carry out its functions. Nerves conduct impulses from sensory receptors, such as pain receptors in the skin, to the spinal cord and brain, where integration occurs. The phenomenon called sensation occurs only in the brain, however. Nerves then conduct nerve impulses away from the spinal cord and brain to the muscles and glands, causing them to contract or secrete in response. In this way, a coordinated response to both internal and external stimuli is achieved.

A nerve cell is called a **neuron.** Every neuron has three parts: dendrites, a cell body, and an axon (**Fig. 22.8**). A *dendrite* is an extension of the neuron cell body that conducts signals toward the cell body. The *cell body* contains the major concentration of the cytoplasm and the nucleus of the neuron. An *axon* is an extension that conducts nerve impulses away from the neuron cell body to other cells. The brain and spinal cord contain many neurons, whereas **nerves** contain only bundles of axons of neurons. The dendrites and cell bodies of these neurons are located in the spinal cord or brain, depending on whether it is a spinal nerve or a cranial nerve.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How big are neurons and how quickly do they communicate?



The average adult human brain weighs about 3 pounds and contains over 100 billion neurons. Some of the neurons—specifically, the axons of the neurons—are less than a millimeter in length; others, such as the axons from the spinal cord to a muscle in the foot, can be 3 feet long or more. The speed at which transmission occurs can vary as well. It can be as slow as 0.5 meter/second or as fast as 120 meters/second—268 mph!

In addition to neurons, nervous tissue contains **neuroglia,** cells that support and nourish neurons. They outnumber neurons nine to one and take up more than half the volume of the brain. Although their primary function is support, research is currently being conducted to determine how much neuroglia directly contribute to brain function. Schwann cells are the type of neuroglia that encircle long nerve fibers within nerves, forming a protective coating on the axons called a myelin sheath. The presence of myelin sheaths allows nerve impulses to travel much more quickly down the axon, similar to insulation on the outer walls of a house.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The animal body is made up of multiple levels of organization.

Check Your Progress 22.1

1. Explain the difference between an organ and a tissue.
2. List the four basic tissue types, and describe the functions of each.
3. Explain why epithelial tissue is found where it is in the human body.
4. Summarize why connective tissue is needed in the body.
5. Describe the three types of muscular tissue, and give an example of each.
6. Explain how nervous tissue is involved in the relay of information.

22.2 Organs and Organ Systems

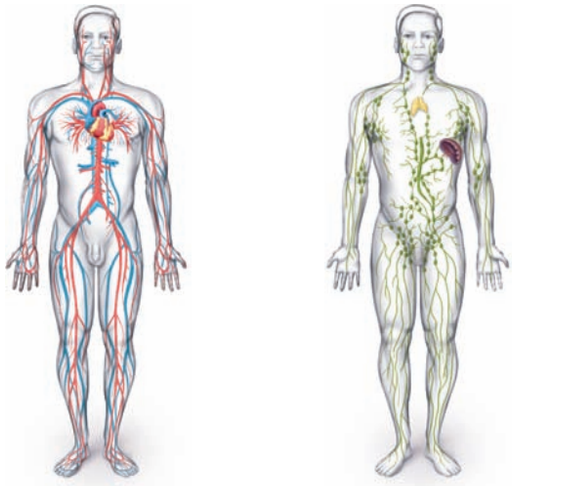
Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Classify each organ system according to its involvement in transport, body maintenance, control, sensory input and motor output, or reproduction.
2. List the general functions of each organ system.

Organs are composed of a number of tissues, and the structure and function of an organ are dependent on those tissues. Since an organ has many types of tissues, it can perform a function that none of the tissues can do alone. For example, the function of the bladder is to store urine and to expel it when convenient. But this function is dependent on the individual tissues making up the bladder. The epithelium lining the bladder helps the organ store urine by stretching, while preventing urine from leaking into the internal body cavity. The muscles of the bladder propel the urine forward into the urethra, so that it can be removed from the body. Similarly, the functions of an organ system are dependent on its organs. The function of the urinary system is to produce urine, store it, and then transport it. The kidneys produce urine, the bladder stores it, and various tubes transport it from the kidneys to the bladder (the ureters) and out of the body (through the urethra).

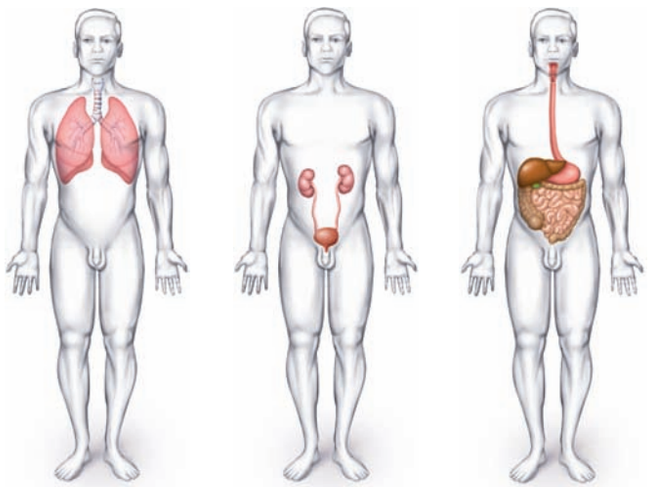
This text divides the systems of the body into those involved in (1) the transport of fluids throughout the body, (2) maintenance of the body, (3) control of the body's systems, (4) sensory input and motor output, and (5) reproduction. All these systems have functions that contribute to homeostasis, the relative constancy of the internal environment (see Section 22.3).



a. Cardiovascular system b. Lymphatic and immune systems

Figure 22.9 **Transport systems.**

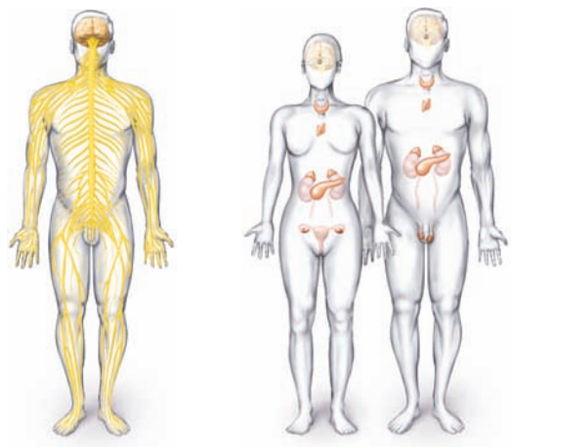
Both the cardiovascular and lymphatic systems are involved in transport. The lymphatic system is also involved in defense against disease.



a. Respiratory system b. Urinary system c. Digestive system

Figure 22.10 **Maintenance systems.**

The respiratory, urinary, and digestive systems keep the body's internal environment constant.



a. Nervous system b. Endocrine system

Figure 22.11 **Control systems.**

The nervous and endocrine systems coordinate the other systems of the body.

Transport

The **cardiovascular system** (**Fig. 22.9*a***) consists of blood, the heart, and the blood vessels that carry blood throughout the body. The body's cells are surrounded by a liquid called *tissue fluid,* or more formally, *interstitial fluid.* Blood transports nutrients and oxygen to tissue fluid for the cells and removes waste molecules, excreted by cells, from the tissue fluid. The **lymphatic system** (Fig. 22.9*b*) consists of lymphatic vessels, lymph, lymph nodes, and other lymphatic organs. Lymphatic vessels absorb fat from the digestive system and collect excess tissue fluid, which is returned to the blood in the cardiovascular system.

The cardiovascular and lymphatic systems are also involved in defense against disease. Along with the thymus and spleen, certain blood cells in the lymph and blood are part of the **immune system,** which specifically protects the body from disease.

Maintenance of the Body

Three systems (respiratory, urinary, and digestive) either add or remove substances from the blood. If the composition of the blood remains constant, so does that of the tissue fluid.

The **respiratory system** (**Fig. 22.10*a***) consists of the lungs, the trachea, and other structures that take air to and from the lungs. The respiratory system brings oxygen into the body and takes carbon dioxide out through the lungs. It also exchanges gases with the blood.

The **urinary system** (Fig. 22.10*b*) contains the kidneys and the urinary bladder, along with the structures that transport urine. This system rids blood of wastes and helps regulate the fluid level and chemical content of the blood.

The **digestive system** (Fig. 22.10*c*) consists of the organs along the digestive tract, together with the associated organs, such as the teeth, salivary glands, liver, and pancreas. This system receives food and digests it into nutrient molecules, which then enter the blood.

Control

The **nervous system** (**Fig. 22.11*a***) consists of the brain, the spinal cord, and associated nerves. The nerves conduct nerve impulses from receptors to the brain and spinal cord. They also conduct nerve impulses from the brain and spinal cord to the muscles and glands, allowing us to respond to both external and internal stimuli. Sensory receptors and sense organs are sometimes considered a part of the nervous system.

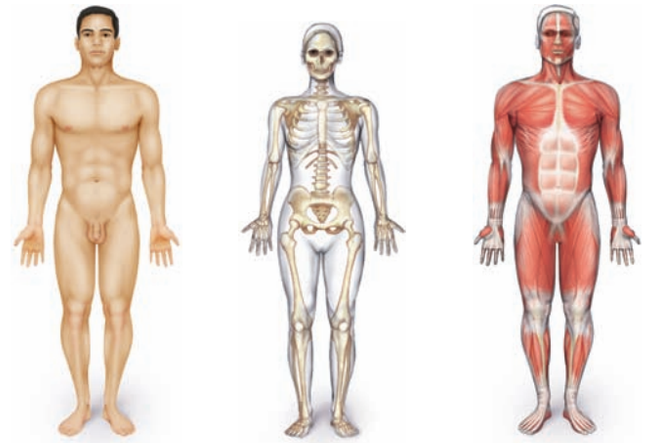
The **endocrine system** (Fig. 22.11*b*) consists of the hormonal glands, such as the thyroid and adrenal glands, which secrete hormones, chemicals that serve as messengers between body parts. Both the nervous and endocrine systems coordinate and regulate the functions of the body's other systems. The nervous system tends to cause quick responses in the body, while the body's responses to hormones released by the endocrine system tend to last much longer. The endocrine system also helps maintain the proper functioning of the male and female reproductive organs.

Sensory Input and Motor Output

The **integumentary system** (**Fig. 22.12*a***) consists of the skin and its accessory structures. The sensory receptors in the skin, and in organs such as the eyes and ears, respond to specific external stimuli and communicate with the brain and spinal cord by way of nerve fibers. These messages may cause the brain to respond to a stimulus.

The **skeletal system** (Fig. 22.12*b*) and the **muscular system** (Fig. 22.12*c*) enable the body and its parts to move as a result of motor output. The skeleton, as a whole, serves as a place of attachment for the skeletal muscles. Contraction of the muscles in the muscular system accounts for the movement of body parts.

These three systems protect and support the body. The skeletal system, consisting of the bones of the skeleton, protects body parts. For example, the skull forms a protective encasement for the brain, as does the rib cage for the heart and lungs. The skin serves as a barrier between the outside world and the body's tissues.



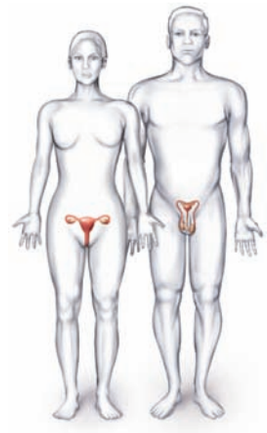
a. Integumentary system b. Skeletal system c. Muscular system

Figure 22.12 Sensory input and motor output.

Sensory receptors in the skin (integumentary system) and the sense organs send input to the skeletal and muscular systems, the control systems that cause a response to stimuli.

Reproduction

The **reproductive system** (**Fig. 22.13**) involves different organs in the male and female. The male reproductive system consists of the testes, other glands, and various ducts, such as the ductus deferens, that conduct semen to and through the penis. The testes produce sex cells called sperm. The female reproductive system consists of the ovaries, uterine tubes, uterus, vagina, and external genitals. The ovaries produce sex cells called eggs. When a sperm fertilizes an egg, an offspring begins development.



Reproductive system

Figure 22.13 The reproductive system.

The reproductive organs in the female and male differ. The reproductive system ensures the survival of the species.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Organ systems play specific roles in the human body.

Check Your Progress 22.2

1. Distinguish between an organ and an organ system.
2. Describe the common function of the nervous and endocrine systems.
3. Classify each of the body systems by the overall functions they perform, such as transport and sensory input.

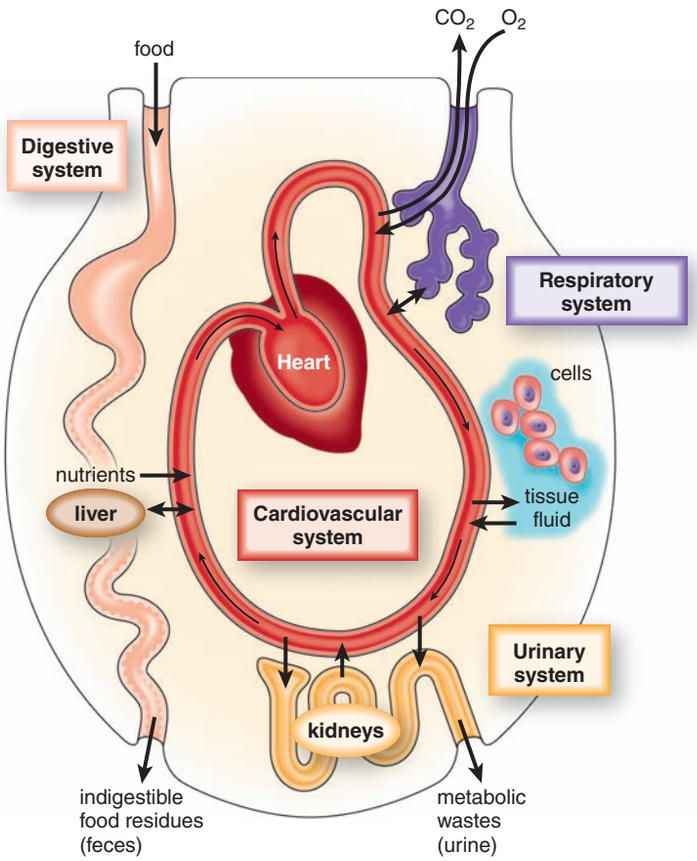


Figure 22.14 **Major organ systems and homeostasis.**

The organ systems of the body interact with the internal and external environment and with one another. These interactions can alter the composition of the tissue fluids. For example, the respiratory system exchanges gases with the external environment and with the blood. The digestive system takes in food and adds nutrients to the blood, and the urinary system removes metabolic wastes from the blood and excretes them. In the respiratory system, the blood exchanges nutrients and oxygen for carbon dioxide and other wastes with tissue fluid, thus allowing the composition of the tissue fluid to stay within normal limits.

22.3 Homeostasis

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain the importance of homeostasis.
2. Use the concept of negative feedback to explain body temperature control in humans.

When discussing homeostasis, there are two types of environments to consider: the external environment, which includes everything outside the body, and the internal environment, which includes our cells, tissues, fluids, and organs. Recall that cells live in a liquid environment called tissue fluid. Tissue fluid is constantly renewed with nutrients and gases by exchanges with the blood. Therefore, blood and tissue fluid constitute part of the body's internal environment. The volume and composition of tissue fluid remain relatively constant only as long as blood composition remains near normal levels. We say "relatively constant" because the composition of both tissue fluid and blood varies within an acceptable range. Maintenance of the relatively constant condition of the internal environment within these ranges is called **homeostasis.**

MP3 Homeostasis

Because of homeostasis, even though external conditions may change dramatically, internal conditions stay within a narrow range. For example, the temperature of the body is maintained near 37°C (97°F to 99°F), even if the surrounding temperature is lower or higher. If you eat acidic foods, the pH of your blood still stays about 7.4, and even if you eat a candy bar, the amount of sugar in your blood remains at just about 0.1%.

3D Animation Homeostasis

Organ Systems and Homeostasis

All the systems of the body contribute to maintaining homeostasis **(Fig. 22.14)**. The cardiovascular system conducts blood to and away from capillaries, where exchange occurs. Red blood cells transport oxygen and participate in the transport of carbon dioxide. White blood cells fight infection, and platelets participate in the clotting process. Lymphatic capillaries collect excess tissue fluid and return it via lymphatic vessels to the cardiovascular system. Lymph nodes help purify lymph and keep it free of pathogens.

The digestive system takes in and digests food, providing nutrient molecules that enter the blood to replace those that are constantly being used by the body's cells. The respiratory system removes carbon dioxide from and adds oxygen to the blood. The kidneys are extremely important in homeostais, not only because they remove metabolic wastes but also because they regulate blood volume, salt balance, and pH. The liver, among other functions, regulates the glucose concentration of the blood. After a meal, the liver removes excess glucose from the blood for storage as glycogen. Later, the glycogen is broken down to replace the glucose that was used by body cells. The liver makes urea, a nitrogenous end product of protein metabolism.

The nervous and endocrine systems regulate the other systems of the body. In the nervous system, sensory receptors send nerve impulses to control centers in the brain, which then direct effectors (muscles or glands) to become active.Muscles bring about an immediate change. Endocrine glands secrete hormones that bring about a slower, more lasting change that keeps the internal environment relatively stable.

Negative Feedback

Negative feedback is the primary homeostatic mechanism that allows the body to keep the internal environment constant. A negative feedback mechanism has at least two components: a sensor and a control center (**Fig. 22.15**). The sensor detects a change in the internal environment (a stimulus); the control center initiates an effect that brings conditions back to normal. At that point, the sensor is no longer activated. In other words, a negative feedback mechanism is present when the output of the system dampens (reduces) the original stimulus.

Consider a simple example. When the pancreas detects that the blood glucose level is too high, it secretes insulin, a hormone that causes cells to take up glucose. Then the blood sugar level returns to normal, and the pancreas is no longer stimulated to secrete insulin.

When conditions exceed their limits and feedback mechanisms cannot compensate, illness results. For example, if the pancreas is unable to produce insulin, as in diabetes mellitus, the blood sugar level becomes dangerously high and the individual can become seriously ill. The study of homeostatic mechanisms is therefore medically important.

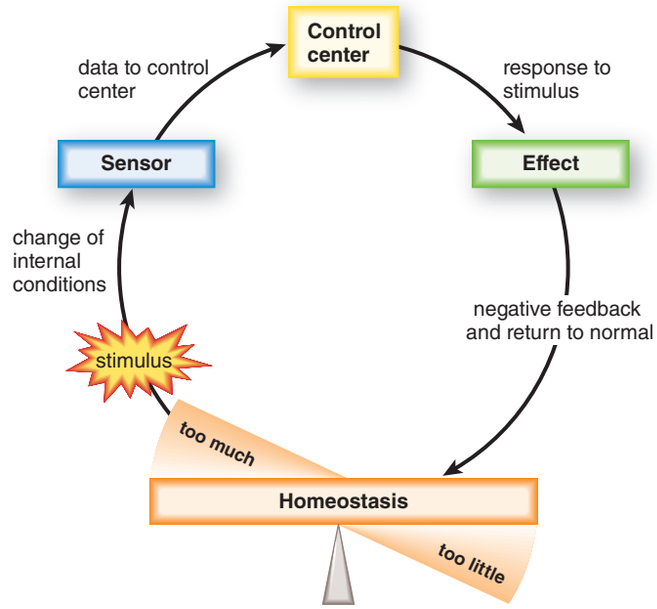


Figure 22.15 **Negative feedback mechanism.**

This diagram shows how the basic elements of a negative feedback mechanism work.

Mechanical Example

A home heating system is often used to illustrate how a more complicated negative feedback mechanism works (**Fig. 22.16**). Suppose you set the thermostat at 20°C (68°F). This is the *set point*. The thermostat contains a thermometer, a sensor that detects when the room temperature is above or below the set point. The thermostat also contains a control center; it turns the furnace off when the room is warm and turns it on when the room is cool. When the furnace is off, the room cools a bit, and when the furnace is on, the room warms a bit. In other words, a negative feedback system results in fluctuation above and below the set point.

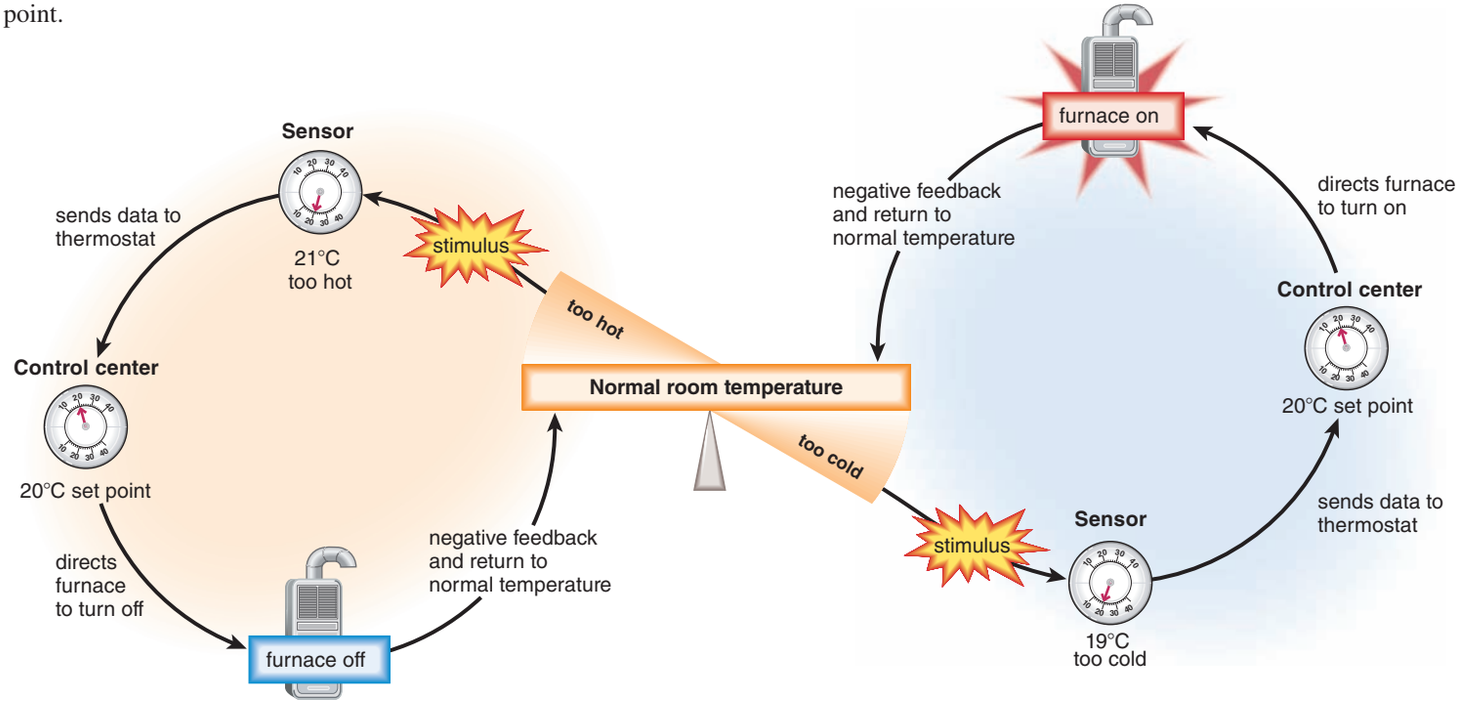


Figure 22.16 **Regulation of room temperature.**

This diagram shows how room temperature is returned to normal when the room becomes too hot. A contrary cycle in which the furnace turns on and gives off heat returns the room temperature to normal when the room becomes too cold.

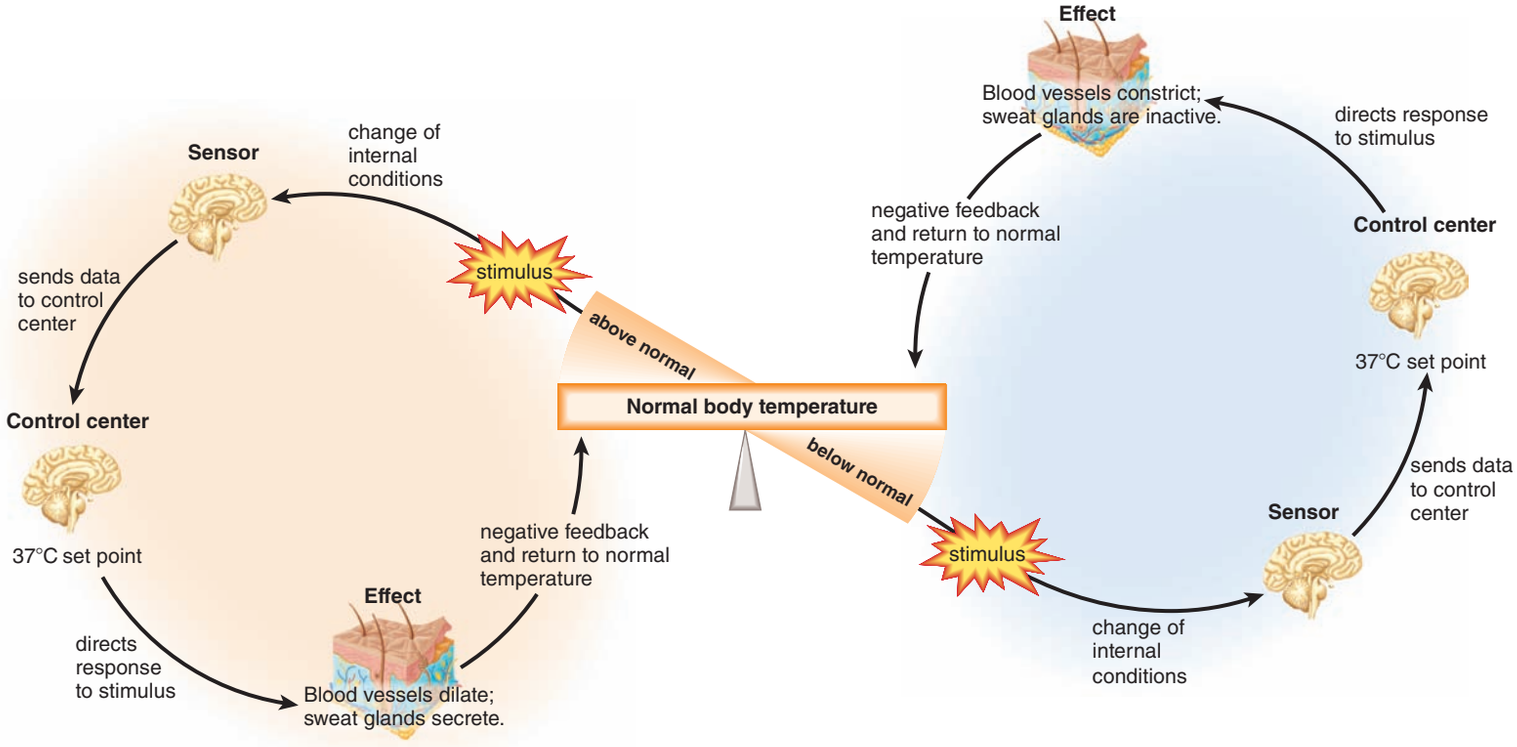


Figure 22.17 **Regulation of body temperature.**

This diagram shows how normal body temperature is maintained by a negative feedback system.

Human Example: Regulation of Body Temperature

The thermostat for body temperature is located in the part of the brain called the hypothalamus. When the core body temperature falls below normal, the control center directs (via nerve impulses) the blood vessels of the skin to constrict (**Fig. 22.17**). This action conserves heat. If the core body temperature falls even lower, the control center sends nerve impulses to the skeletal muscles, and shivering occurs. Shivering generates heat, and gradually body temperature rises toward 37°C (98.6°F). When the temperature rises to normal, the control center is inactivated.

When body temperature is higher than normal, the control center directs the blood vessels of the skin to dilate. More blood is then able to flow near the surface of the body, where heat can be lost to the environment. In addition, the nervous system activates the sweat glands, and the evaporation of sweat helps lower body temperature. Gradually, body temperature decreases to 37°C (98.6°F).

MP3 Temperature Regulation

Notice that a negative feedback mechanism prevents continued change in the same direction; body temperature does not get warmer and warmer, because warmth stimulates changes that decrease body temperature. Also, body temperature does not get colder and colder, because a body temperature below normal causes changes that bring body temperature up.

22.3

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Homeostasis is maintained by the proper functioning of each organ system.

Check Your Progress 22.3

1. Summarize why homeostasis is needed by living organisms.
2. Summarize the components of a negative feedback mechanism.
3. Describe how the control center in the brain responds to a drop as well as a rise in internal temperature.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	MP3 Files
22.3 Feedback Mechanisms	**22.1** Overview of Tissues • Epithelial Tissue • Connective issue • Muscle Tissue • Nervous Tissue **22.3** Homeostasis • Temperature Regulation

3D Animation
Homeostasis

The 3D animation "Homeostasis" provides an interactive look at how our bodies regulate glucose levels.

SUMMARIZE

22.1 The Body's Organization

Levels of animal organization:

Cells → **Tissues** → **Organs** → Organ Systems → Organism

Four groups of vertebrate tissues:

Epithelial | Connective | Muscular | Nervous

Epithelial Tissue Protects

Epithelial tissue covers the body and lines its cavities.

- The types of epithelial tissue are squamous, cuboidal, and columnar.
- Epithelial cells sometimes form **glands** that secrete either into ducts or into the blood.

Connective Tissue Connects and Supports

In **connective tissue,** cells are separated by a matrix that contains fibers (e.g., collagen fibers). The four types are

- Loose fibrous connective tissue, including adipose tissue
- Dense fibrous connective tissue (tendons and ligaments)
- **Cartilage** and **bone;** the matrix for cartilage is more flexible than that for bone
- **Blood;** the matrix is a liquid called plasma, and the more common cells are **red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets** (cell fragments)

Muscular Tissue Moves the Body

Muscular tissue is of three types: skeletal, cardiac, and smooth.

- Both **skeletal muscle** (attached to bones) and **cardiac muscle** (forms the heart wall) are striated.
- Both cardiac muscle (wall of heart) and **smooth muscle** (wall of internal organs) are involuntary.

Nervous Tissue Communicates

- Nervous tissue is composed of neurons and several types of neuroglia. These are often organized in the body as nerves.
- Each neuron has dendrites, a cell body, and an axon. Axons conduct nerve impulses.

22.2 Organs and Organ Systems

Organs make up organ systems, which are summarized in **Table 22.1.**

Table 22.1 Organ Systems

Transport	*Sensory*
Cardiovascular system (heart and blood vessels) **Lymphatic system** (lymphatic vessels)	**Integumentary system** (skin)
Maintenance	***Motor***
Digestive system (e.g., stomach, intestines) **Respiratory system** (lungs) **Urinary system** (urinary bladder and kidneys)	**Skeletal system** (bones and cartilage) **Muscular system** (muscles)
Control	***Reproduction***
Nervous system (brain, spinal cord, and nerves) **Endocrine system** (glands—e.g., thyroid and adrenal glands)	**Reproductive system** (testes in males;uterus and ovaries in females)

22.3 Homeostasis

Homeostasis is the relative constancy of the body's internal environment. The internal environment consists of blood and tissue fluid. Due to the exchange of nutrients and wastes with the blood, tissue fluid stays constant:

Organ Systems and Homeostasis

All organ systems contribute to the relative constancy of tissue fluid and blood.

- The cardiovascular system transports nutrients to cells and wastes from cells.
- The lymphatic system absorbs excess tissue fluid and functions in immunity.
- The digestive system takes in food and adds nutrients to the blood.
- The respiratory system carries out gas exchange with the external environment and the blood.
- The urinary system (i.e., the kidneys) removes metabolic wastes and regulates the pH and salt content of the blood.
- The nervous system and endocrine system regulate the other systems.

Negative Feedback

Negative feedback mechanisms keep the internal environment relatively stable. When a sensor detects a change above or below a set point, a control center brings about an effect that reverses the change, brings conditions back to normal, and shuts off the response.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Tissues work together to make organs, which then form organ systems, all of which must maintain homeostasis for our well-being.

22.1 The animal body is made up of multiple levels of organization.

22.2 Organ systems play specific roles in the human body.

22.3 Homeostasis is maintained by the proper functioning of each organ system.

For more information about how the body maintains homeostasis see the following discussions:

Section 23.3 examines the function of blood, an example of a connective tissue.

Chapter 24 examines the structure and function of the respiratory, urinary, and digestive systems.

Section 27.2 describes the role of the hypothalamus in regulating the internal conditions of the body.

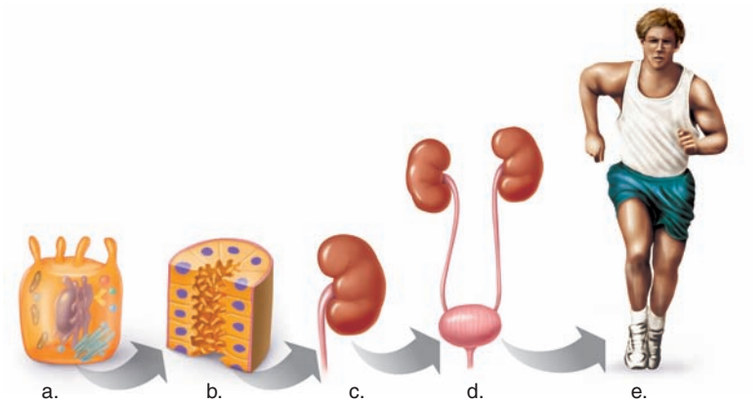
ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

22.1 The Body's Organization

1. Label the levels of biological organization in the following illustration.



For questions 2–6, identify the tissue in the key that matches the description. Each answer may be used more than once.

Key:

a. epithelial tissue
b. connective tissue
c. muscular tissue
d. nervous tissue

2. contains cells that are separated by a matrix

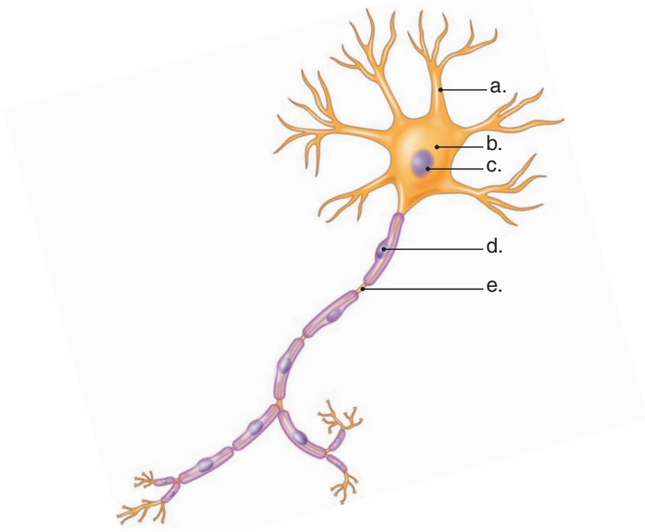
3. has a protective role

4. covers the body surface and forms the linings of organs

5. allows animals to respond to their environment

6. contains actin and myosin filaments

7. Label the parts of a neuron in the following illustration.



8. Blood is a(n) _____ tissue because it has a _____.

a. connective, gap junction
b. muscular, matrix
c. epithelial, gap junction
d. connective, matrix

22.2 Organs and Organ Systems

9. The skeletal system functions in
- **a.** blood cell production.
- **b.** mineral storage.
- **c.** movement.
- **d.** All of these are correct.

10. The _____ system produces hormones.
- **a.** nervous
- **b.** urinary
- **c.** skeletal
- **d.** endocrine

11. The _____ system is responsible for processing information in the body.
- **a.** endocrine
- **b.** skeletal
- **c.** nervous
- **d.** lymphatic

22.3 Homeostasis

12. A major function of tissue fluid is to
- **a.** provide nutrients and oxygen to cells and remove wastes.
- **b.** keep cells warm.
- **c.** prevent cells from touching each other.
- **d.** provide flexibility by allowing cells to slide over each other.

13. Which of these is an example of homeostasis?
- **a.** Muscular tissue is specialized to contract.
- **b.** Normal body temperature is always about 37°C.
- **c.** There are more red blood cells than white blood cells.
- **d.** Receptors in the eyes detect light.

14. Which of these body systems contribute to homeostasis?
- **a.** digestive and urinary systems
- **b.** respiratory and nervous systems
- **c.** nervous and endocrine systems
- **d.** immune and cardiovascular systems
- **e.** All of these are correct.

15. Homeostasis maintains the body's internal conditions around an absolute value.
- **a.** True
- **b.** False

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Homeostasis

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Patients with muscular dystrophy often develop heart disease. However, heart disease in these patients may not be detected until it has progressed past the point at which treatment options are effective. New research indicates that the link between muscular dystrophy and heart disease is so strong that muscular dystrophy patients should be screened for heart disease early, so that treatment can be started. What do you suppose is the link between muscular dystrophy and heart disease?

2. If homeostasis of our internal environment is so important to keep us alive, why do we interact with the outside environment at the risk of an imbalance to the internal environment? Would it be possible to survive with no interactions between the internal and external environments? Give a few examples of what could occur if no interactions were possible.

3. Not all animals have organ systems or even organs. What are the advantages to having specific tissues, organs, and organ systems that perform specific functions in the body? In other words, what might have been some of the selective pressures that led to the evolution of more complex organisms?

23

The Transport Systems

OUTLINE

23.1 Open and Closed Circulatory Systems 433

23.2 Transport in Humans 436

23.3 Blood: A Transport Medium 443

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 22.1 Why is blood considered to be a connective tissue?

Section 22.2 What is the overall role of the cardiovascular system in the body?

Section 22.3 How does the cardiovascular system play a central role in maintaining homeostasis?

The Deadliest Disease

On June 13, 2008, Tim Russert, the longtime host of NBC's *Meet the Press* TV program, collapsed in his office. Co-workers called 911, and paramedics arrived four minutes later. After determining that 58-year-old Russert's heart wasn't beating, they began CPR and attempted to defibrillate his heart three times, with no success. Less than an hour later, the much-respected television personality and journalist was pronounced dead at a local hospital.

The cardiovascular system, which includes the heart and blood vessels, transports oxygen, nutrients, and wastes to and from the tissues. Diseases affecting this system, such as heart attack and stroke, are a major cause of death in the more developed countries of the world. A person currently living in the United States has about a one-in-three chance of dying of heart disease, and if you add in all the other conditions that can affect the blood vessels, your odds are greater than 50:50 of eventually developing some type of cardiovascular disease (CVD).

Fortunately, we can take steps to reduce the risk of CVD. Eating a heathy diet, exercising regularly, and avoiding smoking are all effective approaches to improving heart health. New technologies are also being developed to treat existing CVD, as discussed in this chapter. The ideal approach, however, is to do all you can to prevent CVD from affecting yourself or your loved ones. Perhaps the first step is to understand why the cardiovascular system is so essential to life.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. When the heart stops functioning, what is the actual cause of death?
2. Of the many functions of blood, which are the most essential to life?
3. What are the major factors that lead to cardiovascular disease, and which can be prevented?

23.1 Open and Closed Circulatory Systems

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe how organisms without a circulatory system exchange materials with the external environment.
2. Distinguish between an open and a closed circulatory system and give an example of each.
3. Compare the circulatory systems of fish, amphibians, birds, and mammals.
4. Summarize the differences between the pulmonary and systemic circulatory systems.

Most animals have a circulatory system to deliver oxygen and nutrients to cells and to take carbon dioxide and wastes away from cells. In some animals, the body plan makes a circulatory system unnecessary (**Fig. 23.1**). In a hydra, cells either are part of a single layer of external cells or line the gastrovascular cavity. In either case, each cell is exposed to water and can independently exchange gases and rid itself of wastes. The cells that line the gastrovascular cavity are specialized to carry out digestion. They pass nutrient molecules to other cells by diffusion. In a planarian, a trilobed gastrovascular cavity branches throughout the small, flattened body. No cell is very far from one of the digestive branches, so nutrient molecules can diffuse from cell to cell. Similarly, diffusion meets the respiratory and excretory needs of the cells.

Some other animals, such as nematodes and echinoderms, rely on the movement of fluid within a body cavity (or coelom) to circulate gases, nutrients, and wastes.

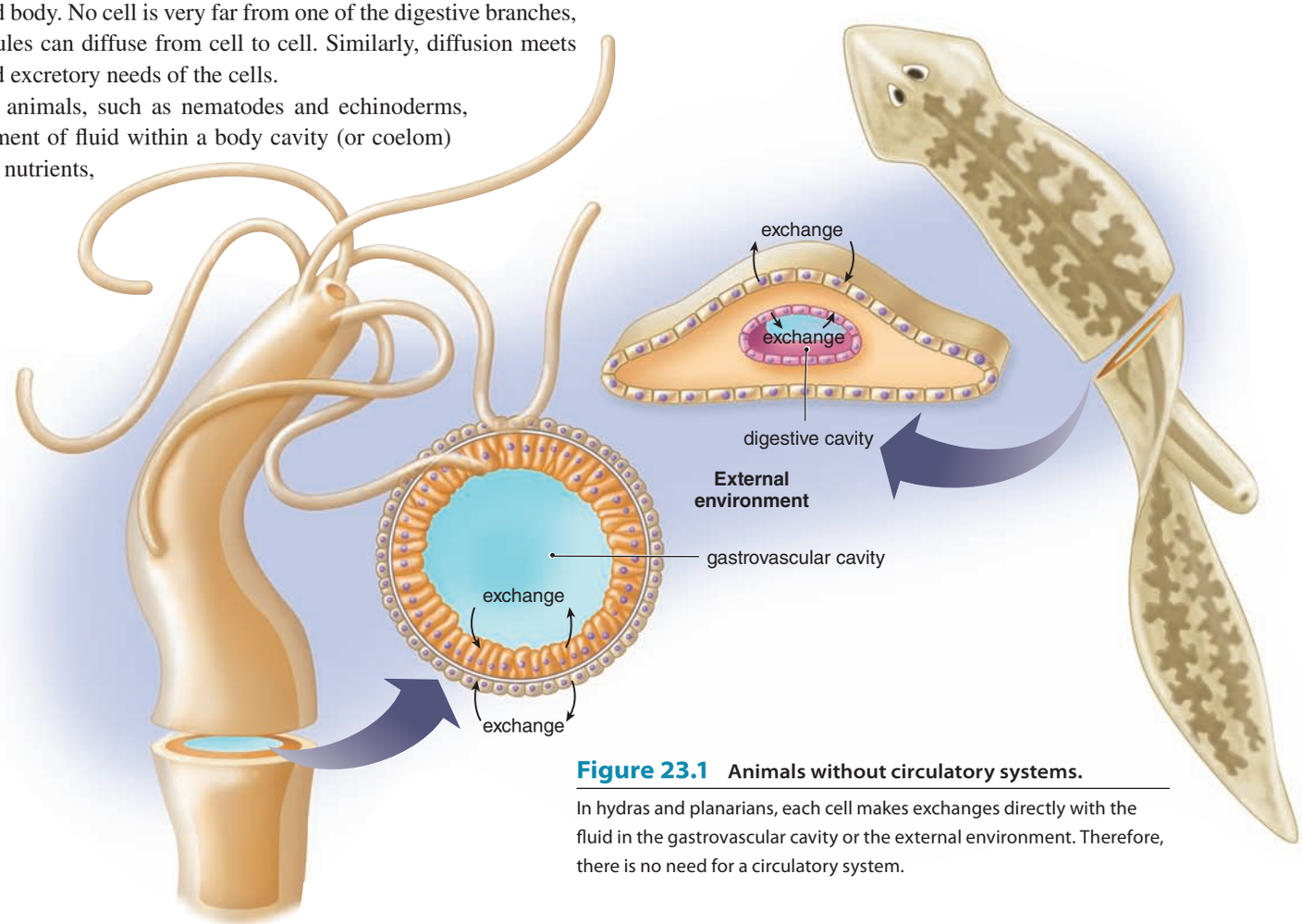
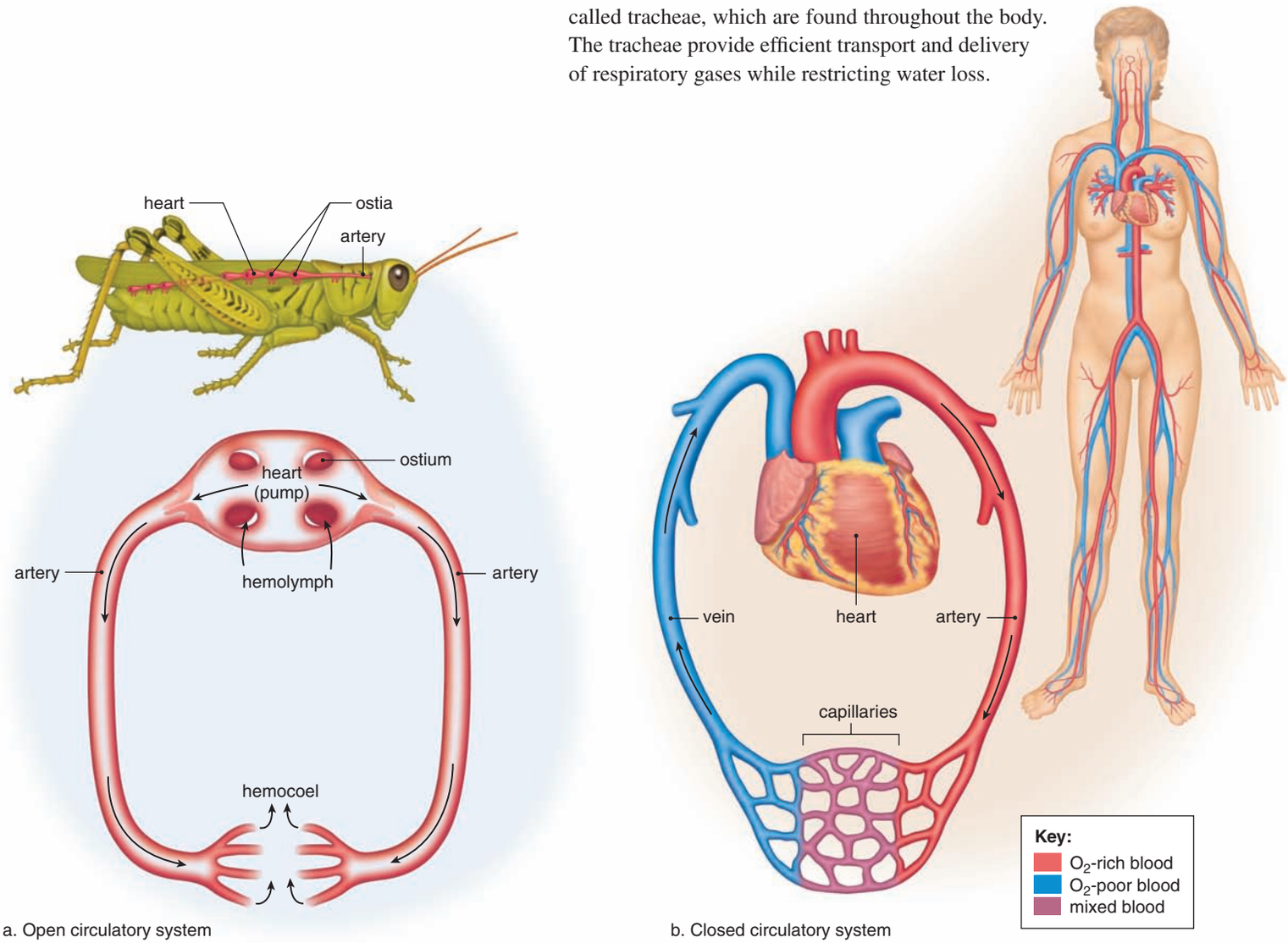


Figure 23.1 **Animals without circulatory systems.**

In hydras and planarians, each cell makes exchanges directly with the fluid in the gastrovascular cavity or the external environment. Therefore, there is no need for a circulatory system.

Open Circulatory Systems

More complex animals have a circulatory system in which a pumping **heart** moves fluid into blood vessels. The grasshopper is an example of an invertebrate animal that has an **open circulatory system** (**Fig. 23.2*a***), meaning that the blood is not always confined to the blood vessels. A tubular heart pumps a fluid called hemolymph through a network of channels and cavities in the body. Collectively known as the **hemocoel,** these cavities, or **sinuses,** contain the animal's organs. Eventually, hemolymph (a combination of blood and tissue fluid) drains back to the heart. When the heart contracts, openings called ostia (sing., ostium) are closed; when the heart relaxes, the hemolymph is sucked back into the heart by way of the ostia. The hemolymph of a grasshopper is colorless, because it does not contain hemoglobin or any other respiratory pigment that combines with and carries oxygen. Oxygen is taken to cells, and carbon dioxide is removed from them by way of air tubes, called tracheae, which are found throughout the body. The tracheae provide efficient transport and delivery of respiratory gases while restricting water loss.



a. Open circulatory system

b. Closed circulatory system

Figure 23.2 **Open versus closed circulatory systems.**

a. The grasshopper has an open circulatory system. Hemolymph freely bathes the internal organs. The heart, a pump, keeps the hemolymph moving, but an open system probably could not rapidly supply oxygen to wing muscles. These muscles receive oxygen directly from tracheae (air tubes). **b.** Vertebrates and some invertebrates have a closed circulatory system. The heart pumps blood into the arteries, which take blood away from the heart to the capillaries, where exchange takes place. Veins then return blood to the heart.

Closed Circulatory Systems

All vertebrates and some invertebrates have a **closed circulatory system** (Fig. 23.2*b*), which is more properly called a **cardiovascular system** because it consists of a strong, muscular heart and blood vessels. In a closed circulatory system, the blood remains within the blood vessels at all times. In humans, the heart has two receiving chambers, called atria (sing., atrium), and two pumping chambers, called ventricles. There are three kinds of vessels: arteries, which carry blood away from the heart; capillaries, which exchange materials with tissue fluid; and veins, which return blood to the heart. Blood is always contained within these vessels and never runs freely into the body unless an injury occurs.

As blood passes through capillaries, the pressure of blood forces some water out of the blood and into the tissue fluid. Some of this fluid returns directly to a capillary, and some is picked up by lymphatic capillaries in the vicinity. The fluid, now called lymph, is returned to the cardiovascular system by lymphatic vessels. The function of the lymphatic system is discussed in Section 23.2.

Comparison of Vertebrate Circulatory Pathways

Two types of circulatory pathways are seen among vertebrate animals. In fishes, blood follows a one-circuit (single-loop) pathway through the body. The heart has a single atrium and a single ventricle (**Fig. 23.3*a***). The pumping action of the ventricle sends blood under pressure to the gills, where gas exchange occurs. After passing through the gills, blood is under reduced pressure and flow. However, this single circulatory loop has advantages in that the gill capillaries receive O_2-poor blood and the systemic capillaries receive O_2-rich blood.

As a result of evolutionary adaptations to life on land, the other vertebrates have a two-circuit (double-loop) circulatory pathway. The heart pumps blood to the tissues through the **systemic circuit,** and it pumps blood to the lungs through the **pulmonary circuit.** This double pumping action is seen in terrestrial animals that utilize lungs to breathe air.

In amphibians, the heart has two atria, but only a single ventricle (Fig. 23.3*b*), and some mixing of O_2-rich and O_2-poor blood does occur. The same holds true for most reptiles, except that the ventricle has a partial septum, so this mixing is reduced. The hearts of some reptiles (for example, crocodilians and birds) and mammals are divided into right and left halves (Fig. 23.3*c*). The right ventricle pumps blood to the lungs, and the left ventricle, which is larger than the right ventricle, pumps blood to the rest of the body. This arrangement provides adequate blood pressure for both the pulmonary and systemic circuits.

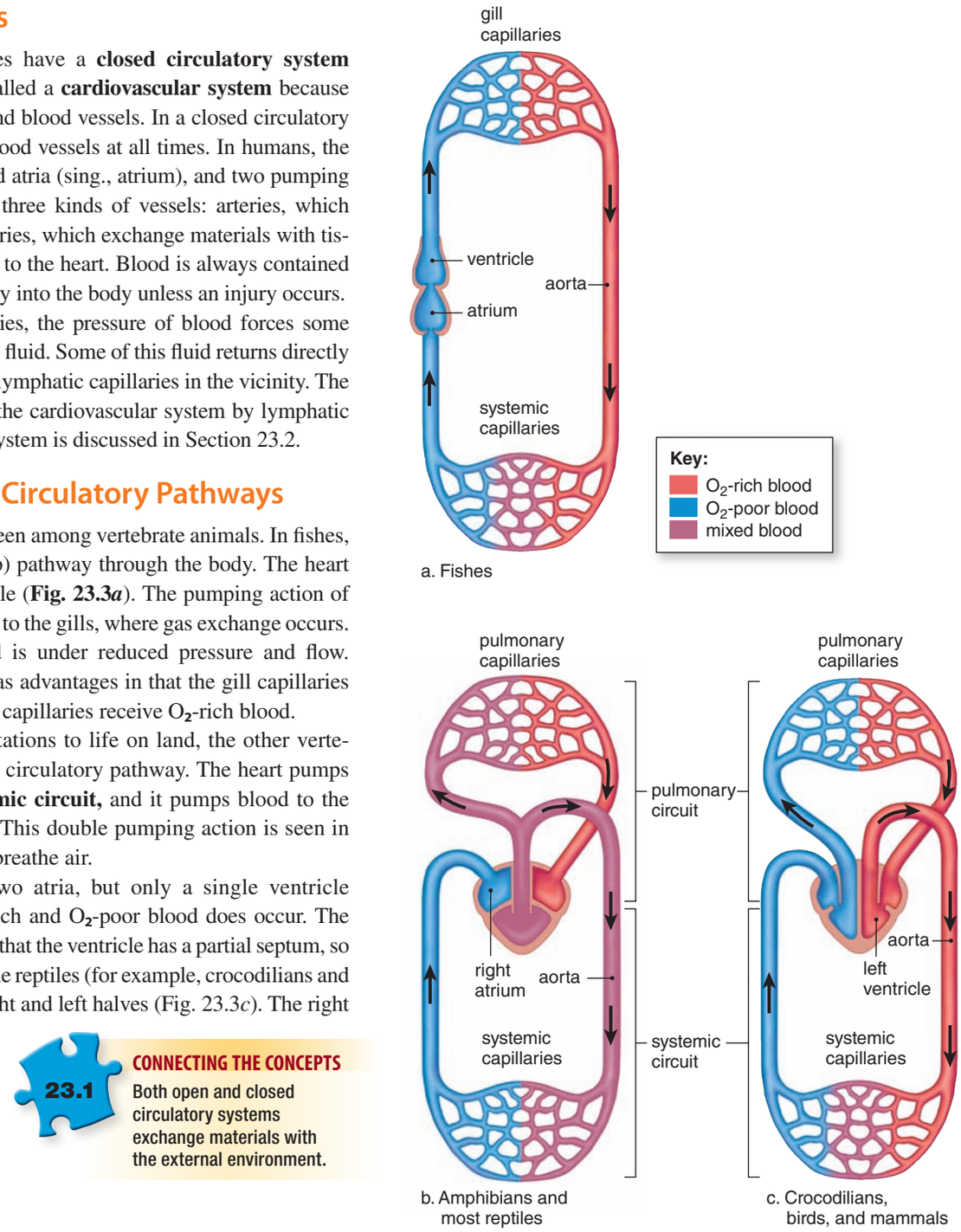


Figure 23.3 **Comparison of circulatory circuits in vertebrates.**

a. In a fish, the blood moves in a single circuit. The heart has a single atrium and ventricle, and it pumps the blood into the gill region, where gas exchange takes place. Blood pressure created by the pumping of the heart is dissipated after the blood passes through the gill capillaries. **b.** Amphibians and most reptiles have a two-circuit system, in which the heart pumps blood to both the lungs and the body itself. There is a single ventricle, and some mixing of O_2-rich and O_2-poor blood takes place. **c**. The pulmonary and systemic circuits are completely separate in crocodilians, birds, and mammals. The right side pumps blood to the lungs, and the left side pumps blood to the body proper.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Both open and closed circulatory systems exchange materials with the external environment.

Check Your Progress 23.1

1. Compare and contrast an open circulatory system with a closed circulatory system.
2. Explain the purpose of the pulmonary and systemic circulatory systems.
3. Summarize the difference betwen the circulatory system of a fish and that of a mammal.

23.2 Transport in Humans

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the anatomy of the human heart.
2. Trace the flow of blood through the heart and the pulmonary and systemic circuits.
3. Detail the cardiac cycle and describe the electrical activity associated with it.
4. Identify and describe the types of blood vessels.
5. Explain the role of the lymphatic system in circulation within the human body.
6. Identify the forces that cause the movement of substances into and out of the capillaries.

In the human cardiovascular system, like that of other vertebrates, the heart pumps blood into blood vessels, which take it to capillaries, where exchanges take place. In the lungs, carbon dioxide is exchanged for oxygen; in the tissues, nutrients and oxygen are exchanged for carbon dioxide and other wastes. These exchanges in the lungs and tissues are so important that, if the heart stops pumping, death results.

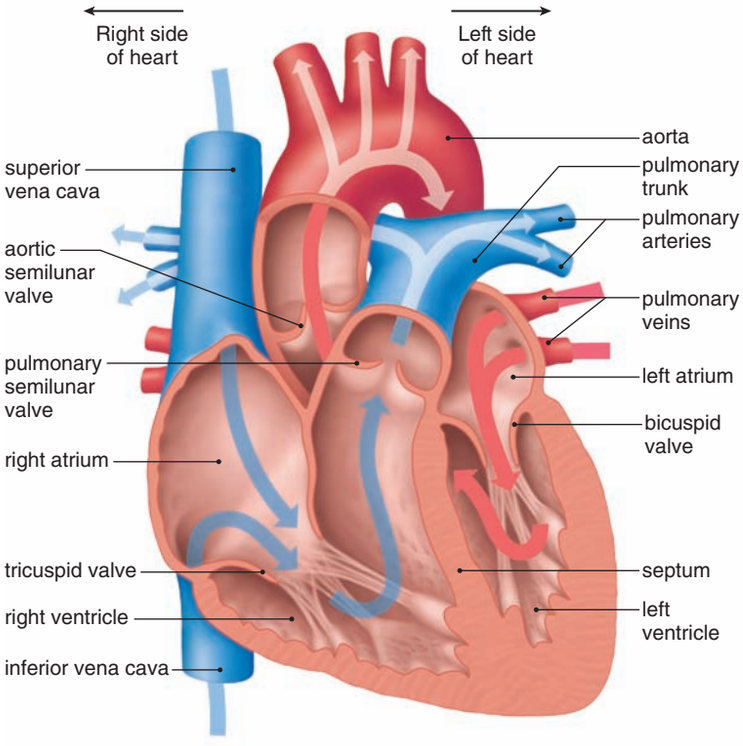


Figure 23.4 **Heart anatomy and the path of blood through the heart.**

The right side of the heart receives and pumps O_2-poor blood to the lungs; therefore, in this figure it is colored blue. The left side of the heart receives and pumps O_2-rich blood to tissues. The directions "right side" and "left side" of the heart refer to how the heart is positioned in your body, not to the left and right sides of the illustration.

The Human Heart

In humans, the heart is a double pump: The right side of the heart pumps O_2-poor blood to the lungs, and the left side of the heart pumps O_2-rich blood to the tissues (**Fig. 23.4**). The heart can be a double pump because a **septum** separates the right side from the left. Further, the septum is complete and prevents O_2-poor blood from mixing with O_2-rich blood.

Each side of the heart has two chambers. The upper, thin-walled chambers are called atria (sing., **atrium**), and they receive blood. The lower chambers are the thick-walled **ventricles,** which pump the blood away from the heart.

Valves occur between the atria and the ventricles, and between the ventricles and attached vessels. Because these valves close after the blood moves through, they keep the blood moving in the correct direction. The valves between the atria and ventricles are called the **atrioventricular valves,** and the valves between the ventricles and their attached vessels are called **semilunar valves** because their cusps look like half-moons.

This sequence traces the path of blood through the heart. The right atrium receives blood from the attached veins, called the **venae cavae,** that are returning O_2-poor blood to the heart from the tissues. After the blood passes through an atrioventricular valve (also called the *tricuspid valve* because of its three flaps), the right ventricle pumps it through the *pulmonary semilunar valve* into the pulmonary trunk and **pulmonary arteries,** which take it to the lungs. The **pulmonary veins** take O_2-rich blood to the left atrium. After this blood passes through an atrioventricular valve (also called the *bicuspid valve*), the left ventricle pumps it through the *aortic semilunar valve* into the **aorta,** which takes it to the tissues.

Time	Atria	Ventricles
0.15 sec	Systole	Diastole
0.30 sec	Diastole	Systole
0.40 sec	Diastole	Diastole

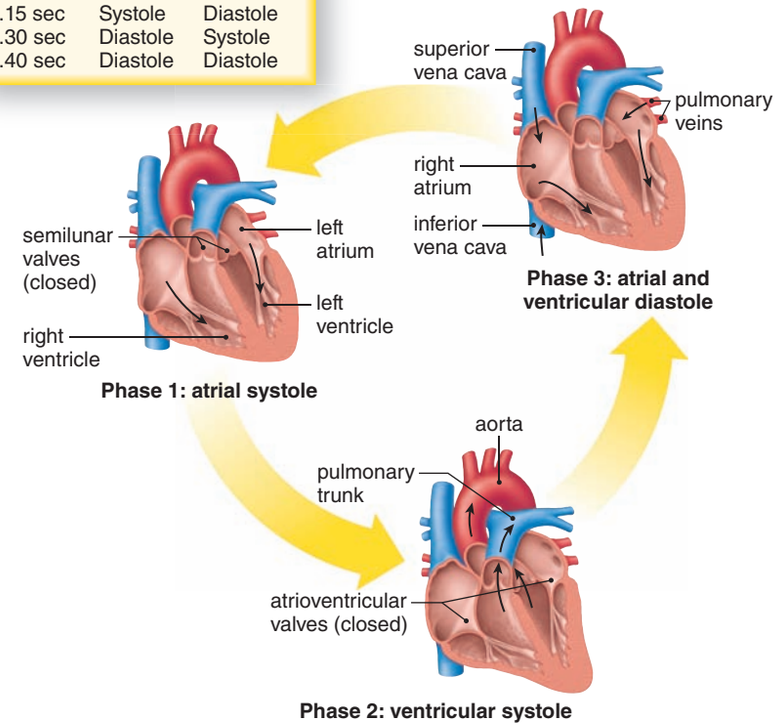


Figure 23.5 **The heartbeat.**

A heartbeat is a cycle of events. *Phase 1:* The atria contract and pass blood to the ventricles. *Phase 2:* The ventricles contract and blood moves into the attached arteries. *Phase 3:* Both the atria and the ventricles relax while the heart fills with blood.

O_2-poor blood is often associated with all veins and O_2-rich blood with all arteries, but this idea is incorrect: Pulmonary arteries and pulmonary veins are just the reverse. That is why the pulmonary arteries in Figure 23.4 are colored blue and the pulmonary veins are colored red. The correct definitions are that an **artery** is a vessel that takes blood away from the heart, and a **vein** is a vessel that takes blood to the heart.

MP3 Heart Structure and Function

The Heartbeat

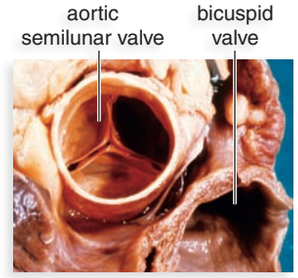
The heart's pumping action, known as the heartbeat or **cardiac cycle,** consists of a series of events: First the atria contract, then the ventricles contract, and then they both rest. **Figure 23.5** lists and depicts the events of a heartbeat, using the term **systole** to mean contraction and **diastole** to mean relaxation. When the heart beats, the familiar *lub-dub* sound is caused by the closing of the heart valves. The longer and lower-pitched *lub* occurs when the atrioventricular valves close, and the shorter and sharper *dub* is heard when the semilunar valves close. The **pulse** is a wave effect that passes down the walls of the arterial blood vessels when the aorta expands and then recoils following the ventricular systole. Because there is one pulse per ventricular systole, the pulse rate can be used to determine the heart rate. The heart beats about 70 times per minute, although a normal adult heart rate can vary from 60 to 100 beats per minute.

Animation Cardiac Cycle

MP3 Cardiac Cycle

Connections: Health

What is a heart murmur?



Like mechanical valves, the heart valves are sometimes leaky; they may not close properly, and there is a backflow of blood. A *heart murmur* is often due to leaky atrioventricular valves, which allow blood to pass back into the atria after the valves have closed. These may be caused by a number of factors: high blood pressure (hypertension), heart disease, or rheumatic fever. Rheumatic fever is a bacterial infection that begins in the throat and spreads throughout the body. The bacteria attack various organs, including the heart valves. When damage is severe, the valve can be replaced with a synthetic valve or one taken from a pig's heart.

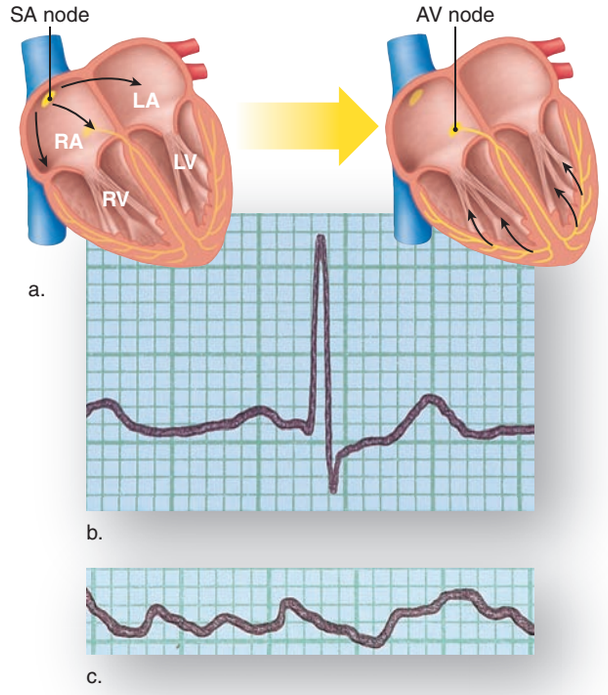


Figure 23.6 Control of the heartbeat.

a. The heart beats regularly because the SA node (called the pacemaker) automatically sends out an impulse that causes the atria (RA, LA) to contract and is picked up by the AV node. Thereafter, the ventricles (RV, LV) contract. **b.** An electrocardiogram records the electrical changes that occur as the heart beats. The large spike is associated with ventricular activation. **c.** Ventricular fibrillation produces an irregular ECG.

The beat of the heart is regular because it has an intrinsic pacemaker, called the **SA (sinoatrial) node.** The nodal tissue of the heart, located in two regions of the atrial wall, is a unique type of cardiac muscle tissue. Every 0.85 second, the SA node automatically sends out an excitation impulse that causes the atria to contract (**Fig. 23.6*a***). When this impulse is picked up by the **AV (atrioventricular) node,** it passes to the *Purkinje fibers,* which cause the ventricles to contract. If the SA node fails to work properly, the ventricles still beat, due to impulses generated by the AV node, but the beat is slower (40–60 beats per minute). To correct this condition, it is possible to implant an artificial pacemaker, which automatically gives an electrical stimulus to the heart every 0.85 second. In self-adjusting pacemakers, sensors generate variable electrical signals depending on a person's level of activity; the pacemakers change their output based on these signals.

Animation Conducting System of Heart

MP3 Cardiac Conduction System

Although the beat of the heart is intrinsic, it is regulated by the nervous system and various hormones. Activities such as yoga and meditation lead to activation of the vagus nerve, which slows the heart rate. Exercise or anxiety leads to the release of the hormones norepinephrine and epinephrine by the adrenal glands, which causes the heart rate to speed up.

An **electrocardiogram (ECG)** is a recording of the electrical changes that occur in the wall of the heart during a cardiac cycle. Body fluids contain ions that conduct electrical currents, and therefore the electrical changes in heart muscle can be detected on the skin's surface. When an electrocardiogram is being taken, electrodes placed on the skin are connected by wires to an instrument that detects these electrical changes (Fig. 23.6*b*). Various types of abnormalities can be detected by an electrocardiogram. One of them, called ventricular fibrillation, is due to uncoordinated contraction of the ventricles (Fig. 23.6*c*). Ventricular fibrillation is of special interest because it can be caused by an injury or a drug overdose. It is the most common cause of sudden cardiac death in a seemingly healthy person. To stop fibrillation, a defibrillator can be used to apply a strong electrical current for a short period. Then, the SA node may be able to reestablish a coordinated beat. Easy-to-use defibrillators are becoming increasingly available in public places, such as airports and college campuses.

Blood Vessels

Arteries transport blood away from the heart. When the heart contracts, blood is sent under pressure into the arteries; thus, **blood pressure** accounts for the flow of blood in the arteries. Arteries have a much thicker wall than veins because of a well-developed middle layer composed of smooth muscle and elastic fibers. The elastic fibers allow arteries to expand and accommodate the sudden increase in blood volume that results after each heartbeat. The smooth muscle strengthens the wall and prevents overexpansion (**Fig. 23.7*a***).

Arteries branch into **arterioles,** small arteries just visible to the naked eye. Their diameter can be regulated by the nervous system, depending on the needs of the body. When arterioles are dilated, more blood flows through them; when they are constricted, less blood flows. The constriction of arterioles can also raise blood pressure. Arterioles branch into **capillaries,** which are extremely narrow, microscopic tubes with a wall composed of only epithelium, often called endothelium (Fig. 23.7*b*). Capillaries, which are usually so narrow that red blood cells pass through in single file, allow the exchange of nutrient and waste molecules across their thin walls. Capillary beds (many interconnected capillaries) are so widespread that, in humans, all cells are less than a millimeter from a capillary.

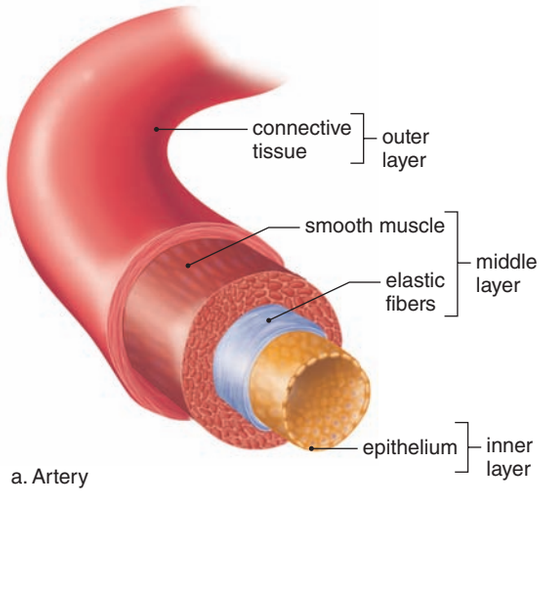


Figure 23.7 **Blood vessels.**

a. Arteries have well-developed walls with a thick middle layer of elastic fibers and smooth muscle. **b.** Capillary walls are composed of an epithelium only one cell thick. **c.** Veins have weaker walls, particularly because the middle layer is not as thick as in arteries.

Because the number of capillaries is so extensive, blood pressure drops and blood flows slowly along. The slow movement of blood through the capillaries also facilitates efficient exchange of substances between the blood and tissue fluid. The entrance to a capillary bed is controlled by bands of muscle called precapillary sphincters. During muscular exercise, sphincters relax, and the capillary beds of the muscles are open. Also, after an animal has eaten, the capillary beds in the digestive tract are open. Otherwise, blood moves through a shunt that takes the blood from arteriole to venule (see Fig. 23.9*b*).

Venules collect blood from capillary beds and join as they deliver blood to veins. Veins carry blood back to the heart. Blood pressure is much reduced by the time blood reaches the veins. The walls of veins are much thinner and their diameter wider than those of arteries (Fig. 23.7*c*). This allows skeletal muscle contraction to push on the veins, forcing the blood past a valve (**Fig. 23.8**). Valves within the veins point, or open, toward the heart, preventing a backflow of blood when they close. When inhalation occurs and the chest expands, the thoracic pressure falls and abdominal pressure rises. This action also aids the flow of venous blood back to the heart, because blood flows in the direction of reduced pressure.

MP3 Blood Flow and Blood Pressure

Connections: Health

What are varicose veins?

Veins are thin-walled tubes, divided into many separate chambers by vein valves. Excessive stretching occurs if veins are overfilled with blood. For example, if a person stands in one place for a long time, leg veins can't drain properly and blood pools in them. As the vein expands, vein valves become distended and fail to function. These two mechanisms cause the veins to bulge and be visible on the skin's surface. Hemorrhoids are varicose veins in the rectum. Obesity, a sedentary lifestyle, female gender, genetic predisposition, and increasing age are risk factors for varicose veins.

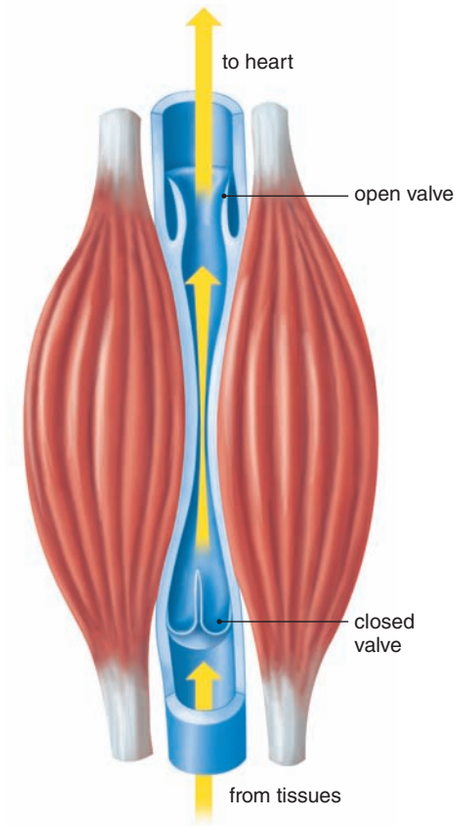


Figure 23.8 **Movement of blood in a vein.**

Veins have valves, which point toward the heart. Pressure on the walls of a vein, exerted by skeletal muscles, increases blood pressure within the vein and forces a valve open. When the muscles relax, gravity pulls the blood downward, closing the valves and preventing the blood from flowing in the opposite direction.

The Pulmonary and Systemic Circuits

The human cardiovascular system includes two major circulatory pathways, the pulmonary circuit and the systemic circuit. The **pulmonary circuit** moves blood to and from the lungs, where O_2-poor blood becomes O_2-rich blood. The **systemic circuit** moves blood to and from the body proper. The function of the systemic circuit is to serve the needs of the body's cells. **Figure 23.9** traces the path of blood in both circuits.

Pulmonary Circuit O_2-poor blood from all regions of the body collects in the right atrium and then passes into the right ventricle (RV). The pulmonary circuit begins when the RV pumps blood to the lungs via the pulmonary trunk and the pulmonary arteries. As blood passes through pulmonary capillaries, carbon dioxide is given off and oxygen is picked up. O_2-rich blood returns to the heart via the pulmonary veins. The pulmonary veins enter the left atrium.

Systemic Circuit O_2-rich blood enters the left atrium from the lungs and passes into the left ventricle (LV). The systemic circuit begins when the LV pumps the blood into the aorta. Arteries branching from the aorta carry blood to all areas and organs of the body, where it passes through capillaries and collects in veins. Veins converge on the venae cavae, which return the O_2-poor blood to the right atrium. In the systemic circuit, arteries contain O_2-rich blood and are bright red; veins contain O_2-poor blood and appear dull red or, when viewed through the skin, blue.

A **portal system** begins and ends in capillaries. For example, the hepatic portal takes blood from the intestines to the liver. The liver, an organ of homeostasis, modifies substances absorbed by the intestines and monitors the normal composition of the blood. The hepatic vein (see Fig. 24.27) leaves the liver and enters the inferior vena cava.

Lymphatic System

The **lymphatic system** consists of lymphatic vessels and various lymphatic organs. The lymphatic system serves many functions in the body. In this chapter, we are interested in the lymphatic vessels that take up excess tissue fluid and return it to cardiovascular veins in the shoulders, namely the subclavian veins (**Fig. 23.10**). The lymphatic vessels also take up fat in the form of lipoproteins at the digestive tract and transport it to these veins. Refer to **Figure 23.11** to see how the lymphatic vessels fit into the

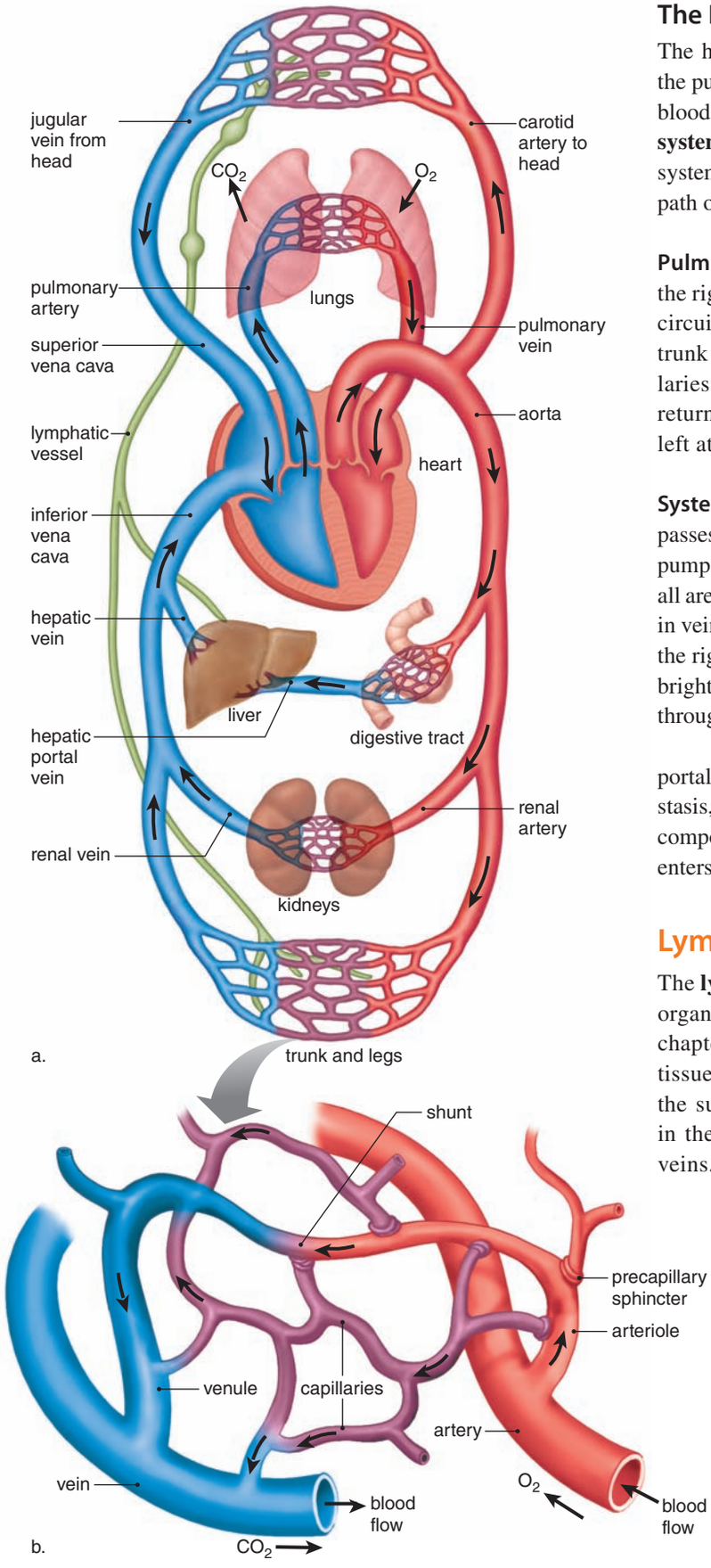


Figure 23.9 The path of blood.

a. Overview of the cardiovascular system. When tracing blood from the right to the left side of the heart in the pulmonary circuit, you must include the pulmonary vessels. When tracing blood from the digestive tract to the right atrium in the systemic circuit, you must include the hepatic portal vein, the hepatic vein, and the inferior vena cava. **b.** To move from an artery to a vein, blood must move through a capillary bed, where exchange occurs between blood and tissue fluid. When precapillary sphincters shut down a capillary bed, blood moves through a shunt from arteriole to venule.

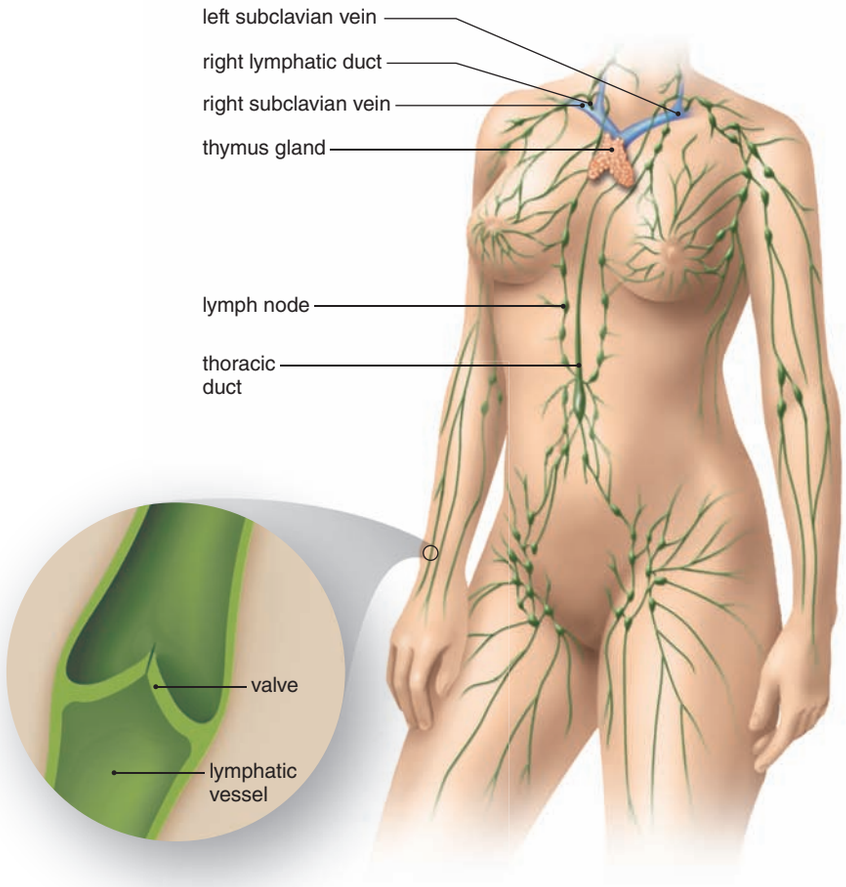


Figure 23.10 **Lymphatic vessels.**

Lymphatic vessels drain excess fluid from the tissues and return it to the cardiovascular system. The enlargement shows that lymphatic vessels, like cardiovascular veins, have valves to prevent backward flow. Lymph nodes filter lymph and remove impurities.

organization of the cardiovascular system. As you will see in Chapter 26, the lymphatic system works with the immune system to help defend the body against disease.

MP3 Lymphatic System

Lymphatic vessels are quite extensive; most regions of the body are richly supplied with lymphatic capillaries. The construction of the larger lymphatic vessels is similar to that of cardiovascular veins, including the presence of valves. Also, the movement of lymph within these vessels is dependent on skeletal muscle contraction. When the muscles contract, the lymph is squeezed past a valve that closes, preventing the lymph from flowing backward.

The lymphatic system is a one-way system that begins at the lymphatic capillaries. These capillaries take up fluid that has diffused from and not been reabsorbed by the blood capillaries. Once tissue fluid enters the lymphatic vessels, it is called **lymph.** The lymphatic capillaries join to form larger lymphatic vessels that merge before entering one of two ducts: the thoracic duct or the right lymphatic duct. The thoracic duct is much larger than the right lymphatic duct. It serves the lower limbs, abdomen, left arm, and left sides of both the head and the neck. The right lymphatic duct serves the right arm, the right sides of both the head and the neck, and the right thoracic area. The lymphatic ducts enter the subclavian veins.

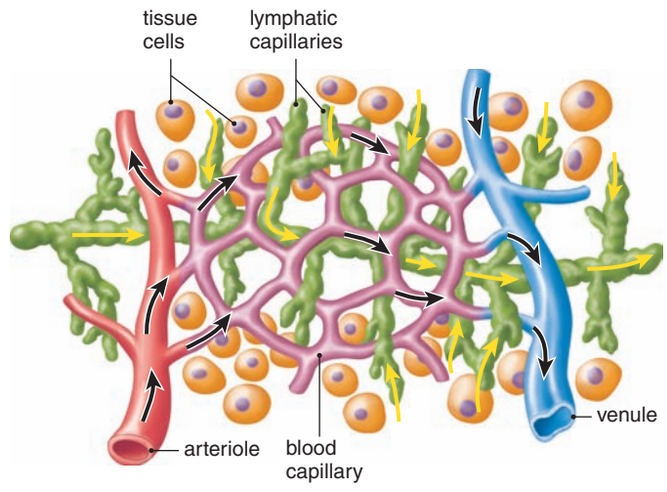


Figure 23.11 **Lymphatic capillary bed.**

A lymphatic capillary bed lies near a blood capillary bed. The heavy black arrows show the flow of blood. The yellow arrows show that lymph is formed when lymphatic capillaries take up excess tissue fluid.

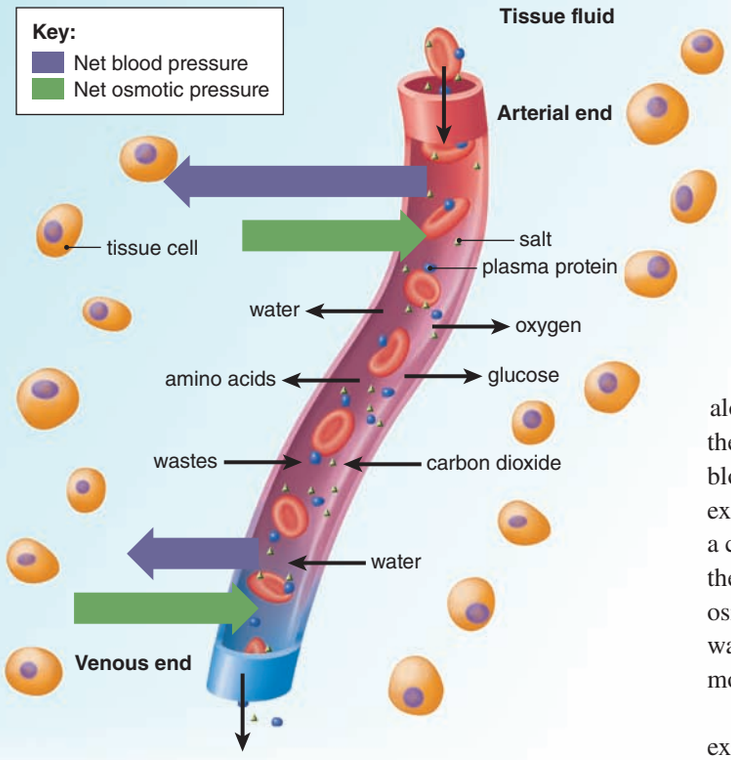


Figure 23.12 Capillary exchange.

At the arterial end of a capillary (*top*), the blood pressure is higher than the osmotic pressure; therefore, water tends to leave the bloodstream. In the midsection, molecules, including oxygen and carbon dioxide, follow their concentration gradients. At the venous end of a capillary (*bottom*), the osmotic pressure is higher than the blood pressure; therefore, water tends to enter the bloodstream. Notice that the red blood cells and the plasma proteins are too large to exit a capillary.

Capillary Exchange in the Tissues

In Figure 23.1, we noted that in some animals, exchange is carried out by each cell individually because there is no cardiovascular system. When an animal has a cardiovascular system, tissue fluid (the fluid between the cells) makes exchanges with blood within a capillary. Notice in **Figure 23.12** that amino acids, oxygen, and glucose exit a capillary and enter tissue fluid, to be used by cells. On the other hand, carbon dioxide and wastes leave the tissue fluid and enter a capillary, to be taken away and excreted from the body. A chief purpose of the cardiovascular system is to take blood to the capillaries, where exchange occurs. Without this exchange, homeostasis is not maintained, and the cells of the body perish.

Figure 23.12 illustrates certain mechanics of capillary exchange. Blood pressure and osmotic pressure are two opposing forces at work along the length of a capillary. Blood pressure is caused by the beating of the heart, while osmotic pressure is due to the salt and protein content of the blood. Blood pressure holds sway at the arterial end of a capillary and water exits. Blood pressure is reduced by the time blood reaches the venous end of a capillary, and osmotic pressure now causes water to enter. Midway between the arterial and venous ends of a capillary, blood pressure pretty much equals osmotic pressure, and passive diffusion alone causes nutrients to exit and wastes to enter. This works because tissue fluid always has fewer nutrients and more wastes. After all, cells use nutrients and thereby create wastes.

The exchange of water at a capillary is not exact, and the result is always excess tissue fluid. Excess tissue fluid is collected by lymphatic capillaries, and in this way it becomes lymph (see Fig. 23.11). Lymph contains all the components of plasma except much smaller amounts of protein. Lymph is returned to the cardiovascular system when the major lymphatic vessels enter the subclavian veins in the shoulder region (see Fig. 23.10).

Animation Fluid Exchange Across the Walls of Capillaries

MP3 Capillary Exchange and Bulk Flow

In addition to nutrients and wastes, blood distributes heat to body parts. When you are warm, many capillaries that serve the skin are open, and your face is flushed. This helps rid the body of excess heat. When you are cold, skin capillaries close, conserving heat.

23.2 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**
The human circulatory system moves blood throughout the entire body.

Check Your Progress 23.2

1. Describe the events that occur in the generation of a heartbeat.
2. Explain the role of each type of blood vessel, and detail why capillaries are used for gas exchange.
3. Describe the flow of blood in the human circulatory system, starting with the right atria of the heart.

23.3 Blood: A Transport Medium

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the functions of blood.
2. Distinguish between plasma and formed elements.
3. Detail the types of blood cells and their functions.
4. Outline the steps in the formation of a blood clot.
5. Summarize the causes of common cardiovascular system disorders.

The **blood** of mammals helps maintain their homeostasis. Blood has numerous functions:

1. It transports substances to and from the capillaries, where exchange with tissue fluid takes place.
2. It helps defend the body against invasion by pathogens (e.g., disease-causing viruses and bacteria).
3. It helps regulate body temperature.
4. It forms clots, preventing a potentially life-threatening loss of blood.

In humans, blood has two main portions: the liquid portion, called plasma, and the formed elements, consisting of various cells and platelets (**Fig. 23.13**).

MP3 General Functions and Composition of Blood

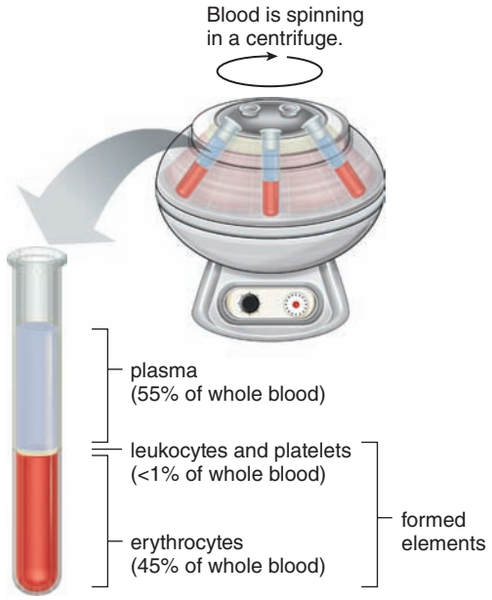


Figure 23.13 Components of blood.

After blood is centrifuged and settling occurs, it is apparent that blood is composed of plasma and formed elements.

Plasma

Plasma is composed mostly of water (90–92%) and proteins (7–8%), but it also contains smaller quantities of many types of molecules, including nutrients, wastes, and salts. The salts and proteins are involved in buffering the blood, effectively keeping the pH near 7.4, slightly basic. They also maintain the blood's osmotic pressure, so that water has an automatic tendency to enter blood capillaries. Several plasma proteins are involved in blood clotting, and others transport large organic molecules in the blood. Albumin, the most plentiful of the plasma proteins, transports bilirubin, a breakdown product of hemoglobin. Lipoproteins transport cholesterol.

Formed Elements

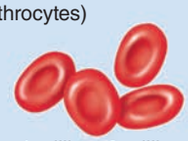
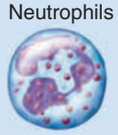
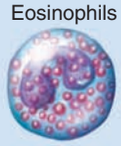
The **formed elements** are red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets. Among the formed elements, **red blood cells,** also called erythrocytes, transport oxygen. Red blood cells are small, biconcave disks that at maturity lack a nucleus and contain the respiratory pigment hemoglobin. There are 6 million red blood cells in a small drop of whole blood, and each one of these cells contains about 250 million hemoglobin molecules. **Hemoglobin** contains iron, which combines loosely with oxygen; in this way, red blood cells transport oxygen. If the number of red blood cells is insufficient, or if the cells do not have enough hemoglobin, the individual suffers from anemia and has a tired, run-down feeling. At high altitudes, where oxygen levels are lower, red blood cell formation is stimulated. If an individual lives and works in a high altitude long enough, he or she will develop a greater number of red blood cells.

Red blood cells are manufactured continuously within certain bones, namely the skull, the ribs, the vertebrae, and the ends of the long bones. The hormone *erythropoietin (EPO)* stimulates the production of red blood cells. The kidneys produce erythropoietin when they act on a precursor

Connections: Health

What is blood doping?

Blood doping is any method of increasing the normal supply of RBCs for the purpose of delivering oxygen more efficiently, reducing fatigue, and giving athletes a competitive edge. To accomplish blood doping, athletes can inject themselves with EPO some months before the competition. These injections will increase the number of RBCs in their blood. Several weeks later, units of their blood are removed and centrifuged to concentrate the RBCs. The concentrated RBCs are reinfused shortly before the athletic event. Blood doping is a dangerous, illegal practice. Several cyclists died in the 1990s from heart failure, probably due to blood that was too thick with cells for the heart to pump.

Formed Elements	Function
Red Blood Cells (erythrocytes)  4 million–6 million per mm^3 blood	Transport O_2 and help transport CO_2
White Blood Cells* (leukocytes) 5,000–11,000 per mm^3 blood	Fight infection
Granular leukocytes	
Neutrophils  40–70%	Phagocytize pathogens and cellular debris
Eosinophils  1–4%	Use granule contents to digest large pathogens, such as worms, and reduce inflammation
Basophils 0–1%	Promote blood flow to injured tissues and the inflammatory response
Agranular leukocytes	
Lymphocytes 20–45%	Are responsible for specific immunity; B cells produce antibodies; T cells destroy cancer and virus-infected cells
Monocytes 4–8%	Become macrophages that phagocytize pathogens and cellular debris
Platelets (thrombocytes) 150,000–300,000 per mm^3 blood	Aid clotting

*Appearance with Wright's stain.

Figure 23.14 **Formed elements.**

White blood cells are quite varied and have different functions, which are all associated with defense of the body against infections.

made by the liver. Now available as a drug, erythropoietin is helpful to persons with anemia, but it has also been abused by athletes to enhance their performance.

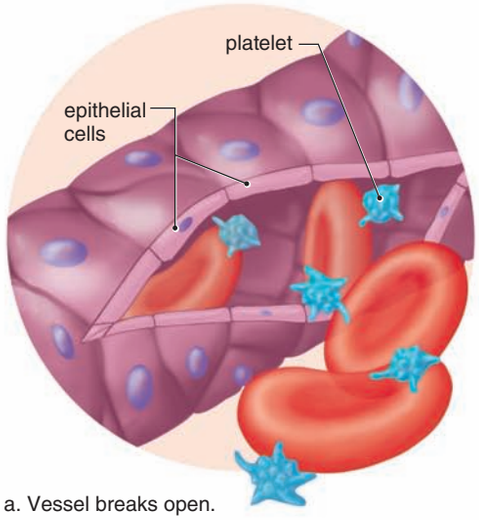
Before they are released from the bone marrow into the blood, red blood cells synthesize hemoglobin and lose their nuclei. After living about 120 days, they are destroyed, chiefly in the liver and spleen, where they are engulfed by large, phagocytic cells. When red blood cells are destroyed, hemoglobin is released. The iron is recovered and returned to the red bone marrow for reuse. Another portion of the molecules (i.e., heme) undergoes chemical degradation and is excreted by the liver as bile pigments in the bile. The bile pigments are primarily responsible for the color of feces.

White blood cells, also called leukocytes, help fight infections. White blood cells differ from red blood cells in that they are usually larger and have a nucleus, they lack hemoglobin, and without staining they appear translucent. **Figure 23.14** shows the appearance of the various types of white blood cells. With staining, white blood cells appear light blue unless they have granules that bind with certain stains. There are approximately 5,000–11,000 white blood cells in a small drop of whole blood. Growth factors are available to increase the production of all white blood cells, and these are helpful to people with low immunity, such as AIDS patients.

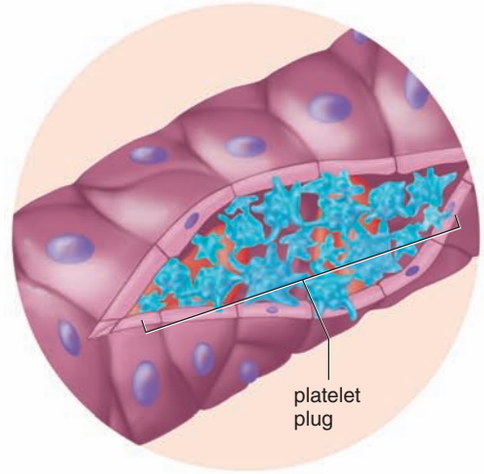
Red blood cells are confined to the blood, but white blood cells are able to squeeze between the cells of a capillary wall. Therefore, they are found in tissue fluid, lymph, and lymphatic organs. When an infection is present, white blood cells greatly increase in number. Many white blood cells live only a few days—they probably die while engaging pathogens. Others live months or even years.

When microbes enter the body due to an injury, the body's response is called an *inflammatory response* because swelling, reddening, heat, and pain occur at the injured site. Damaged tissue releases kinins, which dilate capillaries, and histamines, which increase capillary permeability. White blood cells called **neutrophils,** which are amoeboid, squeeze through the capillary wall and enter the tissue fluid, where they phagocytize foreign material. White blood cells called **monocytes** appear and are transformed into **macrophages—**large, phagocytizing cells that release white blood cell growth factors. Soon the number of white blood cells increases explosively. A thick, yellowish fluid called pus contains a large proportion of dead white blood cells that have fought the infection.

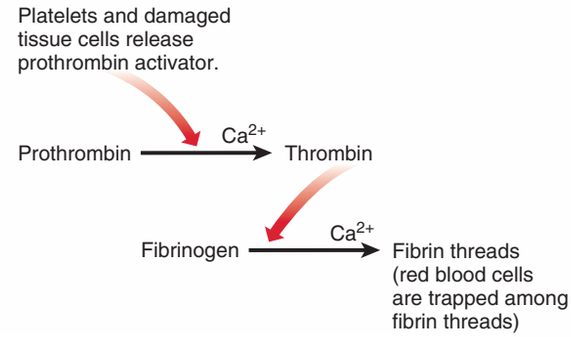
Lymphocytes, another type of white blood cell, also play an important role in fighting infection. Lymphocytes called T cells attack the body's cells that are infected with viruses. Lymphocytes called B cells produce **antibodies** to protect the body against certain types of **antigens,** which don't belong to the body. An antigen is most often a protein but sometimes a polysaccharide. Antigens are present in the outer covering of parasites or in their toxins. When antibodies combine with antigens, the complex is often phagocytized by a macrophage. An individual is actively immune when a large number of B cells are all producing the antibody needed to fight a particular infection. The role of lymphocytes in the immune response will be explored in greater detail in Chapter 26.



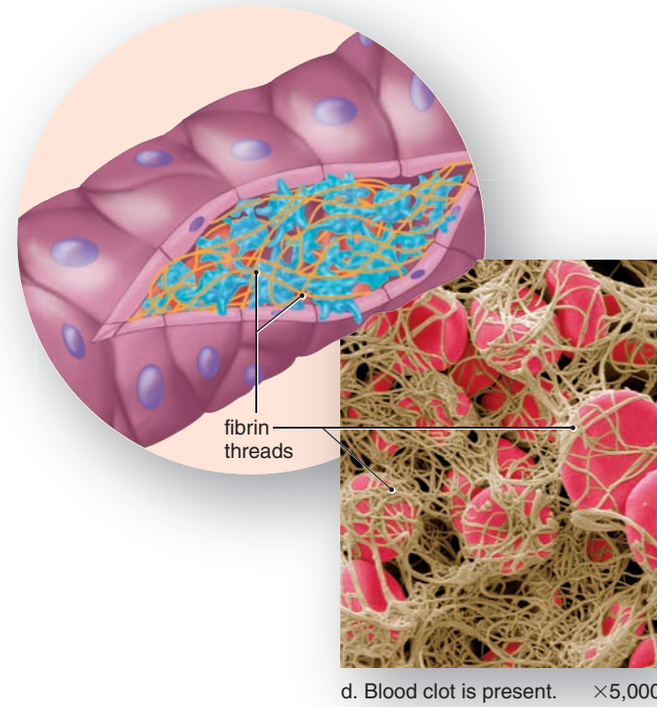
a. Vessel breaks open.



b. Platelet plug forms.



c. Clotting occurs.



d. Blood clot is present. ×5,000

Platelets and Blood Clotting

Platelets (also called thrombocytes) result from the fragmentation of certain large cells, called megakaryocytes, in the red bone marrow. Platelets are produced at a rate of 200 billion a day, and a small drop of whole blood contains 150,000 to 300,000.

Platelets are involved in blood clotting, or coagulation. Blood contains at least 12 clotting factors that participate in clot formation. *Hemophilia* is an inherited clotting disorder in which the liver is unable to produce one of the clotting factors. The slightest bump can cause the affected person to bleed into the joints, and this leads to degeneration of the joints. Bleeding into muscles can lead to nerve damage and muscular atrophy. The most frequent cause of death due to hemophilia is bleeding into the brain.

Prothrombin and *fibrinogen*, two proteins involved in blood clotting, are manufactured and deposited in blood by the liver. Vitamin K, found in green vegetables and formed by intestinal bacteria, is necessary for the production of prothrombin; if this vitamin is missing from the diet, hemorrhagic disorders can develop.

A series of reactions leads to the formation of a blood clot (**Fig. 23.15*a*–*c***). When a blood vessel in the body is damaged, platelets clump at the site of the puncture and form a plug, which temporarily seals the leak. Platelets and the injured tissues release a clotting factor, called prothrombin activator, that converts prothrombin to *thrombin*. This reaction requires calcium ions (Ca^{2+}). Thrombin, in turn, acts as an enzyme that severs two short amino acid chains from each fibrinogen molecule. These activated fragments then join end to end, forming long threads of *fibrin*. Fibrin threads wind around the platelet plug in the damaged area of the blood vessel and provide the framework for the clot. Red blood cells also are trapped within the fibrin threads; these cells make a clot appear red (Fig. 23.15*d*). Clot retraction follows, during which the clot gets smaller as platelets contract. A fluid called serum is squeezed from the clot. A fibrin clot is present only temporarily. As soon as blood vessel repair is initiated, an enzyme called plasmin destroys the fibrin network and restores the fluidity of the plasma.

Figure 23.15 Blood clotting.

a. When a capillary is injured, blood begins leaking out. **b.** Platelets congregate to form a platelet plug, which temporarily seals the leak. **c.** Platelets and damaged tissue cells release an activator, which sets in motion a series of reactions, ending with (**d**) a blood clot.

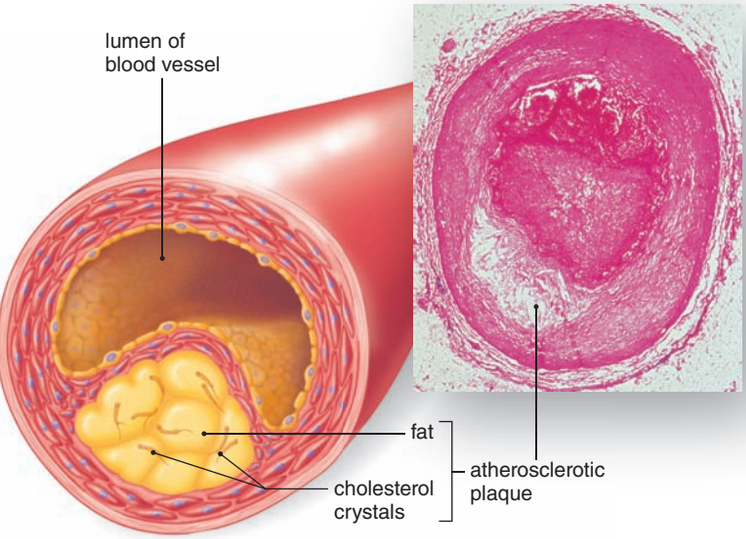


Figure 23.16 **Plaque.**

Plaque is an irregular accumulation of cholesterol and fat in the wall of an artery that closes off blood vessels. Of special concern is the closure of coronary arteries.

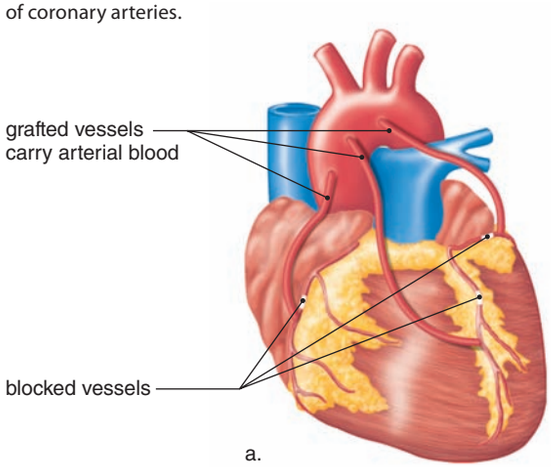
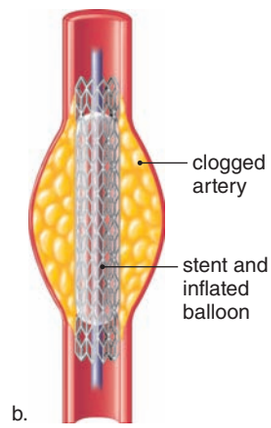


Figure 23.17 **Treatment for clogged coronary arteries.**

Many heart procedures, such as coronary bypass and stent insertion, can be performed using robotic surgery techniques. **a.** During a coronary bypass operation, blood vessels (usually veins from the leg) are stitched to the heart, taking blood past the region of obstruction. **b**. During stenting, a cylinder of expandable metal mesh is positioned inside the coronary artery by using a catheter. Then, a balloon is inflated, so that the stent expands and opens the artery.



CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Blood is an essential medium for maintaining homeostasis.

Cardiovascular Disorders

Cardiovascular disease (CVD) is the leading cause of untimely death in Western countries. In the United States, it is estimated that about 31% of the population suffers from **hypertension,** which is high blood pressure. Normal blood pressure is 120/80 mm Hg. The top number is called *systolic* blood pressure because it is due to the contraction of the ventricles, and the bottom number is called *diastolic* blood pressure because it is measured during the relaxation of the ventricles. Hypertension occurs when blood pressure readings are higher than these numbers—say, 160/100. Hypertension is sometimes called a silent killer because it may not be detected until a stroke or heart attack occurs.

Inheritance and lifestyle contribute to hypertension. For example, hypertension is often seen in individuals who have **atherosclerosis**, an accumulation of soft masses of fatty materials, particularly cholesterol, beneath the inner linings of arteries (**Fig. 23.16**). Such deposits, called plaque, tend to protrude into the lumen of the vessel, interfering with the flow of blood. Atherosclerosis begins in early adulthood and develops progressively through middle age, but symptoms may not appear until an individual is 50 or older. To prevent its onset and development, the American Heart Association and other organizations recommend a diet low in saturated fat and cholesterol and rich in fruits and vegetables. Smoking, alcohol or other drug abuse, obesity, and lack of exercise contribute to the risk of atherosclerosis.

Plaque can cause a clot to form on the irregular arterial wall. As long as the clot remains stationary, it is called a *thrombus,* but if it dislodges and moves along with the blood, it is called an *embolus*. If *thromboembolism* is not treated, serious health problems can result. A cardiovascular accident, also called a **stroke,** often occurs when a small cranial arteriole bursts or is blocked by an embolus. Lack of oxygen causes a portion of the brain to die, and paralysis or death can result. A person is sometimes forewarned of a stroke by a feeling of numbness in the hands or face, difficulty speaking, or temporary blindness in one eye. If a coronary artery becomes completely blocked due to thromboembolism, a heart attack can result.

The coronary arteries take O_2-rich blood from the aorta to capillaries in the wall of the heart, and the cardiac veins return O_2-poor blood from the capillaries to the right ventricle. If the coronary arteries narrow due to cardiovascular disease, the individual may first suffer from angina pectoris, chest pain that is often accompanied by a radiating pain in the left arm. When a coronary artery is completely blocked, a portion of the heart muscle dies due to a lack of oxygen. This is known as a **heart attack.** Two surgical procedures are frequently performed to correct a blockage or facilitate blood flow. In a coronary bypass operation, a portion of a blood vessel from another part of the body is sutured from the aorta to the coronary artery, past the point of obstruction (**Fig. 23.17*a***). Now blood flows normally again from the aorta to the wall of the heart. In balloon angioplasty, a plastic tube is threaded through an artery to the blockage, and a balloon attached to the end of the tube is inflated to break through the blockage. A stent is often used to keep the vessel open (Fig. 23.17*b*).

Check Your Progress 23.3

1. Describe the role of each of the major components of blood.
2. Compare and contrast the types of white blood cells.
3. Discuss a few cardiovascular disorders and detail any available treatments.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video	MP3 Files
23.2 Cardiac Cycle • Conducting System of Heart • Fluid Exchange Across the Walls of Capillaries	**23.3** Cardiac Repair • Heart Stem Cells	**23.2** Heart Structure and Function • Cardiac Cycle • Cardiac Conduction System • Blood Flow and Blood Pressure • Lymphatic System • Capillary Exchange and Bulk Flow **23.3** General Fuctions and Composition of Blood

SUMMARIZE

23.1 Open and Closed Circulatory Systems

- Some invertebrates do not have a transport system, because their body plan allows each cell to exchange molecules with the external environment.
- Other invertebrates do have a transport system that uses a **heart** to move the blood.
- In an **open circulatory system,** the fluid, called **hemocoel,** is not confined to the blood vessels but accumulates in spaces called **sinuses.**
- In a **closed circulatory system,** or **cardiovascular system**, the blood remains within the blood vessels.

Comparison of Vertebrate Circulatory Pathways

- Fishes have a one-circuit pathway because the heart, with a single atrium and ventricle, pumps blood only to the gills.
- The cardiovascular system of other vertebrates consists of a **pulmonary circuit** (moves blood to lungs) and a **systemic circuit** (moves blood to tissues). Amphibians have two atria but a single ventricle. Crocodilians, birds, and mammals, including humans, have a heart with two atria and two ventricles, in which O_2-rich blood is always separate from O_2-poor blood.

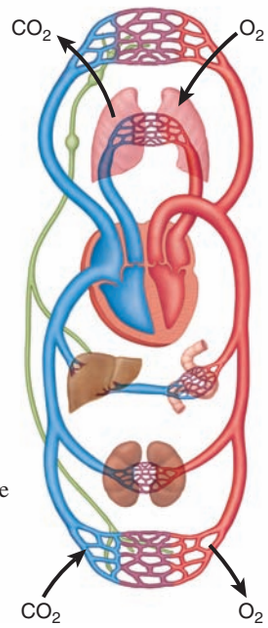
23.2 Transport in Humans

The cardiovascular system consists of the heart and the blood vessels.

The Human Heart

The heart has a right and a left side separated by a **septum.** Each side has an **atrium** (receives blood) and a **ventricle** (pumps blood). **Atrioventricular valves** and **semilunar valves** keep the blood moving in the correct direction. **Arteries** move blood away from the heart; **veins** move blood toward the heart.

- **Right side of the heart:** The right atrium receives O_2-poor blood from the tissues via the **vena cavae.** The ventricle pumps it to the lungs via the **pulmonary artery.**
- **Left side of the heart:** The left atrium receives O_2-rich blood from the lungs via the **pulmonary vein.** The ventricle pumps it to the tissues via the **aorta.**
- **Heartbeat:** The heartbeat, or **cardiac cycle,** consists of a series of contractions (**systole**) followed by relaxation (**diastole**). During a heartbeat first the atria contract and then the ventricles contract. The heart sounds, *lub-dub*, are caused by the closing of valves. A **pulse** is caused by the movement of the blood in the blood vessels.
- **SA node:** The **SA (sinoatrial) node** (pacemaker) causes the two atria to contract. The SA node also stimulates the AV node.
- **AV node:** The **AV (atrioventricular) node** causes the two ventricles to contract.
- An **electrocardiogram (ECG)** can be used to detect the activity of the SA and AV nodes.



Blood Vessels

Arteries, with thick walls, take blood away from the heart to **arterioles,** which take blood to **capillaries** that have walls composed only of epithelial cells. **Venules** take blood from capillaries and merge to form **veins,** which have thinner walls than arteries have.

- Blood pressure, created by the beat of the heart, accounts for the flow of blood in the arteries.
- Skeletal muscle contraction is largely responsible for the flow of blood in the veins, which have valves preventing backward flow.

Blood Has Two Circuits

- In the pulmonary circuit, blood travels to and from the lungs.
- In the systemic circuit, blood travels to and from the tissues of the body. A **portal system** is unique in that it begins and ends with capillaries.

Lymphatic System

The **lymphatic system** is a one-way system that consists of lymphatic vessels and lymphatic organs. The lymphatic vessels receive fat at the digestive tract and excess tissue fluid (**lymph**) at blood capillaries; the lymphatic vessels carry these to the subclavian veins (cardiovascular veins in the shoulders).

Capillary Exchange in the Tissues

Capillary exchange in the tissues helps keep the internal environment constant. When blood reaches a capillary,

- Water moves out at the arterial end due to blood pressure.
- Water moves in at the venous end due to osmotic pressure.
- Nutrients diffuse out of and wastes diffuse into the capillary between the arterial end and the venous end.
- Lymphatic capillaries in the vicinity pick up excess tissue fluid and return it to cardiovascular veins.

23.3 Blood: A Transport Medium

Blood has two main parts: plasma and formed elements.

Plasma

Plasma contains mostly water (90–92%) and proteins (7–8%) but also nutrients, wastes, and salts.

- The proteins and salts buffer the blood and maintain its osmotic pressure.
- The proteins also have specific functions, such as participating in blood clotting and transporting molecules.

Formed Elements

- **Formed elements** include red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets.
- Red blood cells contain **hemoglobin** and function in oxygen transport
- White blood cells defend against disease

Neutrophils, monocytes, and **macrophages** are phagocytic cells.

- Lymphocytes are involved in the development of specific immunity to disease. Some (B cells) respond to **antigens** by producing **antibodies;** others (T cells) attack infected cells of the body.
- P**latelets** and the plasma proteins (prothrombin, fibrinogen) are involved in the formation of a blood clot.

Cardiovascular Disorders

Hypertension and **atherosclerosis** are two conditions that lead to **heart attack** and **stroke**. Following a heart-healthy diet, getting regular exercise, maintaining a proper weight, and not smoking cigarettes are protective against these conditions.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The cardiovascular system is essential in moving oxygen and nutrients to the cells of the body. This system is regulated by a series of events that ensure proper function.

23.1 Both open and closed circulatory systems exchange materials with the external environment.

23.2 The human circulatory system moves blood throughout the entire body.

23.3 Blood is an essential medium for maintaining homeostasis.

For more information about the functions of circulatory systems, see the following discussions:

Section 19.1 describes the major trends in the evolution of animals.

Section 24.3 illustrates the hepatic portal system, which moves blood and nutrients from the small intestine to the liver.

Section 26.2 examines how the components of the blood are involved in the inflammatory response.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

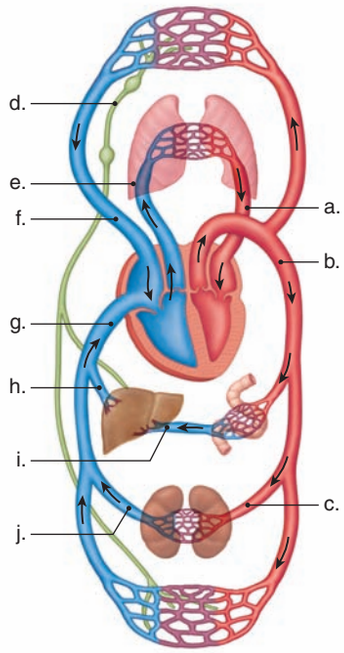
Choose the best answer for each question.

23.1 Open and Closed Circulatory Systems

1. In insects with an open circulatory system, oxygen is taken to cells by
   a. blood. **c.** tracheae.
   b. hemolymph. **d.** capillaries.
2. The _____ circuit takes blood to and from the tissues.
   a. systemic **c.** coronary
   b. pulmonary **d.** atrial
3. Which of the following organisms do not posess a pulmonary circuit?
   a. amphibians **c.** mammals
   b. reptiles **d.** fish

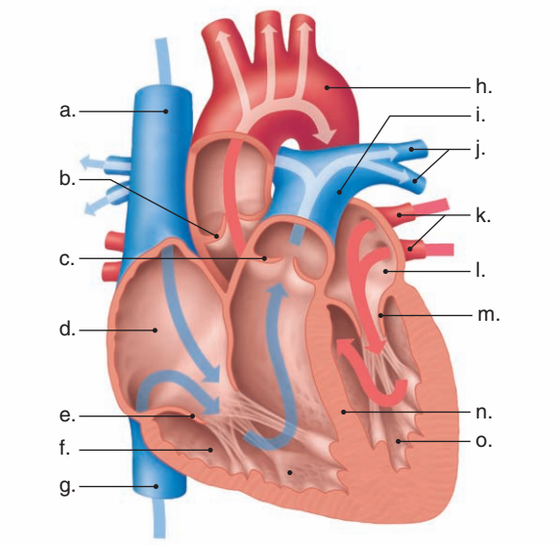
23.2 Transport in Humans

4. Label the components of the cardiovascular system in the following diagram.



5. Which of the following statements is true?
   a. Arteries carry blood away from the heart, and veins carry blood to the heart.
   b. Arteries carry blood to the heart, and veins carry blood away from the heart.
   c. All arteries carry O_2-rich blood, and veins carry O_2-poor blood.
   d. Arteries usually carry O_2-poor blood, and veins carry O_2-rich blood.

6. Label the following diagram of the heart.



7. Which of the following lists the events of the cardiac cycle in the correct order?
- **a.** contraction of atria, rest, contraction of ventricles
- **b.** contraction of ventricles, rest, contraction of atria
- **c.** contraction of atria, contraction of ventricles, rest
- **d.** contraction of ventricles, contraction of atria, rest

8. An electrocardiogram measures
- **a.** chemical signals in the brain and heart.
- **b.** electrical activity in the brain and heart.
- **c.** chemical signals in the heart.
- **d.** electrical changes in the wall of the heart.

9. Water enters the venous end of capillaries because of
- **a.** osmotic pressure that is higher than blood pressure.
- **b.** an osmotic pressure gradient.
- **c.** higher blood pressure on the venous side.
- **d.** higher blood pressure on the arterial side.
- **e.** higher red blood cell concentration on the venous side.

10. Lymph is formed from
- **a.** damaged tissue.
- **b.** red blood cells.
- **c.** excess tissue fluid.
- **d.** white blood cells.

23.3 Blood: A Transport Medium

11. Which association is not correct?
- **a.** white blood cells—infection fighting
- **b.** red blood cells—blood clotting
- **c.** plasma—water, nutrients, and wastes
- **d.** red blood cells—hemoglobin
- **e.** platelets—blood clotting

12. Plasma
- **a.** is composed mostly of proteins.
- **b.** has a pH of 12.
- **c.** is the liquid portion of blood.
- **d.** is approximately 10% water.

13. A decrease in lymphocytes would result in problems associated with
- **a.** clotting.
- **b.** immunity.
- **c.** oxygen transportation.
- **d.** All of these are correct.

14. Which of the following conditions is characterized by the accumulation of plaque in a blood vessel?
- **a.** hypertension
- **b.** atherosclerosis
- **c.** stroke
- **d.** heart attack

15. Which of the following is not involved in blood clotting?
- **a.** calcium ions
- **b.** lymphocytes
- **c.** platelets
- **d.** prothrombin and fibrinogen

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Assume your heart rate is 70 beats per minute (bpm), and each minute your heart pumps 5.25 liters of blood to your body. Based on your age to the nearest day, about how many times has your heart beat so far, and what volume of blood has it pumped?

2. Explain why the evolution of the four-chambered heart was critical for the development of an endothermic lifestyle (the generation of internal heat) in birds and mammals.

3. Provide a physiological explanation for the benefit gained by athletes who train at high altitudes.

4. The cardiovascular system is an elegant example of the concept that structure supports function. Each type of blood vessel has a specific job. Each vessel's physical characteristics enable it to do that job. The muscle walls of the right and left ventricle vary in thickness depending on where they pump the blood. When organ structure is damaged or changed (as arteries are in atherosclerosis), the organ's ability to perform its function may be compromised. Homeostatic conditions, such as blood pressure, may be affected as well. Dietary and lifestyle choices can either prevent damage or harm the cardiovascular system.
- **a.** What do you think the long-term effects of hypertension would be on the heart? What about other organ systems?
- **b.** Why do you think a combination of hypertension and atherosclerosis is particularly dangerous?

24

The Maintenance Systems

OUTLINE

24.1 Respiratory System 451

24.2 Urinary System and Excretion 457

24.3 Digestive System 462

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 5.4 What influences the diffusion of a gas across a membrane?

Section 22.1 What are the four types of tissue, and what is the general function of each?

Section 22.3 How does negative feedback assist in the maintenance of homeostasis?

When Breathing Becomes Difficult

Asthma is a disease in which the airways become constricted (narrowed) and inflamed (swollen), both of which can result in difficulty breathing. The symptoms often include wheezing and shortness of breath, a frequent cough (often at night), and a feeling of being very tired or weak, especially when exercising. Over 34 million children and adults in the United States have asthma, and the incidence seems to be increasing. Experts offer various explanations for this. One hypothesis is that we may be "too clean," in the sense that we are not exposed to enough common bacteria, viruses, and parasites as children. As a result, our immune systems may react to harmless material we inhale. There are many harmful forms of air pollution, but there are increasing concerns about tiny, "ultrafine" particles (less than 0.1 micrometer (μm) across), which are produced at high levels by diesel engines. These particles can bypass the normal defenses of the upper respiratory tract and end up lodging deep in the lungs, with damaging effects.

Recently, there have been breakthroughs in asthma research. In addition to environmental factors, there appear to be a number of genes that increase susceptibility to asthma. For example, one set of genes on chromosome 5 has been linked to asthma and is associated with the body's inflammatory response (Chapter 26). Inflammation can constrict the airways and increase fluid flow to the lungs. Variations in a gene on chromsome 17 have also been shown to increase susceptibility, especially in individuals who have been exposed to respiratory viruses. Although there is not currently a cure, the identification of these genes sheds hope for those with asthma.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How would a narrowing and swelling of the airways affect the respiratory volumes?
2. How would asthma indirectly affect the other systems of the body?

24.1 Respiratory System

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the three primary steps of respiration in animals.
2. List the components of the upper and lower respiratory tracts.
3. Compare inspiration and exhalation.
4. Compare and contrast the process of respiration in humans, insects, and fish.
5. Explain how oxygen and carbon dioxide are transported in the blood.

The cells of your body are bathed in a fluid, called tissue fluid. The cells acquire oxygen and nutrients and get rid of carbon dioxide and other wastes through exchanges with the tissue fluid. In turn, tissue fluid makes the same exchanges with the blood. Blood is refreshed because the respiratory, urinary, and digestive systems make exchanges with the external environment. Only in this way is blood cleansed of waste molecules and supplied with the oxygen and nutrients the cells require. Notice in **Figure 24.1** that, when blood enters the lungs of the respiratory system, it gives up carbon dioxide (CO_2) and picks up oxygen (O_2). Carbon dioxide exits the body through exhalation, and the oxygen, obtained through inhalation, is delivered to the body's cells. In this way, **respiration**, also referred to as ventilation, contributes to homeostasis. Respiration in terrestrial vertebrates (including humans) requires these steps:

1. Breathing: inspiration (entrance of air into the lungs) and expiration (exit of air from the lungs)
2. External exchange of gases between the air and the blood within the lungs
3. Internal exchange of gases between blood and tissue fluid and the exchange of gases between the cells and tissue fluid

Regardless of the particular gas-exchange surfaces of animals and the manner in which gases are delivered to the cells, in the end oxygen enters mitochondria, where aerobic cellular respiration takes place. Without the delivery of oxygen to the body's cells, ATP is not produced, and life ceases. Carbon dioxide, a waste molecule given off by cells, is a by-product of cellular respiration.

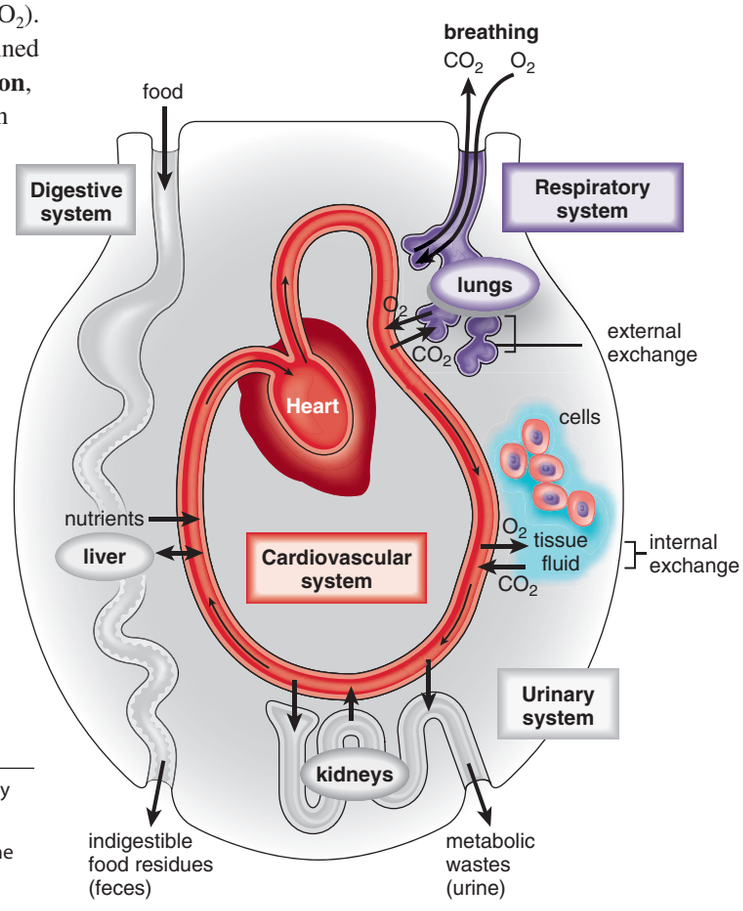


Figure 24.1 **Keeping the internal environment steady.**

The respiratory system functions in gas exchange. CO_2-laden blood enters the pulmonary capillaries, and then CO_2 diffuses into the lungs and exits the body by way of respiratory passages. O_2-laden air enters the respiratory passages and lungs. Then O_2 diffuses into the blood at the pulmonary capillaries.

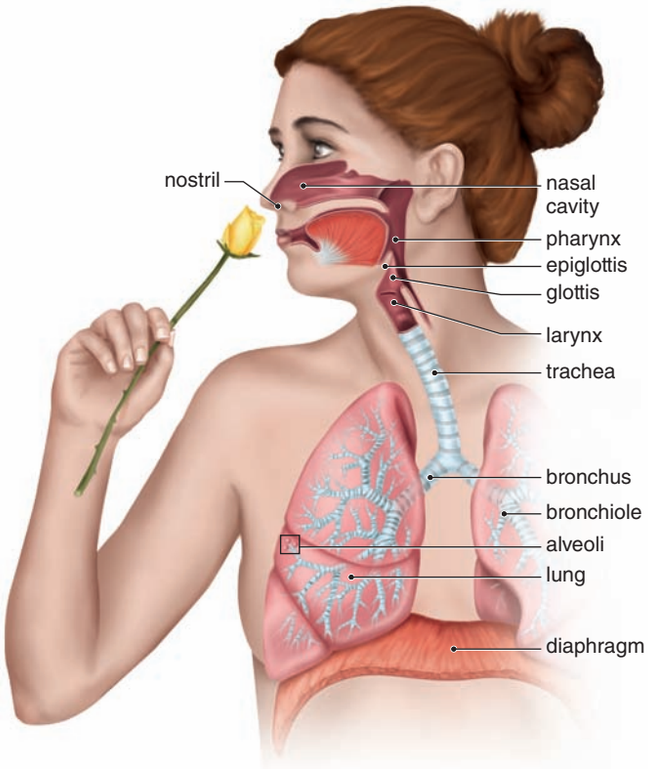


Figure 24.2 **The human respiratory tract.**

To reach the lungs, air moves from the nasal cavities through the pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, and bronchioles, which end in the lungs.

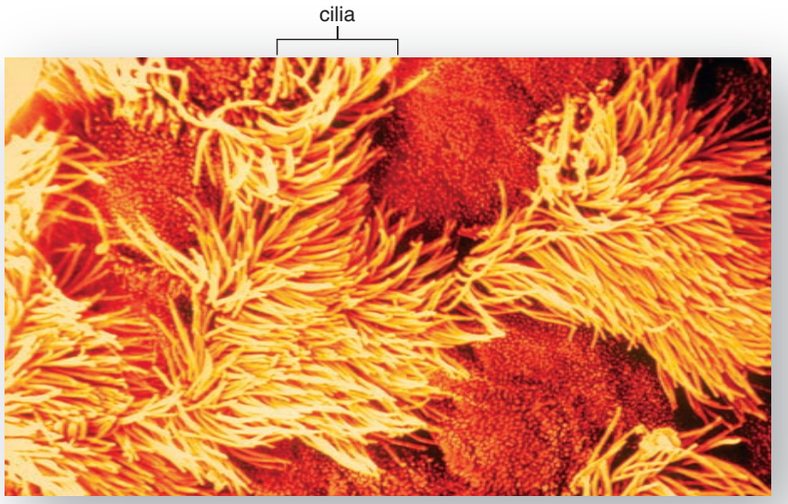


Figure 24.3 **Ciliated cells of the respiratory passages.**

These cilia sweep impurities up, away from the lungs toward the throat, where they may be swallowed. Smoking first inactivates and then destroys the cilia.

The Human Respiratory Tract

The human respiratory system includes all of the structures that conduct air in a continuous pathway to and from the **lungs** (**Fig. 24.2**). As air moves through the respiratory tract, it is filtered, so that it is free of debris, warmed, and humidified. By the time the air reaches the lungs, it is at body temperature and saturated with water. In the nose, hairs and cilia act as filtering devices. In the respiratory passages, cilia beat upward (**Fig. 24.3**), carrying mucus, dust, and other particles in the air into the throat, where the accumulation may be swallowed or spit out. Smoking cigarettes and cigars inactivates and eventually destroys these cilia, so that the lungs become laden with soot and debris. This is the first step toward various lung disorders.

As the air moves out of the respiratory tract, it cools and loses its moisture. As air cools, it deposits its moisture on the lining of the tract, and the nose may even drip as a result of this condensation. However, the air still retains so much moisture that, on a cold day, it forms a small cloud when we breathe out.

Upper Respiratory Tract

The upper respiratory tract consists of the nasal cavities, pharynx, and larynx (see Fig. 24.2). The nose, a prominent feature of the face, is the only external portion of the respiratory system. The nose contains the **nasal cavities,** narrow canals separated from one another by a septum composed of bone and cartilage. Tears from the eyes drain into the nasal cavities by way of tear ducts. For this reason, crying produces a runny nose. The nasal cavities communicate with the **sinuses,** air-filled spaces that reduce the weight of the skull and act as resonating chambers for the voice. If the ducts leading from the sinuses become inflamed, fluid may accumulate, causing a sinus headache. The nasal cavities are separated from the mouth by a partition called the palate. The palate has two portions. Anteriorly, the hard palate is supported by bone; posteriorly, the soft palate is made solely of soft tissue and muscle.

The **pharynx** is a funnel-shaped passageway that connects the nasal cavity and mouth to the **larynx,** or voice box. The tonsils form a protective ring of lymphatic tissue at the junction of the mouth and the pharynx. *Tonsillitis* occurs when the tonsils become inflamed and enlarged. If tonsillitis occurs frequently and enlargement makes breathing difficult, the tonsils can be removed surgically, a procedure called a tonsillectomy. In the pharynx, the air passage and food passage cross because the larynx, which receives air, is anterior to the esophagus, which receives food. This arrangement may seem inefficient, since there is danger of choking if food accidentally enters the trachea, but it does have the advantage of letting you breathe through your mouth if your nose is plugged. In addition, it permits greater intake of air during heavy exercise, when greater gas exchange is required. When swallowing occurs, the epiglottis, an elastic flap

of cartilage, covers the glottis, the opening into the larynx, and this helps prevent choking.

Air passes from the pharynx through the **glottis.** The larynx is always open because it is formed by a complex of cartilages, among them the one that forms the "Adam's apple." At the edges of the glottis, embedded in mucous membrane, are the **vocal cords.** These flexible bands of connective tissue vibrate and produce sound when air is expelled past them through the glottis from the larynx. *Laryngitis* is an infection of the larynx with accompanying hoarseness, leading to the inability to speak audibly.

Lower Respiratory Tract

The lower respiratory tract contains the respiratory tree, consisting of the trachea, bronchi, and bronchioles (see Fig. 24.2). The **trachea,** commonly called the windpipe, is a tube connecting the larynx to the bronchi. The trachea is held open by a series of C-shaped, cartilaginous rings that do not completely meet in the rear. This arrangement allows food to pass down through the esophagus, which lies right behind the trachea in the neck, without the rings of cartilage damaging the outer tissue of the esophagus. The trachea divides into two primary **bronchi,** which enter the right and left lungs. *Bronchitis* is an infection of the bronchi. As bronchitis develops, a nonproductive cough becomes a deep cough that produces mucus and perhaps pus. The deep cough of smokers indicates that they have bronchitis and the respiratory tract is irritated. When a person stops smoking, this progression reverses and the airways become healthy again. Chronic bronchitis is the second step toward emphysema and lung cancer caused by smoking cigarettes. Lung cancer often begins in the bronchi, and from there it spreads to the lungs.

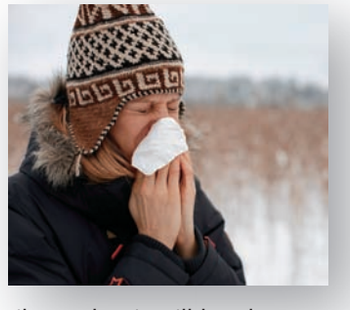
Video
911 Pollution

The bronchi continue to branch until there are a great number of smaller passages called **bronchioles.** The two bronchi resemble the trachea in structure, but as the passages divide and subdivide, their walls become thinner, the rings of cartilage disappear, and the amount of smooth muscle increases. During an attack of *asthma,* the smooth muscle of the bronchioles contracts, causing constriction of the bronchioles and characteristic wheezing (see chapter opener). Each bronchiole terminates in an elongated space enclosed by a multitude of little air pockets, or sacs, called **alveoli** (sing., alveolus), which make up the lungs (see Fig. 24.8).

Respiration in Insects Whereas humans have one trachea, insects have many tracheae, little air tubes supported by rings of chitin that branch into every part of the body (**Fig. 24.4**). The tracheal system begins at spiracles, openings that perforate the insect's body wall, and ends in very fine, fluid-filled tubules, which may actually indent the plasma membranes of cells to come close to mitochondria. Ventilation is assisted by the presence of air sacs that draw in the air. Since no cell is very far from the site of gas exchange, the bloodstream does not transport oxygen, and no oxygen-carrying pigment is required.

Connections: Health

Why does your nose run when you are cold?



One of the functions of the mucosal lining in the nose is to use the mucus to warm the air entering the lungs. The tissue lining the nose is highly vascularized (lots of blood vessels), and combining the circulation of the blood with the mucus will warm the cold air in the nostrils, so that it will be closer to body temperature when it gets inside the lungs. This is done so the internal body temperature does not fluctuate too greatly and cause adverse effects on homeostasis.

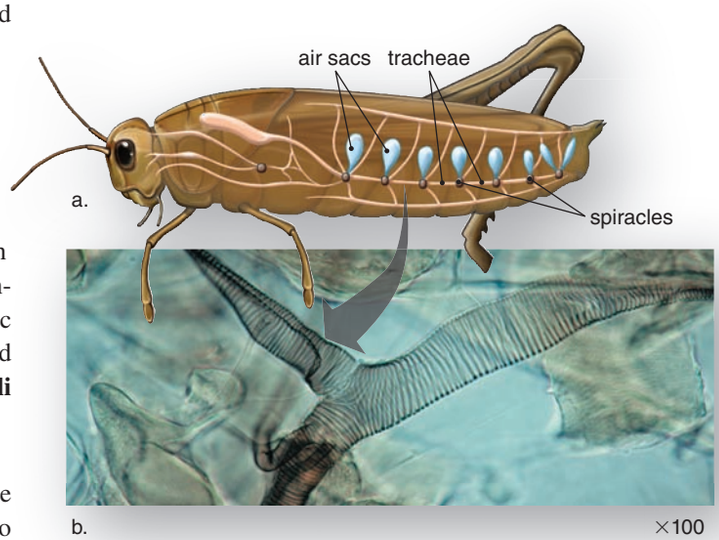


Figure 24.4 **Tracheae of insects.**

A system of air tubes extending throughout the body of an insect carries oxygen to the cells. Air enters the tracheae at openings called spiracles. From there, the air moves to smaller tubes, which take it to the cells where gas exchange takes place. **a.** Diagram of tracheae. **b.** The photomicrograph shows how the walls of the tracheae are stiffened with bands of chitin.

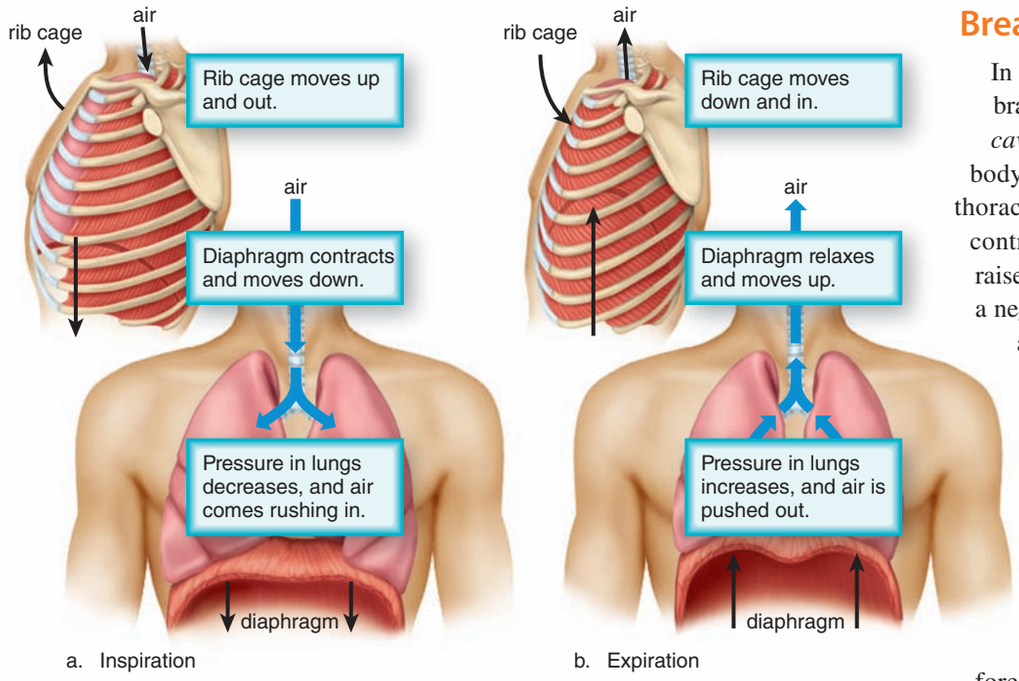


Figure 24.5 **Inspiration versus expiration.**

a. During inspiration, the thoracic cavity and lungs expand, so that air is drawn in. **b.** During expiration, the thoracic cavity and lungs resume their original positions and pressures, forcing air out.

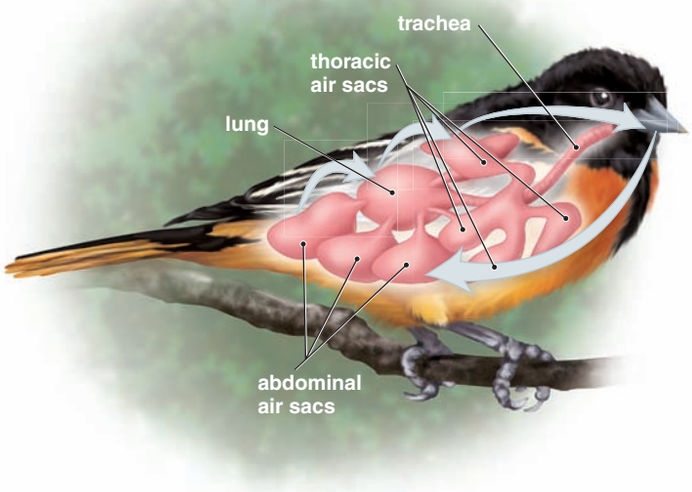


Figure 24.6 **Breathing in birds.**

The path of airflow in a bird is different than that of a human. When a bird inhales, (1) most of the air enters the abdominal air sacs and then (2) enters the lungs. When a bird exhales, (3) air moves through the lungs to the thoracic air sacs before (4) exiting the bird. This one-way flow of air through the lungs allows more fresh air to be present in the lungs with each breath, leading to greater uptake of oxygen from one breath of air.

Breathing

In humans, the **diaphragm** is a muscular, membranous partition that divides the upper *thoracic cavity* from the lower *abdominal cavity* of the body. When humans breathe, the volume of the thoracic cavity and lungs is increased by muscle contractions that both lower the diaphragm and raise the ribs (**Fig. 24.5**). These movements create a negative pressure in the thoracic cavity and lungs, and air then flows into the lungs, a process called **inspiration.** It is important to realize that air comes in because the lungs have already opened up; air does not force the lungs open. When the rib and diaphragm muscles relax, the lungs recoil and air moves out as a result of increased pressure in the lungs, a process called **expiration.**

In mammals and most reptiles, air moves in and out by the same route; therefore, some residual air, low in oxygen, is always left in the lungs of humans. Birds, on the other hand, use a one-way ventilation mechanism (**Fig. 24.6**). Incoming air is carried past the lungs by a trachea, which takes it to a set of abdominal air sacs. Then air passes forward through the lungs into a set of thoracic air sacs. Fresh air never mixes with used air in the lungs of birds, and thereby gas-exchange efficiency is greatly improved.

Increased concentrations of hydrogen ions (H^+) and carbon dioxide (CO_2) in the blood are the primary stimuli that increase the breathing rate in humans. The chemical content of the blood is monitored by chemoreceptors called **aortic bodies** and **carotid bodies,** specialized structures in the walls of the arteries, aorta, and common carotid arteries. These receptors are very sensitive to changes in H^+ and CO_2 concentrations, but they are only minimally sensitive to lower oxygen (O_2) concentrations. The need to breathe comes from a buildup of CO_2 in the bloodstream, not necessarily from a lack of oxygen. Information from the chemoreceptors goes to the *breathing center* in the brain, which increases the breathing rate when concentrations of hydrogen ions and carbon dioxide rise (**Fig. 24.7**). The breathing center is also directly sensitive to the chemical content of the blood, including its oxygen content.

MP3 Control of Respiration

Lungs and External Exchange of Gases

The lungs of humans and other mammals are more elaborately subdivided than those of amphibians and reptiles. Frogs and salamanders have a moist skin that allows them to use the surface of their body for gas exchange in addition to the lungs. It has been estimated that human lungs have a total surface area at least 50 times the skin's surface area because of the presence of alveoli.

An alveolus (**Fig. 24.8**), like the capillary that surrounds it, is bounded by squamous epithelium. Diffusion alone accounts for gas exchange between the alveolus and the capillary. Carbon dioxide, being more plentiful in the pulmonary venule, diffuses from a pulmonary capillary to enter an alveolus, while oxygen, being more plentiful in the lungs, diffuses from an alveolus into a pulmonary capillary. The process of diffusion requires a gas-exchange region to be not only large but also moist and thin. The alveoli are lined with surfactant, a film of lipoprotein that lowers the surface tension of water, thereby preventing the sides of the alveoli from sticking together during exhalation. Some newborns, especially if premature, lack this film. Surfactant replacement therapy is available to treat this condition.

The blood within pulmonary capillaries is indeed spread thin, and the red blood cells are pressed up against their narrow walls. The alveolar epithelium and the capillary epithelium are so close that together they are called the *respiratory membrane*. Hemoglobin in the red blood cells quickly picks up oxygen molecules as they diffuse into the blood.

Emphysema is a serious lung condition in which the walls of many alveoli have been destroyed. This greatly reduces the surface area for gas exchange to occur. Individuals with emphysema are unable to supply their cells with enough oxygen to conduct cellular respiration, and therefore usually the individual has very low energy levels. Emphysema is nonreversible and usually fatal, although individuals with early emphysema can use supplemental oxygen to increase oxygen delivery to their cells.

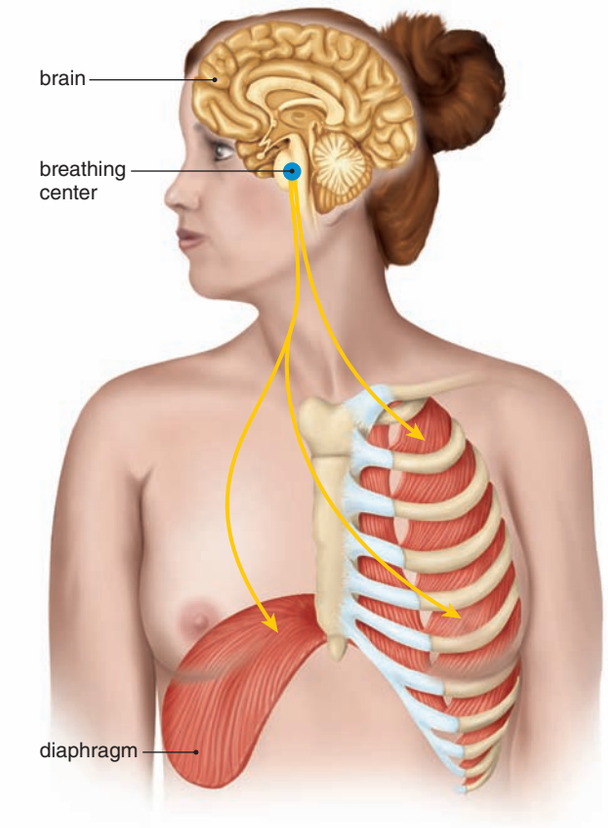


Figure 24.7 **Neural control of breathing rate.**

The brain regulates breathing rate by controlling contraction of the rib cage muscles and the diaphragm. When the breathing rate increases, H^+ lowers as CO_2 is removed from the blood, and the pH of the blood returns to normal.

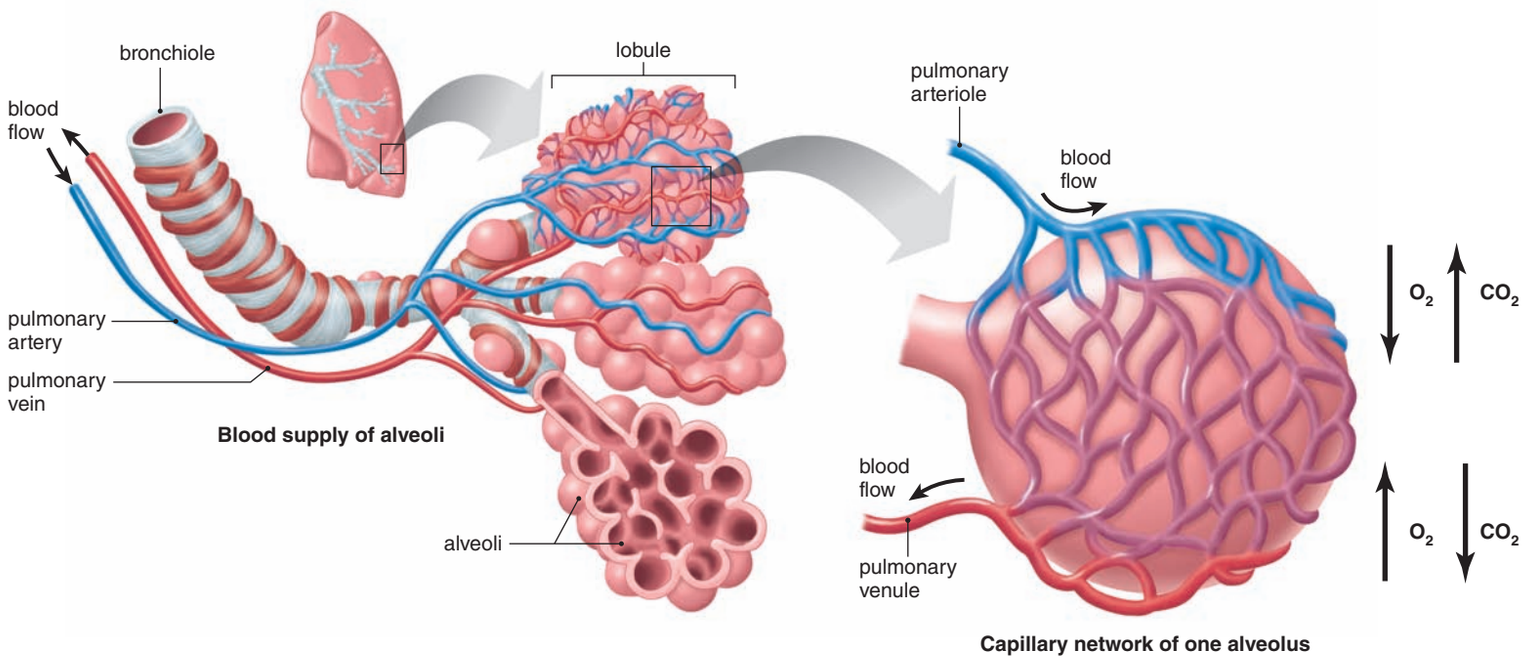


Figure 24.8 **Gas exchange in the lungs.**

Bronchioles lead to the alveoli, each of which is surrounded by an extensive capillary network. The pulmonary artery and arteriole carry O_2-poor blood (colored blue), and the pulmonary venule and vein carry O_2-rich blood (colored red).

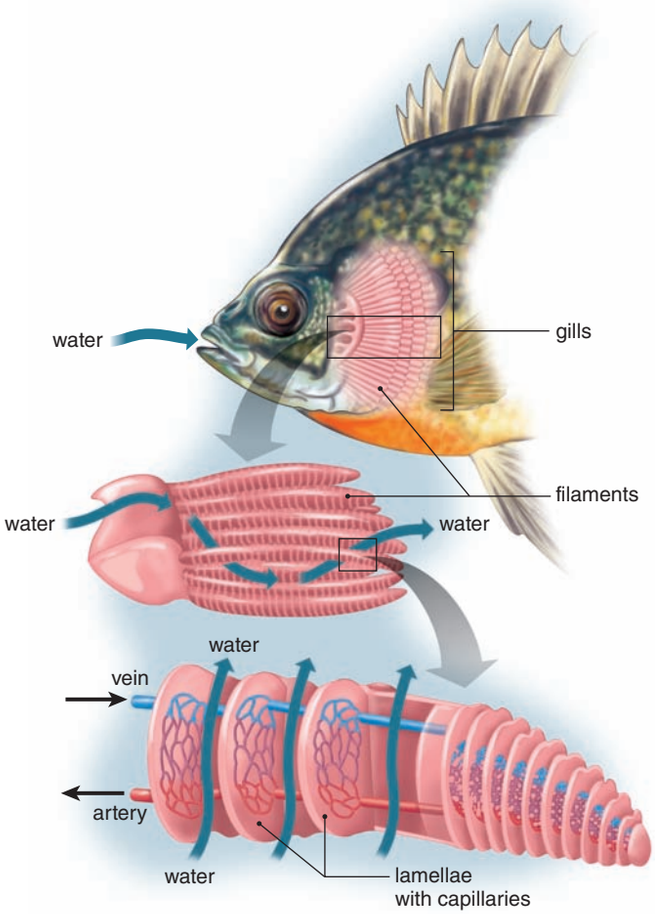


Figure 24.9 **Gills of bony fishes.**

The structure of a gill. Gases are exchanged between the capillaries inside the lamellae and the water that flows between the lamellae.

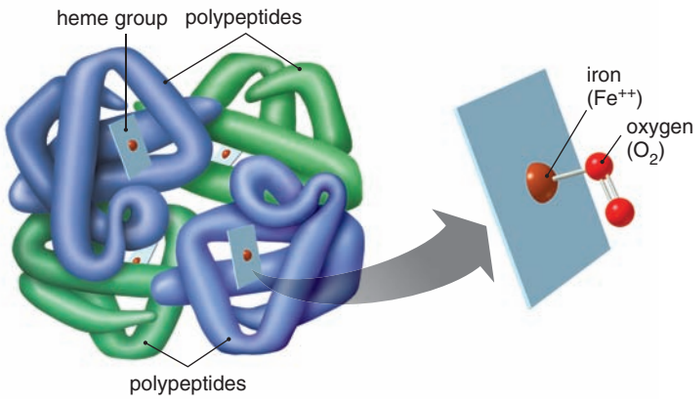


Figure 24.10 **Hemoglobin.**

Hemoglobin has two each of two different polypeptides, each with a heme group. Oxygen bonds with the central iron atom of a heme group.

Check Your Progress 24.1

1. Summarize the three steps of respiration in a terrestrial vertebrate.
2. Trace the path of air through the upper and lower respiratory tracts.
3. Detail what causes oxygen to diffuse into the blood from the lungs and what happens when carbon dioxide enters the blood.

Gills of Fish

In contrast to the lungs of terrestrial vertebrates, fish and other aquatic animals use gills as their respiratory organ (**Fig. 24.9**). In fish, water is drawn into the mouth and out from the pharynx across the gills. The flow of blood in gill capillaries is opposite the flow of water across the gills; therefore, the blood is always exposed to water having a higher oxygen content. In the end, about 80–90% of the dissolved oxygen in water is absorbed.

Transport and Internal Exchange of Gases

Recall from Chapter 23 that hemoglobin molecules within red blood cells carry oxygen to the body's tissues. If hemoglobin did not transport oxygen, it would take about three years for an oxygen molecule to move from your lungs to your toes. Each hemoglobin molecule contains four polypeptide chains: two α and two β chains. Each polypeptide is folded around an iron-containing group called **heme.** It is actually the iron that bonds with oxygen and carries it to the tissues (**Fig. 24.10**). Since there are about 250 million hemoglobin molecules in each red blood cell, each cell is capable of carrying at least 1 billion molecules of oxygen. Hemoglobin gives up its oxygen in the tissues during internal exchange primarily because tissue fluid always has a lower oxygen concentration than blood does. This difference occurs because cells take up and utilize oxygen when they carry on cellular respiration. Another reason hemoglobin gives up oxygen is the warmer temperature and lower pH in the tissues, environmental conditions that are also caused by cellular respiration. When cells respire, they give off heat and carbon dioxide as by-products.

Carbon dioxide enters the blood during internal exchange because the tissue fluid always has a higher concentration of carbon dioxide. Most of the carbon dioxide is transported in the form of the **bicarbonate ion** (HCO_3^-). First, carbon dioxide combines with water, forming carbonic acid, and then this acid dissociates to a hydrogen ion (H^+) and HCO_3^-:

$$\underset{\text{carbon dioxide}}{CO_2} + \underset{\text{water}}{H_2O} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{carbonic acid}}{H_2CO_3} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{hydrogen ion}}{H^+} + \underset{\text{bicarbonate ion}}{HCO_3^-}$$

The H^+ does cause the pH to lower, but only slightly because much of the H^+ is absorbed by the globin portions of hemoglobin. The HCO_3^- is carried in the plasma.

What happens to the preceding equation in the lungs? As blood enters the pulmonary capillaries, carbon dioxide diffuses out of the blood into the alveoli. Hemoglobin gives up the H^+ it has been carrying as this reaction occurs:

$$H^+ + HCO_3^- \longrightarrow H_2CO_3 \longrightarrow H_2O + CO_2$$

Now, much of the carbon dioxide diffuses out of the blood into the alveoli of the lungs. Should the blood level of H^+ rise, the breathing center in the brain increases the breathing rate, and as more CO_2 leaves the blood, the pH of blood is corrected.

Animation
Gas Exchange During Respiration

24.1 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

The respiratory system exchanges gases between the air and the body's cells.

24.2 Urinary System and Excretion

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain how the urinary system participates in maintaining homeostasis.
2. Describe the anatomy of the kidney and nephron.
3. Explain the three processes involved in urine formation.
4. Compare and contrast excretion in insects with excretion in mammals.
5. Describe the causes and treatment of kidney disease.

In vertebrate animals, such as humans, the **kidneys** play an important role in homeostasis. They filter nitrogenous wastes from the blood and are involved in regulating the water-salt balance of the body (**Fig. 24.11**). In addition, the mammalian kidney helps regulate the pH of blood. To summarize, the following three functions are associated with the kidneys:

1. Excretion of nitrogenous wastes, such as urea and uric acid
2. Maintenance of the water-salt balance of the blood
3. Maintenance of the acid-base balance of the blood

In humans, the kidneys are bean-shaped, reddish-brown organs, each about the size of a fist. They are located on each side of the vertebral column, just below the diaphragm, where they are partially protected by the lower rib cage. **Urine** made by the kidneys is conducted from the body by the other organs in the urinary system. Each kidney is connected to a **ureter,** a tube that takes urine from the kidney to the **urinary bladder,** where it is stored

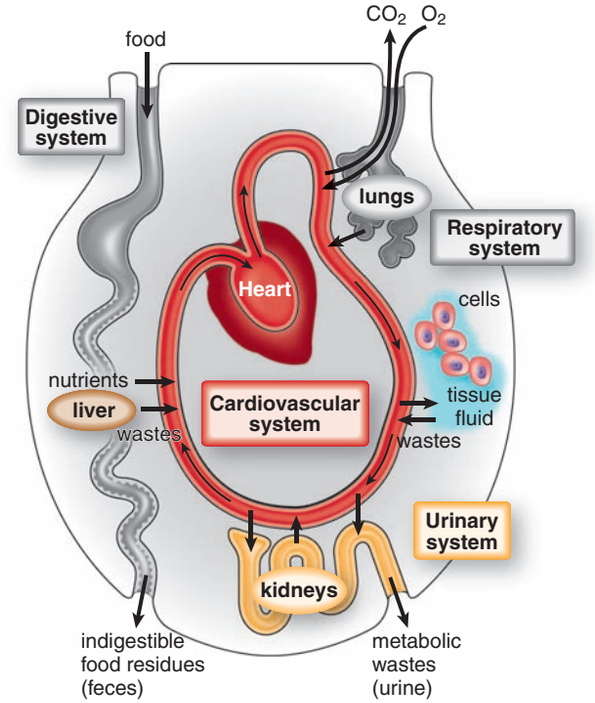


Figure 24.11 **Keeping the internal environment steady.**

Excretion carried out by the kidneys serves three functions: excretion of urea (produced by the liver) and other nitrogenous wastes, maintenance of water-salt balance, and maintenance of pH.

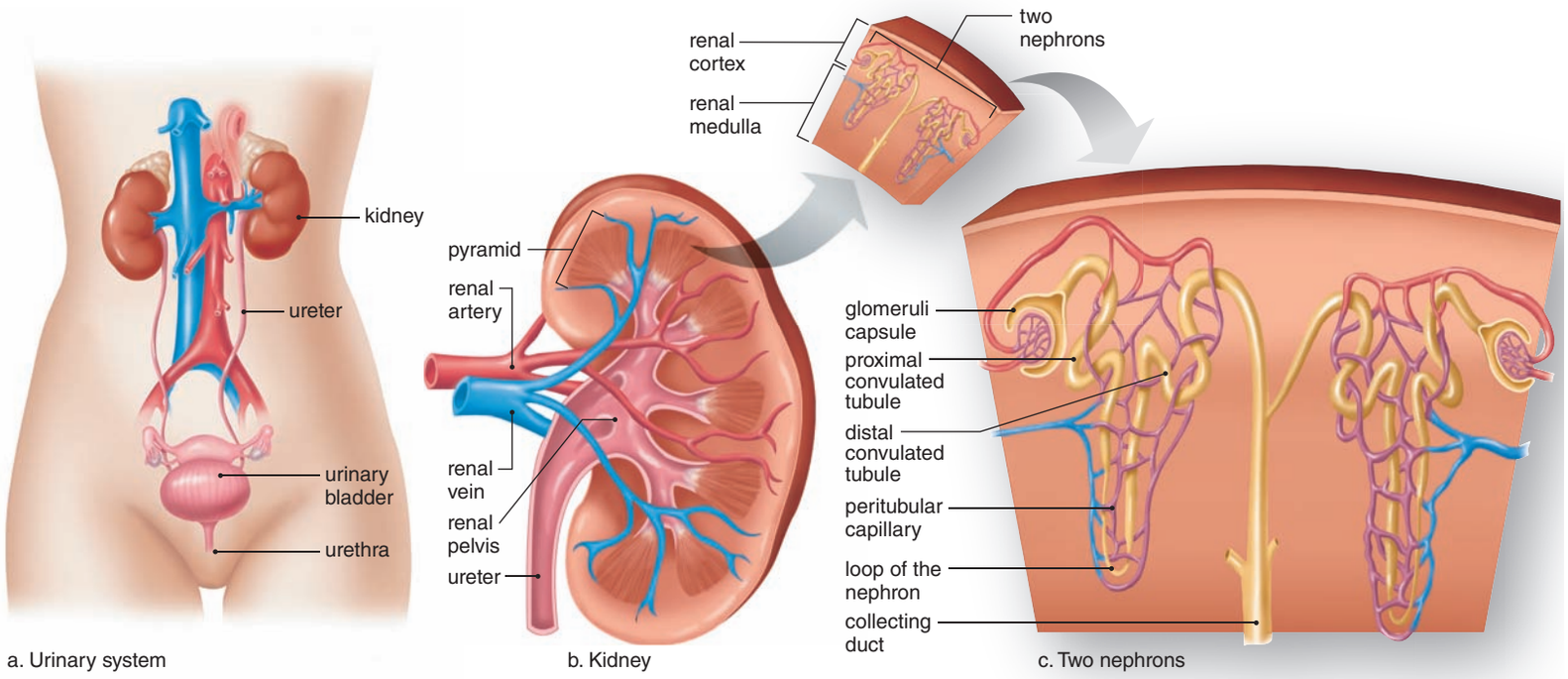


Figure 24.12 **The human urinary system.**

a. The human urinary system produces, stores, and expels urine from the body. **b.** The human kidney has three sections, which can be correlated with (**c**) the presence of about 1 million nephrons. Nephrons do the work of the kidney.

until it is voided from the body through the single **urethra** (**Fig. 24.12*a***). In males, the urethra passes through the penis; in females, it opens in front of the opening of the vagina. In females, there is no connection between the genital (reproductive) and urinary systems, but there is a connection in males, since the urethra also carries sperm during ejaculation.

In amphibians, birds, reptiles, and some fishes, the bladder empties into the cloaca, a common chamber and outlet for the digestive, urinary, and genital tracts.

Human Kidney

If a kidney is sectioned longitudinally, three major parts can be distinguished (Fig. 24.12*b*). The *renal cortex*, the outer region of a kidney, has a somewhat granular appearance. The *renal medulla* consists of the cone-shaped renal pyramids, which lie inside the renal cortex. The innermost part of the kidney is a hollow chamber called the *renal pelvis.* Urine collects in the renal pelvis and then is carried to the bladder by a ureter. Microscopically, each kidney is composed of about 1 million tiny tubules called **nephrons** (Fig. 24.12*c*). The nephrons of a kidney produce urine.

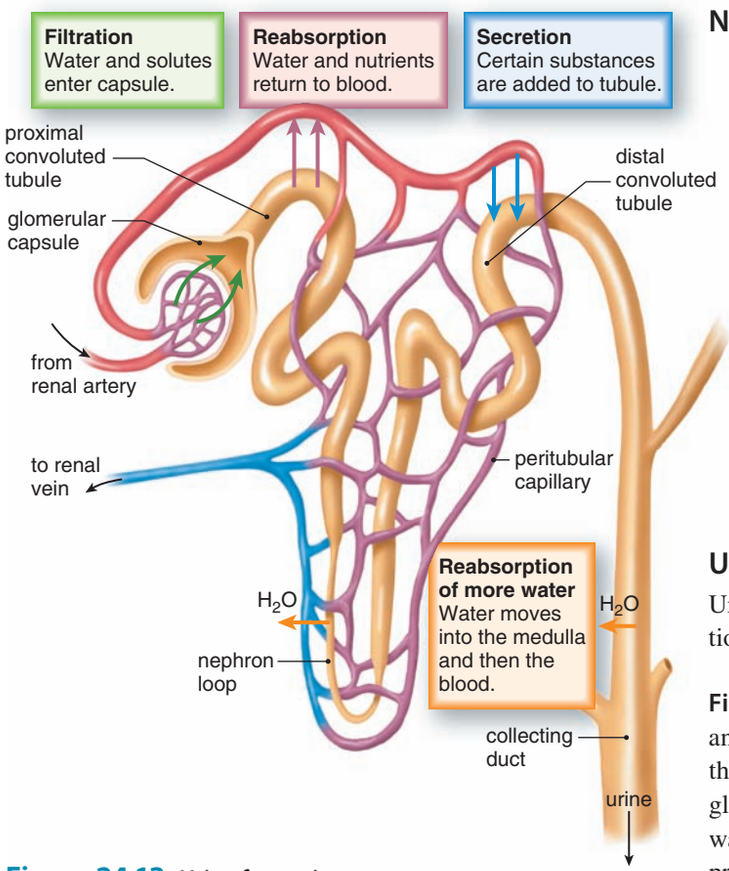


Figure 24.13 **Urine formation.**

Urine formation requires three steps: filtration, reabsorption, and secretion. Production of a hypertonic urine occurs when water is reabsorbed into the blood along the length of the nephron, and especially at the nephron loop and collecting duct.

Nephrons

Each nephron is made up of several parts (**Fig. 24.13**). The blind, or closed, end of a nephron is pushed in on itself to form the **glomerular capsule.** Filtration of the blood occurs at this portion of the nephron. The inner layer of the capsule is composed of specialized cells that allow the easy passage of molecules. Leading from the capsule is a portion of the nephron called the **proximal convoluted tubule,** which is lined by cells with many mitochondria and tightly packed microvilli. Then comes the **nephron loop,** with a descending limb and an ascending limb. This is followed by the **distal convoluted tubule.** Several distal tubules enter one **collecting duct.** A collecting duct delivers urine to the renal pelvis. The nephron loop and the collecting duct give the pyramids of the renal medulla their striped appearance (see Fig. 24.12*b*).

Each nephron has its own blood supply, and various exchanges occur between parts of the nephron and a blood capillary as urine forms.

Urine Formation

Urine formation requires three steps: filtration, reabsorption, and secretion (Fig. 24.13).

Filtration Filtration occurs whenever small substances pass through a filter and large substances are left behind. During urine formation, **filtration** is the movement of small molecules from a blood capillary to the inside of the glomerular capsule as a result of blood pressure. Small molecules, such as water, nutrients, salts, and urea, move to the inside of the capsule. Plasma proteins and blood cells are too large to be part of this filtrate, so they remain in the blood.

If the composition of the filtrate were not altered in other parts of the nephron, death from loss of nutrients (starvation) and loss of water (dehydration) would quickly follow. The next step, reabsorption, helps prevent this.

Reabsorption of Solutes **Reabsorption** takes place when substances from the proximal convoluted tubule move into the blood. Nutrients such as glucose and amino acids also return to the blood. This process is selective because some molecules, such as glucose, are both passively and actively reabsorbed. The cells of the proximal convoluted tubule have numerous microvilli, which increase the surface area, and numerous mitochondria, which supply the energy needed for active transport. However, if there is more glucose in the filtrate than there are carriers to handle it, glucose will appear in the urine. Glucose in the urine is a sign of *diabetes mellitus,* sometimes caused by a lack of the hormone insulin.

Sodium ions (Na^+) are also actively pumped into the peritubular capillary, and then chloride ions (Cl^-) follow passively. Water moves by osmosis from the tubule into the blood. Protein channels, called aquaporins, in the membrane of the epithelial cells lining the proximal convoluted tubule allow for the rapid reabsorption of water. Overall, about 60–70% of salt and water are reabsorbed at the proximal convoluted tubule.

Some of the urea, the primary nitrogenous waste product of human metabolism, and other types of nitrogenous wastes excreted by humans are passively reabsorbed, but most remain in the filtrate.

Secretion **Secretion** is the transport of substances into the nephron by means other than filtration. For our purposes, secretion may be particularly associated with the distal convoluted tubule. Substances such as uric acid, hydrogen ions, ammonia, and penicillin are eliminated by secretion. The process of secretion helps rid the body of potentially harmful compounds that were not filtered into the capsule.

Animation
Kidney Function

Regulation of Water-Salt Balance and pH All animals have some means of maintaining the water-salt and pH homeostasis of the internal environment. In humans, the long nephron loop allows for the secretion of a hypertonic urine (Fig. 24.13). The ascending limb of the nephron loop pumps salt and urea into the renal medulla, and water follows by osmosis both at the descending limb of the nephron loop and at the collecting duct. As you will see in Chapter 27, at least three hormones are involved in regulating water-salt reabsorption by the kidneys. Drinking coffee interferes with one of these hormones, and that is why coffee is a *diuretic*, a substance that causes the production of more urine.

MP3
Water Conservation

The human kidney also assists in the regulation of the pH of the blood. Both the bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) buffer system of the blood and the regulation of breathing rate (see Fig. 24.10) help rid the body of CO_2 and contribute to maintaining blood pH. As helpful as these mechanisms might be, only the kidneys can excrete a wide range of acidic and basic substances. The kidneys are slower-acting than the buffer/breathing mechanism, but they have a more powerful effect on pH. For the sake of simplicity, we can think of the kidneys as reabsorbing bicarbonate ions and excreting hydrogen ions as needed to maintain the normal pH of the blood (**Fig. 24.14**). If the blood is acidic, hydrogen ions are excreted and bicarbonate ions are reabsorbed. If the blood is basic, hydrogen ions are not excreted and bicarbonate ions are not reabsorbed. The fact that urine is most often acidic shows that usually

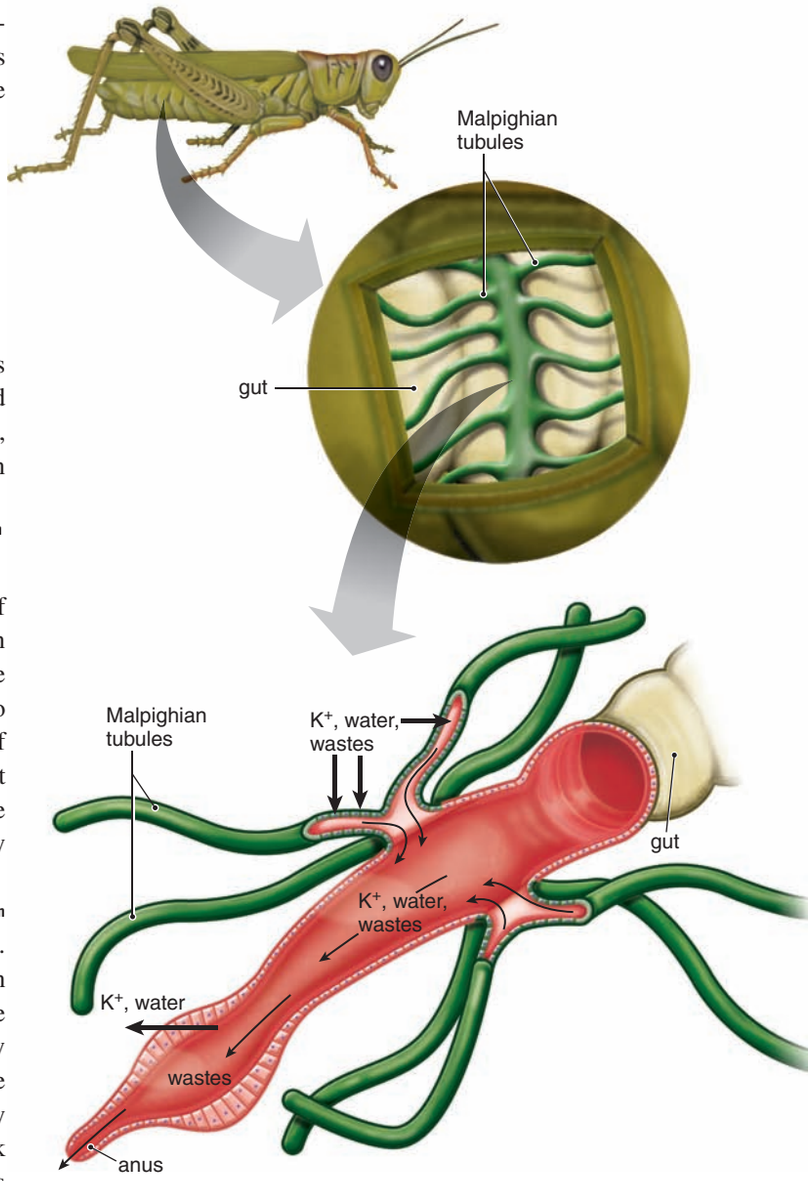


Figure 24.14 **Acid-base balance.**

If the blood is acidic, the kidneys reabsorb bicarbonate ions (HCO_3^-) and excrete hydrogen ions (H^+). If the blood is basic, both of these processes are inhibited.

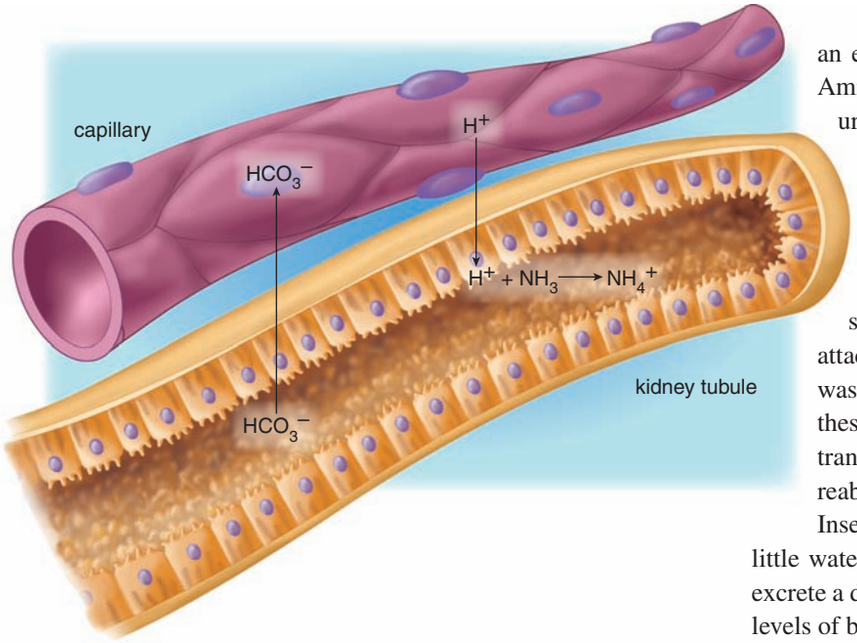


Figure 24.15 **Malpighian tubules.**

The Malpighian tubules of insects are attached to the gut and surrounded by the hemolymph of the open circulatory system. Wastes diffuse into tubules. K^+ is secreted into these tubules, drawing in water by osmosis. Much of the water and K^+ is reabsorbed across the wall of the rectum.

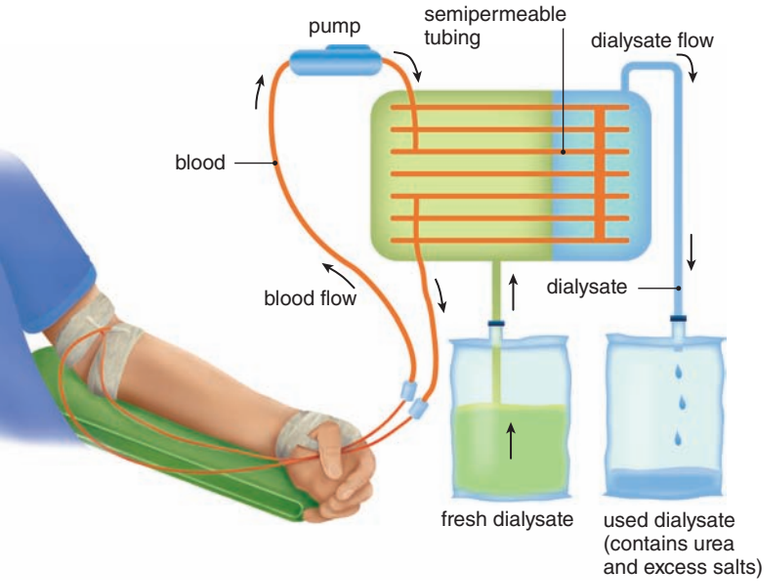


Figure 24.16 **Artificial kidney machine.**

As the patient's blood is pumped through dialysis tubing, the tubing is exposed to a dialysate (dialysis solution). Wastes exit from blood into the solution because of a preestablished concentration gradient. In this way, not only is blood cleansed but its water-salt and acid-base balances can be adjusted as well.

an excess of hydrogen ions is produced by the body and is excreted. Ammonia (NH_3) provides a means for buffering these hydrogen ions in urine: ($NH_3 + H^+ \longrightarrow NH_4^+$). Ammonia (the presence of which is quite obvious in a diaper pail or kitty litter box) is produced in tubule cells by the breakdown of amino acids. Phosphate provides another means of buffering hydrogen ions in urine.

Regulation in Insects and Fish Insects have a unique excretory system consisting of long, thin tubules called **Malpighian tubules** attached to the gut (**Fig. 24.15**). Uric acid, their primary nitrogenous waste product, simply diffuses from the surrounding hemolymph into these tubules, and water follows a salt gradient established by active transport of potassium (K^+). Water and other useful substances are reabsorbed at the rectum, but the uric acid leaves the body at the anus. Insects that live in water or eat large quantities of moist food reabsorb little water. But insects in dry environments reabsorb most of the water and excrete a dry, semisolid mass of uric acid. Most animals can regulate the blood levels of both water and salt. For example, freshwater fishes take up salt in the digestive tract and gills and produce large amounts of dilute urine. Saltwater fishes take in salt water by drinking, but then they pump ions out at the gills and produce only small amounts of concentrated urine.

Problems with Kidney Function

Many types of illnesses, especially diabetes, hypertension, and inherited conditions, cause progressive renal disease and renal failure. Urinary tract infections, an enlarged prostate gland, pH imbalances, or simply an intake of too much calcium can lead to kidney stones. Kidney stones form in the renal pelvis and usually pass unnoticed in the urine flow. If they grow to several centimeters and block the renal pelvis or ureter, back pressure builds up and destroys nephrons. One of the first signs of nephron damage is the presence of albumin, white blood cells, or even red blood cells in the urine, as detected by a urinalysis. If damage is so extensive that more than two-thirds of the nephrons are inoperative, urea and other waste substances accumulate in the blood. Although nitrogenous waste in the blood is a threat to homeostasis, the retention of water and salts is of even greater concern. **Edema,** fluid accumulation in the body tissues, may occur. Imbalance in the ionic composition of body fluids can lead to loss of consciousness and even heart failure.

Hemodialysis and Kidney Transplants

Patients with renal failure can undergo *hemodialysis,* utilizing either an artificial kidney machine or *continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD).* **Dialysis** is defined as the diffusion of dissolved molecules through a semipermeable membrane with pore sizes that allow only small molecules to pass through. In an artificial kidney machine, the patient's blood is passed through a membranous tube, which is in contact with a dialysis solution, or dialysate (**Fig. 24.16**). Substances more concentrated in the blood diffuse into the dialysate, and substances more concentrated in the dialysate diffuse into the blood. The dialysate is continuously replaced to maintain favorable concentration gradients. In this way, the artificial kidney can be utilized either to extract substances from the blood, including waste products or toxic chemicals and drugs, or to add substances to the blood—for example, bicarbonate ions (HCO_3^-) if

the blood is acidic. In the course of a three- to six-hour hemodialysis procedure, from 50 to 250 grams of urea can be removed from a patient, which greatly exceeds the amount excreted by our kidneys within the same time frame. Therefore, a patient needs to undergo treatment only about twice a week.

CAPD is so named because the peritoneum, the epithelium that lines the abdominal cavity, is the dialysis membrane. A fresh amount of dialysate is introduced directly into the abdominal cavity from a bag that is temporarily attached to a permanently implanted plastic tube. The dialysate flows into the peritoneal cavity by gravity. Waste and salt molecules pass from the blood vessels in the abdominal wall into the dialysate before the fluid is collected four or eight hours later. The solution is drained into a bag from the abdominal cavity by gravity, and then it is discarded. One advantage of CAPD over an artificial kidney machine is that the individual can go about his or her normal activities during CAPD.

Patients with renal failure may undergo a transplant operation, receiving a functioning kidney from a donor. A person needs only one functioning kidney; however, the possibility of organ rejection exists, as it does with all organ transplants. Receiving a kidney from a close relative has the highest chance of success. The current one-year survival rate is 98% and the five-year survival rate is more than 91%. In the future, it may be possible to use either kidneys from pigs or kidneys created in the laboratory for transplant operations.

Check Your Progress 24.2

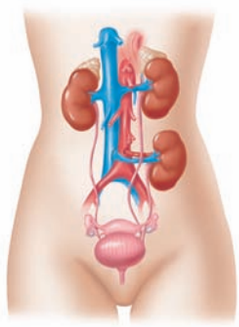
1. List the three functions of the kidney.
2. Describe the parts of a nephron and the function of each part.
3. Summarize the three stages of urine formation.
4. Summarize the importance of water-salt balance and pH to homeostasis.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The urinary system excretes nitrogenous wastes and maintains the water-salt and acid-base balances of the body.

Connections: Health

During a kidney transplant, is the failing kidney removed?



Normally, no. When a patient needs a kidney transplant, the donor kidney is normally placed in the lower abdomen, below one of the two original kidneys, with the blood vessels from the donor kidney connected to the recipient's arteries and veins and the ureter from the donor kidney connected to the recipient's bladder. The patient's failing kidney is kept in most cases because, even if the nephrons are not functioning in cleansing the blood and producing urine, the kidney can still produce other chemicals and substances the body needs to function. The failing kidney will be removed in cases of severe infection, cancer, or polycystic kidney disease (PKD).

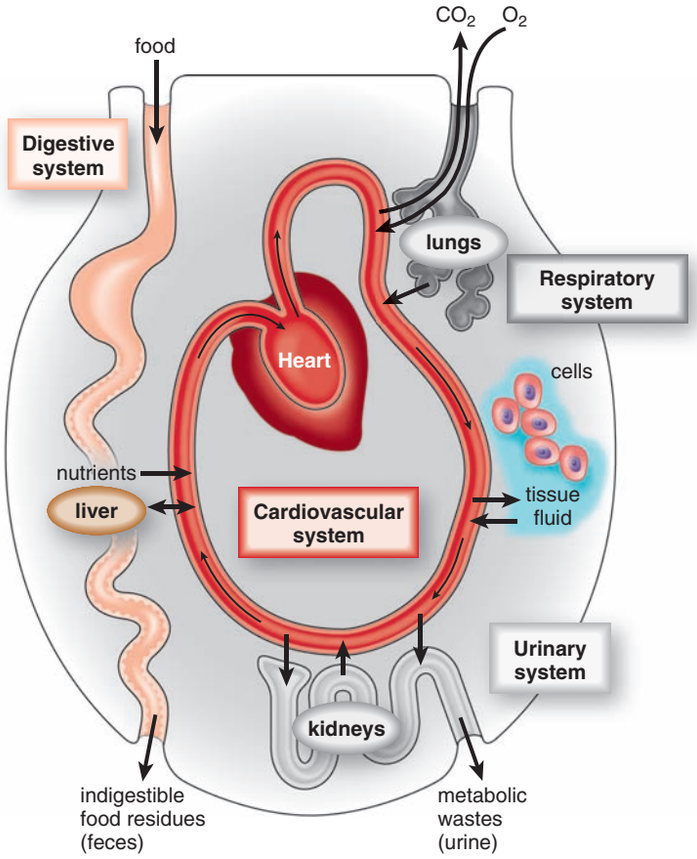


Figure 24.17 **Keeping the internal environment steady.**

The digestive system takes in food and digests it to nutrient molecules that enter the blood. The blood transports nutrients to the tissues, where exchange occurs with tissue fluid.

24.3 Digestive System

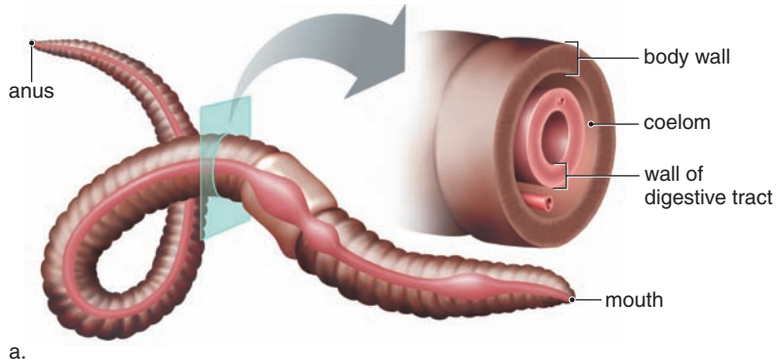
Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

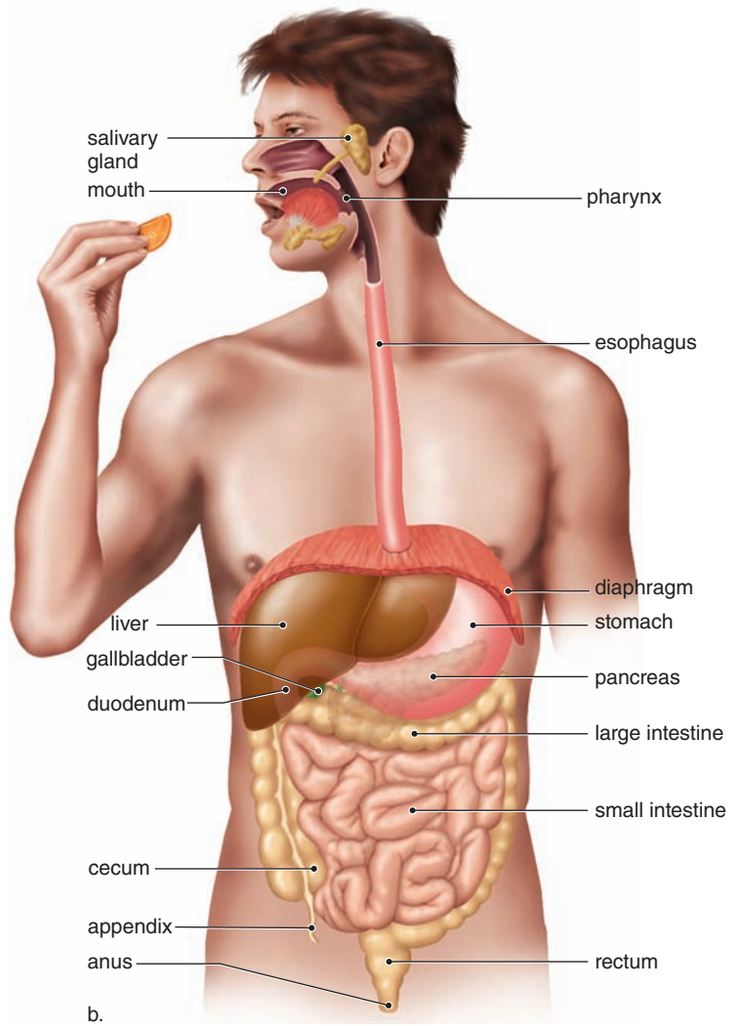
1. Distinguish between a complete and an incomplete digestive system.
2. Identify the organs of the human digestive system and provide a function for each.
3. List the accessory organs of the digestive system and explain their functions.
4. Detail the digestion and absorption of specific nutrients (e.g., carbohydrates) in the digestive tract.

Digestion contributes to homeostasis by providing the body's cells with the nutrients they need to continue functioning. A digestive tract performs the following functions (**Fig. 24.17**):

1. Ingests food
2. Breaks food down into small molecules that can cross plasma membranes
3. Absorbs nutrient molecules
4. Eliminates indigestible remains



a.



b.

Figure 24.18 **Complete digestive system.**

(**a**) Earthworms and (**b**) humans have complete digestive systems. A complete digestive system leads to specialization of organs along the digestive tract.

Complete and Incomplete Digestive Systems

Hydras and planarians (see Chapter 19) have an incomplete digestive system, meaning that a single opening serves as both an entrance and an exit. Most other animals, such as the earthworm, have a complete digestive tract. A complete digestive tract has a tube-within-a-tube configuration (**Fig 24.18*a***). The inner tube (the digestive tract, sometimes called the alimentary canal) has both an entrance (the mouth) and an exit (the anus). Notice that the inner tube is separated from the outer tube (the body wall) by the **coelom.** Specialized organs that assist with digestion are located within the coelum. While the digestive tract of humans (Fig. 24.18*b*) might seem to be very different from that of the earthworms, there are a number of similarities.

In all animals, including earthworms and humans, the digestion of food is an extracellular process. Digestive enzymes, produced by glands in the wall of the tract or by accessory glands that lie nearby, are released into the tract. Food is never found within these accessory glands, only within the digestive tract itself.

MP3
An Overview of the Digestive System

The Digestive Tract

The digestive tract of humans, and most other vertebrates, consists of the mouth, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine (Fig. 24.18*b*).

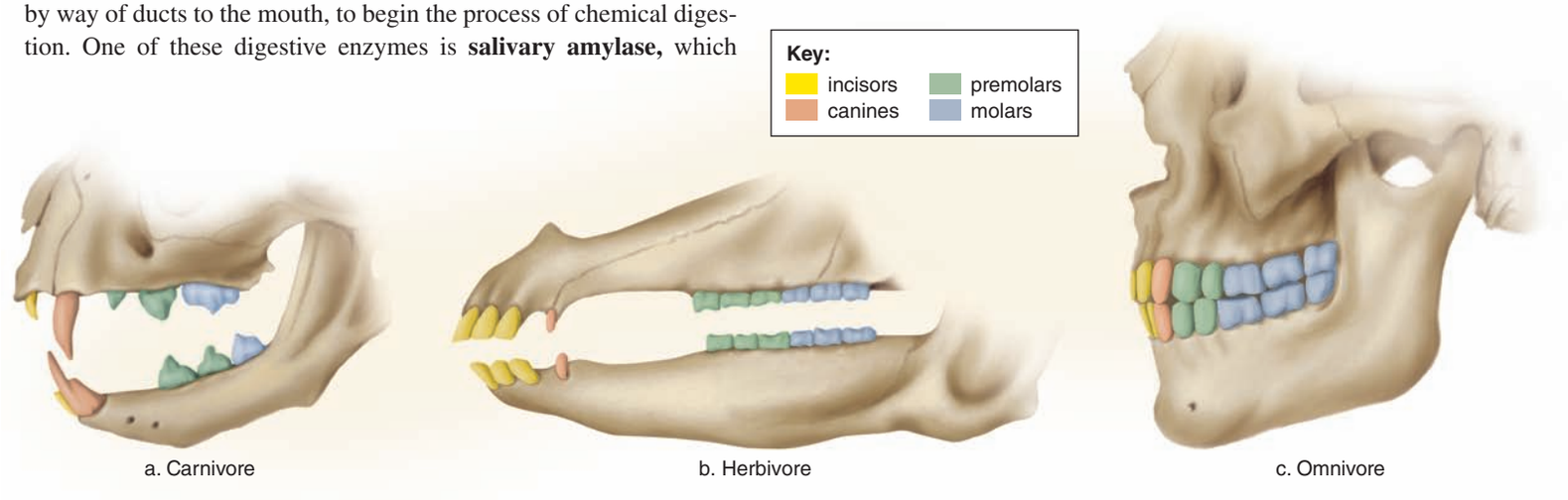
Mouth

In humans, the digestive system begins with the **mouth,** which chews food into pieces, beginning the process of mechanical digestion. Many vertebrates have teeth, an exception being birds, which lack teeth and depend on the churning of small pebbles within a gizzard to break up their food. The teeth (dentition) of mammals reflect their diet (**Fig. 24.19**). **Carnivores** eat meat, which is easily digestible because the cells do not have a cellulose wall. **Herbivores** eat plant material, which needs a lot of chewing and other processing to break up the cellulose walls. Humans are **omnivores;** they eat both meat and plant material. The four front teeth (top and bottom) of humans are sharp, chisel-shaped incisors used for biting. On each side of the incisors are the pointed canines used for tearing food. The premolars and molars grind and crush food. It is as though humans were carnivores in the front of their mouths and herbivores in the back.

Food contains cells composed of molecules of carbohydrates, proteins, nucleic acids, and lipids. Digestive enzymes break down these large molecules to smaller molecules. In the mouth, three pairs of **salivary glands** send saliva by way of ducts to the mouth, to begin the process of chemical digestion. One of these digestive enzymes is **salivary amylase,** which

Figure 24.19 **Dentition among mammals.**

a. Carnivores have enlarged canines for killing prey, short incisors for scraping bones and jagged molars for tearing flesh. **b.** Herbivores have sharp incisors for clipping vegetation and flat molars and pre-molars for grinding. **c.** Omnivores have front teeth like a carnivore, and back teeth like a herbivore.



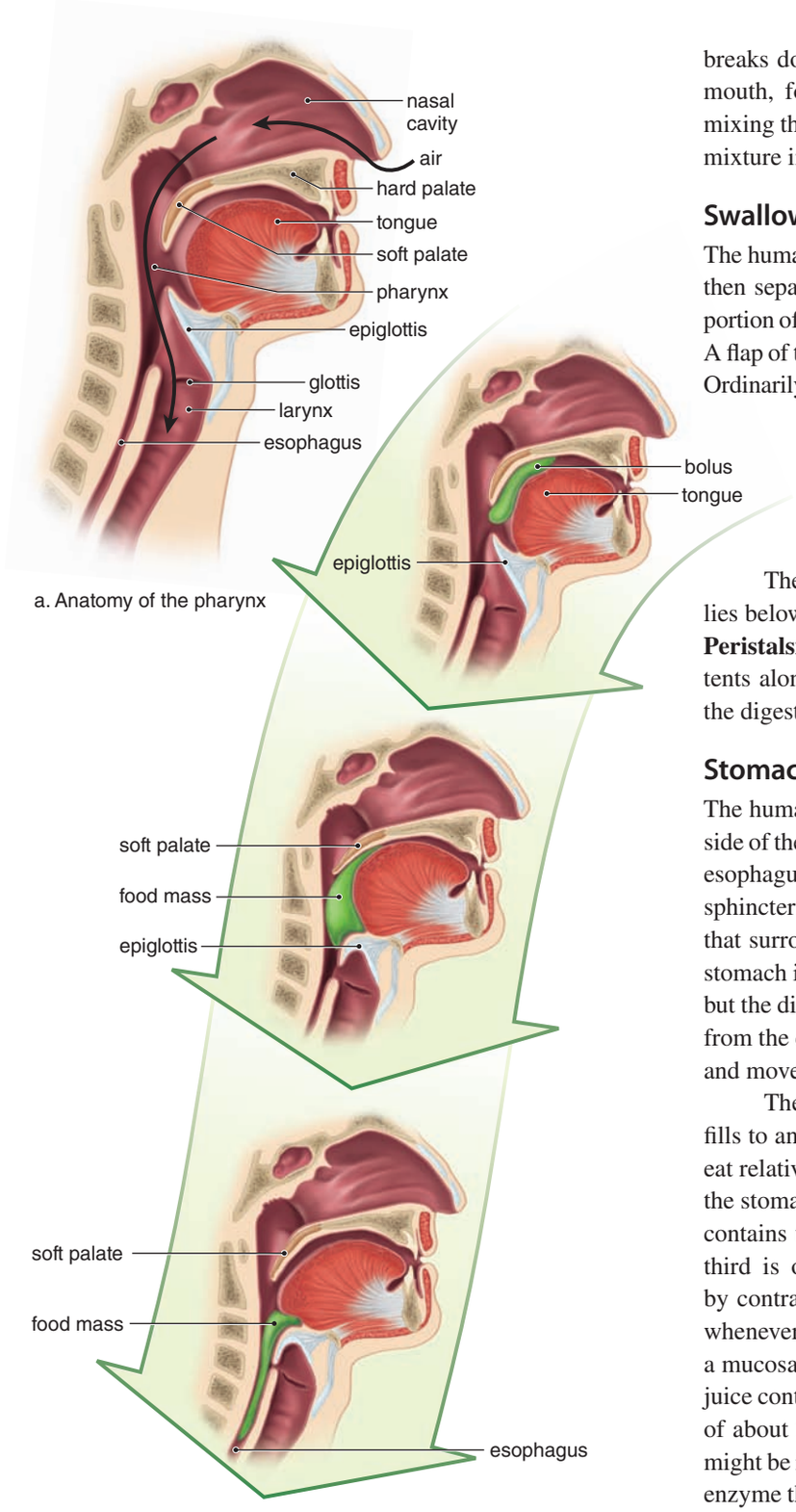


Figure 24.20 **The human mouth, pharynx, esophagus, and larynx.**

a. The palates (both the hard and the soft) separate the mouth from the nasal cavities. The pharynx leads to the esophagus and the larynx.
b. When food is swallowed, the soft palate closes off the nasal cavities and the epiglottis closes off the larynx.

breaks down starch, a carbohydrate, to maltose, a disaccharide. While in the mouth, food is manipulated by a muscular tongue (mechanical digestion), mixing the chewed food with saliva (chemical digestion) and then forming this mixture into a mass called a **bolus,** which is swallowed.

Swallowing

The human digestive and respiratory passages come together in the pharynx and then separate (**Fig. 24.20*a***). When food is swallowed, the soft palate, the rear portion of the mouth's roof, moves up to close off the nasal cavities (Fig. 24.20*b*). A flap of tissue called the **epiglottis** covers the glottis, an opening into the larynx. Ordinarily, the bolus must move through the pharynx and into the esophagus because the air passages are blocked. Unfortunately, we have all had the unpleasant experience of having food "go the wrong way." The wrong way may be either into the nasal cavities or into the trachea. If it is the latter, coughing will most likely force the food up out of the trachea and into the pharynx again.

The **esophagus** is a muscular tube that takes food to the stomach, which lies below the diaphragm. When food enters the esophagus, peristalsis begins. **Peristalsis** is a rhythmic contraction of smooth muscles that moves the contents along in tubular organs—in this case, those of the digestive tract.

MP3 Oral Cavity, Esophagus and the Swallowing Reflex

Stomach

The human **stomach** is a thick-walled, J-shaped organ (**Fig. 24.21**) on the left side of the abdominal cavity below the liver. The stomach is continuous with the esophagus above and the duodenum of the small intestine below. The cardiac sphincter separates the esophagus from the stomach. A sphincter is a muscle that surrounds a tube and closes or opens it by contracting and relaxing. The stomach is about 25 cm (10 in.) long, regardless of the amount of food it holds, but the diameter varies, depending on how full it is. The stomach receives food from the esophagus, stores food, starts the digestion of proteins, and moves food into the small intestine.

MP3 Stomach

The wall of the stomach has deep folds, which disappear as the stomach fills to an approximate capacity of 1 liter. Therefore, humans can periodically eat relatively large meals, freeing the rest of their time for other activities. But the stomach is much more than a mere storage organ. The wall of the stomach contains three muscle layers: one is longitudinal, another is circular, and the third is obliquely arranged. The muscular walls mechanically digest food by contracting vigorously to mix it with digestive juices, which are secreted whenever food enters the stomach. The epithelial lining of the stomach, called a mucosa, has millions of gastric glands. These gastric glands produce gastric juice containing so much hydrochloric acid that the stomach routinely has a pH of about 2. Such strong acidity is usually sufficient to kill any microbes that might be in food. This low pH also promotes the activity of **pepsin,** a hydrolytic enzyme that acts on protein to produce peptides. Sometimes, the strong acidity causes *heartburn* and *gastric reflux disease* when gastric juice backs up into the esophagus.

As with the rest of the digestive tract, a thick layer of mucus protects the wall of the stomach from enzymatic action. Still, an ulcer, which is an open sore in the wall caused by the gradual destruction of tissues, may occur in some individuals. Most ulcers are due to an infection by an acid-resistant bacterium, *Helicobacter pylori,* which is able to attach to the epithelial lining.

Wherever the bacterium attaches, the lining stops producing mucus and the area becomes exposed to digestive action, allowing an ulcer to develop.

Alcohol and other liquids are absorbed in the stomach, but food particles are not. Peristalsis pushes food along in the stomach, as it does in other digestive organs (Fig. 24.21*b*). At the base of the stomach is a narrow opening called the pyloric sphincter. When food leaves the stomach, it is a thick, soupy liquid called chyme. Whenever the pyloric sphincter relaxes, a small quantity of chyme squirts through the opening into the small intestine.

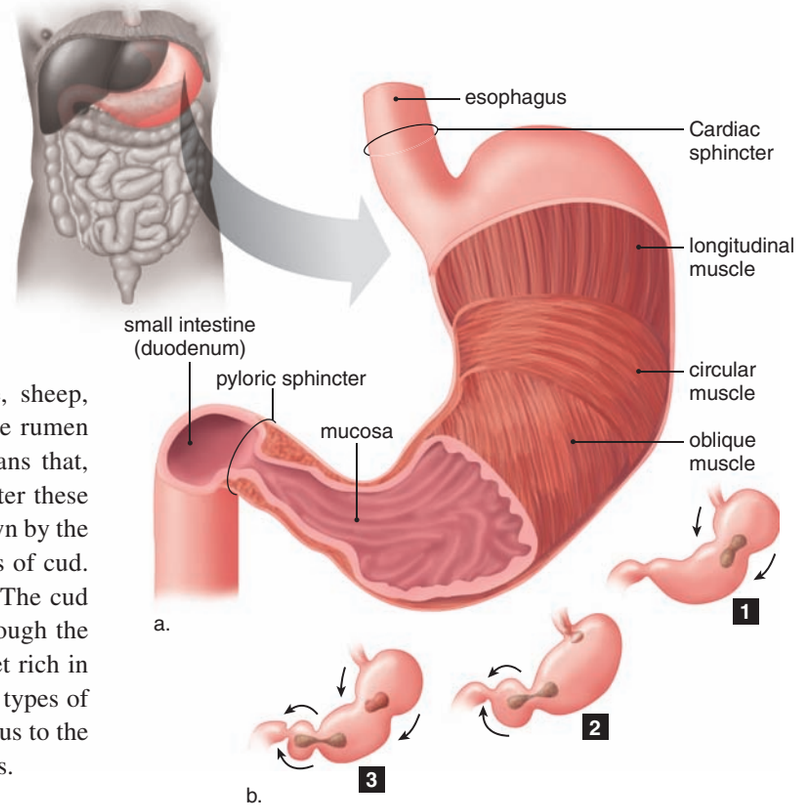


Figure 24.21 **Anatomy of the human stomach.**

a. The stomach has a thick wall that expands as it fills with food. The wall contains three layers of muscle, and their presence allows the stomach to churn and mix food with gastric juices. The mucosa of the stomach wall secretes mucus and contains gastric glands, which secrete gastric juices active in the digestion of protein. **b.** Peristalsis, a rhythmic contraction, occurs along the length of the digestive tract.

Ruminants Ruminants, a type of mammal that includes cattle, sheep, goats, deer, and buffalo, are named for a part of their stomach, the rumen (**Fig. 24.22**). The rumen contains symbiotic bacteria and protozoans that, unlike in mammals, produce enzymes that can digest cellulose. After these herbivores feed on grass, it goes to the rumen, where it is broken down by the enzymes released by the microbes, and then it becomes small balls of cud. The cud returns to the mouth, where the animal "chews the cud." The cud may return to the rumen for a second go-round before passing through the other chambers of the stomach. The rumen is an adaptation to a diet rich in fiber that may have been promoted by competition among the many types of animals that feed on grass. The last chamber in ruminants is analogous to the human stomach, being the place where protein is digested to peptides.

Small Intestine

Processing food in humans is more complicated than one might think. Food is chewed in the mouth and worked on by the enzyme salivary amylase, which digests starch to maltose. In addition, the digestion of protein begins in the stomach as pepsin digests proteins to peptides. At this point, the contents of the digestive tract are called **chyme.** Chyme passes from the

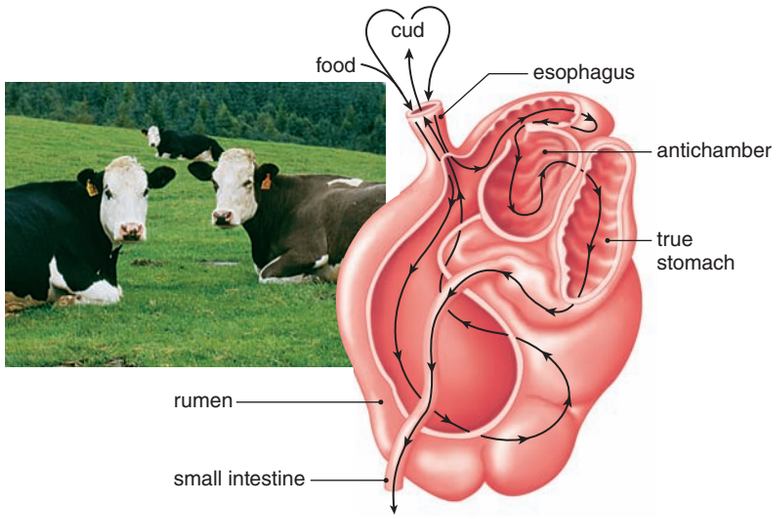


Figure 24.22 **A ruminant's stomach.**

Ruminants eat grass, which is made of cells with strong cellulose walls. The first chamber of a ruminant's stomach, called the rumen, contains symbiotic bacteria and protozoans, which release enzymes that digest cellulose. After a first pass through the rumen, the "cud" returns to the mouth, where it is leisurely chewed. Then, it may return to the rumen for a second go-round of digestion before passing through to the true stomach.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Why does your stomach "growl" when you are hungry?

Borborygmi is the medical term for the "growl" sound in your stomach. It is actually the stomach walls squeezing together in an attempt to mix digestive juices and gases for digestion. When your stomach is empty, the result is the sound of these juices bouncing off the walls of the hollow stomach. The "hunger center" of the brain will send a message to your stomach to begin the process of digestion, sometimes initiating borborygmi and signaling the need to eat.

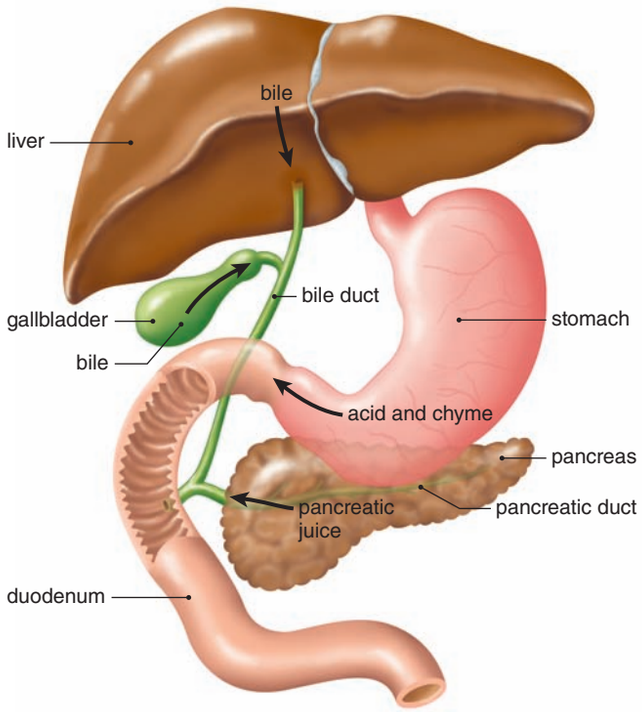


Figure 24.23 **The pancreatic and bile ducts empty into the duodenum.**

Bile, made by the liver and stored in the gallbladder, and pancreatic juice, which contains enzymes, enter the duodenum by way of ducts.

stomach to the **small intestine,** a long, coiled tube that has two functions: (1) digestion of all the molecules in chyme, including polymers of carbohydrate, protein, nucleic acid, and fat, and (2) absorption of the nutrient molecules into the body.

The first part of the small intestine is called the duodenum. Two important accessory glands—the **pancreas,** located behind the stomach, and the **liver**—send secretions to the duodenum by way of ducts (**Fig. 24.23**). The liver produces **bile,** which is stored in the **gallbladder.** Bile looks green because it contains pigments that are the products of hemoglobin breakdown. This green color is familiar to anyone who has observed how bruised tissue changes color. Hemoglobin within the bruise is breaking down into the same types of pigments found in bile. Bile also contains bile salts, which break up fat into fat droplets by a process called **emulsification.** Fat droplets mix with water and have more surface area for digestion by enzymes.

The pancreas produces pancreatic juice, which contains sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) and digestive enzymes. Sodium biocarbonate neutralizes chyme and makes the pH of the small intestine slightly basic. The higher pH helps prevent autodigestion of the intestinal lining by pepsin and optimizes the pH for pancreatic enzymes. **Pancreatic amylase** digests starch to maltose; **trypsin** digests proteins to peptides; **lipase** digests fat droplets to glycerol and fatty acids; and **nuclease** digests nucleic acids to nucleotides.

Animation
Enzymatic Action and the Hydrolysis of Sucrose

Still more digestive enzymes are present in the small intestine. The wall of the small intestine contains fingerlike projections called **villi** (**Fig. 24.24*b***). The epithelial cells of the villi produce intestinal enzymes**,** which remain

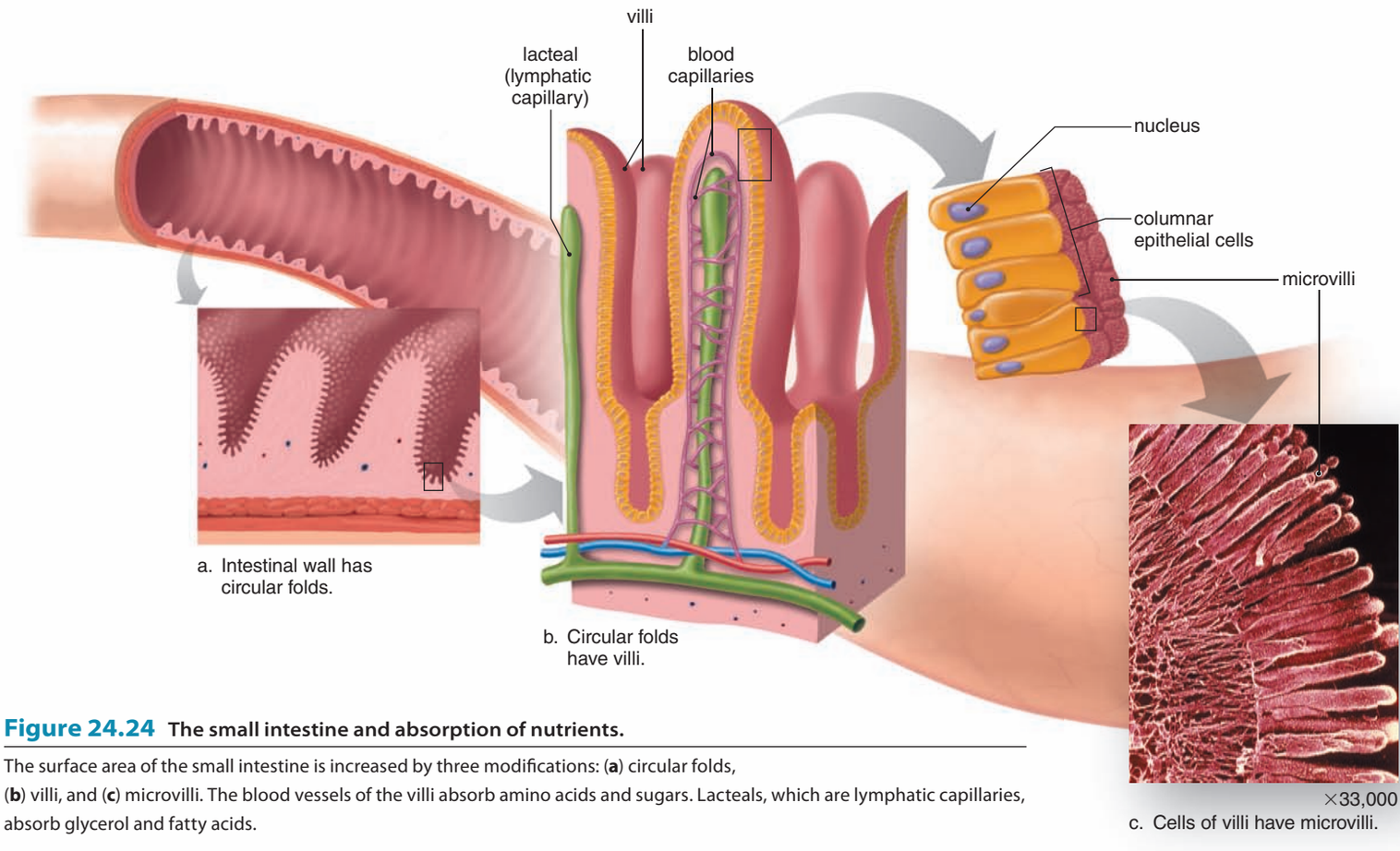


Figure 24.24 **The small intestine and absorption of nutrients.**

The surface area of the small intestine is increased by three modifications: (**a**) circular folds, (**b**) villi, and (**c**) microvilli. The blood vessels of the villi absorb amino acids and sugars. Lacteals, which are lymphatic capillaries, absorb glycerol and fatty acids.

attached to them. These enzymes complete the digestion of peptides and sugars. Peptides, which result from the first step in protein digestion, are digested by peptidase to amino acids. Maltose, which results from the first step in starch digestion, is digested by maltase to glucose. Other disaccharides, each of which is acted upon by a specific enzyme, are digested to simple sugars as well.

Finally, these small nutrient molecules can be absorbed into the body through the bloodstream. Our cells use these molecules as a source of energy and as building blocks to make their own macromolecules.

Absorption by Villi The wall of the small intestine is adapted to absorbing nutrient molecules because it has an extensive surface area—approximately that of a tennis court! First, the mucous membrane layer of the small intestine has circular folds that give it an almost corrugated appearance (Fig. 24.24*a*). Second, on the surface of these circular folds are the villi. Finally, the cells on the surface of the villi have minute projections called **microvilli** (Fig. 24.24*c*). If the human small intestine were simply a smooth tube, it would have to be 500 to 600 meters long to have a comparable surface area for absorption. Carnivores have a much shorter digestive tract than herbivores because meat is easier to process than plant material (**Fig. 24.25**).

The villi of the small intestine absorb small nutrient molecules into the body. Each villus contains an extensive network of blood capillaries and a lymphatic capillary called a **lacteal.** As discussed in Chapter 23, the lymphatic system is an adjunct to the cardiovascular system—its vessels carry fluid, called lymph, to the cardiovascular veins. Sugars and amino acids enter the blood capillaries of a villus and are carried to the liver by way of the hepatic portal system. In contrast, glycerol and fatty acids (digested from fats) enter the epithelial cells of the villi and, within them, are joined and packaged as lipoprotein droplets, which enter a lacteal. Absorption continues until almost all nutrient molecules have been absorbed. Absorption occurs by diffusion, as well as by active transport, which requires an expenditure of cellular energy. Lymphatic vessels transport lymph to cardiovascular veins. Eventually, the bloodstream carries the nutrients absorbed by the digestive system to all the cells of the body.

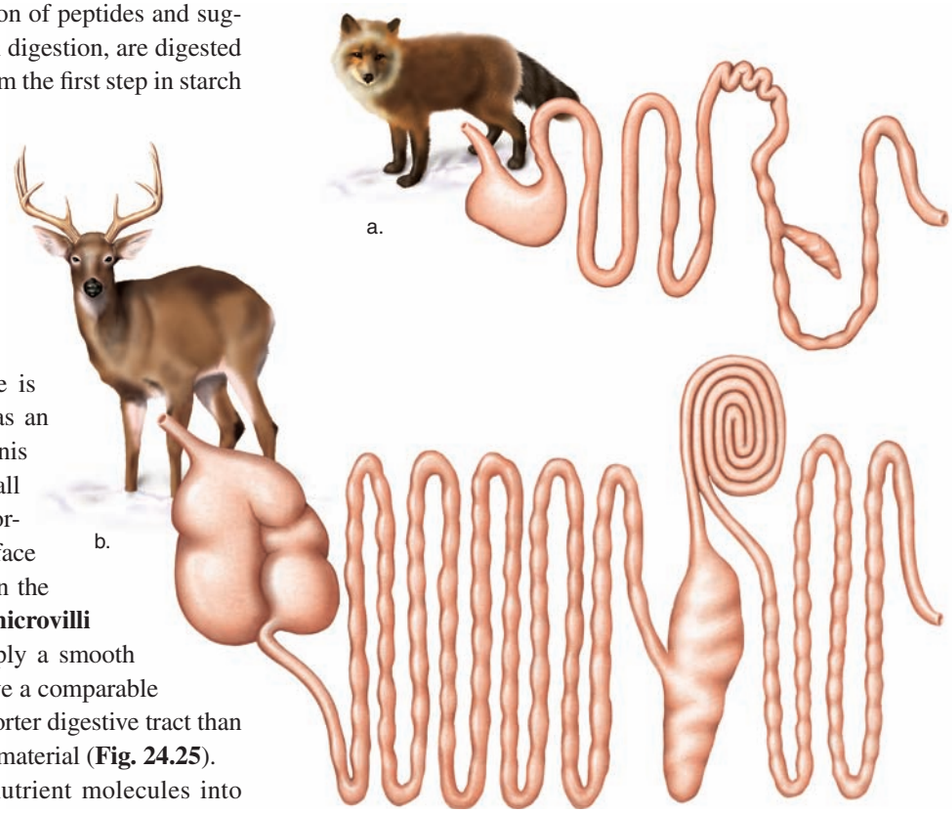


Figure 24.25 Digestive tract of a carnivore compared to that of a ruminant herbivore.

The digestive tract of a carnivore (**a**) is much shorter than that of a ruminant herbivore (**b**) because proteins can be more easily digested than plant matter.

MP3 Absorption of Nutrients and Water

Large Intestine

The word *bowel* technically means the part of the digestive tract between the stomach and the anus, but it is sometimes used to mean only the large intestine. The **large intestine** (also called the colon) absorbs water, salts, and some vitamins. It also stores indigestible material until it is eliminated at the anus. The large intestine takes its name from its diameter rather than its length, which is shorter than that of the small intestine. The large intestine has a blind pouch, the cecum, below the entry of the small intestine with a small projection containing lymphatic tissue called the **appendix.** In humans, the appendix may play a role in fighting infections by acting as a reservoir of beneficial bacteria. In the condition called *appendicitis,* the appendix becomes infected and so filled with fluid that it may burst. If an infected appendix bursts before it can be removed, a serious, generalized infection of the abdominal lining, called peritonitis, may result.

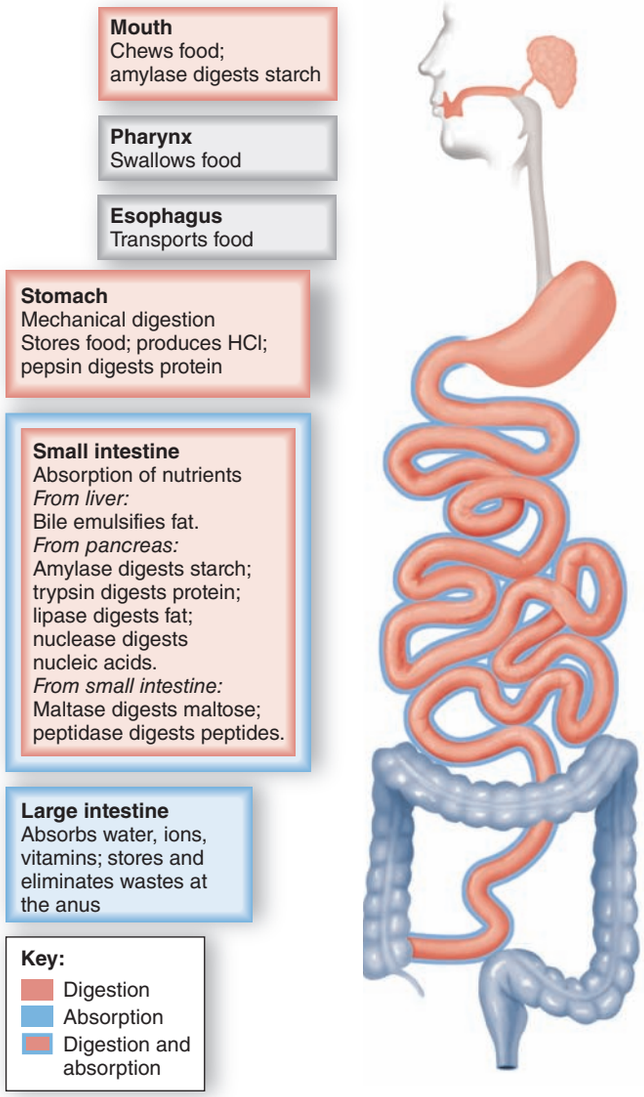


Figure 24.26 **The digestive organs and their functions.**

A review of the processing of food to nutrient molecules and their absorption into the body.

The large intestine has a large population of bacteria, notably *Escherichia coli*. The bacteria break down indigestible material, and they produce some vitamins, including vitamin K. Vitamin K is necessary for blood clotting. Digestive wastes (feces) eventually leave the body through the **anus,** the opening of the anal canal. Feces are about 75% water and 25% solid matter. Almost one-third of this solid matter is made up of intestinal bacteria. The remainder is indigestible plant material (also called fiber), fats, waste products (such as bile pigments), inorganic material, mucus, and dead cells from the intestinal lining. A diet that includes fiber adds bulk to the feces, improves regularity of elimination, and prevents *constipation*.

Video
Fat Microbes

About 1.5 liters of water enter the digestive tract daily as a result of eating and drinking. An additional 8.5 liters also enter the digestive tract each day, carrying the various substances secreted by the digestive glands. About 95% of this water is absorbed by the small intestine, and much of the remaining portion is absorbed by the large intestine. If this water is not reabsorbed, **diarrhea** can occur, leading to serious dehydration and ion loss, especially in children.

Because the cells of the large intestine have a longer exposure to chemicals in our foods, this area is more subject to the development of **polyps,** which are small growths arising from the mucosa. Polyps, whether benign or cancerous, can be removed surgically.

Figure 24.26 reviews the digestive process.

Animation
Organs of Digestion

Accessory Organs

The pancreas and the liver are the main accessory organs of digestion, along with the teeth, salivary glands, and gallbladder.

Pancreas

The pancreas (see Fig. 24.23) functions as both an endocrine gland and an exocrine gland. **Endocrine glands** are ductless and secrete their products into the blood. The pancreas is an endocrine gland when it produces and secretes the hormones **insulin** and **glucagon** into the bloodstream. These hormones are involved in the regulation of blood glucose levels (see Section 27.2). **Exocrine glands** secrete into ducts. The pancreas is an exocrine gland when it produces and secretes pancreatic juice (see the section "Digestive Enzymes") into the duodenum of the small intestine through the common bile duct.

Liver

The liver has numerous functions, including the following:

1. Detoxifies the blood by removing and metabolizing poisonous substances
2. Produces the plasma proteins, such as albumin and fibrinogen
3. Destroys old red blood cells and converts hemoglobin to the breakdown products in bile (bilirubin and biliverdin)
4. Produces bile, which is stored in the gallbladder before entering the small intestine, where it emulsifies fats
5. Stores glucose as glycogen and breaks down glycogen to glucose between meals to maintain a constant glucose concentration in the blood
6. Produces urea from amino acids and ammonia

Blood vessels from the large and small intestines, as well as others, merge to form the hepatic portal vein, which leads to the liver (**Fig. 24.27**). The liver helps maintain the glucose concentration in blood at about 0.1% by removing excess glucose from the hepatic portal vein and storing it as glycogen. Between

meals, glycogen is broken down to glucose, and glucose enters the hepatic veins. Like plant-made starch, glycogen is made up of glucose molecules; thus, it is sometimes called animal starch. If the supply of glycogen and glucose runs short, the liver converts amino acids to glucose molecules.

Amino acids contain nitrogen in the form of amino groups, whereas glucose contains only carbon, oxygen, and hydrogen. Therefore, before amino acids can be converted to glucose molecules, deamination, the removal of amino groups from amino acids, must occur. By a complex metabolic pathway, the liver converts the amino groups to urea, the most common nitrogenous (nitrogen-containing) waste product of humans. After urea is formed in the liver, it is transported by the bloodstream to the kidneys, where it is excreted.

Liver Disorders When a person has *jaundice*, the skin has a yellowish tint due to an abnormally large quantity of bile pigments in the blood. In hemolytic jaundice, red blood cells are broken down in abnormally large amounts; in obstructive jaundice, the bile duct is obstructed or the liver cells are damaged. Obstructive jaundice often occurs when crystals of cholesterol precipitate out of bile and form gallstones.

Jaundice can also result from viral infection of the liver, called *hepatitis*. Hepatitis A is most often caused by eating contaminated food. Hepatitis B and C are commonly spread by blood transfusions, kidney dialysis, and injection with unsterilized needles. These three types of hepatitis can also be spread by sexual contact.

Video
Halting Hepatitis

Cirrhosis is a chronic liver disease in which the organ first becomes fatty, and then the liver tissue is replaced by inactive, fibrous scar tissue. Many alcoholics get cirrhosis, most likely due at least in part to the excessive amounts of alcohol the liver is forced to break down.

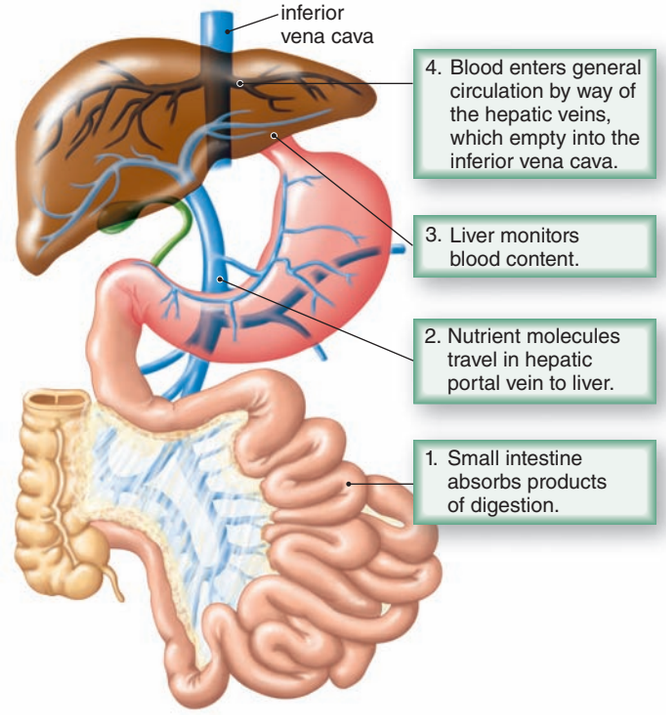


Figure 24.27 Hepatic portal system.

The hepatic portal vein takes the products of digestion from the digestive system to the liver, where they are processed before entering hepatic veins.

Digestive Enzymes

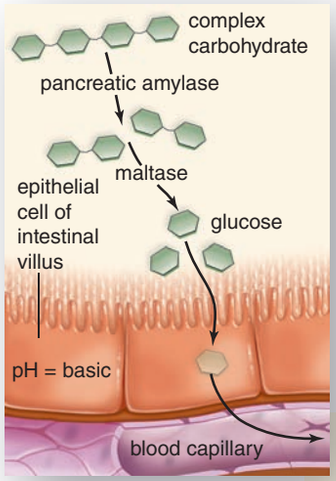
Does your mouth water when you smell food cooking? Even the thought of food can sometimes cause the nervous system to order the secretion of digestive juices. The secretion of these juices is also under the influence of several peptide hormones, so called because each is a small sequence of amino acids. When you eat a meal rich in protein, the stomach wall produces a peptide hormone that enters the bloodstream and doubles back to cause the stomach to produce more gastric juices. When protein and fat are present in the small intestine, another peptide hormone made in the intestinal wall stimulates the secretion of bile and pancreatic juices. In this way, the organs of digestion regulate their own needs.

The various digestive enzymes present in the digestive juices help break down carbohydrates, proteins, nucleic acids, and fats, the major components of food. Starch is a carbohydrate, and its digestion begins in the mouth. Saliva from the salivary glands has a neutral pH and contains salivary amylase, the first enzyme to act on starch.

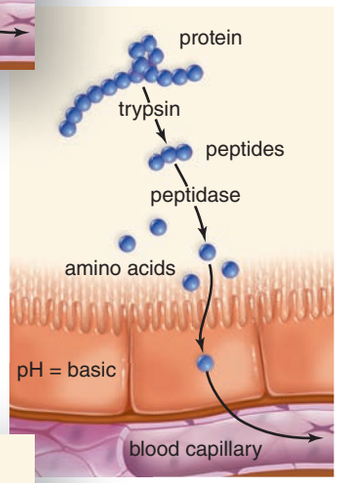
$$\text{starch} + H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{salivary amylase}} \text{maltose}$$

Maltose, a disaccharide, cannot be absorbed by the intestine; additional digestive action in the small intestine converts maltose to glucose, which can be absorbed.

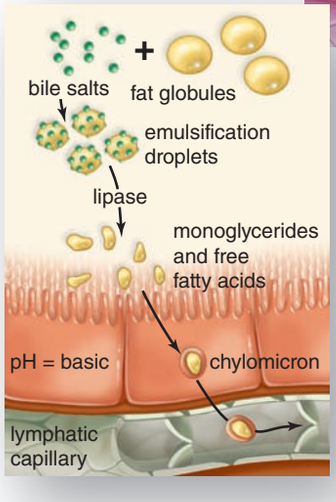
Protein digestion begins in the stomach. Gastric juice secreted by gastric glands has a very low pH—about 2—because it contains hydrochloric acid (HCl). Pepsin, which is also present in gastric juice, acts on protein to produce peptides.



a. Complex Carbohydrate (starch) digestion requires two steps. Only glucose molecules are absorbed at intestinal villi.



b. Protein digestion requires two steps. Only amino acids are absorbed at intestinal villi.



c. Fat digestion requires emulsification before digestion occurs. Then monoglycerides (glycerol bonded to one fatty acid) and free fatty acids are absorbed at intestinal villi.

Figure 24.28 **Digestion and absorption of nutrients in the small intestine.**

This figure provides a summary of (a) carbohydrate digestion; (b) protein digestion; and (c) fat digestion

$$\text{protein} + H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{pepsin}} \text{peptides}$$

Peptides are usually too large to be absorbed by the intestinal lining, but later they are broken down to amino acids in the small intestine.

Starch, proteins, fats, and nucleic acids are all enzymatically broken down in the small intestine (**Fig. 24.28**). Pancreatic juice, which enters the duodenum, has a basic pH because it contains sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$). One pancreatic enzyme, pancreatic amylase, digests starch (Fig. 24.28*a*).

$$\text{starch} + H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{pancreatic amylase}} \text{maltose}$$

Another pancreatic enzyme, trypsin, digests protein (Fig. 24.28*b*).

$$\text{protein} + H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{trypsin}} \text{peptides}$$

Maltase and peptidases, enzymes produced by the small intestine, complete the digestion of starch to glucose and protein to amino acids, respectively. Glucose and amino acids are small molecules that cross into the cells of the villi and enter the blood (Fig. 24.28*a*,*b*).

Maltose, a disaccharide that results from the first step in starch digestion, is digested to glucose by maltase.

$$\text{maltose} + H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{maltase}} \text{glucose} + \text{glucose}$$

Other disaccharides have their own enzyme and are digested in the small intestine. The absence of any one of these enzymes can cause illness.

Peptides, which result from the first step in protein digestion, are digested to amino acids by peptidases.

$$\text{peptides} + H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{peptidases}} \text{amino acids}$$

Lipase, a third pancreatic enzyme, digests fat molecules in fat droplets after they have been emulsified by bile salts.

$$\text{fat droplets} + H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{lipase}} \text{glycerol} + \text{3 fatty acids}$$

Specifically, the end products of lipase digestion are monoglycerides (glycerol + one fatty acid) and fatty acids. These enter the cells of the villi, and within these cells they are rejoined and packaged as lipoprotein droplets, called chylomicrons. Chylomicrons enter the lacteals (Fig. 24.28*c*).

Check Your Progress 24.3

1. List the functions of a digestive tract.
2. Describe peristalsis, and explain why it is a needed function in digestion.
3. Contrast the anatomy and functions of the small and large intestines.
4. Describe the relationship among the duodenum, the liver, and the pancreas.
5. Detail the activity of the following digestive enzymes: salivary amylase, pepsin, trypsin, peptidase, and lipase.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The digestive system provides the body's cells with nutrients.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video	MP3 Files
24.1 Gas Exchange During Respiration **24.2** Kidney Function **24.3** Enzymatic Action and the Hydrolysis of Sucrose • Organs of Digestion	**24.1** 911 Pollution **24.3** Fat Microbes • Halting Hepatitis	**24.1** Control of Respiration **24.2** An Overview of Urine Formation • Water Conservation **24.3** An Overview of the Digestive System • Oral cavity • Esophagus and the Swallowing Reflex • Stomach • Absorption of Nutrients and Water

SUMMARIZE

24.1 Respiratory System

Respiration involves three steps: (1) breathing, (2) external exchange of gases, and (3) internal exchange of gases.

Human Respiratory System

The human respiratory system can be divided into two major components:

- The upper respiratory tract, consisting of the nose (with **nasal cavities** and **sinuses**), **pharynx,** and **larynx** (which contains the vocal cords). The **glottis** and **epiglottis** separate the respiratory system from the digestive system.
- The lower respiratory tract, made up of the **trachea, bronchi, bronchioles,** and lungs. The **lungs** contain many **alveoli,** which are air sacs surrounded by a capillary network. The base of each lung contacts the diaphragm, a muscle that separates the thoracic and abdominal cavities.

Breathing

- **Inspiration:** During **inspiration** the **diaphragm** lowers and the rib cage moves up and out; the lungs expand and air rushes in.
- **Expiration:** During **expiration** the diaphragm relaxes and moves up; the rib cage moves down and in; pressure in the lungs increases; air is pushed out of the lungs.
- **Control of breathing:** Levels of carbon dioxide and hydrogen ions (H^+) act as the stimuli to adjust breathing rates. **Aortic bodies** and **carotid bodies** are chemoreceptors that send information to the breathing center in the brain, which adjusts the rate of breathing.

Lungs and External Exchange of Gases

- Alveoli are surrounded by pulmonary capillaries.
- CO_2 diffuses from the blood into the alveoli, and O_2 diffuses into the blood from the alveoli, because of their respective concentration gradients.

Transport and Internal Exchange of Gases

Oxygen for cellular respiration follows this path:

- Transported by the iron portion (**heme**) of hemoglobin
- Exits blood at tissues by diffusion
- Given up by hemoglobin in capillaries because cellular respiration makes tissues warmer and more acidic

Carbon dioxide, from cellular respiration, follows this path:

- Enters blood by diffusion
- Taken up by red blood cells or joins with water to form carbonic acid
- Carbonic acid breaks down to H^+ and **bicarbonate ion** (HCO_3^-):

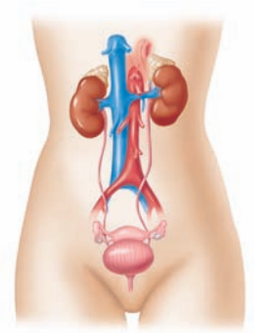
$$\underset{\text{carbon dioxide}}{CO_2} + \underset{\text{water}}{H_2O} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{carbonic acid}}{H_2CO_3} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{hydrogen ion}}{H^+} + \underset{\text{bicarbonate ion}}{HCO_3^-}$$

Bicarbonate ions are carried in plasma. H^+ combines with globin of hemoglobin.

- In the lungs, H^+ joins with bicarbonate ion to form carbonic acid, which breaks down to water and carbon dioxide:

$$H^+ + HCO_3^- \longrightarrow H_2CO_3 \longrightarrow H_2O + CO_2$$

24.2 Urinary System and Excretion



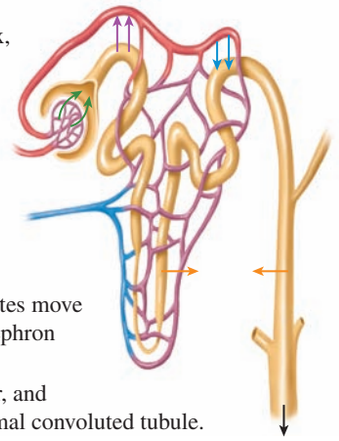
The kidneys perform the following functions:

- Excrete nitrogenous wastes, such as urea and uric acid
- Maintain the normal water-salt balance of blood
- Maintain the acid-base balance of blood

The urinary system consists of these parts:

- **Kidneys:** Produce **urine**
- **Ureters:** Take urine to the bladder
- **Urinary bladder:** Stores urine
- **Urethra:** Releases urine to the outside

Kidneys



The kidneys have three parts: renal cortex, renal medulla, and renal pelvis. At the microscopic level they contain the **nephrons.** A nephron has a **glomerular capsule, proximal convoluted tubule, nephron loop, distal convoluted tubule,** and **collecting duct.**

Urine formation requires three steps:

- **Filtration:** Water, nutrients, and wastes move from the blood to the inside of the nephron capsule.
- **Reabsorption:** Primarily salts, water, and nutrients are reabsorbed at the proximal convoluted tubule.
- **Secretion:** Certain substances (e.g., hydrogen ions) are transported into the distal convoluted tubule from blood.

Regulation of Water-Salt Balance and pH The kidneys play a role in homeostasis by regulating water-salt levels and blood pH. The reabsorption of water and the production of a hypertonic urine involve the establishment of a solute gradient that pulls water from the descending limb of the nephron loop and from the collecting duct. The kidneys keep blood pH at about 7.4 by reabsorbing HCO_3^- and excreting H^+ as needed. Ammonia buffers H^+ in the urine. The Malpighian tubules of insects and the specialized organs of saltwater versus freshwater fishes are other examples of how animals regulate their osmolarity.

Problems with Kidney Function

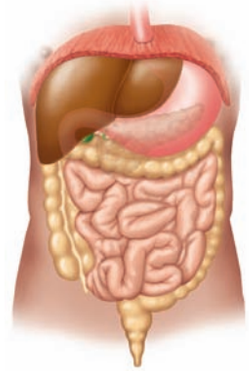
Various medical conditions, including diabetes, kidney stones, and kidney infections, can lead to renal failure. Renal failure may cause **edema,** an accumulation of fluid in the body. Renal failure can be treated by **dialysis** using a kidney machine or by a kidney transplant.

24.3 Digestive System

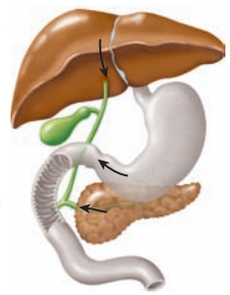
The digestive system, along with the respiratory and urinary systems, makes exchanges with the external environment and blood, thereby supplying the blood with nutrients and oxygen and cleansing it of waste molecules. Then the blood makes exchanges with the tissue fluid, and in this way cells acquire nutrients and oxygen and rid themselves of wastes. The functions of the digestive system are to (1) ingest food, (2) break food down to small molecules that can cross plasma membranes, (3) absorb these nutrient molecules, and (4) eliminate indigestible remains.

The digestive tract consists of several specialized parts:

- **Mouth:** The **mouth** contains teeth for mechanical digestion. The teeth of **herbivores, carnivores,** and **omnivores** are adapted to their diet.
- **Salivary glands** produce saliva, which contains **salivary amylase** for digesting starch, and the tongue forms a **bolus** for swallowing.
- Pharynx: The air and food passages cross in the pharynx. During swallowing, the air passage is blocked off by the soft palate and epiglottis; **peristalsis** begins.
- **Esophagus**: The esophagus connects the pharynx with the stomach.
- **Stomach:** The **stomach** uses mechanical digestion to churn and mix food with the acidic gastric juices, producing **chyme**. The gastric juices contain **pepsin,** an enzyme that digests protein. **Small intestine:** The duodenum of the **small intestine** receives **bile** from the **gallbladder.** The bile, produced by the liver, is used in the **emulsification** of fats. The small intestine also receives pancreatic juice from the **pancreas,** which contains **trypsin** (digests protein), **lipase** (digests fat), **nuclease** (digests nucleic acids), and **pancreatic amylase** (digests starch). The small intestine produces enzymes that finish digestion, breaking food down to small molecules that cross the villi and **microvilli.** Amino acids and glucose enter blood capillaries. Glycerol and fatty acids are joined and packaged as lipoproteins before entering lymphatic vessels called **lacteals.**
- **Large intestine:** The **large intestine** stores the remains of digestion until they can be eliminated through the **anus.** The **appendix** may protect the large intestine. The large intestine absorbs water, salts, and some vitamins. Reduced water absorption results in **diarrhea.** The intake of water and fiber helps prevent constipation. Small growths, called **polyps**, often occur in the large intestine.



Accessory Organs



The two main accessory organs are the pancreas and the liver.

- **Pancreas**: The pancreas is both an **exocrine gland** that produces pancreatic juice and an **endocrine gland** that produces the hormones **insulin** and **glucagon**.
- Liver: The liver produces bile, which is stored in the gallbladder.
- The gallbladder and salivary glands are also accessory organs.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The maintenance systems play vital roles in maintaining optimal functioning of the human body. These systems supply nutrients and/or remove waste material from the body.

24.1 The respiratory system serves to exchange gases between the air and the body's cells.

24.2 The urinary system excretes nitrogenous wastes and maintains the water-salt and acid-base balances of the body.

24.3 The digestive system provides the body's cells with nutrients.

For more information about the functions of the maintenance systems, see the following discussions:

Section 5.4 explains the factors that determine the rates of diffusion across a membrane.

Section 22.3 provides a summary of how the body maintains homeostasis.

Section 25.2 examines the dietary requirements for each class of nutrients.

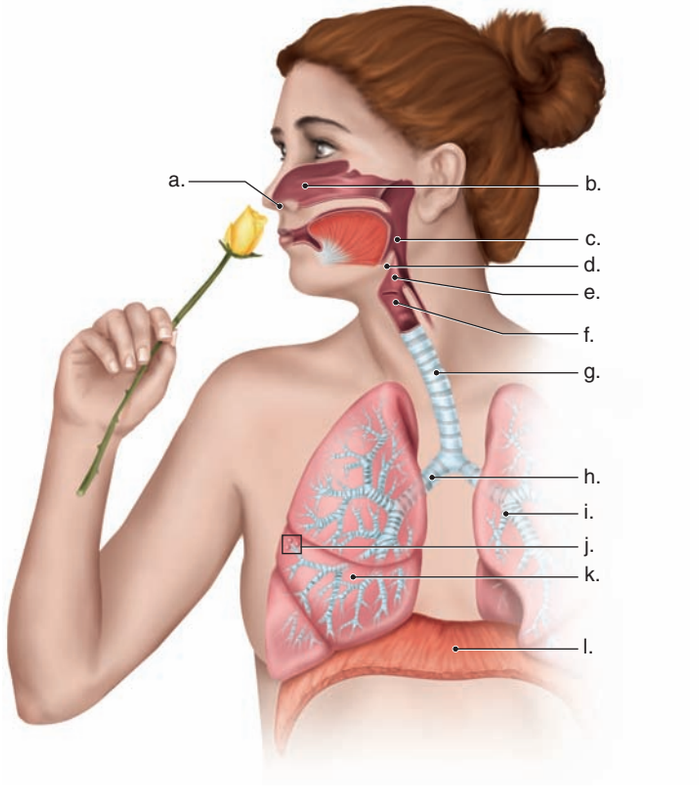
ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

24.1 Respiratory System

1. Label the components of the human respiratory system in the following illustration.



2. Gas exchange occurs in the _____, small pockets in the bronchioles.

a. alveoli
b. tracheae
c. tonsils
d. nephrons

3. The larynx is

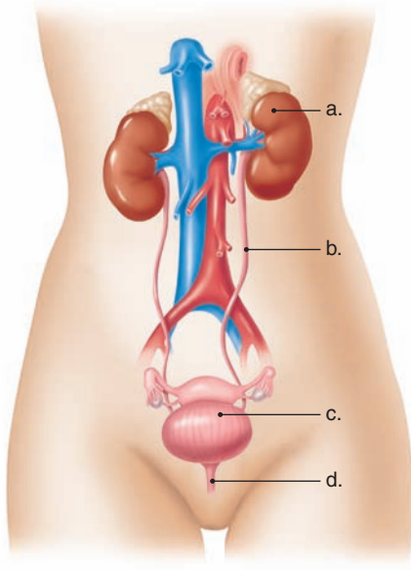
a. the site of gas exchange in the human respiratory system.
b. located between the trachea and the bronchi.
c. a flap of cartilage that keeps food out of the respiratory tract during swallowing.
d. the voice box.

4. How is carbon dioxide primarily transported in the cardiovascular system?

a. as biocarbonate ions
b. attached to the heme of hemoglobin
c. as carbon dioxide gas
d. as uric acid

24.2 Urinary System and Excretion

5. Label the components of the human urinary system in the following illustration.



For questions 6–9, identify the kidney component in the key that matches the description.

Key:

a. glomerular capsule
b. proximal convoluted tubule
c. nephron loop
d. distal convoluted tubule

6. This pumps salt into the renal medulla, and water follows by osmosis.

7. Uric acid is eliminated by secretion here.

8. Microvilli reabsorb molecules, such as glucose, here.

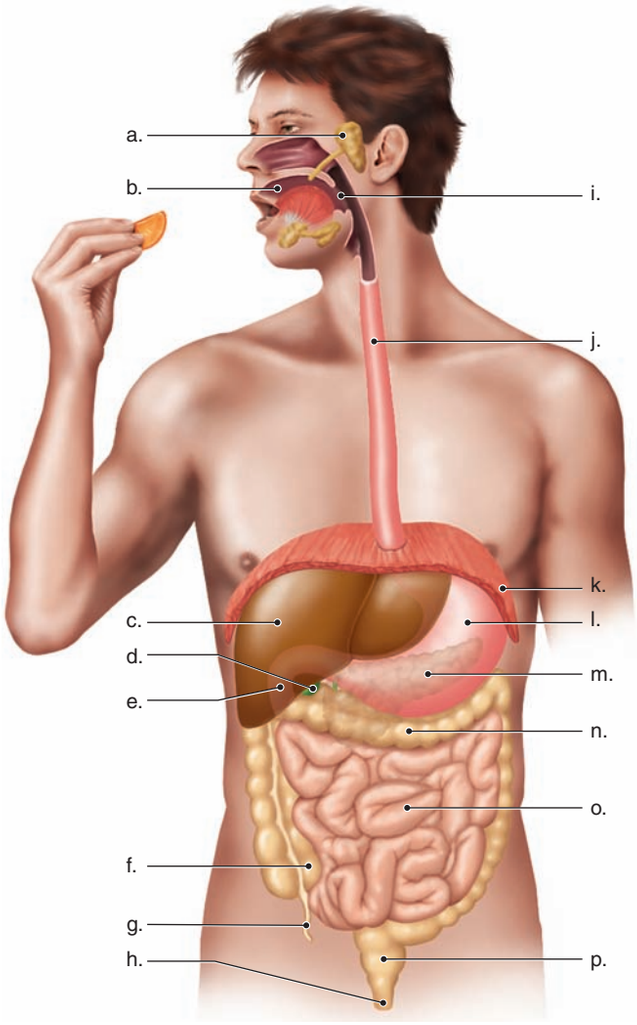
9. Filtration occurs here.

10. The urinary system participates in the body's regulation of

a. water levels.
b. salt levels.
c. blood pH.
d. All of the above are correct.

24.3 Digestive System

11. Label the components of the human digestive system in the following illustration.



12. Pepsin
- **a.** breaks down protein in the small intestine.
- **b.** breaks down protein in the stomach.
- **c.** is found in saliva.
- **d.** breaks down fats in the stomach.

13. Which of the following is not a function of the liver?
- **a.** removal of poisonous substances from the blood
- **b.** secretion of digestive juices
- **c.** production of albumin
- **d.** storage of glucose
- **e.** production of bile

14. Mechanical digestion occurs in the
- **a.** mouth and stomach
- **b.** large and small intestines
- **c.** liver and small intestine
- **d.** esophagus and small intestine

15. The breakdown of nutrients for absorption occurs primarily in the
- **a.** large intestine.
- **b.** mouth.
- **c.** stomach.
- **d.** small intestine.

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Carbon monoxide (CO) binds to hemoglobin 230 to 270 times more strongly than oxygen does, which means less O_2 is being delivered to tissues. What would be the specific cause of death if too much hemoglobin became bound to CO instead of to O_2?

2. High blood pressure (hypertension) often is accompanied by kidney damage. In some people, the kidney damage is subsequent to the high blood pressure, but in others the kidney damage is what caused the high blood pressure. Explain how a low-salt diet would enable you to determine whether the high blood pressure or the kidney damage came first.

3. Grasshoppers, like most other insects, are highly adapted to life on land. What adaptations to life on land are present in their respiratory and urinary systems?

25

Human Nutrition

Trans Fat and Your Health

For some time now, we have known that cardiovascular health problems can result from eating high-fat and high-cholesterol foods. Further, saturated fats had to be listed on the Nutrition Facts panel of all food packages, and many consumers became smart enough to check nutrition labels to avoid eating saturated fats. Enter *trans fats*. While trans fats are found naturally in small quantities in milk and meat produces, the majority of trans fats is obtained from processed foods. Trans fats are formed from liquid unsaturated fats when hydrogen has been added to them. This process, called hydrogenation, makes a liquid fat resemble a solid saturated fat. Why did manufacturers go through the trouble of creating trans fats when they could have just used a natural saturated fat? Historically, the food industry added trans fats to not only increase the shelf life of processed food but also to enhance the flavor and texture.

However, we now know that trans fats are worse offenders than saturated fats when it comes to cardiovascular health. In 2006, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) decided that trans fat content *must* be disclosed on Nutrition Facts panels. Now, many manufacturers of products high in trans fats have lowered the trans fat content of their foods, but consumers should still check the nutrition labels for trans fat content.

In this chapter, you will learn about the components of a healthy, balanced diet, as well as some of the consequences of an unhealthy one.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. Why should you limit saturated and trans fats in your diet?
2. How are nutrients listed on a food label?
3. What are the general guidelines for fats in the diet?

OUTLINE

25.1 Nutrition 476

25.2 The Classes of Nutrients 478

25.3 Nutrition and Health 484

25.4 How to Plan Nutritious Meals 490

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 2.2 What are the properties of water that make it an important nutrient for all life?

Section 3.2 What are the roles of carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins in a cell?

Section 7.1 How does aerobic respiration release the energy found in organic molecules, such as glucose?

Figure 25.1 **A healthy diet.**

Making the right food choices leads to better health.

25.1 Nutrition

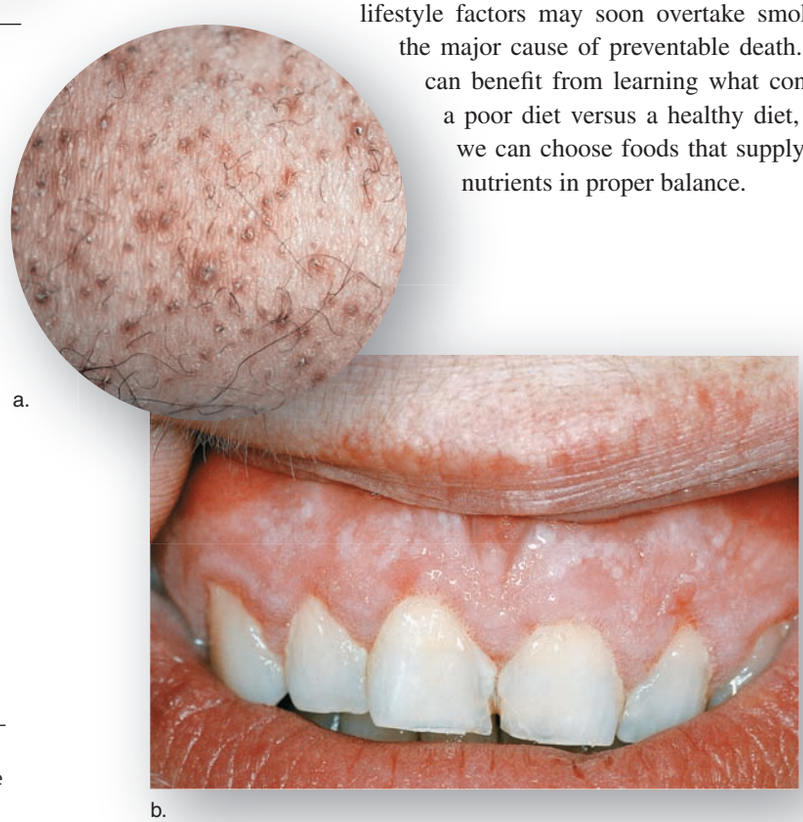
Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish among macronutrients, micronutrients, and essential nutrients.
2. Explain why *empty-calorie food* is a better term than *junk food.*

The vigilance of your immune system, the strength of your muscles and bones, the ease with which your blood circulates—all aspects of your body's functioning—depend on proper nutrition (**Fig. 25.1**). A **nutrient** is a component of food that performs a physiological function in the body. Nutrients provide us with energy, promote growth and development by supplying the material for cellular structures, and regulate cellular metabolism. They are also involved in homeostasis. For example, nutrients help maintain the fluid balance and proper pH of blood. Your body can make up for a nutrient deficiency to a degree, but eventually signs and symptoms of a *deficiency disorder* will appear. As an example, vitamin C is needed to synthesize and maintain *collagen,* the protein that holds tissues together. When the body lacks vitamin C, collagen weakens and capillaries break easily. Gums may bleed, especially when the teeth are brushed, or tiny bruises may form under the skin when it is gently pressed. In other words, early signs of vitamin C deficiency are gums that bleed and skin that bruises easily (**Fig. 25.2**).

By learning about nutrition, you can improve your diet and increase the likelihood of enjoying a longer, more active, and productive life. Conversely, poor diet and lack of physical activity are responsible for seven of the leading ten causes of deaths in the United States annually. Such lifestyle factors may soon overtake smoking as the major cause of preventable death. We all can benefit from learning what constitutes a poor diet versus a healthy diet, so that we can choose foods that supply all the nutrients in proper balance.



a.

b.

Figure 25.2 **Vitamin C deficiency.**

a. Pinpoint hemorrhages (tiny bruises that appear as red spots in the skin) are an early indication of vitamin C deficiency. **b.** Bleeding gums are another early sign of vitamin C deficiency.

Introducing the Nutrients

A **diet** is composed of a person's typical food choices. Several factors, including cultural and ethnic backgrounds, financial situations, environmental conditions, and psychological states, influence what we eat. A *balanced diet* supplies all the nutrients in the proper proportions necessary for a healthy, functioning body.

There are six classes of nutrients: carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, minerals, vitamins, and water. An **essential nutrient** must be supplied by the diet because the body is not able to produce it, or at least not in sufficient quantity to meet the body's needs. For example, amino acids are needed for protein synthesis and the body is unable to produce certain of them. Therefore, there are essential amino acids needed in the diet. Most vitamins, including vitamin C, and all of the minerals are considered to be essential nutrients.

We can also describe nutrients based on the quantities that are needed daily by our bodies. Carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins are called **macronutrients** because the body requires relatively large quantities of them. **Micronutrients,** such as vitamins and minerals, are needed in small quantities only. Macronutrients, not micronutrients, supply our energy needs. Although advertisements often imply that people can boost their energy levels by taking vitamin or mineral supplements, the body does not metabolize these nutrients for energy. Water does not provide energy, either. Therefore, foods with high water content, such as fruits and vegetables, are usually lower in energy content than foods with less water and more macronutrient content.

Nearly every food is a mixture of nutrients. A slice of bread, for example, is about 50% carbohydrates, 35% water, 10% proteins, and 4% lipids. Vitamins and minerals make up less than 1% of the bread's nutrient content (**Fig. 25.3**). No single, naturally occurring food contains enough essential nutrients to meet all of our nutrient needs.

Contrary to popular belief, "bad" foods, or "junk" foods, do have nutritional value. If a food contains water, sugar, or fat, it has nutritional value. However, such foods as sugar-sweetened soft drinks, cookies, and pastries have high amounts of fat and/or sugar in relation to their vitamin and mineral content. Therefore, these foods are more appropriately called *empty-calorie foods,* rather than junk foods. Diets that contain too many empty-calorie foods will assuredly lack enough vitamins and minerals.

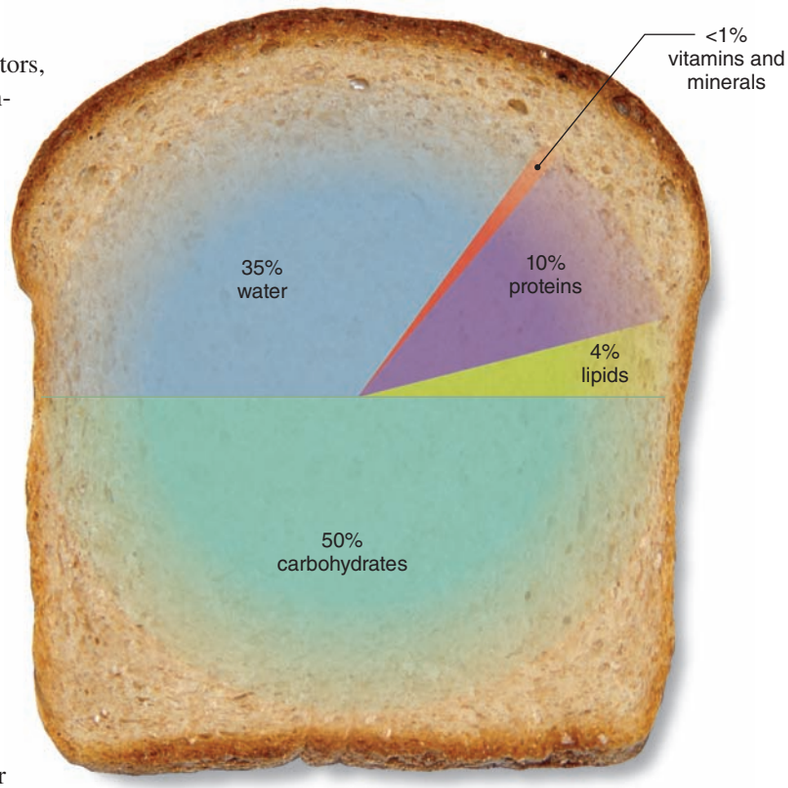


Figure 25.3 **Nutrient composition of a slice of bread.**
Most foods are mixtures of nutrients.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Proper nutrition is essential for optimal functioning of your body's system.

Check Your Progress 25.1

1. List examples of macro- and micronutrients.
2. Explain why the term *junk food* may be inappropriate.
3. Explain why essential nutrients must be obtained in the diet.

Table 25.1 Summarizing the Classes of Nutrients

Class of Nutrient	Major Food Sources	Primary Physiological Roles	Macronutrient or Micronutrient
Carbohydrates	Sugars and starches in fruits, vegetables, cereals and other grains	Glucose is metabolized for energy; fiber adds to fecal bulk, preventing constipation.	Macronutrient
Lipids	Oil, margarine, salad dressings, meat, fish, poultry, nuts, fried foods, dairy products made with whole milk	Triglycerides are metabolized for energy and stored for insulation and protection of organs. Cholesterol is used to make certain hormones, bile, and vitamin D.	Macronutrient
Proteins	Meat, fish, poultry, eggs, nuts, dried beans and peas, soybeans, cereal products, milk, cheese, yogurt	Proteins are needed for building, repairing, and maintaining tissues; synthesizing enzymes and certain hormones; and producing antibodies.	Macronutrient
Minerals	Widespread in vegetables and other foods	Minerals regulate energy metabolism, maintain fluid balance, and produce certain structures, enzymes, and hormones.	Micronutrient
Vitamins	Widespread in foods; plant foods are good sources of antioxidants	Vitamins regulate metabolism and physiological development.	Micronutrient
Water	Widespread in foods, beverages	Water participates in many chemical reactions; it is needed for maintenance of body fluids, temperature regulation, joint lubrication, and transportation of material in cells and the body.	(Not applicable)

25.2 The Classes of Nutrients

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the dietary sources of carbohydrates.
2. Explain the importance of fiber in the diet.
3. List the types of lipids and their dietary sources.
4. List the dietary sources of protein.
5. Summarize the role of major and trace minerals in the body.
6. Define the term *vitamin* and list the essential vitamins.
7. Explain why the intake of water is important.

Each type of nutrient usually has more than one function in the body and can be supplied by several food sources (**Table 25.1**).

Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates are present in food as sugars, starch, and fiber. Fruits, vegetables, milk, and honey are natural sources of sugars. Glucose and fructose are monosaccharide sugars, and lactose (milk sugar) and sucrose (table sugar) are disaccharides. After absorption into the body, all sugars are converted to glucose for transport in the blood. Glucose is the preferred direct energy source in cells.

Plants store glucose as starch, and animals store glucose as glycogen. High-starch foods are beans, peas, cereal grains, and potatoes. Starch is digested to glucose in the digestive tract, and any excess glucose is stored as glycogen. Although other animals likewise store glucose as glycogen in liver or muscle tissue (meat), it has broken down by the time an animal is eaten for food. Except for honey and milk, which contain sugars, animal sources of food do not contain carbohydrates.

Fiber

Fiber includes various nondigestible carbohydrates derived from plants. Food sources rich in fiber include beans, peas, nuts, fruits, and vegetables. Whole-grain products are also a good source of fiber and are therefore more nutritious than food products made from refined grains. During the refinement of the food, fiber and vitamins and minerals are removed from grains, so that primarily starch remains. A slice of bread made from whole-wheat flour, for example, contains 3 grams (g) of fiber; a slice of bread made from refined wheat flour contains less than a gram of fiber.

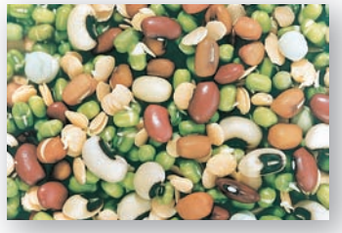
Technically, fiber is not a nutrient for humans because it cannot be digested to small molecules that enter the bloodstream. Insoluble fiber, however, adds bulk to fecal material, which stimulates movements of the large intestine, preventing constipation. Soluble fiber combines with bile acids and cholesterol in the small intestine and prevents them from being absorbed. In this way, high-fiber diets may protect against heart disease. The typical American consumes only about 15 g of fiber each day; the recommended daily intake is 25 g for women and 38 g for men. To increase your fiber intake, eat whole-grain foods, snack on fresh fruits and raw vegetables, and include nuts and beans in your diet (**Fig. 25.4**).

Figure 25.4 **Fiber-rich foods.**

Plants are a good source of carbohydrates. They also provide fiber when they are not processed (refined).

Connections: Health

What is the glycemic index?



The glycemic index is a reference used to indicate how a food item influences blood glucose levels. The index uses glucose as a reference value (100). In general, foods having a high amount of complex carbohydrates have a lower glycemic index than foods containing simple carbohydrates. For example, lentils and kidney beans have a glycemic index of 29, whereas most crackers have an index of 80. Originally designed to plan diets for diabetics, the glycemic index is useful for anyone who is interested in increasing the amount of complex carbohydrates in the diet.

Can Carbohydrates Be Harmful?

If you or someone you know has lost weight by following the Atkins or South Beach diet, you may think "carbs" are unhealthy and should be avoided. According to nutritionists, however, carbohydrates should supply a large portion of your energy needs. Evidence suggests that Americans are not eating the right kind of carbohydrates. In some countries, the traditional diet is 60–70% high-fiber carbohydrates, and these people have a low incidence of the diseases that plague Americans.

Obesity is associated with *type 2 diabetes* and *cardiovascular disease,* as discussed in Section 25.3. Some nutritionists hypothesize that the high intake of foods such as those rich in refined carbohydrates and fructose sweeteners processed from cornstarch may be responsible for the prevalence of obesity in the United States. These are empty-calorie foods that provide sugars but no vitamins or minerals. **Table 25.2** tells you how to reduce dietary sugars in your diet. Other nutritionists point out that consuming too much energy from any source contributes to body fat, which increases a person's

Table 25.2 **How to Reduce Dietary Sugars**

1. Eat fewer sweets, such as candy, soft drinks, ice cream, and pastry.
2. Eat fresh fruits or fruits canned without heavy syrup.
3. Use less sugar—white, brown, or raw—and less honey and syrups.
4. Avoid sweetened breakfast cereals.
5. Eat less jelly, jam, and preserves.
6. Drink pure fruit juices, not imitations.
7. When cooking, use spices such as cinnamon, instead of sugar, to flavor foods.
8. Do not put sugar in tea or coffee.
9. Choose foods with a low glycemic index.

Table 25.3 Reducing Certain Lipids

TO REDUCE DIETARY SATURATED FAT:
1. Choose poultry, fish, or dry beans and peas as a protein source.
2. Remove skin from poultry and trim fat from red meats before cooking; place on a rack, so that fat drains off.
3. Broil, boil, or bake rather than frying.
4. Limit your intake of butter, cream, trans fats, shortening, and tropical oils (coconut and palm oils).*
5. To season vegetables, use herbs and spices instead of butter, margarine, or sauces. Use lemon juice instead of salad dressing.
6. Drink skim milk instead of whole milk, and use skim milk in cooking and baking.
TO REDUCE DIETARY CHOLESTEROL:
1. Eat white fish and poultry in preference to cheese, egg yolks, liver, and certain shellfish (shrimp and lobster).
2. Substitute egg whites for egg yolks in both cooking and eating.
3. Include soluble fiber in the diet. Oat bran, oatmeal, beans, corn, and fruits, such as apples, citrus fruits, and cranberries, are high in soluble fiber.

*Although coconut and palm oils are from plant sources, they are mostly saturated fat.

Connections: Health

Does "0% trans fat" on a food label really mean that the item is free of trans fat?

Nutrition Facts
Serving Size: 1 cup (228g)
Servings Per Container about 2

Amount Per Serving

Calories 260 **Calories from Fat** 120

	% Daily Value*
Total Fat 13g	**20%**
Saturated Fat 5g	**25%**
Trans Fat 0g	**0%**
Cholesterol 30mg	**10%**
Sodium 660mg	**28%**
Total Carbohydrate 31g	**10%**
Dietary Fiber 0g	**0%**
Sugars 5g	
Protein 5g	

When the Food and Drug Administration required the addition of trans fat information to food labels in 2006, many food companies created labels touting their products as "trans fat free." A check of the label details would list 0 grams of trans fat, in the area where fat grams are listed. But a more thorough check of the list of ingredients might reveal a bit of trans fat lurking in the food. If you see "partially hydrogenated oil" listed with the ingredients, there are some trans fats in that food. Trans fats have to be listed with the breakdown of fat grams only when there is 0.5 gram (g) or more per serving. Limiting trans fats to 1% of daily calories is recommended by the American Heart Association. Unfortunately, eating more than one serving of a food with "hidden" trans fats might push some people over the recommended daily intake of trans fats.

risk of obesity and associated illnesses. Because many foods, such as donuts, cakes, pies, and cookies, are high in both refined carbohydrates and fat, it is difficult to determine which dietary component is responsible for the current epidemic of obesity among Americans.

Many people mistakenly believe that children become hyperactive after eating sugar. There is no scientific basis for this belief, because sucrose is broken down into glucose and fructose in the small intestine, and these sugars are absorbed into the bloodstream. The spike caused by their absorption does not last long. Excess glucose and fructose enters the liver, and fructose is converted to glucose. As you know, the liver stores glucose as glycogen, and glycogen is broken down to maintain the proper glucose level.

Lipids

Like carbohydrates, **triglycerides** (fats and oils) supply energy for cells, but **fat** is stored for the long term in the body. Fat deposits under the skin, called *subcutaneous fat,* insulate the body from cold temperatures; deeper fat deposits in the trunk protect organs against injury.

Nutritionists generally recommend that unsaturated rather than saturated fats (see Fig. 3.12) be included in the diet. Two unsaturated fatty acids (alpha-linolenic and linoleic acids) are *essential dietary fatty acids*. Delayed growth and skin problems can develop when the diet lacks these essential fatty acids, which can be supplied by eating fatty fish and by including plant oils, such as canola and soybean oils, in the diet.

Animal foods such as butter, meat, whole milk, and cheeses contain saturated fats. Plant oils contain unsaturated fats. Each type of oil has a particular percentage of monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fatty acids (see Fig. 3.13).

Cholesterol, a lipid, can be synthesized by the body in sufficient quantities to meets daily needs. Cells use cholesterol to make various compounds, including bile, steroid hormones, and vitamin D. Cholesterol is also an important component of the plasma membrane. Plant foods do not contain cholesterol; only animal foods, such as cheese, egg yolks, liver, and certain shellfish (shrimp and lobster), are rich in cholesterol.

Can Lipids Be Harmful?

Elevated blood cholesterol levels are associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular disease, the number one killer of Americans. A diet rich in cholesterol and saturated fats increases the risk of cardiovascular disease (see also Section 25.3). Statistical studies suggest that trans fats are even more harmful than saturated fats. As noted in the chapter opener, trans fats arise when unsaturated oils are hydrogenated to produce a solid fat, found largely in processed foods. Trans fatty acids may reduce the function of the plasma membrane receptors that clear cholesterol from the bloodstream. Trans fatty acids are found in commercially packaged foods, such as cookies and crackers; in commercially fried foods, such as french fries; in packaged snacks, such as microwave popcorn; and in vegetable shortening and some margarines. **Table 25.3** tells you how to reduce harmful lipids in the diet.

Proteins

Dietary **proteins** are digested to amino acids, which cells use to synthesize hundreds of cellular proteins. Of the 20 different amino acids, 9 are *essential amino acids* that must be present in the diet. Children will not grow if their diets

lack the essential amino acids. Eggs, milk products, meat, poultry, and most other foods derived from animals contain all 9 essential amino acids and are "complete," or "high-quality," protein sources.

Foods derived from plants generally do not have as much protein per serving as those derived from animals, and each type of plant food generally lacks one or more of the essential amino acids. Therefore, most plant foods are "incomplete," or "low-quality," protein sources. Vegetarians, however, do not have to rely on animal sources of protein. To meet their protein needs, total vegetarians (vegans) can eat grains, beans, and nuts in various combinations. Also, tofu, soymilk, and other foods made from processed soybeans are complete protein sources. A balanced vegetarian diet is quite possible with a little planning.

Can Proteins Be Harmful?

According to nutritionists, protein should not supply the bulk of dietary calories. The average American eats about twice as much protein as he or she needs, and some people may be on a diet that encourages the intake of proteins instead of carbohydrates as an energy source. Also, body builders, weight lifters, and other athletes may include amino acid or protein supplements in the diet because they think these supplements will increase muscle mass. However, excess amino acids are not always converted into muscle tissue. When they are used as an energy source, the liver removes the nitrogen portion (*deamination*) and uses it to form urea, which is excreted in urine. The water needed for the excretion of urea can cause dehydration when a person is exercising and losing water by sweating. High-protein diets can also increase calcium loss in the urine and encourage the formation of kidney stones. Furthermore, many high-protein foods contain a high amount of fat.

Minerals

The body needs about 20 elements called **minerals** for numerous physiological roles, including regulation of biochemical reactions, maintenance of fluid balance, and incorporation into certain structures and compounds. **Major minerals** are needed in the body at a higher level than **trace minerals.** More than 100 milligrams (mg) per day of each major mineral is required in the diet, and less than 100 mg per day of each trace mineral is required in the diet. **Table 25.4** lists the major minerals and a sample of the trace minerals. Their functions and food sources are given, as well as the health effects of too little or too much intake.

Some individuals (especially women) do not get enough iron, calcium, magnesium, or zinc in their diets. Adult females need more iron in the diet than males (18 mg compared to 10 mg) if they are menstruating each month. *Anemia,* characterized by a run-down feeling due to insufficient red blood cells, results when the diet lacks iron. Also, many people take calcium supplements as directed by a physician to counteract *osteoporosis,* a degenerative bone disease (**Fig. 25.5**) that affects an estimated one-quarter of older men and one-half of older women in the United States.

One mineral that people consume too much of is sodium. The recommended amount of sodium intake per day is 2,300 mg (1,500 mg if you have high blood pressure), although the average American takes in 4,000–4,700 mg each day. The American Heart Association recommends that you aim to decrease your sodium intake to less than 1,500 mg per day. **Table 25.5** gives recommendations for reducing the amount of sodium in the diet.

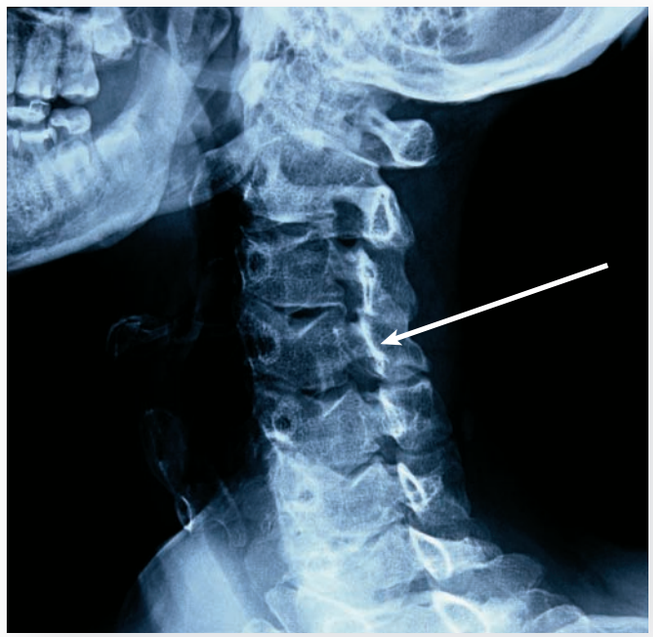


Figure 25.5 **An X-ray of an individual with osteoporosis.**

The fractures in this X-ray are caused by osteoporosis, which reduces the thickness and strength of bones.

Table 25.4 Minerals

Mineral	Function(s)	Food Source(s)	CONDITIONS CAUSED BY: Too Little	Too Much
Major Minerals				
Calcium (Ca^{2+})	Strong bones and teeth, nerve conduction, muscle contraction	Dairy products, leafy green vegetables	Stunted growth in children, low bone density in adults	Kidney stones; interferes with iron and zinc absorption
Phosphorus (PO_4^{3-})	Bone and soft tissue growth; part of phospholipids, ATP, and nucleic acids	Meat, dairy products, sunflower seeds, food additives	Weakness, confusion, pain in bones and joints	Low blood and bone calcium levels
Potassium (K^+)	Nerve conduction, muscle contraction	Many fruits and vegetables, bran	Paralysis, irregular heartbeat, eventual death	Vomiting, heart attack, death
Sodium (Na^+)	Nerve conduction, pH and water balance	Table salt	Lethargy, muscle cramps, loss of appetite	High blood pressure, calcium loss
Chloride (Cl^-)	Water balance	Table salt	Not likely	Vomiting, dehydration
Magnesium (Mg^{2+})	Part of various enzymes for nerve and muscle contraction, protein synthesis	Whole grains, leafy green vegetables	Muscle spasms, irregular heartbeat, convulsions, confusion, personality changes	Diarrhea
Sulfur (S^{2-})	Part of some amino acids and some vitamins	Meats, legumes, whole grains	Not likely	Not likely
Trace Minerals				
Zinc (Zn^{2+})	Protein synthesis, wound healing, fetal development and growth, immune function	Meats, legumes, whole grains	Delayed wound healing, night blindness, diarrhea, mental lethargy	Anemia, diarrhea, vomiting, renal failure, abnormal cholesterol levels
Iron (Fe^{2+})	Hemoglobin synthesis	Whole grains, meats, prune juice	Anemia, physical and mental sluggishness	Iron toxicity disease, organ failure, eventual death
Copper (Cu^{2+})	Iron metabolism; part of various antioxidant enzymes	Meat, nuts, legumes	Anemia, stunted growth in children	Damage to internal organs if not excreted
Iodine (I^-)	Thyroid hormone synthesis	Iodized table salt, seafood	Thyroid deficiency	Depressed thyroid function, anxiety
Selenium (SeO_4^{2-})	Part of antioxidant enzyme	Seafood, meats, eggs	Vascular collapse, possible cancer development	Hair and fingernail loss, discolored skin

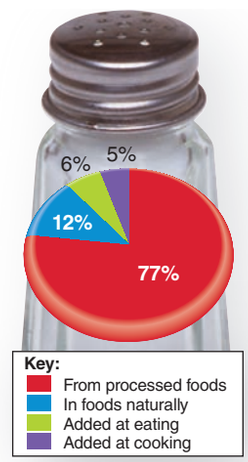
Table 25.5 Reducing Dietary Sodium

TO REDUCE DIETARY SODIUM:
1. Use spices instead of salt to flavor foods.
2. Add little or no salt to foods at the table, and add only small amounts of salt when you cook.
3. Eat unsalted crackers, pretzels, potato chips, nuts, and popcorn.
4. Avoid hot dogs, ham, bacon, luncheon meats, smoked salmon, sardines, and anchovies.
5. Avoid processed cheese and canned or dehydrated soups.
6. Avoid brine-soaked foods, such as pickles and olives.
7. Read labels to avoid high-salt products.

Connections: Health

Where does most of the sodium in the diet come from?

Contrary to popular belief, the majority of the sodium in your diet does not come from the salt you put on your food when you are eating. Instead, most of our sodium (over three-quarters!) comes from processed foods and condiments. Sodium is used in these items both to preserve the food or condiment and to make it taste better. But sometimes the amount of sodium is phenomenal. A single teaspoon of soy sauce contains almost 1,000 mg of sodium, and a half-cup of prepared tomato sauce typically has over 400 mg of sodium. Websites such as nutritiondata.com can help you track your daily sodium intake.



Vitamins

Vitamins are organic compounds (other than carbohydrates, fats, and proteins, including amino acids) that regulate various metabolic activities. **Tables 25.6** and **25.7** list the major vitamins and some of their functions and food sources.

Although many people think vitamins can enhance health dramatically, prevent aging, and cure diseases such as arthritis and cancer, there is no scientific

Table 25.6 Water-Soluble Vitamins

			CONDITIONS CAUSED BY:	
Vitamin	**Functions**	**Food Sources**	**Too Little**	**Too Much**
Vitamin C	Antioxidant; needed for forming collagen; helps maintain capillaries, bones, and teeth	Citrus fruits, leafy green vegetables, tomatoes, potatoes, cabbage	Scurvy, delayed wound healing, infections	Gout, kidney stones, diarrhea, decreased copper
Thiamine (vitamin B_1)	Part of coenzyme needed for cellular respiration; promotes activity of the nervous system	Whole-grain cereals, dried beans and peas, sunflower seeds, nuts	Beriberi, muscular weakness, enlarged heart	Can interfere with absorption of other vitamins
Riboflavin (vitamin B_2)	Part of coenzymes, such as FAD; aids cellular respiration, including oxidation of protein and fat	Nuts, dairy products, whole-grain cereals, poultry, leafy green vegetables	Dermatitis, blurred vision, growth failure	Unknown
Niacin (nicotinic acid)	Part of coenzymes NAD and NADP; needed for cellular respiration, including oxidation of protein and fat	Peanuts, poultry, whole-grain cereals, leafy green vegetables, beans	Pellagra, diarrhea, mental disorders	High blood sugar and uric acid, vasodilation
Folacin (folic acid)	Coenzyme needed for production of hemoglobin and formation of DNA	Leafy dark green vegetables, nuts, beans, whole-grain cereals	Megaloblastic anemia, spina bifida	May mask B_{12} deficiency
Vitamin B_6	Coenzyme needed for synthesis of hormones and hemoglobin; CNS control	Whole-grain cereals, bananas, beans, poultry, nuts, leafy green vegetables	Rarely, convulsions, vomiting, seborrhea, muscular weakness	Insomnia, neuropathy
Pantothenic acid	Part of coenzyme A needed for oxidation of carbohydrates and fats; aids in the formation of hormones and certain neurotransmitters	Nuts, beans, dark green vegetables, poultry, fruits, milk	Rarely, loss of appetite, mental depression, numbness	Unknown
Vitamin B_{12}	Complex, cobalt-containing compound; part of the coenzyme needed for synthesis of nucleic acids and myelin	Dairy products, fish, poultry, eggs, fortified cereals	Pernicious anemia	Unknown
Biotin	Coenzyme needed for metabolism of amino acids and fatty acids	Generally in foods, especially eggs	Skin rash, nausea, fatigue	Unknown

Table 25.7 Fat-Soluble Vitamins

			CONDITIONS CAUSED BY:	
Vitamin	**Functions**	**Food Sources**	**Too Little**	**Too Much**
Vitamin A	Antioxidant needed for normal vision, immune system function, and cellular growth	Yellow-orange and dark green fruits and vegetables, milk, cereals	Night blindness, poor immune system functioning	Nausea, headache, bone fractures, hair loss
Vitamin D	A group of steroids needed for development and maintenance of bones and teeth	Milk fortified with vitamin D, fish liver oil	Rickets, bone decalcification and weakening	Calcification of soft tissues, diarrhea, possible renal damage
Vitamin E	Antioxidant that prevents oxidation of vitamin A and polyunsaturated fatty acids	Leafy green vegetables, fruits, vegetable oils, nuts, whole-grain breads and cereals	Unknown	Diarrhea, nausea, headache, fatigue, muscle weakness
Vitamin K	Synthesis of substances active in clotting of blood	Leafy green vegetables, cabbage, cauliflower	Easy bruising and bleeding	Can interfere with anticoagulant medication

evidence that vitamins are "wonder drugs." However, vitamins C, E, and A have been shown to defend the body against free radicals, and therefore they are termed **antioxidants.** These vitamins are especially abundant in fruits and vegetables, so it is suggested that we eat about 4 ½ cups of fruits and vegetables per day. To achieve this goal, we should consume salad greens, raw or cooked vegetables, dried fruit, and fruit juice in addition to traditional apples and oranges and other fresh foods.

Vitamin deficiencies can lead to disorders, and even death, in humans. Although many foods in the United States are now enriched, or fortified, with vitamins, some individuals, especially the elderly, young children, alcoholics, and low-income people, are still at risk for vitamin deficiencies, generally as a result of poor food choices. For example, skin cells normally contain a precursor cholesterol molecule that is converted to vitamin D after UV exposure. But a vitamin D deficiency leads to a condition called rickets, in which defective mineralization of the skeleton causes bowing of the legs. Most milk today is fortified with vitamin D, which helps prevent the occurrence of rickets. Another example is vitamin C deficiency, the effects of which are illustrated in Figure 25.2. If a diet involves high alcohol consumption, then vitamin deficiencies may occur even if the intake of vitamins is adequate. Deficiencies occur because alcohol interferes with the absorption of certain vitamins, such as vitamin B_{12}, folacin, and vitamin A, and it increases the excretion of other vitamins, such as vitamin C.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

A balanced diet is composed of nutrients from each of the six classes.

Water

Water constitutes about 60% of an adult's body. Water participates in many chemical reactions; in addition, watery fluids lubricate joints, transport other nutrients, and help maintain body temperature. Beverages, soups, fruits, and vegetables are sources of water, and most solid foods contain some water. The amount of *total* water (water from beverages and foods) that you need to consume depends on your physical activity level, your diet, and environmental conditions. On average, men should consume about 125 ounces (oz) and women should consume about 90 oz of total water each day. Thirst is a healthy person's best guide for meeting water needs and avoiding dehydration. Too much water can also be a problem. In water toxication (*hyponatrimia*), individuals who consume excessive amounts of water upset the balance of electrolytes, usually sodium and potassium, in their blood. This can lead to irregular heartbeats, and in some cases, death.

Check Your Progress 25.2

1. List the classes of nutrients, and give an example of each.
2. Describe the potential health consequences of overindulging in each of the following: carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins.
3. Summarize the potential health problems associated with deficiences of vitamins, minerals, and water.

25.3 Nutrition and Health

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Calculate a body mass index and determine if this value reflects a healthy weight.
2. Discuss the balance between energy intake and energy output.
3. Describe diseases associated with obesity.
4. List and describe eating disorders.

Many serious disorders in Americans are linked to a diet that results in excess body fat. In the United States, the number of people who are overweight or obese has reached epidemic proportions. Nearly two-thirds of adult Americans have too much body fat.

Excess body fat increases the risk of type 2 diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and certain cancers. These conditions are among the leading causes of disability and death in the United States. Therefore, it is important for us all to stay within the recommended weight for our height.

Body Mass Index

Medical researchers use the **body mass index (BMI)** to determine if a person is overweight or obese. On the whole, the height to which we grow is determined genetically, while our weight is influenced by other factors as well, particularly diet and lifestyle. BMI is the relationship between a person's weight and height. Here's how to calculate your BMI:

$$\frac{\text{weight (pounds)} \times 703.1}{\text{height}^2 \text{ (inches)}}$$

Example: A woman whose height is 63 inches and weighs 133 pounds has a BMI of 23.56.

$$\frac{133 \times 703.1}{63^2} = \frac{93512.3}{3969} = 23.56 \text{ (BMI)}$$

Underweight BMI	<	18.5
Healthy BMI	=	18.5 to 24.9
Overweight BMI	=	25.0 to 29.9
Obese BMI	=	30.0 to 39.9
Morbidly obese BMI	=	40.0 or more

Energy Intake Versus Energy Output

While genetics and physiological factors such as the types of bacteria in the large intestine are known to be a factor in being overweight, a person cannot become fat without taking in more food energy (calories) than are expended.

Energy Intake The energy value of food is often reported in kilocalories (kcal).[1] A kilocalorie is the amount of heat that raises the temperature of a liter of water by 1°C.

For practical purposes, you can estimate a food's caloric value if you know how many grams of carbohydrate, fat, protein, and alcohol it contains. Each gram of carbohydrate or protein supplies 4 kcal, and each gram of fat supplies 9 kcal. Although alcohol is not a nutrient, it is considered a food, and each gram (g) supplies 7 kcal. Therefore, if a serving of food contains 30 g of carbohydrate, 9 g of fat, and 5 g of protein, it supplies 221 kcal:

carbohydrate	30 g	× 4 kcal	=	120 kcal
fat	9 g	× 9 kcal	=	81 kcal
protein	5 g	× 4 kcal	=	20 kcal
Total				221 kcal

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How is the calorie content of a food determined?

Scientists use a bomb calorimeter to measure a food's caloric value. A portion of food is placed inside the chamber and then ignited. As the food burns, it raises the temperature of the water that surrounds the chamber. Scientists measure the change in water temperature and calculate the number of calories in the food.

[1]Nutritionists use the term *Calorie,* while scientists prefer *kcal.*

Figure 25.6 **Measuring energy needed for a physical activity.**

a. A sedentary job requires much less energy than (**b**) a physical job. **c.** Scientists measure oxygen intake and carbon dioxide output to determine the kcal required for a particular physical activity.

Energy Output The body expends energy primarily for (1) metabolic functions; (2) physical activity; and (3) digestion, absorption, and processing of nutrients from food. Scientists can assess a person's energy expenditure for a particular physical activity by measuring oxygen intake and carbon dioxide output during performance of the activity (**Fig. 25.6**).

For practical purposes, here's how to estimate your daily energy needs:

1. *Kcal needed daily for metabolic functions:* Multiply your weight in kilograms (weight in pounds divided by 2.2) times 1.0 if you are a man, and times 0.9 if you are a woman. Then multiply that number by 24.

   Example: Meghan, a woman who weighs 130 pounds (about 59 kg), would use the following steps to calculate her daily caloric use:

   0.9 kcal × 59 kg × 24 hours = approximately 1,274 kcal/day

2. *Kcal needed daily for physical activity:* Choose a multiplication factor from one of the follow categories:

   Sedentary (little or no physical activity) = .20 to .40
   Light (walk daily) = .55 to .65
   Moderate (daily vigorous exercise) = .70 to .75
   Heavy (physical labor/endurance training) = .80 to 1.20

   Multiply this factor times the kcal value you obtained in step 1.

   Example: Meghan performs light physical activity daily. She multiplies .55 × 1,274 kcal to determine her physical activity use, which is 701 kcal.

3. *Kcal needed for digestion, absorption, and processing of nutrients:*

   Example: Meghan adds 1,274 kcal and 701 kcal to calculate her total energy needs so far. The answer is 1,975 kcal.

   Multiply this value by 0.1, and add it to the total kcal from steps 1 and 2 to get your total daily energy needs.

   Example: Meghan multiplies 1,975 kcal by 0.1 and adds that value (197.5) to 1,975 to obtain her total daily energy needs of 2,172 kcal.

   Therefore, Meghan will maintain her weight of 130 pounds if she continues to consume about 2,170 kcal a day and to perform light physical activities.

Connections: Health

What is the 10,000 step program?

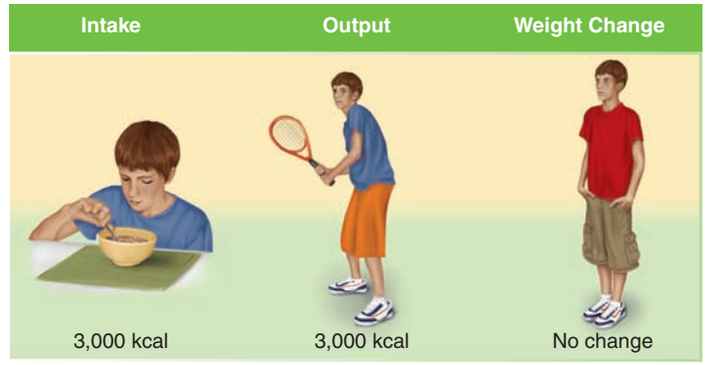
Research suggests that a minimum of 10,000 (10K) steps per day is necessary for weight maintenance and good health. That number of steps per day is roughly equivalent to the recommended 30 minutes of daily exercise. To get started, you'll need a pedometer. You'll probably find you need to increase the amount of walking you do to reach the goal of 10K steps a day. There are a number of easy ways to add steps to your routine. Park a little farther away from your office or the store. Take the stairs instead of the elevator, or go for a walk after a meal. If your goal is to lose weight, 12–15K steps a day have been shown to promote weight loss.

Maintaining a Healthy Weight

To maintain weight at an appropriate level, the kcal intake (eating) should not exceed the daily kcal output (metabolism + physical activity + processing food). For many Americans, this ratio is out of sync; they take in more calories than they need. The extra energy is converted to fat stored in *adipose tissue,* and they become overweight. To lose weight, an overweight person needs to lower the kcal intake and increase the kcal output in the form of physical activity. Only then does the body metabolize its stored fat for energy needs, allowing the person to lose weight. **Figure 25.7** illustrates how body weight changes in relation to kcal intake and kcal output.

Dieting Fad weight-reduction diets—high-protein, low-carb, high-fiber, and even cabbage soup diets—come and go. During the first few weeks of a fad diet, overweight people often lose weight rapidly, because they consume fewer calories than usual, and excess body fat is metabolized for energy needs. In most cases, however, dieters become bored with eating the same foods and avoiding their favorite foods, which may be high in fat and sugars. When most dieters go off their diets, they regain the weight they lost, and they often feel frustrated and angry at themselves for failing to maintain the weight loss.

There are no quick and easy solutions for losing weight. The typical fad diet is nutritionally unbalanced and difficult to follow over the long term. Weight loss and weight maintenance require permanent lifestyle changes, such as increasing the level of physical activity and reducing portion sizes. Behavior modification allows an overweight person to lose weight safely, generally at a reasonable rate of about ½ to 2 pounds per week. Once body weight is under control, it needs to be maintained by continuing to eat sensibly.



Energy balance (equilibrium)

Positive energy balance

Negative energy balance

Figure 25.7 **How body weight changes.**

These illustrations show the relationships among food intake, energy use, and weight change.

Connections: Health

What is the caveman diet?

The caveman diet, also known as the paleo (paleolithic) or warrior diet, is based on the idea that many modern nutritional problems, such as diabetes and cardiovascular disease, are due to the fact that humans are eating foods that their bodies have not had time to adjust to on an evolutionary scale. Supporters of the caveman diet suggest that a diet rich in nuts, meat, shellfish, vegetables, and berries—foods that were available to cavemen—reduces the risk for these diseases. While diets rich in these foods do reduce the risk for certain diseases, critics of the caveman diet state that the diet omits important foods, such as low-fat dairy, grains, and beans—all of which are important in a healthy diet. In all cases, diets should remove low-nutritional foods and replace them with healthier choices. Individuals should consult with their physician before undertaking any new form of diet.

Figure 25.8 **Exercising for good health.**

Regular exercise helps prevent and control type 2 diabetes.

Disorders Associated with Obesity

Type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease are often seen in people who are obese.

Type 2 Diabetes

As discussed in Chapter 27, diabetes comes in two forms, type 1 and type 2. When a person has type 1 diabetes, the pancreas does not produce insulin, and the patient has to have daily insulin injections.

In contrast to type 1 diabetes, children and more often adults with type 2 diabetes are usually obese and display impaired insulin production and insulin resistance. Normally, the presence of insulin causes the cells of the body to take up and metabolize glucose. In a person with insulin resistance, the body's cells fail to take up glucose even when insulin is present. Therefore, the blood glucose value exceeds the normal level, and glucose appears in the urine.

Type 2 diabetes is increasing rapidly in most industrialized countries of the world. Because type 2 diabetes is most often seen in people who are obese, dietary factors are generally believed to contribute to the development of type 2 diabetes. Further, a healthy diet, increased physical activity, and weight loss have been seen to improve insulin's ability to function properly in type 2 diabetics (**Fig. 25.8**). How might diet contribute to the occurrence of type 2 diabetes? Simple sugars in foods, such as candy and ice cream, immediately enter the bloodstream, as do sugars from the digestion of starch within white bread and potatoes. When the blood glucose level rises rapidly, the pancreas produces an overload of insulin to bring the level under control. Chronically high insulin levels apparently lead to insulin resistance, increased fat deposition, and a high blood fatty acid level. Over the years, the body's cells become insulin resistant, and thus type 2 diabetes can occur. In addition, high fatty acid levels can lead to increased risk for cardiovascular disease.

It is well worth the effort to control type 2 diabetes, because all diabetics, whether type 1 or type 2, are at risk for blindness, kidney disease, and cardiovascular disease.

Cardiovascular Disease

In the United States, cardiovascular disease, which includes hypertension, heart attack, and stroke, is among the leading causes of death. Cardiovascular disease is often due to arteries blocked by plaque, which contains saturated fats and cholesterol. Cholesterol is carried in the blood by two types of lipoproteins: low-density lipoprotein (LDL) and high-density lipoprotein (HDL). LDL is thought of as "bad" because it carries cholesterol from the liver to the cells, while HDL is thought of as "good" because it carries cholesterol from the cells to the liver, which takes it up and converts it to bile salts.

Saturated fats, including trans fats, tend to raise LDL cholesterol levels, while unsaturated fats lower LDL cholesterol levels. Beef, dairy foods, and coconut oil are rich sources of saturated fat. Foods containing partially hydrogenated oils (e.g., vegetable shortening and stick margarine) are sources of trans fats. Unsaturated fatty acids in olive and canola oils, most nuts, and coldwater fish tend to lower LDL cholesterol levels. Furthermore, coldwater fish (e.g., herring, sardines, tuna, and salmon) contain polyunsaturated fatty acids, and especially *omega-3 unsaturated fatty acids,* which can reduce the risk for cardiovascular disease. Taking fish oil supplements to obtain omega-3s is not recommended without a physician's approval, because too much of these fatty acids can interfere with normal blood clotting.

The American Heart Association recommends limiting total cholesterol intake to 300 mg per day. Eggs are very nutritious, but yolks contain about 210 mg of cholesterol. Most healthy people can eat a couple of whole eggs each week without experiencing an increase in their blood cholesterol levels. Overall, dietary saturated fats and trans fats raise LDL cholesterol levels more than dietary cholesterol.

A physician can determine if blood lipid levels are normal. If a person's cholesterol and triglyceride levels are elevated, modifying the fat content of the diet, losing excess body fat, and exercising regularly can reduce them. If lifestyle changes do not lower blood lipid levels enough to reduce the risk for cardiovascular disease, a physician may prescribe medication.

Eating Disorders

People with eating disorders are dissatisfied with their body image. Social, cultural, emotional, and biological factors all contribute to the development of an eating disorder. These serious conditions can lead to malnutrition, disability, and death. Regardless of the eating disorder, early recognition and treatment are crucial. Treatment usually includes psychological counseling and antidepressant medications.

Anorexia nervosa is a severe psychological disorder characterized by an irrational fear of getting fat, causing a refusal to eat enough food to maintain a healthy body weight (**Fig. 25.9*a***). A self-imposed starvation diet is often accompanied by occasional binge eating, followed by purging and extreme physical activity to avoid weight gain. Binges usually include large amounts of high-calorie foods, and purging episodes involve self-induced vomiting and laxative abuse. About 90% of people suffering from anorexia nervosa are young women; an estimated 1 in 200 teenage girls is affected.

A person with **bulimia nervosa** binge eats, then purges to avoid gaining weight (Fig. 25.9*b*). The binge-purge cyclic behavior can occur several times a day. People with bulimia nervosa can be difficult to identify because their body weight is often normal, and they tend to conceal their bingeing and purging practices. Women are more likely than men to develop bulimia; an estimated 4% of young women suffer from this condition.

Other abnormal eating practices include binge-eating disorder and muscle dysmorphia. Many obese people suffer from **binge-eating disorder,** a condition characterized by episodes of overeating that are not followed by purging. Stress, anxiety, anger, and depression can trigger food binges. A person suffering from **muscle dysmorphia** thinks his or her body is underdeveloped. Body-building activities and a preoccupation with diet and body form accompany this condition. Each day, the person may spend hours in the gym, working out on muscle-strengthening equipment. Unlike anorexia nervosa and bulimia, muscle dysmorphia affects more men than women.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Excessive energy intake can lead to diseases associated with obesity.

a.

b.

Figure 25.9 **Eating disorders.**

a. People with anorexia nervosa have a mistaken body image and think they are fat even though they are thin. **b.** Those with bulimia nervosa overeat and then purge their bodies of the food they have eaten.

Check Your Progress 25.3

1. Detail the three types of requirements that determine daily caloric needs.
2. Describe a few disorders associated with obesity.
3. Explain why it is important to understand your individual daily energy input and output.

25.4 How to Plan Nutritious Meals

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain the purpose of the MyPlate food guidelines.
2. Evaluate the nutrition labels on food packaging.
3. Discuss the value of dietary supplements.
4. Summarize the components of a healthy diet.

Planning nutritious meals and snacks involves making daily food choices based on a wide variety of information about recommended amounts of nutrients. A day's food intake should provide the proper balance of nutrients—neither too much nor too little of each nutrient. Food guides can be helpful in planning your diet. Additionally, reading the Nutrition Facts panel on packaged foods can help you choose a healthier source of nutrients.

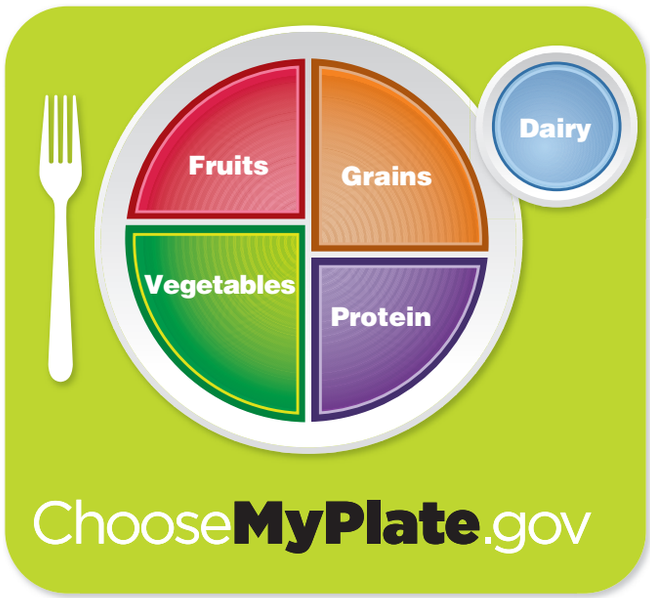


Figure 25.10 **MyPlate food guidelines.**

The U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) developed this visual representation of a food plate as a guide to better health. The size differences on the plate for each food group suggest what portion of your meal should consist of each category. The five different colors illustrate that foods in correct proportions are needed each day for good health.

Source: ChooseMyPlate.gov.

Dietary Guidelines: ChooseMyPlate.gov

The new guidelines developed by the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) are called MyPlate (**Fig. 25.10**). This graphical representation replaced the older pyramids because most people found it easier to interpret. It can be used to help you decide how those calories should be distributed among the foods to eat. MyPlate emphasizes the proportions of each food group that should be consumed daily.

In addition, the USDA provides (on the ChooseMyPlate.gov website) recommendations concerning the minimum quantity of foods in each group that should be eaten daily. The site also contains an interactive component, SuperTracker, that allows you to track your own diet and set personal weight and activity goals. To support these decisions, the USDA also provides examples of daily food plans and information on how to eat healthy on a budget.

Making Sense of Nutrition Labels

A Nutrition Facts panel, such as the one shown in **Figure 25.11** provides specific dietary information about the product and general information about the nutrients the product contains.

Serving Size The serving size is based on the typical serving size for the product. If you are comparing Calorie (kcal)[2] and other data about products of the same type, you want to be sure the serving size is the same for each product.

Calories The total number of kcal is based on the serving size. Obviously, if you eat twice the serving size, you have taken in twice the number of Calories.

The bottom of the panel lists the Calories (kcal) per gram (g) of fat, carbohydrate, and protein. You can use this information to calculate the Calories per serving for each type of nutrient. The total for all nutrients should agree with the figure given for Calories (kcal) at the top of the panel.

Animation
Calories in a Sandwich

[2]Nutritionists use the word *Calorie,* while scientists prefer *kcal.*

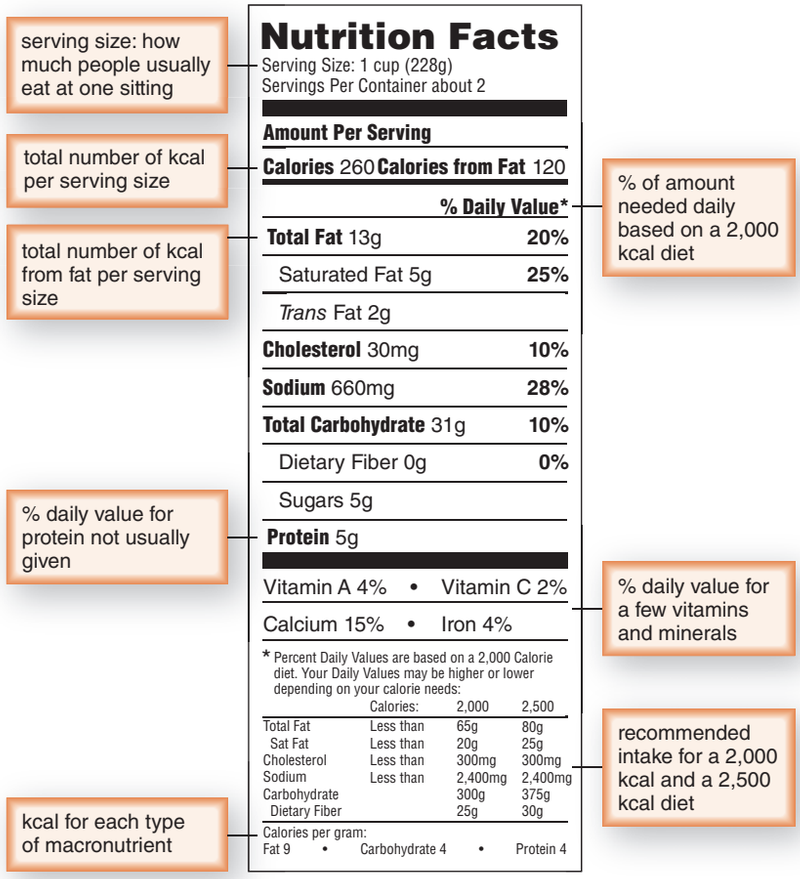


Figure 25.11 **Nutrition facts panel.**

The Nutrition Facts panel provides information about the amounts of certain nutrients and other substances in a serving of food.

% Daily Value The % daily value (the % of the total amount needed in a 2,000 kcal diet) is calculated by comparing the specific information about this product with the information given at the bottom of the panel. For example, the product in Figure 25.11 has a fat content of 13 g, and the total daily recommended amount is less than 65 g, so 13/65 = 20%. *These % daily values are not applicable for people who require more or less than 2,000 Calories (kcal) per day.*

A % daily value for protein is generally not given because determining % daily value would require expensive testing of the protein quality of the product by the manufacturer. Also, notice there is a % daily value for carbohydrates but not sugars, because there is no daily value for sugar.

How to Use the Panel If the serving sizes are the same, you can use Nutrition Facts panels to compare two products of the same type. For example, if you wanted to reduce your Caloric intake and increase your fiber and vitamin C intakes, comparing the panels from two different food products would allow you to see which one is lowest in Calories and highest in fiber and vitamin C.

Connections: Health

What health benefits are associated with drinking green tea?

All tea is derived from a plant native to China and India called *Camellia sinensis*. Green tea is made by steaming the leaves of this plant. Typically, green tea has less caffeine than black teas, which are made by fermenting the tea leaves. Research studies on the health benefits of green tea have shown that, overall, it has a very positive effect on the body. Antioxidants in green tea (called flavonoids) inhibit the growth of certain forms of cancer, prevent plaque buildup in the blood vessels, and may help improve blood cholesterol levels. However, most nutritionists still warn against taking green tea supplements. Instead, substitute a cup of tea for soda in your daily diet.

Dietary Supplements

Dietary supplements are nutrients and plant products (such as herbal teas) that are used to enhance health. The U.S. government does not require dietary supplements to undergo the same safety and effectiveness testing that new prescription drugs must complete before they are approved. Therefore, many herbal products have not been tested scientifically to determine their benefits. Although people often think herbal products are safe because they are "natural," many plants, including lobelia, comfrey, and kava kava, can be poisonous.

Dietary supplements that contain nutrients can also cause harm. Most fat-soluble vitamins are stored in the body and can accumulate to toxic levels, particularly vitamins A and D. Although excesses of water-soluble vitamins can be excreted, cases involving toxic amounts of vitamin B_6, thiamine, and vitamin C have been reported. Minerals can be harmful, even deadly, when ingested in amounts that exceed the body's needs.

Healthy people can take a daily supplement that contains recommended amounts of vitamins and minerals. Some people have metabolic diseases or physical conditions that interfere with their ability to absorb or metabolize certain nutrients. These individuals may need to add certain nutrient supplements to their diet. However, people should not take high doses of dietary supplements without checking with their physician.

The Bottom Line

Most nutritionists agree that a healthy diet

- Has a moderate total fat intake and is low in saturated fat, trans fats, and cholesterol (see Table 25.3 for help in achieving this goal)
- Is rich in whole-grain products, vegetables, and legumes (e.g., beans and peas) as sources of complex carbohydrates and fiber
- Is low in refined carbohydrates, such as starches and sugars (see Table 25.2 for help in achieving this goal)
- Is low in salt and sodium content (see Table 25.5 for help in achieving this goal)
- Contains only adequate amounts of protein, largely from poultry, fish, and plants
- Includes only moderate amounts of alcohol
- Contains adequate amounts of minerals and vitamins but avoids questionable food additives and supplements

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

25.4 Planning nutritious meals is essential for a healthy diet.

Check Your Progress 25.4

1. Describe the importance of a balanced meal.
2. Summarize the information provided by the MyPlate icon.
3. Explain the importance of a nutrition label and list the information it provides.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video	MP3 Files
25.2 Osteoporosis • B Vitamins **25.3** Body Mass Index • Bomb Calorimeter **25.4** Calories in a Sandwich • Anatomy of a Food Label	**25.2** Apples for Alzheimer's **25.3** A Burger a Day	**25.2** Carbohydrates • Lipids • Proteins **25.3** Fat Microbes

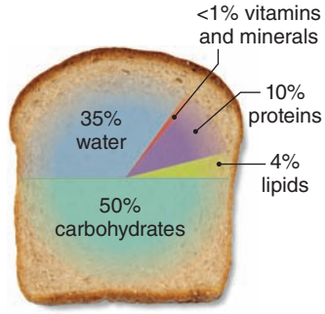
SUMMARIZE

25.1 Nutrition

Nutrients perform various physiological functions in the body. A healthy diet can lead to a longer and more active life.

Introducing the Nutrients

Balanced **diets** supply **nutrients** in proportions necessary for health. **Essential nutrients** must be supplied by the diet, or else deficiency disorders result. **Macronutrients** (carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins) supply energy. **Micronutrients** (vitamins and minerals) and water do not supply energy.



25.2 The Classes of Nutrients

The six classes of nutrients are carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, minerals, vitamins, and water. Their functions and food sources follow.

Carbohydrates (Macronutrient)

- **Carbohydrates** in the form of sugars and starch provide energy for cells. Glucose is a simple carbohydrate the body uses directly for energy.
- Sources of carbohydrates are fruits, vegetables, cereals, and other grains.
- **Fiber** includes nondigestible carbohydrates from plants. Fiber in the diet can prevent constipation and may protect against cardiovascular disease, diabetes, and colon cancer. Large quantities of refined carbohydrates, from which fiber, vitamins, and minerals have been removed, in the diet may lead to **obesity.**

Lipids (Macronutrient)

- **Triglycerides** (fats and oils) supply energy and are stored as **fat** for insulation and protection of organs. Alpha-linolenic and linoleic acids are essential fatty acids.
- **Cholesterol** is used in plasma membranes and to make bile, steroid hormones, and vitamin D. The only food sources of cholesterol are foods derived from animals. Elevated blood cholesterol levels are associated with cardiovascular disease.
- Sources of lipids include oils, fats, whole-milk dairy products, meat, fish, poultry, and nuts.
- High intake of saturated fats, trans fats, and cholesterol is harmful to health.

Proteins (Macronutrient)

- The body uses the 20 different amino acids to synthesize hundreds of **proteins**. Nine amino acids are essential to the diet. Most animal foods are complete sources of protein because they contain all 9 essential amino acids.
- Sources of proteins include meat, fish, poultry, eggs, nuts, soybeans, and cheese.
- Healthy vegetarian diets rely on various sources of plant proteins.
- Consumption of excess protein can be harmful because the excretion of excess urea taxes the kidneys and can lead to kidney stones.

Minerals (Micronutrient)

- **Minerals** regulate metabolism and are incorporated into structures and compounds.
- About 20 minerals, obtained from most foods, are needed by the body. Minerals are classified as either **major minerals** (more than 100 mg per day) or **trace minerals** (less than 100 mg per day).
- Deficiencies of calcium can lead to osteoporosis, and excesses of sodium can lead to health problems.

Vitamins (Micronutrient)

- **Vitamins,** obtained from most foods, regulate metabolism and physiological development. Vitamins C, E, and A also serve as **antioxidants.**
- Lack of any of the vitamins can lead to certain disorders.

Water

- Water participates in chemical reactions, lubricates joints, transports other nutrients, and helps maintain body temperature.
- Too little water leads to dehydration; too much water may lead to hyponatremia.

25.3 Nutrition and Health

Excess body fat increases the risk of type 2 diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and certain cancers.

Body Mass Index

Medical researchers use the **body mass index (BMI)** to determine if a person has a healthy weight, is overweight, or is obese.

Energy Intake Versus Energy Output

- Energy intake: The number of daily Calories (kcal) consumed is based on grams of carbohydrate, fat, and protein in the foods eaten.
- Energy output: The number of daily Calories (kcal) used is based on the amounts needed for metabolic functions, physical activity, and digestion, absorption, and processing of nutrients.

Maintaining a Healthy Weight

- To maintain a healthy weight, kcal intake should not exceed kcal output. To lose weight, decrease caloric intake and increase physical activity.
- Fad diets, in general, are nutritionally unbalanced and difficult to follow over the long term.

Disorders Associated with Obesity

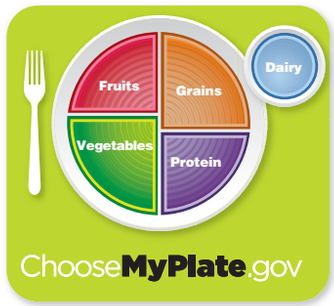
- Type 2 diabetes: A healthy diet, increased physical activity, and weight loss improve insulin function in type 2 diabetics.
- Cardiovascular disease: Saturated fats and trans fats are associated with high blood LDL cholesterol levels. To reduce risk of cardiovascular disease, cholesterol intake should be limited, and the diet should include sources of unsaturated, polyunsaturated, and omega-3 fatty acids to reduce cholesterol levels.

Eating Disorders

People suffering from eating disorders are dissatisfied with their body image. **Anorexia nervosa** and **bulimia nervosa** are serious psychological disturbances that can lead to malnutrition and death. Other disorders include **binge-eating disorder** and **muscle dysmorphia**.

25.4 How to Plan Nutritious Meals

Planning nutritious meals and snacks involves making healthy and informed food choices.



Dietary Guidelines: ChooseMyPlate.gov

The USDA's ChooseMyPlate.gov program provides guidelines on the proportion of each class of energy nutrient in the diet. The program emphasizes the need for exercise to prevent weight gain.

Making Sense of Nutrition Labels

The information in the Nutrition Facts panel on packaged foods can be useful when comparing foods for nutrient content, especially serving size, total Calories, and % daily value.

Dietary Supplements

Dietary supplements are nutrients and plant products that are taken to enhance health. A multiple vitamin and mineral supplement that provides recommended amounts of nutrients can be taken daily, but herbal and nutritional supplements can be harmful if misused.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Knowing the components of a healthy, balanced diet enables us to plan nutritious meals. Understanding the consequences of having an unhealthy diet can help us lead a more active and productive life.

Proper nutrition is essential for optimal functioning of your body's system.

A balanced diet is composed of nutrients from each of the six classes.

Excessive energy intake can lead to diseases associated with obesity.

Planning nutritious meals is essential for a healthy diet.

For more information about human nutrition, see the following discussions:

Section 3.2 describes the structure and function of carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins in cells.

Section 7.1 provides an overview of how aerobic respiration releases the energy of macronutrients, such as carbohydrates.

Section 23.3 provides additional information on the causes of cardiovascular disease.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

25.1 Nutrition

1. Vitamins are considered
   a. micronutrients because they are small in size.
   b. micronutrients because they are needed in small quantities.
   c. macronutrients because they are large in size.
   d. macronutrients because they are needed in large quantities.
2. A _____ is a component of food that provides a physiological function.
   a. macromolecule
   b. nutrient
   c. Calorie
   d. chemical
3. The amino acids that must be consumed in the diet are called essential. Nonessential amino acids
   a. can be produced by the body.
   b. are needed only occasionally.
   c. are stored in the body until needed.
   d. can be taken in by supplements.

25.2 The Classes of Nutrients

For questions 4–9, choose the class of nutrient from the key that matches the description. Each answer may be used more than once or not at all.

Key:

a. carbohydrates
b. lipids
c. proteins
d. minerals
e. vitamins
f. water

4. preferred source of direct energy for cells
5. constitutes the majority of human body mass
6. include the essential fatty acids alpha-linolenic and linoleic
7. include antioxidants
8. an example is cholesterol
9. includes calcium, phosphorus, and potassium
10. Vitamins
    a. are inorganic compounds necessary in the diet.
    b. are found in high levels in the body and used as building blocks for body tissues.
    c. are organic compounds, found in low levels in the body, that regulate metabolic activities.
    d. can all be synthesized by the human body.

25.3 Nutrition and Health

11. The body mass index (BMI) is
    a. a measure of height relative to weight to determine whether a person is overweight.
    b. a measure of height relative to age to determine whether a person is of normal height.
    c. relatively low if a person is overweight.
    d. relatively high if a person is underweight.
12. The body's inability to regulate blood glucose levels is a characteristic of
    a. hypertension.
    b. cancer.
    c. cardiovascular disease.
    d. diabetes.

25.4 How to Plan Nutritious Meals

13. You are comparing two breakfast cereals, and one has fewer Calories than the other per serving. What should you check before deciding which one will lead to weight loss?
- **a.** the percentage of vitamins provided by each
- **b.** the grams of protein provided by each
- **c.** the grams of sugar provided by each
- **d.** the suggested serving size
- **e.** the size of the box

14. A % daily value for sugar is not included in a nutrition label because
- **a.** sugar is not a nutrient.
- **b.** it is too difficult to determine the caloric value of sugar.
- **c.** there is a daily value given for carbohydrates, but not for sugars.
- **d.** sugar quality varies from product to product.

15. Which of the following is correct regarding the % daily values on a food label?
- **a.** They provide precise values for an individual's diet.
- **b.** They are based on a 2,000 Calorie per day diet.
- **c.** They are provided for every nutrient on the food label.
- **d.** They take serving size into consideration.

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. One reason obesity is such a pervasive problem in the United States is that serving sizes have increased dramatically in the past two decades. For example, 20 years ago, a typical soda was 6.5 ounces, while today a 20-ounce (oz) soda is considered average. A serving of french fries was 2.6 oz in the past but is at least 6 oz today. Bagels have doubled in size. Complete the following table to determine the caloric values of today's servings, and then compare them.

	Soda Then: 6.5 oz	Soda Now: 20 oz	Calorie Increase
Fat (g)	0	_____	
Carbohydrate (g)	21	_____	
Protein (g)	0	_____	
Total Calories	_____	_____	_____

	Fries Then: 2.6 oz	Fries Now: 6 oz	Calorie Increase
Fat (g)	11	_____	
Carbohydrate (g)	28	_____	
Protein (g)	3	_____	
Total Calories	_____	_____	_____

	Bagels Then: 3 oz	Bagels Now: 6 oz	Calorie Increase
Fat (g)	0.5	_____	
Carbohydrate (g)	40	_____	
Protein (g)	6	_____	
Total Calories	_____	_____	_____

2. Bariatric surgery is a medical procedure that reduces the size of the stomach and enables food to bypass a section of the small intestine. The surgery is generally done when obese individuals have unsuccessfully tried numerous ways to lose weight and their health is compromised by their weight. There are many risks associated with the surgery, but it helps a number of people lose a considerable amount of weight and ultimately improve their overall health. Based on your understanding of the digestive system (see Chapter 24) and nutrition, list some nutritional deficiencies that may occur as a result of this surgery.

3. Some people believe that food and drink manufacturers are at least partly to blame for the obesity epidemic in the United States because of misleading advertising. For example, their advertisements show portion sizes that encourage excess consumption and make people believe that certain unhealthy substitutes are the equivalent of a well-balanced meal. Advertisements also lead children to desire sugar-coated cereals and fructose-loaded drinks. How do you think that advertisements should be changed to address the actual nutritional content of a product? What obstacles might make it difficult to implement your plan?

26

Defenses Against Disease

OUTLINE

26.1 Overview of the Immune System 497

26.2 Nonspecific Defenses and Innate Immunity 499

26.3 Specific Defenses and Adaptive Immunity 502

26.4 Immunizations 506

26.5 Immune System Problems 508

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 17.1 What is the general structure of a virus?

Section 22.2 What is the role of the immune system in the body?

Section 23.2 What is the role of the lymphatic system with regard to circulation?

Infectious Diseases Versus Humans

While it may seem that outbreaks of diseases, such as SARS, bird flu, and the H1N1 virus, are unique to modern times, in fact, infectious disease outbreaks are described in the earliest written documents. Smallpox outbreaks were described 10,000 years ago in the Nile valley. Malaria was described 4,000 years ago in China. The Chinese treated it with the Qinghao plant—the source of the drug currently used to treat malaria. Outbreaks of bubonic plague— also called Black Death—in Europe decimated the continent's population. The spread of the disease, as well as the public response to it, literally determined European history.

In more modern times, the battle between infectious agents and humans includes the development of vaccinations. The Chinese first developed vaccines around 200 BCE. In 1796, the smallpox vaccine was introduced to the Western world, and death rates from this virus dropped dramatically. The disease was eradicated from the human population in 1977. A rabies vaccine was developed in 1885, and vaccines for diphtheria, typhus, tetanus, and polio soon followed. Child mortality rates plummeted and remain low in countries where vaccination is routine.

The death rates from infectious diseases dropped still further in the 1940s with the development of antibiotics. With vaccines and antibiotics, scientists hoped they could eradicate other pathogens or, at least, significantly limit the suffering caused by infectious diseases. However, infectious diseases still kill large numbers of people. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), infectious diseases kill over 13 million people annually. In developing countries, infectious diseases account for 54% of deaths. Lower respiratory infections, HIV/AIDS, diarrheal diseases, malaria, and tuberculosis are currently the leading causes of infectious disease deaths.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How does your body respond to its first expoure to a new pathogen?
2. What is the difference between an antibody and an antibiotic?

26.1 Overview of the Immune System

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain the function of the immune system in the body.
2. List the organs and tissues of the immune system and provide a function for each.

The **immune system** plays an important role in keeping us healthy, because it fights infections and cancer. The immune system contains the lymphatic organs: the red bone marrow, thymus, lymph nodes, and spleen (**Fig. 26.1**). The **tonsils,** which are located in the pharynx, and the **appendix,** which is attached to a portion of the large intestine, are areas of lymphatic tissue that also belong to the immune system.

Lymphatic Organs

Each of the lymphatic organs has a particular function in immunity, and each is rich in lymphocytes, one of the types of white blood cells.

Red Bone Marrow

In a child, most bones have red bone marrow, and in an adult it is still present in the bones of the skull, the sternum (breastbone), the ribs, the clavicle, the pelvic bones, the vertebral column, and the ends of the humerus and femur nearest their attachment to the body. **Red bone marrow** produces all types of blood cells, but in this chapter we are interested in the cells listed in **Table 26.1.**

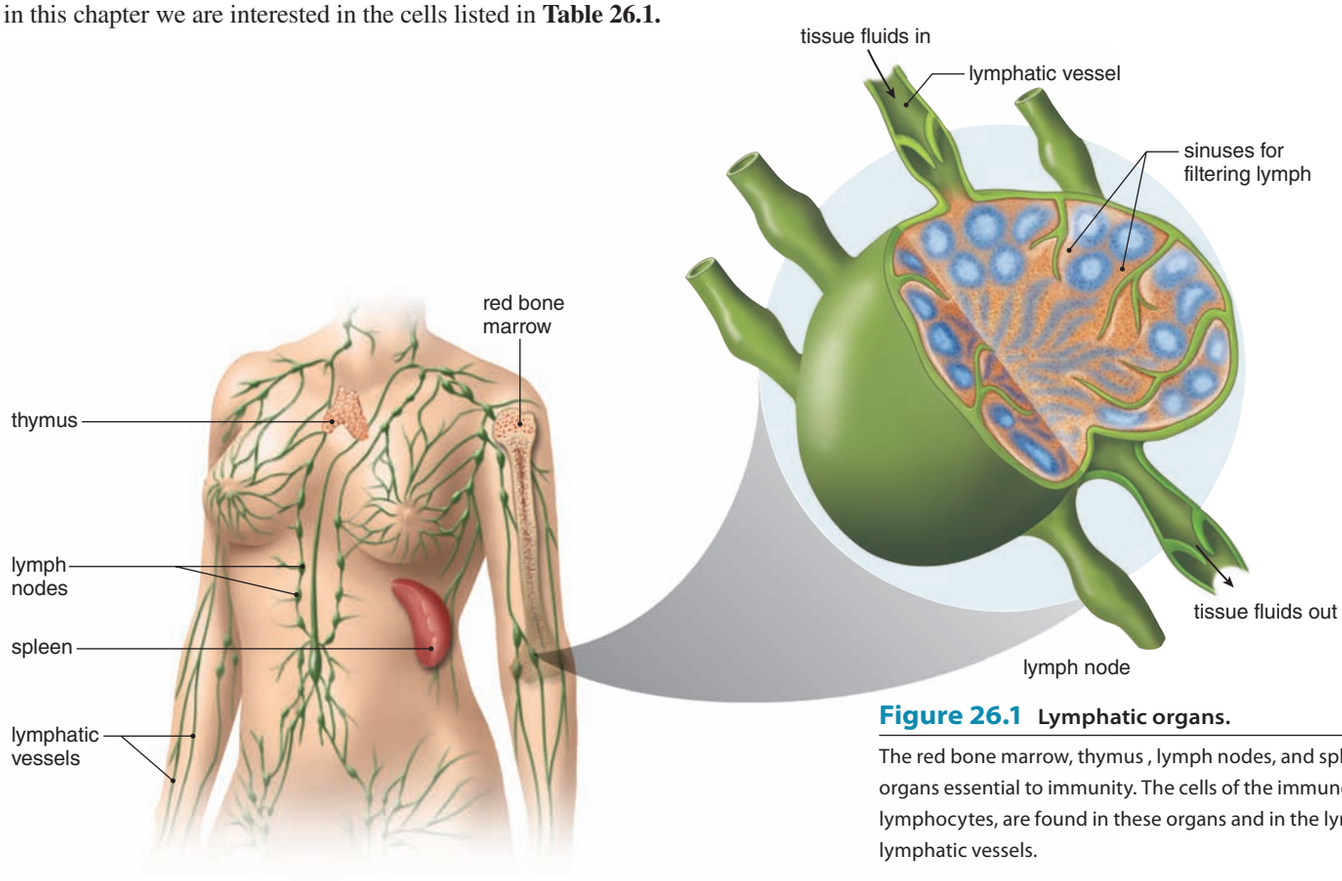
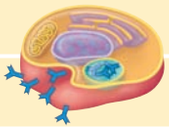
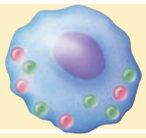


Figure 26.1 **Lymphatic organs.**

The red bone marrow, thymus , lymph nodes, and spleen are lymphatic organs essential to immunity. The cells of the immune system, including lymphocytes, are found in these organs and in the lymph of the lymphatic vessels.

Table 26.1 Cells of the Immune System

Cells	Function(s)	
Macrophages	Phagocytize pathogens; inflammatory response and specific immunity	
Mast cells	Release histamine, which promotes blood flow to injured tissues; inflammatory response	
Neutrophils	Phagocytize pathogens; inflammatory response	
Natural killer cells	Kill virus-infected and tumor cells by cell-to-cell contact	
Lymphocytes	Are responsible for specific immunity	
B cells	Produce plasma cells and memory cells	
Plasma cells	Produce specific antibodies	
Memory cells	Long-lived cells that may produce new B and T cells in the future	
T cells	Regulate immune response; produce cytotoxic T cells and helper T cells	
Cytotoxic T cells	Kill virus-infected and cancer cells	
Helper T cells	Regulate immunity	

Connections: Health

Why do tests for cancer often take biopsies of the lymph nodes?

In a biopsy, a physician uses a small needle to take a sample of a tissue for additional examination. For individuals with cancer, the doctor often takes a biopsy of the lymph nodes surrounding the original tumor. The reason for this is to see if the cancer has begun to spread, or metastasize, to other tissues. Since the lymphatic system filters the fluids returning from the tissues, metastasizing cancer cells can often be first detected in the lymph nodes closest to the tumor.

Lymphocytes differentiate into either **B lymphocytes (B cells)** or **T lymphocytes (T cells),** which are discussed at length later in the chapter. Bone marrow is not only the source of B lymphocytes but also the place where B lymphocytes mature. T lymphocytes mature in the thymus. You will learn that B cells produce antibodies and that T cells kill antigen-bearing cells outright.

Thymus

The soft, bilobed **thymus** varies in size, but it is larger in children and shrinks as we get older. The thymus plays a role in the maturity of T lymphocytes. Immature T lymphocytes migrate from the bone marrow through the bloodstream to the thymus, where they develop, or "mature," into functioning T lymphocytes. Only about 5% of T lymphocytes ever leave the thymus. These T lymphocytes have survived a critical test: If any show the ability to react with the cells of our own body, or "self," they die. If they have the potential to attack a foreign cell, they leave the thymus and enter lymphatic vessels and organs.

Lymph Nodes

Lymph nodes are small, ovoid structures along lymphatic vessels (Fig. 26.1). Lymph nodes filter lymph and keep it free of pathogens and antigens. Lymph is filtered as it flows through a lymph node because its many sinuses (open spaces) are lined by **macrophages**—large, phagocytic cells that engulf and then devour as many as a hundred pathogens and still survive (see Fig. 26.4*a*). Lymph nodes are also instrumental in fighting infections and cancer, because they contain many lymphocytes.

Some lymph nodes are located near the surface of the body and are named for their location. For example, inguinal nodes are in the groin, and axillary nodes are in the armpits. Physicians often feel for the presence of swollen, tender lymph nodes in the neck as evidence that the body is fighting an infection. This method is a noninvasive, preliminary way to help them make a diagnosis.

Spleen

The **spleen,** which is about the size of a fist, is in the upper left abdominal cavity. The spleen's unique function is to filter the blood. This soft, spongy organ contains tissue called red pulp and white pulp. Blood passing through the many sinuses in the red pulp is filtered of pathogens and debris, including worn-out red blood cells, because the sinuses are lined by macrophages. The white pulp contains lymphocytes, which are actively engaged in fighting infections and cancer.

The spleen's outer capsule is relatively thin, and an infection or a severe blow can cause the spleen to burst. The spleen's functions can be fulfilled by other organs, but individuals without a spleen are often slightly more susceptible to infections. As a result, they will receive certain vaccinations and may have to receive antibiotic therapy indefinitely.

Cells of the Immune System

The immune system not only contains a network of lymphatic organs and lymphatic tissues but also includes a wide variety of cells (Table 26.1). These cells play a role in the immune system's ability to distinguish between the cells of our body (self) and pathogens in the body (nonself). Pathogens are identified by the presence of antigens. An **antigen** is any molecule, usually a protein or carbohydrate from a pathogen, that stimulates the immune system. By being able to distinguish between self and nonself, the cells of the immune system provide us with immunity. **Immunity** is the body's ability to repel foreign substances, pathogens, and cancer cells. There are different levels of immunity: nonspecific immunity indiscriminately repels pathogens, while specific (adaptive) immunity requires that a certain antigen be present.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The immune system is composed of specific organs, tissues, and cells.

Check Your Progress 26.1

1. Explain the role of the immune system.
2. List the lymphatic organs, and identify their functions.
3. Explain the relationship between antigens and immunity.

26.2 Nonspecific Defenses and Innate Immunity

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the barriers to pathogen entry into the body.
2. Summarize the inflammatory response.
3. Describe the role of the complement system and natural killer cells in nonspecific immunity.

The body has an **innate immunity** composed of the various types of nonspecific defenses—our first line of defense against most types of infections. The nonspecific defenses are the barriers to entry, the inflammatory response, the complement system, and natural killer cells.

Barriers to Entry

Skin and the mucous membranes lining the respiratory, digestive, reproductive, and urinary tracts serve as mechanical barriers to entry by pathogens. Oil gland secretions contain chemicals that weaken or kill certain bacteria on the skin (**Fig. 26.2**). The upper respiratory tract is lined by ciliated cells that sweep mucus and trapped particles up into the throat, where they can be swallowed or expectorated (spit out). The stomach has an acidic pH, which inhibits growth or kills many types of bacteria. The various bacteria that normally reside in the large intestine and other areas, such as the vagina, prevent pathogens from taking up residence.

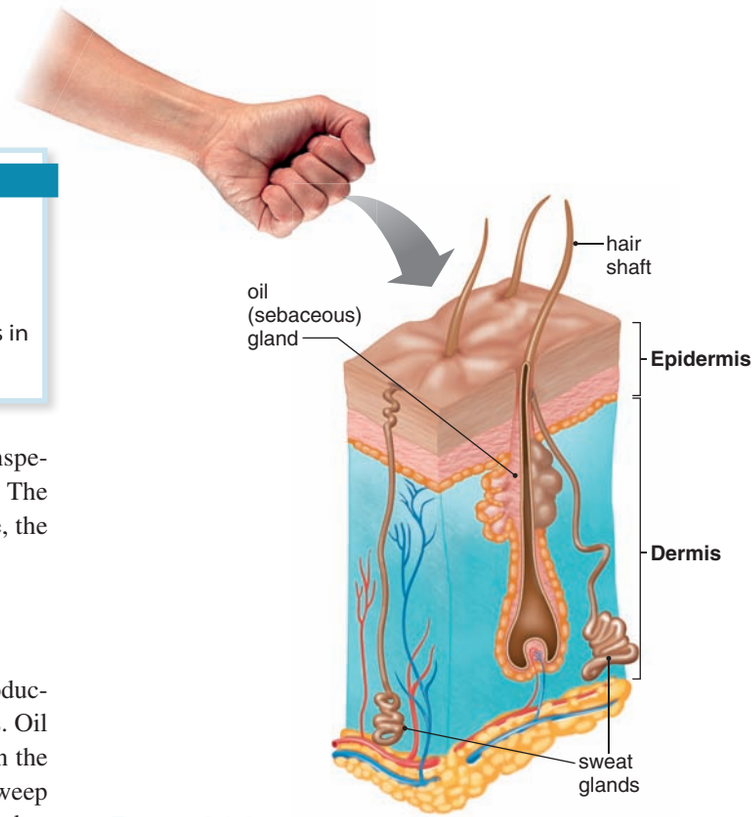


Figure 26.2 Skin.

The cells of the epidermis harden and die as they progress to the outer layer of skin. These outer dead cells form a protective barrier against invasion by pathogens. The sweat and oil glands are acidic enough to inhibit invasion by bacteria.

Connections: Health

How do antihistamines work?

Once histamine is released from mast cells, it binds to receptors on other body cells. This signals the nearby capillaries to become more "leaky," allowing fluid to leave the capillaries and enter the tissue. This excess fluid is the cause of the familiar symptoms of a runny nose and watery eyes. Antihistamines work by blocking the receptors on the cells, so that histamine can no longer bind. For allergy relief, antihistamines are most effective when taken before exposure to the allergen.

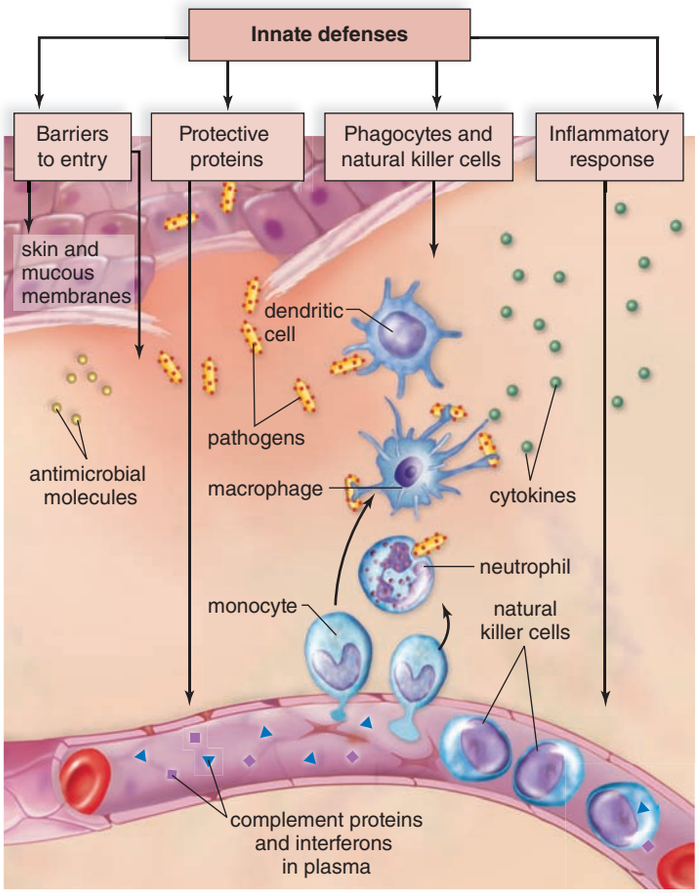


Figure 26.3 **The inflammatory response.**

If you cut your skin, the inflammatory response occurs immediately. As blood flow increases, the area gets red and warm. As mast cells, a type of white blood cell, release chemicals (such as histamine), the capillary becomes more permeable, localized swelling occurs, and pain receptors are stimulated. Neutrophils and macrophages begin phagocytizing the bacteria.

The Inflammatory Response

The **inflammatory response** exemplifies the second line of defense against invasion by a pathogen. Inflammation employs mainly neutrophils and macrophages to surround and kill (engulf by phagocytosis) pathogens trying to get a foothold inside the body. Protective proteins are also involved. Inflammation is usually recognized by its four hallmark symptoms: redness, heat, swelling, and pain (**Fig. 26.3**).

The four signs of the inflammatory response are due to capillary changes in the damaged area, and all serve to protect the body. Chemical mediators, such as **histamine**, released by damaged tissue cells and **mast cells**, cause the capillaries to dilate and become more permeable. Excess blood flow due to enlarged capillaries causes the skin to redden and become warm. Increased temperature in an inflamed area tends to inhibit the growth of some pathogens. Increased blood flow brings white blood cells to the area. Increased permeability of capillaries allows fluids and proteins, including blood-clotting factors, to escape into the tissues. Clot formation in the injured area prevents blood loss. The excess fluid in the area presses on nerve endings, causing the familiar pain associated with swelling. Together, these events summon white blood cells to the area. As soon as the white blood cells arrive, they move out of the bloodstream into the surrounding tissue. The **neutrophils** are first and actively phagocytize debris, dead cells, and bacteria they encounter. The many neutrophils attracted to the area can usually localize any infection and keep it from spreading. If neutrophils die off in great quantity, they become a yellow-white substance called pus.

Video Neutrophils

When an injury is not serious, the inflammatory response is short-lived and the healing process quickly returns the affected area to a normal state. Nearby cells secrete chemical factors to ensure the growth (and repair) of blood vessels and new cells to fill in the damaged area. If, on the other hand, the neutrophils are overwhelmed, they call for reinforcements by secreting chemical mediators called cytokines. Cytokines attract more white blood cells to the area, including monocytes. Monocytes are longer-lived cells that become **macrophages,** even more powerful phagocytes than neutrophils. Macrophages can enlist the help of lymphocytes to carry out specific defense mechanisms.

Animation Inflammatory Response

Inflammation is the body's natural response to an irritation or injury and serves an important role. Once the healing process has begun, inflammation rapidly subsides. However, in some cases, chronic inflammation lasts for weeks, months, or even years if an irritation or infection cannot be overcome. Inflammatory chemicals may cause collateral damage to the body, in addition to killing the invaders. Should an inflammation persist, anti-inflammatory medications, such as aspirin, ibuprofen, or cortisone, can minimize the effects of various chemical mediators.

The Complement System

The **complement system**, often simply called complement, is composed of a number of blood plasma proteins designated by the letter "C" and a number. The complement proteins "complement" certain immune responses, which accounts for their name. For example, they are involved in and amplify the inflammatory response, because certain complement proteins can bind to mast cells and trigger histamine release. Others can attract phagocytes to the scene. Some complement proteins bind to the surface of pathogens already coated with antibodies, which ensures that the pathogens will be phagocytized by a neutrophil or macrophage (**Fig. 26.4*a***). Certain other complement proteins join to form a membrane attack complex, which produces holes in the surfaces of microbes (Fig 26.4b). Fluids and salts then enter the pathogen to the point that it bursts.

Natural Killer Cells

Natural killer (NK) cells are large, granular lymphocytes that kill virus-infected cells and tumor (cancer) cells by cell-to-cell contact (Table 26.1).

What makes an NK cell attack and kill a cell? The cells of your body ordinarily have "self" proteins on their surface that bind to receptors on NK cells. Sometimes virus-infected cells and cancer cells undergo alterations and lose their ability to produce self proteins. When NK cells can find no self proteins to bind to, they kill the cell by the same method as T lymphocytes (see Fig. 26.8).

NK cells are not specific—their numbers do not increase when exposed to a particular antigen, and they have no means of "remembering" the antigen from previous contact.

Connections: Health

Is a fever always bad?

At the first sign of a fever, most people reach for over-the-counter (OTC) medicines to bring it under control. However, in many cases, using OTC medicines does more harm than good. Medical professionals now widely regard a low fever as a beneficial aspect of the immune system. When your body runs a fever, the elevated temperature increases your metabolic rate and slows down bacterial and viral reproduction. A low fever also promotes the release of chemicals, called interferons, that prevent the infection from spreading. Of course, a high fever or one that lasts for several days should immediately be brought to the attention of your physician.

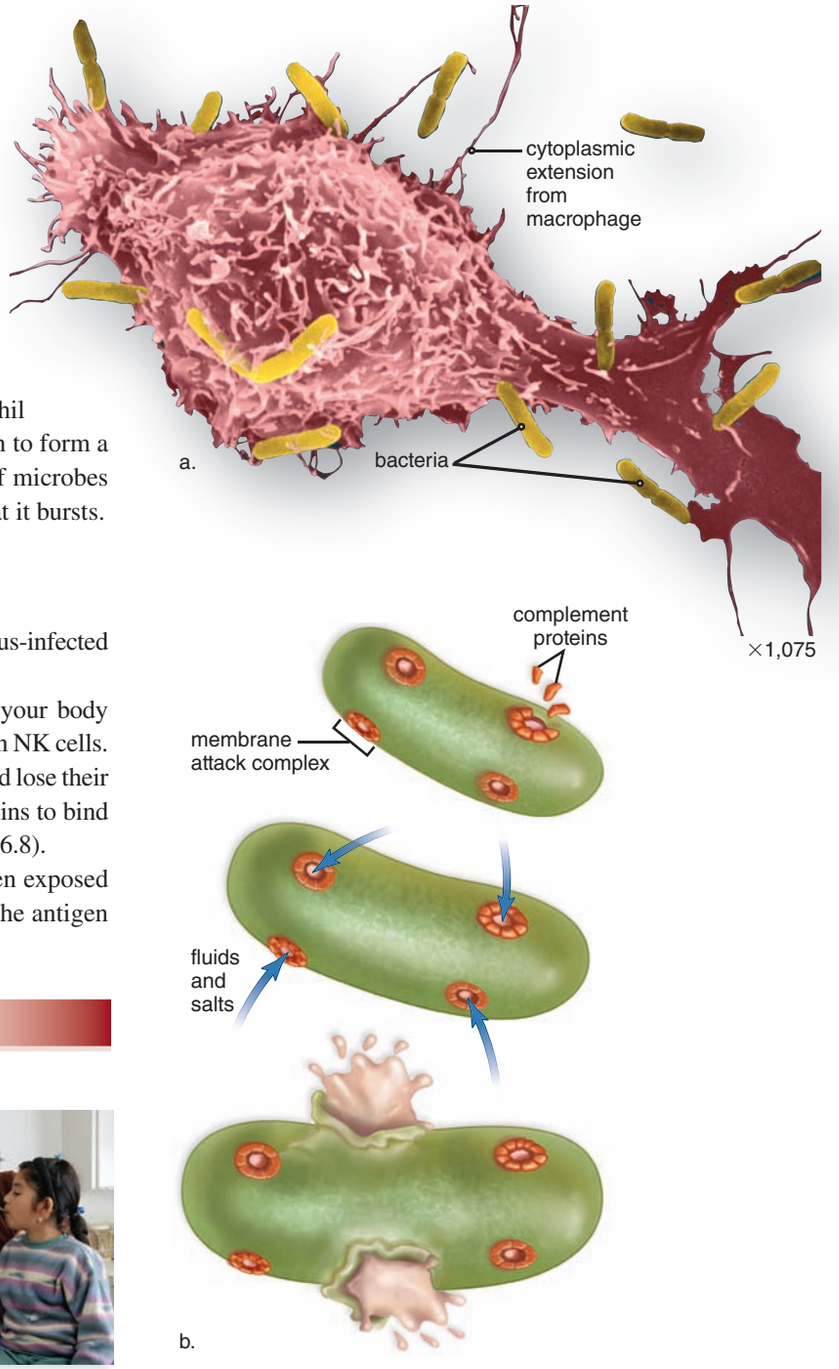


Figure 26.4 **Ways to get rid of pathogens.**

a. Macrophages, the body's scavengers, engulf pathogens and chop them up inside lysosomes. **b.** Complement proteins come together and form a membrane attack complex in the surface of a pathogen. Water and salts enter, and the pathogen bursts.

Check Your Progress 26.2

1. List the physical barriers in the body that protect it from pathogens.
2. Summarize the steps in the inflammatory response.
3. Explain why the complement system and natural killer cells are nonspecific.

26.2 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

Nonspecific defenses make up our first line of defense against pathogens.

26.3 Specific Defenses and Adaptive Immunity

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the role of lymphocytes in adaptive immunity.
2. Distinguish between the antibody response and the cellular response.
3. Explain what factors of the immune system contribute to transplant rejection.

When nonspecific defenses have failed to prevent an infection, specific defenses, or **adaptive immunity,** come into play. Specific defenses respond to antigens, which may be components of a pathogen or cancer cell. An antigen acts as a "marker" that a pathogen may be present in the body. If the marker is detected by the immune system, the adaptive immune responses begin to actively look for cells that possess the antigen, such as bacterial cells, viruses, or even the cells of our own body that may be infected by the pathogen When our body learns to destroy a particular antigen, we have become immune to it. Because our immune system does not ordinarily respond to the proteins on the surface of our own cells (as if they were antigens), the immune system is able to distinguish self from nonself. Only in this way can the immune system aid, rather than disrupt, homeostasis.

Lymphocytes are capable of recognizing an antigen because they have plasma membrane receptor proteins shaped to allow them to combine with a specific antigen. Because we encounter millions of different antigens during our lifetime, we need a great diversity of lymphocytes to protect us against them. Remarkably, diversification occurs to such an extent during the maturation process that potentially a lymphocyte type exists for any possible antigen.

Animation Antibody Diversity

Immunity usually lasts for some time. For example, once we recover from the measles, we usually do not get the illness a second time. Immunity is primarily the result of the action of the B lymphocytes and T lymphocytes. B lymphocytes mature in the bone marrow, and T lymphocytes mature in the thymus. B lymphocytes, also called B cells, give rise to plasma cells, which produce antibodies (**Table 26.2**). These antibodies are secreted into the blood, lymph, and other body fluids. In contrast, T lymphocytes, also called T cells, do not produce antibodies. Some T cells regulate the immune response, and other T cells directly attack cells that bear antigens (see Table 26.1).

Table 26.2 Characteristics of B Cells

- They provide an antibody response to a pathogen.
- They are produced and become mature in bone marrow.
- They reside in lymph nodes and the spleen; they circulate in blood and lymph.
- They directly recognize antigens and then undergo cell division.
- Cell division produces antibody-secreting plasma cells, as well as memory B cells.

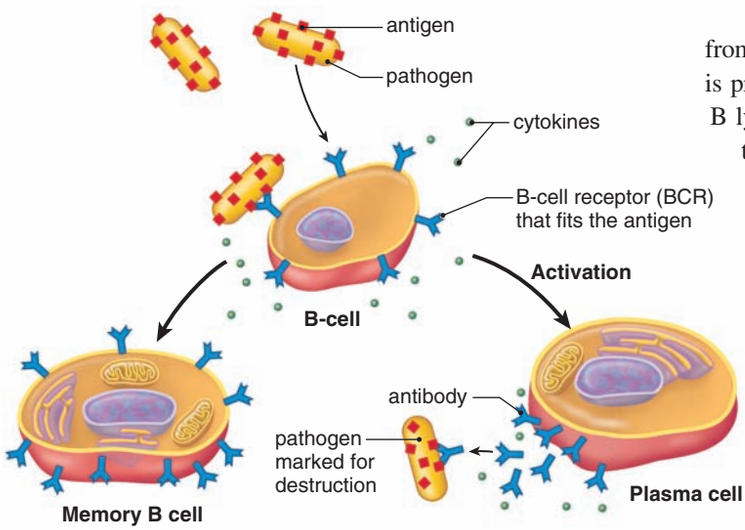


Figure 26.5 B cells and the antibody response.

When an antigen combines with a BCR, the B cell divides to produce plasma cells and memory B cells. Plasma cells produce antibodies but eventually disappear. Memory B cells remain in the body, ready to produce the same antibody in the future.

B Cells and the Antibody Response

Each B cell can bind only to a specific antigen—the antigen that fits the binding site of its receptor. The receptor is called a **B-cell receptor (BCR).** Some B cells never have anything to do, because an antigen that fits the binding site of their type of receptor is never encountered by the body. But if an antigen does bind to a BCR, that B cell is activated, and it divides, producing many plasma cells and memory B cells (**Fig. 26.5**). This is called the **clonal selection model,** since the antigen selects which B cell is activated and this cell then divides to produce many clones of itself. B cells are stimulated to

divide and produce plasma cells by cytokines. These signals may be released by nonspecific defense mechanisms, such as the cells involved in the inflammatory response. Plasma cells are larger than regular B cells, because they have extensive rough endoplasmic reticulum for the mass production and secretion of antibodies specific to the antigen. The antibodies produced by plasma cells and secreted into the blood and lymph are identical to the BCR of the activated B cell.

Memory B cells are the means by which long-term immunity is possible. If the same antigen enters the system again, memory B cells quickly divide and give rise to more plasma cells capable of producing the correct antibodies.

Once the threat of an infection has passed, the development of new plasma cells ceases, and those present undergo apoptosis. Apoptosis is a process of programmed cell death involving a cascade of cellular events, leading to the death and destruction of the cell (see Fig. 8.10).

The Function of Antibodies

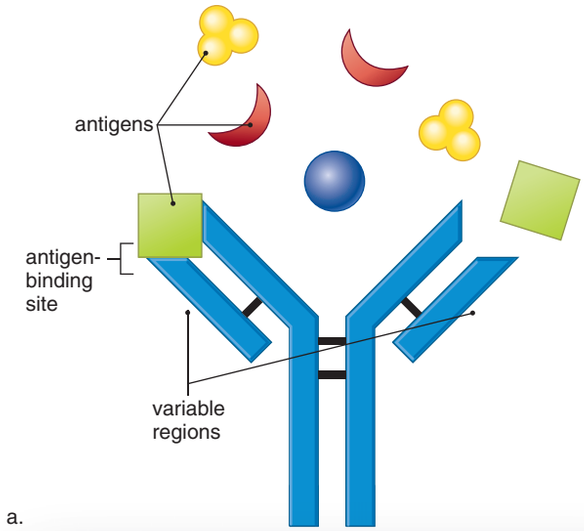
Antibodies are immunoglobulin proteins that are capable of combining with a specific antigen (**Fig. 26.6**). The antigen-antibody reaction can take several forms, but quite often the reaction produces complexes of antigens combined with antibodies. Such antigen-antibody complexes, sometimes called immune complexes, mark the antigens for destruction (see Fig. 26.5). An antigen-antibody complex may be engulfed by neutrophils or macrophages, or it may activate complement. Complement makes pathogens more susceptible to phagocytosis, as discussed previously.

ABO Blood Type You are familiar with the concept of specific antibodies through blood types (A, B, AB, or O). These letters stand for antigens on your red blood cells. If you have type O blood, you do not have either antigen A or antigen B on your red cells. Some blood types have antibodies in the plasma (**Table 26.3**). As an example, type O blood has both anti-A and anti-B antibodies in the plasma. You cannot give a person with type O blood a transfusion from an individual with type A blood. If you do, the antibodies in the recipient's plasma will react to type A red blood cells, and agglutination will occur. **Agglutination,** the clumping of red blood cells, causes blood to stop circulating and red blood cells to burst. On the other hand, you can give type O blood to a person with any blood type, because type O red blood cells bear neither A nor B antigens.

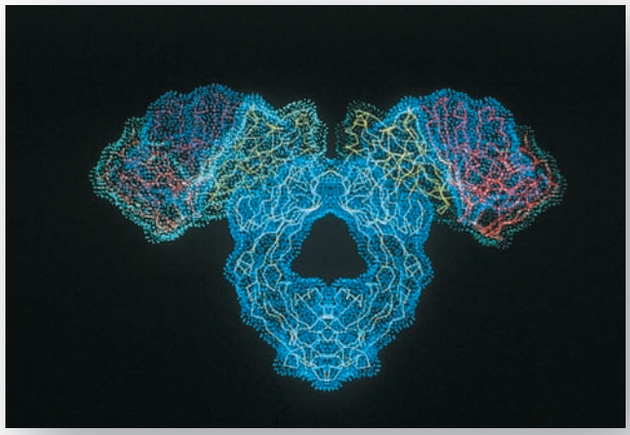
It is possible to determine who can give blood to whom based on the ABO system. However, other red blood cell antigens, in addition to A and B, are used in typing blood. Therefore, it is best to put the donor's blood on a slide with the recipient's blood to observe whether the two types match (no agglutination occurs) to determine whether blood can be safely transfused from one person to another.

T Cells and the Cellular Response

When T cells leave the thymus, they have unique **T-cell receptors** (**TCRs**), just as B cells do. Unlike B cells, however, T cells are unable to recognize an antigen without help. The antigen must be presented to them by an **antigen-presenting cell** (**APC**), such as a macrophage. A macrophage becomes an APC by ingesting and destroying a pathogen. The APC then travels to a lymph node or the spleen, where T cells also congregate. When a macrophage phagocytizes a virus, it is digested in a lysosome. An antigen



a.



b.

Figure 26.6 Why an antibody is specific.

a. During a lifetime, a person will encounter a million different antigens, which vary in shape. An antibody has two variable regions that end in antigen-binding sites. The variable regions differ so much that the binding site of each antibody has a shape that will fit only one specific antigen. **b.** Computer model of an antibody molecule. The antigen combines with the two side branches.

Table 26.3 Blood Types

Blood Type	Antigens on Red Blood Cells	Antibodies in Plasma	Compatible Donor(s)
A	A	Anti-B	A, O
B	B	Anti-A	B, O
AB	A, B	Neither anti-A nor anti-B	A, B, AB, O
O	—	Both anti-A and anti-B	O

Table 26.4 Characteristics of T Cells

- They provide a cellular response to virus-infected cells and cancer cells.
- They are produced in bone marrow and mature in the thymus.
- Antigen must be presented in groove of an MHC[1] molecule.
- Cytotoxic T cells destroy nonself protein-bearing cells.
- Helper T cells secrete cytokines that control the immune response.

[1]MHC = major histocompatibility complex.

from the virus is combined with a **major histocompatability complex (MHC)** protein. MHC proteins play a major role in identifying self cells. After the antigen binds to the MHC protein, the complex appears on the cell surface. Then the combined MHC + antigen complex is presented to a T cell. The importance of self proteins in plasma membranes was first recognized when it was discovered that they contribute to the specificity of tissues and make it difficult to transplant tissue from one human to another.

The two main types of T cells are **helper T cells (T_H cells)** and **cytotoxic T cells (T_C cells)** (**Table 26.4**). Each of these types has a TCR that can recognize an antigen fragment in combination with an MHC molecule. However, the major difference in antigen recognition by these two types of cells is that the T_H cells recognize only antigens presented by APCs with MHC class II molecules on their surface, while T_C cells recognize only antigens presented by APCs with MHC class I molecules on their surface. In **Figure 26.7,** the antigen is represented by a red triangle, and the helper T cell that binds to the antigen has the specific TCR that can combine with this particular MHC II + antigen. Now the helper T cell is activated and divides to produce more helper T cells.

As the illness disappears, the immune reaction wanes and the activated T cells become susceptible to apoptosis. Apoptosis contributes to homeostasis by regulating the number of cells present in an organ, or in this case, the immune system. When apoptosis does not occur as it should, T-cell cancers (e.g., lymphomas and leukemias) can result. Also, in the thymus gland, any T cell that has the potential to destroy the body's own cells undergoes apoptosis.

Functions of Cytotoxic T Cells and Helper T Cells

Cytotoxic T cells specialize in cell-to-cell combat. They have storage vacuoles containing perforins or enzymes called granzymes. After a cytotoxic T cell binds to a virus-infected or cancer cell presenting the antigen it has learned to recognize, it releases perforin molecules, which perforate the plasma membrane, forming a pore. Cytotoxic T cells then deliver a supply of granzymes

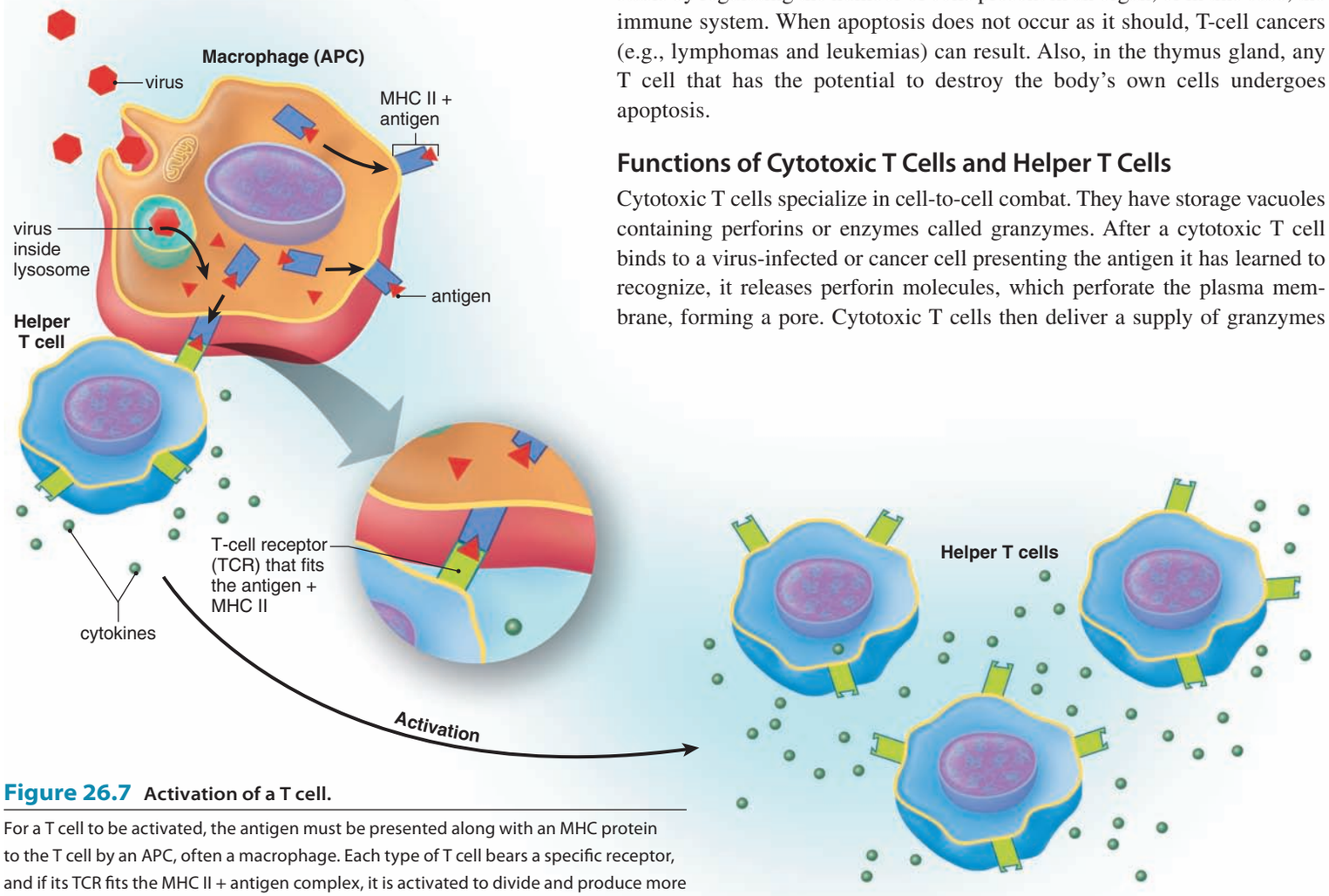


Figure 26.7 Activation of a T cell.

For a T cell to be activated, the antigen must be presented along with an MHC protein to the T cell by an APC, often a macrophage. Each type of T cell bears a specific receptor, and if its TCR fits the MHC II + antigen complex, it is activated to divide and produce more T cells—in this case, helper T cells, which also have this type of TCR. The helper T cells then produce and release cytokines.

Figure 26.8 Cytotoxic T cells and the cellular response.

a. Scanning electron micrograph of cytotoxic T cell attacking a target cell, which is either a virus-infected or cancer cell. **b.** A cytotoxic T cell attacks any cell that presents it with an MHC I + antigen it has learned to recognize. First, vesicles release perforin, which forms a pore in the target cell. Then vesicles release granzymes, which cause the cell to undergo apoptosis.

into the pore, and these cause the cell to undergo apoptosis. Once cytotoxic T cells have released the perforins and granzymes, they move on to the next target cell. Cytotoxic T cells are responsible for a cellular response to virus-infected and cancer cells (**Fig. 26.8**).

Animation Cytotoxic T Cell Activity Against Target Cells

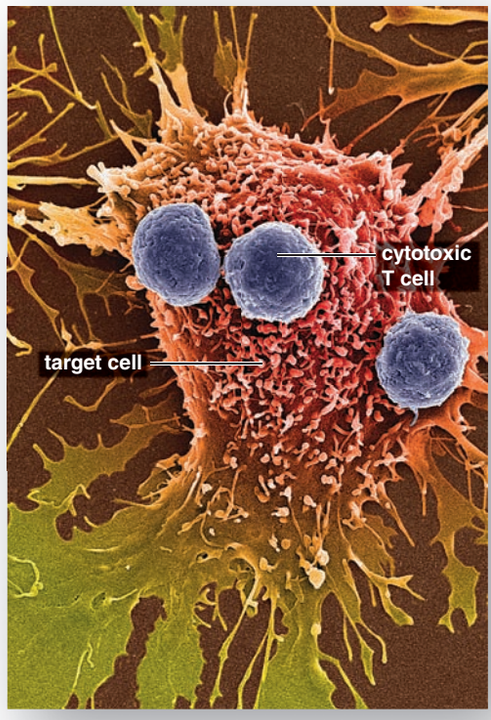
Video T Lymphocyte

Helper T cells specialize in regulating immunity by secreting cytokines that, in particular, stimulate B cells and cytotoxic T cells. Similar to B cells, cloned T cells include memory T cells that live for many years and can jump-start an immune response to an antigen dealt with before. Because HIV, the virus that causes AIDS, infects helper T cells and other cells of the immune system, it inactivates the immune response and makes HIV-infected individuals susceptible to opportunistic infections. Infected macrophages serve as reservoirs for the HIV virus. AIDS is discussed in Section 26.5.

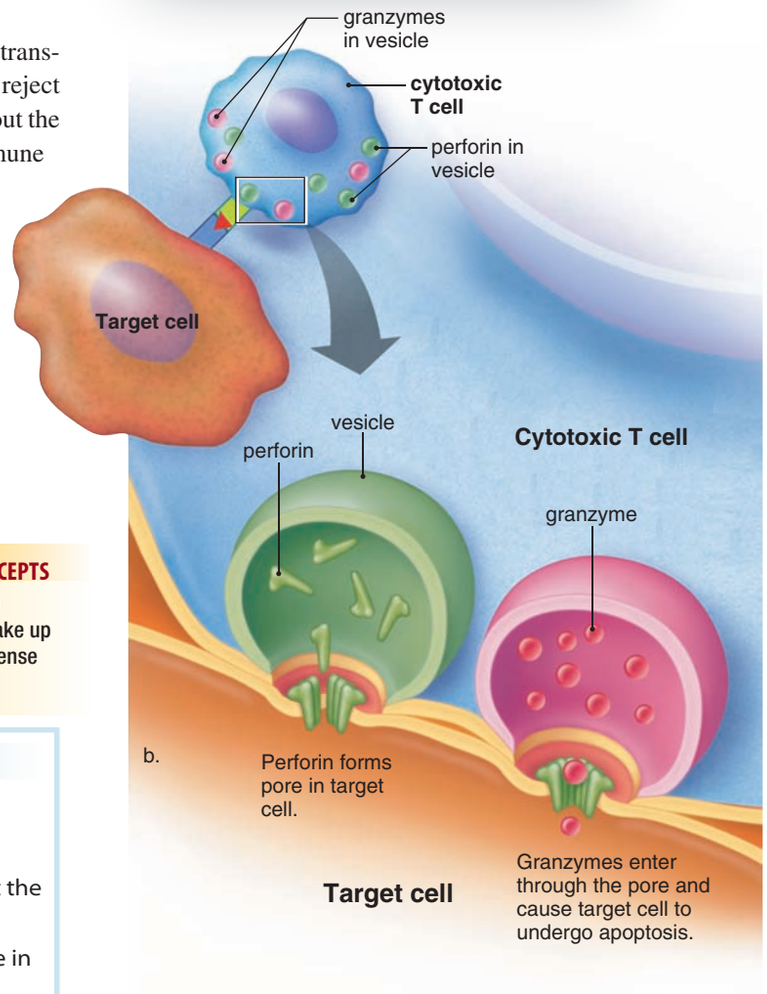
Tissue Rejection

Certain organs, such as the skin, the heart, and the kidneys, could be transplanted easily from one person to another if the body did not attempt to reject them. Rejection occurs because cytotoxic T cells and antibodies bring about the destruction of foreign tissues in the body. When rejection occurs, the immune system is correctly distinguishing between self and nonself.

Organ rejection can be controlled by carefully selecting the organ to be transplanted and administering immunosuppressive drugs. It is best if the transplanted organ has the same type of MHC proteins as those of the recipient; otherwise, the transplanted organ is antigenic to T cells. Several immunosuppressive drugs act by inhibiting the response of T cells to cytokines. Without cytokines, all types of immune responses are weak.



a. SEM ×1,250



26.3 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

Specific defenses and acquired immunity make up our second line of defense against pathogens.

Check Your Progress 26.3

1. Explain the role of antibodies in adaptive immunity.
2. Compare and contrast B cells with T cells.
3. Distinguish between the antibody and cellular responses, and list the types of cells involved in each.
4. Explain how MHC markers are associated with "self" and their role in tissue rejection.

26.4 Immunizations

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the role of vaccines in providing immunity against disease.
2. Distinguish between active and passive immunity.

After you have had an infection, you may be immune to getting it again. Good examples of diseases against which you can acquire immunity are the childhood diseases measles and mumps. Unfortunately, few sexually transmitted diseases stimulate lasting immunity; for example, a person can get gonorrhea over and over again. If lasting immunity is possible, a vaccine for the disease likely exists or can be developed. **Vaccines** are substances that usually do not cause illness, even though the immune system responds to them. Traditionally, vaccines are the pathogens themselves, or their products, that have been treated so that they are no longer virulent (able to cause disease). Today, it is possible to genetically engineer bacteria to mass-produce a protein from pathogens, and this protein can be used as a vaccine. This method has produced a vaccine against hepatitis B, a virus-induced disease, and it is being used to prepare a vaccine against malaria, a protozoan-induced disease.

Immunization promotes **active immunity.** After a vaccine is given, it is possible to follow an active immune response by determining the amount of antibody present in a sample of plasma; this is called the antibody titer. After the first exposure to a vaccine, a primary response occurs. For a period of several days, no antibodies are present; then their concentration rises slowly, levels off, and gradually declines as the antibodies bind to the antigen or simply break down (**Fig. 26.9**). After a second exposure to the vaccine, a secondary response is expected. The concentration then rises rapidly to a level much greater than before; then it slowly declines. The second exposure is called a "booster" because it boosts the antibody concentration to a high level. The high antibody concentration is expected to help prevent disease symptoms if the individual is exposed to the disease-causing antigen.

Active immunity is dependent on the presence of memory B cells and possibly memory T cells that are capable of responding to lower doses of antigen. Active immunity is usually long-lasting, but a booster may be required after a certain number of years.

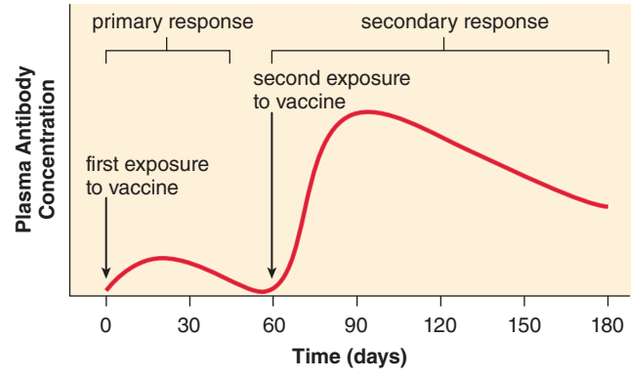


Figure 26.9 **Active immunity due to immunization.**

Immunization often requires more than one injection. A minimal primary response occurs after the first vaccine injection, but after a second injection, the secondary response usually shows a dramatic rise in the amount of antibody present in plasma.

Connections: Health

Does the MMR vaccine cause autism?

Several large research studies have failed to find any connection among the measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR) vaccine; thimerosal (a preservative that was used for vaccines); and an increased risk of autism in children. While the cause of autism has not yet been identified, the evidence does not suggest that the vaccine or thimerosal is causing autism. The problem is that the first MMR vaccine is usually administered between 12 and 15 months of age, which is typically the age that an autistic child first presents symptoms. Most autism researchers believe that the factors causing autism are in place before this time frame and the timing with the MMR vaccine is coincidental. Several large-scale studies, including those sponsored by the Institute of Medicine and the National Alliance for Autism Research, have found no link between the MMR vaccine and an increased risk of autism. Most pediatricians agree that the threat of measles and rubella far outweighs the unsubstantiated risk of autism.

Although the body usually makes its own antibodies, it is possible to give an individual prepared antibodies (immunoglobulins) to combat a disease. Because these antibodies are not produced by the individual's plasma cells, this is called **passive immunity,** and it is temporary. For example, newborns are passively immune to some diseases, because antibodies have crossed the placenta from the mother's blood. These antibodies soon disappear, however, so that within a few months infants become more susceptible to infections. Breast-feeding prolongs the natural passive immunity an infant receives from the mother, because antibodies are present in the mother's milk.

Even though passive immunity does not last, it is sometimes used to prevent illness in a patient who has been unexpectedly exposed to an infectious disease. Usually, the patient receives an injection of gamma globulin, a portion of blood that contains antibodies, preferably taken from an individual who has recovered from the illness. In the past, horses were immunized and gamma globulin was taken from them to provide the needed antibodies against such diseases as diphtheria, botulism, and tetanus. Unfortunately, patients who received these antibodies became ill about 50% of the time, because the serum contained proteins that the individual's immune system recognized as foreign. This condition was called serum sickness.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Vaccines are substances that help build our immunity against various pathogens.

Check Your Progress 26.4

1. Define the term *vaccine*.
2. Explain why two doses of a vaccine are sometimes needed for immunity.
3. Distinguish between active and passive immunity, and explain how each occurs.

26.5 Immune System Problems

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish between an immediate and a delayed allergic response.
2. List common autoimmune diseases and provide the causes of each.
3. Outline the effects of an HIV infection and summarize the treatments available.

The immune system usually protects us from disease because it can distinguish self from nonself. Sometimes, however, it responds in a manner that harms the body, as when individuals develop allergies or have an autoimmune disease.

Allergies

Allergies are hypersensitivities to substances in the environment, such as pollen, food, or animal hair, that ordinarily would not cause an immune reaction. The response to these antigens, called **allergens,** usually includes some unpleasant symptoms (**Fig. 26.10**). An allergic response is regulated by cytokines secreted by both T cells and macrophages.

Immediate allergic responses are caused by receptors attached to the plasma membrane of mast cells in the tissues. When an allergen attaches to receptors on mast cells, they release histamine and other substances that bring about the symptoms.

An immediate allergic response can occur within seconds of contact with the antigen. The symptoms can vary, but a dramatic example, anaphylactic shock, is a severe reaction characterized by a sudden and life-threatening drop in blood pressure.

Allergy shots, injections of the allergen in question, sometimes prevent the onset of an allergic response. It has been suggested that injections of the allergen may cause the body to build up large quantities of antibodies released by plasma cells, and these combine with allergens received from the environment before they have a chance to reach the receptors located in the membranes of mast cells.

Delayed allergic responses are probably initiated by memory T cells at the site of allergen contact in the body. A classic example of a delayed allergic response is the skin test for tuberculosis (TB). When the test result is positive, the tissue where the antigen was injected becomes red and hardened. This shows that the person has been previously exposed to tubercle bacillus, the cause of TB. Contact dermatitis, which occurs when a person is allergic to poison ivy, jewelry, cosmetics, and so forth, is also an example of a delayed allergic response.

Figure 26.10 **Allergies.**

When people are allergic to pollen, they develop symptoms that include watery eyes, sinus headache, increased mucus production, labored breathing, and sneezing.

Autoimmune Diseases

When cytotoxic T cells or antibodies mistakenly attack the body's own cells as if they bore antigens, the resulting condition is known as an **autoimmune disease.** Exactly what causes autoimmune diseases is not known. However, sometimes they occur after an individual has recovered from an infection.

In the autoimmune disease *myasthenia gravis,* neuromuscular junctions do not work properly, and muscular weakness results. In *multiple sclerosis* (*MS*), the myelin sheath of nerve fibers breaks down, causing various neuromuscular disorders. A person with *systemic lupus erythematosus* has various symptoms prior to death due to kidney damage. In *rheumatoid arthritis,* the joints are affected (**Fig. 26.11**). Researchers suggest that rheumatic fever and type 1 diabetes are autoimmune illnesses. As yet, there are no cures for autoimmune diseases, but they can be controlled with drugs.

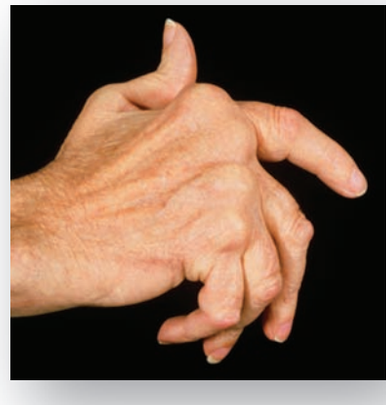


Figure 26.11 Rheumatoid arthritis.

Rheumatoid arthritis is due to recurring inflammation in skeletal joints. Complement proteins, T cells, and B cells all participate in deterioration of the joints, which eventually become immobile.

AIDS

Understanding why **acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)** patients are so sick gives us a whole new level of appreciation for the workings of a healthy immune system. An immune system ravaged by AIDS can no longer fight off the onslaught of viruses, fungi, and bacteria that the body encounters every day. **Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV),** which causes AIDS, lives in and destroys helper T cells (see Chapter 17), which promote the activity of all the other cells in the immune system. For years, the body is able to maintain an adequate number of T cells, but finally the virus gains the upper hand. Without drug therapy, the number of T cells eventually drops from thousands to hundreds as the immune system becomes helpless (**Fig. 26.12**). The symptoms of AIDS begin with weight loss, chronic fever, cough, diarrhea, swollen glands, and shortness of breath and progress to those of rare diseases. *Pneumocystis pneumonia,* a respiratory disease found in cats, and *Kaposi sarcoma,* a very rare type of cancer, are often observed in patients with advanced AIDS. Death approaches rapidly and certainly.

HIV is transmitted by sexual contact with an infected person, including vaginal or rectal intercourse and oral/genital contact. Also, needle sharing among intravenous drug users is a high-risk behavior. Babies born to HIV-infected women may become infected before or during birth, or through breast-feeding after birth. In 2010, approximately 34 million people worldwide were estimated to be living with HIV, with 7,300 people becoming newly infected and almost 5,000 people dying every day. Even though male-to-male sexual contact still accounts for the greatest number of new HIV cases in the United States, heterosexual contact and intravenous drug use account for the greatest percentage of increase in new cases.

Advances in treatment have reduced the serious complications of an HIV infection and have prolonged life. The sooner drug therapy begins after infection, the better the chances that HIV will not destroy the immune system. Also, medication must be continued indefinitely. Unfortunately, new strains of the virus have emerged that are resistant to the new drugs used for treatment. The likelihood of transmission from mother to child at birth can be lessened if the mother receives medication prior to birth and the child is delivered by cesarean section.

Animation Treatment of HIV Infection

Although there are many difficulties in vaccine development, AIDS vaccine trials are underway. The process can take many years. After a vaccine has been tested in animals, it must pass through three phases of clinical trials before it is marketed or administered to the public.

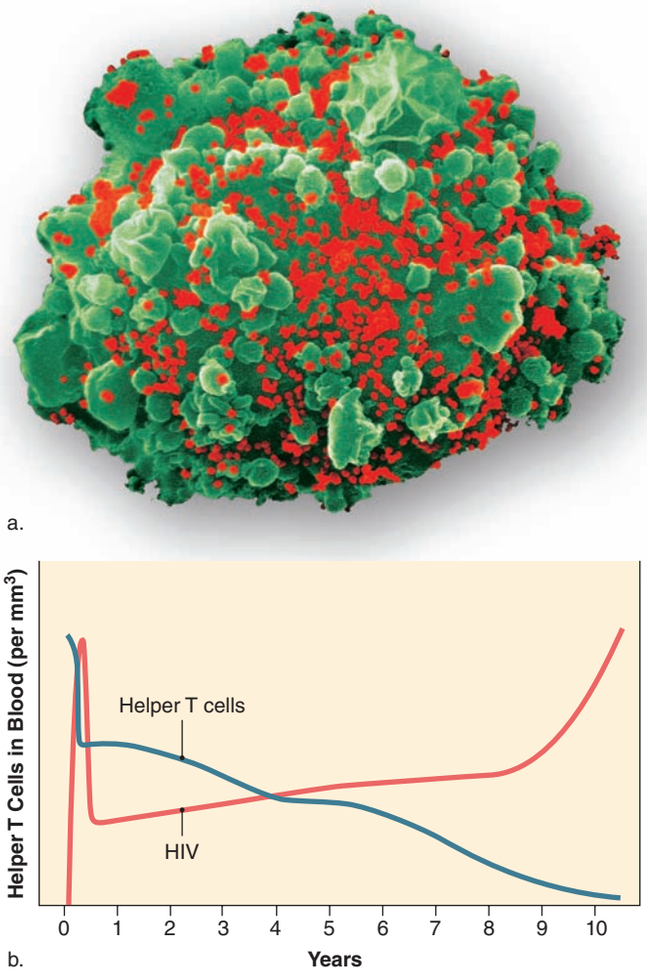


Figure 26.12 HIV infection.

a. The HIV virus attacks the T cells and macrophages of the body. **b.** At first, the body produces enough helper T cells to keep the HIV infection under control, but then as the number of helper T cells declines, the HIV infection takes over.

Connections: Health

Has anyone ever been cured of AIDS?

In 2013 researchers reported the first "functional cure" of an infant who had contracted HIV from its mother. Shortly after birth the child was placed on antiviral drugs, and during a checkup at 24 months of age, physicians were unable to find any traces of the virus in the child's body. Several individuals have also been cured of HIV by undergoing bone marrow transplants. While these cases present opportunities for researchers to explore potential mechanisms of developing a cure for HIV/AIDS, they are not currently practical means of treatment for the estimated 34 million people with the disease. However, research continues on how to enhance the immune system to more effectively identify and destroy the HIV virus in the body and to remove the HIV virus from infected cells.

In Phases I and II, the vaccine is tested from one to two years in a small number of HIV-uninfected volunteers. The most effective vaccines move into Phase III. In Phase III, the vaccine is tested three to four years in thousands of HIV-uninfected people. A phase III trial of the RV 144 HIV vaccine was conducted from 2003 to 2009 in Thailand and involved over 16,000 volunteers. While the results are still being analyzed, the vaccine was reported to reduce the rate of HIV infection by 32%. While this is a much lower percentange than will be needed for a vaccine to be considered effective, scientists have many reasons to be optimistic that an AIDS vaccine will be developed. The success of the RV 144 vaccine, and promising research with vaccinating monkeys, suggests that the efforts are beginning to yield results. But the most compelling reason for optimism is the human body's ability to suppress the infection. The immune system is able to decrease the HIV viral load in the body, helping delay the onset of AIDS an average of 10 years in 60% of people who are HIV-infected in the United States. Studies have shown that a small number of people remain HIV-uninfected after repeated exposure to the virus, and a few HIV-infected individuals maintain a healthy immune system for over 15 years. It is these stories of the human body's ability to fight the infection that keep scientists hopeful that there is a way to help the body fight HIV infection.

HIV infection is preventable. Suggestions for preventing an infection are to (1) abstain from sexual intercourse or develop a long-term, monogamous (always the same partner) sexual relationship with a person who is free of HIV; (2) be aware that having relations with an intravenous drug user is risky behavior; (3) avoid anal-rectal intercourse, because the lining of the rectum is thin and infected T cells easily enter the body there; (4) always use a latex condom during sexual intercourse if you do not know that your partner has been free of HIV for the past five years; (5) avoid oral sex, because this can be a means of transmission; and (6) be cautious about the use of alcohol or any other drug that may prevent you from being able to control your behavior.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Allergies and autoimmune diseases are due to an incorrect response by the immune system.

Check Your Progress 26.5

1. Describe the relationship between allergies and allergens.
2. Contrast an immediate allergic response with a delayed allergic response.
3. Explain why AIDS patients cannot fight pathogens.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations

26.2 Inflammatory Response
26.3 Antibody Diversity • Cytotoxic T Cell Activity Against Target Cells
26.4 Constructing Vaccines
26.5 Treatment of HIV Infection

Video

26.2 Neutrophils
26.3 T Lymphocyte
26.4 Potato Vaccine

SUMMARIZE

26.1 Overview of the Immune System

The **immune system** consists of lymphatic organs and lymphatic tissues. The lymphatic organs are

- **Red bone marrow,** where all blood cells are made and the **B lymphocytes (B cells)** mature
- **Thymus,** where **T lymphocytes (T cells)** mature
- **Lymph nodes**, where lymph is cleansed by **macrophages**
- **Spleen,** where blood is cleansed of pathogens and debris
- Other organs, such as the **tonsils** and **appendix,** which are patches of lymphatic tissue

The cells of the lymphatic system are responsbible for responding to **antigens** in the body. We develop **immunity** to a pathogen as our immune system responds to antigens.

26.2 Nonspecific Defenses and Innate Immunity

Immunity involves nonspecific and specific defenses. Nonspecific defenses, or **innate immunity,** include the following:

- Barriers to entry (e.g., skin)
- **Inflammatory response,** involving **mast cells,** which release **histamine** to increase capillary permeability, resulting in redness, warmth, swelling, and pain, and **neutrophils** and **macrophages,** which enter tissue fluid and engulf pathogens
- The **complement system**, which has many functions. One is to attack bacteria outright by forming a pore in the surface of a bacterium. Water and salts then enter, and the bacterium bursts.
- **Natural killer cells** can distinguish between self and nonself proteins and cause virus-infected cells to undergo apoptosis.

26.3 Specific Defenses and Adaptive Immunity

Specific defenses, or **adaptive immunity,** require B lymphocytes and T lymphocytes, also called B cells and T cells.

B Cells and the Antibody Response

The **B-cell receptor (BCR)** of each type of B cell is specific to a particular antigen. When the antigen binds to a BCR, that B cell divides by the **clonal selection model** to produce plasma cells and memory B cells.

- Plasma cells secrete antibodies and eventually undergo apoptosis. Plasma cells are responsible for antibody response to an antigen.

Activated B cell → Plasma cells → Produce antibodies
Activated B cell → Memory B cells → Long-term immunity

- Memory B cells remain in the body and produce **antibodies** if the same antigen enters the body at a later date.

T Cells and the Cellular Response

T cells are responsible for cellular response to an infection. Each **T-cell receptor (TCR)** is specific to a particular antigen. For a T cell to recognize an antigen, the antigen must be presented to it by an **antigen-presenting cell,** usually by a macrophage, along with a **major histocompatability complex (MHC)** protein.

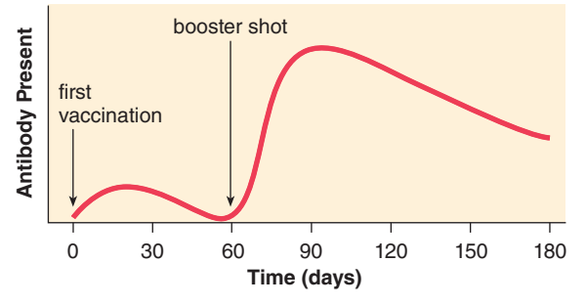
Cytotoxic T cell (activated by MHC I + antigen) → Kills virus-infected cell
Helper T cells (activated by MHC II + antigen) → Regulate immune response

- **Cytotoxic T cells** kill virus-infected or cancer cells on contact, because these cells bear the MHC I antigen they have learned to recognize. First, perforin is secreted, and these molecules form a pore; then granzymes are secreted and cause the cell to undergo apoptosis.
- **Helper T cells** produce cytokines and stimulate other immune cells.

26.4 Immunizations

Immunity occurs after an infection or a vaccination.

- A **vaccine** brings about **active immunity** to a particular infection. Two injections may be required, because the number of antibodies is higher after the second injection, called a booster shot. A booster shot in the future also increases the number of antibodies.



- **Passive immunity** (receiving preformed antibodies) is short-lived, because the antibodies are administered to, not made by, the vaccinated individual.

26.5 Immune System Problems

Allergies

Allergic responses, or **allergies,** to various substances can be immediate or delayed. Anaphylactic shock is a dangerous immediate allergic response.

Autoimmune Diseases

In an autoimmune disease (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, and perhaps type 1 diabetes), the immune system mistakenly attacks the body's tissues.

AIDS

The **human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)** lives in and destroys helper T cells. Without drug treatment, the number of T cells falls off, and the individual contracts **acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)** and eventually dies from infections that are rare in healthy individuals. Sexual contact and needle sharing transmit AIDS from person to person. Combined drug therapy has prolonged the lives of some people infected with HIV. So far, vaccine research has met with limited success. However, AIDS is a preventable disease if certain behaviors are avoided.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Our body's immune system has an incredible array of defenses that help keep us free from infection. Vaccinations and immunizations also assist in our fight against infectious diseases.

26.1 The immune system is composed of specific organs, tissues, and cells.
26.2 Nonspecific defenses make up our first line of defense against pathogens.
26.3 Specific defenses and acquired immunity make up our second line of defense against pathogens.
26.4 Vaccines are substances that help build our immunity against various pathogens.
26.5 Allergies and autoimmune diseases are due to an incorrect response by the immune system.

For more information about the functions of the immune system see the following discussions:

Figure 17.5 illustrates the stages in HIV infection.

Section 23.2 describes the interaction of the lymphatic system with the circulatory system.

Section 23.3 explores how the components of blood participate in the inflammatory response.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

26.1 Overview of the Immune System

For questions 1–5, identify the lymphatic organ in the key that matches the description. Some answers may be used more than once or not at all.

Key:

a. red bone marrow
b. thymus
c. lymph nodes
d. spleen
e. appendix

1. produces stem cells
2. located in every body cavity except the dorsal cavity
3. produces lymphocytes
4. site of maturation of T cells
5. region of lymphatic tissue attached to the large intestine

26.2 Nonspecific Defenses and Innate Immunity

6. Which of the following is not a barrier to pathogen entry?
   a. oil gland secretions of the skin
   b. acidic pH in the stomach
   c. cilia in the upper respiratory tract
   d. nonpathogenic bacteria in the digestive tract
   e. saliva in the mouth
7. During the inflammatory response,
   a. T cells move to the site of injury.
   b. capillaries become constricted.
   c. histamine is produced.
   d. capillaries become less permeable.
   e. More than one of these are correct.
8. Complement
   a. is a general defense mechanism.
   b. is involved in the inflammatory response.
   c. is a series of proteins present in the plasma.
   d. plays a role in destroying bacteria.
   e. All of these are correct.

26.3 Specific Defenses and Adaptive Immunity

9. Which of the following characteristics apply/applies to T lymphocytes?
   a. mature in bone marrow
   b. mature in the thymus
   c. Both a and b are correct.
   d. None of these are correct.
10. Antibodies combine with antigens
    a. at specific regions of the antibodies.
    b. at multiple regions of the antibodies.
    c. only if macrophages are present.
    d. Both a and c are correct.
11. An antigen-presenting cell (APC)
    a. presents antigens to T cells.
    b. secretes antibodies.
    c. marks each human cell as belonging to that person.
    d. secretes cytokines only.
12. Which of the following cells participate in the specific defense against an infection?
    a. mast cells
    b. macrophages
    c. neutrophils
    d. natural killer cells
    e. B lymphocytes

26.4 Immunizations

13. Vaccines are associated with
    a. active immunity.
    b. long-lasting immunity.
    c. passive immunity.
    d. Both a and b are correct.
14. Passive immunity
    a. is permanent.
    b. may result from immunoglobulin injections.
    c. requires memory B cells.
    d. may be induced by vaccines.

26.5 Immune System Problems

15. AIDS is caused by which of the following viruses?
    a. SIV
    b. HSV
    c. HPV
    d. AIDS
    e. HIV
16. _____ is a condition that results when cytotoxic T cells attack the body's own cells.
    a. An allergic response
    b. Autoimmune disease
    c. Passive immunity
    d. Active immunity
17. Allergens
    a. cause an immune response in most people.
    b. are antigens to those people who are allergic to them.
    c. reduce the production of histamine by mast cells.
    d. are molecules that are usually rare in the environment.
18. Which of the following is not an autoimmune disease?
    a. multiple sclerosis
    b. myasthenia gravis
    c. contact dermatitis
    d. systemic lupus erythematosus
    e. rheumatoid arthritis

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. At one time, tonsillectomies (removal of the tonsils) were more commonplace than they are today. Why are the tonsils seemingly so susceptible to infection? Why should they not be removed at the first sign of infection?
2. The transplantation of organs from one person to another was impossible until the discovery of immunosuppressive drugs. Now, with the use of drugs such as cyclosporine, organs can be transplanted without rejection. Transplant patients must take immunosuppressive drugs for the remainder of their lives. What are the potential risks associated with long-term use of immunosuppressive drugs?
3. AIDS is deadly without proper medical care, but it can be simply chronic if treated. Drug companies typically charge a high price for AIDS medications because Americans and their insurance companies can afford them. However, these drugs are out of reach in many countries, such as those in Africa, where AIDS is a widespread problem.
   a. Do drug companies have a moral obligation to provide low-cost AIDS drugs, even if they have to do so at a loss of revenue?
   b. Is it right for governments to ignore patent laws in order to provide their citizens with affordable drugs?

27

The Control Systems

Multiple Sclerosis (MS)

Multiple sclerosis, or MS, is a disease that affects the control systems of the body, specifically the nervous system. The first symptoms of MS tend to be weakness or tingling in the arms and legs, fatigue, a loss of coordination, and blurred vision. As the disease progresses, the individual may experience problems with speech and vision, tremors that make coordinated movement difficult, and numbness in the extremities. We now know that MS is an inflammatory disease that affects the myelin sheaths, which wrap parts of some nerve cells like insulation around an electrical cord. As these sheaths deteriorate, the nerves no longer conduct impulses normally. For unknown reasons, MS often attacks the optic nerves first, before spreading to other areas of the brain. Most researchers think MS results from a misdirected attack on myelin by the body's immune system, although other factors may be involved.

Almost 400,000 people in the United States have MS, and it is the most common disease of the nervous system in young adults. Typically, the first symptoms occur between the ages of 20 and 40. The disease is not contagious, is rarely fatal, and does not appear to be inherited, although some studies suggest a genetic component associated with MS susceptibility. Like many diseases that affect the nervous system, there is no cure, so affected individuals must deal with their condition for the rest of their lives. The good news is that the disease is not severe in almost 45% of cases, and the symptoms of the disease can be controlled with medication.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. What is the function of myelin?
2. What specific type of neurological process is affected if myelin is damaged?
3. Why does MS produce such a variety of symptoms?

OUTLINE

27.1 Nervous Systems 514

27.2 Endocrine System 526

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 5.4 How does active transport move molecules and ions against their concentration gradient?

Section 19.1 What are the major trends in the evolution of the animals?

Section 22.3 What is the role of negative feedback in the maintenance of homeostasis?

27.1 Nervous Systems

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the structure and function of a neuron.
2. Explain how a nerve impulse is generated and propagated.
3. Describe the structure and function of a chemical synapse.
4. Give examples of drugs of abuse and explain how they affect the nervous system.
5. Describe the structure and function of the central and peripheral nervous systems.
6. Compare and contrast the somatic and autonomic systems; likewise, compare and contrast the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions of the autonomic system.

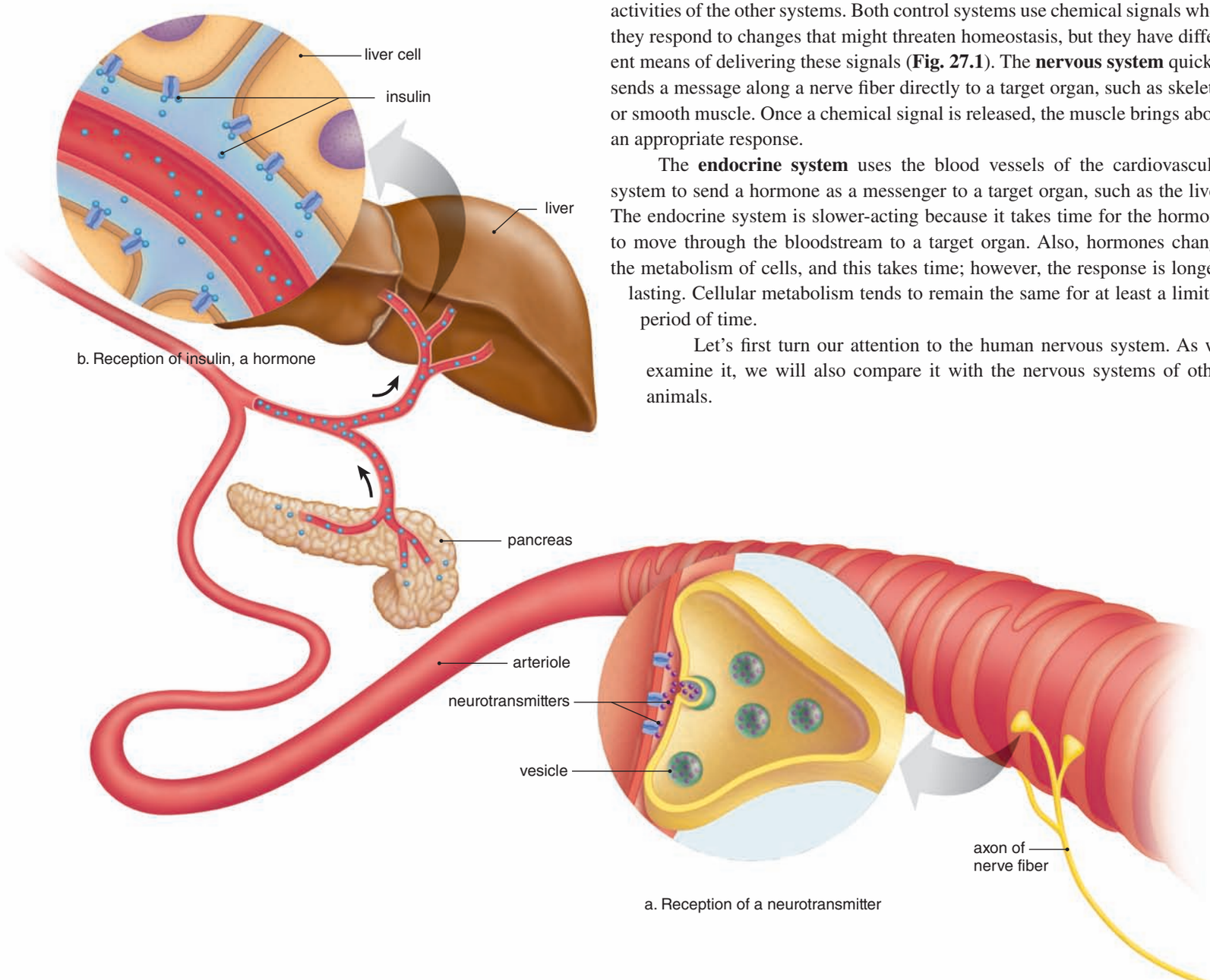
The nervous system and the endocrine system work together to regulate the activities of the other systems. Both control systems use chemical signals when they respond to changes that might threaten homeostasis, but they have different means of delivering these signals (**Fig. 27.1**). The **nervous system** quickly sends a message along a nerve fiber directly to a target organ, such as skeletal or smooth muscle. Once a chemical signal is released, the muscle brings about an appropriate response.

The **endocrine system** uses the blood vessels of the cardiovascular system to send a hormone as a messenger to a target organ, such as the liver. The endocrine system is slower-acting because it takes time for the hormone to move through the bloodstream to a target organ. Also, hormones change the metabolism of cells, and this takes time; however, the response is longer-lasting. Cellular metabolism tends to remain the same for at least a limited period of time.

Let's first turn our attention to the human nervous system. As we examine it, we will also compare it with the nervous systems of other animals.

Figure 27.1 Modes of action of the nervous and endocrine systems.

a. Nerve impulses passing along an axon cause the release of a neurotransmitter. The neurotransmitter, a chemical signal, causes the wall of an arteriole to constrict. **b.** The hormone insulin, a chemical signal, travels in the cardiovascular system from the pancreas to the liver, where it causes liver cells to store glucose as glycogen.



Examples of Nervous Systems

While many organisms have mechanisms that enable them to respond to factors in the environment, the presence of a nervous system is a characteristic that is unique to animals. Most animals (except the parazoans—see Section 19.1) utilize a nervous system to detect stimuli in the environment and then perform a coordinated reaction in response to the stimuli. For example, animals may use their nervous system to detect chemical signals that allow them to move toward a food source or away from a predator. While there are varying levels of complexity in animal nervous systems, they all receive sensory input, which is processed to direct a coordinated reaction.

An early example of a nervous system is found in the planarians, a bilateral organism with a simple body plan (see Section 19.3). Planarians possess two lateral nerve cords (bundles of nerves) joined together by transverse nerves. The arrangement is called a *ladderlike* nervous system. The simple brain receives sensory information from the eyespots and sensory cells in the auricles. The two lateral nerve cords allow a rapid transfer of information from the cerebral ganglia to the posterior end, and the transverse nerves between the nerve cords keep the movement of the two sides coordinated. The nervous organization in planarians is a foreshadowing of the central and peripheral nervous systems found in more complex invertebrates, such as earthworms, and in vertebrates, including humans (**Fig. 27.2**).

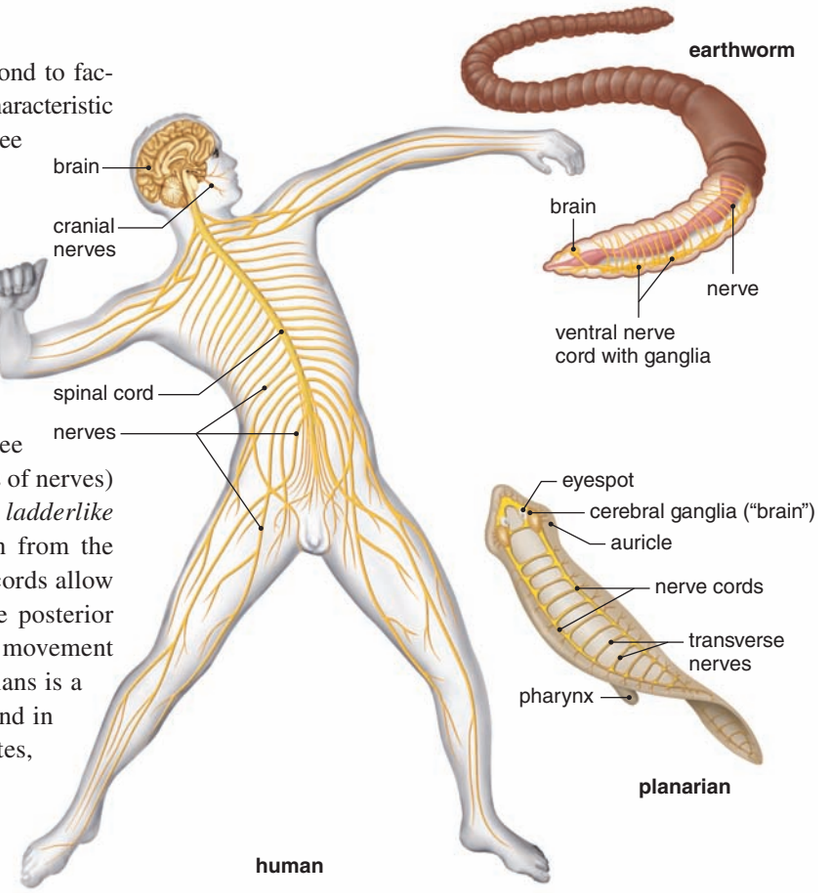


Figure 27.2 **Comparison of nervous systems.**

Invertebrates, such as a planarian and an earthworm, as well as vertebrates, such as humans, have a central nervous system (e.g., brain) and a peripheral nervous system (nerves).

The Human Nervous System

In humans, the nervous system controls the muscular system and works with the endocrine system to maintain homeostasis. The **central nervous system (CNS)** includes the brain and spinal cord, which have a central location along the midline of the body. The **peripheral nervous system (PNS)** consists of nerves that lie outside the central nervous system. The brain gives off paired cranial nerves (one on each side of the body), and the spinal cord gives off paired spinal nerves. The division between the central nervous system and the peripheral nervous system is arbitrary; the two systems work together and are connected to one another.

MP3 Organization of the Nervous System

What makes the human nervous system more complex than the planarian system? Five trends during the evolution of the vertebrate nervous system can be identified:

- A CNS developed that is able to summarize incoming messages before ordering outgoing messages.
- Nerve cells (neurons) became specialized to send messages to the CNS, between neurons in the CNS, or away from the CNS.
- A brain evolved that has special centers for receiving input from various regions of the body and for directing their activity.
- The CNS became connected to all parts of the body by peripheral nerves. Therefore, the central nervous system can respond to both external and internal stimuli.
- Complex sense organs, such as the human eye and ear, arose that can detect changes in the external environment.

This chapter discusses the first four aspects of the human nervous system. Sensory input and muscle response are the topics of Chapter 28.

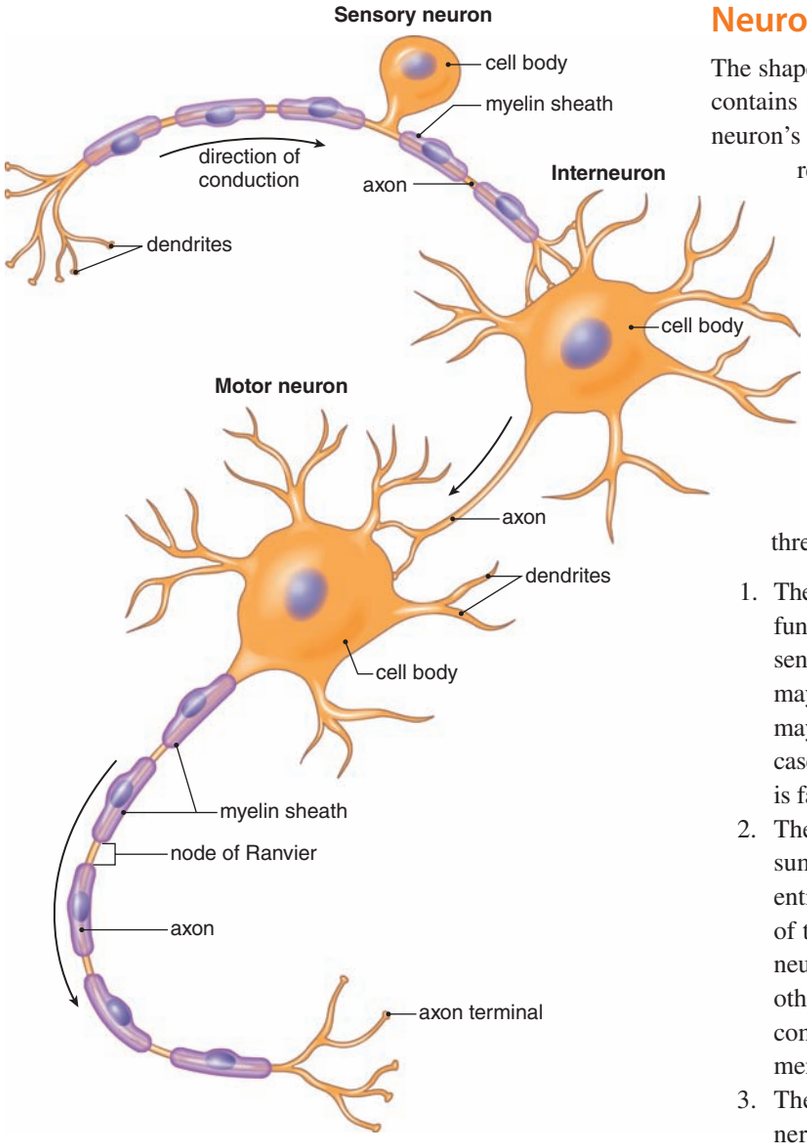


Figure 27.3 Types of neurons.

A sensory neuron, an interneuron, and a motor neuron are drawn here to show their arrangement in the body. Only axons conduct nerve impulses. In a sensory neuron, a process that extends from the cell body divides into an axon that takes nerve impulses all the way from the dendrites to the CNS. In a motor neuron and an interneuron, the axon extends directly from the cell body. The axon of sensory and motor neurons is covered by a myelin sheath. All long axons have a myelin sheath.

Neurons

The shape of a nerve cell, or **neuron,** is suitable to its function. The **cell body** contains the nucleus and other organelles that allow a cell to function. The neuron's many short **dendrite** fibers fan out to receive signals from sensory receptors or other neurons. These signals can result in nerve impulses carried by an axon. The **axon,** a nerve fiber that is typically longer than a dendrite, is the portion of a neuron that conducts nerve impulses. An axon can reach all the way from the end of your spinal cord to the tip of your big toe or from your big toe to your spinal cord, depending on which way messages are being conducted. Long axons are covered by a white **myelin sheath** formed from the membranes of tightly spiraled cells that leave gaps called **nodes of Ranvier.** Myelin sheaths account for our impression that nerves are white and glistening.

The nervous system has three types of neurons specific to its three functions (**Fig. 27.3**):

1. The nervous system receives sensory input. **Sensory neurons** perform this function. They take nerve impulses from sensory receptors to the CNS. The sensory receptor, which is the distal end of the axon of a sensory neuron, may be as simple as a naked nerve ending (such as a pain receptor), or it may be built into a highly complex organ, such as the eye or ear. In any case, the axon of a sensory neuron can be quite long if the sensory receptor is far from the CNS.
2. The nervous system performs integration—in other words, the CNS sums up the input it receives from all over the body. **Interneurons** occur entirely within the CNS and take nerve impulses between various parts of the CNS. Some interneurons lie between sensory neurons and motor neurons, and some take messages from one side of the spinal cord to the other or from the brain to the spinal cord, and vice versa. They also form complex pathways in the brain, where processes that account for thinking, memory, and language occur.
3. The nervous system generates motor output. **Motor neurons** take nerve impulses from the CNS to muscles or glands. Motor neurons cause muscle fibers to contract or glands to secrete, and therefore they are said to *innervate* these structures.

Video
Making Brain Cells

The Nerve Impulse

Like some other cellular processes, the nerve impulse is also dependent on concentration gradients. In neurons, these concentration gradients are maintained by the sodium-potassium pump. This pump actively transports sodium ions (Na^+) to the outside of the axon and actively transports potassium ions (K^+) inside. Aside from ion concentration differences across the axon's membrane, a charge difference also exists. The inside of an axon is negative compared with the outside. This charge difference is primarily due in part to an unequal distribution of Na^+ and K^+ ions across the membrane. The charge difference across the axon's membrane plays an important role in the generation of a **nerve impulse,** which is also called an **action potential**. The nerve impulse is a rapid, short-lived, self-propagating reversal in the charge difference across the axon's membrane. **Figure 27.4** shows how it works. A nerve impulse involves two types of gated channel proteins in the axon's

Animation
How the Sodium-Potassium Pump Works

membrane. In contrast to ungated channel proteins, which constantly allow ions across the membrane, gated channel proteins open and close in response to a stimulus, such as a signal from another neuron. One type of gated channel protein allows sodium (Na^+) to pass through the membrane, and the other allows potassium (K^+) to pass through the membrane. As an axon is conducting a nerve impulse, the Na^+ gates open at a particular location, and the inside of the axon becomes positive as Na^+ moves from outside the axon to the inside. The Na^+ gates close, and then the K^+ gates open. Now K^+ moves from inside the axon to outside the axon, and the charge reverses.

Animation
Nerve Impulse

3D Animation
Neural Transmission: Resting Membrane Potential and Propogation

In Figure 27.4, the axon is unmyelinated, and the action potential at one locale stimulates an adjacent part of the axon's membrane to produce an action potential. In myelinated axons, an action potential at one node of Ranvier causes an action potential at the next node (**Fig. 27.5**). This type of conduction, called *saltatory conduction*, is much faster than otherwise. Imagine running down a long hallway as quickly as you can; then picture yourself able to get to the end of the same hall in just a few leaping bounds. Leaping would enable you to travel the same distance in a much shorter time; likewise, saltatory conduction greatly speeds the conduction of nerve impulses. In thin, unmyelinated axons, the nerve impulse travels about 1.0 meter/second, but in thick, myelinated axons, the rate is more than 100 meters/second due to saltatory conduction. In any case, action potentials are self-propagating; each action potential generates another along the length of an axon.

Animation
Action Potential Propagation

3D Animation
Neural Transmission: Action Potential Propagation

The conduction of a nerve impulse (action potential) is an all-or-none event—that is, either an axon conducts a nerve impulse or it does not. The intensity of a message is determined by how many nerve impulses are generated within a given time span. An axon can conduct a volley of nerve impulses because only a small number of ions are exchanged with each impulse. As soon as an impulse has passed by each successive portion of an axon, it undergoes a short refractory period, during which it is unable to conduct an impulse. During a refractory period, the sodium gates cannot yet open. This period ensures that nerve impulses travel in only one direction and do not reverse.

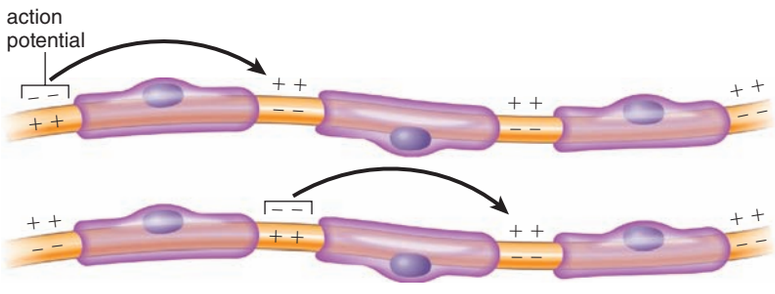


Figure 27.5 Conduction of a nerve impulse in a myelinated axon.

Action potentials can occur only at gaps in the myelin sheath, called nodes of Ranvier. This makes conduction much faster than in unmyelinated axons. In humans, all long axons are myelinated.

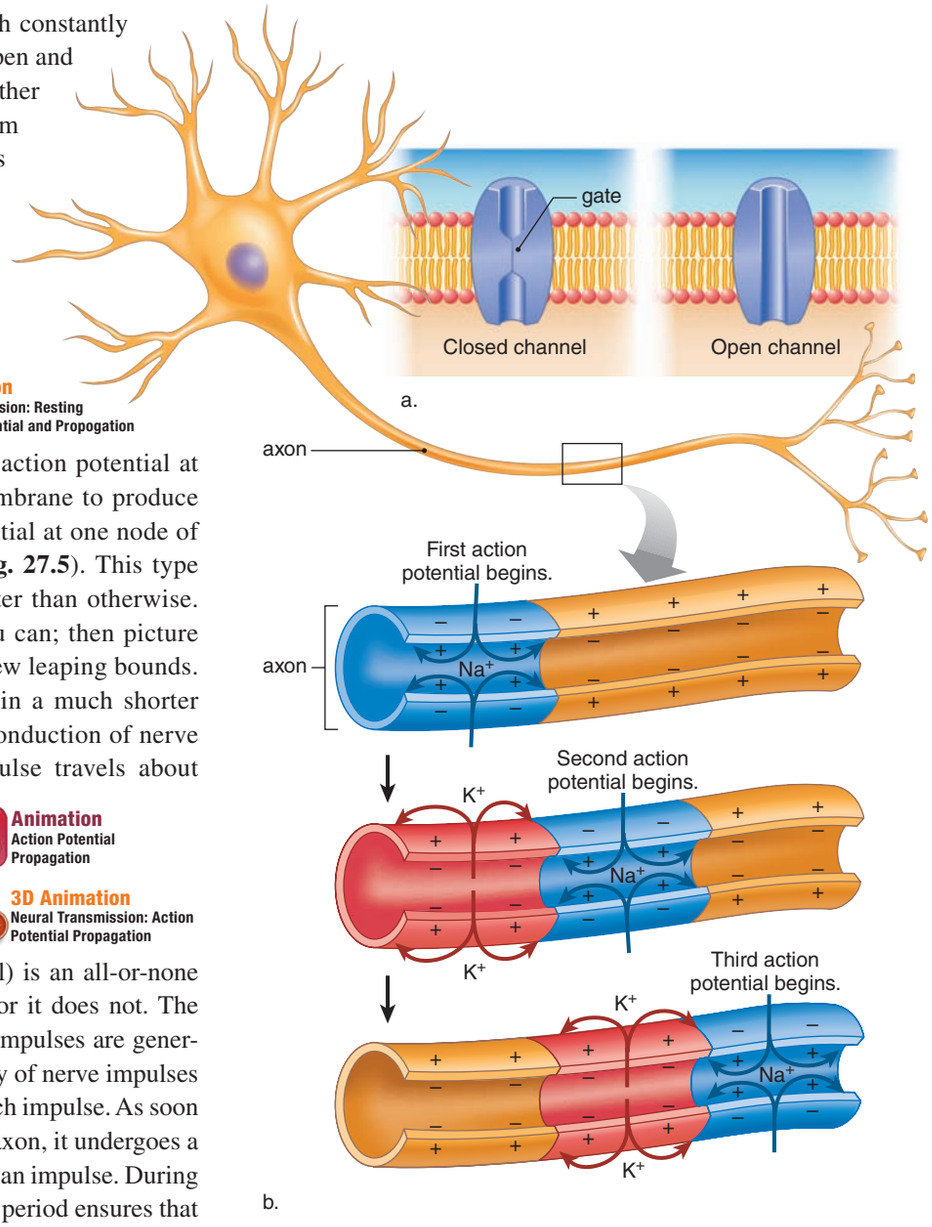


Figure 27.4 Conduction of action potentials in an unmyelinated axon.

a. Na^+ and K^+ each have their own gated channel protein by which they cross the axon's membrane. **b.** During an action potential, Na^+ enters the axon, and the charge difference between inside and outside reverses (blue); then K^+ exits, and the charge difference is restored (red). The action potential moves from section to section in an unmyelinated axon.

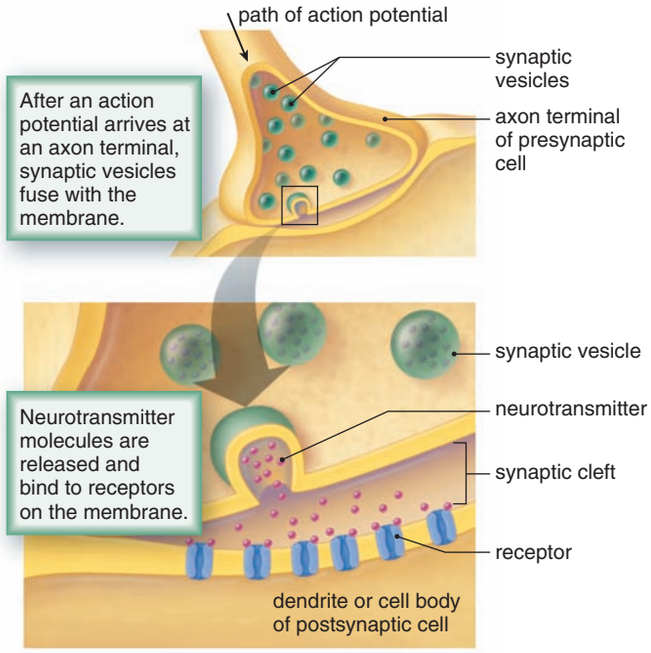


Figure 27.6 Synapse structure and function.

Transmission across a synapse from one neuron (the presynaptic cell) to another occurs when a neurotransmitter is released, diffuses across a synaptic cleft, and binds to a receptor in the plasma membrane of the next neuron (the postsynaptic cell). Each axon releases only one type of neurotransmitter, symbolized here by a red ball.

Connections: Health

How do drugs that regulate depression and anxiety work?

In general, pharmaceutical drugs that regulate behavior work by regulating the amount of neurotransmitter in the synapse. For example, drugs such as Xanax and Valium increase the levels of gamma-aminobutyric acid. These medications are used for panic attacks and anxiety. Reduced levels of norepinephrine and serotonin are linked to depression. Drugs such as Prozac, Paxil, and Cymbalta allow norepinephrine and/or serotonin to accumulate at the synapse, usually by blocking their reabsorption. By increasing the levels of these chemicals, the postsynaptic cell receives a more constant chemical message, which explains their effectiveness as antidepressants.

The Synapse

Each axon has many axon terminals. In the CNS, a terminal of one neuron, known as the *presynaptic cell,* lies very close to the dendrite (cell body) of another neuron, the *postsynaptic cell*. This region of close proximity is called a **synapse.** In the PNS, when the postsynaptic cell is a muscle cell, the region is called a neuromuscular junction. A small gap exists at a synapse, and this gap is called the **synaptic cleft.** How is it possible to excite the next neuron or a muscle cell across this gap? Nerve impulses cannot themselves pass across the synaptic cleft. Instead, transmission across a synaptic cleft is carried out by chemical signals called **neurotransmitters,** which are stored in synaptic vesicles. When nerve impulses traveling along an axon reach an axon terminal, synaptic vesicles release a neurotransmitter into the synaptic cleft. Neurotransmitter molecules diffuse across the cleft and bind to a specific receptor protein on the postsynaptic cell (**Fig. 27.6**).

Depending on the type of neurotransmitter and/or the type of receptor, the response of the postsynaptic cell can be toward excitation or toward inhibition. At least 25 different neurotransmitters have been identified, but several well-known neurotransmitters are acetylcholine (ACh), norepinephrine (NE), serotonin, and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA).

Once a neurotransmitter has been released into a synaptic cleft and has initiated a response, the neurotransmitter is removed from the cleft. In some synapses, the postsynaptic cell produces enzymes that rapidly inactivate the neurotransmitter. For example, the enzyme acetylcholinesterase (AChE) breaks down acetylcholine. In other synapses, the presynaptic cell rapidly reabsorbs the neurotransmitter. For example, norepinephrine is reabsorbed by the axon terminal. The short existence of neurotransmitters at a synapse prevents continuous stimulation (or inhibition) of the postsynaptic cell.

Animation Chemical Synapse

3D Animation Neural Transmission: Synapse

A single neuron has many dendrites plus the cell body, and both can have synapses with many other neurons; 1,000 to 10,000 synapses per single neuron are not uncommon. Therefore, a neuron is on the receiving end of many signals. An excitatory neurotransmitter produces a potential change that drives the neuron closer to an action potential, and an inhibitory neurotransmitter produces a potential change that drives the neuron farther from an action potential. Neurons integrate these incoming signals. **Integration** is the summing up of both excitatory and inhibitory signals. If a neuron receives many excitatory signals (either at different synapses or at a rapid rate from one synapse), chances are the axon will transmit a nerve impulse. On the other hand, if a neuron receives both inhibitory and excitatory signals, the integration of these signals may prohibit the axon from firing.

MP3 Synapses

Drug Abuse

Many drugs that affect the nervous system act by interfering with or promoting the action of neurotransmitters. A drug can either enhance or block the release of a neurotransmitter, mimic the action of a neurotransmitter or block the receptor for it, or interfere with the removal of a neurotransmitter from a synaptic cleft. *Stimulants* are drugs that increase the activity of the CNS, and *depressants* decrease its activity. Increasingly, researchers are coming to believe that dopamine, a neurotransmitter in the brain, is responsible for mood. Many of the new medications developed to counter drug dependence and mental illness affect the release, reception, or breakdown of dopamine.

Video Caffeine Withdrawal

Drug abuse is apparent when a person takes a drug at a dose level and under circumstances that increase the potential for a harmful effect. A drug abuser often takes more of the drug than was intended. Drug abusers are apt to display a psychological and/or physical dependence on the drug. With physical dependence, formerly called "addiction," more of the drug is needed to get the same effect, and withdrawal symptoms occur when the user stops taking the drug.

Cocaine

Cocaine is an alkaloid derived from the shrub *Erythroxylon coca*. It is sold in powder form and as crack, a more potent extract. Because cocaine prevents the synaptic uptake of dopamine, the neurotransmitter remains in the synapse for a prolonged period of time and continues to stimulate the postsynaptic cell. As a result, the user experiences a "rush" sensation. The epinephrine-like effects of dopamine account for the state of arousal that lasts for several minutes after the rush experience.

A cocaine binge can go on for days, after which the individual suffers a crash. During the binge period, the user is hyperactive and has little desire for food or sleep but has an increased sex drive. During the crash period, the user is fatigued, depressed, and irritable; has memory and concentration problems; and displays no interest in sex.

Cocaine causes extreme physical dependence. With continued cocaine use, the postsynaptic cells become increasingly desensitized to dopamine. The user, therefore, experiences physical dependence withdrawal symptoms and an intense craving for cocaine. These are indications that the person is highly dependent on the drug.

Overdosing on cocaine can cause seizures and cardiac and respiratory arrest. It is possible that long-term cocaine abuse causes brain damage (**Fig. 27.7**). Babies born to addicts suffer withdrawal symptoms and may have neurological and developmental problems.

Methamphetamine

Methamphetamine is a synthetic drug made from amphetamine by the addition of a methyl group. Over 9 million people in the U.S. have used methamphetamine at least once in their lifetime; teenagers and young adults represent approximately one-fourth of these. The addition of the methyl group is fairly simple, so methamphetamine is often produced from amphetamine in makeshift home laboratories. It is available as a powder (speed) or as crystals ("crystal meth," "glass," or "ice"). The crystals are smoked, and the effects are almost instantaneous and nearly as quick as when methamphetamine is snorted. The effects last four to eight hours when smoked. Methamphetamine has a structure similar to that of dopamine, and its stimulatory effect mimics cocaine. It reverses the effects of fatigue, maintains wakefulness, and temporarily elevates the mood of the user. After the initial rush, there is typically a state of high agitation that, in some individuals, leads to violent behavior. Chronic use can lead to what is called an amphetamine psychosis, resulting in paranoia; auditory and visual hallucinations; self-absorption; irritability; and aggressive, erratic behavior. Drug tolerance, dependence, and addiction are common. Hyperthermia, convulsions, and death can occur.

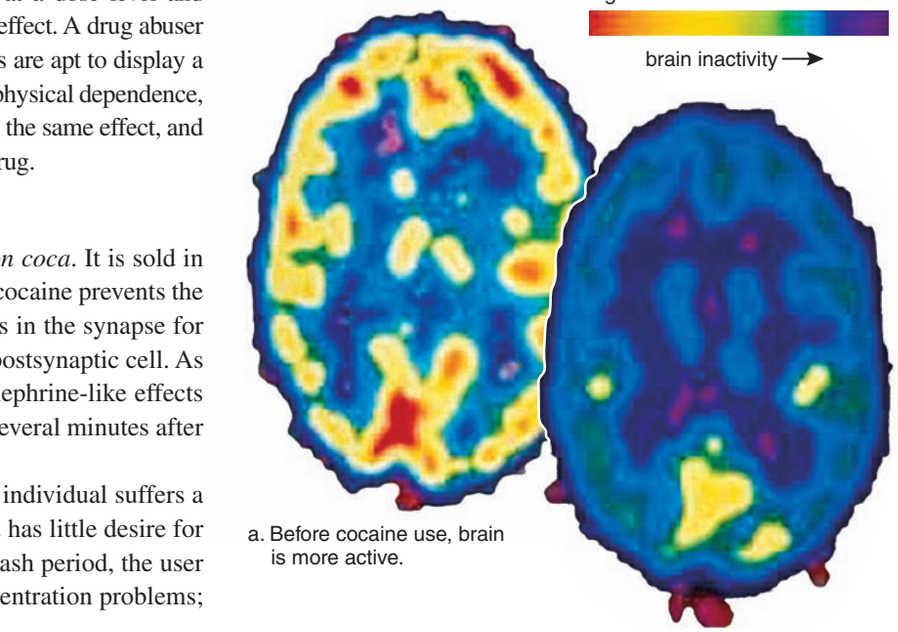


Figure 27.7 **Cocaine's effect on the brain.**

In a cocaine user, PET scans show that (**a**) the usual activity of the brain is (**b**) reduced. The color red indicates that brain tissue is active.

Video
Meth and the Brain

Marijuana

The dried flowering tops, leaves, and stems of the Indian hemp plant, *Cannabis sativa,* contain and are covered by a resin that is rich in 9-tetrahydrocannabinol

Connections: Health

What is medical marijuana used for?

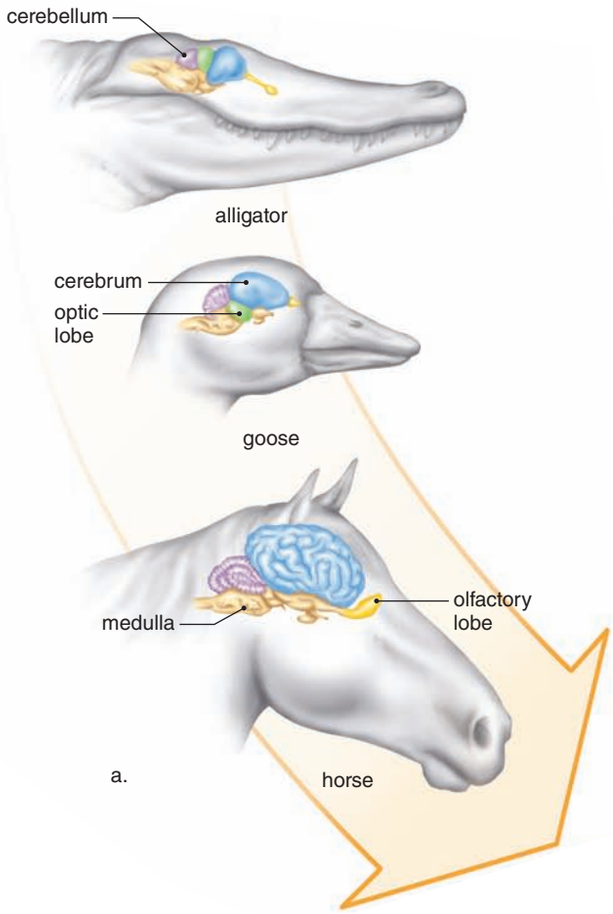
Researchers continue to examine the potential medical benefits of THC, the active compound in marijuana. Initial studies have indicated that THC acts as an analgesic, or pain reducer. Medical marijuana is sometimes prescribed for patients in extreme pain, such as those in the later stages of AIDS or those who have spinal cord injuries. However, it is important to note that it is the active compound in marijuana that has potential benefits. Smoking marijuana presents more health problems than the use of cigarettes. Marijuana smoke contains 50–70% more carcinogens than cigarette smoke. In addition, in the hour following marijuana use, there is almost a fivefold increase in the risk of a heart attack.

(THC). The names *cannabis* and *marijuana* apply to either the plant or THC. Usually, marijuana is smoked in a cigarette form called a "joint."

Recently, researchers have found that marijuana binds to a receptor for anandamide, a neurotransmitter that seems to create a feeling of peaceful contentment. The occasional marijuana user experiences a mild euphoria, along with alterations in vision and judgment, which result in distortions of space and time. Motor incoordination, including the inability to speak coherently, takes place. Heavy use can result in hallucinations, anxiety, depression, rapid flow of ideas, body image distortions, paranoid reactions, and similar psychotic symptoms. Craving and difficulty in stopping usage can occur as a result of regular use.

The Central Nervous System

The organization of vertebrate brains in reptiles (alligator), birds (goose) and mammals (horse and human) is compared in **Figure 27.8**. If we divide the brain into a hindbrain, midbrain, and forebrain, we can see that the forebrain is most prominent in humans. The forebrain of mammals also has an altered function in that it becomes the last depository for sensory information. This change accounts for why the forebrain carries on much of the integration for the entire nervous system before it sends out motor instructions to glands and muscles. In humans, the **spinal cord** provides a means of communication between the brain and the spinal nerves, which are a part of the PNS. Spinal nerves leave the spinal cord and take messages to and from the skin, glands, and muscles in all areas of the body, except the head and face. Long, myelinated fibers of interneurons in the spinal cord run together in bundles called **tracts.** These tracts connect the spinal cord to the brain. Because certain of the tracts cross over at one point, the left side of the brain controls the right side of the body, and vice versa. Also, as discussed on page 524, the spinal cord is involved in reflex actions, which are programmed, built-in circuits that allow for protection and survival. They are present at birth and require no conscious thought to take place.



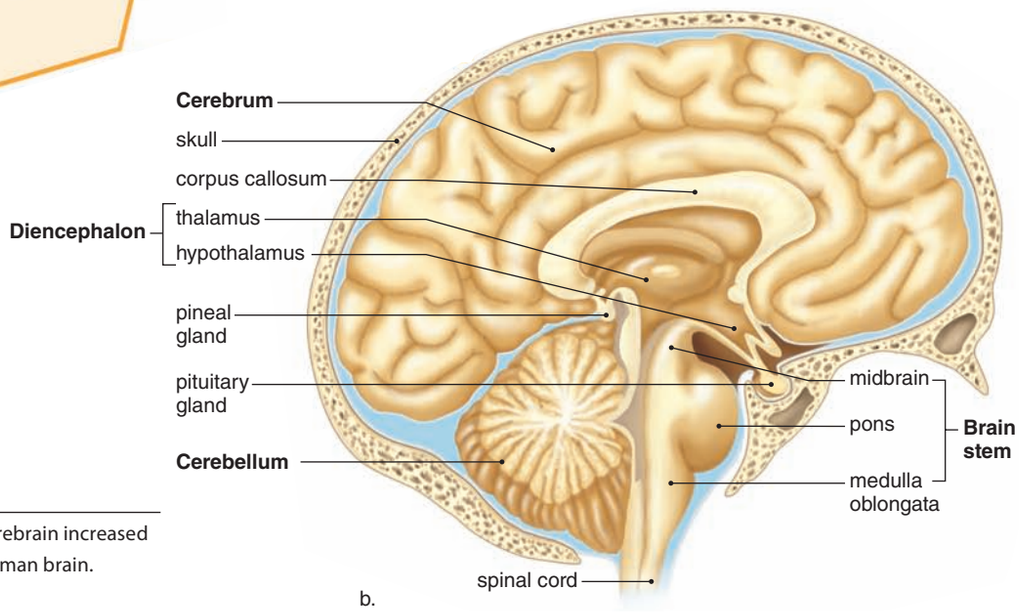


Figure 27.8 **Vertebrate brains.**

a. A comparison of vertebrate brains shows that the forebrain increased in size and complexity among these animals. **b.** The human brain.

The Brain

Our discussion will center on these parts of the **brain:** the cerebrum, the diencephalon, the cerebellum, and the brain stem (Fig. 27.8*b*).

Video
Brain Bank

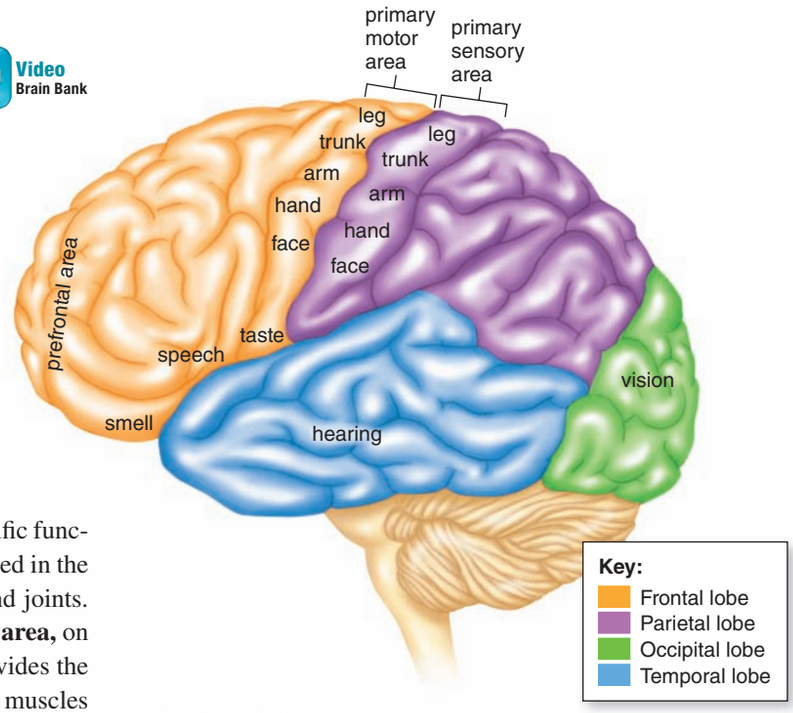
Cerebrum The cerebrum communicates with and coordinates the activities of the other parts of the brain. The cerebrum has two halves, and each half has a number of lobes. Most of the cerebrum is white matter, where the long axons of interneurons are taking nerve impulses to and from the cerebrum. The highly convoluted outer layer of gray matter that covers the cerebrum is called the **cerebral cortex.** The cerebral cortex contains over 1 billion cell bodies, and it is the region of the cerebrum that interprets and initiates sensation, voluntary movement, and higher thought processes.

MP3
The Cerebrum

Investigators have found that each part of the cerebrum has specific functions (**Fig. 27.9**). To take an example, the **primary sensory area** located in the parietal lobe receives information from the skin, skeletal muscles, and joints. Each part of the body has its own receiving area. The **primary motor area,** on the other hand, is in the frontal lobe just before the small cleft that divides the frontal lobe from the parietal lobe. Voluntary commands to skeletal muscles involve the primary motor area, and the muscles in each part of the body are controlled by a certain section of the primary motor area.

The lobes of the cerebral cortex have a number of specialized centers to receive information from the sensory receptors for sight, hearing, and smell. The lobes also have *association areas,* where integration occurs. The **prefrontal area,** an association area in the frontal lobe, receives information from the other association areas and uses this information to reason and plan our actions. Integration in this area accounts for our most cherished human abilities: to think critically and to formulate appropriate behaviors.

Video
Brain Surgery



Function of lobes
- Frontal lobe—reasoning, planning, speech, movement, emotions, and problem solving
- Parietal lobe—integration of sensory input from skin and skeletal muscles, understanding speech
- Occipital lobe—seeing, perception of visual stimuli
- Temporal lobe—hearing, perception of auditory stimuli

Figure 27.9 Functional regions of the cerebral cortex.

Specific areas of the cerebral cortex receive sensory input from particular sensory receptors, integrate various types of information, or send out motor commands to particular areas of the body.

Diencephalon Beneath the cerebrum is the diencephalon, which contains the hypothalamus and the thalamus (see Fig. 27.8*b*). The **hypothalamus** is an integrating center that helps maintain homeostasis by regulating hunger, sleep, thirst, body temperature, and water balance. The hypothalamus controls the pituitary gland, thereby serving as a link between the nervous and endocrine systems. The **thalamus** is on the receiving end for all sensory input except smell. Information from the eyes, ears, and skin arrives at the thalamus via the cranial nerves and tracts from the spinal cord. The thalamus integrates this information and sends it on to the appropriate portions of the cerebrum. The thalamus is involved in arousal of the cerebrum; it participates in motor functions and higher mental processes, such as memory and emotions.

The pineal gland, which secretes the hormone melatonin, is located in the diencephalon. Presently, there is much popular interest in melatonin because it is released at night when we are sleeping. Supplements of melatonin have been effectively used to treat seasonal affective disorder, jet lag, and some sleep disorders.

Video
Winter Mood

Figure 27.10 **The limbic system.**

The limbic system includes the diencephalon and parts of the cerebrum. It joins higher mental functions, such as reasoning, with more instinctive feelings, such as fear and pleasure. Eating is a pleasurable activity for most people.

Cerebellum The **cerebellum** has two portions joined by a narrow median strip. Each portion is primarily composed of white matter, which in longitudinal section has a treelike pattern (see Fig. 27.8*b*). Overlying the white matter is a thin layer of gray matter, which forms a series of complex folds.

The cerebellum receives sensory input from the eyes, ears, joints, and skeletal muscles about the present position of body parts, and it receives motor output from the cerebral cortex that specifies where these parts should be located. After integrating this information, the cerebellum sends motor impulses by way of the brain stem to the skeletal muscles. In this way, the cerebellum maintains posture and balance. It also ensures that all of the muscles work together to produce smooth, coordinated voluntary movements. The cerebellum helps us learn new motor skills, such as playing the piano or hitting a baseball.

Brain Stem The **brain stem,** which contains the midbrain, the pons, and the medulla oblongata, connects the rest of the brain to the spinal cord (see Fig. 27.8*b*). It contains tracts that ascend or descend between the spinal cord and higher brain centers. The **midbrain** contains important visual and auditory reflex centers, and it coordinates responses such as the startle reflex. This occurs when you automatically turn your head in response to a sudden, loud noise, trying to see its source. The **medulla oblongata** contains a number of reflex centers for regulating heartbeat, breathing, and vasoconstriction (blood pressure). It also contains the reflex centers for vomiting, coughing, sneezing, hiccuping, and swallowing. In addition, the medulla oblongata helps control various internal organs. The **pons** links the medulla with the midbrain, and it is vital for the control of breathing.

The Limbic System

The **limbic system** is a complex network that includes the diencephalon and areas of the cerebrum (**Fig. 27.10**). The limbic system blends higher mental functions and primitive emotions into a united whole. It accounts for why activities such as sexual behavior and eating seem pleasurable and why, for instance, mental stress can cause high blood pressure.

Two significant structures within the limbic system are the hippocampus and the amygdala, which are essential for learning and memory. The hippocampus, a seahorse-shaped structure that lies deep in the temporal lobe, is well situated in the brain to make the prefrontal area aware of past experiences stored in sensory association areas. The amygdala, in particular, can cause these experiences to have emotional overtones. A connection between the frontal lobe and the limbic system means that reason can keep us from acting out strong feelings.

Learning and Memory **Memory** is the ability to hold a thought in mind or to recall events from the past, ranging from a word we learned only yesterday to an early emotional experience that has shaped our lives. Learning takes place when we retain and utilize past memories.

The prefrontal area in the frontal lobe is active during short-term memory, as when we temporarily recall a telephone number. Some telephone numbers go into long-term memory. Think of a telephone number you know by heart, and see if you can bring it to mind without also thinking about the place or person associated with that number. Most likely, you cannot, because typically long-term memory is a mixture of what is called *semantic memory* (numbers, words, and so on) and *episodic memory*

(persons, events, and other associations). *Skill memory* is a type of memory that can exist independently of episodic memory. Skill memory is what allows us to perform motor activities, such as riding a bike or playing ice hockey. A person who has **Alzheimer disease** experiences a progressive loss of memory, particularly for recent events. Gradually, the person loses the ability to perform any type of daily activity and becomes bedridden. In Alzheimer patients, clusters of abnormal tissue develop among degenerating neurons, especially in the hippocampus and amygdala. Major research efforts are devoted to seeking a cure for Alzheimer disease.

Video
Apples for Alzheimers

What parts of the brain are functioning when we remember something from long ago? Our long-term memories are stored in bits and pieces throughout the sensory association areas of the cerebral cortex. The hippocampus gathers this information for use by the prefrontal area of the frontal lobe when we remember, for example, Uncle George or our summer holiday. Why are some memories so emotionally charged? The amygdala is responsible for conditioning fear and for associating danger with sensory information received from the thalamus and the cortical sensory areas.

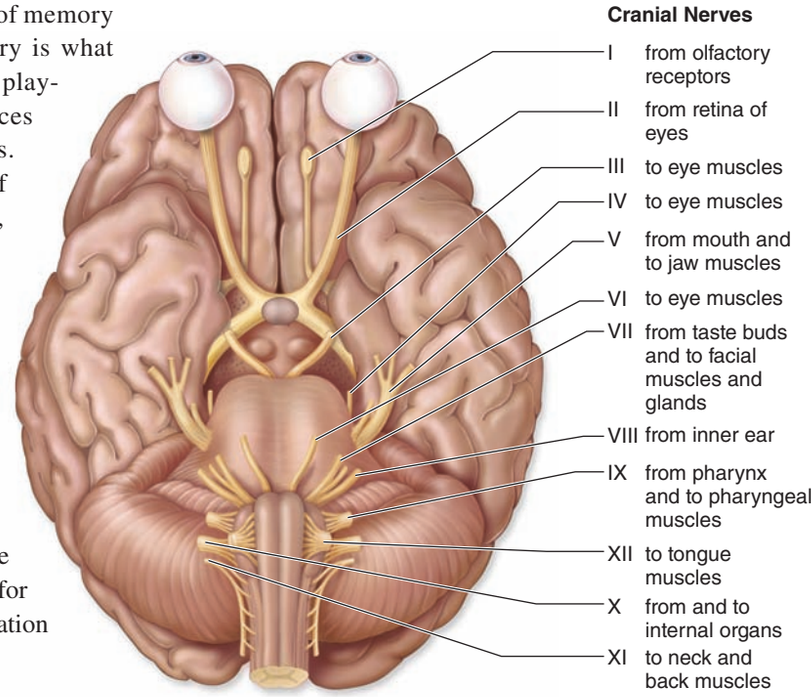


Figure 27.11 Cranial nerves.

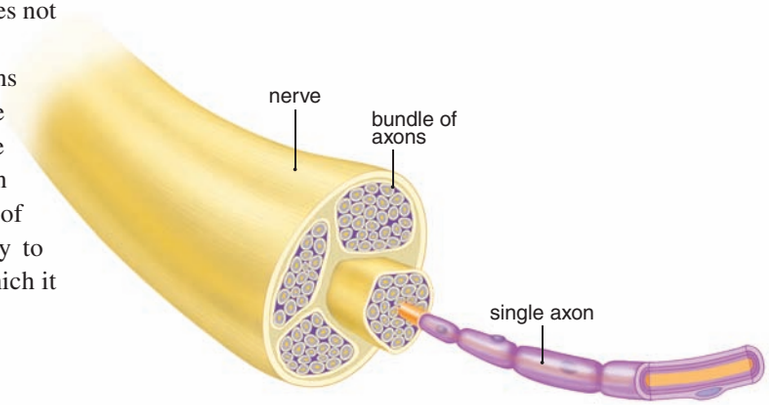
Cranial nerves receive sensory inputs from, and send outputs to, the head region. Two important exceptions are the vagus nerve (X) and the spinal accessory nerve (XI). Spinal nerves (not shown) receive sensory input from and send outputs to the rest of the body.

The Peripheral Nervous System

The purpose of the peripheral nervous system (PNS) is to relay sensory information to the CNS for processing and to relay motor responses to the tissues of the body. Some of this information comes from sensory neurons located within the sense organs (Chapter 28), while other information comes from sensory neurons within the tissues of the body.

The peripheral nervous system (PNS) lies outside the central nervous system and contains **nerves,** which are bundles of axons. The cell bodies of neurons are found in the CNS—that is, the brain and spinal cord—or in ganglia. Ganglia (sing., **ganglion**) are collections of cell bodies within the PNS. Humans have 12 pairs of **cranial nerves** attached to the brain (**Fig 27.11**). Cranial nerves are largely concerned with the head, neck, and facial regions of the body. However, the vagus nerve is a cranial nerve that has branches not only to the pharynx and larynx but also to most of the internal organs.

Humans also have 31 pairs of **spinal nerves,** and each contains many sensory and motor axons. The dorsal root of a spinal nerve contains the axons of sensory neurons, which conduct impulses to the spinal cord from sensory receptors. The cell body of a sensory neuron is in the *dorsal root ganglion.* The ventral root contains the axons of motor neurons, which conduct impulses away from the cord, largely to skeletal muscles. Each spinal nerve serves the region of the body in which it is located.



The Somatic System

The **somatic system** of the PNS includes the nerves that take sensory information from external sensory receptors to the CNS and motor commands away from the CNS to skeletal muscles. Voluntary control of skeletal muscles always originates in the brain. Involuntary responses to stimuli, called **reflexes,** can involve either the brain or just the spinal cord. Flying objects cause our eyes to blink, and sharp pins cause our hands to jerk away even without our having to think about it.

Figure 27.12 illustrates the path of a reflex that involves only the spinal cord. If your hand touches a sharp pin, sensory receptors in the skin generate nerve impulses that move along sensory axons toward the spinal cord. Sensory neurons that enter the spinal cord pass signals on to many interneurons. Some of these interneurons synapse with motor neurons. The short dendrites and the cell bodies of motor neurons are in the spinal cord, but their axons leave the cord. Nerve impulses travel along motor axons to an effector, which brings about a response to the stimulus. In this case, a muscle contracts, so that you withdraw your hand from the pin. Various other reactions are possible—you will most likely look at the pin, wince, and cry out in pain. This whole series of responses is explained by the fact that some of the interneurons involved carry nerve impulses to the brain. Also, sense organs send messages to the brain that make us aware of our actions. Your brain makes you aware of the stimulus and directs these other reactions to it.

The Autonomic System

The **autonomic system** of the PNS automatically and involuntarily regulates the activity of glands and cardiac and smooth muscle. The system is divided into the parasympathetic and sympathetic divisions (**Fig. 27.13**). Reflex actions, such as those that regulate blood pressure and breathing rate, are especially important to the maintenance of homeostasis. These reflexes begin when the sensory neurons in contact with internal organs send information to the CNS. They are completed by motor neurons within the autonomic system.

The **parasympathetic division** includes a few cranial nerves (e.g., the vagus nerve) and axons that arise from the last portion of the spinal cord. The parasympathetic division, sometimes called the "housekeeper division," promotes all the internal responses we associate with a relaxed state. For example, it causes the pupil of the eye to constrict, promotes the digestion of food, and retards the heartbeat. The neurotransmitter used by the parasympathetic division is acetylcholine (ACh).

Axons of the **sympathetic division** arise from portions of the spinal cord. The sympathetic division is especially important during emergency situ-

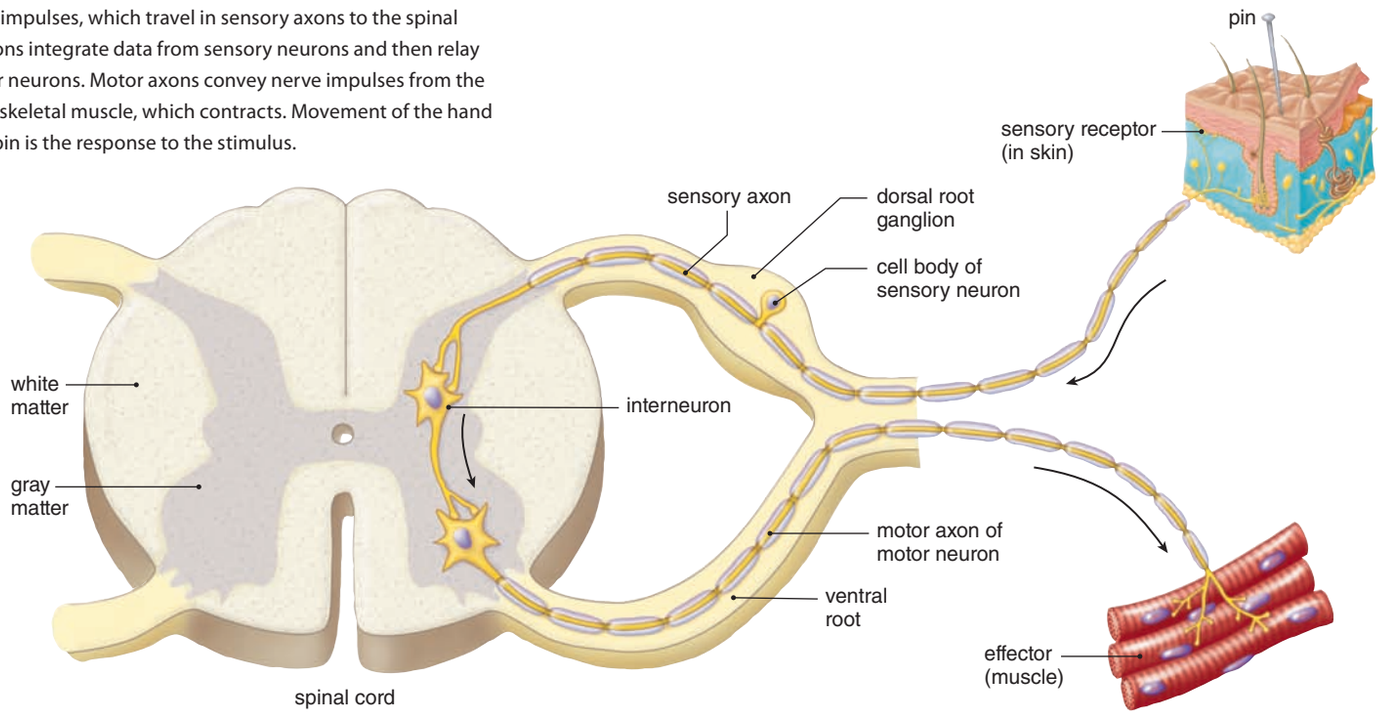


Figure 27.12 A reflex arc showing the path of a spinal reflex.

A stimulus (e.g., a pinprick) causes sensory receptors in the skin to generate nerve impulses, which travel in sensory axons to the spinal cord. Interneurons integrate data from sensory neurons and then relay signals to motor neurons. Motor axons convey nerve impulses from the spinal cord to a skeletal muscle, which contracts. Movement of the hand away from the pin is the response to the stimulus.

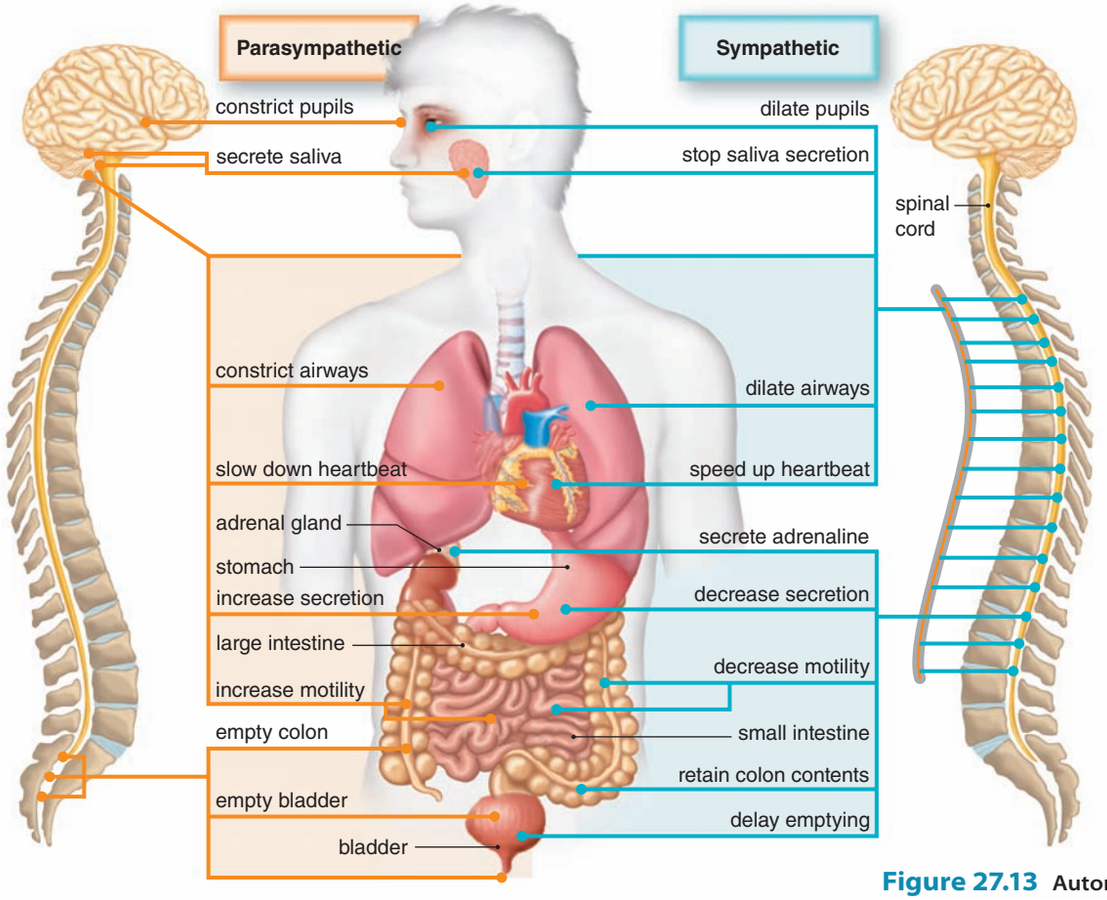


Figure 27.13 **Autonomic system.**

The parasympathetic and sympathetic motor axons go to the same organs, but they have opposite effects. The parasympathetic division is active when we, as mammals, feel comforted. The sympathetic division is active when we are stressed and feel threatened.

ations and is associated with "fight or flight." If you need to fend off a foe or flee from danger, active muscles require a ready supply of glucose and oxygen. On one hand, the sympathetic division accelerates the heartbeat and dilates the airways. On the other hand, the sympathetic division inhibits the digestive tract, since digestion is not an immediate necessity if you are under attack. The sympathetic nervous system uses the neurotransmitter norepinephrine, which has a structure like that of epinephrine (adrenaline) released by the adrenal medulla.

MP3
Organization of the Nervous System

Check Your Progress 27.1

1. List the three major types of neurons and their functions.
2. Identify the structural components of a neuron, and state the function of each.
3. List the steps in the generation of an action potential.
4. Explain how a signal is carried across the synaptic cleft.
5. Identify the structures of the central nervous system, and provide a function for each.
6. Summarize the events that occur during a reflex action.
7. Explain why the parasympathetic division of the autonomic system is called the "housekeeper division."

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The nervous system uses nerve impulses and chemical signals to control the functions of the rest of the body.

27.2 Endocrine System

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Identify the major endocrine glands of the body and summarize their role in the body.
2. Compare and contrast the actions of steroid and peptide hormones.
3. Give examples of endocrine disorders.

The endocrine system consists of glands and tissues that secrete chemical signals called hormones (**Fig. 27.14**). **Hormones** are chemical signals released by one gland in the body that regulate the activity of another organ, tissue, or gland in the body. **Endocrine glands** do not have ducts; they secrete their hormones directly into the bloodstream for distribution throughout the body. They can be contrasted with exocrine glands, which have ducts and secrete their products into these ducts for transport to body cavities. For example, the salivary glands are exocrine glands, because they send saliva into the mouth by way of the salivary ducts (see Section 24.3).

The endocrine system and the nervous system are intimately involved in homeostasis, the relative stability of the internal environment. Hormones directly affect blood composition and pressure, body growth, and many more life processes. Certain hormones are involved in the maturation and function of the reproductive organs, and these are discussed in Chapter 29.

MP3 Endocrine System

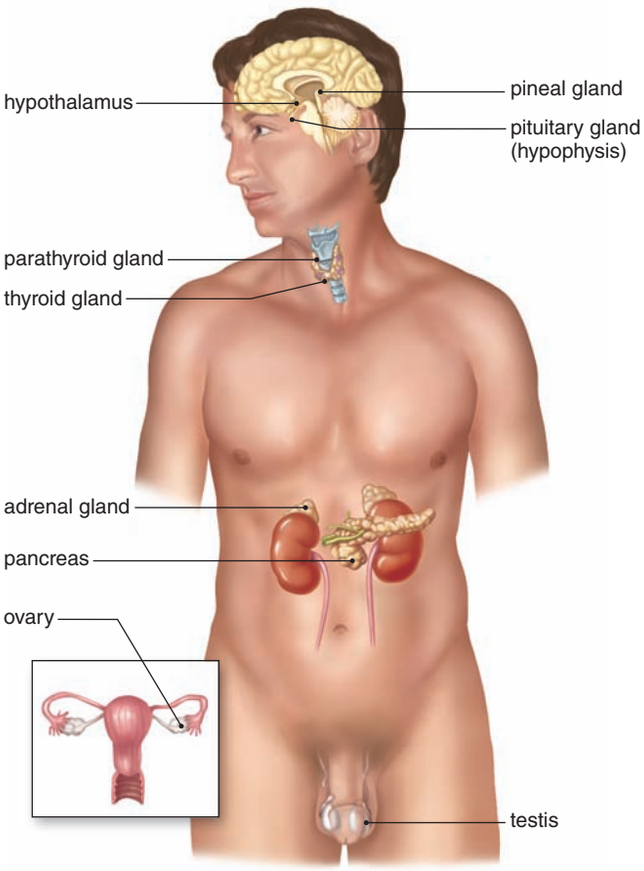


Figure 27.14 The endocrine system.

Location of major endocrine glands in the body. The endocrine functions of the pineal gland and sex organs (ovaries and testes) are covered in sections 27.1 and 29.2, respectively.

The Action of Hormones

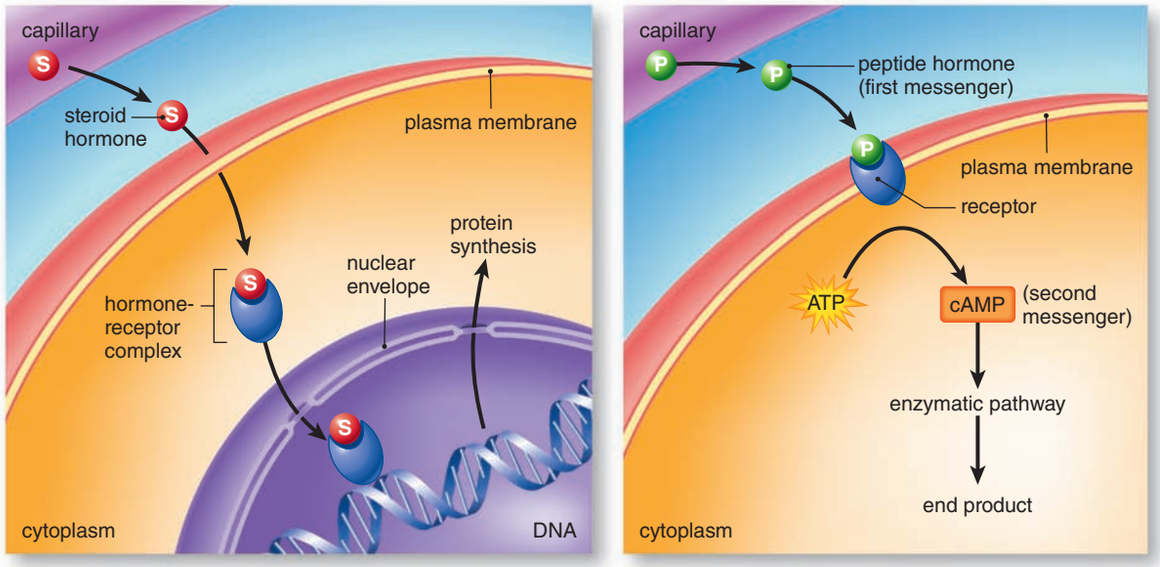
The cells that can respond to a hormone have receptor proteins that bind to the hormone. Hormones cause these cells to undergo a metabolic change. The type of change is dependent on the chemical structure of the hormone. **Steroid hormones** are lipids, and they can pass through the plasma membrane. The hormone-receptor complex then binds to DNA, and gene expression follows—for example, a protein (such as an enzyme) is made by the cell. The enzyme goes on to produce a change in the target cell's function (**Fig. 27.15*a***). Since steroid hormones can pass through the membrane of every cell in the body, they are typically used to control changes that need to occur at an organismal level. For example, the steroid hormone testosterone is a sex hormone that is primarily involved in directing the development of male sexual characteristics.

Animation Mechanism of Steroid Hormone Action

Peptide hormones comprise peptides, proteins, glycoproteins, and modified amino acids. Peptide hormones can't pass through the plasma membrane, so they bind to a receptor protein in the plasma membrane (Fig. 27.15*b*). The peptide hormone is called the "first messenger," because a signal transduction pathway leads to a second molecule—that is, the "second messenger"—that changes the metabolism of the cell. The second messenger sets in motion an enzyme pathway, which is sometimes called an enzyme cascade because each enzyme in turn activates another. Because enzymes work over and over, every step in an enzyme cascade leads to more reactions—the binding of a single peptide hormone molecule can result in as much as a thousandfold response. Since peptide hormones interact with receptors, they may be specific in what

Animation Peptide Hormone Action

Animation Second Messengers



a. Action of steroid hormone

b. Action of peptide hormone

Figure 27.15 How hormones work.

a. A steroid hormone (S) is a chemical signal that is able to enter the cell. Reception of this messenger causes the cell to synthesize a product by way of the cellular machinery for protein synthesis. **b.** A peptide hormone (P) is a "first messenger," which is received by a cell at the plasma membrane. Reception of the first messenger and a signal transduction pathway lead to a "second messenger," which changes the metabolism of the cell.

types of cells they target. For example, insulin, a peptide hormone, has a different effect on muscle cells than on adipose tissue cells due to the larger number of insulin receptors on the surface of muscle cells.

Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland

The hypothalamus, a part of the brain (see Fig. 27.8b), helps regulate the internal environment. For example, it is on the receiving end of information about the heartbeat and body temperature. And to correct any abnormalities, the hypothalamus communicates with the medulla oblongata, where the brain centers that control the autonomic system are located. The hypothalamus is also a part of the endocrine system, containing specialized hormone-secreting neurons. It controls the glandular secretions of the **pituitary gland,** a small gland connected to the brain by a stalklike structure. The pituitary has two portions, the anterior pituitary and the posterior pituitary, which are distinct from each other.

Anterior Pituitary

The hypothalamus controls the **anterior pituitary** by producing *hypothalamic-releasing hormones,* most of which act by stimulating the action of other glands (**Fig. 27.16**).

1. *Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)* stimulates the thyroid to produce triiodothyronine (T_3) and thyroxine (T_4).
2. *Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)* stimulates the adrenal cortex to produce the glucocorticoids.
3. *Gonadotropic hormones* (*FSH* and *LH*) stimulate the gonads—the testes in males and the ovaries in females—to produce gametes and sex hormones.

In these instances, a three-tiered control system develops that widely uses a negative-feedback mechanism (**Fig. 27.17**). For example, the secretion of thyroid-releasing hormone (TRH) by the hypothalamus stimulates the thyroid to produce the thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), and the thyroid produces its hormones (T_3 and T_4), which gives feedback to inhibit the release of the first two hormones mentioned.

Connections: Health

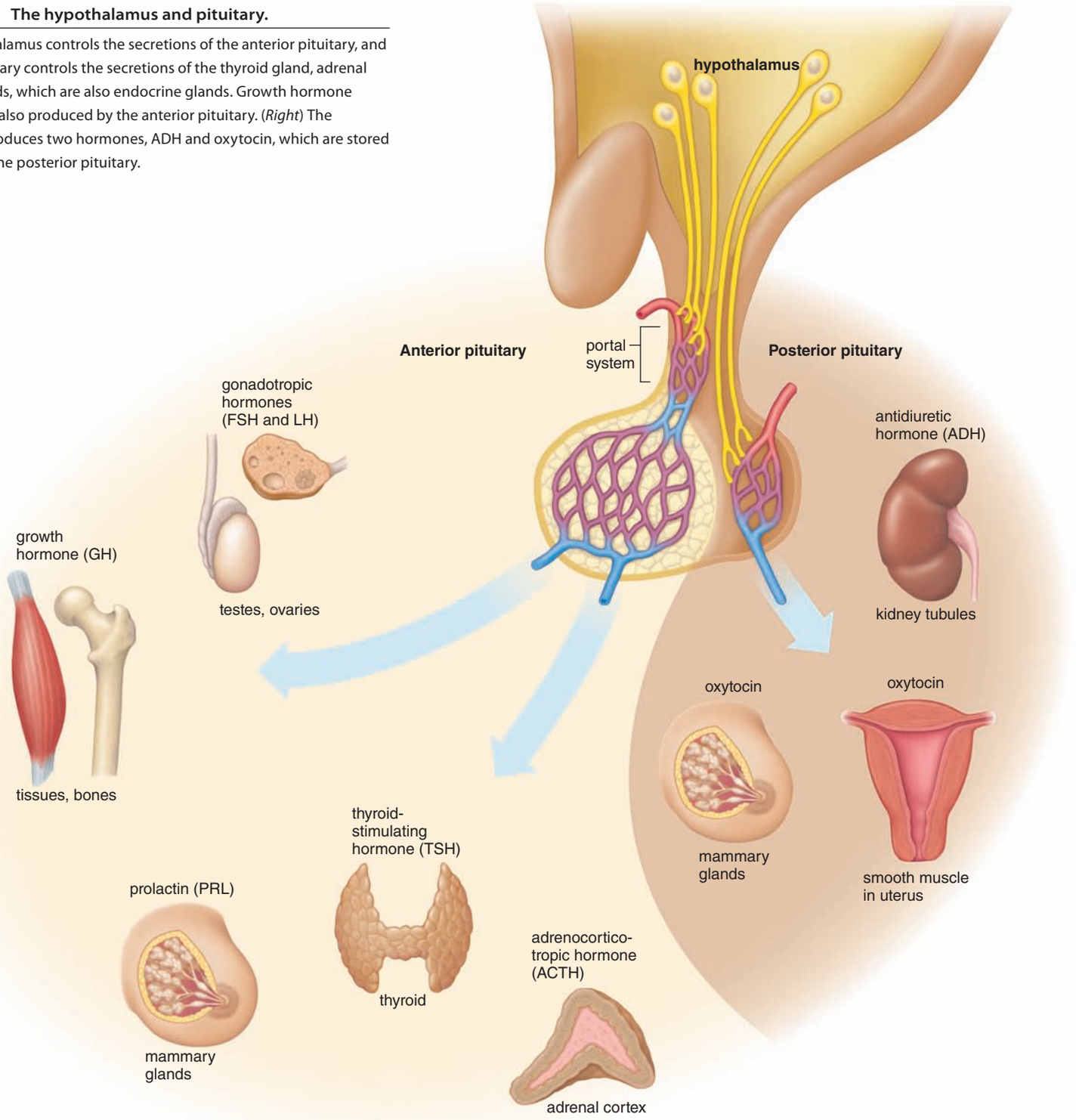
How is labor induced if a woman's pregnancy extends past her due date?

After a woman is given medication to prepare the birth canal for delivery, pitocin (a synthetic version of oxytocin) is used to induce labor. During labor, it may also be given to increase the strength of the contractions. Stronger contractions speed the labor process, if necessary (for example, if the woman's uterus is contracting poorly or if the health of the mother or child is at risk during delivery). Pitocin is routinely used following delivery to minimize postpartum bleeding by ensuring that strong uterine contractions continue. Pitocin use must be monitored carefully, because it may cause excessive uterine contractions. Should this occur, the uterus could tear itself. Further, a reduced blood supply to the fetus, caused by very strong contractions, may be fatal to the baby. Although it reduces the duration of labor, induction with pitocin can be very painful for the mother. Whenever possible, gentler and more natural methods should be used to induce labor and/or strengthen contractions.

Two other hormones produced by the anterior pituitary do not affect other endocrine glands. *Prolactin (PRL)* is produced in quantity during pregnancy and after childbirth. It causes the mammary glands in the breasts to develop and produce milk. It also plays a role in carbohydrate and fat metabolism. *Growth hormone (GH)* promotes skeletal and muscular growth. It stimulates the rate at which amino acids enter cells and protein synthesis occurs. Underproduction of growth hormone leads to pituitary dwarfism, and overproduction can lead to pituitary gigantism.

Figure 27.16 The hypothalamus and pituitary.

(*Left*) The hypothalamus controls the secretions of the anterior pituitary, and the anterior pituitary controls the secretions of the thyroid gland, adrenal cortex, and gonads, which are also endocrine glands. Growth hormone and prolactin are also produced by the anterior pituitary. (*Right*) The hypothalamus produces two hormones, ADH and oxytocin, which are stored and secreted by the posterior pituitary.



Posterior Pituitary

The hypothalamus produces two hormones, *antidiuretic hormone (ADH)* and *oxytocin* (see Fig. 27.16). The axons of hypothalamic secretory neurons extend into the **posterior pituitary,** where hormones are stored in the axon terminals. When the hypothalamus determines that the blood is too concentrated, ADH is released from the posterior pituitary. On reaching the kidneys, ADH causes water to be reabsorbed. As the blood becomes dilute, ADH is no longer released. This is also an example of control by negative feedback, because the effect of the hormone (to dilute blood) is to shut down the hormone's release. Negative feedback, as discussed in Chapter 22, maintains homeostasis.

Oxytocin, the other hormone made in the hypothalamus, causes uterine contraction during childbirth and milk letdown (ejection) when a baby is nursing.

Animation
Hormonal Communication

Thyroid and Parathyroid Glands

The **thyroid gland** is a large gland located in the neck; it produces two hormones: *triiodothyronine (T_3),* which contains three iodine atoms, and *thyroxine (T_4),* which contains four iodine atoms. To produce these hormones, the thyroid gland needs iodine. The concentration of iodine in the thyroid gland can increase to as much as 25 times that of the blood. If iodine is lacking in the diet, the thyroid gland is unable to produce the thyroid hormones. In response to constant stimulation by the anterior pituitary, the thyroid enlarges, resulting in a **simple goiter** (**Fig. 27.18*a***). Some years ago, it was discovered that the use of iodized salt (table salt to which iodine has been added) helps prevent simple goiter.

Animation
Mechanism of Thyroxine Action

Thyroid hormones increase the metabolic rate. They do not have a single, specific target organ; instead, they stimulate all the cells of the body to metabolize at a faster rate. More glucose is broken down, and more energy is used.

In the case of hyperthyroidism (oversecretion of thyroid hormone), or Graves disease, the thyroid gland is overactive, and bulging of the eyes (**exophthalmos**) results (Fig. 27.18*b*). The eyes protrude because of swelling in the eye socket tissues and in the muscles that move the eyes. The patient usually becomes hyperactive, nervous, and irritable and suffers from insomnia. The removal or destruction of a portion of the thyroid by means of radioactive iodine is sometimes effective in curing the condition.

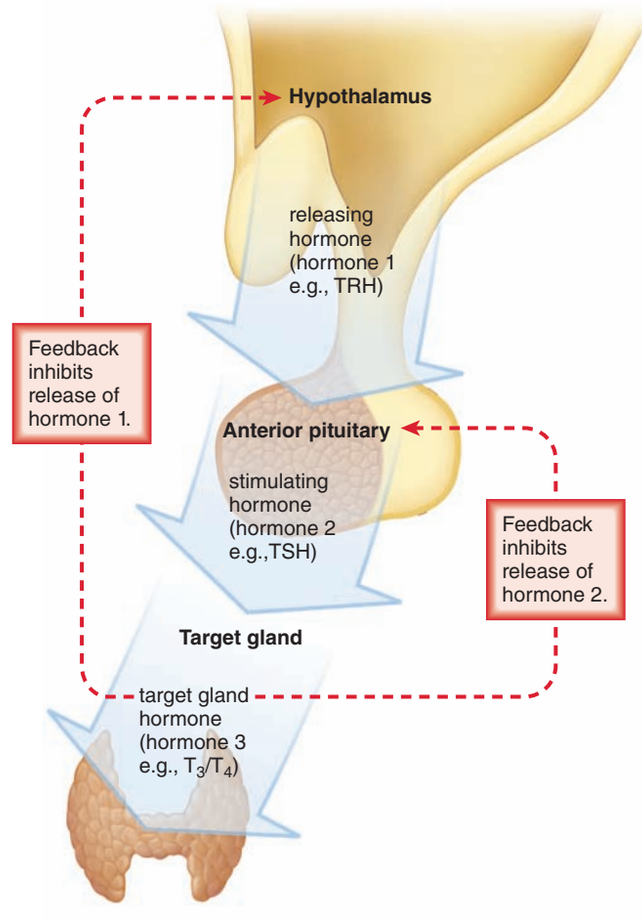
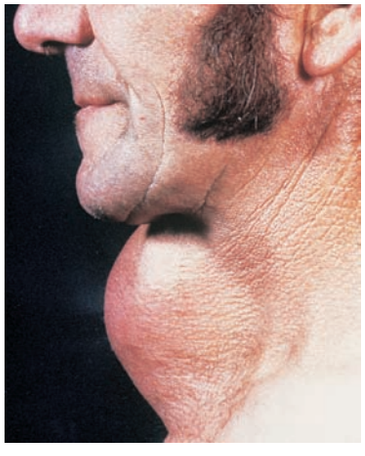
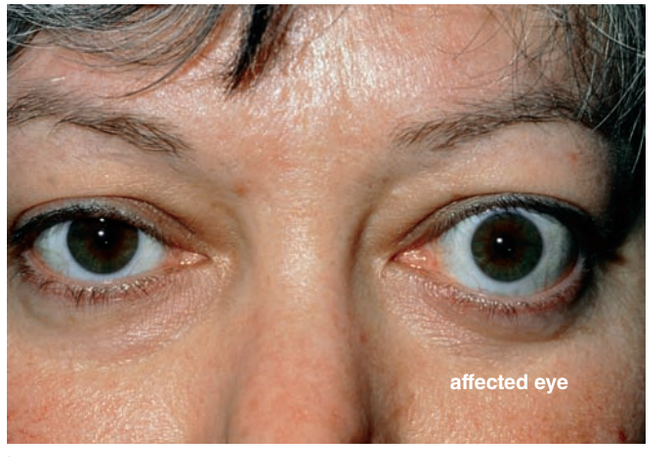


Figure 27.17 **Negative feedback inhibition.**

The hormones secreted by the thyroid (as well as the adrenal cortex and gonads) provide feedback to inhibit the anterior pituitary and hypothalamic-releasing hormones, so that their blood levels stay relatively constant.



a.



b.

Figure 27.18 **Conditions of the thyroid.**

a. Simple goiter. An enlarged thyroid gland can result from too little iodine in the diet.
b. Exophthalmos. Enlargement of the thyroid gland due to hyperthyroidism can cause the eyes to protrude, a condition called exophthalmos. In this individual, only the left eye is affected.

Calcium Regulation

The thyroid gland also produces **calcitonin,** a hormone that helps regulate the blood calcium level. Calcium (Ca^{2+}) plays a significant role in both nervous conduction and muscle contraction. It is also necessary for blood clotting. Calcitonin temporarily reduces the activity and number of osteoclasts, cells that break down bone. Therefore, more calcium is deposited in bone. When the blood calcium level returns to normal, the thyroid's release of calcitonin is inhibited by negative feedback, but a low level stimulates the parathyroid glands' release of **parathyroid hormone (PTH)**. The parathyroid glands are embedded in the posterior surface of the thyroid gland. Many years ago, the four **parathyroid glands** were sometimes mistakenly removed during thyroid surgery because of their size and location.

Parathyroid hormone promotes the activity of osteoclasts and the release of calcium from the bones. PTH also promotes the reabsorption of calcium by the kidneys, where it activates vitamin D. Vitamin D, in turn, stimulates the absorption of calcium from the small intestine. These effects bring the blood calcium level back to the normal range, so that the parathyroid glands no longer secrete PTH.

When insufficient parathyroid hormone production leads to a dramatic drop in the blood calcium level, tetany results. In **tetany,** the body shakes from continuous muscle contraction. This effect is brought about by increased excitability of the nerves, which in turn initiates nerve impulses spontaneously and without rest.

Adrenal Glands

Two **adrenal glands** sit atop the kidneys. Each adrenal gland consists of an inner portion called the **adrenal medulla** and an outer portion called the **adrenal cortex.** These portions, like the anterior pituitary and the posterior pituitary, have no functional connection with one another.

The hypothalamus exerts control over the activity of both portions of the adrenal glands. It initiates nerve impulses that travel by way of the brain stem, spinal cord, and sympathetic nerve fibers to the adrenal medulla, which then secretes its hormones. The hypothalamus, by means of ACTH-releasing hormone, controls the anterior pituitary's secretion of ACTH, which in turn stimulates the adrenal cortex. Stress of all types—including emotional and physical trauma, and even vigorous exercise—prompts the hypothalamus to stimulate both the adrenal medulla and the adrenal cortex.

Adrenal Medulla

Epinephrine (adrenaline) and norepinephrine (noradrenaline) produced by the adrenal medulla rapidly bring about all the body changes that occur when an individual reacts to an emergency situation. In so doing, these two hormones complement the actions of the sympathetic autonomic system. The effects of these hormones are short-term. In contrast, the hormones produced by the adrenal cortex provide a long-term response to stress.

Adrenal Cortex

The two major types of hormones produced by the adrenal cortex are the **mineralocorticoids,** such as *aldosterone*, and the **glucocorticoids,** such as *cortisol*. Aldosterone acts on the kidneys and thereby regulates salt and water balance, leading to increases in blood volume and blood pressure. Cortisol regulates

carbohydrate, protein, and fat metabolism, leading to an increase in the blood glucose level. It is also an anti-inflammatory agent. The adrenal cortex also secretes a small amount of both male and female sex hormones in both sexes.

When the level of adrenal cortex hormones is low due to hyposecretion, a person develops **Addison disease (Fig. 27.19).** ACTH may build up as more is secreted to attempt to stimulate the adrenal cortex. The excess can cause bronzing of the skin, because ACTH in excess stimulates melanin production. Without cortisol, glucose cannot be replenished when a stressful situation arises. Even a mild infection can lead to death. The lack of aldosterone results in the loss of sodium and water by the kidneys, low blood pressure, and possibly severe dehydration. Left untreated, Addison disease can be fatal.

When the level of adrenal cortex hormones is high due to hypersecretion, a person develops **Cushing syndrome**. The excess cortisol results in a tendency toward diabetes mellitus as muscle protein is metabolized and subcutaneous fat is deposited in the midsection. The trunk is obese, while the arms and legs remain a normal size. An excess of aldosterone and reabsorption of sodium and water by the kidneys lead to a basic blood pH and hypertension. The face swells and takes on a moon shape. Masculinization may occur in women because of excess adrenal male sex hormones.

Figure 27.19 **Addison disease.**

Addison disease is characterized by a peculiar bronzing of the skin, particularly noticeable in light-skinned individuals. Note the color of the hands compared with the hand of an individual without the disease.

Pancreas

The **pancreas** is composed of two types of tissue. Exocrine tissue produces and secretes digestive juices that pass through ducts to the small intestine. Endocrine tissue, called the **pancreatic islets** (islets of Langerhans), produces and secretes the hormones *insulin* and *glucagon* directly into the blood (**Fig. 27.20**).

Insulin is secreted when there is a high blood glucose level, which usually occurs just after eating. Insulin stimulates the uptake of glucose by cells, especially liver cells, muscle cells, and adipose tissue cells. In liver and muscle cells, glucose is then stored as glycogen. In muscle cells, glucose supplies energy for ATP production, leading to protein metabolism and muscle contraction. In fat cells, the breakdown of glucose supplies glycerol and acetyl groups for the formation of fat. In these ways, insulin lowers the blood glucose level.

Glucagon is usually secreted between meals, when the blood glucose level is low. The major target tissues of glucagon are the liver and adipose tissue. Glucagon stimulates the liver to break down glycogen to glucose and to use fat and protein in preference to glucose as energy sources. The latter spares glucose and makes more available to enter the blood. In these ways, glucagon raises the blood glucose level.

Diabetes Mellitus

Diabetes mellitus is a fairly common hormonal disease in which the cells of the body do not take up and/or metabolize glucose. Therefore, the cells are in need of glucose, even though there is plenty in the blood. As the blood glucose level rises, water and glucose are excreted in the urine. The loss of water in this way causes the diabetic person to be extremely thirsty.

There are two types of diabetes mellitus. In *type 1 diabetes* (insulin-dependent diabetes), the pancreas is not producing insulin. The condition is believed to be brought on by exposure to an environmental agent, most likely a virus, whose presence causes cytotoxic T cells to destroy the pancreatic islets. The cells turn to the breakdown of protein and fat for energy. The metabolism of fat leads to acidosis (acid blood), which can eventually cause coma and death. As a result, the individual must have daily insulin injections. These injections control

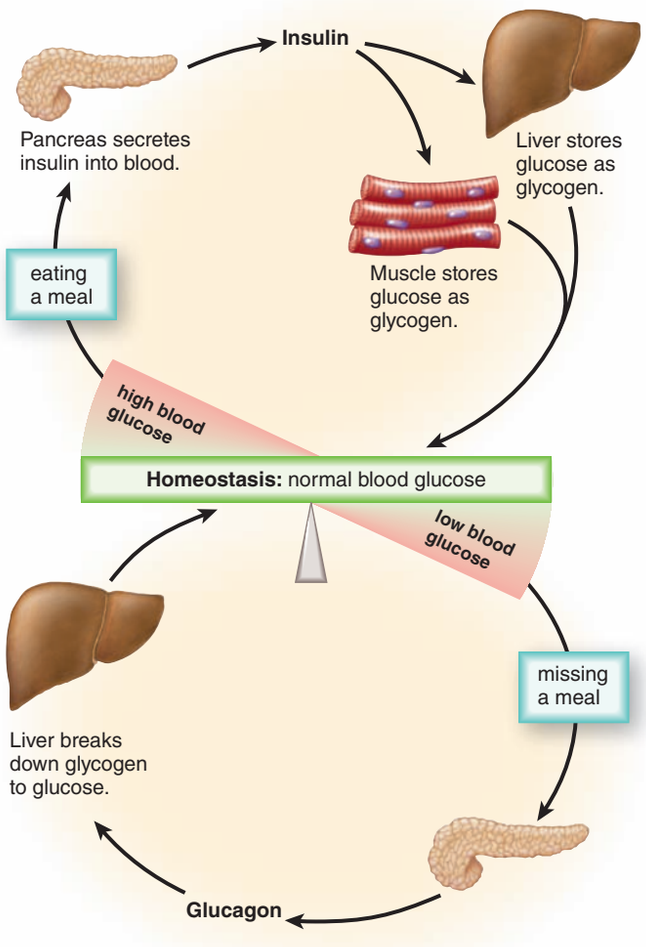
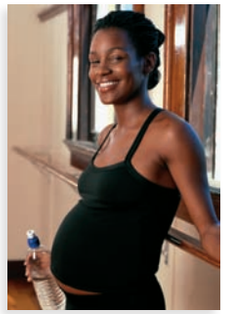


Figure 27.20 **Regulation of blood glucose level.**

Insulin is regulated by negative feedback. WHen blood glucose level is low, insulin is no longer secreted. The effect of insulin is countered by glucagon, which raises the blood glucose level. The two hormones work together to keep the blood glucose level relatively constant.

Connections: Health

What is gestational diabetes, and what causes it?



Women who were not diabetic prior to pregnancy but have high blood glucose levels during pregnancy have gestational diabetes. Gestational diabetes affects a small percentage of pregnant women. This form of diabetes is caused by insulin resistance—body insulin concentration is normal, but the cells fail to respond normally. Gestational diabetes and insulin resistance generally develop later in the pregnancy. Carefully planned meals and exercise often control this form of diabetes, but insulin injections may be necessary. If the woman is not treated, additional glucose crosses the placenta, causing high blood glucose in the fetus. The extra energy in the fetus is stored as fat, resulting in macrosomia, or a "fat" baby. Delivery of a very large baby can be dangerous for both the infant and the mother. Cesarean section is often necessary. Complications after birth are common for these babies. Further, there is a greater risk that the child will become obese and develop type 2 diabetes mellitus later in life. Usually, gestational diabetes goes away after the birth of the child. However, once a woman has experienced gestational diabetes, she has a greater chance of developing it again during future pregnancies. These women also tend to develop type 2 diabetes later in life.

the diabetic symptoms but can still cause inconveniences, since either taking too much insulin or failing to eat regularly can bring on the symptoms of hypoglycemia (low blood sugar). These symptoms include perspiration, pale skin, shallow breathing, and anxiety. Because the brain requires a constant supply of glucose, unconsciousness can result. The treatment is quite simple: Immediate ingestion of a sugar cube or fruit juice can very quickly counteract hypoglycemia.

Of the 25.8 million people who now have diabetes in the United States, most have *type 2 diabetes* (non-insulin-dependent diabetes). This type of diabetes mellitus usually occurs in people of any age who are obese and inactive, as discussed in Chapter 25. The pancreas produces insulin, but the liver and muscle cells do not respond to it in the usual manner. They are said to be insulin resistant. If type 2 diabetes is untreated, the results can be as serious as those of type 1. People with diabetes of either type are prone to blindness, kidney disease, and circulatory disorders. It is usually possible to prevent or at least control type 2 diabetes by adhering to a low-fat and low-sugar diet and exercising regularly.

Table 27.1 summarizes the major organs and glands of the endocrine system, the hormones they produce, and their effects in the body.

Table 27.1 Summary of the Endocrine System

Hormones	Effects in the Body
HYPOTHALAMUS AND POSTERIOR PITUITARY	
Releasing and inhibiting hormones	Control anterior pituitary
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	Released by posterior pituitary; causes water uptake by kidneys
Oxytocin	Released by posterior pituitary; causes uterine contractions
ANTERIOR PITUITARY	
Gonadotropic hormones	Stimulate gonads
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)	Stimulates thyroid
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)	Stimulates adrenal cortex
Prolactin	Causes milk production
Growth hormone (GH)	Causes cell division, protein synthesis, bone growth
THYROID GLAND	
Thyroxine (T_4) and triiodothyronine (T_3)	Increase metabolic rate
Calcitonin	Lowers blood calcium level
PARATHYROID GLANDS	
Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Raises blood calcium level
ADRENAL MEDULLA	
Epinephrine and norepinephrine	Response to emergency situations
ADRENAL CORTEX	
Mineralocorticoids (aldosterone)	Cause kidneys to reabsorb Na^+
Glucocorticoids (cortisol)	Raises blood glucose level
PANCREAS	
Insulin	Causes uptake of glucose by cells and formation of glycogen in liver
Glucagon	Causes liver to break down glycogen

Check Your Progress 27.2

1. Explain how steroid and peptide hormones induce metabolic changes in cells.
2. Explain how the hypothalamus and pituitary gland work to control the endocrine system.
3. Summarize how negative feedback mechanisms are involved in the action of the endocrine system.
4. Summarize the role of each of the endocrine glands.
5. Describe how diabetes represents a failure of the endocrine system.

27.2 CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The endocrine system regulates body functions through the use of hormones.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video	MP3 Files
27.1 How the Sodium-Potassium Pump Works • Nerve Impulse • Action Potential Propagation • Chemical Synapse **27.2** Mechanism of Steroid Hormone Action • Peptide Hormone Action • Second Messengers • Hormonal Communication • Mechanism of Thyroxine Action • Action of Glucocorticoid Hormone	**27.1** Making Brain Cells • Caffeine Withdrawl • Meth and the Brain • Brain Bank • Brain Surgery • Winter Mood • Apples for Alzheimers	**27.1** Organization of the Nervous System • Synapses • The Cerebrum • Organization of the Nervous System **27.2** Endocrine System

3D Animation
Neural Transmission

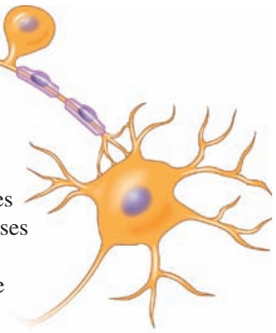
McGraw-Hill's 3D animation "Neural Transmission" provides a dynamic exploration of the key aspects of how neurons function.

SUMMARIZE

27.1 Nervous Systems

The **nervous system** and **endocrine system** work to control the activities of the other systems of the body. The nervous system is organized into a **central nervous system (CNS)** and a **peripheral nervous system (PNS).**

Neurons



- A **neuron** is composed of a **cell body,** an **axon,** and **dendrites.** Only axons conduct nerve impulses. Axons may be covered by a **myelin sheath,** with small gaps called the **nodes of Ranvier.**
- Types: **sensory neurons** take nerve impulses to the CNS; **interneurons** take nerve impulses between neurons of the CNS; and **motor neurons** take nerve impulses away from the CNS.

The Nerve Impulse

- The **nerve impulse,** or **action potential,** moves information along the neuron. The sodium-potassium pump transports Na^+ out of the axon and K^+ into the axon. The inside of the axon has a negative charge; the outside has a positive charge.
- During the nerve impulse, there is a reversal of charge as Na^+ flows in, then a return to the previous charge difference as K^+ flows out of an axon.
- The nerve impulse is much faster in myelinated axons, because the impulse jumps from node to node.

The Synapse

- The **synapse** is a region of close proximity between an axon terminal and the next neuron (CNS), or between an axon terminal and a muscle cell (PNS).
- A nerve impulse causes the release of a **neurotransmitter** (excitatory or inhibitory) into the synaptic cleft. **Integration** of information occurs within the synaptic cleft.
- Neurotransmitters are ordinarily removed quickly from the **synaptic cleft.**
- Many drugs affect the action of neurotransmitters.

The Central Nervous System

The central nervous system consists of the brain and spinal cord. These are connected by tracts, long connections of interneurons.

The Brain

- The cerebrum functions in sensation, reasoning, learning and memory, language, and speech. The **cerebral cortex** has a **primary sensory area** in the parietal lobe, which receives sensory information from each part of the body, and a **primary motor area** in the frontal lobe, which sends out motor commands to skeletal muscles. Association areas, such as the **prefrontal area,** carry on integration.
- In the diencephalon, the **hypothalamus** helps control homeostasis; the **thalamus** specializes in sending sensory input to the cerebrum.
- The **cerebellum** primarily coordinates skeletal muscle contractions.
- In the **brain stem,** the **medulla oblongata** has centers for vital functions, such as breathing and the heartbeat, and helps control the internal organs. The midbrain contains visual and auditory areas, and the **pons** controls breathing.

The Limbic System

The **limbic system** blends higher functions into a united whole. The hippocampus and amygdala have roles in learning and **memory** and appear to be affected in **Alzheimer disease.**

The Peripheral Nervous System

The peripheral nervous system (PNS) connects the sensory neurons with the CNS. It contains nerves that are organized as ganglions. Examples of nerves are cranial nerves and spinal nerves. The PNS is divided into the

- **Somatic system: Reflexes** (automatic responses) involve a sensory receptor, a sensory neuron, interneurons in the spinal cord, and a motor neuron.
- **Autonomic system:** The **sympathetic division** is active during times of stress, and the **parasympathetic division** is active during times of relaxation. Both divisions control the same internal organs.

27.2 Endocrine System

Endocrine glands secrete **hormones** into the bloodstream for distribution to target organs or tissues. Hormones are classified as either **steroid hormones** or **peptide hormones.**

Major Organs and Glands

The major functions of the hormones secreted by these glands were listed in Table 27.1.

- Hypothalamus and pituitary gland: Together these control the internal environment of the body. The hypothalamus links the endocrine and nervous systems. The pituitary gland contains two parts, the **anterior pituitary** and the **posterior pituitary.** These release hormones that regulate the other endocrine glands, usually by negative feedback mechanisms.
- Thyroid and parathyroid glands: The **thyroid gland** regulates metabolism. Hyper- or hypothyroidism may result in goiter or exophthalmos. The thyroid and **parathyroid glands** are involved in calcium homeostasis. Insufficient parathyroid gland activity may result in **tetany.**
- Adrenal glands: The adrenal glands consist of the **adrenal cortex** and the **adrenal medulla.** Problems with hormones secreted by the adrenal cortex may result in **Addison disease** and **Cushing syndrome.**
- Pancreas: The pancreas is both an exocine and an endocrine gland. The **pancreatic islets** contain endocrine cells that secrete the hormones insulin and glucagon, both of which are involved in glucose homeostasis. **Diabetes mellitus** is a disease caused by a failure of glucose homeostasis.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The nervous system controls the functions of other organs and organ systems in the body. The endocrine system, controlled by the nervous system, regulates the body's internal environment.

The nervous system uses nerve impulses and chemical signals to control the functions of the rest of the body.

The endocrine system regulates body functions through the use of hormones.

For more information about the functions of the nervous and endocrine systems, see the following discussions:

Section 22.3 explains how negative feedback mechanisms help maintain homeostasis.

Section 24.1 explains how the breathing center in the brain regulates respiration.

Section 28.1 examines the sensory systems that provide input to the central nervous system.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

27.1 Nervous Systems

1. The sympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system will
   a. increase heart rate and digestive activity.
   b. decrease heart rate and digestive activity.
   c. cause pupils to constrict.
   d. None of these are correct.
2. When the action potential begins, sodium gates open, allowing Na^+ to cross the membrane. Now the polarity changes to
   a. negative outside and positive inside.
   b. positive outside and negative inside.
   c. neutral outside and positive inside.
   d. There is no difference in charge between outside and inside.
3. Transmission of the nerve impulse across a synapse is accomplished by the
   a. movement of Na^+ and K^+.
   b. release of a neurotransmitter by a dendrite.
   c. release of a neurotransmitter by an axon.
   d. release of a neurotransmitter by a cell body.
   e. All of these are correct.
4. The autonomic system has two divisions, called the
   a. CNS and PNS.
   b. somatic and skeletal systems.
   c. efferent and afferent systems.
   d. sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions.

5. The limbic system
   a. involves portions of the cerebral lobes and the diencephalon.
   b. is responsible for our deepest emotions, including pleasure, rage, and fear.
   c. is a system necessary to memory storage.
   d. is not directly involved in language and speech.
   e. All of these are correct.
6. The _____ regulates heartbeat, breathing, and blood pressure.
   a. cerebrum
   b. diencephalon
   c. cerebellum
   d. brain stem

27.2 Endocrine System

7. Unlike the nervous system, the endocrine system
   a. uses chemical signals as a means of communication.
   b. helps maintain equilibrium.
   c. sends messages to target organs.
   d. changes the metabolism of cells.
8. Both the adrenal medulla and the adrenal cortex are
   a. endocrine glands.
   b. in the same organ.
   c. involved in our response to stress.
   d. All of these are correct.
9. PTH causes the blood level of calcium to _____, and calcitonin causes it to _____.
   a. increase, not change
   b. increase, decrease
   c. decrease, also decrease
   d. decrease, increase
   e. not change, increase
10. Type 1 diabetes is thought to result from a virus that
    a. interferes with gene expression in pancreatic cells.
    b. causes T cells to destroy the pancreatic islets.
    c. breaks down insulin.
    d. prevents the secretion of insulin by the pancreatic islets.
11. The _____ acts as the link between the nervous system and the endocrine system.
    a. parathyroid gland
    b. hypothalamus
    c. cerebellum
    d. pancreas
12. Cushing syndrome and Addison disease are associated with the
    a. thyroid.
    b. adrenal glands.
    c. pancreas.
    d. anterior pituitary.

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Recent research indicates that Parkinson disease damages the sympathetic division of the peripheral nervous system. One test for sympathetic division function, called the Valsalva maneuver, requires the patient to blow against resistance. A functional nervous system will compensate for the decrease in blood output from the heart by constricting blood vessels. How do you suppose Parkinson patients respond to the Valsalva maneuver? How does this relate to a common condition in Parkinson patients called orthostatic hypotension, in which blood pressure falls suddenly when the person stands up, leading to dizziness and fainting?
2. Researchers have been trying to determine the reason for a dramatic rise in type 2 diabetes in recent decades. A sedentary lifestyle and poor eating habits certainly contribute to the risk of developing the disease. In addition, however, some researchers have observed a connection between childhood vaccinations and type 1 diabetes. Epidemiological data from countries that have recently initiated mass immunization programs indicate that the incidence of type 1 diabetes has increased there as well. What might be the connection between vaccination and diabetes?
3. Scientists studying orangutans on the Indonesian islands of Borneo and Sumatra recently found that the subspecies inhabiting the food-scarce region of Borneo have smaller brains than those on Sumatra, where food is abundant. From this observation, what can we infer about the relationship between brain size and diet in orangutan evolution?
4. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved the use of human growth hormone (hGH) to treat "short stature." This decision implies that short stature is a medical condition with a legitimate need to be treated. In this case, medical care is not treating a disease but changing a feature of an otherwise healthy person. Proponents of the FDA decision say that administering hGH to short people will help them avoid discrimination and live a more normal life in a world designed for taller people. Opponents say that this decision may lead to slippery-slope scenarios in which medical treatments that make us smarter or faster are assumed to make us better. Do you think hGH should be used to "cure shortness"?
5. At the other end of the life span, hGH has been widely advertised as a cure for aging. Levels of hGH naturally decline with age, and there is evidence that treating older adults with hGH boosts muscle mass and reduces body fat. However, the only effective way to administer hGH is by injection; the hGH pills hyped on numerous websites do not work. Injections of hGH are by prescription only and very expensive, around $1,000 a month. Furthermore, hGH therapy can have undesirable side effects, such as elevated blood sugar, fluid retention, and joint pain. Nevertheless, there is keen interest in hGH therapy, not only from those who wish to delay or avoid the effects of aging but also from athletes who wish to improve their performance. Should the physical decline of aging be accepted, or should we try to maintain a youthful body using hGH?

28

Sensory Input and Motor Output

OUTLINE

28.1 The Senses 537

28.2 The Motor Systems 545

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Figure 5.4 What are the steps in the ATP cycle?

Figure 6.4 How does color relate to the wavelength of light?

Section 27.1 What areas of the brain are responsible for integrating sensory input and generating motor output?

100-Meter Dash World Record Holder

At the 2012 Summer Olympics, Usain Bolt set a new Olympic record of 9.63 seconds in the 100-meter dash. However, this was not his personal best. In Berlin in 2009, Usain set a world record of 9.58 seconds for the 100-meter dash. When Usain is running at these incredible speeds, his brain is coordinating sensory input from his eyes, ears, and internal sensors (the sensory input) to maximize the efforts of his skeletal and muscular systems (the motor output). Like Usain, we all perform these functions daily, when we are walking to class, exercising, or even working on the computer.

The senses, skeletal system, and muscular system all contribute to homeostasis. Our senses provide us with information about the external environment. Aside from giving our bodies shape and protecting our internal organs, the skeleton serves as a storage area for inorganic calcium and produces blood cells. The skeleton also protects internal organs while supporting the body against the pull of gravity. While contributing to body movement, the skeletal muscles give off heat, which warms the body. In this chapter, we will explore how the senses provide information to the brain, as well as how the skeletal and muscular systems are involved in movement and support.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How do the senses provide information to the brain?
2. How does the nervous system specifically control the muscular system?
3. How do the muscular and skeletal systems allow for movement?

28.1 The Senses

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize how the human senses of taste and smell work.
2. Describe the structures of the human ear and their functions.
3. Differentiate between rotational and gravitational equilibrium and the organs responsible for each.
4. Describe the structures of the human eye and their functions.
5. Explain the purpose of cutaneous receptors and proprioceptors.

All living organisms respond to stimuli. Stimuli are environmental signals that tell us about the external environment or the internal environment. In Chapter 21, you learned that plants often respond to external stimuli, such as light, by changing their growth pattern. An animal's response often results in motion. Complex animals rely on sensory receptors to provide information to the central nervous system (brain and spinal cord), which integrates sensory input before directing a motor response (**Fig. 28.1**). Section 28.2 will explore how the muscular and skeletal systems are involved in the motor response.

Sense organs, as a rule, are specialized to receive one kind of stimulus. The eyes ordinarily respond to light, ears to sound waves, pressure receptors to pressure, and chemoreceptors to chemical molecules. Sensory receptors transform the stimulus into nerve impulses that reach a particular section of the cerebral cortex. Those from the eye reach the visual areas, and those from the ears reach the auditory areas. Before sensory receptors initiate nerve signals, they also carry out **integration,** the summing up of signals. One type of integration is called **sensory adaptation,** a decrease in response to a stimulus. We have all had the experience of smelling an odor when we first enter a room and then later not being aware of it. When sensory adaptation occurs, sensory receptors send fewer impulses to the brain. Without these impulses, the sensation of the stimuli is decreased. However, the brain, not the sensory receptor, is ultimately responsible for sensation and perception, and each part of the brain interprets impulses in only one way. For example, if by accident the photoreceptors of the eye are stimulated by pressure and not light, the brain causes us to see "stars" or other visual patterns.

Chemical Senses

The fundamental functions of sensory receptors include helping animals stay safe, find food, and find mates. **Chemoreceptors** give us the ability to detect chemicals in the environment, which is believed to be our most primitive sense. Chemoreceptors occur almost universally in animals. For example, they are present all over the bodies of planarians (flatworms) but concentrated on the auricles at the sides of the head. Male moths have receptors for a sex attractant on their antennae. The receptors on the antennae of the male silkworm moth are so sensitive that only 40 out of 40,000 receptor proteins need to be

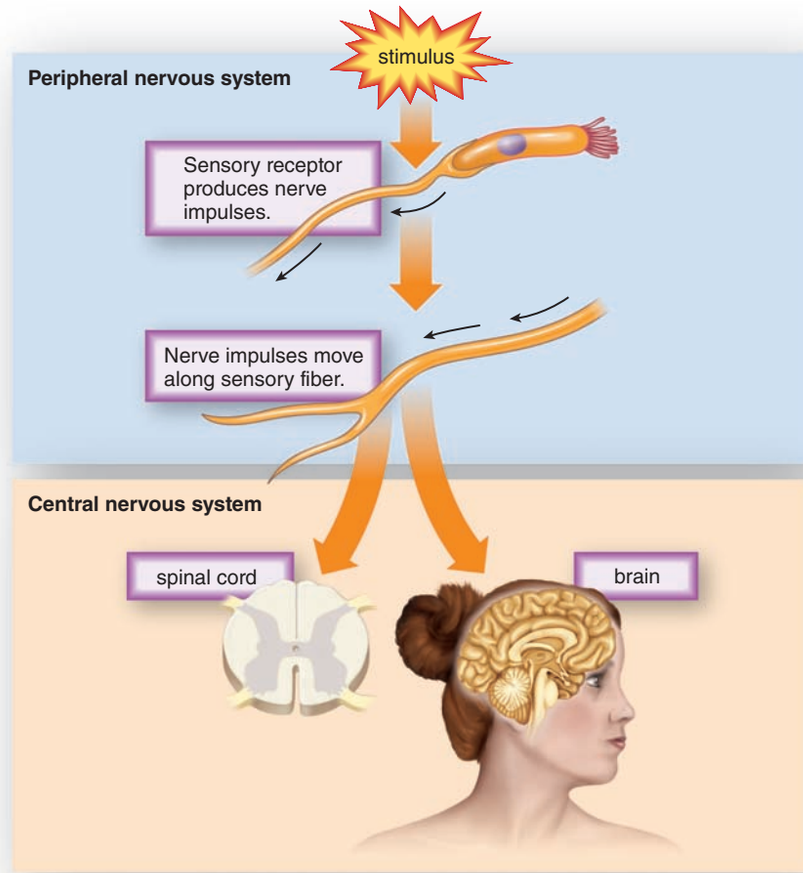


Figure 28.1 Sensory input.

After detecting a stimulus, sensory receptors initiate nerve impulses within the peripheral nervous system (PNS). These impulses give the central nervous system (CNS) information about the external and internal environments. The CNS integrates all incoming information and then initiates a motor response to the stimulus.

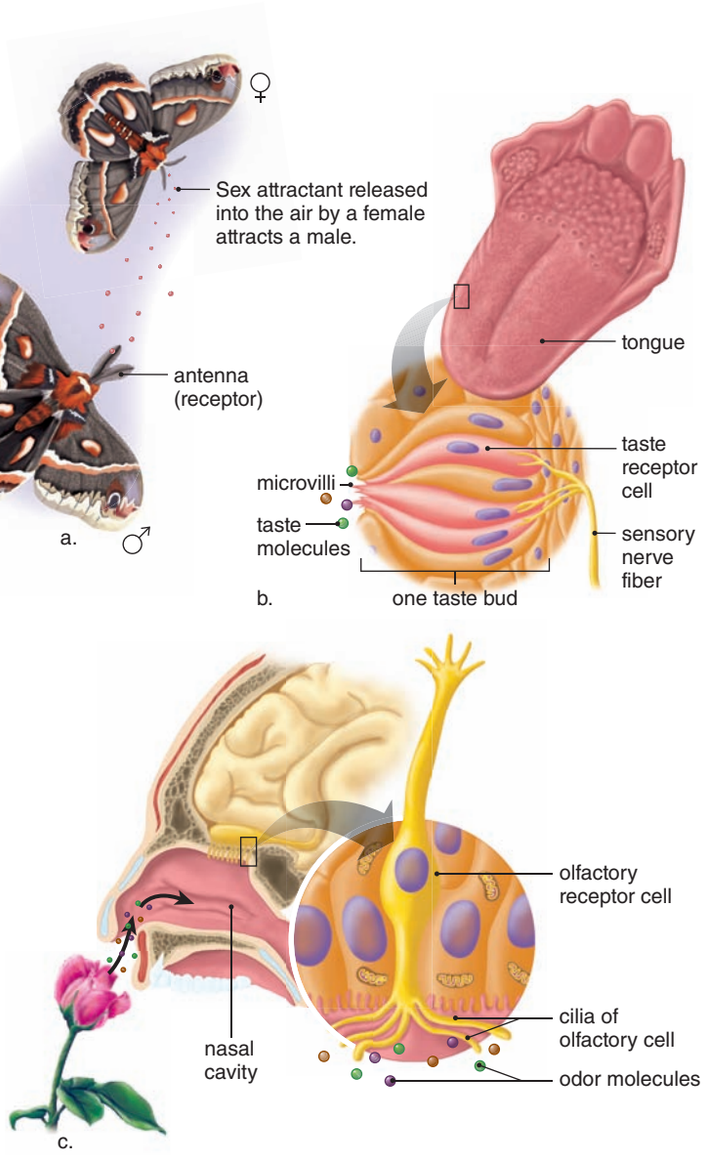


Figure 28.2 **Chemoreceptors.**

Chemoreceptors are common in the animal kingdom. **a.** Male moths have receptor proteins on their antennae for a sex attractant released by the female. **b.** Humans have receptor proteins for taste on the microvilli of taste receptor cells and (**c**) receptor proteins for smell on the cilia of olfactory receptor cells.

activated in order for the male to respond to a chemical released by the female (**Fig. 28.2*a***). Other insects, such as the housefly, have chemoreceptors largely on their feet—a fly tastes with its feet instead of its mouth. In mammals, the receptors for taste are located in the mouth, and the receptors for smell are in the nose.

Video Sex and the Senses

Taste and Smell

In humans, *taste buds,* located primarily on the tongue, contain taste receptor cells, and the nose contains olfactory receptor cells (Fig. 28.2*b,c*). Receptor proteins for chemicals are located on the microvilli of taste receptor cells and on the cilia of olfactory receptor cells. When molecules bind to these receptor proteins, nerve impulses are generated in sensory nerve fibers that go to the brain. When they reach the appropriate cortical areas, they are interpreted as taste and smell, respectively.

MP3 Taste and Smell

There are at least five primary types of tastes: bitter, sour, salty, sweet, and umami (Japanese for "savory" or "delicious"). Foods rich in certain amino acids, such as the common seasoning monosodium glutamate (MSG), as well as certain flavors of cheese, beef broth, and some seafood, produce the taste of umami. Taste buds for each primary taste are located throughout the tongue but may be concentrated in particular regions. A particular food can stimulate more than one of these types of taste buds. In this way, the response of taste buds can result in a range of sweet, sour, salty, umami, and bitter tastes. The brain appears to survey the overall pattern of incoming sensory impulses and take a "weighted average" of their taste messages as the perceived taste. Similarly, an odor contains many odor molecules, which activate a characteristic combination of receptor proteins. When this complex information is communicated to the cerebral cortex, we know we have smelled a rose—or an onion!

Our senses of taste and smell have evolved to meet our physiological needs. Foods that are rich in nutrients we require, such as fruits, have a favorable taste. The smell of food cooking triggers a reflex that starts the release of digestive juices. A revolting or repulsive substance in the mouth can initiate the gag reflex or even vomiting. Smell is even more important to our survival. Smells associated with danger, such as smoke, can trigger the fight-or-flight reflex. Unpleasant smells can cause us to sneeze or choke.

Have you ever noticed that a certain aroma vividly brings to mind a certain person or place? A person's perfume may remind you of someone else, or the smell of boxwood may remind you of your grandfather's farm. The olfactory bulbs have direct connections with the limbic system and its centers for emotions and memory. One researcher showed that, when subjects smelled an orange while viewing a painting, they not only remembered the painting when asked about it later but also had many deep feelings about it.

Hearing and Balance

The human ear has two sensory functions: hearing and balance (equilibrium). The sensory receptors for both of these consist of *hair cells* with long microvilli called stereocilia. These microvilli, unlike those of taste cells, are sensitive to mechanical stimulation. Therefore, they are termed **mechanoreceptors.**

The similarity of the sensory receptors for balance and hearing and their presence in the same organ suggest an evolutionary relationship between them. In fact, the sense organs of the mammalian ear may have evolved from a type of sense organ in fishes.

Hearing

Most invertebrates cannot hear. Some arthropods, including insects, do have sound receptors but they are quite simple. In insects, the ear consists of a pair of air pockets, each enclosed by a membrane, called the tympanic membrane, that passes sound vibrations to sensory receptors. The human ear has a tympanic membrane also, but it is between the outer ear and middle ear (**Fig. 28.3*a***). The outer ear collects sound waves that cause the tympanic membrane to move back and forth (vibrate) ever so slightly. Three tiny bones in the middle ear (the ossicles) amplify the sound about 20 times as it moves from one to the other. The last of the ossicles (the stapes) strikes the membrane of the oval window, causing it to vibrate; in this way, the pressure is passed to a fluid within the hearing portion of the inner ear called the cochlea (Fig. 28.3*b*). The term

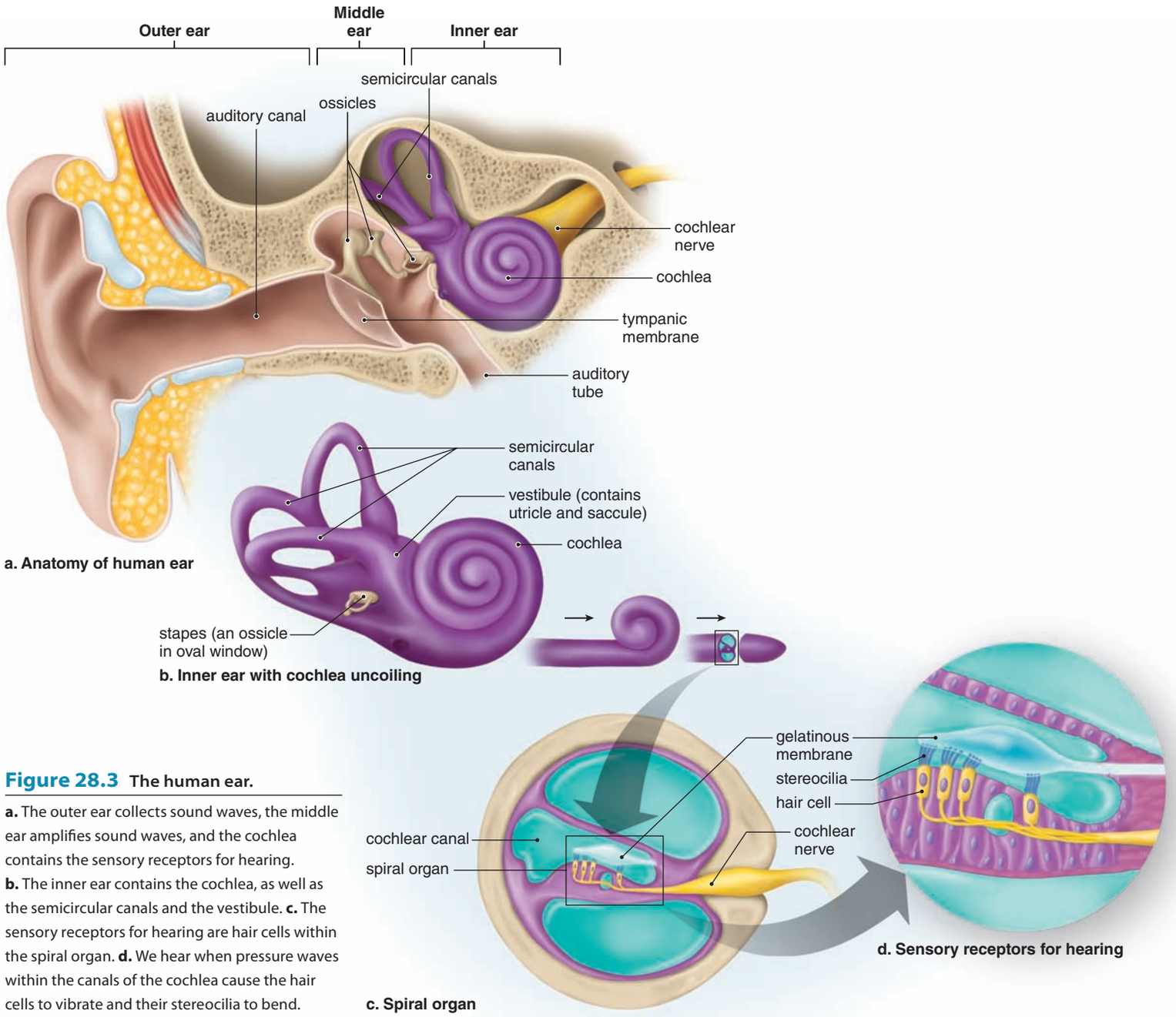


Figure 28.3 The human ear.

a. The outer ear collects sound waves, the middle ear amplifies sound waves, and the cochlea contains the sensory receptors for hearing. **b.** The inner ear contains the cochlea, as well as the semicircular canals and the vestibule. **c.** The sensory receptors for hearing are hair cells within the spiral organ. **d.** We hear when pressure waves within the canals of the cochlea cause the hair cells to vibrate and their stereocilia to bend.

cochlea means "snail shell." Specifically, the sensory receptors of hearing are located in the cochlear canal of the cochlea. The sensory receptors for hearing are hair cells whose stereocilia are embedded in a gelatinous membrane. Collectively, they are called the *spiral organ* or *organ of Corti* (Fig. 28.3*c,d*).

The outer ear and middle ear, which collect and amplify sound waves, are filled with air. The auditory tube relieves pressure in the middle ear. But the inner ear is filled with fluid; therefore, fluid pressure waves actually stimulate the spiral organ. When the stapes strikes the membrane of the oval window, pressure waves cause the hair cells to move up and down, and the stereocilia of the hair cells embedded in the gelatinous membrane bend. The hair cells of the spiral organ synapse with the cochlear nerve, and when their stereocilia bend, nerve impulses begin in the cochlear nerve and travel to the brain stem. When these impulses reach the auditory areas of the cerebral cortex, they are interpreted as sound.

Each part of the spiral organ is sensitive to different wave frequencies, or *pitch*. Near the tip, the spiral organ responds to low pitches, such as the sound of a tuba; near the base, it responds to higher pitches, such as a bell or whistle. The nerve fibers from each region along the length of the spiral organ lead to slightly different areas in the brain. The pitch sensation we experience depends on which region of the spiral organ vibrates and which area of the brain is stimulated.

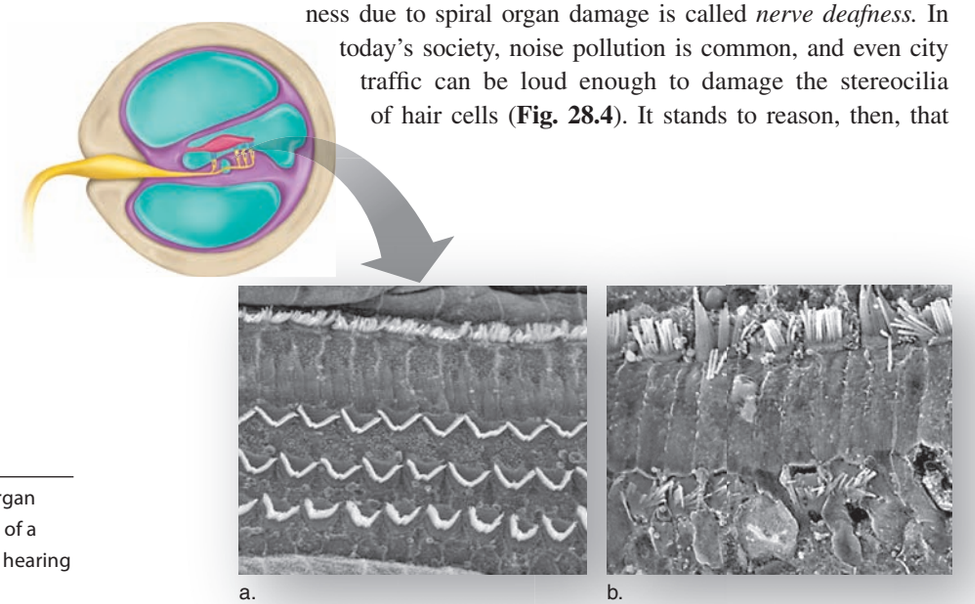
Volume is a function of the amplitude of sound waves. Loud noises cause the spiral organ to vibrate to a greater extent. The brain interprets the resulting increased stimulation as volume. It is believed that the brain interprets the *tone* of a sound based on the distribution of the stimulated hair cells.

Animation
Effects of Sound Waves on Cochlear Structures

MP3
The Sense of Hearing and Equilibrium

Hearing Loss Especially when we are young, the middle ear is subject to infections that can lead to hearing impairment. It is quite common for youngsters to have "tubes" put into the tympanic membrane to allow the middle ear to drain, in an effort to prevent this type of hearing loss. The mobility of ossicles decreases with age, and if bone grows over the stapes, the only remedy is implantation of an artificial stapes that can move.

Deafness due to middle ear damage is called *conduction deafness.* Deafness due to spiral organ damage is called *nerve deafness.* In today's society, noise pollution is common, and even city traffic can be loud enough to damage the stereocilia of hair cells (**Fig. 28.4**). It stands to reason, then, that



a. b.

Figure 28.4 **Effect of noise on hearing.**

a. Normal hair cells in the spiral organ of a guinea pig. **b.** Spiral organ damaged by 24-hour exposure to a noise level equivalent to that of a heavy-metal rock concert. Damaged cells cannot be replaced, so hearing is permanently impaired.

frequently attending rock concerts, constantly playing a stereo loudly, or using earphones at high volume can also damage hearing. The first hint of danger can be temporary hearing loss, a "full" feeling in the ears, muffled hearing, or tinnitus (ringing in the ears). If exposure to noise is unavoidable, noise-reduction earmuffs are available, as are earplugs made from compressible, spongelike material. These earplugs are not the same as those worn for swimming, and they should not be worn interchangeably. Finally, you should be aware that some medicines may damage the ability to hear. Anyone taking anticancer drugs, such as cisplatin, and certain antibiotics, such as streptomycin, should be especially careful to protect the ears from loud noises.

Balance

Humans have two senses of balance (equilibrium): rotational and gravitational. We are able to detect the rotational (angular) movement of the head as well as the straight-line movement of the head with respect to gravity.

Rotational equilibrium involves the semicircular canals (see Fig. 28.3*b*). In the base of each canal, hair cells have stereocilia embedded within a gelatinous membrane (**Fig. 28.5*a***). Because there are three semicircular canals, each responds to head movement in a different plane of space. As fluid within a semicircular canal flows over and displaces the gelatinous membrane, the stereocilia of the hair cells bend, and the pattern of impulses carried to the central nervous system (CNS) changes. These data, usually supplemented by vision, tell the brain how the head is moving. *Vertigo* is dizziness and a sensation of rotation. It is possible to bring on a feeling of vertigo by spinning rapidly and stopping suddenly. Now the person feels like the room is spinning because of sudden stimulation of stereocilia in the semicircular canals.

Gravitational equilibrium refers to the position of the head in relation to gravity. It depends on the *utricle* and *saccule*, two membranous sacs located in the inner ear (see Fig. 28.3*b*). Both of these sacs also contain hair cells with stereocilia in a gelatinous membrane (Fig. 28.5*b*). Calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) granules, calledotoliths, rest on this membrane. When the head moves forward or back, up or down, the otoliths are displaced and the membrane moves, bending the stereocilia of the hair cells. This movement alters the frequency of nerve impulses to the CNS. These data, usually supplemented by vision, tell the brain the direction of the movement of the head.

MP3 The Sense of Hearing and Equilibrium

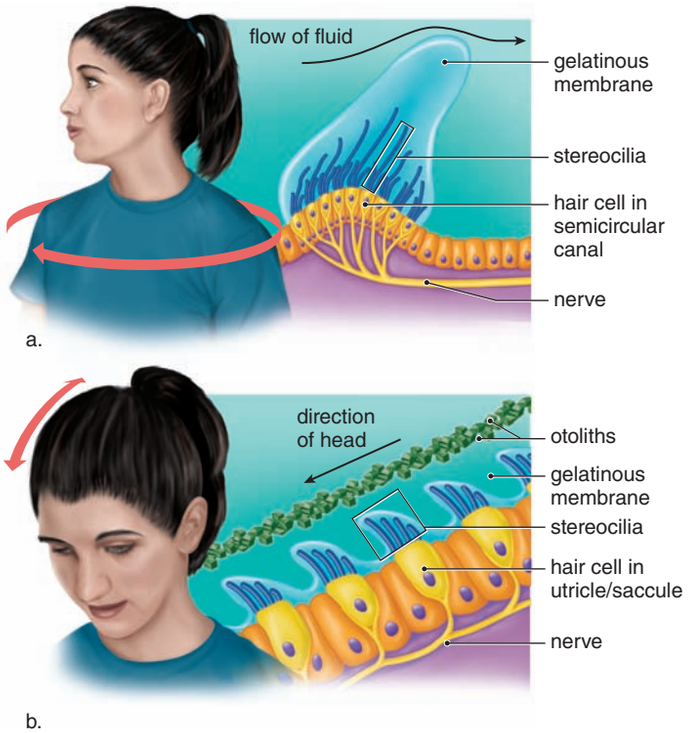


Figure 28.5 Sense of balance in humans.

a. Sensory receptors for rotational equilibrium. When the head rotates, the gelatinous membrane is displaced, bending the stereocilia.
b. Sensory receptors for gravitational equilibrium. When the head bends, otoliths are displaced, causing the gelatinous membrane to sag and the stereocilia to bend.

Similar Receptors in Other Animals

Gravitational equilibrium organs, called *statocysts*, are found in several types of invertebrates, including cnidarians, molluscs, and crustaceans. These organs give information only about the position of the head; they are not involved in the sensation of movement (**Fig. 28.6*a***).

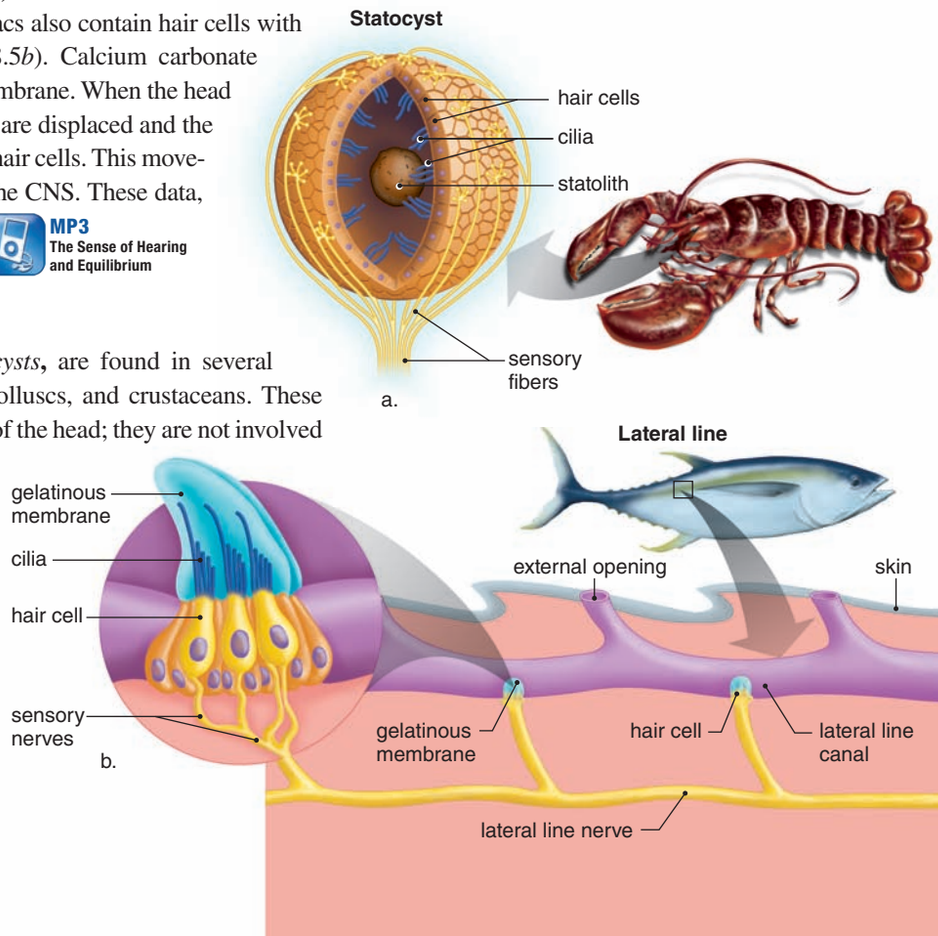


Figure 28.6 Sensory receptors in other animals.

a. Invertebrates use statocysts to determine their position. When the statolith stops moving, cilia of the nearest hair cells are stimulated, telling the position of the head. **b.** The lateral line of fishes is not for hearing or balance, instead it is for knowing the location of other fishes.

When the head stops moving, a small particle called a statolith stimulates the cilia of the closest hair cells, and these cilia generate impulses, indicating the position of the head.

The *lateral line* system of fishes uses sense organs similar to those in the human inner ear (Fig. 28.6*b*). In bony fishes, the system consists of sense organs located within a canal that has openings to the outside. As you might expect, the sense organ is a collection of hair cells with cilia embedded in a gelatinous membrane. Water currents and pressure waves from nearby objects cause the membrane and the cilia of the hair cells to bend. Thereafter, the hair cells initiate nerve impulses that go to the brain. Fishes use these data not for hearing or balance but to locate other fish, including predators, prey, and mates.

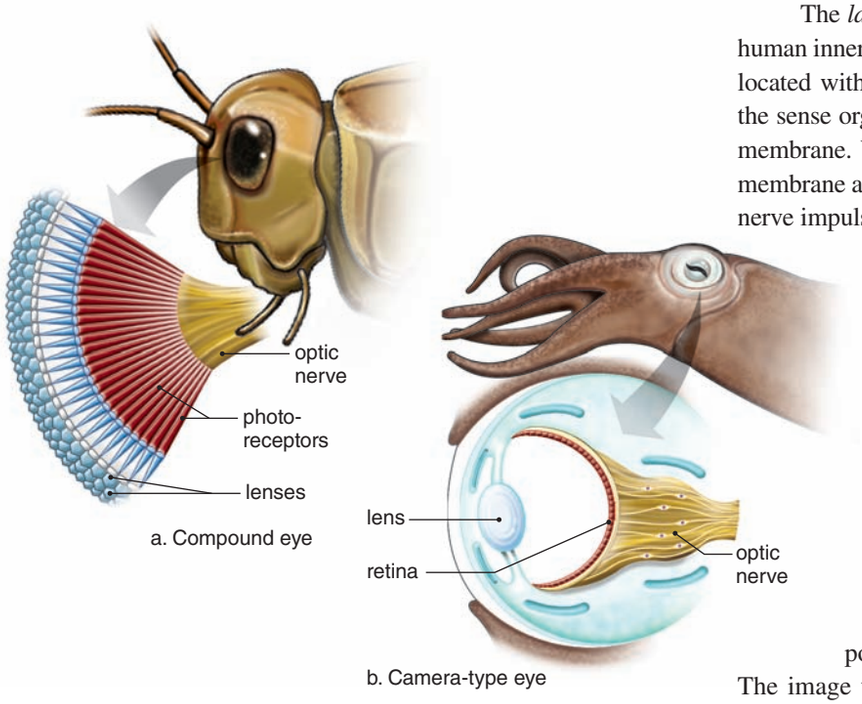


Figure 28.7 **Eyes.**

a. A compound eye has several visual units. Each visual unit has a lens that focuses light onto photoreceptor cells. **b.** A camera-type eye has one lens that focuses light onto a retina containing many photoreceptors.

Vision

Sensory receptors that are sensitive to light are called **photoreceptors.** In planarians, eyespots allow these animals to determine only the direction of light. Other photoreceptors form actual images. Image-forming eyes provide information about an object, including how far away it is. Such detailed information is invaluable to an animal.

Among invertebrates, arthropods have *compound eyes* composed of many, independent visual units, each of which possesses a lens to focus light rays on photoreceptors (**Fig. 28.7*a***). The image that results from all the stimulated visual units is crude because the small size of compound eyes limits the number of visual units, which still might number as many as 28,000.

Vertebrates (including humans) and certain molluscs, such as the squid and the octopus, have a *camera-type eye* (Fig. 28.7*b*). A single lens focuses light on photoreceptors, which number in the millions and are closely packed together within a retina. Since molluscs and vertebrates are not closely related, the camera-type eye evolved independently in each group.

Insects have color vision, but they make use of a slightly shorter range of the electromagnetic spectrum compared with humans. However, they can see the longest of the ultraviolet rays, and this enables them to be especially sensitive to the reproductive parts of flowers, which have particular ultraviolet patterns. Some fishes and most reptiles are believed to have color vision, but among mammals, only humans and other primates have expansive color vision. It would seem, then, that this trait was adaptive for a diurnal habit (being active during the day), which accounts for its retention in only a few mammals.

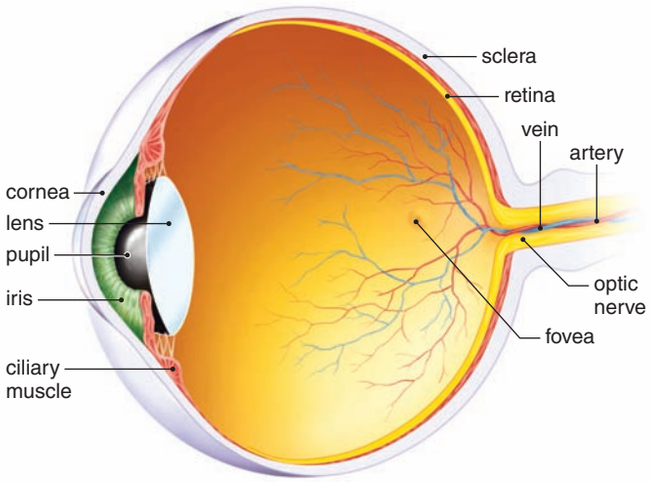


Figure 28.8 **The human eye.**

Light passes through the cornea and through the pupil (a hole in the iris) and is focused by the lens on the retina, which houses the photoreceptors.

The Human Eye

When looking straight ahead, each of our eyes views the same object from a slightly different angle. This slight displacement of the images permits *binocular vision,* the ability to perceive three-dimensional images and to sense depth. Like the human ear, the human eye has numerous parts, many of which are involved in preparing the stimulus for the sensory receptors. In the case of the ear, sound wave energy is magnified before it reaches the sensory receptors. In the case of the eye, light rays are brought to a focus on the photoreceptors within the *retina.* As shown in **Figure 28.8,** the *cornea* and especially the *lens* are involved in focusing light rays on the photoreceptors. The *iris*, the colored part of the eye, regulates the amount of light that enters the eye by way of the *pupil.* The retina generates nerve impulses, which are sent to the visual part of the cerebral cortex; from this information, the brain forms an image of the object.

The shape of the lens is controlled by the ciliary muscles. When we view a distant object, the lens remains relatively flat, but when we view a near object, the lens rounds up. With normal aging, the lens loses its ability to accommodate for near objects; therefore, many people need reading glasses when they reach middle age. Aging, or possibly exposure to the sun, also makes the lens subject to cataracts; the lens becomes opaque, incapable of transmitting light rays. Currently, surgery is the only viable treatment for cataracts.

Video
Artificial Eye

Photoreceptors of the Eye

Figure 28.9 illustrates the structure of the photoreceptors in the human eye, which are called *rods* and *cones.* Both types of photoreceptors contain a visual pigment similar to that found in all types of eyes throughout the animal kingdom. The visual pigment in rods is a deep-purple pigment called rhodopsin. *Rhodopsin* is a complex molecule made up of the protein opsin and a light-absorbing molecule called *retinal,* which is a derivative of vitamin A. When a rod absorbs light, rhodopsin splits into opsin and retinal, leading to a cascade of reactions that ends in the generation of nerve impulses. Rods are very sensitive to light and therefore are suited to night vision. (Because carrots are rich in vitamin A, it is true that eating carrots can improve your night vision.) Rod cells are plentiful throughout the retina; therefore, they also provide us with peripheral vision and the perception of motion.

The cones, on the other hand, are located primarily in a part of the retina called the *fovea.* Cones are activated by bright light; they allow us to detect the fine detail and color of an object. Color vision depends on three different kinds of cones, which contain pigments called B (blue), G (green), and R (red) pigments. Each pigment is made up of retinal and opsin, but a slight difference in the opsin structure of each accounts for their specific absorption patterns. Various combinations of cones are believed to be stimulated by in-between shades of color.

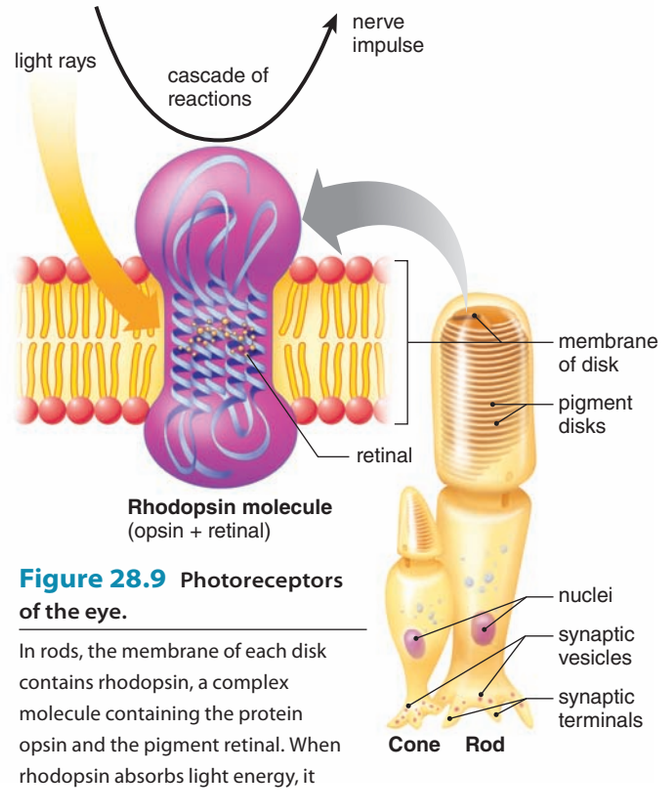


Figure 28.9 Photoreceptors of the eye.

In rods, the membrane of each disk contains rhodopsin, a complex molecule containing the protein opsin and the pigment retinal. When rhodopsin absorbs light energy, it splits, releasing opsin, which sets in motion a cascade of reactions that ends in nerve impulses.

Retina The retina has three layers of cells, and light has to penetrate through the first two layers to reach the photoreceptors (**Fig. 28.10**). The intermediate cells of the middle layer process and relay visual information from the photoreceptors to the ganglion cells that have axons forming the optic nerve. The sensitivity of cones versus rods is mirrored by how directly they connect to ganglion cells. Information from several hundred rods may converge on a single ganglion cell, while cones show very little convergence. As signals pass through the layers of the retina, integration occurs. Integration improves the overall contrast and quality of the information sent to the brain, which uses the information to form an image of the object.

MP3
Sense of Vision

No rods and cones occur where the optic nerve exits the retina. Therefore, no vision is possible in this area. You can prove this to yourself by putting a very small dot to the right of center on a piece of paper. Close your left eye; then use your right hand to move the paper slowly toward your right eye while you look straight ahead. The dot will disappear at one point—this point is your *blind spot.*

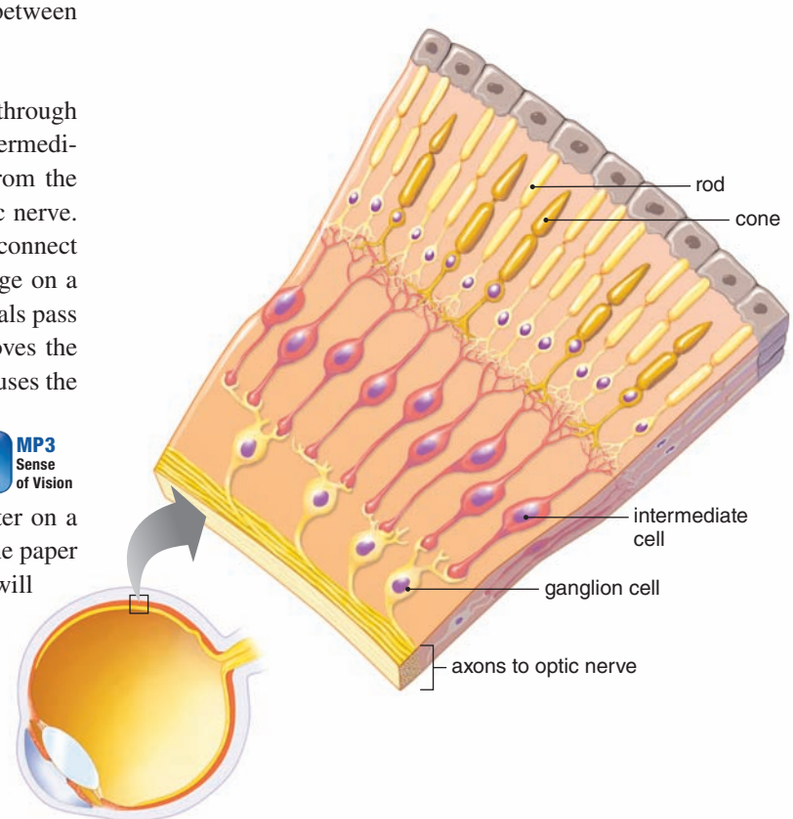


Figure 28.10 The retina.

The retina contains a layer of rods and cones, a layer of intermediate cells, and a layer of ganglion cells. Integration of signals occurs at the synapses between the layers, and much processing occurs before nerve impulses are sent to the brain.

Connections: Health

What is LASIK surgery?

LASIK, which stands for *laser in-situ keratomileusis*, is a quick and painless procedure that involves the use of a laser to permanently change the shape of the cornea. During the LASIK procedure, a small flap of tissue (the conjunctiva) is cut away from the front of the eye. The flap is folded back, exposing the cornea and allowing the surgeon to remove a defined amount of tissue from the cornea. Each pulse of the laser will remove a small amount of corneal tissue, allowing the surgeon to flatten or increase the steepness of the curve of the cornea. After the procedure, the flap of tissue is put back into place and allowed to heal on its own. Improvements to vision begin as soon as the day after the surgery but typically take two to three months. Most patients will have vision close to 20/20, but the chances for improved vision are based in part on how good the person's vision was before the surgery.

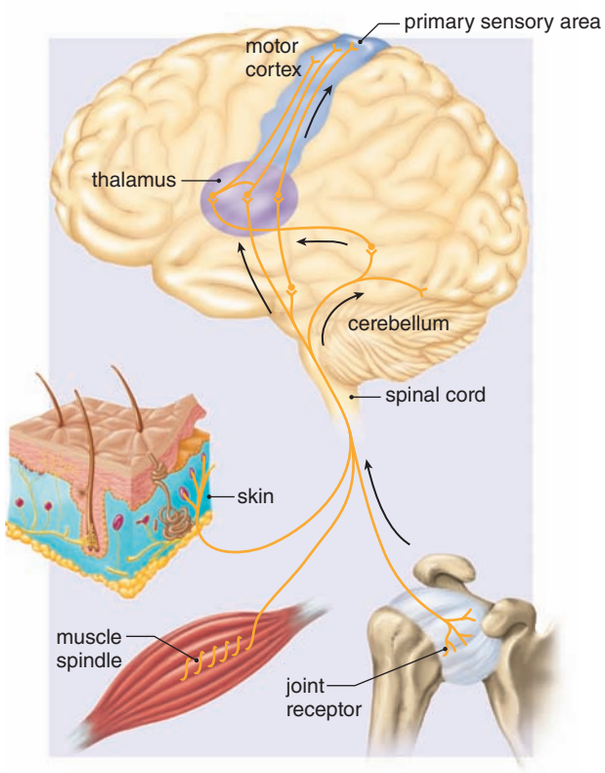


Figure 28.11 **Sensory input to the primary sensory area of the brain.**

Sensory receptors in the skin, muscles, and joints send nerve impulses to the CNS. Sensation and perception occur when these reach the primary sensory area of the cerebral cortex. A motor response can be initiated by the spinal cord and cerebellum without the involvement of the cerebrum.

Seeing in the Dark

Some nocturnal animals rely on vision, but others use sonar (sound waves) to find their way in the dark. Bats flying in a dark room easily avoid obstacles in their path because they echolocate, as submarines do. When searching for food, they emit ultrasonic sound (sound above the range humans can hear) in chirps that bounce off their prey. Bats are able to determine the distance to their dinner by timing the echo's return—a long delay means the prey is far away.

A bat-inspired sonar walking stick is being perfected to help visually impaired people sense their surroundings. It, too, emits ultrasonic chirps and picks up the echoes from nearby objects. Buttons on the cane's handle vibrate gently to warn a user to dodge a low ceiling or to sidestep objects blocking the path. A fast, strong signal means an obstacle is close by.

Cutaneous Receptors and Proprioceptors

Cutaneous receptors and proprioceptors provide sensory input from the skin, muscle, and joints to the primary sensory area of the cerebral cortex. Within the cerebral cortex are areas that represent each part of the body (**Fig. 28.11**).

Cutaneous Receptors

Skin, the outermost covering of our body, contains numerous sensory receptors, called **cutaneous receptors**, that help us respond to changes in our environment, be aware of dangers, and communicate with others. The sensory receptors in skin are for touch, pressure, pain, and temperature.

Skin has two regions, the epidermis and the dermis (**Fig. 28.12**). The epidermis is packed with cells that become keratinized as they rise to the surface. Among these cells are free nerve endings responsive to cold or to warmth. Cold receptors are far more numerous than warmth receptors, but there are no known structural differences between the two. Also in the epidermis are pain receptors (also called **nociceptors**) sensitive to extremes in temperature or pressure and to chemicals released by damaged tissues. Sometimes, the stimulation of internal receptors is felt as pain in the skin. This is called *referred pain*. For example, pain from the heart may be felt in the left shoulder and arm. This effect most likely happens when nerve impulses from the pain receptors of internal organs travel to the spinal cord and synapse with neurons also receiving impulses from the skin.

The dermis of the skin contains sensory receptors for pressure and touch (Fig. 28.12). The Pacinian corpuscles are onion-shaped pressure receptors that lie deep inside the dermis. Several other cutaneous receptors detect touch. A free nerve ending, called a root hair plexus, winds around the base of a hair follicle and produces nerve impulses if the hair is touched. Touch receptors are concentrated in parts of the body essential for sexual stimulation: the fingertips, palms, lips, tongue, nipples, penis, and clitoris.

Proprioceptors

Proprioceptors help the body maintain equilibrium and posture, despite the force of gravity always acting on the skeleton and muscles. A *muscle spindle* consists of sensory nerve endings wrapped around a few muscle cells within a connective tissue sheath. **Golgi tendon** organs and other sensory receptors are located in the joints. The rapidity of nerve impulses from proprioceptors is proportional to the stretching of the organs they occupy. A motor response results in the contraction of muscle fibers adjoining the proprioceptor.

Connections: Health

How does aspirin work?

Aspirin is made of a chemical called acetylsalicylic acid (ASA). When tissue is damaged, it produces large amounts of a type of fatty acid called prostaglandin. Prostaglandin acts as a signal to the pain receptors that tissue damage has occurred, which the brain interprets as pain. Prostaglandins are manufactured in the cell by an enzyme called COX. ASA reduces the capabilities of this enzyme, lowering the amount of prostaglandin produced and the perception of pain.

28.1

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The senses detect various stimuli in our environment. The motor output of our nervous system enables us to respond appropriately to stimuli.

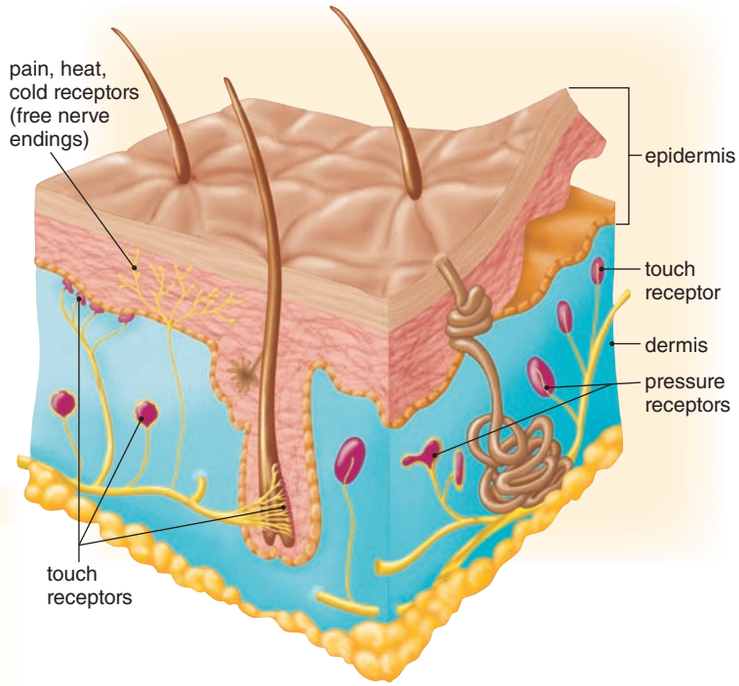


Figure 28.12 **Cutaneous receptors.**

Numerous receptors are in the skin. Free nerve endings (yellow) in the epidermis detect pain, heat, and cold. Various touch and pressure receptors (red) are in the dermis.

Check Your Progress 28.1

1. Summarize how chemoreceptors, mechanoreceptors, photoreceptors, cutaneous receptors, nociceptors, and proprioceptors each detect stimuli.
2. Explain how the sensors in the skin provide sensory information to the body.
3. Summarize the types of sensory information provided by the eyes and ears.

28.2 The Motor Systems

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Summarize the functions of the skeletal and muscular systems.
2. Distinguish among endoskeletons, exoskeletons, and hydrostatic skeletons and give examples of each.
3. Describe the structure of a long bone.
4. Describe the structure and function of a muscle fiber and summarize the process of muscle contraction.
5. List and provide examples of the types of joints in the human body.

The **muscular system** and **skeletal system** of animals are both involved in the nervous system's motor response to some form of stimuli. In many ways, the functions of the muscular and skeletal systems overlap, which is why some refer to these systems as the *musculoskeletal system.* In humans, the musculoskeletal system peforms the following functions:

Both skeletal muscles and bones support the body and make the movement of body parts possible.

Figure 28.13 **Types of skeletons.**

a. Arthropods have an exoskeleton that must be shed as they grow. **b.** Worms have a hydrostatic skeleton, in which muscle contraction pushes against a fluid-filled internal cavity.

Both skeletal muscles and bones protect internal organs. Skeletal muscles pad the bones that protect the heart and lungs, the brain, and the spinal cord.

Both muscles and bones aid the functioning of other systems. Without the movement of the rib cage, breathing would not occur. As an aid to digestion, the jaws have sockets for teeth; skeletal muscles move the jaws, so that food can be chewed, and smooth muscle moves food along the digestive tract (see Section 24.3). Red bone marrow supplies the red blood cells that carry oxygen, and the pumping of cardiac muscle in the wall of the heart moves the blood to the tissues, where exchanges with tissue fluid occur.

In addition to these shared functions, the muscles and bones have individual functions:

Skeletal muscle contraction assists the movement of blood in the veins and lymphatic vessels (see Section 23.2). Without the return of lymph to the cardiovascular system and blood to the heart, circulation could not continue.

Skeletal muscles help maintain a constant body temperature (see Section 22.3). Skeletal muscle contraction causes ATP to break down, releasing heat that is distributed about the body.

Bones store fat and calcium. Fat is stored in yellow bone marrow (see Fig. 28.15), and the extracellular matrix of bone contains calcium. Calcium ions play a major role in muscle contraction and nerve conduction.

Types of Skeletons

The **endoskeleton** of vertebrates can be contrasted with the **exoskeleton** of arthropods. Both skeletons are jointed, which has helped members of both groups of animals live successfully on land. The endoskeleton of humans is composed of bone, which is living material and capable of growth. Like an exoskeleton, an endoskeleton protects vital internal organs, but unlike an exoskeleton, it need not limit the space available for internal organs, because it grows as the animal grows. The soft tissues that surround an endoskeleton protect it, and injuries to soft tissues are apt to be easier to repair than is the skeleton itself.

The exoskeleton of arthropods is composed of chitin—a strong, flexible, nitrogenous polysaccharide. Besides providing protection against wear and tear and against enemies, an exoskeleton also prevents the animal from drying out. Although an arthropod exoskeleton provides support for muscle contractions, it does not grow with the animal, and arthropods molt to rid themselves of an exoskeleton that has become too small (**Fig. 28.13*a***). This process makes them vulnerable to predators.

One other type of skeleton is seen in the animal kingdom. In animals, such as worms, that lack a hard skeleton, a fluid-filled internal cavity can act as a **hydrostatic skeleton** (Fig. 28.13*b*). A hydrostatic skeleton offers support and resistance to the contraction of muscles, so that the animal can move. As an analogy, consider that a garden hose stiffens when filled with water and that a water-filled balloon changes shape when squeezed at one end. Similarly, an animal with a hydrostatic skeleton can change shape and perform a variety of movements.

The Human Skeleton

The 206 bones of the human skeleton are arranged into an axial skeleton and an appendicular skeleton.

Axial Skeleton

The bones of the **axial skeleton** are those that are in the midline of the body (blue shading in **Fig. 28.14**). The *skull* consists of the *cranium,* which protects the brain, and the facial bones. The most prominent of the facial bones are the lower and upper jaws, the cheekbones, and the nasal bones. The *vertebral column* (spine) extends from the skull to the *sacrum* (tailbone). It consists of a series of vertebrae separated by pads of fibrocartilage called the *intervertebral discs.* On occasion, discs can slip or even rupture. A damaged disc pressing against the spinal cord or spinal nerves causes pain, and removal of the disc may be required.

The *rib cage,* composed of the *ribs* and *sternum* (breastbone), demonstrates how the skeleton can be protective and flexible at the same time. In the United States, automobile accidents are the most common cause of sternum fractures; people with such injuries are typically examined for signs of heart damage. The rib cage protects the heart and lungs but moves when we breathe.

Appendicular Skeleton

The **appendicular skeleton** contains the bones of two girdles and their attached limbs (unshaded bones in Fig. 28.14). The *pectoral girdle* (shoulder) and upper limbs are specialized for flexibility; the *pelvic girdle* (hip) and lower limbs are specialized for strength. The pelvic girdle also protects the internal organs.

A *clavicle* (collarbone) and a *scapula* (shoulder blade) make up the shoulder girdle. The shoulder pads worn by football players are designed to cushion direct blows that could cause clavicle fractures. The *humerus* of the arm articulates only with the scapula; the joint is stabilized by tendons and ligaments that form a *rotator cuff.* Vigorous circular movements of the arm can lead to rotator cuff injuries. Two bones (the *radius* and *ulna*) contribute to the easy twisting motion of the forearm. The flexible hand contains bones of the wrist, palm, and five fingers.

The pelvic girdle contains two massive *coxal bones*, which form a bowl, called the pelvis, and articulate with the longest and strongest bones of the body, the *femurs* (thighbones). The strength of the femurs allows these massive bones to support the weight of the upper half of the body. The kneecap protects the knee. The *tibia* of the leg is the shinbone. The *fibula* is the more slender bone in the leg. Each foot contains bones of the ankle, instep, and five toes.

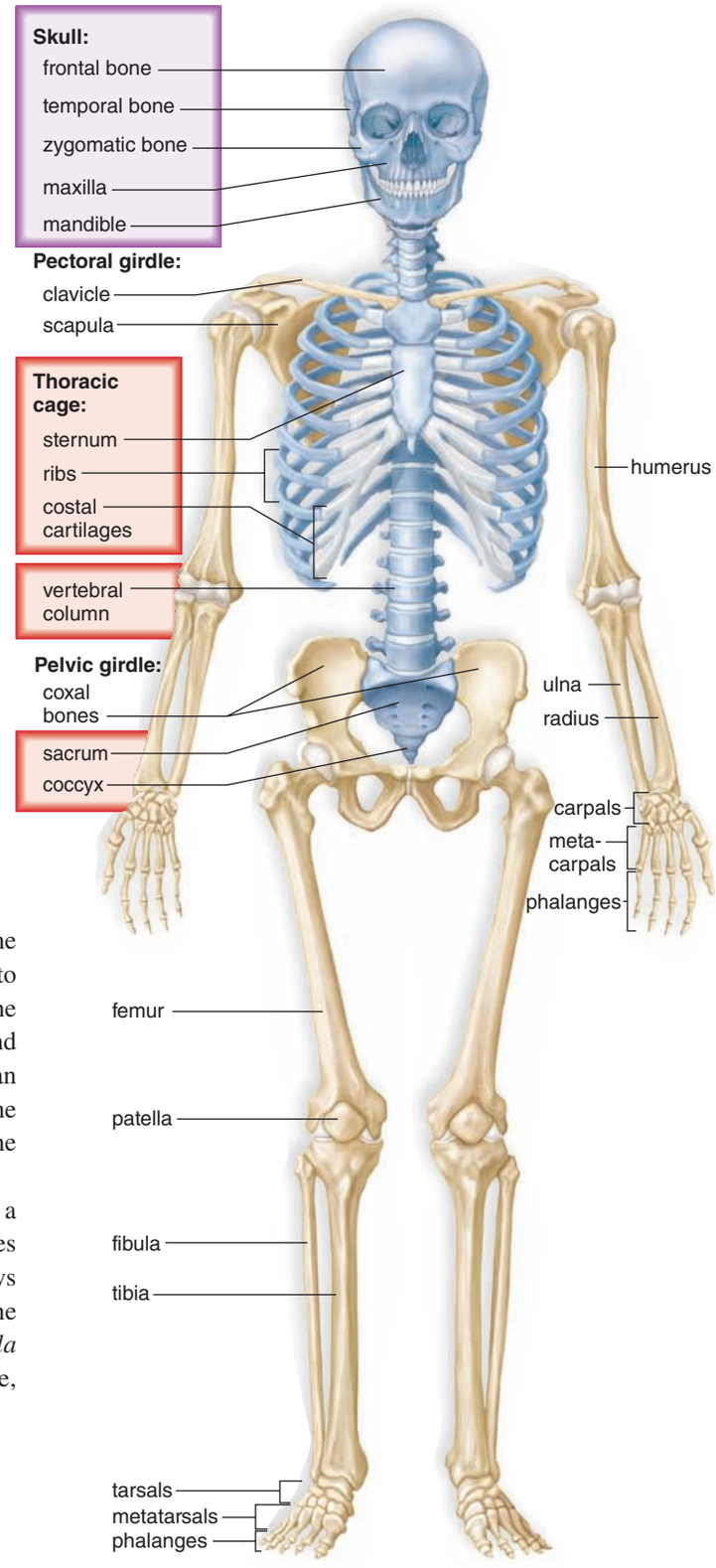


Figure 28.14 **The human skeleton.**

The bones of the axial skeleton (shaded in blue) are those along the midline of the body. The bones of the appendicular skeleton (unshaded) are those found in the girdles and appendanges. Not all bones are labeled in this diagram.

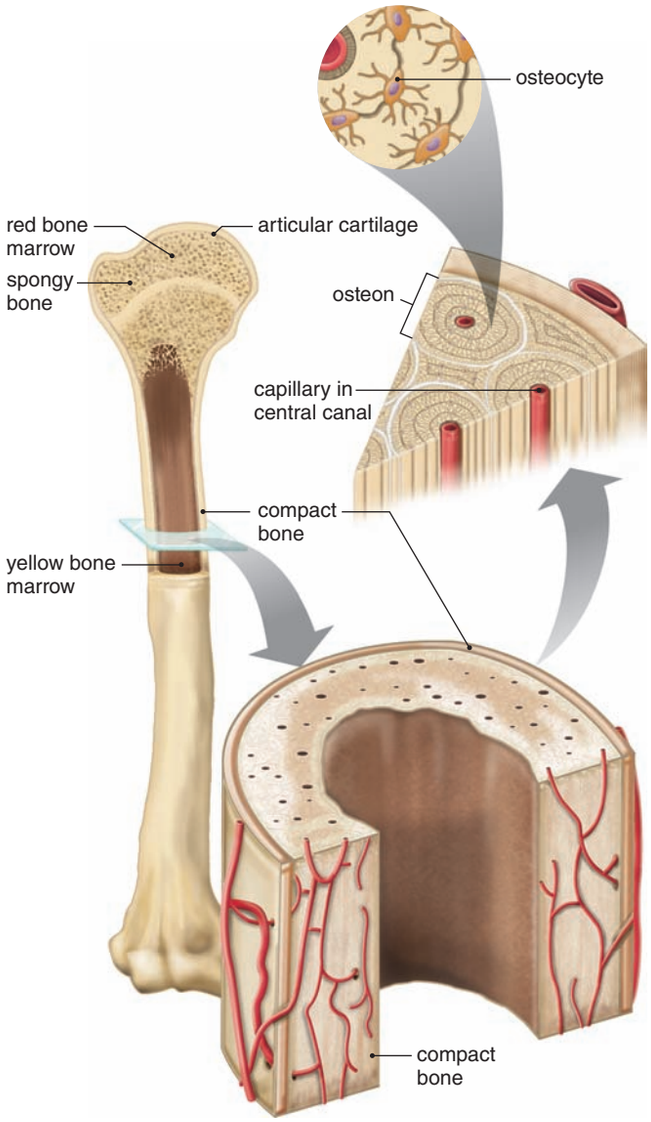


Figure 28.15 **Structure of bone.**

A bone has a central cavity that is usually filled with yellow bone marrow. Both spongy bone and compact bone are living tissues composed of bone cells within a matrix that contains calcium. The spaces of spongy bone contain red bone marrow.

Structure of a Bone

When a long bone is split open, as in **Figure 28.15,** a cavity is revealed that is bounded on the sides by compact bone. **Compact bone** contains many *osteons* (Haversian systems), where bone cells called **osteocytes** lie in tiny chambers arranged in concentric circles around central canals. The cells are separated by an extracellular matrix, which contains mineral deposits—primarily, calcium and phosphorus salts. Two other cell types are constantly at work in bones. *Osteoblasts* deposit bone, and *osteoclasts* secrete enzymes that digest the matrix of bone and release calcium into the bloodstream. When a person has **osteoporosis** (weak bones subject to fracture), osteoclasts are working harder than osteoblasts. Intake of high levels of dietary calcium, especially when a person is young and more active, encourages denser bones and lessens the chance of getting osteoporosis later in life.

Animation Bone Growth in Width

Video Nano Bones

A long bone has **spongy bone** at each end. Spongy bone has numerous bony bars and plates separated by irregular spaces. The spaces are often filled with red bone marrow**,** a specialized tissue that produces red blood cells. The cavity of a long bone is filled with yellow bone marrow and stores fat. Beyond the spongy bone are a thin shell of compact bone and a layer of hyaline cartilage, which is important to healthy joints.

MP3 Bone Structure

Video Bear Bones

Skeletal Muscle Structure and Physiology

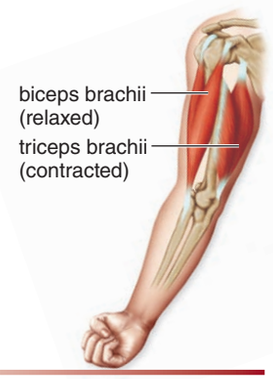
As we explored in Chapter 22, the three types of muscle—smooth, cardiac, and skeletal—have different structures and functions in the body (see Fig. 22.7). Smooth muscles contain sheets of long, spindle-shaped cells, each with a single nucleus. Cardiac cells are striated (having a striped appearance) and typically possess a single nucleus. Cardiac muscle tissue contains branched chains of cells that interconnect, forming a lattice network. Skeletal muscle cells, called muscle fibers, are also striated. They are quite elongated, and they run the length of a skeletal muscle. Skeletal muscle fibers arise during development when several cells fuse, resulting in one long, multinucleated cell. We will focus our discussion on skeletal muscles, since they represent the major type of muscle in the body and are the ones that are under voluntary control of the nervous system. **Figure 28.16** illustrates some of the major skeletal muscles in the body.

MP3 Muscle Tissue

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How many muscles are in the human body?

Most experts agree that there are over 600 muscles in the human body. The exact number varies, since some experts lump muscles together under one name, while others split them apart. The smallest of these is the stapedius, a 1.27-millimeter-long muscle in the middle ear. The longest muscle is the sartorius, which starts at the hip and extends to the knee. The biggest muscle (in terms of mass) is the gluteus maximus, the muscle that makes up the majority of the buttocks.



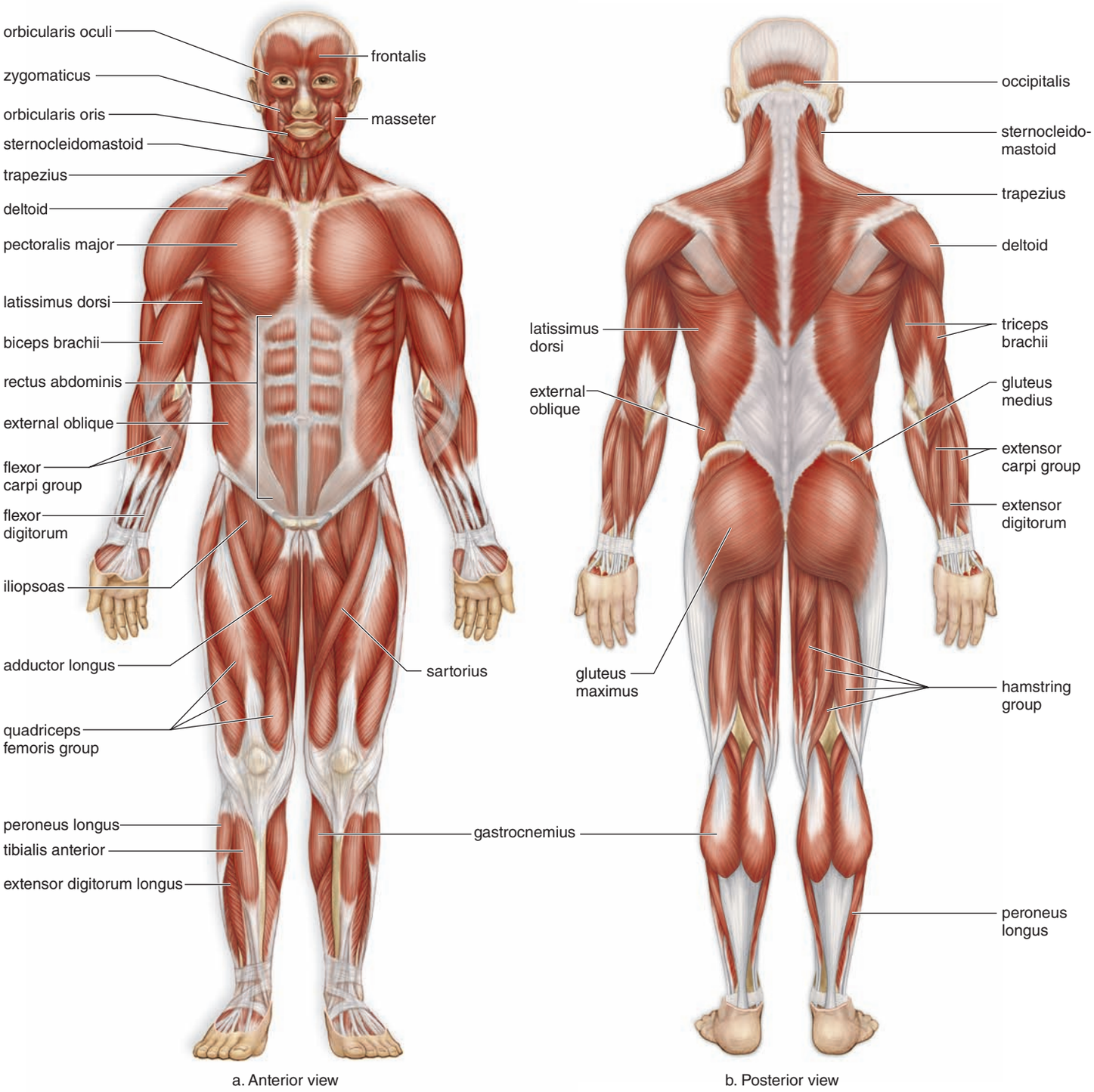


Figure 28.16 **Major skeletal muscles in the human body.**

The major muscles located near the surface in the (**a**) front (anterior) and (**b**) rear (posterior) views.

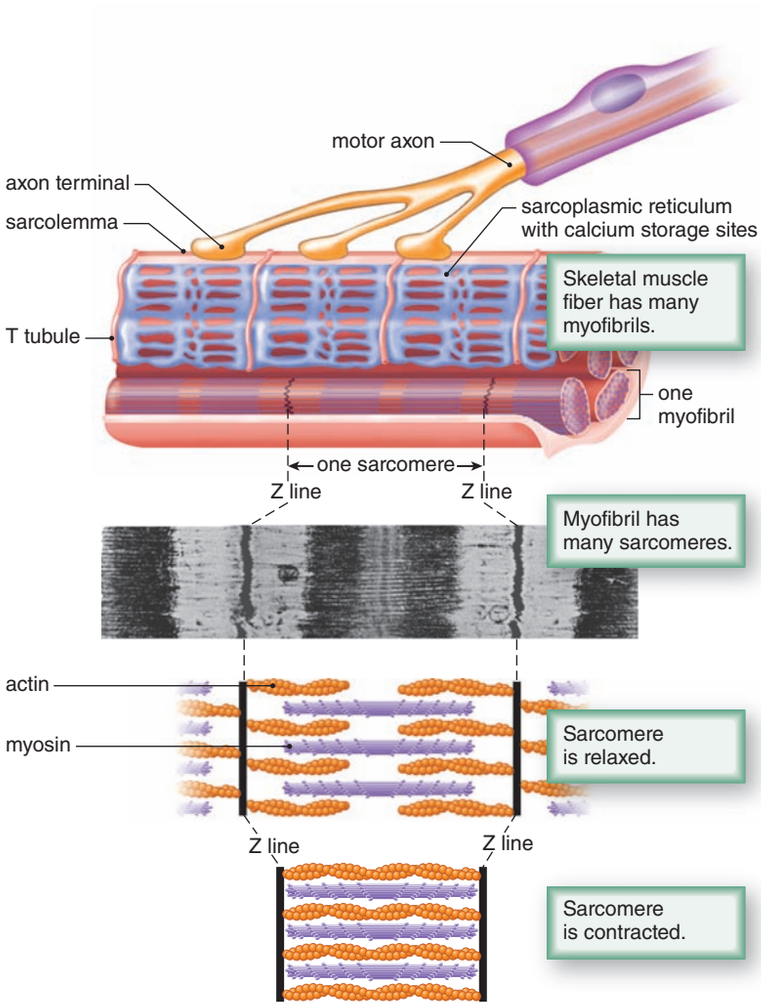


Figure 28.17 **Skeletal muscle fiber structure and function.**

A muscle fiber contains many myofibrils divided into sarcomeres, which are contractile. When innervated by a motor neuron, the myofibrils contract and the sarcomeres shorten because actin filaments slide past the myosin filaments.

Skeletal Muscle Contraction

When skeletal muscle fibers contract, they shorten. Let's look at details of the process, beginning with the motor axon (**Fig. 28.17**). When nerve impulses travel down a motor axon and arrive at an axon terminal, synaptic vesicles release the neurotransmitter acetylcholine (ACh) into a synaptic cleft. ACh quickly diffuses across the cleft and binds to receptors in the plasma membrane of a muscle fiber, called the sarcolemma. The sarcolemma generates impulses, which travel along its T tubules to the endoplasmic reticulum, which is called the *sarcoplasmic reticulum* in muscle fibers. The release of calcium from calcium storage sites causes muscle fibers to contract.

Animation Function of the Neuromuscular Junction

The contractile portions of a muscle fiber are many parallel, threadlike *myofibrils* (Fig. 28.17). An electron microscope shows that myofibrils (and therefore skeletal muscle fibers) are striated because of the placement of protein filaments within contractile units called **sarcomeres.** A sarcomere extends between two dark lines called Z lines. Sarcomeres contain thick filaments made up of the protein **myosin** and thin filaments made up of the protein **actin.** As a muscle fiber contracts, the sarcomeres within the myofibrils shorten because actin (thin) filaments slide past the myosin (thick) filaments and approach one another. The movement of actin filaments in relation to myosin filaments is called the **sliding filament model** of muscle contraction. During the sliding process, the sarcomere shortens, even though the filaments themselves remain the same length.

Animation Sarcomere Contraction

Why the Filaments Slide The thick filament is a bundle of myosin molecules, each having a globular head with the capability of attaching to the actin filament when calcium (Ca^{2+}) is present. First, myosin binds to and hydrolyzes ATP. Thus, energized myosin heads attach to an actin filament. The release of ADP and phosphorous (Pi) causes myosin to shift its position and pull the actin filaments to the center of the sarcomere. The action is similar to the movement of your hand when you flex your forearm (**Fig. 28.18**).

In the presence of another ATP, a myosin head detaches from actin. Now the heads attach farther along the actin filament. The cycle occurs again and again, and the actin filaments move nearer and nearer the center of the sarcomere each time the cycle is repeated. Contraction continues until nerve impulses cease and calcium ions are returned to their storage sites. The membranes of the sarcoplasmic reticulum contain active transport proteins that pump calcium ions back into the calcium storage sites, and the muscle relaxes. When a person or an animal dies, ATP production ceases. Without ATP, the myosin heads cannot detach from actin, nor can calcium be pumped back into the sarcoplasmic reticulum. As a result, the muscles remain contracted, a phenomenon called *rigor mortis*.

MP3 Sliding Filament Theory

3D Animation Skeletal Muscle Contraction

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

How do medical examiners use rigor mortis to estimate time of death?

Body temperature and the presence or absence of rigor mortis allow the time of death to be estimated. For example, the body of someone who has been dead for 3 hours or less will still be warm (close to body temperature, 98.6°F, or 37°C), and rigor mortis will be absent. After approximately 3 hours, the body will be significantly cooler than normal, and rigor mortis will begin to develop. The corpse of an individual dead at least 8 hours will be in full rigor mortis, and the temperature of the body will be the same as the surroundings. Forensic pathologists know that a person has been dead for more than 24 hours if the body temperature is the same as the environment and there is no longer a trace of rigor mortis.

Skeletal Muscles Move Bones at Joints

Joints are classified as immovable, such as those of the cranium; slightly movable, such as those between the vertebrae; and freely movable (synovial joints), such as those in the knee and hip. In **synovial joints, ligaments** bind the two bones together, providing strength and support and forming a capsule containing lubricating synovial fluid. All of our movements, from those of graceful and agile ballet dancers to those of aggressive and skillful football players, occur because muscles are attached to bones by tendons that span movable joints. Because muscles shorten when they contract, they have to work in antagonistic pairs. If one muscle of an antagonistic pair flexes the joint and raises the limb, the other extends the joint and straightens the limb. **Figure 28.19** illustrates this principle with regard to the movement of the forearm at the elbow joint.

Figure 28.20*b* illustrates the anatomy of a freely movable synovial joint. Note that, in addition to a cavity filled with synovial fluid, a synovial joint may include additional structures—namely, menisci and bursae. Menisci (sing., meniscus), are C-shaped pieces of hyaline cartilage between the bones. These give added stability and act as shock absorbers. Fluid-filled sacs called bursae (sing., bursa) ease friction between bare areas of bone and overlapping muscles or between skin and tendons.

The **ball-and-socket joints** at the hips and shoulders are synovial joints that allow movement in all directions, even rotational movement (Fig. 28.20*c*). The elbow and knee joints are synovial joints called **hinge joints** because, like a hinged door, they largely permit movement in one direction only (Fig. 28.20*d*).

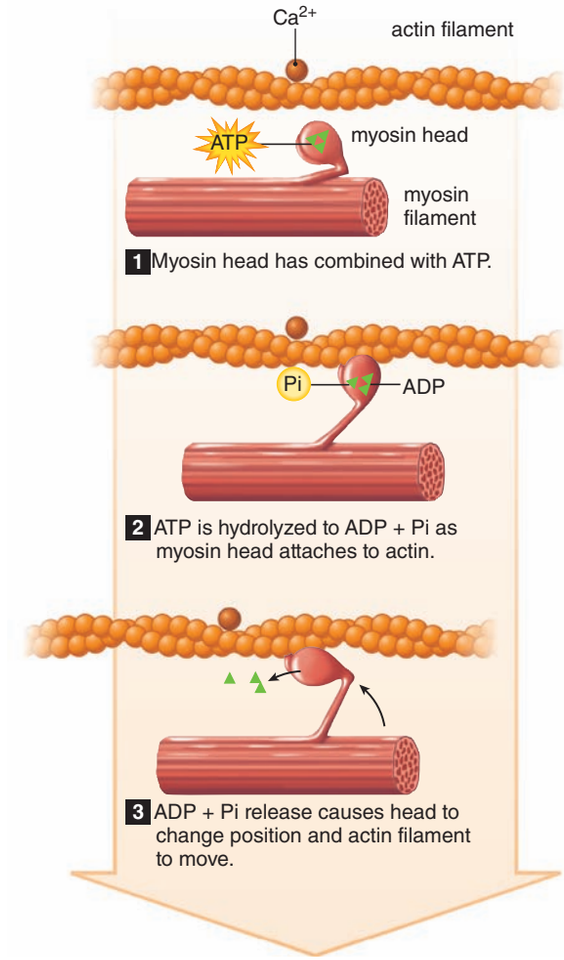


Figure 28.18 Why a muscle shortens when it contracts.

The presence of calcium (Ca^{2+}) sets in motion a chain of events (1–3) that causes myosin heads to attach to and pull an actin filament toward the center of a sarcomere. After binding to other ATP molecules, myosin heads return to their resting position. Then, the chain of events (1–3) occurs again, except that the myosin heads reattach farther along the actin filament.

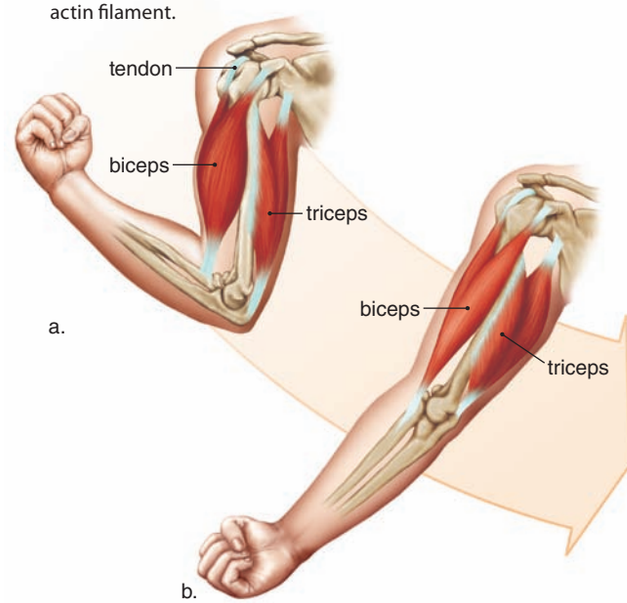


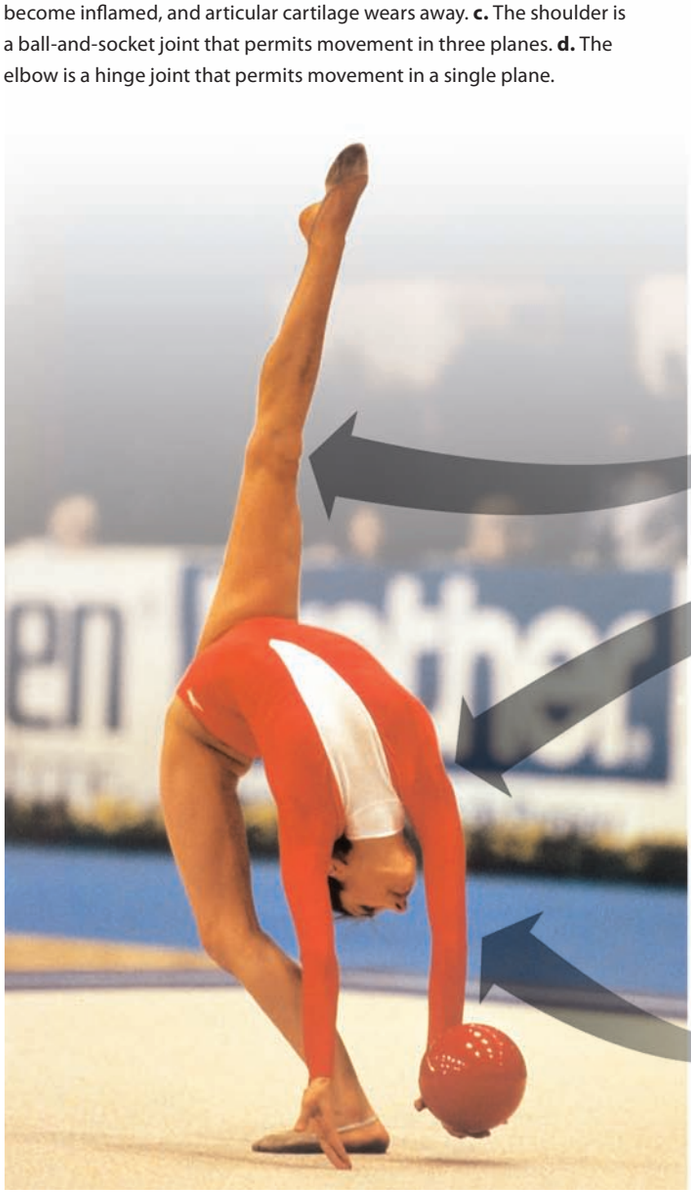
Figure 28.19 Action of muscles.

When muscles contract, they shorten. Therefore, muscles only pull—they cannot push. This causes them to work in antagonistic pairs; each member of the pair pulls on a bone in the opposite direction. For example, (**a**) when the biceps contracts, the forearm flexes (raises), and (**b**) when the triceps contracts, the forearm extends (lowers).

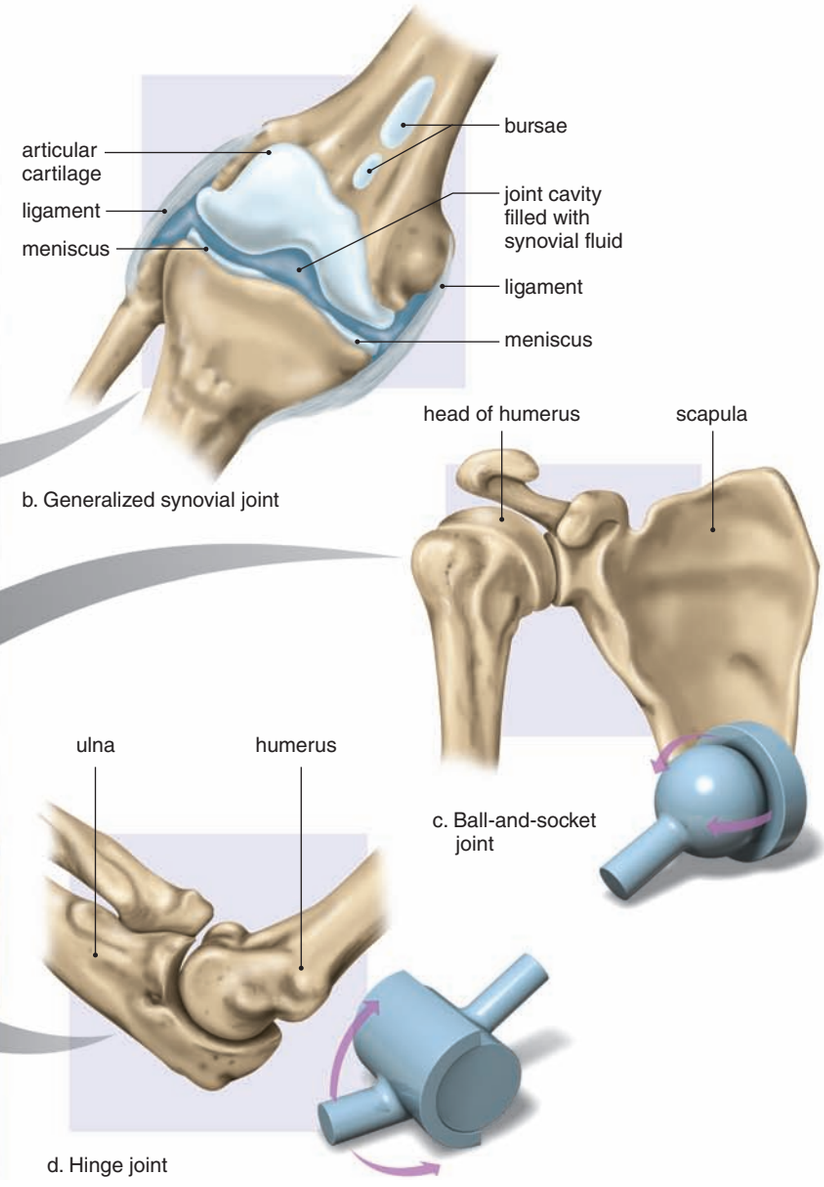
Joint Disorders *Sprains* occur when ligaments and tendons are overstretched at a joint. For example, a sprained ankle can result if you turn your ankle too far. Overuse of a joint may cause inflammation of a bursa, called *bursitis*. Tennis elbow is a form of bursitis. A common knee injury is a torn meniscus. Because fragments of menisci can interfere with joint movements, most physicians believe they should be removed. Today, arthroscopic surgery is possible to remove cartilage fragments or to repair ligaments or cartilage. A small instrument bearing a tiny lens and light source is inserted into a joint, as are the surgical instruments. Fluid is then added to distend the joint and allow visualization of its structure. Usually, the surgery is displayed on a monitor, so that the whole operating team can see the operation. Arthroscopy is much less traumatic than surgically opening the knee with long incisions. The benefits of arthroscopy are small incisions, faster healing, a more rapid recovery, and less scarring. Because arthroscopic surgical procedures are often performed on an outpatient basis, the patient is able to return home on the same day.

Figure 28.20 **Synovial joints.**

a. The synovial joints of the human skeleton allow the body to be flexible and move with precision even when bearing a weight. **b.** Generalized synovial joint. Problems arise when menisci or ligaments are torn, bursae become inflamed, and articular cartilage wears away. **c.** The shoulder is a ball-and-socket joint that permits movement in three planes. **d.** The elbow is a hinge joint that permits movement in a single plane.



a. A gymnast depends on flexible joints.



Rheumatoid arthritis, discussed in Chapter 26, is not as common as osteoarthritis (OA), which is the deterioration of an overworked joint. Constant compression and abrasion continually damage articular cartilage, and eventually it softens, cracks, and in some areas wears away entirely. As the disease progresses, the exposed bone thickens and forms spurs that cause the bone ends to enlarge and restrict joint movement. Weight loss can ease arthritis. Taking off three pounds can reduce the load on a hip or knee joint by 9 to 15 pounds. A sensible exercise program helps build up muscles, which stabilize joints. Low-impact activities, such as biking and swimming, are best.

Today, the replacement of damaged joints with a prosthesis (artificial substitute) is often possible. Some people have found glucosamine-chondroitin supplements beneficial as an alternative to joint replacement. Glucosamine, an amino sugar, is thought to promote the formation and repair of cartilage. Chondroitin, a carbohydrate, is a cartilage component that is thought to promote water retention and elasticity and to inhibit enzymes that break down cartilage. Both compounds are naturally produced by the body.

Exercise A sensible exercise program has many benefits. Exercise improves muscular strength, muscular endurance, and flexibility. It improves cardiorespiratory endurance and may lower blood cholesterol levels. People who exercise are less likely to develop various types of cancer. Exercise promotes the activity of osteoblasts; therefore, it helps prevent osteoporosis . It helps prevent weight gain, not only because of increased activity but also because, as muscle mass increases, the body is less likely to accumulate fat. Exercise even relieves depression and enhances mood.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

The musculoskeletal system enables movement of body parts.

Check Your Progress 28.2

1. Summarize the roles of the muscular and skeletal systems.
2. List the three types of muscle, and provide a function for each.
3. Describe the position of the axial and appendicular skeletons.
4. Explain how the structure of a long bone is suited for its function.
5. Explain why a muscle shortens when it contracts.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video	MP3 Files
28.1 Effects of Sound Waves on Cochlear Structures **28.2** Bone Growth in Width • Function of the Neuromuscular Junction • Sarcomere Contraction	**28.1** Sex and the Senses • Artificial Eye • Bat Echolocation **28.2** Nano Bones • Bear Bones	**28.1** Sensations and Receptors • Taste and Smell • The Sense of Hearing and Equilibrium • Sense of Vision **28.2** Bone Structure • Muscle Tissue • Sliding Filament Theory

3D Animation
Skeletal Muscle Contraction

The 3D animation "Skeletal Muscle Contraction" provides an interactive exploration of the structure of a skeletal muscle and the processes involved in skeletal muscle contraction.

SUMMARIZE

28.1 The Senses

All living organisms respond to stimuli. In animals, stimuli generate nerve impulses at the sensory nuerons. Often these signals undergo **integration** and **sensory adaptation** before being sent to the brain. The brain processes the information before initiating motor responses:

Stimulus ⟶ Nerve impulse ⟶ CNS ⟶ Motor response

Chemical Senses

Chemoreception is found universally in animals and is therefore believed to be the most primitive sense. Human taste buds and olfactory receptor cells are **chemoreceptors.**

- Taste buds have microvilli with receptor proteins that bind to chemicals in food.
- Olfactory receptor cells have cilia with receptor proteins that bind to odor molecules.

Hearing and Balance

The sensory receptors for hearing are **mechanoreceptors** (hair cells) with stereocilia that respond to pressure waves.

- Hair cells respond to stimuli that have been received by the outer ear and amplified by the ossicles in the middle ear.
- Hair cells are found in the spiral organ and are located in the cochlear canal of the cochlea. The spiral organ generates nerve impulses that travel to the brain.

The sensory receptors for balance (equilibrium) are also hair cells with stereocilia.

- Hair cells in the base of the semicircular canals provide **rotational equilibrium.**
- Hair cells in the utricle and saccule provide **gravitational equilibrium.**

Vision

Vision in animals uses **photoreceptors** that detect light. In humans, the photoreceptors

- Respond to light that has been focused by the cornea and lens.
- Consist of two types, rods and cones. In rods, rhodopsin splits into opsin and retinal.
- Communicate with the next layer of cells in the retina. Integration occurs in the three layers of the retina before nerve impulses go to the brain.

Cutaneous Receptors and Proprioceptors

These receptors communicate with the primary sensory area of the brain. They consist of receptors for hot, cold, touch, pressure (**cutaneous receptors**), and stretching (**proprioceptors** and **Golgi tendon). Nociceptors** are involved with detecting pain.

28.2 The Motor Systems

The **skeletal system** and **musclar system** are responsible for generating movement as directed by the central nervous system. Together, the muscles and bones

- Support the body and allow parts to move
- Help protect internal organs
- Assist the functioning of other systems

In addition,

- Skeletal muscle contraction assists movement of blood in cardiovascular veins and lymphatic vessels.
- Skeletal muscles provide heat that warms the body.
- Bones are storage areas for calcium and phosphorus salts, as well as sites for blood cell formation.
- There are several different types of skeletons in animals:
  - endoskeleton: an internal skeleton; an example is the human skeleton
  - exoskeleton: an external skeleton; an example is the insect skeleton
  - hydrostatic skeleton; a fluid-filled internal cavity; an example is the earthworm

The Human Skeleton

The human skeleton is divided into two parts:

- The **axial skeleton** is made up of the skull, vertebral column, sternum, and ribs.
- The **appendicular skeleton** is composed of the girdles and their appendages.

Bone contains

- **Compact bone** (site of calcium storage) and **spongy bone** (site of red bone marrow)
- A cavity (site of fat storage)
- Cells called **osteocytes**

Osteoporosis is a bone disease characterized by a lack of calcium in the bones.

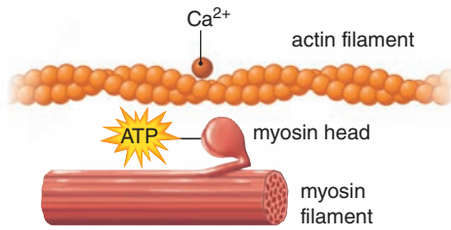
Muscles

The three types of muscles are smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and skeletal muscle:

- Smooth muscle is composed of spindle-shaped cells that form a sheet.
- Cardiac muscle has striated cells that form a lattice network.
- Skeletal muscle has striated, tubular cells (fibers) that run the length of the muscle.

In a skeletal muscle cell,

- Myofibrils, **myosin** filaments, and **actin** filaments are arranged in a **sarcomere**.
- Myosin filaments pull actin filaments, and sarcomeres shorten. This is called the sliding filament model.
- ATP is required to move the filaments.



Skeletal muscles

- Move bones at joints
- Work in antagonistic pairs

In **synovial joints,**

- Ligaments are used to hold the bones together
- **Ball-and-socket joints** allow movement in all directions
- **Hinge joints** allow movement in one direction only

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Our sensory structures detect various stimuli in our environment. The motor output of our nervous system enables us to respond appropriately to stimuli.

The senses detect various stimuli in our environment. The motor output of our nervous system enables us to respond appropriately to stimuli.

The musculoskeletal system enables movement of body parts.

For more information about the functions of sensory input and motor output, see the following discussions:

Section 22.3 describes the relationship among sensory input, negative feedback mechanisms, and homeostasis.

Section 27.1 explains how sensory neurons transfer information to interneurons for integration.

Section 27.1 explains the events that occur within the synapse of a neuromuscular junction.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

28.1 The Senses

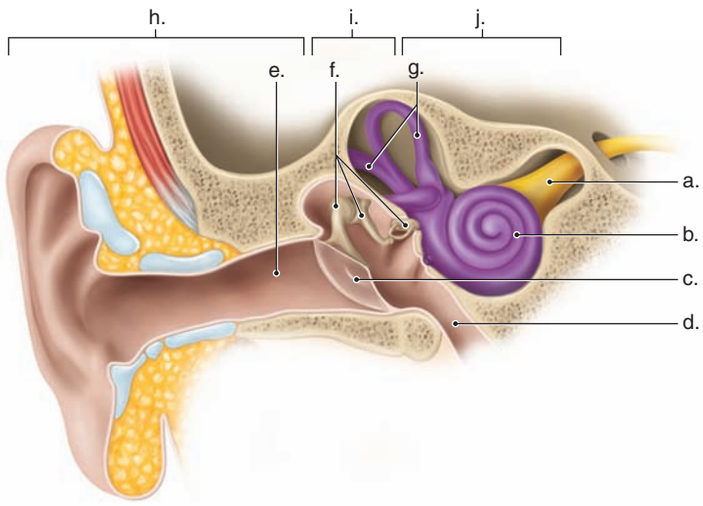
1. The human eye focuses by
   - **a.** changing the thickness of the lens.
   - **b.** changing the shape of the lens.
   - **c.** opening and closing the pupil.
   - **d.** rotating the lens.
2. The _____ is the region of the eye that controls the amount of light that enters.
   - **a.** cornea
   - **b.** pupil
   - **c.** lens
   - **d.** fovea
   - **e.** retina

For questions 3–7, identify the type of sensory receptor that matches the description. Some answers may be used more than once.

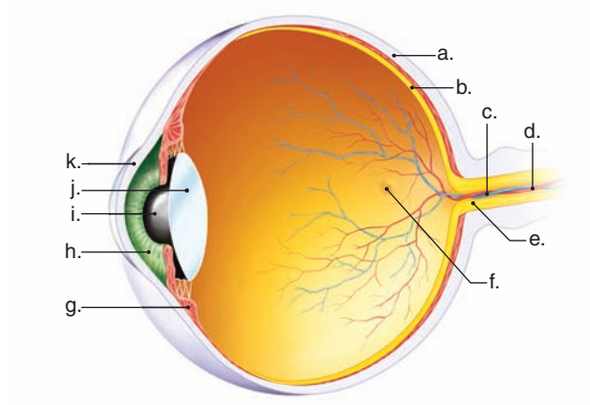
Key:

- **a.** propioreceptor
- **b.** chemoreceptor
- **c.** mechanoreceptor
- **d.** nociceptor
- **e.** photoreceptor

3. detects pain
4. responds to wavelengths of light
5. involved in the sense of hearing
6. involved in the senses of taste and smell
7. helps the body maintain posture
8. Label the parts of the ear in the following illustration.



9. Label the parts of the eye in the following illustration.



28.2 The Motor Systems

10. The thick filaments in a sarcomere are composed mainly of
    - **a.** calcium.
    - **b.** actin.
    - **c.** myosin.
    - **d.** rhodopsin.
    - **e.** Both b and c are correct.
11. A freely movable, fluid-filled joint is a(n) _____ joint.
    - **a.** synovial
    - **b.** proprioceptive
    - **c.** Golgi
    - **d.** otolithic
    - **e.** hydrostatic
12. The contractile portion of a skeletal muscle fiber is the
    - **a.** myofibril.
    - **b.** thin filament.
    - **c.** thick filament.
    - **d.** sarcoplasmic reticulum.
13. Which cell type deposits bone tissue?
    - **a.** osteocyte
    - **b.** osteoclast
    - **c.** osteoblast
    - **d.** None of these are correct.
14. The basic unit of a skeletal muscle contraction is called the
    - **a.** osteoclast.
    - **b.** myosin filament.
    - **c.** sarcomere.
    - **d.** ligament.
15. Which type of skeleton is found in humans?
    - **a.** endoskeleton
    - **b.** exoskeleton
    - **c.** hydrostatic skeleton

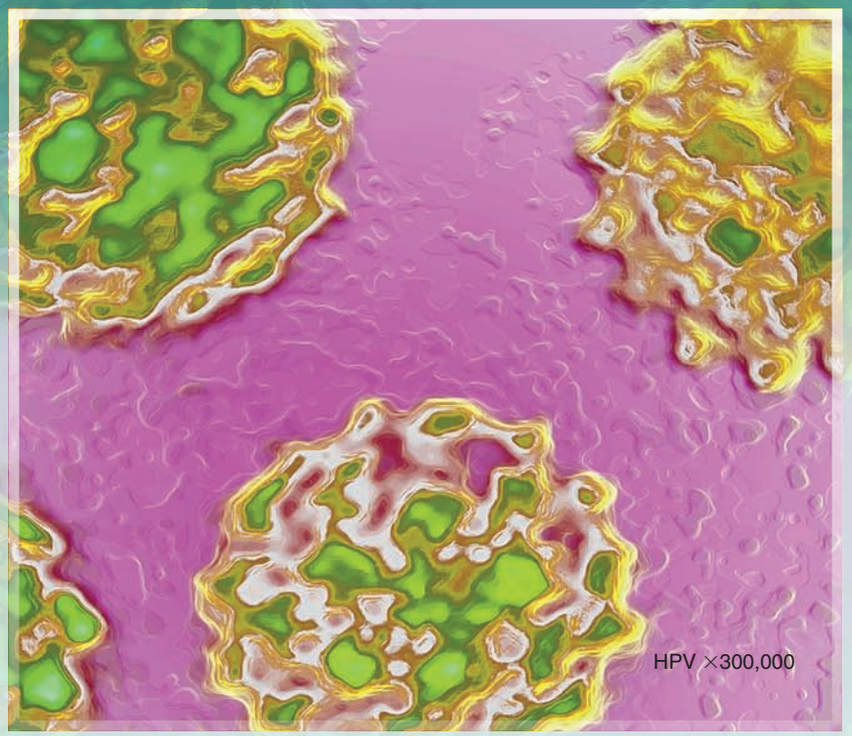
ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. The two leading causes of blindness are age-related macular degeneration and diabetic retinopathy. Both are characterized by the development of an abnormally high number of blood vessels (angiogenesis) in the retina. Why do you suppose angiogenesis impairs vision? Progress in cancer research has led to new strategies for the treatment of these eye diseases. Do you see a connection between the causes of blindness and cancer?
2. Human genome researchers have found a family of approximately 80 genes that encode receptors for bitter-tasting compounds. The genes encode proteins made in taste receptor cells of the tongue. Typically, many types of taste receptors are expressed per cell on the tongue. However, in the olfactory system, each cell expresses only 1 of the 1,000 olfactory receptor genes. Different cells express different genes. How do you suppose this difference affects our ability to taste versus smell different chemicals? Why might the two systems have evolved such different patterns of gene expression?

29

Reproduction and Embryonic Development



OUTLINE

29.1 How Animals Reproduce 557

29.2 Human Reproduction 559

29.3 Human Embryonic Development 571

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Figure 9.2 What is the role of mitosis and meiosis in the human life cycle?

Section 9.1 What are the differences between spermatogenesis and oogenesis?

Section 27.2 Which of the hormones produced by the pituitary gland are associated with sexual reproduction?

STDs and Infertility

Most people know how sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) are contracted, but many do not understand their treatment or their long-term consequences. Bacterial STDs, such as chlamydia and gonorrhea, are very easy to treat, but when untreated they can have lasting effects, including permanent infertility. Many people are surprised to find that they have become infertile as a result of an STD. If these diseases are easy to treat, why would anyone not be treated and take the risk of becoming infertile? There are many reasons, but one of the most important is that many people with an STD do not have any symptoms of the infection. As long as everything appears normal, they do not seek treatment; meanwhile, they may pass the disease to others and run the risk of long-term complications. This is the primary reason that testing for STDs (even when everything "seems OK") is so important.

In addition to the bacterial STDs, several viral STDs are of concern—not only the well-known human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) but also human papillomavirus (HPV). HPV (*above*) is the primary cause of cervical cancer (the cervix is at the entrance to the uterus). There are usually no noticeable signs of early cervical cancer, but it can be detected by having yearly checkups. Treatment for cervical cancer can result in the inability to have children if the cervix and the uterus must be surgically removed.

Reproduction is a fascinating topic with relevance not only to STDs but also to birth control, reproductive technology, and human development.

As you read through this chapter, think about the following questions:

1. Why don't most birth control methods protect against STDs?
2. What is the difference in how bacterial and viral STDs are treated?

29.1 How Animals Reproduce

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish between asexual and sexual reproduction in animals.
2. Explain the adaptations necessary for animals to reproduce on land versus in water.

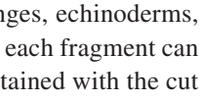
Animals usually reproduce sexually, but some can reproduce asexually. In **asexual reproduction,** there is only one parent and the offspring are usually genetically the same as the parents, whereas in **sexual reproduction,** there are two parents. In sexual reproduction, the genetic material is shuffled, so the offspring usually have combinations of genes that are not like either parent.

Asexual Versus Sexual Reproduction

An example of asexual reproduction occurs in the hydra, a type of Cnidarian (Chapter 19). Hydras can reproduce by budding. A new individual arises as an outgrowth (bud) of the parent (**Fig. 29.1**). Many flatworms can constrict into two halves; each half regenerates to become a new individual. Fragmentation, followed by regeneration**,** is also seen among sponges, echinoderms, and corals. Chopping up a sea star does not kill it; instead, each fragment can grow into another animal if a portion of the oral disk is retained with the cut fragment.

Parthenogenesis is a modification of sexual reproduction in which an unfertilized egg develops into a complete individual. In honeybees, the queen bee can fertilize eggs or allow eggs to pass unfertilized as she lays them. The fertilized eggs become diploid females called workers, and the unfertilized eggs become haploid males called drones. Parthenogenesis is also observed in some fish (including sharks) and in a number of amphibian and reptile species.

In sexual reproduction, animals usually produce gametes in specialized organs called **gonads.** The gonads are **testes,** which produce sperm, and **ovaries,** which produce eggs. Eggs or sperm are derived from germ cells that become specialized for this purpose during early development. During sexual reproduction, the egg of one parent is usually fertilized by the sperm of another, and a **zygote** (fertilized egg) results. Even among earthworms, which are **hermaphroditic** (each worm has both male and female sex organs), cross-fertilization occurs. There are some even stranger variations. In coral reef fishes called wrasses, a male has a harem of several females. If the male dies, the largest female becomes a male.



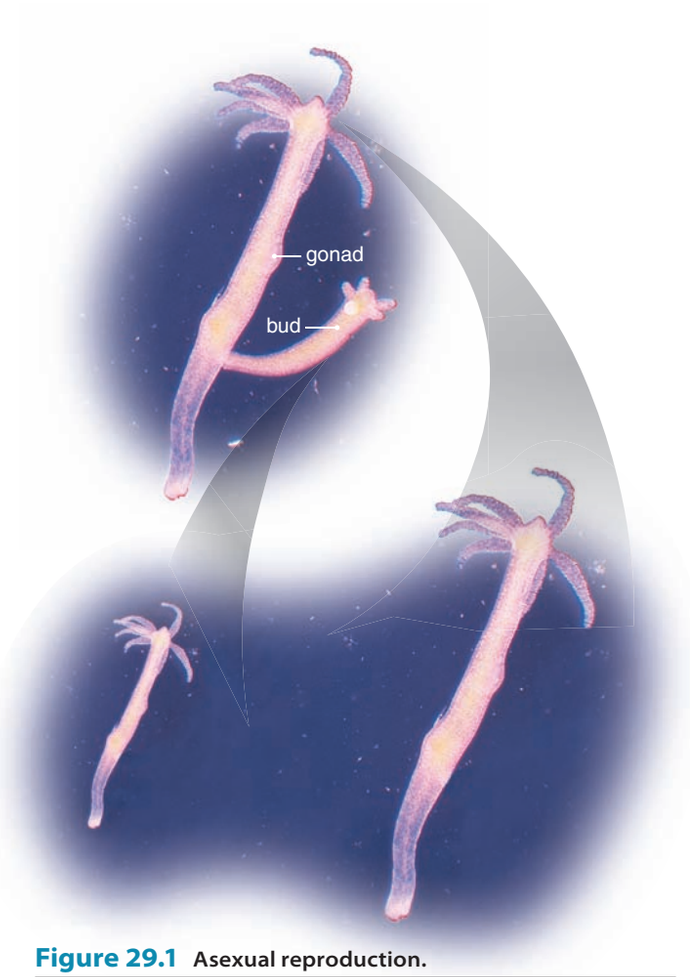


Figure 29.1 **Asexual reproduction.**

A new hydra can bud from an adult hydra. This is a form of asexual reproduction. Two hydras (*right*) are now present, whereas before there was only one hydra (*left*).

Figure 29.2 Reproducing in water.

Animals that reproduce in water have no need to protect their eggs and embryos from drying out. Here, male and female frogs are mating. They deposit their gametes in the water, where fertilization takes place. The egg contains yolk, which nourishes the embryo until it is a free-swimming larva.

Reproduction on Land Versus in Water

Many aquatic animals practice external fertilization, meaning the egg and sperm join in the water outside the body (**Fig. 29.2**). Following fertilization, many aquatic animals have a larval stage, an immature form capable of feeding. Over time, the larva develops into a new adult.

Video
Sea Urchin Reproduction

Internal fertilzation involves **copulation,** or sexual union, to facilitate the reception of sperm by a female. Some aquatic animals have copulatory organs. Lobsters and crayfish have modified swimmerets. In terrestrial animals, males typically have a penis for depositing sperm into the vagina of females (**Fig. 29.3**). However, this is not the case for all terrestrial animals. For example, birds lack a penis or vagina. Instead they have a cloaca, a chamber that receives products from the digestive, urinary, and reproductive tracts. A male transfers sperm to a female after placing his cloacal opening against hers.

Following internal fertilization, animals either produce eggs or give birth to live offspring. Egg-laying animals are *oviparous,* producing eggs that will hatch after ejection from the body. Reptiles, particularly birds, are oviparous animals that provide their eggs with plentiful yolk, a rich nutrient material. Complete development takes place within a shelled egg. Special membranes, called e*xtraembryonic membranes,* serve the needs of the embryo and prevent it from drying out. The shelled egg frees these animals from the need to reproduce in the water—a significant adaptation to the terrestrial environment (see Chapter 19).

Birds, in particular, tend their eggs, and newly hatched birds usually have to be fed before they are able to fly away and seek food for themselves. Complex hormones and neural regulation are involved in the reproductive behavior of parental birds. Other animals take a different course. They do not deposit and tend their eggs; instead, they are *ovoviviparous,* meaning that their eggs are retained in the body until they hatch, releasing fully developed offspring that have a way of life like that of the parent. Oysters, which are molluscs, retain their eggs in the mantle cavity, and male sea horses, which are vertebrates, have a brood pouch in which the eggs develop. Garter snakes, water snakes, and pit vipers retain their eggs in their bodies until they hatch, thus giving birth to living young.

Finally, most mammals are *viviparous,* meaning that they produce living young. After offspring are born, the mother supplies the nutrients needed for further growth. Viviparity represents the ultimate in caring for the unborn. How did viviparity among certain mammals come about? Some mammals, such as the duckbill platypus and the spiny anteater, lay eggs. In contrast, marsupial offspring are born in a very immature state; they finish their development in a pouch, where they are nourished on milk. Only among primates, including humans, does a single embryo usually develop. The **placenta** is a complex structure derived, in part, from the chorion, the outermost membrane surrounding an embryo, which first appeared in a shelled egg. The evolution of the placenta allowed the developing offspring to exchange materials with the mother internally.

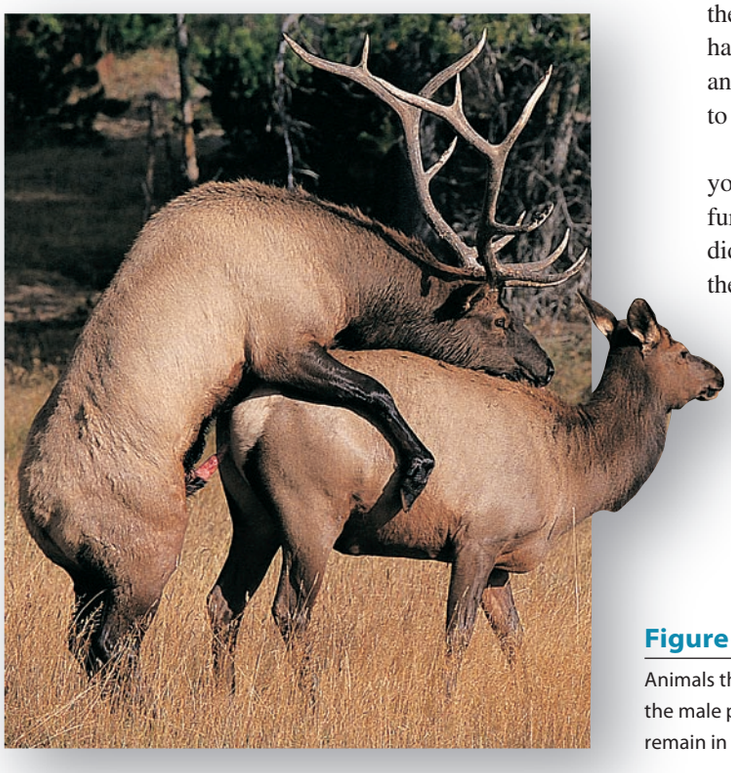


Figure 29.3 Reproducing on land.

Animals that reproduce on land need to protect their gametes and embryos from drying out. Here, the male passes sperm to the female by way of a penis, and the developing embryo/fetus will remain in the female's body until it is capable of living independently.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

For viviparous mammals, what are typical gestation periods?

Gestation periods, the times of development in the uterus from conception to birth, vary greatly between species. The average gestation periods for some common mammals are as follows (listed in days of gestation): hamster, 16; mouse, 21; squirrel, 44; pig, 114; grizzly bear, 220; human, 270; giraffe, 425; killer whale, 500; Indian elephant, 624.

Check Your Progress 29.1

1. Summarize the differences between sexual and asexual reproduction.
2. Describe the advantages and disadvantages of reproduction on land and in water.
3. Detail the differences among oviparous, ovoviviparous, and viviparous animals.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Animals have evolved asexual and sexual forms of reproduction.

29.2 Human Reproduction

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the structures of the male and female reproductive systems and their functions.
2. Explain how hormones regulate the male and female reproductive systems.
3. Evaluate the effectiveness of various means of birth control and explain how they work.
4. Identify the causes of male and female infertility.
5. Describe the assisted reproductive technologies.
6. Identify the causative agents of common sexually transmitted diseases.

In human males and females, the reproductive system consists of two components: (1) the gonads, either testes or ovaries, which produce gametes and sex hormones, and (2) accessory organs that conduct gametes and, in the female, house the embryo/fetus.

Male Reproductive System

The human male reproductive system includes the testes (sing., testis), the epididymis (pl., epididymides), the vas deferens (pl., vasa deferentia), and the urethra (**Fig. 29.4a**). The urethra in males is a part of both the urinary system and the reproductive system. The paired testes, which produce sperm, are suspended within the scrotum. The testes begin their development inside the abdominal cavity, but they descend into the scrotum as embryonic development proceeds. If the testes do not descend soon after birth, and the male does not receive hormone therapy or undergo surgery to place the testes in the scrotum, sterility results. **Sterility** is the inability to produce offspring. This type of sterility occurs because normal sperm production is inhibited at body temperature; a slightly cooler temperature is required.

Sperm produced by the testes mature within the *epididymis,* a coiled tubule lying just outside each testis. Maturation seems to be required for the sperm to swim to the egg. Once the sperm have matured, they are propelled into the *vas deferens* by muscular contractions. The vasa deferentia are severed or blocked in a surgical form of birth control called a vasectomy (see Table 29.1). Sperm are stored in both the epididymis and the vas deferens. When a male becomes sexually aroused, sperm enter first the ejaculatory duct and then the urethra, part of which is located within the penis.

The **penis** is a cylindrical organ that hangs in front of the scrotum. Three cylindrical columns of spongy, erectile tissue containing distensible blood spaces extend through the shaft of the penis (Fig. 29.4*b*). During sexual arousal, nervous reflexes cause an increase in arterial blood flow to the penis. This increased blood flow fills the blood spaces in the erectile tissue, and the penis, which is normally limp (flaccid), stiffens and increases in size. These changes are called an erection. If the penis fails to become erect, the condition is called *erectile dysfunction (ED).* Drugs such as Viagra, Levitra, and Cialis

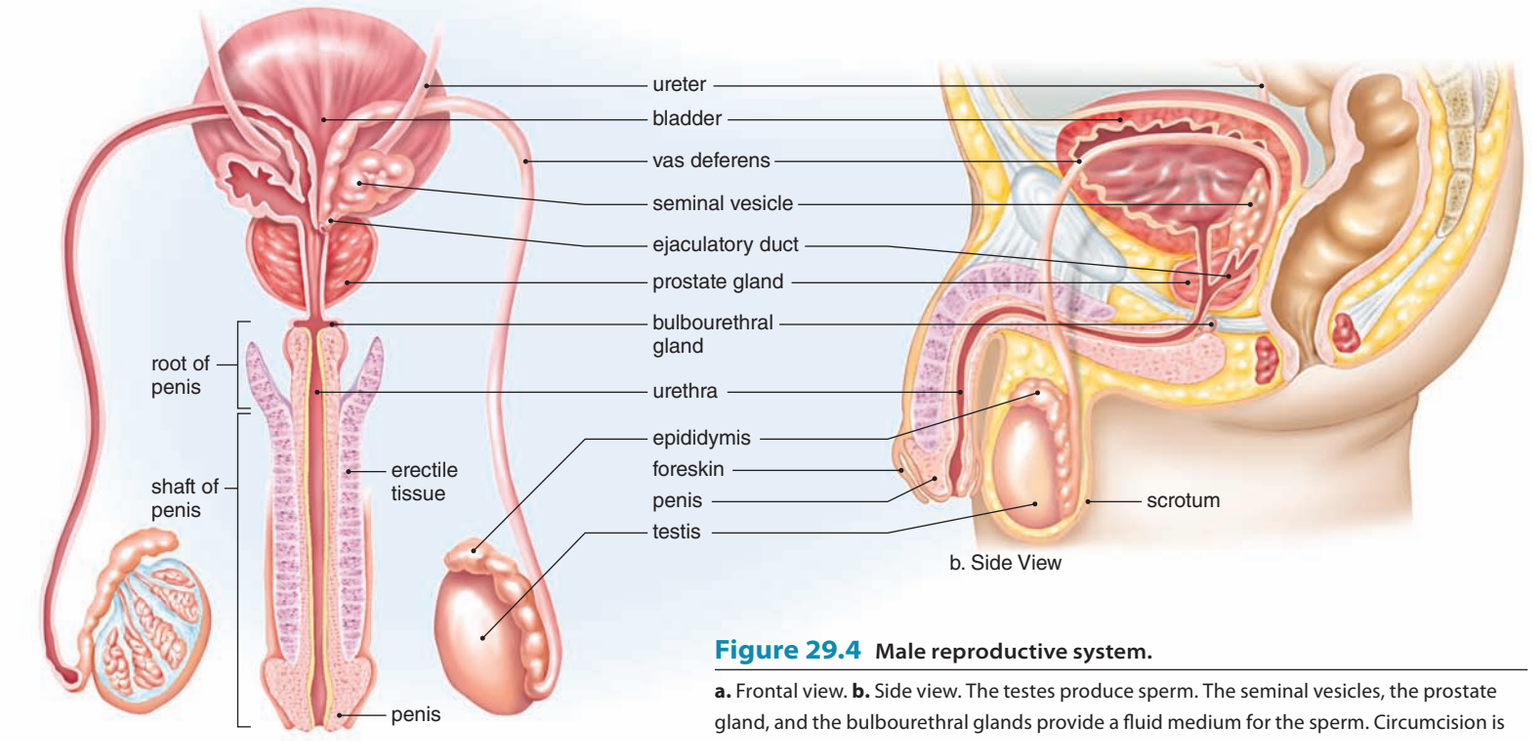


Figure 29.4 **Male reproductive system.**

a. Frontal view. **b.** Side view. The testes produce sperm. The seminal vesicles, the prostate gland, and the bulbourethral glands provide a fluid medium for the sperm. Circumcision is the removal of the foreskin.

work by increasing blood flow to the penis, so that when a man is sexually excited, he can achieve and keep an erection.

Semen (seminal fluid) is a thick, whitish fluid that contains sperm and secretions from three glands: the seminal vesicles, prostate gland, and bulbourethral glands. The *seminal vesicles* lie at the base of the bladder. Each joins a vas deferens to form an ejaculatory duct that enters the urethra. As sperm pass from the vas deferens into the ejaculatory duct, these vesicles secrete a thick, viscous fluid containing nutrients for use by the sperm. Just below the bladder is the *prostate gland,* which secretes a milky, alkaline fluid believed to activate or increase the motility of the sperm and neutralize the acidity of the urethra from urination. In older men, the prostate gland may become enlarged, thereby constricting the urethra and making urination difficult. Also, prostate cancer is the most common form of cancer in men. Slightly below the prostate gland, one on each side of the urethra, is a pair of small glands called *bulbourethral glands,* which have mucous secretions with a lubricating effect. Notice from Figure 29.4 that the urethra also carries urine from the bladder during urination.

If sexual arousal reaches its peak, ejaculation follows an erection. The first phase of ejaculation is called emission. During emission, the spinal cord sends nerve impulses via appropriate nerve fibers to the epididymides and vasa deferentia. Their muscular walls contract, causing sperm to enter the ejaculatory ducts, whereupon the seminal vesicles, prostate gland, and bulbourethral glands release their secretions. Secretions from the bulbourethral glands occur first and may or may not contain sperm.

During the second phase of ejaculation, called expulsion, rhythmic contractions of muscles at the base of the penis and within the urethral wall expel semen in spurts from the opening of the urethra. These contractions are an example of release from muscle tension. An erection lasts for only a limited amount of time. The penis then returns to its normal, flaccid state. Following ejaculation, a male may typically experience a time, called the refractory period, during which stimulation does not bring about an erection. The contractions that expel semen from the penis are a part of male **orgasm,** the physiological and psychological sensations that occur at the climax of sexual stimulation.

The Testes

A longitudinal section of a testis shows that it is composed of compartments, called lobules, each of which contains one to three tightly coiled *seminiferous tubules* (**Fig. 29.5*a,b***). A microscopic cross section of a seminiferous tubule reveals that it is packed with cells undergoing spermatogenesis, a process that involves reducing the chromosome number from diploid (2n) to haploid (n). Also present are *Sertoli cells,* which support, nourish, and regulate the production of sperm. A sperm (Fig. 29.5*c*) has three distinct parts: a head, a middle piece, and a tail. The head contains a nucleus and is capped by a membrane-bounded acrosome that contains digestive enzymes, so that the sperm can penetrate the outer membrane of an egg. The tail is a flagellum that allows sperm to swim toward the egg, and the middle piece contains energy-producing mitochondria.

Video Human Sperm

The ejaculated semen of a normal human male contains 40 million sperm per milliliter, ensuring an adequate number for fertilization to take place. Fewer than 100 sperm ever reach the vicinity of the egg, however, and only one sperm normally enters an egg.

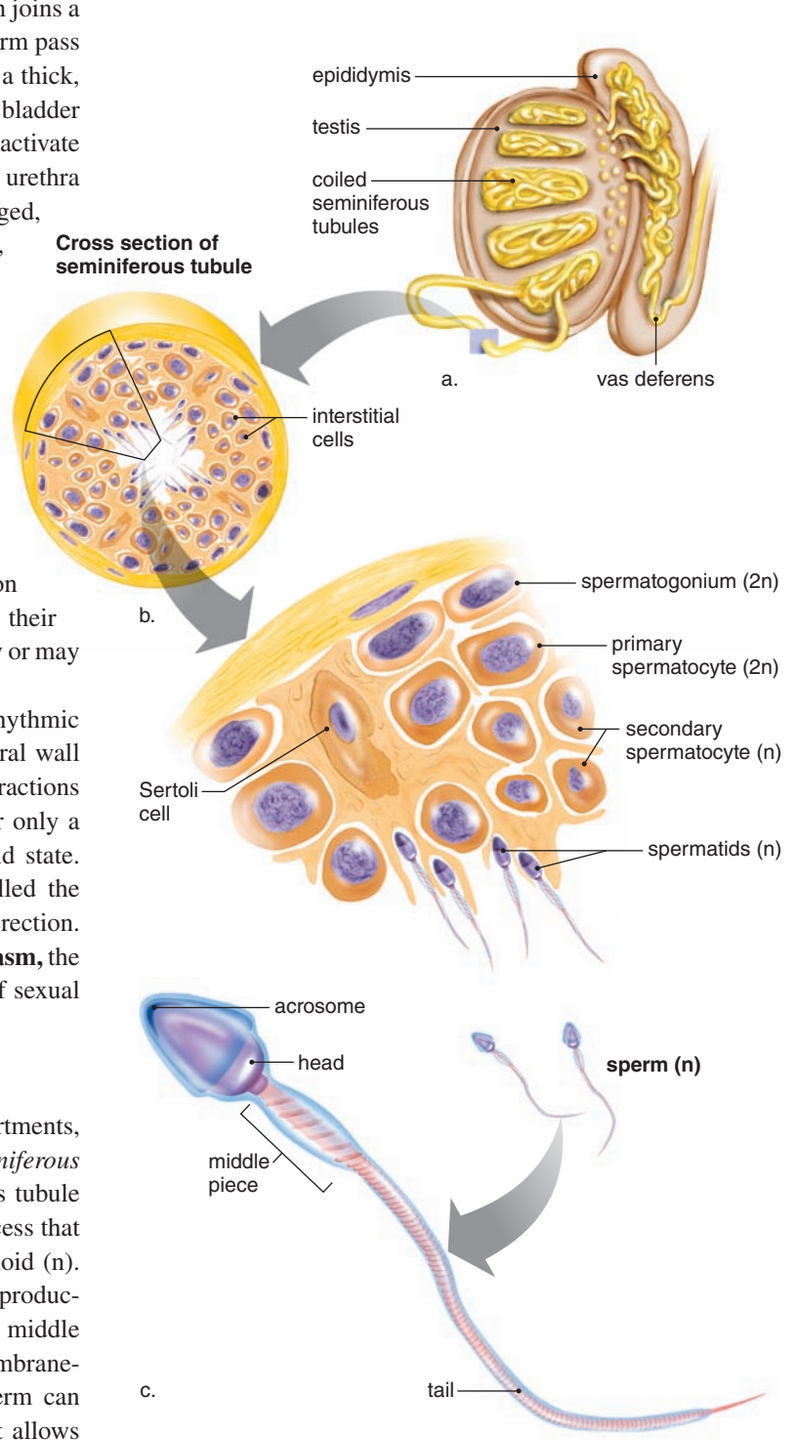


Figure 29.5 Seminiferous tubules.

a. The testes contain seminiferous tubules, where sperm are produced. **b.** Cross section of a tubule. As spermatogenesis occurs, the chromosome number is reduced to the haploid number. **c.** A sperm has a head, a middle piece, and a tail. The nucleus is in the head, which is capped by an acrosome.

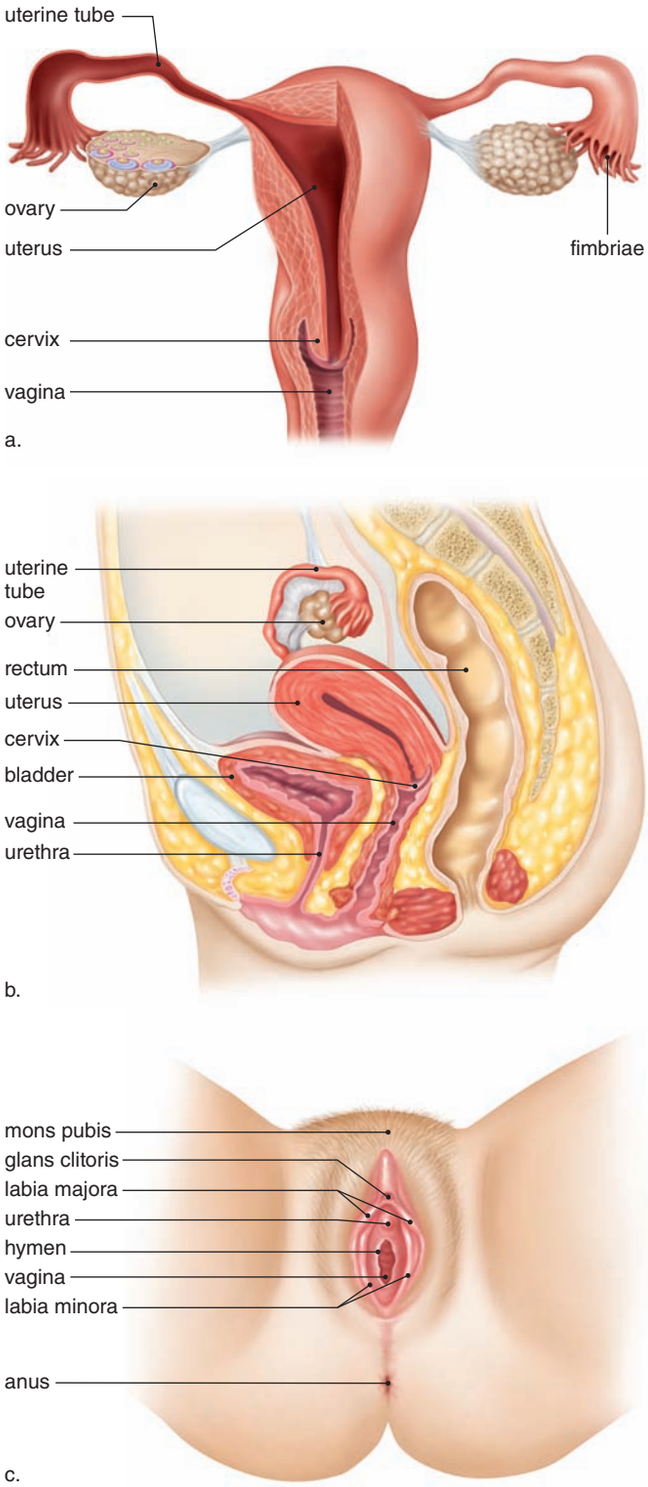


Figure 29.6 Female reproductive system.

a. Frontal view of the female reproductive system. The ovaries produce one oocyte (egg) per month. Fertilization occurs in the uterine tube, and development occurs in the uterus. The vagina is the birth canal and organ of sexual intercourse. **b.** Side view of the female reproductive system plus nearby organs. **c.** Female external genitals, the vulva. At birth, the opening of the vagina is partially occluded by a membrane called the hymen. Physical activities and sexual intercourse disrupt the hymen.

Hormonal Regulation in Males

The hypothalamus has ultimate control of the testes' sexual function, because it secretes a hormone called gonadotropin-releasing hormone, or GnRH, that stimulates the anterior pituitary to produce the gonadotropic hormones. Both males and females have two gonadotropic hormones—follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH). In males, FSH promotes spermatogenesis in the seminiferous tubules. LH controls the production of testosterone by the interstitial cells, which are scattered in the spaces between the seminiferous tubules.

Testosterone, the main sex hormone in males, is essential for the normal development and functioning of the sexual organs. Testosterone is also necessary for the maturation of sperm. In addition, testosterone brings about and maintains the male secondary sex characteristics that develop at the time of **puberty,** the time of life when sexual maturity is attained. Males are generally taller than females and have broader shoulders and longer legs relative to trunk length. The deeper voice of males compared with females is due to males' having a larger larynx with longer vocal cords. Because the Adam's apple is a part of the larynx, it is usually more prominent in males than in females.

Testosterone causes males to develop noticeable hair on the face, chest, and occasionally other regions of the body, such as the back. Testosterone also leads to the receding hairline and contributes to the pattern baldness that frequently occur in males. Testosterone is responsible for the greater muscular development in males.

Female Reproductive System

The human female reproductive system includes the ovaries, the uterine tubes, the uterus, and the vagina (**Fig. 29.6*a,b***). The *uterine tubes*, also called the oviducts or fallopian tubes, extend from the ovaries to the uterus; however, the uterine tubes are not attached to the ovaries. Instead, the uterine tubes have fingerlike projections, called *fimbriae* (sing., fimbria), that sweep over the ovaries. When an oocyte, an immature egg cell, ruptures from an ovary during ovulation, it usually is swept into a uterine tube by the combined action of the fimbriae and the beating of cilia that line the uterine tube. Fertilization, if it occurs, normally takes place in the first one-third of the uterine tube, and the developing embryo is propelled slowly by ciliary movement and tubular muscle contraction to the uterus. The **uterus** is a thick-walled, muscular organ about the size and shape of an inverted pear. The narrow end of the uterus is called the **cervix.** An embryo completes its development after embedding itself in the uterine lining, called the **endometrium.** A small opening at the cervix leads to the vaginal canal. The **vagina** is a tube at a 45° angle with the body's vertical axis. The mucosal lining of the vagina lies in folds, and therefore the vagina can expand. This ability to expand is especially important when the vagina serves as the birth canal, and it can facilitate sexual intercourse, when the penis is inserted into the vagina.

MP3
Female Reproductive Anatomy and Physiology

The external genital organs of a female are known collectively as the *vulva* (Fig. 29.6*c*). The *mons pubis* and two folds of skin called *labia minora* and *labia majora* are on each side of the urethral and vaginal openings. At the juncture of the labia minora is the *clitoris,* which is homologous to the penis of males. The clitoris has a shaft of erectile tissue and is capped by a pea-shaped glans. The many sensory receptors of the clitoris allow it

to function as a sexually sensitive organ. Most females are born with a thin membrane, called the hymen, which partially obstructs the vaginal opening and has no apparent biological function. The hymen is typically ruptured by physical activities, including sexual intercourse, tampon insertion, and even athletics.

The Ovaries

An oogonium, an undifferentiated germ cell, in the ovary gives rise to an oocyte surrounded by epithelium (**Fig. 29.7**). This is called a primary **follicle.** An ovary contains many primary follicles, each containing an oocyte. At birth, a female has as many as 2 million primary follicles, but the number has been reduced to 300,000–400,000 by the time of puberty. Only a small number of primary follicles (about 400) ever mature and produce a secondary oocyte. When mature, the follicle balloons out on the surface of the ovary and bursts, releasing the secondary oocyte surrounded by follicle cells. The release of a secondary oocyte from a mature follicle is termed **ovulation.** Oogenesis is completed when and if the secondary oocyte is fertilized by a sperm. A follicle that has lost its oocyte develops into a *corpus luteum* and stays inside the ovary. If fertilization and pregnancy do not occur, the corpus luteum begins to degenerate after about 10 days.

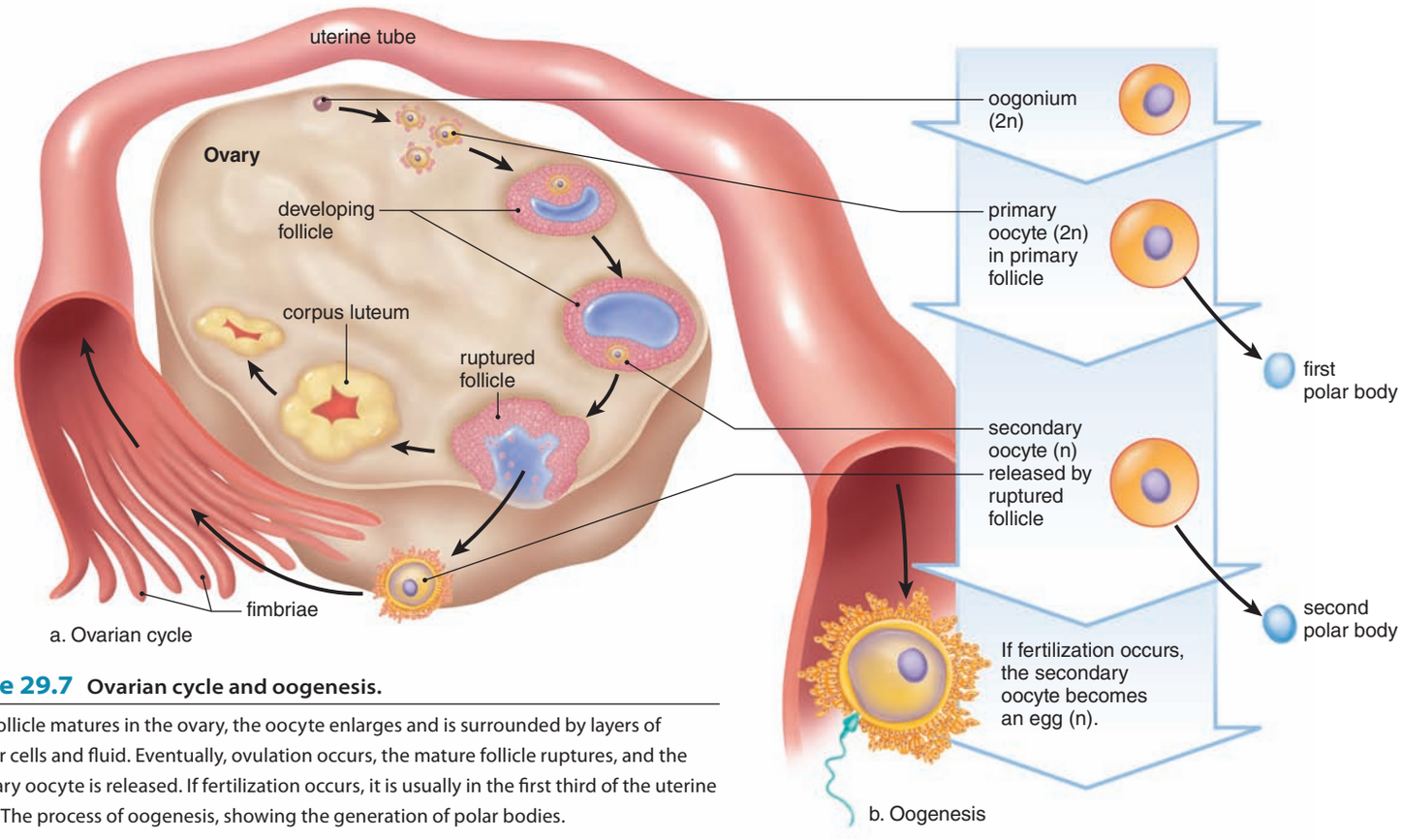


Figure 29.7 **Ovarian cycle and oogenesis.**

a. As a follicle matures in the ovary, the oocyte enlarges and is surrounded by layers of follicular cells and fluid. Eventually, ovulation occurs, the mature follicle ruptures, and the secondary oocyte is released. If fertilization occurs, it is usually in the first third of the uterine tube. b. The process of oogenesis, showing the generation of polar bodies.

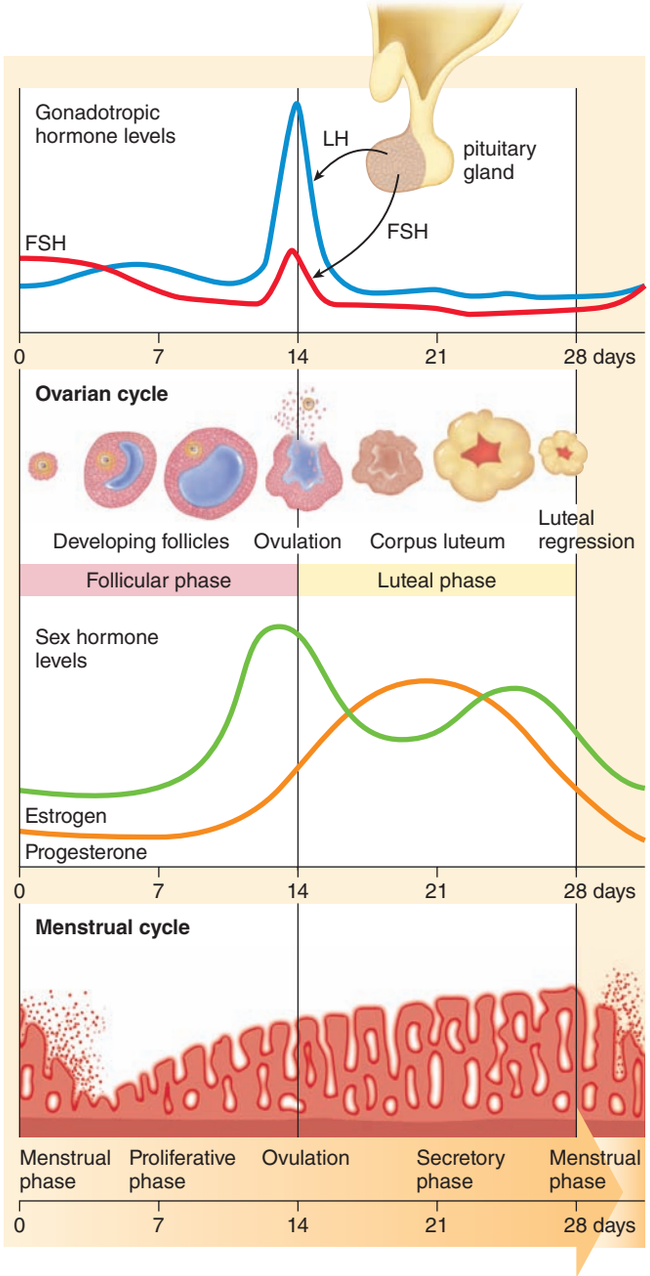


Figure 29.8 **Ovarian and menstrual cycles.**

During the follicular phase of the ovarian cycle (pink), FSH released by the anterior pituitary promotes the maturation of follicles in the ovary. Ovarian follicles produce increasing levels of estrogen, which cause the endometrium to thicken during the proliferative phase of the menstrual cycle (*bottom*). After ovulation and during the luteal phase of the ovarian cycle (yellow), LH promotes the development of a corpus luteum. This structure produces increasing levels of progesterone, which cause the endometrium to become secretory. Menstruation begins when progesterone production declines to a low level.

The ovarian cycle is controlled by the gonadotropic hormones FSH and LH from the anterior pituitary gland (**Fig. 29.8**). During the first half, or **follicular phase,** of the cycle (pink in Fig. 29.8), FSH promotes the development of follicles that secrete estrogen. As the blood level of estrogen rises, it exerts feedback control over FSH secretion, and ovulation occurs. Ovulation marks the end of the follicular phase. During the second half, or **luteal phase,** of the ovarian cycle (yellow in Fig. 29.8), LH promotes the development of a corpus luteum, which secretes primarily progesterone. As the blood level of progesterone rises, it exerts feedback control over LH secretion, so that the corpus luteum begins to degenerate if fertilization does not occur. As the luteal phase comes to an end, menstruation occurs.

Notice that the female sex hormones estrogen and progesterone affect the endometrium of the uterus, causing the series of events known as the **menstrual cycle** (Fig. 29.8, *bottom*). The 28-day (on average) menstrual cycle in the nonpregnant female is divided as follows:

During *days 1–5,* female sex hormones are at a low level in the body, causing the endometrium to disintegrate and its blood vessels to rupture. A flow of blood, mucus, and degenerating endometrium, known as the **menses,** passes out of the vagina during **menstruation,** also known as the menstrual period.

During *days 6–13,* increased production of estrogen by ovarian follicles causes the endometrium to thicken and become vascular and glandular. This is called the proliferative phase of the menstrual cycle.

Ovulation usually occurs on *day 14* of the 28-day cycle.

During *days 15–28,* increased production of progesterone by the corpus luteum causes the endometrium to double in thickness and the uterine glands to mature, producing a thick, mucoid secretion. This is called the secretory phase of the menstrual cycle. The endometrium now is prepared to receive the developing embryo. But if fertilization does not occur and no embryo embeds itself, the corpus luteum degenerates and the low level of sex hormones in the female body causes the endometrium to break down. Menses begins, marking day 1 of the next cycle. Even while menstruation is occurring, the anterior pituitary begins to increase its production of FSH, and new follicles begin to mature.

Hormonal Regulation in Females

Estrogen and **progesterone** are the female sex hormones. Estrogen, in particular, is essential for the normal development and functioning of the female reproductive organs. Estrogen is also largely responsible for the secondary sex characteristics in females, including body hair and fat distribution. In general, females have a more rounded appearance than males because of a greater accumulation of fat beneath their skin. Also, the pelvic girdle aligns so that females have wider hips than males, and the thighs converge at a greater angle toward the knees. Both estrogen and progesterone are required for breast development as well.

Menopause, which usually occurs between ages 45 and 55, is the time in a woman's life when the ovarian and menstrual cycles cease. Menopause is not considered complete until menstruation has been absent for a year.

Control of Reproduction

Table 29.1 lists various means of birth control and gives their rate of effectiveness, assuming consistent and correct usage. **Figure 29.9** illustrates some birth control devices. **Abstinence**—that is, or not engaging in sexual intercourse, is very reliable and has the added advantage of avoiding sexually transmitted diseases. Oral contraception, commonly called the **birth control pill,** often involves taking a combination of estrogen and progesterone on a daily basis. These hormones effectively shut down the pituitary production of both FSH and LH, so that no follicle in the ovary begins to develop in there; because ovulation does not occur, pregnancy cannot take place. Because of possible side effects, including headaches, blurred vision, chest or abdominal pain, and swollen legs, women taking birth control pills should see a physician regularly.

Contraceptive implants use a synthetic progesterone to prevent ovulation by disrupting the ovarian cycle. The older version of the implant consists of six match-sized, time-release capsules that are surgically implanted under the skin of a woman's upper arm. The newest version consists of a single capsule that remains effective for about three years.

Contraceptive injections are available as progesterone only or as a combination of estrogen and progesterone. The length of time between injections can vary from a few weeks to several months.

Connections: Health

What is hormone replacement therapy?

Hormone replacement therapy (HRT) is often begun after menopause. The fluctuation of hormone levels during menopause can cause symptoms such as hot flashes, mood swings, trouble sleeping, increased abdominal fat, and thinning hair, which HRT can alleviate. The use of HRT has its pros and cons; there is evidence that using HRT after menopause can help prevent bone loss, decrease the risk of colorectal cancer, and decrease certain types of heart disease. Studies also show that some types of HRT in certain patients can increase incidences of stroke and blood clots. Women on HRT should be evaluated every six months by their physician.

Table 29.1 Common Birth Control Methods

Name	Procedure	Effectiveness*	Name	Procedure	Effectiveness*
Abstinence	Refrain from sexual intercourse	100%	Diaphragm	Latex cap inserted into vagina to cover cervix before intercourse	With jelly, about 90%
Sterilization Vasectomy Tubal ligation	 Vas deferens cut and tied Uterine tubes cut and tied	 Almost 100% Almost 100%	Cervical cap	Latex cap held by suction over cervix	Almost 85%
Combined estrogen/progesterone available as a pill, an injectable, or a vaginal ring and patch	Pill is taken daily; injectable and ring last a month; patch is replaced weekly	About 100%	Male condom	Latex sheath fitted over erect penis	About 85%
			Female condom	Polyurethane liner fitted inside vagina	About 85%
Progesterone only available as a tube implant and an injectable	Implant lasts 3 years; injectable lasts 3 weeks	About 95%	Coitus interruptus	Penis withdrawn before ejaculation	About 75%
			Jellies, creams, foams	Spermicidal products inserted before intercourse	About 75%
Intrauterine device (IUD)	Newest hormone-free device contains progesterone and lasts up to 10 years	More than 90%	Natural family planning	Day of ovulation determined by record keeping; various methods of testing	About 70%
Vaginal sponge	Sponge permeated with spermicide is inserted into vagina	About 90%	Douche	Vagina cleansed after intercourse	Less than 70%

*The percentage of sexually active women per year who will not get pregnant using this method.

Figure 29.9 **Contraceptive devices.**

A sample of some of the more common forms of contraception.

Interest in barrier methods of birth control, such as **condoms,** has increased, because they offer some protection against sexually transmitted diseases. A *female condom* consists of a large, polyurethane tube with a flexible ring that fits onto the cervix. The open end of the tube has a ring that covers the external genitals. A *male condom* is most often a latex sheath that fits over the erect penis. The ejaculate is trapped inside the sheath and thus does not enter the vagina. When used in conjunction with a spermicide, the protection is better than with the condom alone. The **diaphragm** is a soft, latex cup with a flexible rim that lodges behind the pubic bone and fits over the cervix. Each woman must be properly fitted by a physician, and the diaphragm can be inserted into the vagina no more than two hours before sexual relations. Also, it must be used with spermicidal jelly or cream and should be left in place for at least six hours after sexual relations. The **cervical cap** is a mini-diaphragm.

An **intrauterine device (IUD)** is a small piece of molded plastic that is inserted into the uterus by a physician or another qualified health-care practitioner. IUDs are believed to alter the environment of the uterus and uterine tubes, so that fertilization probably will not occur—but if it should occur, implantation cannot take place.

Contraceptive vaccines are currently being researched. For example, a vaccine intended to immunize women against human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), a hormone necessary to maintain the implantation of the embryo, has been successful in a limited clinical trial. Since hCG is not normally present in the body, no autoimmune reaction is expected, but the immunization does wear off with time. Other researchers believe that it would also be possible to develop a safe antisperm vaccine for women.

Emergency contraception includes approaches to birth control that can prevent pregnancy after unprotected intercourse. The expression "morning-after pill" is a misnomer in that a woman can use these medications up to several days after unprotected intercourse.

One type, called the Preven Emergency Contraceptive Kit, contains four synthetic progesterone pills; two are taken up to 72 hours after unprotected intercourse, and two more are taken 12 hours later. The medication upsets the normal uterine cycle, preventing an embryo from implanting in the endometrium. Used correctly, Preven is about 85% effective in preventing unintended pregnancies. Recently, Preven has been approved as an over-the-counter medication for anyone over the age of 15.

Another type of emergency contraception is Plan B One-Step, which is up to 89% effective in preventing pregnancy if taken within 72 hours after unprotected sex. It is available to women age 17 and older without a prescription. A similar medication called ella is more effective up to day 4 or 5 after unprotected sex, but a prescription is required. In some cases, these medications can be combined with the insertion of an IUD. Much research today is devoted to developing safe and effective hormonal birth control for males. Implants, pills, patches, and injections are being explored as ways to deliver testosterone and/or progesterone at adequate levels to suppress sperm production. Even the most successful formulations are still in the experimental stage and are unlikely to be available outside of clinical trials for at least a few more years.

Infertility

Control of reproduction does not only mean preventing pregnancy. It also involves methods of treating infertility. **Infertility** is the failure of a couple to achieve pregnancy after one year of regular, unprotected intercourse. It is estimated that one in six couples in America face problems with infertility. The cause of infertility can be attributed to the male (40%), the female (40%), or both (20%).

The most frequent cause of infertility in males is low sperm count and/or a large proportion of abnormal sperm, which can be due to environmental influences. Physicians advise that a sedentary lifestyle coupled with smoking and alcohol consumption can lead to male infertility. When males spend most of the day driving or sitting in front of a computer or television, the testes' temperature remains too high for adequate sperm production.

In females, body weight is an important fertility factor. Only if a woman is of normal weight do fat cells produce a hormone, called leptin, that stimulates the hypothalamus to release GnRH, so that follicle formation begins in the ovaries. If a woman is overweight, the ovaries may contain many small, ineffective follicles, and ovulation does not occur. About 10% of women of childbearing age have an endocrine condition that may be due to an inability to utilize insulin properly. The condition is called *polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS),* because the ovaries contain many cysts (small, fluid-filled sacs) but no functioning follicles, and ovulation does not occur. An impaired ability to respond to insulin is implicated because many women with PCOS eventually develop type 2 diabetes. Other causes of infertility in females are blocked uterine tubes due to *pelvic inflammatory disease* (see page 570) and *endometriosis*, the presence of uterine tissue outside the uterus, particularly in the uterine tubes and on the abdominal organs.

Sometimes the causes of infertility can be corrected by medical intervention, so that couples can have children. It is also possible to give females fertility drugs, gonadotropic hormones that stimulate the ovaries and bring about ovulation. Such hormone treatments have been known to cause multiple ovulations and multiple births.

When reproduction does not occur in the usual manner, many couples adopt a child. Others try the assisted reproductive technologies discussed in the following paragraphs.

Assisted Reproductive Technologies

Assisted reproductive technologies (ART) are techniques used to increase the chances of pregnancy. Often, sperm and/or eggs are retrieved from the testes and ovaries, and fertilization takes place in a clinical or laboratory setting.

Artificial Insemination by Donor (AID) During artificial insemination, harvested sperm are placed in the vagina by a physician. Sometimes a woman is artificially inseminated by her partner's sperm. This technique is especially helpful if the partner has a low sperm count, because the sperm can be collected over a period of time and concentrated, so that the sperm count is sufficient to result in fertilization. Often, however, a woman is inseminated by sperm acquired from a donor who is a complete stranger to her.

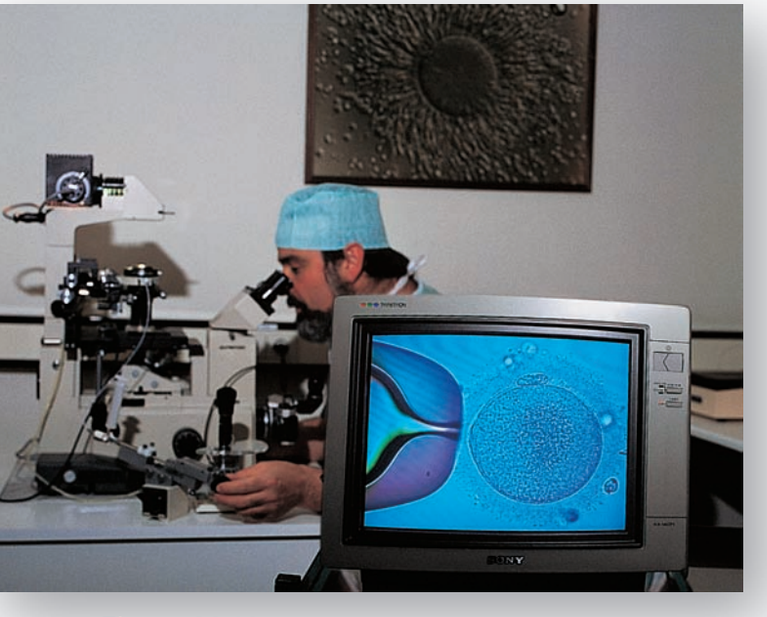


Figure 29.10 **Intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI).**

A microscope connected to a television screen (at *left*) is used to carry out ICSI. On the screen, note that a pipette (at *left* of egg) holds the egg steady while a needle (not visible) introduces the sperm into the egg, ensuring fertilization.

In Vitro Fertilization (IVF) and Intracytoplasmic Sperm Injection (ICSI) During IVF and ICSI (**Fig. 29.10**), conception occurs outside the body in a laboratory. Ultrasound machines can spot follicles in the ovaries that hold immature eggs; therefore, the latest method is to forgo the administration of fertility drugs and retrieve immature eggs by using a needle. In IVF, the immature eggs are then brought to maturity in glassware before concentrated sperm are added. In ICSI, a single sperm is injected into an egg, usually because a male has severe infertility problems. After about two to four days, embryos are ready to be transferred to the uterus of the woman, who is now in the secretory phase of her menstrual cycle. If desired, embryos can be tested for a genetic disease, and only those found to be free of disease will be used. If implantation is successful and development is normal, pregnancy continues to term.

Video IVF

If several embryos are produced and transferred at a time, multiple births are common. Or there may be excess embryos left over and these may be frozen for transfer later, or they may be donated to other couples or used in research.

Gamete Intrafallopian Transfer (GIFT) The term **gamete** refers to a sex cell, either a sperm or an egg. Gamete intrafallopian transfer was devised to overcome the low success rate (15–20%) of in vitro fertilization. The method is similar to in vitro fertilization, except the eggs and sperm are placed in the uterine tubes immediately after they have been brought together. GIFT has the advantage of being a one-step procedure for the woman—the eggs are removed and reintroduced at the same time. A variation on this procedure is to fertilize the eggs in the laboratory and then place the zygotes in the uterine tubes.

Sexually Transmitted Diseases

Abstinence is the best protection against the spread of sexually transmitted diseases (STDs). For those who are sexually active, a latex condom offers some protection. Among STDs caused by viruses, treatment is available for AIDS and genital herpes, but these conditions are not curable. Only STDs caused by bacteria (e.g., chlamydia, gonorrhea, and syphilis) are curable with antibiotics.

STDs Caused by Viruses

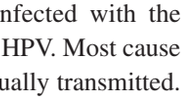
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) is caused by a virus called **human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).** HIV attacks the type of lymphocyte known as helper T cells (see Chapters 17 and 26) . Helper T cells, you will recall, stimulate the activities of B lymphocytes, which produce antibodies. After an HIV infection sets in, helper T cells begin to decline in number, and the person becomes debilitated and more susceptible to other types of infection (**Fig. 29.11**). AIDS has three stages of infection, called categories A, B, and C.

During the category A stage, which in untreated individuals typically lasts about a year, the individual is an asymptomatic carrier. He or she may exhibit no symptoms but can pass on the infection. Immediately after infection and before the blood test is positive, a large number of infectious viruses are present in the blood and can be passed on to another person. Even after the blood test is positive, the person remains well as long as the body produces sufficient helper T cells to keep the count higher than 500 per mm^3. With a combination therapy of several drugs, AIDS patients can remain in this stage indefinitely.

Animation How the HIV Infection Works

During the category B stage, which may last six to eight years, the lymph nodes swell and the person may experience weight loss, night sweats, fatigue, fever, and diarrhea. Infections such as thrush (white sores on the tongue and in the mouth) and herpes recur.

Finally, the person may progress to category C, which is full-blown AIDS characterized by nervous disorders and the development of an opportunistic disease, such as an unusual type of pneumonia or skin cancer. Opportunistic diseases are those that occur only in individuals who have little or no capability of fighting an infection. Without intensive medical treatment, the AIDS patient dies about seven to nine years after infection.



An estimated 20 million Americans are currently infected with the **human papillomavirus (HPV).** There are over 100 types of HPV. Most cause warts, and about 30 types cause genital warts, which are sexually transmitted. Genital warts may appear as flat or raised warts on the penis and/or foreskin of males, as well as on the vulva, vagina, and/or cervix of females. Note that if warts are only on the cervix, there may be no outward signs or symptoms of the disease. Newborns can also be infected with HPV during passage through the birth canal.

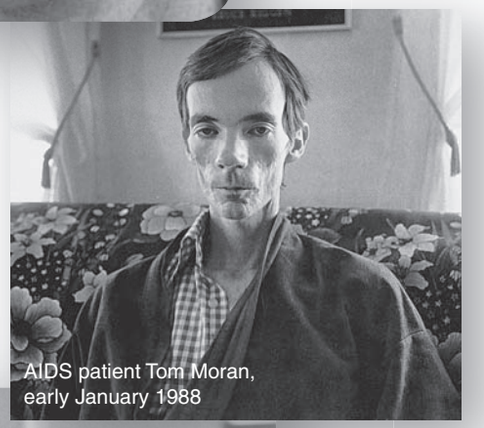
About 10 types of HPV can cause cervical cancer, the second leading cause of cancer death in women in the United States (approximately 500,000 deaths per year). These HPV types produce a viral protein that inactivates a host protein called p53, which normally acts as a "brake" on cell division (see Chapter 9). Once p53 has been inactivated in a particular cell, that cell is more prone to the uncontrolled cell division characteristic of cancer. Early detection of cervical cancer is possible by means of a Pap test, in which a few cells are removed from the region of the cervix for microscopic examination. If the cells are cancerous, a hysterectomy (removal of the uterus) may be recommended. In males, HPV can cause cancers of the penis, anus, and other areas. According to a 2008 study, HPV now causes as many cancers of the mouth and throat in U.S. males as does tobacco, perhaps due to an increase in oral sex as well as a decline in tobacco use.

Currently, there is no cure for an HPV infection, but the warts can be treated effectively by surgery, freezing, application of an acid, or laser burning. However, even after treatment, the virus can sometimes be transmitted. Therefore, once someone has been diagnosed with genital warts, abstinence or the use of a condom is recommended to help prevent transmission of the virus.

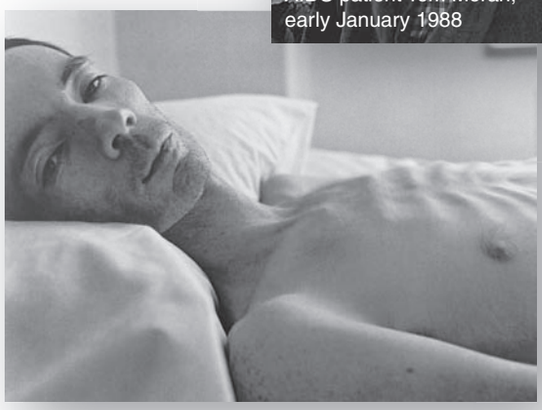
In June 2006, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration licensed Gardasil, an HPV vaccine that is effective against the four most common types of HPV found in the United States, including the two types that cause about 70% of cervical cancers. Because the vaccine doesn't protect those who are already infected, ideally children should be vaccinated before they become sexually active. In 2009, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration approved Gardasil for use in males. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends that 11- to 12-year-old girls and boys receive three doses of the vaccine. Nonpregnant females between ages 13 and 26, and males from age 13 to 21, can also be vaccinated if they did not receive any or all of the three recommended doses when they were younger. Older individuals should speak with their doctor to find out if getting vaccinated is right for them.

Genital herpes is characterized by painful blisters on the genitals. Once the blisters rupture, they leave painful ulcers, which may take as long as three weeks or as little as five days to heal. The blisters may be accompanied by fever, pain on urination, swollen lymph nodes in the groin, and in women, a copious discharge.

AIDS patient Tom Moran, July 1987



AIDS patient Tom Moran, early January 1988



AIDS patient, Tom Moran, late January 1988

Figure 29.11 The course of AIDS.

This individual went through all the stages of AIDS before he died. You should protect yourself from sexually transmitted diseases (STDs). If you have an STD, you are more susceptible to getting another one.

Connections: Health

What can you do to reduce your chances of contracting an STD?

1. Abstain from sexual intercourse or develop a long-term, monogamous (always the same person) relationship with a person who is free of STDs.
2. Refrain from having multiple sex partners or a relationship with a person who does have multiple sex partners.
3. Be aware that having relations with an intravenous drug user is risky, because the behavior of this group puts them at risk for AIDS and hepatitis B.
4. Avoid anal intercourse, because HIV has easy access through the lining of the rectum.
5. Always use a latex condom if your partner has not been free of STDs for the past five years.
6. Avoid oral sex, because this may be a means of transmitting AIDS and other STDs.
7. Stop, if possible, the habit of injecting drugs; if you cannot stop, at least always use a sterile needle.

Check Your Progress 29.2

1. List the structures involved in sperm development and ejaculation.
2. Summarize the functions of testosterone, LH, and FSH in the male reproductive system.
3. Describe the process of ovulation in the ovaries.
4. Detail the events of the menstrual cycle in females.
5. Summarize the technologies that may be used to treat infertility.
6. Categorize STDs according to how they are transmitted (viruses, bacteria, and other causes).

After the ulcers heal, the disease is only latent, and blisters can recur, although usually at less frequent intervals and with milder symptoms. Fever, stress, sunlight, and menstruation are associated with the recurrence of symptoms.

Hepatitis is an infection of the liver and can lead to liver failure, liver cancer, and death. Several types of hepatitis exist, some of which can be transmitted sexually. Each type of hepatitis and the virus that causes it are designated by the same letter. Hepatitis A is usually acquired from sewage-contaminated drinking water, but this infection can also be sexually transmitted through oral/anal contact. Hepatitis B, which is spread in the same manner as AIDS, is even more infectious. Fortunately, a vaccine is available for hepatitis B. Hepatitis C is spread when a person comes in contact with the blood of an infected person.

Video Halting Hepatitis

STDs Caused by Bacteria

Chlamydia is a bacterial infection of the lower reproductive tract that is usually mild or asymptomatic, especially in women. About 8 to 21 days after infection, men may experience a mild burning sensation upon urination and a mucoid discharge. Women may have a vaginal discharge, along with the symptoms of a urinary tract infection. Chlamydia also causes cervical ulcerations, which increase the risk of acquiring AIDS. If the infection is misdiagnosed or if a woman does not seek medical help, there is a risk of the infection spreading from the cervix to the uterine tubes, so that **pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)** results. This very painful condition can result in blockage of the uterine tubes, with the possibility of sterility and infertility.

Gonorrhea is easier to diagnose in males than in females because males are more likely to experience painful urination and a thick, greenish-yellow urethral discharge. In males and females, a latent infection leads to PID, which affects the vasa deferentia or uterine tubes. As the inflamed tubes heal, they may become partially or completely blocked by scar tissue, resulting in sterility or infertility.

Syphilis has three stages, which are typically separated by latent periods. During the final stage, syphilis may affect the cardiovascular system and/or nervous system. An infected person may become mentally retarded or blind, walk with a shuffle, or show signs of insanity. Gummas, which are large, destructive ulcers, may develop on the skin or in the internal organs. Syphilitic bacteria can cross the placenta, causing birth defects or stillbirth. Syphilis is easily diagnosed with a blood test.

STDs Caused by Other Organisms

Females very often have *vaginitis*, or infection of the vagina, caused by either the flagellated protozoan *Trichomonas vaginalis* or the yeast *Candida albicans*. **Trichomoniasis** is most often acquired through sexual intercourse, and the asymptomatic male is usually the reservoir of infection. *Candida albicans,* however, is an organism normally found in the vagina; its growth simply increases beyond normal under certain circumstances. For example, women taking birth control pills are sometimes prone to yeast infections. Also, the legitimate and indiscriminate use of antibiotics for infections elsewhere in the body can alter the normal balance of organisms in the vagina, so that a yeast infection flares up.

29.2 CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
Medical technologies can help regulate human reproduction.

29.3 Human Embryonic Development

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the processes of fertilization, embryonic development, fetal development, and birth.
2. Identify the stages of embryonic development and explain the significance of gastrulation and neurulation.
3. Describe the structure and function of the placenta.

Embryonic Development encompasses all the events that occur from the time of fertilization until an animal—in this case, a human—is fully formed. Humans and other mammals have stages similar to those of all animals but with some marked differences, chiefly because of the presence of extraembryonic membranes (membranes outside the embryo). Developing mammalian embryos (and fetuses in placental mammals, such as humans), such as those of reptiles and birds, depend on these membranes to protect and nourish them. **Figure 29.12** shows what these membranes are and what they do in a mammal.

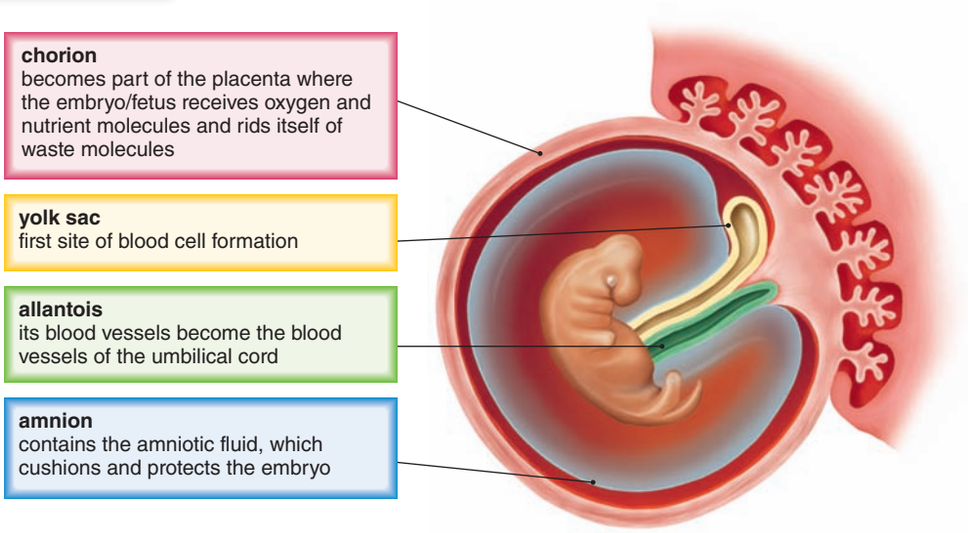


Figure 29.12 The extraembryonic membranes.

Humans, like other animals that reproduce on land, are dependent on these membranes to protect and nourish the embryo (and later the fetus).

Fertilization

Fertilization, which results in a zygote, requires that the sperm and the secondary oocyte interact (**Fig. 29.13**). The plasma membrane of the secondary oocyte is surrounded by an extracellular material termed the *zona pellucida*. In turn, the zona pellucida is surrounded by a few layers of adhering follicle cells.

During fertilization, a sperm moves past the leftover follicle cells, and acrosomal enzymes released by exocytosis digest a route through the zona pellucida. A sperm binds and fuses to the secondary oocyte's plasma membrane, and its nucleus enters. Only then does the secondary oocyte complete meiosis II and become an egg. Finally, the haploid egg and sperm nuclei fuse. Only one sperm should fertilize an egg, or the zygote will have too many chromosomes and the resulting zygote will not be viable. Changes in the zona pellucida usually prevent the binding and penetration of additional sperm (called polyspermy).

Early Embryonic Development

The first two months of development are considered the embryonic period. Approximately six days of development occur in the uterine tube before the embryo implants itself in the uterine lining, or endometrium (**Fig. 29.14**). During the first stage of development, the embryo becomes multicellular. Following fertilization, the zygote undergoes **cleavage,** which is cell division without growth. DNA replication and mitotic cell division occur repeatedly, and the cells get smaller with each division. Notice that cleavage only increases the number of cells; it does not change the original volume of the egg cytoplasm. The resulting tightly packed ball of cells is called a **morula.**

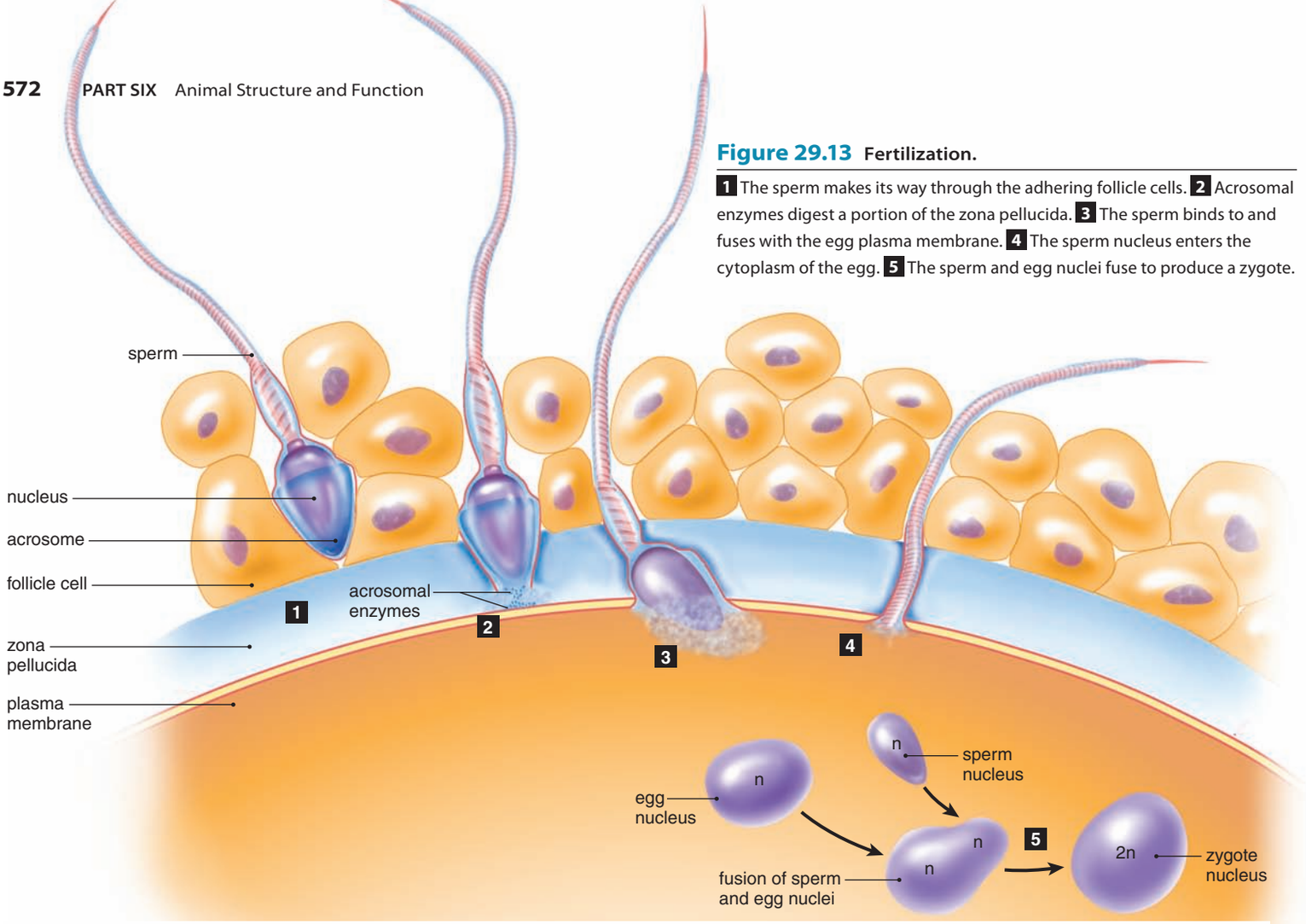
Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Why is the female gender sometimes referred to as the *default sex?*

The term *default sex* has to do with the presence or absence of the Y chromosome in the fetus. On the Y chromosome is a gene called *sex determining region Y (SRY),* which produces a protein that causes Sertoli cells in the testes to produce Müllerian inhibiting substance (MIS). This causes Leydig cells in the testes to produce testosterone, which signals the development of the male sex organs (vas deferens, epididymis, penis, and so on). Without the *SRY* gene and this hormone cascade effect, female structures (uterus, fallopian tubes, ovaries, and so on) will begin to form.

Figure 29.13 **Fertilization.**

1 The sperm makes its way through the adhering follicle cells. **2** Acrosomal enzymes digest a portion of the zona pellucida. **3** The sperm binds to and fuses with the egg plasma membrane. **4** The sperm nucleus enters the cytoplasm of the egg. **5** The sperm and egg nuclei fuse to produce a zygote.



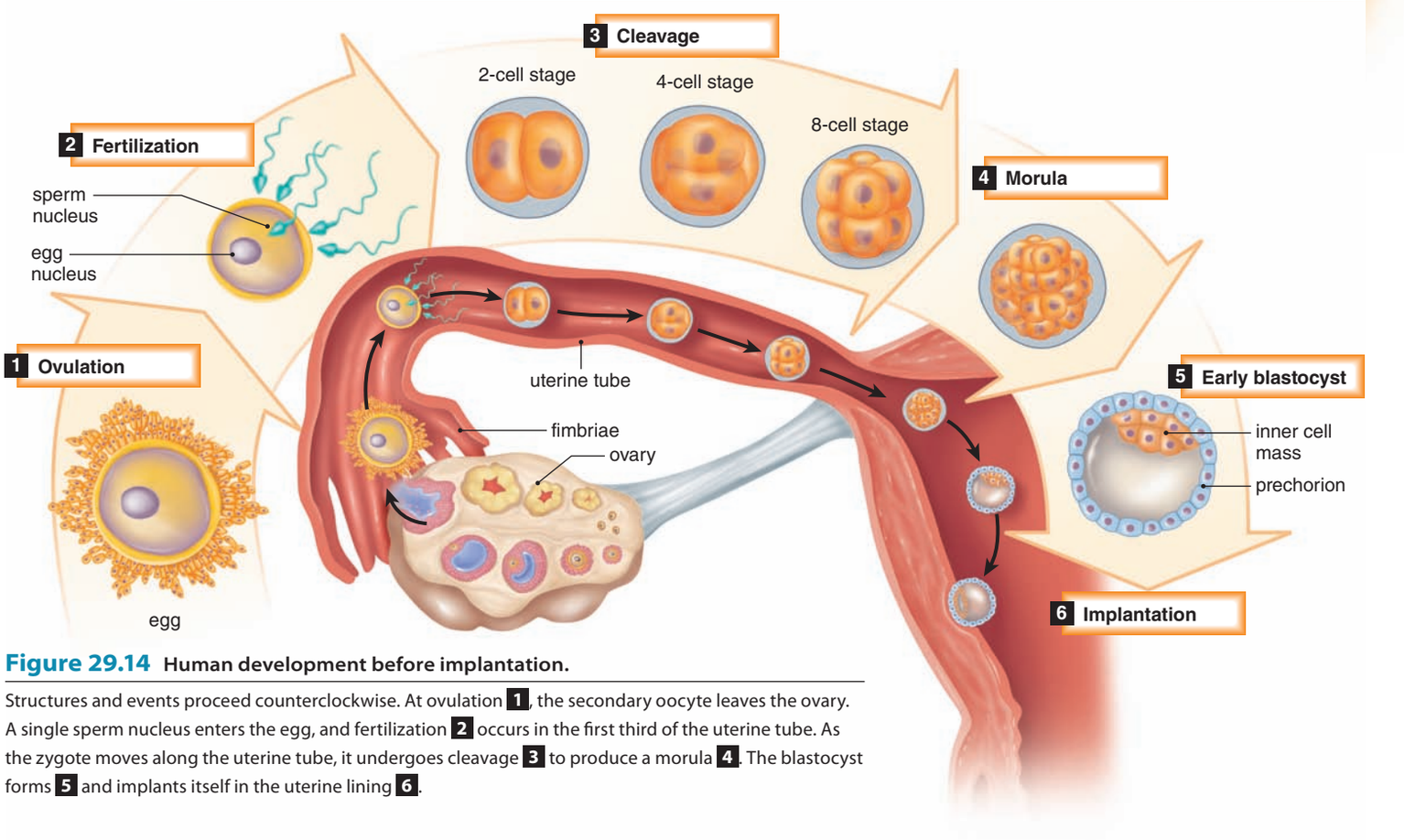


Figure 29.14 **Human development before implantation.**

Structures and events proceed counterclockwise. At ovulation **1**, the secondary oocyte leaves the ovary. A single sperm nucleus enters the egg, and fertilization **2** occurs in the first third of the uterine tube. As the zygote moves along the uterine tube, it undergoes cleavage **3** to produce a morula **4**. The blastocyst forms **5** and implants itself in the uterine lining **6**.

The cells of the morula continue to divide, but they also secrete a fluid into the center of a ball of cells. A hollow ball of cells, called the **blastocyst,** is formed, surrounding a fluid-filled cavity called the blastocoel. Within the ball is an inner cell mass that will go on to become the embryo. The outer layer of cells is the first sign of the chorion, the extraembryonic membrane that will contribute to the development of the placenta. As the embryo implants itself in the uterine lining (endometrium), the placenta begins to form and to secrete the hormone human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). This hormone is the basis for the pregnancy test, and it maintains the corpus luteum past the time it normally disintegrates inside the ovary. Because of hCG, the endometrium is maintained until this function is taken over by estrogen and progesterone, produced by the placenta. Ovulation and menstruation do not normally occur during pregnancy.

Video Blastocyst Formation

Later Embryonic Development

Gastrulation

During the third week of development, a slit called the primitive streak appears. The **gastrula** stage is evident when certain cells begin to push, or invaginate, at the primitive streak, creating three layers of cells (**Fig. 29.15*a***). Also evident is the *amnion,* the extraembryonic membrane that surrounds the developing embryo and later the fetus. The amnion encloses the amniotic fluid, which offers protection from sudden blows and movements, allows freedom of fetal movement, helps maintain a relatively constant temperature, and prevents drying out, which assists in lung development.

Gastrulation is complete when the three layers of cells that will develop into adult organs have been produced. The outer layer is the **ectoderm;** the inner layer is the **endoderm;** and the third, or middle, layer of cells is called the **mesoderm.** Ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm are called the embryonic **germ layers.** As shown in **Figure 29.16,** the organs of an animal's body develop from these three germ layers.

Neurulation

The first organs to form are those of the central nervous system (see Fig. 29.15*b*). The newly formed mesoderm cells that lie along the main longitudinal axis of the animal coalesce to form a dorsal supporting rod called the **notochord.** The central nervous system develops from midline ectoderm located just above the notochord. During **neurulation,** thickening of cells, called the *neural plate,* is seen along the dorsal surface of the embryo. Then, neural folds develop on both sides of a neural groove, which becomes the *neural tube* when these

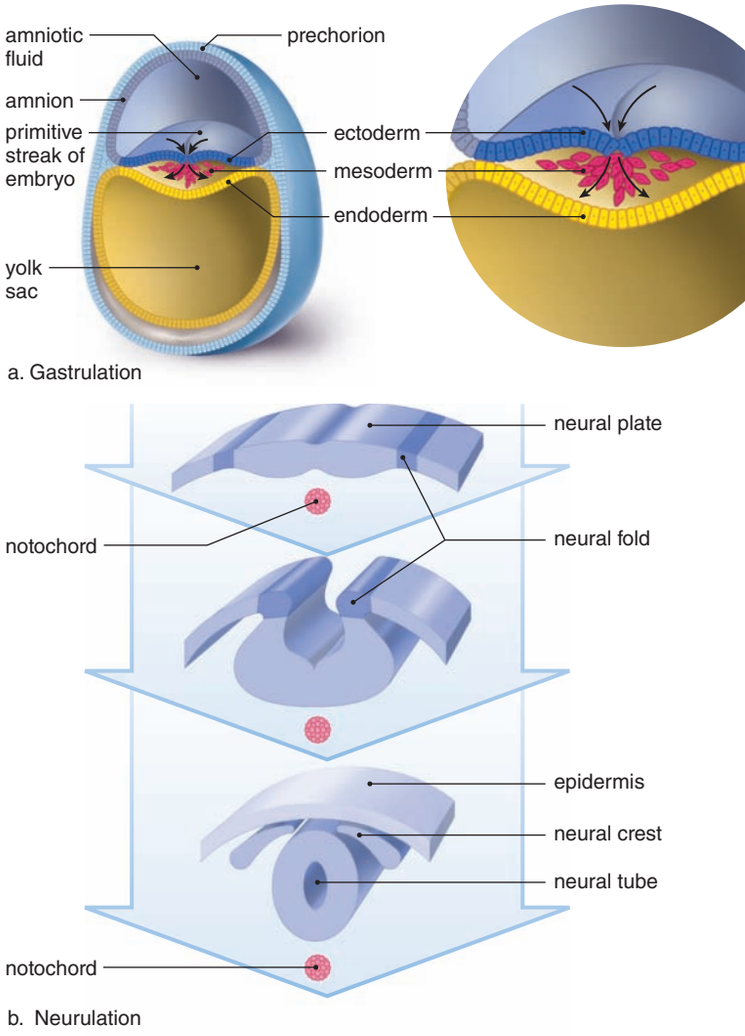


Figure 29.15 **Gastrulation and neurulation.**

a. Gastrulation is the movement of cells to establish the three germ layers: ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm. **b.** During neurulation, the neural tube, which becomes the central nervous system, develops right above the notochord. Later, the notochord is replaced by the vertebral column. The neural crests contain ectodermal cells that did not participate in forming the neural tube. They develop into a number of different structures, including the autonomic nervous system.

Embryonic Germ Layer	Vertebrate Adult Structures
Ectoderm (outer layer)	Nervous system; epidermis of skin; epithelial lining of oral cavity and rectum
Mesoderm (middle layer)	Musculoskeletal system; dermis of skin; cardiovascular system; urinary system; reproductive system; outer layers of respiratory and digestive systems
Endoderm (inner layer)	Epithelial lining of digestive tract and respiratory tract; associated glands of these systems; epithelial lining of urinary bladder

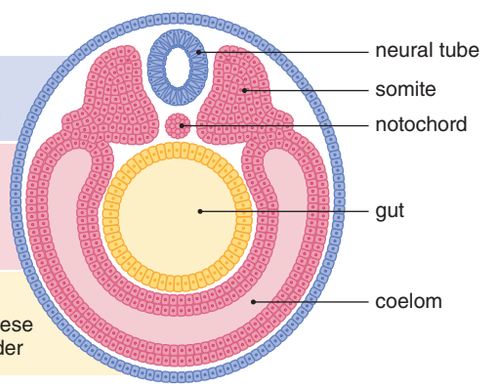


Figure 29.16 **The germ layers.**

Each germ layer is responsible for the development of specific structures in the body.

folds fuse. The anterior portion of the neural tube becomes the brain, and the posterior portion becomes the spinal cord. Development of the neural tube is an example of **induction,** the process by which one tissue or organ influences the development of another. Induction occurs because the tissue initiating the induction releases a chemical that turns on genes in the tissue being induced.

Midline mesoderm cells that did not contribute to the formation of the notochord now become two longitudinal masses of tissue. These two masses become blocked off into somites, which are serially arranged on both sides along the length of the notochord. Somites give rise to the vertebrae and to muscles associated with the axial skeleton. The sequential order of the vertebrae and the muscles of the trunk testify that chordates are segmented animals. Lateral to the somites, the mesoderm splits and forms the mesodermal lining of the coelom. In addition, the neural crest consists of a band of cells that develops where the neural tube pinches off from the ectoderm. These cells migrate to various locations, where they contribute to the formation of skin and muscles, in addition to the adrenal medulla and the ganglia of the peripheral nervous system.

At the end of the third week, over a dozen somites are evident, and the blood vessels and gut have begun to develop. At this point, the embryo is about 2 millimeters (mm) long.

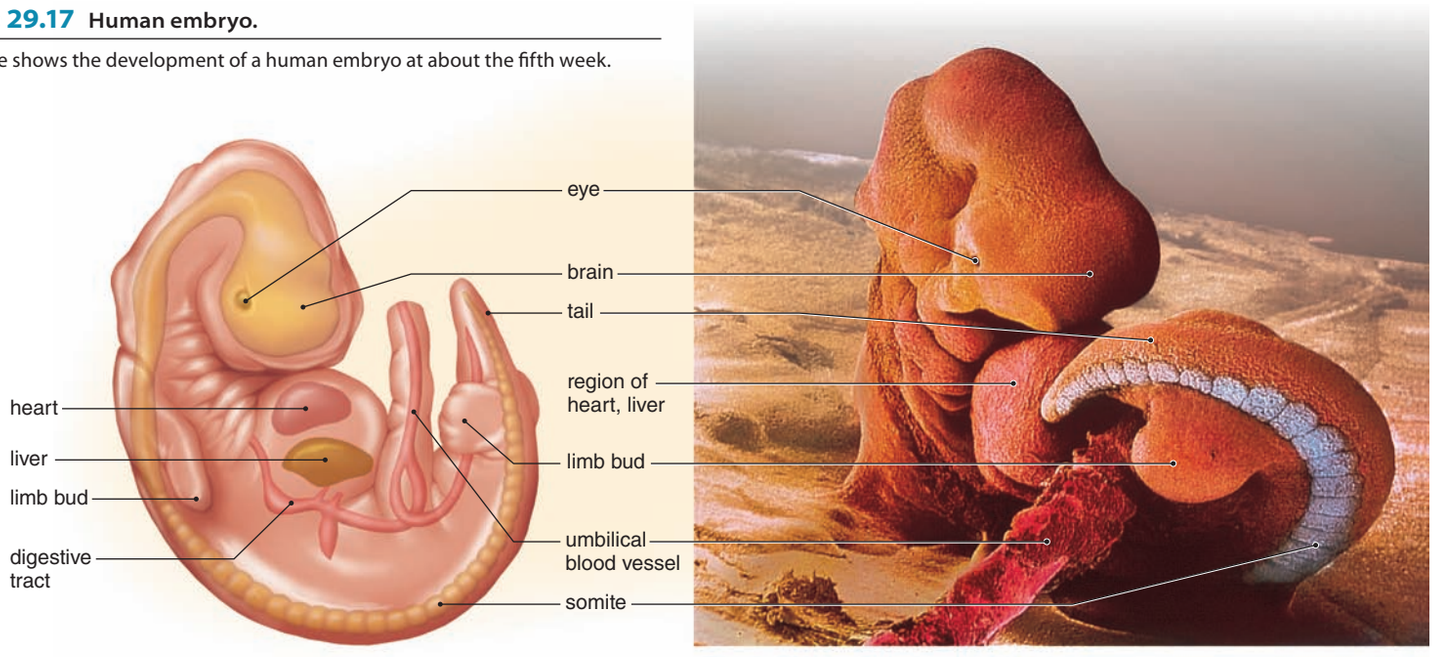
Organ Formation Continues

A human embryo at five weeks has little flippers called limb buds (**Fig. 29.17**). Later, the arms and legs develop from the limb buds, and even the hands and feet become apparent. During the fifth week, the head enlarges and the sense organs become more prominent.

The umbilical cord has developed from a bridge of mesoderm called the body stalk, which connects the caudal (tail) end of the embryo with the chorion. A fourth extraembryonic membrane, the allantois, is contained within this stalk, and its blood vessels become the umbilical blood vessels. The head

Figure 29.17 **Human embryo.**

This figure shows the development of a human embryo at about the fifth week.



and the tail then lift up as the body stalk moves anteriorly by constriction. Once this process is complete, the **umbilical cord,** which connects the developing embryo to the placenta, is fully formed (**Fig. 29.18**).

A remarkable change in external appearance occurs during the sixth through eighth weeks of development—the embryo becomes easily recognized as human. Concurrent with brain development, the neck region develops, making the head distinct from the body. The nervous system is developed well enough to permit reflex actions, such as a startle response to touch. At the end of this period, the embryo is about 38 mm (1.5 inches) long and weighs no more than an aspirin tablet, even though all its organ systems are established.

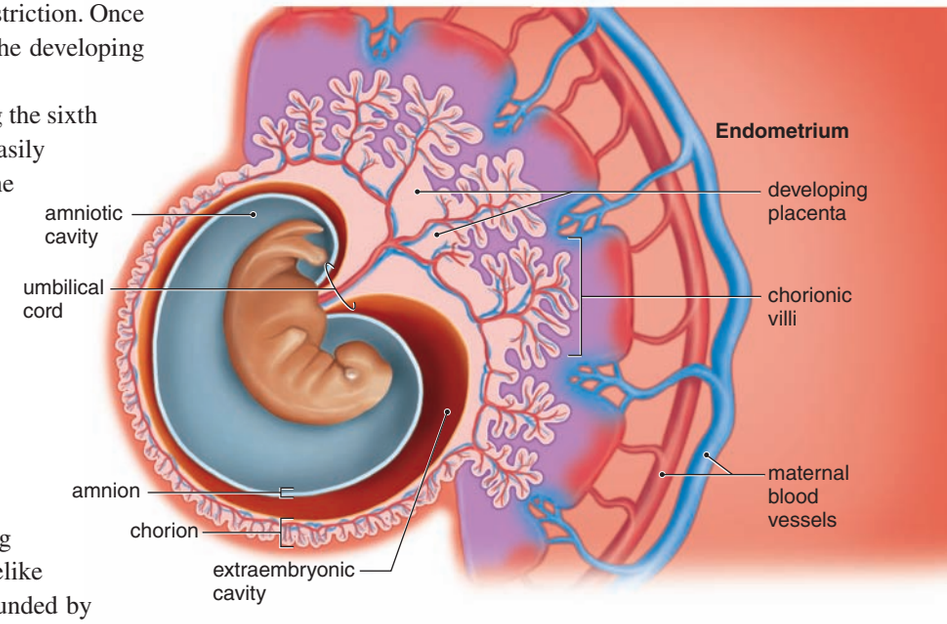


Figure 29.18 **Placenta.**

Blood vessels within the umbilical cord lead to the placenta, where exchange takes place between fetal blood and maternal blood.

Placenta

The placenta has a fetal side contributed by the chorion, the outermost extraembryonic membrane, and a maternal side consisting of uterine tissues. Notice in Figure 29.18 that the chorion has treelike projections, called *chorionic villi.* The chorionic villi are surrounded by maternal blood, yet maternal and fetal blood never mix, because exchange always takes place across the walls of the villi. Carbon dioxide and other wastes move from the fetal side to the maternal side of the placenta, and nutrients and oxygen move from the maternal side to the fetal side. The umbilical cord stretches between the placenta and the fetus. The umbilical blood vessels are an extension of the fetal circulatory system and simply take fetal blood to and from the placenta. Harmful chemicals can also cross the placenta. This is of particular concern during the embryonic period, when various structures are first forming. Each organ or part seems to have a sensitive period, during which a substance can alter its normal development. For example, if a woman takes the drug thalidomide, a tranquilizer, between days 27 and 40 of her pregnancy, the infant is likely to be born with deformed limbs. After day 40, however, the limbs will develop normally.

Animation
Fetal Development and Risk

Fetal Development and Birth

Fetal development encompasses the third to the ninth months (**Fig. 29.19**). Fetal development is marked by an extreme increase in size. Weight multiplies 600 times, going from less than 28 grams to 3 kilograms. During this time, too, the fetus grows to about 50 centimeters in length. The genitalia appear in the third month, so it is possible to tell if the fetus is male or female.

Soon after the third month, hair, eyebrows, and eyelashes add finishing touches to the face and head. In the same way, fingernails and toenails complete the hands and feet. Later, during the fifth through seventh months, a fine, downy hair (lanugo) covers the limbs and trunk, only to disappear later. The fetus looks very old because the skin is growing so fast that it wrinkles. A waxy, almost cheeselike substance (called vernix caseosa) protects the wrinkly skin from the watery amniotic fluid.

Figure 29.19 **Development of the fetus.**

This series shows the development of a human fetus at (**a**) 6 weeks, (**b**) 12–16 weeks, (**c**) 20–28 weeks, and (**d**) 28 weeks.

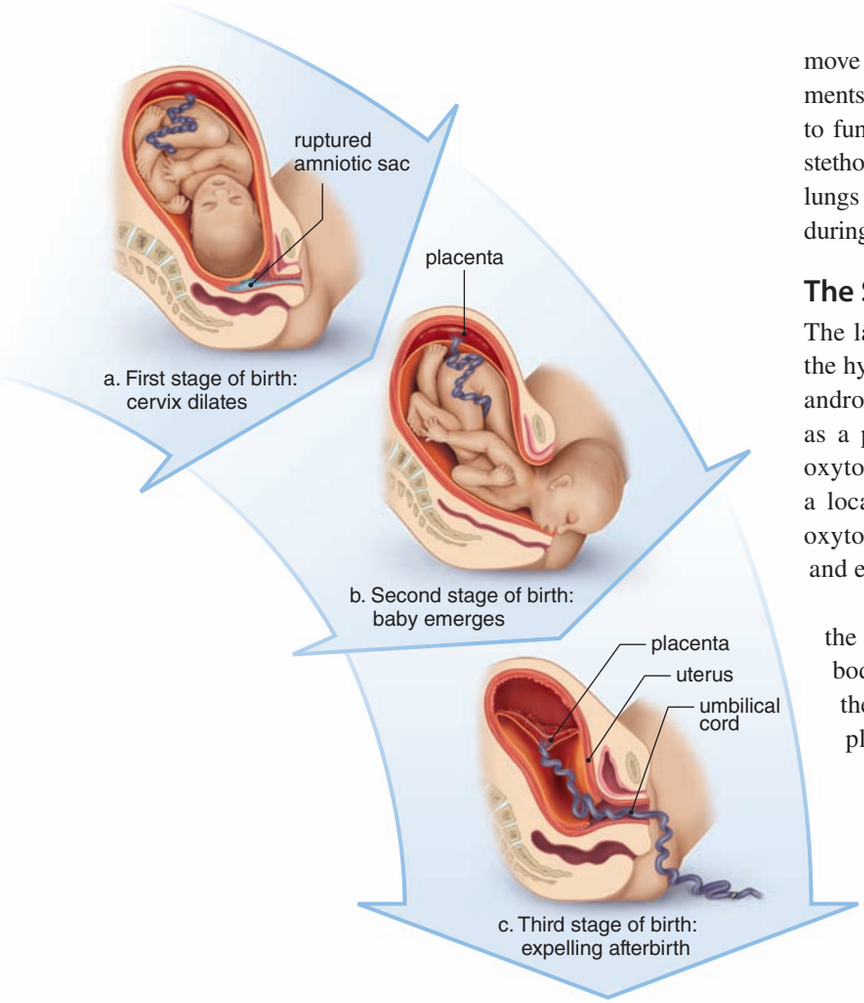


Figure 29.20 Three stages of birth (parturition).

a. Dilation of the cervix. **b.** Birth of the baby. **c.** Expulsion of the afterbirth (placenta). **d.** The newborn at 40 weeks.

The fetus at first only flexes its limbs and nods its head, but later it can move its limbs vigorously to avoid discomfort. The mother feels these movements from about the fourth month on. The other systems of the body also begin to function. As early as 10 weeks, the fetal heartbeat can be heard through a stethoscope. A fetus born at 22 weeks has a chance of surviving, although the lungs are still immature and often cannot capture oxygen adequately. Weight gain during the last couple of months increases the likelihood of survival.

The Stages of Birth

The latest findings suggest that, when the fetal brain is sufficiently mature, the hypothalamus causes the pituitary to stimulate the adrenal cortex, so that androgens are released into the bloodstream. The placenta uses androgens as a precursor for estrogen, a hormone that stimulates the production of oxytocin and prostaglandin (a molecule produced by many cells that acts as a local hormone). All three of these molecules—estrogen, oxytocin, and prostaglandin—cause the uterus to contract and expel the fetus.

Video Triggering Birth

The process of birth (parturition) has three stages (**Fig. 29.20**). During the first stage, the cervix dilates to allow passage of the baby's head and body. The amnion usually bursts about this time. During the second stage, the baby is born and the umbilical cord is cut. During the third stage, the placenta is delivered.

29.3 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

Human development begins with fertilization of the egg.

Check Your Progress 29.3

1. Explain how a morula is formed.
2. Describe the significance of germ layer formation during gastrulation.
3. Explain how induction occurs.
4. Contrast embryonic development with fetal development.
5. Explain how the placenta is used during development.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video	MP3 Files
29.2 Maturation of the Follicle and Oocyte • How the HIV Infection Works • Treatment of HIV Infection **29.3** Fetal Development and Risk	**29.1** Frog Reproduction • Sea Urchin Reproduction **29.2** Human Sperm • New Fertility Boost • IVF • Halting Hepatitis **29.3** Blastocyst Formation • Triggering Birth	**29.2** Male Reproductive Anatomy and Physiology • Female Reproductive Anatomy and Physiology

SUMMARIZE

29.1 How Animals Reproduce

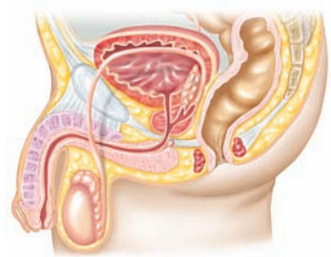
Asexual reproduction uses a single parent and produces offspring with the same genetic information as the parent. **Sexual reproduction** uses two parents and produces offspring with different genetic combinations than the parents. In **parthenogenesis,** an unfertilized egg becomes a new individual.

Sexual Reproduction

- Animals have **gonads** (**testes** and **ovaries**) for the purpose of producing gametes. Most animals have separate male and females sexes, but some are **hermaphrodites,** or individuals with both male and female sex organs. **Copulation** is the sexual union of a male and female to produce offspring.
- Animals adapted to reproducing in water shed their gametes into the water; fertilization and zygote development occur in water. Animals that reproduce on land protect their gametes and embryos from drying out. For example, reptiles and mammals have extraembryonic membranes, such as the **placenta** in some mammals.

29.2 Human Reproduction

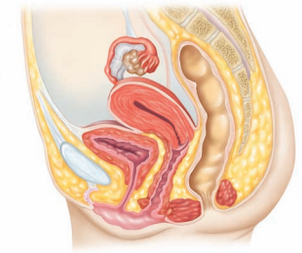
Male Reproductive System



- Sperm are produced in the testis, mature in the epididymis, and are stored in the epididymis and vas deferens.
- Sperm enter the urethra (in the penis) prior to ejaculation, along with seminal fluid (produced by seminal vesicles, the prostate gland, and bulbourethral glands).
- **Sterility** is the inability to produce offspring.
- Spermatogenesis occurs in the seminiferous tubules of the testes, which also produce testosterone in interstitial cells.
- **Testosterone** brings about the maturation of the sex organs during **puberty** and promotes the secondary sex characteristics of males.

Female Reproductive System

- Oocytes are produced in the ovary and move through the uterine tubes to the uterus. The **uterus** opens into the vagina at the **cervix.** The external genital area of women includes the clitoris, the labia minora, the labia majora, and the vaginal opening.
- Ovulation is the release of a secondary oocyte from the follicle. The follicle and later the corpus luteum produce estrogen and progesterone.



The ovarian cycle (including the **follicular phase** and **luteal phase**) and **menstrual cycle** last 28 days. The events of these cycles are as follows:

- Days 1–13: **Menstruation** of the **menses** occurs for five days; the anterior pituitary produces FSH, and follicles produce primarily estrogen. Estrogen causes the endometrium to increase in thickness.
- Day 14: Ovulation occurs.
- Days 15–28: LH from the anterior pituitary causes the corpus luteum to produce progesterone. Progesterone causes the endometrium to become secretory.

Estrogen and **progesterone** bring about the maturation of the sex organs during puberty and promote the secondary sex characteristics of females. **Menopause** results in the stopping of the ovarian and menstrual cycles.

Control of Reproduction

Numerous birth control methods and devices are available for those who wish to prevent pregnancy. The most effective is abstinence. Others are birth control pills, contraceptive implants, contraceptive injections, condoms, diaphragms, intrauterine devices (IUDs), contraceptive vaccines, and emergency contraception.

Infertility

Infertility is the inability to produce children after one year of unprotected intercourse. Infertility may be treated using assisted methods of reproduction.

Sexually Transmitted Diseases

Sexually transmitted diseases include the following:

- **Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)**, an epidemic disease caused by the **human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)** that destroys the immune system
- **Genital herpes,** which repeatedly flares up
- **Human papillomavirus (HPV),** which may cause **genital warts** and cancer of the cervix
- **Hepatitis**, especially types A and B
- **Chlamydia** and **gonorrhea,** which cause **pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)**
- **Syphilis,** which leads to cardiovascular and neurological complications if untreated
- **Trichomoniasis,** which is caused by a protozoan

29.3 Human Embryonic Development

Development encompasses all the events that occur from **fertilization** to a fully formed animal—in this case, a human being.

Fertilization

The acrosome of a sperm releases enzymes that digest a pathway for the sperm through the zona pellucida. The sperm nucleus enters the egg and fuses with the egg nucleus.

Early Embryonic Development (Months 1 and 2)

- **Cleavage**, which occurs in the uterine tube, is cell division and formation of a **morula** and **blastocyst**. The blastocyst implants itself in the endometrium.
- **Gastrulation** is invagination of cells into the blastocoel to form the **gastrula**, which in turn results in formation of the **germ layers**. The germ layers are the **ectoderm, mesoderm,** and **endoderm**.
- Organ formation can be related to the germ layers. Organ development begins with the formation of the **notochord** and neural tube (**neurulation**). **Induction** helps account for the steady progression of organ formation during embryonic development.
- The placenta has a fetal side and a maternal side. Gases and nutrients are exchanged at the placenta. The blood vessels in the **umbilical cord** are an extension of the embryo/fetal cardiovascular system and carry blood to and from the placenta.

Fetal Development and Birth (Months 3–9)

- During fetal development, the refinement of organ systems occurs and the fetus adds weight.
- Birth has three stages: The cervix dilates, the baby is born, and the placenta is delivered.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Among animals, there are examples of both asexual and sexual reproduction. In humans, sexual reproduction is followed by a period of development.

29.1 Animals have evolved asexual and sexual forms of reproduction.

29.2 Medical technologies can help regulate human reproduction.

29.3 Human development begins with fertilization of the egg.

For more information about the functions of the reproductive system and development, see the following discussions:

Section 9.1 explains the role of spermatogenesis and oogenesis.

Section 27.2 examines the role of hormones as chemical regulators of the organ systems of the body.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

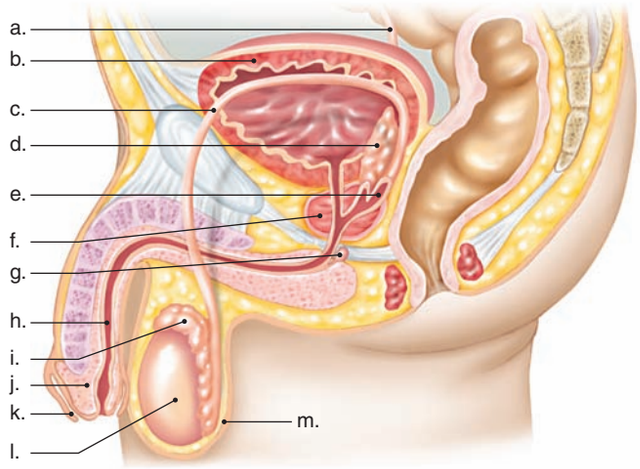
Choose the best answer for each question.

29.1 How Animals Reproduce

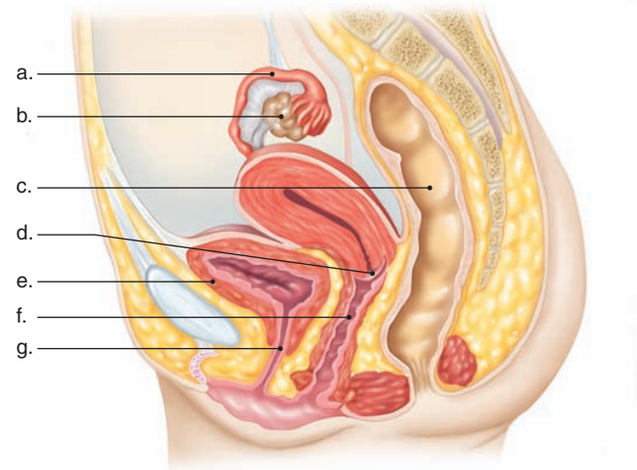
1. Parthenogenesis is
   - **a.** the process by which the germ layers form.
   - **b.** involved in the formation of the notochord.
   - **c.** the formation of sperm.
   - **d.** the development of an unfertilized egg.
2. Which of the following is incorrect regarding sexual reproduction?
   - **a.** It involves two parents.
   - **b.** The offspring have the same genetic combinations as the parents.
   - **c.** Gonads produce egg and sperm cells.
   - **d.** Copulation brings the male and female gametes together.

29.2 Human Reproduction

3. Label the parts of the male reproductive system in the following illustration.



4. Label the parts of the female reproductive system in the following illustration.



5. Spermatogenesis produces cells that are
   a. diploid and genetically identical to each other.
   b. diploid and genetically different from each other.
   c. haploid and genetically identical to each other.
   d. haploid and genetically different from each other.
6. Hepatitis is caused by a
   a. bacterium.
   b. fungus.
   c. protozoan.
   d. virus.
7. The assisted reproductive technology (ART) in which harvested sperm are placed in the vagina by a physician is
   a. in vitro fertilization (IVF).
   b. artificial insemination by donor (AID).
   c. gamete intrafallopian transfer (GIFT).
   d. intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI).
8. The HPV virus can cause
   a. genital warts.
   b. AIDS.
   c. herpes.
   d. hepatitis.

29.3 Human Embryonic Development

9. The process by which one tissue or organ influences the development of another is
   a. induction.
   b. insemination.
   c. neurulation.
   d. cleavage.
   e. gastrulation.

For questions 10–13, identify the stage of embryonic development in the key that matches the description.

Key:

a. cleavage
b. gastrulation
c. neurulation
d. organ formation

10. The notochord is formed.
11. The zygote divides without increasing in size.
12. Ectoderm and endoderm are formed.
13. Reflex actions, such as response to touch, develop.

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Female athletes who train intensively often stop menstruating. The important factor appears to be the reduction of body fat below a certain level. Give a possible evolutionary explanation for a relationship between body fat in females and reproductive cycles.
2. Human females undergo menopause typically between the ages of 45 and 55. In most other animal species, both males and females maintain their reproductive capacity throughout their lives. Why do you suppose human females lose that ability in midlife?
3. In one form of prenatal testing for fetal genetic abnormalities, chorionic villus samples are taken and analyzed. Why is this possible?
4. At-home pregnancy tests check for the presence of hCG in a female's urine. Where does hCG come from? Why is hCG found in a pregnant woman's urine?
5. The average sperm count in males is now lower than it was several decades ago. The reasons for the lower sperm count usually seen today are not known. What data might be helpful in order to formulate a testable hypothesis?

30

Ecology and Populations

OUTLINE

30.1 The Scope of Ecology 581
30.2 The Human Population 583
30.3 Characteristics of Populations 588
30.4 Life History Patterns and Extinction 595

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 1.1 What is the relationship between ecosystems and the biosphere?

Section 16.2 What have been the causes of mass extinctions in the past?

Human Population Growth

The human population is currently experiencing a period of rapid growth. It is predicted that our population will reach between 9 and 11 billion by 2050. The majority of population growth will be occurring in less-developed countries. In order to slow this growth, population experts have discovered the "virtuous cycle" of family planning. Family planning leads to healthier women who are more likely to have healthier babies, and the cycle continues. Also, with the increase in health care, women no longer need to have multiple children for a few to survive. More educational opportunities for women also help decrease reproductive rates. Better-educated people are more interested in postponing childbearing and promoting women's rights. Women who have equal rights with men tend to have fewer children.

Recently, some of the less-developed countries have cut back on their family planning programs due to financial restrictions. Unfortunately, the more-developed countries have not taken up the slack and continued to provide these services.

In contrast, more-developed countries have much greater resource consumption and produce far more waste than their less-developed counterparts. Ecologists express concern about the current and future impact such a large human population will have on global resources.

As you read through the chapter, consider the following questions.

1. How will population growth in less-developed countries impact more-developed countries?
2. Should more-developed countries provide support for family planning of the less-developed countries?
3. In what way will an increase in human population growth impact the rest of the species on the planet?

30.1 The Scope of Ecology

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List and describe the hierarchical levels of biological organization.
2. Identify the relationship between ecology and environmental science.

Ecology is the scientific study of the interactions of organisms with each other and their physical environment. Ecology is one of the two biological sciences of most interest to the public today, the other being genetics. Ecological studies offer information key to the survival of all species, present and future. Understanding ecology will help us make informed decisions, ranging from what kind of car to drive to how to support the preservation of a forested area in our towns. Current ecological decisions will affect not only our lives but also the lives of generations to come.

Ecology involves the study of several levels of biological organization (**Fig. 30.1**). Some ecologists study individual **organisms,** focusing on their adaptations to a particular environment. For example, organismal ecologists might investigate which features enable a clownfish to live in a coral reef.

Organisms are usually part of a **population,** a group of individuals of the same species in a given location at the same time. At the population level of study, ecologists describe changes in population size over time. For example, a population ecologist might compare the number of clownfishes living in a given location today with data obtained from the same location 20 years ago.

A **community** consists of all the various populations at a particular locale. A coral reef contains numerous populations of fishes, crustaceans, corals, algae, and so forth. At the community level, ecologists study how the interactions between populations affect the populations' well-being. For example, a community ecologist might study how a decrease in algal populations affects the population sizes of crustaceans and fishes living on the coral reef.

An **ecosystem** consists of a community of living organisms as well as their physical environment. As an example of how the physical environment affects a community, consider that the presence of suspended particles in the water decreases the amount of sunlight reaching algae living on the coral reef. Without solar energy, algae cannot produce the organic nutrients they and the other populations require.

Finally, the **biosphere** is the portion of the Earth's surface—air, water, and land—where living things exist. Having information about the many levels of organization within a coral reef allows ecologists to understand how a coral reef contributes to the biodiversity and dynamics of the biosphere.

Video
Coral Reef Ecology

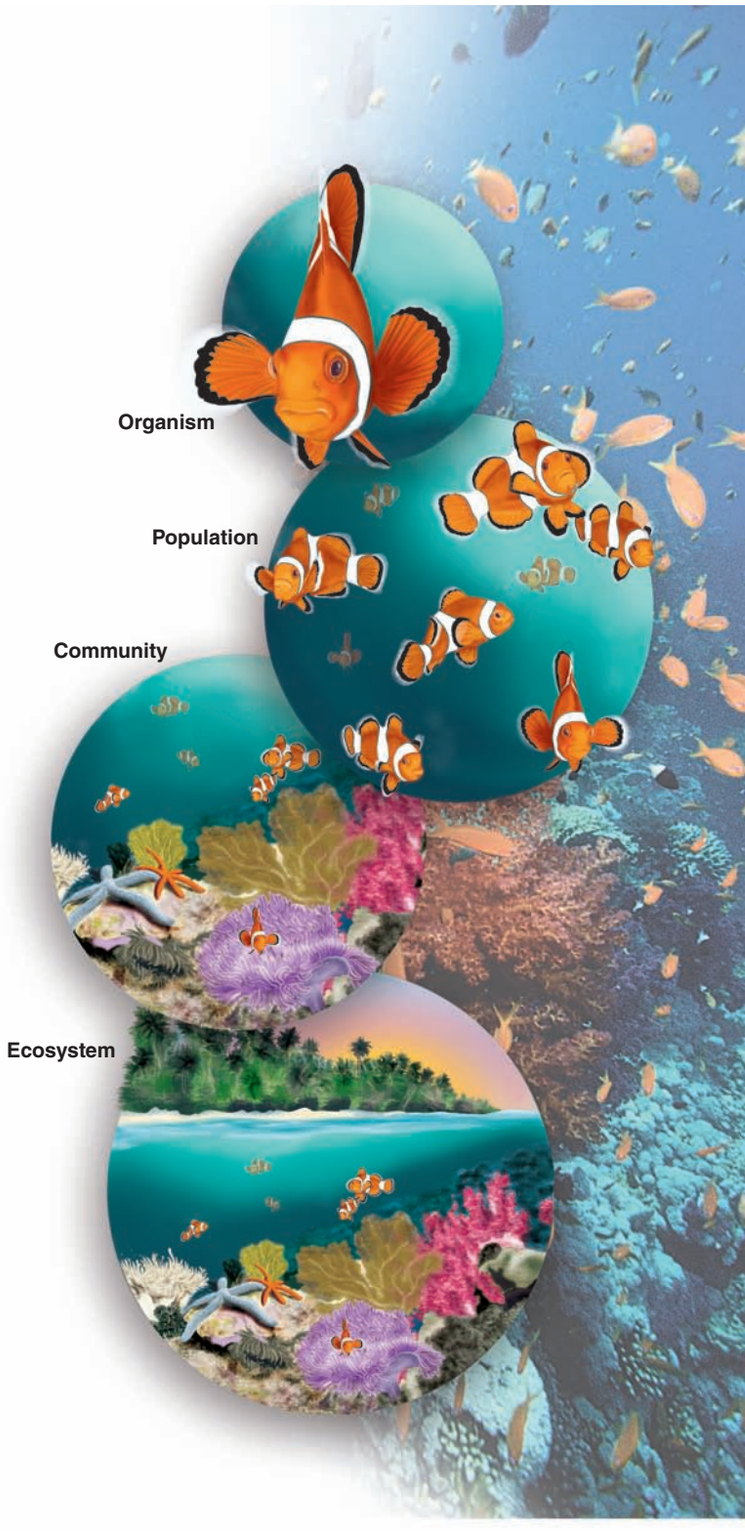


Figure 30.1 **Levels of organization.**

The study of ecology encompasses the organism, population, community, and ecosystem levels of biological organization.

a.

b.

Figure 30.2 **Studying the effects of fire.**

Fire is a natural occurrence in lodgepole pine forests, such as these in Yellowstone National Park. Over time, (**a**) Recently burned forest (**b**) The same forest, several years after the fire.

Ecology: A Biological Science

Ecology began as a part of **natural history,** the discipline of observing and describing organisms in their environment, but today ecology is also an experimental science. A central goal of ecology is to develop models that explain and predict the distribution and abundance of populations based on their interactions within an ecosystem. Achieving such a goal involves testing hypotheses. For example, ecologists might formulate and test hypotheses about the role fire plays in maintaining a lodgepole pine forest (**Fig. 30.2**). To test these hypotheses, ecologists can compare the characteristics of a community before and after a burn. Ultimately, ecologists wish to develop models about the distribution and abundance of ecosystems within the biosphere.

Ecology and Environmental Science

The field of environmental science applies ecological principles to practical human concerns. Ecological principles help us understand why a functioning biosphere is critical to our survival and why our population of over 7 billion people and our overconsumption of resources pose threats to the biosphere.

Conservation biology is a discipline of ecology that studies all aspects of biodiversity, with the goal of conserving natural resources, including wildlife, for the benefit of this generation and future generations. Conservation biology recognizes that wildlife species are an integral part of a well-functioning biosphere on which human life depends.

Video
Tallgrass Prairie Ecology

30.1 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**
Ecology is studied at many different levels.

Check Your Progress 30.1

1. List the levels of biological organization, starting with the organism.
2. Distinguish an ecosystem from a community.
3. Explain why an environmental scientist is also an ecologist.

30.2 The Human Population

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Identify the relationship among the birthrate, death rate, and annual growth rate of a population.
2. Distinguish between more-developed countries (MDCs) and less-developed countries (LDCs) with regard to population growth.
3. Compare the environmental impact of MDCs vs. LDCs.

The human population covers the majority of the Earth. However, on both a large scale and a small scale, the human population has a clumped distribution; 56% of the world's people live in Asia, and most live in China and India. Mongolia has a population density of only 0.25 person per square kilometer, while Bangladesh has a density of over 1,000 persons per square kilometer. On every continent, human population densities are highest along the coasts.

Present Population Growth

For most of the twentieth century, the growth of the global human population was relatively slow, but as more individuals achieved reproductive age, the growth rate began to increase. The Industrial Revolution (1800s) brought an increase in the production of food and medicines, along with a decrease in the death rate. At this time, the growth curve for the human population began to increase steeply, so that currently the population is undergoing rapid growth (**Fig. 30.3**).

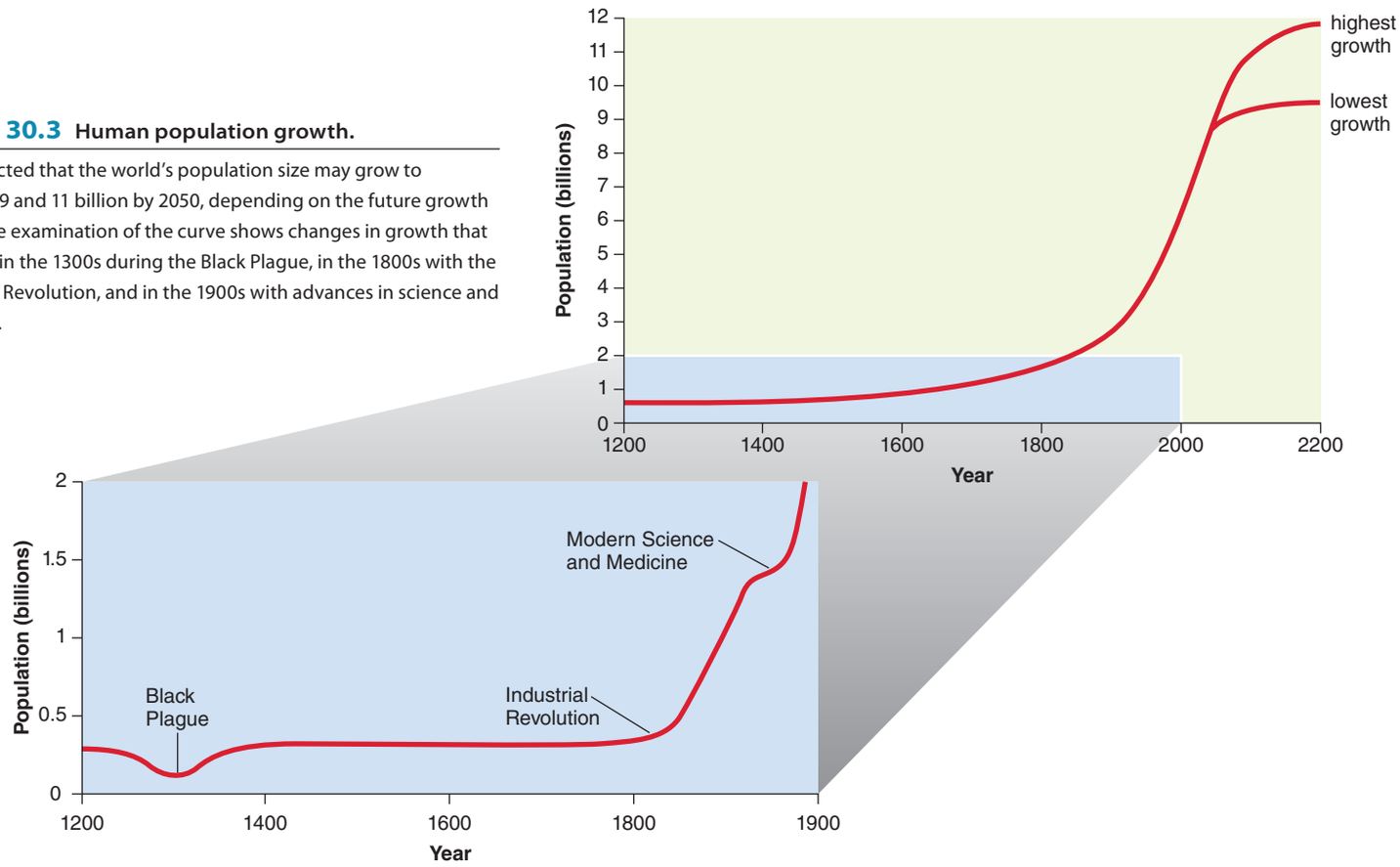


Figure 30.3 **Human population growth.**

It is predicted that the world's population size may grow to between 9 and 11 billion by 2050, depending on the future growth rate. Close examination of the curve shows changes in growth that occurred in the 1300s during the Black Plague, in the 1800s with the Industrial Revolution, and in the 1900s with advances in science and medicine.

Just as with populations in nature, the growth rate of the human population is determined by the difference between the number of people born and the number of people who die each year. For example, the current global birthrate is an estimated 19.14 per 1,000 per year, while the global death rate is approximately 7.99 per 1,000 per year. From these numbers, we can calculate that the current annual growth rate of the human population is

$$(19.14 - 7.99)/1{,}000 = (11.15)/1{,}000 = 1.11\%$$

Connections: Health

How do birthrates and death rates vary among countries?

In 2012, the country with the highest birthrate was Niger (50.06%), followed by Uganda (47.38%) and Mali (45.15%), while Monaco had the lowest birthrate (6.85%). South Africa had the highest death rate (17.23%), Qatar the lowest (1.55%). For overall annual growth rates, the fastest-growing country in 2012 was Qatar (4.93%). Several countries, including the Cook Islands (−3.14%) and Jordan (−0.97%) experienced population declines. In comparison, for the United States the 2012 birthrate was 13.68%, the death rate was 8.39%, and the annual growth rate was 0.90%.

Future Population Growth

Future growth of the human population is of great concern. It's possible that population increases will exceed the rate at which resources can be supplied. The potential for dire consequences can be appreciated by considering the *doubling time*—the length of time it takes for a population to double in size. The doubling time of the human population is now estimated to be around 54 years. Will we be able to meet the extreme demands for resources by such a large population increase in such a short period of time? Already, there are areas across the globe where people have inadequate access to fresh water, food, and shelter, yet in just 54 years the world would need to double the amount of food, jobs, water, energy, and other resources to maintain the present standard of living.

Rapid growth usually begins to decline when resources, such as food and space, become scarce. Then population growth declines to zero, and the population levels off at a size appropriate to the carrying capacity of its environment. The **carrying capacity** is the number of individuals the environment can sustain for an indefinite period of time. The Earth's carrying capacity for humans has not been determined; some authorities think the Earth is potentially capable of supporting far more people than currently inhabit the planet, perhaps as many as 50–100 billion. Others believe that we may have already exceeded the number of humans the Earth can support and that the human population may undergo a catastrophic crash.

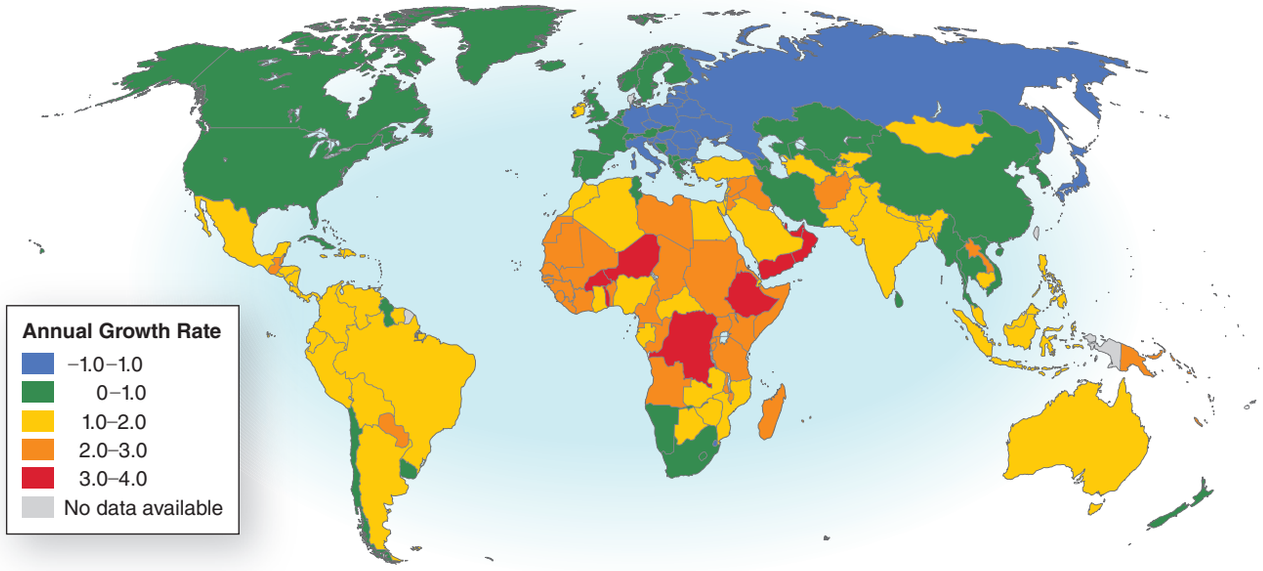


Figure 30.4 **Global population growth rates.**

The highest population growth rates are found in Africa and the Middle East, while the growth rates throughout Europe are much lower.

Source: GlobalHealthFacts.org. Based on 2012 data.

More-Developed Versus Less-Developed Countries

Complicating the issue of future growth for the human population is the fact that not all countries have the same growth rate (**Fig. 30.4**). The countries of the world today can be divided into two groups (**Fig. 30.5**). In the **more-developed countries (MDCs),** such as those in North America and Europe, population growth is modest and the people enjoy a fairly good standard of living. In the **less-developed countries (LDCs),** such as those in Latin America, Asia, and Africa, population growth is dramatic and the majority of the people live in poverty.

The MDCs

The MDCs did not always have such a low growth rate. With the development of modern medicine, improved socioeconomic conditions, and the decrease in the death rate, their populations doubled between 1850 and 1950. The decline in the death rate was followed shortly thereafter by a decline in birthrate, so populations in the MDCs have experienced only modest growth since 1950. This sequence of events (i.e., decreased death rate followed by decreased birthrate) is termed a *demographic transition.*

The growth rate for the MDCs as a whole is now about 0.2%, but populations in several countries are not growing at all or are actually decreasing. The MDCs are expected to increase by 52 million between 2002 and 2050, but this modest amount will still keep their total population at just about 1.2 billion. In contrast to the other MDCs, population growth in the United States is not leveling off and continues to increase. The United States currently has a growth rate of 0.90%. This higher rate is due to the fact that many people immigrate to the United States each year, and a large number of the women are still of reproductive age. Therefore, it is unlikely that the United States will experience a decline in its growth rate in the near future.

a.

b.

Figure 30.5 **More-developed versus less-developed countries.**

People in the (**a**) more-developed countries have a high standard of living and will contribute the least to world population growth, while people in the (**b**) less-developed countries have a low standard of living and will contribute the most to world population growth.

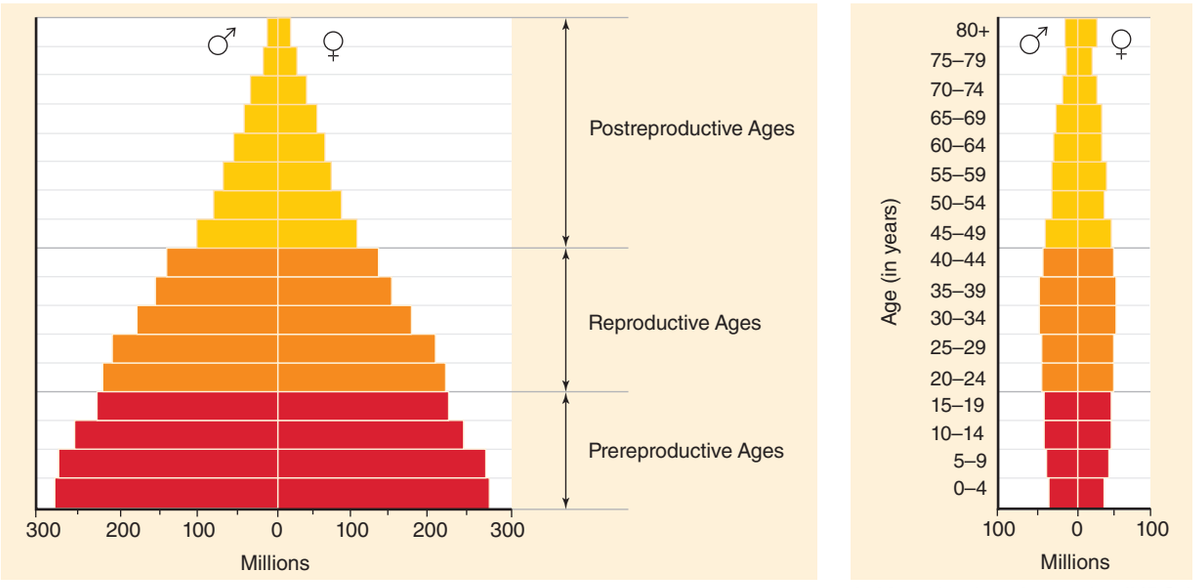
The LDCs

With the introduction of modern medicine following World War II, the death rates in the LDCs began to decline sharply but the birthrate remained high. The *collective* growth rate of the LDCs peaked at 2.5% between 1960 and 1965, and since that time the rate has declined to 1.5%. Unfortunately, the growth rates in 46 of the less-developed countries have not declined. Thirty-five of these countries are in sub-Saharan Africa, where women on average bear more than five children each.

Between 2002 and 2050, the population of the LDCs is expected to jump from 5 billion to at least 8 billion. Africa will not share appreciably in this increase because of the many deaths there due to AIDS. The majority of the increase is expected to occur in Asia. With 31% of the world's arable (farmable) land, Asia is already home to 59% of the human population. Twelve of the world's most polluted cities are in Asia. If the human population increases as expected, Asia will experience even more urban pollution, acute water scarcity, and a significant loss of wildlife over the next 50 years.

Comparing Age Structures

The age structure of a population is divided into three groups: prereproductive, reproductive, and postreproductive (**Fig. 30.6**). Many MDCs have a stable age structure, meaning that the number of individuals is about the same in all three groups. Therefore, MDC populations will grow slowly if couples have two children, and they will slowly decline if each couple has fewer than two children. This is often called **replacement reproduction,** since if each couple produces only two children, they are replacing themselves. In reality, due to mortality, the replacement reproduction rate is often slightly greater than two children per couple. In contrast, the age-structure diagram of most LDCs has a pyramid shape, with the prereproductive group the largest. Therefore, LDC populations will continue to expand, even if replacement reproduction is attained. It might seem at first that replacement reproduction would cause an LDC population to undergo zero population growth and therefore no increase in population size. However, if there are more young women entering the reproductive years than there are older women leaving them, replacement reproduction still results in population growth. We will take a closer look at age structure diagrams in Section 30.3.



a. Less-developed countries (LDCs)

b. More-developed countries (MDCs)

Figure 30.6 Age structure diagrams.

The diagrams predict that (**a**) the LDCs will expand rapidly due to their age distributions, while (**b**) the MDCs are approaching stabilization.

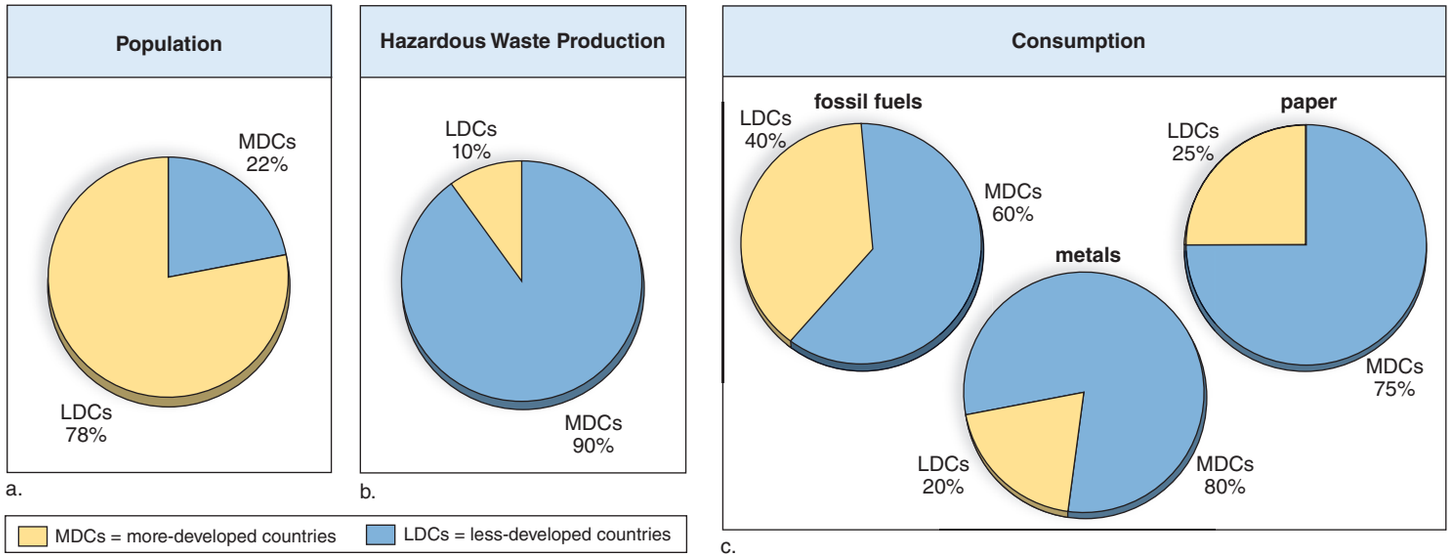


Figure 30.7 **Environmental impacts.**

a. The combined population of the MDCs is much smaller than that of the LDCs. The MDCs account for 22% of the world's population, and the LDCs account for 78%. **b.** MDCs produce most of the world's hazardous wastes—90% for MDCs compared with 10% for LDCs. The production of hazardous waste is tied to (**c**) the consumption of fossil fuels, metals, and paper, among other resources. The MDCs consume 60% of fossil fuels, compared with 40% for the LDCs, 80% of metals compared with 20% for the LDCs, and 75% of paper compared with 25% for the LDCs.

Population Growth and Environmental Impact

Population growth is putting extreme pressure on each country's social organization, the Earth's resources, and the biosphere. Since the population of the LDCs is still growing at a significant rate, it might seem that their population increase is the main cause of environmental degradation. But this is not necessarily the case, because the MDCs consume a much larger proportion of the Earth's resources than do the LDCs. This excessive consumption leads to environmental degradation, which is of great concern.

Environmental Impact

The environmental impact (E.I.) of a population is measured not only in terms of population size but also in terms of resource consumption and pollution per capita. In other words,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{E.I.} &= \text{population size} \times \text{resource consumption per capita} \\ &= \text{pollution per unit of resource used}\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, there are two possible causes of environmental impact: population size and resource consumption. Overpopulation is more obvious in LDCs; resource consumption is more obvious in MDCs, because per capita consumption is so much higher in the MDCs. For example, an average American family, in terms of per capita energy consumption, is the equivalent of 20 people in India. We need to realize that only a limited number of people can be sustained anywhere near the standard of living enjoyed in the MDCs.

The comparative environmental impacts of MDCs and LDCs are shown in **Figure 30.7.** The MDCs account for only about one-fourth of the world population. However, compared with the LDCs, MDCs account for 90% of the hazardous waste production, due to their high rate of consumption of such resources as fossil fuel, metal, and paper.

30.2 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

Ecologists indicate that the human population is growing exponentially.

Check Your Progress 30.2

1. Calculate the annual growth rate of a population that is experiencing a birthrate of 20.5% and a death rate of 9.8%.
2. Compare the characteristics of an MDC with those of an LDC, and give an example of each.
3. Explain what is meant by the term *replacement reproduction.*
4. Contrast the environmental impact of an MDC versus an LDC.

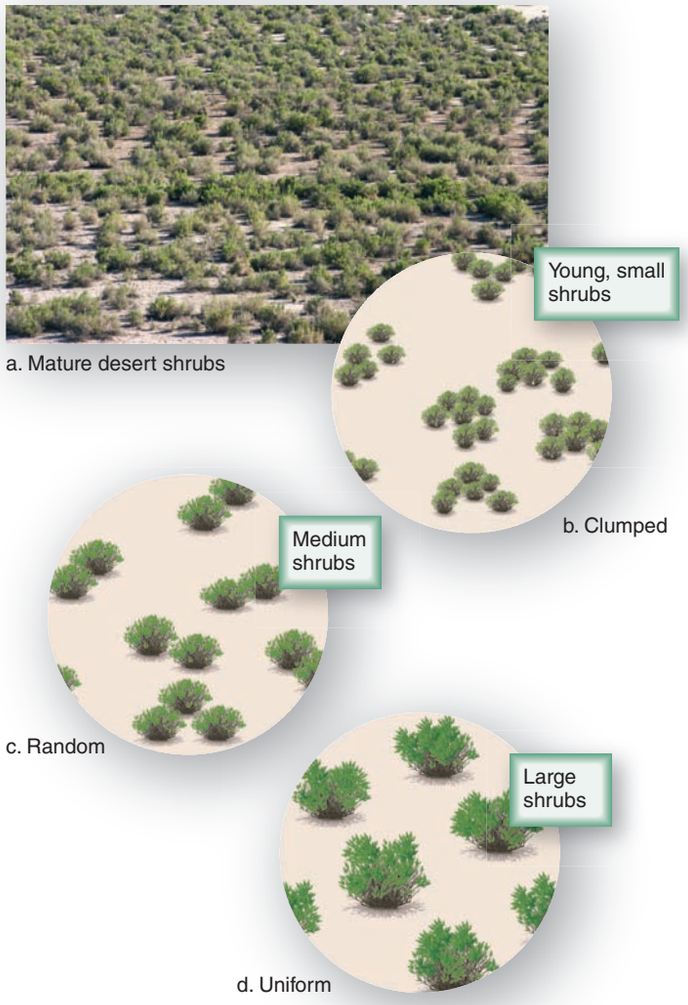


Figure 30.8 **Patterns of distribution within a population.**

a. A population of mature desert shrubs. **b.** Young, small desert shrubs are clumped. **c.** Medium shrubs are randomly distributed. **d.** Large shrubs are uniformly distributed.

Connections: Environment

Where are the highest and lowest population densities of humans?

Based on 2012 demographic data, the country with the highest population density is the Principality of Monaco (in Europe), with a density of 36,356 people per square kilometer. Greenland technically has the lowest population density (0), followed by Mongolia and the Western Sahara, both with an average population density of 2 people per square kilometer.

30.3 Characteristics of Populations

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish among the types of population distribution.
2. Describe how age-structure diagrams and survivorship curves are used to predict future growth.
3. Explain how biotic potential contributes to exponential and logistic growth.
4. Compare and contrast density-dependent and density-independent factors.

Various characteristics of populations change over time. Populations are periodically subject to environmental instability. During such times of environmental instability, individuals are under the pressures of natural selection. Individuals better adapted to the environment will leave behind more offspring than those that are not as well adapted. Once the population becomes adapted to the new environment, an increase in size can occur. When an ecologist lists the characteristics of a population, it is a snapshot of the characteristics at a particular time and place.

Distribution and Density

Resources are the components of an environment that support its organisms. Light, water, space, mates, and food are some important resources for populations. The availability of resources influences the spatial distribution of individuals in a given area. Three terms—**clumped, random,** and **uniform** distributions—are used to describe the observed patterns of distribution. In a study of desert shrubs, it was found that the distribution changes from clumped to random to uniform as the plants mature (**Fig. 30.8**). After sufficient study, competition for belowground resources was found to be the main cause for the distribution patterns.

Suppose we were to step back and consider the distribution of individuals not within a single desert, forest, or pond but within a species' range. A **range** is that portion of the globe where the species can be found. On this scale, all the members of a species within the range make up the population. Members of a population are clumped within the range because they are located in areas that contain the resources they require.

Population density is the number of individuals per unit area, or volume. Population density tends to be higher in areas with plentiful resources than in areas with scarce resources. Other factors can be involved, however. In general, population density declines with increasing body size. Consider that tree seedlings live at a much higher population density than do mature trees. Therefore, more than one factor must be taken into account when explaining population densities.

Population Growth

As mentioned on page 584, the growth rate is based on the number of individuals born and the number of individuals who die each year within the population. Growth occurs when the number of births exceeds the number of deaths. To take another example, if the number of births is 30 per year, and the number of deaths is 10 per year per 1,000 individuals, the growth rate is 2%.

In cases where the number of deaths exceeds the number of births, the value of the growth rate is negative—the population is shrinking.

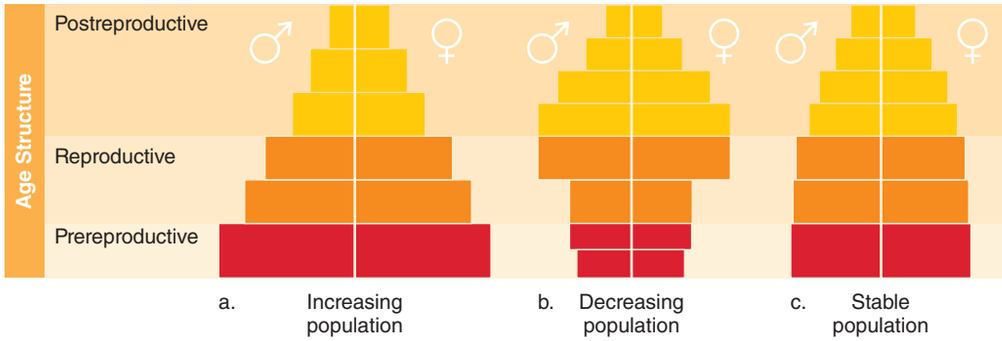


Figure 30.9 **Age-structure diagrams.**

Typical age-structure diagrams for hypothetical populations that are (**a**) increasing, (**b**) decreasing, and (**c**) stable. Different numbers of individuals in each age class create these distinctive shapes. In each diagram, the *left half* represents males, while the *right half* represents females.

Demographics and Population Growth

Availability of resources and certain characteristics of a population—called **demographics**—influence its growth rate. One demographic characteristic of interest for all populations is the **age structure** of a population. As mentioned earlier in the chapter, bar diagrams are typically used to depict the age structure of a population. The population is divided into members that are *prereproductive, reproductive,* or *postreproductive,* based on their age. If the prereproductive and reproductive individuals outnumber those that are postreproductive, the birthrate exceeds the death rate (**Fig. 30.9*a***). In contrast, if the postreproductive individuals exceed those that are prereproductive and/or reproductive, the number of individuals in the population will decrease over time because the death rate exceeds the birthrate (Fig. 30.9*b*). If the numbers of prereproductive, reproductive, and postreproductive individuals are approximately equal and the birthrate equals the death rate, then the number of individuals in the population will remain relatively stable over time (Fig. 30.9*c*).

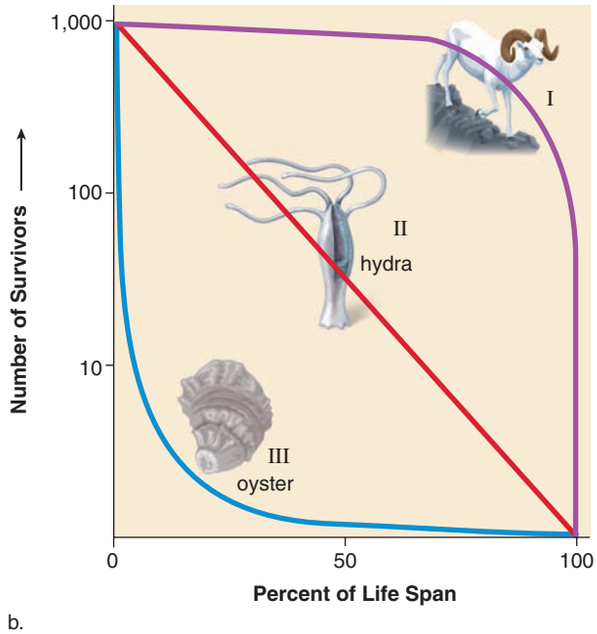
Ecologists also study patterns of **survivorship**—how age at death influences population size. For example, if members of a population die young, the number of reproductive individuals will decrease. The first step is to construct a life table, which lists the number of individuals that are alive at a given point of their life. The best way to arrive at a life table is to identify a large number of individuals that are born at about the same time and keep records on them from birth until death.

A life table for Dall sheep is given in **Figure 30.10*a***. This table was constructed by gathering a large number of skulls and counting the growth rings on the horns to estimate each sheep's age at death, given that one growth ring is produced annually. Plotting the number of survivors per 1,000 births against age produces a *survivorship curve* (Fig. 30.10*b*). While each species has its own pattern, three types of survivorship curves are common. In a type I curve, typical of Dall sheep and humans, survival is high until old age, when deaths increase due to illness. In a type II curve, the possibility of death is equal at any age. In a type III curve, death is likely among the young, with few individuals reaching old age.

Age (years)	Number of survivors at beginning of year	Number of deaths during year
0–1	1,000	199
1–2	801	12
2–3	789	13
3–4	776	12
4–5	764	30
5–6	734	46
6–7	688	48
7–8	640	69
8–9	571	132
9–10	439	187
10–11	252	156
11–12	96	90
12–13	6	3
13–14	3	3
14–15	0	

1,000–199
801–12
etc.

a.



b.

Figure 30.10 **Life table and survivorship curves.**

a. A life table for Dall sheep. **b.** Three typical survivorship curves. Among Dall sheep, with a type I curve, most individuals survive until old age, when they gradually die off. Among hydras, with a type II curve, there is an equal chance of death at all ages. Among oysters, with a type III curve, most die when they are young, and few become adults that are able to survive until old age.

Biotic Potential The rate at which a population increases over time depends on its **biotic potential,** the maximun number of individuals born to a population when resources are unlimited (**Fig. 30.11**). Whether the population achieves biotic potential depends on the demographic characteristics of the population, such as the following:

1. Availability of resources
2. Number of offspring per reproduction
3. Chances of survival until age of reproduction
4. How often each individual reproduces
5. Age at which reproduction begins

Patterns of Population Growth

The patterns of population growth are dependent on (1) the biotic potential of the species and (2) the availability of resources. The two fundamental patterns of population growth are exponential growth and logistic growth.

Exponential Growth

Suppose ecologists are studying the growth of a population of insects that are capable of infesting and taking over an area. Under these circumstances, **exponential growth** is expected. An exponential pattern of population growth results in a J-shaped curve (**Fig. 30.12**). This growth pattern can be likened to compound interest at a bank: The more your money increases, the more interest you will get. If the insect population has 2,000 individuals and the per capita rate of increase is 20% per month, there will be 2,400 insects after one month, 2,880 after two months, 3,456 after three months, and so forth.

Notice that a J-shaped curve has two phases:

Lag phase: Growth is slow because the number of individuals in the population is small.

Exponential growth phase: Growth is accelerating.

Usually, exponential growth continues as long as there are sufficient resources available. When the number of individuals in the population approaches the maximum number that can be supported by available resources, competition for these resources will increase.

Video
Exponential Growth

3D Animation
Population Ecology: Exponential Population Growth

a.

b.

Figure 30.11 **Biotic potential.**

A population's maximum growth rate under ideal conditions—that is, its biotic potential—is greatly influenced by the number of offspring produced in each reproductive event. **a.** Mice, which produce many offspring that quickly mature to produce more offspring, have a much higher biotic potential than (**b**) the rhinoceros, which produces only one or two offspring per infrequent reproductive events.

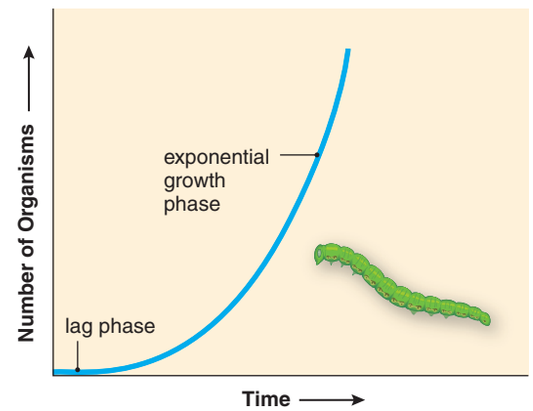


Figure 30.12 **Exponential growth.**

Exponential growth results in a J-shaped growth curve because the growth rate is positive.

Logistic Growth

As resources decrease, population growth levels off and a pattern of population growth called **logistic growth** occurs. Logistic growth results in an S-shaped growth curve (**Fig. 30.13**).

Notice that an S-shaped curve has four phases:

Lag phase: Growth is slow because the number of individuals in the population is small.

Exponential growth phase: Growth is accelerating due to biotic potential (see Fig. 30.11).

Deceleration phase: The rate of population growth slows because of increased competition among individuals for available resources.

Stable equilibrium phase: Little, if any, growth takes place because births and deaths are about equal.

The stable equilibrium phase is said to occur at the carrying capacity of the environment. This number is not a constant; it tends to fluctuate. For example, a large island can support a larger population of penguins than a smaller island, because the smaller island has a limited amount of space for nesting sites.

Applications Our knowledge of logistic growth has practical applications. The model predicts that exponential growth will occur only when population size is much lower than the carrying capacity. Thus, if humans are using a fish population as a continuous food source, it is best to maintain the fish population size in the exponential phase of growth when biotic potential is having its full effect and the birthrate is the highest. If people overfish, the fish population will sink into the lag phase, and it may be years before exponential growth recurs (**Fig. 30.14**). On the other hand, if people are trying to limit the growth of a pest, it is best to reduce the carrying capacity, rather than the population size. Reducing the population size only encourages exponential growth to begin once again. Farmers can reduce the carrying capacity for a pest by alternating rows of different crops instead of growing one type of crop throughout the entire field.

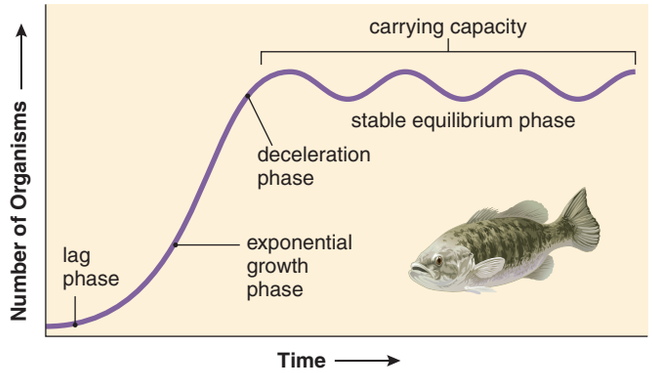


Figure 30.13 **Logistic growth.**

Logistic growth produces an S-shaped growth curve because competition for resources increases as the population approaches the carrying capacity.

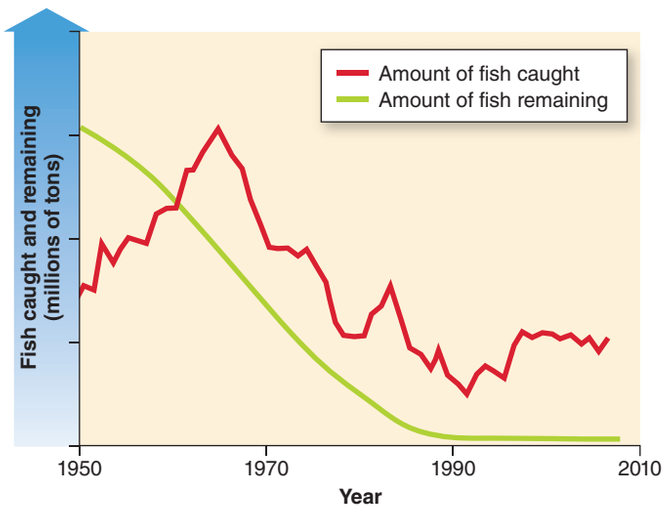


Figure 30.14 **Sustainable population density.**

As the amount of fish caught increased over the 1950s and 1960s, the remaining amount decreased. Because fishing still continues, fish population growth is maintained in its lag phase. Fishing must be reduced to allow the fish population to enter an exponential growth phase. Now a balance between fish population growth and fish caught could be maintained regularly at a higher amount.

a. Low density of mice

b. High density of mice

Figure 30.15 **Density-independent effects.**

The impact of a density-independent factor, such as weather or a natural disaster, is not influenced by population density. Two populations of field mice are in the path of a flash flood. **a.** In the low-density population, 3 out of the 5 mice drown, a 60% death rate. **b.** In the high-density population, 12 out of 20 mice drown—also a 60% death rate.

Factors That Regulate Population Growth

Ecologists have long recognized that the environment contains both biotic (living) and abiotic (nonliving) components that play an important role in regulating population size.

Density-Independent Factors

Abiotic factors, such as weather and natural disasters, are typically **density-independent factors.** Abiotic factors can cause sudden and catastrophic reductions in population size. However, density-independent factors cannot in and of themselves regulate population size because the effect is not influenced by the number of individuals in the population. In other words, the intensity of the effect does not increase with increased population size. For example, the proportion of a population killed in a flash flood is independent of density—floods don't necessarily kill a larger percentage of a dense population than of a less dense population. If a mouse population has only 5 members and 3 drown in a flash flood, the death rate is 60% (**Fig. 30.15*a***). If a mouse population has 20 mice and 12 drown, the death rate is still 60% (Fig. 30.15*b*).

3D Animation
Population Ecology: Density-Dependent Factors

Density-Dependent Factors

Biotic factors are considered **density-dependent factors,** because the percentage of the population affected increases as the density of the population increases. Competition, predation, and parasitism are all biotic factors that increase in intensity as the density increases. We will discuss these interactions between populations again in Chapter 31 because they influence community composition and diversity.

3D Animation
Population Ecology: Density-Independent Factors

Competition **Competition** occurs when members of the same species attempt to use resources (such as light, food, or space) that are in limited supply. As a result, not all members of the population have equal access to the resources necessary to ensure survival, reproduction, or some other aspect of their life cycle.

Video
Booby Chick Competition

Figure 30.16 **Density-dependent effects—competition.**

The impact of competition is directly proportional to the density of a population. **a.** When density is low, every member of the population has access to the resource. **b.** When density is high, members of the population must compete to gain access to available resources, and some fail to do so.

a. Low density of birds

b. High density of birds

Let's consider a woodpecker population in which members have to compete for nesting sites. Each pair of birds requires a tree hole in order to raise offspring. If there is the same number of or more holes than breeding pairs, each pair can have a hole in which to lay eggs and rear young birds (**Fig. 30.16*a***). But if there are fewer holes than breeding pairs, each pair must compete to acquire a nesting site (Fig. 30.16*b*). Pairs that fail to gain access to holes will be unable to contribute new members to the population.

A well-known example of competition for food concerns the reindeer on St. Paul Island. Overpopulation led to the overconsumption of resources, causing the population to crash—that is, it became drastically reduced.

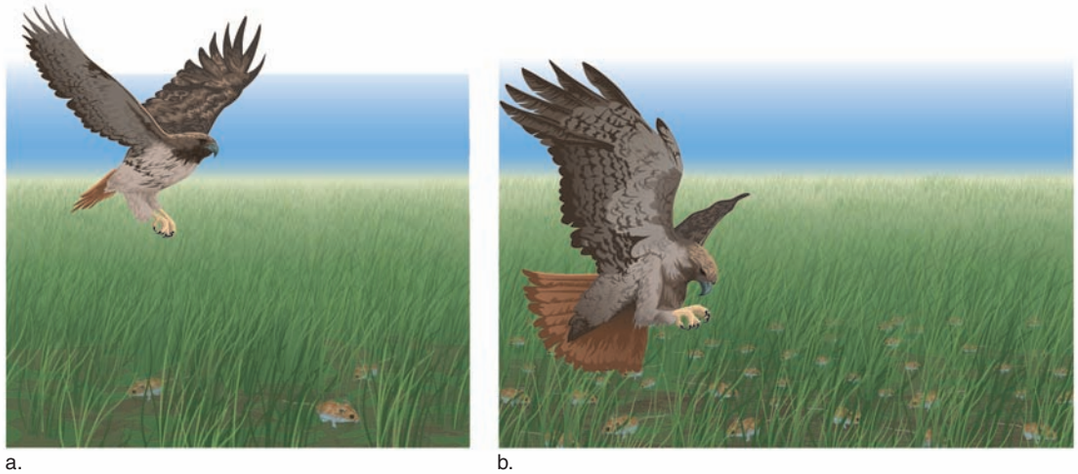
Resource partitioning among different age groups is a way to reduce competition for food. During the life cycle of butterflies, the caterpillar stage requires different food than the adult stage. Caterpillars graze on leaves, while adult butterflies feed on nectar produced by flowers. Therefore, the parents are less apt to compete with their offspring for food.

Predation **Predation** occurs when one organism, the predator, eats another, the prey. In the broadest sense, predation can include not only animals such as lions that kill zebras but also filter feeding blue whales, which strain krill from the ocean waters, and herbivorous deer, which browse on trees and bushes.

The effect of predation generally increases as the prey population increases in density, because prey are easier to find when their population is larger. Consider a field inhabited by a population of mice (**Fig. 30.17**). Each mouse must have a hole in which to hide to avoid being eaten by a hawk. If there are 102 mice but only 100 holes, 2 mice will be left out in the open. It might be hard for the hawk to find only 2 mice in the field. If neither mouse is caught, the predation rate is 0/2 = 0%. However, if there are 200 mice and only 100 holes, there is a greater chance that the hawk will be able to find some of the 100 mice without holes. If half of the exposed mice are caught, the predation rate is 50/100 = 50%. Therefore, increasing the density of the available prey has increased the proportion of the population preyed upon.

Figure 30.17 **Density-dependent effects—predation.**

The impact of predation on a population is directly proportional to the density of the population. **a.** In a low-density population, the chances of a predator finding the prey are low, resulting in little predation (a mortality rate of 0/2, or 0%). **b.** In a higher-density population, there is a greater likelihood of the predator locating potential prey, resulting in a greater predation rate (a mortality rate of 50/100, or 50%).



a. b.

Check Your Progress 30.3

1. Explain how an age-structure diagram may be used to predict the future growth of a population.
2. Describe how reproductive strategies differ between species that exhibit a type I and type III survivorship curve.
3. Compare and contrast an exponential growth curve and a logistic growth curve.
4. List the demographic characteristics of a population that determine if it will reach its biotic potential.
5. List examples of density-independent and density-dependent factors that regulate population growth.

Predator-Prey Population Cycles Rather than remaining steady, some predator and prey populations experience an increase, then a decrease, in population size. Such a cycle occurs between the snowshoe hare and the Canada lynx, a type of small cat (**Fig. 30.18**). The snowshoe hare is a common herbivore in the coniferous forests of North America, where it feeds on terminal twigs of various shrubs and small trees. Investigators first assumed that the predatory lynx brings about a decrease in the hare population, and this decrease in prey brings about a subsequent decrease in the lynx population. Once the hare population recovers, so does the lynx population, and the result is a boom–bust cycle. But some biologists noted that the decline in snowshoe hare abundance is accompanied by low growth and reproductive rates, which could be signs of food shortage. A field experiment showed that, if the lynx predator was denied access to the hare population, the cycling of the hare population still occurred based on food availability. The results suggested that a hare-food cycle and a predator-hare cycle have combined to produce the pattern observed in Figure 30.18.

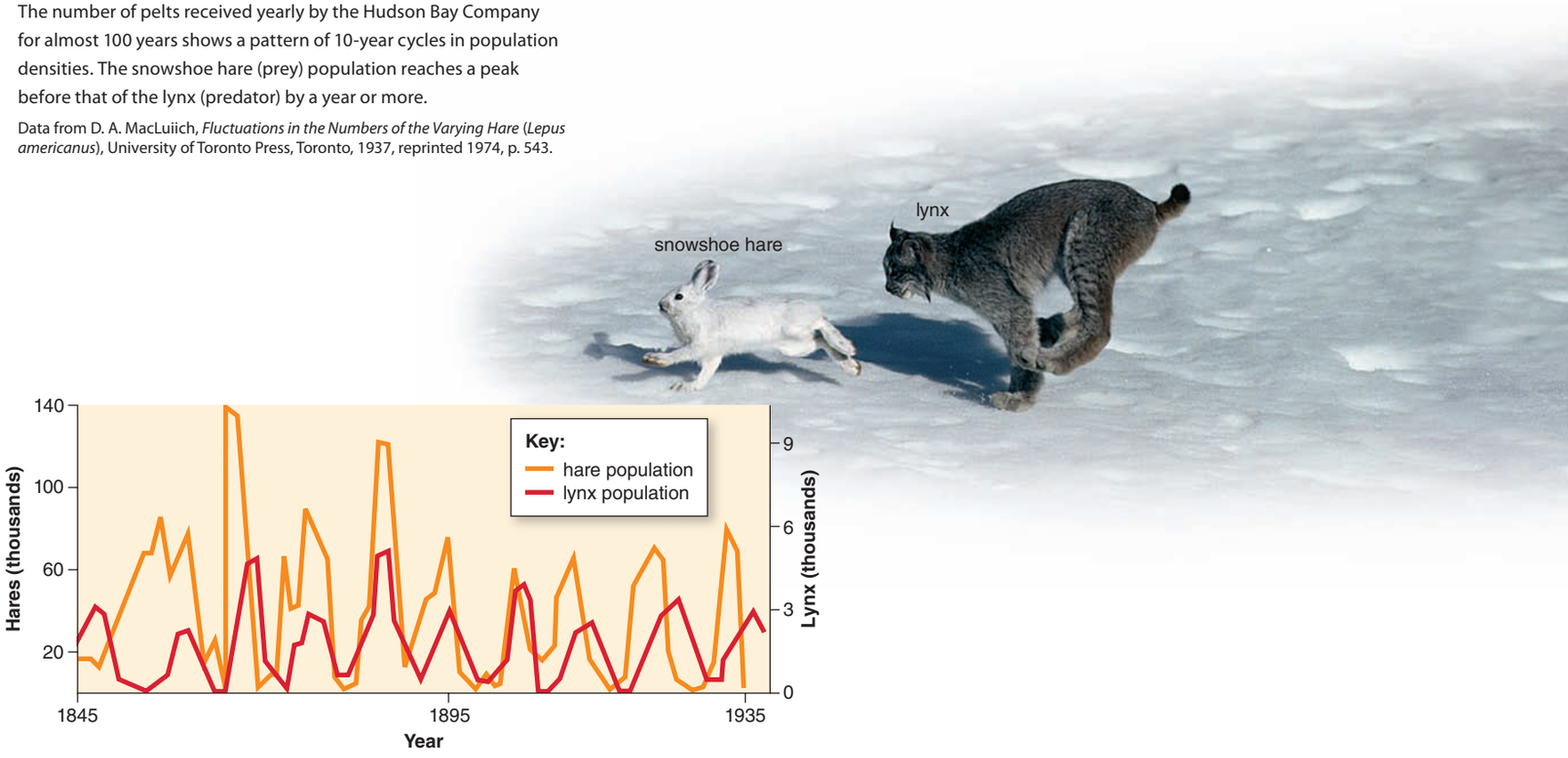
Video
Harris Hawks

30.3
CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
Population growth influences the community and ecosystem structure.

Figure 30.18 Predator-prey cycling of a lynx and a snowshoe hare.

The number of pelts received yearly by the Hudson Bay Company for almost 100 years shows a pattern of 10-year cycles in population densities. The snowshoe hare (prey) population reaches a peak before that of the lynx (predator) by a year or more.

Data from D. A. MacLuiich, *Fluctuations in the Numbers of the Varying Hare* (*Lepus americanus*), University of Toronto Press, Toronto, 1937, reprinted 1974, p. 543.



30.4 Life History Patterns and Extinction

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Distinguish between opportunistic and equilibrium species.
2. Describe factors that can lead to the extinction of a species.

A **life history** consists of a particular mix of the characteristics we have been discussing. After studying many types of populations, from mayflies to humans, ecologists have discovered two fundamental and contrasting patterns: the opportunistic life history pattern and the equilibrium life history pattern.

Opportunistic species tend to exhibit exponential growth. The members of the population are small in size, mature early, have a short life span, and provide limited parental care for a great number of offspring (**Fig. 30.19*a***). Density-independent factors tend to regulate the population size, which is large enough to survive an event that threatens to annihilate it. These populations typically have a high dispersal capacity. Various types of insects and weeds are good examples of opportunistic species.

Equilibrium species exhibit logistic growth, with the population size remaining close to or at the carrying capacity (Fig. 30.19*b*). Resources are relatively scarce, and the individuals best able to compete—those with phenotypes best suited to the environment—have the largest number of offspring. They allocate energy to their own growth and survival and to the growth and survival of a small number of offspring. Therefore, they are fairly large, are slow to mature, and have a fairly long life span. The growth of equilibrium species tends to be regulated by density-dependent factors. Various birds and mammals are good examples of equilibrium species.

Extinction

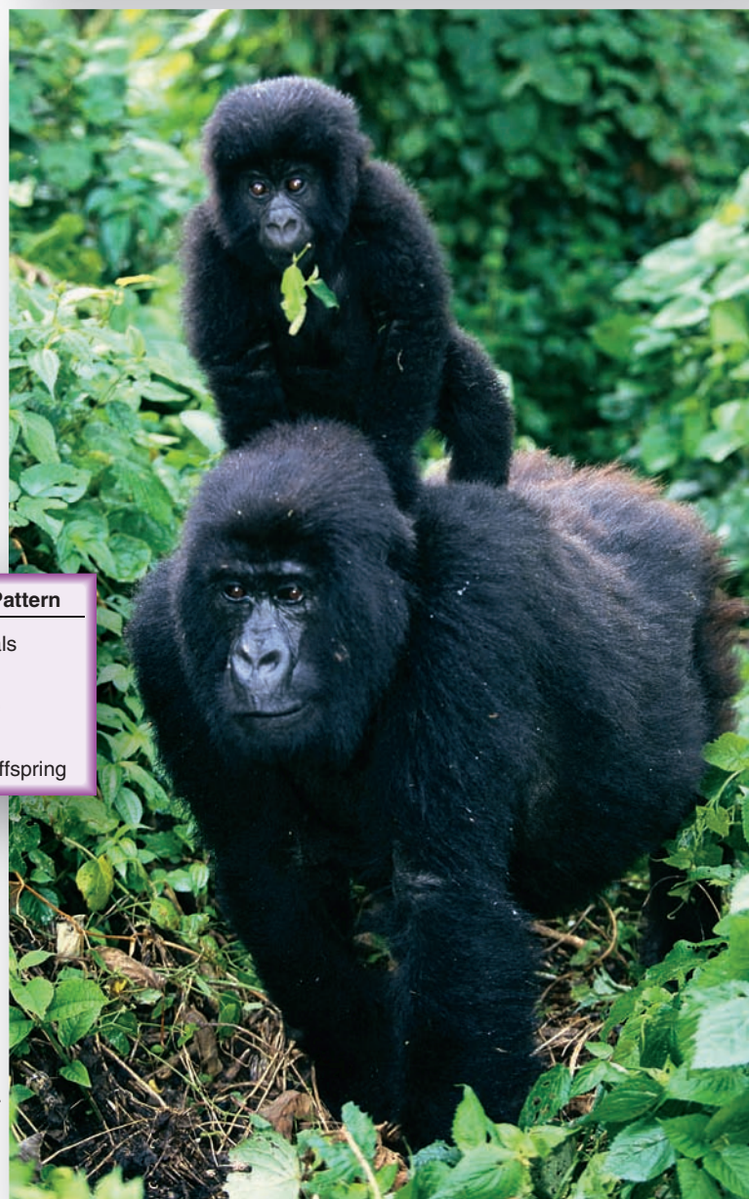
Extinction is the total disappearance of a species or higher group. Which species shown in Figure 30.19, the dandelion or the mountain gorilla, is apt to become extinct? Because the dandelion matures quickly, produces many offspring at one time, and has seeds dispersed widely by wind, it can withstand a local decimation more easily than the mountain gorilla.

A study of equilibrium species shows that three other factors—the size of the geographic range, degree of habitat tolerance, and size of local populations—can help determine whether an equilibrium species is in danger of extinction. **Figure 30.20** compares 14 equilibrium species on the basis of these three factors. The mountain gorilla has a restricted geographic range, narrow habitat tolerance (few preferred places to live), and small local population. This combination of characteristics makes the mountain gorilla very vulnerable to extinction. The possibility of extinction increases depending on whether a species is similar to the gorilla in one, two, or three ways. Such population studies can assist conservationists and others trying to preserve the biosphere's biodiversity.

Opportunistic Pattern

Small individuals
Short life span
Fast to mature
Many offspring
Little or no care of offspring

a.



Equilibrium Pattern

Large individuals
Long life span
Slow to mature
Few offspring
Much care of offspring

b.

Figure 30.19 Life history patterns.

a. Dandelions are an opportunistic species, whereas (**b**) mountain gorillas are an equilibrium species.

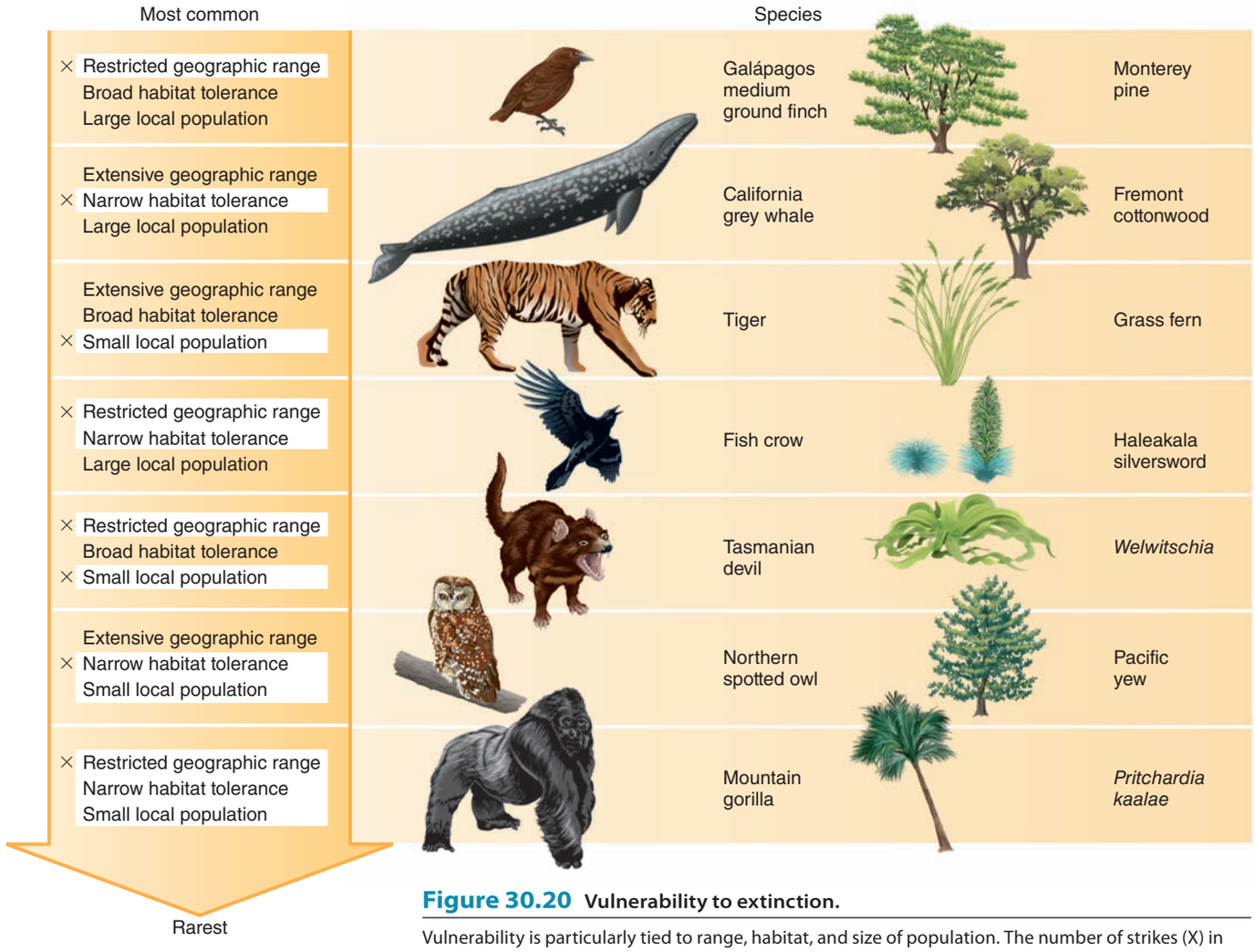


Figure 30.20 **Vulnerability to extinction.**

Vulnerability is particularly tied to range, habitat, and size of population. The number of strikes (X) in the boxes indicates the chances and causes of extinction.

Check Your Progress 30.4

1. Contrast opportunistic species with equilibrium species.
2. Define *extinction*.
3. List five factors that can determine whether an equilibrium population is in danger of extinction.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Knowledge of species life history patterns helps us predict extinction.

Connections: Environment

How are humans influencing the rates of extinction?

Many conservation biologists believe that we are in the midst of one of the largest periods of mass extinction since the end of the Cretaceous 65 MYA (see Table 16.1). The major causes of this "Sixth Mass Extinction" are human activity (population growth and resource use) and global climate change. While extinction is a normal aspect of life, the current extinction rates are between 100 and 1,000 times the normal levels of one to five species per year. Some estimates suggest that as much as 38% of all species on the planet, including most primates, birds, and amphibians, may be in danger of extinction before the end of this century.

Media Study Tools

connect plus BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video
30.2 World Hunger	**30.1** Coral Reef Ecology • Tallgrass Prairie Ecology **30.3** Exponential Growth • Big Fish, Small Fish • Ocean Fishing Ban • Booby Chick Competition • Hungry Reindeer • Harris Hawks

3D Animation Population Ecology

For an exploration of the patterns of population growth, and the factors influencing growth rates, view McGraw-Hill's 3D animation "Population Ecology")

SUMMARIZE

30.1 The Scope of Ecology

Ecology is an experimental science that studies the interactions of organisms with each other and with the physical environment. The levels of biological organization studied by ecologists are

- Organisms, population, community, ecosystem, biosphere

Environmental scientists and conservation biologists both utilize the principles of ecology in their work.

30.2 The Human Population

The human population exhibits clumped distribution (on both a large scale and a small scale) and is undergoing rapid growth.

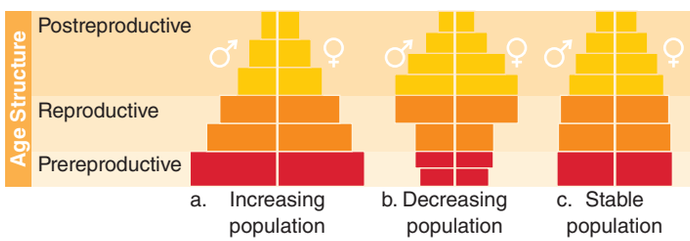
Future Population Growth

At the present growth rate, the doubling time for the human population is estimated to be 35 years. This rate of growth will put extreme demands on resources, and growth will decline due to resource scarcity. Eventually, the population will most likely level off at its carrying capacity.

- **More-developed Countries (MDCs)** The growth rate for MDCs is about 0.1%. The total MDC population between 2002 and 2050 will remain at around 1.2 billion.
- **Less-developed countries (LDCs)** The growth rate for LDCs is about 1.6%. The LDC population between 2002 and 2050 is expected to increase from 5 billion to 8 billion.

Comparing Age Structures

The age structure of populations is divided into three age groups: prereproductive, reproductive, and postreproductive. The MDCs are approaching stabilization, with just about equal numbers in each group. The LDCs will continue to expand, because their prereproductive group is the largest. Ideally, populations would practice **replacement reproduction** and each couple would produce only two children.



Population Growth and Environmental Impact

Two types of environmental impact can occur: The LDCs put stress on the biosphere due to population growth, and the MDCs put stress on the biosphere due to resource consumption and waste production.

30.3 Characteristics of Populations

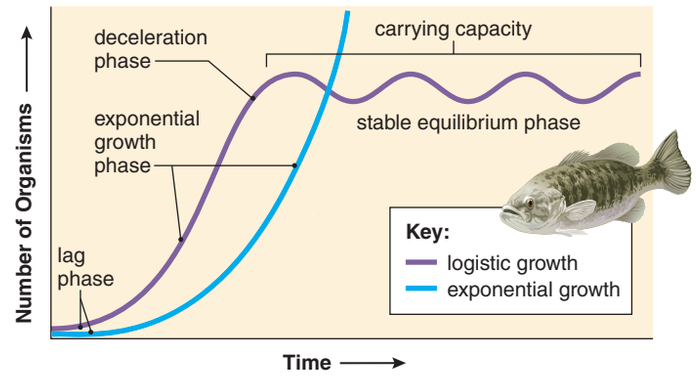
Distribution patterns, such as **clumped, random,** and **uniform,** along with population density are dependent on resource availability. These factors determine the **range** that a species will use. The number of individuals per unit area is higher in areas with abundant resources and lower when resources are limited. Population growth can be calculated based on the annual birthrate and death rate. Population growth is determined by

- Resource availability
- **Demographics** (**age structures, survivorship,** and **biotic potential**—the highest rate of increase possible)

Patterns of Population Growth

The two patterns of population growth are exponential growth and logistic growth.

- **Exponential growth** Exponential growth results in a J-shaped curve. The two phases of exponential growth are the lag phase (slow growth) and exponential growth phase (accelerating growth).
- **Logistic growth** Logistic growth results in an S-shaped curve. The four phases of logistic growth are the lag phase (slow growth), exponential growth phase (accelerating growth), deceleration phase (slowing growth), and stable equilibrium phase (relatively no growth).



Factors That Regulate Population Growth

The two factors that regulate population growth are density-independent and density-dependent factors.

- **Density-independent factors** include abiotic factors, such as weather and natural disasters. The effect of the factor is not dependent on density.
- **Density-dependent factors** include biotic factors, such as **competition** and **predation.** The effect of the factor is dependent on density.

30.4 Life History Patterns and Extinction

The two fundamental life history patterns are exhibited by opportunistic populations and equilibrium populations

- **Opportunistic populations** are characterized by individuals that have short life spans, mature quickly, produce many offspring, have strong dispersal ability, provide little or no care of offspring, and exhibit exponential growth.
- **Equilibrium populations** are characterized by individuals that have long life spans, mature slowly, produce few offspring, provide much care of offspring, and exhibit logistic growth.

Extinction

Extinction is the total disappearance of a species or higher group. Opportunistic populations are less likely than equilibrium populations to become extinct. Three factors, in particular, influence the vulnerability of equilibrium populations to extinction: size of geographic range, degree of habitat tolerance, and size of local populations.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Ecology is the study of the interactions between organisms, as well as between organisms and their environment. Ecologists study biological organization at a variety of levels, including organismal, population, community, ecosystem, and biosphere. Knowledge gained from ecology helps us understand all of the species on Earth.

12.1 Ecology is studied at many different levels.

12.2 Ecologists indicate that the human population is growing exponentially.

12.3 Population growth influences the community and ecosystem structure.

12.4 Knowledge of species life history patterns helps us predict extinction.

For more information on the study of ecology, refer to the following sections:

Section 5.1 examines the importance of energy to living organisms.

Table 16.1 outlines the major extinctions in the history of life.

Section 29.2 discusses the reproductive ability of humans.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

30.1 The Scope of Ecology

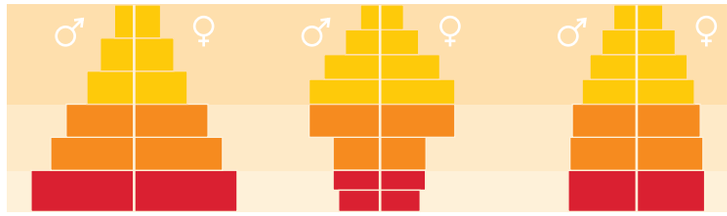
1. Which of these levels of ecological study involves both abiotic and biotic components?
   a. organisms **d.** ecosystem
   b. populations **e.** All of these are correct.
   c. communities
2. The biological level of organization subject to evolution by natural selection is called
   a. an organism. **d.** an ecosystem.
   b. a population. **e.** the biosphere.
   c. a community.

30.2 The Human Population

3. Decreased death rate followed by decreased birthrate has occurred in
   a. MDCs. **c.** MDCs and LDCs.
   b. LDCs. **d.** neither MDCs nor LDCs.
4. Calculate the growth rate of a population of 500 individuals in which the birthrate is 10 per year and the death rate is 5 per year.
   a. 5% **c.** 1%
   b. –5% **d.** –1%
5. If the human birthrate were reduced to 15 per 1,000 per year and the death rate remained the same (9 per 1,000), what would be the growth rate?
   a. 9% **d.** 0.6%
   b. 6% **e.** 15%
   c. 10%

30.3 Characteristics of Populations

6. A population's maximum growth rate is also called its
   a. carrying capacity. **c.** growth curve.
   b. biotic potential. **d.** replacement rate.
7. Globally, if a population lives only along a lake's shoreline, members of this population exhibit which type of spatial distribution?
   a. variable **c.** random
   b. clumped **d.** uniform
8. Label the following age structure diagrams to indicate whether the population is stable, increasing, or decreasing.



a. _____ b. _____ c. _____

9. An S-shaped growth curve indicates
   a. logistic growth. **c.** exponential growth.
   b. logarithmic growth. **d.** additive growth.

For statements 10–13, indicate the interaction in the key exemplified by the scenario.

Key:

a. density-independent factor
b. competition
c. predation
d. predator-prey cycle

10. A severe drought destroys the entire food supply of a herd of gazelle.

11. A population of feral cats increases in size as the mouse population increases and then crashes regularly after the mouse population enters periods of decline.

12. Swift coyotes are able to catch rabbits and live to reproduce. Other coyotes lack a good food source and are not strong enough to reproduce.

13. Deer prefer to feed on a dense thicket of oak saplings rather than more widely spaced young oak trees.

30.4 Life History Patterns and Extinction

14. Which of the following features is present in organisms that exhibit an equilibrium life history pattern?

a. long life span
b. small body size
c. many offspring
d. fast to mature
e. no parental care

15. Which of the following is not an adaptive feature of an opportunistic life history pattern?

a. many offspring
b. little or no care of offspring
c. long life span
d. small individuals
e. individuals that mature quickly

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. In Sri Lanka, the death rate is 6 per 1,000, while the birthrate is 17 per 1,000. Calculate the current population growth rate. The formula for the doubling time of a population is

$t = 0.69/r$, where t is the doubling time and r is the growth rate

Determine the doubling time (the number of years it will take to double the population size) in Sri Lanka. Be sure to convert your growth rate from a percentage (e.g., 2.1%) to a decimal value (0.021). If the birthrate drops to 10 per 1,000, what is the doubling time?

2. Assume that a population of dandelions grows exponentially, so that it doubles in size every week. The population (beginning with one plant) expands to fill a field in 20 weeks. How many weeks will it take to fill one-quarter of the field? How long will it take to fill half the field?

3. What type of data would you collect to show that a population is undergoing stabilizing selection, as in Figure 15.3?

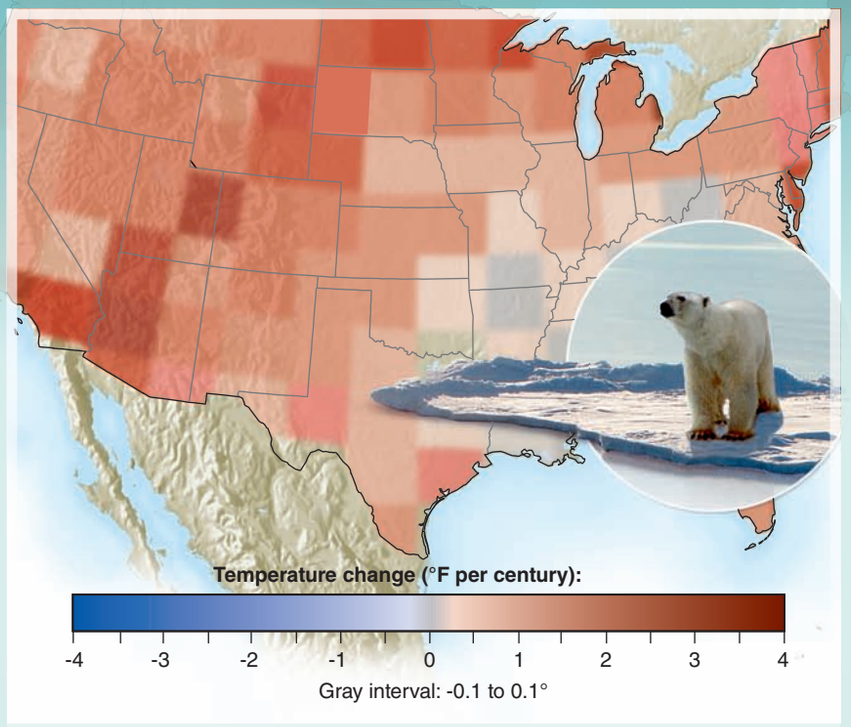
4. Species that are more prone to certain risk factors are more likely than others to become extinct. For example, species with a unique lineage, such as the giant panda, are likely to be at severe risk of extinction.

a. Should our limited resources for species protection be focused on species that are at the highest risk of extinction?

b. Do you support the idea that high-risk species may be less successful products of evolution and should not receive extraordinary protection?

31

Communities and Ecosystems



OUTLINE

31.1 Ecology of Communities 601

31.2 Ecology of Ecosystems 610

31.3 Ecology of Major Ecosystems 619

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 1.1 What are the roles of producers, consumers, and decomposers in an ecosystem?

Section 6.1 How do photosynthetic organisms convert CO_2 and water to sugar?

Section 30.2 What is the environmental impact of human population growth?

Global Climate Change

Scientists around the world are recording changes in the average temperature of a region, precipitation patterns, sea levels, and greenhouse gas concentrations that indicate climate change is occuring.

Worldwide 2000–2009 was the warmest decade on record with 30–60% of the United States experiencing drought conditions. 2012 was tied with 1887, 1995, 2010, and 2011 as the third most active Atlantic hurricane season in recorded history.

Sea levels worldwide have risen an average of 1 inch per decade due to the overall increase in the surface temperature of the world's oceans. Climate models suggest that we will see a rise in sea levels of 3 to 4 feet over the next century exposing coastal areas to increasingly severe storms and storm surges.

As of November 2009, 187 countries had ratified the Kyoto Protocol with the goal of reducing greenhouse gas emissions by an average of 5.2% by the year 2012. The United States was responsible for approximately 36.1% of the 1990 baseline emission levels and is the largest per capita emission producer in the world but has not ratified the agreement. Production of electricity and transportation are the largest creators of greenhouse gas emissions in the United States.

The Copenhagen conference in 2009 ended without any type of binding agreement for long-term action against climate change. Fortunately, the 2010 Cancun summit on climate change helped solidify the agreement. The main concern of the conferences is that the hard decisions of making significant changes to our greenhouse emissions continue to be pushed off into the future. The longer we delay in making changes, the higher the risks become.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions.

1. How does climate influence a community and an ecosystem?
2. What is the relationship between greenhouse gases and the carbon cycle?

31.1 Ecology of Communities

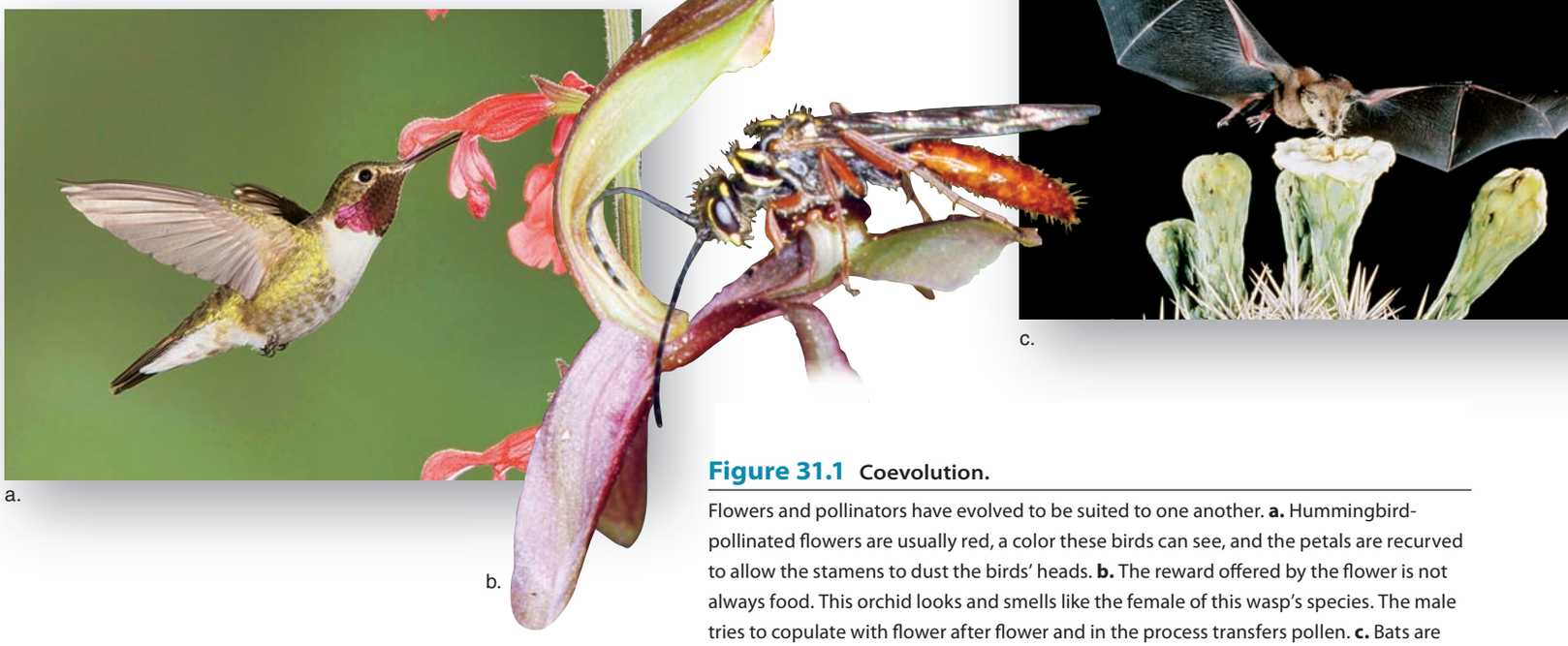
Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Define *community* and *coevolution* and provide an example of each.
2. Distinguish between species richness and species diversity.
3. Compare and contrast primary and secondary succession.
4. Describe and provide examples of how a species' niche influences the types of interactions within a community.

A **community** is an assemblage of populations of multiple species, interacting with one another within a single environment. For example, the various species living in and on a fallen log, such as plants, fungi, worms, and insects, interact with one another and form a community. The fungi break down the log and provide food for the earthworms and insects living in and on the log. Those insects may feed on one another, too. If birds flying throughout the forest feed on the insects and worms living in and on the log, they are also part of the larger forest community.

Communities come in various sizes, and it is sometimes difficult to decide where one community ends and another one begins. The relationships and interactions between species in a community form as the products of **coevolution,** by which an evolutionary change in one species results in an evolutionary change in another. **Figure 31.1** gives examples of how flowering plants and their pollinators are co-adapted. The Australian orchid, *Chiloglottis trapeziformis,* resembles the body of a wasp, and its odor mimics the



a. b. c.

Figure 31.1 Coevolution.

Flowers and pollinators have evolved to be suited to one another. **a.** Hummingbird-pollinated flowers are usually red, a color these birds can see, and the petals are recurved to allow the stamens to dust the birds' heads. **b.** The reward offered by the flower is not always food. This orchid looks and smells like the female of this wasp's species. The male tries to copulate with flower after flower and in the process transfers pollen. **c.** Bats are nocturnal, and the flowers they pollinate are white or light-colored, making them visible in moonlight. The flowers smell like bats and are large and sturdy, enabling them to withstand insertion of the bat's head as it uses its long, bristly tongue to lap up nectar and pollen.

pheromones of a female wasp. Therefore, male wasps are attracted to the flower, and when they attempt to mate with it, they become covered with pollen, which they transfer to the next orchid flower (Fig. 31.1*b*). The orchid is dependent on wasps for pollination, because neither wind nor other insects pollinate these flowers.

Video Pollinators

The species in each community have adaptations that are suited to the environmental conditions. An **ecosystem** consists of these species interacting with each other and with the physical environment. If the physical environment changes, the species that make up the community and the relationships among these species will also change. Extinction occurs when environmental change is too rapid for suitable adaptations to evolve.

Rapid environmental changes are detrimental to humans, despite using technology to adapt. Sometimes the economy of an area is dependent on the species composition of an aquatic or terrestrial ecosystem. Therefore, human activities that negatively impact the biodiversity of the area can also negatively affect the economy of that area. Knowledge of community and ecosystem ecology will help you better understand how we humans are detrimental to ourselves.

Community Composition and Diversity

Scientists compare communities based on their species composition and diversity. The **species richness** of a community is a listing of the various species found in the community. The **diversity** of a community includes both species richness and species distribution.

Species Composition

It is apparent by comparing the photographs in **Figure 31.2** that a coniferous forest has a different species composition than a tropical rain forest. Narrow-leaved evergreen tree species are prominent in the coniferous forest, whereas broad-leaved evergreen tree species are numerous in the tropical rain forest. There are also differences in the types and number of plant and animal species between a coniferous community and a tropical rain forest community. Ecologists have concluded that not only are the species compositions of these two communities different but the tropical rain forest has a higher species richness.

Figure 31.2 **Community species composition.**

Communities differ in their species composition, as exemplified by the predominant plants and animals in (**a**) a coniferous forest and (**b**) a tropical rain forest.

a.

b.

Diversity

The diversity of a community goes beyond species richness to include distribution and relative abundance, the number of individuals of each species in a given area. For example, a deciduous forest in West Virginia may contain 76 poplar trees but only 1 American elm. If you were simply walking through this forest, you could miss the lone American elm. If, instead, the forest had 36 poplar trees and 41 American elm trees, the forest would seem more diverse to you and indeed would have a higher diversity value, although both would have the same species richness value. The greater the species richness and the more even the distribution of the species in the community, the greater the diversity.

Ecological Succession

The species composition and diversity of communities change over time. It often takes decades for noticeable changes to occur. Natural forces, such as glaciers, volcanic eruptions, lightning-ignited forest fires, hurricanes, tornadoes, and floods are considered disturbances that can bring about community changes. Communities also change because of human activities, such as logging, road building, sedimentation, and farming. A more or less orderly process of community change is known as **ecological succession.**

Ecologists have developed models to explain why succession occurs and to predict patterns of succession following a disturbance. The climax-pattern model says that the climate of an area will always lead to the same assemblage of bacterial, fungal, plant, and animal species (**Fig. 31.3**) known as a **climax community.** For example, a coniferous forest community is expected in northern latitudes, a deciduous forest in temperate zones, and a tropical forest in areas with a tropical climate. Scientists know that disturbances influence community composition and diversity and that, despite the climate, the composition of a community is not always the same.

Two Types of Succession

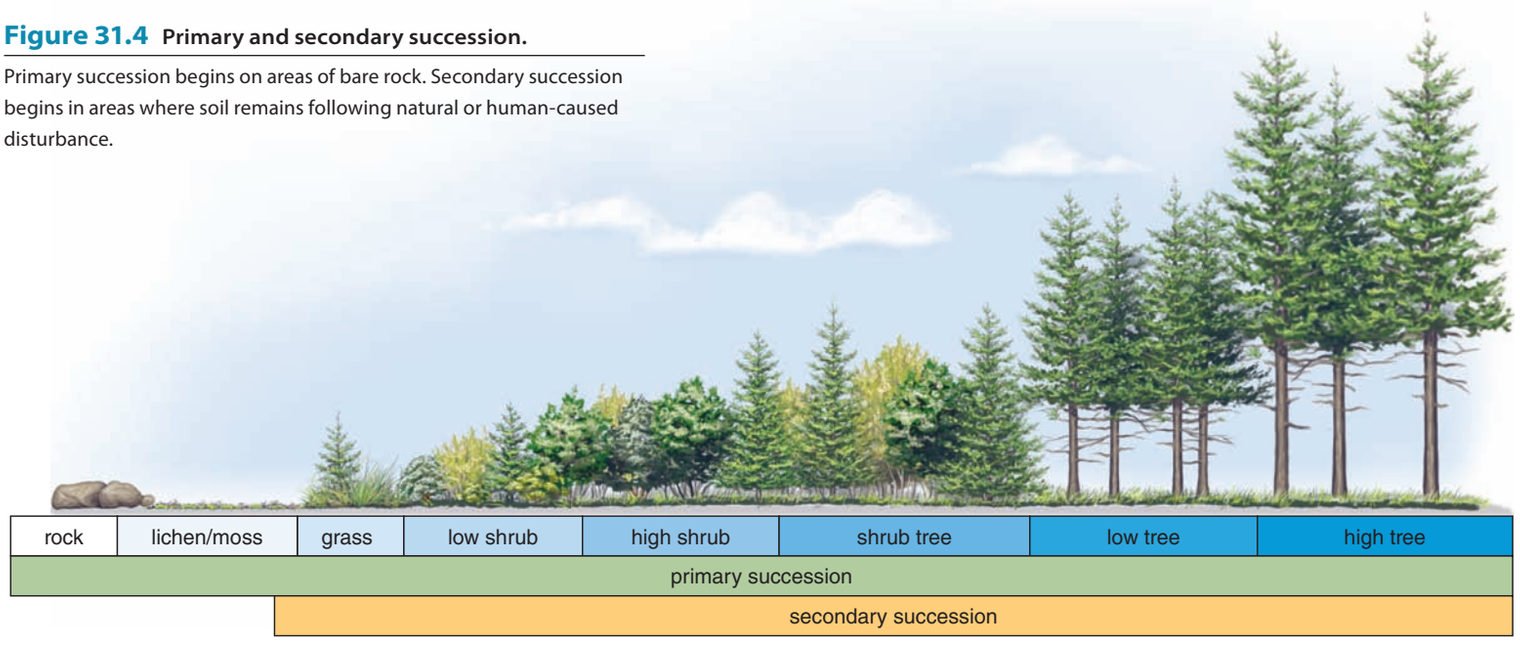
Ecologists define two types of ecological succession: primary and secondary (**Fig. 31.4**). **Primary succession** starts where soil has not yet formed. For example, hardened lava flows and the scraped bedrock that remains following a glacial retreat are subject to primary succession. **Secondary succession** begins, for example, in a cultivated field that is no longer farmed, where soil is already present. With both primary and secondary succession, a progression of species occurs over time. The spores of fungi and vascular seedless plants are usually the first to grow and then

Figure 31.3 **Climax communities.**

Does succession in a particular area always lead to the same climax community? For example, (**a**) temperate rain forests occur only where there is adequate rainfall and (**b**) deserts occur where rainfall is minimal. Even so, exactly the same mix of plants and animals may not always arise, because the assemblage of organisms depends on which organisms, by chance, migrate to the area.

Figure 31.4 **Primary and secondary succession.**

Primary succession begins on areas of bare rock. Secondary succession begins in areas where soil remains following natural or human-caused disturbance.



seeds of nonvascular plants, followed by seeds of gymnosperms and/or angiosperms, are carried into the area by wind, water, or animals from the surrounding regions (**Fig. 31.5**; see also Fig. 31.4).

The first species to appear in an area undergoing either primary or secondary succession are called opportunistic pioneer species. These tend to be small in stature, short-lived, and quick to mature, and they produce numerous offspring per reproductive event. The first pioneer species to arrive are photosynthetic organisms, such as lichens and mosses. Lichens are two organisms, fungi and algae, living together as one. The fungal component of lichens play a critical role in breaking down rock or lava into usable mineral nutrition, not only for their algal partners but also for pioneer plants. The mycorrhizal fungal partners of plants (see Chapter 18) pass minerals directly to them, so that they can grow successfully in poor soil. Pioneer plant species that become established in an area are often accompanied by pioneer herbivore species (e.g., insects) and then carnivore species (e.g., small mammals). As the community continues to change, equilibrium species become established in the area. Equilibrium species, such as deer, wolves, and bears, are larger in size, long-lived, and slow to mature, and they produce only a few offspring per reproductive event.

a. During the first year, only the remains of corn plants are seen.

b. During the second year, wild grasses have invaded the area.

c. By the fifth year, the grasses look more mature, and sedges have joined them.

d. After 20 years, the juniper trees are mature, and there are birch and maple trees in addition to the blackberry shrubs.

Figure 31.5 **Secondary succession.**

Secondary successional changes in a western Pennsylvania field: (**a**) first year, (**b**) second year, (**c**) fifth year, and (**d**) after 20 years.

Interactions in Communities

Species interactions, especially competition for resources, fashion a community into a dynamic system of interspecies relationships. In **Table 31.1,** the plus and minus signs show how the relationship affects the abundance of the two interacting species. **Competition** between two species for limited resources has a negative effect on the abundance of both species. In **predation,** one animal, the predator, feeds on another, the prey (see Fig. 30.18); in **parasitism,** one species obtains nutrients from another species, called the host, but usually does not kill the host. **Commensalism** is a relationship in which one species benefits, while the second species is not harmed. Commensalism often occurs when one species provides a home or transportation for another. In **mutualism,** two species interact in such a way that both benefit.

Ecological Niche

Each species occupies a particular position in the community, in both a spatial and a functional sense. Spatially, species live in a particular area of the community, or **habitat,** such as underground, in the trees, or in shallow water. Functionally, each species plays a role, such as a photosynthesizer, predator, prey, parasite, or decomposer. The **ecological niche** of a species incorporates the role the species plays in its community, its habitat, and its interactions with other species. The niche includes the living and nonliving resources that individuals in the population need to meet their energy, nutrient, and survival demands. For example. the habitat of an insect called a backswimmer is a pond or lake, where it eats other insects (**Fig. 31.6**). The pond or lake must contain vegetation where the backswimmer can hide from predatory fish and birds. The pond water must be clear enough for the backswimmer to see its prey and warm enough for it to maintain a good metabolic rate. Since it is difficult to describe and measure the total niche of a species in a community, ecologists often focus on a certain aspect of a species' niche, as with the birds featured in **Figure 31.7.**

Table 31.1 Species Interactions

Interaction	Expected Outcome
Competition (− −)	Abundance of both species decreases.
Predation (+ −)	Abundance of predator increases, and abundance of prey decreases.
Parasitism (+ −)	Abundance of parasite increases, and abundance of host decreases.
Commensalism (+ 0)	Abundance of one species increases, and the other is not affected.
Mutualism (+ +)	Abundance of both species increases.

Figure 31.6 Niche of a backswimmer.

Backswimmers require warm, clear pond water containing insects that they can eat and vegetation where they can hide from predators.

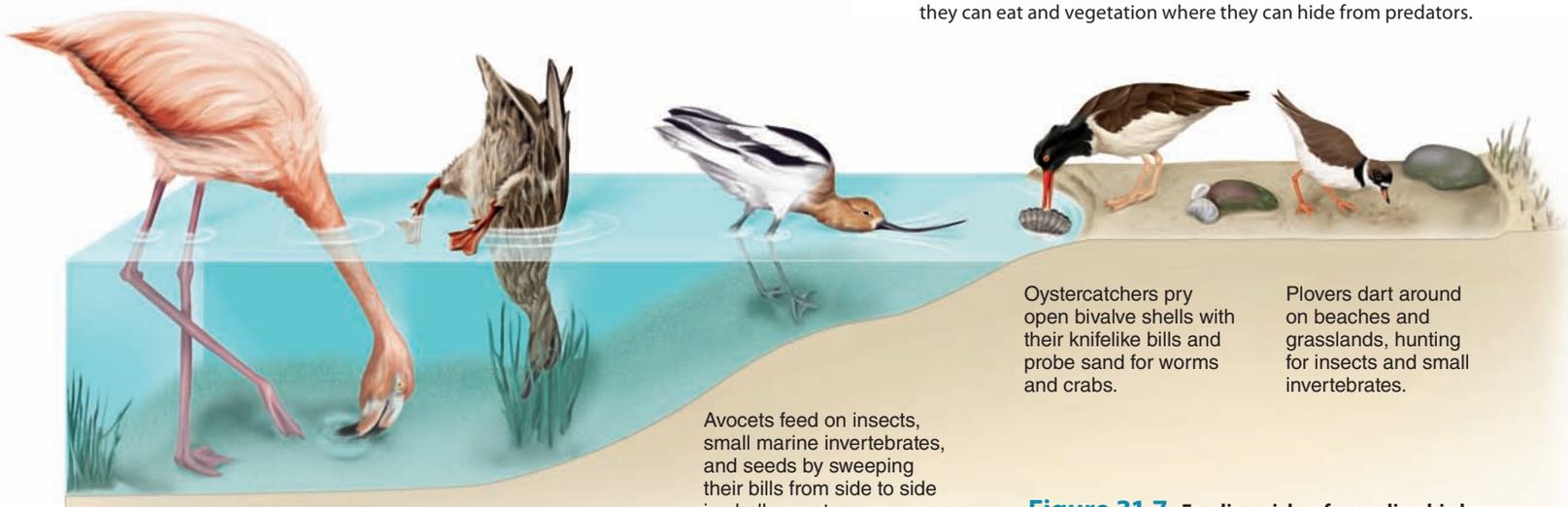


Figure 31.7 Feeding niches for wading birds.

Flamingos feed in deeper water by filter feeding; dabbling ducks feed in shallower areas by upending; avocets feed by sifting. Oystercatchers and plovers have adaptations, such as shorter legs, for feeding in shallows.

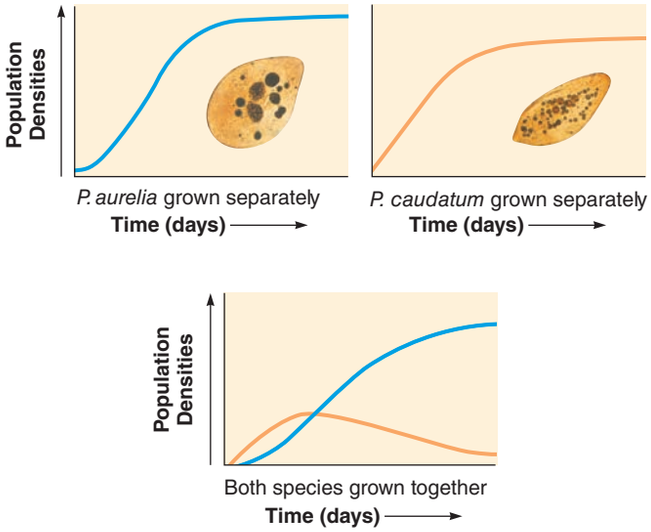


Figure 31.8 Competitive exclusion principle demonstrated by *Paramecium*.

The competitive exclusion principle states that no two species occupy exactly the same niche. When grown separately, *Paramecium caudatum* and *Paramecium aurelia* exhibit logistic growth. When grown together, *P. aurelia* excludes *P. caudatum*.

Data from G. F. Gause, *The Struggle for Existence*, 1934, Williams & Wilkins Company, Baltimore, MD, p. 557.

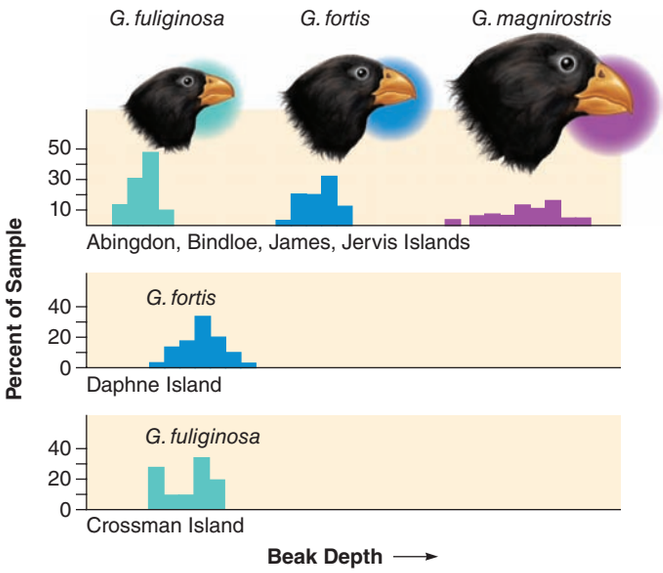


Figure 31.9 Character displacement in finches on the Galápagos Islands.

When *Geospiza fuliginosa*, *G. fortis*, and *G. magnirostris* coexist on the same island, their beak sizes are appropriate for eating small, medium-size, and large seeds, respectively. When *G. fortis* and *G. fuliginosa* are on separate islands, their beaks have the same intermediate size, which allows them to eat seeds of various sizes. Character displacement is evidence that resource partitioning has occurred.

Competition

Competition for resources, such as light, space, or nutrients, contributes to the niche of each species and helps form the community structure. Laboratory experiments helped ecologists formulate the **competitive exclusion principle,** which states that no two species can occupy the same niche at the same time. In the 1930s, G. F. Gause grew two species of *Paramecium* in one test tube containing a fixed amount of bacterial food. Although populations of each species survived when grown in separate test tubes, only one species, *Paramecium aurelia,* survived when the two species were grown together (**Fig. 31.8**). *P. aurelia* acquired more of the food and had a higher population growth rate than did *P. caudatum*. Eventually, as the *P. aurelia* population grew and obtained an increasingly greater proportion of the food resource, the number of *P. caudatum* individuals decreased and the population died out.

Niche Specialization Competition for resources does not always lead to localized extinction of a species. Multiple species coexist in communities by partitioning, or sharing, resources. In another laboratory experiment using other species of *Paramecium,* Gause found that the two species could survive in the same test tube if one species consumed bacteria at the bottom of the tube and the other ate bacteria suspended in solution in the middle of the tube. This **resource partitioning** decreased competition between the two species, leading to increased niche specialization. One niche was split into two due to differences in feeding behavior.

Video
Cichlid Specialization

When three species of ground finches of the Galápagos Islands live on the same island, their beak sizes differ, and each feeds on different-sized seeds (**Fig. 31.9**). When the finches live on separate islands, their beaks tend to be the same intermediate size, enabling each to feed on a wider range of seeds. Such **character displacement** often is viewed as evidence that competition and resource partitioning have taken place.

Video
Finches Adaptive Radiation

The niche specialization that permits the coexistence of multiple species can be very subtle. Species of warblers that live in North American forests are all about the same size, and all feed on budworms, a type of caterpillar found on spruce trees. Robert MacArthur recorded the length of time each warbler species spent in different regions of spruce canopies to determine where each species did most of its feeding. He discovered that each species primarily used different parts of the tree canopy and, in that way, had a more specialized niche. As another example, consider that three types of birds—swallows, swifts, and martins—all eat flying insects and parachuting spiders. These birds even frequently fly in mixed flocks. But each type of bird has a different nesting site and migrates at a slightly different time of year.

Mutualism

Mutualism, a symbiotic relationship in which both members benefit, is at least as important as competition in shaping community structure. The relationship between plants and their pollinators mentioned previously is a good example of mutualism. Perhaps the relationship began when herbivores feasted on pollen. The plant's provision of nectar may have spared the pollen and, at the same time, allowed the animal to become an agent of pollination. Over time pollinator mouthparts have become adapted to gathering the nectar of a particular plant species. This species has become dependent on the pollinator for dispersing its pollen. As also mentioned previously, lichens can grow on rocks because the fungal member extracts minerals from the rocks, which are provided to the

algal partner. The algal partner, in turn, photosynthesizes and provides organic food for both members of the relationship.

In tropical America, ants form mutualistic relationships with certain plants. The bullhorn acacia tree is adapted to provide a home for ants of the species *Pseudomyrmex ferruginea* (**Fig. 31.10**). Unlike other acacias, this species has swollen thorns with a hollow interior, where ant larvae can grow and develop. In addition to housing the ants, acacias provide them with food. The ants feed from nectaries at the base of the leaves and eat fat- and protein-containing nodules, called Beltian bodies, at the tips of the leaves. The ants constantly protect the tree from herbivores that would like to feed on it. The ants are so critical to the trees' survival that, when the ants on experimental trees were poisoned, the trees died.

Video
Thorn Tree Ants

The outcome of mutualism is an intricate web of species interpendencies critical to the community. For example, in areas of the western United States, the branches and cones of whitebark pine are turned upward, meaning that the seeds do not fall to the ground when the cones open. Birds called Clark's nutcrackers eat the seeds of whitebark pine trees and store them in the ground (**Fig. 31.11**). Grizzly bears find the stored seeds and consume them. Thus, Clark's nutcrackers and grizzly bears are critical seed dispersers for the trees.

Figure 31.10 **Mutualism.**

The bullhorn acacia tree is adapted to provide nourishment for a mutualistic ant species. **a.** The thorns are hollow, and the ants live inside. **b.** The bases of the leaves have nectaries (openings) where ants can feed. **c.** The tips of the leaves of the bullhorn acacia have Beltian bodies, which ants harvest for larval food.

Figure 31.11 **Interdependence of species.**

(**a**) The Clark's nutcracker feeds on the seeds of the whitebark pinecone. The nutcracker stores the seeds in the ground, and these seeds may be found and eaten by (**b**) the grizzly bear. Clark's nutcrackers and grizzly bears disperse the seed of the pine.

Connections: Scientific Inquiry

Do humans form mutualistic relationships with other organisms?

One of the best examples of mutualism between humans and another species involves the bacteria *Escherichia coli* that live in our large intestine. While some strains of *E. coli* have a bad reputation for causing intestinal problems, the majority of the *E. coli* in our intestine are beneficial. In exchange for a warm environment, and plenty of food, the intestinal *E. coli* produce vitamin K and assist in the breakdown of fiber into glucose.

Whitebark pine seeds do not germinate unless their seed coats are exposed to fire. When natural forest fires in the area are suppressed, whitebark pine trees decline in number, and so do Clark's nutcrackers and grizzly bears. When lightning-ignited fires are allowed to burn, or prescribed burning is used in the area, the whitebark pine populations increase, as do the populations of Clark's nutcrackers and grizzly bears.

Video
Fruit Bat Seed Dispersal

Video
Ant-Caterpillar Mutualism

Community Stability

As witnessed by the discussion of succession, community stability is fragile. However, some communities have one species that stabilizes the community, helps maintain its characteristics, and plays a critical role in holding the web of interactions together. Such a species is known as a **keystone species,** or species on which the majority of the ecosystem depends. The term *keystone* comes from the name for the center stone of an arch that holds the other stones in place, so that the arch can keep its shape.

Keystone species are not necessarily the most numerous in the community. However, the loss of a keystone species can lead to the extinction of other species and a loss of diversity. For example, bats are designated as keystone species in tropical forests. Bats are pollinators, and they disperse the seeds of certain tropical trees. When bats are killed off or their roosts are destroyed, many species of trees will fail to reproduce. The grizzly bear is a keystone species in the northwestern United States and Canada; they disperse as many as 7,000 berry seeds in one dung pile. Grizzly bears also kill the young of many herbivorous mammals, such as deer, thereby keeping their populations under control.

The sea otter is a keystone species of a kelp forest ecosystem. Kelp forests, created by large, brown seaweeds, provide a home for a vast assortment of organisms. The kelp forests occur just off the coast and protect coastline ecosystems from damaging wave action. Among other species, sea otters eat sea urchins, keeping their population size in check. Otherwise, sea urchins feed on the kelp, causing the kelp forest and its associated species to severely decline. Fishermen don't like sea otters because they also prey on abalone, a mollusc prized for its commercial value. Many do not realize that, without the otters, abalone and many other species would not be around, because the kelp forest would no longer exist.

a.

b.

Figure 31.12 **Exotic species.**

Human introduction of exotic species, such as (**a**) the Asian carp and (**b**) the emerald ash borer, have disrupted communities across the entire midwestern United States.

Native Versus Exotic Species

Native species are species indigenous to an area because they have evolved to the particular community. For example, you naturally find maple trees in Vermont and many other states of the eastern United States. The introduction of **exotic species,** or nonnative species, into a community greatly disrupts normal interactions, and therefore a community's web of species. Populations of exotic species may grow exponentially, because they outcompete the native species or because their population size is not controlled by a natural predator or disease. The unique assemblage of native species on an island often cannot compete well against an exotic species. For example, myrtle trees, introduced to the Hawaiian Islands from the Canary Islands, are mutualistic with a type of bacterium capable of fixing atmospheric nitrogen. The bacterium provides the tree with a form of nitrogen it can use. This feature allows the trees to become established on nitrogen-poor volcanic soil, a distinct advantage in Hawaii. Once established, myrtle trees prevent the normal succession of native plants on volcanic soil.

Exotic species disrupt communities in continental areas as well. Asian carp were accidentally introduced into the Mississippi River system and have spread throught the majority of the Midwest. They have significantly decrceased the populations of many native species of fish (**Fig. 31.12*a***). The emerald ash borer was accidentally introduced to the United States from Asia back in 2002 (Fig. 31.12*b*). Since then, it has spread throughout 19 states, wipping out large numbers of ash trees in the process. On the Galápagos Islands, black rats accidentally carried to the islands by ships have reduced populations of the giant tortoise. Goats and feral pigs have changed the vegetation on the islands from highland forest to pampaslike grasslands and destroyed stands of cactuses. In the United States, gypsy moths, zebra mussels, the Chestnut blight fungus, fire ants, and African bees are well-known exotic species that have killed native species. At least two species, fire ants and African bees, have attacked humans, with serious consequences.

Video Alien Invasion

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Community interactions are complex and dynamic.

Check Your Progress 31.1

1. Describe an example of coevolution.
2. Contrast species richness with species diversity.
3. Contrast primary succession with secondary succession.
4. List the five major types of species interactions in a community that determine an organism's ecological niche.

31.2 Ecology of Ecosystems

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the role of autotrophs and heterotrophs in an ecosystem.
2. Compare how energy and chemicals interact with an ecosystem.
3. Explain the different trophic levels and the formation of ecological pyramids.
4. Summarize the biogeochemical cycles and state how human activity is influencing each cycle.

Figure 31.13 Producers.

Green plants and algae are photoautotrophs.

a. Herbivores

b. Carnivores

Figure 31.14 Consumers.

a. Caterpillars and giraffes are herbivores. **b.** A praying mantis and an osprey are carnivores.

An ecosystem is broader than a community, because community ecology considers only how species interact with one another. When studying ecosystem ecology, interactions with the physical environment are also considered. For example, one important aspect of an ecological niche is how an organism acquires food. It is obvious that autotrophs interact with the physical environment, but so do heterotrophs.

Autotrophs

Autotrophs take in only inorganic nutrients (e.g., CO_2 and minerals) and an outside energy source to produce organic nutrients for their own use and for all the other members of a community. They are called **producers** because they produce food. *Photoautotrophs* are photosynthetic organisms that produce most of the organic nutrients for the biosphere (**Fig. 31.13**). Algae of all types possess chlorophyll and carry on photosynthesis in fresh water and marine habitats. Algae make up the phytoplankton, which are photosynthesizing organisms suspended in water. Green plants are the dominant photosynthesizers on land. All photosynthesizing organisms release O_2 into the atmosphere.

Video Plants

Some bacteria are *chemoautotrophs*. They obtain energy by oxidizing inorganic compounds, such as ammonia, nitrites, and sulfides, and they use this energy to synthesize organic compounds. Chemoautotrophs have been found to support communities in some caves and at hydrothermal vents along deep-sea oceanic ridges.

Heterotrophs

Heterotrophs consume preformed organic nutrients and release CO_2 into the atmosphere. They are called **consumers** because they consume food. **Herbivores** are animals that graze directly on algae or plants (**Fig. 31.14*a***). In aquatic habitats, zooplankton act as herbivores; in terrestrial habitats, many species of insects play that role. **Carnivores** eat other animals; for example, a praying mantis catches and eats caterpillars, and an osprey captures and eats fish (Fig. 31.14*b*). These examples illustrate that there are primary consumers (e.g., caterpillars), secondary consumers (e.g., praying mantis), and tertiary consumers (e.g., osprey). Sometimes tertiary consumers are called top predators. **Omnivores** are animals that eat both plants and animals. As you likely know, humans are omnivores.

Video Snake Eating

Connections: Environment

How do chemoautotrophs on the ocean floor produce food?

The chemoautotrophs on the ocean floor use chemical energy instead of sunlight to make food. Volcanoes on the ocean floor release hydrogen sulfide gas through cracks called hydrothermal vents. (Hydrogen sulfide is the nasty-smelling gas we associate with rotten eggs.) Some chemoautotrophs split hydrogen sulfide to obtain the energy needed to link carbon atoms together to form glucose. The glucose contained in these chemoautotrophs sustains a variety of bizarre organisms, such as giant tube worms, anglerfish, and giant clams.

The **decomposers** are heterotrophic bacteria and fungi, such as molds and mushrooms, that break down dead organic matter (**Fig. 31.15**). Decomposers perform a very valuable service, because they release inorganic nutrients (CO_2 and minerals), which are then taken up by plants once more. Otherwise, plants would rely on minerals to be slowly released from rocks. **Detritus** is composed of the remains of dead organisms plus the bacteria and fungi that aid in decay. Fanworms feed on detritus floating in marine waters, while clams take detritus from the sea bottom. Earthworms and some beetles, termites, and maggots are soil detritus feeders.

Video
Decomposers

Figure 31.15 Decomposers.
Fungi and bacteria are decomposers.

Energy Flow and Chemical Cycling

The living components of ecosystems process energy and chemicals. Energy flow through an ecosystem begins when producers absorb solar energy. Chemical cycling then begins when producers take in inorganic nutrients from the physical environment (**Fig. 31.16**). Thereafter, via photosynthesis, producers convert the solar energy and inorganic nutrients into chemical energy in the form of organic nutrients, such as carbohydrates. Producers synthesize organic nutrients directly for themselves and indirectly for the heterotrophs within the ecosystem. Energy flows through an ecosystem because, as organic nutrients pass from one component of the ecosystem to another, as when an herbivore eats a plant or a carnivore eats an herbivore, a portion is used as an energy source. Eventually, the energy dissipates into the environment as heat. Therefore, the vast majority of ecosystems cannot exist without a continual supply of solar energy.

Only a portion of the organic nutrients made by producers are passed on to consumers. Plants use some of the organic molecules to fuel their own cellular respiration. Similarly, only a small percentage of nutrients consumed by lower-level consumers, such as herbivores, are available to higher-level

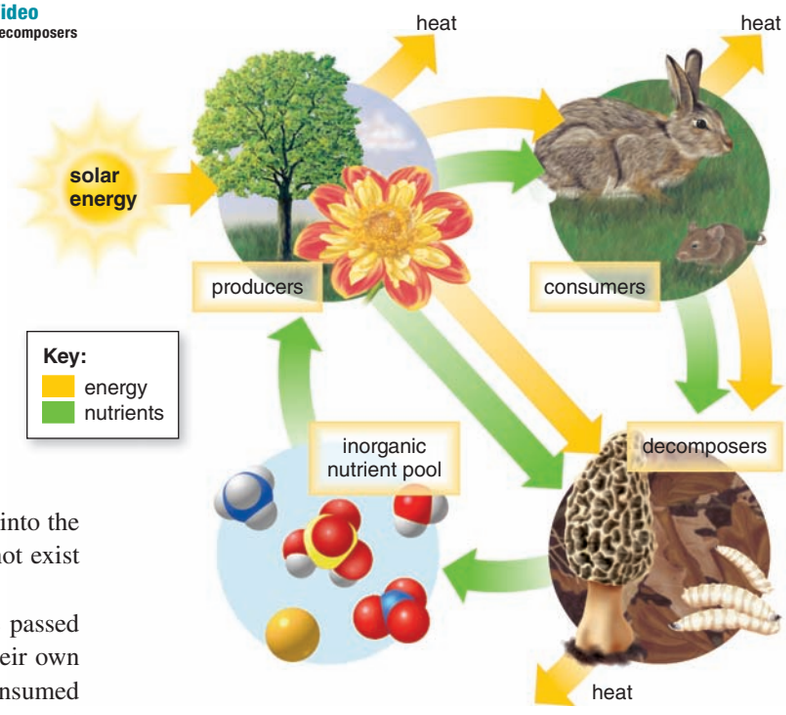


Figure 31.16 Chemical cycling and energy flow.
Chemicals cycle within, but energy flows through, an ecosystem. As energy is repeatedly passed from one component to another, all the chemical energy derived from solar energy dissipates as heat.

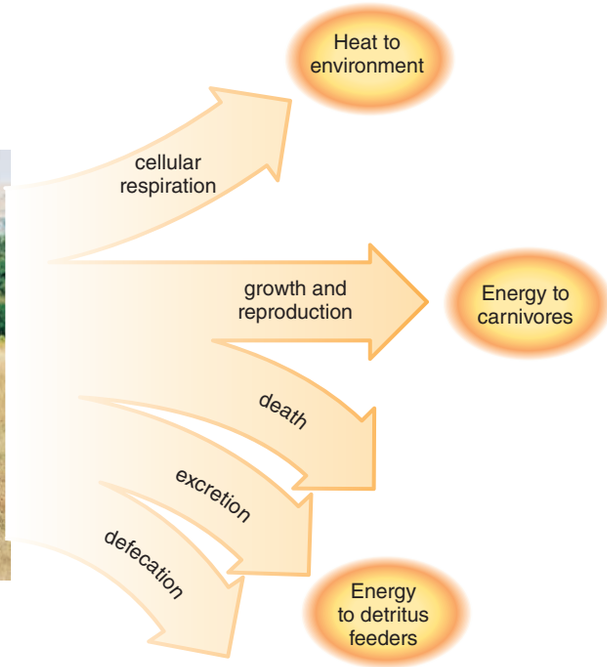


Figure 31.17 **Energy balances.**

Only about 10% of the nutrients and energy taken in by an herbivore is passed on to carnivores. A large portion goes to detritus feeders. Another large portion is used for cellular respiration.

consumers, or carnivores. As **Figure 31.17** demonstrates, a certain amount of the nutrients eaten by an herbivore is eliminated as feces. Metabolic wastes are excreted as urine. Of the assimilated energy, a large portion is used during cellular respiration for the production of ATP, which also produces heat. Only the remaining energy, which is converted into increased body weight or additional offspring, becomes available to carnivores.

The elimination of feces and urine by a heterotroph, and indeed the death of all organisms, does not mean that organic nutrients are lost to an ecosystem. Instead, they represent the organic nutrients made available to decomposers. Decomposers convert the organic nutrients back into inorganic chemicals and release them to the soil or atmosphere. Chemicals complete their cycle in an ecosystem when producers absorb inorganic chemicals from the atmosphere or soil.

Video Salmon Farming

Energy Flow

Applying the principles discussed so far to a temperate deciduous forest, ecologists can draw a **food web** to represent the interconnecting paths of energy flow between the components of the ecosystem. In **Figure 31.18**, the green arrows are part of a **grazing food web,** because the energy flow begins with plants, such as the oak trees depicted. A **detrital food web** (orange arrows) begins with bacteria and fungi. In the grazing food web, caterpillars and other herbivorous insects feed on the leaves of the trees, while other herbivores, including mice, rabbits, and deer, feed on leaves at or near the ground. Various birds, chipmunks, and mice feed on fruits and nuts of the trees, but, in fact, they are omnivores because they also feed on caterpillars and other insects. These herbivores and omnivores all provide food for a number of different carnivores. In the detrital food web, detritus, which includes smaller decomposers (such as bacteria and fungi), is food for larger organisms. Because some of these organisms, such as shrews and salamanders, become food for aboveground animals, the detrital and grazing food webs are joined.

We tend to think that the aboveground parts of trees are the largest storage form of organic matter and energy, but this is not necessarily the case. In

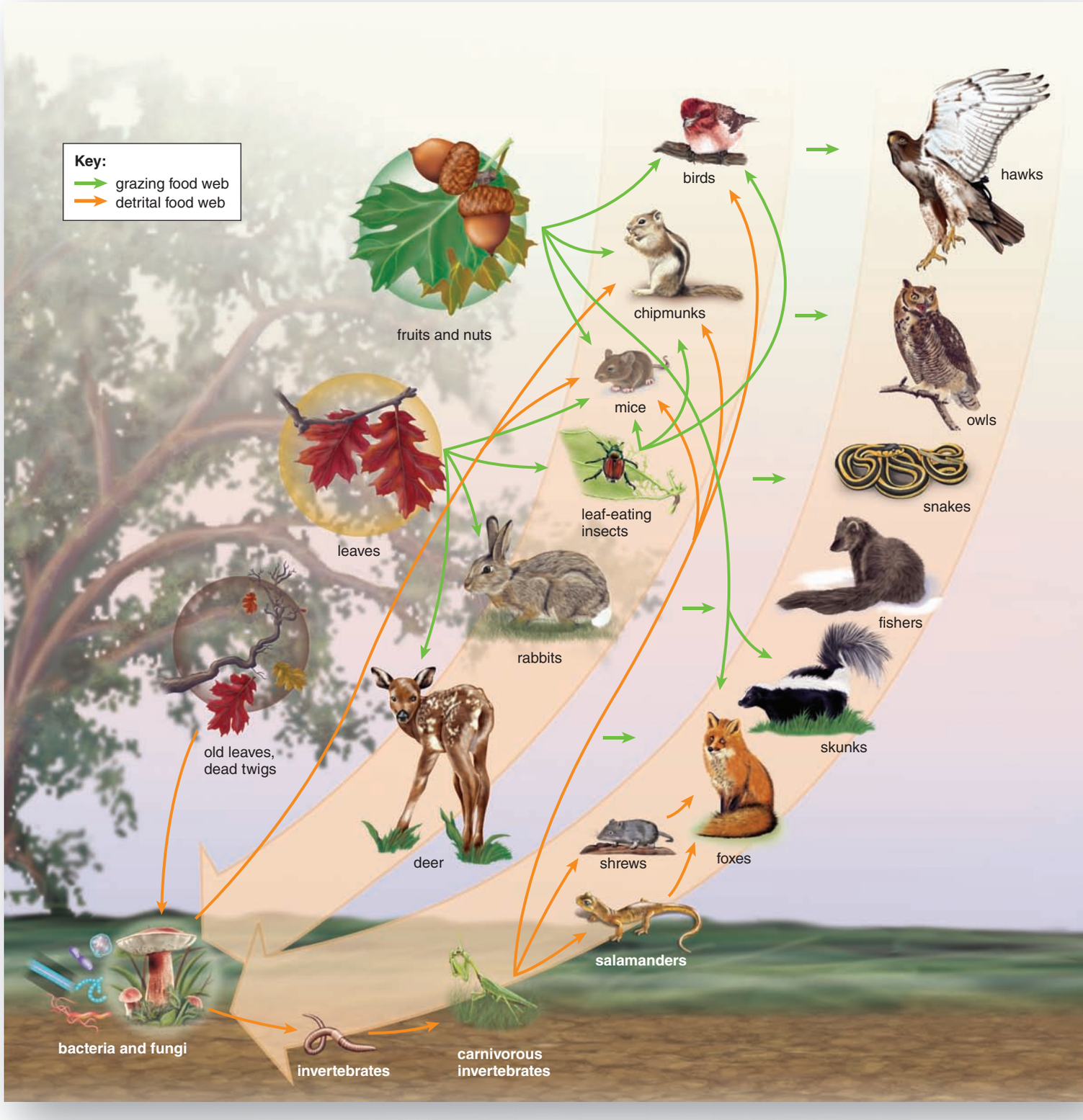


Figure 31.18 **Food webs.**

The grazing and detrital food webs of ecosystems are linked.

temperate deciduous forests, the organic matter lying on the forest floor and mixed into the soil, along with the underground roots of the trees, contains over twice the energy of the leaves, branches, and trunks of living trees combined. Therefore, more energy and matter in a forest may be stored in or funneled through the detrital food web than the grazing food web.

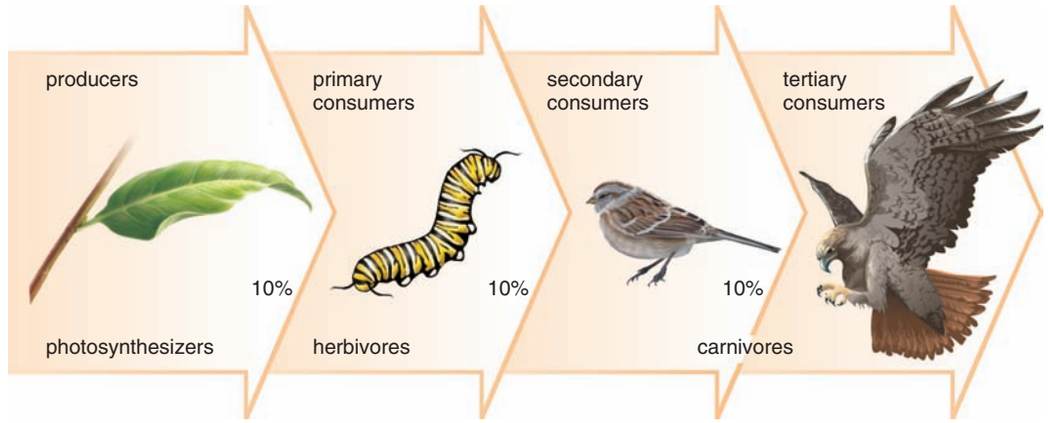


Figure 31.19 Food chain.

A food chain diagrams a single path of energy flow in an ecosystem. Most food chains have three or four links.

Trophic Levels and Ecological Pyramids The arrangement of component species in Figure 31.19 suggests that organisms are linked to one another in a straight line according to feeding relationships, or who eats whom. Diagrams that show a single path of energy flow in an ecosystem are called **food chains** (**Fig. 31.19**). A **trophic level** is a level of nourishment within a food web or chain. In the grazing food web (see Fig. 31.18), from left to right, the trees are producers (the first trophic level), the first series of animals are herbivores (the second trophic level), and many of the animals in the next series are carnivores (the third and possibly fourth trophic levels). Food chains are short, because energy is lost between trophic levels. In general, only about 10% of the energy of one trophic level is available to the next trophic level. Therefore, if an herbivore population consumes 1,000 kg of plant material, only about 100 kg is converted to herbivore tissue, 10 kg to first-level carnivores, and 1 kg to second-level carnivores. The so-called 10% rule of thumb explains why few carnivores can be supported in a food web. The transfer of energy between successive trophic levels is sometimes depicted as an **ecological pyramid** (**Fig. 31.20**).

A pyramid based on the number of organisms can run into problems because, for example, one tree can support many herbivores. Pyramids of **biomass,** which is the number of organisms multiplied by their weight, eliminate size as a factor. Even then, apparent inconsistencies can arise. In aquatic ecosystems, such as lakes and open seas where algae are the only producers, the herbivores at some point in time may have a greater biomass than the producers. Why? Even though the algae reproduce rapidly, they are also consumed at a high rate.

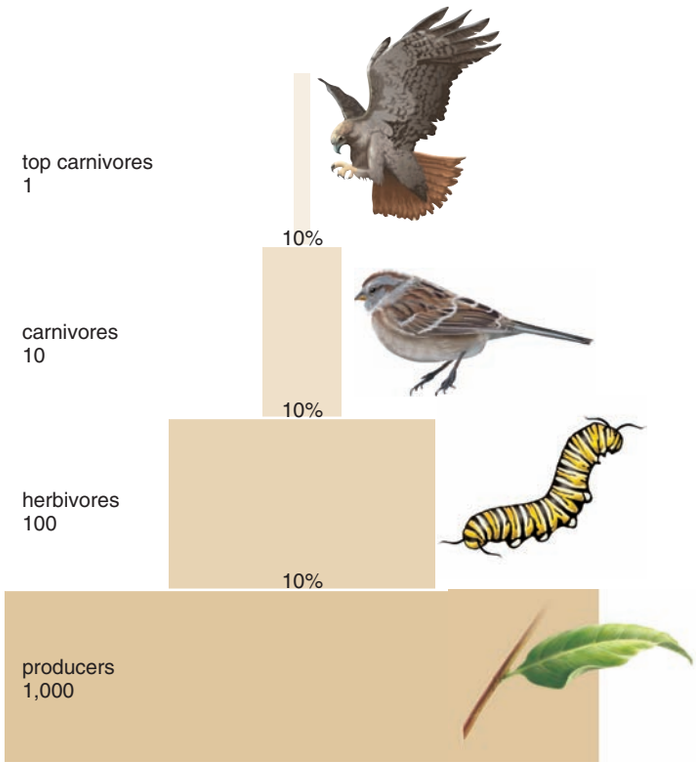


Figure 31.20 Ecological pyramid.

An ecological pyramid depicts the transfer of nutrients and energy from one trophic level to the next.

Chemical Cycling

The pathways by which chemicals cycle within ecosystems involve both living components (producers, consumers, decomposers) and nonliving components (rock, inorganic nutrients, atmosphere) and therefore are known as **biogeochemical cycles.** Biogeochemical cycles can be sedimentary or gaseous. In a *sedimentary cycle,* such as the phosphorus cycle, the chemical is absorbed from the sediment by plant roots, passed through the food chain, and eventually returned to the soil by decomposers, usually in the same general area. In a *gaseous cycle,* such as the nitrogen and carbon cycles, the element returns to and is withdrawn from the atmosphere as a gas.

Chemical cycling of an element may involve **reservoirs** and exchange pools as well as the biotic community (**Fig. 31.21**). A *reservoir* is a source normally unavailable to organisms. For example, much carbon is found in calcium carbonate shells in ocean bottom sediments. An *exchange pool* is a source from which organisms can obtain elements. For example, photosynthesizers can

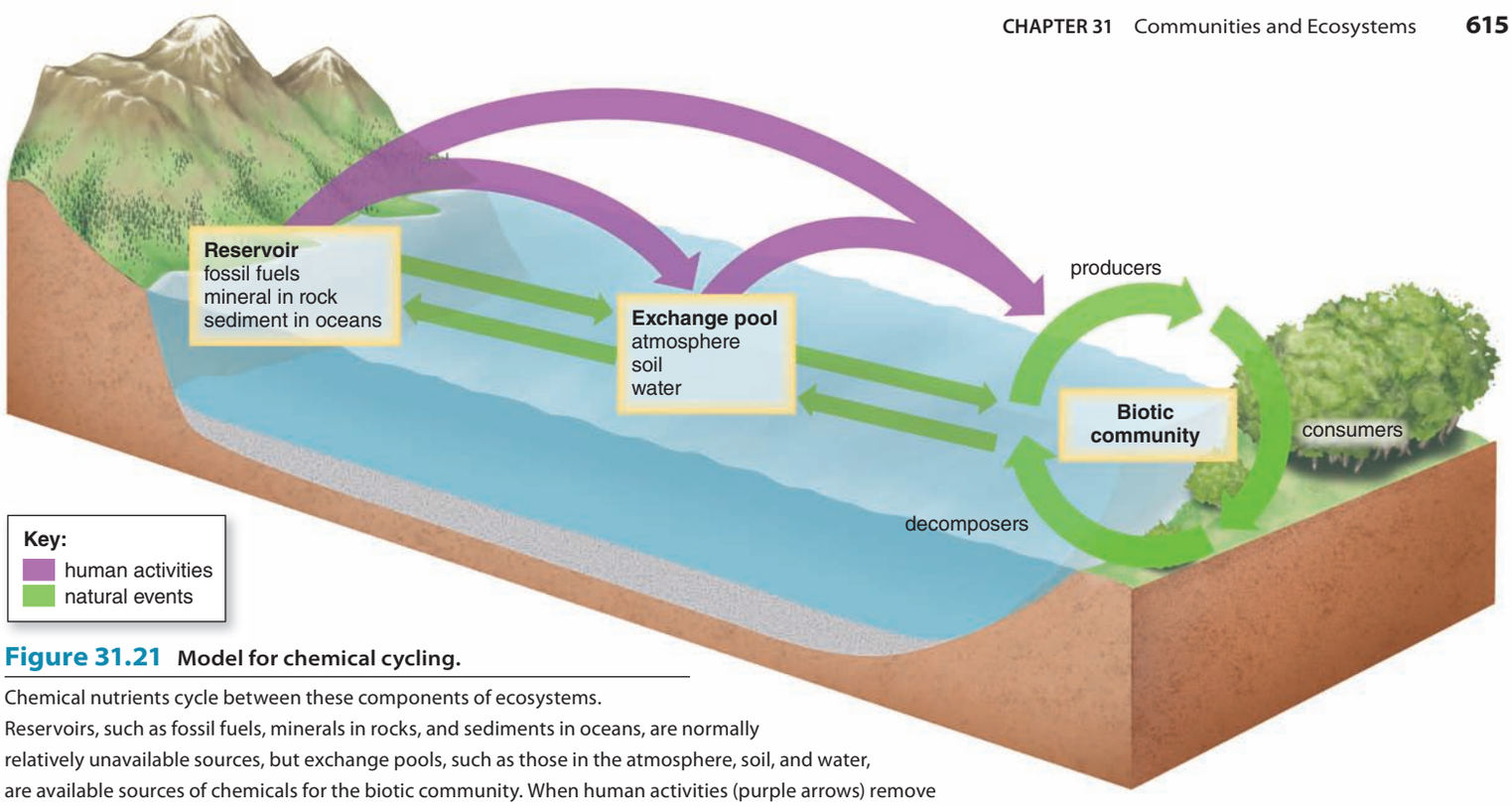


Figure 31.21 **Model for chemical cycling.**

Chemical nutrients cycle between these components of ecosystems. Reservoirs, such as fossil fuels, minerals in rocks, and sediments in oceans, are normally relatively unavailable sources, but exchange pools, such as those in the atmosphere, soil, and water, are available sources of chemicals for the biotic community. When human activities (purple arrows) remove chemicals from reservoirs and make them available to the biotic community, pollution can result.

use carbon dioxide in the atmosphere for their carbon needs. The *biotic community* consists of the autotrophic and heterotrophic species of an ecosystem that feed on one another. Human activities, such as mining or burning fossil fuels, increase the amounts of chemical elements removed from reservoirs and cycling within ecosystems. As a result, the physical environment of the ecosystem contains excess chemicals, which in turn may alter the species composition and diversity of the biotic community.

Phosphorus Cycle

On land, the very slow weathering of rocks fostered by fungi adds phosphates (PO_4^{2-} and HPO_4^{2-}) to the soil, some of which become available for terrestrial plants to uptake (**Fig. 31.22**). Phosphates made available by weathering also run off into aquatic ecosystems, where algae absorb the phosphates from the water before they become trapped in sediments. Phosphates in sediments become available again only when a geological upheaval exposes sedimentary rocks to weathering once more.

Producers use phosphates in a variety of molecules, including phospholipids, ATP, and the nucleotides that

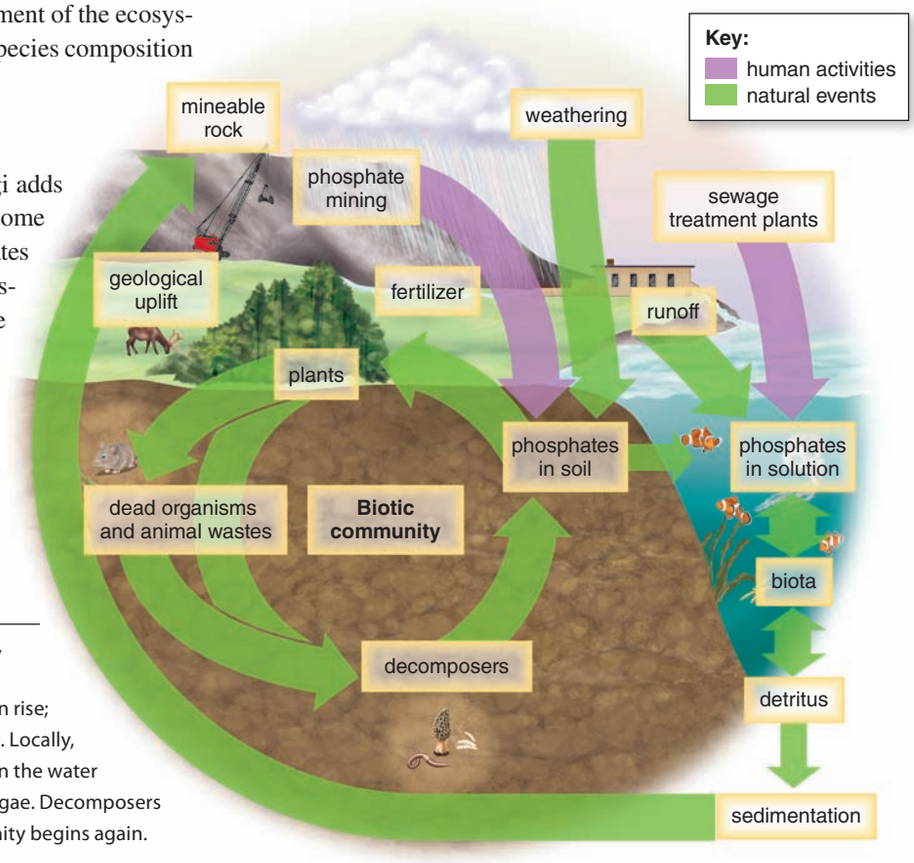


Figure 31.22 **The phosphorus cycle.**

The phosphorus cycle is a sedimentary biogeochemical cycle. Globally, phosphates flow into large bodies of water and become a part of sedimentary rocks. Thousands or millions of years later, the seafloor can rise; the phosphates are then exposed to weathering and become available. Locally, phosphates cycle within a community when plants on land and algae in the water take them up. Animals gain phosphates when they feed on plants or algae. Decomposers return phosphates to plants or algae, and the cycle within the community begins again.

Figure 31.23 Lemmings.

The population size of lemmings influences the mineral cycles of the Arctic ecosystem.

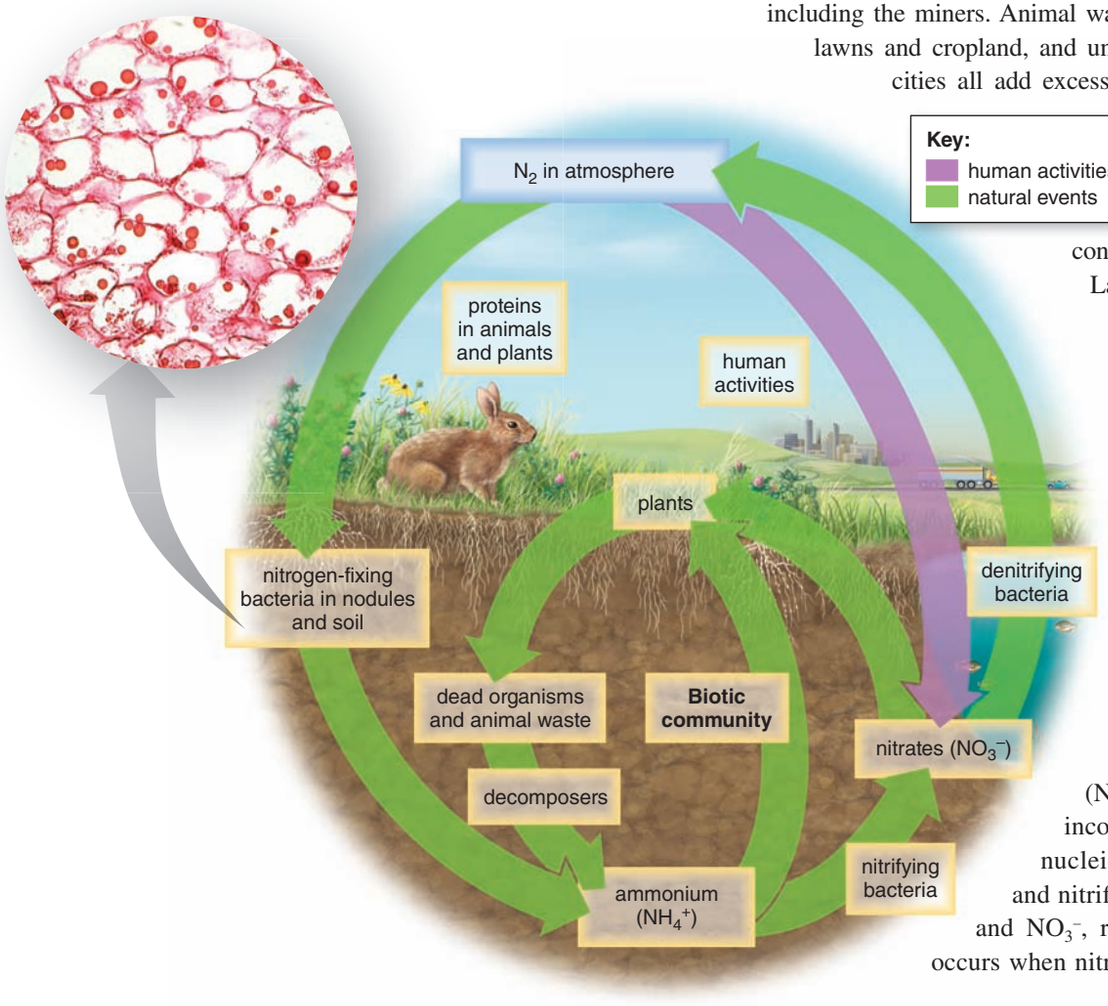
become a part of DNA and RNA. Animals consume producers and incorporate some of the phosphates into teeth, bones, and shells. Decomposition of dead plant and animal material and animal wastes does, however, make phosphates available to producers faster than does weathering. Because most of the available phosphates are used in food chains, phosphate is usually a limiting inorganic nutrient for ecosystems. In other words, the finite supply of phosphates limits plant growth, and therefore primary productivity.

The importance of phosphates and calcium to population growth is demonstrated by considering the fate of lemmings every four years (**Fig. 31.23**). You may have heard that lemmings dash mindlessly over cliffs into the sea; ecologists tell us that these lemmings are actually migrating to find food. What happened? Every four years or so, grasses and sedges of the tundra (see Fig. 31.28) become rich in minerals, and the lemming population starts to explode. Once the lemmings number in the millions, the grasses and sedges of the tundra suffer a decline caused by a lack of minerals. Then the lemming population suffers a crash, but it takes about four years before the animals decompose in this cold region and minerals return to the producers. Then the cycle begins again.

Human Activities A **transfer rate** is the amount of a nutrient that moves from one component of the environment to another within a specified period of time. Human activities affect the dynamics of a community by altering transfer rates. For example, humans mine phosphate ores and use them to make fertilizers, animal feed supplements, and detergents. Phosphate ores are slightly radioactive; therefore, mining phosphate poses a health threat to all organisms, including the miners. Animal wastes from livestock feedlots, fertilizers from lawns and cropland, and untreated and treated sewage discharged from cities all add excess phosphates to nearby waters. The result is **eutrophication,** or overenrichment, of a body of water, which causes a rapid algal population growth called an algal bloom. When the algae die and decay, oxygen is consumed, causing fish kills. In the mid-1970s, Lake Erie was dying because of eutrophication. Control of nutrient phosphates, particularly in sewage effluent and household detergents, reversed the situation.

Figure 31.24 The nitrogen cycle.

The nitrogen cycle is a gaseous biogeochemical cycle normally maintained by the work of several populations of soil bacteria.



Nitrogen Cycle

Nitrogen, in the form of nitrogen gas (N_2), constitutes about 78% of the atmosphere by volume. But plants cannot make use of nitrogen gas. Instead, plants rely on various types of bacteria to make nitrogen available to them. Therefore, nitrogen, like phosphorus, is a limiting inorganic nutrient of producers in ecosystems.

Plants can take up both ammonium (NH_4^+) and nitrate (NO_3^-) from the soil and incorporate the nitrogen into amino acids and nucleic acids. Two processes, nitrogen fixation and nitrification, convert nitrogen gas, N_2, into NH_4^+ and NO_3^-, respectively (**Fig. 31.24**). *Nitrogen fixation* occurs when nitrogen gas is converted to ammonium. Some

cyanobacteria in aquatic ecosystems and some free-living, nitrogen-fixing bacteria in soil are able to fix nitrogen in this way. Other nitrogen-fixing bacteria live in nodules on the roots of plants such as peas, beans, and alfalfa. They make organic compounds containing nitrogen available to the host plant.

Nitrification is the production of nitrates. Ammonium in the soil is converted to nitrate by certain nitrifying soil bacteria in a two-step process. First, nitrite-producing bacteria convert ammonium to nitrite (NO_2^-), and then nitrate-producing bacteria convert nitrite to nitrate. In Figure 31.24, notice that the biotic community subcycle in the nitrogen cycle does not depend on the presence of nitrogen gas.

Denitrification is the conversion of nitrate to nitrogen gas, which enters the atmosphere. Denitrifying bacteria are chemoautotrophs that live in the anaerobic mud of lakes, bogs, and estuaries; they carry out this process as part of their own metabolism. In the nitrogen cycle, denitrification counterbalanced nitrogen fixation until humans started making fertilizer.

Video
Dung Beetles

Human Activities When humans produce fertilizers from N_2, they are altering the transfer rates in the nitrogen cycle. In fact, humans nearly double the fixation rate. The nitrate in fertilizers, just like phosphate, can leach out of agricultural soils into waterways, leading to eutrophication. Deforestation by humans also causes a loss of nitrogen to groundwater and makes regrowth of the forest difficult. The underground water supplies in farming areas today are more apt to contain excess nitrate. A high concentration of nitrates interferes with blood oxygen levels, and infants below the age of six months who drink water containing excessive amounts of nitrate can become seriously ill and, if untreated, may die.

To cut back on fertilizer use, it might be possible to genetically engineer soil bacteria with increased nitrogen fixation rates. Also, farmers could grow various plants that increase the nitrogen content of the soil (**Fig. 31.25**). In one study, the rotation of legumes and winter wheat produced a better yield than fertilizers after several years.

Figure 31.25 Root nodules.

Bacteria that live in nodules on the roots of plants in the legume family, such as pea plants, convert nitrogen in the air to a form that plants can use to make proteins.

Carbon Cycle

In the carbon cycle, organisms in both terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems exchange carbon dioxide with the atmosphere (**Fig. 31.26**). On land, plants take up carbon dioxide from the air. Then through photosynthesis, they incorporate carbon into organic nutrients, which are used by autotrophs and heterotrophs alike. When aerobic organisms respire, a portion of this carbon is returned to the atmosphere as carbon dioxide, a waste product of cellular respiration.

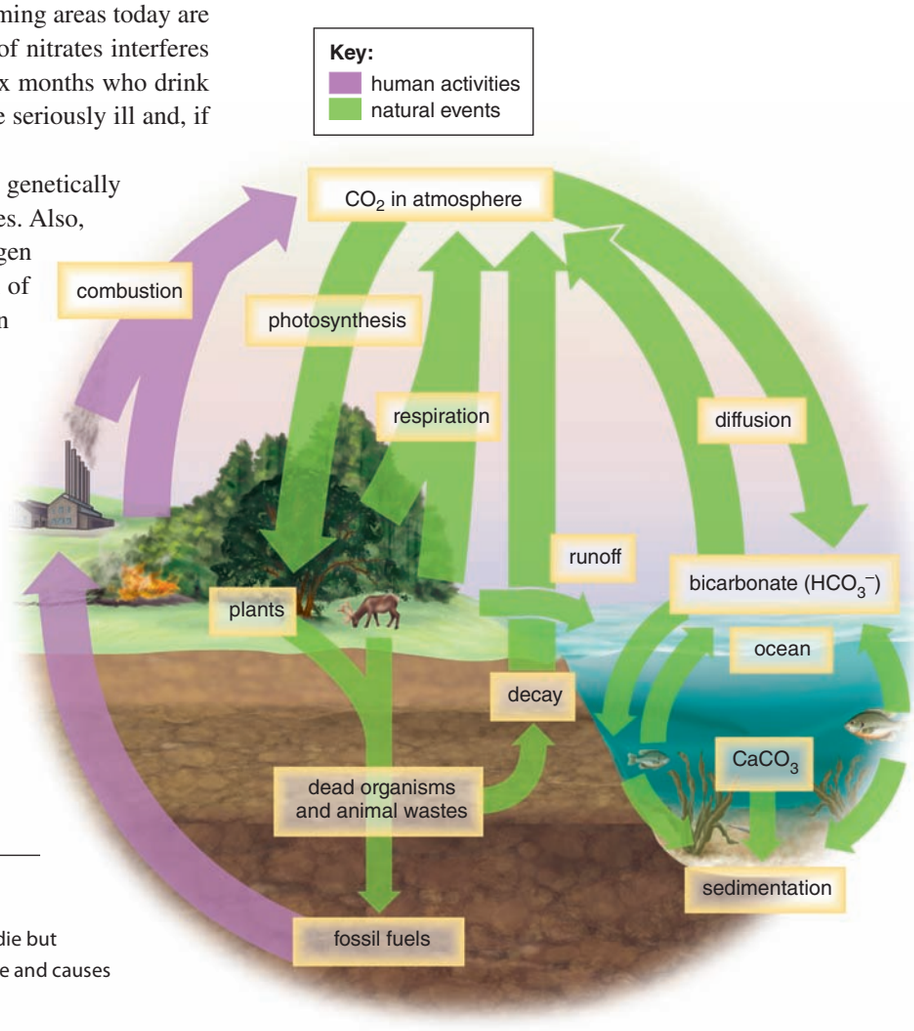


Figure 31.26 The carbon cycle.

The carbon cycle is a gaseous biogeochemical cycle. Producers take in carbon dioxide from the atmosphere and convert it to the organic molecules that feed all organisms. Fossil fuels arise when organisms die but do not decompose. The burning of fossil fuels releases carbon dioxide and causes environmental pollution.

Connections: Environment

What causes ocean acidification?

The release of excessive CO_2 into the atmosphere has led to a change in the basic chemistry of the ocean water. The ocean absorbs about 25% of the CO_2 in the atmosphere. As the CO_2 levels in the atmosphere increase, so do the levels in the ocean, leading to ocean acidification. As this occurs, many marine organisms do not have the minerals they need to produce and maintain their shells. The pH level of the ocean will shift to a more acidic environment, leading to stress and the possible extinction of many species of shellfish and corals. Ocean acidification is a global issue due to the potential impact this will have on the entire marine food chain.

Connections: Ecology

What are some other greenhouse gases?

In addition to carbon dioxide, the following gases also play a role in the greenhouse effect:

- *Methane (CH_4).* A single molecule of methane has 21 times the warming potential of a molecule of carbon dioxide, making it a powerful greenhouse gas. Methane is a natural by-product of the decay of organic material, but it is also released by landfills and the production of coal, natural gas, and oil.
- *Nitrous oxide (N_2O).* Nitrous oxide is released from the combustion of fossil fuels and as gaseous waste from many industrial activities.
- *Hydrofluorocarbons.* These were initially produced to reduce the levels of ozone-depleting compounds in the upper atmosphere. Unfortunately, although present in very small quantities, they are potent greenhouse gases.

In aquatic ecosystems, the exchange of carbon dioxide with the atmosphere is indirect. Carbon dioxide from the air combines with water to produce bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-), a source of carbon for algae that produce food for themselves and for heterotrophs. Similarly, when aquatic organisms respire, the carbon dioxide they give off becomes bicarbonate ion. The amount of bicarbonate in the water is in equilibrium with the amount of carbon dioxide in the air.

Living and dead organisms contain organic carbon and serve as one of the reservoirs for the carbon cycle. The world's biotic components, particularly trees, contain billions of tons of organic carbon, and additional tons are estimated to be held in the remains of plants and animals in the soil. If dead plant and animal remains fail to decompose, they are subjected to extremely slow physical processes that transform them into coal, oil, and natural gas, the **fossil fuels.** Most of the fossil fuels were formed during the Carboniferous period, 286–360 MYA, when an exceptionally large amount of organic matter was buried before decomposing. Another reservoir is the calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) that accumulates in limestone and shells. Many marine organisms have calcium carbonate shells that remain in bottom sediments long after the organisms have died. Over time, geological forces change these sediments into limestone.

Human Activities The transfer rates of carbon dioxide due to photosynthesis and cellular respiration are just about even. However, more carbon dioxide is being deposited in the atmosphere than is being removed. This increase is largely due to the burning of fossil fuels and the destruction of forests to make way for farmland and pasture. Because of fossil fuel consumption and deforestation, CO_2 in the atmosphere is predicted to rise from 0.36% today to 0.75% by 2100. CO_2 concentrations in the atmosphere would rise higher, except for the fact that the oceans take up CO_2, and so far they have been taking up more CO_2 than they vent.

The increased amount of carbon dioxide (and other gases) in the atmosphere is causing **climate change** to occur. These gases allow the sun's rays to pass through, but they absorb and reradiate heat back to Earth, a phenomenon called the **greenhouse effect.** Scientists predict that, if the ice at the poles melts and sea levels rise as a result, many of the world's most populous cities will be flooded. Furthermore, weather pattern changes might cause the American Midwest to become a dust bowl.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS
Autotrophs are the basis of every ecosystem on Earth.

Check Your Progress 31.2

1. Compare how autotrophs and heterotrophs acquire energy.
2. Describe the differences between energy flow and chemical cycling in an ecosystem.
3. Compare an ecological pyramid with a food chain.
4. Explain how human activity is influencing each of the biogeochemical cycles.

31.3 Ecology of Major Ecosystems

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. List the two major types of ecosystems that make up the biosphere.
2. List the major types of terrestrial ecosystems.
3. Explain primary productivity and relate this to the different types of aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems.

The **biosphere,** which encompasses all the ecosystems on Earth, is the final level of biological organization. **Aquatic ecosystems** are divided into those composed of fresh water and those composed of salt water (marine ecosystems; **Fig. 31.27**). The ocean, a marine ecosystem, covers 70% of the Earth's surface. Two types of freshwater ecosystems are those with standing water, such as lakes and ponds, and those with running water, such as rivers and streams. The richest marine ecosystems lie near the coasts. Coral reefs are located offshore, while estuaries occur where rivers meet the sea.

Figure 31.27 **The major aquatic ecosystems.**

Aquatic ecosystems are divided into those that have salt water, such as (**a**) the ocean, and (**b**) those that have fresh water, such as a river. Saltwater, or marine, ecosystems also include (**c**) coral reefs and (**d**) estuaries.

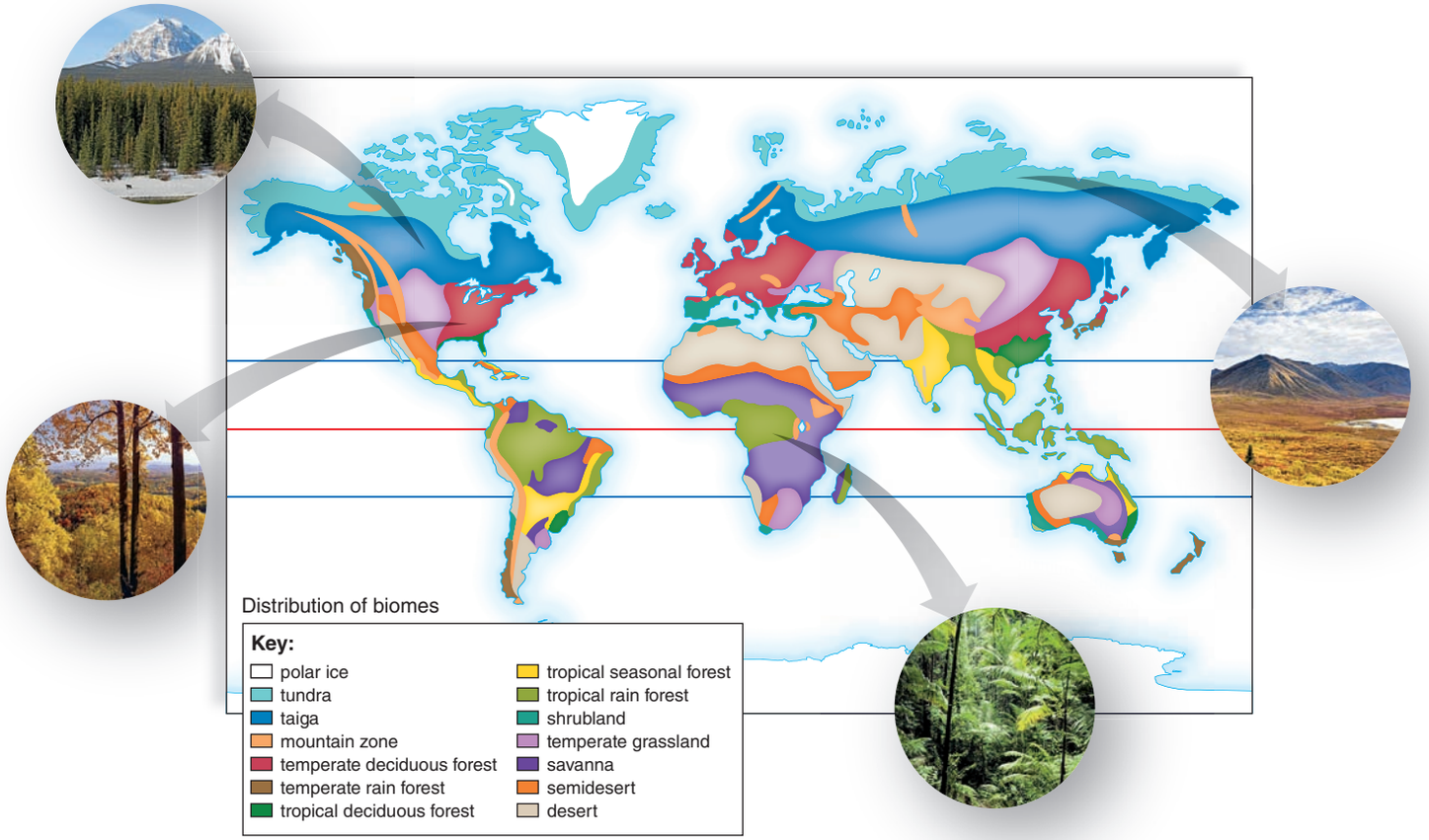


Figure 31.28 **The major terrestrial ecosystems.**

The tundra is the northernmost terrestrial ecosystem and has the lowest average temperature of all the terrestrial ecosystems, with minimal to moderate rainfall. The taiga, a coniferous forest that encircles the globe, also has a low average temperature, but moderate rainfall. Temperate forests have moderate temperatures and occur where rainfall is moderate yet sufficient to support trees. Tropical rain forests, which generally occur near the equator, have a high average temperature and the greatest amount of rainfall of all the terrestrial ecosystems.

Scientists recognize several distinctive major types of **terrestrial ecosystems,** also called *biomes* (**Fig. 31.28**). Temperature and rainfall define the biomes, which contain communities adapted to the regional climate. The northernmost biome is the tundra. A permafrost persists year-round and prevents large plants from becoming established. The taiga is a very cold northern coniferous forest, and the tundra, which borders the North Pole, is also very cold, with long winters and a short growing season. Temperate grasslands receive less rainfall than temperate forests (in which trees lose their leaves during the winter) and more water than deserts, which lack trees. The savanna is a tropical grassland with a high temperature and alternating wet and dry seasons. The tropical rain forests, which occur at the equator, have a high average temperature and the greatest amount of rainfall of all the biomes. They are dominated by large, evergreen, broad-leaved trees.

Primary Productivity

One way to compare ecosystems is to look at **primary productivity,** the rate at which producers capture and store energy as organic nutrients over a certain length of time. Temperature and moisture, and secondarily the nature of the soil, influence the primary productivity that determines the assemblage

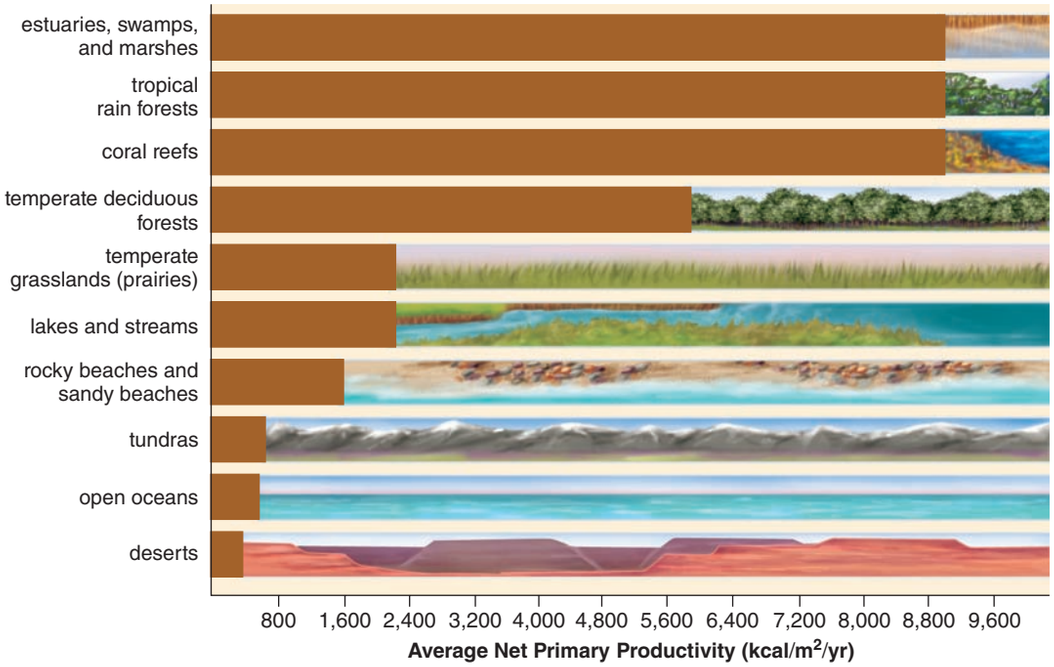


Figure 31.29 Primary productivity.

Ecologists can compare ecosystems based on primary productivity, the rate at which producers convert and store solar energy as chemical energy.

of species in an ecosystem. In terrestrial ecosystems, primary productivity is generally lowest in high-latitude tundras and deserts, and it is highest at the equator, where tropical forests occur (**Fig. 31.29**). The high productivity of tropical rain forests provides varied niches and lots of food for consumers. The number and diversity of species in tropical rain forests are the highest of all the terrestrial ecosystems. Therefore, conservation biologists are interested in preserving as much of this biome as possible.

The primary productivity of aquatic communities is largely dependent on the availability of inorganic nutrients. Estuaries, swamps, and marshes are rich in organic nutrients and in decomposers that convert those organic nutrients into their inorganic chemical components. Estuaries, swamps, and marshes also contain a large variety of species, particularly in the early stages of their development before they venture forth into the sea. Therefore, all of these coastal regions are in great need of preservation. The open ocean has a productivity between that of a desert and that of the tundra, because it lacks a concentrated supply of inorganic nutrients. Coral reefs exist near the coasts in warm tropical waters, where currents and waves bring nutrients and sunlight penetrates to the ocean floor. Coral reefs are areas of remarkable biological abundance, equivalent to that of tropical rain forests.

Video Coral Reef Ecosystems

Connections: Environment

What is an estuary?

An estuary is a region where fresh water, usually from a river, meets the ocean. The water in an estuary zone is often called "brackish," because it is a mixture of salt and fresh water. Estuaries are considered to be some of the most productive ecosystems in the world. Not only do they provide food sources, such as shrimp, clams, and other seafood, but they also play an important role in the chemical cycling of nitrogen and phosphorus. Estuaries are fragile ecosystems; pollution, oil spills (such as the one that threatened Louisiana's Bartaria Bay in 2010), and human activity can easily reduce the productivity of an estuary.

Check Your Progress 31.3

1. Describe the two major types of ecosystems of the biosphere.
2. List the terrestrial ecosystems of the world.
3. Explain why swamps have higher levels of primary productivity than do open oceans.

31.3 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

Aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems are connected.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Animations	Video
31.3 Biomes	**31.1** Pollinators • Cichlid Specialization • Finches Adaptive Radiation • Thorn Tree Ants • Fruit Bat Seed Dispersal • Ant-Caterpillar Mutualism • Alien Invasion **31.2** Plants • Snake Eating • Decomposers • Salmon Farming • Dung Beetles • Green Concrete • Global Warming Hurts Rice • Karoo Global Warming • Global Warming **31.3** Tallgrass Prairie Ecology • Coral Reef Ecosystems

3D Animation The Carbon Cycle

For a closer look at the factors influencing the carbon cycle, watch McGraw-Hill's 3D animation "The Carbon Cycle".

SUMMARIZE

31.1 Ecology of Communities

Knowledge of community and ecosystem ecology is important for understanding the impacts of human alterations to the environment.

- **Community** A community is an assemblage of the populations of different species interacting with each other in a given area.
- **Ecosystem** An ecosystem consists of species interacting with one another and with the physical environment.

Ecological Succession

bare rock → lichens/mosses → grasses → shrubs → trees

The two types of ecological succession are primary succession (begins on bare rock) and secondary succession (following a disturbance; begins where soil is present). Ecological succession leads to a stable climax community.

Interactions in Communities

Species in communities interact with one another in the following ways:

- **Competition** Species vie with one another for resources, such as light, space, and nutrients. Aspects of competition are the competitive exclusion principle, resource partitioning, and character displacement.
- **Predation** One species (predator) eats another species (prey).
- **Parasitism** One species (parasite) obtains nutrients from another species (host) but does not kill the host species.
- **Commensalism** One species benefits from the relationship, while the other species is not harmed.
- **Mutualism** Two species interact in a way that benefits both.

Ecological Niche

The ecological niche of a species is defined by the role it plays in its community, the habitat, and its interactions with other species.

Keystone Species

The interactions of a keystone species in the community hold the community and its species together. Removal of a keystone species can lead to species extinctions and loss of diversity. An example of a keystone species is the grizzly bear.

Native Versus Exotic Species

Native species are indigenous to a given area and thrive without assistance. Exotic species are introduced into an area and may disrupt the balance and interactions among native species in that area's community.

31.2 Ecology of Ecosystems

In the food chain of an ecosystem, some populations are autotrophs and some are heterotrophs.

Autotrophs

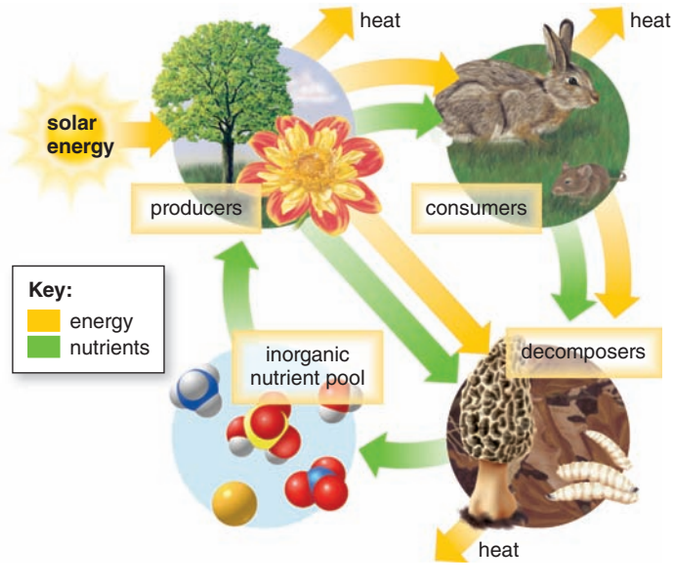
The autotrophs are the producers. They require only inorganic nutrients (e.g., CO_2 and minerals) and an outside energy source to produce organic nutrients for their own use and for the use of other members of the community. Examples of autotrophs are algae, cyanobacteria, and plants.

Heterotrophs

The heterotrophs are the consumers. They require a preformed source of organic nutrients and give off CO_2. Examples of heterotrophs are herbivores (feed on plants), carnivores (feed on animals), and omnivores (feed on both plants and animals). Other heterotrophs are the decomposers (the bacteria and fungi that aid in decay).

Energy Flow and Chemical Cycling

Energy flows through an ecosystem, while chemicals cycle within an ecosystem.



- **Food webs** and **food chains** Energy flows in an ecosystem through food chains and detrital and grazing food webs.
- **Trophic level** A trophic level is a level of nourishment in a food web or chain.
- **Ecological Pyramid** An ecological pyramid illustrates the energy losses that occur between trophic levels.

Only about 10% of the energy of one trophic level is available to the next trophic level. Top carnivores occupy the last and smallest trophic level.

Biogeochemical Cycle

Chemicals cycle within an ecosystem through various biogeochemical cycles, such as the phosphorus cycle, the nitrogen cycle, and the carbon cycle. Human activities significantly alter the transfer rates in these cycles.

31.3 Ecology of Major Ecosystems

The biosphere encompasses all the major ecosystems of the Earth.

Aquatic Ecosystems

The aquatic ecosystems are classified as freshwater ecosystems (rivers, streams, lakes, ponds) and marine ecosystems (oceans, coral reefs, saltwater marshes).

Terrestrial Ecosystems

The terrestrial ecosystems are called biomes. The major biomes are

- Tundra
- Taiga
- Temperate forest
- Tropical grassland (savanna)
- Temperate grassland (prairie)
- Desert
- Tropical rain forest

Primary Productivity

Primary productivity is the rate at which producers capture solar energy and convert it to chemical energy over a specified length of time. The number of species in an ecosystem is positively related to its primary productivity.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

All of the species in a given area make up the community. Energy flow and chemical cycling are essential for the stability of both aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems.

31.1 Community interactions are complex and dynamic.

31.2 Autotrophs are the basis of every ecosystem on Earth.

31.3 Aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems are connected.

For more information on the functions of communities and ecosystems, refer to the following sections:

Section 6.3 explains how producers make carbohydrates.

Section 14.1 explores how both variation and fitness play a role in the evolutionary processes that drive the coevolution of species.

Section 32.2 explores the direct and indirect benefits of the biodiversity found in aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

31.1 Ecology of Communities

1. As diversity increases,
   a. species richness increases and the distribution of species becomes more even.
   b. species richness decreases and the distribution of species becomes more even.
   c. species richness increases and the distribution of species becomes less even.
   d. species richness decreases and the distribution of species becomes less even.

For statements 2–6, indicate the type of interaction described in each scenario.

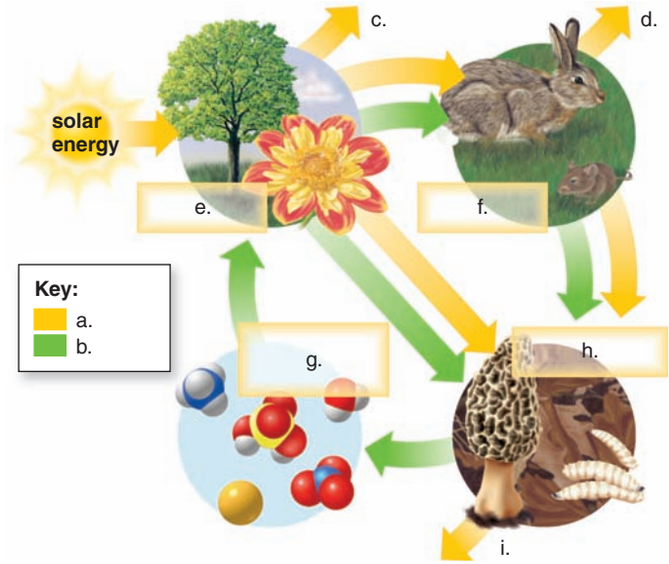
Key:

a. competition
b. predation
c. parasitism
d. commensalism
e. mutualism

2. An alfalfa plant gains fixed nitrogen from the bacterial species *Rhizobium* in its root system, while *Rhizobium* gains carbohydrates from the plant.
3. Both foxes and coyotes in an area feed primarily on a limited supply of rabbits.
4. Roundworms live and reproduce within a cat's digestive tract.
5. A fungus captures nematodes as a food source.
6. An orchid plant lives in the treetops, gaining access to sun and pollinators but not harming the trees.
7. According to the competitive exclusion principle,
   a. one species is always more competitive than another for a particular food source.
   b. competition excludes multiple species from using the same food source.
   c. no two species can occupy the same niche at the same time.
   d. competition limits the reproductive capacity of species.

31.2 Ecology of Ecosystems

8. In the following diagram, fill in the components of chemical cycling and nutrient flow.



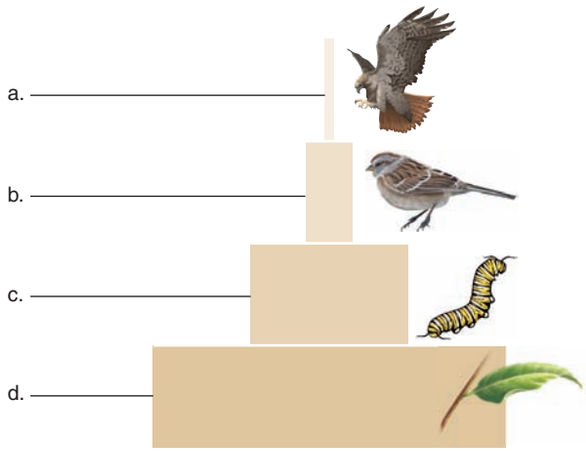
9. An ecological pyramid depicts the amount of _____ in various trophic levels.

a. food
b. organisms
c. energy
d. nutrients
e. Both b and c are correct.

10. Which of the following represents a grazing food chain?

a. leaves → detritus feeders → deer → owls
b. birds → mice → snakes
c. nuts → leaf-eating insects → chipmunks → hawks
d. leaves → leaf-eating insects → mice → snakes

11. Identify the components of the ecological pyramid in the following diagram.



12. Ecosystems include which of the following components that communities do not?

a. energy transfer between members
b. interaction with the physical environment
c. intricate food webs
d. herbivores and carnivores

31.3 Ecology of Major Ecosystems

13. Which biome is characterized by a coniferous forest with low average temperature and moderate rainfall?

a. taiga
b. savanna
c. tundra
d. tropical rain forest
e. temperate forest

14. Which biome has the lowest primary productivity?

a. tundra
b. lake
c. sandy beach
d. prairie
e. temperate forest

ENGAGE

LEARNSMART LABS™

The following LearnSmart Labs contain exercises that are related to the content of this chapter:

- Sampling Ecosystems

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. One of the most striking examples of coevolution is between insects and flowers. The earliest angiosperms produced large amounts of pollen on flowers that were wind-pollinated. The ovules were partially exposed and exuded tiny droplets of sugary sap to catch passing pollen. Outline a course of events that could have resulted in the coevolution we observe today between a flower and its pollinator.

2. Sea otters play an important role in maintaining the kelp forests of the Pacific coast. Otters maintain the sea urchin population, preventing them from overgrazing the kelp beds. If the kelp beds are overgrazed, a multitude of other species will decline as a result. Identify the chain of events that could occur if the sea otter population were reduced along the Pacific coast.

3. Many exotic species, such as zebra mussels and sea lampreys, are so obviously troublesome that most people do not object to programs aimed at controlling their populations. However, some exotic species' eradication programs meet with more resistance. For example, the mute swan, one of the world's largest flying birds, is beautiful and graceful, and it has an impressive presence. However, it is very aggressive and territorial. The mute swan was introduced to the United States from Asia and Europe in the nineteenth century as an ornamental bird but has since established a large wild population.

The birds consume large amounts of aquatic vegetation and displace native birds from feeding and nesting areas. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service has programs for mute swans in Maryland in order to protect native bird populations. Attempts to limit the size of the mute swan populations in Maryland and other states have been met with opposition by citizens who find the birds beautiful. Do you feel that native populations need not be protected as long as the exotic species serves a suitable human purpose? Or do you feel that native species should be protected regardless?

32

Human Impact on the Biosphere

Emiquon Floodplain Restoration

Emiquon was once a vital component of the Illinois River system, which is a major tributary of the Mississippi River. It included an extensive system of backwater wetlands and lakes that covered approximately 14,000 acres. The abundant diversity of plants and animals found within Emiquon has supported human civilization for over 10,000 years.

In the early 1900s, the Illinois River system was one of the most economically significant river ecosystems in the United States. Throughout the twentieth century, modern cultures altered the ebb and flow of the Illinois River to better suit their needs. Over half of the original floodplain was drained to be used for agriculture. Corn and soybean production replaced the abundance of native species that once existed there. The channel of the river itself was also altered to better suit the needs of boat traffic. With a decrease in seasonal flooding, the amount of nutrients deposited on the floodplain began to lessen.

The floodplain restoration work at Emiquon is a key part of The Nature Conservancy's effort to conserve the Illinois River. Over 40 scientists and managers provide guidance for the restoration of the floodplain and the Illinois River. Once established, this would allow for the seasonal flooding that previously existed. Access between the river and floodplain would be restored for various aquatic species, like the paddlefish and gar. A variety of national and local groups are involved in determining the baseline community diversity as well as investigating the potential economic benefits of the restoration. The knowledge gained from the research at Emiquon will potentially guide large floodplain-river restoration efforts around the world.

As you read through the chapter, think about the following questions:

1. How would altering the nutrients in the floodplain impact the overall biodiversity of the river ecosystem?
2. In what ways can scientists determine whether the restoration plan was successful in its goals?

OUTLINE

32.1 Conservation Biology 626

32.2 Biodiversity 627

32.3 Resources and Environmental Impact 632

32.4 Sustainable Societies 643

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Before beginning this chapter, take a few moments to review the following discussions.

Section 12.3 What is a transgenic organism?

Section 30.2 How do the environmental impacts of a more-developed country (MDC) compare with those of a less-developed country (LDC)?

Section 31.2 How much energy is transferred up each level of an ecological pyramid?

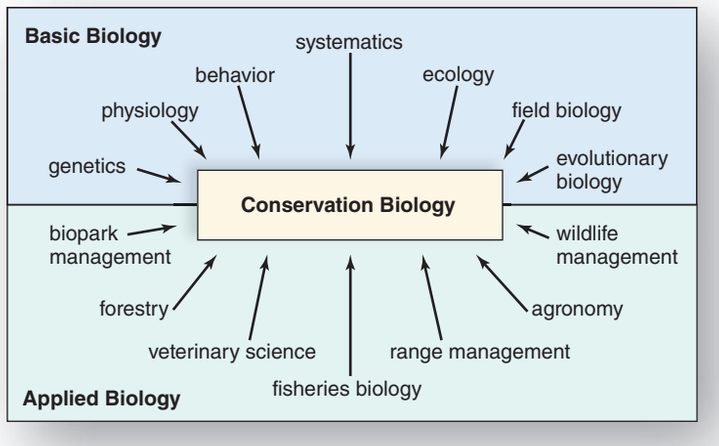
32.1 Conservation Biology

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Identify the role of conservation biology with regard to biodiversity.
2. Recognize the subfields of biology that support conservation biology.

In order to understand the diversity of life on Earth, we need to know more about species other than their total numbers. **Conservation biology** is a field of science that focuses on conserving natural resources for this and future generations. Conservation biology is concerned with developing new scientific concepts and applying them to our lives, along with sustainably managing the Earth's biodiversity for human use. Multiple subfields of biology blend together to form the concepts for conservation biology.



Conservation biology is unique among the life sciences, because it supports a variety of ethical principles: (1) Biodiversity is good for the Earth and therefore good for humans; (2) extinctions are undesireable; (3) the interactions within ecosystems support biodiversity and are beneficial to humans; and (4) biodiversity is the result of evolutionary change and has great value to humans.

Conservation biology is often referred to as a crisis discipline. In the next 20 to 50 years, approximately 10–20% of the biodiversity on Earth will go extinct. It is extremely important that everyone realizes the importance and value of biodiversity, as well as how everyone's actions contribute to the extinction crisis before us.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Conservation biology seeks to balance the needs of humans with the needs of the rest of the species on Earth.

Check Your Progress 32.1

1. Describe how conservation biology is supported by a variety of disciplines.
2. Explain the potential consequences of extinction.
3. List the principles supported by conservation biology.

32.2 Biodiversity

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Define *biodiversity* and briefly list some of the threats to it.
2. List the direct benefits of biodiversity and explain how they are beneficial to the human population.
3. List the indirect benefits of biodiversity and briefly describe their economic benefits.

Biodiversity can be defined as the diversity of life on Earth, described in terms of the number of different species. We are presently in a biodiversity crisis—the number of extinctions (loss of species) expected to occur in the near future will, for the first time, be due to human activities. According to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (FWS), as of 2012, there are over 448 animal species and 667 plant species in the United States that are in danger of extinction. The majority of these species (85%) are threatened by habitat loss (**Fig. 32.1*a***), usually associated with the sprawl of urban areas. Other factors contributing to the biodiversity crisis are the introduction of exotic species (50%), water and air pollution (24%), and the overexploitation of natural resources (17%). In many cases, endangered species are threatened by multiple factors. For example, the Canada lynx (*Lynx canadensis*) (**Fig. 32.1*b***)lives in the northern forests of the United States. It is a relatively rare species that prefers dense forests. It is currently listed as a threatened species due to habitat loss caused by the creation of roads for snowmobiling and skiing, as well as increased harvesting of timber in their natural habitats.

Biodiversity is not evenly distributed over the Earth. It is highest at the tropics and declines toward the poles, whether we are considering terrestrial, freshwater, or marine species. The regions of the world that contain the greatest concentration of species are known as **biodiversity hotspots (Fig. 32.2)**. The hotspots contain over 50% of all known higher plant species and 42% of all terrestrial vertebrate species but cover only about 2.4% of the Earth's land area. Therefore, when trying to save the greatest number of species, hotspots should be prioritized.

Conservation biology strives to reverse the trend toward the extinction of thousands of plants and animals. To bring this about, it is necessary to make all people aware that biodiversity is a resource of immense value—both direct and indirect.

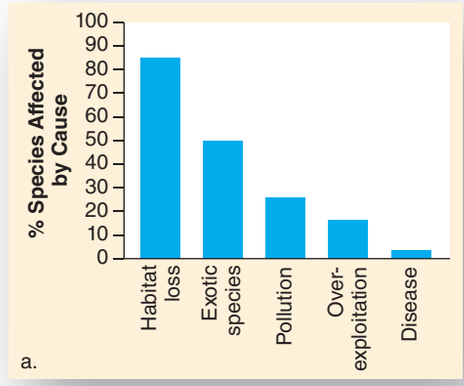


Figure 32.1 Habitat loss.

a. In a study examining records of imperiled U.S. plants and animals, habitat loss emerged as the greatest threat to wildlife. **b.** The Canada lynx is threatened by the loss of habitat and the overexploitation of forests for wood.

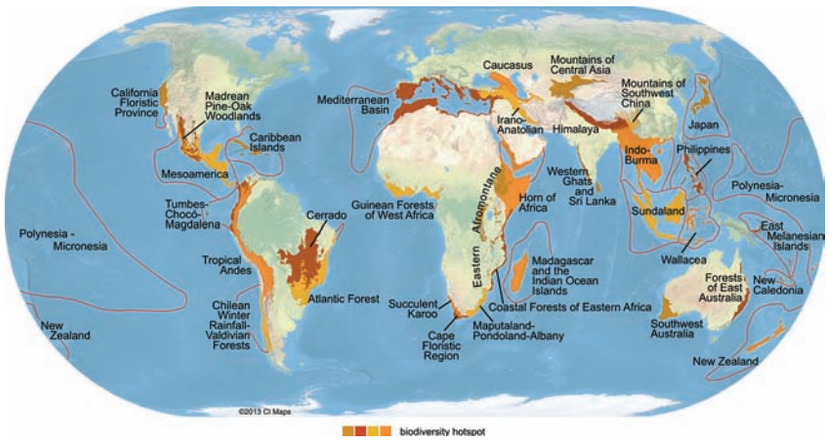


Figure 32.2 Biodiversity hotspots.

Hotspots cover only 2.4% of the Earth, yet they contain over 50% of the world's plant species and 42% of terrestrial vertebrates in 34 locations.

a. Wild species, like the rosy periwinkle, are sources of many medicines.

b. Wild species, like the nine-banded armadillo, play a role in medical research.

Figure 32.3 **Medicinal value of biodiversity.**

Many wildlife species, such as the (a) rosy periwinkle and (b) nine-banded armadillo, are sources of medicines for today's ills.

Direct Values of Biodiversity

The direct values of biodiversity include medicines, foods, and other products that benefit human beings.

Medicinal Value

Most of the prescription drugs used in the United States were originally derived from organisms. The rosy periwinkle from Madagascar is an excellent example of a tropical plant that has provided us with useful medicines (**Fig. 32.3*a***). Potent chemicals from this plant are used to treat two forms of cancer: leukemia and Hodgkin's disease. Due to these drugs, the survival rate for childhood leukemia has gone from 10% to 90%, and Hodgkin's disease is now usually curable. Although the value of saving a life cannot be calculated, it is still sometimes easier for us to appreciate the worth of a resource if it is explained in monetary terms. Thus, researchers tell us that, judging from the success rate in the past, hundreds of additional types of drugs are yet to be found in tropical rain forests, and the value of this resource to society is probably $147 billion.

The popular antibiotic penicillin is derived from a fungus, and certain species of bacteria produce the antibiotics tetracycline and streptomycin. These drugs have proven to be indispensable in the treatment of diseases, including certain sexually transmitted diseases.

Leprosy is among the diseases for which there is, as yet, no cure. The bacterium that causes leprosy will not grow in the laboratory, but scientists discovered that it grows naturally in the nine-banded armadillo (**Fig. 32.3*b***). Having a source for the bacterium may make it possible to find a potential cure for leprosy. The blood of horseshoe crabs contains a substance called limulus amoebocyte lysate, which is used to ensure that medical devices, such as pacemakers, surgical implants, and prostheses, are free of bacteria. Blood is taken from 250,000 horseshoe crabs a year, and then they are returned to the sea unharmed.

Video Indigenous Medicine

Video Good Poison

Agricultural Value

Crops such as wheat, corn, and rice were originally derived from wild plants modified to be high producers. The same high-yield, genetically similar strains tend to be grown worldwide. When cultivated rice crops in Africa were being devastated by a virus, researchers grew wild rice plants from thousands of seed samples until they found one that contained a gene for resistance to the virus. These wild plants were then used in a breeding program to transfer the gene into high-yield rice plants. If this variety of wild rice had become extinct before its resistance could be discovered, rice cultivation in Africa might have collapsed.

Biological pest controls—specifically, natural predators and parasites—are often preferable to chemical pesticides (**Fig. 32.4**). When a rice pest called the brown planthopper became resistant to pesticides, farmers began to use natural enemies of the brown planthopper instead. The economic savings were calculated at well over $1 billion. Similarly, cotton growers in Cañete Valley, Peru, found that pesticides were no longer working against the cotton aphid due to resistance. Research identified natural predators, which cotton farmers are now using to an even greater degree.

Most flowering plants are pollinated by animals, such as bees, wasps, butterflies, beetles, birds, and bats. The honeybee has been domesticated, and it pollinates almost $10 billion worth of food crops annually in the United States. The danger of this dependency on a single species is exemplified by mites that have wiped out more than 20% of the commercial honeybee population in the United States. Where can we get resistant bees? From the wild, of course; the value of wild pollinators to the U.S. agricultural economy has been calculated at $4.1 to $6.7 billion a year.

Consumptive Use Value

We have had much success in cultivating crops, keeping domesticated animals, growing trees on plantations, and so on. However, the environment provides all sorts of other products that are sold in marketplaces worldwide, including wild fruits and vegetables, skins, fibers, beeswax, and seaweed. Also, some people obtain their meat directly from the environment. In one study, researchers calculated that the economic value of wild pig in the diet of native hunters in Sarawak, East Malaysia, was about $40 million per year.

Similarly, many trees are still felled in the natural environment for their wood. Researchers have calculated that a species-rich forest in the Peruvian Amazon is worth far more if the forest is used for fruit and rubber production than for timber production. Fruit and the latex needed to produce rubber can be brought to market for an unlimited number of years, whereas once the trees are gone, no more forest products can be harvested.

Wild species, like ladybugs, play a role in biological control of agricultural pests.

Wild species, like the long-nosed bat, are pollinators of agricultural and other plants.

Wild species, like many marine species, provide us with food.

Wild species, like rubber trees, can provide a product indefinitely if the forest is not destroyed.

Figure 32.4 Agriculture and the consumptive value of wildlife.

Many wildlife species help account for our bountiful harvests and are sources of food for the world.

Figure 32.5 **Indirect value of ecosystems.**

Forests and coral reefs perform many of the functions listed as the indirect value of ecosystems.

Indirect Values of Biodiversity

All wild species play important roles in the ecosystems to which they belong. If we want to preserve them, it is more beneficial to save the entire ecosystem than the individual species. Ecosystems perform many indirect services that cannot always be measured economically. These services are said to be indirect because they are wide-ranging and not easily perceptible (**Fig. 32.5**).

Biogeochemical Cycles

Recall from Chapter 31 that ecosystems are characterized by energy flow and chemical cycling. The biodiversity within ecosystems contributes to the workings of the water, carbon, nitrogen, phosphorus, and other biogeochemical cycles. We are dependent on these cycles for fresh water, the removal of carbon dioxide from the atmosphere, the uptake of excess soil nitrogen, and the provision of phosphate. When human activities upset one aspect of biogeochemical cycles, other parts within the cycles are also affected. Technology has been unable to artificially contribute to or replicate any of the biogeochemical cycles.

Video
Dung Beetles

Waste Disposal

Decomposers break down dead organic matter and other types of wastes to inorganic nutrients, which are used by the producers within ecosystems. This function aids humans immensely, because we dump millions of tons of waste material into natural ecosystems each year. If not for decomposition, waste would soon cover the entire surface of our planet. We can build sewage treatment plants, but they are expensive, and few of them break down solid wastes completely to inorganic nutrients. It is less expensive and more efficient to water plants and trees with partially treated wastewater and let soil bacteria cleanse it completely.

Video
Decomposers

Biological communities are also capable of breaking down and immobilizing pollutants, such as the heavy metals and pesticides that humans release into the environment. A review of wetland functions in Canada assigned a value of $50,000 per hectare (2.471 acres, or 10,000 square meters) per year to the ability of natural areas to purify water and take up pollutants.

Video
Good Tobacco

Provision of Fresh Water

Few terrestrial organisms are adapted to living in a salty environment—they need fresh water. The water cycle continually supplies fresh water to terrestrial ecosystems. Humans use fresh water in innumerable ways, including drinking it and irrigating their crops. Freshwater ecosystems, such as rivers and lakes, also supply fish and other types of organisms for our consumption.

Unlike other commodities, there is no substitute for fresh water. We can remove salt from seawater to obtain fresh water, but the cost of desalination is about four to eight times the average cost of fresh water acquired via the water cycle.

Forests and other natural ecosystems exert a "sponge effect." They soak up water and then release it at a controlled rate. When rain falls in a natural area, plant foliage and dead leaves lessen its impact, and the soil slowly absorbs it, especially if the soil has been aerated by organisms. The water-holding capacity of forests reduces the possibility and degree of flooding. The value

of a marshland outside Boston, Massachusetts, has been estimated at $72,000 per hectare per year solely on its ability to reduce floods. Forests release water slowly for days or weeks after the rains have ceased. Comparing rivers in West African coffee plantations, those flowing through forests release twice as much water halfway through the dry season and three to five times as much at the end of the dry season. These data show the water-retaining ability of forests.

Prevention of Soil Erosion

Intact terrestrial ecosystems naturally retain soil and prevent soil erosion. The importance of this ecosystem attribute is especially noticeable following deforestation. In Pakistan, the world's largest dam, the Tarbela Dam, is losing 12 billion cubic meters of storage capacity sooner than expected because of the silt that is building up behind the dam due to deforestation of areas upriver. At one time, the Philippines were exporting $100 million worth of oysters, mussels, clams, and cockles each year. Now, silt carried down rivers following deforestation is smothering the mangrove ecosystem that serves as a nursery for many marine species. Most coastal ecosystems are not as bountiful as they once were because of deforestation upriver.

Regulation of Climate

At the local level, trees provide shade, block drying winds, and reduce the need for fans and air conditioners during the summer. Globally, forests regulate the climate, because they take up carbon dioxide, a greenhouse gas. When the leaves of trees photosynthesize, they use carbon dioxide, which is stored as the wood of the tree. When trees are cut and burned, carbon is no longer released into the soil through natural decomposition; instead, carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere. Subsequently, the reduction of forests worldwide reduces the amount of carbon dioxide removed from the atmosphere, amplifying the issue. Deforestation often removes soil nutrients needed by future tree generations, which in turn limits reforestation.

Figure 32.6 Ecotourism.

Whale watchers experience the thrill of seeing an orca surfacing off the coast of Washington State.

Ecotourism

Almost everyone prefers to vacation in the natural beauty of an ecosystem (**Fig. 32.6**). In the United States, nearly 100 million people enjoy vacationing in a natural setting. To do so, they spend nearly $5 billion each year on fees, travel, lodging, and food. Many tourists want to go sport fishing, whale watching, boat riding, hiking, bird watching, and the like. Some merely want to immerse themselves in the beauty of a natural environment. Some less-developed countries are realizing that there is significant economic potential in developing their ecotourism industry.

Check Your Progress 32.2

1. Summarize the direct and indirect values of biodiversity.
2. Explain how modern medicine and agriculture are dependent on biodiversity.
3. Explain how the preservation of biodiversity can help reduce the problems associated with overexploitation of water, land, food, or energy resources.

32.2 **CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS**

The Earth's biodiversity has tremendous value to humans, but it is under stress.

32.3 Resources and Environmental Impact

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Describe the effects of human populations on land and water resources.
2. Describe how modern farming methods impact the environment and explain how the "green revolution" may help alleviate these problems.
3. Explain how the use of fossil fuels and the production of pollution impact the environment.

Humans use resources to meet their basic needs. Land, water, food, energy, and minerals are the maximally used resources (**Fig. 32.7**).

Some resources are nonrenewable, and some are renewable. **Nonrenewable resources** are limited in supply. For example, the amount of land, fossil fuels, and minerals is finite and can be exhausted. Better extraction methods and efficient use can make the supply last longer, but eventually these resources will run out. **Renewable resources** are unlimited in supply. We can use water and certain forms of energy (e.g., solar energy) or harvest plants and animals for food, and more will always be forthcoming. However, even though these resources are renewable, we must be careful not to overconsume them. Consider that most species have a population threshold below which they cannot recover or sustain their numbers, as when the huge herds of buffalo that once roamed the western United States disappeared after being overexploited.

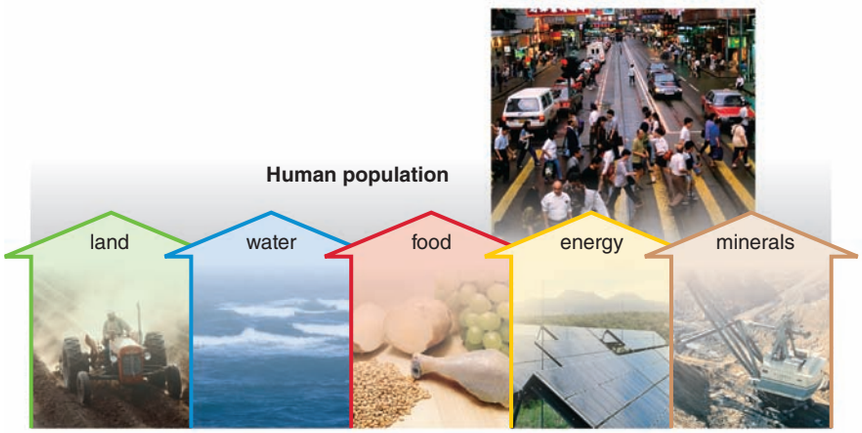


Figure 32.7 Resources.

Humans use land, water, food, energy, and minerals to meet their needs, including a place to live, food to eat, and products that make their lives easier.

Unfortunately, one side effect of resource consumption is pollution. **Pollution** is any alteration of the environment in an undesirable way. Pollution is often caused by human activities. The human impact on the environment is proportional to the size of the population and consumption of the resources. As the population grows, so does the need for resources and the amount of pollution generated by using these resources. Consider that seven people adding waste to the ocean might not be alarming, but 7 billion people doing so would certainly affect its cleanliness. In modern times, the consumption of mineral and energy resources has grown faster than population size. People in the more-developed countries (MDCs) use a disproportionate amount of them.

Video Ocean Pollution

Video Inherited Pollution

Land

People require a physical place to live. Worldwide, there are more than 32 people for each km^2 (83 people per mi^2) of all available land, including Antarctica, mountain ranges, jungles, and deserts. Naturally, land is also

needed for a variety of uses aside from homes, such as agriculture, electric power plants, manufacturing plants, highways, hospitals, and schools.

Beaches and Human Habitation

At least 40% of the world population lives within 100 km (60 mi) of a coastline, with this number increasing each year. In the United States, over half of the population lives within 80 km (50 mi) of the coasts (including the Great Lakes). Living right on the coast has a negative impact, because it accelerates natural beach erosion and loss of habitat for marine organisms.

Beach Erosion An estimated 70% of the world's beaches are eroding; **Figure 32.8*a*** shows how extensive this issue is in the United States. The seas have been rising for the past 12,000 years, ever since the climate turned warmer after the last Ice Age, and consequently the forces associated with waves, tides, and wind have been amplified.

Humans often participate in activities that divert more water to the oceans, contributing to rising seas and beach erosion. For example, humans have filled in coastal wetlands, such as mangrove swamps in the southern United States and saltwater marshes in the northern United States formerly considered "wastelands." With growing recognition of the services provided by wetlands, wetland conservation and restoration has been growing in the United States during the past 40 years. Unfortunately, it is just starting in South America, where a project to straighten the Paraná River will drain the world's largest wetland. There are multiple reasons to protect coastal wetlands. They serve as spawning areas for fish and other forms of marine life as well as buffer against hurricane storm surges and protect against shoreline erosion. They are also habitats for certain terrestrial species, including many types of birds.

Humans often try to stabilize beaches by building groynes (structures that extend from the beach into the water) and seawalls. Groynes trap sand and build beaches on one side as well as slowing the longshore currents, but erosion is increased on the other side. Seawalls, in the end, also increase erosion because ocean waves remove sand from in front of and to the side of the seawalls. Importing sand is a better solution, but it is very costly and can disturb plant and animal populations. It's estimated that the U.S. shoreline loses 40% more sediment than it receives, because the building of dams prevents sediment from reaching the coast.

Coastal Pollution The coasts are particularly subject to pollution because toxic substances placed in freshwater lakes, rivers, and streams may eventually find their way to the coast. Oil spills at sea cause localized harmful effects also.

Figure 32.8 **Beach erosion.**

a. Most of the U.S. coastline is subject to beach erosion. **b.** Therefore, people who choose to live near the coast may eventually lose their homes.

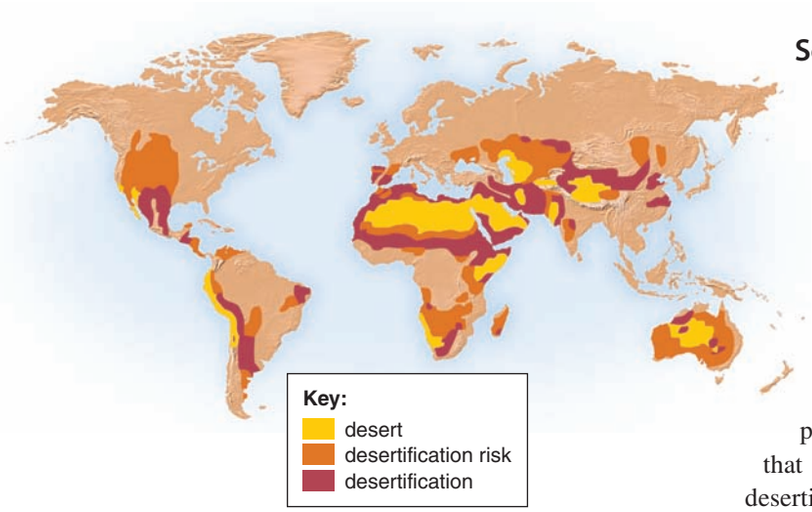
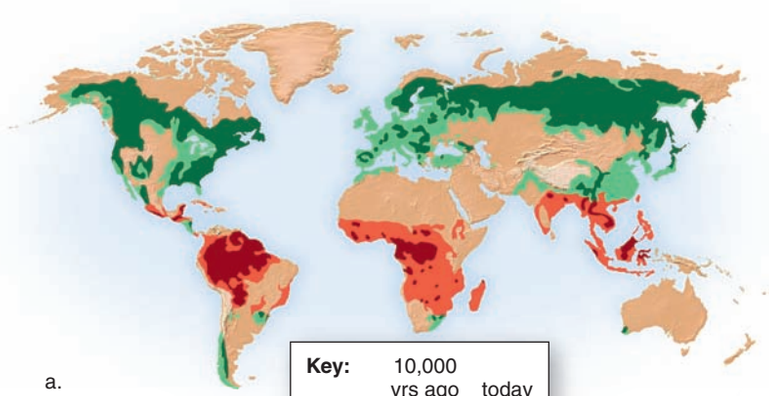


Figure 32.9 Desertification.

Desertification is a worldwide occurrence that reduces the amount of land suitable for human habitation.

Source: Data from A. Goudie and I. Wilkinson, *The Warm Desert Environment*. Copyright 1977 by Cambridge University Press, New York.



a.

b.

Figure 32.10 Deforestation.

a. Nearly half of the world's forest lands have been cleared for farming, logging, and urbanization. **b.** The soil of tropical rain forests is not suitable for long-term farming.

Sources: United Nations Environment Program; World Resources Institute.

Semiarid Lands and Human Habitation

Forty percent of the Earth's lands are already deserts, and any land adjacent to a desert is in danger of becoming desert if humans manage it improperly. **Desertification** is the conversion of semiarid land to desertlike conditions (**Fig. 32.9**).

Quite often, desertification can begin when humans allow animals to overgraze the land. The soil can no longer hold rainwater, which runs off instead of keeping the remaining plants alive or recharging wells. Humans then remove whatever vegetation they can find to use as fuel or fodder for their animals. The end result is a desert unable to support agriculture, which is then abandoned as people move on to continue the process someplace else. Some estimate that nearly three-quarters of all rangelands worldwide are in danger of desertification. The famine in Ethiopia during 2002–2003 was due, at least in part, to degradation of the land to the point that it could no longer support human beings and their livestock.

Tropical Rain Forest and Human Habitation

Deforestation, the removal of trees (**Fig. 32.10**), has long allowed humans to live in areas where forests once covered the land. The concern recently has been that people are settling in tropical rain forests, such as the Amazon, following the building of roads. This land, too, is subject to desertification. Soil in the tropics is often thin and nutrient-poor because all the nutrients are tied up in the trees and other vegetation. When the trees are felled and removed and the land is used for agriculture or grazing, it quickly loses its fertility and becomes subject to desertification.

Other consequences of deforestation are a loss of biodiversity and an increase in atmospheric carbon dioxide. The trees that once took in and stored carbon dioxide have been removed. The destruction of tropical rain forests causes the extinction of a large number of species that have value to humans.

Water

Access to clean drinking water is considered a human right, but actually most fresh water is used by agriculture and industry (**Fig. 32.11*a,b***). In the United States, approximately 39% of all fresh water is used to irrigate crops! Much of a recent surge in demand for water stems from increased industrial activity and irrigation-intensive agriculture, the type of agriculture that now supplies about 40% of the world's food crops. Domestically, in the more-developed countries (MDCs), more water is usually used for bathing, flushing toilets, and watering lawns than for drinking and cooking. In the water-poor areas of the world, people may not have ready access to drinking water, and if they do, the water may be unclean.

Increasing Water Supplies

Although the needs of the human population overall do not exceed the renewable supply, this is not the case in certain regions of the world. As illustrated in Figure 32.9, about 40% of the world's land is desert, and deserts are bordered by semiarid land. When necessary to support human population growth, the supply of fresh water is increased by damming rivers and withdrawing water from aquifers.

Dams The world's 45,000 large dams catch 14% of all precipitation runoff, provide water for up to 40% of irrigated land, and give some 65 countries more than half their electricity. Damming of certain rivers has been so extensive that they no longer flow as they once did. The Yellow River in China fails to reach the sea most years; the Colorado River barely makes it to the Gulf of California; and even the Rio Grande dries up before it can merge with the Gulf of Mexico. The first and third longest rivers on Earth, the Nile in Egypt and the Ganges in India, respectively, are also so overexploited that, at some times of the year, they hardly make it to the ocean.

Dams have additional drawbacks: (1) Reservoirs behind the dam lose water due to evaporation and seepage into underlying rock beds. The amount of water lost sometimes equals the amount made available! (2) The salt left behind by evaporation and agricultural runoff can make a river's water unusable farther downstream. (3) Sediment buildup causes dams to hold back less water; with time, dams may become useless for storing water. (4) The reduced amount of water below the dam has a negative impact on the native wildlife.

Aquifers To meet their freshwater needs, people are pumping vast amounts of water from **aquifers,** which are natural reservoirs of water found below the surface of the Earth. Aquifers hold about 1,000 times the amount of water that falls on land as precipitation each year. This water accumulates from rain that fell over long periods of time. In the past 50 years, groundwater depletion has become a problem in many areas of the world. In substantial portions of the High Plains Aquifer, which stretches from South Dakota to the Texas Panhandle, much water is pumped out for irrigation or for household water use. In the 1950s, India had 100,000 motorized pumps in operation; today, India has 20 million pumps, a huge increase in groundwater pumping.

Environmental Consequences Removal of water is causing land **subsidence,** settling of the soil as it dries out. In California's San Joaquin Valley, an area of more than 13,000 square km has subsided, and in the worst spot the surface has dropped more than 9 meters (m)! In some parts of Gujarat, India, the water table has dropped as much as 7 m. Subsidence damages canals, buildings, and underground pipes. Withdrawal of groundwater can cause sinkholes, as when an underground cavern collapses because water no longer holds up its roof.

Saltwater intrusion is another consequence of groundwater depletion. The flow of water from streams and aquifers usually keeps them fairly free of seawater. But as water is withdrawn, the water table can lower to the point that seawater backs up into streams and aquifers. Saltwater intrusion reduces the supply of fresh water along the coast.

Connections: Environment

How much water is required to produce your food?

Growing a single serving of lettuce takes about 6 gallons of water. Producing an 8-oz glass of milk requires 49 gallons. That includes the amount of water the cow drinks, the water used to grow the cow's food, and the water needed to process the milk. Producing a single serving of steak consumes more than 2,600 gallons of water.

a. Agriculture uses most of the fresh water consumed.

b. Industrial use of water is about half that of agricultural use.

c. Domestic use of water is about half that of industrial use.

Figure 32.11 Global water use.

a. Agriculture uses water primarily for irrigation. **b.** Industry uses water in various ways. **c.** People use water for drinking, showering, flushing toilets, and watering lawns.

a. Drought-resistant plants

b. Drip irrigation

Figure 32.12 **Conservation measures to save water.**

a. Planting drought-resistant plants in parks and gardens and drought-resistant crops in the field cuts down on the need to irrigate. **b.** Drip irrigation delivers water directly to the roots.

Conservation of Water

By 2025, two-thirds of the world's population may be living in countries that are facing serious water shortages. Many solutions for expanding water supplies are available. Using drip irrigation delivers more water to crops and saves about 50% over traditional methods while increasing crop yields (**Fig. 32.12*b***). Although the first drip systems were developed in 1960, they are used on less than 1% of irrigated land. Most governments subsidize irrigation so heavily that farmers have little incentive to invest in drip systems or other water-saving methods. Planting drought- and salt-tolerant crops would decrease the water required for agriculture. Recycling water and adopting conservation measures could help the world's industries cut their water demands by more than half.

Video
Thames River

Food

In 1950, the human population numbered 2.5 billion, and there was only enough food to provide less than 2,000 calories per person per day; now, with over 7 billion people on Earth, the world food supply provides more than 2,500 calories per person per day. Generally speaking, food comes from three activities: growing crops, raising animals, and fishing the seas. Unfortunately, modern farming methods, which have increased the food supply, include some harmful practices:

Video
World Hunger

1. *Planting of a few genetic varieties.* The majority of farmers practice monoculture, meaning that they plant a single type (strain) of a crop throughout their fields. Unfortunately, the resulting lack of genetic diversity means that a single type of parasite or disease could infect the entire monoculture. This scenario does not take into account any genetic variants that may exhibit disease resistance.
2. *Heavy use of fertilizers, pesticides, and herbicides*. Fertilizer production is energy-intensive, and fertilizer runoff contributes to water pollution. Pesticides reduce soil fertility, because they kill beneficial soil organisms as well as pests, and some pesticides and herbicides are linked to the development of cancer.
3. *Generous irrigation*. As already discussed, water is sometimes taken from aquifers whose water content may in the future become so reduced that it could be too expensive to pump out any more.
4. *Excessive fuel consumption*. Irrigation pumps remove water from aquifers, and large farming machines are used to spread fertilizers, pesticides, and herbicides, as well as to sow and harvest the crops. In effect, modern farming methods transform fossil fuel energy into food energy.

Figure 32.13 shows ways to minimize the harmful effects of modern farming practices.

Soil Loss and Degradation

Land suitable for farming and for grazing animals is being degraded worldwide. Topsoil, the topmost portion of the soil, is the richest in organic matter and the most capable of supporting grass and crops. When bare soil is acted on by water and wind, soil erosion occurs and topsoil is lost. As a result, marginal rangeland becomes desert, and farmland loses its productivity.

The custom of planting the same crop in straight rows that facilitate the use of large farming machines has caused the United States and Canada to have

one of the highest rates of soil erosion in the world. Conserving the nutrients now being lost could save farmers $20 billion annually in fertilizer costs. Much of the eroded sediment ends up in lakes and streams, where it reduces the ability of aquatic species to survive.

Almost all water contains dissolved salts, and these salts are left behind either when plants take up the water or the water evaporates. Between 25% and 35% of the irrigated western croplands are thought to have undergone **salinization,** an accumulation of mineral salts generated through irrigation. Salinization makes the land unsuitable for growing crops.

Green Revolutions

About 50 years ago, research scientists began to breed tropical wheat and rice varieties specifically for farmers in the LDCs. The dramatic increase in yield due to the introduction of these new varieties around the world was called "the green revolution." These plants helped the world food supply keep pace with the rapid increase in world population. Most green revolution plants are called "high responders" because they need high levels of fertilizer, water, and pesticides in order to produce a high yield. In other words, they require the same subsidies and create the same ecological problems as do modern farming methods.

Genetic Engineering Genetic engineering can produce transgenic plants with new and different traits, among them resistance to both insects and herbicides. When herbicide-resistant crops are planted, weeds are easily controlled, less tillage is needed, and soil erosion is minimized. Researchers also want to produce crops that tolerate salt, drought, and cold. In addition, some progress has been made in increasing the food quality of crops, so that they will supply more of the proteins, vitamins, and minerals people need. Genetically engineered crops are resulting in another green revolution. Nevertheless, some citizens are opposed to the use of genetically engineered crops, fearing that they will damage the environment and lead to health problems in humans.

Domestic Livestock

A low-protein, high-carbohydrate diet consisting only of grains, such as wheat, rice, or corn, can lead to malnutrition. In the LDCs, kwashiorkor, a condition caused by a severe protein deficiency, is seen in infants and children ages 1–3; this tends to develop after a new baby arrives in the family and the older children are no longer breast-fed. Such children are lethargic and irritable, and they have bloated abdomens. Mental retardation is expected.

In the MDCs, many people tend to have more than enough protein in their diet. Almost two-thirds of U.S. cropland is devoted to producing livestock feed. This means that a large percentage of the fossil fuel, fertilizer, water, herbicides, and pesticides we use are actually for the purpose of raising livestock. Typically, cattle are range-fed for about four months, and then they are taken to crowded feedlots, where they receive growth hormone and antibiotics while feeding on grain. Most pigs and chickens spend their entire lives in crowded pens and cages (**Fig. 32.14**).

a. Polyculture

b. Contour with no-till farming

c. Biological pest control

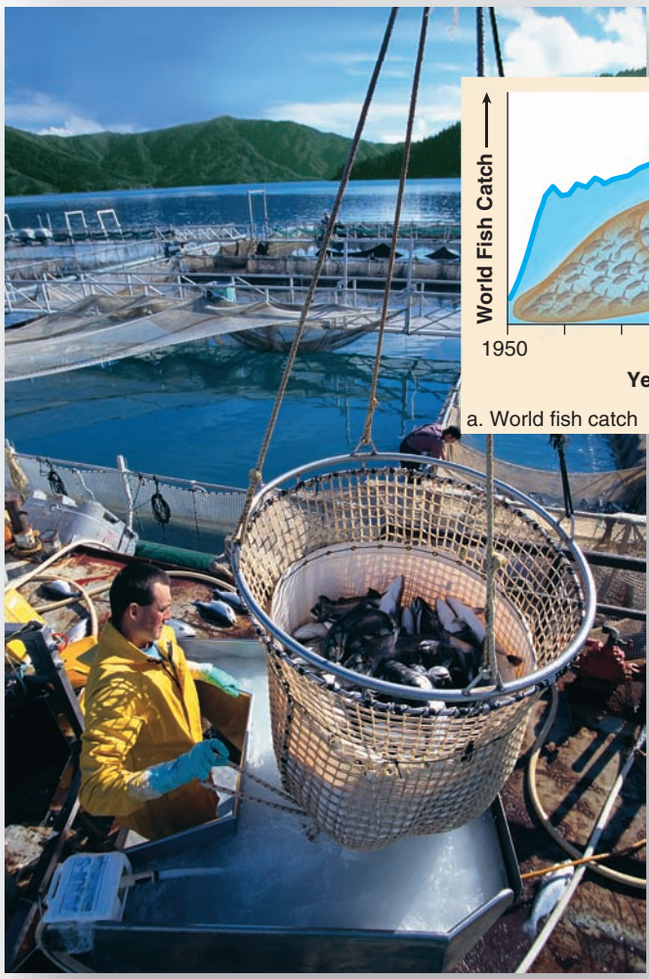
Figure 32.13
Conservation methods.

a. Polyculture reduces the ability of one parasite to wipe out an entire crop and reduces the need to use an herbicide to kill weeds. This farmer has planted alfalfa between strips of corn, which also replenishes the nitrogen content of the soil (instead of adding fertilizers). **b.** Contour farming with no-till conserves topsoil, because water has less tendency to run off. **c.** Instead of pesticides, it is sometimes possible to use a natural predator. Here a ladybug is eating aphids off of cultivated crops.

Figure 32.14 **Crowding of livestock.**

Hogs milling in feedlot pens.

b. Drag net fishing



a. World fish catch

c. Aquafarming

Figure 32.15 **Fishing.**

a. The world fish catch has declined in recent years (**b**) because modern fishing methods are overexploiting fisheries. **c.** Aqua farming, the farming of aquatic organisms, is decreasing the demand from the oceans.

Source: Data from U.S. Marine Fisheries Service.

Just as livestock eat a large proportion of the crops in the United States, raising livestock accounts for much of the pollution associated with farming. Consider also that presently fossil fuel energy is needed not just to produce herbicides and pesticides and to grow food but also to make the food available to the livestock. Raising livestock is extremely energy-intensive in the MDCs. In addition, water is used to wash livestock wastes into nearby bodies of water, where they add significantly to water pollution. Raw animal wastes are not always regulated in the same fashion as human wastes.

For these reasons, it is prudent to recall the ecological energy pyramid (see Fig. 31.20), which shows that, as you move up the food chain, energy is lost. As a rule of thumb, for every 10 calories of energy from a plant, only 1 calorie is available for the production of animal tissue in an herbivore. In other words, it is possible to feed 10 times as many people on grain as on meat.

Fishing

Since 2000, the world fish catch has been on the decline (**Fig. 32.15*a***). Worldwide, between 1970 and 1990, the number of large boats devoted to fishing doubled to 1.2 million. The U.S. fishing fleet participated in this growth due to the availability of federal loans for building fishing boats. The new boats have sonar and depth recorders, and their computers remember the sites of previous catches, so that the boats can go there again. Helicopters, planes, and even satellite data are used to help find fish. The number of North Atlantic swordfish caught in the United States declined 70% from 1980 to 1990, and the average weight fell from 115 to 60 pounds. The Atlantic bluefin tuna is so overfished that it may never recover and instead become extinct.

Modern fishing practices negatively impact biodiversity, because a large number of marine animals are caught by chance in the huge nets some fishing boats use (Fig. 32.15*b*). These animals are discarded. The world's shrimp fishery has an annual catch of 1.8 million tons, but the other animals caught and discarded in the process amount to 9.5 million tons. Raising tuna, shrimp, and other aquatic organisms in controlled settings, called aqua farming, has reduced the fishing pressures on wild populations (Fig. 32.15*c*). In fact, over 90% of the shrimp available in the United States is produced through aquaculture.

Video Ocean Fishing Ban

Video Big Fish, Small Fish

Energy

About 6% of the world's energy supply comes from nuclear power, and 81% comes from fossil fuels; both of these are finite, nonrenewable sources. Although it was once predicted that the nuclear power industry would fulfill a significant portion of the world's energy needs, this has not happened for two reasons: (1) People are very concerned about nuclear power dangers, such as the meltdown that occurred in 1986 at the Chernobyl nuclear power plant in Russia. (2) Radioactive wastes from nuclear power plants remain a threat to the environment for thousands of years, and we still have not determined the best way to store them safely.

As you learned in Chapter 31, oil, natural gas, and coal are **fossil fuels**—the compressed remains of organisms that died many thousands of years ago. The MDCs presently consume more than twice as much fossil fuel as the LDCs, yet there are many more people in the LDCs than in the MDCs. It has been estimated that each person in the MDCs uses approximately as much energy in one day as a person in an LDC does in one year.

Among the fossil fuels, oil burns more cleanly than coal, which may contain a considerable amount of sulfur. Thus, despite the fact that the United States has a good supply of coal, imported oil is our preferred fossil fuel. Even so, the burning of any fossil fuel contributes to environmental problems, because, as it burns, pollutants are emitted into the air.

Fossil Fuels and Global Climate Change

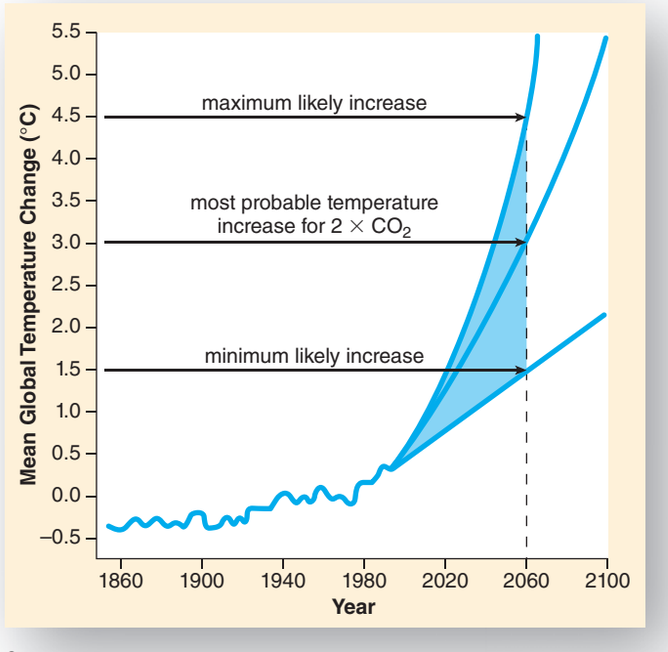
The percentage of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is 0.03%. However, the level of CO_2 in the atmosphere in 1850 was about 280 parts per million (ppm), and today it is over 400 ppm. This increase is largely due to the burning of fossil fuels and the burning and clearing of forests to make way for farmland and pasture. Human activities are causing the emission of other gases as well. For example, the amount of methane given off by oil and gas wells, rice paddies, and all sorts of organisms, including domesticated cows, is increasing by about 1% a year. These gases are known as **greenhouse gases,** because, just like the panes of a greenhouse, they allow solar radiation to pass through but hinder the escape of infrared heat back into space.

Today, data collected around the world show a steady rise in the concentration of the various greenhouse gases. These data are used to generate computer models, which predict that the Earth may warm to temperatures never before experienced by living things. The global climate has already warmed about 0.6°C since the Industrial Revolution. Computer models are unable to consider all possible variables, but the Earth's temperature may rise 1.5°–4.5°C by 2060 if greenhouse emissions continue at the current rates (**Fig. 32.16**).

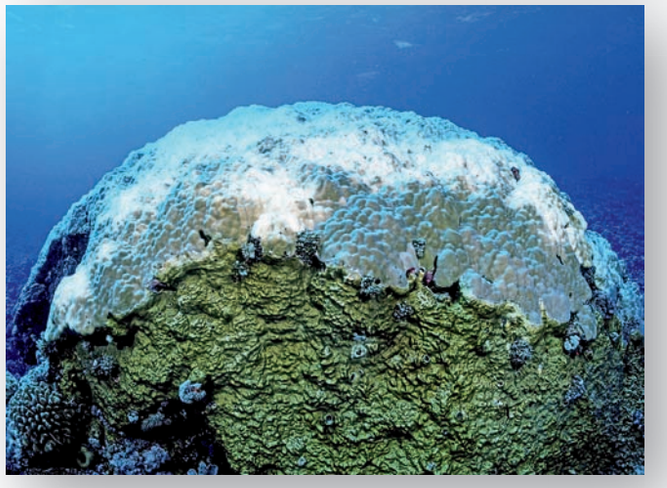
Some models predict that, as the oceans warm due to global warming, temperatures in the polar regions will rise to a greater degree than in other regions. If so, glaciers will melt and sea levels will rise, not only due to this melting but also because water expands as it warms. Water evaporation will increase, and most likely precipitation will increase along the coasts, while conditions inland become drier. The occurrence of droughts will reduce agricultural yields and will cause trees to die off. Coastal agricultural lands, such as the deltas of China and Bangladesh, India, will be inundated, and billions of dollars will have to be spent to keep U.S. coastal cities, such as New York, Boston, Miami, and Galveston, from disappearing into the sea.

Video Global Warming

Video Warming Hurts Rice



a.



b.

Figure 32.16 Global warming.

a. Mean global temperature is expected to rise due to the introduction of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere. Global warming has the potential to significantly affect the world's biodiversity. **b.** A temperature rise of only a few degrees causes coral reefs to "bleach" and become lifeless. As the oceans warm and land recedes, coral reefs can move northward.

a.

b.

c.

Figure 32.17 **Renewable energy sources.**

a. Wind power requires land on which to place enough windmills to generate energy. b. Hydropower dams provide a clean form of energy but can be ecologically disastrous in other ways. **c.** Photovoltaic cells on rooftops can collect diffuse solar energy more affordably than in the past.

Renewable Energy Sources

Renewable types of energy include wind power, hydropower, geothermal energy, and solar energy (**Fig. 32.17**).

Wind Power Wind power is expected to account for a significant percentage of our energy needs in the future. A community that generates its own electricity by using wind power can solve the problem of uneven energy production by selling electricity to a local public utility when an excess is available and buying electricity from the same facility when wind power is in short supply.

Hydropower Hydroelectric plants convert the energy of falling water into electricity. Hydropower accounts for about 6% of the electric power generated in the United States and almost 67% of the total renewable energy used. Much of the hydropower development in recent years has been due to the construction of enormous dams, which have detrimental environmental effects. An alternative choice may be small-scale dams that generate less power per dam but do not have the same environmental impact.

Geothermal Energy Elements such as uranium, thorium, radium, and plutonium undergo radioactive decay below the Earth's surface and then heat the surrounding rocks to hundreds of degrees Centigrade. When the rocks are in contact with underground streams or lakes, huge amounts of steam and hot water are produced. This steam can be piped up to the surface to supply hot water for home heating or to run steam-driven turbogenerators. The California's Geysers project is the world's largest geothermal electricity-generating complex.

Energy and the Solar-Hydrogen Revolution Solar energy is diffuse energy that must be (1) collected, (2) converted to another form, and (3) stored if it is to compete with other available forms of energy. Passive solar heating of a house is successful when its windows face the sun, the building is well insulated, and heat can be stored in water tanks, rocks, bricks, or some other suitable material.

In a **photovoltaic (solar) cell,** a wafer of an electron-emitting metal is in contact with another metal that collects the electrons and passes them along into wires in a steady stream. The photovoltaic cells placed on roofs, for example, generate electricity that can be used inside a building or sold to a power company.

Scientists are working on improving technologies that allow solar energy to be used to extract hydrogen from water via electrolysis. The hydrogen can then be used as a clean-burning fuel; when it burns, water is produced. Presently, cars have internal combustion engines that run on gasoline. Automobile manufacturers are working on building vehicles that will be powered by fuel cells, which use hydrogen to produce electricity (**Fig. 32.18**), and many gasoline–fuel cell hybrid vehicles now exist. The electricity runs a motor that propels the vehicle. Fuel cells are powering buses in Vancouver and Chicago, with more in the development phase.

Video Spinach Battery

The advantages of a solar-hydrogen revolution would be at least twofold: (1) The world would no longer be dependent on oil, and (2) environmental problems, such as acid rain and smog, would begin to lessen.

Minerals

Minerals are nonrenewable raw materials in the Earth's crust that can be mined (extracted) and used by humans. Nonrenewable minerals include fossil fuels; nonmetallic raw materials, such as sand, gravel, and phosphate; and metals, such as aluminum, copper, iron, lead, and gold.

Nonrenewable resources are subject to depletion—that is, the supply will eventually run out. We can extend our supply of fossil fuels if we conserve our use, recycle metals, and find new reserves.

In the United States, huge machines can go as far as removing mountaintops in order to reach a mineral (**Fig. 32.19**). The land becomes devoid of vegetation, allowing runoff from rain to wash toxic waste deposits into nearby streams and rivers. Legislation now requires that strip miners restore the land to its original condition, a process that can take years to complete.

Other Sources of Pollution

Synthetic organic compounds and wastes are also pollutants of concern.

Synthetic Organic Compounds

In addition to metals, synthetic organic compounds are of considerable ecological concern due to their detrimental effects on the health of living things, including humans. Synthetic organic compounds play a role in the production of plastics, pesticides, herbicides, cosmetics, coatings, solvents, wood preservatives, and hundreds of other products.

Synthetic organic compounds include halogenated hydrocarbons, in which halogens (chlorine, bromine, fluorine) have replaced certain hydrogens. **Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs)** are a type of halogenated hydrocarbon in which both chlorine and fluorine atoms replace some of the hydrogen atoms. CFCs have brought about a thinning of the Earth's ozone shield, which protects terrestrial life from the dangerous effects of ultraviolet radiation. In most MDCs, legislation has been passed to prevent the production of any more CFCs. Hydrofluorocarbons, which contain no chlorine, are expected to take their place in coolants and other products. The ozone shield is predicted to recover by 2050; in the meantime, many more cases of skin cancer are expected to occur.

Other synthetic organic chemicals pose a direct and serious threat to the health of all living things. Rachel Carson's book *Silent Spring,* published in 1962, made the public aware of the deleterious effects of pesticides.

Wastes

Every year, the countries of the world discard billions of tons of solid wastes, some on land and some in fresh and marine waters. Solid wastes are visible wastes, some of which are hazardous to our health.

Industrial Wastes Industrial wastes are generated during the mining and production of a product. Clean-water and clean-air legislation in the early 1970s prevented venting industrial wastes into the atmosphere and flushing them into waterways. Industry turned to land disposal, which was unregulated at the time. The use of deep-well injection, pits with plastic liners, and landfills led to much water pollution and human illness, including cancer. An estimated 5 billion metric tons of highly toxic chemicals were improperly discarded in the United States between 1950 and 1975. The public's concern was so great that the EPA came into existence. Using an allocation of monies called the superfund, the EPA oversees the cleanup of hazardous waste disposal sites in the United States.

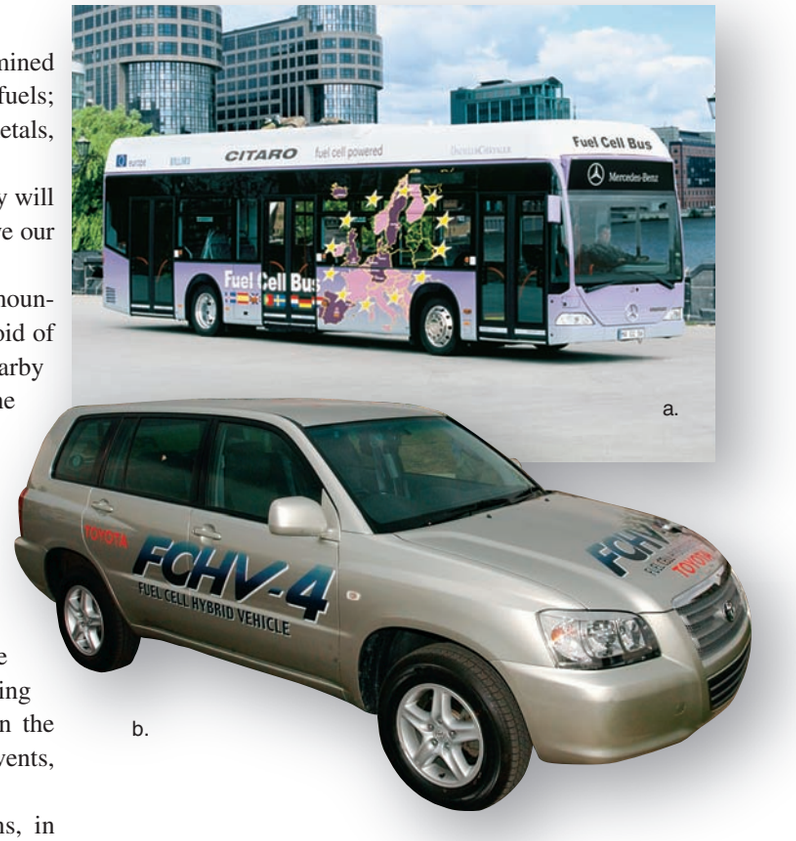


Figure 32.18 **Solar-hydrogen revolution.**

a. This bus is powered by hydrogen fuel. **b.** The use of fuel-cell hybrid vehicles, such as this prototype, will reduce air pollution and dependence on fossil fuels.

Figure 32.19 **Modern mining capabilities.**

Giant mining machines—some as tall as a 20-story building—can remove an enormous amount of the Earth's crust in one scoop in order to mine for coal or a metal ore.

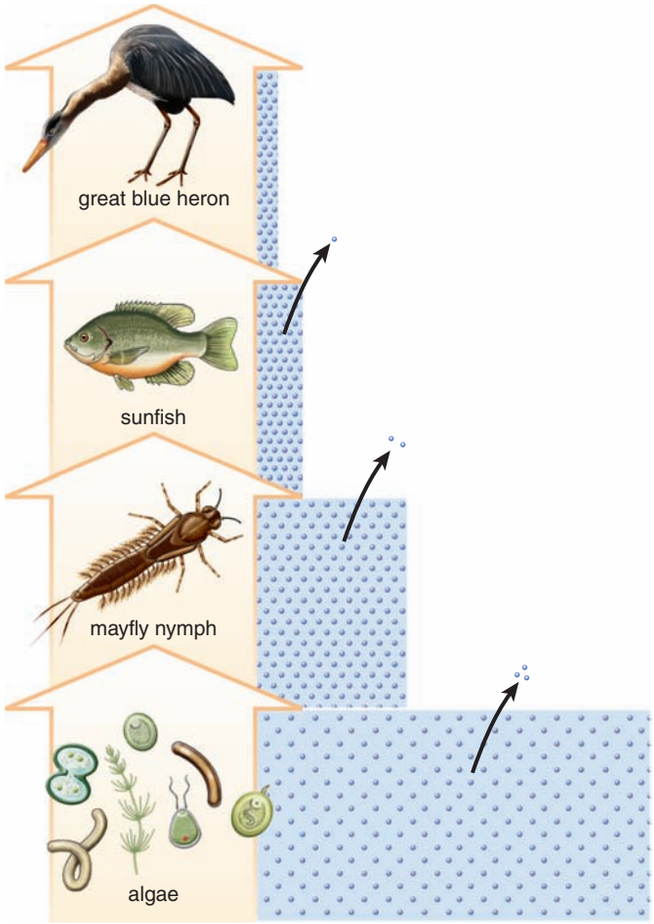


Figure 32.20 **Biological magnification.**

A poison, such as DDT, that is excreted in relatively small amounts (arrows) becomes maximally concentrated as it passes along a food chain due to the reduced size of the trophic levels.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Our overconsumption of resources is leading to climate change.

Check Your Progress 32.3

1. Distinguish between renewable and nonrenewable resources.
2. Explain the causes of deforestation and desertification, and list one environmental problem associated with each.
3. List the harmful effects of modern agricultural practices.
4. Summarize the influences of the "green revolution."
5. Summarize the potential effects of global warming.
6. List four types of renewable energy, and explain the limits of each.

Connections: Health

What is methylmercury, and why is it dangerous?

Methylmercury is a form of the element mercury that has been bound to a methyl (CH_3) group. Because of this methyl group, methylmercury easily accumulates in the food chain by biological magnification, or the concentration of chemicals in a food chain. Methylmercury is released into the environment by the burning of coal, the mining of certain metals, and the incineration of medical waste. Methylmercury is a powerful neurotoxin that also inhibits the activity of the immune system. Because of this, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) recommend that pregnant women and small children not eat shark, swordfish, tilefish, or king mackerel and limit their consumption of albacore tuna to less than 6 ounces per week. Most states have also posted warnings on eating local fish that have been caught from mercury-contaminated waters. For more information, visit the EPA website, www.epa.gov/waterscience/fish.

Among the most commonly found contaminants are heavy metals (lead, arsenic, cadmium, chromium) and organic compounds (trichloroethylene, toluene, benzene, polychlorinated biphenyls [PCBs], and chloroform). Some of the chemicals used in pesticides, herbicides, plastics, food additives, and personal hygiene products are classified as endocrine disrupters. These products can affect the endocrine system and interfere with reproduction. In the environment, they occur at a level 1,000 times greater than the hormone levels in human blood.

Decomposers are unable to break down these wastes. They enter and remain in the bodies of organisms because they are not excreted. Therefore, they become more concentrated as they pass along a food chain, a process termed **biological magnification** (**Fig. 32.20**). This effect is most apt to occur in aquatic food chains, which have more links than do terrestrial food chains. Humans are one of the final consumers in both types of food chains, and in some areas, human breast milk contains detectable amounts of the polychlorinated hydrocarbons DDT and PCBs.

Sometimes industrial wastes accumulate in the mud of deltas and estuaries of highly polluted rivers and cause environmental problems if disturbed. Industrial pollution is being addressed in many MDCs, but it usually has low priority in LDCs.

Sewage Raw sewage can contribute to oxygen depletion in lakes and rivers. Sewage serves as a fertilizer for plants, which can lead to eutrophication; first there is an algal bloom; then, when the algae use up all the nutrients, the algae die. Decomposition of dead algae robs the water of oxygen, which can result in a massive fish kill. Also, human feces can contain pathogenic microorganisms that cause cholera, typhoid fever, and dysentery. In regions of the LDCs where sewage treatment is practically nonexistent, many children die each year from these diseases. Sewage treatment plants use bacteria to break down organic matter to inorganic nutrients, such as nitrates and phosphates, which then enter surface waters.

32.4 Sustainable Societies

Learning Outcomes

Upon completion of this section, you should be able to

1. Explain why human society is unsustainable in its current form.
2. List some activities that may help make rural societies more sustainable.
3. List some activities that may help make urban societies more sustainable.

A **sustainable society** is able to provide the same goods and services for future generations of human beings that it does now while preserving biodiversity.

Today's Society

The following evidence indicates that, at present, human society is not sustainable (**Fig. 32.21*a***):

- A considerable proportion of land, and therefore natural ecosystems, is being used for human purposes (homes, agriculture, factories, etc.).
- Agriculture requires large inputs of nonrenewable fossil fuel energy, fertilizer, and pesticides, which creates pollution. More fresh water is used in agriculture than in homes.
- At least half the agricultural yield in the United States goes toward feeding animals. According to the 10-to-1 rule of thumb, it takes 10 pounds of grain to grow 1 pound of meat. Therefore, it is inefficient for citizens in MDCs to eat as much meat as they do. Also, animal sewage pollutes water.
- Even though fresh water is a renewable resource, we are running out of the available supply.
- Our society uses primarily nonrenewable fossil fuel energy, which leads to acid precipitation, smog, and various other pollutants entering the ecosystems.
- Minerals are nonrenewable, and the mining, processing, and use of minerals are responsible for much environmental pollution.

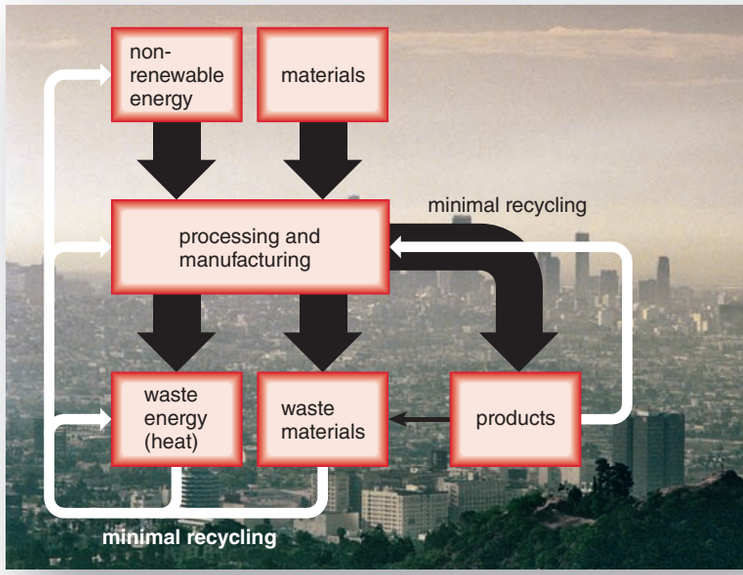
Characteristics of a Sustainable Society

A natural ecosystem can offer clues as to what a sustainable human society would be like. A natural ecosystem is characterized by the use of renewable solar energy, the cycling of materials through the various populations, and the return of nutrients and energy to the producers. If we want to develop a sustainable society, we should also use renewable energy sources and recycle materials (Fig. 32.21*b*). These principles can be applied to both rural and urban areas.

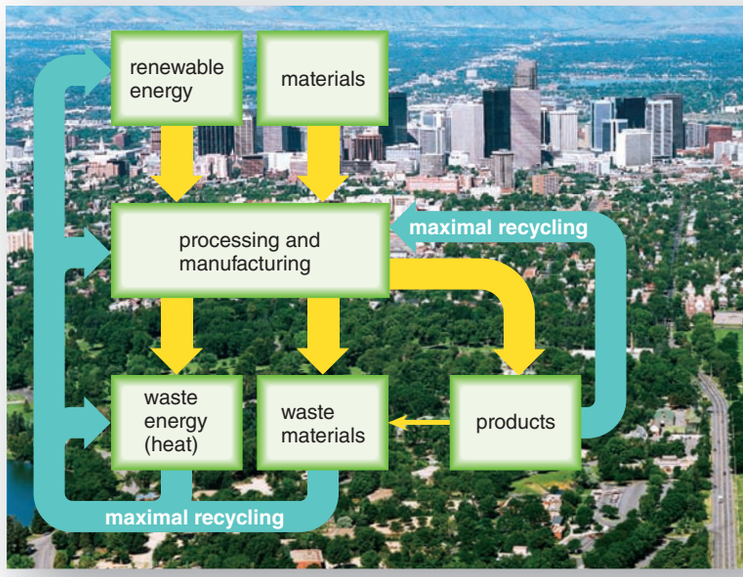
Rural Sustainability

In rural areas, we should put the emphasis on preservation. We should preserve ecosystems, including terrestrial ecosystems—such as forests and prairies—and aquatic ecosystems—both freshwater and brackish ones along the coast. We should also preserve agricultural land, groves of fruit trees, and other areas that provide us with renewable resources.

It is imperative that we take all possible steps to preserve what remains of our topsoil and replant areas with native grasses, as necessary. Native grasses stabilize the soil and rebuild soil nutrients while serving as a source



a. Human society at present



b. Sustainable society

Figure 32.21 Current human society versus a sustainable society.

a. Our "throw-away" society is characterized by high input of energy and raw material, large output of waste materials and energy in the form of heat, and minimal recycling (white arrows). **b.** A sustainable society is characterized by the use of only renewable energy sources, the reuse of heat and waste materials, and maximal recycling of products (blue arrows).

Figure 32.22 Rural sustainability.

Trees planted by a farmer to break the wind and prevent soil erosion can also have other purposes, such as supplying fruits and nuts.

Figure 32.23 Urban sustainability.

Green roofs are ecologically sound and can be visually beautiful.

of renewable biofuel. Trees can be planted to break the wind and protect the soil from erosion while providing a product. Creative solutions to today's ecological problems are very much needed.

Here are some other methods in which we can make rural areas more sustainable:

- Plant *cover crops,* which often are a mixture of legumes and grasses, to stabilize the soil between rows of cash crops or between seasonal plantings of cash crops.
- Practice *multiuse,* or *polyculture, farming* (see Fig. 32.13*a*) by planting a variety of crops and use a variety of farming techniques to increase the amount of organic matter in the soil.
- Replenish soil nutrients through composting, organic gardening, or other self-renewable methods.
- Use low-flow or trickle irrigation, retention ponds, and contour-farming (see Fig. 32.13*b*) to conserve water.
- Increase the planting of *cultivars* (plants propagated vegetatively) that are resistant to blight, rust, insect damage, salt, drought, and encroachment by noxious weeds.
- Use *precision farming (PF)* techniques that rely on accumulated knowledge to reduce habitat destruction while improving crop yields.
- Use *integrated pest management (IPM),* which encourages the growth of competitive beneficial insects and uses biological controls to reduce the abundance of a pest (see Fig. 32.13*c*).
- Plant a variety of species, including native plants, to reduce our dependence on traditional crops.
- Plant *multipurpose trees*—trees with the ability to provide numerous products and perform a variety of functions, in addition to serving as windbreaks (**Fig. 32.22**). Mature trees can provide many types of products: Mature rubber trees provide rubber, and tagua nuts are an excellent substitute for ivory, for example.
- Maintain and restore wetlands, especially in hurricane- or tsunami-prone areas. Protect deltas from storm damage. By protecting wetlands, we protect the spawning ground for many valuable fish nurseries.
- Use renewable forms of energy, such as wind, hydropower, and solar energy.
- Support local farmers, fishermen, and feed stores by buying food products produced locally.

Urban Sustainability

More and more people are moving to cities. Much thought needs to be given to serving the needs of new arrivals without overexpansion of the city. Here are some methods in which we can make cities more sustainable:

- Design an energy-efficient transportation system to efficiently move people about.
- Use solar or geothermal energy to heat buildings; cool them with an air-conditioning system that uses seawater; in general, use conservation methods to regulate the temperature of buildings.

Video
Solar Cooking

- Utilize *green roofs*—a wild garden of grasses, herbs, and vegetables on the tops of buildings—to assist in temperature control, supply food, reduce the amount of rainwater runoff, and create visual appeal **(Fig. 32.23)**.

- Improve storm-water management by using sediment traps for storm drains, artificial wetlands, and holding ponds. Increase the use of porous surfaces for walking paths, parking lots, and roads. These surfaces reflect less heat while soaking up rainwater runoff.
- Instead of traditional grasses, plant native species that attract bees and butterflies and require less water and fertilizers.
- Create *greenbelts* that suit the particular urban setting. Include plentiful walking and bicycle paths.
- Revitalize old sections of a city before developing new sections.
- Use lighting fixtures that hug the walls or ground and send light down; control noise levels by designing quiet motors.
- Promote sustainability by encouraging the recycling of business equipment; use low-maintenance building materials, rather than wood.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

There are numerous things we can do to become more sustainable.

Check Your Progress 32.4

1. List the characteristics of a sustainable society.
2. Summarize the steps that could increase rural sustainability.
3. Summarize the steps that could increase urban sustainability.

Connections: Environment

What are some simple things you can do to conserve energy and/or water and help solve environmental problems, such as climate change?

The following are a few things you can do:

- Change the lightbulbs in your home to compact fluorescent bulbs. They use 75–80% less electricity than incandescent bulbs.
- Walk, ride your bike, carpool, or use mass transit. It will save you a lot of money, too!
- Get cloth or mesh bags for groceries and other purchases. Plastic bags may take 10–20 years to degrade. They're also dangerous to wildlife if mistaken for food and consumed.
- Turn off the water while you brush your teeth. If you don't finish a bottle of water, use it to water your plants. In dry climates, plant native plants that won't require frequent watering.

Media Study Tools

connect plus+ BIOLOGY

www.mhhe.com/maderessentials4

Enhance your study of this chapter with study tools and practice tests. Also ask your instructor about the resources available through ConnectPlus, including the media-rich eBook, interactive learning tools, and animations.

Video

32.2 Indigenous Medicine • Good Poison • Dung Beetles • Decomposers • Good Tobacco
32.3 Ocean Pollution • Inherited Pollution • Prehistoric Hurricanes • Thames River • Pesticide Plants • GM Food Safety • Ocean Fishing Ban • Big Fish, Small Fish • Global Warming • Warming Hurts Rice • Spinach Battery • Lead Soil Solution • World Hunger
32.4 Solar Cooking

SUMMARIZE

32.1 Conservation Biology

Conservation biology is a field of science that is concerned with conserving the Earth's natural resources for this and future generations.

32.2 Biodiversity

Biodiversity is the variety of life on Earth. The majority of biodiversity is located in a relatively small number of **biodiversity hotspots**. Biodiversity has both direct values and indirect values.

Direct Values of Biodiversity

The direct values of biodiversity are:

- Medicinal value (medicines derived from living organisms)
- Agricultural value (crops derived from wild plants)
- Biological pest controls and animal pollinators
- Consumptive use values (food production)

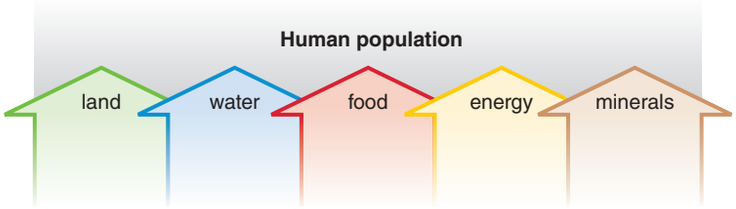
Indirect Values of Biodiversity

Biodiversity in ecosystems contributes to:

- The function of biogeochemical cycles (water, carbon, nitrogen, phosphorus, and others)
- Waste disposal (through the action of decomposers and the ability of natural communities to purify water and take up pollutants)
- Fresh water provision through the water biogeochemical cycle
- Prevention of soil erosion, which occurs naturally in intact ecosystems
- Climate regulation (plants take up carbon dioxide)
- Ecotourism (human enjoyment of a beautiful ecosystem)

32.3 Resources and Environmental Impact

Five resources are maximally used by humans:



Resources are either nonrenewable or renewable. **Nonrenewable resources** are limited in supply:

- Land
- Fossil fuel
- Minerals

Renewable resources are not limited in supply:

Water

- Solar energy
- Food

Land

Human activities, such as habitation, farming, and mining, contribute to erosion, **pollution, desertification, deforestation,** and loss of biodiversity.

Water

Industry and agriculture use most of the freshwater supply. Water supplies are increased by damming rivers and drawing from **aquifers.** As aquifers are depleted, **subsidence,** sinkhole formation, and **saltwater intrusion** can occur. Irrigation of farmlands consumes large amounts of water and can lead to **salinization.** If used by industries, water conservation methods could cut world water consumption by half.

Food

Food comes from growing crops, raising animals, and fishing.

- Modern farming methods increase the food supply, but some methods harm the land, pollute the water, and consume fossil fuels excessively.
- Transgenic plants can increase the food supply and reduce the need for chemicals.
- Raising livestock contributes to water pollution and uses fossil fuel energy.
- The increased number and high efficiency of fishing boats have caused the world fish catch to decline.

Energy

Most of the world's energy is supplied by the burning of **fossil fuels,** a nonrenewable resource, that causes pollutants and **greenhouse gases** to enter the air. Renewable energy sources include wind power, hydropower, and geothermal energy. **Photovoltaic (solar) cells** are being used to access solar energy.

Minerals

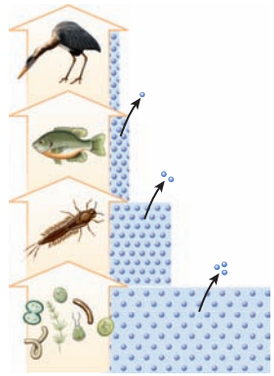
Minerals are a nonrenewable resource that can be mined. These raw materials include sand, gravel, phosphate, and metals. The act of mining causes destruction of the land by erosion, loss of vegetation, and toxic runoff into bodies of water. Some metals are dangerous to human health. Land ruined by mining can take many years to recover.

Synthetic Organic Compounds

Compounds such as **chlorofluorocarbons** (CFCs) are detrimental to the ozone layer and to the health of living things, including humans.

Wastes

Raw sewage and industrial wastes can pollute land and bodies of water. Some industrial wastes cause **biological magnification**, by which toxins become more concentrated as they pass along a food chain.



32.4 Sustainable Societies

A **sustainable society** would use only renewable energy sources, reuse heat and waste materials, and recycle almost everything. It would also provide the same goods and services presently provided and would preserve biodiversity.

CONNECTING THE CONCEPTS

Human actions are placing tremendous stress on the Earth's natural resources. Human-induced climate change is going to decrease the biodiversity on our planet. Sustainable options are available if people are willing to make the necessary changes.

Conservation biology seeks to balance the needs of humans with the needs of the rest of the species on Earth.

The Earth's biodiversity has tremendous value to humans, but it is under stress.

Our overconsumption of resources is leading to climate change.

There are numerous things we can do to become more sustainable.

For more information on the impact humans are having on the biosphere, refer to the following sections:

Section 18.2 explains the importance of pollinators in the evolution of the flowering plants.

Section 30.2 examines the environmental impacts of human population growth.

Section 31.2 examines the relationship between the carbon cycle and global warming.

ASSESS

Testing Yourself

Choose the best answer for each question.

32.1 Conservation Biology

1. Which subfield of biology helps support conservation biology?
   a. ecology
   b. forestry
   c. genetics
   d. evolutionary biology
   e. All of these are correct.
2. What is the main goal of conservation biology?
   a. conserving natural resources for current and future generations
   b. increasing agricultural yields
   c. decreasing human mortality
   d. identifying species that provide a monetary value to humans
   e. All of these are correct.

32.2 Biodiversity

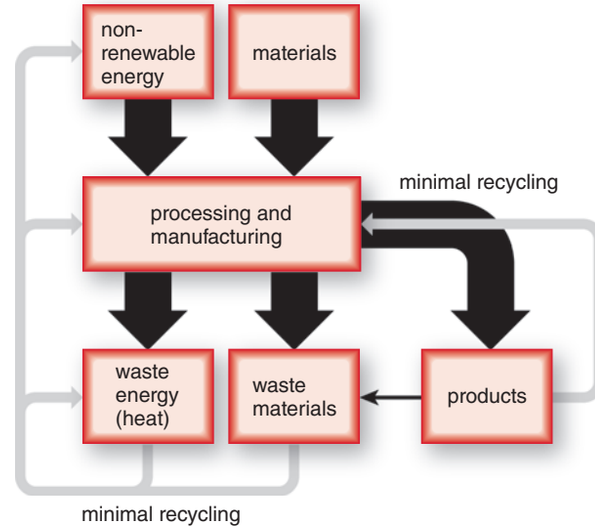
3. Which of the following is an indirect value of biodiversity?
   a. participation in biogeochemical cycles
   b. participation in waste disposal
   c. provision of fresh water
   d. prevention of soil erosion
   e. All of these are correct.
4. The preservation of ecosystems indirectly provides fresh water because
   a. trees produce water as a result of photosynthesis.
   b. animals excrete water-based products.
   c. forests soak up water and release it slowly.
   d. ecosystems promote the growth of bacteria that release water into the environment.
   e. plants trap moisture with their leaves.

32.3 Resources and Environmental Impact

5. Desertification typically happens because
   a. deserts naturally expand in size.
   b. humans allow overgrazing.
   c. desert animals wander into adjacent areas for food.
   d. humans tap into limited water supplies for their water needs in the nearby desert.
6. Soils in tropical rain forests are typically nutrient-poor because
   a. they receive more water than other ecosystems.
   b. they are sandy.
   c. nitrogen-fixing bacteria are absent.
   d. nutrients are tied up in vegetation.
7. Most of the fresh water in the world is used for
   a. drinking.
   b. supporting industry.
   c. irrigating crops.
   d. cooking.
   e. bathing.
8. A major negative effect of the dumping of raw sewage into lakes and rivers is
   a. oxygen depletion.
   b. the buildup of carbon.
   c. a reduction of light penetration into the water.
   d. an increase in populations of small fish.
9. Which of the following will help conserve fresh water?
   a. saltwater intrusion
   b. drought-tolerant crops
   c. increased irrigation
   d. use of water contained in aquifers
10. The first green revolution resulted from the development of
   a. high-responder wheat and rice varieties.
   b. effective irrigation systems.
   c. transgenic crop plants.
   d. crops designed for animal feed.

32.4 Sustainable Societies

11. Show how the following diagram must change in order to develop a sustainable society.



12. Which of the following would help make both urban and rural areas more sustainable?
   a. plant multipurpose trees
   b. use low-flow irrigation to conserve water
   c. use more solar energy
   d. plant cover crops
   e. use green roofs

ENGAGE

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. In 1993 the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service established Emiquon National Wildlife Refuge to restore and protect wetland habitats. The Illinois and Spoon River confluence was re-established to its original floodplain. In order to achieve this, hundreds of acres of farmland was flooded. What might be the positive and negative environmental impacts of flooding the confluence of these two rivers? What direct and indirect benefits could a project like this provide for the residents of central Illinois?
2. Every time a species becomes extinct, we lose a potential source of human medicine. Since we do not know which species are likely to provide valuable medicines, it is difficult to know where to focus conservation efforts. If you were in charge of determining high priorities for species conservation in a country, with the goal of identifying plants with medicinal value, what factors would you consider in making your decisions?
3. Knowing that organisms are closely adapted to their environment, why might global climate change cause the extinction of mammals even living in the tropics?

Appendix A Answer Key

CHAPTER 1

Check Your Progress

(1.1) 1. The basic characteristics of life are: living organisms are organized, they acquire materials and energy, they maintain an internal environment, they respond to stimuli, they can reproduce and develop, and they can adapt to their environment. **2.** From smallest to largest the levels of biological organization are: small molecule, large molecule, cells, tissues, organs, organ systems, complete organism. **3.** Energy flow and chemical cycling occur within organisms and in ecosystems. Each cell or organism must take in energy and materials including nutrients. Producers capture energy and produce food by photosynthesis. The chemicals in this food are cycled through food chains and eventually deposited or released upon death when they become available again to producers. Energy flows from the sun through plants and animals. It eventually dissipates as heat into the atmosphere. **(1.2) 1.** Species, genus, family, order, class, phylum, kingdom, domain. **2.** Natural selection is the process in which populations adapt to pressures imposed by their environments. Over time those individuals having adaptations that make them well suited to their environment will live and produce more offspring than others. Natural selection is an important biological concept that explains population changes, like those seen in antibiotic resistant bacteria. **3.** Descent with modification means that descent occurs from common ancestors to different species, each of which is adapted to a particular environment. Both common ancestry and diversity are important to the study of evolution. **(1.3) 1.** Making observations of our environment is the first step in the scientific method. Constructing a hypothesis based on existing knowledge to explain the observation is next. Making a prediction based on the hypothesis that can be tested by an experiment follows. The results from the experiment either support the hypothesis or not. Further testing and data analysis result in a conclusion being made. Ultimately, with repeated confirmation through experimentation, a scientific theory can be constructed. **2.** Including controls in an experimental design is essential to determine if the experimental variable can explain the hypothesis. **3.** Publishing the results of experiments in journals allows for critical review by others of the hypothesis, predictions, experimental design and data. **(1.4) 1.** Science is a systematic way of acquiring knowledge. Technology is the application of scientific knowledge for human benefit. **2.** Bioethics is the branch of ethics concerned with the development and the consequences of biological technology. This impacts the well-being of the entire world. **3.** Ecosystem degradation, emerging diseases, and climate change are occurring at accelerated rates due to human influences on the world's ecosystems. Biodiversity is being reduced and this threatens all species.

Testing Yourself

1. c; **2.** b; **3.** c; **4.** d; **5.** b; **6.** c; **7.** b; **8.** b; **9.** c; **10.** b; **11.** d; **12.** d

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Domain Archaea gave rise to Eukarya. Kingdom Protista gave rise to plants, animals, and fungi. **2.** Nasal mucus contains an antibacterial chemical. Tears also contain an antibacterial chemical. **3.** If the results from the control group exposed to the placebo are the same as the test group the hypothesis appears to be wrong. The experimental variable being tested does not explain the observation. To test this, a revised hypothesis should be constructed and an experiment conducted testing a different variable.

CHAPTER 2

Check Your Progress

(2.1) 1. Nucleus with protons (+) and neutrons (neutral) surrounded by shells of electrons (–). **2.** Isotopes are atoms of the same element that differ in the number of neutrons. They have the same number of protons but have different mass numbers. Radioactive isotopes are unstable and emit radiation. They can be used in PET scans and to kill cancer cells. **3.** Both are types of chemical bonds. Covalent bonds share pairs of electrons; ionic bonds have one atom giving an electron to another atom. **4.** If an atom has two or more shells, the outer shell (the valence shell) is most stable when it has eight electrons. Elements with incomplete valence shells are more reactive. **5.** Reactants are molecules that participate in a reaction. Products are molecules formed by reactions. **(2.2) 1.** Water molecules are polar with positive hydrogen atoms in one molecule being attracted to the negative oxygen atoms in the other. This is a hydrogen bond. The properties of water are related to its polarity and its ability to form hydrogen bonds. **2.** Water has unique properties. It is a solvent, its molecules are adhesive and cohesive, it has a high surface tension, it has a high heat capacity, and it is less dense than ice. **3.** Water is a polar molecule and its special properties come from its ability to form hydrogen bonds. **(2.3) 1.** Acids in solution release hydrogen ions creating solutions with higher hydrogen ion concentrations. Bases in solution either take up hydrogen ions or release hydroxide ions. Basic solutions have low hydrogen ion concentrations. **2.** The pH scale indicates the number of hydrogen ions in a solution. A value below 7 indicates an acid and a value above 7 indicates a base. **3.** Buffers in fluids of the body resist pH changes by taking up excess hydrogen or hydroxide ions.

Testing Yourself

1. a; **2.** c; **3.** c; **4.** a; **5.** b; **6.** a; **7.** b; **8.** c; **9.** b; **10.** c; **11.** c; **12.** a

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Surface tension produced by hydrogen bonding keeps the surface of the water smooth and continuous. Drops of water cling to your skin due to the adhesiveness of water. When this water evaporates it cools your skin because of water's high heat of vaporization. A lot of body heat is removed as water evaporates. **2.** Silicon, with one extra shell, is too big to form the same varied molecules as carbon. **3.** The chemicals in antacids act as buffers absorbing excess hydrogen ions in the stomach. **4.** The acids in acid precipitation can change the pH of the water environments of an ecosystem if they exceed the buffering capacity present there. Altered pH levels affect the homeostatic processes of the environment causing damage.

CHAPTER 3

Check Your Progress

(3.1) 1. Organic molecules contain carbon and hydrogen. These are molecules that make up cells and organisms. **2.** Carbon is small and can bond with up to four other molecules. The C—C bond is stable. **3.** The functional group of an organic molecule determines the reactivity and chemical properties of the molecule. **(3.2) 1.** Monosaccharides—glucose; disaccharides—maltose; polysaccharides—glycogen. Starch is a polysaccharide used for energy storage. Cellulose is a polysaccharide that provides structural components to cells. **2.** Fats and oils—olive oil as an energy source; phospholipids—primary component of plasma membrane; steroids—cholesterol as a component of plasma membrane and precursor to sex steroids. **3.** Structural proteins provide support. Enzymes are proteins that function as catalysts in metabolism. There are channel and carrier proteins in the plasma membrane. Antibodies are proteins which provide defense. Some hormones which function in regulation are proteins. **4.** Primary—sequence of amino acids; secondary—alpha helix and pleated sheets; tertiary—globular shape; quaternary—more than one polypeptide **5.** Nucleic acids are polymers of nucleotides each of which has a phosphate group, a 5-carbon sugar, and a nitrogen-containing base. **6.** DNA encodes the information that determines the sequence of amino acids in a polypeptide.

Testing Yourself

1. c; **2.** d; **3.** b; **4.** b; **5.** a; **6.** a; **7.** a; **8.** a; **9.** c; **10.** b; **11.** d; **12.** b; **13.** d; **14.** c; **15.** a; **16.** a; **17.** c; **18.** d

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. a. The double bond in the unsaturated fatty acid creates a bend in the chain. The level of linolenic

acid increased following exposure of plants to cold temperatures. **b.** Canola oil remains liquid, while butter (the saturated fat) is a solid. The kinks in the fatty acid chains of the unsaturated fatty acid prevent close packing of the chains, and the oil remains fluid. **c.** The fatty acids within the plasma membrane of cold-tolerant plants are mostly unsaturated, whereas the membrane fatty acids of cold-intolerant plants are more saturated and tend to solidify at lower temperatures. This explains why cold-intolerant plants, such as tropical plants, are often damaged by exposure to low temperatures. **2.** A protein's ability to function correctly is dependent upon its shape. In this case, the amino acid with the polar *R* group may interact with other polar *R* groups within the protein and change the enzyme's shape and its ability to function. **3**. Mutations in DNA that change the sequence of amino acids occur over time. The longer the time since two species diverged, the greater the chance for mutations to occur. Measuring the differences in the amino acid sequences of the protein in two species can be used as a clock to determine how long ago they diverged.

CHAPTER 4

Check Your Progress

(4.1) 1. Most cells are too small to be seen with the naked eye. Microscopes allow us to see these cells. **2.** frog egg—light; animal cell—light or electron; amino acid—electron; chloroplast—light or electron; plant cell—light or electron. **3.** Enough surface area of the cell is needed for the adequate exchange of gases, nutrients and wastes. (**4.2) 1.** Phospholipid bilayer including cholesterol molecules and embedded proteins. **2.** The proteins embedded in the bilayer have a pattern called a mosaic and the entire bilayer is semi-fluid with the molecules being able to move within the structure. **3.** Channel—allow passage of certain molecules; Transport—passage of ions and molecules; Cell recognition—distinguish between foreign and own cells; Receptor—binds signal molecules; Enzymatic—participate in metabolic reactions; Junction—form cell junctions between cells. (**4.3) 1.** Plasma membrane, semifluid interior called the cytoplasm, genetic material (DNA). **2.** Prokaryotic cells store their DNA in a region of the cytoplasm called the nucleoid. Eukaryotic cells have a membrane bound nucleus that houses the DNA. **3.** Nucleoid—region of the cytoplasm that stores DNA in prokaryotes; Cell wall—maintains the shape of the cell providing strength; Ribosomes—site of protein synthesis; Flagella—rotating filament that propels the cell. (**4.4) 1.** Nucleus: nuclear envelope—double membrane phospholipid that separates nucleus from cytoplasm; Nuclear pore—openings in the nuclear envelope that allow the cell nucleus to communicate with the cytoplasm; Chromatin—network of DNA and proteins that contains genetic information; Ribosomes: composed of a small and large subunit that together use the information of the RNA from the nucleus to synthesize proteins. **2.** Nuclear envelope—houses DNA; Rough endoplasmic membrane—contains ribosomes and forms transport vesicles that take proteins to other parts of the cell; Smooth endoplasmic reticulum—synthesizes tissue specific lipids; Golgi apparatus—functions as a transfer station which receives transport vesicles from the endoplasmic reticulum, modifies the molecules within the vesicles, packages modified molecules, and sends them out in outgoing transport vesicles; vesicles like lysozymes which digest molecules. **3.** Contractile vacuoles rid the cell of excess water; Digestive vacuoles break down nutrients; Storage vacuoles in plants can hold water, sugars, salts, pigments, or toxic chemicals; Adipocytes in animals store lipids. Without vacuoles cells would not be able to regulate water and ion content, break down certain nutrients, or store compounds. **4.** Chloroplasts contain pigments that capture solar energy which is used to synthesize carbohydrates. Mitochondria break down carbohydrates to produce ATP. Chloroplasts are larger and are found in plants and algae. Mitochondria are smaller and are in all eukaryotic cells. Both are bound by a double membrane. **5.** Cytoskeleton proteins maintain the shape of the cell and work with motor proteins to create movement. The cytoskeleton contains microtubules, intermediate filaments, and actin filaments. The motor protein myosin interacts with actin filaments to create amoeboid movement and muscle contraction. The motor proteins kinesin and dynein transport vesicles along the microtubules. **(4.5) 1.** Cell walls provide strength to the cell structure as well as defining the cell's shape. **2.** The extracellular matrix is a network outside the cell of fibrous proteins and polysaccharides produced by a cell. While collagen and elastin are proteins that are common to the matrix, its composition and rigidity can vary widely. **3.** Adhesion junctions are formed when internal cytoplasmic plaques are joined by intercellular filaments. They are sturdy and flexible structures that hold cells together. Tight junctions are created when plasma membrane proteins attach to those of another cell producing a barrier between the cells. Gap junctions form when identical membrane channels join between two cells. The channels allow small molecules to pass between the cells and they add strength to the cell.

Testing Yourself

1. a; **2.** b; **3.** b; **4.** d; **5.** d; **6.** c; **7.** a; **8. a.** vesicle; **b.** centrioles; **c.** mitochondrion; **d.** rough endoplasmic reticulum; **e.** smooth endoplasmic reticulum; **f.** lysosome; **g.** Golgi apparatus; **h.** nucleus; **9.** a; **10.** c; **11.** c; **12.** a; **13.** c; **14.** d; **15.** e

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. a. A dietician might suggest a diet that excludes long-chain fatty acids. **b.** Lysosomes are similar to peroxisomes in that they are single-membrane organelles containing enzymes that break down cellular compounds. **2.** Without mitochondria a cell could not produce ATP from nutrients aerobically but would instead have to rely on glycolysis for ATP production. Giardia may have increased its ability to metabolize nutrients using glycolysis. **3.** Without a boundary a cell could not be different from its environment. The plasma membrane bounds the cell, differentiating it from its surroundings while allowing some communication between the cell and its environment.

CHAPTER 5

Check Your Progress

(5.1) 1. Potential energy is stored energy; kinetic energy is energy of motion. Pulling back on an arrow in a bow is potential energy. When the arrow is shot from the bow, it turns into kinetic energy. **2.** First Law—Energy cannot be created or destroyed but it can be changed from one form to another. Second Law—Energy cannot be changed from one form to another without loss of usable energy. **3.** Cells carry out many energy requiring processes and reactions to maintain their organization while the entropy of the universe increases. (**5.2) 1.** ATP is produced through cellular respiration. ATP is unstable so it cannot be stored. **2.** Myosin combines with ATP prior to its breakdown. Release of ADP + P causes myosin to change position and pull on the actin filament. **3.** Energy flows from the sun to the Earth through all living things. This flow maintains the levels of biological organization from molecules to organisms to ecosystems. (**5.3) 1.** The reactions in a pathway each produce a product that is usable in one or more other ways. Also, the reactions of a metabolic pathway allow energy to be used or generated in increments. **2.** A slight change in shape of the active site of an enzyme allows the substrate to fit more easily into that active site. **3.** It ensures that the enzyme is active only when product levels are low and more product is needed. (**5.4) 1.** All substances move from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration and no energy is required. **2.** In hypotonic environments cells gain water; in isotonic environments cells do not gain or lose water; in hypertonic environments cells lose water. **3.** Active transport moves molecules or ions across the plasma membrane. It is used to collect or absorb molecules against their concentration gradients. The movement of NaCl by active transport is used in nerve conduction. **4.** Exocytosis transports materials out of a cell; endocytosis transports materials into the cell; phagocytosis transports large materials such as food into the cell; pinocytosis transports liquid and small particles into the cell; receptor-mediated endocytosis forms a vesicle around molecules and their receptors.

Testing Yourself

1. d; **2.** b; **3.** b; **4.** d; **5.** d; **6.** c; **7.** c; **8.** b; **9.** a; **10.** d; **11.** c; **12.** b; **13.** e; **14.** d; **15.** c

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Using GTP instead of ATP as an energy source for a subset of enzymes allows the cell to maintain separate "pools" of energy available for these reactions. For example, using GTP to fuel protein synthesis allows a cell to continue making proteins even when energy levels (the ATP pool) are low. It also allows protein synthesis to continue when oxidative phosphorylation, the process by which most of a cell's ATP is produced, becomes blocked. Since GTP is produced directly from the citric acid cycle, energy for protein synthesis is still available. **2.** A normal channel protein allows chloride to leave the cells. When chloride leaves, water follows by osmosis, keeping the outer surfaces hydrated. Since the defective cystic fibrosis chloride channel does not allow chloride to leave the cell, water remains inside, and the cell surface becomes covered with a thick

mucus. **3.** The composition of the archaeal plasma membrane is different from that of bacteria and eukaryotes. It is more resistant to disruption from heat. In addition, archaeal enzymes have evolved to function at higher temperatures without being denatured.

CHAPTER 6

Check Your Progress

(6.1) 1. The stroma of a chloroplast is a fluid filled area surrounded by a double membrane. Within the stroma are membrane bound flattened sacs called thylakoids. Stacks of thylakoids are called grana. **2.** solar energy + H_2O + CO_2 → (CH_2O) + O_2. **3.** Reduction—when a molecule gains electrons (e^-) and hydrogen ions (H^+); Oxidation—when a molecule gives up electrons (e^-) and hydrogen ions (H^+). **(6.2) 1.** Because plants have accessory pigments as well as chlorophyll *a* and *b* grouped in the pigment complex, they are able to gather solar energy of a broader range of wavelengths. **2.** Electrons are removed from water as it is split by PS II. They are passed from PS II to PS I through an electron transport chain. Electrons from PSI are transferred to $NADP^+$ as it becomes NADPH. **3.** The electrons and hydrogen ions removed from molecules in oxidation reactions are available to be added to molecules in reduction reactions. **(6.3) 1.** The Calvin cycle uses the energy from the light reactions to fix CO_2, reduce CO_2, and regenerate RuBP. It generates molecules of glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate which plants use to make glucose. **2.** The ATP and NADPH used in the Calvin cycle are generated by the light reactions. **3.** Plants can use G3P to make all the molecules they need including lipids, glucose, sucrose, starch and cellulose. **(6.4) 1.** In C_3 plants such as wheat, carbon dioxide is taken up by the Calvin cycle directly into the mesophyll cells and the first detectable molecule is a C_3 molecule. In C_4 plants such as corn, carbon dioxide fixation results in C_4 molecules in the mesophyll cells. The C_4 molecule releases carbon dioxide to the Calvin cycle in the bundle sheath cells. **2.** In C_4 plants the mesophyll cells are exposed to carbon dioxide. The bundle sheath cells, where the Calvin cycle occurs, are not. **3.** CAM plants are better able to conserve water and live in hot, arid regions.

Testing Yourself

1. c; **2.** a; **3.** d; **4.** a; **5.** a; **6.** d; **7.** b; **8.** d; **9.** c; **10.** b; **11**. c

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. The alga was producing O_2 wherever, along its length, its chlorophyll was able to absorb the wavelength of light energy it could use in photosynthesis. The bacteria were congregated wherever this O_2 was produced and were using it for cellular respiration. **2.** Both photosynthesis and vision are adapted to utilizing this portion of the radiant energy spectrum, which is the most abundant high-energy radiation source available. **3.** Leaves have a relatively large surface area for absorbing light energy. **4.** As temperatures rise in North America C_3 plants might not be able to survive while C_4 plants will have an advantage. **5.** As the world warms, C_4 weeds are proliferating. The cellulose in these weeds, as well as cellulose in grasses, wood waste, and crop residues, is a potential source of carbohydrate for ethanol production if the technology for breaking down cellulose can be improved.

CHAPTER 7

Check Your Progress

(7.1) 1. Cellular respiration provides the energy in the form of ATP that is needed for cellular activities. **2.** During cellular respiration glucose is oxidized to form CO_2, O_2 is reduced to form H_2O, and energy is produced. This is the reverse of the reaction for photosynthesis. **3.** Glycolysis—breakdown of glucose to 2 molecules of pyruvate in the cytoplasm; prep reaction—pyruvate is broken down to a 2-carbon acetyl group carried by CoA in the matrix of the mitochondria with the production of CO_2 and NADH; citric acid cycle—in the matrix of the mitochondria oxidation of molecules occurs, NADH and $FADH_2$ are produced, and CO_2 is released; electron transport chain—electrons are passed down a series of carrier molecules in the cristae of the mitochondria, NADH and $FADH_2$ give up electrons, energy is captured as ATP, O_2 accepts electrons to become H_2O. **(7.2) 1.** Glycolysis is the first step in cellular respiration. It occurs in the cytoplasm of the cell and requires no oxygen. Alternatively, the citric acid cycle and the electron transport chain occur within the mitochondria. The electron transport chain requires oxygen. Pyruvate, produced by glycolysis, feeds into the citric acid cycle. **2.** During the energy-investment step, the breakdown of ATP provides the phosphate groups that activate substrates. During the energy-harvesting steps, NADH and ATP are produced. **3.** 2 ATP molecules per glucose molecule. **(7.3) 1.** Fermentation which does not require oxygen consists of glycolysis followed by a reduction of pyruvate by NADH to produce lactate or ethanol and CO_2. It occurs outside of the mitochondria. Cellular respiration uses oxygen, occurs in mitochondria, and results in a higher yield of ATP. **2.** During lactate fermentation pyruvate is reduced by NADH producing NAD^+ which is recycled back to glycolysis to accept more H^+. This keeps glycolysis going, supplying some ATP. **3.** Humans produce lactate; yeast produces ethyl alcohol and carbon dioxide. **(7.4) 1.** The preparatory reaction produces a substrate that can enter the citric acid cycle. The citric acid cycle generates CO_2, NADH, $FADH_2$ and ATP at the substrate level. The electron transport chain passes electrons along a series of carriers and captures energy that is used in the production of ATP. **2.** Oxygen is the final electron acceptor of the electron transport chain. It becomes reduced to form water. **3.** Preparatory reactions—pyruvate is oxidized and CO_2 is given off, NAD^+ accepts a H^+ to make NADH, a C_2 acetyl group is made and attached to CoA; Citric acid cycle—the acetyl group is oxidized, CO_2 is released, NAD^+ and FAD accept H^+ producing NADH and $FADH_2$, ATP is produced at the substrate level; Electron transport chain—electrons are passed along a series of carriers, NADH and $FADH_2$ provide electrons, energy is captured for ATP production, O_2 is reduced making water. **(7.5) 1.** For each glucose molecule 2 ATPs are produced during glycolysis, 2 ATPs during the citric acid cycle, and a maximum of 34 ATPs as a result of the electron transport chain for a total of 38 ATPs. Different cells produce less ATP depending on metabolic differences. **2.** Each fat or oil molecule contains three long-chain fatty acids and one glycerol. Many more acetyl-CoAs result from the breakdown of the three fatty acids than from the breakdown of one glucose molecule. Therefore many more ATPs result from the breakdown of a fat than from glucose. **3.** The amino groups are removed from the amino acids and excreted as urea. The hydrocarbon backbones can enter the cellular respiration pathway at pyruvate, at acetyl-CoA, or during the citric acid cycle.

Testing Yourself

1. a; **2.** c; **3.** a; **4.** c; **5.** b; **6.** b; **7.** a; **8.** b; **9.** c; **10.** b; **11.** c; **12.** c; **13.** c; **14.** c; **15.** d

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Malonate is a product of one enzymatic reaction in the citric acid cycle and a substrate of the next enzyme in the cycle. Due to a feedback mechanism, excessive amounts of malonate will inhibit the enzyme that produced it, thereby stopping the citric acid cycle. **2.** As we age, our mitochondria lose efficiency and do not break down fats as quickly. This causes fats to accumulate in cells. Since fats and oils enter the cellular respiration pathway as acetyl-CoA, there are plenty of citric acid cycle substrates to create energy, and more glucose is not needed. Since the cells already have plenty of energy, they ignore the insulin signal and do not readily take up glucose. Thus, fatty acid accumulation can lead to insulin resistance. **3**. Mitochondria and some prokaryotes are similar in form and function. Mitochondria resemble free-living prokaryotic cells in that their inner membrane also has invaginations. The inner membrane of mitochondria like that of the prokaryote is the site of a metabolic pathway. **4.** Humans cannot live without the electron transport chains working in cells. Our metabolic need for ATP cannot be met by just glycolysis and the citric acid cycle.

CHAPTER 8

Check Your Progress

(8.1) 1. Single-celled organisms divide in order to reproduce. Multicellular organisms must undergo cellular reproduction in order to develop from a single cell. Mature organisms need to replenish worn-out cells and repair injuries. **2.** Before cell division the chromosomes are duplicated to produce two sister chromatids, each of which are held together at a centromere. Each chromatid is identical to the other. **3.** Chromatin is wound around histones to produce nucleosomes. The histones and the nucleosomes package the chromatin so that it fits inside the nucleus. **(8.2) 1.** The cell cycle is an orderly set of steps with checkpoints that is followed when cells duplicate. It ensures accuracy of the process. **2.** During interphase the cell is performing its normal functions. In the G_1 phase organelles are duplicated. During S phase DNA is duplicated, and in G_2 growth occurs and proteins are synthesized that are needed for cell division. **3.** Prophase—chromosomes condense and consist of two sister chromatids; Metaphase—chromosomes align along the spindle equator; Anaphase—sister chromatids separate and

move to each pole becoming daughter chromosomes. Telophase—spindle disappears and nuclear envelope forms around the daughter chromosomes. **4.** The cleavage furrow formed in animal cells between the two daughter nuclei contracts until the two daughter cells separate. In plants the rigid cell wall does not permit cytokinesis by furrowing. Instead the cell builds a new plasma membrane and cell wall between the two daughter cells. **(8.3) 1.** Checkpoints regulate the cell cycle by ensuring that each step is completed correctly before the next step begins. **2.** Internal and external signals are molecules that control the checkpoints of the cell cycle. Internal signals control the G_1 to S and the G_2 to M transitions. External signals stimulate the cell to go through the cell cycle. **3.** If apoptosis is not regulated the balance between controlled cell death and the cell cycle would be disrupted. Normal cell levels would be altered. (**8.4) 1.** Proto-oncogenes code for proteins that promote the cell cycle and inhibit apoptosis. Tumor suppressor genes code for proteins that inhibit the cell cycle and promote apoptosis. Mutations in these genes can lead to unregulated cell growth. **2.** Teleomere shortening regulates cell division by limiting the number of times a cell can divide. Without it cells continue to divide indefinitely. Rearrangement of segments of chromosomes results in translocations which can disrupt genes that regulate the cell cycle. This can lead to cancer. **3.** The *RB* gene is a tumor suppressor gene that when mutated leads to retinoblastoma. Mutations in both alleles are required for cancer to occur. The *RET* gene is a proto-oncogene that when mutated can lead to thyroid cancer. It is autosomal dominant so only 1 mutated allele is needed to increase the likelihood of cancer. **(8.5) 1.** Cancer cells lack differentiation, have abnormal nuclei, do not undergo apoptosis, form tumors, undergo metastasis, and promote angiogenesis. **2.** Treatments include: removing the tumor surgically, radiation therapy, chemotherapy, hormonal therapy, and inhibiting angiogenesis. **3.** Evidence exists that behaviors including not smoking, avoiding sun exposure, moderating alcohol intake, and following a protective diet to maintain a healthy body weight and obtain proper nutrients, can reduce a person's risk of cancer.

Testing Yourself

1. b; **2.** a; **3.** d; **4.** a; **5.** c; **6.** b; **7. a.** G_1; **b.** S; **c.** G_2; **d.** prophase; **e.** metaphase; **f.** anaphase; **g.** telophase; **h.** cytokinesis; **8.** a; **9.** d; **10.** c; **11.** b; **12.** a; **13.** b; **14.** c; **15.** a; **16.** a; **17.** d

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1.a Cancer results from a series of mutations that accumulate in cells over a lifetime. It could be that the appearance of different cancers at different times is due to some cancers requiring a larger number of mutations to occur before they develop. Cancers that require more mutations to occur would more likely occur after a longer period of time.**1.b.** Documentation of the types of cancers that appeared over time in the population exposed to the radiation from Fukushima compared to a similar population not exposed to the radiation would test the idea. Care would be needed to restrict both populations from other cancer risks during the duration of the study. **2.** Sister chromatids of chromosomes (inside the nucleus) must link to microtubules produced by centrosomes (outside the nucleus) in order to be pulled apart during mitosis. Therefore, microtubules cannot attach to and separate chromatids if the nuclear membrane is present. The current hypothesis is that cytoplasmic dynein, a molecular motor protein, tears the nuclear envelope and transports pieces of the membrane away from the area along microtubules. Once pieces are torn away, the nuclear envelope loses shape and cytoplasmic proteins flow into the nuclear region. The rush of cytoplasmic proteins is believed to stimulate chromosome condensation and spindle formation. So, dismantling the nuclear membrane is coordinated with chromosome behavior during mitosis. **3.** Checkpoints ensure that when the cell cycle is finished, the chromosomal content is normal. If the chromosomal content is abnormal, then cell death or cancer can become prevalent. **4.a.** BPA-like hormones could act as an external signal stimulating cells to divide. **4.b.** Because BPA acts like a hormone very few BPA molecules are needed to initiate the pathway. Also, the signaling pathway is amplified when executed.

CHAPTER 9

Check Your Progress

(9.1) 1. Meiosis is a type of nuclear division that reduces the number of chromosomes by half and reorganizes the chromosomes to produce genetically different gametes. This creates genetic diversity with each offspring being unique. **2.** Adult humans produce gametes by meiosis. A haploid sperm fertilizes a haploid egg and a diploid zygote is formed which divides by mitosis to develop into an adult. **3.** Chromosomes occur in pairs with each member called a homologous chromosome. One member comes from each parent. They carry the same types of genes but can vary as to the traits they code for. During the cell cycle each homologous chromosome duplicates to form two identical sister chromatids. **4.** Crossing-over shuffles genetic information between nonsister chromatids of a homologous pair, altering the types of alleles on the chromosomes. The chromosomes from each parent are shuffled to produce new combinations unique to the daughter cells. These processes create genetic variation which is the basis of evolution. (**9.2) 1.** During prophase I crossing-over between nonsister chromatids occurs. During metaphase I the tetrads align at the equator with each homologue facing a spindle pole. Whether the homologue came from the father or from the mother does not matter in how they line up. Genetic variability in the daughter cells is increased by these processes. **2.** During metaphase I tetrads (2 homologous chromosomes each consisting of 2 chromatids) line up at the spindle equator. During metaphase II the dyads (1 chromosome consisting of 2 sister chromatids) align at the spindle equator. **3.** During meiosis I the chromosome number is halved and the genetic information is reshuffled. During meiosis II the cells reproduce like in mitosis, except they are haploid. (**9.3) 1.** Mitosis produces 2 daughter cells while meiosis produces 4. **2.** Mitosis produces daughter cells which are diploid while meiosis produces haploid daughter cells. **3.** In meiosis I crossing-over during synapsis occurs and homologues are separated into the daughter nuclei irrespective of their being from the father or mother. Genetically different nuclei are created. The chromosome number is halved. During meiosis II the cells replicate like in mitosis except that they are haploid. Mitosis results in daughter cells which are identical to the parents. (**9.4) 1.** If nondisjunction occurs during meiosis I or meiosis II, a gamete and therefore a zygote, could have an abnormal chromosome number. **2.** Monosomy results when an individual is missing one chromosome. Trisomy results when an individual has one extra chromosome. **3.** Abnormalities in the sex chromosomes occur only in the X or Y chromosomes. Autosomal abnormalities occur in any of the other 22 pairs of chromosomes. Newborns with abnormal number of sex chromosomes are more likely to survive than those with abnormal numbers of autosomal chromosomes.

Testing Yourself

1. d; **2.** a; **3.** d; **4.** a; **5.** f; **6.** h; **7.** c; **8.** g; **9.** b; **10.** e; **11.** c; **12.** b; **13.** b; **14.** c; **15.** d; **16.** c

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. A mosaic such as (46, XY/47, XXY) may result from nondisjunction occurring during mitosis, especially at a very early stage of development. A fertile Klinefelter mosaic may arise from an individual in which normal (46, XY) embryonic cells, produced by the mutation, gave rise to the testes. **2.** Hypotheses to explain the relationship between the increase in Down syndrome with advancing maternal age include: (1) The older a woman is, the longer her oocytes have been arrested in meiosis, and the higher the risk that these oocytes have been exposed to mutagens which might cause nondisjunction; (2) A woman may have a pool of oocytes resulting from nondisjunction which take longer to mature, and thus are more commonly released as she ages; (3) Estrogen levels (which control the rate of meiosis in developing oocytes) drop with advancing maternal age and may slow down the rate of meiosis. This might allow nondisjunction to occur more frequently in older women. **3.** Large amounts of genetic variability in a population allow the population to more quickly adapt to changing conditions. For example, if a population is suddenly exposed to a new pathogen, it is likely that at least a few individuals will be able to survive the pathogen and the species would continue.

CHAPTER 10

Check Your Progress

(10.1) 1. Mendel's experiments explained the patterns of inheritance of traits seen in families and the variation between offspring seen from one generation to the next. **2.** The offspring resulting from a cross between two individuals who are heterozygous for one trait (*Tt*) will produce three different genotypes, *TT, Tt, tt* in a 1:2:1 ratio. Because the homozygous dominant (*TT*) and the heterozygous (*Tt*) individuals look alike, the phenotypic ratio will be 3:1. **3.** Three sixteenths (18.75%) of the offspring will be short with green pods. **4.** Traits are carried by a homologous pair of chromosomes. One homologue carries the trait from the mother and the other carries the trait from the

father. When following two traits, two homologous pairs are considered. During meiosis the homologues separate from each other independently and go into different gametes no matter whether they came from the father or the mother. All combinations of chromosomes are possible. This is what Mendel saw with his experiments with peas. (**10.2**) **1.** An autosomal recessive pedigree (Fig. 10.9) shows that affected children can have unaffected parents, that heterozygotes have a normal phenotype, and that both males and females are affected equally. The individual at the asterisk is heterozygous because she had affected children. An autosomal dominant pedigree (Fig. 10.10) shows that affected children have at least one affected parent, that heterozygotes are affected, and that males and females are equally affected. The individual at the asterisk is heterozygous because he had one unaffected child. **2.** With an autosomal recessive disorder like cystic fibrosis, individuals with normal phenotypes can be heterozygous (they can carry a dominant and recessive allele). Each parent is capable of producing gametes with the recessive allele which can combine in the offspring to produce the disorder. **3.** Alkaptonuria is an autosomal recessive disorder in which individuals lack a functional copy of the gene for homogentisate oxygenase. They are unable to break down homogentisic acid. Osteogenesis imperfecta is an autosomal dominant disorder in which individuals have mutations in two genes which leads to deformed type 1 collagen, resulting in brittle and weak bones. (**10.3**) **1.** Incomplete dominance is exhibited when the heterozygote has an intermediate phenotype between that of either homozygote. An example is pink four-o'clock flowers. **2.** Codominance is exhibited when both alleles are fully expressed. Possible blood type genotypes: I^AI^A, I^Ai, I^BI^B, I^Bi, ii, I^AI^B. **3.** Polygenic traits are governed by several sets of alleles often on different chromosomes. The dominant alleles have an additive effect creating a bell-shaped distribution curve of phenotypes. Multifactorial traits are controlled by polygenes that are subject, in varying degrees, to environmental influences. Pleiotropy occurs when one gene has more than one effect producing a syndrome. **4.** If genes are linked on one chromosome then they are inherited together. In a two-trait cross the assumption is that the alleles are on nonhomologous chromosomes and will be subject to independent assortment. (**10.4**) **1.** Since males are XY, some sperm will contain an X chromosome and others will contain a Y. **2.** With X-linked recessive inheritance (Fig. 10.25) more males than females are affected, affected sons can have parents with normal phenotypes, affected female offspring have an affected father and the mother must be affected or be a carrier. With autosomal recessive inheritance, males and females are affected equally, heterozygotes have a normal phenotype, and affected children can have unaffected parents. **3.** Color blindness and Duchenne muscular dystrophy are sex-linked disorders.

Testing Yourself

1. c; **2.** d; **3.** d; **4. a.** *TG*; **b.** *tg*; **c.** *TtGg*; **d.** *TTGG*; **e.** *TtGg*; **f.** *TTgg*; **g.** *Ttgg*; **h.** *TtGG*; **i.** *ttGG*; **j.** *TtGg*; **k.** *ttGg*; **l.** *ttgg*; **5.** a; **6.** b; **7.** a; **8.** b; **9.** a; **10.** a; **11.** a; **12.** e; **13.** e; **14.** d; **15. a.** X^bY; **b.** X^BX^b; **c.** X^BY; **d.** X^BY; **e.** X^bY

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. a. *CcPp* × *CcPp* would produce 9/16 purple (*C_P_*) and 7/16 white offspring (*C_pp*, *ccP_*, or *ccpp*). **2. a.** Set up a cross between a true-breeding strain of flies that have the trait with a true-breeding strain that does not. If no offspring of the cross have the trait it is recessive. If all the offspring have the trait it is dominant. **b.** *Drosophila* have lots of offspring, a short generation time, can be housed and raised inexpensively, and the ethics of treatment of the flies is broader than with humans. **3.a.** The technology could be used to produce only female offspring which reduces the probability of an X-linked genetic disorder showing as a phenotype. **b.** Parents could select the sex of their children based on cultural preferences thus distorting the balance of males to females in the population.

CHAPTER 11

Check Your Progress

(**11.1**) **1.** DNA contains a series of nucleotides made up of a deoxyribose sugar, a phosphate, and a nitrogen containing base of either cytosine, thymine, adenine, or guanine. Two strands of nucleotides are arranged antiparallel to each other and are twisted into a helix with cytosine arranged to hydrogen bond with guanine and adenine with thymine. **2.** DNA contains the sugar deoxyribose, RNA has the sugar ribose. DNA has the base thymine, RNA has the base uracil. DNA is double stranded, RNA is single stranded. **3.** Helicase unwinds the helix structure; DNA polymerase adds nucleotides to the growing complementary new strand in a 5′–3′ direction; DNA ligase seals any breaks in the deoxyribose-phosphate backbone. **4.** mRNA carries the genetic information from DNA in the nucleus to the ribosome in the cytoplasm; rRNA combines with proteins in the cytoplasm to form ribosomes where proteins are synthesized; tRNA transfers amino acids to the growing polypeptide at the ribosome. (**11.2**) **1.** Genetic information flows from DNA to RNA to proteins. DNA is transcribed into mRNA which moves from the nucleus to the ribosome in the cytoplasm where it is translated into proteins. **2.** The mRNA strand is made in transcription, rRNA composes the ribosome subunits which attach to the mRNA strand, and tRNA molecules bring the amino acids to the translation complex. **3.** During transcription, RNA complementary to a portion of DNA is formed in the nucleus. The mRNA is processed and then moves to the cytoplasm where it attaches to the small ribosomal subunit. Ribosomes are made up of ribosomal RNA and proteins arranged as large and small subunits. This is the beginning of translation. The large ribosomal subunit joins the small unit and a tRNA-amino acid complex containing an anticodon binds to the codon on the mRNA. The amino acid is added to the growing polypeptide. (**11.3**) **1.** In prokaryotes a single promoter controls transcription in a unit of several genes. In eukaryotes there is a promoter for each gene. Prokaryotes regulate gene expression mostly by controlling transcription. Eukaryotes have many mechanisms for controlling gene expression such as turning on or off a gene, by regulating the speed at which it is expressed, and controlling how long it is expressed. **2.** Eukaryotes can regulate gene expression in the nucleus by chromatin condensation, DNA transcription control, and by mRNA processing. In the cytoplasm mRNA translation can be allowed or delayed, mRNA life time can vary, and the time that proteins exist can be controlled. **3.** There are many transcription factors in eukaryotes that form a complex that binds to DNA to help separate the DNA strands and promote the positioning of RNA polymerase. Because there are many transcription factors working together, a higher level of control over transcription is possible.

Testing Yourself

1. a. sugar-phosphate backbone; **b.** base; **c.** hydrogen bonds; **d.** sugar; **e.** nucleotide; **2.** a; **3.** d; **4.** a; **5.** d; **6.** b; **7.** b; **8.** a; **9.** c; **10.** c; **11.** b; **12.** b; **13.** b; **14.** d; **15.** b

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. DNA from the heat-killed virulent strain contains genes that make them virulent. Somehow, the living non-virulent bacteria obtained some of this DNA, converting them into a virulent strain. **2.** A medicine could be developed whose effect on gene regulation was inheritable. The medicine could be given just once and the effect of the medicine would be passed on to following generations. **3.a.** The basic requirements of an effective genetic information system include: its being able to store genetic information that is inheritable; that the information it stores can be expressed; that it contains variations that allow for evolution; that it can be packaged inside a cell. **b.** If the genetic information turns out to be very similar to DNA then it implies that DNA has unique qualities that are universal. If the genetic information is stored in a different type of molecule then different storage molecules are possible.

CHAPTER 12

Check Your Progress

(**12.1**) **1.** Bacterial plasmids are rings of accessory DNA that serve as vectors to carry foreign DNA. **2.** PCR is used to produce many copies of a specific segment of DNA which is usually a few hundred base pairs long. **3.** DNA fingerprinting can be used to identify sources of DNA such as which bacteria or virus is causing an infection, people involved in a crime scene, parents of a child, or unidentified bodies. In addition it can be used to detect mutations that can lead to an increased risk of disease. (**12.2**) **1.** The goal of reproductive cloning is to create an identical copy of an individual organism. The goal of therapeutic cloning is to produce cell tissue lines that can be used in the study of cell specialization or to provide cells for treating illnesses. **2.** With reproductive cloning the diploid nucleus is removed from a cell of the organism to be cloned that is in the G_0 stage of the cell cycle. That nucleus is introduced into an egg cell that has had its own nucleus removed. The egg is cultured to produce an embryo which is implanted into the uterus of a surrogate mother who brings it to term. **3.** With therapeutic cloning a diploid nucleus is removed from a somatic cell in the G_0 stage of the cell cycle and is fused with an egg which has had its own nucleus removed. The diploid egg is cultured

to produce an embryo which is then placed under specific culture conditions to produce specialized cell types. (**12.3) 1.** Transgenic organisms have had a foreign gene inserted into them. Genetically modified organisms have had their genetic material modified using recombinant DNA technology. **2.** Transgenic bacteria have been constructed and used to produce insulin, clotting factor VIII, human growth hormone, tissue plasminogen activator, and hepatitis B vaccine. Frost-resistant bacteria have been engineered to reduce the formation of ice crystals on strawberries. Naturally occurring bacteria that degrade oil have been engineered to work more efficiently. **3.** Transgenic plants resistant to herbicides have increased crop yields while reducing herbicide use. Transgenic food crops have been developed with higher nutrient quality as well as more healthful fats. Transgenic animals that have the gene for bovine growth hormone grow bigger and provide more meat. These changes increase the production of food. Plants have been developed that are more salt tolerant and others have leaves that take in more CO_2 and lose less H_2O. These are adaptions to changing climatic conditions. (**12.4) 1.** The goals include understanding what genes are present, the gene products and their function, and the function of the intergenic DNA in the genome. **2.** Comparing different animal genomes identifies their differences and similarities. This provides information about evolutionary history. Insight can be gained about how the human species evolved by comparing the human genome with our recent relatives. **3.** Proteomics is important to drug development because knowing the structure and function of cell proteins and examining how they interact gives insight to how drug molecules will alter them.

Testing Yourself

1. d; **2.** d; **3.** b; **4.** b; **5.** c; **6.** c; **7**. d; **8.** b; **9.** c; **10.** c

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Human recombinant insulin would match human insulin completely. Cow or pig insulin differs slightly from human insulin. Using human recombinant insulin would avoid any potential antibody response against the recombinant molecule. **2.** There is a potential danger with any product that has undergone processing that it has been changed or foreign material has been introduced that could result in an adverse reactions in the organism receiving the product. **3.** The use of recombinant human growth hormone in children to promote development within normal ranges is appropriate. To use it solely to gain an advantage in a competition or for cosmetic reasons is improper. **4.** A physician would monitor the development of the patient to observe if growth was occurring normally, all the while checking to assure that metabolic imbalances and other side effects were not occurring in the body.

CHAPTER 13

Check Your Progress

(13.1) 1. Mutations alter the sequence of nucleotides in the DNA of genes. Genes are located on the alleles. **2.** When a transposon moves, a DNA sequence can be inserted into a gene, altering the sequence of nucleotides. This results in a mutation and disrupts the gene. **3.** The single base change that occurs in a point mutation may or may not change the one amino acid that is coded for. This may or may not alter the function of the protein. A frameshift mutation alters all the downstream codons and results in a dysfunctional protein. (**13.2) 1.** Deletions and duplications are caused by unequal crossing-over. The loss of a piece on one chromosome causes the piece to be inserted into the second chromosome. **2.** Inheritance of a chromosome with a translocation can result in 1 copy of certain alleles and 3 copies of other alleles. When a segment of DNA is inverted gene expression can be disrupted and altered gene activity results. These changes in the chromosomes can lead to medical disorders. **3.** Cri du chat syndrome results from a deletion mutation. The end piece of chromosome 5 is missing. Alagille syndrome results from a translocation mutation between chromosomes 2 and 20. (**13.3) 1**. Karyotyping can detect abnormal numbers and shapes of chromosomes which indicate medical disorders. **2.** Genetic disorders can be detected if a specific protein is present or not in the blood. If a protein is absent then the gene is altered or it is not being expressed. Alternatively a protein might be present that is normally absent. Testing DNA involves determining if the sequence of bases in a person's DNA has been changed in an allele. Such changes can lead to disorders. **3.** Ultrasound images help doctors evaluate the fetal anatomy only, not the genome of the fetus. Amniocentesis uses a long needle to withdraw amniotic fluid containing fetal cells. It can be performed between the 14^{th} to 17^{th} week of pregnancy only and has a 0.3% risk of spontaneous abortion. In chorionic villus sampling (CVS) a suction tube is used to remove cells from the chorion where the placenta develops. This procedure can be performed as early as 5 weeks pregnancy and it carries a 0.8% spontaneous abortion rate. **4.** Changes in gene base sequences can be identified and used as genetic markers of diseases. The markers can be detected by conducting a complete genetic profile, using microarrays, or analyzing the products of restriction endonuclease digestion of a subject's DNA using gel electrophoresis. (**13.4) 1.** Bone marrow stem cells are preferred because they are capable of dividing after genes are introduced, to produce cells carrying the alteration. **2.** Genes may be delivered by spraying them into the nose, or by injecting them into particular organs. Liposomes and adenoviruses may also be used to carry the genes into a cell and organs. **3.** Adenoviruses containing an anti-inflammatory gene are injected into the affected joint to alleviate pain associated with rheumatoid arthritis.

Testing Yourself

1. c; **2.** b; **3.** a; **4.** b; **5.** c; **6.** a; **7.** c; **8.** b; **9.** c; **10.** b

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. In many cases, gene dosage effects may cause disease. For example, you have learned that some genetic disorders are dominant because having a single mutant allele of the gene is enough to alter the phenotype. In these cases, the mutant allele may have an additional function, not possessed by the normal allele, which causes the disorder. Likewise, having a third or fourth copy of a gene may cause too much of the protein to be made, which may lead to a genetic disorder if the increased enzyme activity is harmful. Some genes are already present in multiple copies, for example, rRNA genes. Having more of them would not be expected to cause problems. **2.** The adenovirus may have inserted itself into or nearby a gene that is involved in controlling the cell cycle, such as a proto-oncogene or a tumor suppressor gene. In these cases, disrupting the gene may have inactivated it. In the case cited, the virus was found to have inserted itself near a proto-oncogene called *LMO-2*. **3.** When diseases are homozygous recessive, the recessive allele can remain hidden in a portion of the populace at all times. Only when two heterozygous carriers mate is there a chance that the offspring will have the disease. Sometimes the recessive trait confers an evolutionary advantage. For example, carriers of sickle-cell disease are more resistant to malaria.

CHAPTER 14

Check Your Progress

(14.1) 1. Cuvier founded the science of paleontology. He thought that species were fixed and did not change over time. Instead catastrophes occurred that lead to mass extinctions. Repopulation of areas after a catastrophe lead to new fossils appearing in new stratum which explained the changes seen in the fossil record over time. Lamark proposed that animals adapted to their environments and these changes were passed on to their offspring. This led to the inheritance of acquired characteristics and this explained the changes seen over time. **2.** Under the theory of inheritance of acquired characteristics an individual changes in response to its environment. It acquires new characteristics that it passes on to the next generation. Under the process of natural selection individuals survive depending on how well they are adapted to their environment. Those who are well adapted survive and those who are not die out. **3.** Since the most adapted individuals to an environment survive and reproduce, natural selection of traits that allow survival in an environment lead to adaptation. **4.** Without diversity and variation in a gene pool, individuals will not be able to adapt to changing environments and if the environment changes, the species may die out. **(14.2) 1.** The finches show that a common ancestor can give rise to other species through adaptation to unique environments. In this case, the environments on different islands varied and put different pressures on the finches that arrived there to adapt. **2.** Vestigial structures show that present day organisms have an ancestor from the past. These structures are useless today but they were functional in the ancestor. **3.** Homologous structures share an anatomical similarity that reflects a common ancestry. Analogous structures have a common function but do not serve as evidence of a common ancestry.

Testing Yourself

1. b; **2.** d; **3.** b; **4.** b; **5.** a; **6.** e; **7.** e; **8.** a; **9.** c; **10.** b; **11.** a; **12.** c; **13.** b; **14.** c

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Humans and other animals share this common structure because we share a common ancestor that had such a structure. The presence of this structure informs us about the dietary history of humans. It suggests that humans previously ate more plants

than they currently do. **2.** Different genes are under varying levels of evolutionary constraints and pressures based on their function and importance for an organism's survival. **3.** Islands have populations that are both isolated and with different environments from a mainland population.

CHAPTER 15

Check Your Progress

(15.1) 1. Directional selection occurs when one extreme phenotype is favored. Stabilizing selection occurs when the intermediate phenotype is favored. **2.** With disruptive selection the intermediate phenotype is selected against. Eventually two distinctly different phenotypes are seen in the population. **3.** Mutation, recombination, independent assortment, gene flow, disruptive selection, and diploidy. **4.** Sickle-cell disease occurs at a higher incidence in populations subject to malaria because the heterozygote is selected for in these regions because they survive malaria more successfully. **(15.2) 1.** The various alleles at all the gene loci in all individuals make up the gene pool of the population. The gene pool is described in terms of allele frequencies. **2.** The Hardy-Weinberg principle states that the equilibrium of genotype frequencies in a gene pool will remain in effect in each succeeding generation of a sexually reproducing population as long as five conditions are met. Microevolution can be detected and measured by noting the amount of deviation from the Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium of genotype frequencies in the gene pool of a population. **3.** Mutations, gene flow, nonrandom mating, genetic drift, and natural selection. **4.** Mutations are ultimately responsible for all the genetic variability upon which evolution depends. **5.** Gene flow is the migration of alleles into or out of populations. This allows microevolution to occur. Nonrandom mating pairs individuals according to their genotypes and phenotypes. This promotes the proportion of homozygotes in the population and leads to microevolution. **6.** With genetic drift allele frequencies in a gene pool change gradually over time due to chance. In a small population the probability that a rare genotype might pass alleles to the next generation is greater. The result would be a decrease or increase in the frequency of this genotype.

Testing Yourself

1. d; **2.** a; **3.** c; **4.** b; **5.** c; **6.** a; **7.** d; **8.** c; **9.** c; **10.** b; **11.** a

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. a. By applying three times as much pesticide the second farmer is generating resistant insects that are being selected for over five years. **b.** The resistant insects are an extreme phenotype that is being selected for. This is an example of directional selection. **c.** The insect population in the fields of the first farmer would be in equilibrium because the percentage of losses remained constant indicating the same number of resistant insects were alive. **2. a.** The females are selecting the bright-feathered males to mate with because they perceive them to be more fit. This is an example of sexual selection. **b.** By selecting a bright-feathered male the female is more likely to have bright-feathered offspring who will have greater success in generating more offspring. This promotes nonrandom mating. **c.** In their natural environment, mate dark-feathered females with light-feathered males and measure the reproductive success of the offspring. Compare that to the reproductive success of offspring from mating dark-feathered females and dark-feathered males.

CHAPTER 16

Check Your Progress

(16.1) 1. A biological species is a group of organisms that can interbreed, have a shared gene pool, and are reproductively isolated from members of other species. This is a testable concept that does not depend on appearance. **2.** The biological species concept cannot be applied to asexually reproducing organisms. In addition, reproductive isolation may not be complete, so some breeding between species may occur. **3.** Prezygotic isolating mechanisms do not allow zygotes to be formed. Examples are habitat, temporal, behavioral, mechanical, and gametic isolation. Postzygotic mechanisms allow zygotes to be formed, but the zygotes either die or become offspring that are infertile. Examples are zygote mortality, hybrid sterility, and F_2 fitness. **4.** Allopatric speciation occurs when a geographic barrier stops gene flow. *Ensatina* salamanders in California are separated by the Central Valley and limited gene flow occurs between the eastern and western populations. Two distinct forms exist in southern California that interbreed only rarely. Sympatric speciation produces reproductively isolated groups without geographic isolation. Polyploidy in wheat plants have resulted in the reproductive isolation of bread wheat. **5.** One mainland finch species was probably an ancestor to all existing species on the Galápagos Islands. Each new species evolved in response to the unique environment on the island it inhabits. **(16.2) 1.** Fossils provide hard durable evidence that is relatively complete, and can be dated. They display evolutionary changes that have occurred over time. **2.** The punctuated equilibrium model says that periods of no change in evolution are interrupted by periods of relatively sudden and rapid speciation. **3.** Continental drift, loss of habitat, and the crash of a meteorite into the Earth have contributed to mass extinctions. **4.** During the Precambian era Earth formed. During the Paleozoic era jawed fishes diversified and seedless vascular plants appeared. During the Mesozoic era the first mammals and dinosaurs appeared. During the Cenozoic era the first hominids appeared. **(16.3) 1.** Species, genus, family, order, class, phylum, kingdom, domain. **2.** The fossil record, anatomical homologies, and molecular data are used. **3.** Homologous structures are similar in anatomy because they are derived from a common ancestor. Analogous structures have the same function in different groups and do not share a common ancestry. **4.** Because rRNA molecules are found universally in ribosomes that carry out protein synthesis, their nucleotide sequence changes very little over time. Similarities and differences in rRNA sequence can be used to determine evolutionary relationships. **5.** Linnaean classification sometimes fails to place common ancestors and all their descendants in the same group even though they all share the same derived traits.

Testing Yourself

1. c; **2.** c; **3.** b; **4.** f; **5.** a; **6.** g; **7.** d; **8.** e; **9.** h; **10.** b; **11.** e; **12.** c; **13.** a; **14.** c; **15. a.** 3, different colors; **b.** vertebrae, amniotic egg and internal fertilization; **c.** snake and lizard, they share the most derived traits

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. a. ferns; **b.** produce seed; **c.** naked seeds; **d.** conifers, needle-like leaves; **e.** Ginkgos, fan-shaped leaves; **f.** enclosed seeds; **g.** monocots, one embryonic leaf; **h.** eudicots, two embryonic leaves. **2.** On the Hawaiian Islands species become isolated on islands that are far away from each other and the mainland. Over generations they adapt to the island's environment which is often different from the mainland environment from which they came. The Florida Keys are close enough together and close enough to the Florida mainland to allow species to move among the islands and the mainland. Thus they are not isolated and speciation does not occur. **3.a.** Because humans share much of their genome with other organisms, basic research in systematics at all levels has the potential to provide beneficial information to humans and the organisms that make up their world. **b.** If a country has the financial capacity to fund basic systematics research while attending to the needs of its population, such research should be a priority because of the potential benefits that could be obtained.

CHAPTER 17

Check Your Progress

(17.1) 1. Viruses are noncellular structures composed of an outer capsid of protein subunits and an inner core of DNA or RNA. **2.** Viruses may infect a cell and replicate producing many copies of itself. Alternatively after infecting the cell, they may enter a latent stage in which the virus is dormant but ready to replicate in the future. **3.** In order to enter a cell a virus must have a specific capsid protein which binds to a specific receptor protein on the cell surface. **(17.2) 1.** A viroid is composed of naked RNA without capsid proteins. A virus has an inner core of DNA or RNA and a capsid composed of protein subunits. **2.** Prions are misshapen proteins that can interact with normal proteins to change their shape. This leads to a fatal infection that involves the destruction of nerves. **3.** Kuru is a prion disorder causing a fatal infection leading to the degeneration of nerves. Mad cow disease, scrapie which attacks sheep, and Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease all produce neurodegenerative disorders. **(17.3) 1.** Macromolecules may have self-assembled and become surrounded by a barrier between the molecules and the environments. The barrier defined the inside and the outside of such a cell-like structure. Within the cell-like structures the reactions of cellular metabolism evolved. **2.** Cocci (spheres), bacilli (rods), and spirilla or spirochetes (spirals). **3.** Conjugation—transfer of DNA from cell to cell; transformation—transfer of DNA from environment to cell; transduction—transfer of DNA using a virus. **4.** Bacteria have a chromosome that is a closed circle of double-stranded DNA which occurs in the nucleoid. Eukaryotic chromosomes are linear double-stranded DNA molecules that are highly folded and enclosed in a nucleus. **5.** The plasma membrane

and cell wall of archaea are uniquely structured so that they can survive in extreme environments. They also have unusual metabolic characteristics. Because of these characteristics they do not compete with bacteria. (**17.4) 1.** Both mitochondria and chloroplasts have double membranes and distinct genomes. **2.** Protists are eukaryotes with a nucleus and a wide range of organelles. Many are single celled. They are a diverse group that represents the common ancestors of different multicellular organisms. **3.** Algae are photoautotrophs that, like plants, are producers. Protozoans are single-celled heterotrophs that are usually mobile. They can be free living aquatic organisms and they represent many animal pathogens. Slime molds are heterotrophs, most are decomposers, and many eat bacteria.

Testing Yourself

1. c; **2.** d; **3.** a; **4.** c; **5.** c; **6.** c; **7.** a; **8.** b; **9.** a; **10.** d; **11.** c; **12.** c; **13.** d; **14.** a; **15.** d

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Protists are members of the domain Eukarya and are more closely related to archaea than to bacteria. Archaea and eukarya have certain ribosomal proteins in common that are not shared with bacteria. They initiate transcription in the same fashion, and have similar tRNAs. Viruses are not shown on the tree because they are acellular and are not considered to belong to any of the three domains of life. **2.** Bacteriophages could infect bacteria in a patient's body and initiate a lytic cycle that would kill the bacteria. The most important benefit would be the ability to treat infections of antibiotic resistant bacteria against which drugs are ineffective. The main shortcoming is that bacteria would almost certainly evolve resistance to bacteriophage infection. **3.a.** Incentives based on reimbursement rates to physicians will have a greater effect at changing physician's behavior than recommendations from the FDA printed on labels. **b.** The laws covering liability for withholding antibiotic use should be changed. If physicians were protected from lawsuits from not prescribing antibiotics, they could afford to be more conservative with the prescriptions they write.

CHAPTER 18

Check Your Progress

(18.1) 1. Both charophytes and land plants contain chlorophylls *a* and *b* plus accessory pigments, store carbohydrates as starch, have cellulose in their cell walls, and form structures that protect and nourish the zygote. **2.** (1) protection of the embryo; (2) evolution of vascular tissue; (3) evolution of leaves (microphylls and megaphylls); (4) evolution of seeds; (5) evolution of flowers. **3.** Meiosis forms a haploid spore from a diploid sporangium, which undergoes mitosis and forms gametes. Following fertilization, a diploid zygote is formed that develops into a sporophyte by mitosis. (**18.2) 1.** Nonvascular plants do not have true roots, stems, or leaves like vascular plants do. **2.** Plants provide food, shelter, and habitats to organisms in the ecosystem as well as provide oxygen to the atmosphere. Forests are important to water, carbon, and nutrient cycles. **3.** Following pollination, the pollen grain germinates and a nonflagellated sperm travels in a pollen tube to the egg produced by the female gametophyte. Following fertilization the zygote becomes the sporophyte embryo, tissue within the ovule becomes the stored food, and the ovule becomes the seed coat. **4.** Sporophyte produces spores by meiosis; microspores become pollen grains and megaspore becomes embryo sac; double fertilization produces fertilized egg and 3n endosperm nucleus; ovule becomes seed where endosperm is taken up by cotyledon; ovary becomes a fruit. **5.** To survive and reproduce nonvascular plants need to be close to a water source to get water for photosynthesis (since they cannot get it from the soil, because they do not have roots) and for reproduction. **6.** Without gymnosperms and angiosperms, food, chemicals, medicines, and building materials would be unavailable, producing economic hardships and challenges for human survival. (**18.3) 1.** In black bread mold, meiosis produces spores in sporangia. In a mushroom, meiosis produces spores in clublike structures attached to the gills. **2.** Fungi are saprotrophs that function as decomposers of plants, animals, and microbes in the soil. They return inorganic nutrients to the soil making them available to plants. **3.** Lichens are composed of a fungus and a cyanobacterium or a green alga. The fungus provides protection, water, and minerals and the photosynthesizer provides organic nutrients. **4.** Oral candidiasis—*Candida* infects the mouth and tongue producing painful blisters. It can occur after antibiotic use or in states of immunosuppression; Ring worm—a cutaneous infection caused by members of *Tinea* genus which grows outward from a center producing a ring of inflammation; White nose syndrome—an infection in hibernating bats caused by *Geomyces destructans.* The disease disturbs their hibernation making them wake up and use up their fat stores resulting in starvation.

Testing Yourself

1. a; **2.** e; **3.** c; **4.** a; **5.** b; **6.** e; **7.** d; **8.** c; **9. a.** anther; **b.** filament; **c.** stigma; **d.** style; **e.** ovary; **f.** ovule; **g.** sepals (calyx); **h.** petals (corolla); **10.** b; **11.** b; **12.** a; **13.** c; **14.** b; **15.** e

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. The original soil contains mycorrhizal fungi, which have mutualistic relationships with plant roots and enhance the growth of plants. **2.** Protists, plants, and fungi all belong to Domain Eukarya. The protist ancestors of plants resembled certain green algae, possessing chlorophylls *a* and *b* and accessory pigments for photosynthesis, storing carbohydrates as starch, having cellulose in their cell walls, and utilizing an alternation of generations life cycle. The protist ancestors of fungi probably resembled modern chytrids in having flagellated gametes and spores, a feature that has since been lost in the evolution of the other fungal groups. Cell walls may have contained chitin, a feature shared by all modern fungi, including chytrids. Fungal ancestors may have had an alternation of generations life cycle, as do some chytrids. **3.** To have killed the oldest known living creature on Earth to determine its exact age is wrong. Priorities are misplaced when the pursuit of information takes precedence and that which is being studied is destroyed. If the USFS failed to protect the bristlecone pine, then protecting trees should be the responsibility of another federal agency.

CHAPTER 19

Check Your Progress

(19.1) 1. Differences in symmetry—bilateral and radial; cephalization—localization of brain and specialized sensory organs; segmentation—repetition of body parts along the length of the body. **2.** Protostomes are characterized by spiral cell division when the embryo first forms and by a blastopore that becomes the mouth. If a coelom is present, it is formed by the splitting of the mesoderm. Deuterostomes are characterized by radial cell division when the embryo first forms and a blastopore that becomes the anus. An outpocket of the primitive gut forms the coelom. **3.** Animals are chemoheterotrophs that digest their food with a digestive system. They reproduce sexually to produce a fertilized diploid egg that undergoes a complex order of developmental steps. Specialized tissues develop such as muscles and nerves, which provide the ability to move. Alternatively plants can photosynthesize but cannot move and fungi digest their food externally and absorb the nutrients. (**19.2) 1.** Both sponges and cnidarians are multicellular. Sponges have a cellular level of organization with no true tissues and they exhibit no symmetry in body form. Cnidarians have a tissue level of organization with two germ layers (ectoderm and an endoderm) and they are radially symmetrical. **2.** Both are invertebrates. Sponges have sac-like bodies perforated by many holes. Water enters through pores and circulates past collar cells before entering the osculum. Cnidarians are invertebrates with radial symmetry and tentacles with cnidocytes in either a polyp or medusa body stage. **3.** Sponges lack organized tissues and exhibit a cellular level of organization. They are regarded as parazoans at the base of the evolutionary tree of animals. Cnidarians are radially symmetrical, have two germ layers, and exhibit a tissue level organization. They are the first of the eumatazoans. (**19.3) 1.** The *lopho* portion of their name is derived from a tentacle-like feeding structure called a lophophore. The *trocho* portion of the name refers to a larval stage, called a trochophore that is characterized by a distinct band of cilia. Flatworms, molluscs, and annelids all share a common evolutionary ancestor that has these structures. **2.** Flatworms have bilateral symmetry and are acoelomates. Annelids are segmented and have a coelom. **3.** In gastropods the foot is ventrally flattened, in cephalopods the foot has evolved into tentacles about the head, and in bivalves the muscular foot projects ventrally from the two-parted shell. (**19.4) 1.** Roundworms secrete a nonliving cuticle and undergo molting. **2.** (1) jointed appendages; (2) exoskeleton; (3) segmentation; (4) well-developed nervous system; (5) variety of respiratory organs; (6) reduced competition through metamorphosis. **3.** Insects are so diverse on Earth because they show remarkable structural and behavioral adaptations that allow them to live in many different habitats. (**19.5) 1.** Echinoderms have radial symmetry as adults and a water vascular system with tube feet for locomotion. **2.** Mammals are amniotes and share an ancestor with reptiles.

3. Cartilaginous fish have a skeleton made of cartilage. A fish's skeleton is made of bones. **4.** The chordates have a dorsal supporting rod, dorsal tubular nerve cord, pharyngeal pouches, and a tail. **5.** Amphibians have jointed limbs, eyelids for keeping their eyes moist, ears for picking up sound waves, a sound producing larynx, and lungs in adults. These adaptions help them to survive on land. **6.** Mammals have exhibited multiple adaptations that have allowed them to live in many different environments. (**19.6**) **1.** The anthropoids include the monkeys, apes, and humans while hominin refers to just the one species, *Homo sapiens,* and their close humanlike ancestors. **2.** Among primates the evolutionary trend was towards larger and more complex brains. The development of standing erect and bipedalism defines the classification of being hominin. **3.** The replacement model proposes that modern humans evolved from archaic humans in Africa. After that these modern humans migrated to Asia and Europe, where they replaced the archaic species present there.

Testing Yourself

1. b; **2.** a; **3.** d; **4.** b; **5.** a; **6.** a; **7.** a; **8.** a; **9.** b; **10.** d; **11.** c; **12.** a; **13.** b; **14.** d; **15.** b; **16.** c

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. The recent findings support the idea that a constant lineage exists in Africa from primitive to modern humans. However, it does not prove that this lineage exists only in Africa. This discovery of similar fossils in Asia and Europe would provide support for the multiregional continuity hypothesis. **2.** Animals that are sessile tend to be radially symmetrical because their food comes to them from all directions. There is no need to have anterior and posterior body regions. Animals that move through their environment are bilaterally symmetrical, with the anterior portion containing sensory organs. This allows the animal to sense and respond to the environment as it travels through it.

CHAPTER 20

Check Your Progress

(**20.1**) **1.** Epidermal tissue is made up of epidermis which is a layer of closely packed cells. It provides the outer protective covering of a plant. Root hairs, guard cells, and cork cells are specialized epidermal cells. Ground tissue contains three types of cells. Parenchyma cells sometimes contain chloroplasts and carry out photosynthesis or they have vacuoles used to store the products of photosynthesis. They help to carry out the functions of a particular organ. Collenchyma cells have irregular corners and thicker cell walls. They form the internal bulk of leaves, stems, and roots and provide flexible support for immature regions of the plant. Sclerenchyma cells have a thick secondary wall, are nonliving, and contain lignin. They provide support for mature regions of the plant. Vascular tissue is made up of xylem and phloem cells. Xylem contains vessel elements and tracheids and phloem is made up of sieve tube member and sieve plates. Both cell types help to transport water and nutrients as well as provide support for the plant. **2.** Xylem transports water and minerals from roots to leaves. Phloem transports organic compounds throughout the plant. **3.** Without epidermal tissue the plant would not have a protective covering reducing water loss, root hairs, guard cells, or cork. (**20.2**) **1.** Apical meristems are located at the terminal bud at the end of a stem or at the root tip. **2.** Cotyledons are embryonic leaves present in seeds. In monocots which have one cotyledon, the cotyledon stores some nutrients and acts as a transfer tissue for nutrients stored elsewhere. In eudicots which have two cotyledons, the cotyledons supply nutrients for developing seedlings. **3.** In monocot roots the vascular tissue is arranged in a ring around the center. In eudicots the vascular tissue is in the center. The xylem forms a star shape and the phloem is located between the points of the star. In the monocot stem bundles of vascular tissue are scattered throughout but in eudicots the bundles are arranged in a ring close to the edge. (**20.3**) **1.** The leaf contains stoma for gas exchange and veins that carry nutrients to and from the leaf. The mesophyll contains large amounts of surface area for gas exchange and water loss. **2.** Wood is secondary xylem made by the vascular cambium. Bark is made up of cork, cork cambium, cortex, and phloem. **3.** The vascular tissue of eudicot roots contains xylem arranged as a star in the center that transports water and minerals and phloem arranged between the arms of the star that transports nutrients. The endodermis forms a layer so that it forces water and minerals to pass through the endodermal cells. The pericycle is a layer of cells inside the endodermis that continue to divide and form lateral roots. The cortex of the root contains starch granules and may function in food storage. The epidermis forms the outer layer of the root and in the zone of maturation may have root hairs. (**20.4**) **1.** Essential nutrients for plants are divided into macronutrients and micronutrients according to their relative concentration in plants. Plants need a larger amount of macronutrients than micronutrients. **2.** Macronutrients are C, H, O, P, K, N, S, Ca, Fe, and Mg. **3.** Without mutualistic fungi, plants would not be able to obtain necessary inorganic nutrients as readily. (**20.5**) **1.** Transpiration, the evaporation of water at the leaves, causes water to move in the xylem from the roots upward throughout the plant. **2.** A continuous water column exists in xylem because of water's properties of cohesion and adhesion. Without a continuous water column, transpiration would be unable to pull water from roots to the leaves. **3.** Sugar is transported into phloem at its source. When water follows by osmosis, a pressure builds that causes phloem sap to flow toward a sink, where sugar is transported out of phloem.

Testing Yourself

1. b; **2.** c; **3.** d; **4. a.** terminal bud; **b.** blade (leaf); **c.** lateral bud; **d.** node; **e.** shoot system; **f.** vascular tissues; **g.** root system; **5.** b; **6.** d; **7.** b; **8.** c; **9.** c; **10.** c; **11.** c; **12.** d

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. There are unique cell recognition proteins on the surface of the nitrogen fixing bacteria that the plant recognizes. **2.** When the stomata open at night, both CO_2 and water in the fog can move into the leaves allowing it to survive. **3.** Forest fires occur naturally in a forest ecosystem and should be allowed to occur if lives and property are not threatened. Human intervention through logging practices upset the balance between fires and growth. To avoid the loss of human life and property housing in or near forests should be regulated. In addition systems providing essential services, such as water and electricity, should be constructed to be fire resistant. Planning for fires rather than allowing thinning of national forests is a more sustainable strategy.

CHAPTER 21

Check Your Progress

(**21.1**) **1.** Auxins, gibberellins, cytokinins, abscisic acid, and ethylene. **2.** Auxins—maintain apical dominance, involved in phototropism and gravitropism, promote root formation and fruit growth; gibberellins—elongation of cells; cytokinins—promote cell division, prevent aging in plants, and with auxins promote cell differentiation; abscisic acid—maintains seed and bud dormancy and closes stomata; ethylene—promotes fruit ripening and abscission **3.** They are found in those areas of the plant to where they are most effective. (**21.2**) **1.** The positive tropism, phototropism, is the unidirectional growth of plants towards a source of light. Thigmotropism is a response by a plant to touch whether it is from animals, wind, rocks, etc. It can be positive or negative. Gravitropism is a response to gravity. Shoots exhibit negative gravitropism by growing up against gravity and roots exhibit positive gravitropism by growing downward with gravity. **2.** Short-day plants flower when the night is longer than a critical length. Long-day plants flower when the night is shorter than a critical length. **3.** In the daytime more red light is present than far red light. Inactive phytochrome exposed to red wavelength of light is converted into its active form. In the evening when far red light is more available the active phytochrome is converted into its inactive form. This is the mechanism by which plants can detect periods of night length. (**21.3**) **1.** Sepals protect the bud as the flower develops; petals attract pollinators; stamen consists of anther and filament and is the "male" portion; carpel has stigma, style, ovary, and ovules and is the "female" portion. **2.** After fertilization of haploid microspore and megaspore, the diploid embryo in the seed goes through mitosis developing into a sporophyte. The sporophyte produces haploid microspores and megaspores by meiosis. **3.** The seed provides nourishment for the embryo and protects it from desiccation. It is often enclosed by a fruit. These characteristics help the seed to stay viable and they assist in its dispersal. (**21.4**) **1.** bulbs, rhizomes, corms, buds on tubers and runners. **2.** Propagation of commercial crops in sterile culture; conservation of plants normally harvested in the wild; propagation of rare species of plants to be put back into the wild. **3.** Pros—GMPs may be more tolerant of high salt, drought, and cold; they may be more disease and pest resistant; they may have improved yields and nutritional quality; and they may also be modified in order to make products of medical importance to humans. Cons—people might be allergic to GMPs and have unforeseen reactions to GMPs. GMPs could upset the interaction of species and harm the environment.

Testing Yourself

1. d; **2.** a; **3.** e; **4.** a; **5.** a; **6.** e; **7.** b; **8.** c; **9.** a; **10.** b; **11.** d; **12.** b; **13.** e; **14.** d; **15.** b; **16.** d; **17.** e

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. When plants are shipped long distances, they produce ethylene as a result of stress. Ethylene builds up within the shipping container and the plastic sleeves near the plant, amplifying the abscission response. **2.** You could determine whether flowers or stems are responsible by cutting the flowers off the stems and looking to see whether the stems still exhibit heliotropism. If so, then the stems rather than the flowers are responsible. You could determine which portion of the stem is responsible for heliotropism by shading different portions of the stem and determining which treatment blocks the response. **3.** Until the problem of acquisition of herbicide resistance by johnson grass is resolved, the production of herbicide-resistant sorghum should be banned. However, in the interim, African farmers should be supported in new ways to manage witchweed in their farming practices so as to ensure their wellbeing.

CHAPTER 22

Check Your Progress

(**22.1**) **1.** Tissues are composed of cells of the same structural and functional type. An organ is made up of different tissues each of which contributes to the functioning of the whole organ. **2.** Epithelial—covering surfaces and lining body cavities; connective—binds and supports body parts; muscular—locomotion; nervous—receives stimuli and conducts nerve impulses. **3.** Epithelial tissue is useful as a covering of the body and lining of organs because it forms a barrier, can withstand a high amount of wear and tear, and can divide frequently to repair and replace itself. **4.** Connective tissue is needed to hold organs and parts of the body together giving it structure, support, and protection against physical damage. **5.** Skeletal muscle such as the biceps is striated, is usually attached to the skeleton to produce movement, and is under voluntary control. Cardiac muscle is found in the walls of the heart. It is striated, branched, uninucleate, and is under involuntary control. Smooth muscle is found in the walls of the digestive system and other internal organs. It is nonstriated, uninucleated, and is under involuntary control. **6.** Nerves communicate information from sensory inputs to the spinal cord and brain. There the information is integrated and interpreted. Nerves then conduct impulses to the muscles and glands causing a response of contraction or secretion. Information about the external and internal environments is coordinated by nervous tissue. (**22.2**) **1.** Organ systems are composed of organs and are dependent on the organs to function together. **2.** Both the nervous and endocrine systems coordinate and regulate the functions of other systems. **3.** Cardiovascular—transports nutrients and gases, removes wastes; Lymphatic and immune—collects excess fluids and protects from disease; Respiratory—exchanges gas with blood; Urinary—rids blood of wastes; Digestive—receives food and digests into nutrient molecules for entry into the blood; Nervous—receives stimuli and conducts impulses; Endocrine—secretes hormones; Integumentary—protection; Skeletal—protection, movement; Muscular—movement; Reproductive—production of gametes. (**22.3**) **1.** Homeostasis is needed to maintain constant conditions in the internal environment as the organism is exposed to varying conditions in the external environment. **2.** A sensor detects a change in the internal environment and communicates that information to the control center which initiates an effect that brings conditions back to normal. At that point the sensor is no longer activated. **3.** With a drop in temperature the control center brings about constriction of the blood vessels of the skin. If the temperature continues to drop, shivering begins in order to generate heat. With a rise in temperature blood vessels of the skin dilate and sweat glands are activated in response.

Testing Yourself

1. a. cell; **b.** tissue; **c.** organ; **d.** organ system; **e.** organism; **2.** b; **3.** a, b; **4.** a; **5.** c, d; **6.** c; **7. a.** dendrite; **b.** cell body; **c.** nucleus; **d.** nucleus of Schwann cell; **e.** axon **8.** d; **9.** d; **10.** d; **11.** c; **12.** a; **13.** b; **14.** e; **15.** a

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Even though the heart is made of cardiac muscle instead of skeletal muscle, the link between the two conditions is that both types of muscle tissues deteriorate in a similar manner. **2.** Organisms have to interact with the external environment to obtain energy and nutrients for growth and reproduction. Some have to find mates. This comes at the risk of upsetting internal environments but without interacting with the external environment, many of the functions that define a living organism would be lost. Plants could not receive energy from the sun for photosynthesis. We could not get nutrients from eating food or sense danger from predators. **3.** The advantage of having specific tissues, organs, and organ systems is that their functions can be separated, made more specific, and made more efficient. Organisms would be selected for because they would have a greater fitness. Just as a large company uses specialized divisions to carry out its functions so does a large animal use specialized organs that work together within a system complementing other systems.

CHAPTER 23

Check Your Progress

(**23.1**) **1.** Both use a heart to pump fluid. An open system pumps hemolymph through channels and cavities that open up to the body cavity. The hemolymph eventually drains back to the heart. A closed system pumps blood through closed vessels that carry blood both away from and back to the heart. **2.** The pulmonary circuit carries blood to and from the lungs and the systemic circuit carries blood to and from the tissues. **3.** In a fish the blood moves in a single circuit through a heart that has a single atrium and ventricle. In this circuit blood moves through the capillaries of the gills where gas exchange occurs. In mammals the pulmonary and systemic circuits are completely separated. The heart functions as two coordinated pumps. (**23.2**) **1.** Phase 1 (atrial systole): the atria contract and pass blood to the ventricles. Phase 2 (ventricular systole): the ventricles contract and blood moves into the attached arteries. Phase 3 (atrial and ventricular diastole): both the atria and ventricles relax while the atria fill with blood. **2.** Arteries have thick walls with a middle layer of elastic fibers and smooth muscle that allow for expansion and contraction in response to pulses of pressure created by the contraction of the heart. Capillary walls are composed of an epithelium only one cell thick which allows for the diffusion of gases in and out of the blood. Veins have thinner, less elastic walls than arteries. They carry blood back to the heart under relatively low pressure. **3.** Blood flows from the right atria into the right ventricle and then through the pulmonary artery to the lungs. The blood is oxygenated in the capillaries of the lungs and next passes through the pulmonary vein to the left atria of the heart. With the contraction of the left atria the blood flows into the left ventricle and then out through the aorta to the brain and body where it passes through capillary beds, delivering oxygen to the tissues. Veins receive the blood from the capillaries and return the blood back to the right atria via the inferior and superior vena cavae. (**23.3**.) **1.** Plasma, the liquid portion of blood, contains salts and proteins that buffer the blood and maintain the blood's osmotic pressure. Some of the plasma proteins are involved in blood clotting and the transport of organic molecules. Nutrients are carried in the plasma. Red blood cells transport oxygen to the tissues. White blood cells function to defend the body against infection. Platelets play a role in blood clotting. **2.** All are involved in the immune response. Granular leukocytes: Neutrophils phagocytize pathogens and cellular debris. Eosinophils use granular contents to digest large pathogens, such as worms, and reduce inflammation. Basophils promote blood flow to injured tissues during the inflammatory response. Agranular leukocytes: Lymphocytes are responsible for specific immunity. B cells produce antibodies. T cells destroy cancer and virus-infected cells. Monocytes become macrophages that phagocytize pathogens and cellular debris. **3.** Hypertension or high blood pressure can be treated with medication and changes in diet and exercise. Atherosclerosis is an accumulation of soft masses of fatty materials beneath the lining of the arteries. Treatments include medication, surgery, and changes in diet and exercise.

Testing Yourself

1. c; **2.** a; **3.** d; **4. a.** pulmonary vein; **b.** aorta; **c.** renal artery; **d.** lymphatic vessel; **e.** pulmonary artery; **f.** superior vena cava; **g.** inferior vena cava; **h.** hepatic vein; **i.** hepatic portal vein; **j.** renal vein; **5.** a; **6. a.** superior vena cava; **b.** aortic semilunar valve; **c.** pulmonary semilunar valve; **d.** right atrium; **e.** tricuspid valve; **f.** right ventricle; **g.** inferior vena cava; **h.** aorta; **i.** pulmonary trunk; **j.** pulmonary arteries; **k.** pulmonary veins; **l.** left atrium; **m.** bicuspid valve; **n.** septum; **o.** left ventricle; **7.** c; **8.** d; **9.** a; **10.** c; **11.** b; **12.** c; **13.** b; **14.** b; **15.** b

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. A 20 year old on their birthday would have been alive for (20 years × 365 days/year × 24 hours/day × 60 min/day) 1.05×10^7 minutes and experienced 7.4×10^8 heartbeats. In their lifetime that individual would have pumped 5.5×10^7 liters of blood.

2. The four-chambered heart keeps O_2-poor and O_2-rich blood separate. This allows the maximum amount of oxygen to be delivered to the cells. This in turn allows for the greatest amount of energy to be produced. A four-chambered heart supports the high metabolism of an endothermic animal. **3.** Lower oxygen levels found at higher altitudes stimulate an increased production of red blood cells and hemoglobin. When an athlete trains at higher altitudes long enough for this to take effect, they will have the ability to carry a higher amount of oxygen in their bloodstream. This effect will continue even at lower altitudes for a few months after the high altitude training has stopped. More oxygen means more energy through aerobic cellular respiration for muscle contraction. **4.a.** Long-term hypertension damages arteries and increases the likelihood of plaque formation. The heart has to work harder to move the blood. The increased pressure is particularly damaging to capillary beds present in the kidneys and in the retinal of the eye. **b.** The plaques that result from atherosclerosis interfere with the blood flow and combined with hypertension further strain the heart. The plaques cause arteries to narrow and harden and the areas supplied by arteries get less blood, oxygen, and nutrients. If coronary arteries are narrowed or blocked the heart muscle cannot function and can die during a heart attack.

CHAPTER 24

Check Your Progress

(24.1) 1. Breathing is the movement of air into the lungs (inspiration) and out of the lungs (expiration). External exchange of gases occurs between the air and the blood within the lungs. Internal exchange of gases occurs between blood and tissue fluid and also between cells and tissue fluid in the body. **2.** In the upper respiratory tract air enters the nose and moves past the nasal cavity to the pharynx into the larynx. From there air moves to the lower respiratory tract starting with the trachea, then to the bronchi, bronchioles, and finally the alveoli**.** **3.** Oxygen follows its concentration gradient as it moves from a higher concentration in the lungs to a lower concentration in the blood. When carbon dioxide from the tissues enters the blood it combines with water to form carbonic acid which breaks down to bicarbonate and H^+. The H^+ binds to the globin portion of hemoglobin and the bicarbonate is carried by the plasma. **(24.2) 1.** The kidney functions are: excretion of nitrogenous wastes, maintenance of the water-salt balance of blood, and maintenance of the acid-base balance of blood. **2.** A nephron consists of the glomeruli capsule and proximal tubule which function in filtration, the nephron loop which functions in reabsorption, and the distal tubule which functions in secretion. **3.** During filtration small molecules such as water, nutrients, salts, and urea move from the blood capillaries into the nephron capsule as a result of blood pressure. During reabsorption glucose, amino acids and other nutrients move from the proximal convoluted tubule back into the blood capillaries by active transport. Salts and water are reabsorbed by a combination of active transport, osmosis, and protein channels. During secretion substances such as uric acid, hydrogen ions, ammonia, and penicillin are moved from the blood capillaries into the distal convoluted tubule by means other than filtration. **4.** Water-salt balance and pH balance are important to homeostasis in order to maintain blood volume and composition, and to maintain circulation and proper gas and waste exchange. **(24.3) 1.** Ingest and break down food, absorb nutrients, and eliminate indigestible material. **2.** Peristalsis is a rhythmic contraction of smooth muscle that moves materials through the digestive tract. **3.** The small intestine helps in the digestion and absorption of food. It produces enzymes that complete the breakdown of food to small molecules that can be absorbed across its villi. The villi are folds in the wall of the small intestine that are lined with cells that have microvilli formed by their plasma membranes. The small intestine is relatively long and skinny. No digestion occurs in the large intestine, but it does store digestive remains until they are eliminated. The large intestine also absorbs water, salts, and some vitamins. The large intestine lacks microvilli and villi. It is shorter in length and larger in diameter than the small intestine. **4.** The liver secretes bile and the pancreas secretes pancreatic juice into the duodenum. These substances contribute to the digestion and absorption of nutrients. **5.** Salivary amylase breaks down starch into maltose. Pepsin breaks down proteins into peptides in the stomach. Trypsin, produced by the pancreas, breaks down proteins to peptides in the duodenum. Peptidase, produced by the small intestine, breaks down peptides to amino acids. Lipase, made by the pancreas and active in the small intestine, breaks down fats to glycerol and fatty acids.

Testing Yourself

1. a. nostril; **b.** nasal cavity; **c.** pharynx; **d.** epiglottis; **e.** glottis; **f.** larynx; **g.** trachea; **h.** bronchus; **i.** bronchiole; **j.** alveoli; **k.** lung; **l.** diaphragm; **2.** a; **3.** d; **4.** a; **5. a.** kidney; **b.** ureter; **c.** bladder; **d.** urethra; **6.** c; **7.** d; **8.** b; **9.** a; **10.** d; **11. a.** salivary glands; **b.** mouth; **c.** liver; **d.** gallbladder; **e.** duodenum; **f.** cecum; **g.** appendix; **h.** anus; **i.** pharynx; **j.** esophagus; **k.** diaphragm; **l.** stomach; **m.** pancreas; **n.** large intestine; **o.** small intestine; **p.** rectum; **12.** b; **13.** b; **14.** a; **15.** d

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. If the tissues were not receiving oxygen due to CO binding to hemoglobin then the cause of death would be asphyxiation. **2.** If a low-salt diet lowered the high blood pressure it would indicate that the hypertension caused the kidney damage. If a low-salt diet failed to lower the blood pressure then it would appear that the kidneys are causing the hypertension. **3.** Grasshoppers have a tracheal system consisting of air tubes to carry out gas exchange. Their exoskeleton is both air and waterproof. They excrete uric acid which requires little water and their Malpighian tubules absorb most of the water back into their bodies which helps them avoid desiccation on land.

CHAPTER 25

Check Your Progress

(25.1) 1. Macronutrients which are found in large quantities and supply energy include carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins. Micronutrients are needed in small quantities and do not supply energy. They include vitamins and minerals such as Vitamin D and calcium. **2.** Junk foods do contain nutrients however their content of sugar and fats may be out of proportion with their vitamin and mineral content. They may provide just empty calories. **3.** Essential nutrients must be obtained from the diet because the body cannot synthesize them or cannot produce them in sufficient quantities to supply the body's needs. **(25.2) 1.** Carbohydrates include sugars and starches; Lipids are oils and fats; Proteins are composed of 20 amino acids; Minerals include calcium and iron; Vitamins include vitamins A and C; Water **2.** Consuming too many carbohydrates can lead to obesity which is associated with type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease; too many lipids can lead to elevated lipid levels and increased risk of cardiovascular disease as well as obesity; too much protein can lead to increased calcium loss in urine, formation of kidney stones, and obesity. **3.** Without vitamins and minerals, proper organ development and functioning would not occur, as well as proper protein synthesis and function. Without enough water the chemical reactions in the body, joint lubrication, nutrient transport, and temperature regulation, would be compromised. **(25.3) 1.** Daily caloric needs are based on metabolic functions, physical activity, and digestion, absorption, and processing of food. **2.** Cardiovascular disease due to imbalance of lipid levels and plaque buildup; Type 2 diabetes resulting from insulin resistance. **3.** Each person varies in their metabolism, activity, and energy needs so it is important to understand your daily energy needs to balance your intake of food and your energy expenditure. **(25.4) 1.** A meal needs to be balanced in order to provide the required nutrients and energy in the proper amounts that are needed for the body's output. **2.** The MyPlate icon depicts the desired proportions of the five food groups (fruits, vegetables, grains, protein and dairy) for daily consumption. It leads to a website, ChooseMyPlate.gov that provides detailed information about each of the food groups and guidance for following the dietary recommendations. **3.** The Nutrition Facts label states serving size, servings per container, calories per serving, calories from fat, the % Daily Value for fats, cholesterol, sodium, and carbohydrates, the amount of protein, and the % daily value for some vitamins and minerals. In addition it states the recommended intake amounts of food types as well as the kcal/gram for each type of macronutrient.

Testing Yourself

1. b; **2.** b; **3.** a; **4.** a; **5.** f; **6.** b; **7.** e; **8.** b; **9.** d; **10.** c; **11.** a; **12.** d; **13.** d; **14.** c; **15.** b

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. See table on next page. **2.** Bariatric surgery alters the physical structure and therefore the function of the stomach and small intestine. It can lead to incomplete digestion and malabsorption of nutrients. Protein digestion which starts in the stomach and ends in the small intestine can be affected as well as the absorption of amino acids in the small intestine. The availability of iron, vitamin B_{12}, folate, and calcium and therefore their absorption, are often altered after bariatric surgery. **3.** Marketing strategies that focus on selling unhealthful foods to children

should be regulated similarly to how the advertising of tobacco products and alcohol must follow laws and regulations. However, because food must be consumed and not just eliminated, because people have enormous physiological and mental investments in food, and because marketing tactics are subtle and pervasive, innumerable obstacles exist for challenging marketers. The advertisements should be required to contain an educational component that informs the consumer of what the product contains and how much should be consumed. Due to children being particularly susceptible to marketing strategies, access to children's markets should be restricted.

	Soda Then 6.5 oz.	Soda Now 20 oz.	Calorie Increase
Fat (g)	0	0	
Carbohydrate (g)	21	65	
Protein (g)	0	0	
Total calories	84	258	174
	Fries Then 2.6 oz.	**Fries Now 6 oz.**	**Calorie Increase**
Fat (g)	11	25	
Carbohydrate (g)	28	65	
Protein (g)	3	7	
Total calories	223	513	290
	Bagels Then 3 oz.	**Bagels Now 6 oz.**	**Calorie Increase**
Fat (g)	0.5	1	
Carbohydrate (g)	40	80	
Protein (g)	6	12	
Total calories	188.5	377	188.5

CHAPTER 26

Check Your Progress

(26.1) 1. The immune system functions to maintain health by fighting infections and destroying cancer cells. **2.** Red bone marrow—produces all types of blood cells; thymus—aids in maturation of T lymphocytes and testing their ability to recognize self- versus nonself cells; spleen—filters the blood of pathogens and debris; lymph nodes—houses macrophages that remove pathogens and antigens from lymph. **3.** Antigens are protein or carbohydrate molecules that identify cells, viruses, and molecules. They stimulate the immune system to repel foreign substances, pathogens, and cancer cells. **(26.2) 1.** Physical barriers include the skin with its oil glands, and mucous membranes that contain ciliated cells, of the respiratory, digestive, reproductive, and urinary tracts. The acidity of the stomach inactivates bacteria. Competing bacteria and fungi in the large intestine and vagina prevent pathogenic organisms from being established. **2.** Damaged cells and mast cells release chemicals that cause capillaries to dilate and become more permeable. More blood moves to the area and more fluid to move into the tissues. Neutrophils and macrophages migrate to the site of injury and phagocytize pathogens. **3.** Complement proteins bind to mast cells to trigger histamine release, stimulate phagocytes to the site of injury, bind to pathogens already coated with antibodies ensuring their being phagocytized, and form a membrane attack complex which produces a hole in the surface of the microbe. These functions "complement" other forms of immunity and are not specific to one pathogen. NK cells which kill virus-infected cells and cancer cells are not specific. They bind to cells which have lost their ability to make self-proteins. Their numbers do not increase and they do not have a memory of antigens from previous exposure. **(26.3) 1.** The antibodies produced by plasma cells bind to specific antigens. Such antibody-antigen complexes mark the antigen for destruction. A person's immune system becomes adapted to recognize a particular antigen so that a person becomes immune to it. **2.** B cells are produced and mature in the bone marrow. They give rise to plasma cells that produce antibodies. The antibody-antigen complexes are engulfed by neutrophils or macrophages or may activate complement. T cells are produced in the bone marrow and mature in the thymus as cytotoxic T cells that destroy virus-infected or cancer cells, or helper T cells which regulate immune function. **3.** Antibody response uses proteins called antibodies produced by B cells to fight pathogens. Cellular response uses entire cells, T cells, to fight pathogens. **4.** MHC markers are unique to each individual, except identical twins, and allow the immune system to identify "self" from "nonself" cells. If the MHC markers are different, tissue rejection can occur. **(26.4) 1.** A vaccine is a preparation of an organism or part of an organism that when introduced into an individual, stimulates the immune system to create lasting immunity against a virus or organism. **2.** A booster dose of vaccine is sometimes needed to raise the plasma antibody concentrations to a level that is effective at fighting the pathogen. **3.** Active immunity involves the immune system being exposed to a pathogen and responding to it by producing plasma cells and antibodies. Memory cells are also produced ensuring long-term immunity. Passive immunity involves administering prepared antibodies against the pathogen that the individual did not produce. Passive immunity is temporary. **(26.5) 1.** Allergies are hypersensitive responses of individuals to antigens called allergens, which produce the response. **2.** An immediate allergic response occurs within seconds of an exposure to an allergen and is caused by chemicals released by mast cells. Delayed allergic responses take longer to develop and are probably initiated by memory T cells. **3.** The AIDS patient has a compromised immune system due to the HIV virus living in and destroying helper T cells, which are necessary for the activity of all other immune system cells.

Testing Yourself

1. a; **2.** c; **3.** a; **4.** b; **5.** e; **6.** d; **7.** c; **8.** e; **9.** b; **10.** a; **11.** a; **12.** e; **13.** d; **14.** b; **15.** e; **16.** b; **17.** b; **18.** c

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. The tonsils are composed of lymph tissue and help to capture pathogens as they enter the digestive and respiratory tracts. Because of their location and function, they often contain bacteria that at times can overwhelm the tissue of the tonsils and cause an infection. Either through the body's usual defenses or through help from medication, individuals can usually recover from these infections. The tonsils, once healthy, will once again aid the body in the fight against infection. Only if they become chronically infected and can no longer perform their functions should they be removed. **2.** Immunosuppressive drugs dampen the body's response not only to the transplanted tissue but to other foreign and infected cells as well. Therefore, the body's ability to fight infections is weakened and the transplant patients become more susceptible to all types of infections. **3. a.** Drug companies have an obligation to fairly price their products to avoid exploitation of consumers. However, they need to support their operations as well as conduct research and development of new pharmaceuticals. Nonetheless they should not seek excessive profits for their shareholders or executives. **b.** It is best for everyone if patent laws are respected since it provides incentives for business to operate and develop new products. However, when human lives are being lost due to egregious corporate policy then governments need to step in and regulate the drug companies.

CHAPTER 27

Check Your Progress

(27.1) 1. Sensory neurons convey nerve impulses from sensory receptors to the central nervous system. Interneurons carry nerve impulses between parts of the central nervous system. Motor neurons carry nerve impulses from the central nervous system to muscles or glands. **2.** The cell body contains the nucleus and other organelles. Dendrites receive signals from sensory receptors or other neurons. An axon is a long single projection that conducts nerve impulses. **3.** First, Na^+ gates open and Na^+ moves to the inside of the axon which becomes positive. Second, K^+ moves to the outside and the inside of the axon becomes negative again. **4.** Nerve impulses at the axon terminal cause synaptic vesicles to release a neurotransmitter into the synaptic cleft. The neurotransmitters then diffuse across the cleft and bind to receptor proteins on the postsynaptic membrane. **5.** Central nervous system consists of the brain (cerebrum, diencephalon, cerebellum, brain stem) and spinal cord. The brain receives sensory information, integrates it, and sends out motor instructions to glands and muscles. The spinal cord conducts neural impulses between the brain and spinal nerves. **6.** A sensory input generates a nerve impulse that moves along sensory axons to the spinal cord. The signal is passed on to many interneurons, some of which synapse with motor neurons. The nerve impulses travel along the axons of the motor neurons to an effector which brings about a response to the stimulus. Other interneurons carry nerve impulses to the brain which results in the sensation of the stimulus. **7.** The parasympathetic division keeps the "house" in order by maintaining the internal responses associated with a relaxed state, such as pupil contraction, food digestion, and slow heartbeat. **(27.2) 1.** Steroid hormones enter the cell and move to the nucleus to stimulate genes to produce proteins

that alter cell activity. Peptide hormones bind to a receptor in the plasma membrane which then induces a signal transduction pathway leading to the creation of a second messenger which affects the metabolism of the cell. **2.** The hypothalamus is a part of the brain. It receives sensory information about the internal environment of the body and communicates with the autonomic nervous system to maintain homeostasis. It also contains hormone-secreting neurons that control the glandular secretions of the pituitary gland. **3.** In a negative-feedback mechanism a hormone controls the level of a product. When that level varies from normal, the amount of hormone, whether too much or too little, is altered until the product's level returns to normal. **4.** Hypothalamus controls the release and inhibition of hormones in the pituitary gland. Anterior pituitary gland releases gonadotropic hormones, TSH, ACTH, prolactin, and GH. Posterior pituitary gland releases ADH and oxytocin. Thyroid gland releases T_4, T_3, and calcitonin. Parathyroid gland releases PTH. Adrenal medulla releases epinephrine and norepinephrine. Adrenal cortex releases aldosterone and cortisol. Pancreas releases insulin and glucagon. **5.** Insulin is either absent or the cells cannot respond to it. People with type 1 diabetes do not produce insulin. People with type 2 diabetes produce insulin, but cells do not respond to it normally.

Testing Yourself

1. d; **2.** a; **3.** c; **4.** d; **5.** e; **6.** d; **7.** a; **8.** d; **9.** b; **10.** b; **11.** b; **12.** b

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Parkinson's patients do not exhibit normal constriction of blood vessels, so their blood pressure slowly decreases. The loss of function of the sympathetic division prevents the body from regulating blood pressure, so rapid changes in blood pressure can occur upon standing, leading to orthostatic hypotension. **2.** Type 1 diabetes is thought to result when an environmental agent, such as a virus, causes T cells to destroy the pancreatic islets. Vaccines may introduce that agent and stimulate the autoimmune response. **3.** The brain is an energetically-expensive organ, accounting for a substantial proportion of our daily calorie intake. The selective pressure in an environment with scarce food, like that on Borneo, would be to sacrifice brain size to conserve energy. In an environment with plentiful food like Sumatra, the orangutans can afford to spend extra energy on nervous tissue, and thus reap the advantage of larger brain size. **4.** Extreme shortness has been found to limit a person's ability to succeed in many ways so giving hGH to extremely short people can be supported. However, defining shortness is necessary. The FDA would need to set the limits of the normal range for height and at what height it is acceptable to administer hGH. Without such regulations it is likely that hGH will be misused. **5.** It is natural to want to avoid death and improve performance; however, the use of hGH has too many negative side effects, is very expensive, and should be considered a drug that falls under anti-doping rules applied to competitive athletes. Though one is tempted to control one's fate, it is better to accept aging as a natural part of life than use hGH to avoid the inevitable.

CHAPTER 28

Check Your Progress

(28.1) 1. Chemoreceptors detect chemicals through taste and smell. Mechanoreceptors detect mechanical signals involved in hearing and balance. Photoreceptors detect light involved in sight. Cutaneous receptors detect touch, pain, temperature, and pressure. Proprioceptors detect changes in positions of joints, muscles, and bones. **2.** Sensors in the skin provide sensory input that is communicated to the primary sensory area of the cerebral cortex. In the epidermis free nerve endings respond to cold and warmth as well as pain. The dermis contains sensory receptors for pressure and touch such as the Pacinian corpuscle and root hair plexus. **3.** The eyes have sensory receptors sensitive to light. These photoreceptors detect the amount of light, the direction from which it is coming, three dimensional shapes, and the wavelength which is interpreted as color. Human ears both detect sound pressure waves as well as the body's position relative to gravity. **(28.2) 1.** Bones and muscles support the body, allow body parts to move, protect internal organs, and help other systems to function. **2.** Smooth muscle is involuntary and found in organs and vessel walls. Cardiac muscle is involuntary and found in the walls of the heart. Skeletal muscle is voluntary and is used to move the skeleton. **3.** The axial skeleton is composed of the skull, vertebral column, ribs, and sternum and lies along the midline of the body. The appendicular skeleton is composed of the shoulder girdle, the pelvic girdle, and their attached appendages. **4.** The middle part of long bones is a cavity surrounded by compact bone. This structure provides strength as well as some flexibility to support the body and tolerate the stresses put on bone by muscle contraction. The red bone marrow in the spongy bone located at the ends of long bones is the site of blood cell formation. Articulate cartilage located at the end surfaces of the bone allow the bone to slide over other bones at the joints. **5.** The globular heads of myosin molecules attach to actin filaments and pull them toward the center of the sarcomere. Then ATP allows the heads to be released, and they reattach at a new location along the actin filament, resulting in contraction or shortening of the muscle.

Testing Yourself

1. b; **2.** b; **3.** d; **4.** e; **5.** c; **6.** b; **7.** a; **8. a.** cochlear nerve; **b.** cochlea; **c.** tympanic membrane; **d.** auditory tube; **e.** auditory canal; **f.** ossicles; **g.** semicircular canals; **h.** outer ear; **i.** middle ear; **j.** inner ear; **9. a.** sclera; **b.** retina; **c.** vein; **d.** artery; **e.** optic nerve; **f.** fovea; **g.** ciliary muscle; **h.** iris; **i.** pupil; **j.** lens; **k.** cornea; **10.** c; **11.** a; **12.** a; **13.** c; **14.** c; **15.** a

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. The blood vessels interfere with the transmission of light to the retina at the back of the eye, consequently impairing the signal sent to the brain. Both cancer and eye diseases involve the growth of new blood vessels. Anti-angiogenesis drugs that have been developed for cancer treatment are currently being studied for the treatment of these eye diseases. **2.** Our olfactory system allows us to recognize and discriminate between many different odors. Therefore, we can detect the difference between a dangerous odor, such as smoke, and a harmless one, such as flower fragrance. On the other hand, every natural toxin tastes bitter, so it is more important to be able to sense bitterness than to discriminate between bitter tastes. Therefore, humans have evolved to identify bitter compounds by taste while not being able to distinguish between the different compounds.

CHAPTER 29

Check Your Progress

(29.1) 1. Asexual reproduction involves one parent producing offspring that are genetically identical to each other and the parent. Sexual reproduction involves two parents and the offspring have different combinations of the parent's genes. **2.** Animals that reproduce in the water have no need to protect their eggs and embryos from drying out, but they do have to worry more about predators destroying the zygotes. Animals that reproduce on land need to protect their gametes and embryos from desiccation while providing a stable environment for development. **3.** Egg-laying animals are oviparous. Animals that retain their eggs in the body until hatched are called ovoviviparous. Mammals that produce living young are viviparous. **(29.2) 1.** Sperm are produced in the seminiferous tubules in the testis, mature in the epididymis, are propelled into the vas deferens, and travel out through the penis. **2.** Testosterone is the main sex hormone in males and is essential for the normal development and functioning of male sex organs. It is necessary for the maturation of sperm and maintaining male secondary sex characteristics. FSH promotes spermatogenesis in the seminiferous tubules. LH controls the production of testosterone by the interstitial cells. **3.** During the follicular phase of the ovarian cycle, FSH released by the anterior pituitary promotes the maturation of follicles in the ovary. Ovarian follicles produce increasing levels of estrogen, which exert feedback control over FSH secretion and results in ovulation. **4.** After ovulation and during the luteal phase of the ovarian cycle, LH promotes the development of a corpus luteum. This structure produces increasing levels of progesterone, which causes the endometrium to become secretory. Menstruation begins when progesterone production declines to a low level. During the follicular phase, FSH promotes the development of ovarian follicles which produce estrogens that cause the endometrium to thicken. **5.** Artificial Insemination by Donor—sperm from a donor is placed in the vagina by a physician. In Vitro Fertilization—immature eggs are removed and cultured outside the body. When mature, concentrated sperm is added to the eggs. After a few days the embryos that have developed are transferred to the uterus. Intracytoplasmic Sperm Injection—a single sperm is injected into an egg outside the body. The embryo is cultured and eventually transferred to the uterus. Gamete Intrafallopian Transfer—the eggs and sperm are brought together and then immediately placed in the uterine tubes. **6.** STDs caused by bacteria include chlamydia, gonorrhea, and syphilis. STDs caused by a virus include HIV, genital warts, genital herpes and hepatitis. Trichimonas is caused by a parasitic protozoan. **(29.3) 1.** The zygote divides without increasing in size, forming a solid ball of

cells called a morula. **2.** Germ layer formation allows for differentiation because each of the three germ layers gives rise to particular structures and organs. **3.** One tissue releases a chemical that turns on genes in another tissue, influencing its development. **4.** Embryonic development occurs during months 0–2 and is characterized by the establishment of organ systems. Fetal development occurs during months 3–9 and is characterized by an increase in size. **5.** The placenta has a fetal side and a maternal side and exchange of molecules occurs between the sides during development. Carbon dioxide and wastes move from the fetal side to the maternal side and nutrients and oxygen move from the maternal side to the fetal side. Maternal blood and fetal blood do not mix.

Testing Yourself

1. d; **2.** b; **3. a.** ureter; **b.** bladder; **c.** vas deferens; **d.** seminal vesicle; **e.** ejaculatory duct; **f.** prostate gland; **g.** bulbourethral gland; **h.** urethra; **i.** epididymis; **j.** penis; **k.** foreskin; **l.** testis; **m.** scrotum; **4. a.** uterine tube; **b.** ovary; **c.** rectum; **d.** cervix; **e.** bladder; **f.** vagina; **g.** urethra; **5.** d; **6.** d; **7.** b; **8.** a; **9.** a; **10.** c; **11.** a; **12.** b; **13.** d

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Fetuses take a high caloric toll on their mothers. Mothers with low percentages of body fat might starve during pregnancy or during the prolonged period of breast-feeding. They would be less successful at surviving and producing healthy children. By stopping the reproductive cycle when the body has insufficient fat reserves, the woman is better able to survive to a time when conditions are more favorable for reproduction. **2.** One hypothesis is that menopause in women developed early in human evolution. It allowed women to channel their efforts into caring for their existing children and grandchildren, increasing the survival rate of the next generation. This would give the woman the best chance to pass her genes through generations, so it increased her fitness. Since men were not the main caregivers for their children, their fitness would not be increased if they evolved so as to stop spermatogenesis later in life. **3.** The villi of the chorion are numerous and spread through the developing placenta. Removing a small portion of them is not known to harm the fetus. **4.** Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) is secreted by the placenta as it begins to form. It maintains the endometrium until enough estrogen and progesterone are produced by the placenta. Because hCG is a hormone it is transported in the blood and is removed from the blood into the urine by the kidneys. **5.** In addition to the sperm counts information about the individual's age, where they live, their eating, drinking, and smoking habits, their sleep patterns, clothing, and environmental exposures would be useful in forming a testable hypothesis.

CHAPTER 30

Check Your Progress

(30.1) 1. Organisms, populations, communities, ecosystems, biosphere. **2.** Ecosystem consists of a community of living organisms as well as their physical environment. Community consists of all the various populations at a particular locale. **3.** An environmental scientist also studies biodiversity and conservation biology which are topics in ecology. **(30.2) 1.** ((20.5—9.8)/1,000) * 100 = 1.07%; **2.** MDCs such as those in Europe and North America have modest population growth and a good standard of living. LDCs such as those in Latin America, Asia, and Africa have a fast rate of population growth, and most of the people live in poverty. **3.** Replacement reproduction in a population occurs when reproduction results in no growth in population numbers. Due to mortality this occurs when the replacement rate is lightly greater than two children per couple. **4.** MDCs strain available resources due to high resource consumption while LDCs strain available resources due to large population sizes. **(30.3) 1.** An age structure diagram shows different numbers of individuals in each age class stacked in succession. Large numbers of prereproductive and reproductive numbers compared to postreproductive numbers indicate that the population will increase. The smaller the number of individuals who will or can reproduce leads populations to be stable or decrease in population numbers. **2.** Type I populations have fewer offspring and most of those offspring live to reproduce. Type III populations have large numbers of offspring and most of them will die before they reproduce. Type II populations have the same chance of death at all ages. **3.** Both plot number of organisms vs. time. Exponential growth produces a J-shaped curve and occurs when resources are unlimited. Logistic growth produces an S-shaped curve and occurs after exponential growth, when resources become limited. **4.** Usual numbers of offspring per reproduction; chances of survival until age of reproduction; how often each individual reproduces; age at which reproduction begins. **5.** Independent—weather and natural disasters; Dependent—competition, predation, and parasitism. **(30.4) 1.** Opportunistic species exhibit exponential growth and are regulated by density-independent effects. Equilibrium species exhibit logistic growth and remain near carrying capacity. **2.** Extinction is the total disappearance of a species or higher group. **3.** Time to maturity; number of offspring produced; size of geographic range; degree of habitat tolerance; size of local populations.

Testing Yourself

1. d; **2.** b; **3.** a; **4.** c; **5.** d; **6.** b; **7.** b; **8. a.** increasing; **b.** decreasing; **c.** stable; **9.** a; **10.** a; **11.** d; **12.** b; **13.** c; **14.** a; **15.** c

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. population growth rate = 1.1%; doubling time = 63.7 years; 172.5 years if birthrate drops. **2.** The doubling time for the dandelions is 1 week so 1/2 of them existed at 19 weeks and 1/4 of them existed at 18 weeks. **3.** The number of surviving individuals and the variable being studied. In Fig. 15.3, that variable would be clutch size. **4. a.** It can be argued that those species with the highest risk of extinction are less successful products of evolution and should not receive extraordinary protection. However, this position assumes humans can place value on a particular species' existence in an impartial manner. Often big animals with cute faces are given preference. **b.** Determining which species are successful products of evolution is subjective and therefore inexact. A more cautious approach would be to treat species in risk of extinction equally, distributing limited resources between them all.

CHAPTER 31

Check Your Progress

(31.1) 1. Flowers and pollinators have coevolved to be suited to one another. Hummingbirds pollinate red flowers that they can see and the petals are curved so that the stamens dust the bird's head. **2.** Species richness is the list of species in a community (species composition) while diversity encompasses species richness and distribution. **3.** Primary succession occurs where soil has not yet been formed, while secondary succession occurs where soil is present. **4.** Competition, predation, parasitism, commensalism, mutualism. **(31.2) 1.** Autotrophs take in only inorganic nutrients and acquire energy from an outside source, often the sun. Heterotrophs acquire energy from consuming preformed organic nutrients. **2.** Energy flows from the sun to the Earth through living organisms until it is lost as heat. Chemicals cycle throughout the environment both through living and nonliving components. **3.** A food chain depicts a single path of energy flow in an ecosystem, while an ecological pyramid depicts the entire flow of energy between trophic levels. **4.** Phosphorous—mining ore, fertilizing, animal feed supplements, detergents, animal waste, and sewage discharge leading to runoff, eutrophication, and algae blooms. Nitrogen—making fertilizers, leading to runoff; deforestation leading to loss of nitrogen to groundwater; groundwater contamination by nitrates leading to health problems; Carbon—excess CO_2 release into the atmosphere by burning fossil fuels, deforestation leading to less carbon fixation. **(31.3) 1.** The biosphere is divided into aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems. Aquatic ecosystems include freshwater and saltwater systems. Terrestrial ecosystems can be divided into several major types depending on temperature and rainfall. **2.** Tundra, taiga, mountain zone, temperate forest, tropical forest, shrubland, temperate grassland, savanna, semidesert, desert forest, desert. **3.** Swamps have a more concentrated supply of nutrients and decomposers than open oceans.

Testing Yourself

1. a; **2.** e; **3.** a; **4.** c; **5.** b; **6.** d; **7.** c; **8. a.** energy; **b.** nutrients; **c.** heat; **d.** heat; **e.** producer; **f.** consumer; **g.** inorganic nutrients; **h.** decomposers; **i.** heat; **9.** e; **10.** d; **11. a.** top carnivores; **b.** carnivores; **c.** herbivores; **d.** producers; **12.** b; **13.** e; **14.** a

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Insects that are best adapted for obtaining the most food from flowers to which they can easily access reproduce more. Those flowers best adapted for attracting insect pollinators produce more offspring in the next generation, and likewise those insects that obtain the most food produce more offspring than others. This process continues over generations and leads to the coevolution of specific adaptations. **2.** The otter population is reduced; sea urchin

population rises; kelp plants are reduced; species living in the kelp forests are reduced or eliminated due to habitat destruction; productivity of the kelp forest is reduced because of fewer producers and consumers; less food is being produced and the food chain is weakened; chemical cycling is reduced. **3.** Native populations need to be protected in order to preserve the species richness and diversity of the aquatic environments. It is fallacious that the mute swan should be allowed to displace native birds if that argument is based on human perception of beauty rather than on the health of the community in the environment.

CHAPTER 32

Check Your Progress

(32.1) 1. Because conservation biology has the broad focus of conserving natural resources, it draws on many subfields of basic biology including: genetics, physiology, behavior systematics, ecology, field biology, and evolutionary biology. The capacity of applied biology fields such as biopark management, forestry, veterinary science, fisheries biology, range management, agronomy and wildlife management are used in conservation biology. **2.** As species become extinct the diversity of the world decreases. The benefits humans receive now and in the future from living in a world with many different organisms are reduced. **3.** Biodiversity is good for the Earth and therefore good for humans. Extinctions are undesirable. Interactions within ecosystems support biodiversity and are beneficial to humans. Biodiversity is the result of evolutionary change and has great value to humans. **(32.2) 1.** Direct values include development of medicines, agriculture management, and products that humans consume. Indirect values include contributions to biogeochemical cycles, waste disposal mechanisms, provision of fresh water, prevention of soil erosion, regulation of climate, and ecotourism. **2.** Most modern medicines are derived from organisms so if there is more biodiversity the potential of developing more medicines increases. With agriculture biodiversity can lead to the development of crop varieties able to live in varied climates and withstand herbivores better. **3.** Biodiversity gives us flexibility through having options. If any resource, whether it is water, land, food, or energy, becomes limited, another source can be substituted. **(32.3) 1.** Renewable resources like solar energy, wind, and geothermal are unlimited in supply. More will be available. Nonrenewable resources such as land, fossil fuels, and minerals are limited in supply and can be exhausted. **2.** Deforestation occurs when humans harvest timber, clear the forest to create cropland, or settle in the forest. The thin poor soil is not well suited for farming and is quickly abandoned. Increased erosion and runoff result. Desertification occurs when humans convert semiarid land to desert by overgrazing. The loss of vegetation increases runoff, depletes groundwater, and eventually leads to desert conditions that force the population to move on. **3**. Irrigation depletes water tables. Monoculture reduces biodiversity. Application of fertilizer, herbicides, and pesticides results in runoff into water sources. It uses excessive amounts of fuel. It converts land to fields leading to habitat destruction. It depends on GMOs. **4.** The green revolution increased crop yields by introducing new varieties of crops which lead to an increased world food supply. Increasing the food supply is necessary to keep pace with the exponentially growing human population. However, the new varieties require increased amounts of fertilizers, pesticides, and water which impact the environment negatively. **5.** As mean global temperatures rise, land and ocean temperatures will increase and affect biodiversity. Glaciers will melt and water will expand due to higher temperatures which will lead to a rise in sea levels. This will inundate coastal areas. There will be an increase in water evaporation which will lead to an increase in precipitation along coastlines resulting in flooding in these vulnerable areas. At the same time there will be an increase in dryness in the middle of the continents which will lead to droughts and a decrease in agricultural productivity. **6.** Wind Power: Many windmills must be constructed in windy areas which affect bird survival and animal habitats. Many people find the windmills unaesthetic. Hydropower: Dams and hydroelectric plants must be constructed. Big dams have negative impact on river and stream health and are detrimental to migrating fish. Geothermal Energy: There is a large capital expenditure associated with the collection of geothermal energy and its distribution. Solar Energy: It costs a great deal to construct solar collection systems that can convert and store solar energy. **(32.4) 1.** Use renewable energy resources, reuse heat and waste materials, and maximally recycle. **2.** Plant cover crops, practice multiuse farming, replenish soil nutrients, conserve water, plant cultivars, use precision farming, use integrated pest management, plant a variety of species, plant multipurpose trees, maintain and restore wetlands, use renewable energy, and buy locally. **3.** Establish energy-efficient transportation systems, utilize green roofs, create greenbelts, use solar or geothermal energy to heat buildings, improve storm-water management, plant native species, revitalize old sections of the city before building new, change lighting, reduce noise levels, and promote sustainable building practices.

Testing Yourself

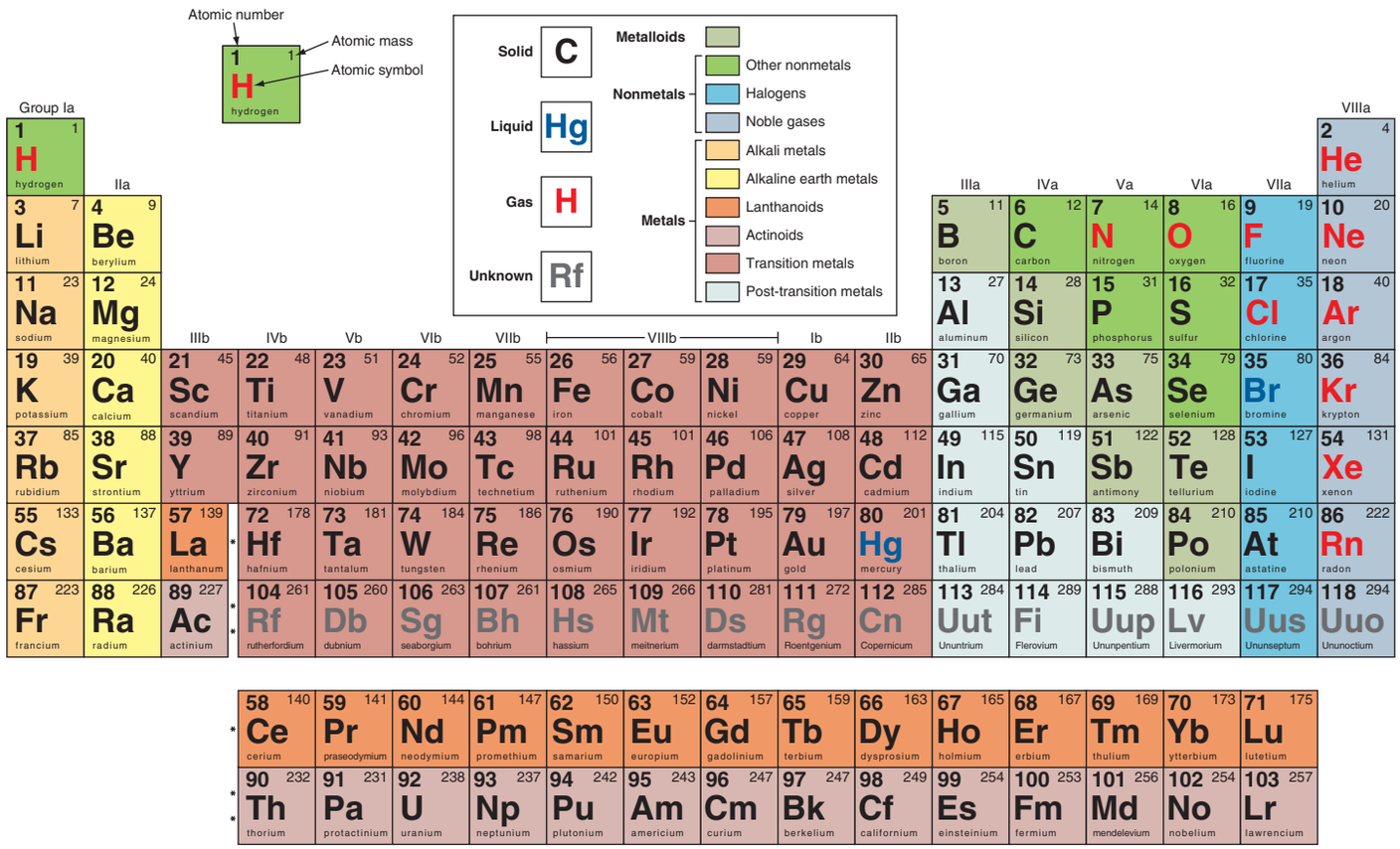
1. e; **2.** a; **3.** e; **4.** c; **5.** b; **6.** d; **7.** c; **8.** a; **9.** b; **10.** a; **11.** Use more renewable resources than non-renewable resources, increase recycling, refine processing to reduce waste; **12.** c

Thinking Critically About the Concepts

1. Positive environmental impacts include increasing diversity of animals and plants by increasing seasonal flooding and nutrient deposition. The negative environmental impacts include miscalculating the economic impacts and the potential of introducing invasive species. The direct benefits for residents include removing them from the economic and personal threat of floodplain agriculture and residency. The indirect benefits for residents include benefitting from the diversity the Emiquon Refuge can offer. **2.** How rare the species is, how difficult it will be to preserve it, the cost of preserving it, the potential benefit to human medicine. **3.** The internal temperature of mammals must stay within the normal range which is quite narrow. If the external temperature is too high for homeostatic mechanisms to control and the internal temperature of the mammals rises above normal, they will die off.

Appendix B Periodic Table of the Elements & The Metric System

Periodic Table of Elements

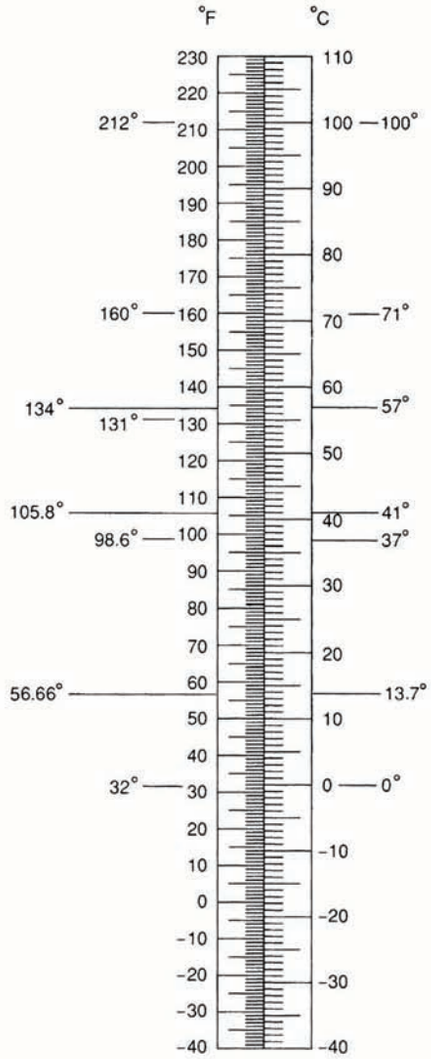


The Metric System

Unit and Abbreviation	Metric Equivalent	Approximate English-to-Metric Equivalents
Length		
nanometer (nm)	= 10^{-9} m (10^{-3} μm)	
micrometer (μm)	= 10^{-6} m (10^{-3} mm)	
millimeter (mm)	= 0.001 (10^{-3}) m	
centimeter (cm)	= 0.01 (10^{-2}) m	1 inch = 2.54 cm 1 foot = 30.5 cm
meter (m)	= 100 (10^{2}) cm = 1,000 mm	1 foot = 0.30 m 1 yard = 0.91 m
kilometer (km)	= 1,000 (10^{3}) m	1 mi = 1.6 km
Weight (mass)		
nanogram (ng)	= 10^{-9} g	
microgram (μg)	= 10^{-6} g	
milligram (mg)	= 10^{-3} g	
gram (g)	= 1,000 mg	1 ounce = 28.3 g 1 pound = 454 g
kilogram (kg)	= 1,000 (10^{3}) g	= 0.45 kg
metric ton (t)	= 1,000 kg	1 ton = 0.91 t
Volume		
microliter (μl)	= 10^{-6} l (10^{-3} ml)	
milliliter (ml)	= 10^{-3} l = 1 cm^3 (cc) = 1,000 mm^3	1 tsp = 5 ml 1 fl oz = 30 ml
liter (l)	= 1,000 ml	1 pint = 0.47 l 1 quart = 0.95 l 1 gallon = 3.79 l
kiloliter (kl)	= 1,000 l	

°C	°F	
100	212	Water boils at standard temperature and pressure.
71	160	Flash pasteurization of milk
57	134	Highest recorded temperature in the United States, Death Valley, July 10, 1913
41	105.8	Average body temperature of a marathon runner in hot weather
37	98.6	Human body temperature
13.7	56.66	Human survival is still possible at this temperature.
0	32.0	Water freezes at standard temperature and pressure.

Units of Temperature



To convert temperature scales:

$$°C = \frac{(°F - 32)}{1.8}$$

$$°F = 1.8(°C) + 32$$

Glossary

A

abscisic acid Plant hormone that causes stomata to close and initiates and maintains dormancy.

abscission Dropping of leaves, fruits, or flowers from a plant.

abstinence Method of birth control; the practice of not engaging in sexual intercourse.

acetylcholine (ACh) Neurotransmitter active in both the peripheral and central nervous systems.

acetylcholinesterase (AChE) Enzyme that breaks down acetylcholine within a synapse.

acetyl-CoA Molecule made up of a 2-carbon acetyl group attached to coenzyme A. During cellular respiration, the acetyl group enters the citric acid cycle for further breakdown.

acid Molecules tending to raise the hydrogen ion concentration in a solution and to lower its pH numerically.

acoelomate Animal without a coelom, as in flatworms.

acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) Disease caused by a retrovirus and transmitted via body fluids; characterized by failure of the immune system.

actin Muscle protein making up the thin filaments in a sarcomere. Its movement shortens the sarcomere, yielding muscle contraction. Actin filaments play a role in the movement of the cell and its organelles.

actin filament Cytoskeletal filament of eukaryotic cells composed of the protein actin; also refers to the thin filaments of muscle cells.

action potential Electrochemical changes that take place across the axomembrane; the nerve impulse.

active immunity Resistance to disease due to the immune system's response to a microorganism or a vaccine.

active site Region on the surface of an enzyme where the substrate binds and where the reaction occurs.

active transport Use of a plasma membrane carrier protein to move a molecule or an ion from a region of lower concentration to one of higher concentration. It opposes equilibrium and requires energy.

adaptation Organism's modification in structure, function, or behavior suitable to the environment.

adaptive immunity Form of immunity that involves B and T lymphocytes in targeting specific pathogens in the body.

adaptive radiation Rapid evolution of several species from a common ancestor into new ecological or geographical zones.

Addison disease Condition resulting from a deficiency of adrenal cortex hormones; characterized by low blood glucose, weight loss, and weakness.

adenine (A) One of four nitrogen-containing bases in nucleotides composing the structure of DNA and RNA.

adenosine triphosphate (ATP) Nucleotide with three phosphate groups. The breakdown of ATP into ADP + P_i makes energy available for energy-requiring processes in cells.

adhesion junction Junction between cells in which the adjacent plasma membranes do not touch but are held together by intercellular filaments attached to button-like thickenings.

adrenal cortex Located in the adrenal gland; produces the glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid hormones.

adrenal gland Gland that lies atop a kidney. The *adrenal medulla* produces the hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine, and the *adrenal cortex* produces the glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid hormones.

adrenal medulla Inner portion of the adrenal gland; secretes the hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine.

adult stem cell Cell found in adults that may differentiate to form other cell types.

age structure In demographics, a display of the age groups of a population. A growing population has a pyramid-shaped diagram.

agglutination Clumping of red blood cells due to a reaction between antigens on red blood cell plasma membranes and antibodies in the plasma.

algae (sing., alga) Type of protist that carries on photosynthesis. Single-celled forms are a part of phytoplankton, and multicellular forms are called seaweed.

alkaptonuria Rare autosomal genetic disorder in which the individual is unable to metabolize homogentisic acid.

allele Alternative form of a gene. Alleles occur at the same locus on homologous chromosomes.

allergen Foreign substance capable of stimulating an allergic response.

allergy Immune response to substances that usually are not recognized as foreign.

allopatric speciation Origin of new species between populations that are separated geographically.

alternation of generations Life cycle, typical of plants, in which a diploid sporophyte alternates with a haploid gametophyte.

alternative mRNA processing Lets cells produce multiple proteins from the same gene by changing the way exons are joined.

alveolus (pl., alveoli) In humans, terminal, microscopic, grape-like air sac in the lungs.

Alzheimer disease Brain disorder characterized by a general loss of mental abilities.

amino acid Organic molecule composed of an amino group and an acid group; covalently bonds to produce peptide molecules.

amniocentesis Procedure for removing amniotic fluid surrounding the developing fetus for testing of the fluid or cells in the fluid.

amoeboid Cell that moves and engulfs debris with pseudopods.

amphibian Member of a class of vertebrates that includes frogs, toads, and salamanders, that are tied to a watery environment for reproduction.

analogous structure Structure that has a similar function in separate lineages but differs in anatomy and ancestry.

analogy Similarity of characteristics due to convergent evolution.

anaphase Mitotic phase during which daughter chromosomes move toward the poles of the spindle.

angiogenesis Formation of new blood vessels.

angiosperm Flowering plant. The seeds are borne within a fruit.

animal Multicellular, heterotrophic organism belonging to the animal kingdom.

annelid Segmented worms, such as the earthworm and the clam worm.

annual ring Layer of wood (secondary xylem) usually produced during one growing season.

anorexia nervosa Eating disorder characterized by a morbid fear of gaining weight.

anterior pituitary Portion of the pituitary gland that is controlled by the hypothalamus. It produces six types of hormones, some of which control other endocrine glands.

anther In flowering plants, pollen-bearing portion of the stamen.

anthropoid Group of primates that includes monkeys, apes, and humans.

antibody Protein produced in response to the presence of an antigen. Each antibody combines with a specific antigen.

anticodon Three-base sequence in a transfer RNA molecule base that pairs with a complementary codon in mRNA.

antigen Foreign substance, usually a protein or a polysaccharide, that stimulates the immune system to react, such as to produce antibodies.

antigen-presenting cell (APC) Cell that displays an antigen to certain cells of the immune system, so that they can defend the body against that antigen.

antioxidant Substance, such as vitamins C and E, that defends the body against free radicals.

anus Outlet of the digestive tube.

aorta In humans, the major systemic artery that takes blood from the heart to the tissues.

aortic body Structure located in the walls of the aorta; contains chemoreceptors sensitive to hydrogen ion and carbon dioxide concentrations in the blood.

apical dominance Influence of a terminal bud in suppressing the growth of lateral buds.

apical meristem In vascular plants, masses of cells in the root and shoot that reproduce and elongate as primary growth occurs.

apoptosis Programmed cell death involving a cascade of specific cellular events, leading to death and destruction of the cell.

appendicular skeleton Part of the vertebrate skeleton forming the appendages, shoulder girdle, and hip girdle.
appendix In humans, small, tubular appendage containing lymphatic tissue, that extends outward from the cecum of the large intestine; a part of the immune system.
aquaporin Membrane channel through which water moves by simple diffusion.
aquatic ecosystem Freshwater ecosystem (river, stream, lake, pond) or saltwater (marine) ecosystem (ocean, coral reef, saltwater marsh).
aquifer Rock layers that contain water and release it in appreciable quantities to wells or springs.
arachnid Group of arthropods that contains spiders, scorpions, and ticks.
archaea Prokaryotic members of the domain Archaea. Many live in unique habitats, such as swamps, highly saline environments, and submarine thermal vents.
arteriole Vessel that takes blood from an artery to capillaries.
artery Blood vessel that transports blood away from the heart.
arthropod Invertebrate with an exoskeleton and jointed appendages, such as crustaceans and insects.
artificial selection Breeders selecting individuals with particular traits, or combinations of traits, to reproduce over others.
asexual reproduction Form of reproduction that does not require two individuals; example is binary fission in bacteria.
atherosclerosis Form of cardiovascular disease characterized by the buildup of cholesterol and fatty acid plaques in the blood vessels.
atom Smallest particle of an element that displays the properties of the element.
atomic mass Average value of the mass numbers for all isotopes of an element.
atomic number Number of protons within the nucleus of an atom.
atomic symbol One or two letters that represent the name of an element—e.g., H stands for a hydrogen atom, and Na stands for a sodium atom.
ATP synthase Enzyme that is part of an *ATP synthase complex* and functions in the production of ATP in chloroplasts and mitochondria.
atrioventricular valve Heart valve located between an atrium and a ventricle.
atrium (pl., atria) Chamber; particularly an upper chamber of the heart lying above a ventricle.
australopithecine One of several species of *Australopithecus,* a genus that contains the first generally recognized hominins.
autoimmune disease Disease that results when the immune system mistakenly attacks the body's own tissues.
autonomic system Portion of the peripheral nervous system that regulates internal organs.
autosomal trait A characteristic or trait that is determined by a gene located on one of the 22 sets of autosomal chromosomes.
autosome Any chromosome other than the sex-determining pair.
autotroph Organism that can capture energy and synthesize organic molecules from inorganic nutrients.
auxin Plant hormone regulating growth, particularly cell elongation; also called indoleacetic acid (IAA).
AV (atrioventricular) node Small region of neuromuscular tissue that transmits impulses received from the SA node to the ventricular walls.
axial skeleton Part of the vertebrate skeleton forming the vertical support or axis, including the skull, rib cage, and vertebral column.
axon Elongated portion of a neuron that conducts nerve impulses, typically from the cell body to the synapse.

B

bacteria Prokaryotic members of the domain Bacteria; most diverse and prevalent organisms on Earth.
bacteriophage Virus that infects bacteria.
ball-and-socket joint Synovial joint (hip and shoulder joints) that allows movement in all directions.
bark External part of a tree, containing cork, cork cambium, and phloem.
Barr body Dark-staining body (discovered by M. Barr) in the nuclei of female mammals that contains a condensed, inactive X chromosome.
base Molecules tending to lower the hydrogen ion concentration in a solution and raise the pH numerically.
B-cell receptor (BCR) Complex on the surface of a B cell that binds an antigen and stimulates the B cell.
benign tumor Tumor that does not invade adjacent tissue and stays at the site of origin.
bicarbonate ion Ion that participates in buffering the blood, and the form in which carbon dioxide is transported in the bloodstream.
bilateral symmetry Body plan having two corresponding or complementary halves.
bile Secretion of the liver that is temporarily stored and concentrated in the gallbladder before being released into the small intestine, where it emulsifies fat.
binary fission Splitting of a parent cell into two daughter cells; serves as an asexual form of reproduction in bacteria.
binge-eating disorder Condition characterized by overeating episodes that are not followed by purging.
binomial name Scientific name of an organism, the first part of which designates the genus and the second part of which designates the specific epithet.
biodiversity Total number of species, the variability of their genes, and the communities in which they live.
biodiversity hotspots Ecosystems that contain an above-average distribution of species; examples are coral reefs and rain forests.
bioethics The branch of ethics concerned with the development and implementation of biological technology.
biogeochemical cycle Circulating pathway of elements, such as carbon and nitrogen, involving exchange pools, storage areas, and biotic communities.
biogeography Study of the geographical distribution of organisms.
bioinformatics Computer technologies used to study the genome and other molecular data.
biological magnification Process by which substances become more concentrated in organisms in the higher trophic levels of a food web.
biological molecule Organic molecule in cells: carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids.
biological species concept Definition of a species that relies on the ability to produce viable offspring.
biology Scientific study of life.
biomass Weight of one or more organisms.
bioremediation Cleanup of the environment using bacteria to break down pollutants, such as oil spills.
biosphere Zone of air, land, and water at the surface of the Earth in which organisms are found.
biotechnology Genetic engineering and other techniques that make use of natural biological systems to create a product or achieve a particular result desired by humans.
biotic potential Maximum population growth rate under ideal conditions.
bipedalism Walking erect on two feet.
bird Endothermic reptile that has feathers and wings, is often adapted for flight, and lays hard-shelled eggs.
birth control pill Oral contraception containing estrogen and progesterone.
bivalve Type of mollusc with a shell composed of two valves; includes clams, oysters, and scallops.
blade Broad, expanded portion of a plant leaf that may be single or compound leaflets.
blastocyst Early stage of animal embryonic development that consists of a hollow, fluid-filled ball of cells.
blind spot Region of the retina, lacking rods or cones, where the optic nerve exits the retina.
blood Fluid circulated by the heart through a closed system of vessels.
blood pressure Force of blood pushing against the inside wall of blood vessels.
B lymphocyte (B cell) Lymphocyte that matures in the bone marrow and, when stimulated by the presence of a specific antigen, gives rise to antibody-producing plasma cells.
body mass index (BMI) Calculation used to determine whether or not a person is overweight or obese.
bolus Mass of chewed food mixed with saliva.
bone Connective tissue having protein fibers and a hard matrix of inorganic salts, notably calcium salts.
bony fishes Fishes with a bony rather than cartilaginous skeleton.
bottleneck effect Evolutionary event in which a significant percentage of a population is prevented from reproducing, therefore reducing variation. Population bottlenecks increase the influence of *genetic drift*.
brain Primary organ of the central nervous system; site of the majority of signal integration.
brain stem In mammals, portion of the brain consisting of the medulla oblongata, pons, and midbrain.
bronchiole In terrestrial vertebrates, small tube that conducts air from a bronchus to the alveoli.
bronchus (pl., bronchi) In terrestrial vertebrates, branch of the trachea that leads to the lungs.
brown algae Marine photosynthetic protists with a notable abundance of xanthophyll pigments; includes well-known seaweeds of northern rocky shores.
bryophyte Nonvascular plant—the mosses, liverworts, and hornworts. These plants have no vascular tissue and occur in moist locations.
buffer Substance or group of substances that tends to resist pH changes of a solution, thus stabilizing its relative acidity and basicity.

bulbourethral glands Two small structures located below the prostate gland in males; adds secretions to semen.
bulimia nervosa Eating disorder characterized by binge eating followed by purging via self-induced vomiting or use of a laxative.
bursa Sac-like, fluid-filled structure, lined with synovial membrane, near a synovial joint.

C

calcitonin Hormone secreted by the thyroid gland that increases the blood calcium level.
calorie Amount of heat energy required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water 1°C.
Calvin cycle Portion of photosynthesis that takes place in the stroma of chloroplasts and can occur in the dark. It uses the products of the light reactions to reduce CO_2 to a carbohydrate.
calyx The sepals collectively; the outermost flower whorl.
CAM Crassulacean-acid metabolism. A plant fixes carbon dioxide at night to produce a C_4 molecule that releases carbon dioxide to the Calvin cycle during the day.
cancer Malignant tumor whose nondifferentiated cells exhibit loss of contact inhibition, uncontrolled growth, and the ability to invade tissue and metastasize.
capillary Microscopic blood vessel. Gases and other substances are exchanged across the walls of a capillary between blood and tissue fluid.
capsid Protective protein container of the genetic material of a virus.
capsule Gelatinous layer surrounding the cells of green algae and certain bacteria.
carbohydrate Class of organic compounds that includes monosaccharides, disaccharides, and polysaccharides; present in food as sugars, starch, and fiber.
carbon dioxide (CO_2) fixation Photosynthetic reaction in which carbon dioxide is attached to an organic compound.
carcinogenesis Development of cancer.
cardiac cycle One complete cycle of systole and diastole for all heart chambers.
cardiac muscle Striated, involuntary muscle tissue found only in the heart.
cardiovascular system Organ system in which blood vessels distribute blood under the pumping action of the heart.
carnivore Consumer in a food chain that eats other animals.
carotenoid Yellow or orange pigment that serves as an accessory to chlorophyll in photosynthesis.
carotid body Structure located at the branching of the carotid arteries; contains chemoreceptors sensitive to hydrogen ion and carbon dioxide concentrations in blood.
carpel Ovule-bearing unit that is a part of a pistil.
carrier Heterozygous individual who has no apparent abnormality but can pass on an allele for a recessively inherited genetic disorder.
carrying capacity Largest number of organisms of a particular species that can be maintained indefinitely by a given environment.
cartilage Connective tissue in which the cells lie within lacunae embedded in a flexible, proteinaceous matrix.
cartilaginous fishes Fishes with a cartilaginous rather than bony skeleton; includes sharks, rays, and skates.
cell body Portion of a neuron that contains a nucleus and from which dendrites and an axon extend.
cell cycle Repeating sequence of events in eukaryotes that involves cell growth and nuclear division; consists of the stages G_1, S, G_2, and M.
cell plate Structure across a dividing plant cell that signals the location of new plasma membranes and cell walls.
cell-signaling The process by which cells communicate with other cells and detect changes in their environment.
cell theory One of the major theories of biology; states that all organisms are made up of cells. Cells are capable of self-reproduction and come only from preexisting cells.
cellular respiration Metabolic reaction that uses the energy from carbohydrates, fatty acid, or amino acid breakdown to produce ATP molecules.
cellulose Polysaccharide that is the major complex carbohydrate in plant cell walls.
cell wall Structure that surrounds a plant, protistan, fungal, or bacterial cell and maintains the cell's shape and rigidity.
central nervous system (CNS) Portion of the nervous system consisting of the brain and spinal cord.
centriole Cell organelle, existing in pairs, that occurs in the centrosome and may help organize a mitotic spindle for chromosome movement during animal cell division.
centromere Constricted region on a chromosome joining two sister chromatids.
centrosome Central microtubule organizing center of cells. In animal cells, it contains two centrioles.
cephalization Having a well-recognized anterior head with a brain and sensory receptors.
cephalopod Type of mollusc in which a modified foot develops into the head region; includes squids, cuttlefish, octopuses, and nautiluses.
cerebellum In terrestrial vertebrates, portion of the brain that coordinates skeletal muscles to produce smooth, graceful motions.
cerebral cortex Outer layer of cerebral hemispheres; receives sensory information and controls motor activities.
cervical cap Birth control device made of latex or rubber in the shape of a cup, which covers the cervix; considered a minidiaphragm.
cervix Narrow end of the uterus leading into the vagina.
C_4 photosynthesis Photosynthetic process where the plant fixes carbon dioxide to produce a C_4 molecule that releases carbon dioxide to the Calvin cycle.
character displacement Tendency for characteristics to be more divergent when similar species belong to the same community than when they are isolated from one another.
charophytes A group of freshwater green algae thought to be the closest relatives of land plants.
checkpoint In the cell cycle, one of several points where the cell cycle can stop or continue on, depending on the internal signal it receives; ensures that each step of the cell cycle is completed before the next one begins.
chemoautotroph Organism able to synthesize organic molecules by using carbon dioxide as the carbon source and the oxidation of an inorganic substance (such as hydrogen sulfide) as the energy source.
chemoheterotroph Organism that is unable to reproduce its own organic molecules and therefore requires organic nutrients in its diet.
chemoreceptors Receptors in the nervous system that detect chemicals in the environment.
chitin Strong but flexible nitrogenous polysaccharide in the exoskeleton of arthropods.
chlamydia Bacterial STD of the lower reproductive tract that can result in pelvic inflammatory disease.
chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) Organic compounds containing carbon, chlorine, and fluorine atoms. CFCs, such as freon, can deplete the ozone shield by releasing chlorine atoms in the upper atmosphere.
chlorophyll Green pigment that absorbs solar energy and is important in algal and plant photosynthesis; occurs as chlorophyll *a* and chlorophyll *b*.
chloroplast Membrane-bounded organelle in algae and plants with chlorophyll-containing membranous thylakoids; where photosynthesis takes place.
cholesterol One of the major lipids found in animal plasma membranes; makes the membrane impermeable to many molecules.
chordate Animal that has a dorsal tubular nerve cord, a notochord, pharyngeal pouches, and a postanal tail at some point in its life cycle.
chorionic villi Tree-like extensions of the chorion (fetal portion of the placenta) that project into the maternal portion of the placenta.
chorionic villus sampling (CVS) Prenatal test in which a sample of chorionic villi cells is removed for diagnostic purposes.
chromatid Single DNA strand of a chromosome. Chromosomes may consist of a pair of sister chromatids.
chromatin Network of fibrils consisting of DNA and associated proteins observed within a nucleus that is not dividing.
chromosome Structure, consisting of DNA complexed with proteins, that transmits genetic information from the previous generation of cells and organisms to the next generation.
chromosome map Sequence that shows the relative distance between gene loci on a chromosome.
chyme Thick, semiliquid food material that passes from the stomach to the small intestine.
ciliate Complex, single-celled protist that moves by means of cilia and digests food in food vacuoles.
cilium (pl., cilia) Short, hair-like projection from the plasma membrane, occurring usually in large numbers.
citric acid cycle Cycle of reactions in mitochondria that begins with citric acid. It breaks down an acetyl group and produces CO_2, ATP, NADH, and $FADH_2$; also called the Krebs cycle.
clade A group of organisms that includes a common ancestor and all of its descendants and that has its own particular derived traits.
cladistics School of systematics that uses derived characters to determine monophyletic groups and construct cladograms.
cladogram Branching diagrammatic tree used to depict the evolutionary history of a group of organisms.

class One of the categories, or taxa, used by taxonomists to group species; the taxon above the order level.
cleavage Cell division without cytoplasmic addition or enlargement; occurs during the first stage of animal development.
climate change General term used to refer to any number of human-related events that are changing climate conditions in a given area.
climax community In ecology, the community that results when succession has come to an end.
clonal selection model States that an antigen selects which lymphocyte will undergo clonal expansion and produce more lymphocytes bearing the same type of receptor.
clone An identical genetic copy of a cell or organism.
closed circulatory system In all vertebrates and some invertebrates, cardiovascular system composed of a muscular heart and blood vessels.
clumped Spatial distribution of individuals in a population in which individuals are more dense in one area than in another.
cnidarian Invertebrates existing as either a polyp or a medusa with two tissue layers and radial symmetry.
codominance Inheritance pattern in which both alleles of a gene are equally expressed in a heterozygote.
codon Three base sequence in messenger RNA that causes the addition of a particular amino acid into a protein, or termination of translation.
coelom Body cavity, lying between the digestive tract and body wall, that is completely lined by mesoderm.
coelomates Animals that possess the true coelum as their body cavity.
coenzyme Nonprotein organic molecule that aids the action of the enzyme.
coevolution Joint evolution in which one species exerts selective pressure on the other species.
cohesion-tension model Explanation for upward transport of water in xylem based on transpiration-created tension and the cohesive properties of water molecules.
collecting duct Duct in the kidneys that receives fluid from several nephrons. The reabsorption of water occurs here.
collenchyma Plant tissue composed of cells with unevenly thickened walls; supports growth of stems and petioles.
color blindness Deficiency in one or more of the three kinds of cone cells responsible for color vision; a common X-linked recessive disorder.
commensalism Symbiotic relationship in which one species is benefited and the other is neither harmed nor benefited.
common ancestor Ancestor held in common by at least two lines of descent.
community Assemblage of populations interacting with one another in the same environment.
companion cell Type of cell found in the phloem of plants that aids in the transport of nutrients.
competition Interaction between two organisms in which both require the same limited resource, which results in harm to both.
competitive exclusion principle Theory that no two species can occupy the same niche.
complementary base pairing Hydrogen bonding between particular purines and pyrimidines in DNA.
complement system Series of proteins in plasma that form a nonspecific defense mechanism against a pathogen invasion; complements the antigen-antibody reaction.
compound Substance having two or more different elements united chemically in a fixed ratio.
conclusion Statement made following an experiment as to whether or not the results support the hypothesis.
condom Plastic contraceptive the prevents the fertilization of an egg by a sperm. May be worn by males or females.
cone In vertebrate eyes, photoreceptor cell that responds to bright light and makes color vision possible. In conifers, structure that bears either pollen (male gametophyte) or seeds (female gametophyte). The sporangia-bearing structures of certain seedless vascular plants are also termed cones.
conifer Member of a group of cone-bearing gymnosperm plants, including pine, cedar, and spruce trees.
conjugation Transfer of genetic material from one cell to another.
conjugation pili Tubular, rigid bacterial structures that enable the transmission of DNA from cell to cell.
connective tissue Type of animal tissue that binds structures together, provides support and protection, fills spaces, stores fat, and forms blood cells.
conservation biology Field of biology that is involved in preserving biodiversity.
consumer Organism that feeds on another organism in a food chain; primary consumers eat plants, and secondary consumers eat animals.
contact inhibition In cell culture, the point where cells stop dividing when they become a one-cell-thick sheet.
contraceptive implant Birth control method utilizing synthetic progesterone; prevents ovulation by disrupting the ovarian cycle.
contraceptive injection Birth control method utilizing progesterone or estrogen and progesterone; prevents ovulation by disrupting the ovarian cycle.
contraceptive vaccine Under development, this birth control method immunizes against the hormone hCG, crucial to maintaining implantation of the embryo.
control group Sample that goes through all the steps of an experiment but does not contain the experimental variable being tested; a standard against which the results of an experiment are checked.
convergent evolution Similarity in structure in distantly related groups due to adaptation to the environment.
copulation Sexual union between a male and a female.
cornea Transparent, anterior portion of the outer layer of the eyeball.
corolla Petals, collectively; usually the conspicuously colored flower whorl.
cortex In plants, ground tissue bounded by the epidermis and vascular tissue in stems and roots; in animals, outer layer of an organ, such as the cortex of the kidneys or adrenal gland.
cotyledon Seed leaf of an embryo of a flowering plant; provides nutrient molecules for the developing plant before photosynthesis begins.
coupled reaction Reaction that occurs simultaneously. One is an exergonic reaction that releases energy, and the other is an endergonic reaction that requires an input of energy in order to occur.
covalent bond Chemical bond in which atoms share one or more pairs of electrons.
coxal bones Two massive bones that form the pelvis and articulate with the femurs (thighbones).
cranial nerve Nerve that arises from the brain.
cranium Portion of the skull that protects the brain.
cristae Short, finger-like projections formed by the folding of the inner membrane of mitochondria.
Cro-Magnon Common name for the first fossils to be designated *Homo sapiens.*
crossing-over Exchange of segments between nonsister chromatids of a tetrad during meiosis.
crustacean Member of a group of marine arthropods that contains, among others, shrimps, crabs, crayfish, and lobsters.
C_3 photosynthesis Photosynthetic process where the first stable product of C_3 photosynthesis is a 3-carbon compound.
culture Total pattern of human behavior; includes technology and the arts and is dependent on the capacity to speak and transmit knowledge.
Cushing syndrome Condition resulting from hypersecretion of glucocorticoids; characterized by thin arms and legs and a "moon face," and accompanied by high blood glucose and sodium levels.
cutaneous receptor Sensory receptor for pressure and touch; found in the dermis of the skin.
cuticle Waxy layer covering the epidermis of plants; protects the plant against water loss and disease-causing organisms.
cyanobacteria Photosynthetic bacteria that contain chlorophyll and release O_2; formerly called blue-green algae.
cyclin Protein that cycles in quantity as the cell cycle progresses; combines with and activates the kinases that promote the events of the cycle.
cystic fibrosis Generalized, autosomal recessive disorder of infants and children in which there is widespread dysfunction of the exocrine glands.
cytokine A chemical messenger, secreted by cells of the immune system, that stimulates other cells to perform their various functions.
cytokinesis Division of the cytoplasm following mitosis and meiosis.
cytokinin Plant hormone that promotes cell division; often works in combination with auxin during organ development in plant embryos.
cytoplasm Contents of a cell between the nucleus (nucleoid region of bacteria) and the plasma membrane.
cytosine (C) One of four nitrogen-containing bases in the nucleotides composing the structure of DNA and RNA; pairs with guanine.
cytoskeleton Internal framework of the cell, consisting of microtubules, actin filaments, and intermediate filaments.
cytotoxic T cell T cell that attacks and kills antigen-bearing cells.

D

data (sing., datum) Facts, or information, collected through observation and/or experimentation.

day-neutral plant Plant whose flowering is not dependent on day length—e.g., tomato and cucumber.
decomposer Organism, usually a bacterium or fungus, that breaks down organic matter into inorganic nutrients that can be recycled in the environment.
deforestation Removal of trees from a forest in a way that reduces the size of the forest.
dehydration synthesis reaction Chemical reaction resulting in a covalent bond with the accompanying loss of a water molecule.
deletion Change in chromosome structure in which the end of a chromosome breaks off or two simultaneous breaks lead to the loss of an internal segment; often causes abnormalities—e.g., cri du chat syndrome.
demographics Study of human populations, their characteristics, and their changes.
denatured Loss of an enzyme's normal shape, so that it no longer functions; caused by a less than optimal pH and temperature.
dendrite Part of a neuron that sends signals toward the cell body.
Denisovan Newly discovered group of early *Homo* genus that existed in the region that is now Siberia around 1 MYA.
density-dependent factor Biotic factor, such as disease or competition, that affects population size according to the population's density.
density-independent factor Abiotic factor, such as fire or flood, that affects population size independent of the population's density.
deoxyribose In DNA, pentose monosaccharide sugar that has one less hydroxyl group than ribose.
desertification Denuding and degrading a once fertile land, initiating a desert-producing cycle that feeds on itself and causes long-term changes in the soil, climate, and biota of an area.
detrital food web Complex pattern of interlocking and crisscrossing food chains that begins with a population of detritivores.
detritus Organic matter produced by decomposition of substances, such as tissues and animal wastes.
deuterostome Coelomate animals in which the second embryonic opening is associated with the mouth. The first embryonic opening, the blastopore, is associated with the anus.
development Events that occur from fertilization until the formation of an adult organism.
diabetes mellitus Condition characterized by a high blood glucose level and the appearance of glucose in the urine, due to a deficiency of insulin production and failure of cells to take up glucose.
dialysis Movement of dissolved molecules through a semi-permeable membrane by diffusion. Used to remove compounds from blood in kidney patients.
diaphragm In mammals, dome-shaped muscularized sheet separating the thoracic cavity from the abdominal cavity important in inhalation. Also, a birth control device consisting of a soft rubber or latex cup that fits over the cervix.
diarrhea Excessively frequent and watery bowel movements.
diastole Relaxation period of a heart chamber during the cardiac cycle.
diet A person's typical food choices. A balanced diet contains all the nutrients in the right proportions to maintain a healthy body.
dietary supplement Nutrient or plant product (e.g., herbal teas, protein supplements) used to enhance health. They do not undergo the same safety and effectiveness testing required for prescription drugs.
diffusion Passive movement of molecules or ions from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration.
digestive system Organ system that includes the mouth, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine (colon). It receives and digests food into nutrient molecules and has associated organs: teeth, tongue, salivary glands, liver, gallbladder, and pancreas.
dihybrid Individual that is heterozygous for two traits; shows the phenotype governed by the dominant alleles but carries the recessive alleles.
diploid (2n) number Cell condition in which two of each type of chromosome are present.
directional selection Outcome of natural selection in which an extreme phenotype at one end of a population distribution is favored over all other phenotypes, leading to one distinct form.
disaccharide Sugar that contains two units of a monosaccharide. One example is maltose.
disruptive selection Outcome of natural selection in which both extreme phenotypes at the ends of a population distribution are favored over the average phenotype, leading to more than one distinct form.
distal convoluted tubule Final portion of a nephron that joins with a collecting duct; associated with tubular secretion.
diversity Amount of each specific species in a community.
DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) Nucleic acid polymer produced from covalent bonding of nucleotide monomers that contain the sugar deoxyribose; the genetic material of nearly all organisms.
DNA fingerprinting Use of DNA fragment lengths resulting from restriction enzyme cleavage to identify individuals.
DNA ligase Enzyme that links DNA fragments; used during production of recombinant DNA to join foreign DNA to vector DNA.
DNA microarray Thousands of different single-stranded DNA fragments arranged in an array (grid) on a glass slide; used to detect and measure gene expression.
DNA polymerase During replication, enzyme that joins the nucleotides complementary to a DNA template.
DNA replication Synthesis of a new DNA double helix prior to mitosis or meiosis in eukaryotic cells and during prokaryotic fission in prokaryotic cells.
domain Largest of the categories, or taxa, used by taxonomists to group species. The three domains are Archaea, Bacteria, and Eukarya.
domain Archaea One of the three domains of life; contains prokaryotic cells that often live in extreme habitats and have unique genetic, biochemical, and physiological characteristics; its members are sometimes referred to as *archaea.*
domain Bacteria One of the three domains of life; contains prokaryotic cells that differ from archaea because they have unique genetic, biochemical, and physiological characteristics.
domain Eukarya One of the three domains of life, consisting of organisms with eukaryotic cells and further classified into the kingdoms Protista, Fungi, Plantae, and Animalia.
dominant allele Allele that exerts its phenotypic effect in the heterozygote. It masks the expression of the recessive allele.
dormancy In plants, cessation of growth under conditions that seem appropriate for growth.
double fertilization In flowering plants, one sperm nucleus unites with the egg nucleus, and a second sperm nucleus unites with the polar nuclei of an embryo sac.
Down syndrome Trisomy 21. The individual has three copies of chromosome 21 and the following characteristics: mental disabilities of varying degree, short stature, an eyelid fold, stubby fingers, and a palm crease.
Duchenne muscular dystrophy Chronic, progressive disease affecting the shoulder and hip (pelvic) girdles, commencing in early childhood; characterized by increasing weakness of the muscles followed by atrophy and a peculiar swaying gait with the legs kept wide apart. It is transmitted as an X-linked trait; affected individuals, predominantly males, rarely survive to maturity. Death is usually due to respiratory weakness or heart failure.
duplication Change in chromosome structure in which a particular segment is present more than once in the same chromosome.
dyad Chromosome composed of two sister chromatids.

E

echinoderm Marine invertebrate, such as a sea star, sea urchin, and sand dollar; characterized by radial symmetry and a water vascular system.
ecological niche Role an organism plays in its community, including its habitat and its interactions with other organisms.
ecological pyramid Pictorial graph based on the biomass, number of organisms, or energy content of various trophic levels in a food web—from the producer to the final consumer populations.
ecological succession Gradual replacement of communities in an area following a disturbance (secondary succession) or the creation of new soil (primary succession).
ecology Study of the interactions of organisms with other organisms and with the physical and chemical environment.
ecosystem Biological community together with the associated abiotic environment; characterized by a flow of energy and a cycling of inorganic nutrients.
ectoderm Outermost primary tissue layer of an animal embryo; gives rise to the nervous system and the outer layer of the integument.
ectothermic Having a body temperature that varies according to the environmental temperature.
edema Swelling due to tissue fluid accumulation in the intercellular spaces.
electrocardiogram (ECG) Recording of the electrical activity associated with the heartbeat.
electron Negative subatomic particle moving about in an energy level around the nucleus of an atom.
electronegativity Ability of an atom to attract electrons toward itself in a chemical bond.

electron transport chain Passage of electrons along a series of electron carriers from a higher to lower energy levels; the energy released is used to synthesize ATP.
element Substance that cannot be broken down into substances with different properties; composed of only one type of atom.
embryo sac Female gametophyte of flowering plants.
embryonic stem cell Undifferentiated cell, obtained from an embryo, that can be manipulated to become a specialized cell type, such as a muscle, nerve, or red blood cell.
emergency contraception Forms of contraception that are used after intercourse to stop a pregnancy.
emerging virus Causative agent of a disease that is new or is demonstrating increased prevalence, such as the viruses that cause AIDS, SARS, and avian influenza.
emulsification Breaking up of fat globules into smaller droplets by the action of bile salts or any other emulsifier.
endocrine gland Ductless organ that secretes hormone(s) into the bloodstream.
endocrine system Organ system involved in the coordination of body activities; uses hormones as chemical signals secreted into the bloodstream.
endocytosis Process by which substances are moved into the cell from the environment by phagocytosis (cellular eating) or pinocytosis (cellular drinking); includes receptor-mediated endocytosis.
endoderm Innermost primary tissue layer of an animal embryo that gives rise to the linings of the digestive tract and associated structures.
endodermis Internal plant root tissue forming a boundary between the cortex and the vascular cylinder.
endomembrane system Collection of membranous structures involved in transport within the cell.
endoplasmic reticulum (ER) System of membranous saccules and channels in the cytoplasm, often with attached ribosomes.
endoskeleton Protective internal skeleton, as in vertebrates.
endosperm In flowering plants, nutritive storage tissue derived from the union of a sperm nucleus and polar nuclei in the embryo sac.
endospore Spore formed within a cell; formed by certain bacteria.
endosymbiotic theory Explanation of the evolution of eukaryotic organelles by phagocytosis of prokaryotes.
endotherm Animal that generates its own internal heat.
energy Capacity to do work and bring about change; occurs in a variety of forms.
energy of activation (E_a) Energy that must be added in order for molecules to react with one another.
enhancer Element that stimulates transcription of nearby genes; functions by acting as a binding site for transcription factors.
entropy Measure of disorder or randomness.
enzyme Organic catalyst, usually a protein, that speeds a reaction in cells due to its shape.
epidermal tissue (epidermis) In plants, tissue that covers roots, leaves, and stems of nonwoody organisms.
epigenetic inheritance Transmission of genetic information by means that are not based on the coding sequences of a gene.
epiglottis Structure that covers the glottis and closes off the air tract during the process of swallowing.
epinephrine Adrenaline; hormone secreted by the adrenal medulla in times of stress.
epithelial tissue Tissue that lines hollow organs and covers surfaces.
equilibrium species Species demonstrating a life history pattern in which members exhibit logistic population growth and the population size remains at or near the carrying capacity. Its members are large and slow to mature, have a long life span and few offspring, and provide much care to offspring (e.g., bears, lions).
esophagus Muscular tube for moving swallowed food from the pharynx to the stomach.
essential nutrient Substance in the diet that contributes to good health; must be supplied by the diet because the body either cannot synthesize it or makes insufficient amounts to meet the body's needs.
estrogen Female sex hormone that helps maintain sexual organs and secondary sex characteristics.
ethylene Plant hormone that causes ripening of fruit and is involved in abscission.
euchromatin Chromatin that is extended and accessible for transcription.
eudicot Eudicotyledon; flowering plant group. Members have two embryonic leaves (cotyledons), net-veined leaves, vascular bundles in a ring, and flower parts in fours or fives and their multiples.
eugenics Gene manipulation to control desired traits in offspring.
eukaryotic cell Type of cell that has a membrane-bounded nucleus and membranous organelles; found in organisms within the domain Eukarya.
eutrophication Enrichment of water by inorganic nutrients used by phytoplankton. Often, overenrichment caused by human activities leads to excessive bacterial growth and oxygen depletion.
evolution Descent of organisms from common ancestors, with the development of genetic and phenotypic changes over time that make them more suited to the environment.
evolutionary tree Diagram that shows the evolutionary history of groups of organisms.
exocrine gland Gland that discharges its secretion into ducts. The pancreas is an exocrine gland when it secretes pancreatic juice into the duodenum.
exocytosis Process in which an intracellular vesicle fuses with the plasma membrane, so that the vesicle's contents are released outside the cell.
exophthalmos Abnormal protrusion of the eyes, often a sign of hyperthyroidism (Grave's disease).
exoskeleton Protective external skeleton, as in arthropods.
exotic species Species that is new to a community (nonnative).
experiment Series of actions undertaken to collect data with which to test a hypothesis.
experimental design Artificial situation devised to test a hypothesis.
experimental variable In a scientific experiment, a condition of the experiment that is deliberately changed.
expiration Movement of air out of the lungs by positive pressure.
exponential growth Growth, particularly of a population, in which the increase occurs in the same manner as compound interest.
extinction Total disappearance of a species or higher group.
extracellular matrix (ECM) Meshwork of polysaccharides and proteins that provides support for an animal cell and affects its behavior.
extraembryonic membranes Membranes that are not a part of an embryo but are necessary to the continued existence and health of the embryo.
ex vivo gene therapy Gene therapy in which infected tissue is removed from an organism, injected with normal genes, and then returned to the organism. The normal genes divide, producing normal genes instead of infected ones.

F

facial bone Axial skeleton bone, including the lower and upper jawbones, cheekbones, and nasal bones.
facilitated diffusion Passive transfer of a substance into or out of a cell along a concentration gradient by a process that requires a carrier.
family One of the categories, or taxa, used by taxonomists to group species; the taxon above the genus level.
fat Organic molecule that contains glycerol and fatty acids and is found in adipose tissue of vertebrates.
fatty acid Molecule that contains a hydrocarbon chain and ends with an acid group.
feedback inhibition Mechanism for regulating metabolic pathways in which the concentration of the product is kept within a certain range until binding shuts down the pathway and no more product is produced.
female gametophyte In seed plants, the gametophyte that produces an egg; in flowering plants, an embryo sac.
fermentation Anaerobic breakdown of glucose that results in a gain of 2 ATP and end products, such as alcohol and lactate.
fern Member of a group of plants that have large fronds. In the sexual life cycle, the independent gametophyte produces flagellated sperm, and the vascular sporophyte produces windblown spores.
fertilization Fusion of sperm and egg nuclei, producing a zygote that develops into a new individual.
fiber Structure resembling a thread; also plant material that is nondigestible.
filament End-to-end chain of cells that forms as cell division occurs in only one plane; in plants, the elongated stalk of a stamen.
filtration Movement of small molecules from a blood capillary into the nephron capsule due to the action of blood pressure.
fitness The reproductive success of an individual relative to other members of a population.
five-kingdom system System of classification that contains the kingdoms Monera, Protista, Plantae, Animalia, and Fungi.
flagellum (pl., flagella) Long, slender extension used for locomotion by some bacteria, protozoans, and sperm.

flatworm Invertebrate, such as a planarian and tapeworm, that has a thin body, three-branched gastrovascular cavity, and ladder-type nervous system.

flower Reproductive organ of a flowering plant, consisting of several kinds of modified leaves arranged in concentric rings and attached to a modified stem called a receptacle.

follicle In the ovary of animals, structure that contains an oocyte; site of oocyte production.

follicular phase First half of the ovarian cycle, during which the follicle matures and much estrogen (and some progesterone) is produced.

food chain Order in which one population feeds on another in an ecosystem, thereby showing the flow of energy from a detritivore (detrital food chain) or a producer (grazing food chain) to the final consumer.

food web In ecosystems, a complex pattern of linked and crisscrossing food chains.

foraminiferan Protozoan; marine amoeba having a calcium carbonate skeleton, many of which make limestone formations, such as the White Cliffs of Dover.

formed elements Constituents of blood that are either cellular (red blood cells and white blood cells) or at least cellular in origin (platelets).

fossil Evidence of an organism that has been preserved in the Earth's crust.

fossil fuel Fuel such as oil, coal, and natural gas that is the result of partial decomposition of plants and animals coupled with exposure to heat and pressure for millions of years.

fossil record History of life recorded from remains from the past.

founder effect Effect of establishing a new population by a small number of individuals, carrying only a small fraction of the original population's genetic variation. The alleles carried by these individuals often, by chance, do not occur in the same frequency as the parent population; an example of genetic drift.

fovea Region of the retina consisting of densely packed cones; responsible for the greatest visual acuity.

frameshift mutation Alteration in a gene due to deletion of a base, so that the reading "frame" is shifted; can result in a nonfunctional protein.

frond Leaf of a fern.

fruit In flowering plants, the structure that forms from an ovary and associated tissues and encloses seeds.

functional group Specific cluster of atoms attached to the carbon skeleton of organic molecules that enters into reactions and behaves in a predictable way.

fungus (pl., fungi) Saprotrophic decomposer. The body is made up of filaments, called hyphae, that form a mass called a mycelium. Member of the kingdom Fungi.

G

gallbladder Organ attached to the liver that stores and concentrates bile.

gamete Haploid sex cell: egg or sperm.

gametophyte Haploid generation of the alternation of generations life cycle of a plant; produces gametes that unite to form a diploid zygote.

ganglion Collection of neuron cell bodies usually outside the central nervous system.

gap junction Junction between cells formed by the joining of two adjacent plasma membranes; lends strength and allows ions, sugars, and small molecules to pass between cells.

gastropod Mollusc with a broad, flat foot for crawling (e.g., snails and slugs).

gastrula Stage of animal development during which the germ layers form, at least in part, by invagination.

gastrulation Formation of a gastrula from a blastula; characterized by an invagination of the cell layers to form a cap-like structure.

gene Unit of heredity existing as alleles on the chromosomes. In diploid organisms, typically two alleles are inherited—one from each parent.

gene flow Sharing of alleles among multiple populations through interbreeding.

gene linkage Genes on the same chromosome that tend to be inherited together.

gene mutation Change in the sequence of bases in a gene.

gene pool Total of all the genes of all the individuals in a population.

gene therapy Correction of a detrimental mutation by the addition of new DNA and its insertion in a genome.

genetically modified The process by which an organism's genetic material is changed, usually by using recombinant DNA technology.

genetic counseling Prospective parents consult a counselor who determines the genotype of each and whether an unborn child will have a genetic disorder.

genetic drift Mechanism of evolution due to random changes in the allelic frequencies of a population; more likely to occur in small populations or when only a few individuals of a large population reproduce.

genetic engineering Alteration of genomes for medical or industrial purposes.

genetic marker Abnormality in the sequence of a base at a particular location on a chromosome signifying a disorder.

genital herpes Viral STD characterized by painful blisters on the genitals.

genital warts Viral STD caused by the human papillomaviruses; associated with cervical cancer and penile tumors; most common STD in the United States.

genome Sum of all of the genetic material in a cell or organism.

genomics Study of genomes.

genotype Alleles of an organism for a particular trait or traits; often designated by letters—for example, *BB* or *Aa.*

genus One of the categories, or taxa, used by taxonomists to group species; contains those species that are most closely related through evolution.

germinate Beginning of growth of a seed, spore, or zygote, especially after a period of dormancy.

germ layer Primary tissue layer of a vertebrate embryo—namely, ectoderm, mesoderm, or endoderm.

gibberellin Plant hormone promoting increased stem growth; also involved in flowering and seed germination.

gland Group of epithelial cells that are specialized to produce a substance.

global warming Predicted increase in the Earth's temperature due to human activities that promote the greenhouse effect.

glomerular capsule Cup-like structure that is the initial portion of the nephron.

glottis Opening for airflow in the larynx.

glucagon Hormone, secreted by the pancreas, that causes the liver to break down glycogen and raises the blood glucose level.

glucose Six-carbon sugar that organisms break down as a source of energy during cellular respiration.

glycerol Three-carbon carbohydrate with three hydroxyl groups attached; a component of fats and oils.

glycogen Storage polysaccharide found in animals; composed of glucose molecules joined in a linear fashion but having numerous branches.

glycolysis Anaerobic breakdown of glucose that results in a gain of 2 ATP and the end product pyruvate.

golden-brown algae Marine photosynthetic protist with elaborate shells of silica; represented by diatoms.

Golgi apparatus Organelle, consisting of saccules and vesicles, that processes, packages, and distributes molecules about or from the cell.

Golgi tendon Proprioceptive sensory receptor located where skeletal muscle inserts into tendons; sensitive to changes in tendon tension.

gonads Organs that produce gametes. The ovary produces eggs, and the testis produces sperm.

gonorrhea Bacterial STD that can lead to sterility or infertility.

granum (pl., grana) Stack of chlorophyll-containing thylakoids in a chloroplast.

gravitational equilibrium Maintenance of balance when the head and body are motionless.

gravitropism Growth response of plant roots and stems to Earth's gravity. Roots demonstrate positive gravitropism, and stems demonstrate negative gravitropism.

grazing food web Complex pattern of linked and crisscrossing food chains that begins with a population of photosynthesizers serving as producers.

green algae Members of a diverse group of photosynthetic protists that contain chlorophylls *a* and *b* and have other biochemical characteristics like those of plants.

greenhouse effect Reradiation of solar heat toward the Earth, caused by gases such as carbon dioxide, methane, nitrous oxide, water vapor, ozone, and nitrous oxide in the atmosphere.

greenhouse gases Gases in the atmosphere, such as carbon dioxide, methane, nitrous oxide, water vapor, ozone, and nitrous oxide, that (like the panes of a greenhouse) allow the sun's rays to pass through but trap the heat.

ground tissue Tissue that constitutes most of the body of a plant; consists of parenchyma, collenchyma, and sclerenchyma cells that function in storage, basic metabolism, and support.

growth factor Chemical signal that regulates mitosis and differentiation of cells that have receptors for it; important in such processes as fetal development, tissue maintenance and repair, and hematopoiesis; sometimes a contributing factor in cancer.

growth hormone (GH) Substance secreted by the anterior pituitary; controls the size of an individual by promoting cell division, protein synthesis, and bone growth.
guanine (G) One of four nitrogen-containing bases in nucleotides composing the structure of DNA and RNA; pairs with cytosine.
gymnosperm Type of woody seed plant in which the seeds are not enclosed by fruit and are usually borne in cones, such as those of the conifers.

H

habitat Place where an organism lives and is able to survive and reproduce.
halophile Type of archaea that lives in extremely salty habitats.
haploid (n) number Cell condition in which only one of each type of chromosome is present.
heart Muscular organ whose contraction causes blood to circulate in the body of an animal.
heart attack Myocardial infarction; damage to the myocardium due to blocked circulation in the coronary arteries.
heat Type of kinetic energy. Captured solar energy eventually dissipates as heat in the environment.
helicase The enzyme in DNA replication that separates DNA strands by breaking the hydrogen bonds between the strands.
helper T cell Cell that secretes cytokines, which stimulate all kinds of immune cells.
heme Iron-containing group found in hemoglobin.
hemocoel Body cavity in arthropods where exchange between hemolymph and tissues occurs.
hemoglobin Iron-containing respiratory pigment occurring in vertebrate red blood cells and in the blood plasma of some invertebrates.
hepatitis Viral infection of the liver; can be transmitted sexually and can lead to liver failure and liver cancer.
herbivore Primary consumer in a grazing food chain; plant eater.
hermaphroditic Having both male and female sex organs in an animal.
heterochromatin Highly compacted chromatin that is not accessible for transcription.
heterotroph Organism that cannot synthesize organic compounds from inorganic substances and therefore must take in organic food.
heterozygous Possessing unlike alleles for a particular trait.
hinge joint Synovial joint (elbow and knee joints) that permits movement in one direction only.
histamine Substance, produced by basophils in blood and mast cells in connective tissue, that causes capillaries to dilate.
histone Protein molecule responsible for packing chromatin.
homeostasis Maintenance of normal internal conditions in a cell or an organism by means of self-regulating mechanisms.
hominid Family designation for both humans and African apes.
hominin Designation that includes humans and extinct species very closely related to humans.
Homo erectus Early *Homo* who used fire and migrated out of Africa to Europe and Asia.
Homo habilis Early *Homo,* dated between 2.0 and 1.9 million years ago, who is believed to have been the first tool user.
homologous chromosome Homologue; member of a pair of chromosomes that are alike and come together in synapsis during prophase of the first meiotic division.
homologous structure In evolution, a structure that is similar in different types of organisms because these organisms are derived from a common ancestor.
homologue Homologous chromosome; member of a pair of chromosomes that are alike and come together in synapsis during prophase of the first meiotic division.
Homo sapiens Modern humans.
homozygous Possessing two identical alleles for a particular trait.
hormone Chemical messenger produced in one part of an organism that controls the activity of other parts.
human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) Virus responsible for AIDS.
human papillomavirus (HPV) Virus that is responsible for genetical warts and cervical cancer.
Huntington disease Genetic disease marked by progressive deterioration of the nervous system and resulting in neuromuscular disorders.
hyaline cartilage Cartilage whose cells lie in lacunae separated by a white, translucent matrix containing very fine collagen fibers.
hybridization Crossing of different species of organisms or different varieties of plants.
hydrogen bond Weak chemical bond betweeen a slightly positive hydrogen atom on one molecule and a slightly negative atom on another molecule.
hydrolysis reaction Splitting of a compound by the addition of water, with the H^+ being incorporated into one molecule and the OH^- into the other.
hydrophilic Type of molecule that interacts with water by dissolving in water and/or by forming hydrogen bonds with water molecules.
hydrophobic Type of molecule that does not interact with water because it is nonpolar.
hydrostatic skeleton Fluid-filled body compartment that provides support for muscle contraction resulting in movement; seen in cnidarians, flatworms, roundworms, and segmented worms.
hypertension Elevated blood pressure, particularly the diastolic pressure.
hypertonic solution Higher solute concentration (less water) than the cytoplasm of a cell; causes cells to lose water by osmosis.
hyphae Filaments of the vegetative body of a fungus.
hypothalamic-releasing hormone One of many hormones produced by the hypothalamus that stimulates the secretion of an anterior pituitary hormone.
hypothalamus In vertebrates, part of the brain that helps regulate the internal environment of the body—for example, heart rate, body temperature, and water balance.
hypothesis Supposition established by reasoning after consideration of available evidence. It can be tested by obtaining more data, often by experimentation.
hypotonic solution Lower solute (more water) concentration than the cytoplasm of a cell; causes cells to gain water by osmosis.

I

immune system Cells and organs that protect the body against foreign organisms and substances as well as cancerous cells.
immunity Ability of the body to protect itself from foreign substances and cells, including disease-causing agents.
incomplete dominance Inheritance pattern in which the offspring has an intermediate phenotype, as when a red-flowered plant and a white-flowered plant produce pink-flowered offspring.
induced fit model Change in the shape of an enzyme's active site that enhances the fit between the active site and its substrate(s).
induction Ability of a chemical or tissue to influence the development of another tissue.
inductive reasoning Using specific observations and the process of logic and reasoning to arrive at a hypothesis.
infertility Inability to produce offspring.
inflammatory response Tissue response to injury that is characterized by redness, swelling, pain, and heat.
innate immunity A function of the immune system that protects the body against pathogens in a nonspecific manner.
insect Type of arthropod. The head has antennae, compound eyes, and simple eyes; the thorax has three pairs of legs and often wings; and the abdomen has internal organs.
inspiration Movement of air into the lungs by negative pressure.
insulin Hormone, secreted by the pancreas, that lowers blood glucose level by promoting the uptake of glucose by cells and the conversion of glucose to glycogen by the liver and skeletal muscles.
integration Summing up of excitatory and inhibitory signals by a neuron or a part of the brain.
integumentary system Organ system consisting of skin and various organs, such as hair, in the skin.
intergenic DNA The sequence of nucleotides that lie between genes on a chromosome.
interkinesis Period of time between meiosis I and meiosis II during which no DNA replication takes place.
interneuron In the central nervous system, a neuron that conveys messages between parts of the central nervous system.
interphase Stages of the cell cycle (G_1, S, G_2) during which growth and DNA synthesis occur when the nucleus is not actively dividing.
intervertebral discs Pads of cartilage that separate vertebrae.
intrauterine device (IUD) Birth control device consisting of a small piece of molded plastic inserted into the uterus; believed to alter the uterine environment, so that fertilization does not occur.
inversion Change in chromosome structure in which a segment of a chromosome is turned around 180°. This reversed sequence of genes can lead to altered gene activity and abnormalities.
invertebrates Animals lacking a backbone made of cartilage or bone.
in vivo gene therapy Gene therapy in which normal genes are injected directly into an organism for growth.
ion Charged particle that carries a negative or positive charge.

ionic bond Chemical bond in which ions are attracted to one another by opposite charges.
iris Muscular ring that surrounds the pupil and regulates the passage of light through this opening.
isomer Molecule with the same molecular formula as another but having a different structure and therefore a different shape.
isotonic solution Solution that is equal in solute concentration to that of the cytoplasm of a cell; causes a cell to neither lose nor gain water by osmosis.
isotope Atom of the same element having the same atomic number but a different mass number due to the number of neutrons.

J

jawless fishes Type of fish that have no jaws; includes hagfishes and lampreys.

K

karyotype Chromosomes arranged by pairs according to their size, shape, and general appearance in mitotic metaphase.
keystone species Species whose activities significantly affect community structure.
kidneys Paired organs of the vertebrate urinary system that regulate the chemical composition of the blood and produce the waste product urine.
kilocalorie Caloric value of food; 1,000 calories.
kinase Enzyme that activates another enzyme by adding a phosphate group.
kinetic energy Energy associated with motion.
kingdom One of the categories, or taxa, used by taxonomists to group species; the taxon above phylum.
Klinefelter syndrome Condition caused by the inheritance of XXY chromosomes.

L

lacteal Lymphatic vessel in an intestinal villus; aids in the absorption of fats.
lancelet Invertebrate chordate with a body that resembles a lancet and has the four chordate characteristics as an adult.
large intestine In vertebrates, portion of the digestive tract that follows the small intestine; in humans, consists of the cecum, colon, rectum, and anal canal.
larynx Voice box; cartilaginous organ located between the pharynx and the trachea; in humans, contains the vocal cords.
law Universial principle that describes the basic functions of the natural world.
law of independent assortment Alleles of unlinked genes assort independently of each other during meiosis, so that the gametes contain all possible combinations of alleles.
law of segregation Separation of alleles from each other during meiosis, so that the gametes contain one from each pair. Each resulting gamete has an equal chance of receiving either allele.
leaf Lateral appendage of a stem, highly variable in structure, often containing cells that carry out photosynthesis.
lens In the vertebrate eye, a clear, membrane-like structure behind the iris; brings objects into focus.
less-developed country (LDC) Country that is becoming industrialized. Typically, population growth is expanding rapidly and the majority of people live in poverty.
lichen Symbiotic relationship between certain fungi and algae, in which the fungi possibly provide inorganic food or water and the algae provide organic food.
life cycle Recurring pattern of genetically programmed events by which individuals grow, develop, maintain themselves, and reproduce.
life history Adaptations in characteristics that influence an organism's biology, such as how many offspring it produces, its survival, and factors (such as age and size) that determine its reproductive maturity.
ligament Tough cord or band of dense fibrous tissue that binds bone to bone at a joint.
light reactions Portion of photosynthesis that captures solar energy and takes place in thylakoid membranes of chloroplasts; produces ATP and NADPH.
lignin Chemical that hardens the cell walls of plants.
limbic system In humans, functional association of various brain centers, including the amygdala and hippocampus; governs learning and memory and various emotions, such as pleasure, fear, and happiness.
lineage Evolutionary line of descent.
linkage group Genes on the same chromosome that tend to be inherited together.
lipase Fat-digesting enzyme secreted by the pancreas.
lipid Class of organic compounds that tends to be soluble in nonpolar solvents; includes fats and oils.
liver Large, dark red internal organ that produces urea and bile, detoxifies the blood, stores glycogen, and produces the plasma proteins, among other functions.
lobe-finned fishes Type of fish with limb-like fins.
locus Specific location of a particular gene on homologous chromosomes.
logistic growth Population increase that results in an S-shaped curve. Growth is slow at first, steepens, and then levels off due to environmental resistance.
long-day plant/short-night plant Plant that flowers when day length is longer and night is shorter than a critical length—e.g., wheat, barley, clover, and spinach.
lumen Cavity of a tubular organ.
lung Internal respiratory organ containing moist surfaces for gas exchange.
luteal phase Second half of the ovarian cycle, during which the corpus luteum develops and much progesterone (and some estrogen) is produced.
lycophyte Club mosses; seedless plant with microphylls and well-developed vascular tissue in roots, stems, and leaves.
lymph Fluid, derived from tissue fluid, that is carried in lymphatic vessels.
lymphatic organs Organs other than a lymphatic vessel that are part of the lymphatic system; lymph nodes, tonsils, spleen, thymus gland, and bone marrow.
lymphatic system Organ system consisting of lymphatic vessels and lymphatic organs; transports lymph and lipids and aids the immune system.
lymphatic vessel Transport vessel of the lymphatic system that returns lymph to the circulatory system.
lymph node Mass of lymphatic tissue located along the course of a lymphatic vessel.
lymphocyte Specialized white blood cell that functions in specific defense; occurs in two forms—T lymphocytes and B lymphocytes.
lysogenic cycle Bacteriophage life cycle in which the virus incorporates its DNA into that of a bacterium; occurs preliminary to the lytic cycle.
lysosome Membrane-bounded vesicle that contains hydrolytic enzymes for digesting macromolecules.
lytic cycle Bacteriophage life cycle in which a virus takes over the operation of a bacterium immediately upon entering it and subsequently destroys the bacterium.

M

macroevolution Large-scale evolutionary change, such as the formation of new species.
macronutrient Essential element needed in large amounts by plants and humans. In plants, nitrogen, calcium, and sulfur are needed for plant growth; in humans, carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins supply the body's energy needs.
macrophage In vertebrates, large, phagocytic cell derived from a monocyte that ingests microbes and debris.
major histocompatability complex (MHC) Cell surface proteins that recognize "self" and bind antigens for presentation to a T cell.
major mineral Essential inorganic nutrient (such as calcium, potassium, phosphorus, sodium, chloride, magnesium, or sulfur) required daily by humans to regulate metabolic activities and maintain health.
male gametophyte In seed plants, the gametophyte that produces sperm; a pollen grain.
malignant Invasive tumor that may spread.
Malpighian tubule Blind, thread-like excretory tubule near the anterior end of an insect's hindgut.
maltase Enzyme, produced in the small intestine, that breaks down maltose to two glucose molecules.
mammal Endothermic vertebrate characterized especially by the presence of hair and mammary glands.
Marfan syndrome Congenital disorder of connective tissue characterized by abnormally long extremities.
marsupial Member of a group of mammals bearing immature young nursed in a marsupium, or pouch—for example, kangaroo and opossum.
mass extinction Episode of large-scale extinction in which large numbers of species disappear in a few million years or less.
mass number Mass of an atom equal to the number of protons plus the number of neutrons within the nucleus.
mast cell Connective tissue cell that releases histamine in allergic reactions.
matrix Unstructured, semifluid substance that fills the space between cells in connective tissues and inside organelles.
matter Anything that takes up space and has mass.
mechanoreceptor Type of receptor that detects mechanical changes (such as movement).
medulla oblongata In vertebrates, part of the brain stem that is continuous with the spinal cord; controls heartbeat, blood pressure, breathing, and other vital functions.

megaphylls Large leaves with complex networks of veins.
megaspore One of two types of spores produced by seed plants; develops into a female gametophyte (embryo sac).
meiosis, meiosis I, meiosis II Type of nuclear division that occurs as part of sexual reproduction in which the daughter cells receive the haploid number of chromosomes in varied combinations.
memory Capacity of the brain to store and retrieve information about past sensations and perceptions; essential to learning.
meniscus Cartilaginous wedges that separate the surfaces of bones in synovial joints.
menopause Termination of the ovarian and menstrual cycles in older women.
menses Flow of blood during menstruation.
menstrual cycle Cycle that runs concurrently with the ovarian cycle. It prepares the uterus to receive a developing zygote.
menstruation Periodic shedding of tissue and blood from the inner lining of the uterus in primates.
meristem tissue Undifferentiated embryonic tissue in the active growth regions of plants.
mesoderm Middle primary tissue layer of an animal embryo that gives rise to muscle, several internal organs, and connective tissue layers.
mesophyll Inner, thickest layer of a leaf consisting of palisade and spongy mesophyll; the site of most of photosynthesis.
messenger RNA (mRNA) Type of RNA formed from a DNA template and bearing coded information for the amino acid sequence of a polypeptide.
metabolic pathway Series of linked reactions, beginning with a particular reactant and terminating with an end product.
metabolism All of the chemical reactions that occur in a cell during growth and repair.
metaphase Mitotic phase during which chromosomes are aligned at the spindle equator.
metastasis Spread of cancer from the place of origin throughout the body; caused by the ability of cancer cells to migrate and invade tissues.
methanogen Type of archaea that lives in oxygen-free habitats, such as swamps, and releases methane gas.
methemoglobinemia Disorder resulting from the accumulation of methemoglobin in the blood, causing the skin of those affected to appear bluish-purple.
microevolution Small, measurable evolutionary changes in a population from generation to generation; change in allele frequencies within a population over time.
micronutrient Essential element needed in small amounts by plants and humans. In plants, boron, copper, and zinc are needed for plant growth; in humans, vitamins and minerals help regulate metabolism and physiological development.
microphylls Small, narrow leaves with single, unbranched veins.
microspore One of two types of spores produced by seed plants; develops into a male gametophyte (pollen grain).
microtubule Small, cylindrical organelle composed of tubulin protein around an empty central core; present in the cytoplasm, centrioles, cilia, and flagella.
microvillus (pl., microvilli) Cylindrical process that extends from an epithelial cell of a villus; increases the surface area of the cell.
midbrain Part of the brain stem located between the diencephalon and the pons.
mineral Naturally occurring inorganic substance containing one or more elements. Certain minerals are needed in the diet. As raw materials in the Earth, they are nonrenewable resources.
mitochondrion Membrane-bounded organelle in which ATP molecules are produced during the process of cellular respiration.
mitosis Process in which a parent nucleus produces two daughter nuclei, each having the same number and kinds of chromosomes as the parent nucleus.
model Simulation of a process; aids conceptual understanding until the process can be studied firsthand; a hypothesis that describes how a particular process might be carried out.
molecule Union of two or more atoms of the same element; also, the smallest part of a compound that retains the properties of the compound.
molluscs Phylum of animals characterized by a coelum, complete digestive tract, a muscular foot and a mantle.
monocot Monocotyledon; flowering plant group. Members have one embryonic leaf (cotyledon), parallel-veined leaves, scattered vascular bundles, and flower parts in threes or multiples of three.
monocyte Type of granular leukocyte that functions as a phagocyte, particularly after it becomes a macrophage.
monomer Small molecule that is a subunit of a polymer—e.g., glucose is a monomer of starch.
monosaccharide Simple sugar; a carbohydrate that cannot be broken down by hydrolysis—e.g., glucose.
monotreme Egg-laying mammal—e.g., duckbill platypus and spiny anteater.
more-developed country (MDC) Country that is industrialized. Typically, population growth is slow and the people enjoy a good standard of living.
morula Spherical mass of cells resulting from cleavage during animal development prior to the blastula stage.
mosaic evolution Concept that human characteristics did not evolve at the same rate. For example, some body parts are more human-like than others in early hominins.
motor neuron Nerve cell that conducts nerve impulses away from the central nervous system and innervates effectors (muscle and glands).
motor protein Protein associated with the cytoskeleton; allows movement of transport vesicles and organelles.
mouth In humans, organ of the digestive tract where food is chewed and mixed with saliva.
mRNA transcript Complementary copy of the sequence of bases in template.
multicellular Organism composed of many cells; usually has organized tissues, organs, and organ systems.
multifactorial trait Trait controlled by polygenes subject to environmental influences. Each dominant allele contributes to the phenotype in an additive and like manner.
multipotent A term used to describe a stem cell that has the potential to form a limited number of cell types.
multiregional continuity hypothesis Proposal that modern humans evolved separately in at least three places: Asia, Africa, and Europe.
muscle dysmorphia Mental state in which a person thinks his or her body is underdeveloped and becomes preoccupied with body-building and diet; affects more men than women.
muscular system System of muscles that produces movement, both movement in the body and movement of its limbs. The principal components are skeletal muscle, smooth muscle, and cardiac muscle.
muscular tissue Type of animal tissue composed of fibers that shorten and lengthen to produce movements.
mutagen Agent, such as radiation or a chemical, that brings about a mutation in DNA.
mutation Change made in the DNA base-pair sequences in a gene due to a copying error or external sources called mutagens. Such changes generate variation in a gene pool.
mutualism Symbiotic relationship in which both species benefit in terms of growth and reproduction.
mycelium Tangled mass of hyphal filaments composing the vegetative body of a fungus.
mycorrhizal fungi Fungi that form a mutualistic relationship with the roots of vascular plants.
myelin sheath White, fatty material—derived from the membranes of tightly spiraled cells—that forms a covering for nerve fibers.
myosin Muscle protein making up the thick filaments in a sarcomere. It pulls actin to shorten the sarcomere, yielding muscle contraction.

N

nasal cavity One of two canals in the nose, separated by a septum.
native species Indigenous species that colonize an area without human assistance.
natural history Study of how organisms are influenced by factors such as climate, predation, competition, and evolution; uses field observations instead of experimentation.
natural killer (NK) cell Lymphocyte that causes an infected or cancerous cell to burst.
natural selection Mechanism of evolution caused by environmental selection of organisms most fit to reproduce; results in adaptation to the environment.
Neandertal Later *Homo* with a sturdy build that lived during the last Ice Age in Europe and the Middle East; hunted large game and left evidence of being culturally advanced.
negative feedback Mechanism of homeostatic response by which the output of a system suppresses or inhibits activity of the system.
nematocyst In cnidarians, a capsule that contains a thread-like fiber, the release of which aids in the capture of prey.
nephron Microscopic kidney unit that regulates blood composition by filtration, reabsorption, and secretion.
nephron capsule Cup-like structure that is the initial portion of a nephron.
nephron loop Portion of a nephron between the proximal and distal tubules; functions in water reabsorption.

nerve Bundle of long axons outside the central nervous system.
nerve deafness Deafness due to spiral organ damage.
nerve impulse Electrochemical changes that take place across the axomembrane; the action potential.
nervous system Organ system, consisting of the brain, spinal cord, and associated nerves, that coordinates the other organ systems of the body.
nervous tissue Tissue that contains nerve cells (neurons), which conduct impulses, and neuroglia, which support, protect, and provide nutrients to neurons.
neuroglia Nonconducting nerve cells that are intimately associated with neurons and function in a supportive capacity.
neuron Nerve cell that characteristically has three parts: dendrites, a cell body, and an axon.
neurotransmitter Chemical stored at the ends of axons; responsible for transmission across a synapse.
neurulation Development of the central nervous system organs in an embryo.
neutron Neutral subatomic particle, located in the nucleus and assigned one atomic mass unit.
neutrophil Granular leukocyte that is the most abundant of the white blood cells; first to respond to infection.
nociceptor Type of pain receptor that detects signals from damaged tisue.
nodes of Ranvier In the peripheral nervous system, gaps in the myelin sheath encasing long axons.
nondisjunction Failure of homologous chromosomes or daughter chromosomes to separate during meiosis I and meiosis II, respectively.
nonrandom mating Mating among individuals on the basis of their phenotypic similarities or differences, rather than mating on a random basis.
nonrenewable resources Minerals, fossil fuels, and other materials present in essentially fixed amounts (within human timescale) in our environment.
nonsister chromatid A tetrad consists of four chromatids. Only the chromatids belonging to a homologue are sister chromatids and the others, belonging to the other homologue, are nonsister chromatids.
nonvascular plant Bryophyte, such as mosses, that has no vascular tissue and either occurs in moist locations or has adaptations for living in dry locations.
norepinephrine (NE) Neurotransmitter of the postganglionic fibers in the sympathetic division of the autonomic system; also, a hormone produced by the adrenal medulla.
notochord Cartilaginous-like, supportive dorsal rod in all chordates sometime in their life cycle; replaced by vertebrae in vertebrates.
nuclear envelope Double membrane that surrounds the nucleus in eukaryotic cells and is connected to the endoplasmic reticulum; has pores that allow substances to pass between the nucleus and the cytoplasm.
nuclease Enzyme that catalyzes decomposition of nucleic acids.
nucleic acid Polymer of nucleotides. Both DNA and RNA are nucleic acids.
nucleoid Region of prokaryotic cells where DNA is located. It is not bounded by a nuclear envelope.
nucleolus In the nucleus, a dark-staining, spherical body that produces ribosomal subunits.
nucleosome In the nucleus of a eukaryotic cell, a unit composed of DNA wound around a core of eight histone proteins, giving the appearance of a string of beads.
nucleotide Monomer of DNA and RNA consisting of a 5-carbon sugar bonded to a nitrogenous base and a phosphate group.
nucleus Center of an atom, in which protons and neutrons are found; membrane-bounded organelle within a eukaryotic cell that contains chromosomes and controls the structure and function of the cell.
nutrient Chemical substance in foods that is essential to the diet and contributes to good health.
nutrition According to the Council on Food and Nutrition of the American Medical Association, "the science of food; the nutrients and the substances therein; their action, interaction, and balance in relation to health and disease; and the process by which the organism (i.e., body) ingests, digests, absorbs, transports, utilizes, and excretes food substances."

O

obesity Excess adipose tissue; exceeding desirable weight by more than 20%.
observation Step in the scientific method by which data are collected before a conclusion is drawn.
octet rule States that an atom other than hydrogen tends to form bonds until it has eight electrons in its outer shell. An atom that already has eight electrons in its outer shell does not react and is inert.
oil Triglyceride, usually of plant origin, that is composed of glycerol and three fatty acids and is liquid in consistency due to many unsaturated bonds in the hydrocarbon chains of the fatty acids.
omnivore Organism in a food chain that feeds on both plants and animals.
oncogene Cancer-causing gene.
oogenesis Production of eggs in females by the process of meiosis and maturation.
open circulatory system Circulatory system, such as that found in a grasshopper, in which a tubular heart pumps hemolymph through channels and body cavities.
operon Group of structural and regulating genes that function as a single unit.
opportunistic species Population demonstrating a life history pattern in which members exhibit exponential population growth. Its members are small in size, mature early, have a short life span, produce many offspring, and provide little or no care to offspring (e.g., dandelions).
order One of the categories, or taxa, used by taxonomists to group species; the taxon above the family level.
organ Combination of two or more different tissues performing a common function.
organelle Small, often membranous structure in the cytoplasm having a specific structure and function.
organic Molecule that always contains carbon and hydrogen and often contains oxygen as well. Organic molecules are associated with living organisms.
organism Individual living thing.
organ system Group of related organs working together.
osmosis Diffusion of water through a semipermeable membrane.
osteoblast Bone-forming cell.
osteoclast Cell that causes erosion of bone.
osteocyte Branched bone cell embedded in a calcium-containing extracellular matrix.
osteon Haversian system; cylindrical unit containing bone cells that surround an osteonic canal.
osteoporosis Condition in which bones break easily because calcium is removed from them faster than it is replaced.
ovary In animals, the female gonad that produces an egg and female sex hormones; in flowering plants, the enlarged, ovule-bearing portion of the carpel that develops into a fruit.
ovulation Bursting of a follicle when a secondary oocyte is released from the ovary. If fertilization occurs, the secondary oocyte becomes an egg.
ovule In seed plants, a structure that contains the female gametophyte and has the potential to develop into a seed.
oxidation Loss of one or more electrons from an atom or a molecule; in biological systems, generally the loss of hydrogen atoms.

P

paleontology Study of fossils, which yields knowledge about the history of life.
pancreas Internal organ that produces digestive enzymes and the hormones insulin and glucagon.
pancreatic amylase Enzyme that digests starch to maltose.
pancreatic islets Masses of cells that constitute the endocrine portion of the pancreas.
parasitism Symbiotic relationship in which one species (the *parasite*) obtains nutrients from another species (the *host*) but does not usually kill the host.
parasympathetic division Division of the autonomic system that is active under normal conditions; uses acetylcholine as a neurotransmitter.
parathyroid gland Gland embedded in the posterior surface of the thyroid gland; produces parathyroid hormone.
parathyroid hormone (PTH) Hormone, secreted by the four parathyroid glands, that increases the blood calcium level and decreases the phosphate level.
parenchyma Plant tissue composed of the least specialized of all plant cells; found in all organs of a plant.
parthenogenesis Development of an egg cell into a whole organism without fertilization.
passive immunity Protection against infection acquired by transfer of antibodies to a susceptible individual.
pathogen Disease-causing agent, such as viruses, parasitic bacteria, fungi, and animals.
pectoral girdle Portion of the vertebrate skeleton that provides support and attachment for the upper (fore-) limbs; consists of the scapula and clavicle on each side of the body.
pedigree Chart showing the relationships of relatives and which ones have a particular trait.
pelvic girdle Portion of the vertebrate skeleton to which the lower (hind-) limbs are attached; coxal bones.

pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) Latent infection of gonorrhea or chlamydia in the vasa deferentia or uterine tubes.
penis Male copulatory organ; in humans, the male organ of sexual intercourse.
pepsin Enzyme, secreted by gastric glands, that digests proteins to peptides.
peptidase Intestinal enzyme that breaks down short chains of amino acids to individual amino acids that are absorbed across the intestinal wall.
peptide Two or more amino acids joined together by covalent bonding.
peptide bond Type of covalent bond that joins two amino acids.
peptide hormone Type of hormone that is a protein or a peptide or is derived from an amino acid.
peptidoglycan Unique molecule found in bacterial cell walls.
pericycle Layer of cells surrounding the vascular tissue of roots; produces branch roots.
peripheral nervous system (PNS) Nerves and ganglia that lie outside the central nervous system.
peristalsis Wave-like contractions that propel substances along a tubular structure, such as the esophagus.
petal Flower part just inside the sepals; often conspicuously colored to attract pollinators.
petiole Part of a plant leaf that connects the blade to the stem.
pH A logarithmic measure of the hydrogen ion concentration.
phagocytosis Process by which amoeboid cells engulf large substances, forming an intracellular vacuole.
pharynx In vertebrates, common passageway for both food intake and air movement; located between the mouth and the esophagus.
phenotype Visible expression of a genotype—e.g., brown eyes or attached earlobes.
phloem Vascular tissue that conducts organic solutes in plants; contains sieve-tube members and companion cells.
phospholipid Molecule that forms the phospholipid bilayer of plasma membranes. It has a polar, hydrophilic head bonded to two nonpolar, hydrophobic tails.
photoautotroph Organism able to synthesize organic molecules by using carbon dioxide as a carbon source and sunlight as an energy source.
photoperiod Relative lengths of daylight and darkness that affect the physiology and behavior of an organism.
photoreceptor Sensory receptor that responds to light stimuli.
photosynthesis Process occurring usually within chloroplasts whereby chlorophyll-containing organelles trap solar energy to reduce carbon dioxide to carbohydrate.
photosystem Photosynthetic unit in which solar energy is absorbed and high-energy electrons are generated; contains a pigment complex and an electron acceptor; occurs as PS (photosystem) I and PS II.
phototropism Growth response of plant stems to light; stems demonstrate positive phototropism.
photovoltaic (solar) cell Energy-conversion device that captures solar energy and directly converts it to electrical current.
pH scale Numerical scale ranging from 0 to 14 that indicates the negative log of the hydrogen ion concentration in a solution.
phylogenetic tree Diagram that indicates common ancestors and lines of descent among groups of organisms.
phylogeny Evolutionary history of a group of organisms.
phylum One of the categories, or taxa, used by taxonomists to group species; the taxon above the class level.
phytochrome Photoreversible plant pigment involved in photoperiodism and other responses of plants, such as etiolation.
pinocytosis Process by which vesicle formation takes macromolecules into the cell.
pith Parenchyma tissue in the center of some stems and roots.
pituitary gland Small gland that lies just inferior to the hypothalamus; consists of the anterior and posterior pituitary, both of which produce hormones.
placebo Treatment that contains no medication but appears to be the same treatment as that administered to other test groups in a controlled study.
placenta Organ formed during the development of placental mammals from the chorion and the uterine wall; allows the embryo, and then the fetus, to acquire nutrients and rid itself of wastes; produces hormones that regulate pregnancy.
placental mammal Mammal characterized by the presence of a placenta during the development of an offspring.
planarian Free-living flatworm with a ladder-like nervous system.
plant Multicellular, usually photosynthetic, organism belonging to the plant kingdom.
plaque Accumulation of soft masses of fatty material, particularly cholesterol, beneath the inner linings of the arteries.
plasma In vertebrates, the liquid portion of blood; contains nutrients, wastes, salts, and proteins.
plasma membrane Membrane surrounding the cytoplasm; consists of a phospholipid bilayer with embedded proteins. It regulates the entrance and exit of molecules from a cell.
plasmid Self-duplicating ring of accessory DNA in the cytoplasm of bacteria.
plasmodesmata In plants, cytoplasmic strands that extend through pores in the cell wall and connect the cytoplasm of two adjacent cells.
plasmolysis Contraction of the cell contents due to the loss of water.
platelet In blood, formed element that is necessary to blood clotting.
pleiotropy Inheritance pattern in which one gene affects many phenotypic characteristics of the individual.
point mutation Alteration in a gene due to a change in a single nucleotide. The results of this mutation vary.
polar In chemistry, bond in which the sharing of electrons between atoms is unequal.
pollen grain In seed plants, structure that is derived from a microspore and develops into a male gametophyte.
pollen tube In seed plants, tube that forms when a pollen grain lands on the stigma and germinates. The tube grows, passing between the cells of the stigma and the style to reach the egg inside an ovule, where fertilization occurs.
pollination In gymnosperms, the transfer of pollen from pollen cone to seed cone; in angiosperms, the transfer of pollen from anther to stigma.
pollution Any environmental change that adversely affects the lives and health of living things.
polygenic The contribution of two or more genes to a phenotype.
polygenic inheritance Pattern of inheritance in which a trait is controlled by several allelic pairs. Each dominant allele contributes to the phenotype in an additive and like manner.
polymer Macromolecule consisting of covalently bonded monomers. For example, a polypeptide is a polymer of monomers called amino acids.
polymerase chain reaction (PCR) Technique that uses the enzyme DNA polymerase to produce millions of copies of a particular piece of DNA.
polyp Small, abnormal growth that arises from the epithelial lining.
polypeptide Polymer of many amino acids linked by peptide bonds.
polyribosome String of ribosomes simultaneously translating regions of the same mRNA strand during protein synthesis.
polysaccharide Polymer made from sugar monomers. The polysaccharides starch and glycogen are polymers of glucose monomers.
pons Part of the brain stem located between the midbrain and the medulla oblongata.
population Group of interbreeding individuals of the same species occupying the same area at the same time.
population density Number of individuals per unit area or volume living in a particular habitat.
population genetics Study of gene frequencies and their changes within a population.
portal system Pathway of blood flow that begins and ends in capillaries, such as the portal system between the small intestine and the liver.
posterior pituitary Portion of the pituitary gland that stores and secretes oxytocin and antidiuretic hormone produced by the hypothalamus.
postzygotic isolating mechanism Anatomical or physiological difference between two species that prevents successful reproduction after mating has taken place.
potential energy Stored energy as a result of location or spatial arrangement.
predation Interaction in which one organism (the *predator*) uses another (the *prey*) as a food source.
prediction Step of the scientific process that follows the formation of a hypothesis and assists in creating the experimental design.
prefrontal area In the frontal lobe, association area that receives information from other association areas and uses it to reason and plan actions.
preparatory (prep) reaction Reaction that oxidizes pyruvate with the release of carbon dioxide; results in acetyl-CoA and connects glycolysis to the citric acid cycle.
pressure-flow model Explanation for phloem transport. Osmotic pressure following active transport of sugar into phloem brings a flow of sap from a source to a sink.

prezygotic isolating mechanism Anatomical or behavioral difference between two species that prevents the possibility of mating.
primary motor area In the frontal lobe, area where voluntary commands begin. Each section controls a part of the body.
primary productivity Amount of biomass produced primarily by photosynthesizers.
primary sensory area In the parietal lobe, area where sensory information arrives from the skin and skeletal muscles.
primary succession Stage in ecological succession, which involves the creation of new soil.
principle Theory that is generally accepted by an overwhelming number of scientists, also called a law.
prion Infectious particle consisting of protein only and no nucleic acid.
producer At the start of a grazing food chain, a photosynthetic organism that makes its own food—e.g., green plants on land and algae in water.
product Anything that forms as a result of a chemical reaction.
progesterone Female sex hormone that helps maintain sexual organs and secondary sex characteristics.
prokaryote Organism that lacks the membrane-bounded nucleus and membranous organelles typical of eukaryotes.
prokaryotic cell Cell lacking a membrane-bounded nucleus and organelles; the cell type within the domains Bacteria and Archaea.
promoter In an operon, a sequence of DNA in which RNA polymerase binds prior to transcription.
prophase Mitotic phase during which chromatin condenses, so that chromosomes appear. Chromosomes are scattered.
proprioceptor Sensory receptor that helps the brain determine the position of the limbs.
prosimian Group of primates that includes lemurs and tarsiers and may resemble the first primates to have evolved.
prostate gland Gland located around the male urethra below the urinary bladder; adds secretions to semen.
protein Molecule consisting of one or more polypeptides; a macronutrient in the diet that is digested to amino acids used by cells to synthesize cellular proteins.
proteome Collection of proteins resulting from the translation of genes into proteins.
proteomics Study of the structure, function, and interaction of proteins.
protist Member of the kingdom Protista.
protocell Cell-like structure with an outer membrane, thought to have preceded true cells.
proton Positive subatomic particle located in the nucleus and assigned one atomic mass unit.
proto-oncogene Normal gene that can become an oncogene through mutation.
protostome Group of coelomate animals in which the first embryonic opening (the blastopore) is associated with the mouth.
protozoan Chemoheterotrophic, single-celled protist that moves by flagella, cilia, or pseudopodia or is immobile.
proximal convoluted tubule Portion of a nephron following the nephron capsule where reabsorption of filtrate occurs.
pseudocoelomate Animal, such as a roundworm, with a body cavity incompletely lined by mesoderm.
pseudopod Cytoplasmic extension of amoeboid protists; used for locomotion and engulfing food.
puberty Period of life when secondary sex changes occur in humans; marked by the onset of menses in females and sperm production in males.
pulmonary artery Blood vessel that takes blood away from the heart to the lungs.
pulmonary circuit Circulatory pathway between the lungs and the heart.
pulmonary trunk Large blood vessel that divides into the pulmonary arteries; takes blood from the heart to the lungs.
pulmonary vein Blood vessel that takes blood to the heart from the lungs.
pulse Vibration felt in arterial walls due to expansion of the aorta following ventricle contraction.
Punnett square Grid used to calculate the expected results of simple genetic crosses.
pupil Opening in the center of the iris of the vertebrate eye.

R

radial symmetry Body plan in which similar parts are arranged around a central axis, like spokes of a wheel.
radiolarian Protozoan; marine amoeba having a calcium carbonate skeleton, many of which make limestone formations, such as the White Cliffs of Dover.
radius Thicker and shorter forearm bone that contributes to the easy twisting motion of the forearm.
random Spatial distribution of individuals in a population in which individuals have an equal chance of living anywhere within an area.
range Portion of the globe where a certain species can be found.
ray-finned fishes Group of bony fishes with fins supported by parallel bony rays connected by webs of thin tissue.
reabsorption Movement of primarily nutrient molecules and water from the contents of the nephron into blood at the proximal tubule.
reactant Substance that participates in a chemical reaction.
receptacle Area where a flower attaches to a floral stalk.
receptor-mediated endocytosis Selective uptake of molecules into a cell by vacuole formation after they bind to specific receptor proteins in the plasma membrane.
recessive allele Allele that exerts its phenotypic effect only in the homozygote. Its expression is masked by a dominant allele.
recombinant DNA (rDNA) DNA that contains genes from more than one source.
recombinant gamete New combination of alleles incorporated into a gamete during crossing-over.
red algae Marine photosynthetic protists with a notable abundance of phycobilin pigments; includes coralline algae of coral reefs.
red blood cell Erythrocyte; contains hemoglobin and carries oxygen from the lungs or gills to the tissues in vertebrates.
redox reaction Oxidation-reduction reaction; one molecule loses electrons (oxidation) while another molecule gains electrons (reduction).
reduction Gain of electrons by an atom or a molecule with a concurrent storage of energy. In biological systems, the electrons are accompanied by hydrogen ions.
reflex Automatic, involuntary response of an organism to a stimulus.
regulatory gene In an operon, a gene that codes for a protein that regulates the expression of other genes.
release factor Protein complex that binds to an mRNA codon at the A site of the ribosome, causing termination of the transcription.
renewable resources Resources normally replaced or replenished by natural processes; resources not depleted by moderate use. Examples include solar energy, biological resources (such as forests and fisheries), biological organisms, and some biogeochemical cycles.
replacement model Proposal that modern humans originated only in Africa, then migrated and supplanted populations of *Homo* in Asia and Europe about 100,000 years ago; also called the out-of-Africa hypothesis.
replacement reproduction A measure of population dynamics in which each person is replaced by only one child in the next generation.
repressor In an operon, a protein molecule that binds to an operator, preventing transcription of structural genes.
reproduce To produce a new individual of the same kind.
reproductive cloning The process that creates a new individual that is genetically identical to the original individual.
reproductive system Organ system that contains male or female organs and specializes in the production of offspring.
reptile Terrestrial vertebrate with internal fertilization, scaly skin, and a shelled egg; includes snakes, lizards, turtles, crocodiles, and birds.
reservoir In chemical cycling, a source (e.g., fossil fuels, minerals in rocks, and ocean sediments) that is normally unavailable to organisms.
resource A necessity for an organism to live and reproduce; includes food, water, shelter, and nesting sites.
resource partitioning Mechanism that increases the number of niches by apportioning the supply of a resource, such as food or living space, between species.
respiration Sequence of events that results in gas exchange between the cells of the body and the environment.
respiratory system Organ system consisting of the lungs and tubes; brings oxygen into the lungs and takes carbon dioxide out.
restriction enzyme Bacterial enzyme that stops viral reproduction by cleaving viral DNA; used to cut DNA at specific points during production of recombinant DNA.
retina Innermost layer of the vertebrate eyeball, containing the photoreceptors—rods and cones.
retrovirus RNA virus containing the enzyme reverse transcriptase, which carries out RNA/DNA transcription.

rhodopsin In rods and cones, light-absorbing molecule that contains a pigment and the protein opsin.
rib cage Flexible skeletal structure, composed of the ribs and sternum, that protects the heart and lungs and moves when we breathe.
ribose Pentose monosaccharide sugar found in RNA.
ribosomal RNA (rRNA) Type of RNA found in ribosomes that translate messenger RNAs to produce proteins.
ribosome RNA and protein in two subunits; site of protein synthesis in the cytoplasm.
RNA (ribonucleic acid) Nucleic acid produced from covalent bonding of nucleotide monomers that contain the sugar ribose. Three major forms are messenger RNA, ribosomal RNA, and transfer RNA.
RNA polymerase During transcription, an enzyme that joins nucleotides complementary to a DNA template.
rod In vertebrate eyes, photoreceptor that responds to dim light.
root hair Extension of a root epidermal cell that collectively increases the surface area for the absorption of water and minerals.
root nodule Plant root structure that contains nitrogen-fixing bacteria.
root system Main plant root and all of its lateral (side) branches.
rotational equilibrium Maintenance of balance when the head and body are suddenly moved or rotated.
rotator cuff Tendons and ligaments that stabilize the shoulder joint.
rough ER Membranous system of tubules, vesicles, and sacs in cells; has attached ribosomes.
roundworm Invertebrate with a cylindrical body covered by a cuticle that molts; also has a complete digestive tract and a pseudocoelom. Some forms are free-living in water and soil, and many are parasitic.
RuBP carboxylase (rubisco) Enzyme required for carbon dioxide fixation (atmospheric CO_2 attaches to RuBP) in the Calvin cycle.
rule of multiplication The chance of two (or more) independent events' occurring together is the product of their chance of occurring separately.

S

salinization Process in which mineral salts accumulate in the soil, killing plants; occurs when soils in dry climates are irrigated profusely.
salivary amylase In humans, enzyme in saliva that digests starch to maltose.
salivary gland In humans, gland associated with the mouth that secretes saliva.
salt Solid substance formed by ionic bonds that usually dissociate into individual ions in water.
saltwater intrusion Movement of salt water into freshwater aquifers in coastal areas where groundwater is withdrawn faster than it is replenished.
SA (sinoatrial) node Pacemaker; small region of neuromuscular tissue that initiates the heartbeat.
saprotroph Organism that secretes digestive enzymes and absorbs the resulting nutrients back across the plasma membrane; fungus or bacterium that decomposes the remains of plants, animals, and microbes in the soil.
sarcomere One of many identical units, arranged linearly in a myofibril, whose contraction produces muscle contraction.
saturated fatty acid Fatty acid molecule that lacks double bonds between the carbons of its hydrocarbon chain. The chain bears the maximum number of hydrogens possible.
scientific theory Concept supported by a broad range of observations, experiments, and data.
sclerenchyma Plant tissue composed of cells with heavily lignified cell walls; functions in support.
secondary succession In ecological succession, the stage at which there is gradual replacement of communities in an area following a disturbance.
secretion In the cell, release of a substance by exocytosis from a cell that may be a gland or part of a gland; in the urinary system, movement of certain molecules from blood into the distal tubule of a nephron, so that they are added to urine.
seed Mature ovule that contains an embryo, with stored food enclosed in a protective coat.
segmentation Repetition of body units, as in the earthworm.
semen (seminal fluid) Thick, whitish fluid consisting of sperm and secretions from several glands of the male reproductive tract.
semiconservative Duplication of DNA resulting in two double-helix molecules, each having one parental and one new strand.
semilunar valve Valve resembling a half-moon located between the ventricles and their attached vessels.
seminal vesicle Convoluted, sac-like structure attached to the vas deferens near the base of the urinary bladder in males; adds secretions to semen.
senescence Sum of the processes involving aging, decline, and eventual death of a plant or plant part.
sensory adaptation Decrease in the response to a sensory stimulus, usually from over-exposure to the stimulus.
sensory neuron Nerve cell that transmits nerve impulses to the central nervous system after a sensory receptor has been stimulated.
sepal Outermost, leaf-like covering of a flower; usually green.
septum Partition that divides two areas. The septum in the heart separates the right half from the left half.
serotonin In the human central nervous system, neurotransmitter that affects mood, sleep, emotion, and appetite.
sex chromosome Chromosome that determines the sex of an individual. In humans, females have two X chromosomes, and males have an X and a Y chromosome.
sex-linked trait A characteristic or trait that is determined by a gene located on either the X or the Y chromosome.
sexual reproduction Form of reproduction that involves an input of genetic material from two individuals; increases the genetic variation of the offspring.
sexual selection Changes in males and females, often due to male competition and female selectivity, leading to increased fitness.
shoot system Aboveground portion of a plant consisting of the stem, leaves, and flowers.
short-day plant/long-night plant Plant that flowers when day length is shorter and the night is longer than a critical length—e.g., cocklebur, poinsettia, and chrysanthemum.
sickle cell disease Hereditary disease in which red blood cells are narrow and curved, so that they are unable to pass through capillaries and are destroyed; causes chronic anemia.
sieve-tube member Member that joins with others in the phloem tissue of plants as a means of transport for nutrient sap.
signal transduction pathway Activation and inhibition of intracellular targets after binding of growth factors.
simple goiter Condition in which an enlarged thyroid produces low levels of thyroxine.
sinus Cavity into which hemolymph flows and bathes the organs in an open circulatory system; also, air-filled spaces in nasal cavities.
sister chromatid One of two genetically identical chromosomal units that are the result of DNA replication and are attached to each other at the centromere.
skeletal muscle Striated, voluntary muscle tissue that comprises skeletal muscles; also called striated muscle.
skeletal system System of bones, cartilage, and ligaments that works with the muscular system to protect the body and provide support for locomotion and movement.
skull Protective skeletal structure consisting of the cranium and the facial bones.
sliding filament model Explanation for muscle contraction based on the movement of actin filaments in relation to myosin filaments.
slime mold Protists that decompose dead material and feed on bacteria by phagocytosis; vegetative state is mobile and amoeboid.
small intestine In vertebrates, portion of the digestive tract that precedes the large intestine; in humans, the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum; responsible for most digestion and absorption.
smooth ER Membranous system of tubules, vesicles, and sacs in eukaryotic cells; lacks attached ribosomes.
smooth muscle Nonstriated, involuntary muscle in the walls of internal organs.
sodium-potassium pump Carrier protein in the plasma membrane that moves sodium ions out of and potassium ions into animal cells; important in nerve and muscle cells.
solute Substance dissolved in a solvent, forming a solution.
solution Fluid (the solvent) that contains a dissolved solid (the solute).
solvent Liquid portion of a solution that dissolves a solute.
somatic cell Body cell; excludes cells that undergo meiosis and become sperm or eggs.
somatic system Portion of the peripheral nervous system containing motor neurons that control skeletal muscles.
sori (sing., sorus) Clusters of sporangia on the underside of a fern's frond.
speciation Origin of new species due to the evolutionary process of descent with modification.
species Group of similarly constructed organisms capable of interbreeding and producing fertile offspring; organisms that share a gene pool; the taxon at the lowest level of classification.

species richness List of different species in a community.
spermatogenesis Production of sperm in males by the process of meiosis and maturation.
spinal cord In vertebrates, the nerve cord that is continuous with the base of the brain and housed within the vertebral column.
spinal nerve Nerve that arises from the spinal cord.
spindle Microtubule structure that brings about chromosomal movement during nuclear division.
spleen Large, glandular, lymphatic organ in the upper left region of the abdomen; stores and purifies blood.
sponge Invertebrate animal of the phylum Porifera; pore-bearing filter feeder whose inner body wall is lined by collar cells.
spongy bone Type of bone that has an irregular, mesh-like arrangement of thin plates of bone.
sporangium Spore-producing plant or fungal structure.
spore Asexual reproductive or resting cell capable of developing into a new organism without fusion with another cell, in contrast to a gamete.
sporophyte Diploid generation of the alternation of generations life cycle of a plant; produces haploid spores that develop into the haploid generation.
sporozoan Spore-forming protist that has no means of locomotion and is typically a parasite with a complex life cycle having both sexual and asexual phases.
stabilizing selection Outcome of natural selection in which extreme phenotypes are eliminated and the average phenotype is conserved.
stamen In flowering plants, portion of the flower that consists of a filament and an anther containing pollen sacs where pollen is produced.
starch In plants, storage polysaccharide composed of glucose molecules joined in a linear fashion with few side chains.
stem Usually the upright, vertical portion of a plant that transports substances to and from the leaves.
sterility Inability to produce offspring.
steroid Type of lipid molecule having a complex of four carbon rings—e.g., cholesterol, estrogen, progesterone, and testosterone.
steroid hormone Type of hormone that has the same complex of four carbon rings, but each one has different side chains.
stigma In flowering plants, portion of the carpel where pollen grains adhere and germinate before fertilization can occur.
stoma (pl., stomata) Small opening between two guard cells on the underside of leaf epidermis through which gases pass.
stomach In vertebrates, muscular sac that mixes food with gastric juices to form chyme, which enters the small intestine.
stroke Condition resulting when an arteriole in the brain bursts or becomes blocked by an embolism; cerebrovascular accident.
stroma Fluid within a chloroplast that contains enzymes involved in the synthesis of carbohydrates during photosynthesis.
style Elongated, central portion of the carpel between the ovary and stigma.
subsidence Gradual settlement of a portion of the Earth's surface.
substrate Reactant in a reaction controlled by an enzyme.
surface-area-to-volume ratio Ratio of a cell's outside area to its internal volume.
survivorship Probability of newborn individuals of a cohort surviving to particular ages.
sustainable society Ability of a society or an ecosystem to maintain itself while providing services to human beings.
symbiotic Type of relationship that occurs when two different species live together in a unique way. It may be beneficial, neutral, or detrimental to one or both species.
sympathetic division Division of the autonomic system that is active when an organism is under stress; uses norepinephrine as a neurotransmitter.
sympatric speciation Origin of new species in populations that overlap geographically.
synapse Junction between neurons consisting of the axon membrane, the synaptic cleft, and a dendrite.
synapsis Pairing of homologous chromosomes during meiosis I.
synaptic cleft Small gap between membranes of a synapse.
synovial joint Freely moving joint in which two bones are separated by a cavity.
syphilis Bacterial STD with three stages separated by latent periods; may result in blindness, cause birth defects or stillbirth, and affect the cardiovascular and/or nervous system.
systematics Study of the diversity of organisms to classify them and determine their evolutionary relationships.
systemic circuit Circulatory pathway of blood flow between the tissues and the heart.
systole Contraction period of the heart during the cardiac cycle.

T

taxon (pl., taxa) Group of organisms that fills a particular classification category.
taxonomy Branch of biology concerned with identifying, describing, and naming organisms.
T-cell receptor (TCR) On the T-cell surface, receptor consisting of two antigen-binding peptide chains; associated with a large number of other glycoproteins. Binding of antigen to the TCR, usually in association with MHC, activates the T cell.
technology Application of scientific knowledge for a practical purpose.
telomere Long, repeating DNA sequence at the ends of chromosomes; functions as a cap and keeps chromosomes from fusing with each other.
telophase Mitotic phase during which daughter cells are located at each pole.
template Parental strand of DNA that serves as a guide for the complementary daughter strand produced during DNA replication.
tendon Strap of fibrous connective tissue that connects skeletal muscle to bone.
terrestrial ecosystem Biome; tundra, taiga, temperate forests, tropical grasslands (savanna), temperate grasslands (prairie), deserts, and tropical rain forests.
testcross Cross between an individual with the dominant phenotype and an individual with the recessive phenotype. The resulting phenotypic ratio indicates whether the dominant phenotype is homozygous or heterozygous.
test group In a controlled experiment, the group subjected to the experimental variable.
testis (pl., testes) Male gonad that produces sperm and the male sex hormones.
testosterone Male sex hormone that helps maintain sexual organs and secondary sex characteristics.
tetany Severe twitching caused by involuntary contraction of the skeletal muscles due to a calcium imbalance.
tetrad Homologous chromosomes, each having sister chromatids that are joined during meiosis; also called bivalent.
thalamus In vertebrates, portion of the diencephalon that passes on selected sensory information to the cerebrum.
therapeutic cloning Cloning done to create mature cells of various types; also used to learn about specialization of cells and provide cells and tissue to treat human illnesses.
thermoacidophile Type of archaea that lives in hot, acidic, aquatic habitats (such as hot springs) or near hydrothermal vents.
thigmotropism Form of plant growth that is towards contact with an object.
three-domain system System of classification that recognizes three domains: Bacteria, Archaea, and Eukarya.
thylakoid Flattened sac within a granum whose membrane contains chlorophyll and where the light reactions of photosynthesis occur.
thymine (T) One of four nitrogen-containing bases in nucleotides composing the structure of DNA; pairs with adenine.
thymus Lymphatic organ involved in the development and functioning of the immune system. T cells mature in the thymus.
thyroid gland Large gland in the neck; produces several important hormones, including thyroxine, triiodothyronine, and calcitonin.
thyroxine (T_4) Hormone, secreted from the thyroid gland, that promotes growth and development. In general, it increases the metabolic rate in cells.
tight junction Junction between cells when adjacent plasma membrane proteins join to form an impermeable barrier.
tissue Group of similar cells combined to perform a common function.
tissue culture Process of growing tissue artificially, usually in a liquid medium in laboratory glassware.
tissue fluid Fluid that surrounds the body's cells; consists of dissolved substances that leave the blood capillaries by filtration and diffusion.
T lymphocyte (T cell) Lymphocyte that matures in the thymus and exists in four varieties, one of which kills antigen-bearing cells outright.
tonsils Partially encapsulated lymphatic nodules in the pharynx.
totipotent Cell that has the full genetic potential of the organism, including the potential to develop into a complete organism.
trace mineral Essential inorganic nutrient (such as zinc, iron, copper, iodine, or selenium) needed daily by humans to regulate metabolic activities and maintain good health.
trachea (pl., tracheae) In tetrapod vertebrates, air tube (windpipe) that runs between the larynx and the bronchi.

tracheid In vascular plants, type of cell in xylem that has tapered ends and pits through which water and minerals flow.
tract Bundles of myelinated axons in the central nervous system.
trans fat A form of unsaturated fatty acid in which the hydrogen atoms of the carbon chain are on opposite sides of the double bond.
transcription Process whereby a DNA strand serves as a template for the formation of mRNA.
transcription factor In eukaryotes, protein required for the initiation of transcription by RNA polymerase.
transduction Exchange of DNA between bacteria by means of a bacteriophage.
transfer rate Amount of a substance that moves from one component of the environment to another within a specified period of time.
transfer RNA (tRNA) Type of RNA that transfers a particular amino acid to a ribosome during protein synthesis. At one end it binds to the amino acid, and at the other end it has an anticodon that binds to an mRNA codon.
transformation Taking up of extraneous genetic material from the environment by bacteria.
transgenic organism In the environment, free-living organism that has had a foreign gene inserted into it.
transgenic plant Genetically modified plant; plant that carries the genes of another organism as a result of DNA technology.
translation Process whereby ribosomes use the sequence of codons in mRNA to produce a polypeptide with a particular sequence of amino acids.
translocation Movement of a chromosomal segment from one chromosome to another nonhomologous chromosome, leading to abnormalities—e.g., Down syndrome.
transpiration Plant's loss of water to the atmosphere, mainly through evaporation at leaf stomata.
transport vesicles Small, membranous sacs that carry products between endomembrane system organelles and prevent the products from entering the cytoplasm.
transposon DNA sequence capable of randomly moving from one site to another in the genome.
trichomoniasis Sexually transmitted disease caused by the parasitic protozoan *Trichomonas vaginalis*.
triglyceride Neutral fat composed of glycerol and three fatty acids.
triplet code During gene expression, each sequence of three nucleotide bases stands for a particular amino acid.
trophic level Feeding level of one or more populations in a food web.
tropism In plants, growth response toward or away from a directional stimulus.
trypanosome Parasitic zooflagellate that causes severe disease in humans and domestic animals, including a condition called sleeping sickness.
trypsin Protein-digesting enzyme secreted by the pancreas.
tumor Group of cells derived from a single, mutated cell that has repeatedly undergone cell division. Benign tumors remain at their site of origin, while malignant tumors metastasize.
tumor suppressor gene Gene that codes for a protein that ordinarily suppresses cell division. Inactivity can lead to a tumor.
tunicate Type of primitive invertebrate chordate.
Turner syndrome Condition caused by the inheritance of a single X chromosome.

U

umbilical cord Cord connecting the fetus to the placenta, through which blood vessels pass.
uniform Spatial distribution of individuals in a population in which individuals are dispersed uniformly through the area.
unsaturated fatty acid Fatty acid molecule that has one or more double bonds between the carbons of its hydrocarbon chain. The chain bears fewer hydrogens than the maximum number possible.
uracil (U) Pyrimidine base that replaces thymine in RNA; pairs with adenine.
ureter Tubular structure conducting urine from the kidney to the urinary bladder.
urethra Tubular structure that receives urine from the bladder and carries it to the outside of the body.
urinary bladder Organ where urine is stored.
urinary system Organ system consisting of the kidneys and urinary bladder; rids the body of nitrogenous wastes and helps regulate the water-salt balance of the blood.
urine Liquid waste product made by the nephrons of the vertebrate kidney through the processes of filtration, reabsorption, and secretion.
uterus In mammals, expanded portion of the female reproductive tract through which eggs pass to the environment or in which an embryo develops and is nourished before birth.

V

vaccine Antigens prepared in such a way that they can promote active immunity without causing disease.
vacuole Membrane-bounded sac, larger than a vesicle; usually functions in storage and can contain a variety of substances. In plants, the central vacuole fills much of the interior of the cell.
vagina Female sex organ that serves as the birth canal during pregnancy.
valence shell Outer energy shell of an atom.
vascular bundle In plants, primary phloem and primary xylem enclosed by a bundle sheath.
vascular plant Plant that has vascular tissue (xylem and phloem); includes seedless vascular plants (e.g., ferns) and seed plants (gymnosperms and angiosperms).
vascular tissue Transport tissue in plants, consisting of xylem and phloem.
vector Piece of DNA that can have a foreign DNA attached to it. A common vector is a plasmid.
vein Blood vessel that arises from venules and transports blood toward the heart.
vena cava (pl., venae cavae) Large, systemic vein that returns blood to the right atrium of the heart in tetrapods; either the superior or inferior vena cava.
ventricle Cavity in an organ, such as a lower chamber of the heart or the ventricles of the brain.
venule Vessel that takes blood from capillaries to a vein.
vertebral column Portion of the vertebrate endoskeleton that houses the spinal cord; consists of many vertebrae separated by intervertebral discs.
vertebrate Chordate in which the notochord is replaced by a vertebral column made of cartilage or bone.
vesicle Small, membrane-bounded sac that stores substances in a cell.
vessel element Cell that joins with others to form a major conducting tube in xylem.
vestigial structure Remains of a structure that was functional in an ancestor but is no longer functional in the present organism.
villus (pl., villi) Small, finger-like projection of the inner small intestinal wall.
viroid Infectious strand of RNA devoid of a capsid and much smaller than a virus.
virus Noncellular, parasitic agent consisting of an outer capsid and an inner core of nucleic acid.
vitamin Essential requirement in the diet, needed in small amounts. Vitamins are often part of coenzymes.
vocal cord In the human larynx, folds of tissue that create vocal sounds when they vibrate.

W

water mold Filamentous organisms having cell walls made of cellulose. Most are decomposers of dead freshwater organisms, but some are parasites of aquatic or terrestrial organisms.
white blood cell Leukocyte, of which there are several types, each having a specific function in protecting the body from invasion by foreign substances and organisms.
wild-type Allele or phenotype that is the most common for a certain gene in a population.
wood Secondary xylem that builds up year after year in woody plants, becoming annual rings.

X

xcell Smallest unit that displays the properties of life; composed of cytoplasm surrounded by a plasma membrane.
X-linked Allele that is located on an X chromosome but may control a trait that has nothing to do with the sex characteristics of an animal.
xylem Vascular tissue that transports water and mineral solutes upward through the plant body. It contains vessel elements and tracheids.

Z

zooflagellate Nonphotosynthetic protist that moves by flagella. Typically, zooflagellates enter into symbiotic relationships, and some are parasitic.
zygote Diploid cell formed by the union of two gametes; the product of fertilization.

Credits

Photo Credits

Preface

Page xv(butterfly): © Wally Eberhart/Getty Images; p.xix(tortoise): © Digital Vision/PunchStock RF; p.xxi(egg and sperm): © Pascal Goetgheluck/SPL/Science Source; p.xxii(sickled and normal blood cells): © Eye of Science/Science Source; p.xxv(lady bug): © Anthony Mercieca/Science Source.

Chapter 1

Openers (flowers): © Paul A. Egan, Trinity College, University of Dublin; (chameleon): © National News/ZUMAPRESS/Newscom; (monkey): © Dr. Thomas Geissman, Anthropological Institute, University of Zurich/Fauna & Flora International; 1.1(bacteria): © Science Photo Library RF/Getty Images; 1.1(human): © Lane Oatey/Getty RF; 1.1(fungi): © RF Company/Alamy; 1.1(orchids): © David F. Cox, Howler Publications Ltd.; 1.3: © age fotostock/SuperStock; 1.5(family): © Purestock/Superstock RF; 1.5(DNA): © David Mack/SPL/Science Source; Table 1.2(Archaea): © Ralph Robinson/Visuals Unlimited; Table 1.2(Bacteria): © A. B. Dowsett/SPL/Science Source; Table 1.2(Protists): © Tom Adams/Visuals Unlimited; Table 1.2(Plants): © Brenda Tharp/Science Source; Table 1.2(Animals): © Radius Images/Getty RF; Table 1.2(Fungi): © Corbis RF; 1.9(*D. melanogaster*): © Graphic Science/Alamy; 1.9(*M. musculis*): © Steve Gorton/Getty Images; 1.9(*C. elegans*): © Sinclair Stammers/Science Source; 1.10(students, both): © image100 Ltd RF; 1.10(surgeon): © Phanie/Science Source; 1.11: © McGraw-Hill Education/Mark Dierker, photographer; 1.12: © Rodrigo Buendia/Getty Images; 1.13c(*A. thaliana*): © Wildlife GmbH/Alamy.

Chapter 2

Opener: © NASA/JPL-Caltech/MSSS; 2.1: © Brand X Pictures/PunchStock RF; p.22(supernova): © NASA/JPL-Caltech/STSci; 2.4(both): © National Institutes of Health; 2.5a: © DigitalGlobe/Getty Images; 2.5b: © Getty Images; 2.7b: © PM Images/Getty RF; 2.9: © Arco Images/GmbH/Alamy; 2.10(tree): © Paul Davies/Alamy; 2.10(man): © Image Source/Getty RF; p.31(water strider): © Martin Shields/Alamy; 2.11a: © McGraw-Hill Education/Jill Braaten, photographer; 2.11b: © Amanda Langford/SuperStock RF; p.32(polar bears); p.33(steel girders): © Corbis RF.

Chapter 3

Opener: © Dennis Gray/Cole Group/Getty RF; 3.1a: © Edwin van Wijk/Getty RF; 3.1b: © Photodisc/Getty RF; 3.1c: © H. Pol/CNRI SPL/Science Source; p.41(pepper): © Purestock/Superstock RF; 3.4–3.6: © McGraw-Hill Education/John Thoeming, photographer; p.43(cola): © McGraw-Hill Education/Richard Hutchings, photographer; p.44(fiber): © McGraw-Hill Education/John Thoeming, photographer; 3.10a: © Dr. Jeremy Burgess/Science Source; 3.10b: © Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; 3.10c: © Science VU/J. Litvay/Visuals Unlimited; 3.14b–c: © Corbis RF; 3.15a(woman): © Reuters/Corbis; 3.15a(web): © Chris Cheadle/Getty Images; 3.15b: © P. Motta & S. Correr/Science Source; 3.15c: © Duomo/Corbis; p.49(curly hair): © Amos Morgan/Getty RF; 3.20: © Eye of Science/Science Source.

Chapter 4

Opener: © Susumu Nishinaga/Science Source; 4.1(TEM, cell): © Dr. Gopal Murti/Visuals Unlimited; 4.1(electron microscope): © Inga Spence/Visuals Unlimited; 4.1(light microscope): © Corbis Images/Jupiter Images RF; 4.1(SEM, spider): © Getty Images/Science Photo Library RF; 4.1(*Euglena*): © Tom Adams/Visuals Unlimited; p.59(squid): © Karen Gowlett-Holmes/Getty Images; 4.6: © Ralph A. Slepecky/Visuals Unlimited; 4.7a: © Dennis Kunkel Microscopy, Inc./Visuals Unlimited; 4.8a: © Newcomb/Wergin/Biological Photo Service; 4.9: © Edward G. Pollock; 4.11: © R. Bolender & D. Fawcett/Visuals Unlimited; 4.13a: © Roland Birke/Getty Images; 4.13b: © Newcomb/Wergin/Biological Photo Service; 4.13c: © McGraw-Hill Education/Al Telser, photographer; 4.14b: © Dr. George Chapman/Visuals Unlimited; 4.15b: © Dr. Keith R. Porter; 4.19: © Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; 4.20a(cilia): © Kallista Images/Getty Images; 4.20a(sperm flagella): © David M. Phillips/Science Source; 4.20b(flagellum cross section): © William L. Dentler/Biological Photo Service; 4.21: © E. H. Newcomb/Biological Photo Service.

Chapter 5

Opener: © Axel Fassio/Getty RF; 5.1(left and center): © Patrik Giardino/Corbis; 5.1(right): © Joe McBride/Corbis; 5.2a(both): © Keith Eng, 2008; p.83(creatine): © McGraw-Hill Education/Mark Dierker, photographer; 5.5(inset): © CNRI/Science Source; 5.6(leaves): © Comstock/PunchStock RF; 5.6(woman): © Karl Weatherly/Getty RF; 5.16(both): © Mark Bretscher.

Chapter 6

Opener: © Corbis RF; 6.1(kelp): © Chuck Davis/Stone/Getty Images; 6.1(diatoms): © Ed Reschke; 6.1(sunflower): © Corbis RF; 6.1(*Euglena*): © Tom Adams/Visuals Unlimited; 6.1(cyanobacteria): © Sherman Thomson/Visuals Unlimited; 6.1(moss): © Steven P. Lynch; 6.2(mesophyll cell): © Michael Eichelberger/Visuals Unlimited; 6.2(chloroplast): © Dr. George Chapman/Visuals Unlimited; p.100(grow light): © Hydrofarm Horticultural Products; 6.5(both): © Digital Vision/Getty RF; p.104(forest): © PhotoLink/Getty RF; 6.10: © Brand X Pictures/PunchStock RF; 6.12: © USDA/Doug Wilson, photographer; 6.13: © S. Alden/PhotoLink/Getty RF.

Chapter 7

Opener: © Ronald Martinez/Getty Images; 7.1: © Peter Cade/Getty Images; p.115(lactic acid): © Bill Robbins/Getty Images; 7.5(runner): © Rubber Ball Productions/RF Index Stock Imagery, Inc.; 7.5(wine, bread): © C Squared Studios/Getty RF; 7.6: © Dr. Keith R. Porter; p.120(carbon monoxide): © Hisham F. Ibrahim/Getty RF; 7.11: © C Squared Studios/Getty RF; p.122(chromium picolinate): © McGraw-Hill Education/Mark Dierker, photographer.

Chapter 8

Opener: © Kevin Mazur/Contributor/WireImage/Getty Images; 8.1a: © Corbis RF; 8.1b: © Ted Kinsman/Science Source; 8.1c: © Biophoto Associates/Science Source; 8.1d(zygote): © Anatomical Travelogue/Science Source; 8.1d(fetus): © Brand X Pictures/PunchStock RF; p.127(ferns): © 2008 Robbin Moran; 8.2(chomatin): © O. L. Miller, Jr. and Steve L. McKnight; 8.5(all): © Ed Reschke; 8.6(all): © Dr. Andrew S. Bajer, University of Oregon; 8.7(top): © Thomas Deerinck/Visuals Unlimited; 8.7(bottom): © Steve Gschmeissner/SPL/Getty RF; 8.8: © Biophoto Associates/Science Source; p.134(patient): © Antonia Reeve/SPL/Science Source; 8.10(blebs): © Klaus Hahn, Cecelia Subauste, and Gary Bikoch from Science Vol. 280, April 3, 1998, p.132; 8.10(apoptotic cell): © Douglas R. Green, LaJolla Institute for Allergy and Immunology, San Diego; p.138(cigarettes): © C. Sherburne/PhotoLink/Getty RF; 8.14: © Nancy Kedersha/Immunogen/SPL/Science Source; 8.15b: © Breast Scanning Unit, Kings College Hospital, London/SPL/Science Source; 8.16(broccoli): © Corbis RF; 8.16(berries): © M. Lamotte/Cole Group/Getty RF.

Chapter 9

Opener: © George Doyle/Getty RF; 9.1: © CNRI/SPL/Science Source; p.149(poppy): © Getty Images/National Geographic RF; 9.8: © CNRI/SPL/Science Source; p.157(child): © Gary Parker/SPL/Science Source; p.158(XYY): © Biophoto Associates/Science Source.

Chapter 10

Opener: © McGraw-Hill Education/Jill Braaten, photographer; 10.1a: © Ned M. Seidler/National Geographic Creative; p.164(pea flower): © Nigel Cattlin/Science Source; 10.8(earlobes, both): © McGraw-Hill Education/John Thoeming, photographer; 10.8(widow's peak): © SuperStock; 10.8(straight): © Dynamic Graphics/PictureQuest RF; 10.11: © Division of Medical Toxicology, University of Virginia; 10.12b: © Pat Pendarvis; 10.13: © O. J. Staats, M.D./Custom Medical Stock Photo; 10.14: © Dr. Gopal Murti/SPL/Science Source; 10.15(both): © P. Hemachandra Reddy, Ph.D.; 10.16: © Medical-On-Line/Alamy; 10.18: © University of Connecticut, Peter Morenus, photographer; p.175(skin color): © Maria Taglienti-Molinari/Brand X Pictures/Jupiterimages RF; 10.20: © Jane Burton/Photoshot;

p.176(infant hand): © Science Photo Library/Science Source; 10.21(tissue): © Ed Reschke; 10.23(all): © Ryan McVay/Getty RF; 10.26(left, right): © Dr. Rabi Tawil; 10.26(center): © Muscular Dystrophy Association.

Chapter 11

Openers (child): © IT Stock/PunchStock RF; (orchids): © Medioimages/PunchStock RF; (DNA helix): © Radius Images/Alamy RF; (mushrooms): © IT Stock/age fotostock RF; 11.1: © Lee Simon/Science Source; 11.3(both): © Science Source; 11.4: © A. Barrington Brown/Science Source; p.189(DNA helix): © Comstock Images/Jupiter Images RF; 11.21: © Photodisc/Getty RF; 11.24: © Prof. Walter Gehring.

Chapter 12

Opener: © Zacarias Pereira da Mata/Shutterstock.com; 12.1: © SIU/Visuals Unlimited; p.211(cancer cells): © Steve Gschmeissner/SPL/Science Source; 12.5a: © Maximilian Stock Ltd./Science Source; 12.5b: © Jerry Mason/Science Source; 12.5c: © Richard Shade; 12.5d: © AGStockUSA, Inc./Alamy; 12.5e: © Robert H. Devlin, Fisheries and Oceans Canada; 12.7a(both), 12.7b(left), 12.7c(both): © Getty RF; 12.7b(right): © McGraw-Hill Education/Bob Coyle, photographer.

Chapter 13

Opener: © Belinda Images/Superstock; 13.1c: © Mondae Leigh Baker; 13.2(both): © Dr. Stanley Flegler/ Visuals Unlimited; p.223(fluorescent markers): © Peter Landsdorp/Visuals Unlimited; 13.3b: © The Williams Syndrome Association; 13.4b: © Kathy Wise; 13.5b: © Fred, Herbert, and Hendrik van Dijk. "Images of Memorable Cases, 50 Years at the Bedside: Case 133"; 13.7: © CNRI/SPL/Science Source; 13.10: © Mergen, Ltd; p.228(genetic tests): © U.S. Department of Energy Joint Genome Institute—© 2005 The Regents of the University of California; 13.11–13.12: © Brand X/ SuperStock RF.

Chapter 14

Opener: © Dr. Dennis Kunkel/Visuals Unlimited; 14.1(Darwin, ship): © DEA Picture Library/Getty Images; 14.1(iguana): © FAN Travelstock/Alamy RF; 14.1(rhea): © Nicole Duplaix/National Geographic/ Getty Images; 14.2: © Doug Sherman; 14.3b: © Mark A. Schneider; 14.5a: © Juan & Carmecita Munoz/Science Source; 14.5b: © Michael Maconachie/Papilio/Corbis; 14.6a: © Adrienne T. Gibson/Animals Animals; 14.6b: © David Hosking/Alamy; 14.6c: © Leonard L. Rue/ Animals Animals; 14.7: © David M. Hillis, University of Texas, Austin; 14.8: © John Cancalosi/Getty Images; p.244(dogs): © Brand X Pictures/Getty RF; 14.10(top): © Michael & Patricia Fogden/Minden Pictures; 14.10(bottom): © Haroldo Palo, Jr./NHPA/Photoshot; 14.12a: © Jason Edwards/Getty RF; 14.12b: © Joe Tucciarone; 14.15(sugar glider): © A.N.T. Photo Library/ Science Source; 14.15(wombat): © Photodisc Blue/ Getty RF; 14.15(kangaroo): © George Holton/Science Source; p.249(kitten): © Jane Burton/Getty Images; 14.17(pig & chick embryos): © Carolina Biological Supply/Phototake.

Chapter 15

Opener: © CDC/C. Goldsmith, P. Feorino, E. L. Palmer, W. R. McManus; 15.1(field, graph): © Francois Gohier/ Science Source; 15.3: © Robert Maier/Animals Animals; 15.4b(both): © John Cancalosi/Getty Images; 15.5: © Ernest A. Janes/Bruce Coleman/Photoshot; 15.7(both): © Michael Tweedie/Science Source; 15.9: © Vol. 25/ Corbis RF; 15.10(*P. o. obsoleta*): © Robert Hamilton/ Alamy RF; 15.10(*P. o. quadrivittata*): © Millard H. Sharp/Science Source; 15.10(*P. o. rossalleni*): © Zigmund Leszczynski/Animals Animals; 15.10(*P. o. spiloides*): © F. Teigler/blickwinkel/age fotostock; 15.10(*P. o. lindheimeri*): © Michelle Gilders/age fotostock/SuperStock.

Chapter 16

Openers (frog on leaf): © Ch'ien Lee/Minden Pictures; (frogs on pencil): © Indraneil Das/Alamy RF; 16.1a: © Michael Melford/Getty Images; 16.1b: © Biodiversity Institute of Ontario, Canada; 16.2(Acadian): © Steve Maslowski/Visuals Unlimited; 16.2(Traill's): © Birgitt Thume/Animals Animals; 16.2(least): © Steve Maslowski/Visuals Unlimited; 16.3a: © Sylvia Mader; 16.3b: © Adam Crowley/Getty Images; p.271(moss): © Nigel Cattlin/Science Source; 16.5: © John and Barbara Gerlach/Visuals Unlimited; 16.6(horse): © Creatas/PunchStock RF; 16.6(donkey): © Photodisc Collection/Getty RF; 16.6(mule): © Radius Images/ Alamy RF; p.274(salamander): © Carol Wolfe, photographer; 16.10a: © Carolina Biological Supply/ Phototake; 16.10b: © Alfred Pasieka/SPL/Science Source; 16.10c: © Gary Retherford/Science Source; p.277(trilobites): © Alan Morgan; p.279(smoke stacks): © Designpics.com/PunchStock RF.

Chapter17

Opener: © Itsuo Inouye/AP Images; 17.1: © K. G. Murti/Visuals Unlimited; 17.2a: © Lee Simon/Science Source; 17.4: © Steven P. Lynch; 17.7a(diseased potato): © USDA/Barry Fitzgerald, photographer; 17.7a(normal potato): © McGraw-Hill Education/Mark Dierker, photographer; 17.7b: © Bettmann/Corbis; p.293(norovirus): © James Cavallini/Science Source; 17.9a: © Alfred Pasieka/SPL/Science Source; 17.9b: © David Scharf/SPL/Science Source; 17.9c: © Science Source; 17.11b: © CNRI/SPL/Science Source; 17.12a: © Eric Graves/Science Source; 17.12b: © WHOI/Visuals Unlimited; 17.13: © Nitragin Company, Inc.; 17.14a: © Vol. 29/PhotoDisc/Getty RF; 17.14b: © Accent Alaska.com/Alamy; 17.15: © McGraw-Hill Education/ John Thoeming, photographer; 17.16a: © Susan Rosenthal/Corbis; 17.16b: © Ralph Robinson/Visuals Unlimited; 17.17a: © John Sohlden/Visuals Unlimited; 17.17b: From J. T. Staley, et al., *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology,* Vol. 13, © 1989 Williams and Wilkins Col, Baltimore. Prepared by A. L. Usted Photography by Dept. of Biophysics, Norwegian Institute of Technology; 17.18a: © Jeff Lepore/Science Source; 17.18b: © Dennis W. Grogan, University of Cincinnati; 17.21: © Pascal Goethgheluck/Science Source; 17.22a: © Linda Sims/Visuals Unlimited; 17.22b: © Daniel V. Gotschall/Visuals Unlimited; 17.22c: © D. P. Wilson & Eric David Hosking/Science Source; 17.22d: © Biophoto Associates/Science Source; 17.22e: © Dr. John D. Cunningham/Visuals Unlimited; 17.22f: © M. I. Walker/ Science Source; 17.22g: © D. P. Wilson/Science Source; 17.22h: © Randy Morse/Animals Animals; 17.22i: © Andrew J. Martinez/Science Source; 17.23: © Dr. David Patterson/SPL/Science Source; 17.24a: © Eric Grave/SPL/Science Source; 17.24b: © NHPA/ Superstock; 17.24c: © Omikron/Science Source; 17.24d: © Ed Reschke; p.307(*G. lamblia*): © Dr. Fred Hossler/ Visuals Unlimited; 17.25(plasmodium): © Carolina Biological Supply/Visuals Unlimited; 17.25(sporangia): © Stephen Sharnoff/Visuals Unlimited.

Chapter 18

Opener: © Nakano Masahiro/amanaimages RF; 18.1(*Chara*): © Dr. John D. Cunningham/Visuals Unlimited; 18.1(coleochaete): © Dr. Charles F. Delwiche, University of Maryland; 18.5(hornwort): © Steven P. Lynch; 18.5(liverwort): © Hal Horwitz/ Corbis; 18.5(moss): © Steven P. Lynch; 18.7(leatherleaf fern): © Gregory Preest/Alamy; 18.7(tree fern): © Danita Delimont/Getty Images; 18.7(hart's tongue fern): © Organics image library/Alamy RF; p.319(horsetail): © JoSon/The Image Bank/Getty Images; 18.9: © Field Museum Library/Contributor/Archive Photos/Getty Images; 18.10: © Dwight Kuhn; 18.11: © Phototake; 18.12(cycad): © DEA/RANDOM/De Agostini Picture Library/Getty Images; 18.13a(seed cones): © Steven P. Lynch; 18.13a(pollen cones): © Maria Mosolova/ Photolibrary/Getty RF; 18.13a(forest): © Steven P. Lynch; 18.13b: © Ed Reschke/Peter Arnold/Getty Images; 18.13c(tree): © T. Daniel/Bruce Coleman/ Photoshot; 18.13c(juniper berries): © Evelyn Jo Johnson; 18.14: © Stephen McCabe/Arboretum at University of California Santa Cruz; 18.17a: © IT Stock Free/Alamy RF; 18.17b: © H. Eisenbeiss/ Science Source; 18.17c: © Anthony Mercieca/Science Source; 18.17d: © Merlin D. Tuttle/Bat Conservation International, www.batcon.org; 18.18b: © blickwinkel/ Kottmann/Alamy; 18.19(left): © Imagesource/ JupiterImages RF; 18.19(center): © Brand X Pictures/ Alamy RF; 18.19(right): © Jupiterimages/Comstock Images/Getty RF; 18.21a: © Kingsley Stern; 18.21b: © Corbis RF; 18.21c: © Miguel Champi/Alamy; 18.22a: © Matt Meadows/Peter Arnold/Getty Images; 18.23: Reproduced with permission of the Freshwater Biological Association on behalf of The Estate of Dr Hilda Canter-Lund, © The Freshwater Biological Association; 18.24(bread): © Precision Graphics/ Kim Brucker, Photographer; 18.24(zygospore inset): © Dr. James W. Richardson/Visuals Unlimited; 18.25b: © Glenn Oliver/Visuals Unlimited; 18.26: © L. West/ Science Source; 18.27b(crustose): © Digital Vision/ Getty RF; 18.27b(fruticose): © Steven P. Lynch; 18.27b(foliose): © yogesh more/Alamy RF; 18.28: © Visuals Unlimited/Corbis; 18.29: © McGraw-Hill Education/John Thoeming, photographer; p.332(*Amanita* mushroom): © Holmes Garden Photos/Alamy; 18.30a: © Kingsley Stern; 18.30b: © David Q. Cavagnaro/ Garden Picture Library/Getty Images; 18.30c: © Jeff Daly/Visuals Unlimited/Corbis; 18.31a: © Everett S. Beneke/Visuals Unlimited; 18.31b: © John Hadfield/ SPL/Science Source; 18.31c: © P. Marazzi/SPL/ Science Source; 18.32: © New York State Department of Environmental Conservation/AP Images.

Chapter 19

Opener: © AFP Photo/Louisiana State University/ Christopher Austin/Newscom; 19.1(adult frog): © Dwight Kuhn; 19.1(top row, all): © Carolina Biological Supply/Phototake; 19.1(bottom row, all): © Dwight Kuhn; 19.8: © Andrew J. Martinez/Science Source; 19.9a: © Carolina Biological Supply/Visuals Unlimited; 19.9b: © Carolina Biological Supply/ Phototake; 19.9c: © NHPA/Charles Hood/Photoshot RF;

19.9d: © Ron Taylor/Bruce Coleman/Photoshot; 19.11a: © C. James Webb/Phototake; 19.11b: © NIBSC/SPL/Science Source; 19.13(snail): © Ingram Publishing/Superstock RF; 19.13(nudibranch): © Kenneth W. Fink/Bruce Coleman/Photoshot; 19.13(octopus): © Alex Kerstitch/Bruce Coleman/Photoshot; 19.13(nautilus): © Douglas Faulkner/Science Source; 19.13(scallop): © Larry S. Roberts; 19.13(mussels): © Rick Harbo; 19.15a: © Heather Angel/Natural Visions; 19.15b: © James Carmichael/Nature Photographics; 19.15c: © St. Bartholomew's Hospital/Science Source; 19.16: © John Burbidge/SPL/Science Source; 19.18a, c–e): © Creatas/Punchstock RF; 19.18b: © PBNJ Productions/Getty RF; 19.19a: © Kim Taylor/Bruce Coleman/Photoshot; 19.19b: © James Carmichael/Nature Photographics; 19.19c: © NHPA/Photoshot; 19.19d: © Kjell Sandved/Butterfly Alphabet; 19.20a: © Mark Kostich/Getty RF; 19.20b: © John Bell/Bruce Coleman/Photoshot; 19.20c(ventral): © Daniel Lyons/Bruce Coleman/Photoshot; 19.20c(dorsal): © Ken Lucas/Ardea; 19.20d(millipede): © Stuart Wilson/Science Source; 19.20e: © David M. Dennis/Animals Animals; 19.21(scale): © Science VU/Visuals Unlimited; 19.21(beetle): © Kjell Sandved/Bruce Coleman/Photoshot; 19.21(housefly): © L. West/Bruce Coleman/Photoshot; 19.21(lacewing): © Glenn Oliver/Visuals Unlimited; 19.21(walking stick, dragonfly): © Creatas Images/PictureQuest RF; 19.21(honeybee): © The National Human Genome Research Institute; 19.21(flea): © Kallista Images/Getty Images; 19.21(leaf hopper): © Gustavo Mazzatollo/Flickr/Getty RF; 19.21(grasshopper): © Gary Meszaros/Visuals Unlimited; 19.21(moth): © Dr. Cleveland P. Hickman; 19.23a(sea lily): © Borut Furlan/WaterFrame/Getty Images; 19.23a(feather star): © Reinhard Dirscherl/WaterFrame/Getty Images; 19.23b: © Alex Kerstitch/Visuals Unlimited; 19.23c: © Diane Nelson; 19.23d(sea urchins): © Randy Morse/Animals Animals; 19.23d(sand dollar): © Andrew J. Martinez/Science Source; 19.26a: © Corbis RF; 19.26b–19.29a: © Heather Angel/Natural Visions; 19.29b: © Ingram Publishing/Alamy RF; 19.30b: © John Dudak/Phototake; 19.31: © Zig Leszczynski/Animals Animals; 19.32a: © Martin Harvey/Gallo Images/Corbis; 19.33: © Tony Camacho/SPL/Science Source; 19.34a: © Jeremy Woodhouse/Getty RF; 19.34b–c: © Creatas/PunchStock RF; 19.35a: © B. G. Thompson/Science Source; 19.35b: © Leonard Lee Rue/Science Source; 19.35c: © Helene Ecker/Animals Animals; 19.36a: © Paul E. Tessier/Getty RF; 19.36b: © Gallo Images—Gerald Hinde/Getty Images; 19.36c: © David F. Cox, Howler Publications Ltd.; 19.36d: © 2011 Tory Kallman/Getty RF; 19.39(both): © HO/Reuters/Corbis; 19.40a: © Dan Dreyfus and Associates; 19.40b: © John Reader/Science Source; p.366(*Homo floresiensis*): © Mauricio Anton/Science Source; 19.42: © Tomas Abad/age fotostock/SuperStock; p.368(Neandertal): © Mark Thiessen/National Geographic Creative.

Chapter 20

Opener: © John & Barbara Gerlach/Visuals Unlimited/Corbis; p.373(paper): © Comstock Images/Jupiterimages; 20.2a: © Nigel Cattlin/Alamy; 20.2b: © J. Robert Waaland/Biological Photo Service; 20.2c: © Anthony Pleva/Alamy; 20.2d, 20.3(all): © Biophoto Associates/Science Source; 20.4a(right): © N. C. Brown Center for Ultrastructure Studies, SUNY, College of Environmental Science & Forestry/Dr. Wilfred A. Cote; 20.4b(left): © Randy Moore/Visuals Unlimited; 20.6: © J. Robert Waaland/Biological Photo Service; p.377(deadly nightshade): © blickwinkel/Alamy; 20.9: © Ray F. Evert, University of Wisconsin; 20.10a: © Michael Gadomski/Science Source; 20.10b: © Steven P. Lynch; 20.10c: © Nature Picture Library; 20.10d: © McGraw-Hill Education/Carlyn Iverson, photographer; 20.11a(top left): © Ed Reschke; 20.11a(bottom left): © Ray F. Evert/University of Wisconsin Madison; 20.11b(top right): © Carolina Biological Supply/Phototake; 20.11b(bottom right): © Kingsley Stern; p.381(cork): © Thomas Dressler/Getty Images; 20.12(bottom, circular): © Ed Reschke; 20.13(top left): © Carolina Biological Supply/Phototake; 20.13(lower right): © Visuals Unlimited/Corbis; 20.14: © Dr. John D. Cunningham/Visuals Unlimited; 20.15a: © Jonathan Buckley/Getty Images; 20.15b: © Evelyn Jo Johnson; 20.15c: © David Newman/Visuals Unlimited; 20.16a: © Mary E. Doohan; 20.16b: © David R. Frazier Photolibrary, Inc./Alamy; p.386(fertilizer): © McGraw-Hill Education/Mark Dierker, photographer; 20.17a: © Dwight Kuhn; 20.17b: © Science VU/R. Roncadori/Visuals Unlimited; 20.21a: © M. H. Zimmermann, Courtesy Dr. P. B. Tomlinson, Harvard University; 20.21b: © blickwinkel/Alamy.

Chapter 21

Opener: © David H. Wells/The Image Bank/Getty Images; 21.4a: © Robert E. Lyons/Visuals Unlimited; 21.4b: © Amnon Lichter, The Volcani Center; 21.5a(twig, right): © John Seiler/Virginia Tech Forestry Department; 21.5b(stoma): © Jeremy Burgess/SPL/Science Source; 21.6(both): © Kingsley Stern; 21.7a: © Cathlyn Melloan/Stone/Getty Images; 21.7b: © Dr. John D. Cunningham/Visuals Unlimited; 21.8a: © Martin Shields/Alamy; 21.8b: Micrographs courtesy of Randy Moore; 21.9b: © BananaStock/PunchStock RF; 21.13a: © Timothy J. Fehr; 21.13b, 21.14: © Steven P. Lynch; 21.15(pollen grain): © Graham Kent; 21.15(embryo sac): © Ed Reschke; 21.16a: © Vol. 7/PhotoDisc/Getty RF; 21.16b: © Simko/Visuals Unlimited; 21.16c: © Dwight Kuhn; 21.17f: © Jack Bostrack/Visuals Unlimited; 21.18(walnut half): © Jack Star/PhotoLink/Getty RF; 21.18(whole walnut): © Siede Preis/Getty RF; 21.18(peas): © Andrew Thomas/Getty Images; 21.18(peach half): © Peter Fakler/Alamy RF; 21.18(whole peach): © Jupiterimages/Image Source RF; 21.18(both apples): © Photolink/Getty RF; 21.19a: © Bill Draker/Getty RF; 21.19b: © Scott Camazine/Science Source; 21.19c: © Henrik Weis/Getty RF; 21.19d: © Robert Llewellyn/Corbis RF; p.406(coconuts): © Foodcollection RF; 21.23a: © Biophoto Associates/Science Source; 21.23b–c: © Prof. Dr. Hans-Ulrich Koop, from *Plant Cell Reports,* 17:601–604; 21.23d: © Louise Murray/Visuals Unlimited/Corbis; 21.24: © Hillside Nursery, Shelburne Falls, MA; 21.25b: © Dr. Brad Mogen/Visuals Unlimited; 21.26a(cornfield): © Bill Barksdale/Agstockusa/age fotostock; 21.26a(corn ear worm): © Visuals Unlimited/Corbis; 21.26b: © Colin Tann, Courtesy of Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization (CSIRO); 21.27: © Ren Haijun/Xinhua Press/Corbis; p.411(organic foods): © Brand X Pictures/Getty RF.

Chapter 22

Opener: © Christopher Polk/Staff/Getty Images; 22.2: © McGraw-Hill Education/Al Telser, photographer; 22.3(all): © Ed Reschke; 22.4a(shoulder): © Thinkstock/PunchStock RF; 22.4c(Gila monster): © Jim Merli/Visuals Unlimited; p.418(skinned elbow): © Eric Bean/Getty Images; 22.5(hyaline, adipose, bone): © Ed Reschke; 22.5(dense fibrous): © McGraw-Hill Education; 22.6: © Biophoto Associates/Science Source; 22.7(all), 22.8: © Ed Reschke; p.422(neurons): © Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source.

Chapter 23

Opener: © Mark Sullivan/WireImage/Getty Images; p.437(heart valves): © Biophoto Associates/Science Source; 23.6b: © Ed Reschke; p.439(varicose veins): © BSIP/Science Source; p.443(blood cells): © Prof P. M. Motta, and S. Correr/SPL/Science Source; 23.15d: © Science Photo Library RF/Getty RF; 23.16(right): © Biophoto Associates/Science Source.

Chapter 24

Opener: © Paul Windsor/Taxi/Getty Images; 24.3: © Photo Insolite Realite/SPL/Science Source; p.453(runny nose): © Franc Lucas/Getty Images; 24.4b: © Ed Reschke; 24.22: © Ardea London Ltd; p.465(woman): © Hill Creek Pictures/Getty RF; 24.24c: © Fawcett, Hirokawa, Heuser/SPL/Science Source.

Chapter 25

Opener: © 5Blue Media; 25.1: © Ryan McVay/Getty RF; 25.2a: © Dr. Ken Greer/Visuals Unlimited; 25.2b: © ISM/Phototake; 25.3: © Precision Graphics/Kim Brucker, photographer; 25.4: © Cole Group/Getty RF; p.479(beans): © Volume 20/Photo Disc Getty RF; 25.5: © Lilli Day/Getty RF; p.482(salt shaker): © Image Club RF; 25.6a: © Corbis RF; 25.6b: © Joel Sartore/National Geographic/Getty RF; 25.6c: © Sean Bagshaw/Science Source; p.485(pedometer): © Chris Kerrigan RF; p.487(Cro-Magnon): © Phillippe Plailly & Atelier Daynes/Look Sciences/Science Source; 25.8: © Image Source RF/Zero Creatives/Getty RF; 25.9a: © Tony Freeman/PhotoEdit; 25.9b: © Jack Star/PhotoLink/Getty RF; 25.10: © USDA, ChooseMyPlate.gov website; p.492(tea): © D. Hurst/Alamy RF; p.493(bread): © Precision Graphics/Kim Brucker, photographer; p.494(MyPlate): © USDA, ChooseMyPlate.gov website.

Chapter 26

Opener: © AFP/Getty Images; 26.2(arm): © Ingram Publishing/Alamy RF; p.500(antihistimines): © McGraw-Hill Education/Jill Braaten, photographer; p.501(fever): © Vol. 41/Getty RF; 26.4a: © Dennis Kunkel Microscopy, Inc./Phototake; 26.6b: © Dr. Arthur J. Olson, Scripps Institute; 26.8a: © Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; p.507(MMR vaccine): © Saturn Stills/Science Source; 26.10(pollen): © David Scharf/SPL/Science Source; 26.10(girl): © Damien Lovegrove/SPL/Science Source; 26.11: © Southern Illinois University/Science Source; 26.12a: © NIBSC/Science Source.

Chapter 27

Opener: © Anderson Ross/Blend Images/Getty RF; p.518(Valium): © Van D. Bucher/Science Source; 27.7(both): © Science VU/Visuals Unlimited; p.519(Marinol): © Time & Life Pictures/Getty Images; 27.10: © Dennis Gray/Cole Group/Getty RF; p.527(pregnant woman): © Owen Franken/Corbis; 27.18a: © Biophoto Associates/Science Source; 27.18b: © Dr. P. Marazzi/SPL/Science Source; 27.19: © NMSB/Custom Medical Stock Photo; p.532(woman): © Adam Crowley/Getty RF.

Chapter 28

Opener: © Mike Hewitt/Getty Images Sport/Getty Images; 28.4a(both): © Dr. Yeohash Raphael, the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor; p.544(LASIK surgery): © Pascal Goetgheluck/Science Source; p.545(aspirin): © McGraw-Hill Education/Eric Misko, Elite Images Photography; 28.13a: © John Cancalosi/Alamy; 28.17(myofibril): © Hugh Huxley; p.551(rigor mortis): © Michael Matthews/Alamy; 28.20a: © Gerard Vandystadt/Science Source.

Chapter 29

Opener: © UIG via Getty Images; 29.1(3 hydras): © Dennis Kunkel Microscopy, Inc./Visuals Unlimited; 29.2: © Mode Images/Alamy; 29.3: © Leonard Lee Rue, Jr./Science Source; p.559(gestation): © Gemstone Images/Corbis; p.565(HRT): © Philippe Garo/Science Source; 29.9(pill, female condom, jelly/diaphragm, Depo-Provera): © McGraw-Hill Education/Bob Coyle, photographer; 29.9(IUD): © McGraw-Hill Education/Vincent Ho, photographer; 29.10: © CC Studio/SPL/Science Source; 29.11(all): © Nicholas Nixon; p.570(condom): © PhotoAlto/PunchStock RF; p.571(ultrasound): © Nic Cleave Photography/Alamy; 29.17: © Lennart Nilsson/TT; 29.19a: © Neil Harding/Stone/Getty Images; 29.19b: © John Watney/Science Source; 29.19c: © James Stevenson/SPL/Science Source; 29.19d: © Ralph Hutchings/Visuals Unlimited; 29.20: © Dennis MacDonald/PhotoEdit.

Chapter 30

Opener: © National Geographic Image Collection/Alamy; 30.1: © Frank & Joyce Burek/Getty RF; 30.2a: © Jeff Henry/National Park Service; 30.2b: © William P. Cunningham; p.584(babies): © ER Productions/Corbis; 30.5a(top): © Ariel Skelley/Blend Images LLC RF; 30.5b(bottom): © Henk Badenhorst/Getty RF; 30.8a: © Evelyn Jo Johnson; p.588(Monaco): © Photodisk/PunchStock RF; 30.11a: © E. R. Degginger/Science Source; 30.11b: © Corbis RF; 30.18: © Creatas/PunchStock RF; 30.19a: © Elena Elisseeva/Alamy RF; 30.19b: © Martin Harvey/Gallo Images/Corbis; p.596(lemur): © Martin Harvey/Corbis RF.

Chapter 31

Opener: © Jan Martin Will/Shutterstock.com; 31.1a: © Rolf Nussbaumer/Getty RF; 31.1b: © Dr. Rod Peakall, School of Botany and Zoology, Australian National University; 31.1c: © Dr. Merlin D. Tuttle/Bat Conservation International/Science Source; 31.2a: © Yi Jiang Photography/Flickr Open/Getty RF; 31.2b: © David F. Cox, Howler Publications Ltd.; 31.3(both): © Vol. 63/Corbis RF; 31.5(all): © Breck P. Kent/Animals Animals; 31.6: © Steve Austin/Papilio/Corbis; 31.10a: © WILDLIFE GmBh/Alamy; 31.10b: © Carol Farneti-Foster/Oxford Scientific/Getty Images; 31.10c: © Bazzano Photography/Alamy; 31.11a: © Peter Chadwick/Alamy; 31.11b: © Momatiuk/Eastcott/Animals Animals; p.608(bacteria): © Science Photo Library RF/Getty RF; 31.12a: © Jason Lindsey/Alamy; 31.12b(insects): © USDA/Stephen Ausmus, photographer; 31.12b(tree): © J. D. Pooley/AP Images; 31.13(tree): © Authors Image/PunchStock RF; 31.13(diatoms): © Ed Reschke; 31.14a(caterpillar): © Corbis RF; 31.14a(giraffes): © George W. Cox; 31.14b(mantis): © John Cancalosi/Getty Images; 31.14b(osprey): © Joe McDonald/Visuals Unlimited; p.611(black smoker): © B. Murton/Southampton Oceanography Centre/Science Source; 31.15(fungi): © IT Stock/age fotostock RF; 31.15(bacteria): © Dr. David M. Phillips/Visuals Unlimited; 31.17: © Sylvia S. Mader; 31.23: © Tom McHugh/Science Source; 31.24(bacteria inset): © Perennou Nuridsany/Science Source; 31.25: © Biophoto Associates/Science Source; p.618(coral reef): © Jeff Hunter/Photographer's Choice/Getty Images; 31.27a: © Vol. 121/Corbis RF; 31.27b: © McGraw-Hill Education/Carlyn Iverson, photographer; 31.27c: © David Hall/Science Source; 31.27d: © Vol. 121/Corbis RF; 31.28(taiga): © John E. Marriott/All Canada Photos/Getty Images; 31.28(temperate deciduous forest): © David Sucsy/E+/Getty RF; 31.28(tundra): © Alan Majchrowicz/Photolibrary/Getty RF; 31.28(tropical rain forest): © Digital Vision/Getty RF; p.621(estuary): © Roger de la Harpe/Gallo Images/Getty Images.

Chapter 32

Openers (otter): © Getty RF; (vial, researcher with plant): © Marilyn Kok, University of Illinois Springfield; 32.1b: © Don Johnston/All Canada Photos/Getty Images; 32.2: © Conservation International Foundation; 32.3a: © Steven P. Lynch; 32.3b: © Photodisc/Getty RF; 32.4(ladybug): © Anthony Mercieca/Science Source; 32.4(bat): © Dr. Merlin D. Tuttle/Bat Conservation International/Science Source; 32.4(fishing boat): © Herve Donnezan/Science Source; 32.4(rubber tree): © Bryn Campbell/Stone/Getty; 32.5(deciduous forest): © BananaStock/PunchStock RF; 32.5(coral reef): © Comstock Images/PictureQuest RF; 32.6: © Stuart Westmorland/Corbis; 32.7(population): © D. Normark/Photo Link/Getty RF; 32.7(land): © Vol. 39/PhotoDisc/Getty RF; 32.7(water): © Evelyn Jo Johnson; 32.7(food): © McGraw-Hill Education/John Thoeming, photographer; 32.7(energy): © Photo Link/Getty RF; 32.7(minerals): © James P. Blair/National Geographic Creative; 32.8b: © Melvin Zucker/Visuals Unlimited; 32.10b: © Eco Images/Universal Images Group/Getty Images; 32.11a: © Corbis RF; 32.11b: © Jeremy Samuelson/FoodPix/Getty Images; 32.11c: © Stockbyte/PunchStock RF; p.635(milk): © PhotoSpin, Inc./Alamy RF; 32.12a: © Bruno Barbier/Getty Images; 32.12b: © Inga Spence/Visuals Unlimited; 32.13a: © David R. Frazier/Science Source; 32.13b: © AgStock Images, Inc./Alamy; 32.13c: © Perennou Nuridsany/Science Source; 32.14: © Arterra Picture Library/Alamy; 32.15b: © Shane Moore/Animals Animals; 32.15c: © Michael Pole/Corbis; 32.16b: © Reinhard Dirscherl/WaterFrame/Getty Images; 32.17a: © S. K. Patrick/Visuals Unlimited; 32.17b: © Corbis RF; 32.17c: © Danita Delimont/Getty Images; 32.18a: © DaimlerChrysler; 32.18b: © DOE/NREL, Credit–Warren Gretz; 32.19: © James P. Blair, National Geographic Creative; p.642(swordfish): © Franco Banfi/WaterFrame/Getty Images; 32.21a: © Kent Knudson/PhotoLink/Getty RF; 32.21b: © Scenics of America/PhotoLink/Getty RF; 32.22: © Photo by Erwin Cole, USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service; 32.23: © Diane Cook and Len Jenshel/Getty Images; p.645(light bulb): © Mike Kemp/Getty RF.

Index

Note: Page numbers followed by *f* and *t* indicate figures and tables, respectively.

A

Abdominal cavity, 454, 454*f*
Abiotic synthesis, 296
ABO blood type, 503, 503*t*
Abscisic acid, 395–396, 396*t*
Abscission, 396
Abstinence, 565, 565*t*
Acetylcholine (ACh), 518
Acetylcholinesterase (AChE), 518
Acetyl-CoA, 117
Acid-base balance, 459–460
Acid deposition, 34
Acidosis, 35*f*
Acids
  buffers and, 35
  defined, 33
  pH scale, 34, 34*f*
  stomach acid, 33
  strength of, 33, 34*f*
Acoelomates, 341–342, 341*f*
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). *See* AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome)
Actin, 48, 550, 550*f*
Actin filaments, 72, 72*f*
Action potential, 516–517, 517*f*
Active immunity, 506
Active site, 86
Active transport, 90–91, 90*f*
Acyclovir, 294
Adaptation, 6
  common descent with modification, 8, 8*f*
  defined, 242
  natural selection and, 243–244
  sensory, 537
Adaptive immunity, 502–505
Adaptive radiation, 274
Addison disease, 531, 531*f*
Adenine (A), 51–52, 51*f,* 186, 186*f,* 190
  structure of DNA and, 186–189
Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)
  ATP cycle, 82–83, 83*f*
  cellular respiration and, 111–112, 111*f,* 112*f,* 113–114, 120
  coupled reaction, 83–84, 84*f*
  electron transport chain and, 120
  as energy carrier, 52
  fermentation and, 115–116, 116*f*
  glycolysis, 113–114
  light reaction and, 102, 102*f*
  production of, 70, 71, 102
  structure of, 82, 82*f*
  substrate-level ATP synthesis, 114, 114*f*
  use and production of, 82–84
Adhesion junction, 75, 75*f*
Adhesion of water, 30–31, 30*f*
Adipose tissue, 419, 419*f,* 487
Adrenal cortex, 530–531
Adrenal gland, 526*f,* 530–531
Adrenaline, 530
Adrenal medulla, 530
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), 527
Adult stem cells, 213
Aerobic metabolism, 110
African sleeping sickness, 307
Age structure, 589
  comparing, 586
Agglutination, 503
Agricultural value of biodiversity, 628–629
AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), 568–569, 569*f*
  cause of, 253
  emerging virus and, 293
  transmission and treatment of, 509–510
Alagille syndrome, 224, 224*f*
Aldosterone, 530
Algae
  characteristics and structure of, 304–305
  classifying, 305
  defined, 304
  diversity of, 305, 305*f*
Algal bloom, 616
Alimentary canal, 463
Alkaptonuria, 171, 171*f*
Allantois, 571*f*
Alleles, 148
  dominant, 165
  linkage group, 177
  multiple-allele traits, 174
  population genetics and, 260
  recessive, 165
  X-linked, 178–179
Allergens, 508
Allergies, 508
Allopatric speciation, 272–273, 273*f*
Alternation of generations, 315–316, 315*f,* 400
Alternative mRNA processing, 201–202, 201*f*
Alveoli, 453, 454–455, 455*f*
Alzheimer disease, 295, 523
Amanita, 10*t*
Amino, 40*f*
Amino acids, 480–481
  metabolic pathway, 121–122, 121*f*
  structure and function of, 49
Ammonia, as base, 34
Amniocentesis, 226, 226*f*
Amnion, 571*f,* 573
Amniotic egg, 359
Amoebic dysentery, 306
Amoeboids, 306
Amphibians, 358, 358*f*
  circulatory system, 435, 435*f*
Amygdala, 522, 523
Anabolic steroids, 48
Anaerobic metabolism, 110
Analogous structures, 249, 282
Analogy, 281
Anaphase, 131*f,* 152, 152*f,* 153, 153*f,* 154, 155*f*
Anatomy
  as evidence for evolution, 248–249
  vestigial structures, 248
Anemia, 443, 481
Angiogenesis, 136, 140
Angiosperms
  adaptations and uses of, 324
  alternation of generations, 315*f,* 316
  flower of, 322, 332*f*
  life cycle, 323–324
Animals
  amphibians, 358
  annelids, 346–347
  arthropods, 349–352
  birds, 359–360
  cells, 64, 64*f,* 74–75
  characteristics of, 10, 10*t,* 338–339
  chordates, 354–356
  cloning, 211–212, 212*f*
  cnidarians, 343
  compared to fungi and plants, 326*t*
  cytokinesis, 132
  disease of, and fungi, 332–333
  echinoderms, 353–354
  evolution of, 338–342
  fishes, 356–358
  flatworms, 344–345
  human evolution, 363–368
  invertebrate, 340
  mammals, 360–362
  molluscs, 345–346
  reproduction, 557–558
  reptiles, 358–360
  roundworms, 348–349
  sponges, 342–343
  vertebrate, 340
  viruses of, 292–294
Annelids, 340*f,* 346–347, 347*f*
Annual ring, 382
Anorexia nervosa, 489
Anterior pituitary, 527–528, 528*f*
Anther, 322, 322*f,* 401, 401*f*
Anthrax, 298
Anthropods, 340*f*
Anthropoids, 363
Antibiotics
  bacteria and, 301
  as enzyme inhibitor, 87
  evolution and antibiotic resistant bacteria, 236
  resistance to and directional selection, 254–255
Antibodies, 444
  B cells and antibody response, 502–503
  function of, 503
Anticodon, 194
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), 529
Antigen-presenting cell (APC), 503
Antigens, 444, 499
  ABO blood type, 503
  adaptive immunity and, 502–505
Antihistamine, 500
Antioxidants, 95, 484
Antiviral drugs, 294
Ants, 388–389, 389*f*
Anus, 468*
Aorta, 436, 436*f*
Aortic bodies, 454
Aortic semilunar valve, 436
Aphids, 388–389, 389*f*
Apical dominance, 394, 394*f*
Apical meristem, 373
Aplastic anemia, 56
Apoptosis, 134, 135, 135*f*
Appendicitis, 467
Appendicular skeleton, 547, 547*f*
Appendix, 467
Aquafarming, 638
Aquaporins, 61, 88
Aquatic ecosystems, 619, 619*f*
Aquifers, 635
Arachnids, 350–351, 351*f*
Archaea
  characteristics of, 10, 10*t*
  structure, 301
  types of, 302
Archaeopteryx, 246, 246*f*
Architeuthisdux, 59
Ardipithecus ramidus, 364*f,* 365
Arteries, 437, 438, 438*f*
  plaque in, and cholesterol, 38
  plaque in, and fats, 46
Arterioles, 438
Arthritis
  osteoarthritis, 553
  rheumatoid, 553

INDEX

Arthropods, 349–352, 349*f*–352*f*
Artificial insemination, 567
Artificial selection, 243
Ascaris lumbricoides, 348–349
Asexual reproduction, 126, 557, 557*f*
  in flowering plants, 407–411
Aspartame, 161
Aspirin, 545
Assisted reproductive technologies, 567–568
Association areas, 521
Assortative mating, 264
Aster, 129, 131*f*
Asthma, 450, 453
Atherosclerosis, 46, 446
Atomic force microscope, 58
Atomic mass, 23
Atomic number, 23
Atomic symbol, 22
Atomic theory, 22
Atoms, 2, 3*f*
  arrangement of electrons in, 25–26, 25*f,* 26*f*
  defined, 22
  electronegativity of, 29
  period table, 23, 23*f*
  structure of, 22–23, 23*f*
  valence shell, 26
ATP. *See* Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)
ATP cycle, 82–83, 83*f*
Atrioventricular valves, 436
Atrium, 436, 436*f*
Attachment, of virus, 291, 291*f,* 292, 292*f*
Australopithecines, 364*f,* 365–366
Australopithecus afarensis, 364*f,* 365
Australopithecus robustus, 364*f*
Autism, MMR vaccine and, 507
Autoimmune diseases, 509
Autonomic system of PNS, 524–525
Autosomal dominant pedigree, 170, 170*f*
Autosomal recessive disorder, 169–170, 169*f*
Autosomes, 147, 169
Autotrophs, 610
Auxins, 393–394, 393*f,* 396*t*
Avian influenza (H5N1), 18, 289
  as emerging virus, 293
AV node, 438
Axial skeleton, 547
Axon, 422, 422*f,* 516, 516*f*
AZT, 294

B

Bacilli, 297, 297*f*
Bacteria
  antibiotic resistant and natural selection, 8–9, 236
  bacterial diseases in humans, 300–301
  characteristics of, 10, 10*t*
  diversity of, 296–297
  in environment, 299–301
  food irradiation, 25
  in food science and biotechnology, 300
  nutrition, 298–299
  as prokaryotic cell, 62–63
  reproduction of, 298
  role of, 62
  in root nodules, 386
  sexually transmitted diseases, 570
  structure of, 62–63, 63*f,* 297–298, 297*f*
  transgenic, 213, 214*f*
Bacteriophages, reproduction of, 291
Balance, sense of, 541, 541*f*
Balanced polymorphism, 259
Ball-and-socket joints, 551, 552*f*
Balloon angioplasty, 446, 446*f*
Bark, 381
Barr body, 157, 199
Barriers to entry, 499
Basal metabolic rate, 80
Bases
  buffers and, 35
  defined, 34
  pH scale, 34, 34*f*
  strength of, 34, 34*f*
Basophils, 444*f*
Batrachochytrium dendrobatidis, 333
B-cell receptor (BCR), 502
B cells. *See* B lymphocytes (B cells)
BCR-ABL oncogene, 138, 138*f*
Beaches
  erosion, 633
  pollution, 633–634
Beadle, George, 191–192
Beer, 43, 43*f*
Behavior, 5
Behavioral isolation, 271*f,* 272
Benign tumor, 140
Beta-carotene, 95, 142
Bicarbonate ion, 456
Bicuspid valve, 436
Bilateral symmetry, 340–341, 340*f*
Bile, 466
Binary fission, 126, 298, 298*f*
Binge-eating disorder, 489
Binocular vision, 542
Binomial name, 10–11
Biochemical cycles, 614
Biodiversity, 631, 647
  agricultural value of, 628–629
  as bioethical issue, 17
  biogeochemical cycles and, 630
  climate regulation, 631
  consumptive use value, 629
  defined, 627
  extinction and, 627
  fresh water provided by, 630–631
  medicinal value of, 628
  soil erosion prevention and, 631
  value of, 628–629
  waste disposal and, 630
Biodiversity hotspots, 627, 627*f*
Bioethics, 16–17
Biogas, 302
Biogeochemical cycles, biodiversity and, 630
Biogeography, as evidence of evolution, 240–242, 247–248
Bioinformatics, 217
Biological magnification, 642
Biological molecules, 39, 41–53
Biological organization
  categories of classification, 9, 9*t*
  in human body, 415–416
  levels of, 2, 3*f*
Biological species concept, 269–270
Biology, 2, 11
Biomass, 614
Biomes, 619–621
Bioremediation, 300
Biosphere, 2, 3*f,* 581, 619–621, 619*f,* 620*f*
Biosynthesis, of virus, 291, 291*f,* 292, 292*f*
Biotechnology
  age of, 207
  defined, 207
  genetic engineering, 208
  reproductive cloning, 211–212, 212*f*
  therapeutic cloning, 212–213, 212*f*
  transgenic organisms, 208, 213–215, 214*f*
Biotic community, 615
Biotic potential, 590, 590*f*
Biotic synthesis, 296
Biotin, 483*t*
Bipedalism, 365
Bird flu, 289, 293
Birds, 359–360, 359*f*–360*f*
  anatomy of, 359, 359*f*
  beaks, 360, 360*f*
  breathing in, 454, 454*f*
Birth, 576, 576*f*
Birth control methods, 565–566, 565*t,* 566*f*
Birth control pill, 565, 565*t*
Birthrate, 584
Birth weight, as stabilizing selection, 258, 258*f*
Bivalves, 346, 346*f*
Black bread mold, 328–329, 328*f*–329*f*
Black Death, 496
Blade (leaf), 378, 378*f*
Blastocyst, 572*f,* 573
Blind spot, 543
Blood
  ABO blood type, 503
  capillary exchange, 442, 442*f*
  components of, 420–421, 420*f,* 443–444, 443*f,* 444*f*
  as connective tissue, 420–421
  exchange of gas and, 455, 455*f*
  function of, 420, 443
  inheritance of blood type, 174, 174*f*
  movement in vein, 439, 439*f*
  path of, 440, 440*f*
  plasma, 443
  platelets and blood clotting, 445
  pulmonary and systemic circuits, 440
  sickle-cell disease, 52–53, 52*f*
  transportation and exchange of gas, 456
  water as component of, 30*f,* 31
Blood doping, 443
Blood pressure, 438, 442
  high, 446
Blood vessels, 438–440, 439*f*
B lymphocytes (B cells), 498, 498*t*
  antibody response and, 502–503
  characteristics of, 502*t*
Body. *See* Human body
Body mass index, 485
Bolus, 464
Bonds
  carbon-carbon, 40
  covalent, 27, 27*f*
  hydrogen, 29, 29*f*
  ionic, 26–27, 26*f*
  peptide, 49, 49*f*
Bone marrow, red bone marrow, 497–498, 548
Bone marrow transplant, 211
Bones. *See also* Musculoskeletal system
  compact, 420
  as connective tissue, 419*f,* 420
  function of, 545–546
  skeletal muscle moving bones at joints, 551–553
  structure of, 548, 548*f*
Bony fish, 357, 357*f*
Borborygmi, 465
Bottleneck effect, 265, 265*f*
Botulism, 298
Bovine growth hormone (BGH), 215
Bowel, 467
Brain
  brain stem, 522
  cerebellum, 522
  cerebrum, 521
  comparison of, 520, 520*f*
  diencephalon, 521
Brain stem, 520*f,* 522
BRCA1/*BRCA2* gene mutation, 125, 138
Breast cancer, 125
Breathing, 454, 454*f*
Bronchi, 453
Bronchioles, 453
Bronchitis, 453
Brookesia micra, 1, 1*f*
Brown algae, 305, 305*f*
Bryophytes, 315, 316–317, 316*f*
Bubonic plague, 496
Budding, 343
Buffer, 35
Bulbourethral glands, 561
Bulimia nervosa, 489
Bulk transport, 91, 91*f*
Bullhorn acacia, 607, 607*f*
Burgess Shale, 277
Bursa, 551, 552*f*
Bursitis, 553
Butter, 46, 46*f*

C

Calcitonin, 530
Calcium
  dietary, 482*t*
  muscle contraction and, 550
  regulation of, 530
Callus, 395
Calorie, 80, 490
Calvin, Melvin, 103

Calvin cycle reactions
  fixation of carbon dioxide, 103
  overview of, 98*f,* 99, 103, 103*f*
  reduction of carbon dioxide, 104
  regeneration of RuBP, 104
Calyx, 322, 322*f*
Cambrian period, 276*t*
Camera-type eyes, 542, 542*f*
CAM photosynthesis, 106, 106*f*
Cancer, 136–142
  absence of telomere shortening, 138
  breast, 125
  cell cycle and, 136–139
  characteristics of cancer cells, 140
  chromosomal rearrangements and, 138, 138*f*
  classification of, 139
  defined, 136
  development of, 136, 136*f*
  of epithelial tissue, 418
  genes associated with, 125, 138–139
  growth factor and, 137
  lymph nodes and, 498
  normal cells compared with, 140*f*
  prevention of, 141–142
  proto-oncogenes become oncogenes, 137, 137*f*
  transposons, 139
  treatment for, 140–141
  tumor suppressor genes become inactive, 137–138, 137*f*
Candida albicans, 332, 570
Canola oil, 46*f*
Capillaries, 438–439, 439*f*
Capillary exchange, 442, 442*f*
Capsaicin, 79, 312
Capsid, 290, 290*f*
Capsule, 63, 63*f*
Carbohydrates, 41*f*
  defined, 42
  digestion of, 469–470, 470*f*
  disaccharides, 43, 43*f*
  fiber, 44, 479
  health and, 479–480
  monosaccharides, 42, 42*f*
  polysaccharides, 43–45, 44*f*
  produced in photosynthesis, 96, 97
  role of, 478
Carbon
  carbon skeleton and functional groups, 40, 40*f*
  characteristics of, 39–40
  as element of living organisms, 22, 22*f*
  model of, 25*f*
Carbon cycle, 617–618, 617*f*
Carbon dioxide
  breathing rate and, 454
  carbon cycle and, 617–618, 617*f*
  cellular respiration, 111–112, 111*f,* 112*f*
  exchange of gas and, 454–455, 455*f*
  fixation of, in Calvin cycle, 103
  forests absorption of, 104
  global warming, 639
  in photosynthesis equation, 28, 97, 97*f*
  reduction of, in Calvin cycle, 104
  transportation and exchange of gas, 456
Carboniferous period, 276*t,* 319, 319*f*
Carbon monoxide poisoning, 120
Carboxyl, 40, 40*f*
Carcinogenesis, 136
Carcinogens, 138
Carcinomas, 139
Cardiac cycle, 437
Cardiac muscle, 421*f,* 422, 548
Cardiovascular disease (CVD), 479
  incidence of, 432
  obesity and, 488–489
Cardiovascular system
  capillary exchange, 442, 442*f*
  as closed circulatory system, 435
  defined, 424, 424*f*
  disorders of, 446
  homeostasis and, 426
  pulmonary circuit, 440, 440*f*
  systemic circuit, 440, 440*f*
Carnivores, 463, 610, 610*f*
Carnivorous plants, 372
Carotenoids
  color of fall leaves, 95
  in photosynthesis, 100
Carotid bodies, 454
Carpels, 322, 322*f,* 401, 401*f*
Carriers, 170, 179
Carrying capacity, 584, 591
Cartilage, 420
Cartilaginous fish, 357, 357*f*
Caspases, 135
Catastrophists, 238
Caveman diet, 487
Cell body, 422, 422*f,* 516, 516*f*
Cell cycle
  apoptosis, 134, 135*f*
  cancer and, 136–139
  checkpoints, 133–134, 133*f*
  cytokinesis, 132–133
  internal and external signals, 134–135
  interphase, 128
  mitosis, 129–133
Cell membrane, phospholipids and, 47, 47*f*
Cell plate, 132*f,* 133
Cell recognition proteins, 61, 61*f*
Cell reproduction
  basics of, 126
  cancer and, 136–141
  cell cycle control systems, 133–135
  cell cycle overview, 128, 128*f*
  chromatin to chromosomes, 127
  cytokinesis, 132–133
  mitosis, 129–133
Cells, 2, 3*f*
  animal cell, 65, 65*f,* 74–75
  cell reproduction, 126–139
  cell respiration, 110–122
  cell transport, 88–91
  energy for, 82–85
  entropy and, 81, 81*f*
  eukaryotic, 64–73
  of immune system, 498*t,* 499
  junctions between, 75
  metabolic pathways and enzymes, 85–87
  origin of, 295–296, 296*f*
  plant cell, 65, 65*f,* 74, 373–375
  plasma membrane, 59–61, 60*f,* 61*f*
  prokaryotic, 62–63
  structural components of, 44, 44*f*
  surface-area-to-volume ratio and, 58–59, 59*f*
Cell-signaling, 202–203, 203*f*
Cell suspension culture, 409
Cell theory, 62, 126, 295–296
Cell transport, 88–91
  active transport, 90–91
  bulk transport, 91, 91*f*
  passive transport, 88–90
Cellular respiration, 71
  alternative metabolic pathways, 121–122
  citric acid cycle, 112, 118
  electron transport chain, 112, 119–120
  energy yield from, 121
  glycolysis, 112, 113–114
  overview of, 111–112, 111*f,* 112*f*
  preparatory reaction, 112, 117
Cellulose, 44, 104
Cell wall
  animal, 74–75
  plant, 74
  prokaryotic cells, 63
Celsius, B–1
Cenozoic era, 276*t*
Centimeter, B–1
Central nervous system (CNS)
  brain, 520–522
  defined, 515
  limbic system, 522–523
  overview of, 520
Centrioles, 64*f,* 72, 73*f,* 129
Centromere, 127, 127*f*
Centrosome, 72, 72*f*
  spindles and, 129
Cephalization, 340–341
Cephalopods, 346
Cerebellum, 520*f,* 522
Cerebral cortex, 521, 521*f*
Cerebrum, 520*f,* 521
Cervical cap, 566
Cervix, 556, 562, 562*f*
C_4 plant, 105–107, 105*f,* 106*f*
Channel proteins, 61, 61*f*
Chara, 313, 313*f*
Character displacement, 606
Chargaff, Erwin, 186
Chargaff's rules, 186–187
Charophytes, 313, 313*f*
Chase, Martha, 185
Checkpoints, cell cycle, 133–134, 133*f*
Chemical bonds, 26–27
Chemical cycling, 614–618
  carbon cycle, 617–618
  in ecosystem, 4, 4*f*
  model for, 614–618
  nitrogen cycle, 616–617
  overview, 611–612
  phosphorus cycle, 615–616
Chemical reactions, 28
Chemoautotrophs, 299, 610, 611
Chemoheterotrophs, 299
Chemoreceptors, 537–538, 538*f*
Chemotherapy, 141
Chickenpox, 292
Chiloglottis trapeziformis, 601–602, 601*f*
Chitin, 44–45, 349
Chlamydia, 570
Chlamydomonas, 304, 304*f*
Chloride, 482*t*
Chlorine, in sodium chloride formation, 26–27, 26*f*
Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), 641
Chlorophyll
  color of leaves and, 95, 95*f,* 100*f*
  in photosynthesis, 97, 100
Chloroplasts, 65, 65*f,* 193
  energy flow and, 84–85, 85*f*
  photosynthesis and, 97, 97*f*
  structure and function of, 70, 70*f*
Choanocytes, 342
Choanoflagellates, 339, 339*f*
Cholesterol, 480, 488–489
  fiber and, 44
  heart disease and, 38
  high-density lipoproteins (HDLs), 38
  hypercholesterolemia, familial, 173, 173*f*
  low-density lipoproteins (LDLs), 38
  as precursor of steroids, 47
  reducing, 480*t*
  role of, 38
  structure and function of, 47, 47*f*
Chordates, 340*f*
  characteristics of, 354
  evolutionary trends, 356
  invertebrate, 354–355
Chorion, 571*f,* 573
Chorionic villi, 575, 575*f*
Chorionic villi sampling (CVS), 226–227, 226*f*
Chromatid, 128
Chromatin, 66
  cell division and, 127, 127*f*
  condensation, 199–200
Chromium, 122
Chromosomal disorders
  chromosomal mutations, 223–225
  testing for, 226–227
Chromosomal theory of inheritance, 165
Chromosomes
  abnormal chromosome inheritance, 156–158
  compaction of, 127, 127*f*
  composition of, 66
  defined, 126
  deletion, 223–224, 223*f*
  diploid number of, 147
  duplication, 224
  gender determination of humans and, 178
  haploid number of, 147
  homologous, 148
  inversion, 225
  karyotyping, 226–227
  linkage groups, 177, 177*f*
  meiosis, 146–158
  number of, and complexity of organism, 127
  rearrangements of, and cancer, 138, 138*f*

sex, 147, 147*f,* 178
translocation, 138, 138*f,* 224–225
X chromosome, 147, 178–180
Y chromosome, 147, 178–180
Chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), 138, 138*f*
Chyme, 465–466
Chytrids, 328, 328*f*
Cialis, 560
Cigarette smoking, cancer and, 138, 141
Cilia, 73, 73*f,* 452, 452*f*
Ciliates, 306
Circulatory systems
closed, 435
human cardiovascular system, 436–446
open, 434
in vertebrates, 435
Cirrhosis, 469
Citric acid cycle, 112, 112*f,* 118, 118*f*
Clade, 283
Cladistics, 283–284
Cladograms, 283, 283*f*
Clark's nutcracker, 607–608, 607*f*
Class, as category of classification, 9, 9*t,* 280*f,* 281
Classification categories, 9, 9*t,* 280–281, 280*f*
Clavicle, 547
Cleavage, 571
Climate
biodiversity and regulation of, 631
fossil fuels and global climate change, 639
Climate change, 18, 618
global, 600
Climax community, 603, 603*f*
Clitoris, 562–563
Cloaca, 361
Clonal selection model, 502
Cloning
first cloned sheep, 211–212
plants, 407
reproductive, 211–212, 212*f*
therapeutic, 212–213, 212*f*
Closed circulatory system, 434*f,* 435
Clostridium tetani, 300–301
Club fungi, 329, 329*f*
Club moss, 317–318
Clumped distribution, 588
Cnidarians, 340, 340*f,* 343, 343*f*
Coal age plants, 319, 319*f*
Cocaine, nervous system and, 519
Cocci, 297, 297*f*
Cochlea, 539–540, 539*f*
Codominance, 174
Codon, 192, 194
Coelom, 341, 463
Coelomate, 341*f,* 342
Coenzymes, in cellular respiration, 112
Coenzyme A (CoA), 112, 112*f*
Coevolution, 601
Cofactors, 386
Cohesion, of water, 30–31, 30*f*
Cohesion-tension model, 387, 387*f*
Coleochaete, 313, 313*f*
Collagen, 74, 74*f,* 419, 476
as fibrous protein, 51
osteogenesis imperfecta and, 172
Collar cells, 342
Collecting duct, 458, 458*f*
Collenchyma cells, 374, 374*f*
Colon, 467
Colonial flagellate hypothesis, 339, 339*f*
Color blindness, as X-linked recessive disorder, 179, 180
Colossal squid, 59
Columnar epithelium, 417*f,* 418
Commensalism, 605, 605*t*
Common ancestor, 270–271
Community, 2, 3*f,* 581
climax community, 603
coevolution, 601–602
competition, 606
defined, 601
diversity of, 602
ecological niche, 605
ecological succession, 603–604
mutualism, 606–608
native vs. exotic species, 609
species composition and, 602
species richness, 602
stability of, 608
succession, 603–604
Compact bone, 420, 548, 548*f*
Companion cell, 375
Competition, 592–593
character displacement, 606
in community ecology, 605, 605*t,* 606
niche specialization, 606
resource partitioning, 606
Competitive exclusion principle, 606
Complementary base pairing, 51, 188–189, 188*f*
Complement system, 500–501, 501*f*
Compound eyes, 542, 542*f*
Compounds, 26
Conclusion, 11*f,* 14
Condoms, 566, 570
Conduction deafness, 540
Cones, 321, 543, 543*f*
Conifers, 321–322, 321*f*
Conjugation, 298
Conjugation pili, 298
Connective tissue, 416, 416*f*
blood, 420–421
defined, 419
loose fibrous and related, 419–420
Conservation biology, 582, 626
Conservation of energy, 80
Constipation, 468
Consumers, 4, 4*f,* 610, 610*f*
Contact inhibition, 134
Continental drift, 278–279, 279*f*
Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD), 460–461
Contraceptive implants, 565, 565*t*
Contraceptive injections, 565, 565*t*
Contraceptive vaccines, 566
Control group, 13
Controlled study, 14–15
Control systems of human body, 424, 424*f*
Convergent evolution, 281–282
Copper, 482*t*
Copulation, 558
Coral reefs, 304
Cork cambium, 373, 381
Cork cells, 381
Cornea, 542, 542*f*
Corolla, 322, 322*f*
Coronary bypass operation, 446, 446*f*
Corpus luteum, 563, 563*f*
Cortex, plant, 380, 383*f,* 384
Cortisol, 530–531
Cotyledons, 324, 376, 404
Coupled reaction, 83–84, 84*f*
Covalent bond, 27, 27*f*
electronegativity and, 29
polar, 29, 29*f*
Coxal bones, 547
Cranial nerves, 523, 523*f*
Cranium, 547
Creatine, 83
Cretaceous period, 276*t,* 279
Crick, Francis, 187–188, 187*f*
Cri du chat (cat's cry) syndrome, 223–224
Cristae, 71, 117*f*
organization of, 120, 120*f*
Cro-Magnons, 368, 368*f*
Crossing-over, 150–151, 150*f*
Cross-pollination, 403
Cruetzfeldt-Jakob syndrome, 295
Crustaceans, 350, 350*f*
C_3 plant, 105, 105*f*
Cuboidal epithelium, 417*f,* 418
Culture, 366
Curiosity rover, 21, 21*f*
Cushing syndrome, 531
Cutaneous receptors, 544–545, 545*f*
Cuticle, 373
Cuvier, Georges, 238
Cyanide, as enzyme inhibitor, 87
Cyanobacteria, 96, 96*f,* 97, 298, 298*f*
Cyclins, 134, 202
Cymbalta, 518
Cystic fibrosis, 91
as autosomal recessive disorder, 170–171, 171*f*
causes of, 88
gene therapy, 232
Cytochrome *c,* 250, 250*f*
Cytokines, 502
Cytokinesis, 131*t,* 132–133
in animal cells, 132
defined, 128
in plant cells, 132–133
Cytokinins, 395, 396*t*
Cytoplasm, 63, 63*f*
glycolysis and, 113–114
Cytosine (C), 51–52, 51*f,* 186, 186*f,* 190
structure of DNA and, 186–189
Cytoskeleton, 64*f,* 65, 71–72
Cytotoxic T cells (T_C cells), 498*t,* 504–505

D

Dams, 635
Darwin, Charles, 7–8
background of, 237, 237*f*
natural selection and adaptation, 242–244, 254, 254*t*
study of geology, fossils, biogeography, 239–242
Wallace and, 244–245
Darwin's finches, 274, 274*f*
Data, 13
Daughter cell, 126
Daughter chromosomes, 129, 129*f,* 130, 131*f*
Death rate, 584
Deciduous plants, 377
Decomposers, 4, 4*f,* 611, 611*f*
Default sex, 571
Deficiency disorder, 476
Deforestation, 634, 634*f*
Dehydration synthesis reaction
defined, 42, 42*f*
of fat, 45, 45*f*
peptides, 49*f*
Delayed allergic response, 508
Deletion, chromosomes, 223–224, 223*f*
Demographics, 589
Demographic transition, 585
Denatured protein, 51
Dendrite, 422, 422*f,* 516, 516*f*
Denisovans, 367–368
Denitrification, 617
Dense fibrous tissue, 419–420, 419*f*
Density-dependent factors, 592–594
Density-independent factors, 592
Deoxyribonucleic acid. *See* DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid)
Deoxyribose, 42
Depressants, 518
Desertification, 634, 634*f*
Detrital food web, 612, 613*f*
Detritus, 611
Deuterostomes, 341, 341*f,* 353–362
Devonian period, 276*t*
Diabetes
gestational, 532
type 1 diabetes, 488
type 2 diabetes, 488
Diabetes mellitus, 459
overview of, 531
type 1 diabetes, 531–532
type 2 diabetes, 532
Dialysate, 460–461
Dialysis, 460–461
Diaphragm (anatomical), 454, 454*f*
Diaphragm (birth control), 566, 566*f*
Diarrhea, 468
Diastole, 437
Diastolic blood pressure, 446
Diencephalon, 520*f,* 521
Diet, 477. *See also* Nutrition
to prevent cancer, 142
Dietary supplements, 492
Dieting, 487
Diffusion
facilitated, 88–89
simple, 88
Digestive enzymes, 469–470
Digestive system, 424, 424*f,* 462–470
accessory organs, 468–469
complete and incomplete, 463
digestive juices, 469–470

Digestive system—*cont'd.*
functions of, 462
homeostasis and, 426
organs of, 463–468
tube-within-a-tube plan, 463–468
Dihybrid, 167
Diploid number, 147
Directional selection, 254–256, 256*f*
Disaccharides, 43, 43*f*
Diseases
bacterial diseases in humans, 300–301
emerging diseases, 18
emerging viruses and, 293
fungi causing, 332–333
protozoans and, 306–307
Disruptive selection, 257, 257*f*
Distal convoluted tubule, 458, 458*f*
Diuretic, 459
Diversity, of communities, 602
DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), 5
Chargaff's rules, 186–187
compared to RNA, 191*f*
as evidence for evolution, 250
flow of genetic information, 192–197, 192*f*
Franklin's X-ray diffraction data, 187
gene mutation, 221–222
genetic code, 192–193
genetic marker, 227, 227*f*
as genetic material, 185, 185*f*
Human Genome Project, 216–217
intergenic DNA, 215
replication of, 189–190
structure and function of, 51, 51*f,* 186–189
testing for genetic disorders, 227–228, 227*f*
transcription, 193–194
viral reproduction and, 291, 291*f*
Watson and Crick model, 187–189, 187*f*
DNA fingerprinting, 210, 210*f*
DNA ligase, 189
DNA microarray, 227–228, 228*f*
DNA polymerase, 189
DNA repair enzymes, 221
DNA replication, 126, 128, 129, 189–190, 189*f*
DNA technology
DNA fingerprinting, 210, 210*f*
polymerase chain reaction (PCR), 209–210, 209*f*
recombinant DNA (rDNA), 208–209, 208*f*
Domain
as category of classification, 9, 9*t,* 10, 10*t,* 280*f,* 281
three-domain system, 284–285, 285*f*
Domain Archaea
characteristics of, 7*f,* 10, 10*t*
three-domain system and, 284–285, 285*f*
Domain Bacteria
characteristics of, 7*f,* 10, 10*t*
three-domain system and, 284–285, 285*f*
Domain Eukarya
characteristics of, 7*f,* 10, 10*t*
kingdoms of, 10, 10*t*
three-domain system and, 284–285, 285*f*
Domestic livestock, 637–638
Dominant allele, 165
Dopamine, drug abuse and, 519
Dormancy, 395
Dorsal root ganglion, 523
Double fertilization, 323, 403
Doubling time, 584
Down syndrome, 156–157
characteristics of, 220
gene causing, 224
karyotype of, 226, 226*f*
maternal age and, 157
translocation, 224
Drug abuse, nervous system and, 518–520
Dry fruit, 404, 405*f*
DScam gene, 202
Duchenne muscular dystrophy, as X-linked disorder, 180
Duodenum, 466, 468
Duplication, chromosomes, 224
Dyads, 149–150, 149*f*
Dynein, 72, 72*f*
Dysentery, 301

E

Earthworms, 347, 347*f*
Eating disorders, 489
Ebola virus, 293
Ecdysis, 348
Ecdysozoans, 341, 348–352
Echinoderms, 340*f,* 353–354, 353*f*
E. coli. See Escherichia coli
Ecological niche, 605, 605*f*
Ecological pyramid, 614, 614*f*
Ecological succession, 603–604
Ecology
basic concepts of, 581
biodiversity, 627–631
as biological science, 582
of communities, 600–609
defined, 581
of ecosystems, 610–621
extinction, 595–596
life history patterns, 595
population growth, 588–591
resources and pollution, 632–642
succession, 603–604
sustainable society, 643–645
Ecosystems, 2, 3*f*
aquatic ecosystems, 619
autotrophs, 610
biosphere, 619–621
chemical cycling and energy flow in, 4, 4*f*
coevolution and, 601–602
defined, 581
energy flow and chemical cycling, 611–614
heterotrophs, 610–611
human influence on, 17
primary productivity, 620–621
terrestrial, 620
Ecotourism, 631
Ectoderm, 573, 573*f*
Ectothermic, 359
Edema, 460
Egg, 557
testing for genetic disorders, 229–230
Ejaculation, 561
Elastin, 74
Electrocardiogram (ECG), 438
Electronegativity, 29
Electron microscope, 57–58, 58*f*
Electrons
arrangement of, in atoms, 25–26, 25*f,* 26*f*
covalent bonding, 27, 27*f*
defined, 22, 23*f*
electronegativity, 29
ionic bonding, 26–27, 26*f*
light reactions and, 100–101, 101*f*
octet rule, 26
Electron shell, 25–26, 25*f,* 26*f*
Electron transport chain
in cellular respiration, 112, 112*f,* 119, 119*f*
light reactions, 101
Elements
atomic structure, 22–23, 23*f*
defined, 22
isotopes, 24
of living organisms, 22, 22*f*
periodic table, 23, 23*f*
source of, 22
Elephantiasis, 349
Elongation cycle, 195–196, 195*f*
Embolus, 446
Embryo
development of, 571–575
gastrulation and neurulation, 573–574
organ formation, 574–575
plant, 404, 404*f*
testing for genetic disorders, 229
Embryonic stem cells, 212–213
Embryo sac, 403
Emergency contraception, 566
Emerging virus, 293, 293*f*
Emiquon Floodplain Restoration, 625
Emphysema, 453, 455
Empty-calorie foods, 477
Emulsification, 466
Endocrine glands, 468, 526–532, 526*f*
Endocrine system, 424, 424*f,* 526–532
action of hormones, 514, 526–527
adrenal gland, 530–531
as control system, 514
homeostasis and, 426
hypothalamus and pituitary gland, 527–529
overview of, 526
pancreas, 531–532
summary of, 532*t*
thyroid and parathyroid gland, 529–530
Endocytosis, 91, 91*f*
Endoderm, 573, 573*f*
Endodermis, plants, 383*f,* 384
Endomembrane system, 64–65, 68, 68*f,* 69*f*
Endometriosis, 567
Endometrium, 562
Endoplasmic reticulum (ER), 64–65, 64*f,* 67, 67*f,* 68, 68*f,* 69*f*
Endoskeleton, 546
Endosperm, 323
Endospores, 298
Endosymbiotic theory, 303
Endotherms, 360
Energy
of activation, 87
ATP cycle, 82–83, 83*f*
for cells, 82–85
conservation law of, 80
coupled reaction, 83–84, 84*f*
defined, 4, 80
energy flow in ecosystem, 4, 4*f*
entropy and, 81
flow of, 84–85, 85*f*
fossil fuels and global climate change, 639
intake and output of body, 485–486
kinetic, 80, 80*f*
laws of, 80–81
measuring, 80
polysaccharides as energy storage molecules, 43–44, 44*f*
potential, 80, 80*f*
radiant, 99, 99*f*
renewable sources of, 640
Energy flow, 612–614
Energy laws, 80–81
Energy of activation, 87
English measurement units, B–1
Enhancer, 200
Entamoeba histolytica, 306
Entropy, 81
Environmental factors
gene mutations and, 221
phenotype and, 175–176
Environmental impact, population growth and, 587
Environmental science, 582
Enzymatic proteins, 61, 61*f*
Enzyme inhibition, 87
Enzymes
active site of, 86
defined, 86
energy of activation, 87, 87*f*
enzymatic action, 86, 86*f*
in eukaryotic cells, 64
function of, 48
as globular proteins, 51
induced fit model, 86–87
inhibition of, 87
restriction enzymes, 208, 208*f*
Eocene epoch, 276*t*
Eosinophils, 444*f*
Epidermal growth factor, 134
Epidermal tissue, plants, 373–374, 374*f,* 383*f,* 384
Epidermis, 373, 417–418, 418*f*
Epididymis, 560, 560*f*
Epigenetic inheritance, 202, 238
Epiglottis, 452–453, 452*f,* 464, 464*f*
Epinephrine, 530
Episodic memory, 522–523
Epithelial tissue, 416, 416*f,* 417–418, 417*f,* 418*f*
Epithelium, 417

Equilibrium species, 595
Equisetum, 319
Erectile dysfunction (ED), 560–561
Erection, 560–561
Erosion
  beach, 633
  biodiversity and prevention of, 630–631
  food production and, 637
Erythrocytes, 443–444, 444*f*
Erythropoietin, 443–444
Escherichia coli, 10, 10*t,* 25, 62, 185, 185*f,* 297*f,* 299, 468
  enzymes for lactose metabolism and, 197, 198*f*
Esophagus, 464, 464*f,* 468*f*
Essential amino acids, 480–481
Essential dietary fatty acids, 480
Essential nutrient, 477
Estrogen, 564, 564*f*
  structure and function of, 47–48, 47*f*
Estuary, 621
Ethyl alcohol, 43, 43*f,* 116
Ethylene, 396, 396*f,* 396*t*
Euchromatin, 200
Eudicots, 376–377, 376*f*
  development of seeds in, 404, 404*f*
  germination, 406, 406*f*
  root, 383*f, 384*
Eugenics, 230
Euglena, 10*t*
Eukarya, 10, 10*t*
Eukaryotes
  cell-signaling, 202–203, 203*f*
  evolution of, 303, 303*f*
  gene expression in, 199–203
Eukaryotic cells, 64–73
  centrioles, 72, 73*f*
  cilia and flagella, 73, 73*f*
  cytoskeleton, 65, 71–72
  defined, 62
  DNA replication, 189–190, 190*f*
  endomembrane system, 64–65, 68, 68*f,* 69*f*
  energy-related organelles, 65, 70–71, 70*f*
  gene expression in, 196*f*
  motor proteins and, 71–72
  nucleus, 64, 66–67, 66*f,* 67*f*
  organelles, 64
  plasma membrane, 59–61, 60*f,* 61*f*
  ribosomes, 67, 67*f*
  vacuoles, 69, 69*f*
  vesicles, 65
Eumetazoans, 340
Eutrophication, 616
Evergreens, 377
Evolution, 6–9
  adaptation, 242, 243–244
  anatomical evidence, 248–249
  of animals, 338–342
  antibiotic resistant bacteria and, 236
  biogeographical evidence of, 247–248
  bottleneck effect and, 265
  chordates, 356, 356*f*
  coevolution, 601–602
  common descent with modification, 8
  convergent, 281–282
  before Darwin, 238–239
  Darwin's and, 237, 239–245
  defined, 7
  evolutionary tree, 7, 7*f*
  fitness and, 243
  fossil evidence, 246–247
  fungi, 327*f*
  gene flow, 263–264
  in genetic context, 260–262
  genetic drift, 264–265
  genetic mutation, 263
  gradualistic model of, 277–278
  Hardy-Weinberg principle, 262
  of humans, 363–368
  of jaws, 356–357, 356*f*
  of land plants, 313–314, 314*f*
  on large scale, 268–285
  macroevolution, 269–274
  mass extinction, 278–279
  microevolution, 260–265
  micro-frog as example of, 268, 268*f*
  molecular evidence of, 250
  mosaic evolution, 366
  natural selection and, 7–8, 242–244, 254–259
  nonrandom mating and, 264
  pace of, 277–278
  photosynthesis and, 106
  as principle, 14
  on small scale, 253–265
  speciation and, 241, 269–274
  systematics, 280–285
  taxonomy and systematics, 9–11
  Wallace and, 244–245
Evolutionary tree, 7, 7*f,* 10, 277–278, 277*f*
Exchange pool, 614
Exercise, benefits for joint disorder, 553
Exocrine gland, 468
Exocytosis, 91, 91*f*
Exons, 194
Exophthalmos, 529, 529*f*
Exoskeleton, 349, 546, 546*f*
Exotic species, 609, 609*f*
Experiment, 11*f,* 12
Experimental design, 12–13
Experimental variable, 13
Expiration, 454, 454*f*
Exponential growth, 590, 590*f*
External fertilization, 558
Extinction
  biodiversity and, 627
  as bioethical issue, 17
  defined, 595
  humans influence on, 596
  mass, 278–279
  natural selection and, 242
  of vertebrates and invertebrates, 337
  vulnerability to, 595, 596*f*
Extracellular matrix (ECM), 74–75, 74*f*
Extraembryonic membrane, 558
Ex vivo gene therapy, 231, 231*f,* 232*f*
Eyes
  camera-type, 542
  compound, 542
  human, 542–544
  LASIK surgery, 544
Ey gene, 200, 201*f*

F

Facial bones, 547
Facilitated diffusion, 88–89
FAD^+, 112, 118
$FADH_2$, 112, 118
Fahrenheit, B–1
Fallopian tubes, 562
Family, as category of classification, 9, 9*t,* 280*f,* 281
Fat, body, 479
  glucose metabolized to, 43
  maintaining healthy weight, 487–488
  synthesis and breakdown of, 45*f*
Fat, dietary, 45–46. *See also* Lipids
  cardiovascular disease and, 488–489
  cholesterol, 480
  digestion of, 470, 470*f*
  reducing, 480*t*
  trans, 475, 480
  types of, 479–480
Fatty acids
  metabolic pathway, 121–122, 121*f*
  omega-3 fatty acid, 45
  saturated, 46, 46*f*
  structure and function, 45–46, 45*f*
  unsaturated, 46, 46*f*
Feathers, 359, 359*f*
Feedback inhibition, 87
Female condom, 566, 566*f*
Female gametophytes, 403
Female reproductive system, 562–564, 562*f*–563*f*
Femur, 547
Fermentation, 43, 43*f,* 115–116, 116*f*
Ferns, 314, 314*f,* 315, 315*f,* 318–319, 318*f*
Fertilization, 147, 571, 572*f*
  double, 323
  external, 558
  seed plants, 320
Fertilizer, 386
Fetus
  development of, 575–576
  testing for genetic disorders, 228–229
Fever, 501
Fiber, 479
  cellulose as, 44
  cholesterol and, 44
  insoluble, 44
  soluble, 44
Fibrinogen, 445
Fibroblasts, 419
Fibrous proteins, 51
Fibrous tissue, 419–420, 419*f*
Fibula, 547
Fight-or-flight response, 525
Filament, 322, 322*f,* 401, 401*f*
Filter feeder, 343
Filtration, in kidneys, 458
Fimbriae, 562
Finches, Darwin's study of, 241, 241*f*
Fish, 356–358, 356*f–358f*
  circulatory system in, 435, 435*f*
  gills, 456, 456*f*
Fishing, 638
Fitness, 243, 254
  F_2 fitness, 271*f,* 272
  sexual selection and, 258, 258*f*
Five-kingdom system, 284
Flagella, 73, 73*f,* 297, 297*f*
Flagellum, 63, 63*f*
Flatworms, 340*f,* 344–345
Fleming, Alexander, 12
Fleshy fruit, 405, 405*f*
Flowering plants, 322–324, 322*f*–324*f*
  asexual reproduction in, 407–411
  life cycle overview, 402*f*
  sexual reproduction in, 400–406
Flowers
  anatomy of, 322, 322*f,* 401, 401*f*
  in evolution of land plants, 314, 314*f*
Fluid-mosaic model, 60, *60f*
Flukes, 345
Fluorescent immunohistochemistry in situ hybridization (FISH), 223, 223*f*
Folic acid, 483*t*
Follicle, 563
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), 562, 564, 564*f*
Follicular phase, 564, 564*f*
Food, 4. *See also* Nutrition
  agricultural value of biodiversity, 628–629
  biological magnification and, 642
  from cloned animals, 212
  domestic livestock, 637–638
  fishing, 638
  fruit, 325
  fungi as, 331–332
  genetic engineering, 637
  green revolutions, 637
  harmful farming methods, 636
  rural sustainability and, 643–644
  soil loss and degradation, 636–637
  water used to produce, 635
Food chains, 614, 614*f*
Food irradiation, 25
Food web, 612–614, 613*f*
Foraminiferans, 306
Formed elements, 443–445, 444*f*
Fossil fuels, 639
  acid deposition and, 34
  carbon cycle and, 617*f,* 618
Fossil record, 246–247
Fossils, 238
  Darwin's study of, 239–240
  defined, 275
  as evidence of evolution, 246–247
  geological timescale and, 275–276, 276*t*
  transitional links, 246
Founder effect, 265, 265*f*
Fovea, 543
Frameshift mutation, 222
Franklin, Rosalind, 186, 187, 187*f*
Frogs, 337, 337*f*
Fronds, 318
Fructose, 42, 43
Fruit, 324, 325
  seed dispersal and, 405, 405*f*
  types of, 404–405
Fruiting body, 329
F_2 fitness, 271*f,* 272
Fukushima Nuclear Facility, 24, 24*f*
Functional groups, 40, 40*f*

Fungi
  characteristics of, 10, 326, 327–328
  chytrids, 328
  club or sac (mushrooms), 329
  compared to plants and animals, 326*t*
  as disease-causing organisms, 332–333
  ecological benefits of, 329–331
  economic benefits of, 331–332
  evolution of, 327*f*
  mutualistic relationships, 330–331
  mycorrhizal, 331
  peppers and, 312
  plant roots and, 386
  zygospore (black bread mold), 328–329
Fusion and entry, of virus, 292*f*

G

Gain of function mutation, 137
Galactose, 42
Galápagos Islands, 241, 606
  adaptive radiation and finches of, 274, 274*f*
Gallbladder, 466, 466*f*
Gamete, 568
Gamete intrafallopian transfer (GIFT), 568
Gamete isolation, 271*f,* 272
Gametes, 146
Gametophyte, 315, 315*f,* 400
Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA), 518
Gamma globulin, 507
Gap junction, 75, 75*f*
Garrod, Archibald, 191
Gaseous cycle, 614
Gastric reflux disease, 464
Gastropods, 346
Gastrula, 573
Gastrulation, 573, 573*f*
Gause, G. F., 606
Gender
  determination of, in humans, 178, 571
  sexual selection and, 258, 258*f*
Gene expression
  from DNA to RNA to protein, 192–197
  in eukaryotes, 199–203
  levels of control, 197–203
  in prokaryotes, 197–198
  in specialized cells, 197–198, 197*f*
  summary of, 196–197, 196*f*
  transcription, 193–194
  translation, 194–196
  triplet code, 192, 193*f*
Gene flow, 263–264, 263*f*
Gene locus, 165
Gene migration, 263–264
Gene pool, 260
Genes, 5
  composed of DNA, 185, 185*f*
  expression of, 191–197
  flow of genetic information, 192–197, 192*f*
  housekeeping, 197
  Hox genes, 250
  human identity markers (HID), 210
  mutations of, 221–222
  regulatory gene, 198, 198*f*
Gene therapy, 231–232
Genetically engineered plants, 392, 409–411
Genetically modified bacteria, 209
Genetically modified organisms (GMOs), 207, 213–215
Genetically modified plants (GMPs), 409–411
Genetic code, 192–193
Genetic counseling, 225–226
Genetic disorders
  chromosomal mutations, 223–225
  disorders of interest, 170–172
  Down Syndrome, 156–157, 220
  family pedigree and, 169–170
  gene mutation, 221–222
  gene therapy, 231–233
  testing for, 225–230
Genetic drift, 264–265
Genetic engineering, 208
  as bioethical issue, 17
  food and, 637
Genetic marker, 227, 227*f*
Genetic mutation, 263
Genetic profile, 227–228
Genetics
  abnormal chromosome inheritance, 156–158
  asthma susceptibility and, 450
  cellular reproduction, 126–139
  chromosomal mutations, 223–225
  cloning and stem cells, 211–213
  DNA and RNA structure and function, 191–196
  environment and phenotype, 175–176
  epigenetic inheritance, 202
  evolution in genetic context, 260–262
  gene expression, 185–197
  gene mutations, 221–222
  gene therapy, 231–232, 231–233
  genotype versus phenotype, 166, 166*f*
  Hardy-Weinberg principle, 262
  homologous chromosomes, 147–148
  Human Genome Project, 216–217
  incomplete dominance, 173
  law of independent assortment, 167
  law of segregation, 165
  linkage groups, 177
  meiosis, 146–158
  Mendel's laws, 162–172
  multiple-allele traits, 174
  one-trait inheritance, 164–166
  pleiotropy, 176–177
  polygenic inheritance, 174–176
  rule of multiplication, 167–168
  sex-linked inheritance, 178–180
  sexual reproduction, 146–158
  testing for genetic disorders, 225–230
  transgenic organisms, 213–215, 214*f*
  two-trait inheritance, 166–167
Genetic testing
  for cancer associated genes, 139
  of DNA, 227–228
  DNA microarray, 227–228
  of egg, 228–229
  of embryo, 228
  of fetus, 228–229
  genetic marker, 227, 227*f*
  karyotyping, 226–227
  over-the-counter tests, 228
  for a protein, 227
Genital herpes, 569
Genital warts, 569
Genome, 215
  Human Genome Project, 216–217
Genomics, 215–217
Genotype, 166
  defined, 166
  versus phenotype, 166, 166*f*
Genus, as category of classification, 9, 9*t,* 280*f,* 281
Geological timescale, 275–276, 276*t*
Geomyces destructans, 333
Geothermal energy, 640
Germinate, 406
Germ layers, 340, 573, 573*f*
Gestational diabetes, 532
Gestation period, 559
Giant squid, 59
Giardia, 307
Gibberellins, 394–395, 394*f,* 396*t*
Gills, 456, 456*f*
Glands, 418
Global warming, 18, 618
  fossil fuels and, 639
Globular proteins, 51
Glomerular capsule, 458, 458*f*
Glottis, 453
Glucagon, 468
  function of, 531
  regulation of blood glucose level, 531*f*
Glucocorticoids, 530
Glucosamine-chondroitin supplements, 553
Glucose, 43
  breakdown of, in cellular respiration, 111–120
  cellulose, 44, 44*f*
  chitin, 44–45
  disaccharides and, 43, 43*f*
  energy yield from metabolism of, 121–122
  fermentation, 115–116, 116*f*
  metabolic pathway, 121–122, 121*f*
  in photosynthesis equation, 28
  polysaccharides and, 44, 44*f*
  as product of Calvin cycle, 104
  structure and characteristics of, 42, 42*f*
Glucose phosphate, 104
Glycemic index, 479
Glycerol
  metabolic pathway, 121–122, 121*f*
  structure and function, 45–46, 45*f*
Glycogen, 44, 44*f*
Glycolysis
  defined, 112
  energy-harvesting step, 114, 114*f*
  energy investment step, 113, 113*f*
  substrate-level ATP synthesis, 114, 114*f*
Glycoproteins, 60
Goiter, simple, 529, 529*f*
Golden-brown algae, 305, 305*f*
Golgi, Camillo, 68
Golgi apparatus, 64–65, 68, 69*f*
Golgi tendon, 544
Gonadotropic hormone, 527, 562
Gonadotropin-releasing hormone, 562
Gonads, 557
Gonorrhea, 570
Gradualistic model of evolution, 277
Gram, B–1
Grana, 97, 97*f*
Grant, Peter, 241
Grant, Rosemary, 241
Granum, 70, 70*f*
Granzymes, 504–505
Grasshopper, 352, 352*f*
Gravitational equilibrium, 541
Gravitropism, 398, 398*f*
Grazing food web, 612, 613*f*
Green algae, 305, 305*f*
  plant evolution and, 313
Greenhouse effect, 18, 618
Greenhouse gases, 600, 618, 639
Green revolution, 637
Green tea, 492
Ground tissue, 373, 374, 374*f*
Growth factors
  cancer and, 137
  proto-oncogenes and cancer, 137
  as signal in cell cycle, 134
Growth hormone (GH), 528
Groynes, 633
G3P
  fate of, 104, 104*f*
  production of, in Calvin cycle, 103, 104
Guanine (G), 51–52, 51*f,* 186, 186*f,* 190
  structure of DNA and, 186–189
Gymnosperms, 314, 314*f,* 321–322, 321*f*
  alternation of generations, 315, 315*f*

H

Habitat, 605
Habitat isolation, 271, 271*f*
Hagfish, 357
Hair, 360
  perms and relaxers, 49
Hair cells, 538
Halophiles, 302, 302*f*
Haploid number, 147
Hardy, G. H., 261
Hardy-Weinberg principle, 262
Hawaiian honeycreeper, 8, 8*f*
Hawks, 4, 4*f,* 6
Hearing, 538–541, 539*f*
Hearing loss, 540–541
Heart
  in closed circulatory system, 434*f,* 435
  human, 436–438, 436*f*–438*f*
  in open circulatory system, 434, 434*f*
  pulmonary circuit, 435, 435*f*
  systemic circuit, 435, 435*f*
Heart attack, 446
Heartbeat, 437–438, 437*f*
Heartburn, 464
Heart disease, cholesterol and, 38

Heart murmur, 437
Heat, as lost energy, 81
Height, as polygenic trait, 174, 174*f*
Helicase, 189
Helicobacter pylori, 14–15, 464–465
Helium, model of, 23, 23*f*
Helper T cells (T_H cells), 498*t,* 504–505
Heme, 456
Hemocoel, 434
Hemodialysis, 460–461, 460*f*
Hemoglobin, 43, 56, 420
  carbon monoxide binding with, 120
  as globular proteins, 51
  mRNA translation, 202
  quaternary structure of, 51
  sickle-cell disease, 52–53, 52*f*
  transportation and exchange of gas, 456
  as transport protein, 48, 48*f*
Hemolysis, 90, 90*f*
Hemophilia, 445
  as X-linked trait, 178
Hepatic portal vein, 468, 469*f*
Hepatitis, 469, 570
Herbaceous plants, 380
Herbivores, 463, 610, 610*f*
Heredity. *See* Genetics
Hermaphroditic, 344, 557
Herpes, genital, 292, 569
Herpes viruses, 292
Hershey, Alfred, 185
Heterochromatin, 199
Heterotrophs, 610–611
Heterozygous, 166
  advantage of, 259
High-density lipoproteins (HDLs), 38, 488
High-fructose corn syrup, 43
Hinge joints, 551, 552*f*
Hippocampus, 522, 523
Histamine, 500, 500*f*
Histones, 127
HIV (human immunodeficiency virus), 505, 556, 568
  discovery of, 253
  as emerging virus, 293
  reproduction of, 292*f*
  transmission and treatment of, 509–510
Holocene epoch, 276*t*
Homeostasis, 4–5
  body temperature and, 428, 428*f*
  defined, 426
  negative feedback mechanism, 427
  systems of body and, 426
Hominids, 363
Hominins, 363, 365–367
Homo erectus, 364*f,* 366–367
Homo floresiensis, 366
Homogentisate oxygenase (HGD) gene, 171
Homo habilis, 364*f,* 366
Homologous chromosomes, 147*f,* 148
Homologous structures, 249, 281
Homologues, 148
Homo sapiens, 10*t,* 364*f,* 368
Homozygous, 166
H1N1 virus, 18
H5N1 virus, 18, 289
  as emerging virus, 293
Hookworm, 349
Hormone replacement therapy (HRT), 565
Hormones
  action of, 526–527, 527*f*
  in males, 562
  as messenger of endocrine system, 514
  peptide, 526–527
  plant, 393–396
  as regulatory protein, 48
  as signal in cell cycle, 134
  steroid, 526
Hornwort, 316, 316*f*
Horses, directional selection and, 256, 256*f*
Horseshoe crab, 351, 351*f*
Horsetail dietary supplements, 319
Housekeeping genes, 197
Hox genes, 250
Human activities
  beaches and, 633–634
  carbon cycle and, 618
  nitrogen cycle and, 617
  phosphorous cycle and, 616
  semiarid lands, 634
  tropical rain forests, 634
Human body
  blood, 443–446
  body mass index, 485
  body temperature regulation, 428, 428*f*
  control systems of, 424, 424*f*
  development, 571–576
  digestive system, 462–470
  healthy weight maintenance, 487–488
  heart and blood vessels, 436–440
  homeostasis, 426–428
  levels of biological organization, 415–416
  lymphatic system, 440–441
  maintenance system of, 424, 424*f*
  motor system, 545–553
  nervous system, 514–525
  organs and organ systems of, 423–425
  reproductive system of, 425, 425*f,* 559–570
  respiratory system, 451–456
  senses, 537–545
  sensory input and motor output system, 425, 425*f*
  tissue of, 416–423
  transport system, 424, 424*f,* 436–442
  urinary system, 457–461
Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), 573
Human evolution, 363–368
Human Genome Project, 52, 216–217
Human growth hormone (hGH), as regulatory protein, 48
Human identity markers (HID), 210
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). *See* HIV (human immunodeficiency virus)
Human papillomavirus (HPV), 556, 569
Human population, 583–587
  comparing age structures, 586
  controlling, 580
  growth and environmental impact, 587
  more-developed vs. less-developed countries, 585–586
  present and future growth of, 583–584, 583*f*
Humerus, 547
Huntington disease, 172, 172*f,* 200
Hyaline cartilage, 420
Hybridization, 409
Hybrid sterility, 271*f,* 272
Hydra, 433, 433*f*
Hydrocarbons, 40, 40*f*
Hydrochloric acid
  dissociation of, 33
  as stomach acid, 33
  as strong acid, 33
Hydrofluorocarbons, as greenhouse gas, 618
Hydrogen
  breathing rate and, 454
  as element of living organisms, 22, 22*f*
  model of, 25*f*
  molecular formula, 27, 27*f*
  structural formula, 27, 27*f*
Hydrogen bond, 29, 29*f*
Hydrogen gas, 27, 27*f*
Hydrogen ions (H^+), 27, 33
  in acids, 34
  bases and, 34
  pH and, 34, 34*f*
Hydrolysis reaction, 42, 42*f*
Hydrophilic, 30, 40
Hydrophobic, 30, 40
Hydropower, 640, 640*f*
Hydrostatic skeleton, 546, 546*f*
Hydroxide ions (OH^-), 34
  in bases, 33
  pH and, 34, 34*f*
Hydroxyl, 40*f*
Hymen, 563
Hypercholesterolemia, familial, 173, 173*f,* 231
Hypertension, 446
Hypertonic solution, 90, 90*f*
Hyphae, 327
Hyponatremia, 484
Hypothalamic-releasing hormone, 527
Hypothalamus, 521, 526*f*
  control of pituitary gland, 527–529
Hypothesis, in scientific method, 11*f,* 12
Hypotonic solution, 90, 90*f*

I

Ice, density of, 32, 32*f*
Immediate allergic response, 508
Immune system/immunity, 424, 424*f,* 496–510
  ABO blood type, 503
  active immunity, 506
  adaptive immunity, 502–505
  AIDS, 509–510
  allergies, 508
  antibody function, 503
  autoimmune disease, 509
  barriers to entry, 499
  B cells and antibody response, 502–503
  complement system, 500–501, 501*f*
  cytotoxic T cells, 504–505
  fever and, 501
  helper T cells, 504–505
  immunity defined, 499
  immunizations, 506–507
  inflammatory response, 500
  innate immunity, 499
  natural killer (NK) cells, 501
  nonspecific defenses, 499–501
  organs, tissues and cells of, 497–499
  passive immunity, 507
  problems with, 508–510
  specific defenses, 502–505
  T cells and cellular response, 503–505
  tissue rejection, 505
Inbreeding, 264
Incomplete dominance, 173, 173*f*
Independent assortment, law of, 167
Induced fit model, 86–87
Induction, 574
Inductive reasoning, 12
Indusia, 318
Industrial melanism, 262
Industrial waste, 641–642
Infectious diseases
  deaths from, 496
  historical perspective of, 496
Infertility, 567–568
  sexually transmitted diseases and, 556
Inflammatory response, 444, 500, 500*f*
Influenza
  anatomy of virus, 290, 290*f*
  H5N1 virus, 289, 293
  H7N9 virus, 289
Inheritance. *See also* Genetics
  abnormal chromosome inheritance, 157–158
  of acquired characteristics, 238
  chromosomal theory of, 165
  codominance, 174
  environment and phenotype, 175–176
  epigenetic inheritance, 202, 238
  genotype versus phenotype, 166, 166*f*
  incomplete dominance, 173
  law of independent assortment, 167
  law of segregation, 165
  linkage groups, 177
  Mendel's laws, 162–172
  multiple-allele traits, 174
  one-trait inheritance, 164–166
  particulate theory of, 164
  pleiotropy, 176–177
  polygenic, 174–176, 254
  rule of multiplication, 167–168
  sex-linked inheritance, 178–180
  two-trait inheritance, 166–167
Initiation, 195, 195*f*
Innate immunity, 499
Inner ear, 539–540, 539*f*
Inorganic chemistry, 39
Insecticides, resistance to and directional selection, 254–255

Insects, 351–352, 352*f*
  excretory system, 459*f,* 460
  respiration of, 453
  walk on water, 31
Insoluble fiber, 44
Inspiration, 454, 454*f*
Insulin, 459, 468, 488
  activation, 202, 202*f*
  function of, 531
  quaternary structure of, 51
  regulation of blood glucose level, 531*f*
  as regulatory protein, 48
Integration
  neurons, 518
  senses and, 537
  of virus, 291, 291*f,* 292*f*
Integumentary system, 425, 425*f*
Intercalated disk, 421
Interferon, fever and, 501
Intergenic DNA, 215
Interkinesis, 153
Intermediate filament, 72, 72*f*
International Code of Phylogenetic Nomenclature, 284
Interneurons, 516, 516*f*
Internode, 375
Interphase, 128, 128*f,* 130*f,* 131*f*
Interstitial fluid, 424
Intervertebral discs, 547
Intestinal enzymes, 466
Intracytoplasmic sperm injection, 568
Intrauterine device (IUD), 565*t,* 566
Introns, 194
Inv dup 15 syndrome, 224, 224*f*
Inversion, chromosomes, 225
Invertebrate animals, 340
In vitro fertilization, 568
  testing embryo and egg for, 229–230
In vivo gene therapy, 232, 233*f*
Iodine, 482*t*
Ionic bond, 26–27, 26*f*
Ions, 26–27
Iris, 542, 542*f*
Iron, 482*t*
  plant nutrition and, 385, 386
Isomers, 40
Isotonic solutions, 90, 90*f*
Isotopes
  defined, 24
  uses of radioactive isotopes, 24, 24*f*

J

Jacob, Francois, 197–198
Jacobs syndrome (XYY), 158
Jaundice, 469
Jawless fish, 357, 357*f*
Jaws, evolution of, 356–357, 356*f*
Joint appendages, 349–352, 349*f*–352*f*
Jointed limbs, 358, 358*f*
Joints
  ball-and-socket joints, 551, 552*f*
  disorders of, 552–553
  hinge joints, 551, 552*f*
  skeletal muscles moving bones at, 551
  synovial, 551, 552*f*
Junction proteins, 61, 61*f*
Jurassic period, 276*t*

K

Kaposi's sarcoma, 509
Karyotype, 147
  colored bands on, 223, 223*f*
  genetic counseling and, 227
Karyotyping, 226–227, 226*f*
Keratin, 418
  as fibrous protein, 51
Keystone species, 608
Kidneys
  function of, 457
  hemodialysis and transplants, 460–461
  nephrons, 458
  urine formation, 458–460
Kidney stones, 460, 481
Kilocalories, 80
Kilogram, B–1
Kilometer, B–1
Kinases, 134
Kinesin, 72, 72*f*
Kinetic energy, 80, 80*f*
Kingdom
  as category of classification, 9, 9*t,* 10, 10*t,* 280*f,* 281
  of domain Eukarya, 7*f,* 10, 10*t*
  five-kingdom system, 284
Klinefelter syndrome, 157, 157*f*
Krebs cycle, 118, 118*f*
Kuru, 294
Kwashiorkor, 637
Kyoto Protocol, 600

L

Labia majora, 562, 562*f*
Labia minora, 562, 562*f*
Lac operon, 197–198, 198*f*
Lactate, 114, 116, 300
Lacteal, 467
Lactic acid, 115
Lactose, 43
Lactose metabolism, 197–198, 198*f*
Lacunae, 420
Ladder-like nervous system, 515
Lamarck, Jean-Baptiste de, 238–239
Lambda virus, 291, 291*f*
Lampreys, 357, 357*f*
Lancelets, 355
Land, soil loss and degradation, 636–637
Land plants. *See also* Plants
  diversity of, 316–326
  overview of, 313–316
Land resources, 632–634
Land subsidence, 635
Large intestine, 467–468, 468*f*
Laryngitis, 453
Larynx, 452, 452*f,* 464, 464*f*
LASIK surgery, 544
Lateral bud, 375
Lateral line, 542
Law, 14
Leaf veins, 377
Learning, memory and, 522–523
Leaves
  color of, and chlorophyll, 95, 95*f,* 100*f*
  diversity of, 379*f*
  function of, 377–378
  organization of, 378, 378*f*
  structure of, 378, 379*f*
Leeches, 347, 347*f*
Legionnaires' disease, 18
Lemmings, 616, 616*f*
Lens, 542, 542*f*
Lenticels, 381
Leprosy, 628
Less-developed countries (LDCs), 585–586
  fossil fuel use, 639
Leukemias, 139
  myelogenous, 225
  stem cell therapy, 211
Leukocytes, 444, 444*f*
Levitra, 560
Lichen, 304, 330–331, 330*f,* 604
Life cycle
  of humans, 148–149, 148*f*
  of plants, 400
Life history, 595
Ligaments, 419, 551, 552*f*
Light, visible, 99, 99*f*
Light microscope, 57, 58*f*
Light reactions, 99–103
  ATP production, 102, 102*f*
  electron pathway of, 100–101, 101*f*
  NADPH production, 102–103
  organization of thylakoid membrane, 102–103, 102*f*
  overview of, 98, 98*f*
  photosynthetic pigments, 100
Lignin, 317, 374
Limbic system, 522–523
Lineage, 363
Linkage groups, 177, 177*f*
Linnaean classification, 280–281, 284
Linnaeus, Carl, 281
Lipase, 466, 470
Lipids, 41*f,* 45–48, 479–480
  characteristics of, 45
  fats and oils, 45–46
  fatty acids, 45–46, 45*f*
  function of, 45
  omega-3 fatty acid, 45
  phospholipids, 47
  steroids, 47–48
  trans fat, 46, 46*f*
Liter, B–1
Liver, 466, 466*f*
  disorders of, 469
  functions of, 468–469
Liverwort, 316, 316*f*
Living things
  characteristics of, 2–6
  organization of, 2–3, 3*f*
Lobe-finned fish, 358, 358*f*
Logistic growth, 591
Loose fibrous connective tissue, 419
Lophotrochozoans, 341, 344–347
Loss of function mutation, 137
Low-density lipoproteins (LDLs), 38, 488
Lower respiratory tract, 452*f,* 453
Lumen, 68, 418
Lungs, 358, 452, 452*f*
  exchange of gas and, 454–455, 455*f*
Luteal phase, 564, 564*f*
Luteinizing hormone (LH), 562, 564, 564*f*
Lycophytes, 313, 314*f,* 317–318, 317*f*
Lyell, Charles, 239, 245
Lymph, 441, 442
Lymphatic organs, 497–498
Lymphatic system, 424, 424*f,* 440–441, 441*f*
Lymphatic vessels, 440–441, 441*f*
Lymph nodes
  cancer and, 498
  function of, 498
Lymphocytes, 444, 444*f,* 498, 498*t*
Lysogenic cycle, 291, 291*f*
Lysosomes, 68, 69*f*
Lytic cycle, 291, 291*f*

M

MacArthur, Robert, 606
Macroevolution, 269–274
  defined, 269
Macronutrients, 385, 477
Macrophages, 444, 498, 498*t*
  inflammatory response and, 500, 500*f*
Mad cow disease, 295
Magnesium, 482*t*
Maintenance system of human body, 424, 424*f*
Major histocompatability complex (MHC), 504
Major minerals, 481, 482*t*
Malaria
  cause of, 307
  directional selection and, 255
  historical perspective on, 496
  sickle-cell disease and, 259, 259*f*
Male condom, 566
Male gametophytes, 403
Male reproduction system, 560–562, 560*f*–561*f*
Malignant tumors, 140
Malpighian tubules, 459*f,* 460
Maltase, 470
Malthus, Thomas, 243
Maltose, 43, 43*f,* 469
Mammals, 360–362, 361*f*–362*f*
Mammary glands, 360
Marfan syndrome, 176–177, 176*f*
Marijuana
  medical, 519
  nervous system and, 519–520
Mars, exploration of, 21, 21*f*
Marsupials, 248, 248*f,* 361, 361*f*
Mass extinction, 276*t,* 278–279
Mass number, 23
Mast cells, 498*t,* 500, 500*f*
Mating
  assortative, 264
  nonrandom, 264
Matrix, 71, 419
Matter, 22
Maturation, of virus, 291, 291*f,* 292*f*
Measurement, metric, B–1
Mechanical isolation, 271*f,* 272
Mechanoreceptors, 538
Medicinal value of biodiversity, 628
Medulla oblongata, 522
Medusa, 343
Megaphylls, 314, 314*f,* 318
Megaspore, 400, 403

Meiosis, 146–158
abnormal chromosome inheritance, 156–158
basics of, 147–151
compared to mitosis, 154–155, 155*f*
crossing-over, 150–151, 150*f*
defined, 147
function of, 147
in human life cycle, 148–149, 148*f*
importance of, 151
Mendel's laws and, 168–169, 168*f*
occurrence of, 154–155
overview of, 149–150, 149*f*
phases of, 152–153, 152*f*–153*f*
in plants, 149
Meiosis I, 149–150, 149*f,* 152–153, 152*f,* 154, 155*f*
Meiosis II, 149–150, 149*f,* 153, 153*f,* 154, 155*f*
Melanin, 176
Melatonin, 521
Memory, learning and, 522–523
Memory B cells, 503, 506
Memory cells, 498*t*
Mendel, Gregor, 162–164, 162*f*–164*f*
one-trait inheritance, 164–166
two-trait inheritance, 166–167, 167*f*
Mendel's laws, 162–172
family pedigrees, 169–170
genetic disorders of interest, 170–172
law of independent assortment, 167
law of segregation, 165
meiosis and, 168–169, 168*f*
probability and, 167–168
rule of multiplication, 167–168
Meniscus, 551, 552*f*
Menopause, 146, 564
Menses, 564
Menstruation, 564, 564*f*
Meristem tissue, 373
Mesoderm, 573, 573*f*
Mesonychoteuthis hamiltoni, 59
Mesophyll cells, 105, 105*f,* 378
Mesozoic era, 276*t*
Messenger RNA (mRNA), 66, 190
alternative mRNA processing, 201–202, 201*f*
formation of, 193
processed, 194
processing, 201–202, 201*f*
translation, 202
Metabolic pathway, 85–86
Metabolism, 4
Metamorphosis, 339, 350, 350*f*
Metaphase, 131*f,* 152, 152*f,* 153, 153*f,* 154, 155*f*
Metastasis, 136, 136*f,* 140
Meteorite, mass extinction and, 279
Meter, B–1
Methamphetamine, nervous system and, 519
Methanasarcina mazei, 10*t*
Methane
as greenhouse gas, 618
models of, 27, 27*f*
Methanogens, 302, 302*f*
Methemoglobinemia, 170, 170*f,* 227
Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA), 236
Methylmercury, 642
Metric system, B–1
Microevolution
causes of, 263–265
defined, 260
in genetic context, 260
Hardy-Weinberg principle, 262
Micro-frog, 268, 268*f*
Microgram, B–1
Micronutrients, 385, 477
Microphylls, 313, 314*f,* 317–318
Microscopes, 57–58, 57*f,* 58*f*
Microspore, 400, 403
Microtubules, 72, 72*f*
Microvilli, 467
Midbrain, 522
Middle ear, 539–540, 539*f*
Milk of magnesia, as base, 34
Miller, Stanley, 296
Milligram, B–1
Millimeter, B–1
Millipedes, 351, 351*f*
Mineralocorticoids, 530
Minerals
dietary, 481, 482*t*
as nonrenewable resource, 641
plant nutrition and, 385
transport in plants, 386
Miocene epoch, 276*t*
Mitochondria, 65, 65*f,* 193
cellular respiration, 111–112, 111*f,* 112*f,* 117–120
energy flow and, 84–85, 85*f*
intermembrane space, 120
structure and function of, 70–71, 71*f*
Mitosis, 129–133
compared to meiosis, 154–155, 155*f*
defined, 128
in human life cycle, 148, 148*f*
occurrence of, 154–155
overview of, 129, 129*f*
phases of, 129–132, 130*f*–131*f*
spindle, 129*
MMR vaccine, 507
Models, 13, 13*f*
Molecular formula, 27, 27*f*
Molecules, 2, 3*f*
defined, 26
as evidence for evolution, 250
polar, 29, 29*f*
Molluscs, 340*f,* 345–346, 345*f,* 346*f*
Molting, 348, 349
Monocots, 376–377, 376*f*
germination, 406, 406*f*
root, 384, 384*f*
seed development, 404
Monocytes, 444, 444*f*
Monod, Jacques, 197–198
Monoecious, 402, 402*f*
Monomers, 42
Monosaccharides, 42, 42*f*
Monosomy, 156
Monotremes, 361, 361*f*
Monounsaturated oils, 46
Mons pubis, 562
More-developed countries (MDCs), 585–586
fossil fuel use, 639
Morning-after pill, 566
Morula, 571, 572*f*
Mosaic evolution, 366
Moss, 313, 314*f,* 315, 315*f,* 316, 316*f*
Motor neurons, 516, 516*f*
Motor output system of human body, 425, 425*f*
Motor proteins, 71–72
Motor system, 545–553
Mouth, 463–464, 464*f,* 468*f*
mRNA transcript, 193
MRSA infection, 9, 236
Mullis, Kary Banks, 209–210
Multicellular, 2, 3*f*
Multifactorial traits, 175
Multiple-allele traits, 174, 174*f*
Multiple sclerosis, 509, 513
Multipotent, 213
Muscle dysmorphia, 489
Muscles. *See also* Musculoskeletal system
contraction and calcium, 550
function of, 545–546
interphase and, 128
major muscles in body, 549*f*
number of, in body, 548
types of, 548
Muscle spindle, 544
Muscular system, 425, 425*f*
Muscular tissue, 416, 416*f,* 421–422, 421*f*
Musculoskeletal system, 545–553
appendicular skeleton, 547
axial skeleton, 547
bone structure, 548, 548*f*
function of, 545–546
skeletal muscle contraction, 550
skeletal muscle moving bones at joints, 551–553
Mushrooms, 329, 331–332
Mutagens, 138, 221
Mutations, 5, 263
chromosomal, 223–225
gene, 221–222, 221*f,* 222*f*
Mutualism, 605, 605*t,* 606–608, 609*f*
Myasthenia gravis, 509
Mycelium, 327, 327*f*
Mycorrhizal association, 386
Mycorrhizal fungi, 331, 331*f*
Mycoses, 332
Myelin sheath, 422*f,* 423, 516, 516*f*
MyoD gene, 200
Myofibrils, 550, 550*f*
Myosin, 48, 72, 72*f,* 550, 550*f*
MyPlate food guidelines, 490–491

N

NAD^+, 112, 117, 118, 119
NADH, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 119
NADPH, 101, 101*f,* 102–103
Nanogram, B–1
Nanometer, B–1
Nasal cavities, 452, 452*f*
Native species, 609
Natural flora, 301
Natural history, 582
Natural killer (NK) cells, 498*t,* 501
Natural selection, 254–259
adaptations not perfect, 258
antibiotic resistant bacteria and, 8–9, 236
Darwin's hypothesis, 254, 254*f*
defined, 242
directional selection, 254–256, 256*f*
discovery of, 7
disruptive selection, 257, 257*f*
fitness, 254
heterozygote advantage, 259
maintenance of variations, 258–259
polygenic inheritance and, 254
process of, 7–8
sexual selection, 258
stabilizing selection, 257, 257*f*
steps of, 242–244
Neandertals, 367
Negative feedback mechanism, 427, 427*f,* 529, 529*f*
Nematocyst, 343
Nematodes, 340*f*
Nepalese autumn poppy *(Meconopsis autumnalis),* 1, 1*f*
Nephridium, 346
Nephron loop, 458, 458*f*
Nephrons, 458, 458*f*
Nerve cells, 422, 422*f*
mitosis and, 128
Nerve deafness, 540
Nerve impulse, 516–517, 517*f*
Nerves, 422
cranial, 525
spinal, 525
Nervous system, 424, 424*f,* 514–525
central nervous system, 520–523
comparison of, 515, 515*f*
as control system, 514
drug abuse, 518–520
examples of, 515
homeostasis and, 426
nerve impulse, 516–517
neurons, 516
overview of, 514–515
peripheral nervous system, 523–525
synapse, 518
Nervous tissue, 416, 416*f,* 422–423, 422*f*
Neural plate, 573, 573*f*
Neural tube, 573
Neuroglia, 423
Neurons, 422, 422*f*
structure and function of, 516
types of, 516, 516*f*
Neurotransmitters
drug abuse and, 518
drugs that regulate depression and anxiety, 518
nerve impulses and, 518
Neurulation, 573–574, 573*f*
Neutrons, 22, 23*f*
Neutrophils, 444, 444*f,* 498*t*
inflammatory response and, 500, 500*f*
Niacin, 483*t*
Niche specialization, 606
Nitrates, 142
Nitrification, 617
Nitrites, 142
Nitrogen
as element of living organisms, 22, 22*f*
model of, 25*f*
plant nutrition and, 386, 387

Nitrogen cycle, 616–617, 616*f*
  bacteria and, 299–300
Nitrogen fixation, 616–617
Nitrogen gas, 27
Nitrous oxide, as greenhouse gas, 618
Noble gases, 23, 23*f,* 26
Nociceptors, 544
Node, stems, 375
Nodes of Ranvier, 516, 516*f*
Nondisjunction, 156, 156*f*
Nonrandom mating, 264
Nonrenewable resources, 632
Nonsister chromatids, 150–151, 150*f*
Nonspecific defenses, 499–501
Nonvascular plants, 316–317, 316*f*
Nonwoody stems, 380–381, 380*f*
Noradrenaline, 530
Norepinephrine (NE), 518, 530
  drugs that regulate depression and anxiety, 518
Norovirus, 293
Notochord, 354, 354*f,* 573, 573*f*
Nuclear envelope, 67
Nuclear pores, 67
Nuclease, 466
Nucleic acids
  relationship with proteins, 52–53
  sickle-cell disease, 52–53, 52*f*
  structure and function of, 51–52, 51*f*
Nucleoid, 63, 63*f,* 297
Nucleolus, 55*f,* 66–67
Nucleosome, 127
Nucleotide, 51
Nucleus, 22, 23*f,* 64, 64*f,* 65*f*
  structure and function, 66–67, 66*f,* 67*f*
Nutrients
  classes of, 478–484, 478*t*
  defined, 476
  essential, 477
  transport in phloem, 388–389
Nutrition
  body mass index, 485
  carbohydrates, 478–480
  dietary supplements, 492
  dieting, 487
  eating disorders, 489
  energy intake vs. energy output, 485–486
  fiber and, 479
  food labels, 490–491
  lipids, 480
  maintaining healthy weight, 487–488
  minerals, 481–482
  MyPlate food guidelines, 490–491
  nutrients, 476–477
  overview of, 476
  planning nutritious meals, 490–492
  plant, 385–386
  proteins, 480–481
  Type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease, 488–489
  vitamins, 483–484
  water, 484
Nutrition labels, 490–491, 491*f*

O

Obesity
  cancer risk and, 142
  cardiovascular disease and, 488–489
  diet and, 479–480
  type 2 diabetes and, 488
Observation, in scientific method, 11*f, 12*
Octet rule, 26
Oils, structure and function, 45–46, 45*f*
Oligocene epoch, 276*t*
Omega-3 fatty acid, 45, 488
Omnivores, 463, 610
Oncogenes, 137
OncoMouse, 215
One-trait inheritance, 164–166
On the Origin of Species (Darwin), 7, 244, 245
Oocyte, 562, 563, 563*f,* 571, 572*f*
Oogenesis, 149
  compared to spermatogenesis, 146
Open circulatory system, 434, 434*f*
Operon, 197–198, 198*f*
Opportunistic pioneer species, 604
Opportunistic species, 595
Order, as category of classification, 9, 9*t,* 280*f,* 281
Ordovician period, 276*t*
Organelles, 64
Organic chemistry, 39
Organic farming, 41
Organic molecules, 39–53, 39*f*
  carbohydrates, 41*f,* 42–45
  carbon, 39–40
  carbon skeleton and functional groups, 40, 40*f*
  defined, 39
  lipids, 41*f,* 45–48
  nucleic acids, 41*f,* 51–53
  proteins, 41*f,* 48–51
Organisms
  evolutionary tree of, 7, 7*f*
  organization of, 2–3, 3*f*
  study of, in ecology, 581
Organs, 2, 3*f*
  defined, 415
  formation of, 574–575
  of immune system, 497–498
  of plants, 375–377
  tissue and function of, 423
Organ systems, 2, 3*f*
  homeostasis and, 426
Organ transplant, tissue rejection, 505
Orgasm, 561
Osmosis
  defined, 89
  effect on cells, 90
Osmotic pressure, 442
Osteoarthritis, 553
Osteoblasts, 548
Osteoclasts, 548
Osteocytes, 548, 548*f*
Osteogenesis imperfecta, 172
Osteons, 420, 548, 548*f*
Osteoporosis, 481, 481*f,* 548
Ostium, 434
Outer ear, 539–540, 539*f*
Out-of-Africa hypothesis, 367
Ovarian cycle, 564, 564*f*
Ovaries
  of flower, 322, 322*f,* 401, 401*f*
  human, 526*f,* 557, 562, 562*f,* 563–564, 563*f*
Oviducts, 562. *See* uterine tubes
Oviparous, 558
Ovoviviparous, 558
Ovulation, 563, 564
Ovule, 320
  of flower, 401, 401*f*
Oxidation, 98
Oxygen
  cellular respiration, 111–112, 111*f,* 112*f,* 119
  as element of living organisms, 22, 22*f*
  exchange of gas and, 454–455, 455*f*
  model of, 25*f*
  in photosynthesis equation, 28
  production of, atmosphere of early Earth, 97
  transportation and exchange of gas, 456
Oxygen deficit, 115
Oxygen gas, 27, 27*f*
Oxytocin, 529

P

Pacemaker, 438
Pain, referred, 544
Paleocene epoch, 276*t*
Paleontology, 238, 275
Paleozoic era, 276*t,* 277
Palisade mesophyll, 378
Pancreas, 466, 466*f,* 468, 526*f*
  function of, 531
  type 1 diabetes, 531–532
Pancreatic amylase, 466, 470
Pancreatic islets, 531
Pangaea, 279, 279*f*
Pantothenic acid, 483*t*
Papaya ring spot virus (PRSV), 292
Paper, 373
Paramecium, 306, 306*f*
Parasitism, 605, 605*t*
Parasympathetic division, 524, 525*f*
Parathyroid gland, 526*f,* 530
Parathyroid hormone (PTH), 530
Parazoans, 340, 342
Parenchyma cells, 374, 374*f*
Parent cell, 126
Parsimony, 283
Parthenogenesis, 557
Particulate theory of inheritance, 164
Passive immunity, 507
Passive transport, 88–90
  facilitated diffusion, 88–89
  osmosis, 89–90
  simple diffusion, 88
Pasteur, Louis, 295
Paternity tests, 210
Pathogens, ways to get rid of, 501*f*
Paxil, 518
Peat moss, 317
Pectoral (shoulder) girdle, 547
Pedigree, 169–170, 169*f,* 170*f*
  autosomal dominant, 170, 170*f*
  autosomal recessive, 169–170, 169*f*
  for sex-linked disorders, 179–180
Pelvic (hip) girdle, 547
Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), 567, 570
Penetration, of virus, 291, 291*f*
Penguins, 6
Penicillin, 628
  antibiotic resistant bacteria and, 8
  discovery of, 12
  as enzyme inhibitor, 87
Penicillium, 331
Penis, 560–561, 560*f*
Peppers, fungi and, 312
Pepsin, 464, 469
Peptidase, 470
Peptide bond, 49, 49*f*
Peptide hormones, 526–527, 527*f*
Peptides
  structure and function of, 49–50
  synthesis and degradation of, 49*f*
Peptidoglycan, 298
Perforins, 504–505
Pericycle, 383*f,* 384
Periodic table, 23, 23*f,* B–2
Peripheral nervous system
  autonomic system, 524–525
  defined, 515
  parasympathetic division, 524, 525*f*
  reflexes, 523–524
  somatic system, 523–524
  sympathetic division, 524–525, 525*f*
Peristalsis, 464
Peritonitis, 467
Permian period, 276*t*
Petals, 322, 322*f,* 401, 401*f*
Petiole, 378, 378*f*
PET (positron-emission tomography) scan, 24, 24*f*
pH
  buffers and, 35
  defined, 34
  regulation of, in urine formation, 459–460
Phage, 291
Phagocytosis, 91
Pharyngeal pouch, 354, 354*f*
Pharynx, 452, 452*f,* 464, 464*f,* 468*f*
Phenotype
  defined, 166
  environmental factors and, 175–176
  versus genotype, 166, 166*f*
Phenylketonurics, 161
Philadelphia chromosome, 138, 138*f,* 225
Phloem, 317
  structure of, 374, 377, 381
  sugar nutrient transport in, 388–389
Phosphate, 40*f*
Phospholipids, 47, 47*f*
  plasma membrane as, 59–60, 60*f*
Phosphorous cycle, 615–616, 615*f*
Phosphorus
  dietary, 482*t*
  as element of living organisms, 22, 22*f*
  model of, 25*f*
  plant nutrition and, 386
Photoautotrophs, 298, 298*f,* 610
Photoperiod, 398–399
Photoperiodism, 398–399, 398*f*
Photoreceptors, 542, 543, 543*f*
Photorespiration, 105
Photosynthesis, 96–106
  Calvin cycle reactions, 99, 103–104

CAM photosynthesis, 106, 106*f*
C_4 plant, 105–107, 105*f,* 106*f*
chloroplasts role in, 70
C_3 plant, 105, 105*f*
defined, 4, 96
equation for, 28
grow-lights and, 100
light reactions, 98–103
organisms conducting, 96–97, 96*f*
overview of, 96, 96*f*
photosynthetic pigments, 100
plants as photosynthesizers, 97, 97*f*
Photosystems, 100–101, 101*f*
Phototropism, 393, 393*f,* 397–398, 397*f*
Photovoltaic (solar) cells, 640, 640*f*
pH scale, 34, 34*f*
PhyloCode, 284
Phylogenetic tree, 281–283, 281*f*
Phylogeny, 280, 281*f*
tracing, 281–283
Phylum, as category of classification, 9, 9*t,* 280*f,* 281
Phytochrome, 399, 399*f*
Pineal gland, 521, 526*f*
Pine trees, 321–322, 321*f*
Pinocytosis, 91
Pinus longaeva, 10*t*
Pinworm, 349
Pitcher plant, 372, 372*f*
Pith, 380, 380*f*
Pitocin, 527
Pituitary gland, 526*f*
anterior, 527–528
control of, by hypothalamus, 527–529
posterior, 529
Placebo, 15
Placenta, 558, 575, 575*f*
Placental mammals, 362, 362*f*
Planarians, 344, 344*f,* 433, 433*f*
Plants
alternation of generations, 315–316, 315*f,* 400
angiosperms, 322–324
carnivorous, 372
cells, 64, 64*f*
cell wall, 74
C_4 plant, 105–107, 105*f,* 106*f*
characteristics of, 10, 10*t*
compared to fungi and animals, 326*t*
C_3 plant, 105, 105*f*
cytokinesis, 132–133
disease of, 332
diversity of land plants, 316–326
ecological benefit of, 325–326
economic benefits of, 325
eudicots, 376–377
evolution of, 313–314, 314*f*
flowering plants, 322–324, 400–406
genetically engineered plants, 392, 409–411
genetic engineering, 637
gymnosperms, 321–322
hormones, 393–396
leaves, 375, 377–378
life cycle of, 400
monocots, 376–377
nonvascular, 316–317
nutrition, 385–386
organs of, 375–377
overview of land plants, 313–316
photoperiodism, 398–399
as photosynthesizers, 97, 97*f*
phototropism, 393, 397, 397*f*
propagating, 407–409
roots, 375, 382–384
seed plants, 320
seeds, 404–406
stems, 375, 378–382
sugar transport in phloem, 388–389
tissue of, 373–375
transgenic, 214, 214*f*
transpiration, 387
transport of nutrients, 387–389
transport of water in, 30*f,* 31
tropism, 397–398
vascular, 317–320
viruses of, 292, 292*f*
water and mineral transport in xylem, 387–388
Plaque, 446
Plasma, 420, 443
Plasma cells, 498*t,* 502
Plasma membrane, 63, 63*f*
active transport, 90–91
bulk transport, 91, 91*f*
function of membrane proteins, 61, 61*f,* 79
osmosis, 89–90
structure and function of, 59–60, 60*f*
Plasmid, 208, 297
Plasmodesmata, 74, 74*f,* 292
Plasmodium, 307
Plasmolysis, 90
Platelets, 420*f,* 421, 444*f*
blood clotting and, 445, 445*f*
Plate tectonics, 278–279, 278*f*
Pleiotropy, 176–177
Pleistocene epoch, 276*t*
Pliocene epoch, 276*t*
Pneumocystis pneumonia, 509
Point mutation, 222
Polar, 29, 29*f*
Pollen grains, 320, 400, 403, 403*f*
Pollen tube, 323
Pollination, 320, 403
Pollinators, 324, 324*f*
Pollution
biological magnification and, 642
chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), 641
coastal, 633–634
defined, 632
industrial waste, 641–642
sewage, 642
Polycystic ovary syndrome (POC), 567
Polydactyly, 176, 176*f*
Polygenic inheritance, 174–176
natural selection and, 254
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR), 209–210, 209*f*
Polymers, 42, 42*f*
Polymorphism, 257
balanced, 259
Polyp, 343, 468
Polypeptide, 50
Polyploidy, 273, 274
Polyribosome, 196*f,* 197
Polysaccharides, 43–45, 44*f*
as energy storage molecules, 43–44, 44*f*
as structural components of cells, 44–45, 44*f*
Polyunsaturated oils, 46
Pome, 405
Pons, 522
Population, 2, 3*f*
Population density, 588
Population genetics, 260
Population growth
age structure and, 589
biotic potential, 590
controlling, 580
demographics and, 589–590
doubling time, 584
exponential growth, 590
factors that regulate, 592–594
human, 580, 583–587
logistic growth, 591
Populations
defined, 260, 581
distribution and density, 588
extinction, 595–596
human, 583–587
life history patterns, 595
study of, in ecology, 581
Porphyria, as pleiotropic trait, 177
Portal system, 440
Postanal tail, 354, 354*f*
Posterior pituitary, 528*f,* 529
Postsynaptic cell, 518
Postzygotic isolating mechanisms, 271*f,* 272
Potassium, 482*t*
plant nutrition and, 386
Potato blight, 307–308
Potential energy, 80, 80*f*
Precambrian time, 275–277, 276*t*
Predation, 593, 605, 605*t*
Predator-prey population cycle, 594
Prediction, scientific experiment, 11*f,* 12
Prefrontal area, 521
Preparatory (prep) reaction, 112, 112*f,* 117, 117*f*
Pressure-flow model, 388–389, 388*f*
Presynaptic cell, 518
Preven, 566
Prezygotic isolating mechanisms, 271–272, 271*f*
Primary growth, 375, 376*f*
Primary motor area, 521, 521*f*
Primary productivity, 620–621, 621*f*
Primary sensory area, 521, 521*f*
Primary succession, 603, 603*f*
Primates, evolutionary tree, 363–364, 363*f*
Principle, 14
Prions, 294–295
Probability, Mendel's laws and, 167–168
Producers, 4, 4*f,* 610, 610*f*
Products, 28
Progesterone, 564, 564*f*
Prokaryotes, 295–302
archaea, 301–302
bacteria, 296–301
characteristics of, 10, 10*t*
defined, 295
gene expression in, 197–198
importance of, 295
origin of cells, 295–296
Prokaryotic cells, 62–63
defined, 62
plasma membrane, 59–61, 60*f,* 61*f*
structure and function of, 62–63, 63*f*
Prolactin, 528
Promoter, 193, 197
Prophage, of virus, 291, 291*f*
Prophase, 130*f,* 131*f,* 152, 152*f,* 153, 153*f,* 154, 155*f*
Propionic acid, 300
Proprioceptors, 544
Prop root, 384*f*
Prosimians, 363
Prostaglandin, 545
Prostate gland, 561
Proteasomes, 202
Protein, 41*f*
amino acids, 49, 49*f*
denatured, 51
dietary, 480–481
digestion of, 469–470, 470*f*
fibrous, 51
functions of, 48, 48*f*
globular, 51
peptide synthesis and degradation, 49, 49*f*
in plasma membrane, 61, 61*f*
relationship with nucleic acid, 52–53
shape of, 50–51, 50*f*
sickle-cell disease, 52–53, 52*f*
structure of, 50–51, 50*f*
testing for genetic disorder, 227
Proteinaceous infectious particles, 294
Protein activity, 202, 202*f*
Proteome, 217
Proteomics, 217
Prothrombin, 445
Protista, 10, 10*t*
Protists
algae, 304–305
characteristics of, 303
classification of, 303–308, 303*t,* 304*t*
evolution of, 303
protozoan, 304, 305–307
slime molds and water molds, 307–308
Protocells, 296
Protons, 22, 23*f*
Proto-oncogenes, 137, 137*f*
Protostomes, 341, 341*f*
Protozoan
characteristics and structure of, 305–306
defined, 305
Proximal convoluted tubule, 458, 458*f*
Prozac, 518
Pseudocoelomates, 341*f,* 342, 348–349
Pseudopods, 306
Pseudostratified epithelium, 417*f,* 418
Puberty, 562
Pulmonary arteries, 436–437, 436*f*
Pulmonary circuit, 435, 435*f,* 440, 440*f*
Pulmonary semilunar valve, 436
Pulmonary trunk, 436
Pulmonary veins, 436–437, 436*f*
Pulse, 437

Punctuated equilibrium model of, 278
Punnett, Reginald, 164
Punnett square, 164, 164*f,* 167, 167*f*
Pupil, 542, 542*f*
Purkinje fibers, 438
Pyruvate, 114, 115, 116*f,* 117

Q

Quaternary period, 276*t*

R

Radial symmetry, 340, 340*f*
Radiant energy, 99, 99*f*
Radiation, to treat cancer, 141
Radioactivity
  food irradiation, 25
  use of radioactive isotopes, 24, 24*f*
Radiolarians, 306
Radius, 547
Random distribution, 588
Range, 588
Ras functions, 203
RAS oncogenes, 137, 139
Ray-finned fish, 357, 357*f*
RB gene, 139
Reabsorption, in kidneys, 459
Reactants, 28
Receptacle, flower, 401
Receptor-mediated endocytosis, 91, 91*f*
Receptor proteins, 61, 61*f*
Recessive allele, 165
Recombinant DNA (rDNA), 208–209, 208*f*
Red algae, 305, 305*f*
Red blood cells, 56*f,* 420, 420*f*
  function and role of, 56, 443–444, 444*f*
  hypertonic solution, 90, 90*f*
  hypotonic solution and, 90, 90*f*
  isotonic solution and, 90, 90*f*
Red bone marrow, 548
  function of, 497–498
Redox reaction, 98, 111
Reduction, 98
Referred pain, 544
Reflexes, 523–524, 524*f*
Regeneration, 557
Regulatory gene, 198, 198*f*
Release, of virus, 291, 291*f,* 292*f*
Release factor, 196
Renewable resources, 632, 640
Replacement model, 367, 367*f*
Replacement reproduction, 586
Replication, of virus, 292*f*
Repressor, 198
Reproduction, 5. *See also* Asexual reproduction
  animals, 557–558
  asexual, 407–411, 557
  assisted reproductive technologies, 567–568
  bacteria, 298
  birth control methods, 565–566
  female reproductive system, 562–564
  human, 559–570
  infertility, 567–568
  on land vs. water, 558
  male reproduction system, 560–562
  replacement reproduction, 586
  sexual, 146–158, 400–406, 557
  sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), 556, 568–570
  viruses, 290–291
Reproductive barriers, 271–272, 271*f*
Reproductive cloning, 211–212, 212*f*
Reproductive system of human body, 425, 425*f*
Reptiles, 358–360
  circulatory system, 435, 435*f*
Reservoirs, in chemical cycling, 614
Resource partitioning, 606
Resources, 588
  energy, 638–640
  food, 636–638
  land, 632–634
  minerals, 641
  nonrenewable, 632
  renewable, 632, 640
  water, 634–636
Respiration, 451
  birds, 454, 454*f*
  fish, 456, 456*f*
  insects, 453
Respiratory membrane, 455
Respiratory system, 424, 424*f,* 451–456
  breathing, 454
  lower respiratory tract, 452*f,* 453
  lungs and exchange of gas, 454–455
  steps in respiration, 451
  upper respiratory tract, 452–453
Restriction enzymes, 208, 208*f*
RET gene, 139
Retina, 542, 543, 543*f*
Retinal, 543
Retroviruses, 293
Reverse transcription, 292*f*
Rheumatoid arthritis, 232, 509, 509*f,* 553
Rhodopsin, 543, 543*f*
Ribavirin, 294
Rib cage, 547
Riboflavin, 483*t*
Ribonuclease, 50
Ribose, 42
Ribosomal RNA (rRNA), 66, 191, 195
Ribosomes, 63, 63*f,* 64*f,* 191
  structure and function of, 67, 67*f*
  in translation, 195, 195*f*
Rickets, 484
Rigor mortis, 550, 551
Ringworm, 333, 333*f*
RNA (ribonucleic acid)
  compared to DNA, 191*f*
  flow of genetic information, 192–197, 192*f*
  genetic code, 192–193
  messenger, 66, 190, 193–194
  origin of cells and, 296
  ribosomal, 66, 191, 195
  structure and function of, 51, 51*f,* 190–191
  transcription, 193–194
  transfer, 67, 190, 194, 194*f*
  translation, 194–196
RNA interference, 232
RNA polymerase, 193
Rods, 543, 543*f*
Root cap, 382, 383*f*
  diversity of, 384, 384*f*
Root hair, 373, 382, 383*f*
Root nodules, 386
Root pressure, 387
Roots
  adaptation of, for mineral uptake, 386
  growth of, 382
  tissues of, 384
  vascular tissue of, 384
Root system, 375, 376*f*
Rotational equilibrium, 541
Rotator cuff, 547
Rough ER, 68, 68*f,* 69*f*
Roundworms, 348–349, 348*f*
RuBP carboxylase (rubisco), 103, 105
Rule of multiplication, 167–168
Ruminants, 465, 467*f*
Rural sustainability, 643–644
Russell, Alfred, 7

S

Saccule, 541
Sac fungi, 329
Sacromeres, 550, 550*f*
Sacrum, 547
Sagan, Carl, 22
Sahelanthropus tchadensis, 364*f,* 365
Salinization, 637
Salivary amylase, 463–464, 469
Salivary glands, 463
Salmonella, 25, 301
Salt
  ionic compounds as, 26–27, 26*f*
  regulation of, in urine formation, 459–460
Saltatory conduction, 517
Salt water intrusion, 635
SA node, 438
Saprotrophs, 299, 329
Sarcomas, 139
Sarcoplasmic reticulum, 550, 550*f*
SARS virus, 18, 293
Saturated fatty acids, 46, 46*f,* 480, 488
Scapula, 547
Schistosomiasis, 345
Schwann cells, 423
Scientific American, 15*f,* 16
Scientific method, 11–14, 11*f*
  conclusion, 12*f,* 14
  data, 13
  experiments, 11*f,* 12–*13*
  hypothesis, 11*f,* 12
  observation, 11*f,* 12
Scientific name, 10–11
Scientific studies, publication of, 15–16, 15*f*
Scientific theories, 14
Sclerenchyma cells, 374, 374*f*
Scorpions, 350–351, 351*f*
Scrapie, 295
Sea star, 354, 354*f*
Seawater, 90
Secondary growth, 373, 381
Secondary sex characteristics, 562
Secondary succession, 603–604, 603*f,* 604*f*
Secondary xylem, 381
Secretion, 68, 459
Sedimentary cycle, 614
Seed coat, 404
Seed plants, 320, 321*f*
Seeds
  anatomy of, 320, 321*f*
  development of, in eudicot, 404, 404*f*
  dispersal of, 324, 404–405, 405*f*
  in evolution of land plants, 314, 314*f*
  germination, 406
  production of, 320, 321*f*
Segmentation, 342, 349
Segregation, law of, 165
Selenium, 482*t*
Semantic memory, 522
Semen (seminal fluid), 561
Semiarid land, 634
Semiconservative replication, 189, 189*f*
Semilunar valves, 436
Seminal vesicles, 561
Seminiferous tubules, 561
Senescence, 135, 395
Senses, 537–545
  balance, 541
  chemical, 537–538
  cutaneous receptors, 544–545
  hearing, 538–541
  proprioceptors, 542
  sensory receptors in other animals, 541–542
  taste and smell, 538, 538*f*
  vision, 542–544
Sensory adaptation, 537
Sensory neurons, 516, 516*f*
Sensory output system of human body, 425, 425*f*
Sepals, 322, 322*f,* 401, 401*f*
Septum, 436
Serotonin, 518
  drugs that regulate depression and anxiety, 518
Sertoli cells, 561
Serum sickness, 507
Set point, 427
Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), 18
Severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), 231
Sewage, 642
Sex chromosomes, 147, 147*f,* 178
Sex-linked inheritance, 178–180, 178*f*–180*f*
Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), 568–570
  causes of, 568–570
  infertility and, 556
  preventing, 570
Sexual reproduction, 5, 146–158
  abnormal chromosome inheritance, 156–158
  compared to asexual reproduction, 557
  in flowering plants, 400–406
  meiosis, 146–158
Sexual selection, 258, 258*f*
  nonrandom mating and, 264
Shigella dysenteriae, 301
Shoot system, 375, 376*f*

Sickle-cell disease, 52–53, 52*f*
  as autosomal disorder, 171–172, 171*f*
  as balanced polymorphism, 259
  gene mutation, 222, 222*f*
  incidence of, 259*f*
  Malaria and, 259, 259*f*
  as pleiotropic trait, 177
Sieve plate, 375
Sieve-tube members, 375
Signal molecule, 61
Signals, in cell cycle, 134–135
Signal transduction pathway, 203
Silurian period, 276*t*
Simple diffusion, 88
Simple goiter, 529, 529*f*
Sinuses, 434, 452, 452*f*
Sister chromatids, 127, 127*f,* 128, 129, 129*f,* 130, 149, 149*f*
Skeletal muscle, 421, 421*f,* 548
  contraction of, 550
  moving bones at joints, 551–553
Skeletal system, 425, 425*f. See also* Musculoskeletal system
Skill memory, 523
Skin, 417–418, 418*f*
  as barrier to entry, 499
  cutaneous receptors, 544–545, 545*f*
  genetic basis of skin color, 175, 175*f*
Skull, 547
Sliding filament model, 550
Slime mold, 304, 307, 307*f*
Small intestine, 465–467, 466*f,* 468*f*
Smallpox, 496
Smell, 538, 538*f*
Smooth ER, 68, 68*f,* 69*f*
Smooth muscle, 421, 421*f,* 548
Sneezing monkey *(Rhinopithecus strykeri),* 1, 1*f*
Sodium
  dietary, 481, 482, 482*t*
  in sodium chloride formation, 26–27, 26*f*
Sodium chloride
  formation of, 26–27, 26*f*
  water and, 30
Sodium hydroxide, dissociation of, 34
Sodium-potassium pump, 91, 517–518
Solar energy, 640, 640*f*
Soluble fiber, 44
Solute, 88
Solution, 88
Solvent, 88
Somatic cells, 135
Somatic system of PNS, 523–524
Somites, 574
Sori, 318
Speciation, 241, 269–274
  adaptive radiation, 274
  allopatric, 272–273
  biological species concept, 269–270
  common ancestor, 270–271
  defined, 269
  defining species, 269–271
  geological timescale, 275–276, 276*t*
  mass extinction of species, 278–279
  models of, 272–274
  pace of, 277–278
  reproductive barriers, 271–272
  sympatric, 273
Species
  biological species concept, 269–270
  as category of classification, 9, 9*t,* 280*f,* 281
  communities and species composition, 602
  defining, 269–271
  exotic, 609, 609*f*
  interaction in communities, 605–608
  keystone, 608
  mass extinction of, 278–279
  native, 609
  systematics, 280–285
Species richness, 602
Specific defenses, 502–505
Sperm, 557, 560, 561, 561*f,* 571, 572*f*
Spermatogenesis, 149, 561
  compared to oogenesis, 146
Sphagnum, 317
Sphincter, 465
Spicules, 343
Spina bifida, 229
Spinal cord, 520
Spinal nerves, 525
Spindle, 129, 131*f*
Spindle equator, 129, 131*f*
Spiral organ, 540
Spirilla, 297
Spirochetes, 297, 297*f*
Spirogyra, 304
Spleen, function of, 498
Sponge effect, 630–631
Sponges, 340, 340*f,* 342–343, 342*f,* 343*f*
Spongy bone, 548
Spongy mesophyll, 378
Sporangium, 307, 316–317
Spores, 149, 298, 307, 308, 315, 315*f,* 403
Sporophyte, 315, 315*f,* 316, 316*f,* 400
Sporozoans, 306*f,* 307
Sprains, 553
Spring wood, 381–382
Squamous epithelium, 417–418, 417*f*
SRY gene, 157
Stabilizing selection, 257, 257*f*
Stamen, 322, 322*f,* 401, 401*f*
Starches, 104
Starches function, 44, 44*f*
Statocysts, 541
Stem cells, 56
  cloning and, 212–213
  therapy for leukemia and, 211
Stems
  diversity of, 379*f*
  function of, 381
  nonwoody, 380–381
  organization of, 378–382
  woody, 381
Stent, 446, 446*f*
Sterility, 560
Sternum, 547
Steroid hormones, 526, 527*f*
Steroids, 47–48, 47*f*
Stigma, 322, 322*f,* 401, 401*f*
Stimulants, 518
Stomach, 464–465, 465*f,* 468*f*
Stomach flu, 293
Stomata, 97, 373, 374*f*
  opening and closing, 388
Strata, 238, 238*f*
  Darwin's study of, 239–240
Streptococci, 297*f*
Striated, 421
Stroke, 446
Stroma, 70, 70*f,* 97, 97*f*
Structural formula, 27, 27*f*
Style, 322, 322*f*
Style, flower, 401, 401*f*
Subcutaneous fat, 479
Suberin, 373–374
Subsidence, 635
Subspecies, 263*f,* 264
Substrate-level ATP synthesis, 114, 114*f*
Substrates, 86
Sucrose, 43
Sugar, 42–43
  high-fructose corn syrup, 43
  as nutrient transport in plants, 388–389, 388*f*
  reducing dietary, 479*t*
Sulfhydryl, 40*f*
Sulfur, 482*t*
  as element of living organisms, 22, 22*f*
  model of, 25, 25*f*
Summer wood, 382
Superbugs, 236
Supernova, 22
Surface-area-to-volume ratio, 58–59, 59*f*
Survival of the fittest, 245
Survivorship, 589
Sustainable society, 643–645
Swallowing, 464, 464*f*
Swine flu (H1N1), 18
Symbiotic, 299
Sympathetic division, 524–525, 525*f*
Sympatric speciation, 273, 273*f*
Synapse, 518, 518*f*
Synapsis, 149–150, 150*f*
Synaptic cleft, 518
Synovial joints, 551, 552*f*
Synthetic organic compounds, 641
Syphilis, 570
Systematics
  cladistics and cladograms, 283–284
  defined, 9
  Linnaean classification, 280–281
  phylogenetic tree, 281–283, 281*f*
  three-domain system, 284–285, 285*f*
Systemic circuit, 435, 435*f,* 440, 440*f*
Systemic lupus erythematosus, 509
Systole, 437
Systolic blood pressure, 446

T

Tapeworm, 345, 345*f*
Taproot, 384*f*
Taste, 538, 538*f*
Tatum, Edward, 191–192
Taxon, 280
Taxonomy, 9, 280–281
Tay-Sachs disease, 68
T-cell receptors (TCRs), 503
T cells. *See* T lymphocytes (T cells)
Technology, 16
Teeth, 463, 463*f*
Telomerase, 138
Telomere, 135
  absence of shortening, and cancer, 138
Telophase, 131*f,* 152, 152*f,* 153, 153*f,* 154, 155*f*
Temperature, B–1
Template, 189
Temporal isolation, 271, 271*f*
Tendons, 419
Terminal bud, 375, 376*f*
Termination, 196, 196*f*
Terrestrial ecosystems, 620, 620*f*
Tertiary period, 276*t*
Testcross
  one-trait, 165, 165*f*
  two-trait, 166–167, 167*f*
Testes, 526*f,* 557, 560, 560*f,* 561
Test group, 13
Testosterone, 68, 562
  structure and function of, 47–48, 47*f*
Tetanus, 300–301
Tetany, 530
Tetrad, 149–150, 149*f*
Thalamus, 521
Therapeutic cloning, 212–213, 212*f*
Thermoacidophiles, 302, 302*f*
Thermodynamics, laws of, 80–81
Thermus aquaticus, 210
Thiamine, 483*t*
Thigmotropism, 397–398, 397*f*
Thoracic cavity, 454, 454*f*
Three-domain system, 284–285, 285*f*
Thrombin, 445
Thrombus, 446
Thylakoid membrane, 297
  organization of, 102–103, 102*f*
Thylakoids, 70, 70*f,* 97, 97*f*
Thymine (T), 51–52, 51*f,* 186, 186*f*
  structure of DNA and, 186–189
Thymus gland, 498, 526*f*
Thyroid gland, 526*f,* 529–530
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), 527
Thyroxine, 529
Tibia, 547
Tight junctions, 75, 75*f*
Tiktaalik fossils, 246–247, 247*f*
Tinea, 333, 333f
Tissue, 2, 3*f*
  capillary exchange in, 442, 442*f*
  connective, 416, 416*f,* 419–421
  defined, 415
  epithelial, 416, 416*f,* 417–418
  of immune system, 497–499
  muscular, 416, 416*f,* 421–422
  nervous, 416, 416*f,* 422–423
  plant, 373–375
  root, 384
  structure and function, 416, 423
Tissue culture, 407–409, 408*f*
Tissue fluid, 424, 451
Tissue rejection, 505
Titin, 50
T lymphocytes (T cells), 498, 498*t*
  activation of, 503–504, 504f
  cellular response and, 503–505
  characteristics of, 504*t*
Tobacco mosaic virus, 292, 292*f*
Tonsillitis, 452
Tortoises, Darwin's study of, 242

Totipotent, 213, 408
Toxins, 300
Trace minerals, 481, 482*t*
Tracer, 24
Trachea, 452*f,* 453
Tracheids, 374
Transcription, 192, 193–194, 193*f*
  gene expression in eukaryotes, 199–202
  gene expression in prokaryotes, 197–198
Transcription activators, 200, 201*f*
Transcription factors, 200, 201*f*
Transduction, 298
Trans fat, 46, 46*f,* 475, 480
Transfer rate, 616
Transfer RNA, 67, 190, 194, 194*f*
Transformation, 298
Transgenic bacteria, 213, 214*f*
Transgenic organisms, 208, 213–215, 214*f*
Transgenic plants, 214, 214*f,* 409
Translation, 192, 194–196, 194*f,* 195*f*
Translocation, 138, 138*f,* 196
  chromosomes, 224–225
Transpiration, 387
Transplants, kidney, 461
Transport proteins, 61, 61*f*
Transport system of body, 424, 424*f*
Transposon, 139, 221, 221*f*
Trees
  annual ring, 382
  bark of, 381
  wood of, 381–382
Treponema pallidum, 297*f*
Triassic period, 276*t*
Trichinosis, 349
Trichomes, 373
Trichomoniasis, 570
Tricuspid valve, 436
Triglycerides, 46, 479
Triiodothyronine, 529
Triplet code, 192, 193*f*
Trisomy, 156, 220
Trisomy 21, 156–157, 220
Tropical level, 614
Tropism, 397–398, 397*f*–398*f*
True-breeding plants, 163
Trypanosome, 307
Trypsin, 466, 470
Tumor, 140
Tumor suppressor genes, 137–138, 137*f*
Tunicates, 354–355
Turgid, 90
Turgor pressure, 388
Turner syndrome, 157, 157*f*
Two-trait inheritance, 166–167
Type 1 diabetes, 488, 531–532
Type 2 diabetes, 479, 488, 532
Typhoid fever, 301

U

Ulcer, 464–465
Ulna, 547
Ultrasound, 228–229
Umbilical cord, 575
Uncoating, of virus, 292*f*
Uniform distribution, 588
Uniformitarianism, 239–240
Unsaturated fatty acids, 46, 46*f*
Upper respiratory tract, 452–453, 452*f*
Uracil (U), 51–52, 51*f,* 190
Urban sustainability, 644–645
Ureter, 457, 457*f*
Urethra, 457*f,* 458
Urinary bladder, 457, 457*f*
Urinary system, 415, 415*f,* 424, 424*f,* 457–461
  functions of kidneys, 457
  kidney problems, 460–461
  urine formation, 458–460
Urine, 457
  formation of, 458–460
Uterine tubes, 562
Uterus, 562, 562*f*
Utricle, 541

V

Vaccines
  contraceptive, 566
  historical perspective on, 496
  immunity and, 506
  MMR vaccine, 507
Vacuoles, 69, 69*f*
Vagina, 562, 562*f*
Vaginitis, 570
Valence shell, 25–26, 25*f,* 26*f*
Valine (Val), 53
Valium, 518
Varicose veins, 439, 439*f*
Vascular bundles, 377
Vascular cambium, 373
Vascular cylinder, 384
Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), 232
Vascular plants, 316, 317–320
Vascular tissue
  of plants, 317, 373, 374–375, 375*f*
  of roots, 384
Vas deferens, 560, 560*f*
Vector, 208
Veins, 437, 439, 439*f*
Venae cavae, 436, 436*f*
Ventricles, 436, 436*f*
Ventricular fibrillation, 438
Venules, 439
Vertebral column, 547
Vertebrate animals, 340
  circulatory pathways in, 435
Vertigo, 541
Vesicle formation, 64*f*
Vesicles, 65
Vessel elements, 374
Vestigial structures, 248
Viagra, 560
Villi, 466–467, 466*f*
Viroids, 294
Viruses, 290–294
  animal viruses, 292–294
  bacteriophage reproduction, 291, 291*f*
  defined, 290
  drug control of, 294
  emerging, 293
  norovirus, 293
  parts of, 290, 290*f*
  plant viruses, 292
  reproduction of, 290–291
  retroviruses, 293
  sexually transmitted diseases, 568–570
Visceral muscle, 422
Visible light, 99, 99*f*
Vision, 542–544
  in the dark, 544
  LASIK surgery, 544
  photoreceptors in eye, 543
  types of eyes, 542
Vitamins, 483–484, 483*t*
  A, 142, 483*t,* 484
  B_1, 483*t*
  B_2, 483*t*
  C, 142, 476, 483*t,* 484
  D, 483*t,* 484, 530
  E, 483*t*
  K, 468, 483*t*
Viviparous, 558
Vocal cords, 453
Volvox, 304
Vulva, 562, 562*f*

W

Wallace, Alfred Russel, 244–245
Wallace's Line, 244, 245*f*
Waste
  biodiversity and disposal of, 630
  industrial waste, 641–642
  sewage, 642
Water
  acids and, 33
  biodiversity and freshwater provisions, 630–631
  cellular respiration, 111–112, 111*f,* 112*f*
  cohesion and adhesion of, 30–31, 30*f*
  conservation of, 636
  dehydration synthesis reaction, 42, 42*f*
  density of ice, 32, 32*f*
  in digestive process, 468
  dissociation of, 33
  heat capacity of, 31–32
  heat of vaporization, 31–32, 31*f*
  hydrogen bond, 29, 29*f*
  hydrolysis reaction, 42, 42*f*
  increasing water supplies, 634–635
  as nutrient, 484
  oxidation of, in photosynthesis, 98
  in photosynthesis equation, 28
  polarity of, 29, 29*f*
  to produce food, 635
  properties of, 29–32
  regulation of, in urine formation, 459–460
  seawater, 90
  as solvent, 29–30
  structure of, 29, 29*f*
  surface tension of, 31
  transport in plants, 387–388
  use of, 634–635
Water mold, 304, 307–308
Watson, James, 187–188, 187*f*
Weight
  maintaining healthy, 487–488
  measurement systems, B–1
Weight loss
  cancer prevention and, 142
  chromium and, 122
Weinberg, W., 261
West Nile virus, as emerging virus, 293
Wetlands, 633
Whales, evolution of, 247, 247*f*
White blood cells, 420*f,* 421
  phagocytosis and, 91
  structure and function of, 444, 444*f*
Williams syndrome, 223, 223*f*
Wind power, 640, 640*f*
Wood, 381–382
Woody stems, 381

X

Xanax, 518
X chromosome, 147, 147*f,* 178–180, 178*f*–179*f*
Xenotransplantation, 215
X-inactivation, 199, 200*f,* 202
X-linked alleles, 178–179
X-linked dominant, 179
X-linked recessive disorder, 179
Xylem, 317
  structure of, 374, 375*f,* 377, 381
  water and mineral transport in, 387–388

Y

Y chromosome, 147, 147*f,* 178*f*–179*f,* 178–180
Yeast, fermentation and, 116
Y-linked pattern of inheritance, 180
Yolk sac, 571*f*

Z

Zeatin, 395
Zinc, 482*t*
Zona pellucida, 571, 572*f*
Zooflagellates, 306, 307
Zygospore fungi, 328–329, 328*f*–329*f*
Zygote, 149, 557
Zygote mortality, 271*f,* 272